

Service Manual

imagePRESS C1 Series

Canon

Application

This manual has been issued by Canon Inc. for qualified persons to learn technical theory, installation, maintenance, and repair of products. This manual covers all localities where the products are sold. For this reason, there may be information in this manual that does not apply to your locality.

Corrections

This manual may contain technical inaccuracies or typographical errors due to improvements or changes in products. When changes occur in applicable products or in the contents of this manual, Canon will release technical information as the need arises. In the event of major changes in the contents of this manual over a long or short period, Canon will issue a new edition of this manual.

The following paragraph does not apply to any countries where such provisions are inconsistent with local law.

Trademarks

The product names and company names used in this manual are the registered trademarks of the individual companies.

Copyright

This manual is copyrighted with all rights reserved. Under the copyright laws, this manual may not be copied, reproduced or translated into another language, in whole or in part, without the written consent of Canon Inc.

COPYRIGHT © 2001 CANON INC.










Printed in Japan

Caution

Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.



Symbols Used

This documentation uses the following symbols to indicate special information:

Symbol	Description
	Indicates an item of a non-specific nature, possibly classified as Note, Caution, or Warning.
	Indicates an item requiring care to avoid electric shocks.
	Indicates an item requiring care to avoid combustion (fire).
	Indicates an item prohibiting disassembly to avoid electric shocks or problems.
	Indicates an item requiring disconnection of the power plug from the electric outlet.
 Memo	Indicates an item intended to provide notes assisting the understanding of the topic in question.
 REF.	Indicates an item of reference assisting the understanding of the topic in question.
	Provides a description of a service mode.
	Provides a description of the nature of an error indication.

The following rules apply throughout this Service Manual:

1. Each chapter contains sections explaining the purpose of specific functions and the relationship between electrical and mechanical systems with reference to the timing of operation.

In the diagrams,  represents the path of mechanical drive; where a signal name accompanies the symbol, the arrow  indicates the direction of the electric signal.

The expression "turn on the power" means flipping on the power switch, closing the front door, and closing the delivery unit door, which results in supplying the machine with power.

2. In the digital circuits, '1' is used to indicate that the voltage level of a given signal is "High", while '0' is used to indicate "Low". (The voltage value, however, differs from circuit to circuit.) In addition, the asterisk (*) as in "DRMD*" indicates that the DRMD signal goes on when '0'.

In practically all cases, the internal mechanisms of a microprocessor cannot be checked in the field. Therefore, the operations of the microprocessors used in the machines are not discussed: they are explained in terms of from sensors to the input of the DC controller PCB and from the output of the DC controller PCB to the loads.

The descriptions in this Service Manual are subject to change without notice for product improvement or other purposes, and major changes will be communicated in the form of Service Information bulletins.

All service persons are expected to have a good understanding of the contents of this Service Manual and all relevant Service Information bulletins and be able to identify and isolate faults in the machine."

Contents

Chapter 1 Introduction

1.1 System Construction	1- 1
1.1.1 System Configuration (pickup/delivery accessories)	1- 1
1.1.2 System Configuration (printing/transmission accessories)	1- 1
1.1.3 Functions of Printing/Transmission Accessories	1- 2
1.2 Product Specifications	1- 4
1.2.1 Names of Parts	1- 4
1.2.1.1 External View	1- 4
1.2.1.2 External View	1- 4
1.2.1.3 Cross Section	1- 5
1.2.1.4 Cross Section	1- 7
1.2.2 Using the Machine	1- 8
1.2.2.1 Power Switch	1- 8
1.2.2.2 Points to Note When Turning Off the Main Power Switch	1- 9
1.2.2.3 Control Panel	1- 9
1.2.3 User Mode Items	1- 10
1.2.3.1 Common Settings	1- 10
1.2.3.2 Timer Settings	1- 12
1.2.3.3 Adjustment/Cleaning	1- 12
1.2.3.4 Report Settings	1- 12
1.2.3.5 System Control Settings	1- 13
1.2.3.6 Copy Settings	1- 15
1.2.3.7 Communications Settings	1- 15
1.2.3.8 Mail Box Settings	1- 16
1.2.3.9 Address Book Settings	1- 17
1.2.3.10 User Administrator Mode	1- 18
1.2.3.11 Common Settings	1- 20
1.2.3.12 Timer Settings	1- 22
1.2.3.13 Adjustment/Cleaning	1- 23
1.2.3.14 Report Settings	1- 23
1.2.3.15 System Control Settings	1- 23
1.2.3.16 Copy Settings	1- 26
1.2.3.17 Communications Settings	1- 26
1.2.3.18 Mail Box Settings	1- 27
1.2.3.19 Address Book Settings	1- 27
1.2.3.20 User Administrator Mode	1- 28
1.2.4 User Maintenance	1- 31
1.2.4.1 Cleaning	1- 31
1.2.4.2 Inspection	1- 32
1.2.4.3 Inspection	1- 34
1.2.5 Safety	1- 36
1.2.5.1 Safety of the Machine's Laser Mechanism	1- 36
1.2.5.2 CDRH Regulations	1- 36
1.2.5.3 Handling of the Laser Assembly	1- 36
1.2.5.4 Safety of the Toner	1- 37
1.2.5.5 Notes when handling a lithium battery	1- 37
1.2.6 Product Specifications	1- 37
1.2.6.1 Machine Specifications	1- 37
1.2.6.2 Machine Specifications	1- 38
1.2.7 Function List	1- 40
1.2.7.1 Printing Speed	1- 40
1.2.7.2 Printing Speed	1- 41
1.2.7.3 Paper Types	1- 42

Chapter 2 Installation

2.1 Making Pre-Checks	2- 1
2.1.1 Points to Note About Installation (iR C7000 series).....	2- 1
2.1.2 Unpacking and Checking the Components	2- 1
2.1.3 Selecting the Site of Installation.....	2- 4
2.1.4 Checking the Contents.....	2- 5
2.1.5 Checking the Contents.....	2- 8
2.1.6 Checking the Contents.....	2- 11
2.1.7 Checking the Contents.....	2- 14
2.1.8 Checking the Contents.....	2- 17
2.1.9 Checking the Contents.....	2- 19
2.1.10 Checking the Contents.....	2- 22
2.1.11 Checking the Contents.....	2- 24
2.1.12 Checking the Contents.....	2- 26
2.2 Unpacking and Installation	2- 28
2.2.1 Points to Note Before Starting the Work	2- 28
2.2.2 Unpacking.....	2- 28
2.2.3 Mounting Scanning System	2- 30
2.2.4 Locking the Primary Transfer Roller In Place	2- 31
2.2.5 Decurler points to Note About Installation.....	2- 31
2.2.6 Mounting the Decurler.....	2- 31
2.2.7 Mounting the Delivery Tray	2- 33
2.2.8 Attaching the Outer Delivery Roller Cover.....	2- 33
2.2.9 Decurler Open / Close Angle Adjustment	2- 34
2.2.10 Preparation for Mounting the Developing Assembly	2- 35
2.2.11 Mounting the Balancing Cylinder	2- 38
2.2.12 Mounting the Balancing Cylinder	2- 40
2.2.13 Mounting the Developing Assembly.....	2- 41
2.2.14 Mounting the Developing Assembly.....	2- 44
2.2.15 Mounting the Process Unit	2- 47
2.2.16 Mounting the Process Unit.....	2- 50
2.2.17 Mounting the Fixing Assembly	2- 53
2.2.18 Fitting the Control Panel in Place.....	2- 55
2.2.19 Setting of Environmental Switch	2- 60
2.2.20 Turning the Main Power ON.....	2- 60
2.2.21 Turning the Main Power ON.....	2- 61
2.2.22 Turning the Main Power ON.....	2- 62
2.2.23 Turning the Main Power ON.....	2- 63
2.2.24 Turning the Main Power ON.....	2- 63
2.2.25 Turning the Main Power ON.....	2- 64
2.2.26 Setting of Environmental Switch	2- 64
2.2.27 Turning the Main Power ON.....	2- 65
2.2.28 Points to Note at the Main Power OFF	2- 65
2.2.29 Checking the Drum Temperature Switch	2- 65
2.2.30 Setting the Toner container.....	2- 66
2.2.31 Setting the Toner Container	2- 66
2.2.32 Setting the Toner Container	2- 68
2.2.33 Supplying Toner	2- 68
2.2.34 Supplying Toner	2- 69
2.2.35 Setting the Paper Cassette	2- 69
2.2.36 Setting for K paper	2- 69
2.2.37 Automatic Gradation Correction Setting	2- 69
2.2.38 Automatic Gradation Correction Setting.....	2- 70
2.2.39 Checking a Clear Color Image.....	2- 70
2.2.40 Checking Image / Operation	2- 70

2.2.41 Adjusting Left Margin of Image	2- 70
2.2.42 Adjusting Margin along Leading Edge of Image	2- 71
2.2.43 Cleaning the Charging Assembly	2- 71
2.2.44 Cleaning the Charging Assembly	2- 75
2.2.45 Other Works	2- 79
2.2.46 Putting the Rating Plate.	2- 80
2.3 Unpacking and Installation (imagePRESS C1 Series)	2- 80
2.3.1 Points to Note About Installation (imagePRESS C1 series).....	2- 80
2.3.2 Turning Off the Machine (imagePRESS C1 series)	2- 80
2.3.3 Installation Procedure (imagePRESS C1 series)	2- 80
2.3.4 Setting After the Installation (imagePRESS C1 series)	2- 83
2.4 Unpacking and Installation (imagePRESS C7000 Series)	2- 83
2.4.1 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the power of Host Machine (imagePRESS C7000 series)	2- 83
2.4.2 Installation Procedure (imagePRSS C7000 series).....	2- 84
2.4.3 Setting After the Installation(imagePRESS C7000 Series)	2- 92
2.5 Checking the Connection to the Network	2- 92
2.5.1 Overview	2- 92
2.5.2 Checking the Network Connection	2- 92
2.5.3 Using the PING Command	2- 92
2.5.4 Using the PING Command	2- 92
2.5.5 Making a Check Using the Remote Host Address	2- 92
2.6 Troubleshooting the Network.....	2- 92
2.6.1 Overview	2- 92
2.6.2 Checking the Connection of the Network Cable	2- 92
2.6.3 Making a Check Using a Loopback Address	2- 92
2.6.4 Making a Check Using a Local Host Address	2- 92
2.7 Relocating the Machine	2- 92
2.7.1 Operation for Moving the Machine	2- 92
2.8 Installing the Card Reader	2- 93
2.8.1 Points to Note About Installation	2- 93
2.8.2 Checking the Contents	2- 93
2.8.3 Pre-Settings.....	2- 93
2.8.4 Turning Off the Machine	2- 93
2.8.5 Installation Procedure.....	2- 93
2.8.6 Installation Procedure in the imageWARE Accounting Manager (henceforth: iWAM) environment.....	2- 95
2.8.7 Installation Procedure in the imageWARE Accounting Manager (henceforth: iWAM) Environment	2- 95
2.9 Installing the Original Tray	2- 95
2.9.1 Checking the Contents	2- 95
2.9.2 Checking the Contents	2- 95
2.9.3 Checking the Contents	2- 96
2.9.4 Installing the Document Tray.....	2- 96
2.10 Installing the Platen Cover	2- 96
2.10.1 Checking the Contents	2- 96
2.10.2 Installation Procedure	2- 97
2.11 Installing the Key Switch Unit	2- 97
2.11.1 Checking the Attachments.....	2- 97
2.11.2 Turning Off the Machine	2- 97
2.11.3 Installation Procedure	2- 97
2.11.4 After Installing the Key Switch Unit.....	2- 98
2.12 Installing the Reader Heater	2- 98
2.12.1 Checking the Parts	2- 98
2.12.2 Turning Off the Host Machine.....	2- 98
2.12.3 Installation Procedure	2- 98
2.13 Installing the Deck Heater.....	2- 100
2.13.1 Checking the Contents (Heater PCB-F1)	2- 100

2.13.2 Checking the Parts to Install	2- 101
2.13.3 Installing Procedure	2- 101
2.13.4 Installing Procedure	2- 108
2.14 Installing the Voice Guidance Kit	2- 115
2.14.1 Points to Note at Installation	2- 115
2.14.2 Checking Components	2- 115
2.14.3 Checking Components	2- 116
2.14.4 Turning off the Machine	2- 117
2.14.5 Installation Procedure	2- 117
2.15 Installing the Printer Cover	2- 127
2.15.1 Points to Note About Installation	2- 127
2.15.2 Checking the Contents	2- 127
2.15.3 Turning Off the Machine	2- 128
2.15.4 Installation Procedure	2- 128
2.16 Installing the Serial Interface Kit	2- 132
2.16.1 Points to Note About Installation	2- 132
2.16.2 Checking the Contents	2- 132
2.16.3 Turning Off the Machine	2- 133
2.16.4 Installation Procedure	2- 133

Chapter 3 Basic Operation

3.1 Construction	3- 1
3.1.1 Function Configuration	3- 1
3.1.2 Function Configuration	3- 2
3.1.3 Main PCB Connection	3- 3
3.1.4 DC Controller	3- 4

Chapter 4 Main Controller

4.1 Construction	4- 1
4.1.1 Configuration and Functions	4- 1
4.1.2 Configuration and Functions	4- 2
4.2 Construction of the Electrical Circuitry	4- 4
4.2.1 Main Controller Circuit Board (MAIN)	4- 4
4.2.2 Main Controller Circuit Board (MAIN)	4- 6
4.2.3 SRAM Circuit Board	4- 7
4.3 Start-Up Sequence	4- 7
4.3.1 Overview	4- 7
4.3.2 Startup Sequence	4- 7
4.4 Actions when HDD Error	4- 9
4.4.1 E602 Details	4- 9
4.5 Image Processing	4- 12
4.5.1 Image Flow Overview	4- 12
4.5.2 Reader Input Image Processing	4- 13
4.5.3 Reader Input Image Processing	4- 13
4.5.4 Printer Output Image Processing	4- 14
4.5.5 Block for Compression, Expansion, and Editing Processing	4- 15
4.5.6 Block for Compression, Expansion, and Editing Processing	4- 16
4.6 Flow of Image Data	4- 16
4.6.1 Image Data Flow When Using the Copy Function	4- 16
4.6.2 Image Data Flow When Using the Copy Function	4- 17
4.6.3 Image Data Flow When Using the BOX Function	4- 17
4.6.4 Image Data Flow When Using the BOX Function	4- 18
4.6.5 Image Data Flow When Using the SEND Function	4- 18
4.6.6 Image Data Flow When Using the SEND Function	4- 19

4.6.7 Image Data Flow When Using the FAX Receive Function	4- 19
4.6.8 Image Data Flow When Using the FAX Receive Function	4- 20
4.6.9 Image Data Flow When Using the PDL Function	4- 20
4.6.10 Image Data Flow When Using the PDL Function	4- 22
4.7 Parts Replacement Procedure	4- 23
4.7.1 Controller Box	4- 23
4.7.1.1 Preparation for Removing the Controller Box	4- 23
4.7.1.2 Removing the Controller Box	4- 23
4.7.2 Main Controller PCB (main).....	4- 24
4.7.2.1 Preparation for Removing the Main Controller PCB	4- 24
4.7.2.2 Removing the Main Controller PCB (Main).....	4- 24
4.7.2.3 Removing the Main Controller PCB (Main).....	4- 25
4.7.3 HDD	4- 26
4.7.3.1 Preparation for Removing the HDD	4- 26
4.7.3.2 Removing the HDD	4- 26

Chapter 5 Original Exposure System

5.1 Construction	5-1
5.1.1 Specifications, Control Mechanisms, and Functions	5-1
5.1.2 Major Components.....	5-1
5.1.3 Construction of the Control System.....	5-3
5.1.4 Reader Controller PCB	5-3
5.2 Basic Sequence	5-4
5.2.1 Basic Sequence of Operation at Power-On.....	5-4
5.2.2 Basic Sequence of Operation in Response to a Press on the Start Key	5-4
5.3 Various Control Mechanisms.....	5-6
5.3.1 Controlling the Scanner Drive System	5-6
5.3.1.1 Overview	5-6
5.3.1.2 Controlling the Scanner Motor.....	5-6
5.3.2 Enlargement/Reduction.....	5-7
5.3.2.1 Changing the Magnification in Main Scanning Direction	5-7
5.3.2.2 Changing the Magnification in Sub Scanning Direction	5-7
5.3.3 Controlling the Scanning Lamp	5-7
5.3.3.1 Overview	5-7
5.3.3.2 Scanning Lamp.....	5-8
5.3.3.3 Turning On and Off the Scanning Lamp.....	5-8
5.3.4 Detecting the Size of Originals	5-8
5.3.4.1 Identifying the Size of Originals	5-8
5.3.4.2 Points of Measurement Used for Original Size Identification	5-8
5.3.4.3 Overview of Operation.....	5-10
5.3.5 Dirt Sensor Control	5-11
5.3.5.1 Dust Detection Control at Stream Reading	5-11
5.3.5.2 White Plate Dust Detection Control.....	5-12
5.3.6 Image Processing	5-13
5.3.6.1 Overview	5-13
5.3.6.2 CCD Drive	5-14
5.3.6.3 CCD Gain Correction, Offset Correction.....	5-15
5.3.6.4 CCD Output A/D Conversion	5-15
5.3.6.5 Outline of Shading Correction	5-15
5.3.6.6 Shading Adjustment	5-15
5.3.6.7 Shading Correction.....	5-15
5.4 Parts Replacement Procedure.....	5-16
5.4.1 DADF.....	5-16
5.4.1.1 Removing the DADF (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-16
5.4.2 Copyboard Glass	5-16
5.4.2.1 Removing the Copyboard Glass (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-16
5.4.2.2 Scanner Parts Replacement Procedure (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-16
5.4.3 Replacement of Standard White Plate	5-16
5.4.3.1 Removing the Standard White Plate (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-16
5.4.3.2 Scanner Parts Replacement Procedure (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-17
5.4.4 Exposure Lamp	5-17
5.4.4.1 Preparation for Removing the Scanner Lamp (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-17
5.4.4.2 Removing the Scanner Lamp (imagePRESS C1 Series)	5-17
5.4.4.3 Removing the Scanner Lamp (imagePRESS C1 Series)	5-19
5.4.4.4 Removing the Scanner Lamp (imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-21
5.4.5 Reader Controller PCB	5-24
5.4.5.1 Preparation for Removing the Reader Controller PCB (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-24
5.4.5.2 Removing the Reader Controller PCB (imagePRESS C1 Series)	5-24
5.4.5.3 Removing the Reader Controller PCB (imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-25
5.4.5.4 Procedure after Replacement of the Reader Controller PCB (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-27

5.4.6 Interface PCB.....	5-27
5.4.6.1 Removing the Interface PCB.....	5-27
5.4.7 Inverter PCB.....	5-28
5.4.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Inverter PCB (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-28
5.4.7.2 Removing the Inverter PCB (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	5-28
5.4.7.3 Removing the Inverter PCB (imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-29
5.4.8 CCD Unit.....	5-31
5.4.8.1 Preparation for Removing the CCD Unit (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-31
5.4.8.2 Removing the CCD Unit (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	5-31
5.4.8.3 Removing the CCD Unit (imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-32
5.4.8.4 Scanner Parts Replacement Procedure (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-34
5.4.9 Scanner Motor.....	5-34
5.4.9.1 Preparation for Removing the Scanner Motor (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-34
5.4.9.2 Removing the Scanner Motor (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	5-34
5.4.9.3 Removing the Scanner Motor (imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-35
5.4.9.4 Attaching the Scanner Motor (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-36
5.4.10 ADF Open/Close Sensor.....	5-36
5.4.10.1 Removing the ADF Open/Close Sensor (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	5-36
5.4.10.2 Removing the ADF Open/Close Sensor(imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-37
5.4.11 Scanner Home Position Sensor.....	5-38
5.4.11.1 Removing the Scanner Home Position Sensor (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	5-38
5.4.11.2 Removing the Scanner Home Position Sensor (imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-39
5.4.12 Original Sensor.....	5-40
5.4.12.1 Preparation for Removing the Original Size Sensor (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-40
5.4.12.2 Removing the Original Size Sensor (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	5-40
5.4.12.3 Removing the Original Size Sensor (imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-41
5.4.13 Scanner Drive Cable.....	5-42
5.4.13.1 Preparation for Removing the Scanner Motor Drive Wire (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-42
5.4.13.2 Removing the Scanner Drive Wire (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	5-42
5.4.13.3 Removing the Scanner Drive Wire (imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-46
5.4.13.4 Attaching the Scanner Drive Wire (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-50
5.4.13.5 Adjustment of Positions of the Mirror 1, 2 Mount (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-50
5.4.13.6 Points to Note When Attaching the Control Panel (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	5-51

Chapter 6 Laser Exposure

6.1 Construction	6-1
6.1.1 Specifications/Control Mechanisms/Functions	6-1
6.1.2 Major Components	6-1
6.1.3 Control System Configuration	6-2
6.2 Basic Sequence	6-2
6.2.1 Basic Sequence	6-2
6.3 Various Control	6-3
6.3.1 Controlling the Laser Activation Timing	6-3
6.3.1.1 ON/OFF Control	6-3
6.3.1.2 Main Scan Sync Control	6-4
6.3.1.3 Sub Scan Sync Control	6-5
6.3.2 Controlling the Intensity of Laser Light	6-6
6.3.2.1 APC Control	6-6
6.3.2.2 PWM Control	6-6
6.3.3 Controlling the Laser Scanner Motor	6-6
6.3.3.1 Laser Scanner Motor Control	6-6
6.3.4 Controlling the Laser Shutter	6-7
6.3.4.1 Laser Shutter Control	6-7
6.4 Parts Replacement Procedure	6-9
6.4.1 Laser Scanner Unit	6-9
6.4.1.1 Preparation for Removing the Laser Scanner Unit	6-9
6.4.1.2 Removing the Laser Scanner Unit	6-9

Chapter 7 Image Formation

7.1 Construction	7-1
7.1.1 Image Formation Specification List	7-1
7.1.2 Main Components	7-2
7.1.3 Main Components	7-2
7.1.4 Charge Specification	7-3
7.1.5 Charge Specification	7-4
7.2 Image Formation Process	7-5
7.2.1 Image Formation Process	7-5
7.3 Basic Sequence	7-8
7.3.1 When Turning the Power ON	7-8
7.3.2 When Turning the Power ON	7-9
7.3.3 Copy / Print (Normal Speed)	7-9
7.3.4 Copy / Print (Normal Speed)	7-10
7.3.5 Copy / Print (1/3 Speed)	7-12
7.4 Image Stabilization Control	7-12
7.4.1 Overview of Image Stabilization Control	7-12
7.4.2 Overview of Image Stabilization Control	7-13
7.4.3 Image Stabilization Control Timing	7-15
7.4.4 Image Stabilization Control Timing	7-15
7.4.5 Potential Control	7-16
7.4.6 ATVC Control	7-17
7.4.7 ATR Control	7-20
7.4.8 ATR Control	7-21
7.4.9 ACVC Control	7-23
7.4.10 D-max Control	7-24
7.4.11 D-max Control	7-25
7.4.12 D-half Control	7-26
7.4.13 D-half Control	7-28
7.4.14 ARCDAT Control	7-30
7.4.15 ARCDAT Control	7-32
7.4.16 PASCAL Control	7-34
7.4.17 ACR Control (Auto Carrier Refresh Control)	7-37
7.4.18 ACR Control (Auto Carrier Refresh Control)	7-38
7.5 Charging Mechanism	7-39
7.5.1 Primary Charging Bias Control	7-39
7.5.2 Primary Charging Assembly Cleaning Control	7-40
7.5.3 Pre-Transfer Charging Bias Control	7-41
7.5.4 Pre-Transfer Charging Assembly Cleaning Control	7-42
7.5.5 Pre-Exposure LED	7-43
7.6 Developing Rotary	7-43
7.6.1 Overview of Developing Rotary	7-43
7.6.2 Overview of Developing Rotary	7-44
7.6.3 Developing Rotary Control	7-45
7.6.4 Developing Rotary Control	7-47
7.7 Developing Unit	7-49
7.7.1 Developing Unit Configuration	7-49
7.7.2 Developing Unit Configuration	7-49
7.7.3 Developing Assembly Drive Control	7-49
7.7.4 Developing Bias Control	7-50
7.7.5 Developing Bias Control	7-51

7.8 Toner Container.....	7-52
7.8.1 Outline.....	7-52
7.8.2 Outline.....	7-53
7.8.3 Toner Bottle Presence Detection	7-54
7.8.4 Toner Bottle Presence Detection	7-55
7.8.5 Toner Supply.....	7-55
7.8.6 Toner Supply.....	7-57
7.8.7 Toner Level Detection	7-58
7.8.8 Toner Level Detection	7-59
7.9 Transfer Device	7-60
7.9.1 Overview of Transfer Assembly.....	7-60
7.9.2 Transfer Bias Control.....	7-61
7.9.3 Overview of the Primary Transfer Assembly	7-63
7.9.4 ITB Cleaner Attachment/Detachment Control	7-63
7.9.5 ITB Cleaner Attachment/Detachment Detection	7-64
7.9.6 Overview of the Secondary Transfer Assembly	7-65
7.9.7 Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Attachment/Detachment Control	7-66
7.9.8 Secondary Transfer Roller Attachment/Detachment Detection	7-67
7.9.9 Secondary Transfer Roller Cleaning Control	7-68
7.9.10 ITB Home Position Detection.....	7-70
7.9.11 ITB Home Position Detection.....	7-71
7.10 Photosensitive Drum Cleaning	7-74
7.10.1 Overview of Drum Cleaning Unit.....	7-74
7.10.2 Drum Cleaning Unit Drive Control	7-74
7.11 Waste Toner Collection Mechanism	7-75
7.11.1 Collecting Waste Toner	7-75
7.11.2 Waste Toner Full Detection	7-76
7.12 Drum Heater	7-79
7.12.1 Drum Heater Control	7-79
7.13 ITB Heater	7-80
7.13.1 ITB Heater Control.....	7-80
7.14 Parts Replacement Procedure	7-83
7.14.1 Process Unit	7-83
7.14.1.1 Preparation for Sliding the Processing Unit	7-83
7.14.1.2 Sliding the Processing Unit.....	7-83
7.14.1.3 Sliding the Processing Unit.....	7-84
7.14.2 Pre-exposure LED Array	7-86
7.14.2.1 Preparation for Removing the Pre-Exposure LED	7-86
7.14.2.2 Removing the Pre-Exposure LED unit	7-86
7.14.3 Preconditioning Exposure LED Unit.....	7-86
7.14.3.1 Preparation for Removing the Drum Cleaning Pre-Exposure LED Unit	7-86
7.14.3.2 Removing the Drum Cleaning Pre-Exposure LED Unit	7-86
7.14.4 Primary Charging Assembly.....	7-86
7.14.4.1 Preparation for Removing the Primary Corona Assembly	7-86
7.14.4.2 Removing the Primary Corona Assembly	7-86
7.14.4.3 After Replacing the Primary Charging Assembly	7-87
7.14.5 Primary Corona Grid Panel.....	7-87
7.14.5.1 Preparation for Removing the Primary Grid Plate.....	7-87
7.14.5.2 Removing the Primary Grid Plate.....	7-87
7.14.6 Primary Corona Pad Holder.....	7-87
7.14.6.1 Preparation for Removing the Primary Corona Pad Holder	7-87
7.14.6.2 Removing the Primary Corona Assembly Pad Holder	7-87
7.14.7 Primary Corona Slider	7-88
7.14.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Primary Corona Assembly Slider.....	7-88
7.14.7.2 Removing the Primary Corona Assembly Slider.....	7-88
7.14.8 Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.....	7-88
7.14.8.1 Preparation for removing the Pre-transfer Corona Assembly	7-88

7.14.8.2 Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly	7-88
7.14.8.3 After Replacing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly	7-88
7.14.9 Pre-Transfer Corona Pad Holder	7-88
7.14.9.1 Preparation for Removing the Pre-transfer Corona Assembly Pad Holder	7-88
7.14.9.2 Removing the Pre-transfer corona assembly pad folder	7-89
7.14.10 Pre-Transfer Corona Slider	7-89
7.14.10.1 Preparation for Removing the Pre-transfer Corona Assembly Slider	7-89
7.14.10.2 Removing the Pre-transfer Corona Assembly Slider	7-89
7.14.11 Drum Unit	7-89
7.14.11.1 Preparation for Removing the Drum Unit	7-89
7.14.11.2 Removing the Drum Unit	7-89
7.14.12 Photosensitive Drum	7-90
7.14.12.1 Points to Note When Handling the Photosensitive Drum	7-90
7.14.12.2 Preparation for Removing the Photosensitive Drum	7-90
7.14.12.3 Removing the Photosensitive Drum	7-90
7.14.12.4 After Replacing the Photosensitive Drum	7-90
7.14.13 Seal Support Plate (Front)	7-91
7.14.13.1 Preparation for Removing the Seal Support Plate (Front)	7-91
7.14.13.2 Removing the Seal Support Plate (Front)	7-91
7.14.14 Seal Support Plate (Rear)	7-91
7.14.14.1 Preparation for Removing the Seal Support Plate (Rear)	7-91
7.14.14.2 Removing the Seal Support Plate (Rear)	7-91
7.14.15 Scoop-Up Sheet Support Plate	7-92
7.14.15.1 Preparation for Removing the Scoop-Up Sheet Support Plate	7-92
7.14.15.2 Removing the Scoop-Up Sheet Support Plate	7-92
7.14.16 End Seal (Front)	7-92
7.14.16.1 Preparation for Removing the End Seal (Front)	7-92
7.14.16.2 Removing the End Seal (Front)	7-92
7.14.17 End Seal (Rear)	7-92
7.14.17.1 Preparation for Removing the End Seal (Rear)	7-92
7.14.17.2 Removing the End Seal (Rear)	7-93
7.14.18 Drum Cleaner Brush	7-93
7.14.18.1 Preparation for Removing the Drum Cleaner Brush	7-93
7.14.18.2 Removing the Drum Cleaner Brush	7-93
7.14.19 Photosensitive Drum Cleaning Blade	7-93
7.14.19.1 Preparation for Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade	7-93
7.14.19.2 Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade	7-93
7.14.20 Hopper Assembly	7-93
7.14.20.1 Preparation for Removing the Sub Hopper Unit	7-93
7.14.20.2 Removing the Sub Hopper Unit	7-93
7.14.20.3 Removing the Sub Hopper Unit	7-94
7.14.20.4 Procedure after Replacing the Sub Hopper Unit	7-96
7.14.21 Development Unit	7-96
7.14.21.1 Preparation for Removing the Developing Assembly	7-96
7.14.21.2 Removing the Developing Assembly	7-96
7.14.22 Development Clutch	7-97
7.14.22.1 Preparation for Removing the Developing Clutch	7-97
7.14.22.2 Removing the Developing Clutch	7-97
7.14.23 ITB Cleaning Unit	7-99
7.14.23.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB Cleaning Unit	7-99
7.14.23.2 Removing the ITB Cleaning Unit	7-99
7.14.24 Intermediate Transfer Unit	7-100
7.14.24.1 Preparation for Removing the Intermediate Transfer Unit	7-100
7.14.24.2 Removing the Intermediate Transfer Unit	7-100
7.14.25 Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Unit	7-101
7.14.25.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller Unit	7-101
7.14.25.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller Unit	7-101
7.14.26 Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Sub Unit	7-102
7.14.26.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Sub-Unit	7-102
7.14.26.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Sub-Unit	7-102

7.14.27 Intermediate Transfer Belt	7-102
7.14.27.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB	7-102
7.14.27.2 Removing the ITB	7-102
7.14.28 Primary Transfer Roller	7-103
7.14.28.1 Preparation for Removing the Primary Transfer Roller	7-103
7.14.28.2 Removing the Primary Transfer Roller	7-103
7.14.29 Secondary Transfer External Roller.....	7-104
7.14.29.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller.....	7-104
7.14.29.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller	7-104
7.14.30 Secondary Transfer Internal Roller.....	7-104
7.14.30.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Inside Roller.....	7-104
7.14.30.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Inside Roller.....	7-104
7.14.31 Secondary Transfer Bias Roller Cleaning Blade	7-105
7.14.31.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Bias Roller Cleaning Blade	7-105
7.14.31.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Bias Roller Cleaning Blade.....	7-105
7.14.32 ITB Cleaner Brush (Large)	7-105
7.14.32.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB Cleaner Brush (Large)	7-105
7.14.32.2 Removing the ITB Cleaner Brush (Large)	7-105
7.14.33 ITB Cleaner Brush (Small)	7-106
7.14.33.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB Cleaner Brush (Small)	7-106
7.14.33.2 Removing the ITB Cleaner Brush (Small)	7-106
7.14.34 Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Upper).....	7-106
7.14.34.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Upper)	7-106
7.14.34.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Upper)	7-106
7.14.35 Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Lower)	7-107
7.14.35.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Lower).....	7-107
7.14.35.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Lower).....	7-107
7.14.36 ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Upper).....	7-107
7.14.36.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Upper).....	7-107
7.14.36.2 Removing the ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Upper).....	7-107
7.14.37 ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Lower)	7-107
7.14.37.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Lower)	7-107
7.14.37.2 Removing the ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Lower)	7-107
7.14.38 Potential Sensor Unit	7-108
7.14.38.1 Preparation for Removing the Potential Sensor Unit.....	7-108
7.14.38.2 Removing the Potential Sensor.....	7-108
7.14.38.3 Replacing the Potential Sensor	7-108
7.14.39 ATR Sensor Unit.....	7-109
7.14.39.1 Preparation for Removing the ATR Sensor Unit.....	7-109
7.14.39.2 Removing the ATR Sensor	7-109
7.14.39.3 After Replacing the ATR Sensor	7-110
7.14.40 Drum Thermal Sensor Unit.....	7-110
7.14.40.1 Preparation for Removing the Drum Thermal Sensor Unit.....	7-110
7.14.40.2 Removing the Drum Thermal Sensor Unit	7-110
7.14.41 Patch Image Sensor	7-111
7.14.41.1 Preparation for Removing the Patch Image Sensor Unit.....	7-111
7.14.41.2 Removing the Patch Image Sensor Unit.....	7-111
7.14.41.3 After Replacing the Patch Image Reading Sensor	7-111
7.14.42 Charging Wire.....	7-111
7.14.42.1 Preparation for Setting Up Charging Wire	7-111
7.14.42.2 Setting Up Charging Wire	7-111
7.14.42.3 After Replacing the Primary Charging Wire	7-112

Chapter 8 Pickup/Feeding System

8.1 Construction	8-1
8.1.1 Specification/Control/Function	8-1
8.1.2 Arrangement of Rollers	8-2
8.1.3 Paper Delivery Path	8-3
8.1.4 Arrangement of Sensors	8-4
8.1.5 Distribution of Drives	8-6
8.1.6 Interval Speed	8-8
8.2 Basic Sequence	8-13
8.2.1 Cassette Feeding	8-13
8.2.2 Manual Feeding	8-13
8.3 Detecting Jams	8-15
8.3.1 Jam Detection Outline	8-15
8.3.1.1 Overview	8-15
8.3.1.2 Operation at Jam Occurrence	8-16
8.3.2 Delay Jams	8-16
8.3.2.1 Cassette Pickup Assembly	8-16
8.3.2.2 Other than Cassette Pickup Assembly	8-17
8.3.3 Stationary Jams	8-18
8.3.3.1 Normal Stationary Jam	8-18
8.3.3.2 Stationary Jam (Residual Jam) at the Power ON	8-19
8.3.4 Other Jams	8-19
8.3.4.1 Paper Thickness Detection	8-19
8.4 Cassette	8-20
8.4.1 Overview	8-20
8.4.2 Paper Size Detection	8-21
8.4.3 Setting the Universal Cassette	8-22
8.4.4 Paper Level Sensor	8-22
8.5 Cassette Pick-Up Unit	8-25
8.5.1 Configuration	8-25
8.5.2 Behavior of Lifter	8-25
8.5.3 Behavior of Pickup	8-26
8.5.4 Feeding Control (Cassette 1)	8-27
8.5.5 Pickup Control (Cassette 2 to 4)	8-28
8.6 Manual Feed Pickup Unit	8-29
8.6.1 Configuration	8-29
8.6.2 Feeding Operation	8-29
8.6.3 Paper Size Detection	8-30
8.6.4 Last Paper Detection	8-31
8.7 Registration Unit	8-32
8.7.1 Overview	8-32
8.8 Duplex Feeding Unit	8-33
8.8.1 Overview	8-33
8.8.2 Side Registration Position Detection	8-35
8.8.3 A4 size 5-Sheet-Circulation	8-37
8.8.4 A3 Size 3-Sheet-Circulation	8-43
8.9 Delivery	8-50
8.9.1 Overview	8-50
8.9.2 Face-up Delivery	8-50
8.9.3 Face-down Delivery	8-50
8.9.4 Curl-Removing Operation (Decurler Unit)	8-54

8.10 Parts Replacement Procedure	8-58
8.10.1 Cassette Pickup Unit	8-58
8.10.1.1 Preparation for Removing the Cassette Pickup Unit	8-58
8.10.1.2 Removing the Cassette Pickup Unit	8-58
8.10.2 Cassette Heater	8-59
8.10.2.1 Removing the Cassette Heater	8-59
8.10.3 Cassette Pickup/Feed/Separation Roller	8-60
8.10.3.1 Removing the Cassette Pickup/Feed/Separation Roller	8-60
8.10.4 Manual Feed Roller	8-60
8.10.4.1 Removing the Manual Feed Roller	8-60
8.10.5 Manual Feed Separation Roller	8-61
8.10.5.1 Preparation for Removing the Manual Separation Roller	8-61
8.10.5.2 Removing the Manual Separation Roller	8-61
8.10.6 Horizontal Registration Assembly	8-61
8.10.6.1 Preparation for Removing the Horizontal Registration	8-61
8.10.6.2 Removing the Horizontal Registration	8-61
8.10.7 Pre-Fixing Feeding Unit	8-62
8.10.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Pre-Fixing/Feeding Unit	8-62
8.10.7.2 Removing the Pre-Fixing/Feeding Unit	8-62
8.10.7.3 Removing the Pre-Fixing/Feeding Unit	8-63
8.10.8 Fixing/Feeder Unit	8-63
8.10.8.1 Preparation for Pulling/Removing the Fixing/Feeding Unit	8-63
8.10.8.2 Pulling/Removing the Fixing/Feeding Unit	8-63
8.10.9 Buffer Decurler	8-65
8.10.9.1 Removing the Decurler	8-65
8.10.10 Decurler Adjustment Roller (Upper)	8-66
8.10.10.1 Preparation for Removing the Decurler Sponge Roller (upper)	8-66
8.10.10.2 Removing the Decurler Sponge Roller (upper)	8-66
8.10.11 Decurler Adjustment Roller (Lower)	8-67
8.10.11.1 Preparation for Removing the Decurler Sponge Roller (lower)	8-67
8.10.11.2 Removing the Decurler Sponge Roller (lower)	8-67

Chapter9 Fixing System

9.1 Construction	9-1
9.1.1 Specifications/Control/Function	9-1
9.1.2 Major Components (Section)	9-2
9.1.3 Major Components (Thermistor / Thermal switch)	9-3
9.1.4 Major Components (Sensor/Solenoid)	9-4
9.1.5 Control System Configuration	9-5
9.1.6 Fixing Roller/Belt Drive Control	9-8
9.2 Basic Sequence	9-10
9.2.1 At Power-On	9-10
9.2.2 Print (Constant Speed)	9-11
9.2.3 Print (1/3-Speed)	9-12
9.3 Various Control Mechanisms	9-13
9.3.1 Controlling the Fixing Roller Temperature	9-13
9.3.1.1 Down Sequence	9-13
9.3.1.2 Power Save Mode	9-14
9.3.2 Detecting the Passage of Paper	9-14
9.3.2.1 Detection for Paper Wrapping	9-14
9.3.3 External Heat Roller Drive Control	9-17
9.3.3.1 Detached/Attached Mechanism of the External Heat Roller	9-17
9.3.4 Belting inclined Control	9-19
9.3.4.1 Control for adjusting Fixing Belt Displacement	9-19
9.4 Belt Pressurizing Mechanism	9-22
9.4.1 Locking Mechanism of the Fixing Belt	9-22
9.5 Fixing Cleaning Web Mechanisms	9-24
9.5.1 Control of the Fixing Cleaning Web Drive	9-24
9.5.2 Control of the Fixing Cleaning Web Length Detection	9-25
9.5.3 Detached/Attached Mechanism of the Cleaning Web (Web Roller)	9-26
9.5.4 Refresh Roller Attach/Detach Mechanism	9-28
9.6 Protective Functions	9-29
9.6.1 Protective Circuit	9-29
9.6.2 Related Error Code	9-31
9.7 Parts Replacement Procedure	9-34
9.7.1 Fixing Drive Unit	9-34
9.7.1.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Drive Second Gear	9-34
9.7.1.2 Removing the Fixing Drive Second Gear	9-34
9.7.2 Fixing Unit	9-35
9.7.2.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Assembly Unit	9-35
9.7.2.2 Removing the Fixing Assembly Unit	9-35
9.7.2.3 Removing the Fixing Assembly Unit	9-36
9.7.3 Fixing Belt Unit	9-38
9.7.3.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Belt Unit	9-38
9.7.3.2 Removing the Fixing Belt Unit	9-38
9.7.3.3 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Separation Roller Ball Bearing	9-40
9.7.3.4 Removing the Fixing Separation Roller Ball Bearing	9-40
9.7.4 Fixing Roller	9-40
9.7.4.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Roller	9-40
9.7.4.2 Removing the Fixing Roller	9-40
9.7.4.3 After Replacing the Fixing Roller	9-40
9.7.5 Fixing Belt	9-42
9.7.5.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Belt	9-42
9.7.5.2 Removing the Fixing Belt	9-42
9.7.5.3 After Replacing the Fixing Belt	9-43

9.7.6 External Heat Roller	9-44
9.7.6.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Roller.....	9-44
9.7.6.2 Removing the External Heat Roller.....	9-44
9.7.6.3 When Replacing the External Heat Roller.....	9-44
9.7.7 Oil Applying Roller	9-44
9.7.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Oil Coating Roller.....	9-44
9.7.7.2 Removing the Oil Coating Roller.....	9-44
9.7.8 External Heat Cleaning Roller.....	9-44
9.7.8.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Cleaning Roller.....	9-44
9.7.8.2 Removing the External Heat Cleaning Roller.....	9-44
9.7.9 Fixing Web Roller.....	9-45
9.7.9.1 Preparation for Removing the Web Roller.....	9-45
9.7.9.2 Removing the Web Roller.....	9-45
9.7.9.3 Removing the Web Roller.....	9-46
9.7.10 Refresh Roller.....	9-46
9.7.10.1 Preparation for Removing the Refresh Roller.....	9-46
9.7.10.2 Removing the Refresh Roller.....	9-46
9.7.10.3 Removing the Refresh Roller.....	9-48
9.7.11 Steering Roller.....	9-49
9.7.11.1 Preparation for Removing the Steering Roller.....	9-49
9.7.11.2 Removing the Steering Roller.....	9-49
9.7.12 Pressure Pad.....	9-49
9.7.12.1 Preparation for Removing the Pressure Pad.....	9-49
9.7.12.2 Removing the Pressure Pad.....	9-49
9.7.13 Pressure Pad Cover.....	9-49
9.7.13.1 Preparation for Removing the Pressure Pad Cover.....	9-49
9.7.13.2 Removing the Pressure Pad Cover.....	9-49
9.7.13.3 After Replacing the Pressure Pad Cover.....	9-50
9.7.14 Fixing Main Thermistor.....	9-50
9.7.14.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Main Thermistor.....	9-50
9.7.14.2 Removing the Fixing Main Thermistor.....	9-50
9.7.15 Fixing Sub Thermistor.....	9-50
9.7.15.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Sub Thermistor.....	9-50
9.7.15.2 Removing the Fixing Sub Thermistor.....	9-50
9.7.16 Outside Heating Main Thermistor.....	9-51
9.7.16.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Main Thermistor.....	9-51
9.7.16.2 Removing the External Heat Main Thermistor.....	9-51
9.7.17 Outside Heating Sub Thermistor.....	9-51
9.7.17.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Sub Thermistor.....	9-51
9.7.17.2 Removing the External Heat Sub Thermistor.....	9-51
9.7.18 Inlet Thermistor.....	9-52
9.7.18.1 Preparation for Removing the Inlet Main Thermistor/Sub Thermistor.....	9-52
9.7.18.2 Removing the Inlet Main Thermistor/Sub Thermistor.....	9-52
9.7.19 Fixing Thermal Switch.....	9-52
9.7.19.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Thermal Switch.....	9-52
9.7.19.2 Removing the Fixing Thermal Switch.....	9-52
9.7.20 Thermal Switch.....	9-53
9.7.20.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Thermal Switch.....	9-53
9.7.20.2 Removing the External Heat Thermal Switch.....	9-53
9.7.21 Fixing Belt Thermal Switch.....	9-53
9.7.21.1 Preparation for Removing the Belt Thermal Switch.....	9-53
9.7.21.2 Removing the Belt Thermal Switch.....	9-53
9.7.22 Fixing Main Heater/Fixing Sub Heater.....	9-54
9.7.22.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Main Heater/the Fixing Sub Heater.....	9-54
9.7.22.2 Removing the Fixing Main Heater/the Fixing Sub Heater.....	9-54
9.7.23 Inlet Heater.....	9-55
9.7.23.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Belt Inlet Heater.....	9-55
9.7.23.2 Removing the Fixing Belt Inlet Heater.....	9-55
9.7.24 Fixing Locking Heater.....	9-56
9.7.24.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heater.....	9-56

9.7.24.2 Removing the External Heater	9-56
9.7.25 Fixing Web.....	9-57
9.7.25.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web.....	9-57
9.7.25.2 Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web.....	9-57
9.7.25.3 Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web.....	9-58
9.7.25.4 After Replacing the Fixing Cleaning Web.....	9-59
9.7.26 Insulating Bush	9-59
9.7.26.1 Preparation for Removing the Insulating Bush.....	9-59
9.7.26.2 Removing the Insulating Bush.....	9-59
9.7.26.3 After Replacing the Insulating Bush.....	9-59
9.7.27 Outside Heat Insulating Bush	9-59
9.7.27.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Insulating Bush.....	9-59
9.7.27.2 Removing the External Heat Insulating Bush.....	9-59
9.7.27.3 When Replacing the External Heat Insulating Bush.....	9-59
9.7.28 Lower Separation Claw.....	9-60
9.7.28.1 Preparation for Removing the Lower Separation Plate.....	9-60
9.7.28.2 Removing the Lower Separation Plate.....	9-60
9.7.29 Delivery Upper Separation Plate	9-61
9.7.29.1 Preparation for Removing the Upper Separation Plate.....	9-61
9.7.29.2 Detaching the Upper Separation Plate	9-61

Chapter 10 Externals and Controls

10.1 Control Panel.....	10-1
10.1.1 Overview.....	10-1
10.1.2 LCD Function.....	10-1
10.1.3 Contrast Adjusting Function.....	10-1
10.1.4 Function of Control Panel CPU.....	10-1
10.2 Counters.....	10-1
10.2.1 Overview.....	10-1
10.2.2 Count increment timing.....	10-3
10.3 Fans.....	10-3
10.3.1 Fan.....	10-3
10.3.2 Sequence of Fan Operation.....	10-5
10.4 Power Supply.....	10-6
10.4.1 Power Supply.....	10-6
10.4.1.1 Overview of Power Supply.....	10-6
10.4.2 Protection Function.....	10-8
10.4.2.1 Protective Functions.....	10-8
10.4.3 Backup Battery.....	10-8
10.4.3.1 Backup Battery.....	10-8
10.4.4 Energy-Saving Function.....	10-8
10.4.4.1 Overview.....	10-8
10.4.4.2 SNMP setup.....	10-10
10.5 Parts Replacement Procedure.....	10-11
10.5.1 External Covers.....	10-11
10.5.1.1 Front Cover.....	10-11
10.5.1.1.1 Front Cover Opening.....	10-11
10.5.1.2 Upper Right Cover.....	10-11
10.5.1.2.1 Removing the Right Upper Cover.....	10-11
10.5.1.3 Right Lower Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.3.1 Preparation for Removing the Right Lower Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.3.2 Removing the Right Lower Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.4 Right Rear Upper Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.4.1 Removing the Right Rear Upper Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.5 Right Rear Lower Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.5.1 Removing the Right Rear Lower Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.6 Upper Left Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.6.1 Preparation for Removing the Left Upper Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.6.2 Removing the Left Upper Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.7 Left Lower Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.7.1 Removing the Left Lower Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.8 Left Middle Cover.....	10-13
10.5.1.8.1 Preparation for Removing the Left Middle Cover.....	10-13
10.5.1.8.2 Removing the Left Middle Cover.....	10-13
10.5.1.9 Left Rear Cover (Upper).....	10-13
10.5.1.9.1 Removing the Left Rear Upper Cover.....	10-13
10.5.1.10 Left Rear Cover (Lower).....	10-14
10.5.1.10.1 Removing the Left Rear Lower Cover.....	10-14
10.5.1.11 Rear Upper Cover.....	10-14
10.5.1.11.1 Removing the Rear Upper Cover.....	10-14
10.5.1.12 Rear Lower Cover.....	10-14
10.5.1.12.1 Removing the Rear Lower Cover.....	10-14
10.5.1.13 Toner Replacement Cover.....	10-15
10.5.1.13.1 Toner Replacement Cover Opening.....	10-15
10.5.1.14 Process Unit Cover.....	10-15

10.5.1.14.1 Preparation for Removing the Process Unit Cover.....	10-15
10.5.1.14.2 Removing the Process Unit Cover.....	10-15
10.5.2 Hopper Drive Unit	10-15
10.5.2.1 Preparation for Pulling Up/Removing the Hopper Unit	10-15
10.5.2.2 Pulling the Hopper Unit Up.....	10-15
10.5.2.3 Pulling the Hopper Unit Up.....	10-17
10.5.2.4 Removing the Hopper Unit.....	10-18
10.5.2.5 Removing the Hopper Unit.....	10-20
10.5.3 DC Power Supply Unit	10-22
10.5.3.1 Preparation for Removing the Power Supply Assembly	10-22
10.5.3.2 Removing the Power Supply Assembly	10-22
10.5.4 Sub DC Power Supply	10-22
10.5.4.1 Preparation for Removing the Sub DC Power Supply	10-22
10.5.4.2 Removing the Sub DC Power Supply.....	10-22
10.5.5 Control Panel	10-23
10.5.5.1 Removing the Control Panel.....	10-23
10.5.6 DC Controller PCB	10-25
10.5.6.1 Preparation for Removing the DC Controller PCB	10-25
10.5.6.2 Removing the DC Controller PCB	10-25
10.5.6.3 After Replacing the DC controller PCB	10-26
10.5.7 Leakage Breaker	10-26
10.5.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Leakage Breaker.....	10-26
10.5.7.2 Removing the Leakage Breaker.....	10-26
10.5.8 DC/DC Converter PCB.....	10-27
10.5.8.1 Preparation for Removing RD-DC-DC PCB.....	10-27
10.5.8.2 Removing the RD-DC-DC PCB.....	10-27
10.5.9 High-Voltage Box Unit.....	10-27
10.5.9.1 Preparation for Removing the High-Voltage Box Unit.....	10-27
10.5.9.2 Removing the High-Voltage Box Unit.....	10-27
10.5.9.3 Removing the High-Voltage Box Unit.....	10-28
10.5.10 HV1 PCB	10-29
10.5.10.1 Preparation for Removing the HV1 PCB Unit	10-29
10.5.10.2 Removing the HV1 PCB Unit	10-29
10.5.11 HV3 PCB	10-30
10.5.11.1 Preparation for Removing the HV3 PCB	10-30
10.5.11.2 Removing the HV3 PCB.....	10-30
10.5.12 HV5 PCB	10-30
10.5.12.1 Preparation for Removing the HV5 PCB	10-30
10.5.12.2 Removing the HV5 PCB.....	10-30
10.5.13 HV8 PCB	10-31
10.5.13.1 Preparation for Removing the HV8 PCB	10-31
10.5.13.2 Removing the HV8 PCB.....	10-31
10.5.14 Fixing Driver PCB	10-31
10.5.14.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Driver PCB	10-31
10.5.14.2 Removing the Fixing Driver PCB	10-31
10.5.15 Feeding Driver PCB.....	10-32
10.5.15.1 Preparation for Removing the Feeding Driver PCB.....	10-32
10.5.15.2 Removing the Feeding Driver PCB.....	10-32
10.5.16 AC Driver PCB.....	10-33
10.5.16.1 Preparation for Removing the AC Driver PCB	10-33
10.5.16.2 Removing the AC Driver PCB	10-33
10.5.17 Pickup Driver PCB	10-33
10.5.17.1 Preparation for Removing the Pick-Up Driver PCB	10-33
10.5.17.2 Removing the Pick-Up Driver PCB.....	10-33
10.5.18 Decurler Driver PCB.....	10-34
10.5.18.1 Removing the Decurler Driver PCB.....	10-34
10.5.19 Side Driver PCB	10-34
10.5.19.1 Preparation for Removing the Side Driver PCB.....	10-34
10.5.19.2 Removing the Side Driver PCB.....	10-34
10.5.20 Backside Driver Cover.....	10-35

10.5.20.1 Preparation for Removing the Backside Driver PCB	10-35
10.5.20.2 Removing the Backside Driver PCB.....	10-35
10.5.21 Primary Suction Fan	10-35
10.5.21.1 Removing the Air Filter	10-35
10.5.22 Ozone Filter (Right).....	10-36
10.5.22.1 Removing the Ozone Filter (Right).....	10-36
10.5.23 Ozone Filter (Left)	10-36
10.5.23.1 Preparation for Removing the Ozone Filter (Left).....	10-36
10.5.23.2 Removing the Ozone Filter (Left).....	10-36
10.5.24 Ozone Filter (Upper Left)	10-36
10.5.24.1 Preparation for Removing the Ozone Filter (Left Upper).....	10-36
10.5.24.2 Removing the Ozone Filter (Left Upper).....	10-36
10.5.25 Ozone Filter (Lower Left).....	10-37
10.5.25.1 Removing the Ozone Filter (Left Lower)	10-37
10.5.26 Ozone Filter (Rear)	10-37
10.5.26.1 Removing the Ozone Filter (Rear).....	10-37
10.5.27 Ozone Filter (Lower Rear).....	10-37
10.5.27.1 Removing the Ozone Filter (Rear Lower)	10-37
10.5.28 Toner Filter (Right).....	10-38
10.5.28.1 Removing the Toner Filter (Right)	10-38
10.5.29 Toner Filter (Left)	10-38
10.5.29.1 Preparation for Removing the Toner Filter (Left).....	10-38
10.5.29.2 Removing the Toner Filter (Left).....	10-38
10.5.30 Toner Filter (Rear)	10-39
10.5.30.1 Removing the Toner Filter (Rear).....	10-39

Chapter11 MEAP

11.1 MEAP.....	11-1
11.1.1 Changes.....	11-1
11.1.2 Checking the Operating Environment.....	11-1
11.1.3 Setting Up the Network.....	11-4
11.1.4 Login to SMS.....	11-6
11.1.5 Setting the method to login to SMS.....	11-7
11.1.6 Checking Application List.....	11-11
11.1.7 Starting and Stopping a MEAP Application.....	11-12
11.1.8 Checking the Platform Information.....	11-13
11.1.9 MEAP Specifications.....	11-14
11.1.10 MFID.....	11-16
11.1.11 Checking the System Information of a MEAP Application with SMS.....	11-18
11.1.12 Printing the System Information of a MEAP Application.....	11-19
11.1.13 Reference (Application System Information).....	11-20
11.1.14 Installing an Application.....	11-21
11.1.15 MEAP Enterprise Service Manager.....	11-23
11.1.16 Adding a License File.....	11-24
11.1.17 Disabling a License File (suspending a license).....	11-26
11.1.18 Downloading/Removing an Invalidated License File.....	11-27
11.1.19 Reusable license.....	11-29
11.1.20 License for forwarding.....	11-29
11.1.21 Uninstalling an Application.....	11-32
11.1.22 Login Service.....	11-33
11.1.23 Changing Login Services.....	11-38
11.1.24 Initializing the Password.....	11-39
11.1.25 Creating a Backup for MEAP Application Area, Formatting the Hard Disk, Restoring the MEAP Application Area with the Backup, Using the SST (Service Support Tool).....	11-39
11.1.26 Replacing the Hard Disk Drive.....	11-40
11.1.27 MEAP Safe Mode.....	11-40
11.1.28 Setting HTTP port for MEAP application (level 2).....	11-41
11.1.29 USB keyboard support (iR3245 series only).....	11-44
11.1.30 USB memory related functions(iR3245 series only).....	11-44
11.1.31 Reference material.....	11-46
11.1.32 Option for exclusive individual measure.....	11-48

Chapter 12 Maintenance and Inspection

12.1 Periodically Replaced Parts	12-1
12.1.1 Overview	12-1
12.1.2 Reader Unit	12-1
12.1.3 Printer Unit.....	12-1
12.2 Durables and Consumables	12-4
12.2.1 Overview	12-4
12.2.2 Reader Unit	12-4
12.2.3 Printer Unit.....	12-4
12.3 Scheduled Servicing Basic Procedure.....	12-8
12.3.1 General Procedure for Scheduled Servicing	12-8
12.3.2 Scheduled Servicing List Reader Unit.....	12-8
12.3.3 Scheduled Servicing List Printer Unit	12-9
12.4 Cleaning	12-14
12.4.1 Cleaning for secondary transfer rear guide	12-14
12.4.2 Cleaning of registration roller, registration guide and transparency sensor	12-15
12.4.3 Cleaning for buffer decurler.....	12-16

Chapter 13 Standards and Adjustments

13.1 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure	13-1
13.1.1 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure 1	13-1
13.1.2 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure 2	13-1
13.1.3 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure 3	13-2
13.1.4 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure 4	13-3
13.2 Scanning System	13-5
13.2.1 After Replacing the CCD Unit	13-5
13.2.2 After Replacing the Copyboard Glass	13-5
13.2.3 After Replacing the Reader Control PCB and Clearing the RAM	13-5
13.3 Image Formation System	13-5
13.3.1 After Replacing the Primary Charging Wire	13-5
13.3.2 After Replacing the Primary Charging Assembly	13-5
13.3.3 Replacing the Potential Sensor	13-6
13.3.4 After Replacing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly	13-7
13.3.5 After Replacing the Waste Toner Box	13-7
13.3.6 After Replacing the Secondary Transfer Roller Waste Toner Case	13-7
13.3.7 After Replacing the Photosensitive Drum	13-7
13.3.8 Replacing the Waste Toner Sensor	13-7
13.3.9 After Replacing the ATR Sensor	13-7
13.3.10 After Replacing the Patch Image Reading Sensor	13-7
13.4 Fixing System	13-7
13.4.1 Checking the Nip Width	13-7
13.4.2 After Replacing the Fixing Roller	13-8
13.4.3 After Replacing the Fixing Belt	13-8
13.4.4 After Replacing the Fixing Cleaning Belt	13-8
13.4.5 After Replacing the Fixing Belt / Pressure Pad Cover	13-8
13.4.6 When replacing pressure belt	13-8
13.4.7 When Replacing Pressure Belt Unit-Related Durable Parts	13-9
13.5 Electrical Components	13-10
13.5.1 Replacing the DC controller PCB	13-10
13.5.2 After Replacing the Main Control PCB (main)	13-10
13.5.3 After Replacing the SRAM PCB	13-10
13.5.4 After Replacing the HDD	13-11
13.5.5 Replacing the HV2, HV4, HV6-1 and HV6-2	13-11
13.5.6 Inputting the Rank Value at Replacing the Paper Thickness Sensor	13-11
13.6 Pickup/Feeding System	13-11
13.6.1 Vertical Registration Adjustment at Cassette Pickup	13-11
13.6.2 Vertical Registration Adjustment at Manual Pickup	13-11
13.6.3 Registering Paper Width Standard Value at Manual Feeder Tray	13-12

Chapter 14 Correcting Faulty Images

14.1 Making Initial Checks	14-1
14.1.1 Installation Environment	14-1
14.1.2 Checking of Paper	14-1
14.1.3 Checking of Paper Setting	14-1
14.1.4 Checking of the Durable Parts	14-1
14.1.5 Checking of the Periodically Replaced Parts	14-1
14.1.6 Checking of Each Unit/Checking Item of Each Function System	14-1
14.1.7 Others	14-2
14.2 Test Print	14-2
14.2.1 Overview	14-2
14.2.2 Test Print TYPE	14-2
14.2.3 Selecting the Test Print TYPE	14-3
14.2.4 16-Gradation (TYPE=4)	14-3
14.2.5 Full Area Half Tone (TYPE=5)	14-3
14.2.6 Grid (TYPE=6)	14-4
14.2.7 MCYBk Horizontal Line (TYPE=10)	14-4
14.2.8 64-Gradation (TYPE=12)	14-5
14.2.9 Full Color 16-gradation (TYPE=14)	14-5
14.3 Troubleshooting	14-6
14.3.1 Image Faults	14-6
14.3.1.1 Light Image / Weak Density	14-6
14.3.1.1.1 When printing on CLC extra heavy paper (209g), light image occurs at solid black areas of output image	14-6
14.3.1.1.2 Uneven density/light image: Developing high-voltage cable has poor contact	14-6
14.3.1.2 Uneven Density	14-7
14.3.1.2.1 When copying thin gray lines in Text/Printed Img. mode, moire-like image appears	14-7
14.3.1.2.2 Uneven density (uneven gross) occurs when copying/printing high-density image with thick coated paper in use	14-7
14.3.1.2.3 Uneven density appears at 4mm intervals in main scanning direction	14-7
14.3.1.3 Image Displacement/Out of Focus	14-8
14.3.1.3.1 Smearred image/hue variation (variation of drum potential) occurs in humidity environment	14-8
14.3.1.3.2 Yellow displaced at trail edge of image upon installation: Screw on ITB connecting shaft is loosened	14-8
14.3.1.3.3 When duplex printing, position of image on both 1st and 2nd sides is displaced in sub scanning direction	14-9
14.3.1.4 Partially Blank/Streaked	14-9
14.3.1.4.1 Void occurs in main scanning direction on halftone area/oval-shaped patterns/E060-0000: J423 connector (11-pin CT connector) on main body side of pre-conditioning unit has poor contact	14-9
14.3.1.4.2 Void occurs in sub scanning direction upon installation: ATR shutter solenoid cable comes into contact with developing cylinder. 14-10	
14.3.1.4.3 Measure against scratches made on Fixing Roller in circumferential direction: Lines appear in sub scanning direction	14-11
14.3.1.4.4 Lines (smearred image): Mylar comes off post duct in P-kit assembly	14-12
14.3.1.4.5 In low temperature environment, void occurs at border between halftone area and solid image area	14-13
14.3.1.4.6 Fingerprint	14-13
14.3.1.5 Smudged/Streaked	14-14
14.3.1.5.1 Yellow vertical stripes on copy images/blank image on PG test chart printouts: PF-A board is faulty	14-14
14.3.1.5.2 Soiled back: Transfer roller B3 in Secondary transfer mount assembly is soiled	14-14
14.3.1.5.3 Soiled back (patch mark) appears: HV8 PCB is faulty	14-14
14.3.1.5.4 Soiled back: A failure in cleaning the secondary transfer roller is caused	14-15
14.3.1.5.5 Dark spots appear on output image	14-15
14.3.1.5.6 The poor picture by the attachment mistake of seal support plate (front, rear)	14-15
14.3.1.6 Ghost / Memory	14-17
14.3.1.6.1 Fixing Gloss Ghost	14-17
14.3.1.7 Faulty Color Reproduction	14-18
14.3.1.7.1 At scanner reading upon installation, faulty image occurs: S-B Board PCB has poor contact	14-18
14.3.1.7.2 Hue variation occurs: OFST value (target value) for PASCAL is changed	14-19
14.3.1.7.3 Faulty gradation occurs with machine equipped with DADF-R1 after auto gradation adjustment (full adjustment)	14-19

14.3.1.7.4 Hue variation occurs in continuous copy job performed right after replacement of photosensitive drum.....	14-20
14.3.1.7.5 Faulty hue (yellowish) image is output when copying pinkish original.....	14-20
14.3.1.7.6 Faulty hue image is output after executing quick auto gradation adjustment (printer PASCAL).....	14-20
14.3.1.7.7 Gradation changes after shading correction.....	14-21
14.3.2 Faulty Feeding.....	14-21
14.3.2.1 Skew Feed.....	14-21
14.3.2.1.1 Misalignment of output paper/jam occurs after replacement of swing guide assembly (Finisher-AA1/AA2).....	14-21
14.3.2.1.2 Paper misalignment occurs when stapling: Return Guide Sheet of Finisher-AA1/AA2 has ridden on Operation Tray Bin.....	14-22
14.3.2.1.3 In booklet printing, paper misalignment/unstapled sheet problem occurs with 2nd page and later: Stack delivery rollers of Finisher-AA1/AA2 lack pressure.....	14-23
14.3.2.1.4 Procedure to Improve the Accuracy of Skew Adjustment.....	14-23
14.3.2.2 Wrinkle.....	14-25
14.3.2.2.1 Wrinkles appear on output paper: Pad cover wears out.....	14-25
14.3.2.3 Ripple/Curl.....	14-25
14.3.2.3.1 Irregular size heavy paper curls up.....	14-25
14.3.3 Malfunction.....	14-26
14.3.3.1 No Power.....	14-26
14.3.3.1.1 No power/E805-0014: Cable of DC Controller PCB causes wire-pinching.....	14-26
14.3.3.2 Control Panel-Related.....	14-26
14.3.3.2.1 When standard language is changed from Japanese to English, button names under Scan Settings are gabled in Send screen.....	14-26
14.3.3.2.2 On initial copy screen, "Black" cannot be set as standard setting for Auto-Color Select mode: Forced Secure Watermark Mode is set to ON.....	14-27
14.3.3.3 Malfunction/Faulty Detection.....	14-27
14.3.3.3.1 Message "Adjusting gradation. Please wait a moment." persists on machine with DC Controller software Ver. 7.08.....	14-27
14.3.3.3.2 Machine with image PRESS Service-T1 locks when progress bar runs one-third of whole length after power-on upon installation 14-27	27
14.3.3.3.3 When Saddle Finisher-AA2 saddle-stitches 12x18 size papers, paper folding position does not align with paper stapling position . 14-28	28
14.3.3.3.4 During copying, paper jam suddenly occurs and E748-4901 follows power-off/on operation.....	14-28
14.3.3.3.5 Waste Toner Full Error (E013-0001) Displayed After Toner is Emptied from the Waste Toner Bottle.....	14-28
14.3.3.3.6 ATR Error (E020-XXXX) Display due to Dirt on ATR Sensor Window.....	14-29
14.3.3.3.7 Power Supply Voltage Connector Error (E009-0000) Indication at Replacement of the DC Controller PCB.....	14-29
14.3.3.3.8 ATR Error (E020-XXXX) Display at the time of Drum Replacement.....	14-30
14.3.3.4 User Warning Message.....	14-30
14.3.3.4.1 When connecting RUI (using same PC and IP address) upon replacement of machine, message "(!) A error has occurred" is displayed in IE browser.....	14-30
14.3.3.4.2 Paper lifting place of Cassette 2 does not ascend/message "Load paper." does not disappear: Cassette 2 lifter motor (M23) malfunctions 14-30	30
14.3.3.4.3 Message "Waste toner container full. Call service representative." does not disappear: Part counter is not cleared.....	14-31
14.3.3.5 Other Defect.....	14-31
14.3.3.5.1 Paper skew/misalignment/failure to staple 1st copy set occurs at delivery unit of Finisher-AA1/AA2.....	14-31
14.3.3.5.2 Hard disc (HDD) cannot be formatted: Version of selected Format file is not suitable for HDD.....	14-31
14.3.3.6 Part Breakage/Detachment.....	14-32
14.3.3.6.1 Hopper assembly of copyboard cover-type machine does not move smoothly: 40T gear is broken.....	14-32
14.3.4 Network.....	14-32
14.3.4.1 Ping Failure.....	14-32
14.3.4.1.1 Ping Failure: When executing Ping command, message "No response from the host" appears due to WINS configuration error, 14-32	32
14.3.4.1.2 Ping Failure: When executing Ping command, message "No response from the host" appears due to Ethernet driver configuration error 14-33	33
14.3.5 Jam (Main Unit).....	14-33
14.3.5.1 010A Jam Code occurs when using B5-size paper: Paper feed roller of right door assembly lacks pressure.....	14-33
14.3.5.2 011B Jam Code occurs at delivery assembly only when using small size paper (smaller than A4/LTR): Backside Driver PCB is faulty. 14-34	34
14.3.5.3 021B Jam Code/abnormal noise/open lever is hard to shift: Longer screw is used to fix decurler.....	14-34
14.3.6 Jam (FIN).....	14-35
14.3.6.1 179F Jam Code occurs when running saddle jobs with double-face glossy (coated) heavy paper and Saddle Finisher-AA2 in use.....	14-35
14.3.6.2 179F Jam Code: J9 connector on Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB of Saddle Finisher-AA2 has poor contact.....	14-35
14.3.7 Error Code.....	14-35
14.3.7.1 E006-0002 occurs during standby: Fixing drawer connector has poor contact.....	14-35
14.3.7.2 E007/010E Jam Code/abnormal noise: Fixing upper unit mount is attached improperly.....	14-35
14.3.7.3 E014-0003: Load is applied to fixing roller drive assembly.....	14-36
14.3.7.4 E014-0003 : Due to ball bearing breakage in fixing belt drive assembly.....	14-37

14.3.7.5 E020-01A9: ATR shutter malfunctions	14-38
14.3.7.6 E021-0001 appears on machine without Power Supply Unit-S1: Connector or jumper connector is discontinued	14-38
14.3.7.7 E025-0102: J301D connector of hopper motor has poor contact	14-39
14.3.7.8 E025-0004 occurs when replacing drum.....	14-39
14.3.7.9 E025-0102: Connector of Yellow toner supply screw HP sensor (PS68) has poor contact	14-40
14.3.7.10 E061-0001/E061-0015/E061-0009: Potential Sensor PCB is faulty	14-40
14.3.7.11 E061: How to perform '0' level adjustment after replacing potential sensor PCB.....	14-40
14.3.7.12 E077-0001/E077-0101/E077-1001: Gear in Sec. Transfer Cam Drive Assembly is broken	14-40
14.3.7.13 E198-1000: J3502 connector on Color Sensor Driver PCB has poor contact	14-41
14.3.7.14 E202-0001/E202-0002/ Document exposure lamp's failure to light up occurs when mounting DADF-R1	14-41
14.3.7.15 E225-0001 occurs with machine in which R-CON software Ver. 1.27 is installed.....	14-41
14.3.7.16 E604-1536 is displayed when connecting Secure Watermark-A1: This machine does not have sufficient image memory	14-41
14.3.7.17 E677-0080: Communication error occurs between this machine and imagePRESS Server- Q1	14-41
14.3.7.18 E733-0001 sometimes occurs during printing	14-42
14.3.7.19 E747-3901 is indicated depending on timing of copy operation: SDRAM has poor contact.....	14-42
14.3.7.20 E747-0219 occurs in a certain mode (i.e., when selecting Image Repeat > Area Designation (or Flaming) > Copy Ratio)	14-42
14.3.7.21 E748-4311 is indicated after installing LIPS LX Printer & Scanner Kit-P1: RB-A board is mounted incorrectly (Japanese field)	14-42
14.3.7.22 E000/E004: Drawer connector pin of Fixing Heater Cable Unit moves back (JP Model).....	14-43
14.3.7.23 E820-0003 is indicated: Primary corona assembly is mounted incorrectly	14-45
14.3.7.24 E842-0009 occurs at last rotation performed during a continuous black-and-white job	14-45
14.3.8 Specifications-Related FAQ	14-46
14.3.8.1 FAQ on Main Unit Specifications.....	14-46
14.3.8.1.1 Auto paper select function does not work after setting thin paper as type of paper for cassette	14-46
14.3.8.1.2 Target fixing control temperature for energy saver mode and low power mode.....	14-46
14.3.8.1.3 Face-up delivery is not possible when printing.....	14-46
14.3.8.1.4 For machine with system software Ver. 22.04, toner volume setting cannot be switched in service mode.....	14-46
14.3.8.1.5 How to check value of sensor (PS63) on the waste toner box	14-47
14.3.8.2 FAQ on LIPS Specifications	14-47
14.3.8.2.1 How to transfer License Option (LMS)	14-47
14.4 Outline of Electrical Components	14-47
14.4.1 Clutch/Solenoid.....	14-47
14.4.1.1 List of clutch / solenoid.....	14-47
14.4.1.2 List of clutch / solenoid.....	14-48
14.4.1.3 List of Clutch / Solenoid	14-48
14.4.2 Motor.....	14-49
14.4.2.1 List of motor	14-49
14.4.2.2 List of motor	14-53
14.4.2.3 List of Motor	14-54
14.4.3 Fan.....	14-57
14.4.3.1 List of fan	14-57
14.4.3.2 List of Fan	14-60
14.4.4 Sensor	14-62
14.4.4.1 List of sensor	14-62
14.4.4.2 List of sensor	14-68
14.4.4.3 List of Sensor	14-69
14.4.5 Switch	14-74
14.4.5.1 List of switch.....	14-74
14.4.5.2 List of switch.....	14-76
14.4.5.3 List of Switch	14-76
14.4.6 Lamps, Heaters, and Others	14-78
14.4.6.1 List of lamp / heater/ others	14-78
14.4.6.2 List of lamp / heater/ others	14-80
14.4.6.3 List of Lamp / Heater/ Others	14-81
14.4.7 PCBs	14-82
14.4.7.1 List of PCB.....	14-82
14.4.7.2 List of PCB.....	14-85
14.4.7.3 List of PCB.....	14-86
14.4.8 Connectors	14-88
14.4.8.1 List of connector	14-88
14.4.8.2 List of Connector.....	14-107

Chapter15 Self Diagnosis

15.1 Error Code Table.....	15-1
15.1.1 Error Code Table.....	15-1
15.2 Error Code Details	15-3
15.2.1 List of Error Codes.....	15-3
15.2.2 E602 (HDD/Encryption board error) detail.....	15-19
15.3 Error Codes (SEND).....	15-23
15.3.1 End Code Items.....	15-23
15.4 Jam Codes	15-24
15.4.1 Jam Code (Printer Unit).....	15-24
15.4.2 Jam Code (Finisher-Related)	15-25
15.4.3 Jam Code (ADF-Related)	15-26
15.5 Alarm Codes	15-29
15.5.1 Alarm Code.....	15-29

Chapter 16 Service Mode

16.1 Outline.....	16-1
16.1.1 Construction of Service Mode	16-1
16.1.2 Entering or selecting service modes	16-2
16.1.3 Exiting service modes	16-2
16.1.4 Back-Up	16-2
16.1.5 Initial screen.....	16-3
16.1.6 Main/intermediate Item Screen.....	16-3
16.1.7 Sub- Item Screen.....	16-4
16.2 DISPLAY (Status Display Mode).....	16-5
16.2.1 COPIER	16-5
16.2.1.1 COPIER List	16-5
16.2.1.2 COPIER List	16-19
16.2.1.3 COPIER List	16-33
16.2.2 FEEDER	16-48
16.2.2.1 FEEDER List	16-48
16.3 I/O (I/O Display Mode).....	16-48
16.3.1 Overview.....	16-48
16.3.2 <DC-CON>.....	16-49
16.3.3 <R-CON>.....	16-60
16.3.4 <FEEDER>.....	16-61
16.3.5 <SORTER>.....	16-63
16.3.6 <MN-CONT>.....	16-68
16.4 ADJUST (Adjustment Mode).....	16-71
16.4.1 COPIER	16-71
16.4.1.1 COPIER List	16-71
16.4.1.2 COPIER List	16-90
16.4.1.3 COPIER List	16-101
16.4.2 FEEDER	16-115
16.4.2.1 FEEDER List	16-115
16.4.3 SORTER	16-117
16.4.3.1 SORTER List.....	16-117
16.5 FUNCTION (Operation/Inspection Mode).....	16-117
16.5.1 COPIER	16-117
16.5.1.1 COPIER List	16-117
16.5.1.2 COPIER List	16-131
16.5.1.3 COPIER List	16-145
16.5.2 FEEDER	16-156
16.5.2.1 FEEDER List	16-156
16.6 OPTION (Machine Settings Mode).....	16-156
16.6.1 COPIER	16-156
16.6.1.1 COPIER List (BODY)	16-156
16.6.1.2 COPIER List (subheadings under USER).....	16-176
16.6.1.3 COPIER List P (BODY)	16-204
16.6.1.4 COPIER List P (subheadings under USER)	16-223
16.6.1.5 COPIER List (BODY)	16-251
16.6.1.6 COPIER List (subheadings under USER).....	16-266
16.6.2 FEEDER	16-289
16.6.2.1 FEEDER List	16-289
16.6.3 SORTER	16-290
16.6.3.1 SORTER List.....	16-290
16.6.4 BOARD.....	16-290
16.6.4.1 BOARD List.....	16-290

16.7 TEST (Test Print Mode).....	16-291
16.7.1 COPIER	16-291
16.7.1.1 COPIER List.....	16-291
16.7.1.2 COPIER List.....	16-293
16.8 COUNTER (Counter Mode)	16-295
16.8.1 COPIER	16-295
16.8.1.1 COPIER List.....	16-295
16.8.1.2 COPIER List.....	16-305
16.8.1.3 COPIER List.....	16-314

Chapter17 Upgrading

17.1 Outline.....	17-1
17.1.1 Types of System Software	17-1
17.1.2 Upgrading Overview.....	17-2
17.1.3 Outline of the Functions and Operations	17-3
17.1.4 Points to Note at Time of Downloading	17-6
17.2 Making Preparations	17-6
17.2.1 Installing the System Software (System CD -> SST).....	17-6
17.2.2 Installing the System Software (SST -> USB)	17-8
17.2.3 Making Connections (SST in use)	17-10
17.2.4 Making Connections (USB device in use).....	17-11
17.3 Formatting the HDD	17-11
17.3.1 Formatting All Partitions	17-11
17.3.2 Formatting Selected Partitions	17-12
17.3.3 Formatting the Partitions.....	17-13
17.4 Downloading System Software.....	17-14
17.4.1 Batch Downloading	17-14
17.4.1.1 Outline.....	17-14
17.4.1.2 Downloading Procedure.....	17-14
17.4.2 Downloading the System Software (Single).....	17-17
17.4.2.1 Downloading Procedure.....	17-17
17.5 Uploading and Downloading Backup Data	17-20
17.5.1 Outline.....	17-20
17.5.2 Uploading Procedure	17-20
17.5.3 Downloading Procedure.....	17-22
17.6 Version Upgrade using USB.....	17-23
17.6.1 Overview of Menus and Functions	17-23
17.6.2 Points to Note.....	17-24
17.6.3 Downloading/Writing the System Software (auto).....	17-26
17.6.4 Downloading the System Software (Confirmation execution when version is downed the same version)	17-26
17.6.5 Downloading the System Software (all overwriting)	17-27
17.6.6 Formatting the HDD	17-28
17.6.7 Other Functions.....	17-29

Chapter18 Service Tools

18.1 Service Tools.....	18-1
18.1.1 Special Tools.....	18-1
18.1.2 Solvents and Oils	18-2

Chapter 1 Introduction

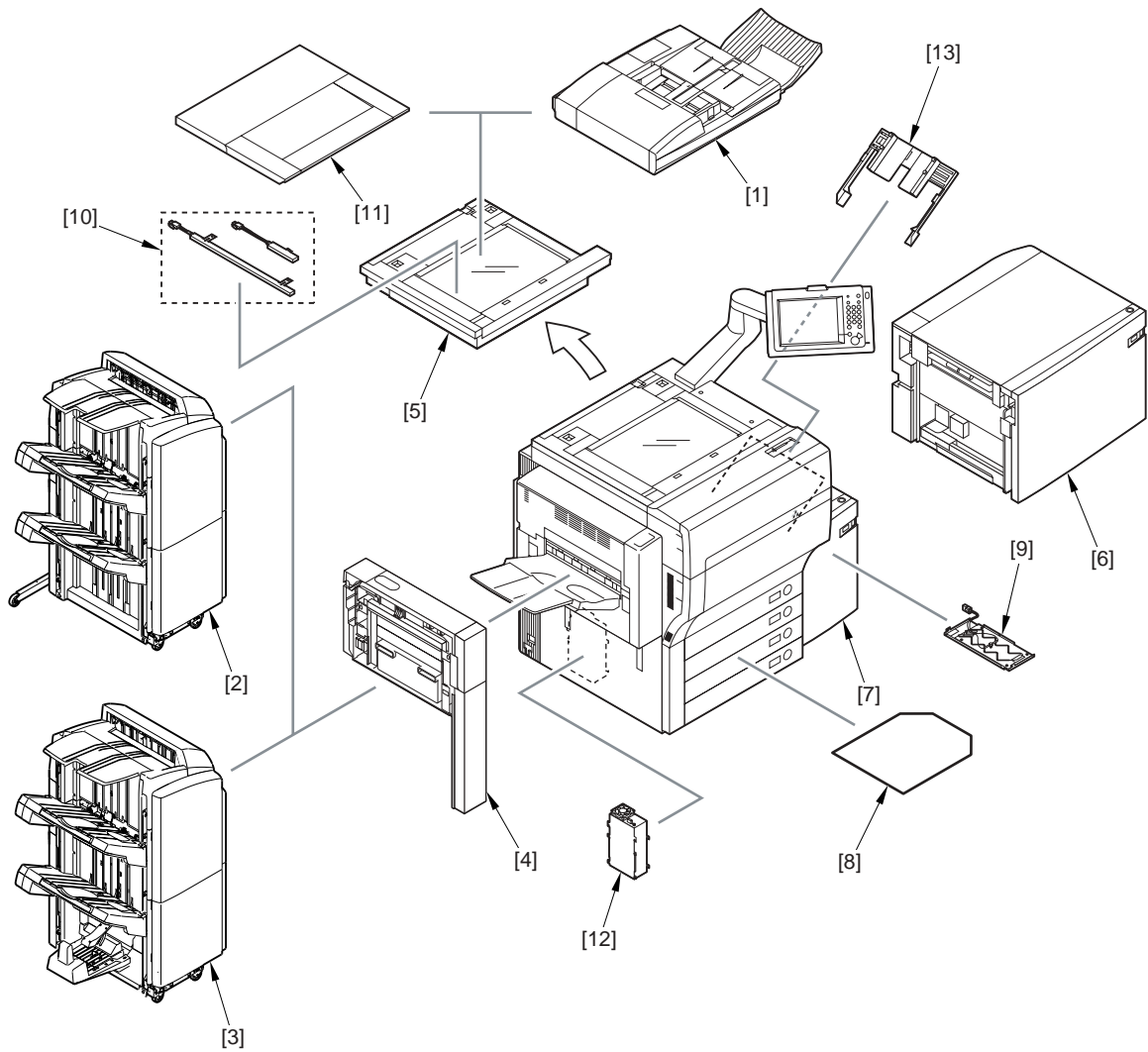
Contents

1.1 System Construction	1-1
1.1.1 System Configuration (pickup/delivery accessories).....	1-1
1.1.2 System Configuration (printing/transmission accessories).....	1-1
1.1.3 Functions of Printing/Transmission Accessories.....	1-2
1.2 Product Specifications.....	1-4
1.2.1 Names of Parts	1-4
1.2.1.1 External View.....	1-4
1.2.1.2 External View.....	1-4
1.2.1.3 Cross Section.....	1-5
1.2.1.4 Cross Section.....	1-7
1.2.2 Using the Machine	1-8
1.2.2.1 Power Switch	1-8
1.2.2.2 Points to Note When Turning Off the Main Power Switch	1-9
1.2.2.3 Control Panel.....	1-9
1.2.3 User Mode Items.....	1-10
1.2.3.1 Common Settings	1-10
1.2.3.2 Timer Settings	1-12
1.2.3.3 Adjustment/Cleaning.....	1-12
1.2.3.4 Report Settings	1-12
1.2.3.5 System Control Settings.....	1-13
1.2.3.6 Copy Settings	1-15
1.2.3.7 Communications Settings.....	1-15
1.2.3.8 Mail Box Settings.....	1-16
1.2.3.9 Address Book Settings	1-17
1.2.3.10 User Administrator Mode	1-18
1.2.3.11 Common Settings.....	1-20
1.2.3.12 Timer Settings	1-22
1.2.3.13 Adjustment/Cleaning.....	1-23
1.2.3.14 Report Settings	1-23
1.2.3.15 System Control Settings.....	1-23
1.2.3.16 Copy Settings	1-26
1.2.3.17 Communications Settings.....	1-26
1.2.3.18 Mail Box Settings.....	1-27
1.2.3.19 Address Book Settings	1-27
1.2.3.20 User Administrator Mode	1-28
1.2.4 User Maintenance	1-31
1.2.4.1 Cleaning	1-31
1.2.4.2 Inspection	1-32
1.2.4.3 Inspection	1-34
1.2.5 Safety	1-36
1.2.5.1 Safety of the Machine's Laser Mechanism.....	1-36
1.2.5.2 CDRH Regulations.....	1-36
1.2.5.3 Handling of the Laser Assembly.....	1-36
1.2.5.4 Safety of the Toner.....	1-37
1.2.5.5 Notes when handling a lithium battery	1-37
1.2.6 Product Specifications	1-37
1.2.6.1 Machine Specifications	1-37
1.2.6.2 Machine Specifications	1-38
1.2.7 Function List	1-40
1.2.7.1 Printing Speed	1-40
1.2.7.2 Printing Speed	1-41
1.2.7.3 Paper Types.....	1-42

1.1 System Construction

1.1.1 System Configuration (pickup/delivery accessories)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

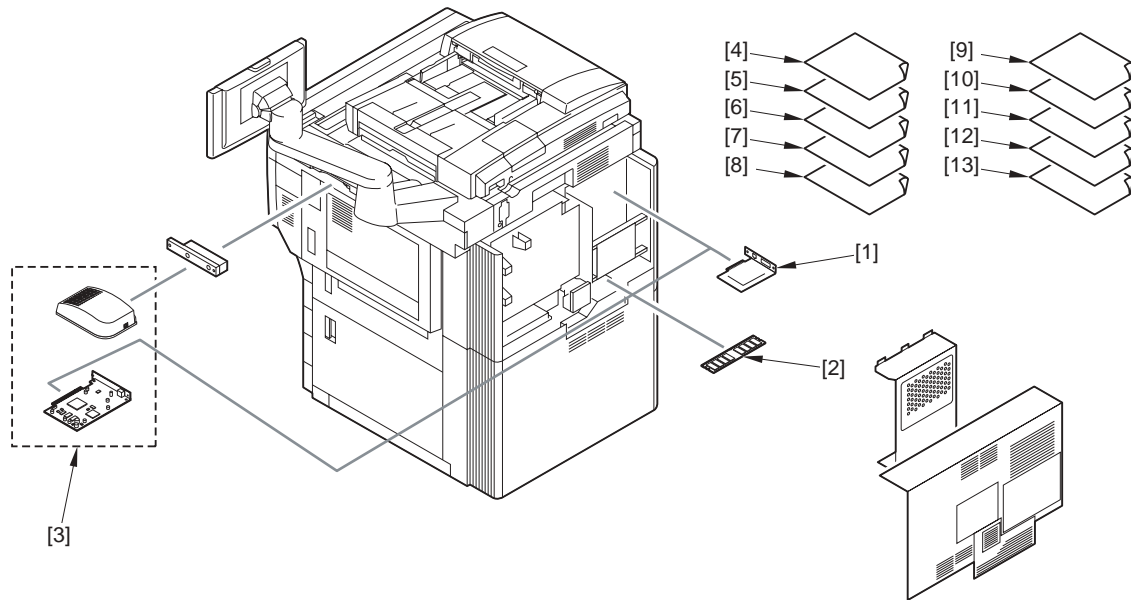


F-1-1

- [1] DADF-R1
- [2] Finisher-AA1
- [3] Saddle Finisher-AA2
- [4] Puncher Unit-L1/M1/N1/P1
- [5] Color Image Reader-H1(Overseas model only)
- [6] Side Paper Deck-AA1
- [7] Side Paper Deck-AB1
- [8] Cassette Heater Unit 27 (Overseas model only)
- [9] Cassette Heater Kit-F1
- [10] Reader Heater Kit-C1
- [11] Platen Cover Type K
- [12] Power Supply Unit-S1(This product is needed when attaching DADF-R1)
- [13] Stack Bypass Alignment Tray-B1

1.1.2 System Configuration (printing/transmission accessories)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



F-1-2

- [1] Security Expansion Board-E1
- [2] iR512 MB Expansion RAM-C1
- [3] Voice Guidance Kit-A2
- [4] SEND ExpansionKit-N1 (license)
- [5] Searchable PDF Expansion Kit-B1 (license)
- [6] Encryption PDF Expansion Kit-C1 (license)
- [7] Machine Signature PDF Expansion Kit-A1 (license)
- [8] User Signature PDF Expansion Kit-A1 (license)
- [9] Time Stamp PDF Expansion Kit-A1 (license)
- [10] Web Browser Expansion Kit-E1 (license)
- [11] Background Marking Expansion Kit-E1 (license)
- [12] Encryption Secure Print Kit-A1 (license)
- [13] IC Card Authentication Function Expansion Kit-A4 (license)

1.1.3 Functions of Printing/Transmission Accessories

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Functions of Printing/Transmission Accessories

T-1-1

Function	Accessory needed
LIPS LX printing	LIPS LX Printer & Scanner Kit-P1 iR512MB Expansion RAM-C1
LIPS printing	LIPS V Expansion Kit LIPS LX Printer & Scanner Kit-P1 iR512MB Expansion RAM-C1
LIPS/PS printing	LIPS V/PS Expansion Kit LIPS LX Printer & Scanner Kit-P1 iR512 MB Expansion RAM-C1
PS printing	PS Printing Server Unit
Transmission	SEND Expansion Kit-N1
Encryption PDF transmission	Encryption PDF Expansion Kit-C1
Searchable PDF transmission	Searchable PDF Expansion Kit-B1
Machine signature PDF transmission	Machine Signature PDF Expansion Kit-A1
Signature PDF transmission	User Signature PDF Expansion Kit-A1
Time stamp PDF transmission	Time Stamp PDF Expansion Kit-A1

Function	Accessory needed
Background marking printing	Background Marking Expansion Kit A1 iR512MB Expansion RAM-C1
Faxing (1-line)	Super G3 Fax Board-X1
Faxing (2-line)	Multi-fax Board-Y1
Security (HDD deletion + encryption)	Security Expansion Board-E1 iR Security Kit-A2
PDF/TIFF/JPEG direct printing	LIPS LX Printer & Scanner Kit-P1 LIPS V/PS Expansion Kit-G1 Direct Printing Expansion Kit-P1 iR 512MB Expansion RAM-C1
Voice guidance	Voice Guidance Kit-A2 Voice Guidance Mounting Kit-B1
Remote operation	Remote Operation Kit-A1
Web browsing	Web Browsing Expansion Kit-E1

2. Outline of Accessories

- Security Expansion Board-E1
Adds HDD encryption and complete deletion functions.
- iR 512MB Expansion RAM-C1 (Points to Note:)
Enables transmission/faxing (required).
- Voice Guidance Kit-A2
Adds voice guidance functions.
- Super G3 Fax Board-X1
Adds G3 fax 1-line functions.
- Multi-port Fax Board-Y1
Adds multi-port fax (G3 fax 2-line) functions.
- SEND Expansion Kit-N1
Adds transmission functions (requires setup on a PC).
- Encryption PDF Expansion Kit-C1
Adds encryption PDF generation functions.
- Searchable PDF Expansion Kit-B1
Adds searchable PDF generation functions.
- Encryption Secure Print Kit-A1
Adds secure print expansion functions (encryption).
- IC Card Authentication Expansion Kit-A4
Adds IC card authentication functions.
- Machine Signature PDF Expansion Kit-A1
Adds the PDF transmission function (w/ device signature).
- User Signature PDF Expansion Kit-A1
Adds PDF transmission functions (w/ user signature).
- Background Marking Kit A1
Enables copying/printing of hidden characters (e.g., "Copying Not Permitted")
- Time Stamp PDF Expansion Kit-A1
Adds PDF transmission functions (w/ time stamp).
- Web Browser Expansion Kit-E1
Adds Web browser browsing functions to the touch panel.



Cases that need iR512MB expansion RAM-C1

- 1: In the case that the PS print server unit is not connected.
In the case that any of the following options is added:

LIPS LX print function
LIPS print function
Background pattern print function
PDF/Tiff/JPEG direct print function

- 2: In the case that the PS print server unit (EFI) is connected.
In the case of adding any of the following options, iR512MB expansion RAM-C1 is necessary.

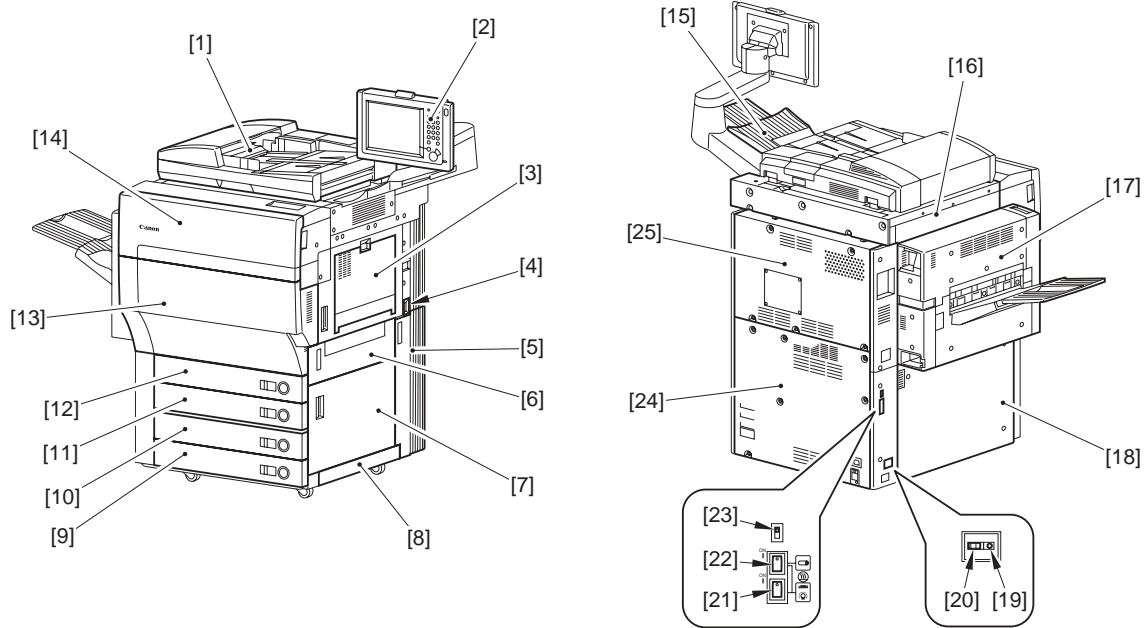
FAX function (1-line)
FAX function (2-line)
Background pattern print function
Security function (deleting HDD + encoding)
Web browser function

1.2 Product Specifications

1.2.1 Names of Parts

1.2.1.1 External View

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

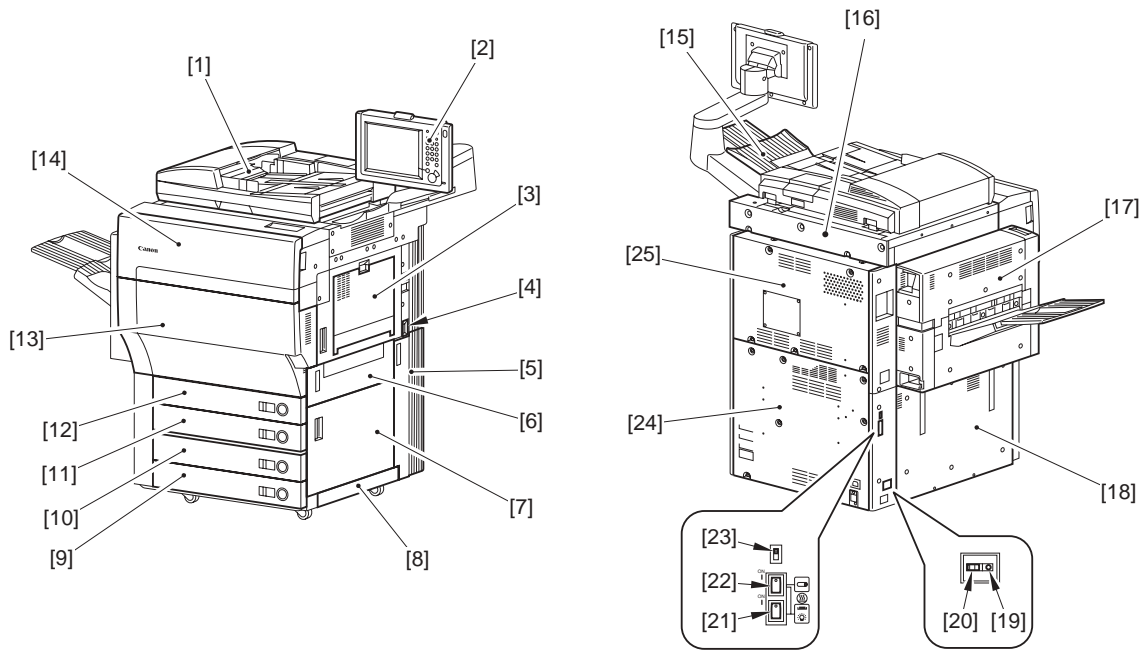


F-1-3

[1]	Feeder	[2]	Control panel
[3]	Manual feeder tray	[4]	Main power switch
[5]	Rear right lower cover	[6]	Upper right cover
[7]	Lower right cover	[8]	Lower right cover (middle)
[9]	Cassette 4	[10]	Cassette 3
[11]	Cassette 2	[12]	Cassette 1
[13]	Front cover	[14]	Toner replacement cover
[15]	Original delivery tray	[16]	Reader assembly
[17]	Decurler	[18]	Lower left cover
[19]	Test button	[20]	Leakage breaker
[21]	Cassette heater switch	[22]	environmental switch
[23]	Drum temperature switch	[24]	Lower rear cover
[25]	Upper rear cover		

1.2.1.2 External View

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

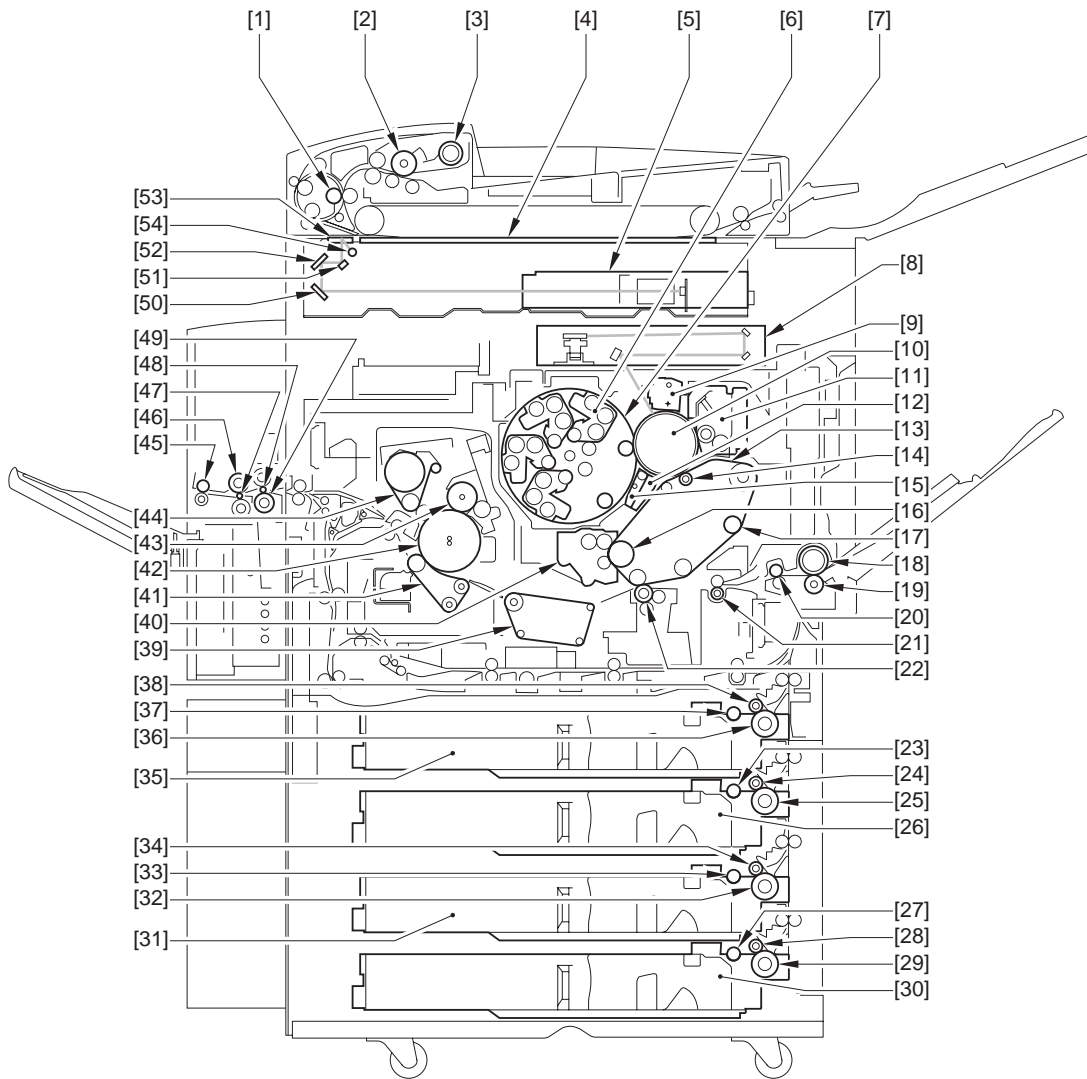


F-1-4

- | | | | |
|------|-------------------------|------|----------------------------|
| [1] | Feeder | [2] | Control panel |
| [3] | Manual feeder tray | [4] | Main power switch |
| [5] | Rear right lower cover | [6] | Upper right cover |
| [7] | Lower right cover | [8] | Lower right cover (middle) |
| [9] | Cassette 4 | [10] | Cassette 3 |
| [11] | Cassette 2 | [12] | Cassette 1 |
| [13] | Front cover | [14] | Toner replacement cover |
| [15] | Original delivery tray | [16] | Reader assembly |
| [17] | Decurler | [18] | Lower left cover |
| [19] | Test button | [20] | Leakage breaker |
| [21] | Cassette heater switch | [22] | environmental switch |
| [23] | Drum temperature switch | [24] | Lower rear cover |
| [25] | Upper rear cover | | |

1.2.1.3 Cross Section

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1



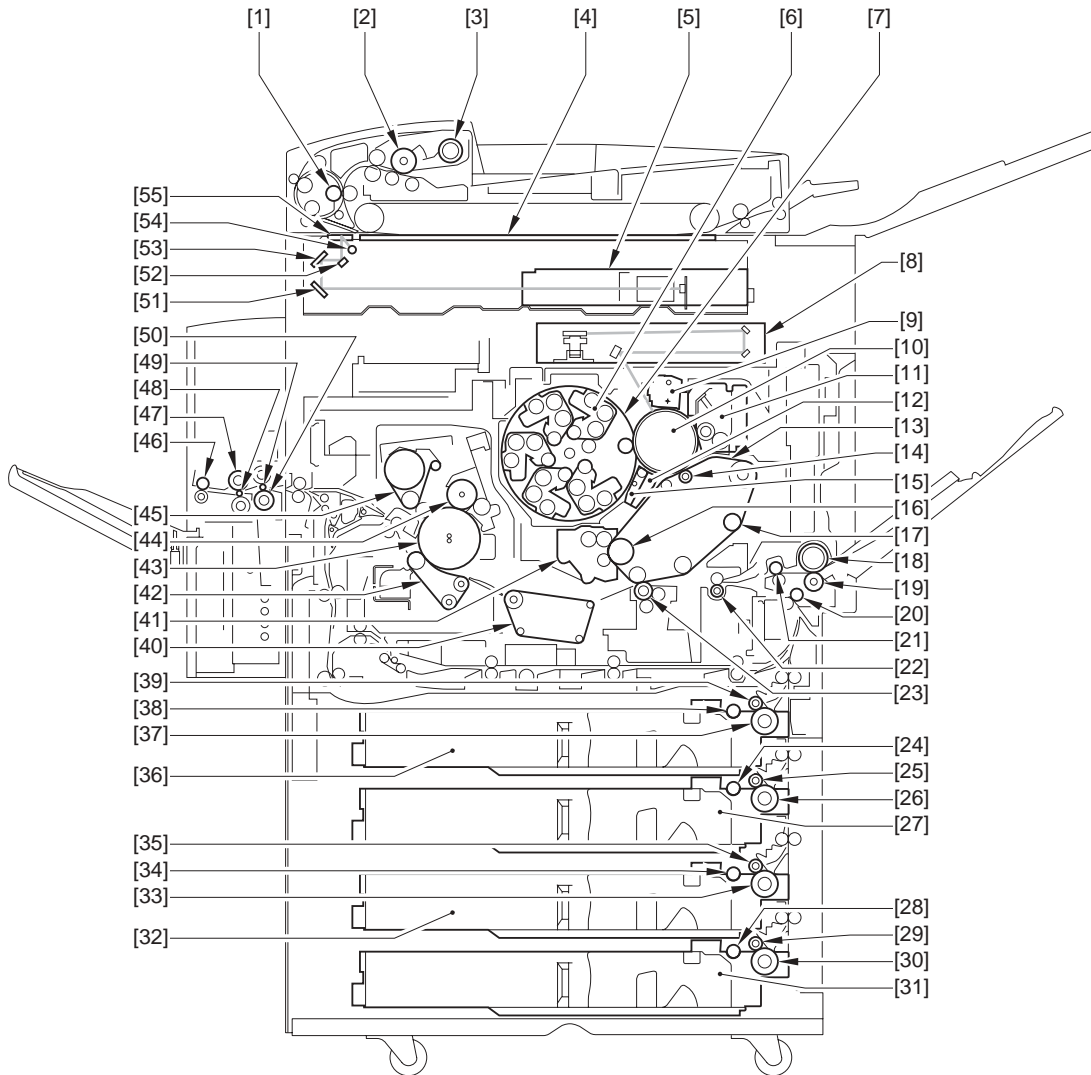
F-1-5

- | | | | |
|------|-----------------------------------|------|------------------------------|
| [1] | Registration roller | [2] | Separation roller |
| [3] | Pickup roller | [4] | Copyboard glass |
| [5] | CCD unit | [6] | Developing assembly |
| [7] | Developing rotary assembly | [8] | Laser/scanner assembly |
| [9] | Primary charging assembly | [10] | Photosensitive drum |
| [11] | Drum cleaner assembly | [12] | Patch image sensor |
| [13] | ITB (intermediate transfer belt) | [14] | Primary transfer roller |
| [15] | Pre-transfer charging assembly | [16] | ITB drive roller |
| [17] | Tension roller | [18] | Manual feed pickup roller |
| [19] | Manual feeder separation roller | [20] | Pre-registration roller |
| [21] | Manual feeder pull-off roller | [22] | Registration roller |
| [23] | Secondary transfer outside roller | [24] | Cassette 2 pickup roller |
| [25] | Cassette 2 feed roller | [26] | Cassette 2 separation roller |
| [27] | Cassette 2 | [28] | Cassette 4 pickup roller |
| [29] | Cassette 4 feed roller | [30] | Cassette 4 separation roller |
| [31] | Cassette 4 | [32] | Cassette 3 |
| [33] | Cassette 3 separation roller | [34] | Cassette 3 feed roller |
| [35] | Cassette 3 pickup roller | [36] | Cassette 1 |
| [37] | Cassette 1 separation roller | [38] | Cassette 1 feed roller |
| [39] | Cassette 1 pickup roller | [40] | Feeding assembly |

[41]	ITB cleaner assembly	[42]	Fixing belt
[43]	Fixing roller	[44]	Outside heating roller
[45]	Fixing web	[46]	Decurler delivery roller
[47]	Decurler adjusting roller upper	[48]	Decurler drive roller lower
[49]	Decurler drive roller upper	[50]	Decurler adjusting roller lower
[51]	No. 3 mirror	[52]	No. 1 mirror
[53]	No. 2 mirror	[54]	Scanning lamp
[55]	White plate		

1.2.1.4 Cross Section

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



F-1-6

[1]	Registration roller	[2]	Separation roller
[3]	Pickup roller	[4]	Copyboard glass
[5]	CCD unit	[6]	Developing assembly
[7]	Developing rotary assembly	[8]	Laser/scanner assembly
[9]	Primary charging assembly	[10]	Photosensitive drum
[11]	Drum cleaner assembly	[12]	Patch image sensor
[13]	ITB (intermediate transfer belt)	[14]	Primary transfer roller
[15]	Pre-transfer charging assembly	[16]	ITB drive roller
[17]	Tension roller	[18]	Manual feed pickup roller
[19]	Manual feeder separation roller	[20]	Pre-registration roller

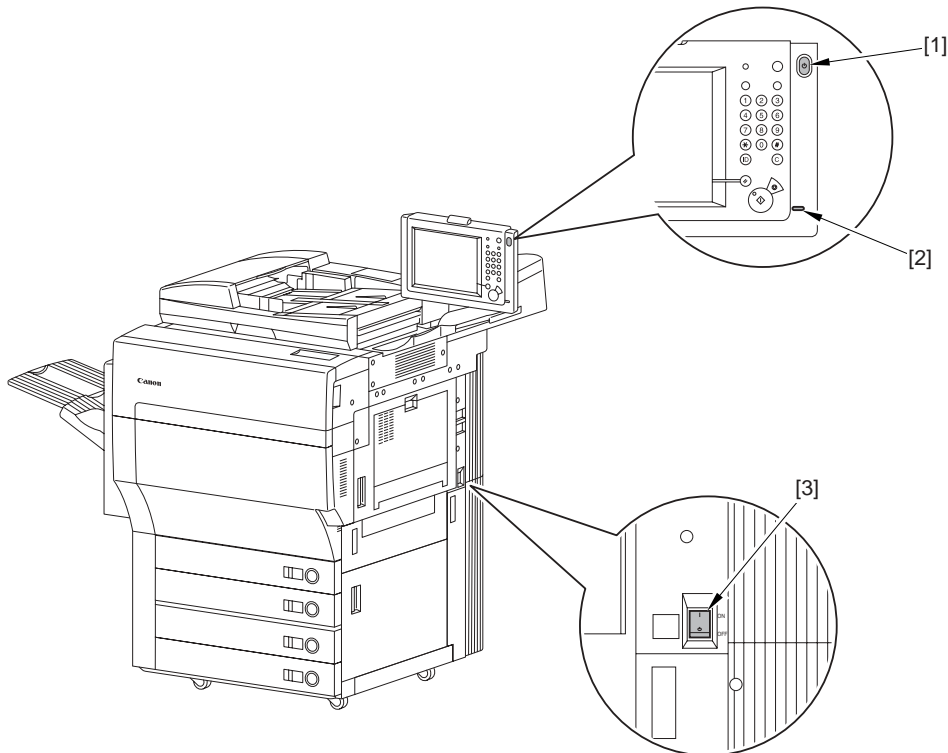
[21] Manual feeder pull-off roller	[22] Registration roller
[23] Secondary transfer outside roller	[24] Cassette 2 pickup roller
[25] Cassette 2 feed roller	[26] Cassette 2 separation roller
[27] Cassette 2	[28] Cassette 4 pickup roller
[29] Cassette 4 feed roller	[30] Cassette 4 separation roller
[31] Cassette 4	[32] Cassette 3
[33] Cassette 3 separation roller	[34] Cassette 3 feed roller
[35] Cassette 3 pickup roller	[36] Cassette 1
[37] Cassette 1 separation roller	[38] Cassette 1 feed roller
[39] Cassette 1 pickup roller	[40] Feeding assembly
[41] ITB cleaner assembly	[42] Fixing belt
[43] Fixing roller	[44] Outside heating roller
[45] Fixing web	[46] Decurler delivery roller
[47] Decurler adjusting roller upper	[48] Decurler drive roller lower
[49] Decurler drive roller upper	[50] Decurler adjusting roller lower
[51] No. 3 mirror	[52] No. 1 mirror
[53] No. 2 mirror	[54] Scanning lamp
[55] White plate	

1.2.2 Using the Machine

1.2.2.1 Power Switch

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The machine is equipped with 2 switches: main power switch and control panel power switch. The machine is powered when the main power switch is turned on. To leave power save mode, low power mode, or sleep mode, turn on the control panel power switch.



F-1-7

- [1] Control panel power switch
- [2] Main power lamp
- [3] Main power switch



Do not turn off the main power while a progress bar is displayed, indicating that the HDD is being accessed. Doing so can cause damage to the HDD (identified by E602).



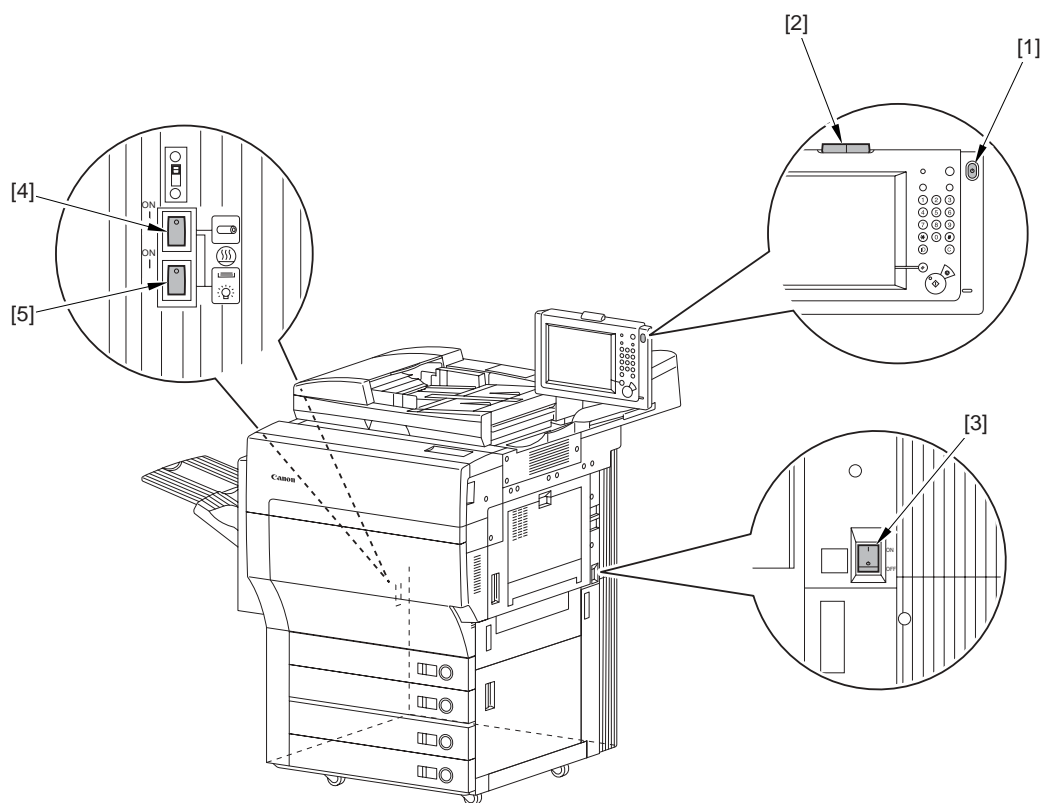
F-1-8

1.2.2.2 Points to Note When Turning Off the Main Power Switch

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

! Points to Note When Turning Off the Main Power Switch

- To turn off the main power switch, hold down the control panel power switch for 3 sec or more so that the shut-down sequence will go on, thereby automatically turning off the main power.
- To operate the main power switch, be sure that the Execute/Memory lamp on the control panel is off.
- Do not turn off the main power switch while downloading is under way. Otherwise, the machine may fail to operate.
- The heaters remain powered as long as the cassette heater switch and the environmental switch is on even when the main power has been turned off.

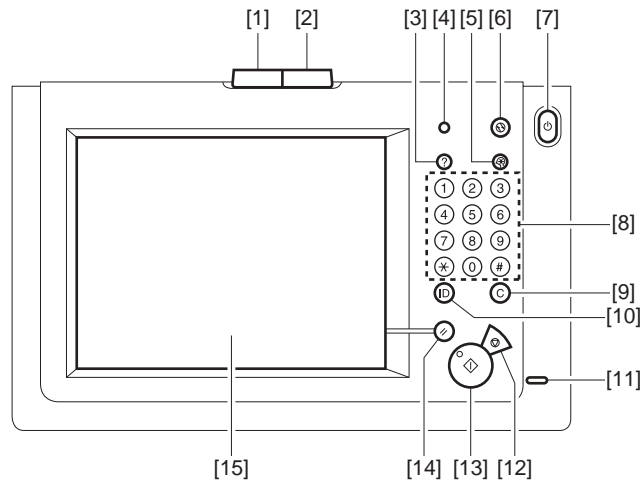


F-1-9

- [1] Control panel power switch
- [2] Execute/Memory lamp
- [3] Main power switch
- [4] environmental switch
- [5] Cassette heater switch

1.2.2.3 Control Panel

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| [1] Execute/Memory lamp | [9] Clear key |
| [2] Error lamp | [10] ID (authentication key) |
| [3] Help key | [11] Main power lamp |
| [4] Check Counter key | [12] Stop key |
| [5] Initial Setup/Save key | [13] Start key |
| [6] Power Save key | [14] Reset key |
| [7] Control panel power switch | [15] Touch panel display |
| [8] Keypad | |

1.2.3 User Mode Items

1.2.3.1 Common Settings

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

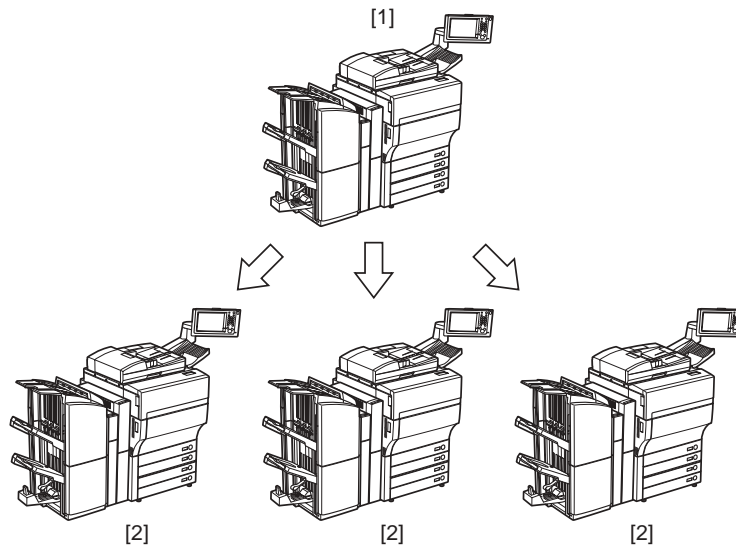
* Indicates the default setting.

*1 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

*2 Indicates information that is delivered only if the number of output trays in the host machine and client machines is the same.

*3 Device Information Delivery Settings

Among multiple machines on the network, registration of device information (administration data) in 1 parent machine [1] can transmit the same data to child machines [2]. The child machines to which the device information was transmitted receives and updates the information.



Item

Settings

Device
Information
Delivery Item
*3

Function Display Settings

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item #3
Initial Functions and Function Order Settings	Copy*, Express Copy, Send, Mail Box, Print Job, Scan, MEAP	No
Copy Screen Display Settings	Regular Copy Only*1, Regular and Express Copy, Express Copy Only Regular Copy Screen Priority: On*, Off	
Set System Monitor as the Default Screen	On, Off*	
Set the Default Screen for System Monitor	Print Status*, Consumables, Others (Copy, Send, Receive)	
Auto Clear Setting	Initial Function*, Selected Function	Yes
Audible Tones	Entry Tone: On*, Off Invalid Entry Tone: On, Off* Restock Supplies Tone: On, Off* Error Tone: On*, Off Job Done Tone: On*, Off Forgot Original Tone: On, Off*	
Display Remaining Paper Message	On*, Off	No
Text/photo priority when ACS is set to Black	Text Priority, Photo Priority*	Yes
Display the Black Mode Shortcut Key	On, Off*	No
Inch Entry	On, Off*	Yes
Drawer Eligibility For APS/ADS	Copy, Printer, Mail Box, Receive, Fax, Other: (Stack Bypass: On, Off*, All Other Paper Sources: On*, Off) Copy: Consider Paper Type: On, Off*	Yes
Register Paper Type	Paper Source Selection	No
Paper Select Screen Priority	Simple*, Detailed	Yes
Setting up Power state mode	-10%*, -25%, -50%, disable	Yes
Energy Consumption in Sleep Mode	Low*, High	Yes
LTRR/STMT Original Selection	Distinguish Manually, Use LTRR Format*, Use STMT Format	Yes
Tray Designation	If No Finisher Is Attached Tray A: Copy*, Mail Box*, Printer*, Receive*, Other* Tray B: Copy, Mail Box, Printer, Receive, Other Tray C: Copy, Mail Box, Printer, Receive, Other If the Optional Finisher-AA1 or Saddle Finisher-AA2 Is Attached Tray A: Copy*, Mail Box*, Printer, Receive, Other* Tray B: Copy, Mail Box, Printer*, Receive, Other Tray C: Copy, Mail Box, Printer, Receive*, Other* Tray Home Position: Tray A*, Tray B, Off Specify Tray C: Finisher Top Tray*, Center Tray of the Main Unit	Yes*2
Printing Priority	Copy: 1*, 2, 3 Printer: 1, 2*, 3 Mail Box, Receive/Fax, Other: 1, 2, 3*	Yes
Register Form for Composition	Register, Erase, Check Print, Details	No
Image Priority for Form Composition	Auto*, Original Priority, Form Priority	Yes
Register Characters for Page No./Watermark	Register, Edit, Erase	Yes
Stack Bypass Standard Settings	On, Off*	Yes
Registering Irregular Size	Register/Edit, Erase, Register Name	Yes
Standard Local Print Settings		No
Paper Select	All Paper Sources, Auto*	
Copies	1* to 9,999 sets	
Finishing	If No Finisher Is Attached: Do Not Collate, Collate*, Rotate Collate, Group, Rotate Group If the Optional Finisher-AA1 or Saddle Finisher-AA2 Is Attached: Do Not Collate, Collate, Offset Collate*, Group, Offset Group, Staple (Corner: Top Left, Bottom Left, Top Right, Bottom Right), (Double: Left, Right) If the Optional Finisher-AA1 or Saddle Finisher-AA2, and Punch Unit-M1 Are Attached: Do Not Collate, Collate, Offset Collate*, Group, Offset Group, Staple (Corner: Top Left, Bottom Left, Top Right, Bottom Right), (Double: Left, Right), Hole Punch	
2-Sided Print	On, Off*	
Erase Document After Printing	On, Off*	
Merge Documents	On, Off*	
Language Switch	On, Off*	No

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item *3
Reversed Display (Color)	On, Off*	No
Offset Jobs*1	On*, Off	Yes
Job Separator between Jobs	On, Off*	Yes
Job Separator between Copies	On, Off*	Yes
Number of Copies/Job Duration Status Display	On*, Off	No
Register Sizes for Side Paper Deck	13"x19", 12 5/8"x17 11/16", 12"x18", 11"x17", LGL, LTR, LTRR	No
Cleaning Display for the Original Scanning Area	On*, Off	No
Data Compression Ratio for Remote Scans*1	High Ratio, Normal*, Low Ratio	Yes
Gamma Value for Remote Scans*1	Gamma 1.0, Gamma 1.4, Gamma 1.8*, Gamma 2.2	Yes
Limited Functions Mode*1	On, Off*	Yes
Erase Remaining Toner Error Message	Erase	No
Shutdown Mode	Press [Start]	No
Initialize Common Settings	Initialize	No

1.2.3.2 Timer Settings

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

* Indicates the default setting.

T-1-3

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
Time Fine Adjustment	00:00 to 23:59, in one minute increments	No
Auto Sleep Time	10, 15, 20, 30, 40, 50 min., 1 hour*, 90 min., 2, 3, 4 hours	Yes
Auto Clear Time	0 (Off) to 9 minutes, in one minute increments; 2 min.*	Yes
Time Until Unit Quiet Down	0 (Off) to 9 minutes, in one minute increments; 1 min.*	Yes
Daily Timer Settings	Sunday to Saturday, 00:00 to 23:59, in one minute increments	Yes
Low-power Mode Time	10, 15*, 20, 30, 40, 50 min., 1 hour, 90 min., 2, 3, 4 hours	Yes

1.2.3.3 Adjustment/Cleaning

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

* Indicates the default setting.

*1 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

T-1-4

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
Zoom Fine Adjustment	X: -1.0% to +1.0%, in 0.1% increments; 0.0%* Y: -1.0% to +1.0%, in 0.1% increments; 0.0%*	No
Saddle Stitcher Staple Repositioning*1	Press [Start]	No
Saddle Stitch Position Adjustment*1	All paper sizes: -2.0 mm to +2.0 mm, in 0.25 mm increments; 0.00 mm*	Yes
Auto Gradation Adjustment	Full Adjust, Quick Adjust, Auto Gradation Adjust Method	No
Exposure Recalibration	Copy/Inbox, Send (B&W), Send (Color): Light, Dark: 1 to 9 levels; 5*	No
Shading Correction	Densitometer Correction, Visual Correction, Print Server Correction	No
Character/Background Contrast Adjustment	Black, Cyan, Magenta Relative Contrast Value: -7 to +7; -1* Standard Value Settings: 0 to 64; 24*, Sample Print, Sample Print Settings: Latent String Density: 0 to 36; 8*	No
Feeder Cleaning	Press [Start]	No
Wire Cleaning	Press [Start]	No
Roller Cleaning	Press [Start]	No
Paper Deck Plate Adjustment	Press [Start]	No

1.2.3.4 Report Settings

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

* Indicates the default setting.

T-1-5

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
Settings: Send*1		
TX Report	For Error Only*, On, Off Report with TX Image: On*, Off Report with Color TX Image: On, Off*	Yes
Activity Report		
Auto Print	On*, Off	Yes
Daily Activity Report Time	On, Off*	
	Timer Setting: 00:00 to 23:59	
Send/Receive Separate	On, Off*	
Print List: Send*1		
Address Book List	Address Book 1 to 10; One-touch Buttons, Print List	No
User Data List	Print List	No

1.2.3.5 System Control Settings

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

* Indicates the default setting.

*1 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

*2 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached to the imagePRESS C1.

For the imagePRESS C1, these items are displayed as default.

T-1-6

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
System Manager Settings		
System Manager ID	Seven digit number maximum	Yes
System Password	Seven digit number maximum	
System Manager	32 characters maximum	
E-mail Address	64 characters maximum	
Contact Information	32 characters maximum	
Comment	32 characters maximum	
Dept. ID Management		
Dept. ID Management	On, Off*	Yes
Register Dept. ID/Password	Register, Edit, Erase, Limit Functions	Yes
Page Totals	Clear, Print List, Clear All Totals	No
Allow Printer Jobs with Unknown IDs*2	On*, Off	Yes
Allow Remote Scan Jobs with Unknown IDs	On*, Off	Yes
Allow Black Copy/Inbox Print Jobs	On, Off*	Yes
Allow Black Printer Jobs*2	On, Off*	Yes
Communications Settings		
E-mail/I-Fax Settings*1		Yes
Maximum Data Size for Sending	0 (Off), 1 to 99 MB; 3 MB*	
Full Mode TX Timeout	1 to 99 hours; 24 hours*	
Divided Data RX Timeout	0 to 99 hours; 24 hours*	
Default Subject	40 characters maximum; Attached Image*	
Print MDN/DSN on Receipt	On, Off*	
Always send notice for RX errors	On*, Off	
Use Send Via Server	On, Off*	
Allow MDN Not Via Server	On*, Off	
Memory RX Inbox Settings*1		
Memory RX Inbox Password	Seven digit number	No
Use Fax Memory Lock*2	On, Off*	Yes
Use I-Fax Memory Lock*1	On, Off*	Yes
Memory Lock Start Time	Everyday, Select Days, Off*	Yes
Memory Lock End Time	Everyday, Select Days, Off*	Yes
Remote UI	On*, Off	Yes

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
	Use SSL: On, Off*	
Restrict the Send Function*1		
Address Book Password	Seven digit number	Yes
Access Number Management	On*, Off	Yes
Restrict New Addresses	On, Off*	Yes
E-mail/Fax Domain Sending Restriction	Restrict Sending to Domains; On, Off*	Yes
	Register, Edit, Erase	
Allow PDF Send with Expired Certificates	On, Off*	Yes
Always Add Device Signature to Send PDF	On, Off*	Yes
Device Information Settings		
Device Name	32 characters maximum	No
Location	32 characters maximum	No
Forwarding Settings*1	Receive Type, E-mail Priority*1, Edit, Erase, Print List, Validate/Invalidate, Register (Registered Forwarding Settings), Forward w/o Conditions	Yes*5
Clear Message Board	Clear	No
Auto Online/Offline*1		
Auto Online	On, Off*	Yes
Auto Offline	On, Off*	Yes
Date & Time Settings	Date and Time Setting (12 digit number) Time Zone: GMT -12:00 to GMT +12:00; GMT -05:00* Daylight Saving Time: On*, Off	No
Limit Functions with the Security Key OFF*1	Partial Functions*, All Functions	Yes
License Registration	24 characters maximum	No
System Monitor Screen Restriction		
Display Status Before Authentication	On*, Off	No
Allow Secured Print from Print Status Screen	On, Off*	No
Register LDAP Server*1	Register, Edit, Erase, Register/Edit LDAP Search, Print List	No
MEAP Settings		
Use HTTP	On*, Off	Yes*4
	Use SSL: On, Off*	
Print System Information	Print	No
Copy Set Numbering Option Settings	Copy Set Num. Op: On, Off* ID/User Name: On, Off Date: On, Off Characters: On, Off	Yes
Display Remaining Toner Error Message	On*, Off	No
Display ID/User Name	On*, Off	No
USB Settings		
Use USB Device	On*, Off	Yes
Use USB Host	On*, Off	Yes
Device Information Delivery Settings		
Register Destinations	Auto Search/Register, Register, Details, Erase, Print List	
Auto Delivery Settings	Everyday, Select Days, Off* Add. Functions Settings Value: On, Off* Network Settings: Include, Exclude* Dept. ID: On, Off* Address Book: On, Off* Printer Settings: On, Off*	
Manual Delivery	Add. Functions Settings Value: On, Off* Network Settings: Include, Exclude* Dept. ID: On, Off* Address Book: On, Off* Printer Settings: On, Off*	
Restrictions for Receiving Device Info.	On, Off*	
Restore Data	Add. Functns Set. Value, Dept. ID, Address Book, Printer Settings	
Receive Restriction for Each Function	Add. Functions Settings Value: On*, Off Dept. ID: On*, Off	

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
	Address Book: On*, Off	
	Printer Settings: On, Off*	
Communication Log	Details, Print List, Report Settings	
	Auto Print: On, Off*	
	Daily Activity Report Time: On (00:00 to 23:59), Off*	
	Separate Report Type: On, Off*	
Initialize All Data/Settings	Initialize	No
Use Asterisks to Enter Access No./Passwords	On*, Off	Yes
Forced Secure Watermark Mode*1	Copy: Do Not Set*, Set	Yes
	Mail Box: Do Not Set*, Set	
	Printer: Do Not Set*, Set	
Encrypted Print Settings*1		
Only Allow Encrypted Print Jobs	On, Off*	Yes
Device Management Settings		
Device Management Settings	Full Adjust, Quick Adjust, Auto Gradation Adjust Method	No
Shading Correction	Densitometer Correction, Visual Correction, Print Server Correction	No
Dither Pattern Settings	Gradation, Resolution, Rep. Scan Image: Newspaper/Gradation/High Gradation/Color Tones/High Definition/High Resolution/Rep. Scan Image/Compatible	No
Color Balance	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black: -8 - 0* - +8 (in 1 increments), Density Fine Adjustment	No
Density Adjustment Mode	A Mode*, B Mode	No
Refresh the Fixing Roller	Press [Start]	No
Fixing Roller Auto Refresh Level	Level: -5 - 0* - +5	No
Color Cast Correction	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black: -2 0* - +2	No
Tail End Color Fading/Graininess Correction	On, Off*	No
White Gap Correction	1 to 3* to 4	No
2-Sided Print Image Uneven Gloss Correction	On, Off*	No
Tail End White Patch Correction	On, Off*	No
Paper Type Management Settings	Details/Edit	Yes
	Name, Category, Basis Weight, Finish, Type, Creep (Displacement) Correction Adjustment, Curl Correction	
	Level, Paper Separation Fan Level Adjustment, Image Location Adjustment, Secondary Transfer Voltage Adjustment	
	Duplicate, Erase, Sort List by	No

1.2.3.6 Copy Settings

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

* Indicates the default setting.

T-1-7

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
Paper Select Key Size for Express Copy Screen	Large*: Four paper sources maximum (Stack Bypass, Stack bypass Settings, 1: Paper Drawer 1, 2: Paper Drawer 2, 3: Paper Drawer 3, 4: Paper Drawer 4, 5: Paper Deck-AA1), Small	No
Standard Key 1, 2 Settings for Regular Screen	Various modes; No Settings*	No
Standard Key Settings for Express Copy Screen	Displayed Standard Keys: Up to 5 Set Keys*, Up to 10 Set Keys, Settings: Various modes; No Settings*	No
Auto Collate	On*, Off	Yes
Image Orientation Priority	On, Off*	Yes
Auto Orientation	On*, Off	Yes
Standard Settings	Store, Initialize	No
Initialize Copy Settings	Initialize	No

1.2.3.7 Communications Settings

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

* Indicates the default setting.

T-1-8

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
Common Settings: TX Settings		
Unit Name	24 characters maximum	No
Erase Failed TX	On*, Off	Yes
Data Compression Ratio	High Ratio, Normal*, Low Ratio	Yes
Handle Documents with Forwarding Errors	Always Print, Store/Print, Off*	Yes
Retry Times	0 to 5 times; 3 times*	Yes
Edit Standard Send Settings	Scanning Mode: Clr/B&W 200x200 dpi File Format: TIFF/PDF Auto Select	No
Register Favorites Button	Register/Edit, Erase (M1 to M18)	Yes
Image Level for PDF (Compct)	Image Level in Text/Photo or Photo Mode: Data Size Priority, Normal*, Image Priority Image Level in Text Mode: Data Size Priority, Normal*, Image Priority	Yes
PDF(OCR) Settings	Smart Scan: On*, Off Num. of Char. for Doc. Name Setting: 1 to 24 characters; 24 characters*	Yes
Check Device Signature Certificate*1	Certificate Details: Certificate Verification	No
Check User Signature Certificate	Certificate Details: Certificate Verification	No
Default Screen for Send	Favorites Buttons, One-touch Buttons, New Address* Enlarged Display: On, Off*	No
TX Terminal ID	On*, Off Printing Position: Inside, Outside* Display Destination Name: On*, Off	Yes
Use Chunked Encoding with WebDav Sending*1	On*, Off	Yes
Gamma Value for YCbCr Send Jobs	Gamma 1.0, Gamma 1.4, Gamma 1.8*, Gamma 2.2	Yes
Initialize TX Settings	Initialize	No
Common Settings: RX Settings		
2-Sided Print	On, Off*	Yes
Select Drawer	Switch A: On*, Off Switch B: On*, Off Switch C: On*, Off Switch D: On*, Off	Yes
Receive Reduction	On*, Off RX Reduction: Auto*, Fixed Reduction Reduce %: 75 to 97% (in 1% increments); 90%* Reduce Direction: Vertical & Horizontal, Vertical Only*	Yes
Received Page Footer	On, Off*	Yes
2 On 1 Log	On, Off*	Yes
Gamma Value for YCbCr Received Jobs*1	Gamma 1.0, Gamma 1.4, Gamma 1.8*, Gamma 2.2	Yes

1.2.3.8 Mail Box Settings

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

* Indicates the default setting.

*1 Information is not delivered if a password is set for the inbox.

T-1-9

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
User Inboxes Settings	Inbox No.: 00 to 99 Register Inbox Name: 24 characters maximum Password: Seven digits maximum Time until Document Auto Erase: 0 (Off), 1, 2, 3, 6, 12 hours, 1, 2, 3*, 7, 30 days URL Send Settings Print upon storing from the printer driver: On, Off* Initialize	Yes*1
Standard Scan Settings	Store, Initialize	No
Confidential Fax Inboxes Settings	Inbox No.: 00 to 49	Yes*1

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
	Register Inbox Name: 24 characters maximum Password: Seven digits maximum URL Send Settings Initialize	

1.2.3.9 Address Book Settings

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

T-1-10

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
Register Address	Register New Address, Edit, Erase	Yes
Register Address Book Name	Register Name	Yes
One-touch Buttons	Register/Edit (from 001 to 200), Erase	Yes



- When authentication is enabled for an SDL or SSO login service, the system administrator setup mode cannot be used if the user type is a general user.
- When authentication is enabled for an SDL or SSO login service, the system administrator setup mode may be used if the user type is an administrator. (If a dialog box appears, asking you to type in the appropriate administrative group ID and system administration ID No., do so.)

1.2.3.10 User Administrator Mode

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

This part outlines the user administrator mode.

User administrator mode provides the adjustment function to User Administrator, who is superior to general user, and the function is classified mainly into 2 settings.

1. Device Management Setting

This setting enables to adjust color characteristics such as gradation, toner density, color and image quality, to realize an optimal image even under the influence of every variation factor such as environmental change and aged deterioration.

This setting can be found in the following menu tree of the panel setting display:

- Initial Setup/Save Key > System Control Settings > Device Management Settings

T-1-11

Panel Display	Item	Setting	Objective	Use/Suppl.	Service Mode
Default Display	Auto Gradation Adjustment	Full Adjust./Quick Adjust./ Auto Gradation Adjust Method	In a copy/ print job without special settings, adjust gradation, density or hue to reproduce the original image.		
Default Display	Shading Correction	Correction with Densitometer/ Visual Correction/ Correction by Print server	Improve minor shading typically appeared in the halftone area of a printed image.		
Default Display	Dither Pattern Setting (to Switch Dither)	Gradation (For Printer)/ Resolution (For Printer)/ Reproduction of Scan Image: Newspaper/ Gradation/ High gradation/ Color tone/ High resolution/ Reproduction of Scan Image	Select a dither pattern. Dither means a technique to express colors/gradation by small dots. The source data for a dotted image is called 'dither pattern'. By changing this, expression of a printed image can be modified.	Change this setting if Sample G of the faulty images appears. The setting of Resolution should be changed from 'High Resolution' to 'High Detail' or 'Hue'.	
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Color Balance	Fine-adjustment of toner density each for Yellow, Magenta, Cyan and Black: -8~0*~+8 (by 1)	Adjust the color balance or fine-adjust the default density for Yellow, Magenta, Cyan and Black.		
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Exposure Recalibration when Scanning	Left edge: 0~5 (*0)Right edge: 0~5 (*0)			
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Density Adjustment Mode	A/B Modes (refer to *3)	Switch the methods to control toner density.		
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Refresh the Fixing Roller	Start key	Slightly glossy lines in parallel of the feed direction sometimes appear on the both ends of wider-width paper after copying/ printing over hundreds sheets of narrower-width paper (ex: using A3 after A4R). Specifically in the high-density area on heavy/coated paper, cloudlike glossy shading appears occasionally. Refreshing the fixing roller and/or wiping the surface of the roller can improve these symptoms.	This setting should be set to ON if Sample F of the faulty images appears.	
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Fixing Roller Auto Refresh Level	Level: -5 to +5 (5*)	The fixing roller is automatically refreshed after a certain copies are printed. This mode provides adjustment in refreshing frequency and time level for refreshing operation.		
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Color Cast Correction	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black: -2 to +2 (0*)	When 'color cast' is seen in blank area, this can be corrected by color with this function.	This setting should be set to ON when Sample D of the faulty images appears.	COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT > VBACK-Y, M, C, K (Level2)
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Tail End Color Fading/ Graininess Correction	ON/OFF*	This is to improve color fading at the tail end/ white grains, which can be appeared on halftone images.	This setting should be set to ON when Sample A (tail end color fading) or Sample C (white grains) of the faulty images appears.	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > VCONT-UP (Level2)
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	White Gap Correction	1 to 4 (3*)	If the dark colored area follows right after the halftone area, 'white gap' can be appeared near the border in the halftone area. This can be improved with this function.	This setting should be set to ON when Sample B of the faulty images appears.	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > ADJ-BLNK (Level2)
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	2-sided Print Image Uneven Gloss Correction	ON/OFF*	Gloss can be uneven on the first side when 2-sided printing is performed on the coated paper (high-density image). This symptom can be improved with this function.	This setting should be set to ON when Sample E of the faulty images appears.	COPIER > OPTION > USER > FX-BC-SW
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Tail End White Patch Correction	ON/OFF*	White patch can appear on the heavy paper (the second side of 2-sided printing) or the coated paper (the first side) at the tail end of the image. This symptom can be improved with this function.	The setting is possibly set to OFF if Sample H of the faulty images appears. This should be set to ON.	COPIER > OPTION > 2TR-RVON (Level2)

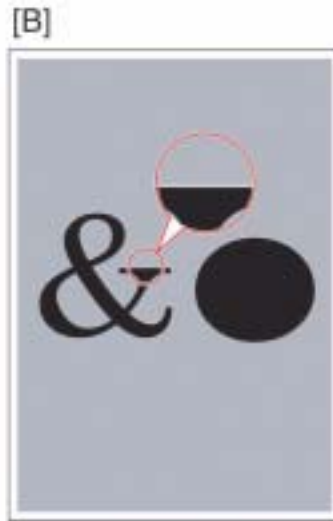
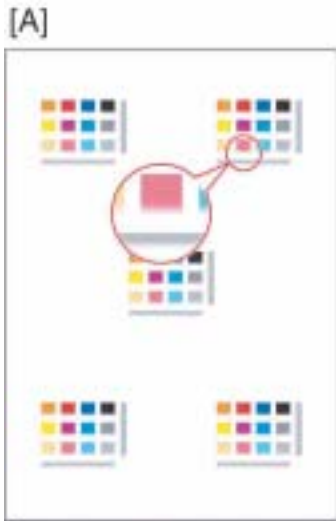
*1:

This item is displayed by executing service mode (COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMAG-ADJ)

*2:
Correction with the print server is valid only when the Image PRESS Server Q1 is mounted.

*3:
A mode: restriction on the amount of toner deposit is 'Yes'. (Although adjusting the color balance or performing fine adjustment for the density, the amount of toner deposit is restricted.)

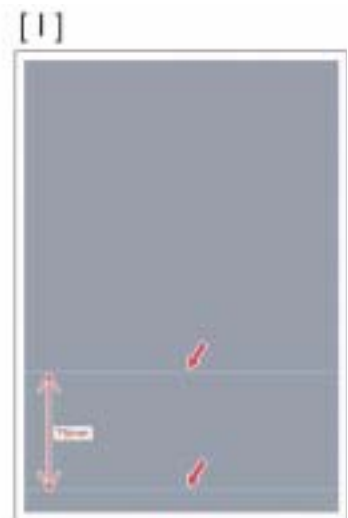
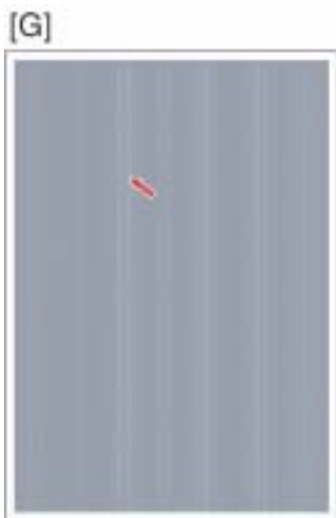
B mode: restriction on the amount of toner deposit is 'No'. (When adjusting the color balance or performing fine adjustment for the density, the amount of toner deposit may exceeds its limit.)



F-1-12



F-1-13



F-1-14

2. Paper Type Management Settings

This feature enables to print with most optimal printing characteristics for each paper type by registering the characteristics of each paper type in the printer engine. Furthermore, parameters such as for curl correction and image position control can be changed for each paper type.

This setting can be found in the following menu tree of the panel setting display.

- Initial Setup / Save key > System Control Settings > Paper Type Management Settings

The details of each setting are shown in the following table.

T-1-12

Display	Item	Settings	Purpose	Remedy	Service Mode
Default display	Name	Enter any name.			
Default display	Category	Editing prohibited (standard/custom)			
Default display	Grammage	64 to 256 g / m ²	To register the thickness of the paper.		
Default display	Form	Standard paper / Index paper / Punched paper	To register the style of the paper.		
Default display	Surface property	High-quality paper / recycle paper / coated paper (one-side) / coated paper (both-sides) / embossed paper / vellum paper / film / label / cotton paper	To register the type of the paper.		
Default display	Creep (displacement correction)	0.00 to 2.00 mm	To control the degree of displacement for each type of paper when printed documents are bound up by the saddle stitch.		
Displayed by service switch (*1)	Curl correction	curl down / curl up (factory default: 0)	degree of curling of the paper.	The degree of curling has 7 levels upward and 7 more levels downward.	
Displayed by service switch (*1)	Media floatation fan air volume control	weak / medium / strong (factory default: medium)	The air volume at which the paper is fanned can be modified when faulty feeding occurs while using the side paper deck - AA1 or when uneven transfer occurs.	Select [strong] when jam or double feeding occurs, and [weak] when paper gets curled more than necessary or when uneven transfer occurs.	
Displayed by service switch (*1)	Image position control	test print output / leading edge registration position control / left end registration position control	To controls the image position on the paper.		
Displayed by service switch (*1)	Secondary transfer voltage control	+ / - 10 (factory default: 0)	To control the secondary transfer bias when faulty image (uneven density, white spot, etc.) occurs.	Change the value to a native value. (The value 1 in this case translates to 100V.)	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > 2TR-RVON
Displayed by service switch (*1)	Uneven Gloss Correction	-2 to +2, 1*+ : increase gloss- : decrease gloss	To adjust glossiness of paper. Changing value switches the fixing temperature.		

*1
This item is displayed by executing service mode (COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMAG-ADJ)

1.2.3.11 Common Settings

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

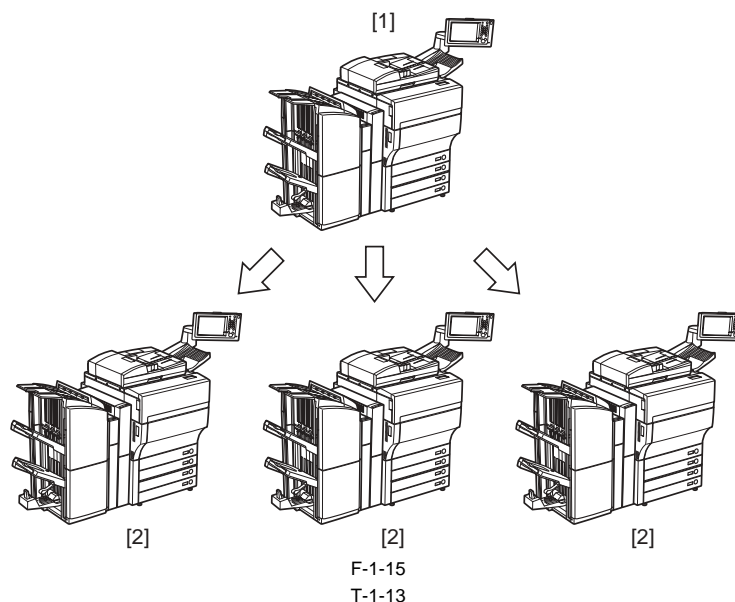
* Indicates the default setting.

*1 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

*2 Indicates items that appear only when Display Remaining Toner Error Message in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen) is set to 'On'.

*3 Device Information Delivery Settings

Among multiple machines on the network, registration of device information (administration data) in 1 parent machine [1] can transmit the same data to child machines [2]. The child machines to which the device information was transmitted receives and updates the information.



Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item *3
Function Display Settings		
Initial Functions and Function Order Settings	Settings: Copy*, Express Copy, Send, Mail Box, Prnt Job, Scan, MEAP, Scan, Printer, Web Access, Hold	No
Copy Screen Display Settings	Settings: Regular Copy Only, Regular and Express Copy*, Express Copy Only	
Set System Monitor as the Default Screen	On, Off*	
Set the Default Screen for System Monitor	Print Status*, Consumables, Others (Copy, Send, Receive)	
Auto Clear Setting	Initial Function*, Selected Function	Yes
Audible Tones	Entry Tone: On*, Off Invalid Entry Tone: On, Off* Restock Supplies Tone: On, Off* Error Tone: On*, Off Job Done Tone: On*, Off Forgot Original Tone: On, Off*	
Display Remaining Paper Message	On*, Off	No
Text/photo priority when ACS is set to Black	Text Priority, Photo Priority*	Yes
Display the Black Mode Shortcut Key	On, Off*	No
Inch Entry	On*, Off	Yes
Drawer Eligibility For APS/ADS	Copy, Printer, Mail Box, Receive, Other:(Stack Bypass: On, Off*, All Other Paper Sources: On*, Off) Copy: Consider Paper Type: On*, Off	No
Register Paper Type	Paper Source Selection	No
Paper Select Screen Priority	Simple*, Detailed	Yes
Setting up Power state mode	-10%*, -25%, -50%, None	Yes
Energy Consumption in Sleep Mode	Low*, High	Yes
LTRR/STMT Original Selection	Distinguish Manually, Use LTRR Format*, Use STMT Format	Yes
Tray Designation	If No Finisher Is Attached Tray A: Copy*, Mail Box*, Printer*, Receive*, Other* Tray B: Copy, Mail Box, Printer, Receive, Other Tray C: Copy, Mail Box, Printer, Receive, Other If the Optional Finisher-AA1 or Saddle Finisher-AA2 Is Attached Tray A: Copy*, Mail Box*, Printer, Receive, Other* Tray B: Copy, Mail Box, Printer*, Receive, Other Tray C: Copy, Mail Box, Printer, Receive*, Other* Tray Home Position: Tray A*, Tray B, Off Specify Tray C: Finisher Top Tray*, Center Tray of the Main Unit	No

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item *3
Printing Priority	Copy: 1*, 2, 3 Printer: 1, 2*, 3 Mail Box, Receive, Other: 1, 2, 3*	Yes
Register Form for Composition	Register, Erase, Check Print, Details	No
Image Priority for Form Composition	Auto*, Original Priority, Form Priority	Yes
Register Characters for Page No./Watermark	Register, Edit, Erase	Yes
Stack Bypass Standard Settings	On, Off*	Yes
Registering Irregular Size	Register/Edit, Erase, Register Name	Yes
Standard Local Print Settings		No
Paper Select	All Paper Sources, Auto*	
Copies	1* to 9,999 sets	
Finishing	If No Finisher Is Attached: Do Not Collate, Collate*, Rotate Collate, Group, Rotate Group If the Optional Finisher-AA1 or Saddle Finisher-AA2 Is Attached: Do Not Collate, Collate, Offset Collate*, Group, Offset Group, Staple (Corner: Top Left, Bottom Left, Top Right, Bottom Right), (Double: Left, Right) If the Optional Finisher-AA1 or Saddle Finisher-AA2, and Punch Unit-M1 Are Attached: Do Not Collate, Collate, Offset Collate*, Group, Offset Group, Staple (Corner: Top Left, Bottom Left, Top Right, Bottom Right), (Double: Left, Right), Hole Punch	
2-Sided Print	On, Off*	
Erase Document After Printing	On, Off*	
Merge Documents	On, Off*	
Language Switch	On, Off* Display Shortcut Key: On, Off*	No
Reversed Display (Color)	On, Off*	No
Offset Jobs*1	On*, Off	Yes
Job Separator between Jobs	On, Off*	Yes
Job Separator between Copies	On, Off*	Yes
Number of Copies/Job Duration Status Display	On*, Off	No
Cleaning Display for the Original Scanning Area*1	On*, Off	No
Register Sizes for Side Paper Deck	13"x19", 12 5/8"x17 11/16", 12"x18", 11"x17", LGL, LTR, LTRR	No
Data Compression Ratio for Remote Scans*1	High Ratio, Normal*, Low Ratio	Yes
Gamma Value for Remote Scans*1	Gamma 1.0, Gamma 1.4, Gamma 1.8*, Gamma 2.2	Yes
Limited Functions Mode*1	On, Off*	Yes
Erase Remaining Toner Error Message*2	Erase	No
Shutdown Mode	Press [Start]	No
Suspended Job Timeout	On (0 to 999 minutes, in one minute increments; 5 minutes*1), Off*	Yes
Unfinished Tab Paper Forced Output	ON, OFF*	Yes
Default Screen for Hold	Single List Display, Double List Display*	No
Initialize Common Settings	Initialize	No

1.2.3.12 Timer Settings

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

* Indicates the default setting.

T-1-14

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
Time Fine Adjustment	00:00 to 23:59, in one minute increments	No
Auto Sleep Time	10, 15, 20, 30, 40, 50 min., 1 hour*, 90 min., 2, 3, 4 hours	Yes
Auto Clear Time	0 (Off) to 9 minutes, in one minute increments; 2 min.*	Yes
Time Until Unit Quiet Down	0 (Off) to 9 minutes, in one minute increments; 1 min.*	Yes
Daily Timer Settings	Sunday to Saturday, 00:00 to 23:59, in one minute increments	Yes
Low-power Mode Time	10, 15*, 20, 30, 40, 50 min., 1 hour, 90 min., 2, 3, 4 hours	Yes

1.2.3.13 Adjustment/Cleaning

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

* Indicates the default setting.

*1 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

T-1-15

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
Zoom Fine Adjustment	X, Y: -1.0% to +1.0%, in 0.1% increments; 0.0%*	No
Saddle Stitcher Staple Repositioning*1	Press [Start]	No
Saddle Stitch Position Adjustment*1	All paper sizes: -2.0 mm to +2.0 mm, in 0.25 mm increments; 0.00 mm*	Yes
Auto Gradation Adjustment	Full Adjust, Quick Adjust	No
Exposure Recalibration	Copy/Inbox, Send (B&W), Send (Color): Light, Dark: 1 to 9 levels; 5*	No
Shading Correction	Densitometer Correction, Visual Correction, Print Server Correction*1	No
Character/Background Contrast Adjustment	Black, Cyan, Magenta Relative Contrast Value: -7 to +7; -1* Standard Value Settings: 0 to 64; 24*, Sample Print, Sample Print Settings: Latent String Density: 0 to 36; 8*	No
Feeder Cleaning*1	Press [Start]	No
Wire Cleaning	Press [Start]	No
Roller Cleaning	Press [Start]	No
Paper Deck Plate Adjustment*1	Press [Start]	No
Curl Correction for Each Paper Source	Settings Face Up Output: -15 to +15; 0* Face Down Output: -15 to +15; 0*	No

1.2.3.14 Report Settings

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

* Indicates the default setting.

T-1-16

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
Settings: Send*1		
TX Report	For Error Only*, On, Off Report with TX Image: On*, Off Report with Color TX Image: On, Off*	Yes
Activity Report		
Auto Print	On*, Off	Yes
Daily Activity Report Time	On, Off* Timer Setting: 00:00 to 23:59	
Send/Receive Separate	On, Off*	
Print List: Send*1		
Address Book List	Address Book 1 to 10; One-touch Buttons, Print List	No
User Data List	Print List	No

1.2.3.15 System Control Settings

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

* Indicates the default setting.

*1 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

*2 Indicate items that appear only when the optional Color Universal Send Kit is activated.

T-1-17

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
System Manager Settings		
System Manager ID	Seven digit number maximum	Yes
System Password	Seven digit number maximum	
System Manager	32 characters maximum	
E-mail Address	64 characters maximum	
Contact Information	32 characters maximum	

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
Comment	32 characters maximum	
Dept. ID Management		
Dept. ID Management	On, Off*	Yes
Register Dept. ID/Password	Register, Edit, Erase, Limit Functions	Yes
Page Totals	Clear, Print List, Clear All Totals	No
Allow Printer Jobs with Unknown IDs	On*, Off	Yes
Allow Remote Scan Jobs with Unknown IDs	On*, Off	Yes
Allow Black Copy/Inbox Print Jobs	On, Off*	Yes
Allow Black Printer Jobs	On, Off*	Yes
Communications Settings		
E-mail/I-Fax Common Settings*1		Yes
Maximum Data Size for Sending	0 (Off), 1 to 99 MB; 3 MB*	
Default Subject	40 characters maximum; Attached Image*	
Specify Authorized User Reply-to Destination	On*, Off	No
E-mail Settings*1		
Specify Authorized User Dest. Sender	On, Off*	No
I-Fax Settings*1		
Full Mode TX Timeout	1 to 99 hours; 24 hours*	Yes
Divided Data RX Timeout	0 to 99 hours; 24 hours*	
Print MDN/DSN on Receipt	On, Off*	Yes
Always send notice for RX errors	On*, Off	
Use Send Via Server	On, Off*	
Allow MDN Not Via Server	On, Off*	
Memory RX Inbox Settings*1		
Memory RX Inbox Password	Seven digit number	No
Use I-Fax Memory Lock	On, Off*	Yes
Memory Lock Start Time	Everyday, Select Days, Off*	Yes
Memory Lock End Time	Everyday, Select Days, Off*	Yes
Remote UI		
	On*, Off	Yes
	Use SSL: On, Off*	
Restrict the Send Function*1		
Address Book Password	Seven digit number	Yes
Access Number Management	On, Off*	Yes
Restrict New Addresses	On, Off*	Yes
E-mail/I-Fax Domain Sending Restriction	Restrict Sending to Domains; On, Off*	Yes
	Register, Edit, Erase	
Allow PDF Send with Expired Certificates	On, Off*	Yes
Always Add Device Signature to Send PDF	On, Off*	Yes
	Restrict Sending Files Other than PDF: On, Off*	
Device Information Settings		
Device Name	32 characters maximum	No
Location	32 characters maximum	No
Forwarding Settings*1		Yes
	Receive Type, E-mail Priority*2, Edit, Erase, Print List, Validate/Invalidate, Register (Registered Forwarding Settings), Forward w/o Conditions	
Clear Message Board		No
Auto Online/Offline*1		
Auto Online	On, Off*	Yes
Auto Offline	On, Off*	Yes
Date & Time Settings		No
	Date and Time Setting (12 digit number)	
	Time Zone: GMT -12:00 to GMT +12:00; GMT -05:00*	
	Daylight Saving Time: On*, Off	
Limit Functions with the Security Key OFF*1		Yes
	Partial Functions*, All Functions	
License Registration		No
	24 characters maximum	
System Monitor Screen Restriction		
Display Status Before Authentication	On*, Off	No
Allow Secured Print from Print Status Screen	On, Off*	No
Job Log Display	On*, Off (Obtain Job Log From Management Software: Allow, Do Not Allow*)	No
Register LDAP Server*1		No
	Register, Edit, Erase, Register/Edit LDAP Search, Print List	
MEAP Settings		
Use HTTP	On*, Off	Yes
	Use SSL: On, Off*	
Print System Information	Print	No
Copy Set Numbering Option Settings		Yes
	Copy Set Num. Op: On (ID/User Name: On, Off*; Date: On, Off*; Characters: On, Off*1), Off*	

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
Display Remaining Toner Error Message	On, Off*	No
Display ID/User Name	On*, Off	No
USB Settings		
Use USB Device	On*, Off	Yes
Use USB Host	On*, Off	Yes
Device Information		
Delivery Settings		
Register Destinations	Auto Search/Register, Register, Details, Erase, Print List	
Auto Delivery Settings	Everyday, Select Days, Off* Add. Functions Settings Value: On (Network Settings: Include, Exclude*), Off* Dept. ID: On, Off* Address Book: On, Off* Printer Settings: On, Off*	
Manual Delivery	Add. Functions Settings Value: On (Network Settings: Include, Exclude*), Off* Dept. ID: On, Off* Address Book: On, Off* Printer Settings: On, Off* Paper Information: On, Off*	
Receiving Settings		
Restrictions for Receiving Device Info.	On*, Off	
Restore Data	Add. Functns Set. Value, Dept. ID, Address Book, Printer Settings, Paper Information: On, Off*	
Receive Restriction for Each Function	Add. Functions Settings Value: On*, Off Dept. ID: On*, Off Address Book: On*, Off Printer Settings: On, Off* Paper Information: On*, Off	
Communication Log	Details, Print List, Report Settings Auto Print: On, Off* Daily Activity Report Time: On (00:00 to 23:59), Off* Separate Report Type: On, Off*	
Initialize All Data/Settings	Initialize	No
Use Asterisks to Enter Access No./Passwords	On*, Off	Yes
Secure Watermark Mode*1		
Forced Secure Watermark	Copy: Do Not Set*, Set Mail Box: Do Not Set*, Set Printer: Do Not Set*, Set	Yes
Printer Driver Secure Watermark	Do Not Set*, Set	Yes
Encrypted Print Settings*1		
Only Allow Encrypted Print Jobs	On, Off*	Yes
Device Management Settings		
Auto Gradation Adjustment	Full Adjust, Quick Adjust, Auto Gradation Adjust Method	No
Shading Correction	Densitometer Correction, Visual Correction, Print Server Correction*1	No
Dither Pattern Settings	Gradation (For Printer), Resolution (For Printer), Reproduce Scan Image: Newspaper, Gradation, High Gradation, Color Tones, High Definition, High Resolution, Reproduce Scan Image, Compatible	No
Color Balance	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black: -8 to +8 (in 1 increments); 0*, Density Fine Adjustment	No
Exposure Recalibration when Scanning	Left Edge: 0* to 5 Right Edge: 0* to 5	No
Density Adjustment Mode	A Mode*, B Mode	No
Refresh the Fixing Roller	Press [Start].	No
Fixing Roller Auto Refresh Level	Level: -5 to +5; 0*	No
Color Cast Correction	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black: -2 to +2; 0*	No
Tail End Color Fading/Graininess Correction	On, Off*	No
White Gap Correction	1 to 4; 3*	No
2-Sided Print Image Uneven Gloss Correction	On, Off*	No
Tail End White Patch Correction	On*, Off	No
Adjust Clear Toner Density	Light, Normal*, Heavy	Yes
Clear Coat Form Composition Coating	ON, OFF* Clear Toner Density: Light, Normal*, Heavy	Yes
Paper Type Management Settings	Details/Edit Name, Basis Weight, Type, Finish, Creep (Displacement) Correction Adjustment, Color, Curl Correction Level, Paper Separation Fan Level Adjustment, Image Location Adjustment, Secondary Transfer Voltage Adjustment, Gloss Adjustment	Yes
Settings for All User Inboxes	Duplicate, Erase, Paper Database	No

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
Time until Document Auto Erase	0=Off, 1, 2, 3, 6, 12 hours, 1, 2, 3*, 7, 30 days	No
Print Upon Storing From the Printer Driver	On, Off*	No
Restrict Printer Jobs	On, Off*	Yes
Color Mode for Copy		
Use Auto-Color Select	On*, Off	Yes
Use Full Color	On*, Off	Yes
PDL Selection (PnP)*1	UFR II, PCL5e, PCL5c, PCL6, PS3	No
Time until Hold Job Auto Erase*1	0=Off, 1, 2, 3, 6, 12 hours, 1, 2, 3*, 7, 30 days	Yes

1.2.3.16 Copy Settings

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

* Indicates the default setting.

*1 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

T-1-18

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
Paper Select Key Size for Express Copy Screen	Large*: Four paper sources maximum (Stack Bypass, Stack bypass Settings, 1: Paper Drawer 1, 2: Paper Drawer 2, 3: Paper Drawer 3, 4: Paper Drawer 4, 5: Paper Deck-AA1), Small	No
Standard Key 1, 2 Settings for Regular Screen	Various modes; No Settings*	No
Standard Key Settings for Express Copy Screen	Displayed Standard Keys: Up to 5 Set Keys*, Up to 10 Set Keys, Settings: Various modes; No Settings*	No
Auto Collate	On*, Off	Yes
Image Orientation Priority	On, Off*	Yes
Auto Orientation	On*, Off	Yes
Standard Settings	Store, Initialize	No
Initialize Copy Settings	Initialize	No

1.2.3.17 Communications Settings

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

* Indicates the default setting.

T-1-19

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
Common Settings: TX Settings		
Unit Name	24 characters maximum	No
Erase Failed TX	On*, Off	Yes
Data Compression Ratio	High Ratio, Normal*, Low Ratio	Yes
Handle Documents with Forwarding Errors	Always Print, Store/Print, Off*	Yes
Retry Times	0 to 5 times; 3 times*	Yes
Edit Standard Send Settings	Scanning Mode: Clr/B&W 200x200 dpi File Format: TIFF/PDF Auto Select	No
Register Favorites Button	Register/Edit, Erase (M1 to M18) Display Comment: On, Off*	Yes
Display Confirmation for Favorites Button	On*, Off	No
Image Level for PDF (Compact)	Image Level in Text/Photo or Photo Mode: Data Size Priority, Normal*, Image Priority Image Level in Text Mode: Data Size Priority, Normal*, Image Priority	No
PDF(OCR) Settings	Smart Scan: On*, Off	Yes
PDF (Trace & Smooth) Settings	Num. of Char. for Doc. Name Setting: 1 to 24 characters; 24 characters* Outline Graphics: On*, Off Graphics Recognition Level: Normal*, Moderate, High Background Image Level: Data Size Priority, Normal*, Image Priority	Yes
Check Device Signature Certificate	Certificate Details: Certificate Verification	No
Check User Signature Certificate	Certificate Details: Certificate Verification	No
Default Screen for Send	Favorites Buttons, (Enlarged Display: On, Off*), One-touch Buttons, New Address*	No
TX Terminal ID	On*, Off Printing Position: Inside, Outside* Display Destination Name: On*, Off	Yes
Use Chunked Encoding with WebDav Sending	On*, Off	Yes

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
Gamma Value for YCbCr Send Jobs	Gamma 1.0, Gamma 1.4, Gamma 1.8*, Gamma 2.2	Yes
Initialize TX Settings	Initialize	No
Common Settings: RX Settings		
2-Sided Print	On, Off*	Yes
Select Drawer	Switch A: On*, Off Switch B: On*, Off Switch C: On*, Off Switch D: On*, Off	Yes
Receive Reduction	On*, Off RX Reduction: Auto*, Fixed Reduction Reduce %: 75 to 97% (in 1% increments); 90%* Reduce Direction: Vertical & Horizontal, Vertical Only*	Yes
Received Page Footer	On, Off*	Yes
2 On 1 Log	On, Off*	Yes
Gamma Value for YCbCr Received Jobs	Gamma 1.0, Gamma 1.4, Gamma 1.8*, Gamma 2.2	Yes

1.2.3.18 Mail Box Settings

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

* Indicates the default setting.

*1 Information is not delivered if a password is set for the inbox.

T-1-20

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
User Inboxes Settings	Inbox No.: 00 to 99 Register Inbox Name: 24 characters maximum Password: Seven digits maximum Time until Document Auto Erase: 0 (Off), 1, 2, 3, 6, 12 hours, 1, 2, 3*, 7, 30 days URL Send Settings Print upon storing from the printer driver: On, Off* Initialize	Yes*1
Standard Scan Settings	Store, Initialize	No
Confidential Fax Inboxes Settings	Inbox No.: 00 to 49 Register Inbox Name: 24 characters maximum Password: Seven digits maximum URL Send Settings Initialize	Yes*1

1.2.3.19 Address Book Settings

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional equipment is attached.

T-1-21

Item	Settings	Device Information Delivery Item
Register Address	Register New Address, Edit, Erase	Yes
Register Address Book Name	Register Name	Yes
One-touch Buttons	Register/Edit (from 001 to 200), Erase	Yes



- When authentication is enabled for an SDL or SSO login service, the system administrator setup mode cannot be used if the user type is a general user.
- When authentication is enabled for an SDL or SSO login service, the system administrator setup mode may be used if the user type is an administrator. (If a dialog box appears, asking you to type in the appropriate administrative group ID and system administration ID No., do so.)

1.2.3.20 User Administrator Mode

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This part outlines the user administrator mode.

User administrator mode provides the adjustment function to User Administrator, who is superior to general user, and the function is classified mainly into 2 settings.

1. Device Management Setting

This setting enables to adjust color characteristics such as gradation, toner density, color and image quality, to realize an optimal image even under the influence of every variation factor such as environmental change and aged deterioration.

This setting can be found in the following menu tree of the panel setting display:

- Initial Setup/Save Key > System Control Settings > Device Management Settings

The details of each setting are shown in the following table.

T-1-22

Panel Display	Item	Setting	Objective	Use/Suppl.	Service Mode
Default Display	Auto Gradation Adjustment	Full Adjust./Quick Adjust./ Auto Gradation Adjust Method	In a copy/ print job without special settings, adjust gradation, density or hue to reproduce the original image.		
Default Display	Shading Correction	Correction with Densitometer/ Visual Correction/ Correction by Print server*2	Improve minor shading typically appeared in the halftone area of a printed image.		
Default Display	Dither Pattern Setting (to Switch Dither)	Gradation (For Printer)/ Resolution (For Printer)/ Reproduction of Scan Image: Newspaper/ Gradation/ High gradation/ Color tone/ High resolution/ Reproduction of Scan Image, Compatible	Select a dither pattern. Dither means a technique to express colors/gradation by small dots. The source data for a dotted image is called 'dither pattern'. By changing this, expression of a printed image can be modified.	Change this setting if Sample G of the faulty images appears. The setting of Resolution should be changed from 'High Resolution' to 'High Detail' or 'Hue'.	
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Color Balance	Fine-adjustment of toner density each for Yellow, Magenta, Cyan and Black: -8 to 0* to +8 (by 1)	Adjust the color balance or fine-adjust the default density for Yellow, Magenta, Cyan and Black.		
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Exposure Recalibration when Scanning	Left edge: 0~5 (*0)Right edge: 0~5 (*0)		This will be enabled after the main power is turned OFF/ON.	
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Density Adjustment Mode	A*/B Modes (refer to *3)	Switch the methods to control toner density.		
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Refresh the Fixing Roller	Start key	Slightly glossy lines in parallel of the feed direction sometimes appear on the both ends of wider-width paper after copying/ printing over hundreds sheets of narrower-width paper (ex: using A3 after A4R). Specifically in the high-density area on heavy/coated paper, cloudlike glossy shading appears occasionally. Refreshing the fixing roller and/or wiping the surface of the roller can improve these symptoms.	This setting should be set to ON if Sample F of the faulty images appears.	
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Fixing Roller Auto Refresh Level	Level: -5 to +5 (0*)	The fixing roller is automatically refreshed after a certain copies are printed. This mode provides adjustment in refreshing frequency and time level for refreshing operation.		
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Color Cast Correction	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black: -2 to +2 (0*)	When 'color cast' is seen in blank area, this can be corrected by color with this function.	This setting should be set to ON when Sample D of the faulty images appears.	COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT > VBACK-Y ,M, C, K (Level2)
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Tail End Color Fading/ Graininess Correction	ON/OFF*	This mode may improve the output quality of halftone images when color fading occurs at the tail end of the image to the feeding direction. It can be used to eliminate the tiny white grainy dots that appear on the output paper when copying or printing halftone images.	This setting should be set to ON when Sample A (tail end color fading) or Sample C (white grains) of the faulty images appears.	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > VCONT-UP (Level2)
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	White Gap Correction	1 to 4 (3*)	If the dark colored area follows right after the halftone area, 'white gap' can be appeared near the border in the halftone area. This can be improved with this function.	This setting should be set to ON when Sample B of the faulty images appears.	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > ADJ-BLNK (Level2)
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	2-sided Print Image Uneven Gloss Correction	ON/OFF*	When two-sided copying or printing is made for high density images on coated paper, gloss unevenness that looks like sprinkled fine sands may occur on the side that first passes through the fixing unit. You can use this feature to reduce the gloss unevenness. However, it may take a few moments to output the copy or print because it takes time for the fixing unit to cool down after copying or printing the first side.	This setting should be set to ON when Sample E of the faulty images appears. This will be enabled after the main power is turned OFF/ON.	COPIER > OPTION > USER > FX-BC-SW

Panel Display	Item	Setting	Objective	Use/Suppl.	Service Mode
Displayed by Service Switch (*1)	Tail End White Patch Correction	ON*/OFF	When paper with curls or paper that tends to curl is used for 2-Sided copying, toner may not be applied on the tail end of the paper and the area where toner is not applied may remain white. Although this can be reduced by using the Tail End White Patch Correction mode, the colors at the tail end of the paper may appear light when printing images of intense colors.	The setting is possibly set to OFF if Sample H of the faulty images appears. This should be set to ON.	COPIER > OPTION > 2TR-RVON (Level2)
Default Display	Clear Toner Density Adjustment	Light/Normal*/Heavy	This mode is to specify the clear toner application amount in 5 color full print.		
Default Display	Clear Coat Form Composition Coating Mode	ON*/OFF	This mode is whether to set the clear toner coating process on full page with the paper that is already printed (pre-printed media). Set this function to ON to execute the coating process.	This is only effective for post-clear process.	

*: Indicates the default setting.

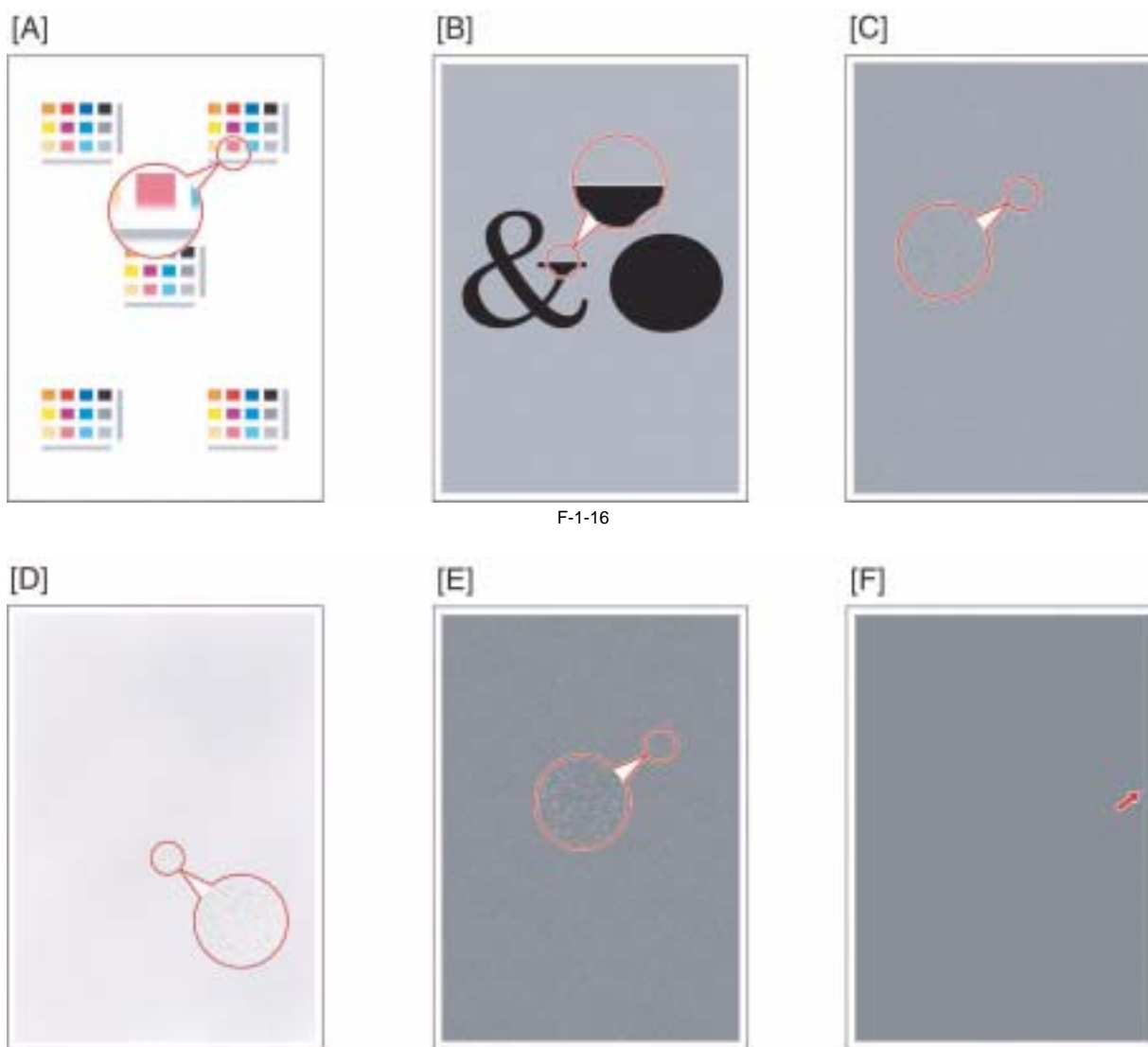
*1: This item is displayed by executing service mode (COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMAG-ADJ)

*2: Correction with the print server is valid only when the Image PRESS Server Q1 is mounted.

*3:

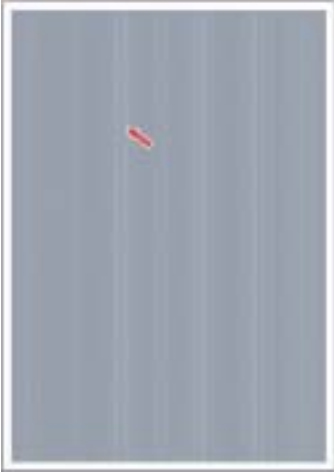
A mode: restriction on the amount of toner deposit is 'Yes'. (Although adjusting the color balance or performing fine adjustment for the density, the amount of toner deposit is restricted.)

B mode: restriction on the amount of toner deposit is 'No'. (When adjusting the color balance or performing fine adjustment for the density, the amount of toner deposit may exceeds its limit.)



F-1-17

[G]



[H]



[I]



F-1-18

2. Paper Type Management Settings

This feature enables to print with most optimal printing characteristics for each paper type by registering the characteristics of each paper type in the printer engine. Furthermore, parameters such as for curl correction and image position control can be changed for each paper type.

This setting can be found in the following menu tree of the panel setting display.

- Initial Setup / Save key > System Control Settings > Paper Type Management Settings

The details of each setting are shown in the following table.

T-1-23

Display	Item	Settings	Purpose	Remedy	Service Mode
Default display	Name	Enter any name.			
Default display	Category	Editing prohibited (standard/custom)			
Default display	Grammage	64 to 256 g / m2	To register the thickness of the paper.		
Default display	Type	Normal* / Index paper / Punched paper	To register the style of the paper.		
Default display	Surface property	High-quality paper / recycle paper / coated paper (one-side) / coated paper (both-sides) / embossed paper / vellum paper / film / label / cotton paper	To register the type of the paper.		
Default display	Creep (Displacement) Correct.	0.00* to 2.00 mm	To control the degree of displacement for each type of paper when printed documents are bound up by the saddle stitch.		
Default display	Color	White*/Blue/Cream/Golden Yellow/Gray/Green/Ivory/Orange/Pink/Red/Yellow/Clear/Other			
Default display	Curl correction	curl down / curl up (factory default: 0)	degree of curling of the paper.	The degree of curling has 7 levels upward and 7 more levels downward.	
Default display	Uneven Gloss Correction	-3 to +2, (factory default: 0): increase gloss- : decrease gloss	To adjust glossiness of paper. Changing value switches the fixing temperature.		
Default display	Media floatation fan air volume control	weak / medium / strong (factory default: medium)	The air volume at which the paper is fanned can be modified when faulty feeding occurs while using the side paper deck - AA1 or when uneven transfer occurs.	Select [strong] when jam or double feeding occurs, and [weak] when paper gets curled more than necessary or when uneven transfer occurs.	
Displayed by service switch (*1)	Image position control	test print output / leading edge registration position control / left end registration position control	To controls the image position on the paper.		
Displayed by service switch (*1)	Secondary transfer voltage control	+ / - 10 (factory default: 0)	To control the secondary transfer bias when faulty image (uneven density, white spot, etc.) occurs.	Change the value to a native value. (The value 1 in this case translates to 100V.)	COPIER > OPTION > BODY > 2TR-RVON

*1: This item is displayed by executing service mode (COPIER > OPTION > BODY > IMAG-ADJ)

1.2.4 User Maintenance

1.2.4.1 Cleaning

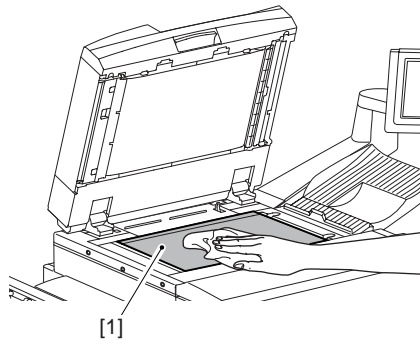
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

It is important to keep the machine clean so that its performance may be maintained at a specific level.

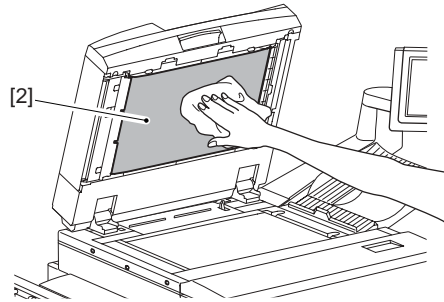
Advise the user to clean the following parts on a periodical basis (about once a month).

1. Copyboard Glass/Original Feed Belt

Clean the copyboard glass [1] and the original feed belt [2] with a cloth moistened with water or solution of mild detergent (well-wrung); then, dry wipe them with a soft, dry cloth.



F-1-19



F-1-20

1.2.4.2 Inspection

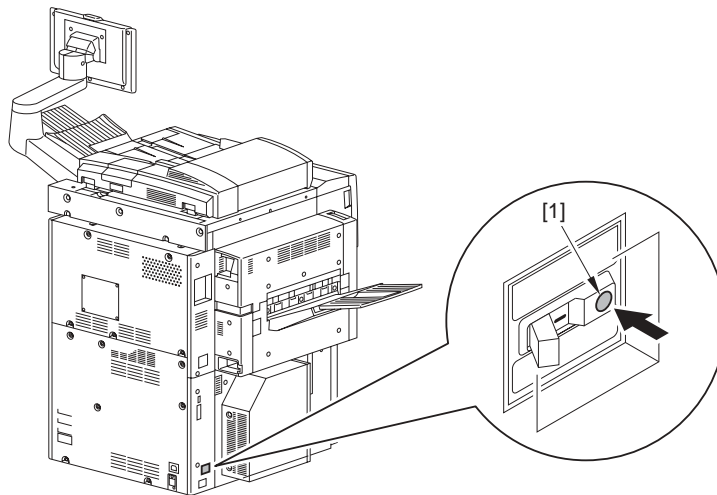
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

The machine is equipped with a breaker for detection of over-current and leakage current for enhanced safety, and it is important to check and see that the breaker operates properly.

Advise the user to check the breaker on a periodical basis (about once a month), and keep a record of inspection.

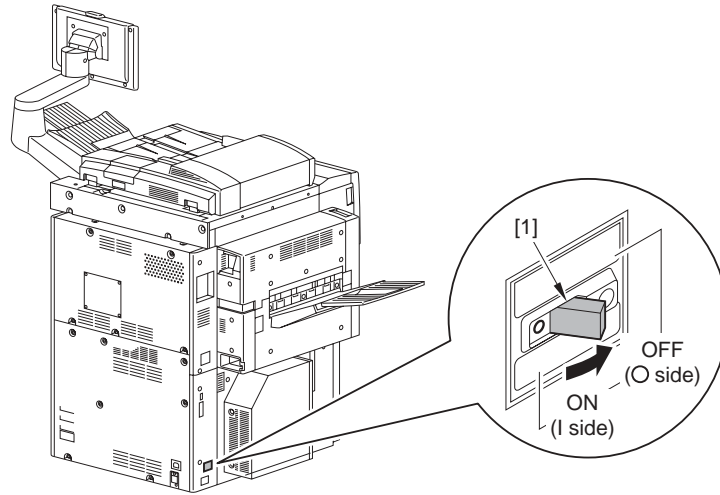
Go through the following:

- 1) Turn off the main power switch.
- 2) Push the test button [1] of the breaker with the tip of a ball-point pen or the like.



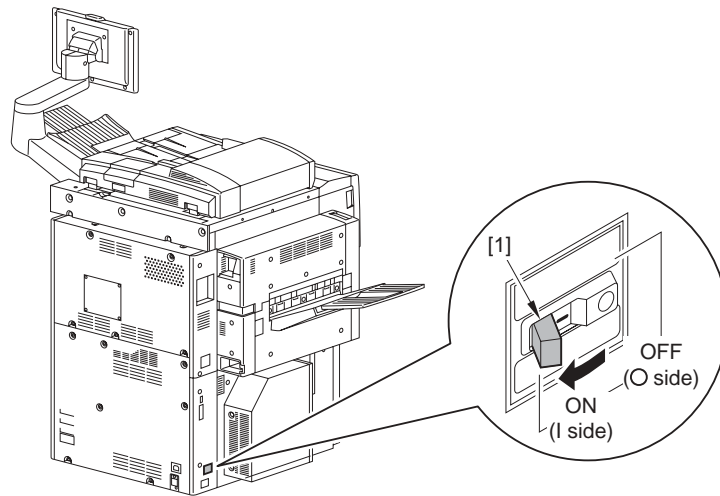
F-1-21

- 3) See that the breaker switch [1] shifts to the OFF side.



F-1-22

4) Shift the breaker switch [1] back to the ON side.



F-1-23



Check to be sure that the breaker switch is on the ON side. If it has stopped between the ON and OFF sides, push it back to the OFF side and then to the ON side.

5) Turn on the main power switch.

1.2.4.3 Inspection

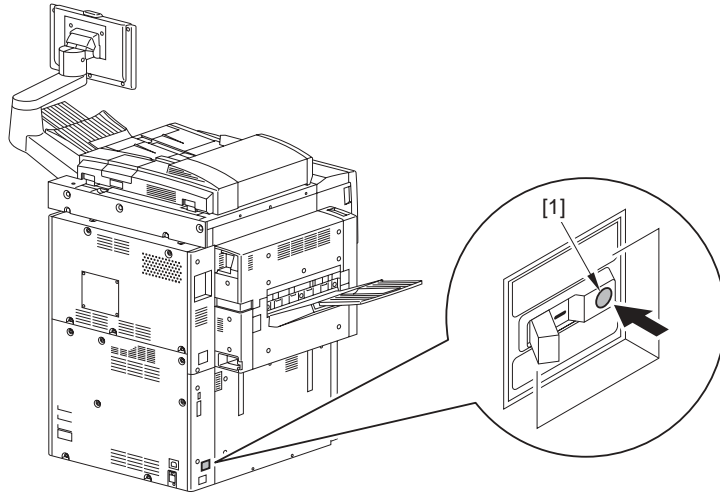
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The machine is equipped with a breaker for detection of over-current and leakage current for enhanced safety, and it is important to check and see that the breaker operates properly.

Advise the user to check the breaker on a periodical basis (about once a month), and keep a record of inspection.

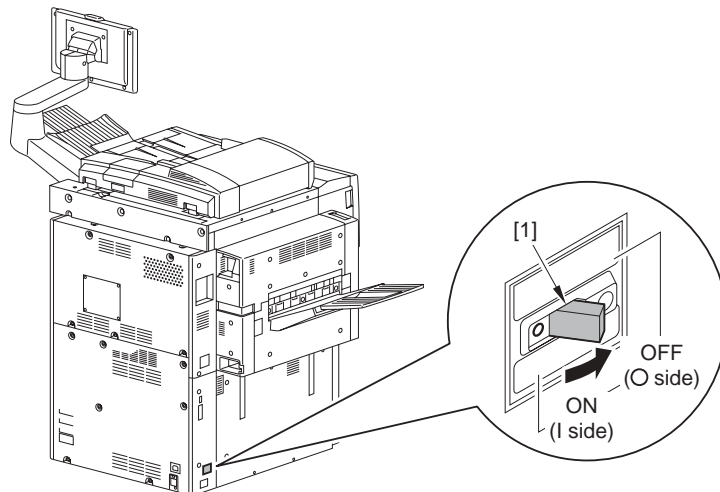
Go through the following:

- 1) Turn off the main power switch.
- 2) Push the test button [1] of the breaker with the tip of a ball-point pen or the like.



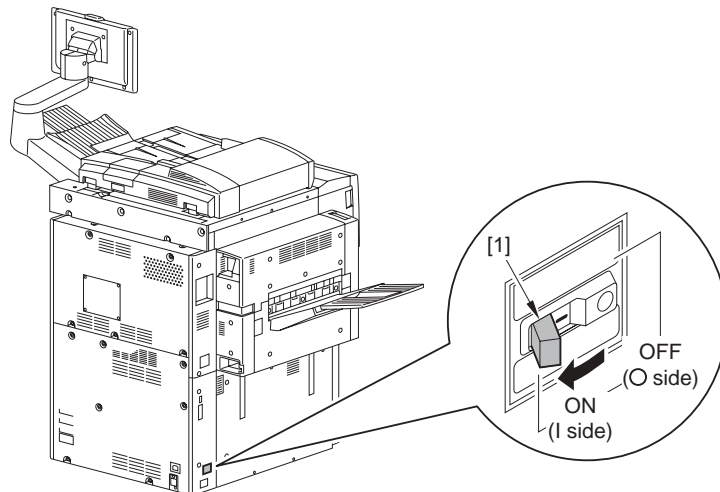
F-1-24

- 3) See that the breaker switch [1] shifts to the OFF side.



F-1-25

- 4) Shift the breaker switch [1] back to the ON side.



F-1-26



Check to be sure that the breaker switch is on the ON side. If it has stopped between the ON and OFF sides, push it back to the OFF side and then to the ON side.

5) Turn on the main power switch.

1.2.5 Safety

1.2.5.1 Safety of the Machine's Laser Mechanism

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Laser radiation can prove to be harmful to the human body. The machine's laser scanning system is completely sealed by means of a protective housing and external covers so that its light will not leak outside the machine as long as the machine is used normally.

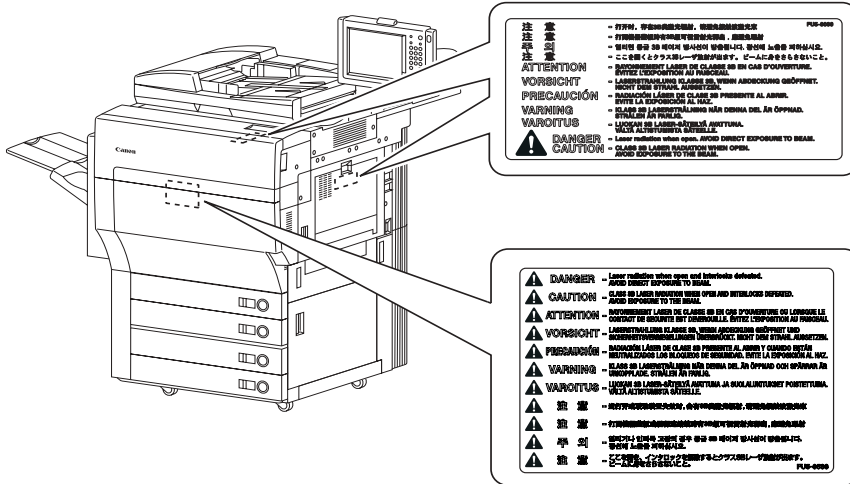
1.2.5.2 CDRH Regulations

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

0012-1789 The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) of the US Food and Drug Administrator put into forth regulations that relate to laser products on August 2, 1976.

These regulations apply to laser products produced on and after August 1, 1976, and prohibit the sale of laser products without certification.

The following labels certify compliance with the CDRH regulations, and must be attached to all laser products that are sold in the US.



F-1-27

Reference:

The text of the label may differ among models.

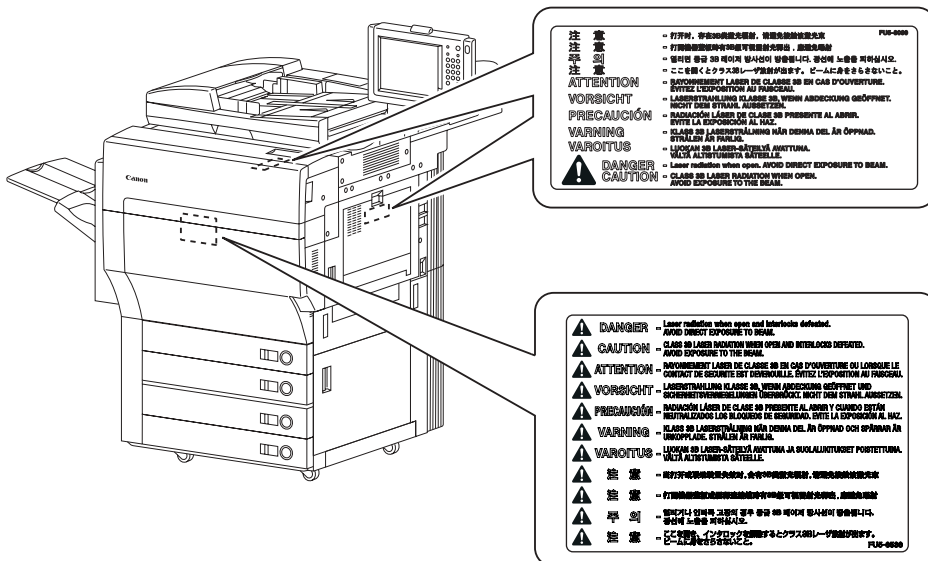
1.2.5.3 Handling of the Laser Assembly

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

! Points to Note When Servicing the Area Around the Laser Scanner

- Do not use a screwdriver or tools that have a high level of reflectance in the laser path.
- Remove watches and rings before starting the work. (They can reflect the laser beam, possibly hitting the eye.)

The machine's laser light is red, and its covers that can reflect laser light are identified by means of a warning label (Figure). If you must detach a cover showing the label, be sure to take extra caution during the work.
The machine's laser scanner unit cannot be adjusted in the field.



F-1-28

1.2.5.4 Safety of the Toner

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Toner in General

Toner is a non-toxic material made up of plastic, iron, and small amounts of dye.



Do not throw toner into fire. Doing so can lead to explosion.

2. Contact with Toner

- Toner on the skin or clothes must be removed using dry tissue and then washed with water.
- The use of warm water must be avoided, doing so will cause the toner to turn gel-like and to permanently fuse with the fibers of the clothes.
- Contact with vinyl must also be avoided, as toner can readily react.

1.2.5.5 Notes when handling a lithium battery

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



1. RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.
2. Wenn mit dem falschen Typ ausgewechselt, besteht Explosionsgefahr. Gebrauchte Batterien gemäß der Anleitung beseitigen.

1.2.6 Product Specifications

1.2.6.1 Machine Specifications

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

Copyboard	fixed
Body	console
Light source type	xenon lamp
Lens type	array (fixed focus)
Photosensitive medium	OPC drum (84-mm dia.)
Image reading method	light-receiving element (RGB line CCD)
Reproduction method	indirect electrophotography
Exposure method	2-beam laser
Copy density adjustment function	auto or manual
Charging method	corona
Development method	dry
Development method (color)	dry, 2-component, toner projection
Development method (mono)	dry, 2-component, toner projection
Attraction method	none
Transfer method	intermediate transfer
Transfer method (primary transfer)	intermediate transfer belt
Transfer method (secondary transfer)	roller
Separation method	curvature + static eliminator
Pickup method	cassette/manual feeder
Cassette pickup method	separation retard
Paper deck pickup method	no standard deck
Multifeeder pickup method	center reference, simplified retard
Drum cleaning method	blade + brush
Transfer cleaning method	blade + brush roller
Fixing method	belt + roller fixing
Delivery method	face-down (if 1-on-1 copying, face-up)
Contrast adjustment function	auto
Toner level detection function	yes
Toner type	Y, M, C, Bk (non-magnetic negative)
Toner supply type	toner container
Original type	sheet, book, 3-D object (2 kg max.)
Maximum original size	297mmX432mm
Original size detection function	combination of fixed sensor and reading CCD; copyboard cover angle

Reproduction ratio	100% (1:1), reduce (1:0.250, 1:0.500, 1:0.611, 1:0.707, 1:0.816, 1:0.865), enlarge (1:1.154, 1:1.224, 1:1.414, 1:2.000, 1:4.000), zoom (1:0.250 to 4.000) (between 25% and 400%, in 1% increments)
Warm-up time	11 min 40 sec or less
Print area	Maximum imaging guarantee area: 307X466.5mm Maximum printing area: 323X476.6 mm (single-sided), 316X476.6 mm (double-sided)
Image margin (leading edge)	4.0+1.5/-1.0mm
Image margin (trailing edge)	2.0+1.5/-1.5mm
Image margin (left/right)	2.5+1.5/-1.5mm (if double-sided, 2.5 +2.0/-2.0 mm)
Non-image width (leading edge)	4.0+1.5/-1.0mm (if ADF in use: 4.5+1.8/-1.8mm)
Non-image width (trailing edge)	2.0+1.5/-1.5mm (if ADF in use: 2.0+1.8/-1.8mm)
Non-image width (left/right)	2.5+1.5/-1.5mm (if ADF in use: 2.5+2.0/-2.0mm)
Number of gradations	reader: 256; engine: 256
Reading resolution	600dpiX600dpi
Printing resolution	1200dpi(equivalent) X 1200dpi
First print time	mono: 7.6 sec (A4, plain; 64 to 105 g/m2) full color: 14.1 sec (A4, plain; 64 to 105 g/m2)
Print speed (A4)	mono: about 60 prints/min (A4/LTR; 64t o 209g/m2) full color: about 14 prints/min (A4/LTR, pain; 64 to 105 g/m2)
Cassette paper size	cassette: A5R, B5, B5R, A4, A4R, B4, A3,279mmX432mm(11X17), 305mmX457mm(12X18), 330mmX483mm(13X19), 320mmX450mm(SRA3), LDR, LGL, LTR, LTRR, Exective(horizontal), STMTR
Paper deck paper size	no standard deck
Multifeeder paper size	100mmX148mm(min.)to 330mmX483mm(max.)
Cassette paper type	cassette: plain paper (64 to 105 g/m2), heavy paper (up to 209 g/m2), recycled paper (64 to 105 g/m2), colored paper (80 g/m2), index stock (80 g/m2), transparency
Multifeeder tray paper type	plain paper (64 to 105 g/m2), heavy paper (up to 256 g/m2), recycled paper (64 to 105 g/m2), colored paper (80 g/m2), Jpn postcard (gvn, 2-pane), 4-pane, transparency, tracing paper, label stock
Paper deck paper type	no standard deck
Duplex paper type	plain paper (64 to 105 g/m2), recycled paper (80 g/m2), colored paper (80 g/m2), heavy paper (up to 209 g/m2; if color print, up to 209 g/m2; if BW, up to 209 g/m2)
Cassette capacity	600 sheets (64 g/m2 paper) 550 sheets (75 g/m2 paper) 550 sheets (80 g/m2 paper)
Multifeeder tray capacity	100 sheets (64g/m2 paper) 100 sheets (75 g/m2 paper) 100 sheets (80 g/m2 paper)
Paper deck capacity	no standard deck
Duplex method	through-path
Delivery tray stack	250 sheets (A4, plain paper; 80 g/m2), 50 sheets (transparency)
Continuous reproduction	1 to 999 prints
Memory	main controller RAM: 1024 MB (1536 max.)
Hard disk	80GB
Low-power mode	default: 15 min; range: 10 to240 min
Auto power off	default: 60 min; range: 10 to 240 min
Auto gradation correction	yes
Operating environment (temperature range)	15 to 27.5 deg C
Operating environment (humidity range)	25% to 75 %RH
Operating environment (atmospheric pressure)	810.6 to 1013.3 hpa (0.8 to 1.0 atm)
Noise	(sound power level) in standby: 55 dB; during copying: 75 dB
Power supply rating	100V/120V/230V
Power consumption (maximum)	1800W or less
Power consumption	in standby: 450 Wh (reference only) during continuous printing: 1300 Wh (reference only)
Ozone	0.01ppm
Dimensions	855mm(W) X 898mm(D) X 1042mm(H) (The control panel is not included.)
Weight	310kg (approx.; including printer, Reader-H1)

1.2.6.2 Machine Specifications

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Copyboard	fixed
------------------	-------

Body	console
Light source type	xenon lamp
Lens type	array (fixed focus)
Photosensitive medium	OPC drum (84-mm dia.)
Image reading method	light-receiving element (RGB line CCD)
Reproduction method	indirect electrophotography
Exposure method	2-beam laser
Copy density adjustment function	auto or manual
Charging method	corona
Development method	dry
Development method (color)	dry, 2-component, toner projection
Development method (mono)	dry, 2-component, toner projection
Attraction method	none
Transfer method	intermediate transfer
Transfer method (primary transfer)	intermediate transfer belt
Transfer method (secondary transfer)	roller
Separation method	curvature + static eliminator
Pickup method	cassette/manual feeder
Cassette pickup method	separation retard
Paper deck pickup method	no standard deck
Multifeeder pickup method	center reference, simplified retard
Drum cleaning method	blade + brush
Transfer cleaning method	blade + brush roller
Fixing method	belt +roller fixing
Delivery method	face-down (if 1-on-1 copying, face-up)
Contrast adjustment function	auto
Toner level detection function	yes
Toner type	Y, M, C, Bk,L (non-magnetic negative)
Toner supply type	toner container
Original type	sheet, book, 3-D object (2 kg max.)
Maximum original size	297mm X 432mm
Original size detection function	combination of fixed sensor and reading CCD; copyboard cover angle
Reproduction ratio	100% (1:1), reduce (1:0.250, 1:0.500, 1:0.611, 1:0.707, 1:0.816, 1:0.865), enlarge (1:1.154, 1:1.224, 1:1.414, 1:2.000, 1:4.000), zoom (1:0.250 to 4.000) (between 25% and 400%, in 1% increments)
Warm-up time	11 min 40 sec or less
Print area	Maximum imaging guarantee area: 307 X 466.5mm Maximum printing area: 323 X 476.6 mm (single-sided), 316 X 476.6 mm (double-sided)
Image margin (leading edge)	4.0+1.5/-1.0mm
Image margin (trailing edge)	2.0+1.5/-1.5mm
Image margin (left/right)	2.5+1.5/-1.5mm (if double-sided, 2.5 +2.0/-2.0 mm)
Non-image width (leading edge)	4.0+1.5/-1.0mm (if ADF in use: 4.5+1.8/-1.8mm)
Non-image width (trailing edge)	2.0+1.5/-1.5mm (if ADF in use: 2.0+1.8/-1.8mm)
Non-image width (left/right)	2.5+1.5/-1.5mm (if ADF in use: 2.5+2.0/-2.0mm)
Number of gradations	reader: 256; engine: 256
Reading resolution	600dpi X 600dpi
Printing resolution	1200dpi (equivalent) X 1200dpi
First print time	monocolor (Bk), monocolor (L): approx. 8.2 sec (A4, plain; 64 to 105 g/m ²) 4 colors: approx. 14.5 sec (A4, plain; 64 to 105 g/m ²)
Print speed (A4)	monocolor (Bk), monocolor (L): about 60 prints/min (A4/LTR; 64 to 105 g/m ²) 4 colors: approx. 14.2 prints/min (A4/LTR, pain; 64 to 105 g/m ²)
Cassette paper size	cassette: A5R, B5, B5R, A4, A4R, B4, A3,279mm X 432mm (11 X 17), 305mm X 457mm(12 X 18), 330mm X 483mm (13 X 19), 320mm X 450mm (SRA3), LDR, LGL, LTR, LTRR, Exective (horizontal), STMTR
Paper deck paper size	no standard deck
Multifeeder paper size	100mm X 148mm (min.) to 330mm X 483mm (max.)
Cassette paper type	cassette: plain paper (64 to 105 g/m ²), heavy paper (up to 209 g /m ²), recycled paper (64 to 105 g/m ²), colored paper (80 g/m ²), index stock (80 g/m ²), transparency
Multifeeder tray paper type	plain paper (64 to 105 g/m ²), heavy paper (up to 256 g/m ²), recycled paper (64 to 105 g/m ²), colored paper (80 g/m ²), Jpn postcard (gvn, 2-pane), 4-pane, transparency, tracing paper, label stock
Paper deck paper type	no standard deck

Duplex paper type	plain paper (64 to 105 g/m ²), recycled paper (80 g/m ²), colored paper (80 g/m ²), heavy paper (up to 209 g/m ² ; if color print, up to 209 g/m ² ; if BW, up to 209 g/m ²)
Cassette capacity	600 sheets (64 g/m ² paper) 550 sheets (75 g/m ² paper) 550 sheets (80 g/m ² paper)
Multifeeder tray capacity	100 sheets (64g/m ² paper) 100 sheets (75 g/m ² paper) 100 sheets (80 g/m ² paper)
Paper deck capacity	no standard deck
Duplex method	through-path
Delivery tray stack	250 sheets (A4, plain paper; 80 g/m ²), 50 sheets (transparency)
Continuous reproduction	1 to 999 prints
Memory	main controller RAM: 1024 MB (1536 max.)
Hard disk	80GB
Low-power mode	default: 15 min; range: 10 to 240 min
Auto power off	default: 60 min; range: 10 to 240 min
Auto gradation correction	yes
Operating environment (temperature range)	15 to 27.5 deg C
Operating environment (humidity range)	25% to 75 %RH
Operating environment (atmospheric pressure)	810.6 to 1013.3 hpa (0.8 to 1.0 atm)
Noise	(sound power level) in standby: 55 dB; during copying: 75 dB
Power supply rating	100V/120V/230V
Power consumption (maximum)	1800W or less
Power consumption	in standby: 450 Wh (reference only) during continuous printing: 1300 Wh (reference only)
Ozone	0.01ppm
Dimensions	855mm (W) X 898mm (D) X 1042mm (H) (The control panel is not included.)
Weight	310kg (approx.; including printer, Reader-H1)

1.2.7 Function List

1.2.7.1 Printing Speed

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

T-1-24

Paper type	Paper size	Cassette		Manual feeder		Auto duplexing (cassette)	
		color	mono	color	mono	color	mono
Plain paper (64 to 105 g/m ²)	A3	7	30	7	20	3.5	15
	279mmX432mm (11"X17")	7	30	7	20	3.5	15
	305mmX458mm (12"X18")	4	26	4	17	1.8	6
	320mmX450mm (SRA3)	4	26	4	17	1.8	6
	330mmX482mm (13"X19")	4	26	4	17	1.8	6
	B4,LGL	7	35	7	23	3.5	16
	A4R, LTRR, B5R	7	43	7	29	3.5	17
	A4, LTR, B5	14.2	60	7	35	7	30
	A5R, STMTR	14.2	30	7	17	7	15
Heavy paper 1, 2 (105 to 216 g/m ²)	A3	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	1.3	1.3
	279mmX432mm (11"X17")	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	1.3	1.3
	305mmX458mm (12"X18")	2	2	2	2	1	1
	320mmX450mm (SRA3)	2	2	2	2	1	1
	330mmX482mm (13"X19")	2	2	2	2	1	1
	B4, LGL	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	1.3	1.3
	A4R, LTRR, B5R	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	1.3	1.3
	A4, LTR, B5	6	6	3	3	3	3
	A5R, STMTR	6	6	3	3	3	3

Paper type	Paper size	Cassette		Manual feeder		Auto duplexing (cassette)	
		color	mono	color	mono	color	mono
Heavy paper 3 (216 to 256 g/m2) if color, 1/3 speed	A3	---	---	2.5	2.5	---	---
	279mmX432mm (11"X17")	---	---	2.5	2.5	---	---
	305mmX458mm (12"X18")	---	---	2	2	---	---
	320mmX450mm (SRA3)	---	---	2	2	---	---
	330mmX482mm (13"X19")	---	---	2	2	---	---
	B4, LGL	---	---	2.5	2.5	---	---
	A4R, LTRR, B5R	---	---	2.5	2.5	---	---
	A4, LTR, B5	---	---	3	3	---	---
	A5R, STMTR	---	---	3	3	---	---
Transparency	A4, LTR	---	---	---	---	---	---
Postcard	4-pane postcard (A4R,non-default)	---	---	3	3	---	---
	2-pane postcard (AA5R,non-default)	---	---	3	3	---	---
	Jpo gvn postcard (A6R,non-default)	---	---	3	3	---	---
Tab stock	A4, LTR	2.5	2.5	---	---	---	---

(unit: prints/min)

1.2.7.2 Printing Speed

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-1-25

Paper type	Paper size	Cassette			Manual feeder			Auto duplexing (cassette)		
		color	single color (Bk)	single color (L)	color	single color (Bk)	single color (L)	color	single color (Bk)	single color (L)
Plain paper (64g/m2 to 79g/m2)	A3	7	30	30	7	20	20	3.5	15	15
	279mm x 432mm (11" x 17")	7	30	30	7	20	20	3.5	15	15
	305mm x 458mm (12" x 18")	4	26	26	4	17	17	1.8	6	6
	320mm x 450mm (SRA3)	4	26	26	4	17	17	1.8	6	6
	330mm x 482mm (13" x 19")	4	26	26	4	17	17	1.8	6	6
	B4, LGL	7	35	30	7	23	23	3.5	16	15
	A4R, LTRR	7	43	30	7	29	29	3.5	17	15
	B5R	7	43	30	7	29	23	3.5	17	15
	A4, LTR, B5R	14.2	60	60	7	35	35	7	30	30
A5R, STMTR	14.2	30	30	7	17	17	7	15	15	
Plain paper (80g/m2 to 105g/m2)	A3	7	30	20	7	20	14	3.5	15	10
	279mm x 432mm (11" x 17")	7	30	20	7	20	14	3.5	15	10
	305mm x 458mm (12" x 18")	4	26	17	4	17	12	1.8	6	6
	320mm x 450mm (SRA3)	4	26	17	4	17	12	1.8	6	6
	330mm x 482mm (13" x 19")	4	26	17	4	17	12	1.8	6	6
	B4, LGL	7	35	23	7	23	16	3.5	16	11
	A4R, LTRR	7	43	19	7	29	13	3.5	17	9
	B5R	7	43	16	7	29	11	3.5	17	7
	A4, LTR, B5R	14.2	60	40	7	35	24	7	30	20
A5R, STMTR	14.2	30	20	7	17	12	7	15	10	
Heavy paper 1, 2 (105g/m2 to 209g/m2)	A3	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	1.3	1.3	1.3
	279mm x 432mm (11" x 17")	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	1.3	1.3	1.3
	305mm x 458mm (12" x 18")	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	1	1
	320mm x 450mm (SRA3)	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	1	1
	330mm x 482mm (13" x 19")	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	1	1
	B4, LGL	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	1.3	1.3	1.3
	A4R, LTRR, B5R	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	1.3	1.3	1.3
	A4, LTR, B5	6	6	6	3	3	3	3	3	3
	A5R, STMTR	6	6	6	3	3	3	3	3	3

Paper type	Paper size	Cassette			Manual feeder			Auto duplexing (cassette)		
		color	single color (Bk)	single color (L)	color	single color (Bk)	single color (L)	color	single color (Bk)	single color (L)
Heavy paper (209g/m ² to 256g/m ²)	A3	---	---	---	2.5	2.5	2.5	---	---	---
	279mm x 432mm (11" x 17")	---	---	---	2.5	2.5	2.5	---	---	---
	305mm x 458mm (12" x 18")	---	---	---	2	2	2	---	---	---
	320mm x 450mm (SRA3)	---	---	---	2	2	2	---	---	---
	330mm x 482mm (13" x 19")	---	---	---	2	2	2	---	---	---
	B4, LGL	---	---	---	2.5	2.5	2.5	---	---	---
	A4R, LTRR, B5R	---	---	---	2.5	2.5	2.5	---	---	---
	A4, LTR, B5	---	---	---	3	3	3	---	---	---
	A5R, STMTR	---	---	---	3	3	3	---	---	---
Transparency	A4, LTR	6	6	6	3	3	3	---	---	---
Postcard	4-pane postcard (A4R, non-default)	---	---	---	3	3	3	---	---	---
	2-pane postcard (AA5R, non-default)	---	---	---	3	3	3	---	---	---
	Jpo gvn postcard (A6R, non-default)	---	---	---	3	3	3	---	---	---
Tab stock	A4, LTR	2.5	2.5	2.5	---	---	---	---	---	---

(unit: prints/min)

1.2.7.3 Paper Types

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Paper type	Paper size	Source of paper	
		cassette	manual feeder
Plain paper (64 to 105 g/m ²) Eco paper Recycled paper Heavy paper 1, 2 (105 to 209 g/m ²)	A3, B4, A4R, 279mmX432mm (11"X17")LGL, LTRR	yes	yes
	A4, B5, LTR	yes	yes
	B5R	yes	yes
	A5R, STMTR	yes	yes
	305mmX457mm (12"X18"), 330mmX482mm (13"X19"), 320mmX450mm (SRA3)	yes	yes
	Executive	yes	yes
	18K, 16K, 16KR	yes	yes

Paper type		Paper size	Source of paper	
			cassette	manual feeder
Heavy paper 3 (209 to 256 g/m ²)		A3, B4, A4R, 279mmX432mm (11"X17")LGL, LTRR	no	yes
		305mmX457mm (12"X18"), 330mmX482mm (13"X19"), 320mmX450mm (SRA3)	no	yes
Special paper	transparency	A4, LTR	yes	yes
	Jpn postcard	gvn, 2-pane, 4-pane	no	yes
	label stock	A4, A4R, LTR, LTRR, B4	no	yes
	tab stock	A4, LTR	yes	no

Chapter 2 Installation

Contents

2.1 Making Pre-Checks	2-1
2.1.1 Points to Note About Installation (iR C7000 series)	2-1
2.1.2 Unpacking and Checking the Components	2-1
2.1.3 Selecting the Site of Installation	2-4
2.1.4 Checking the Contents	2-5
2.1.5 Checking the Contents	2-8
2.1.6 Checking the Contents	2-11
2.1.7 Checking the Contents	2-14
2.1.8 Checking the Contents	2-17
2.1.9 Checking the Contents	2-19
2.1.10 Checking the Contents	2-22
2.1.11 Checking the Contents	2-24
2.1.12 Checking the Contents	2-26
2.2 Unpacking and Installation	2-28
2.2.1 Points to Note Before Starting the Work	2-28
2.2.2 Unpacking	2-28
2.2.3 Mounting Scanning System	2-30
2.2.4 Locking the Primary Transfer Roller In Place	2-31
2.2.5 Decurler points to Note About Installation	2-31
2.2.6 Mounting the Decurler	2-31
2.2.7 Mounting the Delivery Tray	2-33
2.2.8 Attaching the Outer Delivery Roller Cover	2-33
2.2.9 Decurler Open / Close Angle Adjustment	2-34
2.2.10 Preparation for Mounting the Developing Assembly	2-35
2.2.11 Mounting the Balancing Cylinder	2-38
2.2.12 Mounting the Balancing Cylinder	2-40
2.2.13 Mounting the Developing Assembly	2-41
2.2.14 Mounting the Developing Assembly	2-44
2.2.15 Mounting the Process Unit	2-47
2.2.16 Mounting the Process Unit	2-50
2.2.17 Mounting the Fixing Assembly	2-53
2.2.18 Fitting the Control Panel in Place	2-55
2.2.19 Setting of Environmental Switch	2-60
2.2.20 Turning the Main Power ON	2-60
2.2.21 Turning the Main Power ON	2-61
2.2.22 Turning the Main Power ON	2-62
2.2.23 Turning the Main Power ON	2-63
2.2.24 Turning the Main Power ON	2-63
2.2.25 Turning the Main Power ON	2-64
2.2.26 Setting of Environmental Switch	2-64
2.2.27 Turning the Main Power ON	2-65
2.2.28 Points to Note at the Main Power OFF	2-65
2.2.29 Checking the Drum Temperature Switch	2-65
2.2.30 Setting the Toner container	2-66
2.2.31 Setting the Toner Container	2-66
2.2.32 Setting the Toner Container	2-68
2.2.33 Supplying Toner	2-68
2.2.34 Supplying Toner	2-69
2.2.35 Setting the Paper Cassette	2-69
2.2.36 Setting for K paper	2-69

2.2.37 Automatic Gradation Correction Setting	2-69
2.2.38 Automatic Gradation Correction Setting	2-70
2.2.39 Checking a Clear Color Image.....	2-70
2.2.40 Checking Image / Operation	2-70
2.2.41 Adjusting Left Margin of Image	2-70
2.2.42 Adjusting Margin along Leading Edge of Image	2-71
2.2.43 Cleaning the Charging Assembly	2-71
2.2.44 Cleaning the Charging Assembly	2-75
2.2.45 Other Works	2-79
2.2.46 Putting the Rating Plate	2-80
2.3 Unpacking and Installation (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	2-80
2.3.1 Points to Note About Installation (imagePRESS C1 series).....	2-80
2.3.2 Turning Off the Machine (imagePRESS C1 series).....	2-80
2.3.3 Installation Procedure (imagePRESS C1 series).....	2-80
2.3.4 Setting After the Installation (imagePRESS C1 series).....	2-83
2.4 Unpacking and Installation (imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	2-83
2.4.1 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the power of Host Machine (imagePRESS C7000 series)	2-83
2.4.2 Installation Procedure (imagePRSS C7000 series).....	2-84
2.4.3 Setting After the Installation(imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	2-92
2.5 Checking the Connection to the Network	2-92
2.5.1 Overview	2-92
2.5.2 Checking the Network Connection.....	2-92
2.5.3 Using the PING Command	2-92
2.5.4 Using the PING Command	2-92
2.5.5 Making a Check Using the Remote Host Address.....	2-92
2.6 Troubleshooting the Network.....	2-92
2.6.1 Overview	2-92
2.6.2 Checking the Connection of the Network Cable	2-92
2.6.3 Making a Check Using a Loopback Address	2-92
2.6.4 Making a Check Using a Local Host Address	2-92
2.7 Relocating the Machine.....	2-92
2.7.1 Operation for Moving the Machine	2-92
2.8 Installing the Card Reader.....	2-93
2.8.1 Points to Note About Installation.....	2-93
2.8.2 Checking the Contents	2-93
2.8.3 Pre-Settings	2-93
2.8.4 Turning Off the Machine	2-93
2.8.5 Installation Procedure	2-93
2.8.6 Installation Procedure in the imageWARE Accounting Manager (henceforth: iWAM) environment	2-95
2.8.7 Installation Procedure in the imageWARE Accounting Manager (henceforth: iWAM) Environment.....	2-95
2.9 Installing the Original Tray	2-95
2.9.1 Checking the Contents	2-95
2.9.2 Checking the Contents	2-95
2.9.3 Checking the Contents	2-96
2.9.4 Installing the Document Tray	2-96
2.10 Installing the Platen Cover	2-96
2.10.1 Checking the Contents	2-96
2.10.2 Installation Procedure	2-97
2.11 Installing the Key Switch Unit.....	2-97
2.11.1 Checking the Attachments	2-97
2.11.2 Turning Off the Machine	2-97
2.11.3 Installation Procedure	2-97
2.11.4 After Installing the Key Switch Unit	2-98
2.12 Installing the Reader Heater	2-98
2.12.1 Checking the Parts	2-98

2.12.2 Turning Off the Host Machine.....	2-98
2.12.3 Installation Procedure	2-98
2.13 Installing the Deck Heater.....	2-100
2.13.1 Checking the Contents (Heater PCB-F1).....	2-100
2.13.2 Checking the Parts to Install	2-101
2.13.3 Installing Procedure	2-101
2.13.4 Installing Procedure	2-108
2.14 Installing the Voice Guidance Kit.....	2-115
2.14.1 Points to Note at Installation.....	2-115
2.14.2 Checking Components	2-115
2.14.3 Checking Components	2-116
2.14.4 Turning off the Machine	2-117
2.14.5 Installation Procedure	2-117
2.15 Installing the Printer Cover	2-127
2.15.1 Points to Note About Installation.....	2-127
2.15.2 Checking the Contents	2-127
2.15.3 Turning Off the Machine	2-128
2.15.4 Installation Procedure	2-128
2.16 Installing the Serial Interface Kit	2-132
2.16.1 Points to Note About Installation.....	2-132
2.16.2 Checking the Contents	2-132
2.16.3 Turning Off the Machine	2-133
2.16.4 Installation Procedure	2-133

2.1 Making Pre-Checks

2.1.1 Points to Note About Installation (iR C7000 series)

Color Image Reader-H1

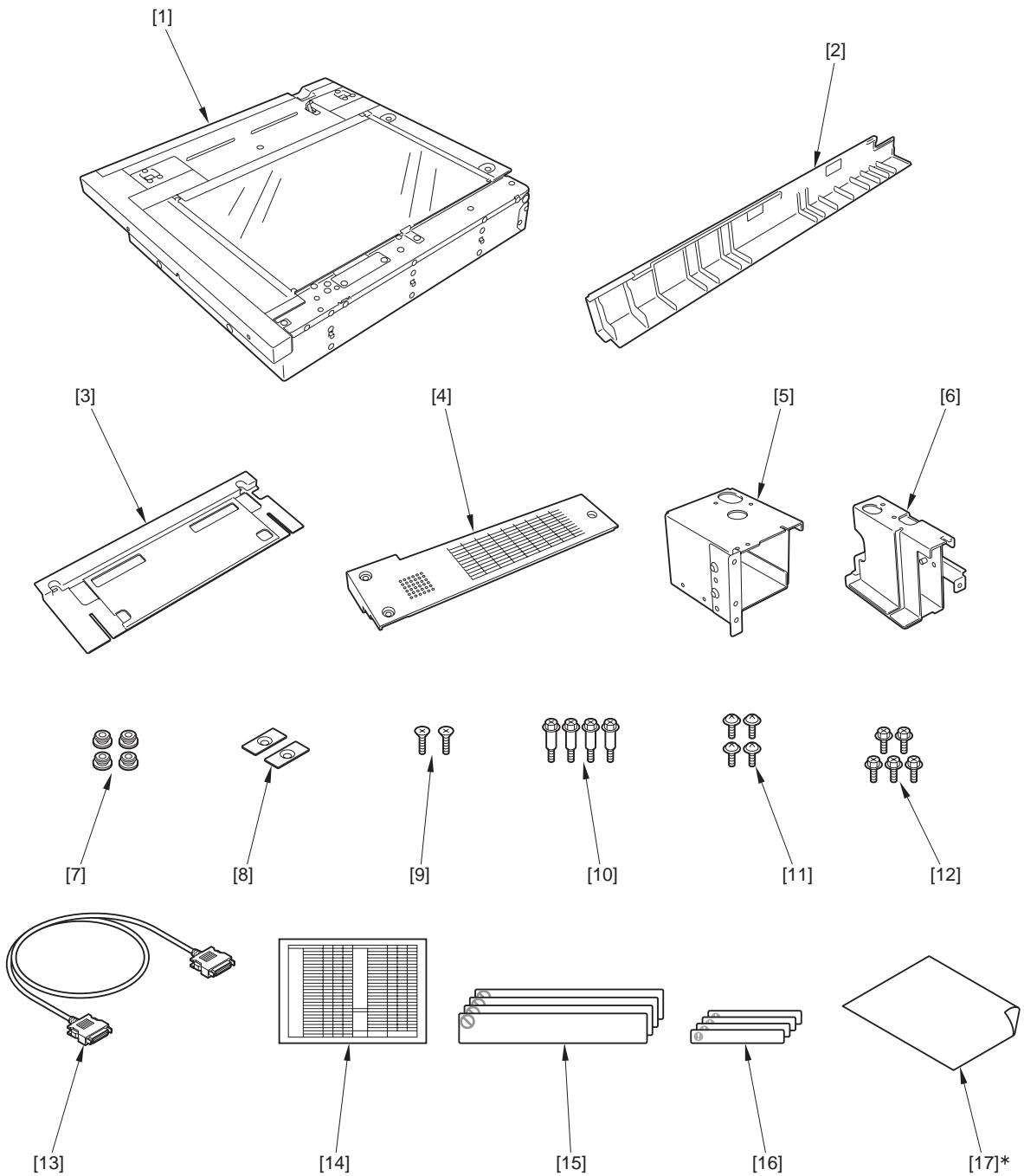
⚠

- To install the equipment, the Reader Attachment-A1 is necessary.
- When attaching the Platen Cover simultaneously, attach the Platen cover upper right cover in the middle of the equipment installation procedure to improve operating efficiency.

2.1.2 Unpacking and Checking the Components

Color Image Reader-H1

<Contents of the Color Image Reader-H1>



F-2-1

[1] Reader

1pc

[2]

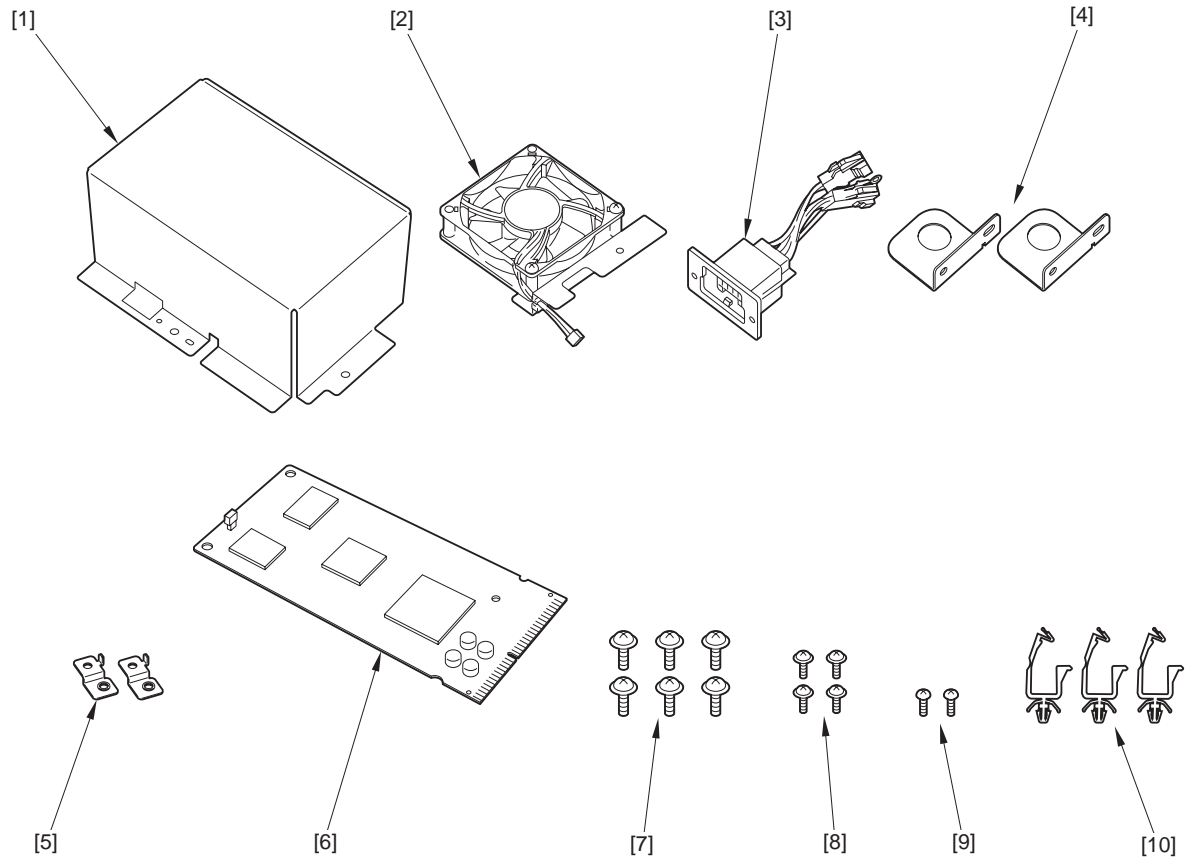
Reader front cover

1pc

[3]	Reader upper right cover	1pc	[4]	Reader right cover	1pc
[5]	Reader retaining plate F (front right)	1pc	[6]	Reader retaining plate R (rear right)	1pc
[7]	Rubber bush	4pc	[8]	Magnetic catch	2pc
[9]	Flat-head screw (M4X8)	2pc	[10]	Stepped screw (RS tighten; 6.4X2.5)	4pc
[11]	Screw (TP; M4X6)	4pc	[12]	Screw (RS tighten; M4X8)	5pc
[13]	DDI-S cable	1pc	[14]	Service label	1pc
[15]	No copy label		[16]	Lamp alert label	
	For USA	3pc		For USA	3pc
	For Europe	4pc		For Europe	3pc
	For Asia	3pc		For Asia	3pc
[17]*	Sheet, FCC Class A	1pc			

*: Included only for UL.

<Contents of the Reader Attachment-A1>



F-2-2

[1]	Reader rear right cover	1pc	[2]	Fan unit	1pc
[3]	Lattice cable	1pc	[4]	Reader retaining plates left	2pc
[5]	S board plate	2pc	[6]	ZJ-A Board	1pc
[7]	Screw (TP; M4X6)	6pc	[8]	Screw (TP; M3X6)	4pc
[9]	Screw (binding; M3X6)	2pc	[10]	Wire Saddle	3pc



The subsequent installation procedure is different between **imagePRESS C1 Series** and **imagePRESS C7000 Series**.

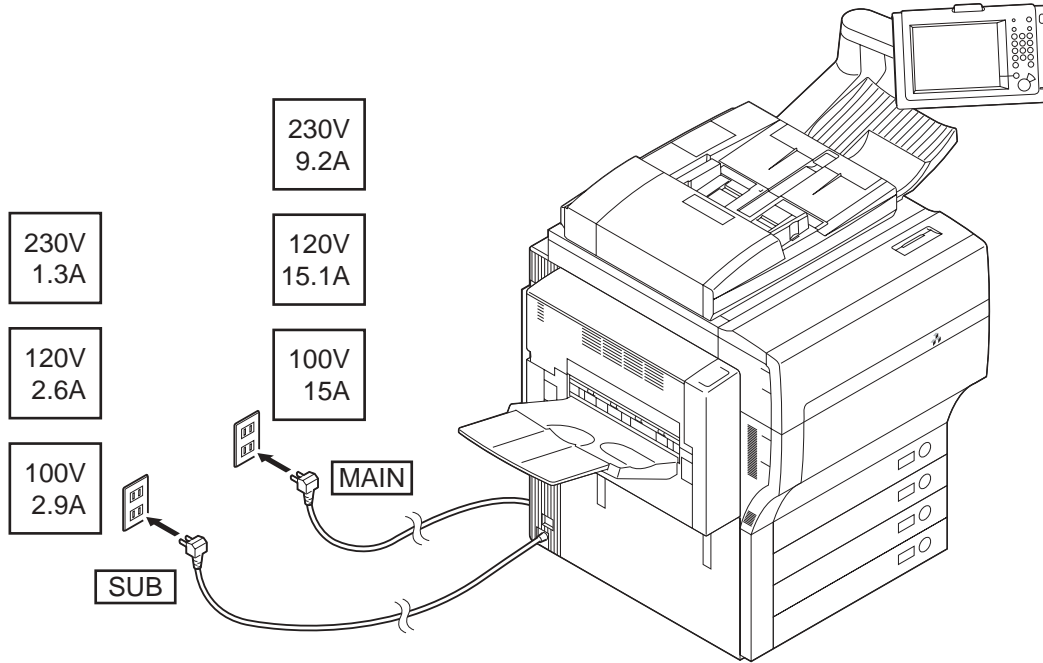
- Refer to sections 1.2 through 1.2.4 for **imagePRESS C1 Series**.
- Refer to sections 1.3 through 1.3.3 for **imagePRESS C7000 Series**.

2.1.3 Selecting the Site of Installation

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. If possible, check the planned site of installation before delivering the machine.

- (1) The power supply main plug (back side of the main body), is rated as indicated and the power outlet can be connected exclusively to the machine, is 100V/15A or more for 100V machine, 120V to 127V/15.1A or more for 120V machine, 220 to 240V/9.2 or more for 230V machine.
- (2) The sub power supply (left side of the main body), rated as indicated and must be a power outlet that may used exclusively for the machine: 100 V/2.9 A or more for the 100 V machine; 120 to 127 V/2.6 A or more for the 120V machine; 220 to 240 V/1.3 A or more for the 230V machine.



F-2-3

(3) There must be a grounding terminal for the machine.

Targets of Grounding

- (a) Grounding terminal of power outlet
- (b) The grounding terminal finished to Category D



Do not connect the grounding cord to the gas pipe.

2. Installation environment must be with in the following range. Avoid the close location to the faucet, water heater, humidifier or refrigerator.

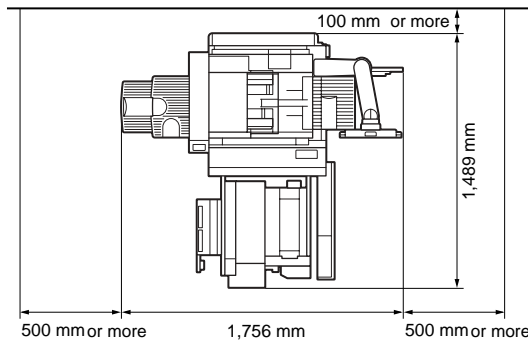
Assured range of operation/image: temperature 15.0 to 30.0 deg C, humidity 5 to 80%

3. The area near the source of fire, place where dust gathers, place where ammonia gas generates, place exposed to the direct sunlight should be avoided. If the place is exposed to the direct sunlight, it is better to hang a curtain in the window.
4. Although the ozone level generating in using this equipment does not affect human bodies, long-hours operation in a poorly-ventilated room may cause some odor to be sensed. Ventilation should be done to keep a comfortable work environment.
5. The foot of the host machine should not get off the floor. The host machine should be kept in a horizontal status.
6. Allocate enough space for service operation of the host machine.



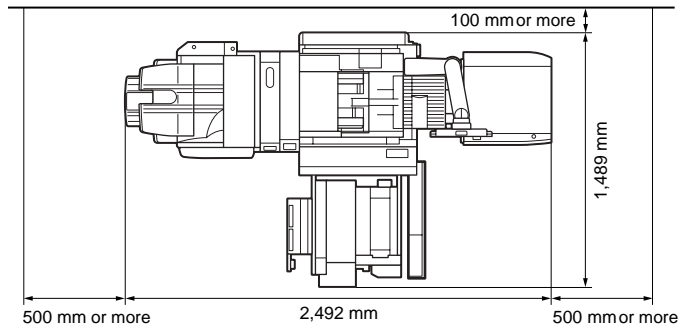
The site must provide enough space for maintenance work. The dimensions in the diagram below are minimum dimensions, and it is ideal to provide space larger than indicated.

(a) Main body



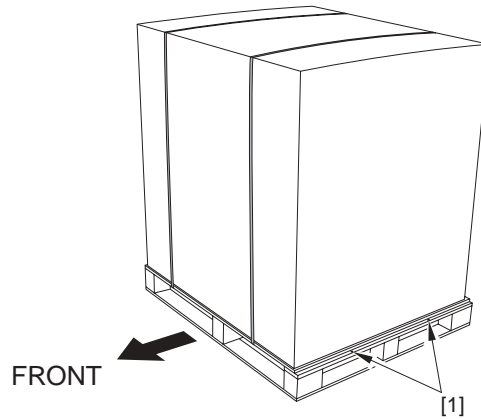
F-2-4

(b) Main body + Paper Deck + Puncher + Saddle Finisher



F-2-5

7. Place the machine on the side of the slope plate where there is a nail hole [1]. Secure the installation space on the side of the nail hole (right) of the slope plate. Pick-up assembly is located on the side of the nail hole (right) of the slope plate. The arrow shows the front side of the main body.

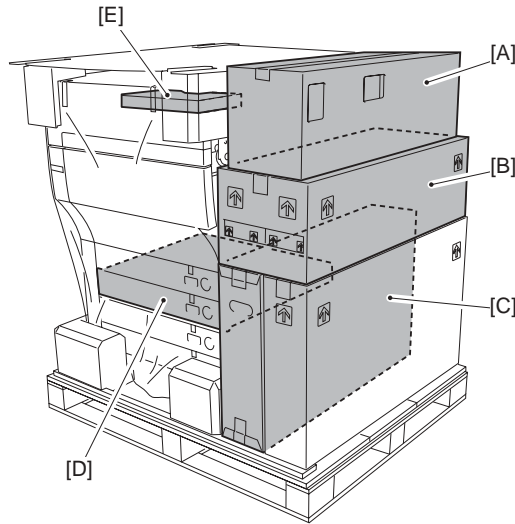


F-2-6

2.1.4 Checking the Contents

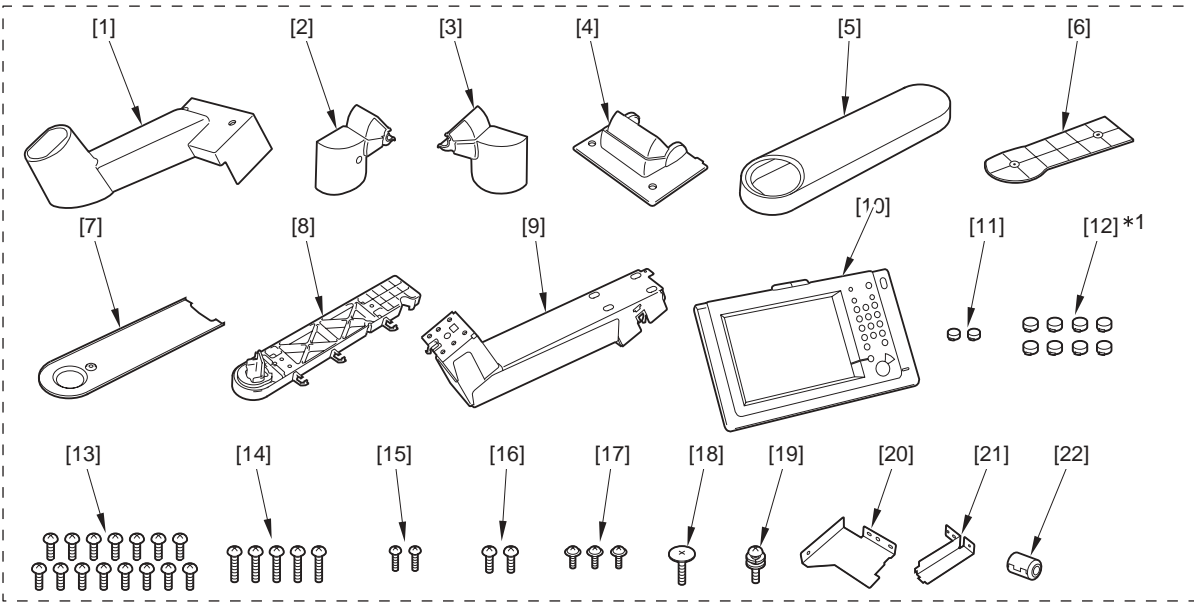
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The contents are stored in the box A [A], box B [B], box C [C], cassette [D], and the upper part of the host machine [E].

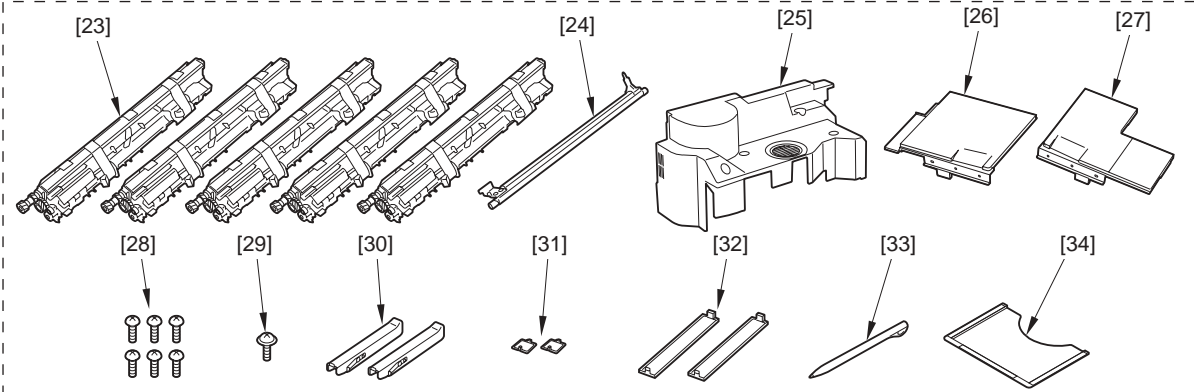


F-2-7

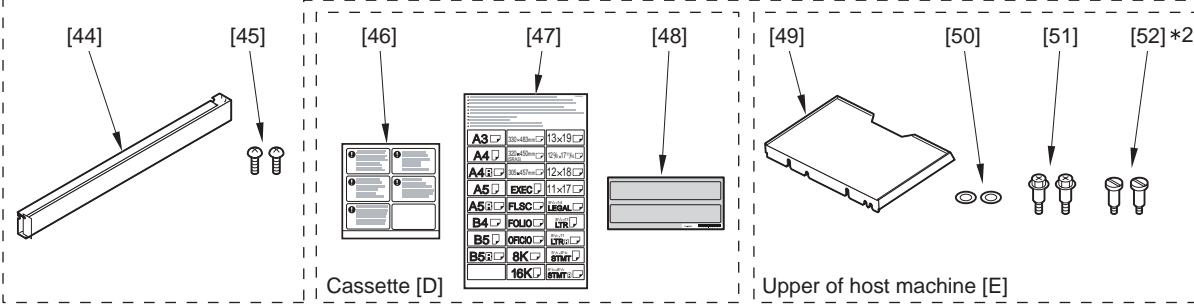
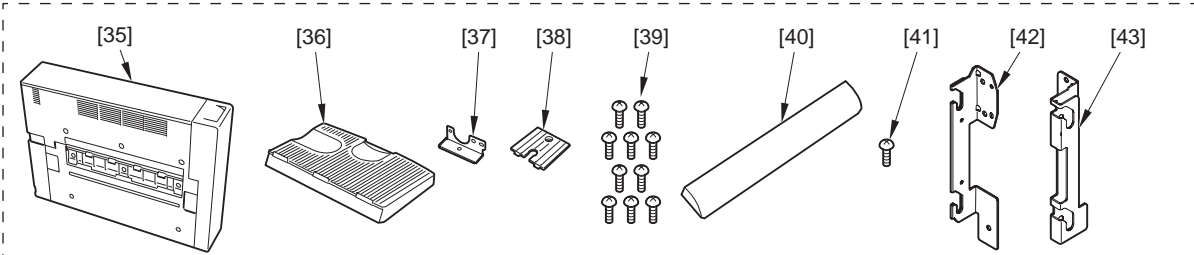
Box A [A]



Box B [B]



Box C [C]



F-2-8

[1]	Arm cover 2	1pc.	[2]	Lock hinge cover L	1pc.
[3]	Lock hinge cover R	1pc.	[4]	Hinge slide cover	1pc.
[5]	Arm cover 1	1pc.	[6]	Arm cover 3	1pc.
[7]	Arm cover 4	1pc.	[8]	Arm unit	1pc.
[9]	Control panel arm unit	1pc.	[10]	Control panel	1pc.
[11]	Cover rubber piece (small)	2pc.	[12]*1	Cover rubber piece (large)	8pc.
[13]	Screw (binding; M4X10)	15pc.	[14]	Black screw (binding; M4X14)	5pc.
[15]	Screw (P tightening; M3X10)	2pc.	[16]	Screw (P tightening; M4X10)	2pc.

[17]	Screw (TP; M3X8)	3pc.	[18]	Flat screw	1pc.
[19]	Screw (W sems; M4X12)	1pc.	[20]	Arm cover mount 1	1pc.
[21]	Arm cover mount 2	1pc.	[22]	Ferrite core	1pc.
[23]	Developing assembly (Y, M, C, Bk, L (clear))	5pc.	[24]	Balancing cylinder	1pc.
[25]	Process unit cover	1pc.	[26]	Hopper Cover (Left)	1pc.
[27]	Hopper Cover (Right)	1pc.	[28]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	6pc.
[29]	Screw (TP; M4X8)	1pc.	[30]	Grip	2pc.
[31]	Grip face cover (A)	2pc.	[32]	Grip face cover (B)	2pc.
[33]	Touch pen	1pc.	[34]	Service book case	1pc.
[35]	De-curler	1pc.	[36]	Delivery tray	1pc.
[37]	Harness support plate	1pc.	[38]	Panel mount cover	1pc.
[39]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	10pc.	[40]	Outer delivery roller cover	1pc.
[41]	Screw (P tightening; M4X8)	1pc.	[42]	Buffer mounting plate (front)	1pc.
[43]	Buffer mounting plate (rear)	1pc.	[44]	Caster cover	1pc.
[45]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	2pc.	[46]	Shut-down label	1pc.
[47]	Paper size label	4pc.	[48]	Replenishment label	1pc.
[49]	Document Tray	1pc.	[50]	Washer	2pc.
[51]	Stepped screw (RS tight)	2pc.	[52]*2	Stepped screw (M4)	2pc.

*1 Use 3 out of 8 with the reader unit and the printer cover.

*2 Not used in this host machine.

Check the CD, and guides according to the following table.

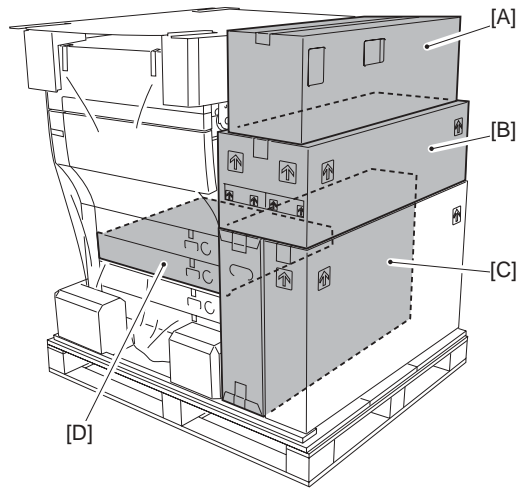
T-2-1

[1]	Easy Operation Guide
[2]	Support Guide
[3]	Manual CD
[4]	iW DM Personal 4V (10L)
[5]	License agreement for software
[6]	imagePRESS C1 Limited Warranty
[7]	Drum Limited Warranty
[8]	Registration for Purchase in USA
[9]	MEAP Administration Software CD
[10]	Network ScanGear CD
[11]	Installation Check list

2.1.5 Checking the Contents

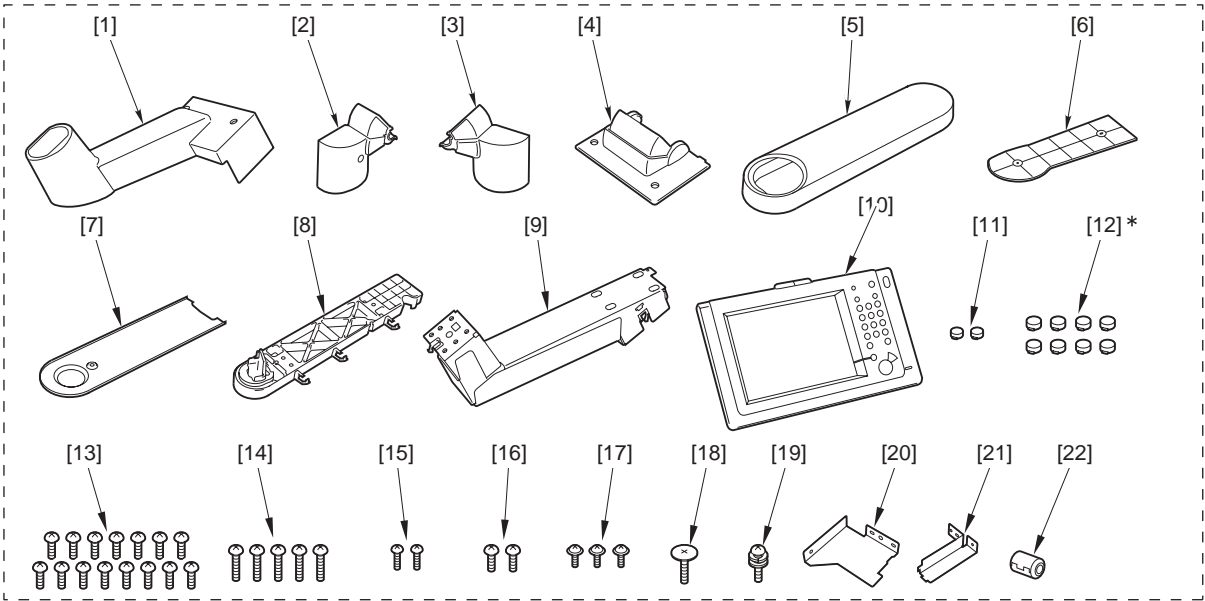
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The contents are stored in the box A [A], box B [B], box C [C], and cassette [D].

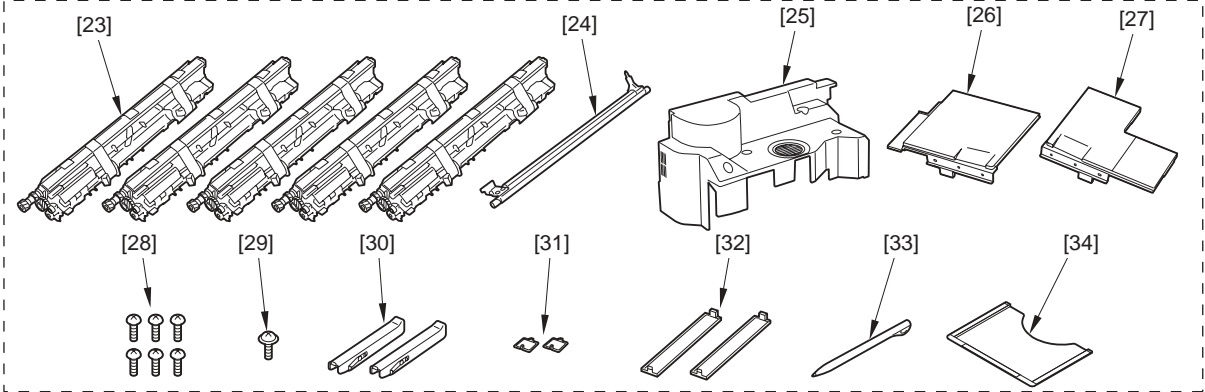


F-2-9

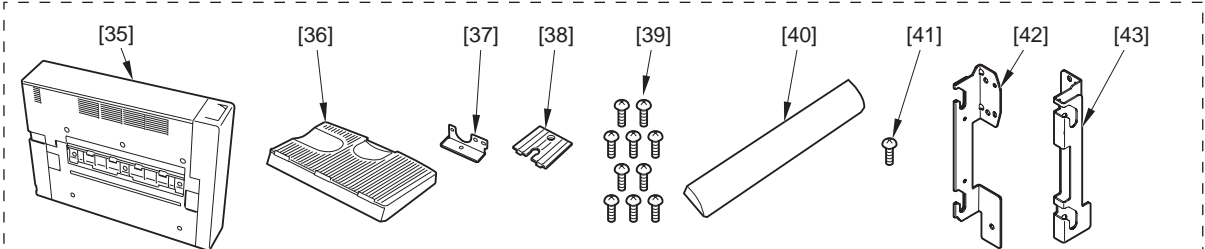
Box A [A]



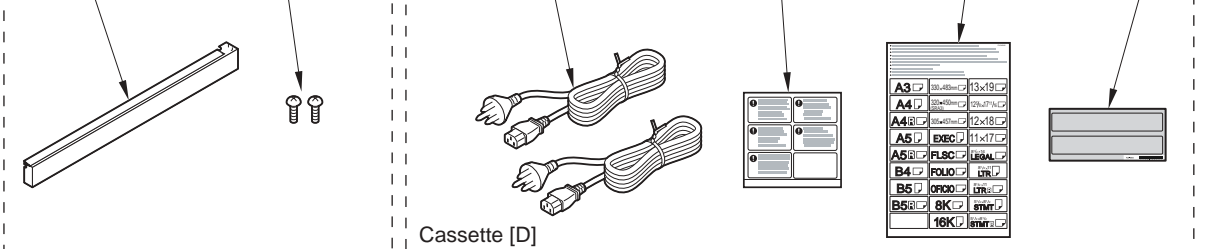
Box B [B]



Box C [C]



Cassette [D]



F-2-10

[1]	Arm cover 2	1pc.	[2]	Lock hinge cover L	1pc.
[3]	Lock hinge cover R	1pc.	[4]	Hinge slide cover	1pc.
[5]	Arm cover 1	1pc.	[6]	Arm cover 3	1pc.
[7]	Arm cover 4	1pc.	[8]	Arm unit	1pc.
[9]	Control panel arm unit	1pc.	[10]	Control panel	1pc.
[11]	Cover rubber piece (small)	2pc.	[12]*	Cover rubber piece (large)	8pc.
[13]	Screw (binding; M4X10)	15pc.	[14]	Black screw (binding; M4X14)	5pc.
[15]	Screw (P tightening; M3X10)	2pc.	[16]	Screw (P tightening; M4X10)	2pc.

[17]	Screw (TP; M3X8)	3pc.	[18]	Flat screw	1pc.
[19]	Screw (W sems; M4X12)	1pc.	[20]	Arm cover mount 1	1pc.
[21]	Arm cover mount 2	1pc.	[22]	Ferrite core	1pc.
[23]	Developing assembly (Y, M, C, Bk, L (clear))	5pc.	[24]	Balancing cylinder	1pc.
[25]	Process unit cover	1pc.	[26]	Hopper Cover (Left)	1pc.
[27]	Hopper Cover (Right)	1pc.	[28]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	6pc.
[29]	Screw (TP; M4X8)	1pc.	[30]	Grip	2pc.
[31]	Grip face cover (A)	2pc.	[32]	Grip face cover (B)	2pc.
[33]	Touch pen	1pc.	[34]	Service book case	1pc.
[35]	De-curler	1pc.	[36]	Delivery tray	1pc.
[37]	Harness support plate	1pc.	[38]	Panel mount cover	1pc.
[39]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	10pc.	[40]	Outer delivery roller cover	1pc.
[41]	Screw (P tightening; M4X8)	1pc.	[42]	Buffer mounting plate (front)	1pc.
[43]	Buffer mounting plate (rear)	1pc.	[44]	Caster cover	1pc.
[45]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	2pc.	[46]	Power Cable	2pc.
[47]	Shut-down label	1pc.	[48]	Paper size label	4pc.
[49]	Replenishment label	1pc.			

* Use 3 out of 8 with the reader unit and the printer cover.

Check the CD, and guides according to the following table.

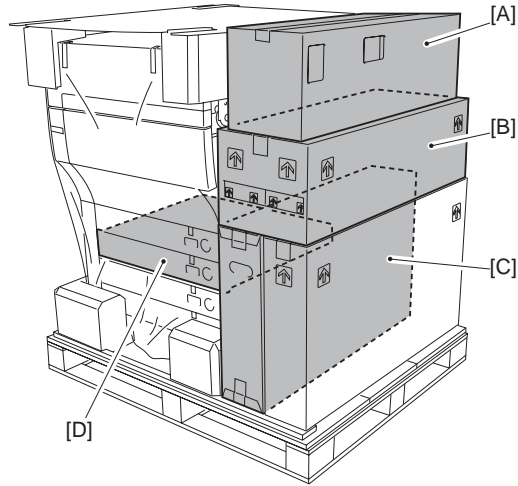
T-2-2

[1]	User's Guide
[2]	Manual CD (2pc.)
[3]	License agreement for software
[4]	MEAP Administration Software CD

2.1.6 Checking the Contents

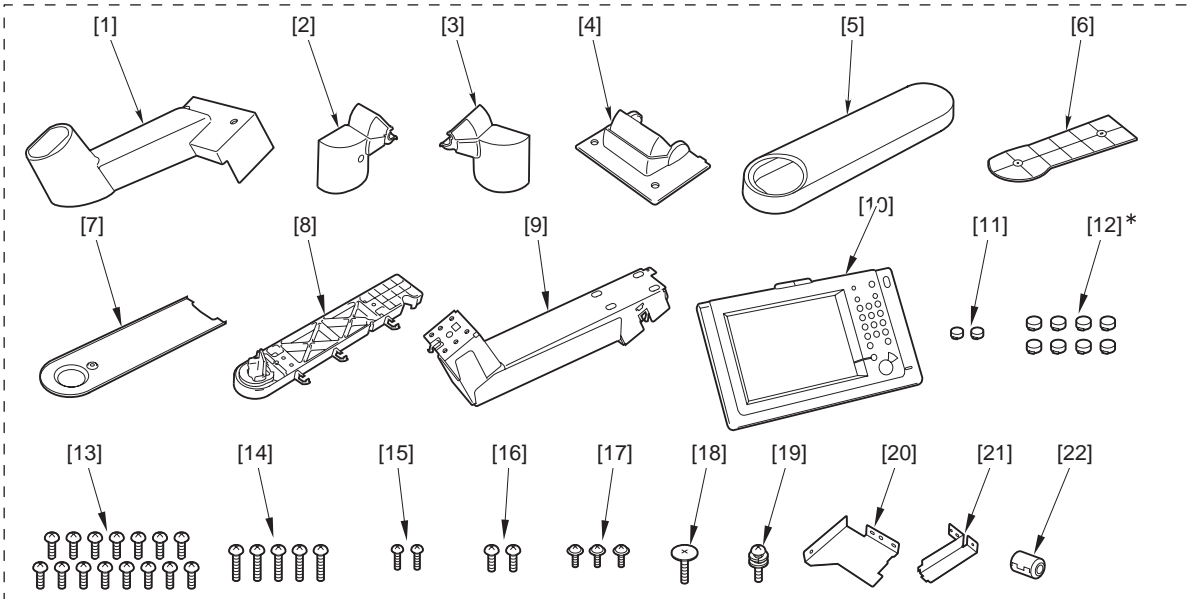
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The contents are stored in the box A [A], box B [B], box C [C], and cassette [D].

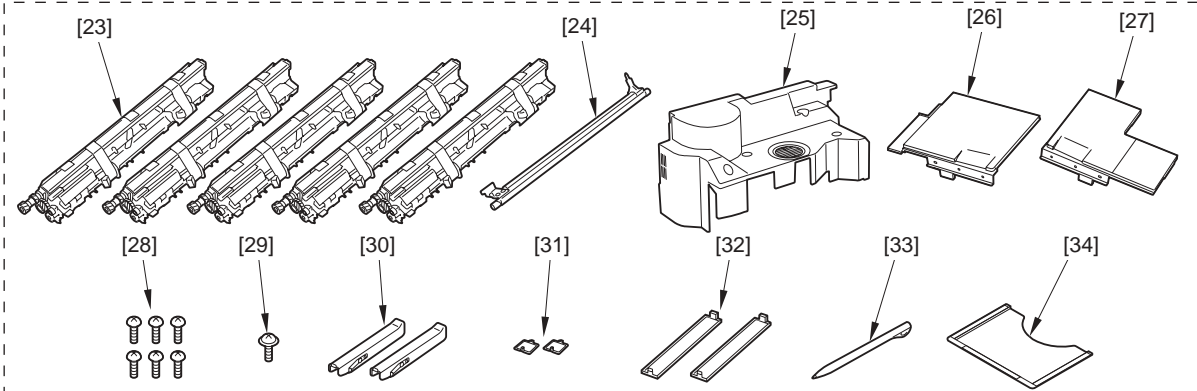


F-2-11

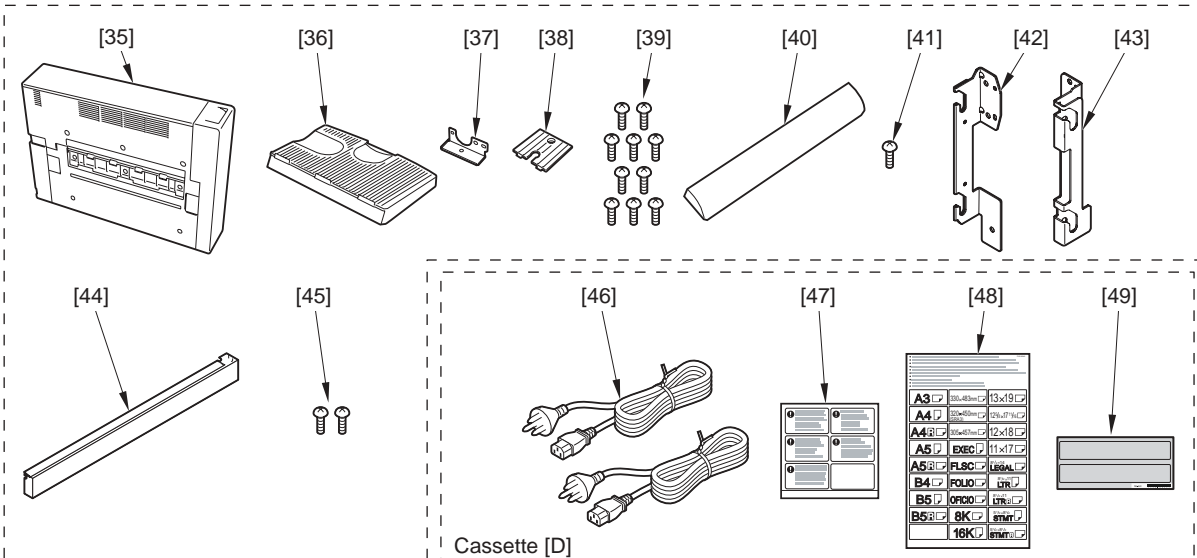
Box A [A]



Box B [B]



Box C [C]



Cassette [D]

F-2-12

[1]	Arm cover 2	1pc.	[2]	Lock hinge cover L	1pc.
[3]	Lock hinge cover R	1pc.	[4]	Hinge slide cover	1pc.
[5]	Arm cover 1	1pc.	[6]	Arm cover 3	1pc.
[7]	Arm cover 4	1pc.	[8]	Arm unit	1pc.
[9]	Control panel arm unit	1pc.	[10]	Control panel	1pc.
[11]	Cover rubber piece (small)	2pc.	[12]*	Cover rubber piece (large)	8pc.
[13]	Screw (binding; M4X10)	15pc.	[14]	Black screw (binding; M4X14)	5pc.
[15]	Screw (P tightening; M3X10)	2pc.	[16]	Screw (P tightening; M4X10)	2pc.

[17]	Screw (TP; M3X8)	3pc.	[18]	Flat screw	1pc.
[19]	Screw (W sems; M4X12)	1pc.	[20]	Arm cover mount 1	1pc.
[21]	Arm cover mount 2	1pc.	[22]	Ferrite core	1pc.
[23]	Developing assembly (Y, M, C, Bk, L (clear))	5pc.	[24]	Balancing cylinder	1pc.
[25]	Process unit cover	1pc.	[26]	Hopper Cover (Left)	1pc.
[27]	Hopper Cover (Right)	1pc.	[28]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	6pc.
[29]	Screw (TP; M4X8)	1pc.	[30]	Grip	2pc.
[31]	Grip face cover (A)	2pc.	[32]	Grip face cover (B)	2pc.
[33]	Touch pen	1pc.	[34]	Service book case	1pc.
[35]	De-curler	1pc.	[36]	Delivery tray	1pc.
[37]	Harness support plate	1pc.	[38]	Panel mount cover	1pc.
[39]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	10pc.	[40]	Outer delivery roller cover	1pc.
[41]	Screw (P tightening; M4X8)	1pc.	[42]	Buffer mounting plate (front)	1pc.
[43]	Buffer mounting plate (rear)	1pc.	[44]	Caster cover	1pc.
[45]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	2pc.	[46]	Power Cable	2pc.
[47]	Shut-down label	1pc.	[48]	Paper size label	4pc.
[49]	Replenishment label	1pc.			

* Use 3 out of 8 with the reader unit and the printer cover.

Check the CD, and guides according to the following table.

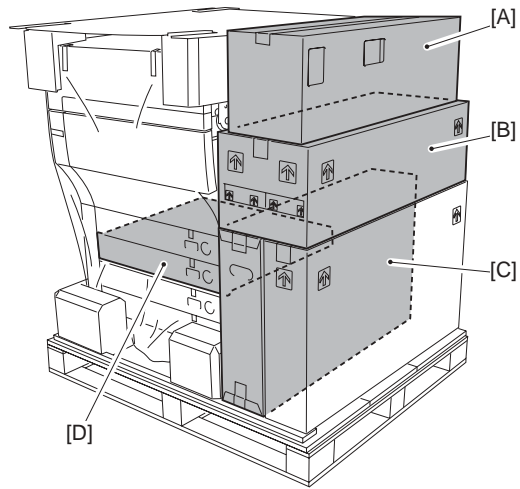
T-2-3

[1]	Easy Operation Guide
[2]	Support Guide
[3]	Manual CD
[4]	MEAP Administration Software CD
[5]	License agreement for software

2.1.7 Checking the Contents

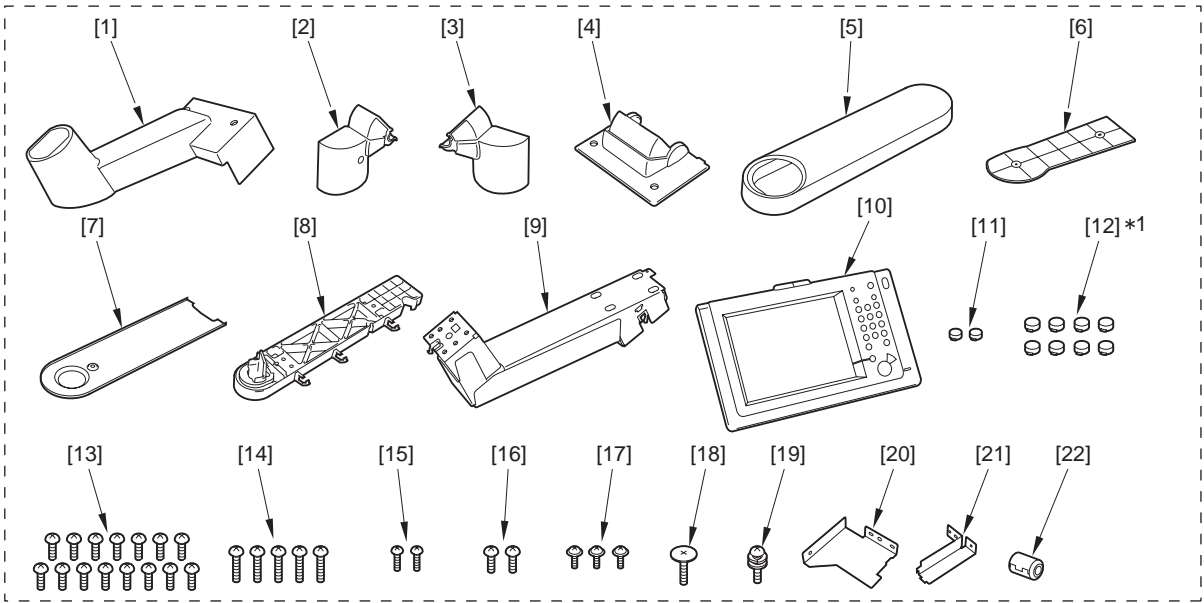
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The contents are stored in the box A [A], box B [B], box C [C], and cassette [D].

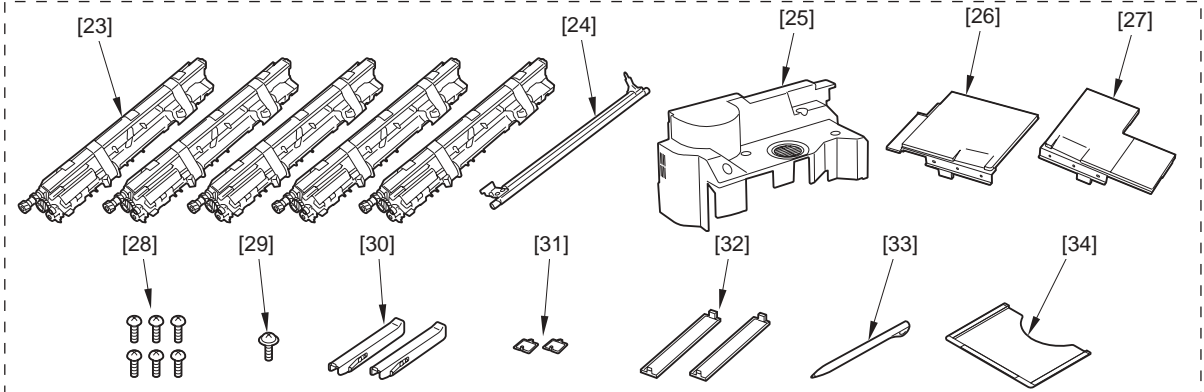


F-2-13

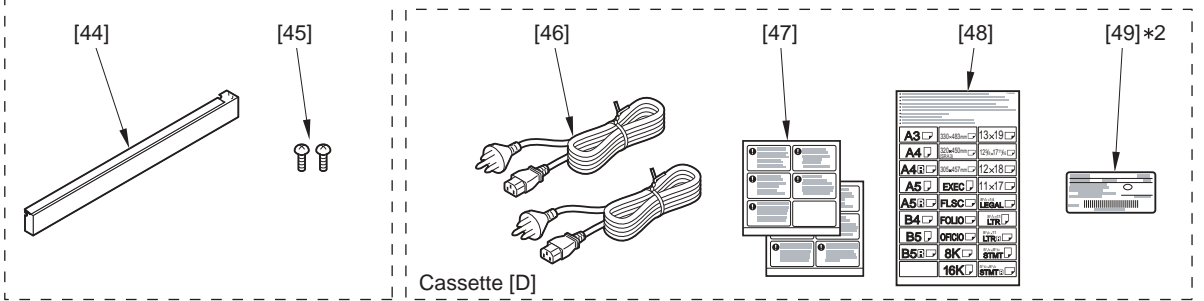
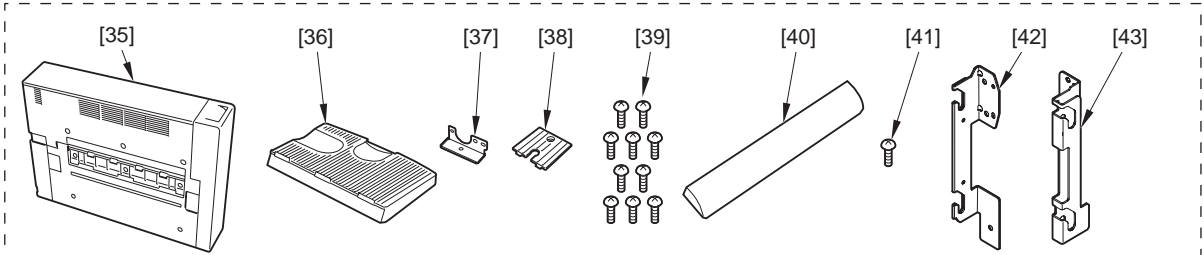
Box A [A]



Box B [B]



Box C [C]



Cassette [D]

F-2-14

[1]	Arm cover 2	1pc.	[2]	Lock hinge cover L	1pc.
[3]	Lock hinge cover R	1pc.	[4]	Hinge slide cover	1pc.
[5]	Arm cover 1	1pc.	[6]	Arm cover 3	1pc.
[7]	Arm cover 4	1pc.	[8]	Arm unit	1pc.
[9]	Control panel arm unit	1pc.	[10]	Control panel	1pc.
[11]	Cover rubber piece (small)	2pc.	[12]*1	Cover rubber piece (large)	8pc.
[13]	Screw (binding; M4X10)	15pc.	[14]	Black screw (binding; M4X14)	5pc.
[15]	Screw (P tightening; M3X10)	2pc.	[16]	Screw (P tightening; M4X10)	2pc.

[17]	Screw (TP; M3X8)	3pc.	[18]	Flat screw	1pc.
[19]	Screw (W sems; M4X12)	1pc.	[20]	Arm cover mount 1	1pc.
[21]	Arm cover mount 2	1pc.	[22]	Ferrite core	1pc.
[23]	Developing assembly (Y, M, C, Bk, L (clear))	5pc.	[24]	Balancing cylinder	1pc.
[25]	Process unit cover	1pc.	[26]	Hopper Cover (Left)	1pc.
[27]	Hopper Cover (Right)	1pc.	[28]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	6pc.
[29]	Screw (TP; M4X8)	1pc.	[30]	Grip	2pc.
[31]	Grip face cover (A)	2pc.	[32]	Grip face cover (B)	2pc.
[33]	Touch pen	1pc.	[34]	Service book case	1pc.
[35]	De-curler	1pc.	[36]	Delivery tray	1pc.
[37]	Harness support plate	1pc.	[38]	Panel mount cover	1pc.
[39]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	10pc.	[40]	Outer delivery roller cover	1pc.
[41]	Screw (P tightening; M4X8)	1pc.	[42]	Buffer mounting plate (front)	1pc.
[43]	Buffer mounting plate (rear)	1pc.	[44]	Caster cover	1pc.
[45]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	2pc.	[46]	Power Cable	2pc.
[47]	Shut-down label	2pc.	[48]	Paper size label	4pc.
[49]*2	Rating Plate	1pc.			

*1 Use 3 out of 8 with the reader unit and the printer cover.

*2 Will be used for Korea.

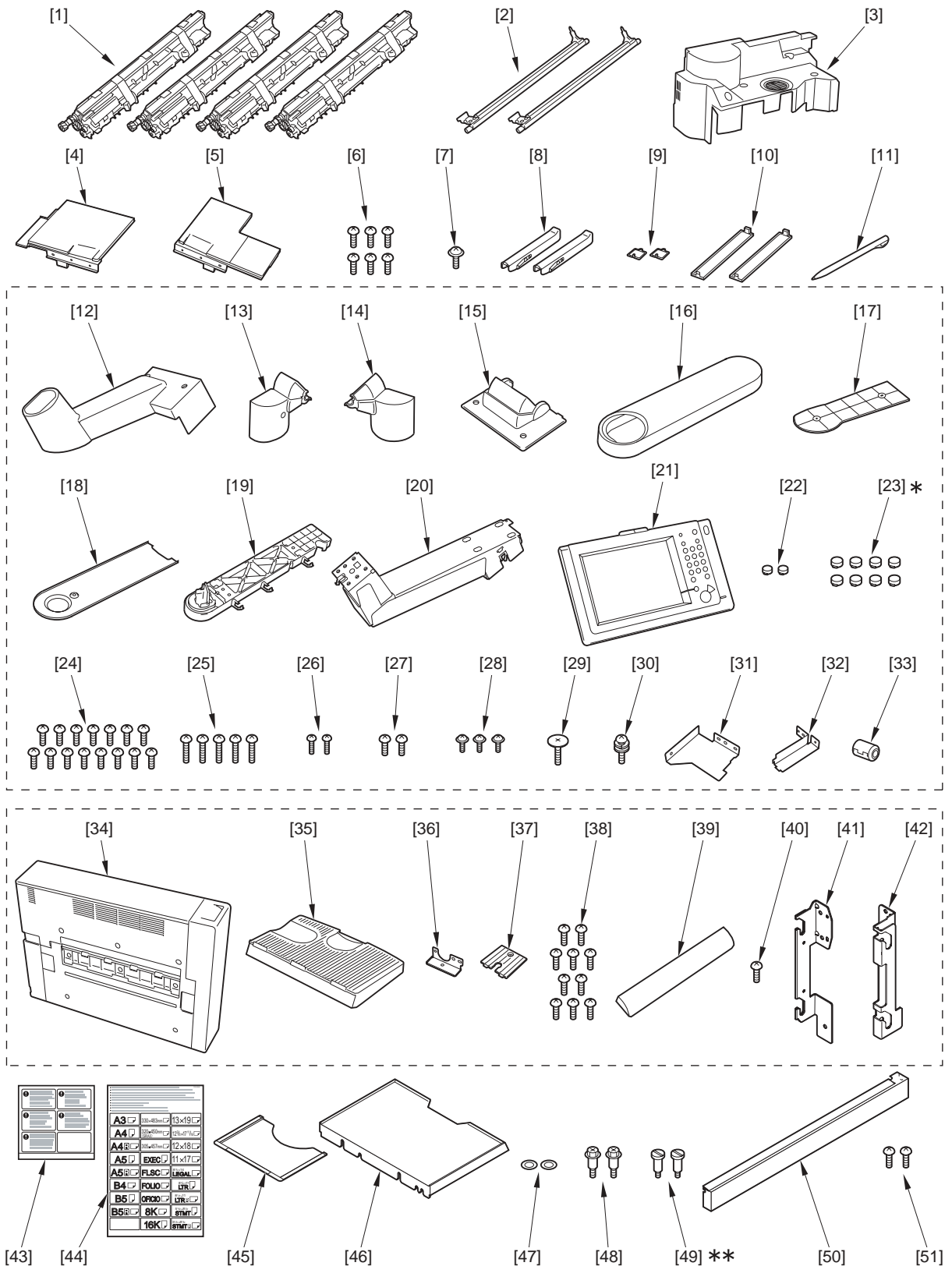
Check the CD, and guides according to the following table.

T-2-4

[1]	Easy Operation Guide
[2]	Support Guide
[3]	Manual CD
[4]	MEAP Administration Software CD
[5]	License agreement for software

2.1.8 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1



F-2-15

[1]	Developing assembly	4pc.	[2]	balancing cylinder	2pc.
[3]	Process unit cover	1pc.	[4]	Hopper Cover (Left)	1pc.
[5]	Hopper Cover (Right)	1pc.	[6]	Screw (binding: M4X8)	6pc.
[7]	Screw (TP: M4X8)	1pc.	[8]	Grip	2pc.

[9]	Grip face cover (A)	2pc.	[10]	Grip face cover (B)	2pc.
[11]	Touch pen	1pc.	[12]	Arm cover2	1pc.
[13]	Lock hinge cover L	1pc.	[14]	Lock hinge cover R	1pc.
[15]	Hinge slide cover	1pc.	[16]	Arm cover 1	1pc.
[17]	Arm cover 3	1pc.	[18]	Arm cover 4	1pc.
[19]	Arm unit	1pc.	[20]	Control panel arm unit	1pc.
[21]	Control panel	1pc.	[22]	Cover rubber piece (small)	2pc.
[23]*	Cover rubber piece (large)	8pc.	[24]	Screw (binding; M4X10)	15pc.
[25]	Screw (binding; M4X14)	5pc.	[26]	Screw (P tightening; M3X10)	2pc.
[27]	Screw (P tightening; M4X10)	2pc.	[28]	Screw (TP; M3X8)	3pc.
[29]	Flat screw	1pc.	[30]	Screw (W sems; M4X12)	1pc.
[31]	Arm cover mount 1	1pc.	[32]	Arm cover mount 2	1pc.
[33]	Ferrite core	1pc.	[34]	De-curler	1pc.
[35]	Delivery tray	1pc.	[36]	Harness support plate	1pc.
[37]	Panel mount cover	1pc.	[38]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	10pc.
[39]	Outer delivery roller cover	1pc.	[40]	Screw (P tightening; M4X8)	1pc.
[41]	buffer mounting plate (front)	1pc.	[42]	buffer mounting plate (rear)	1pc.
[43]	Shut-down label	1pc.	[44]	Paper size label	4pc.
[45]	Service book case	1pc.	[46]	Document Tray	1 pc.
[47]	Washer	2 pc.	[48]	Stepped screw	2 pc.
[49]**	Stepped screw (M4)	2 pc.	[50]	Caster cover	1 pc.
[51]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	2 pc.			

* Use 3 out of 8 with the reader unit and the printer cover.

** Not used in this host machine.

Check the contents (advice book, CD, and others) against the following tables:

T-2-5

[1]	Easy Operation Guide
[2]	Reference Guide
[3]*	Support Guide
[4]	Manual CD
[5]	iW DM Personal 4V (10L)
[6]	License agreement for software
[7]	imagePRESS C1 Limited Warranty
[8]	Drum Limited Warranty
[9]	Registration for Purchase in USA
[10]	MEAP Administration Software CD
[11]	N/W ScanGear CD
[12]	Installation Check list

* Only supports imagePRESS C1V2. (From Body NO : CUFXXXXX)

2.1.9 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

[13]	Lock hinge cover L	1pc.	[14]	Lock hinge cover R	1pc.
[15]	Hinge slide cover	1pc.	[16]	Arm cover 1	1pc.
[17]	Arm cover 3	1pc.	[18]	Arm cover 4	1pc.
[19]	Arm unit	1pc.	[20]	Control panel arm unit	1pc.
[21]	Control panel	1pc.	[22]	Cover rubber piece (small)	2pc.
[23]*	Cover rubber piece (large)	8pc.	[24]	Screw (binding; M4X10)	15pc.
[25]	Screw (binding; M4X14)	5pc.	[26]	Screw (P tightening; M3X10)	2pc.
[27]	Screw (P tightening; M4X10)	2pc.	[28]	Screw (TP; M3X8)	3pc.
[29]	Flat screw	1pc.	[30]	Screw (W sems; M4X12)	1pc.
[31]	Arm cover mount 1	1pc.	[32]	Arm cover mount 2	1pc.
[33]	Ferrite core	1pc.	[34]	De-curler	1pc.
[35]	Delivery tray	1pc.	[36]	Harness support plate	1pc.
[37]	Panel mount cover	1pc.	[38]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	10pc.
[39]	Outer delivery roller cover	1pc.	[40]	Screw (P tightening; M4X8)	1pc.
[41]	buffer mounting plate (front)	1pc.	[42]	buffer mounting plate (rear)	1pc.
[43]	Shut-down label	1pc.	[44]	Paper size label	4pc.
[45]	Service book case	1pc.	[46]	Caster cover	1pc.
[47]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	2pc.	[48]	Power Cable	2pc.

* Use 3 out of 8 with the reader unit and the printer cover.

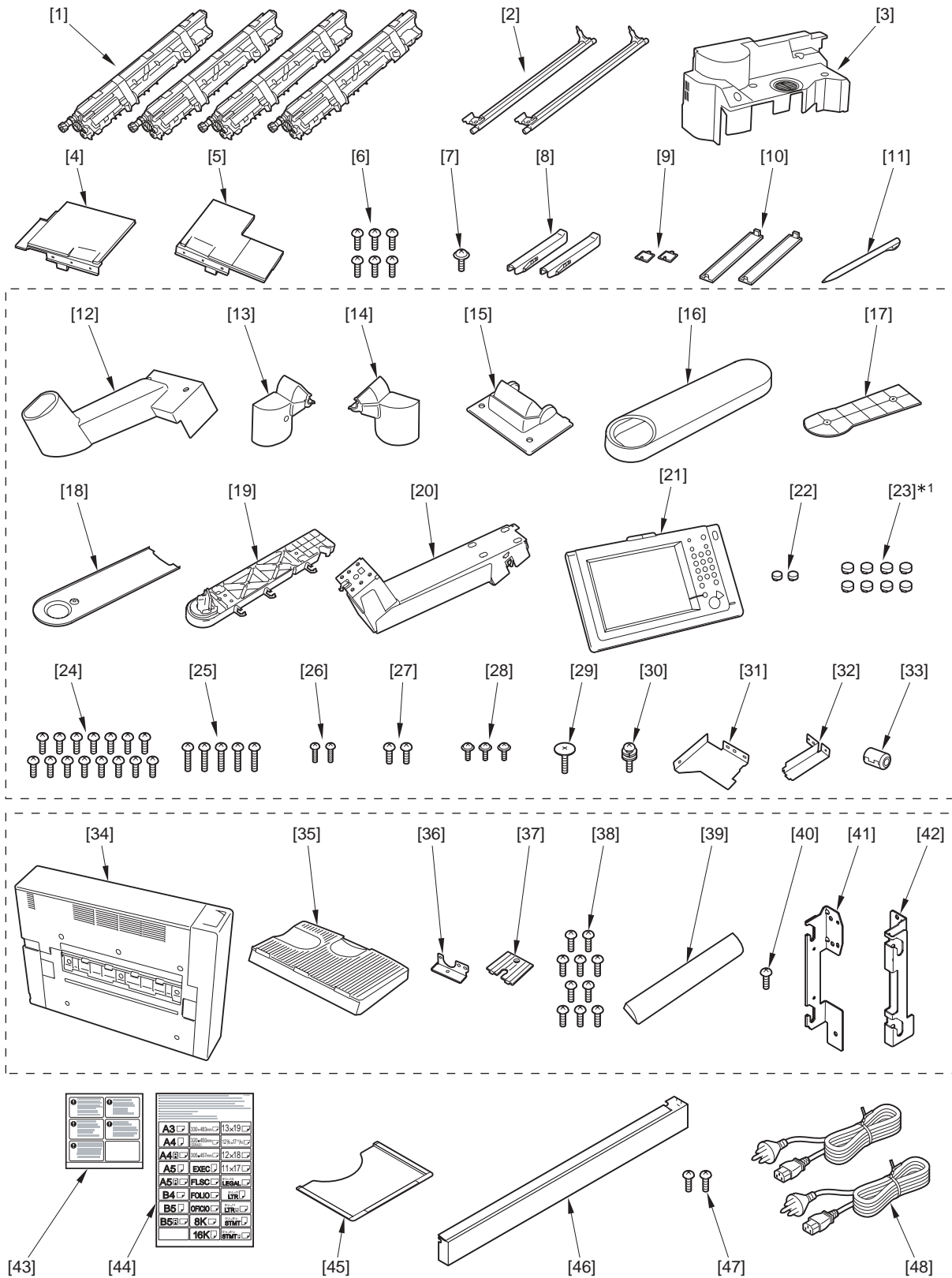
Check the contents (advice book, CD, and others) against the following tables:

T-2-6

[1]	User's Guide
[2]	Manual CD
[3]	License agreement for software
[4]	MEAP Administration Software CD

2.1.10 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1



F-2-17

- | | | | | | |
|-----|----------------------|------|------|-----------------------|------|
| [1] | Developing assembly | 4pc. | [2] | balancing cylinder | 2pc. |
| [3] | Process unit cover | 1pc. | [4] | Hopper Cover (Left) | 1pc. |
| [5] | Hopper Cover (Right) | 1pc. | [6] | Screw (binding: M4X8) | 6pc. |
| [7] | Screw (TP: M4X8) | 1pc. | [8] | Grip | 2pc. |
| [9] | Grip face cover (A) | 2pc. | [10] | Grip face cover (B) | 2pc. |

[11]	Touch pen	1pc.	[12]	Arm cover2	1pc.
[13]	Lock hinge cover L	1pc.	[14]	Lock hinge cover R	1pc.
[15]	Hinge slide cover	1pc.	[16]	Arm cover 1	1pc.
[17]	Arm cover 3	1pc.	[18]	Arm cover 4	1pc.
[19]	Arm unit	1pc.	[20]	Control panel arm unit	1pc.
[21]	Control panel	1pc.	[22]	Cover rubber piece (small)	2pc.
[23]*1	Cover rubber piece (large)	8pc.	[24]	Screw (binding; M4X10)	15pc.
[25]	Screw (binding; M4X14)	5pc.	[26]	Screw (P tightening; M3X10)	2pc.
[27]	Screw (P tightening; M4X10)	2pc.	[28]	Screw (TP; M3X8)	3pc.
[29]	Flat screw	1pc.	[30]	Screw (W sems; M4X12)	1pc.
[31]	Arm cover mount 1	1pc.	[32]	Arm cover mount 2	1pc.
[33]	Ferrite core	1pc.	[34]	De-curler	1pc.
[35]	Delivery tray	1pc.	[36]	Harness support plate	1pc.
[37]	Panel mount cover	1pc.	[38]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	10pc.
[39]	Outer delivery roller cover	1pc.	[40]	Screw (P tightening; M4X8)	1pc.
[41]	buffer mounting plate (front)	1pc.	[42]	buffer mounting plate (rear)	1pc.
[43]	Shut-down label	1pc.	[44]	Paper size label	4pc.
[45]	Service book case	1pc.	[46]	Caster cover	1pc.
[47]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	2pc.	[48]	Power Cable	2pc.

*1 Use 3 out of 8 with the reader unit and the printer cover.

Check the contents (advice book, CD, and others) against the following tables:

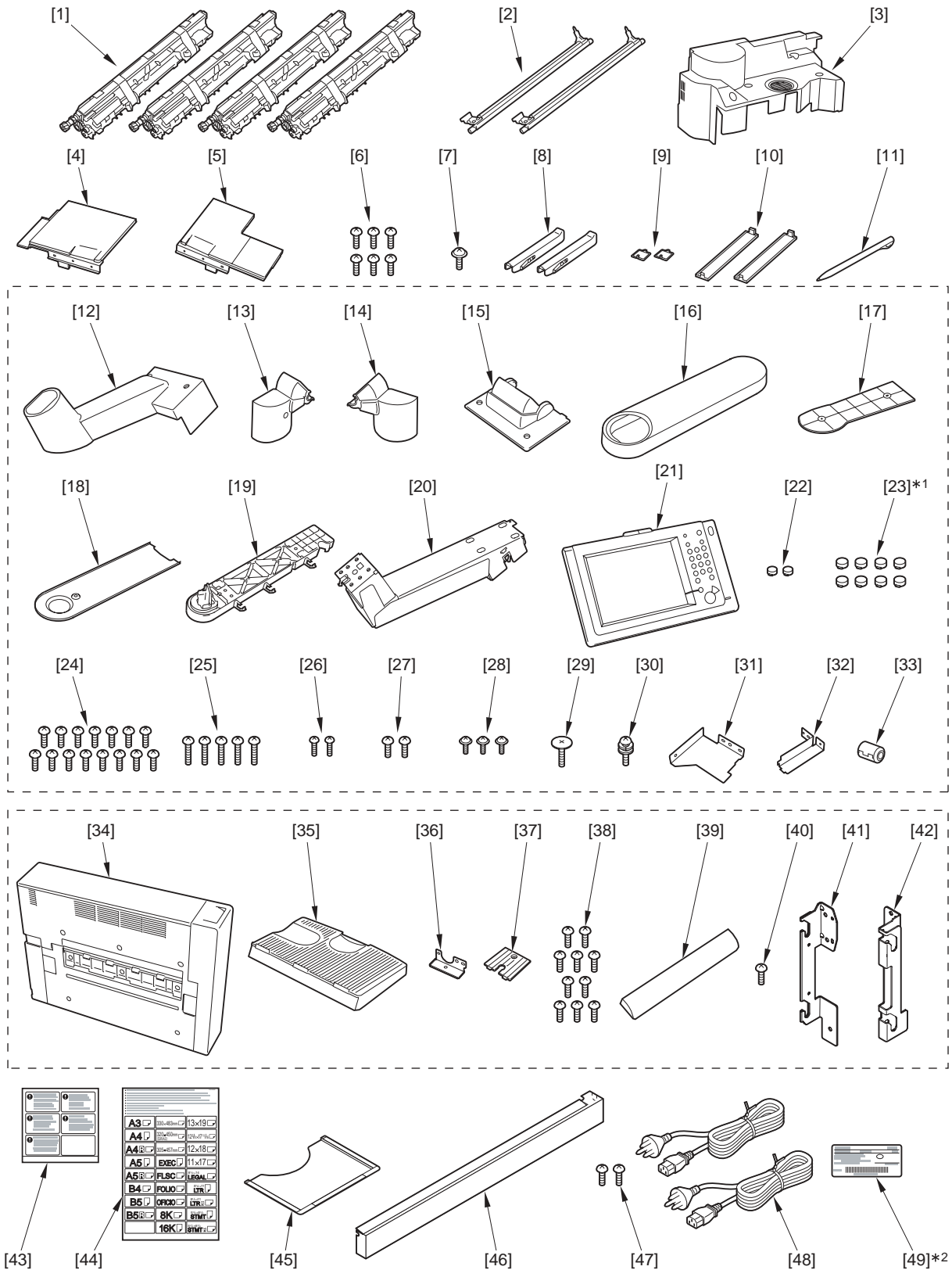
T-2-7

	imagePRESS C1 Series	imagePRESS C1 Series V2 (*2)
[1]	Easy Operation Guide	Easy Operation Guide
[2]	Reference Guide	Support Guide
[3]	Copying and Mail Box Guide	Manual CD
[4]	Manual CD	MEAP Administration Software CD
[5]	MEAP Administration Software CD	License agreement for software
[6]	License agreement for software	

*2 Only supports imagePRESS C1 Series V2. (Body NO : CUMXXXXXX)

2.1.11 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1



F-2-18

[1]	Developing assembly	4pc.	[2]	balancing cylinder	2pc.
[3]	Process unit cover	1pc.	[4]	Hopper Cover (Left)	1pc.
[5]	Hopper Cover (Right)	1pc.	[6]	Screw (binding: M4X8)	6pc.
[7]	Screw (TP: M4X8)	1pc.	[8]	Grip	2pc.

[9]	Grip face cover (A)	2pc.	[10]	Grip face cover (B)	2pc.
[11]	Touch pen	1pc.	[12]	Arm cover2	1pc.
[13]	Lock hinge cover L	1pc.	[14]	Lock hinge cover R	1pc.
[15]	Hinge slide cover	1pc.	[16]	Arm cover 1	1pc.
[17]	Arm cover 3	1pc.	[18]	Arm cover 4	1pc.
[19]	Arm unit	1pc.	[20]	Control panel arm unit	1pc.
[21]	Control panel	1pc.	[22]	Cover rubber piece (small)	2pc.
[23]*1	Cover rubber piece (large)	8pc.	[24]	Screw (binding; M4X10)	15pc.
[25]	Screw (binding; M4X14)	5pc.	[26]	Screw (P tightening; M3X10)	2pc.
[27]	Screw (P tightening; M4X10)	2pc.	[28]	Screw (TP; M3X8)	3pc.
[29]	Flat screw	1pc.	[30]	Screw (W sems; M4X12)	1pc.
[31]	Arm cover mount 1	1pc.	[32]	Arm cover mount 2	1pc.
[33]	Ferrite core	1pc.	[34]	De-curler	1pc.
[35]	Delivery tray	1pc.	[36]	Harness support plate	1pc.
[37]	Panel mount cover	1pc.	[38]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	10pc.
[39]	Outer delivery roller cover	1pc.	[40]	Screw (P tightening; M4X8)	1pc.
[41]	buffer mounting plate (front)	1pc.	[42]	buffer mounting plate (rear)	1pc.
[43]	Shut-down label	2pc.	[44]	Paper size label	4pc.
[45]	Service book case	1pc.	[46]	Caster cover	1pc.
[47]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	2pc.	[48]	Power Cable	2pc.
[49]*2	Rating Plate	1pc.			

*1 Use 3 out of 8 with the reader unit and the printer cover.

*2 Will be used for Korea

Check the contents (advice book, CD, and others) against the following tables:

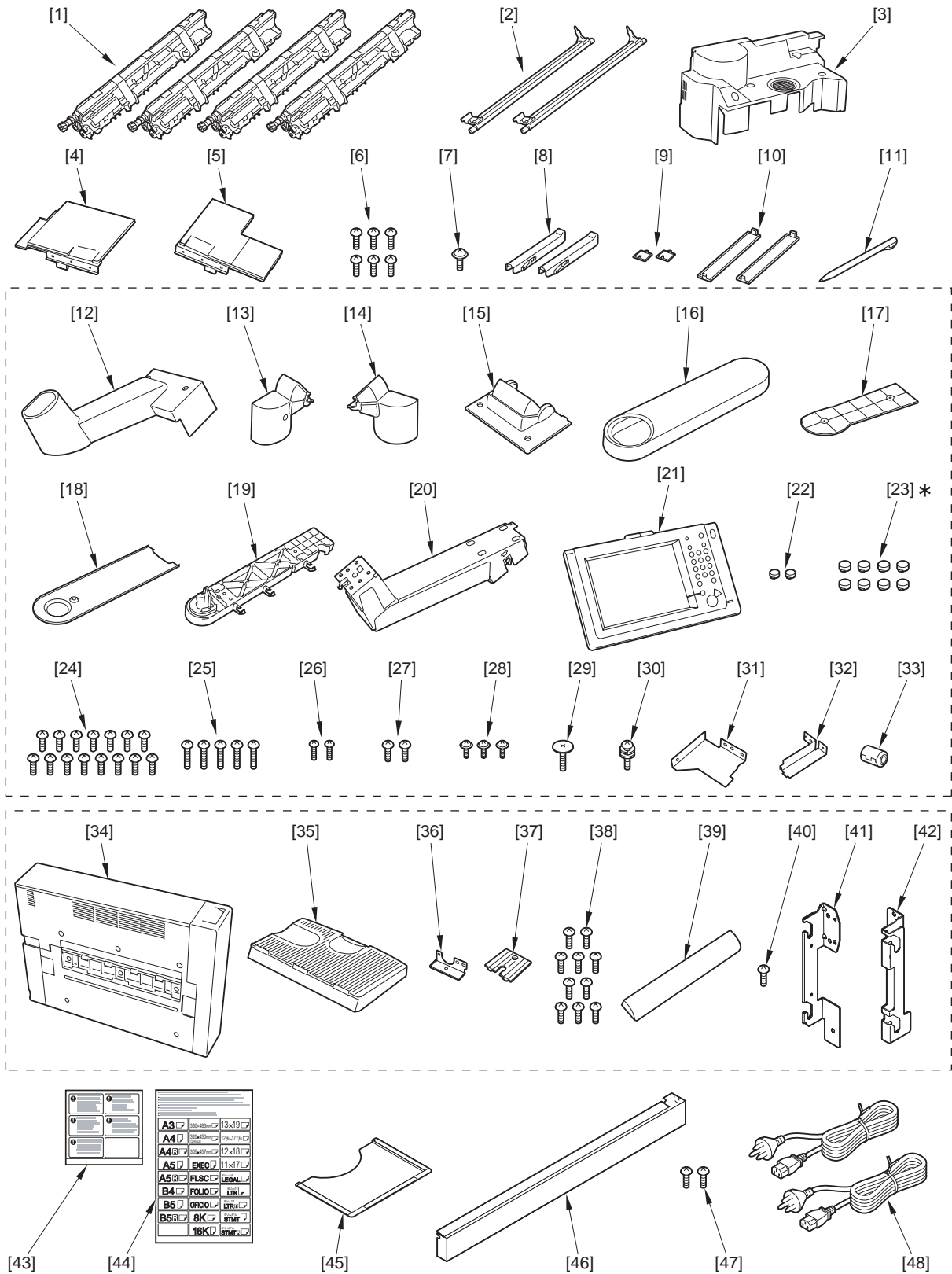
T-2-8

	imagePRESS C1 Series	imagePRESS C1 Series V2 (*3)
[1]	Easy Operation Guide	Easy Operation Guide
[2]	Reference Guide	Support Guide
[3]	Copying and Mail Box Guide	Manual CD
[4]	Manual CD	MEAP Administration Software CD
[5]	MEAP Administration Software CD	License agreement for software
[6]	License agreement for software	

*3 Only supports imagePRESS C1 Series V2. (Body NO : CULXXXXX)

2.1.12 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1



F-2-19

- | | | | | | |
|-----|----------------------|------|-----|-----------------------|------|
| [1] | Developing assembly | 4pc. | [2] | balancing cylinder | 2pc. |
| [3] | Process unit cover | 1pc. | [4] | Hopper Cover (Left) | 1pc. |
| [5] | Hopper Cover (Right) | 1pc. | [6] | Screw (binding: M4X8) | 6pc. |
| [7] | Screw (TP: M4X8) | 1pc. | [8] | Grip | 2pc. |

[9]	Grip face cover (A)	2pc.	[10]	Grip face cover (B)	2pc.
[11]	Touch pen	1pc.	[12]	Arm cover2	1pc.
[13]	Lock hinge cover L	1pc.	[14]	Lock hinge cover R	1pc.
[15]	Hinge slide cover	1pc.	[16]	Arm cover 1	1pc.
[17]	Arm cover 3	1pc.	[18]	Arm cover 4	1pc.
[19]	Arm unit	1pc.	[20]	Control panel arm unit	1pc.
[21]	Control panel	1pc.	[22]	Cover rubber piece (small)	2pc.
[23]*	Cover rubber piece (large)	8pc.	[24]	Screw (binding; M4X10)	15pc.
[25]	Screw (binding; M4X14)	5pc.	[26]	Screw (P tightening; M3X10)	2pc.
[27]	Screw (P tightening; M4X10)	2pc.	[28]	Screw (TP; M3X8)	3pc.
[29]	Flat screw	1pc.	[30]	Screw (W sems; M4X12)	1pc.
[31]	Arm cover mount 1	1pc.	[32]	Arm cover mount 2	1pc.
[33]	Ferrite core	1pc.	[34]	De-curler	1pc.
[35]	Delivery tray	1pc.	[36]	Harness support plate	1pc.
[37]	Panel mount cover	1pc.	[38]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	10pc.
[39]	Outer delivery roller cover	1pc.	[40]	Screw (P tightening; M4X8)	1pc.
[41]	buffer mounting plate (front)	1pc.	[42]	buffer mounting plate (rear)	1pc.
[43]	Shut-down label	1pc.	[44]	Paper size label	4pc.
[45]	Service book case	1pc.	[46]	Caster cover	1pc.
[47]	Screw (binding; M4X8)	2pc.	[48]	Power Cable	2pc.

* Use 3 out of 8 with the reader unit and the printer cover.

Check the contents (advice book, CD, and others) against the following tables:

T-2-9

[1]	Easy Operation Guide
[2]	Reference Guide
[3]	Copying and Mail Box Guide
[4]	Manual CD
[5]	License agreement for software
[6]	Quality certificate

2.2 Unpacking and Installation

2.2.1 Points to Note Before Starting the Work

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

When installing the machine, keep the following in mind.

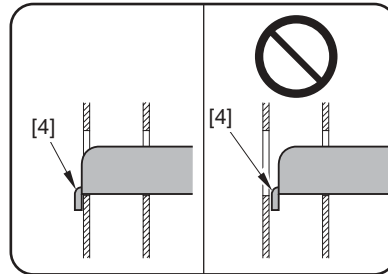
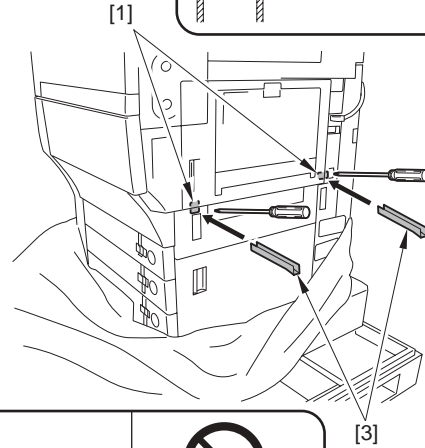
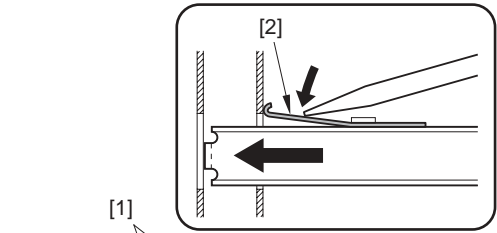


- If the machine is moved from a cold to warm place, condensation can occur. If condensation occurs, image faults can occur. Before starting the work, unpack the machine, and leave it for 1 hour or more so that it becomes used to the room temperature.

(Condensation: If a piece of metal is moved from a low to warm place, the moisture in the air around them becomes cooled rapidly, turning into drops of water on the metal surfaces.)

- Since the main body weighs approximately 310 kg, unpacking must be done by 4 or more persons.

- Be sure to turn the 2 adjusters (2 on the front) at the bottom of the machine clockwise to release. When moving the machine, adjusters may come off due to vibrations. Be careful not to lose the adjusters.



F-2-20

2.2.2 Unpacking

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Unpack the machine, and remove the plastic cover.
- 2) While pushing against the leaf spring [2] in the grip opening [1] on the right side of the machine using a flat-blade screwdriver, fit in the 2 grips [3].

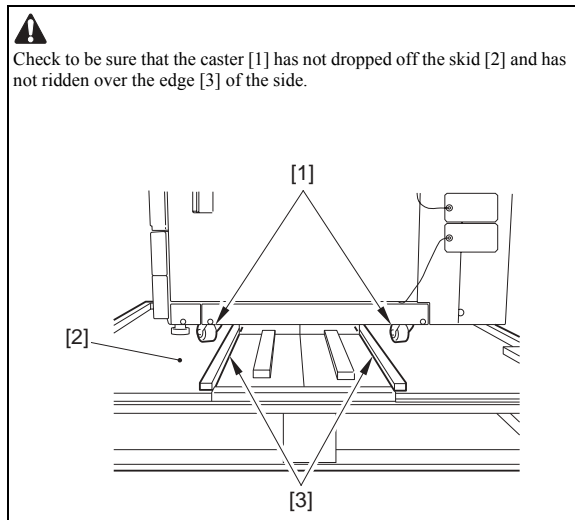
- 3) Hold the grips on the left side (front, rear) of the machine, lift the machine slightly to remove the 2 pads [1]. At this time, move the plastic bag in the direction of the arrow. (machine weight: about 310 kg)



Check to make sure that the rear of the claw [4] of the grip is hooked on the plate.




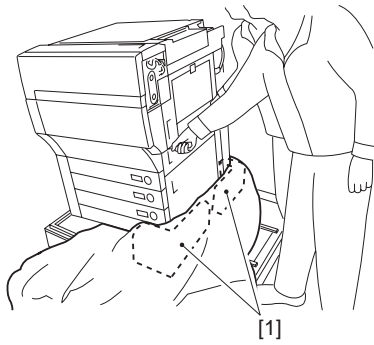
F-2-21



Check to be sure that the caster [1] has not dropped off the skid [2] and has not ridden over the edge [3] of the side.

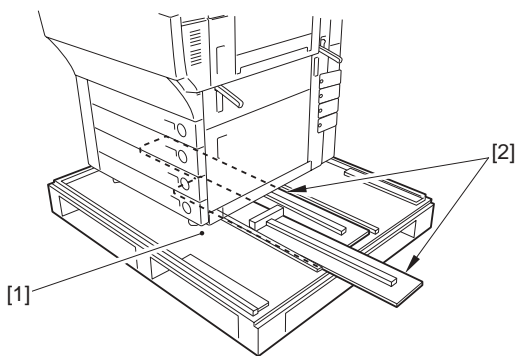
- 4) Hold the grips on the right side (front, rear) of the machine, lift the machine slightly to remove the 2 pads [1] and the plastic bag.

 Don't incline the machine too much, it could loose its balance.



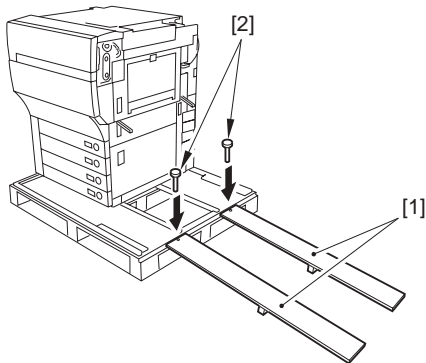
F-2-22

- 5) Take out the 2 slope plates [2] from the middle of the skid [1].




F-2-23

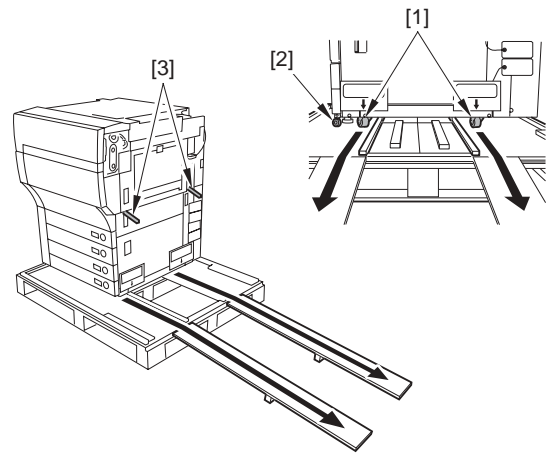
- 6) Remove the 2 pins taped to the back of the slope plate.
7) Turn over the slope plate [1], and fit it as shown; then, match the pin holes of the skid and the pin holes of the slope plate, and connect them with 2 pins [2].



F-2-24

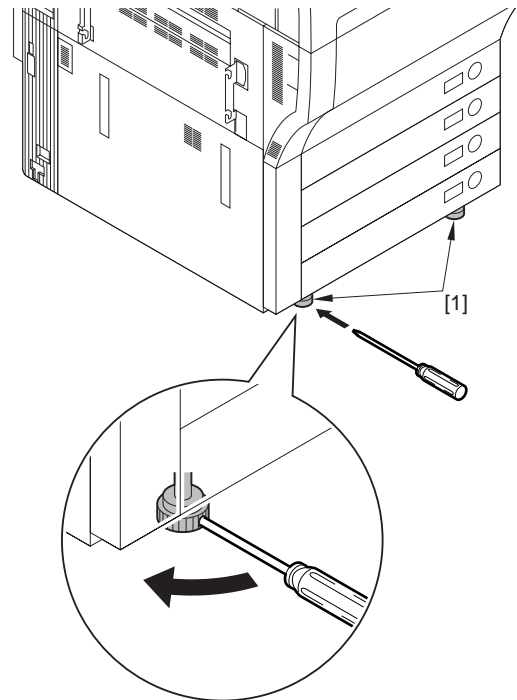
- 8) Align the casters [1] with the slope plates, and unload the machine by sliding it on the slope plates with holding the grip [3].

 Do not align the casters [2] with the slope plates. If unloading the machine by aligning the casters [2] with the slope plates, the casters may run off the slope plates



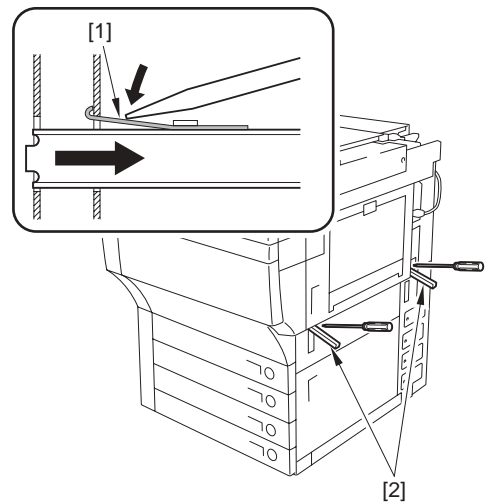
F-2-25

- 9) Turn the adjusters [1] in the direction shown by the arrow to lock them in place.



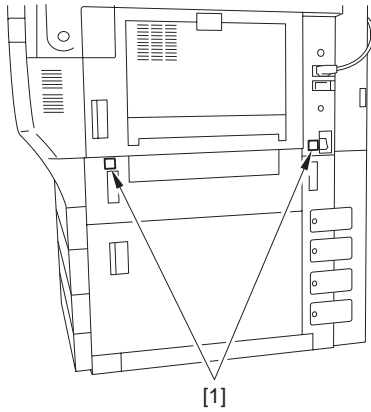
F-2-26

- 10) While pushing against the leaf spring [1] with a flat-blade screwdriver, remove the 2 grips [2].



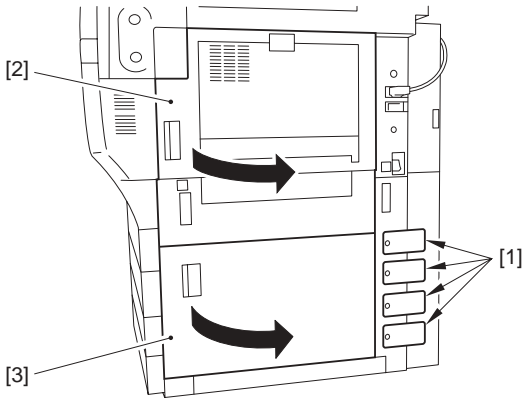
F-2-27

- 11) Remove the packing tape from the machine.
12) Fit the 2 grip face covers (A) [1] over the grip openings.



F-2-28

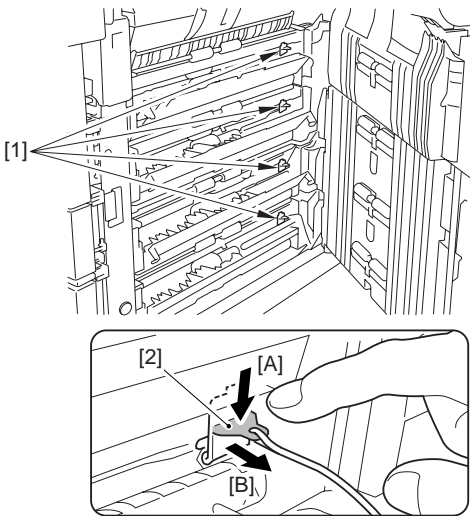
- 13) Remove the 4 shipping tags [1] from the lower rear right cover.
 14) Open the upper right cover [2] and the lower right cover [3].



F-2-29

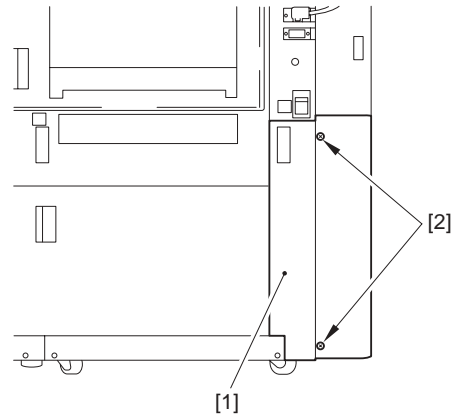
- 15) Remove the 4 release spacers [1] from the each pickup unit.

! When removing the spacer, be sure to push the lever [2] in the direction of [A] and then detach it in the direction of [B] to avoid damage to the pickup assembly.



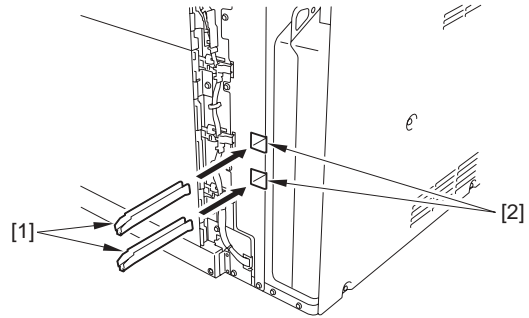
F-2-30

- 16) Close the upper right cover and the lower right cover.
 17) Remove the lower rear right cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



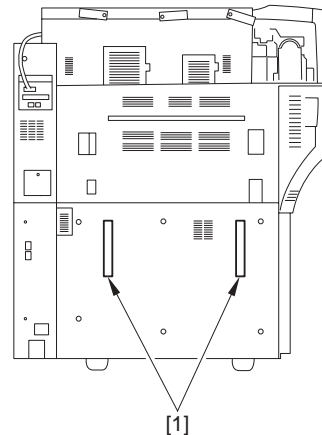
F-2-31

- 18) Fit the 2 grips [1] removed in step 10) into the compartment [2].



F-2-32

- 19) Attach the lower rear right cover.
 20) Attach the 2 grip face covers (B) [1] to the openings into which the grips have been put away.

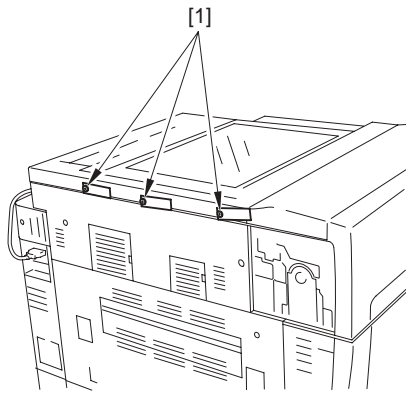


F-2-33

2.2.3 Mounting Scanning System

imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove 3 scanning system fixing screws [1].



F-2-34

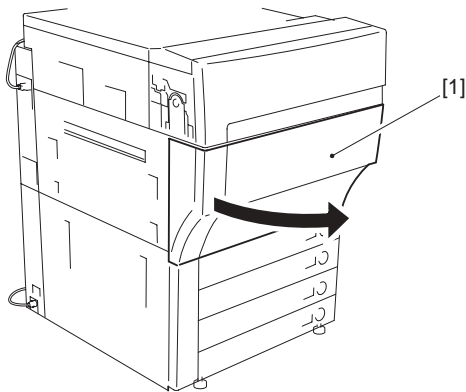


When moving the machine, the scanning system fixing screws should be stored away because the scanning system location needs to be fitted in place.

2.2.4 Locking the Primary Transfer Roller In Place

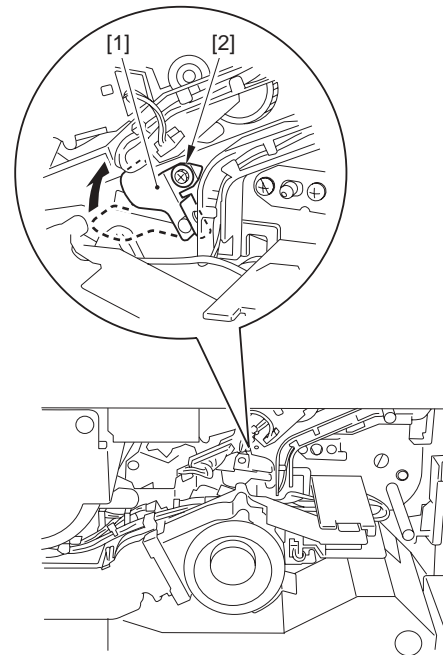
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door[1]



F-2-35

- 2) Lift the pressure lever for the primary transfer roller [1] in the direction of the arrow, and lock the roller in place; thereafter fit the pressure lever for the primary transfer roller [1] in place with the screw [2].



F-2-36

- 3) Close the front door.

2.2.5 Decurler points to Note About Installation

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer)

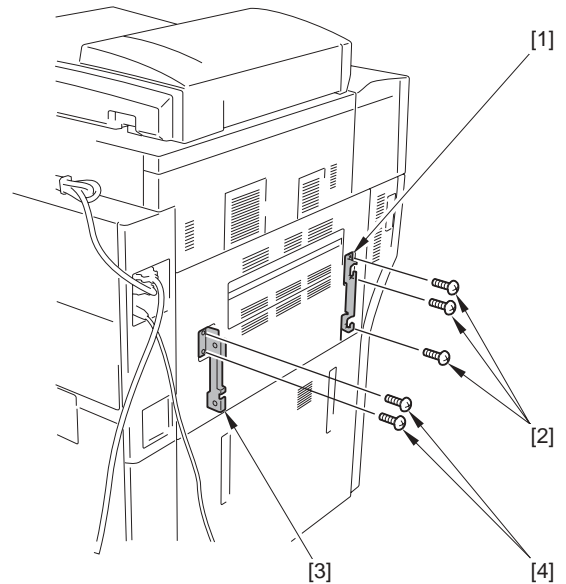


Before mounting the decurler, mount the reader and the printer cover.

2.2.6 Mounting the Decurler

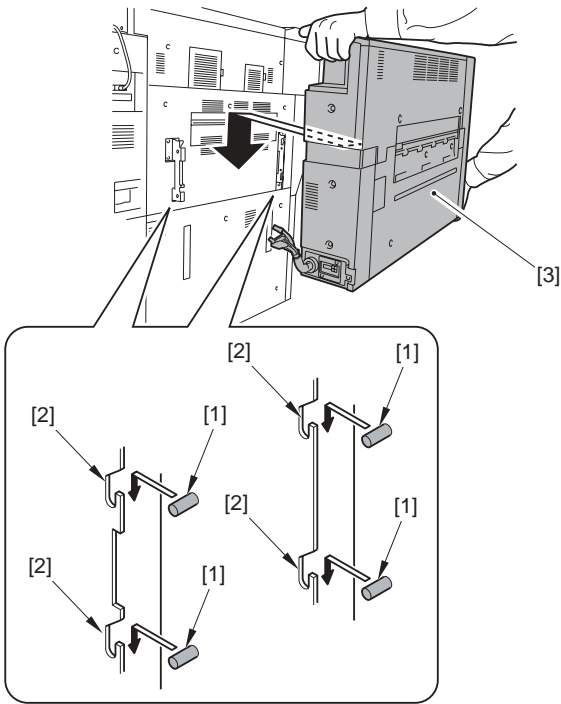
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Attach the buffer mounting plate (front) [1].
- 3 screws (binding; M4X8) [2]
- 2) Attach the buffer mounting plate (rear) [3].
- 2 screws (binding; M4X8) [4]

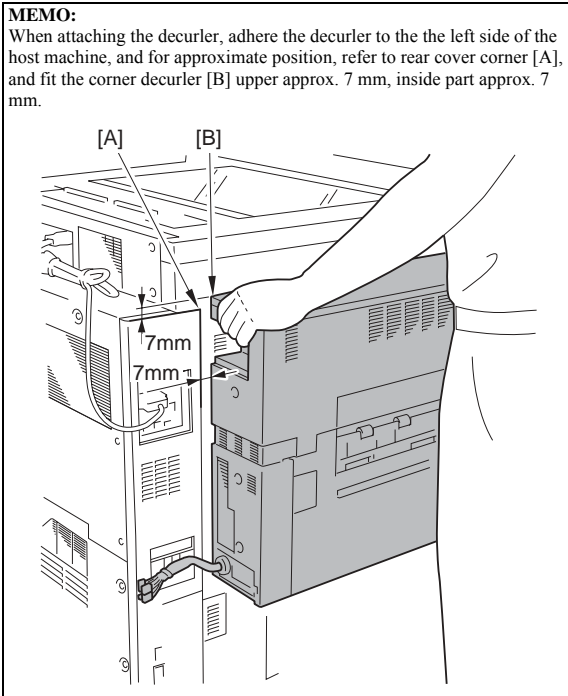


F-2-37

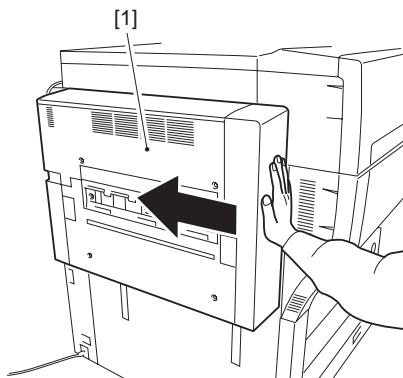
- 3) Fit the 4 shafts [1] of the decurler to the 4 hooks [2] at the left side of the main machine to mount the decurler [3].



F-2-38

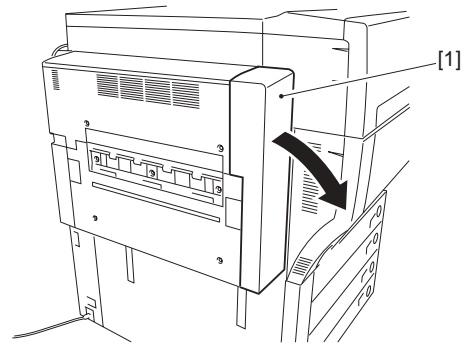


4) Push the decurler [1] in the direction of the arrow until it stops.



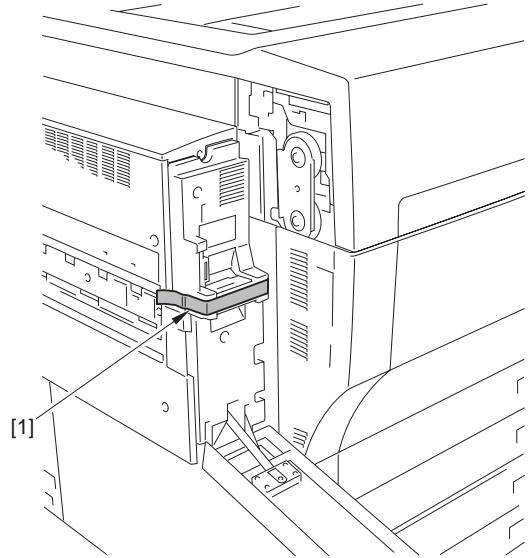
F-2-39

5) Open the decurler front cover [1].



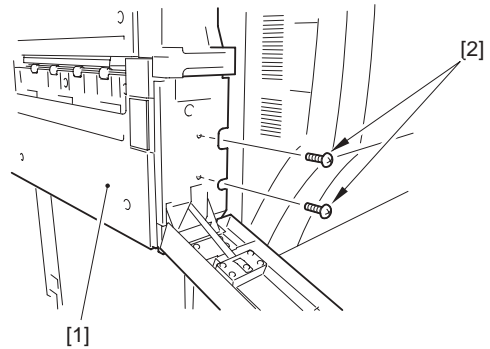
F-2-40

6) Remove the fixing tape [1].



F-2-41

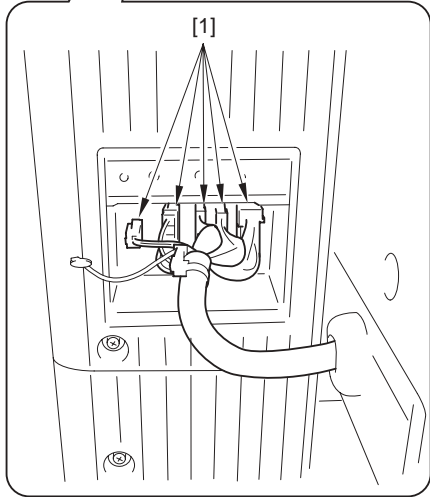
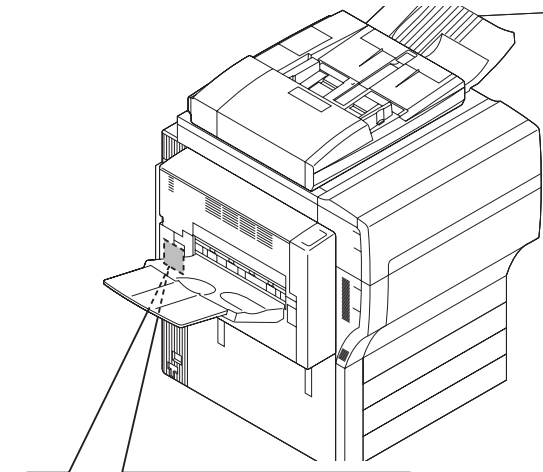
7) Attach the decurler [1] in place.
- 2 screws (binding: M4X8) [2]



F-2-42

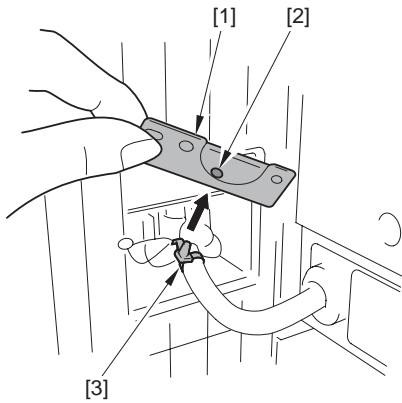
8) Close the decurler front cover.

9) Connect the 5 connectors [1] to the main machine.



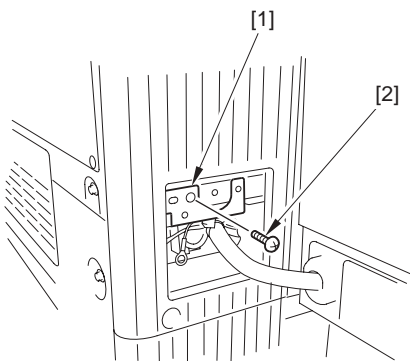
F-2-43

10) Attach the reuse band [3] to the hole [2] of the cable supporting plate [1].



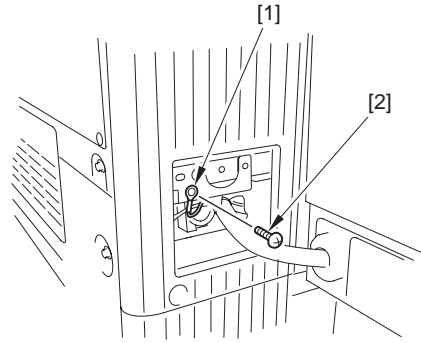
F-2-44

11) Attach the harness supporting plate [1].
- 1 screw (binding; M4X8) [2]



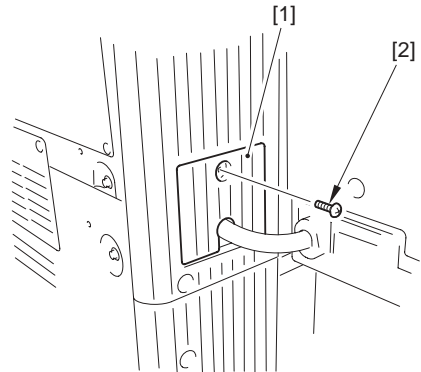
F-2-45

12) Attach the grounding wire [1] to the harness support plate.
- 1 screw (binding; M4X9) [2]



F-2-46

13) Attach the panel mounting cover [1].
- 1 screw (binding; M4X8) [2]

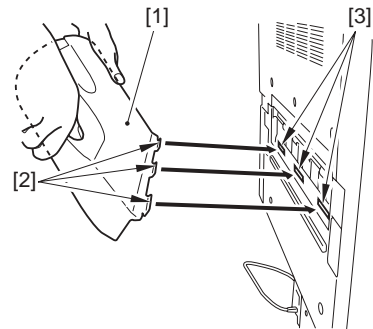


F-2-47

2.2.7 Mounting the Delivery Tray

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Fit the 3 claws [2] of the delivery tray [1] into the holes [3] of decurler.

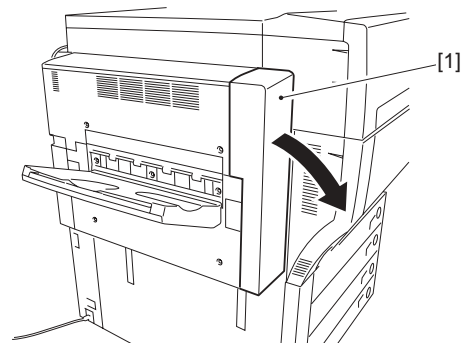


F-2-48

2.2.8 Attaching the Outer Delivery Roller Cover

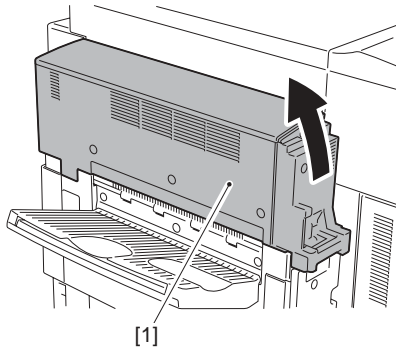
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Open the decurler front cover [1].



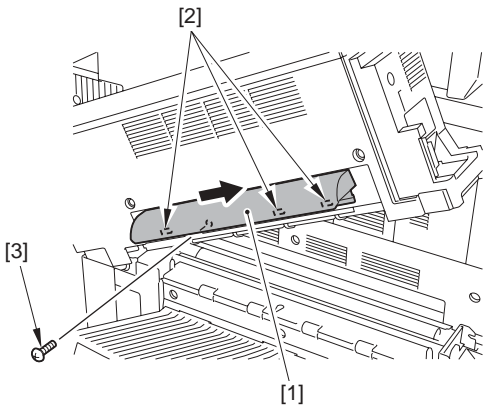
F-2-49

2) Open the decurler upper unit [1].



F-2-50

- 3) Insert the 3 claws [2] of the outer delivery roller cover [1] into the hole of the decurler, and then move it in the direction of the arrow.
- 4) Fix the external delivery roller cover [1] using the screw (P-tight; M4X8) attached with the tape inside the external delivery roller cover.



F-2-51

- 5) Close the decurler upper unit.
- 6) Close the decurler front cover.

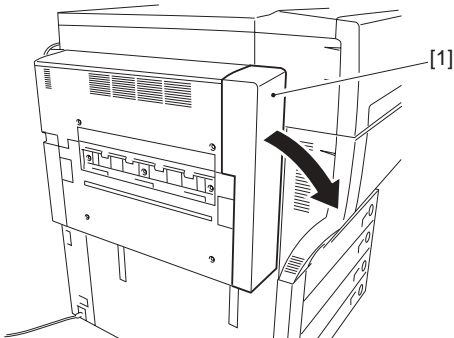
!
Detach the outer delivery roller cover before removing the delivery tray.

2.2.9 Decurler Open / Close Angle Adjustment

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

!
In the case of using flash memory, change the angle of the decurler opening because the USB flash memory comes into contact with the main machine.

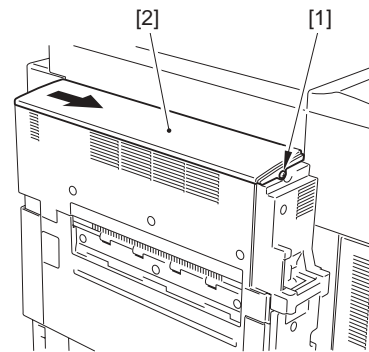
- 1) Remove the outer delivery roller cover.
- 2) Remove the delivery Tray.
- 3) Open the decurler front cover [1]



F-2-52

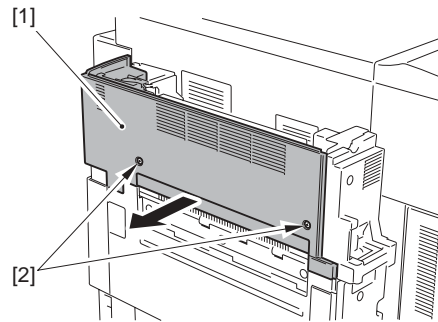
4) Remove the screw [1], slide the decurler upper cover [2] in the direction

of the arrow to detach.



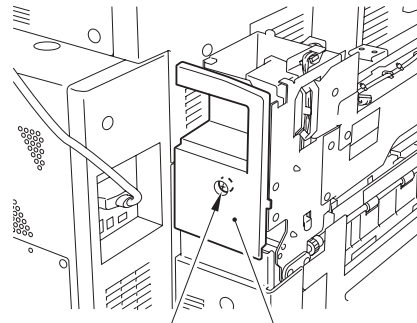
F-2-53

5) Remove the upper left cover [1] of the decurler.
- two screws [2]



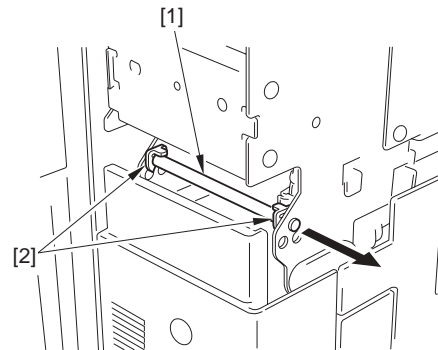
F-2-54

6) Detach the decurler upper left cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



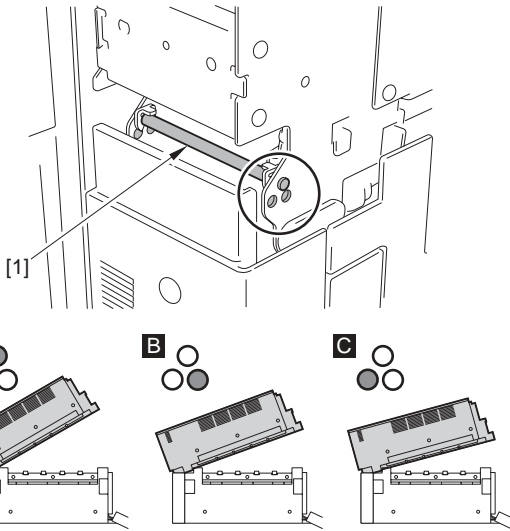
F-2-55

7) Remove the adjusting shaft [1].
- 1 resin ring [2]



F-2-56

8) Open the decurler. Insert the adjusting shaft [1] into either hole of [A] to [C], and fix it with the plastic ring.
A: 30 deg
B: 20 deg
C: 15 deg



F-2-57

Default (A) : 30 deg

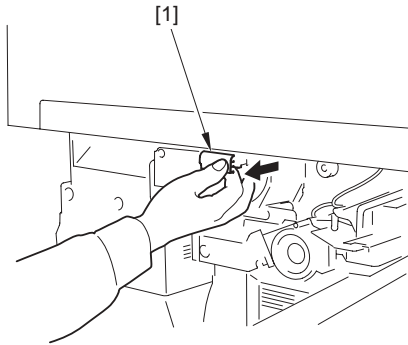
MEMO:
Angle adjustment is available according to the purpose of use.

- 9) Attach the detached cover.
 - The decurler upper rear cover
 - The decurler upper left cover
 - The decurler upper cover
 - The decurler front cover
- 10) Attaching the delivery Tray.
- 11) Attaching the outer delivery roller cover.

2.2.10 Preparation for Mounting the Developing Assembly

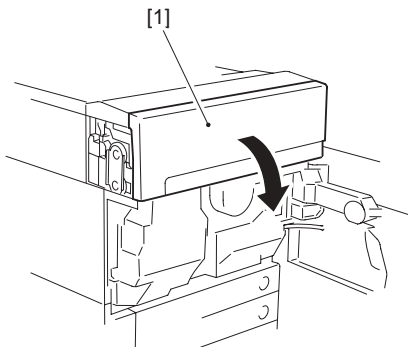
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull the shutter lever [1] found at the hopper fully toward you.



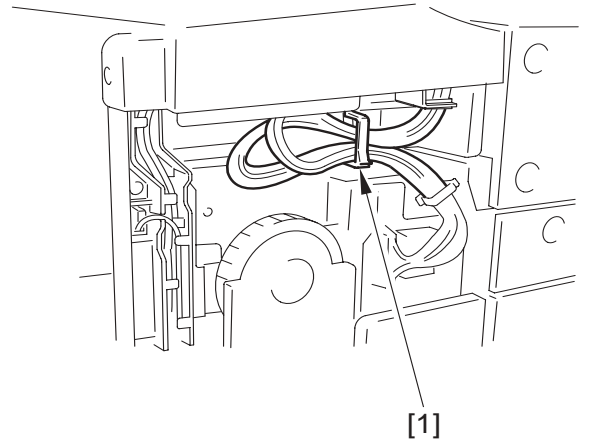
F-2-58

- 3) Open the toner replacement cover [1].



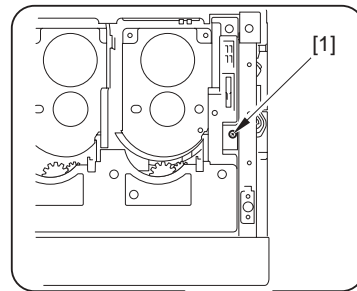
F-2-59

- 4) Free the 2 harnesses from the wire saddle [1].
<Right Side>



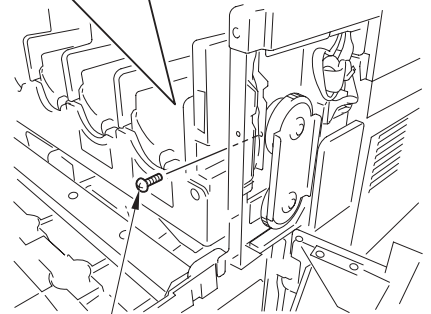
F-2-60

- 5) Remove the 2 hopper fixing screws [1] from each side.
<Right side>



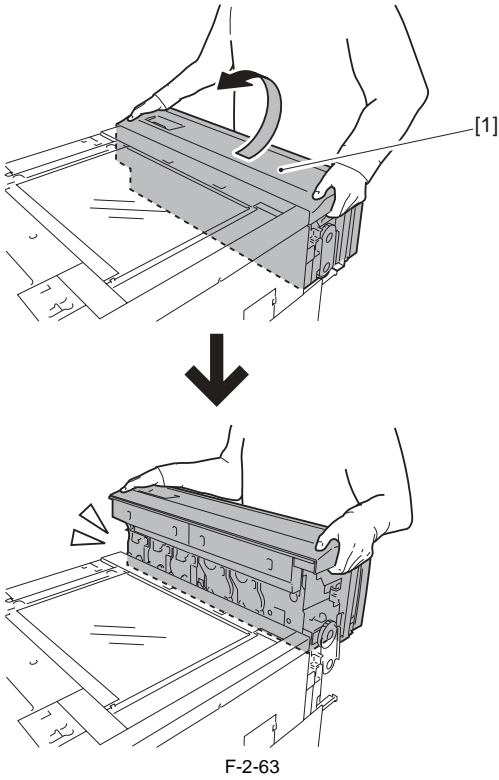
F-2-61

<Left side>



F-2-62

- 6) Close the toner replacement cover.
- 7) Pull the hopper [1] in the direction of the arrow until it stops.



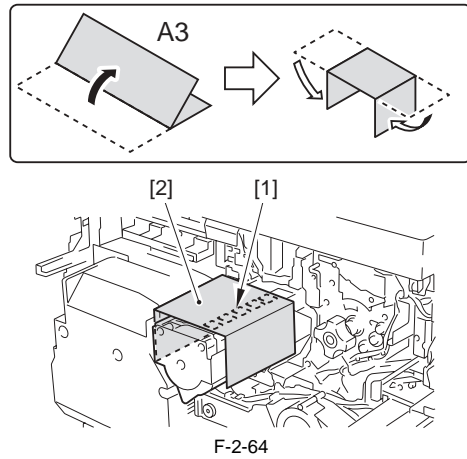
⚠ Points to Note when Pulling up the Hopper Unit

1. Be sure to check with eyes that the lock arm [1] on the lower left of the hopper is hooked to the shaft [2] and the hopper unit is locked.

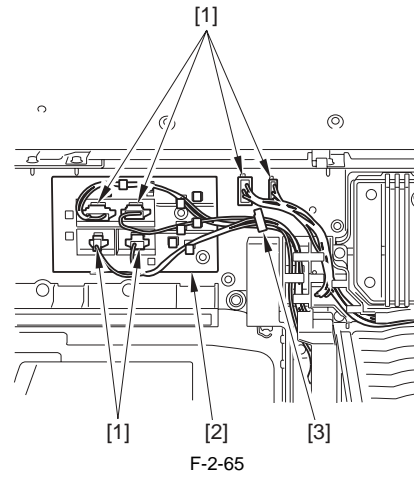
2. Be sure not to swing the hopper unit. In the case the hopper unit is not fully locked, the hopper unit may drop.

- 8) Fold a sheet of A3 paper as shown in the figure and cover the supply mouth [1] with the A3 paper [2].

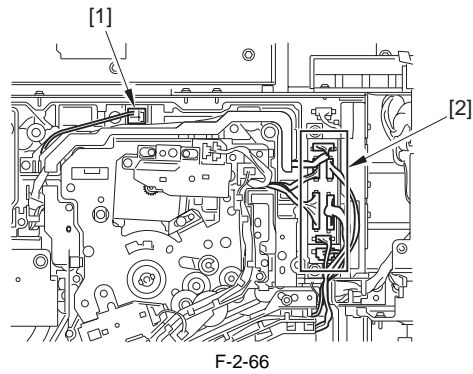
MEMO:
The purpose of covering the supply mouth with a sheet of paper is to prevent any contaminant from entering from the supply mouth [1].



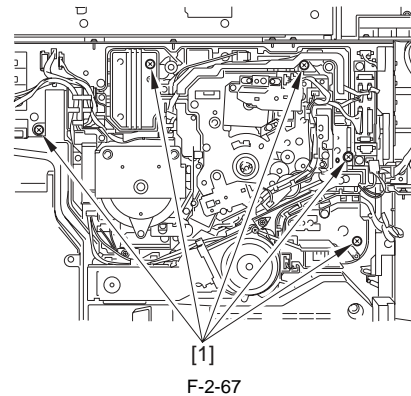
- 9) Disconnect the 6 connectors [1], and free the cable from the cable guide [2] and the wire saddle [3].



- 10) Disconnect the connector [1] and the other 7 connectors [2].



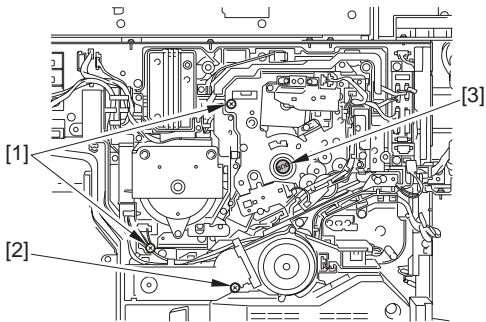
- 11) Remove the 5 screws [1].



- 12) Loosen the 2 process joint shafts [1] and the ITB joint shaft [2].



1. Hold the drum fixing member [3] steady when loosening the shaft of the ITB joint shaft [2]. (Unless the drum fixing member is held down, the shaft is not loosened and rotates with the drum.)
2. Check to see that the fixing member of the connection shaft is removed certainly.
(When the fixing member is removed, the connection shaft moves back to front.)
3. Be sure to loosen the shaft fully since the processing unit cannot be removed unless this shaft is fully loosened.

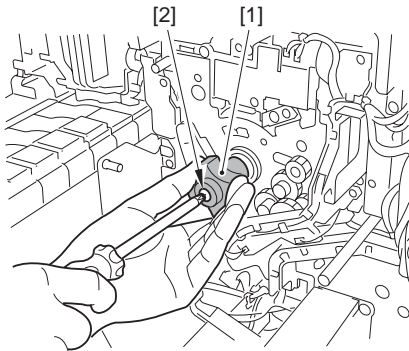


F-2-68

- 13) Remove the drum fixing member [1] while holding it to prevent its rotation.
- 1 screw [2]

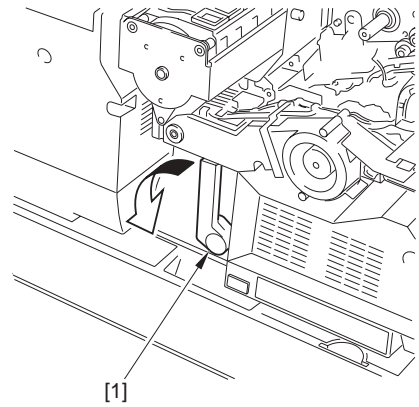


Pay attention when pulling out the drum fixing member [1].



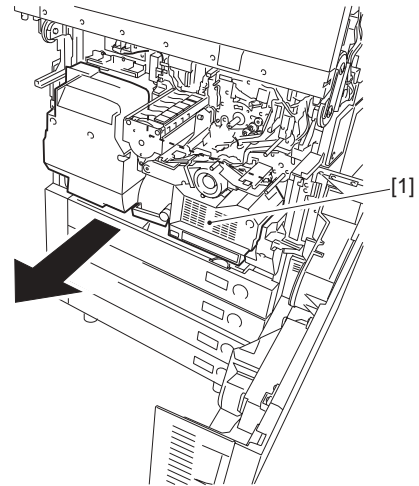
F-2-69

- 14) Shift down the fixing/feeding release lever [1] in the direction of the arrow.



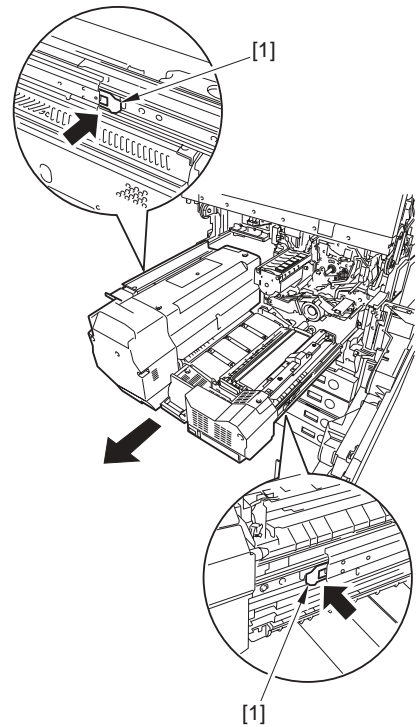
F-2-70

- 15) Pull out the fixing feed unit [1] to the full length.



F-2-71

- 16) Press the two claws [1] and pull out the fixing feed unit to the full length.

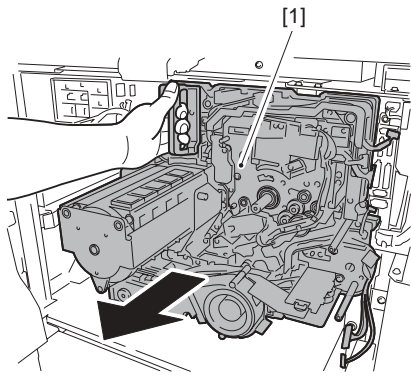


F-2-72

- 17) Pull out the process unit [1].



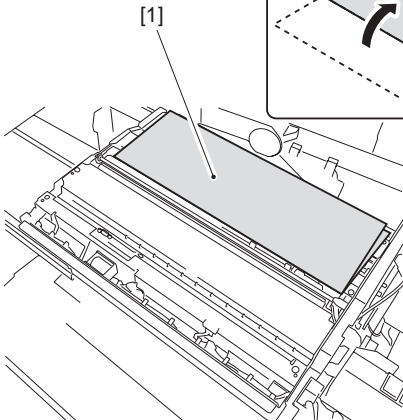
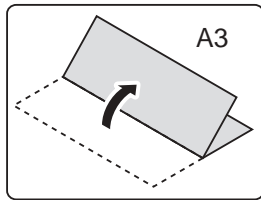
- In the case of pulling out process unit, check to see as instructed in the step 10) that the connector [1] is completely disconnected.
- Check to see that the adjuster is locked in place.



F-2-73

18) Fold 2 to 3 sheets of A3 paper [1] in half as shown in the figure, and then cover the drum with them.

MEMO:
Paper is used for the purpose of preventing light-transmittance.

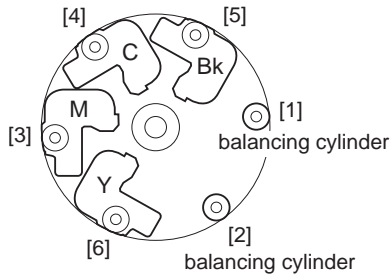


F-2-74

2.2.11 Mounting the Balancing Cylinder

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

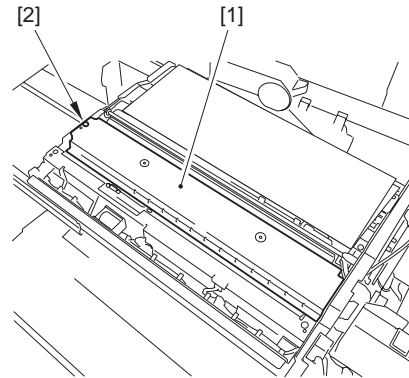
⚠
- In order to even the balance inside the rotary, the developing assembly should be mounted by the following step:
balancing cylinder [1] > balancing cylinder [2] > M developing assembly [3] > C developing assembly [4] > BK developing assembly [5] > Y developing assembly [6]



- Attach the balancing cylinders onto the area where there is no toner supply mouth.

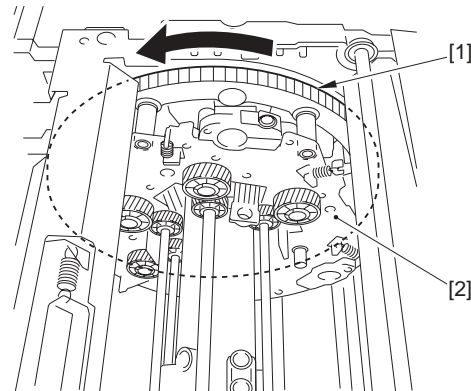
- 1) Take out the balancing cylinders from the attached packing box.
- 2) Remove the developing assembly cover [1].

- 1 screw [2]

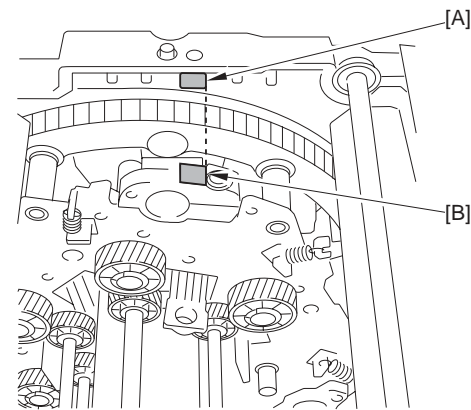


F-2-75

3) Hold the gear at the developing assembly [1], and manually turn the developing rotary [2] counterclockwise, then with the balancing cylinder upward, fix [A] and [B] aligned as instructed in the figure.



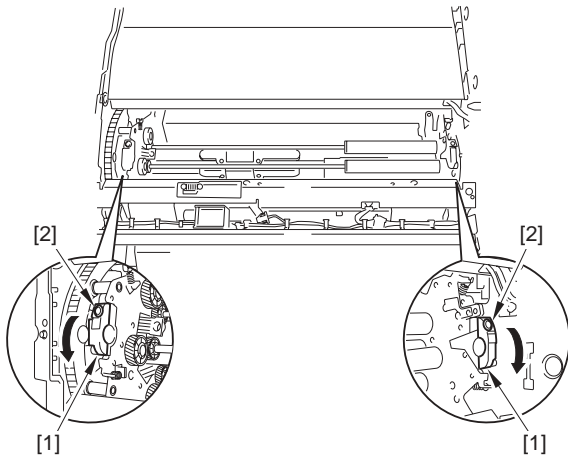
F-2-76



F-2-77

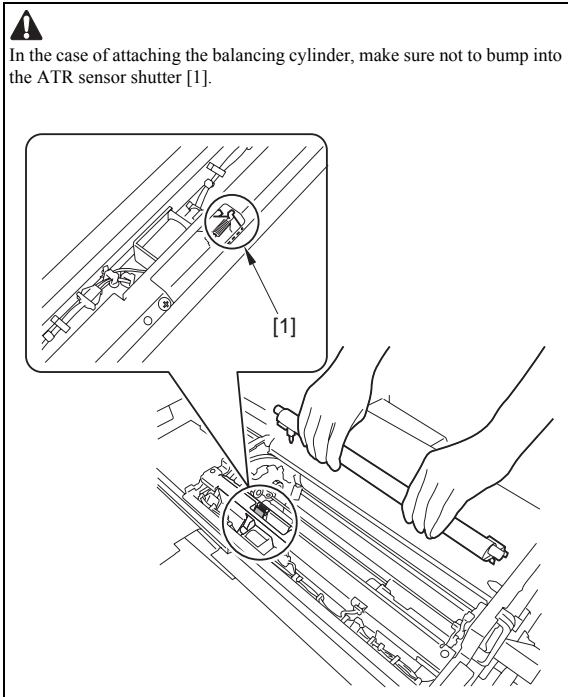
4) Open the 2 developing assembly fixing arms [1].
- 2 screws [2]

⚠
In the case of turning the developing rotary, make sure that the developing assembly fixing arm is fixed with the screw.



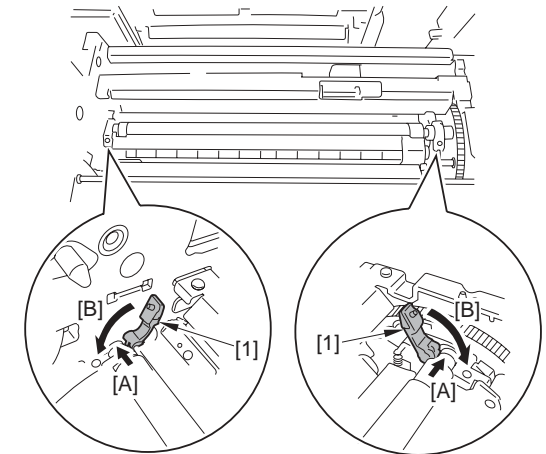
F-2-78

- 5) Attach the balancing cylinder [1] to the developing rotary. Make sure that the pin [2] at the Balancing Cylinder is found in the hole located at the backside of the developing rotary [3].

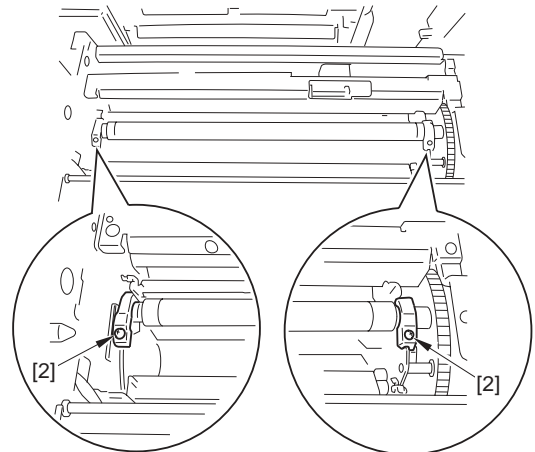


F-2-79

- 6) Push the 2 developing assembly fixed arms [1] in the direction of [A], set them in the direction of [B] to fix - 2 screws [2]



F-2-80

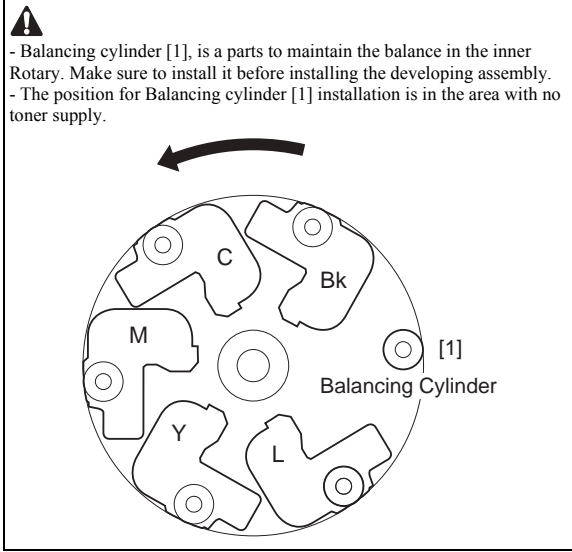


F-2-81

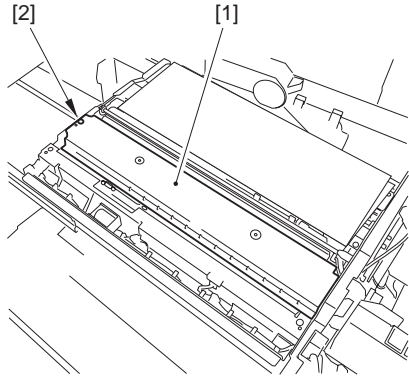
- 7) Repeat the step 3) to 6) to set the 2 balancing cylinders to the developing rotary.

2.2.12 Mounting the Balancing Cylinder

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

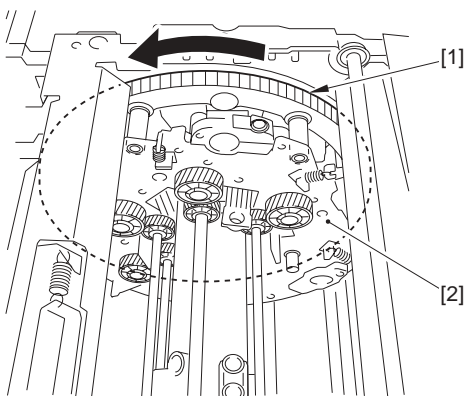


- 1) Take out the balancing cylinders from the attached packing box.
- 2) Remove the developing assembly cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]

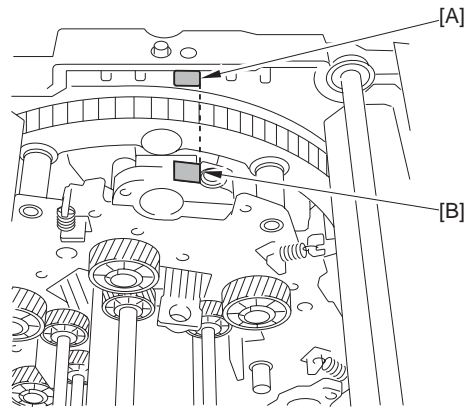


F-2-82

- 3) Hold the gear at the developing assembly [1], and manually turn the de-veloping rotary [2] counterclockwise, then with the balancing cylinder upward, fix [A] and [B] aligned as instructed in the figure.

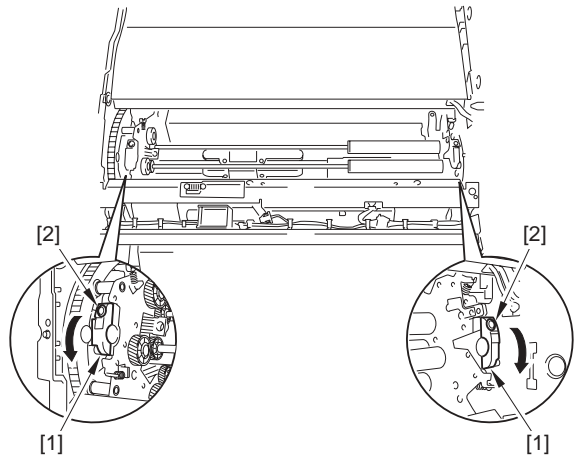
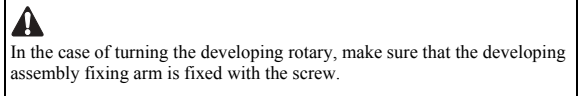


F-2-83



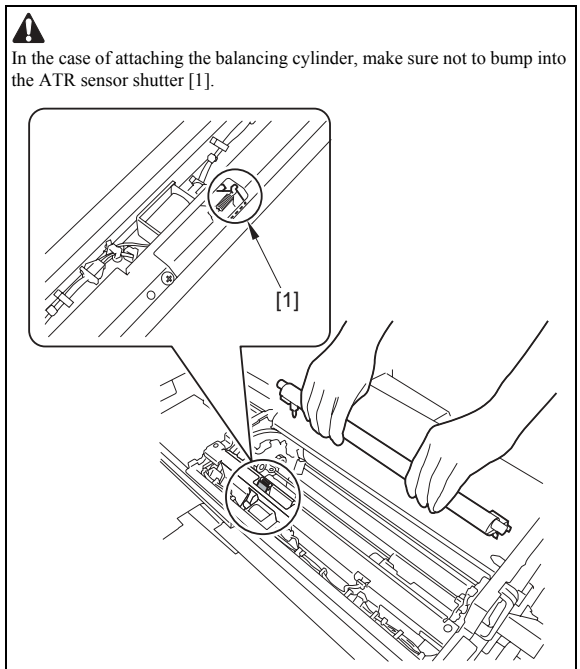
F-2-84

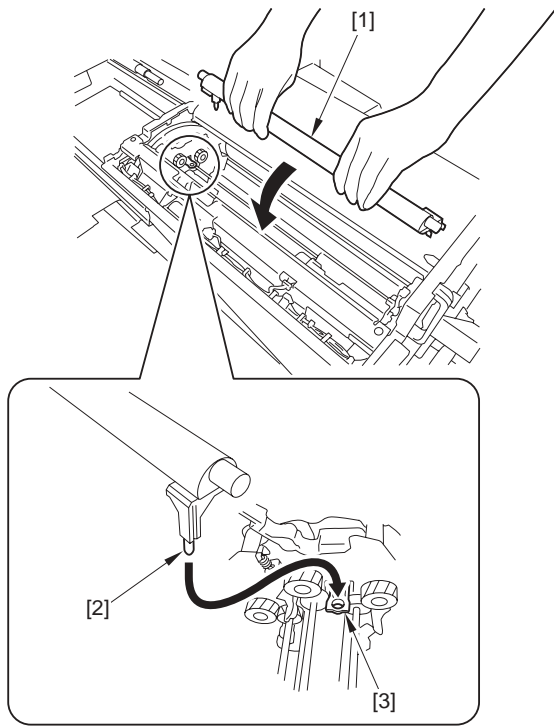
- 4) Open the 2 developing assembly fixing arms [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-2-85

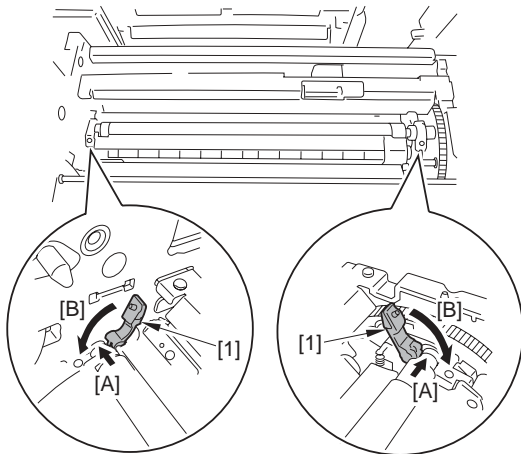
- 5) Attach the balancing cylinder [1] to the developing rotary. Make sure that the pin [2] at the Balancing Cylinder is found in the hole located at the backside of the developing rotary [3].



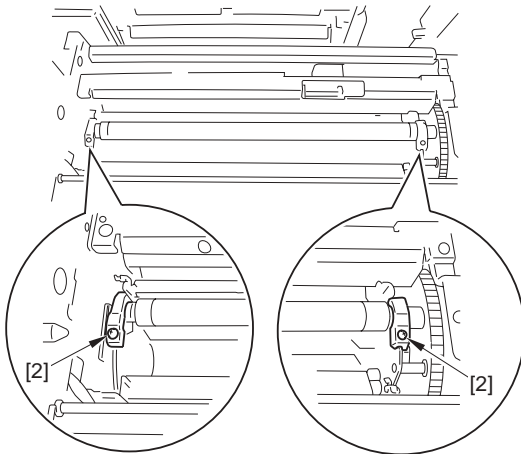


F-2-86

- 6) Push the 2 developing assembly fixed arms [1] in the direction of [A], set them in the direction of [B] to fix.
- 2 screws [2]



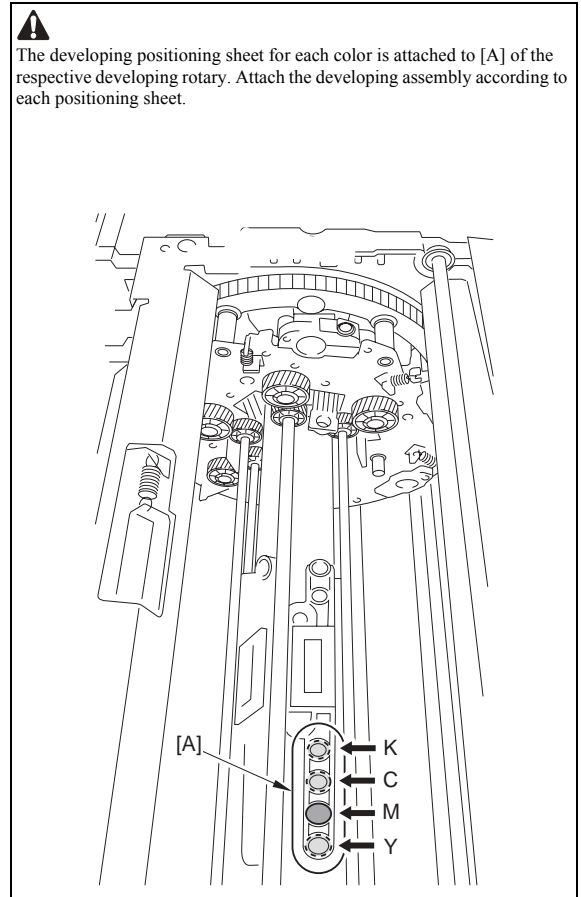
F-2-87



F-2-88

MEMO:
When touching the developing assembly, check to make sure that your hands are free of foreign matter (especially metal pieces), then start the work. (If there is foreign matter on your hand, it may cause image fault.)

- 1) Take out the developing assembly (Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, and Black) from the attached packing box.

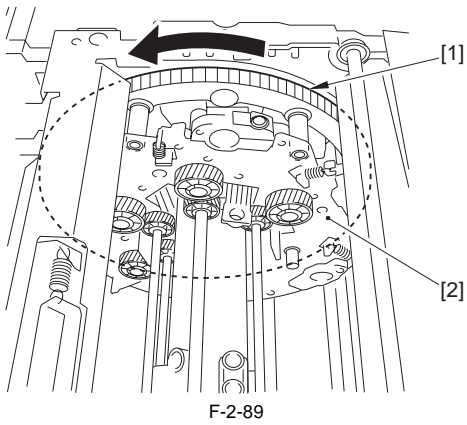


- 2) Hold the gear at the developing assembly [1], and manually turn the developing rotary [2] counterclockwise, then with the installed color upward, fix [A] and [B] aligned as instructed in the figure.

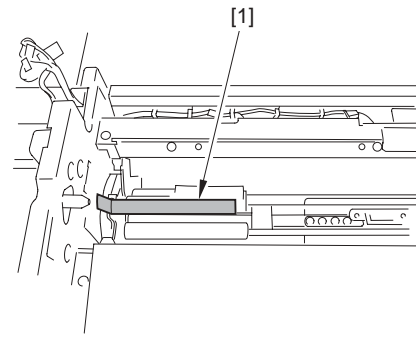
!
If turning the developing rotary clockwise while the developing assembly is fitted, the toner blocking sheet which is attached to the sleeve of the developing assembly may come off because of intervention with the photosensitive drum. The developing rotary must be turned counterclockwise.

2.2.13 Mounting the Developing Assembly

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

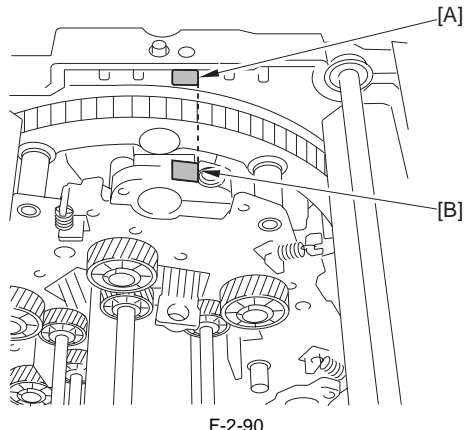


F-2-89



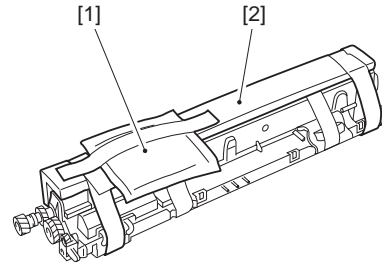
F-2-92

5) Hold the developing assembly so that the developing cylinder is facing upward, remove the desiccating agent [1] and the protective member [2].



F-2-90

3) Open the 2 developing assembly fixing arms [1].
- 2 screws [2]

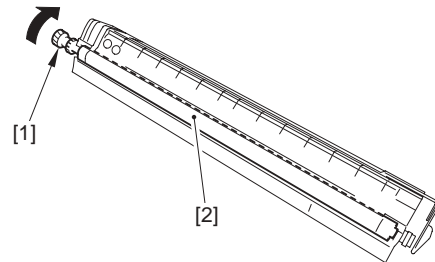


F-2-93

⚠
Keep in mind not to touch the developing cylinder.

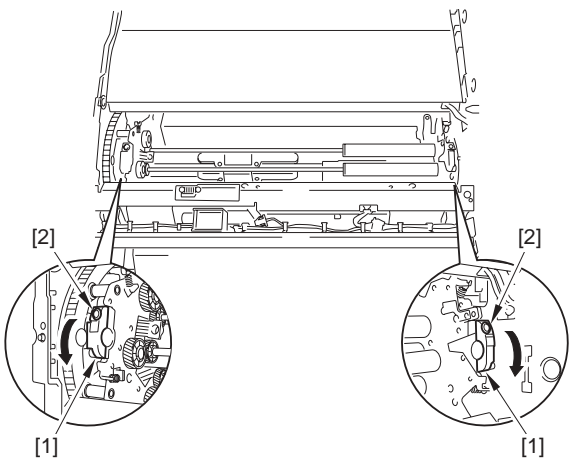
6) Manually turning the developing cylinder gear [1] 5 to 6 times in the direction of the arrow, to check if there is any scar on its surface and also make the starter in the unit even out.

⚠
In the case of turning the developing rotary, make sure that the developing assembly must be fixed with the screw.



F-2-94

⚠
After the above operation, change the direction of the developing assembly so that the taped-sponge comes upward.

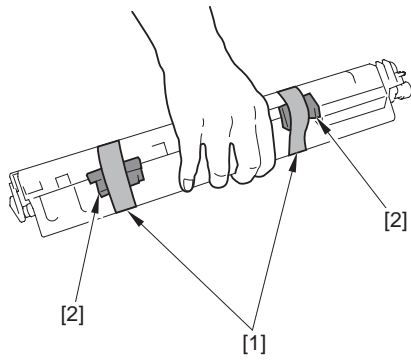


F-2-91

4) Remove the protective sheet [1] attached at the toner supply mouth of the developing rotary.

7) Remove the 2 tapes [1] to remove the sponges [2].

⚠
Make sure to remove the sponges [2].

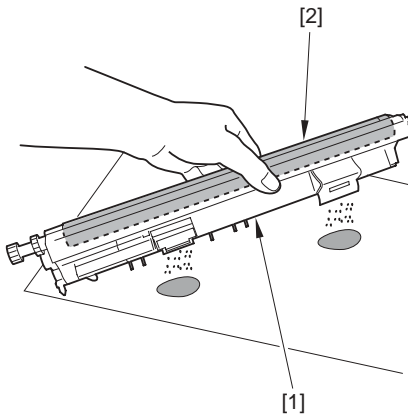


F-2-95

- 8) Place a piece of A3 paper on a flat surface. Then turn the developing assembly upside down and shake off the residual toner in the toner mouth onto the paper.



Keep in mind not to touch the developing cylinder [2].

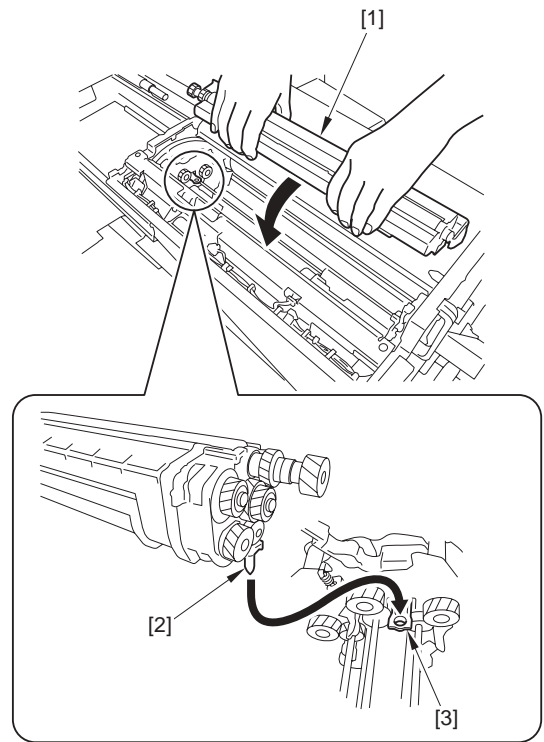
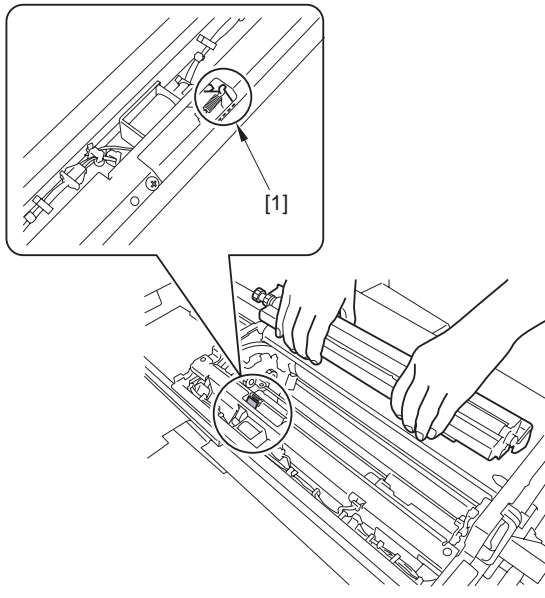


F-2-96

- 9) Fit the developing assembly [1] to the developing rotary. Check to make sure that the pin [2] of the developing assembly is fitted in the hole [3] located at the backside of the developing rotary.



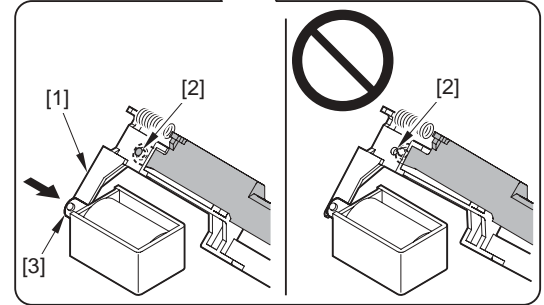
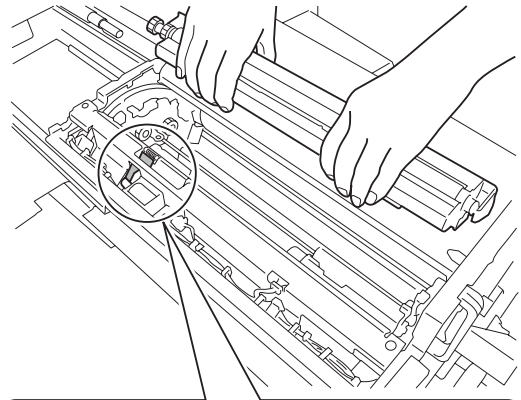
In the case of attaching the developing assembly, make sure not to bump into the ATR sensor shutter [1].



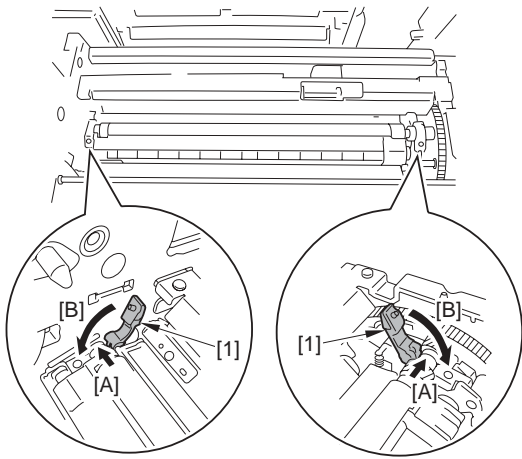
F-2-97



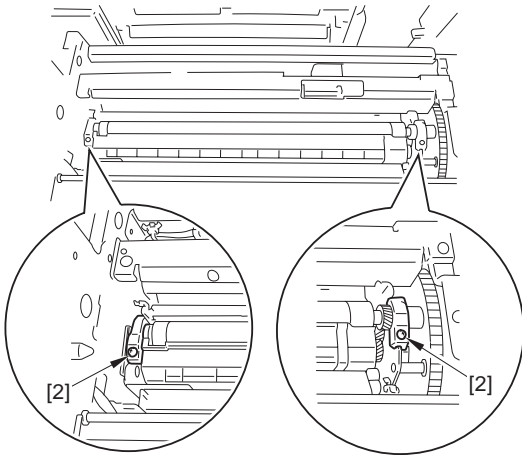
-After attaching the developing assembly, check to see if the hole [2] of the ATR sensor shutter [1] is embossed.
-Push the plunger [3] of the ATR sensor shutter solenoid in the direction of the arrow several times, and check to see if it moves back and forth.



- 10) Push the 2 developing assembly fixed arms [1] in the direction of [A], set them in the direction of [B] and fix.
- 2 screws [2]



F-2-98



F-2-99

11) Repeat the step 2) to 10) to set the 4 developing assemblies to the developing rotary.

2.2.14 Mounting the Developing Assembly

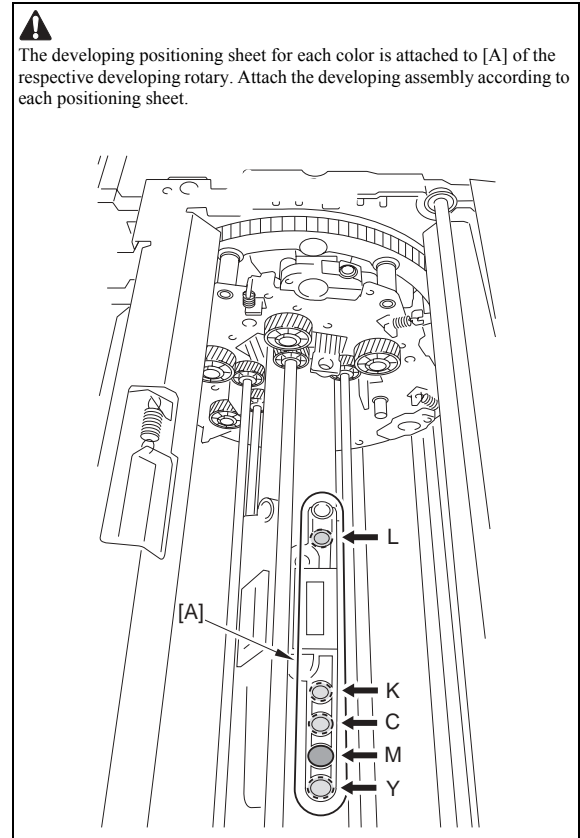
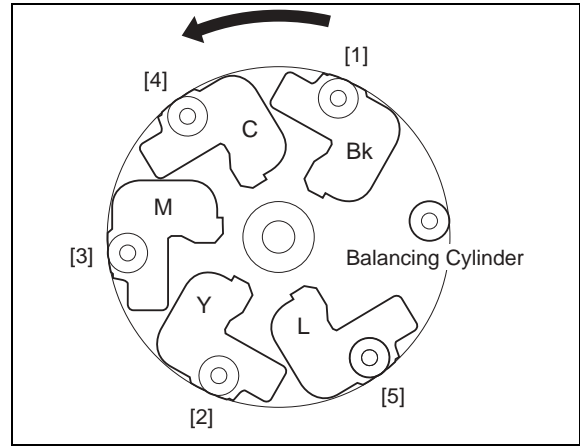
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

⚠
 - When touching the developing assembly, check to make sure that your hands are free of foreign matter (especially metal pieces), then start the work. (If there is foreign matter on your hand, it may cause image fault.)
 - When you hold developing assembly, make sure that you don't touch developing cylinder.

1) Take out the developing assembly (yellow, magenta, cyan, black, and clear) from the auxiliary package.

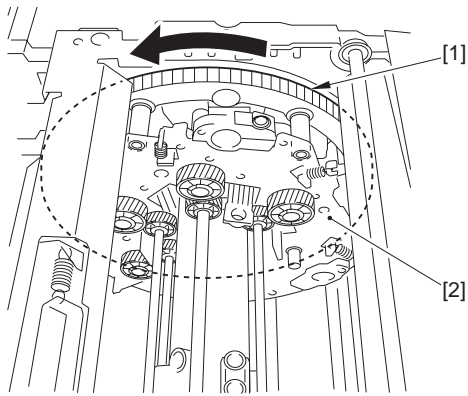
To set developing assembly to developing rotary, please follow the below steps.

⚠
 To set developing assembly to developing rotary, refer to the following steps, Bk developing assembly [1] -> Y developing assembly [2] -> M developing assembly [3] -> C developing assembly [4] -> L (Clear) developing assembly [5].

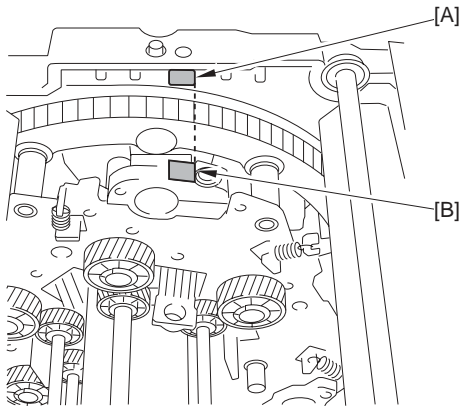


2) Hold the gear at the developing assembly [1], and manually turn the developing rotary [2] counterclockwise, then with the installed color upward, fix [A] and [B] aligned as instructed in the figure.

⚠
 If turning the developing rotary clockwise while the developing assembly is fitted, the toner blocking sheet which is attached to the sleeve of the developing assembly may come off because of intervention with the photosensitive drum. The developing rotary must be turned counterclockwise.



F-2-100

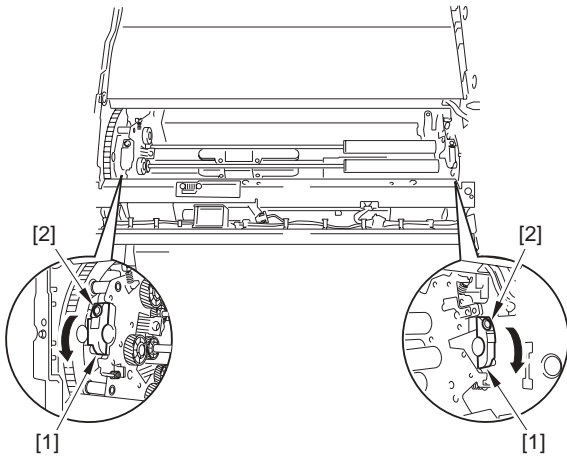


F-2-101

- 3) Open the 2 developing assembly fixing arms [1].
- 2 screws [2]

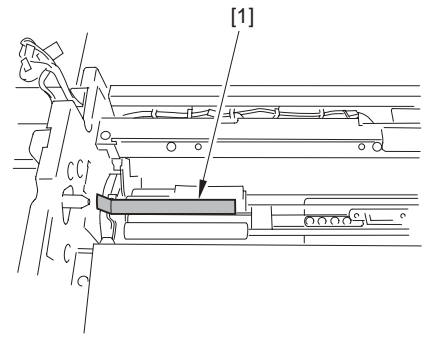


In the case of turning the developing rotary, make sure that the developing assembly must be fixed with the screw.



F-2-102

- 4) Remove the protective sheet [1] attached at the toner supply mouth of the developing rotary.

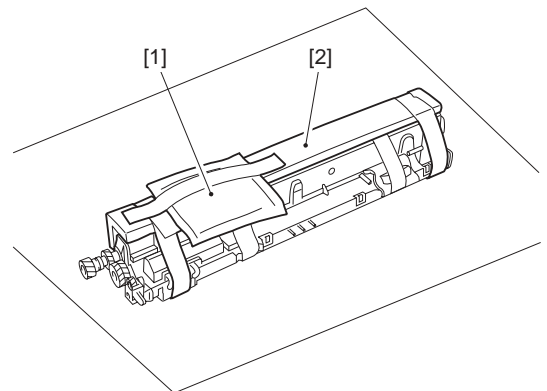


F-2-103

- 5) Set an A3-size sheet, and remove the desiccant [1] and protection part [2] in the condition where the developing cylinder of the developing assembly is placed on the upper side.

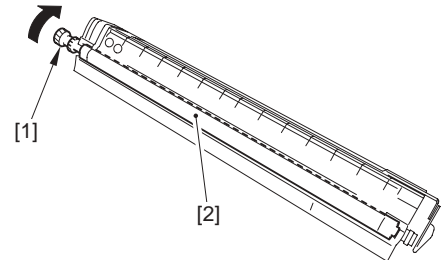


Keep in mind not to touch the developing cylinder.



F-2-104

- 6) Manually turning the developing cylinder gear [1] 5 to 6 times in the direction of the arrow, to check if there is any scar on its surface and also make the starter in the unit even out.



F-2-105

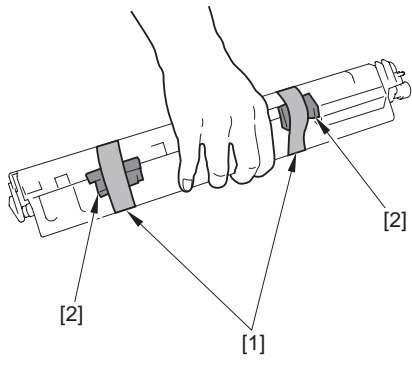


After the above operation, change the direction of the developing assembly so that the taped-sponge comes upward.

- 7) Remove the 2 tapes [1] to remove the sponges [2].



Make sure to remove the sponges [2].

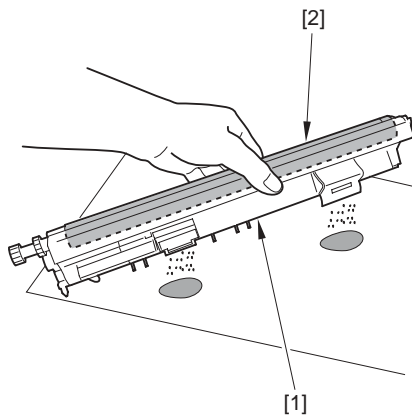


F-2-106

- 8) Place a piece of A3 paper on a flat surface. Then turn the developing assembly upside down and shake off the residual toner in the toner mouth onto the paper.



Keep in mind not to touch the developing cylinder [2].

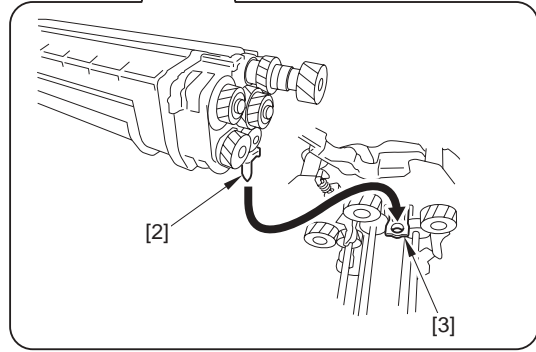
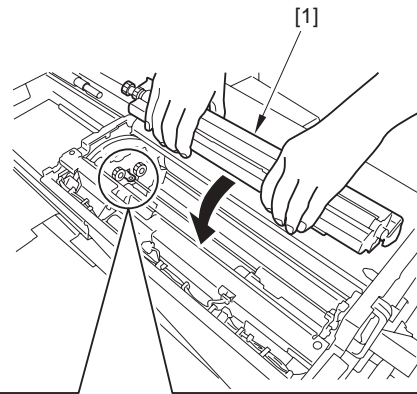
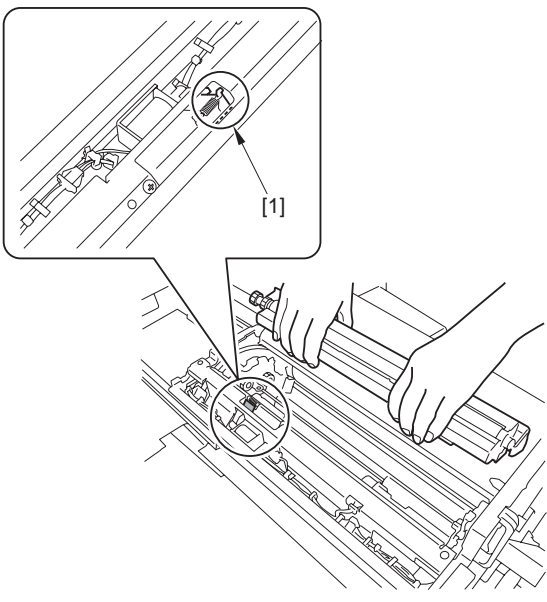


F-2-107

- 9) Fit the developing assembly [1] to the developing rotary. Check to make sure that the pin [2] of the developing assembly is fitted in the hole [3] located at the backside of the developing rotary.



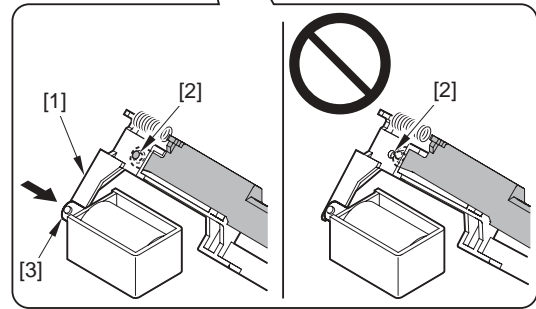
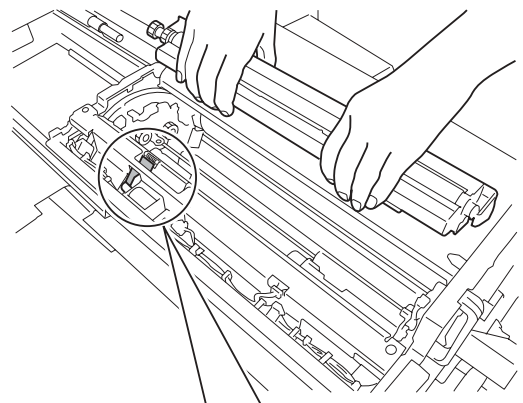
In the case of attaching the developing assembly, make sure not to bump into the ATR sensor shutter [1].



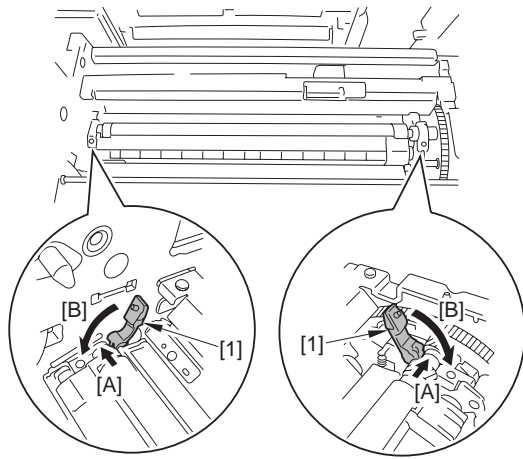
F-2-108



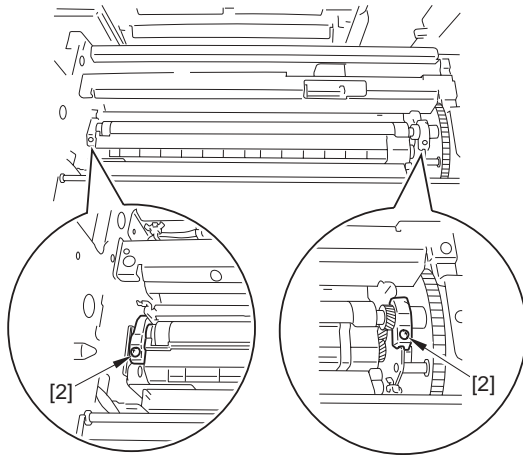
- After attaching the developing assembly, check to see if the hole [2] of the ATR sensor shutter [1] is embossed.
- Push the plunger [3] of the ATR sensor shutter solenoid in the direction of the arrow several times, and check to see if it moves back and forth.



- 10) Push the 2 developing assembly fixed arms [1] in the direction of [A], set them in the direction of [B] and fix.
- 2 screws [2]



F-2-109

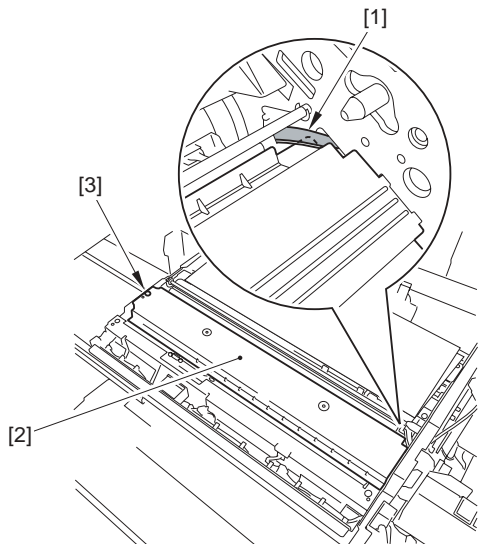


F-2-110

2.2.15 Mounting the Process Unit

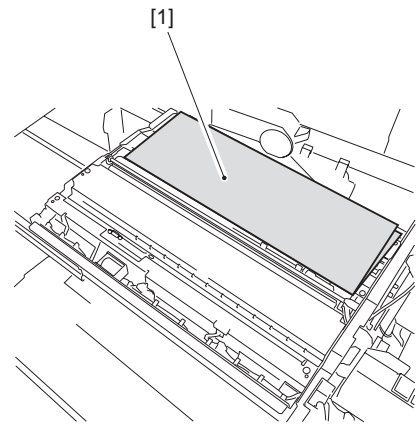
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

- 1) With lifting the cable [1], attach the developing assembly cover [2].
- 1 screw [3]



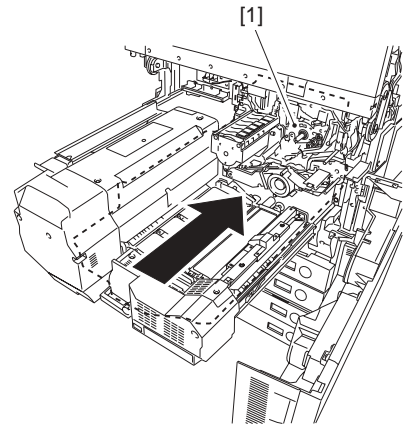
F-2-111

- 2) Remove the A3 paper [1].




F-2-112

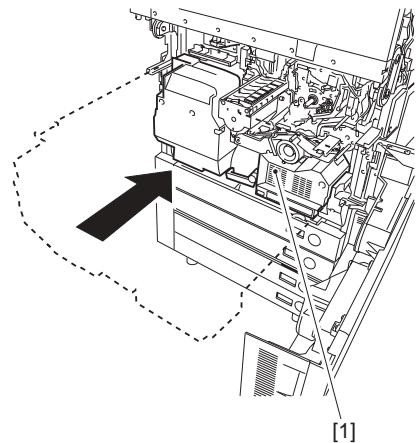
- 3) Put back the process unit [1].



F-2-113

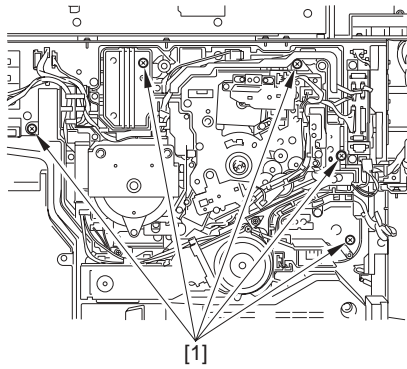
- 4) Put back the fixing/feeding unit [1].

 Keep in mind not to mix up the harness.



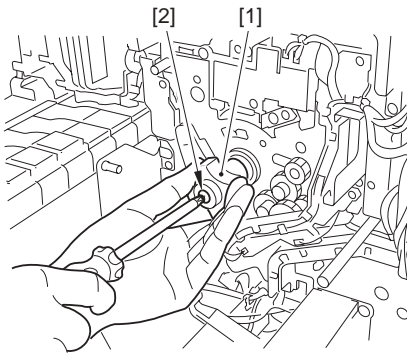
F-2-114

- 5) Tighten the 5 screws [1].



F-2-115

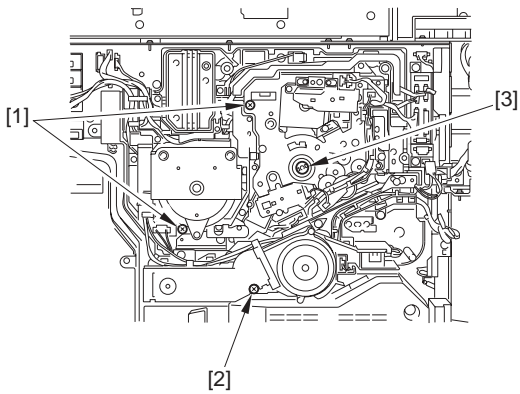
6) Fit the drum fixing member [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-2-116

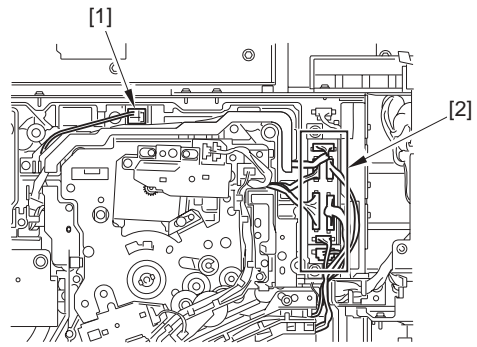
7) Tighten the 2 process joint shafts [1] and the ITB joint shaft [2].

⚠
 - Hold the drum fixing member [3] steady when tightening the shaft of the ITB joint shaft [2].
 - If the drum fixing member is not held steady, the shaft [2] will rotate without tightening.



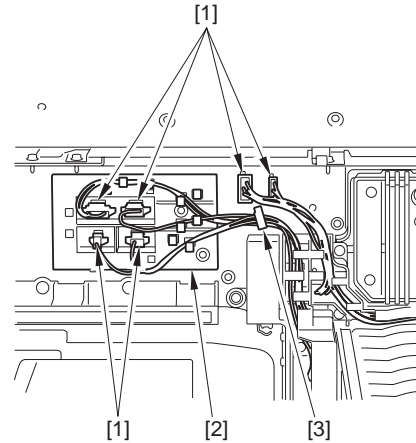
F-2-117

8) Connect the connector [1] and other 7 connectors [2].



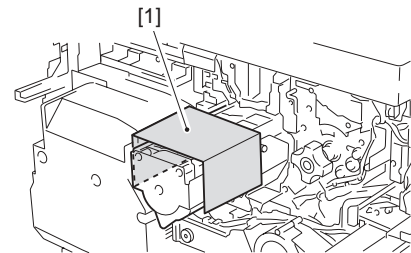
F-2-118

9) Connect the 6 connectors [1], and fix it in place with the cable guide [2] and the clamp [3].



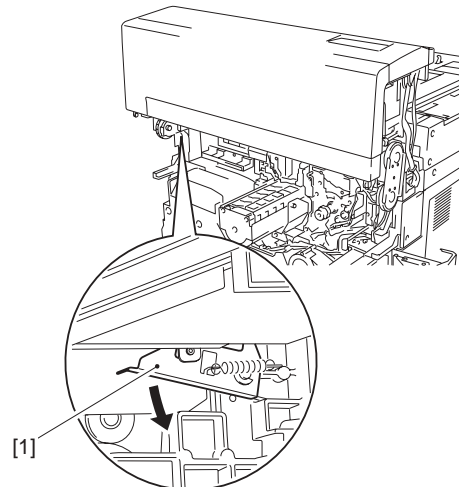
F-2-119

10) Remove the A3 paper [1].



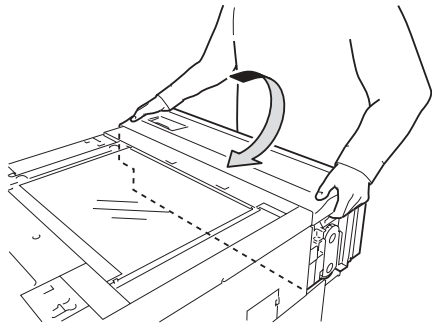
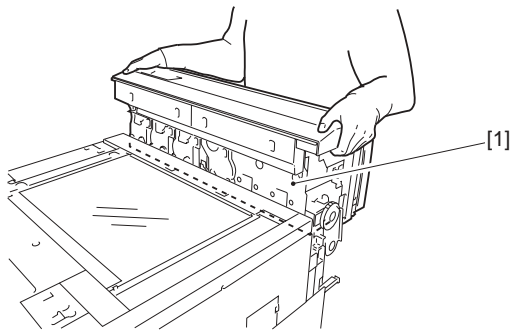
F-2-120

11) Shift down the lock lever [1] in the direction of the arrow to release.



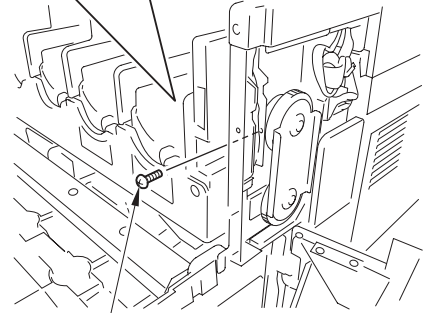
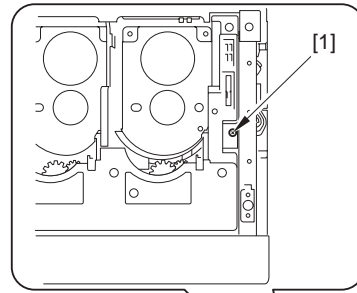
F-2-121

12) Hold it tight with both hands, and move the hopper assembly [1] down slowly in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-122

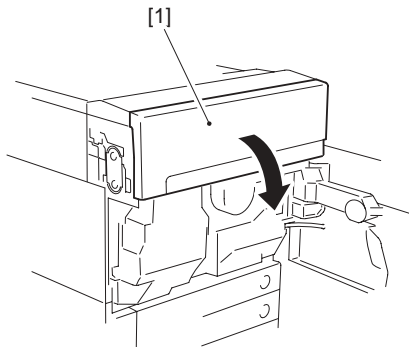
13) Open the toner replacement cover [1]



[1]

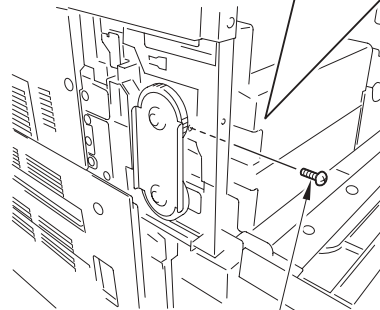
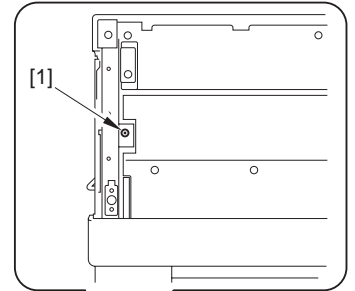
F-2-124

The left side



F-2-123

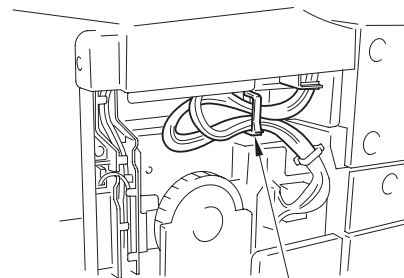
14) Tighten the 2 hopper fixing screws [1].
The right side



[1]

F-2-125

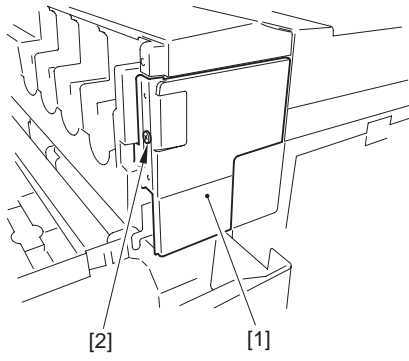
15) Fix the 2 harnesses with the clamp [1].
Right side



[1]

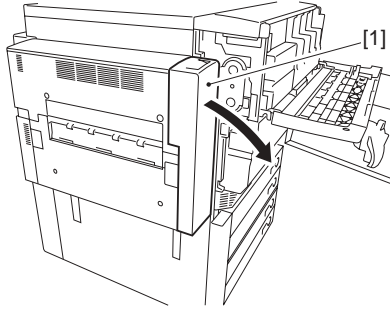
F-2-126

16) Attach the hopper cover (right) [1].
- 1 screw (binding; M4X8) [2]



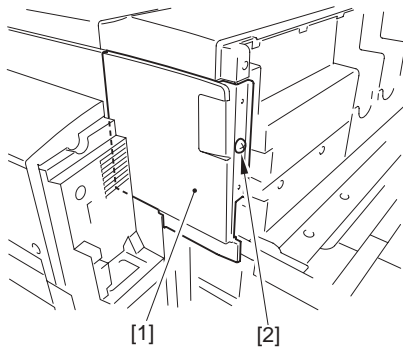
F-2-127

17) Open the decurler front cover [1].



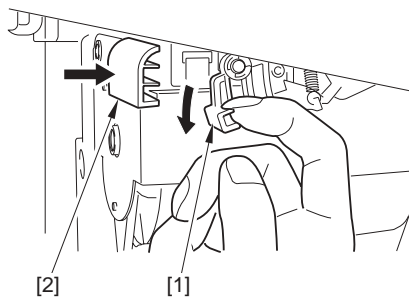
F-2-128

18) Attach the hopper cover (left) [1]
- 1 screw (binding; M4X8) [2]



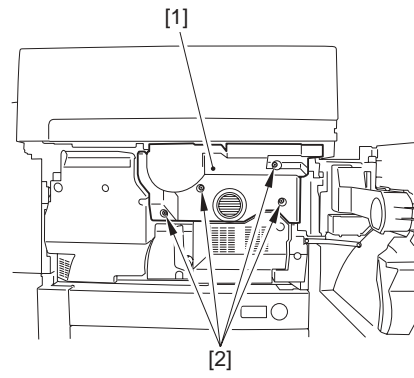
F-2-129

19) Close the decurler front cover.
20) Close the toner replacement cover.
21) With releasing the lock [1] of the hopper's shutter lever in the direction of the arrow, push the shutter lever.



F-2-130

22) Attach the cover [1] of process unit.
- 4 screws (binding; M4X8) [2]

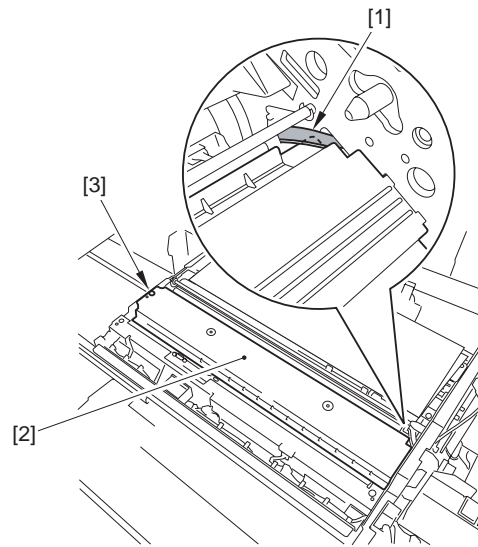


F-2-131

2.2.16 Mounting the Process Unit

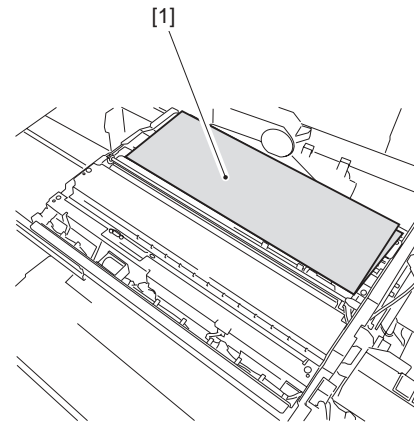
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) With lifting the cable [1], attach the developing assembly cover [2].
- 1 screw [3]



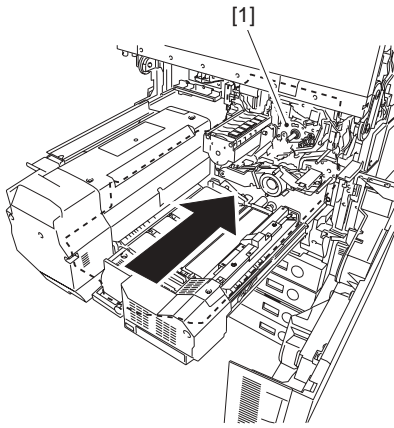
F-2-132

2) Remove the A3 paper [1].



F-2-133

3) Put back the process unit [1].

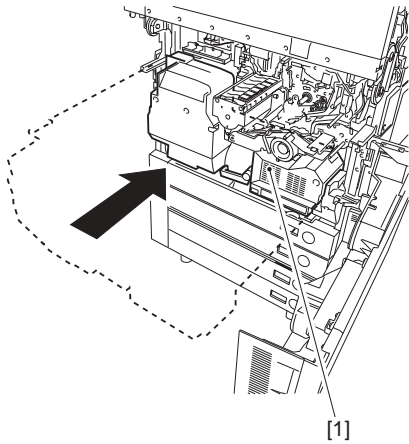


F-2-134

4) Put back the fixing/feeding unit [1].

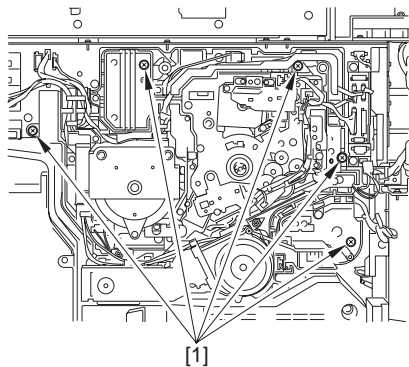


Keep in mind not to mix up the harness.



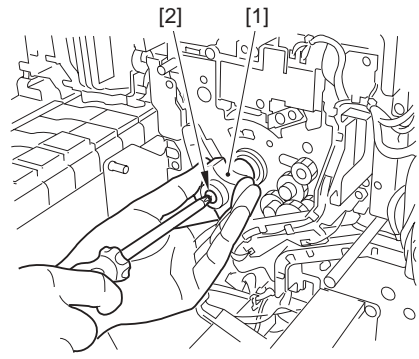
F-2-135

5) Tighten the 5 screws [1].



F-2-136

6) Fit the drum fixing member [1].
- 1 screw [2]

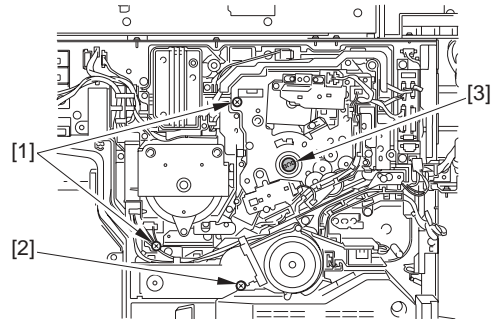


F-2-137

7) Tighten the 2 process joint shafts [1] and the ITB joint shaft [2].

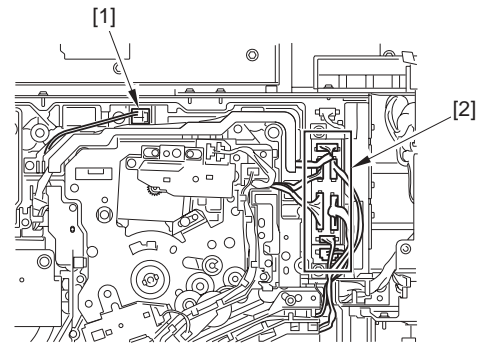


- Hold the drum fixing member [3] steady when tightening the shaft of the ITB joint shaft [2].
- If the drum fixing member is not held steady, the shaft [2] will rotate without tightening.



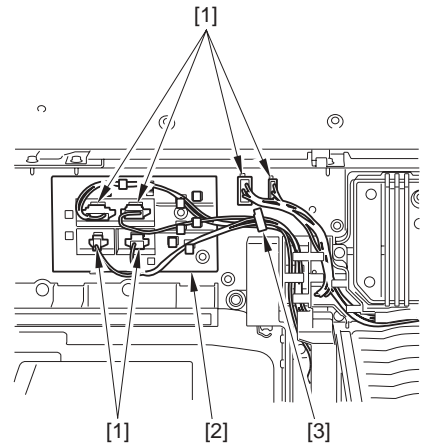
F-2-138

8) Connect the connector [1] and other 7 connectors [2].



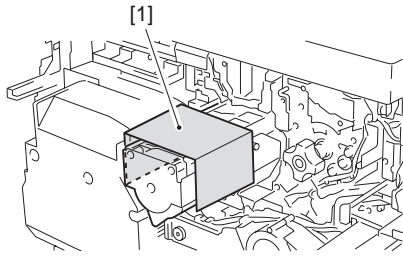
F-2-139

9) Connect the 6 connectors [1], and fix it in place with the cable guide [2] and the wire saddle [3].



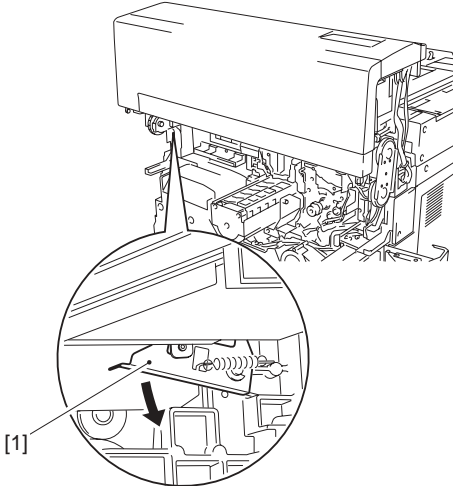
F-2-140

10) Remove the A3 paper [1].



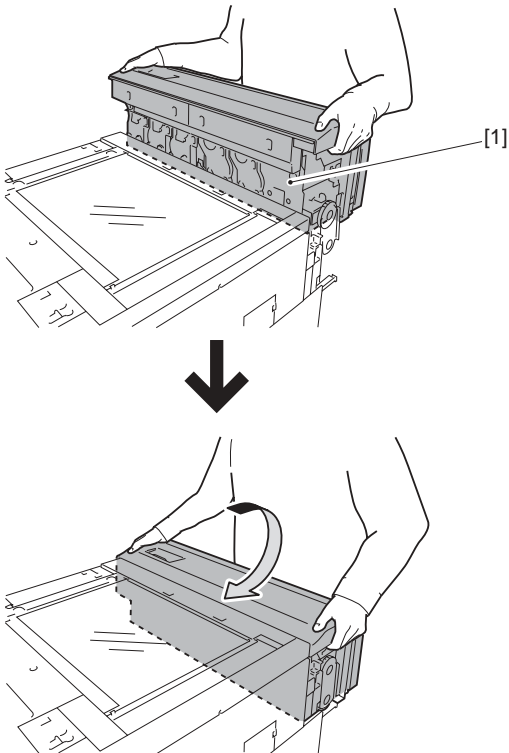
F-2-141

11) Shift down the lock lever [1] in the direction of the arrow to release.



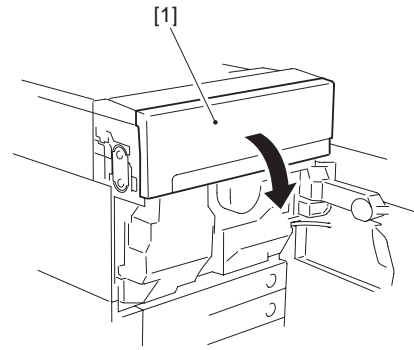
F-2-142

12) Hold it tight with both hands, and move the hopper assembly [1] down slowly in the direction of the arrow.



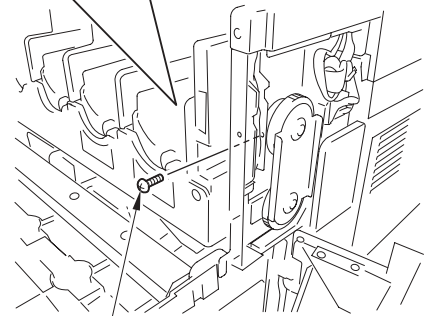
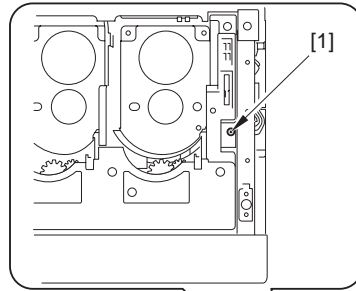
F-2-143

13) Open the toner replacement cover [1]



F-2-144

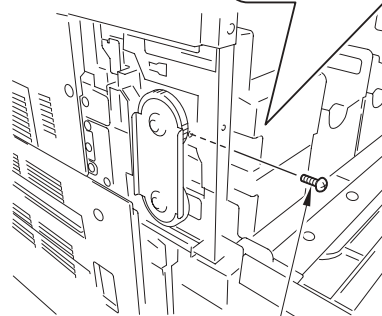
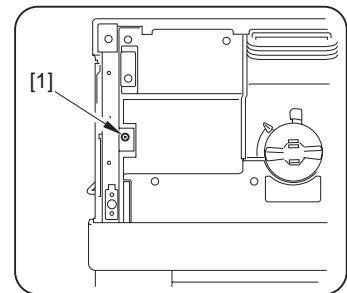
14) Tighten the 2 hopper fixing screws [1] from each side.
<Right side>



[1]

F-2-145

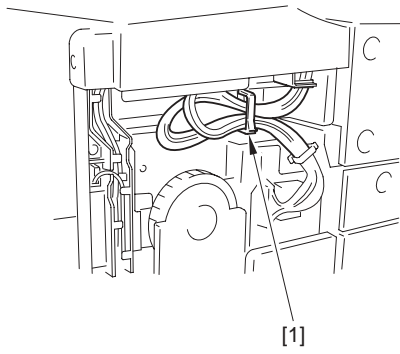
<Left side>



[1]

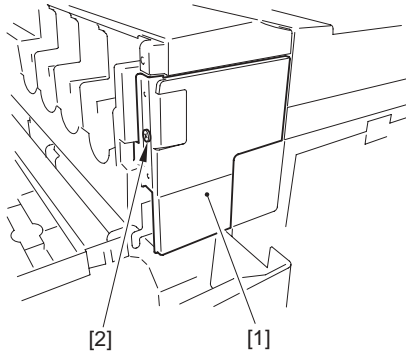
F-2-146

15) Fix the 2 harnesses with the wire saddle [1].
<Right side>



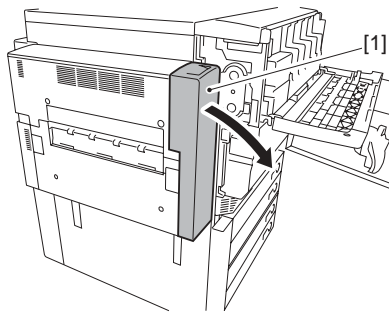
F-2-147

- 16) Attach the hopper cover (right) [1].
- 1 screw (binding; M4X8) [2]



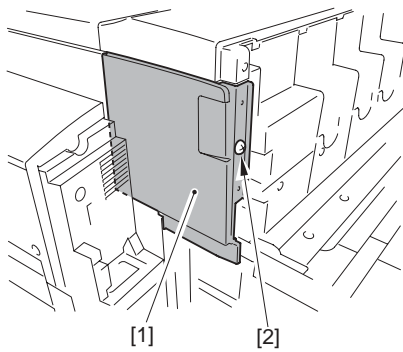
F-2-148

- 17) Open the decurler front cover [1].



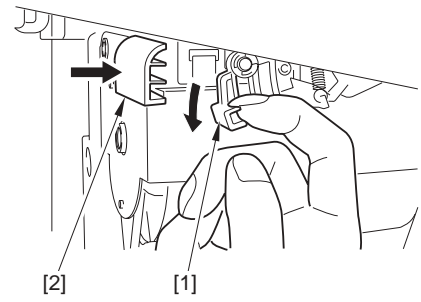
F-2-149

- 18) Attach the hopper cover (left) [1].
- 1 screw (binding; M4X8) [2]



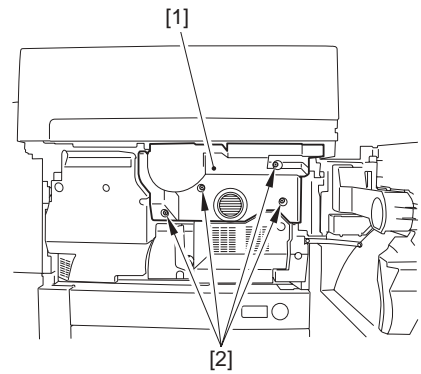
F-2-150

- 19) Close the decurler front cover.
20) Close the toner replacement cover.
21) With releasing the lock [1] of the hopper's shutter lever in the direction of the arrow, push the shutter lever.



F-2-151

- 22) Attach the cover [1] of process unit.
- 4 screws (binding; M4X8) [2]

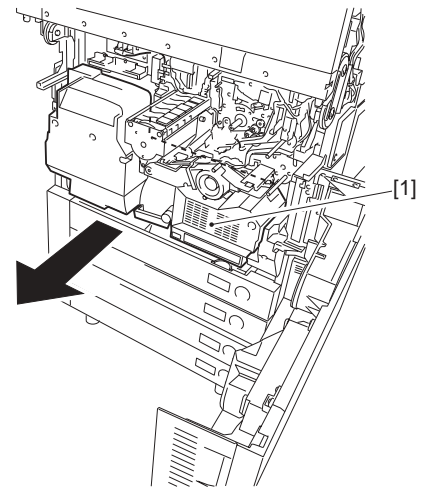


F-2-152

2.2.17 Mounting the Fixing Assembly

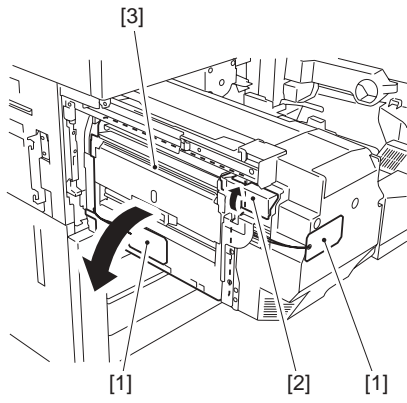
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit [1].



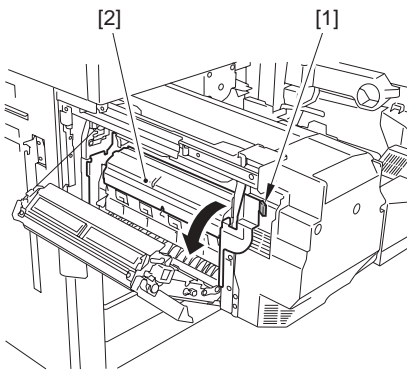
F-2-153

- 2) Remove the 2 shipping tags [1] on the fixing belt.
3) Release the lever [2], and open the reversing delivery cover [3].



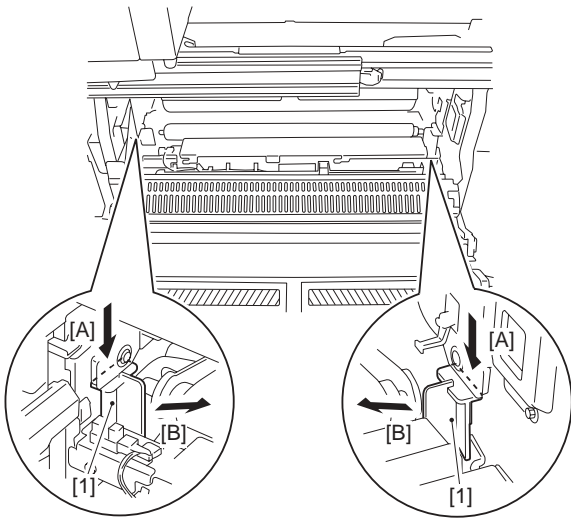
F-2-154

4) Pick up the lever [1] to open the inside cover [2].



F-2-155

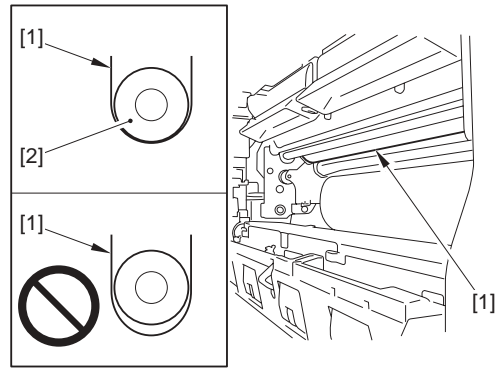
5) Push the 2 fixing members [1] for transportation in the direction of [A], and then release it in the direction of [B].



F-2-156

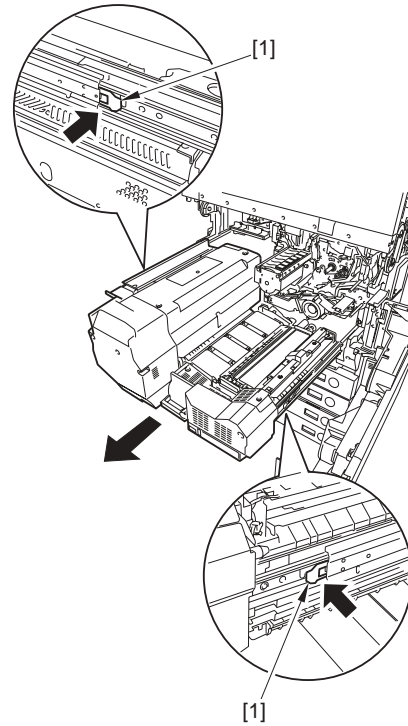
6) Check the slack of the fixing web [1]: if there is slack around the fixing web, execute the following steps 7) to 13).

! Make sure that the fixing web [1] is in contact with the web roller [2].



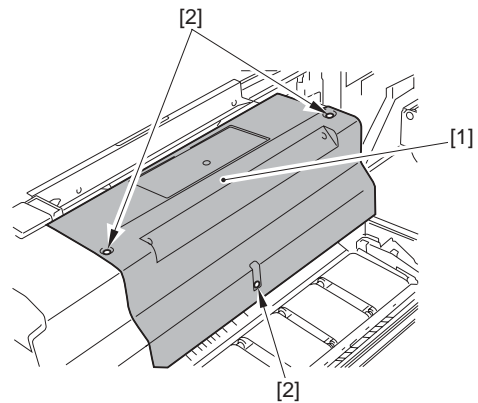
F-2-157

7) Press the two claws [2] and pull out the fixing feed unit to the full length.



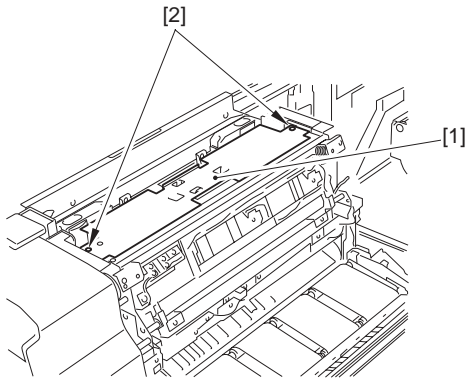
F-2-158

8) Remove the fixing assembly cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



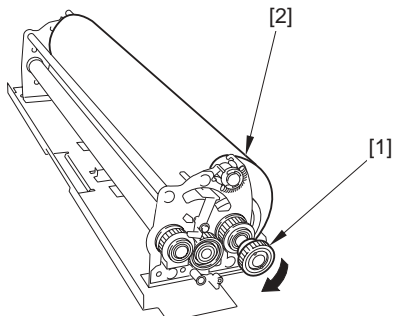
F-2-159

9) Remove the web unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]



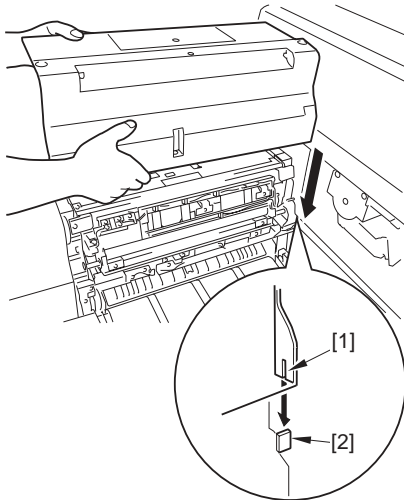
F-2-160

10) Turn the gear [1] in the direction of the arrow to take up the slack of the web [2].



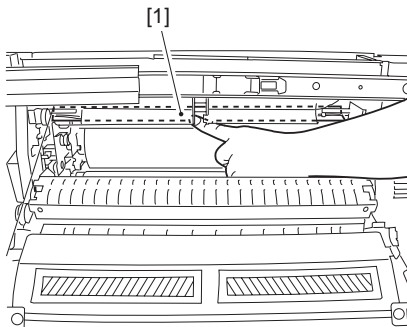
F-2-161

11) Mount the web unit.
12) Mount the fixing assembly cover with fitting the groove [1] of fixing assembly cover and the protrusion [2] of the fixing assembly.

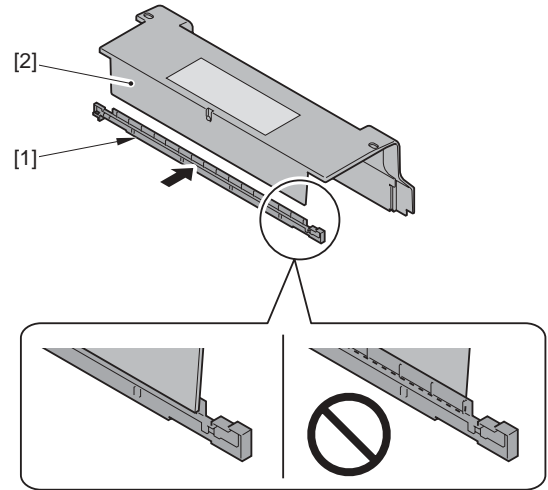


F-2-162

13) While pushing the cable guide [1] in the direction of the arrow, attach the fixing assembly cover [2].
- 3 screws



F-2-163



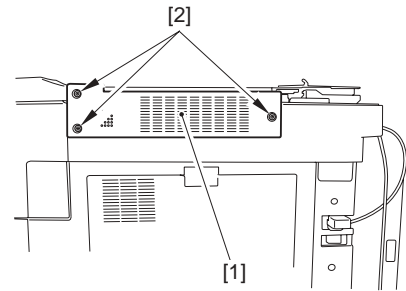
F-2-164

14) Close the inside cover.
15) Close the reversing delivery cover.
16) Put back the fixing/feeding assembly.
17) Put back the fixing/feeding release lever.
18) Close the front door.

2.2.18 Fitting the Control Panel in Place

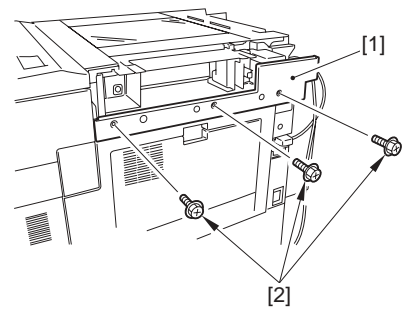
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Detach the right reader cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



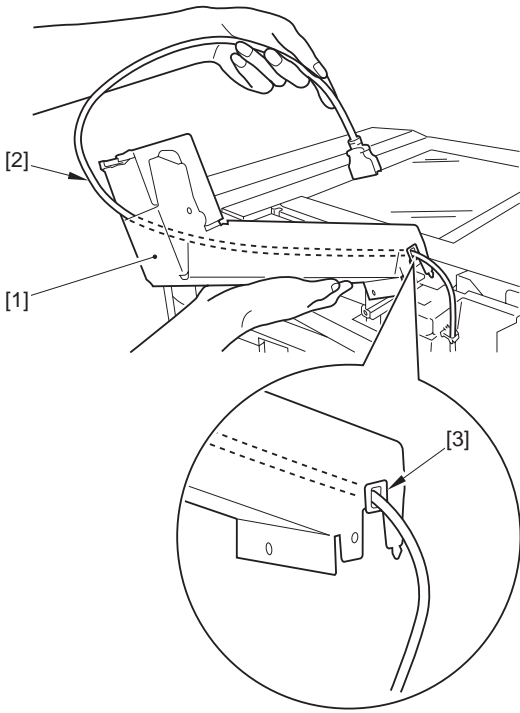
F-2-165

2) Detach the upper right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-2-166

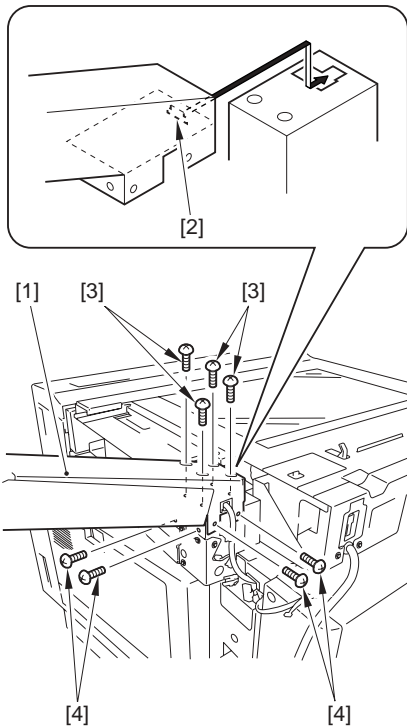
3) Run the control panel interface cable [2] through the control panel arm unit [1], and fix it with the edge saddle [3].



F-2-167

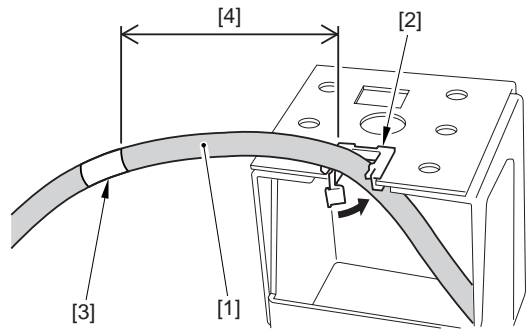
- 4) Hook the claw [2] of the control panel arm unit [1], and tighten the screws (binding; M4X10) in the order of the 4 [3] and the 4 [4].

!
 - Be sure to tighten the screws in the order indicated.
 - Do not fall the screw off inside the machine.



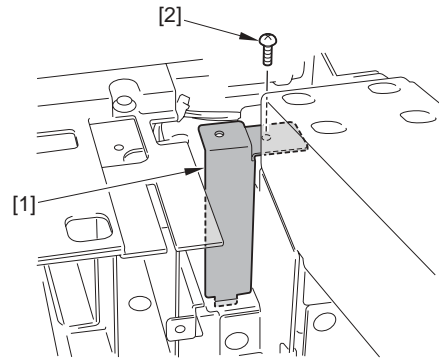
F-2-168

- 5) Adjust the length of the control panel interface cable [1] from the edge saddle [2] to the Film [3] to about 5 cm [4] and fix it with the edge saddle [2].



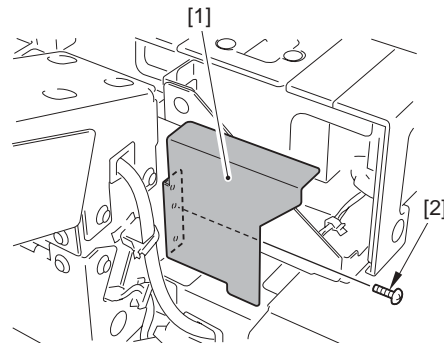
F-2-169

- 6) Fix the arm cover mount 2 [1].
 - 1 screw (Binding; M4X10) [2]



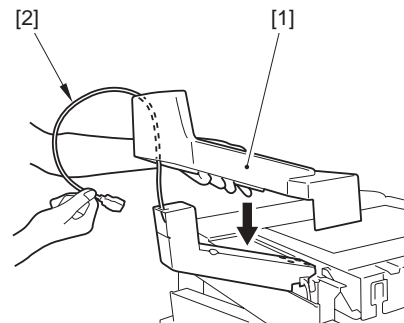
F-2-170

- 7) Fix the arm cover mount 1 [1].
 - 1 screw (Binding; M4X10) [2]



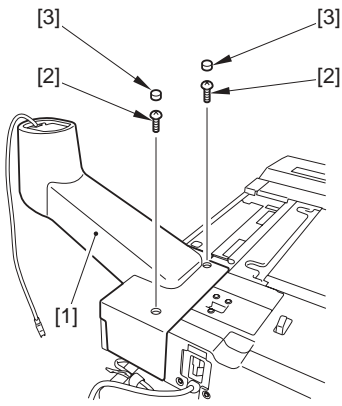
F-2-171

- 8) Run the control panel interface cable [2] through the arm cover 2 [1], and attach it to the control panel arm unit.



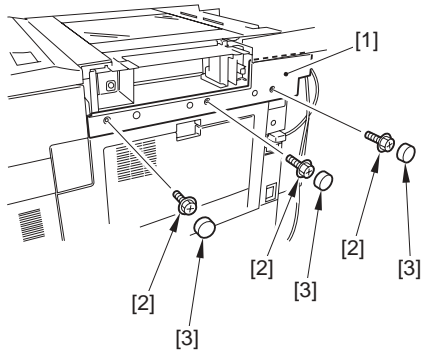
F-2-172

- 9) Fix the arm cover 2 [1].
 - 2 screws (Binding; M4X10) [2]
 - 2 cover rubber pieces (Large) [3]



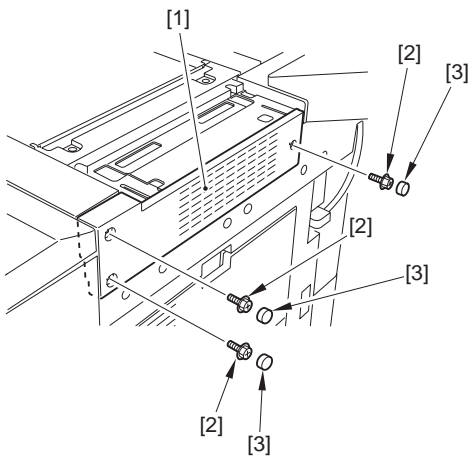
F-2-173

- 10) Attach the upper right cover [1], which has been detached at step 2).
 - 3 screws [2]
 - 3 cover rubber pieces (Large) [3]



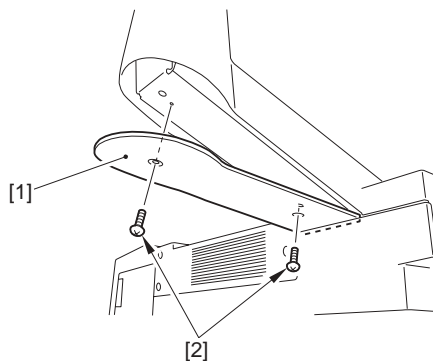
F-2-174

- 11) Attach the reader right cover, which has been detached at step 1).
 - 3 screws [2]
 - 3 cover rubber pieces (Large) [3]



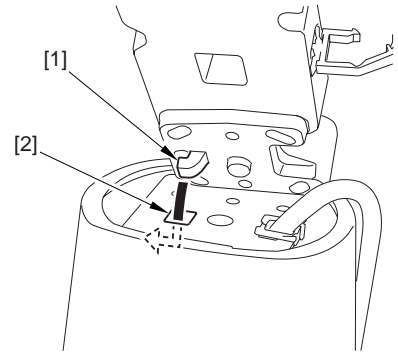
F-2-175

- 12) Attach the arm cover [1] on the lower side of the control panel arm unit using the 2 screws (Binding; M4X10) [2].



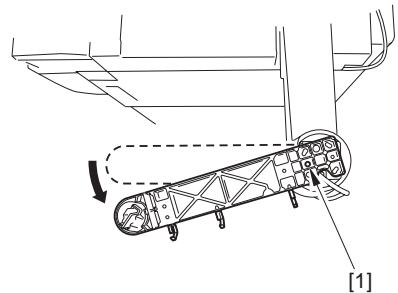
F-2-176

- 13) Fit the claw [1] of the arm unit into the hole of the control panel arm unit [2].



F-2-177

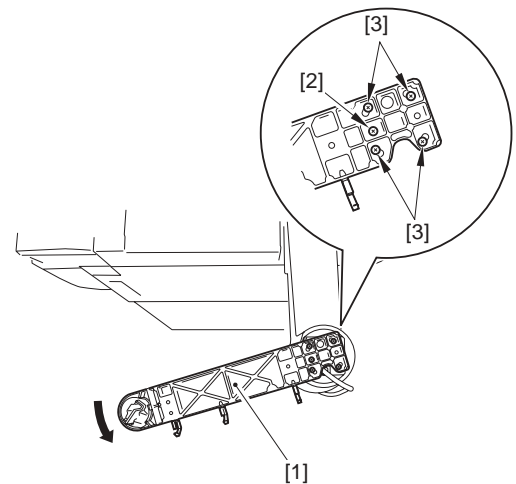
- 14) Turn the arm unit in the direction of the arrow to the position where the screw hole [1] of the arm unit is aligned with the hole of the control panel arm unit.



F-2-178

- 15) Fix the arm unit [1] using the screws (binding; M4X14) in the order of the 1 [2] and the 4 [3].

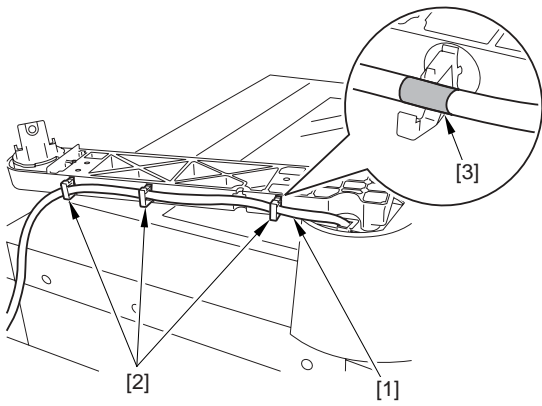
⚠
 - Be sure to tighten the screws in the order indicated.
 - To prevent the control panel from hitting the Original delivery tray, get the arm unit towards the direction of the arrow and tighten the screw.



F-2-179

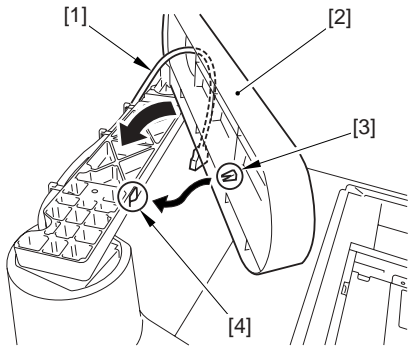
- 16) Fix the control panel interface cable [1] using the 3 wire saddles [2].

⚠
 Be sure to align the rear wire saddle with the Film [3].

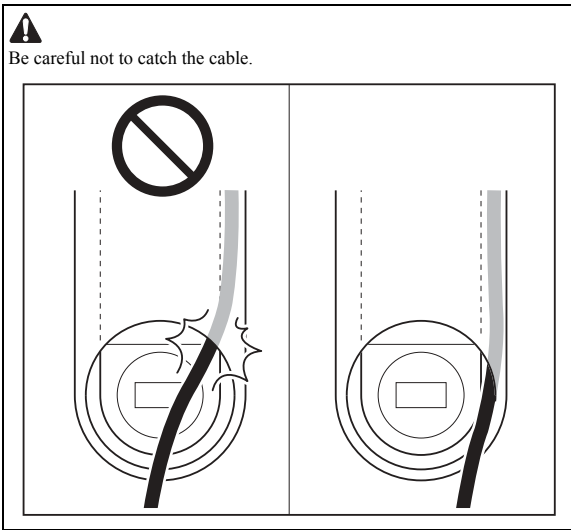


F-2-180

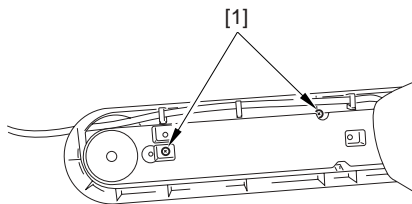
- 17) Run the control panel interface cable [1] through the arm cover 1 [2].
- 18) Attach the arm cover 1 [2] while hanging the claw [3] on the cut-off [4] of the arm unit.



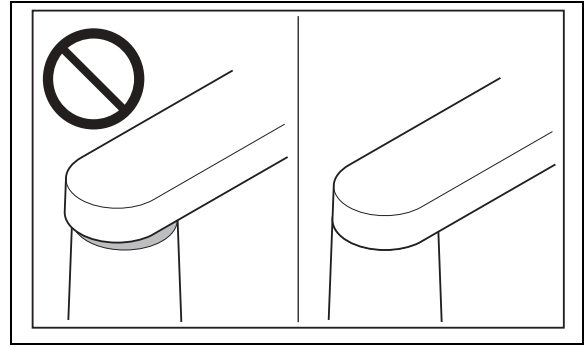
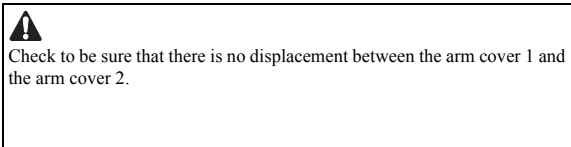
F-2-181



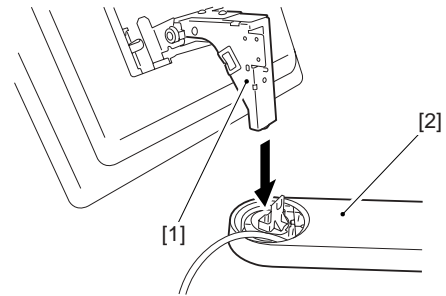
- 19) Fix the arm cover 1 from behind the arm unit.
- 2 screws (P tightening; M4X10) [1]



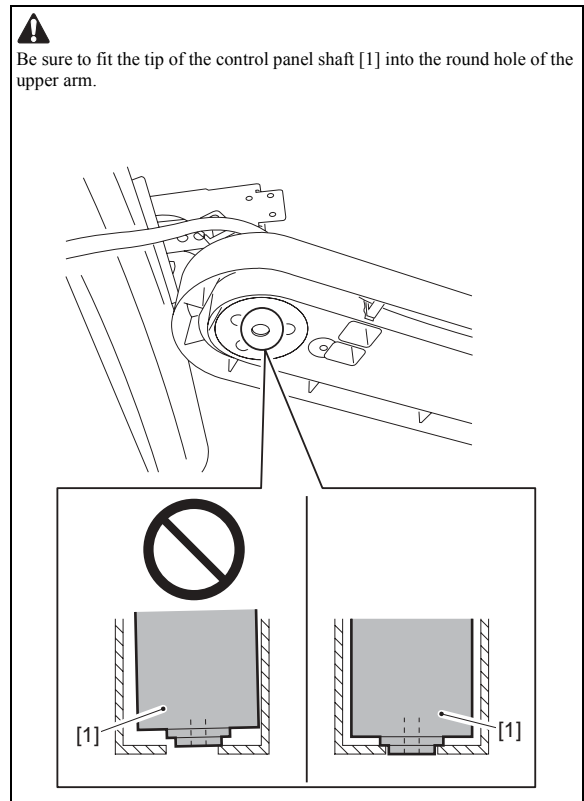
F-2-182



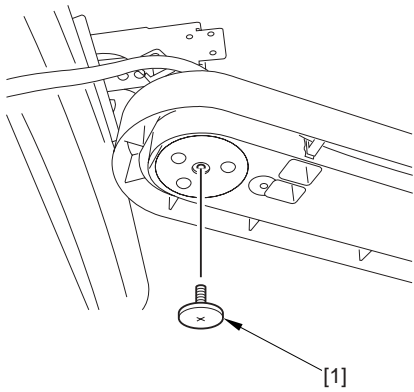
- 20) Fit the shaft [1] of the control panel into the arm unit [2].



F-2-183

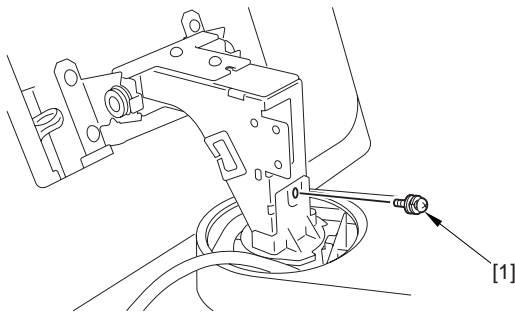


- 21) Tighten the flat screw [1] from behind the upper arm.



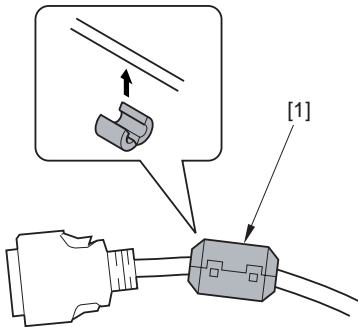
F-2-184

22) Tighten the screw (W sems; M4X12) [1] from the back of the control panel.



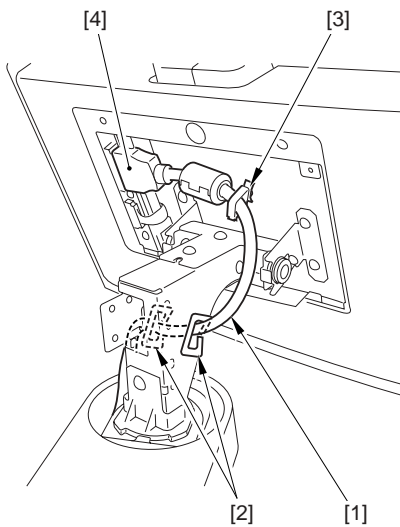
F-2-185

23) Fix the ferrite core [1] to the control panel interface cable.

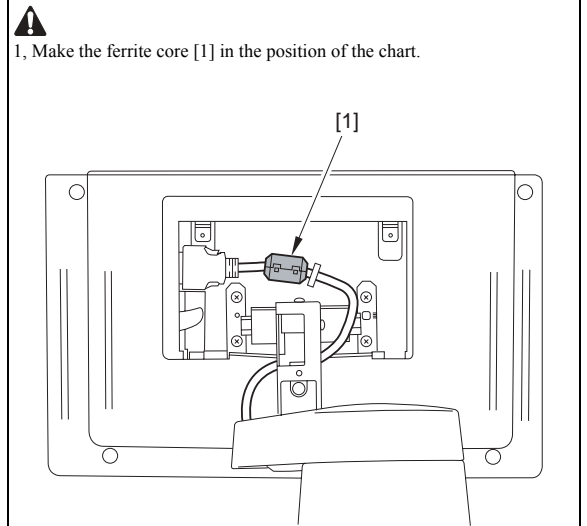


F-2-186

24) Fix the control panel interface cable [1] using the 2 edge saddles [2] and the wire saddle [3], and plug the connector [4] into the socket of the control panel.

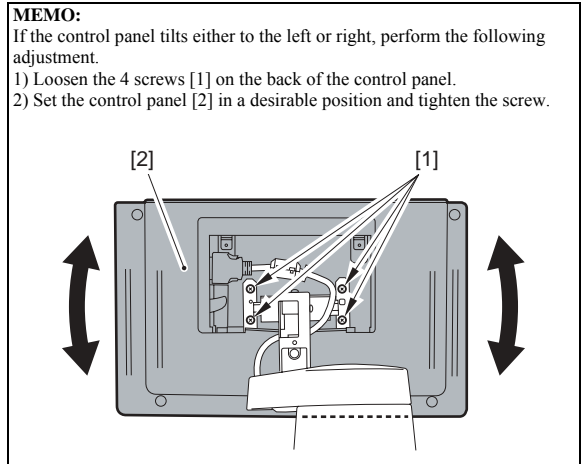
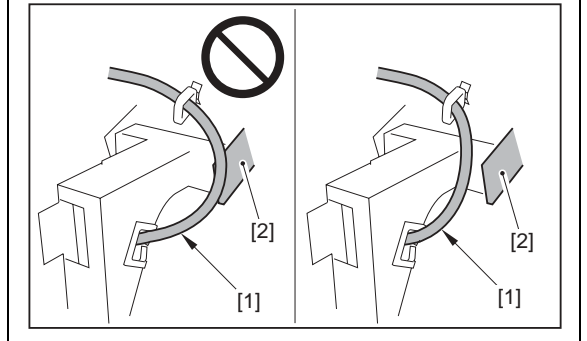


F-2-187



1, Make the ferrite core [1] in the position of the chart.

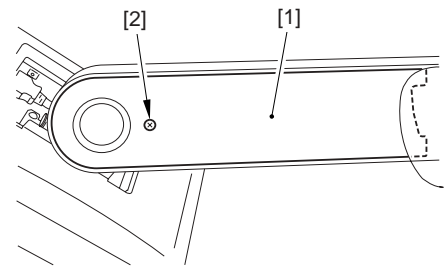
2, Be sure to adjust the cable length so that the cable [1] is located inside the plate [2].



MEMO:
If the control panel tilts either to the left or right, perform the following adjustment.

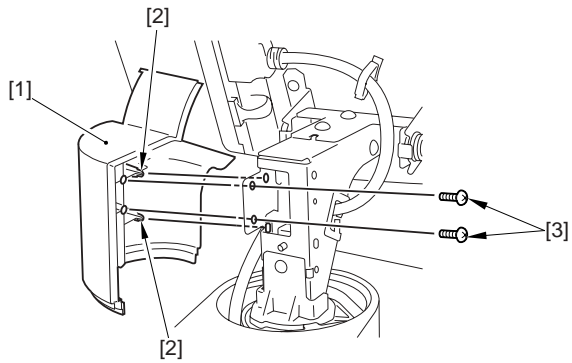
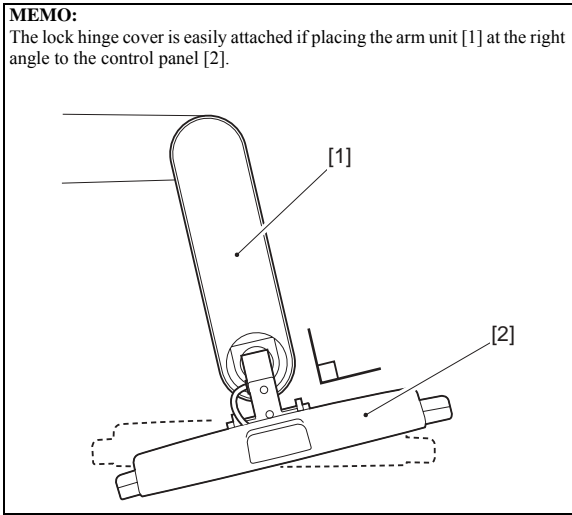
- 1) Loosen the 4 screws [1] on the back of the control panel.
- 2) Set the control panel [2] in a desirable position and tighten the screw.

25) Attach the arm cover 4 [1] from behind the arm unit.
- 1 screw (Binding; M4X10) [2]



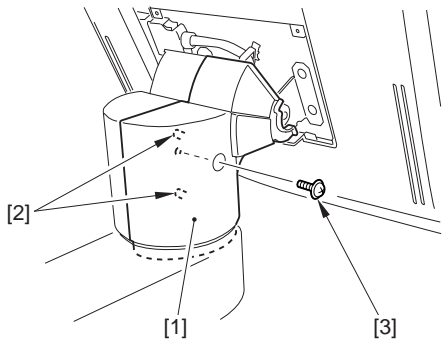
F-2-188

26) Attach the lock hinge cover R [1].
- 2 bosses [2]
- 2 screws (P tightening; M3X10) [3]



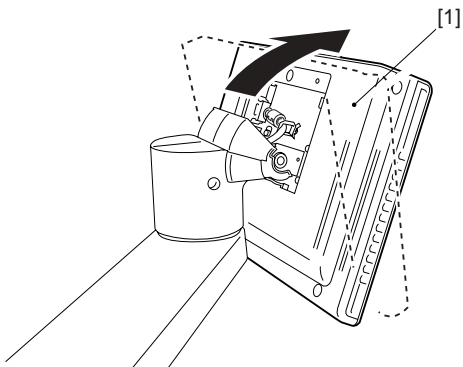
F-2-189

- 27) Attach the lock hinge cover L [1].
- 2 bosses [2]
- 1 screw (TP; M3X8) [3]



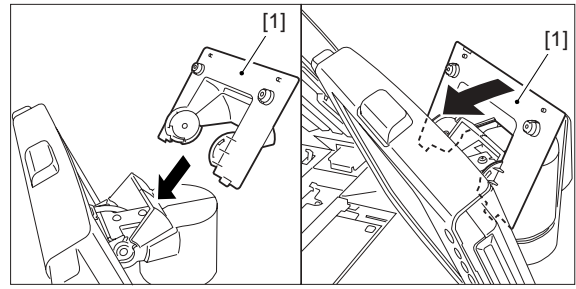
F-2-190

- 28) Tilt the control panel [1] in the direction of the arrow.



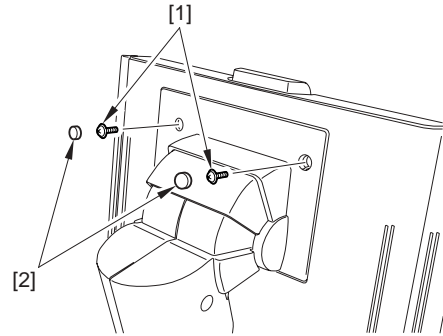
F-2-191

- 29) Fit the hinge slide cover [1] in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-192

- 30) Fix the hinge slide cover.
- 2 screws (TP; M3X8) [1]
- 2 cover rubber pieces (Small) [2]

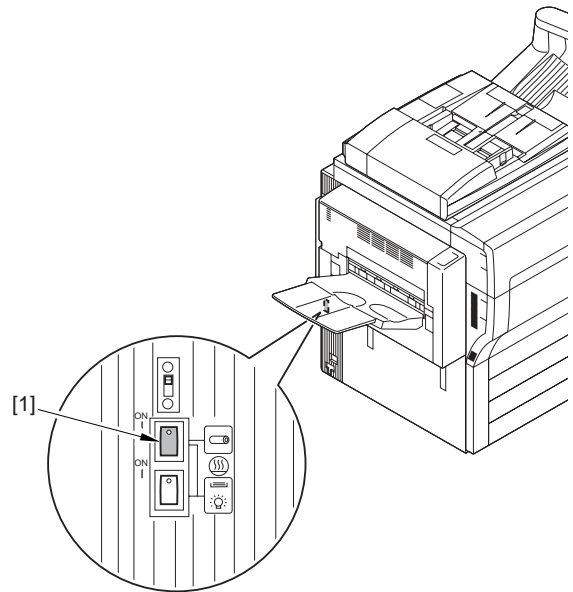


F-2-193

2.2.19 Setting of Environmental Switch

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

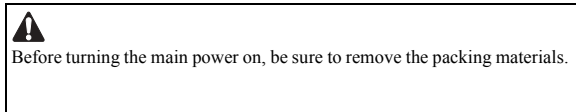
- 1) Check that the Environmental switch [1] is ON.



F-2-194

2.2.20 Turning the Main Power ON

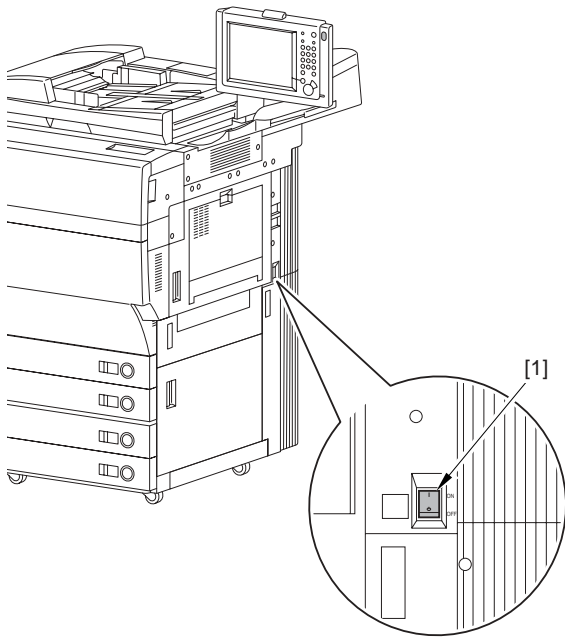
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1



- 1) Connect the power cable with the inlet on the main body.

⚠
 Use the correct power code to match the location/area of installation. Make sure not to leave unused power code at the site.

2) Connect the 2 power plugs (1 for the backside, and 1 for the left side of the machine) to different power outlets, and turn on the main power [1].



F-2-195

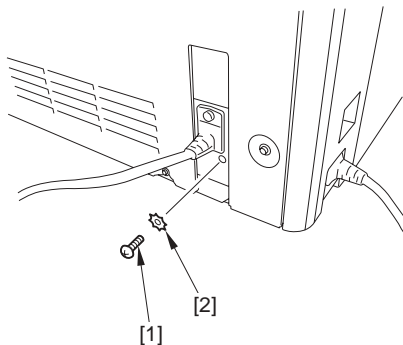
2.2.21 Turning the Main Power ON

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

⚠
 Before turning the main power on, be sure to remove the packing materials.

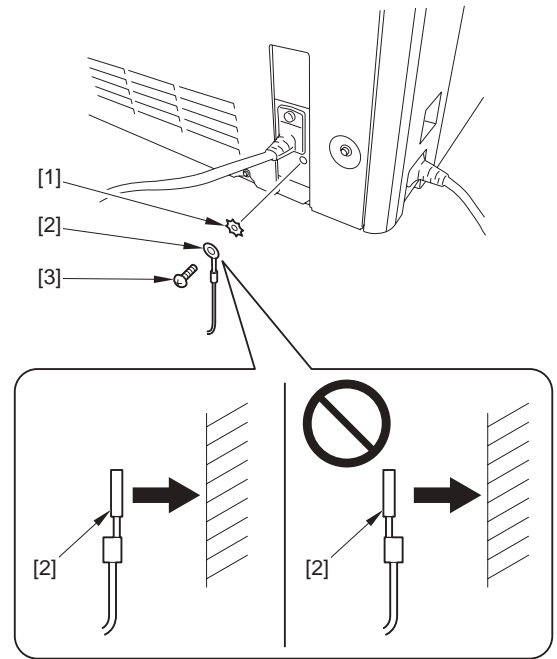
- In case of 100V machine, connect the machine to the ground using the ground wire.

1) Remove the screw [1] and the toothed washer [2].



F-2-196

2) Putting the ground wire [2] in between, attach the toothed washer [1] removed in the step 1) with the screw [3].



F-2-197

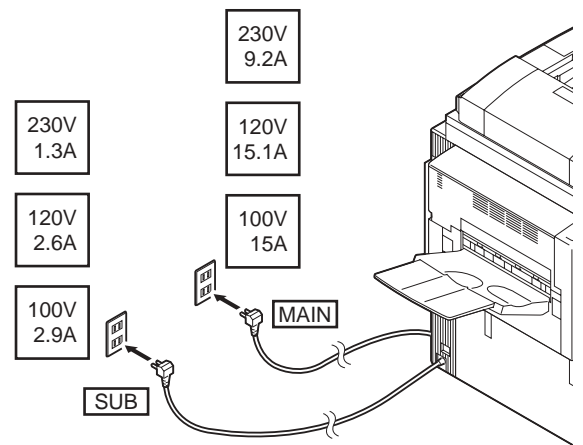
3) There must be a grounding terminal for the machine.

Targets of Grounding

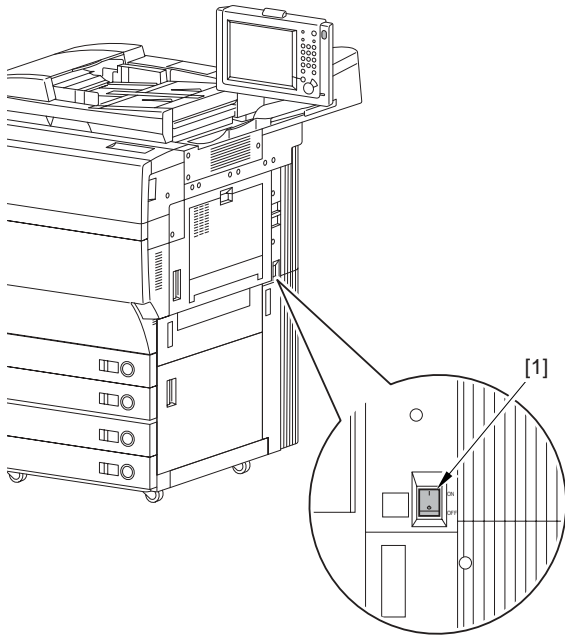
- Grounding terminal of power outlet
- Grounding terminal of which grounding work (D Type) is properly done.

⚠
 Do not connect the grounding cord to the gas pipe.

4) Connect the 2 power plugs (1 for the backside, and 1 for the left side of the machine) of the machine to different power outlets, and turn on the main power [1].



F-2-198



F-2-199

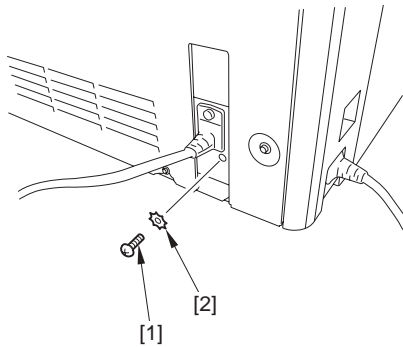
2.2.22 Turning the Main Power ON

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

⚠
Before turning the main power on, be sure to remove the packing materials.

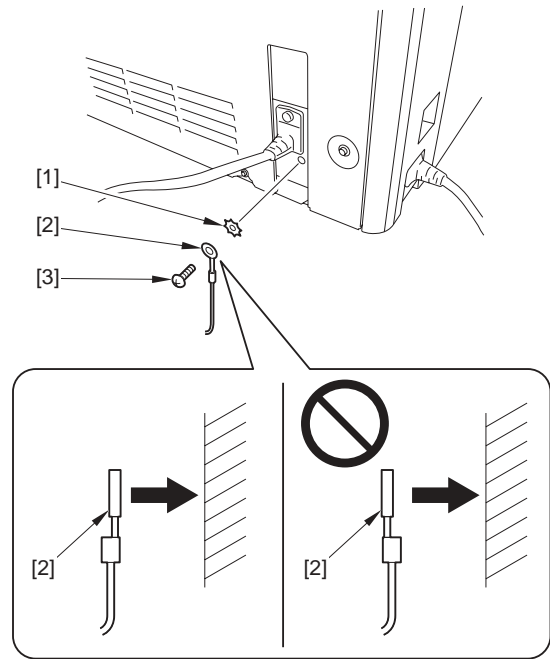
- In case of 100V machine, connect the machine to the ground using the ground wire.

1) Remove the screw [1] and the toothed washer [2].



F-2-200

2) Putting the ground wire [2] in between, attach the toothed washer [1] removed in the step 1) with the screw [3].

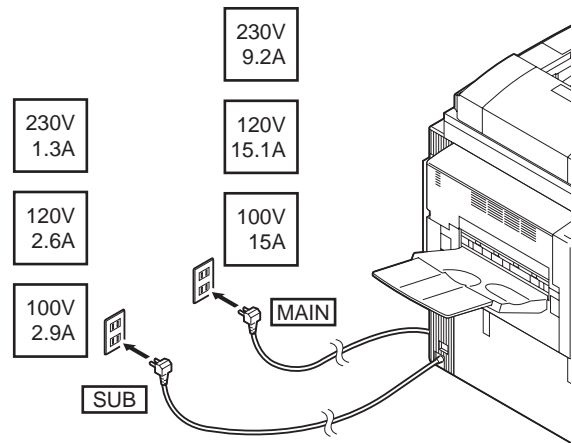


F-2-201

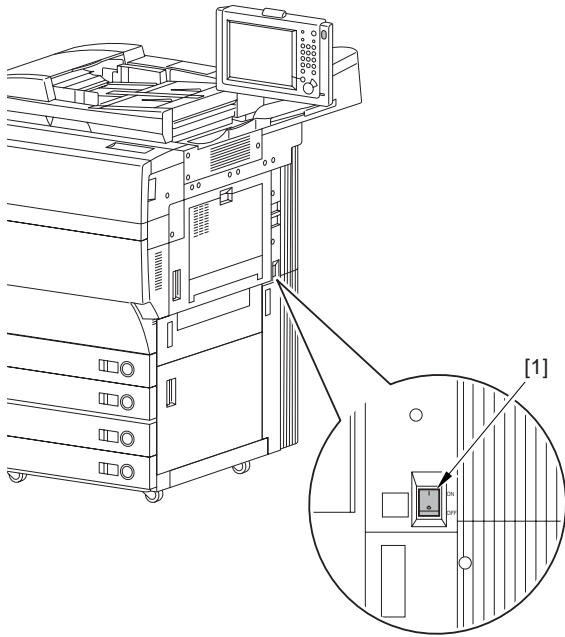
- 3) There must be a grounding terminal for the machine.
Targets of Grounding
- Grounding terminal of power outlet
- Grounding terminal of which grounding work (D Type) is properly done.

⚠
Do not connect the grounding cord to the gas pipe.

- 4) Connect the 2 power plugs (1 for the backside, and 1 for the left side of the machine) of the machine to different power outlets, and turn on the main power [1].



F-2-202



F-2-203

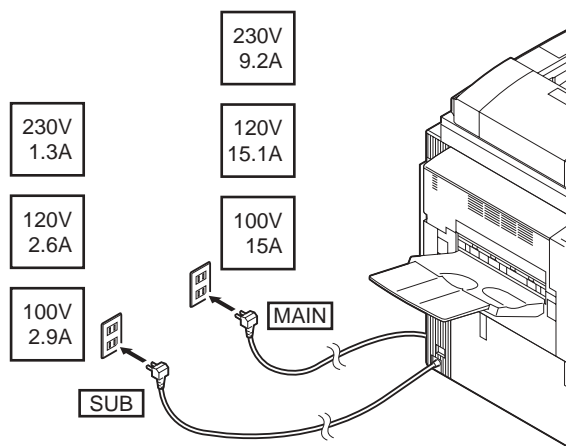
- 5) Check the following setting
 Service mode: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > CLCONFIG
 Make sure that this setting is set to "0".

2.2.23 Turning the Main Power ON

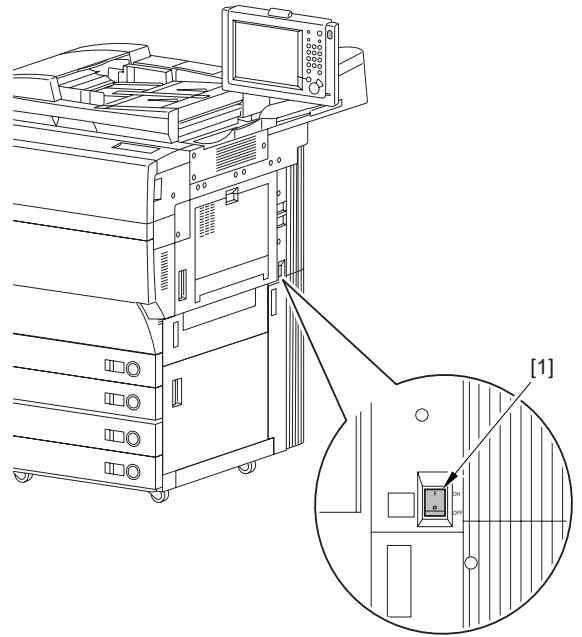
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

! Before turning the main power on, be sure to remove the packing materials.

- 1) Connect the 2 power plugs (1 for the backside, and 1 for the left side of the machine) of the machine to different power outlets, and turn on the main power [1].



F-2-204



F-2-205

- 2) Check the sett of 4-color/5-color model.
 Service mode: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > CLCONFIG
 - In case of 4-color model, make sure that this setting is set to "1".
 - In case of 5-color model, make sure that this setting is set to "0".

2.2.24 Turning the Main Power ON

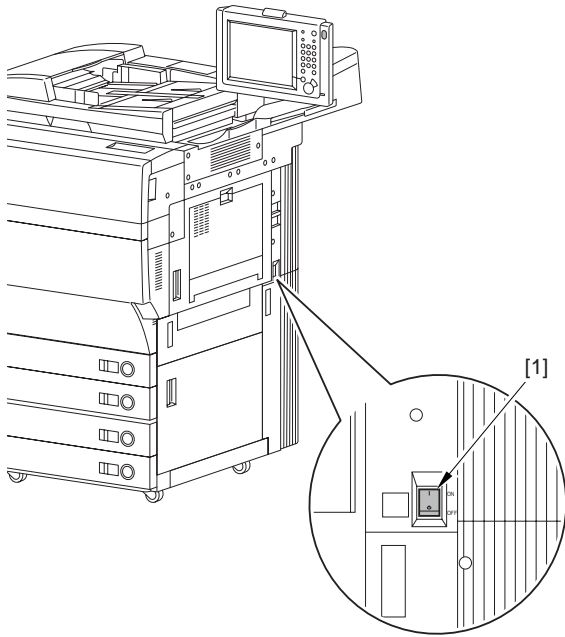
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

! Before turning the main power on, be sure to remove the packing materials.

- 1) Connect the power cable with the inlet on the main body.

! Use the correct power code to mach the location/area of installation. Make sure not to leave unused power code at the site.

- 2) Connect the 2 power plugs (1 for the backside, and 1 for the left side of the machine) of the machine to different power outlets, and turn on the main power [1].



F-2-206

- 3) Check the following setting
 Service mode: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > CLCONFIG
 Make sure that this setting is set to "0".

2.2.25 Turning the Main Power ON

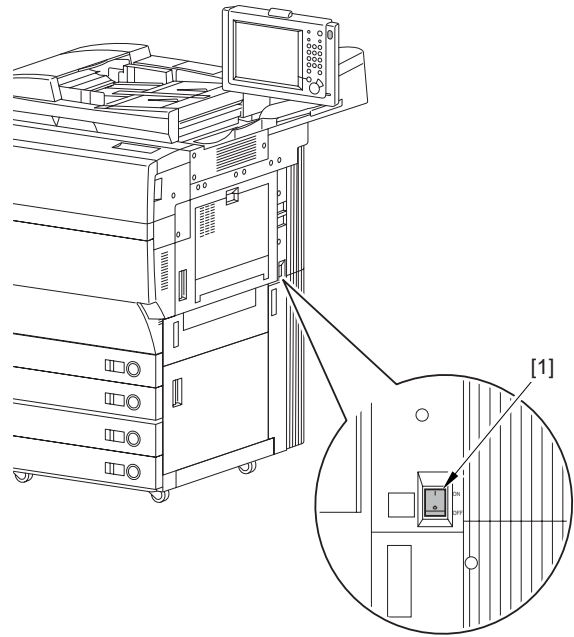
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

⚠
 - Be sure to remove the packing material in the cassette before turning ON the main power switch.

- Korean is not included among the languages for the control panel with this model at the time of shipment.
 Thus, be sure to follow the instructions below to install RUI and Language that support Korean when installing the host machine.

- 1) Turn ON the main power of the host machine.
- 2) Using Service Support Tool, install RUI and Language that support Korean.
- 3) Select 'KR' in Service Mode (for setting location: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > CONFIG).
- 4) Select 'KOREAN' for selection of language on user screen: Additional Functions > Common Settings > Language Switch > Select a language.

- 1) Connect one side of the power cable to the inlet of the host machine.
- 2) Connect the 2 power plugs (1 at the back, 1 at the side) of the host machine to the separate power system outlets and turn ON the main power [1].



F-2-207

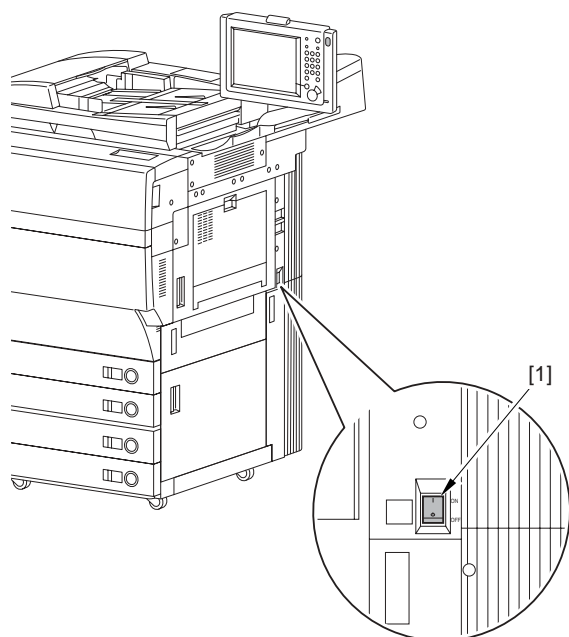
- 3) Check the following setting.
 Service mode: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > CLCONFIG
 Make sure that this setting is set to "0".

2.2.26 Setting of Environmental Switch

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

⚠
 Before turning the main power on, be sure to remove the packing materials.

- 1) Connect the power cable with the inlet on the main body.
- 2) Connect the 2 power plugs (1 for the backside, and 1 for the left side of the machine) of the machine to different power outlets, and turn on the main power [1].



F-2-208

- 3) Check the following setting
 Service mode: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > CLCONFIG
 Make sure that this setting is set to "0".

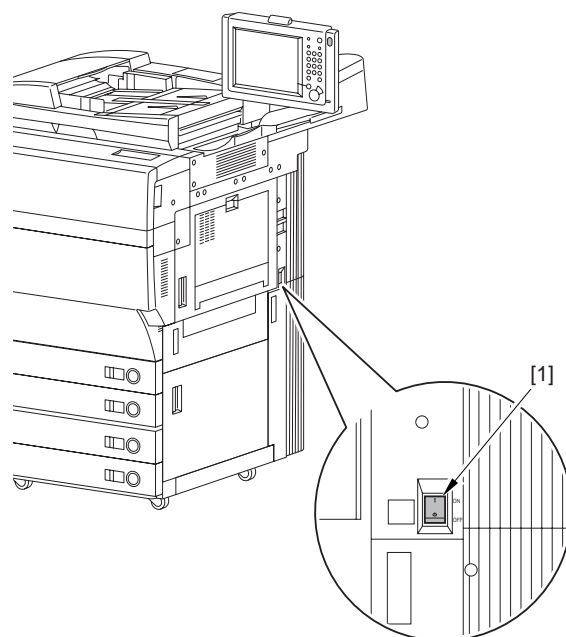
2.2.27 Turning the Main Power ON

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1



Before turning the main power on, be sure to remove the packing materials.

- 1) Connect the power cable with the inlet on the main body.
- 2) Connect the 2 power plugs (1 for the backside, and 1 for the left side of the machine) of the machine to different power outlets, and turn on the main power [1].



F-2-209

2.2.28 Points to Note at the Main Power OFF

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

⚠ Turning Off the Main Power

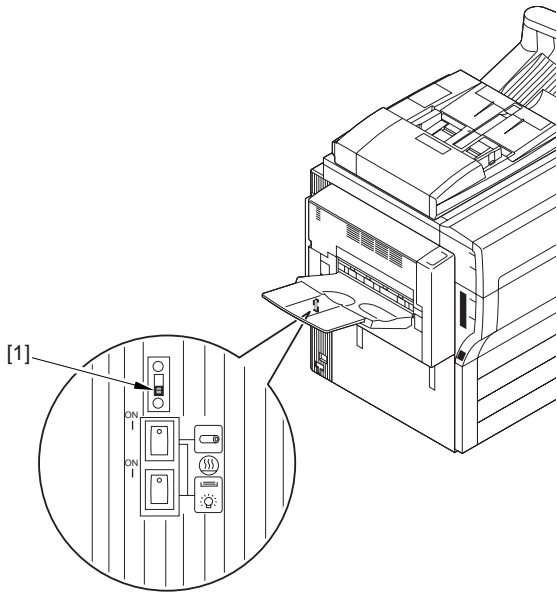
Be sure to go through the following steps when turning off the main power to protect the machine's hard disk:

- 1) Hold down the control panel power switch for 3 sec or more.
- 2) Follow the shut-down instructions on the screen. (The main power will go off automatically.)
- 3) Disconnect the 2 power plugs of the machine (1 at the rear, 1 at the left side).

2.2.29 Checking the Drum Temperature Switch

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Set the drum temperature switch in accordance with the installation environment.
 In the high humidity environment (*), set the drum temperature switch [1] to the lower side (H).
 * High humidity condition is a condition of which the value of absolute humidity in a machine is 10 g or more.
 Service mode > COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > ABS-HUM
 In a high humidity environment (*), set the drum temperature switch [1] to the lower side (H').
 * High humidity environment is a condition in which the value of the absolute humidity (COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > ABS-HUM) in a machine in the service mode is more or equal to 10g.

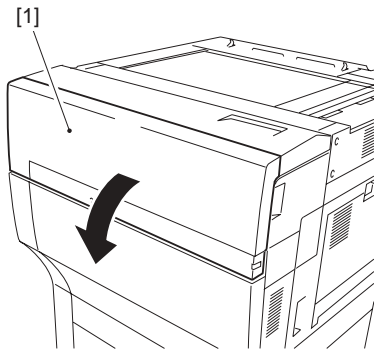


F-2-210

2.2.30 Setting the Toner container

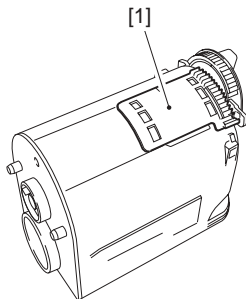
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

- 1) Take out the toner container from its package that comes with the machine.
- 2) Open the toner replacement cover [1].

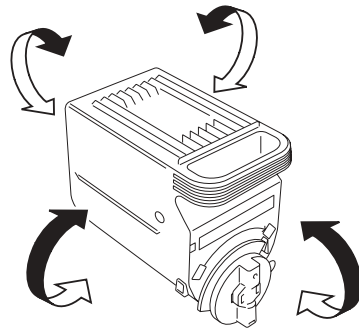


F-2-211

! When executing the step 3) and 4), be careful not to touch the shutter [1] found at the bottom of the toner container.

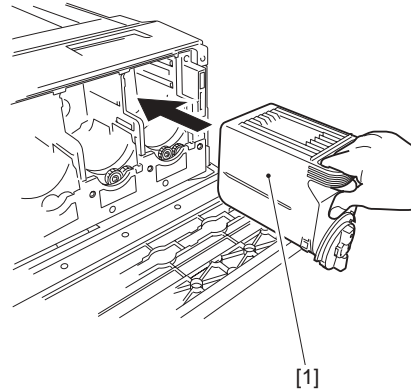


- 3) Hold the new toner container as shown, and shake it about 10 times as if to rotate it.



F-2-212

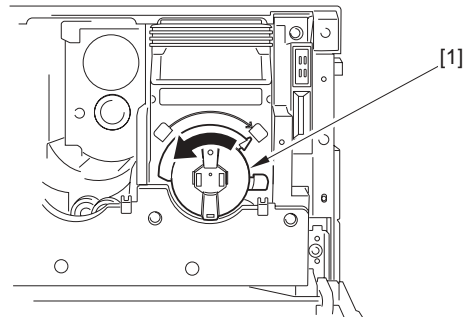
- 4) Hold the grip, and insert the toner container [1] fully inside.



F-2-213

- 5) Turn the tab [1] on the toner container to lock in place.

! Be sure to turn the tab until it is in the Lock position.



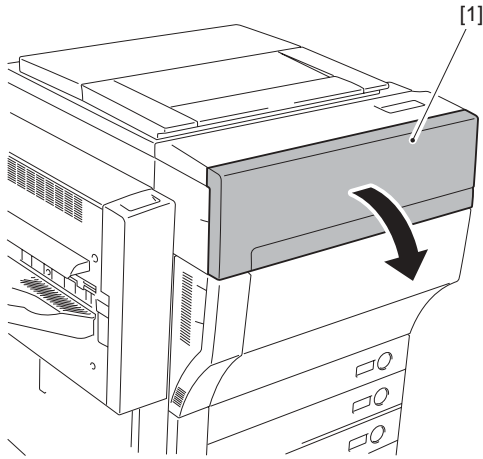
F-2-214

- 6) Repeat the foregoing steps for all colors.
- 7) Close the toner replacement cover.

2.2.31 Setting the Toner Container

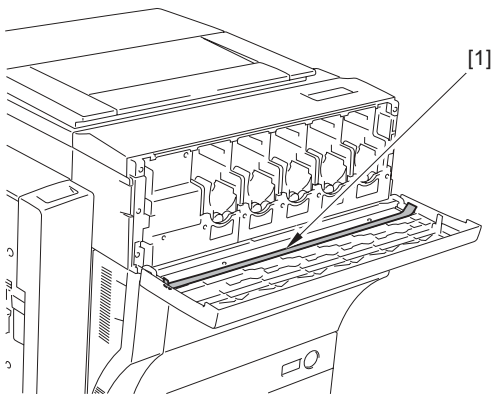
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Take out the toner container from its package that comes with the machine.
- 2) Open the toner replacement cover [1].



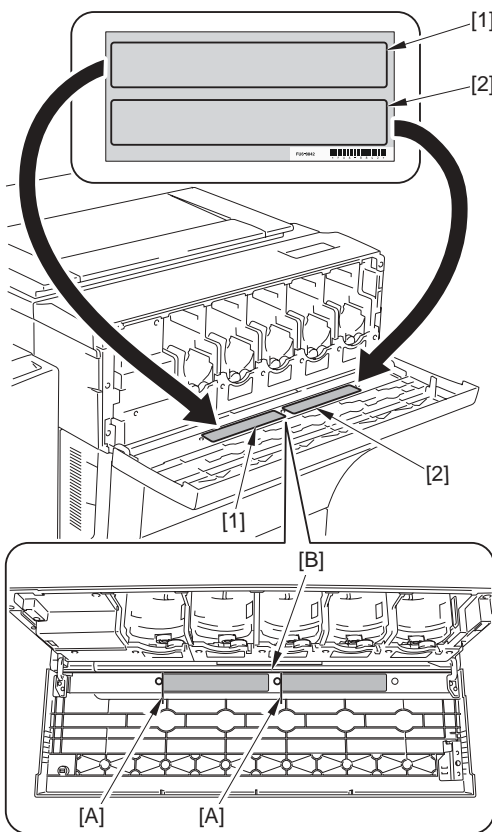
F-2-215

3) Remove the protection tape [1].

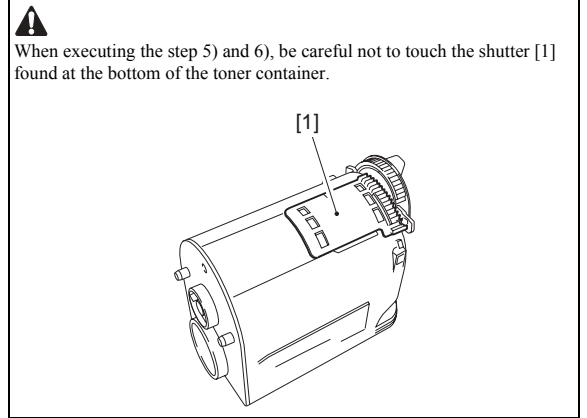


F-2-216

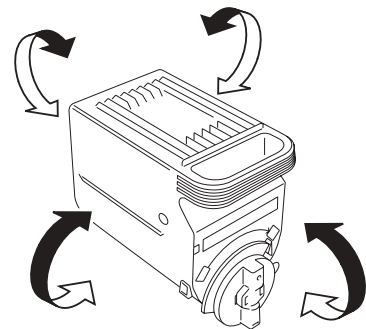
4) Attach the replenishment labels [1] and [2] along the edge of screw hole [A] and the side of plate [B].



F-2-217

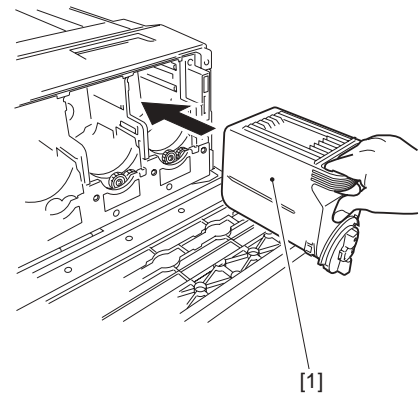


5) Hold the new toner container as shown, and shake it about 10 times as if to rotate it.



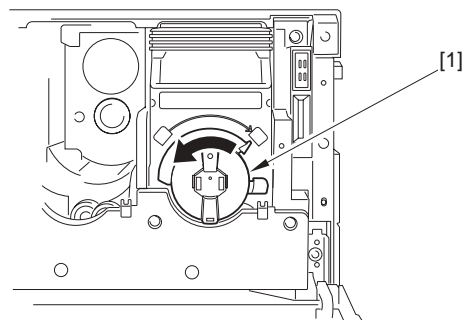
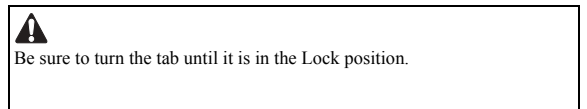
F-2-218

6) Hold the grip, and insert the toner container [1] fully inside.



F-2-219

7) Turn the tab [1] on the toner container to lock in place.



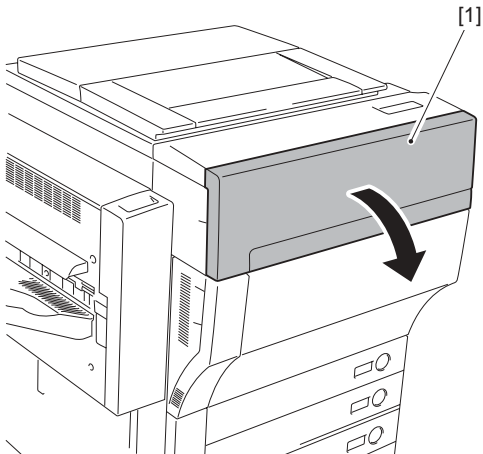
F-2-220

8) Repeat the foregoing steps for all colors.
9) Close the toner replacement cover.

2.2.32 Setting the Toner Container

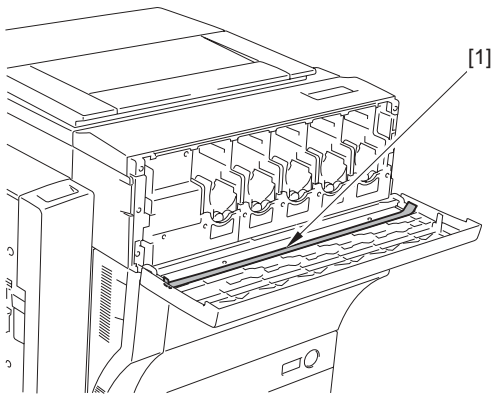
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer)

- 1) Take out the toner container from its package that comes with the machine.
- 2) Open the toner replacement cover [1].



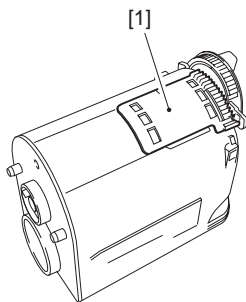
F-2-221

- 3) Remove the protection tape [1].

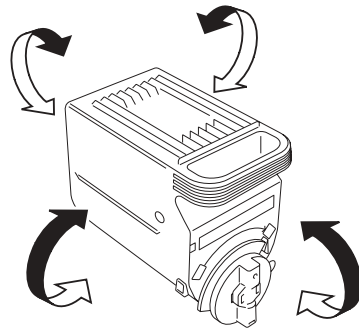


F-2-222

! When executing the step 5) and 6), be careful not to touch the shutter [1] found at the bottom of the toner container.

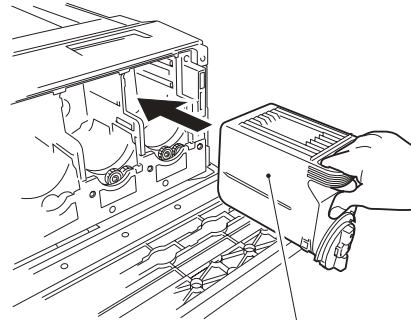


- 4) Hold the new toner container as shown, and shake it about 10 times as if to rotate it.



F-2-223

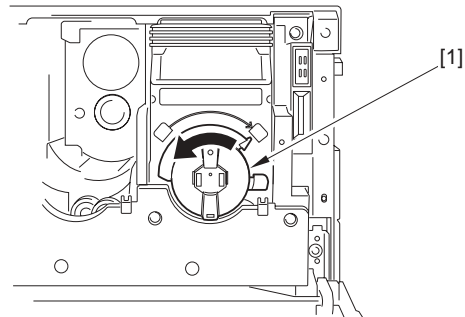
- 5) Hold the grip, and insert the toner container [1] fully inside.



F-2-224

- 6) Turn the tab [1] on the toner container to lock in place.

! Be sure to turn the tab until it is in the Lock position.



F-2-225

- 7) Repeat the foregoing steps for all colors.
- 8) Close the toner replacement cover.

2.2.33 Supplying Toner

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

MEMO:
Do the following steps after the host machine is in standby status.

- 1) Select (Supply Toner: FUNCTION>INSTALL>SPLY-H-4) from the service mode, press [OK] key (approx. 2 min).

! Be sure not to turn the power switch off during the operation.

MEMO:

- When the operation is completed, 'OK!' is displayed.
- Execute 'Setting the Paper Cassette' during toner supply.

- 2) Press the Reset key and exit from the service mode.

2.2.34 Supplying Toner

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

MEMO:

Be sure to perform the following procedure after the machine is placed in the standby status (Approximately 9 minutes).

- 1) Execute toner refill (Approximately 2 minutes)
Service mode > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-5



Be sure not to turn the power switch off during the operation.

MEMO:

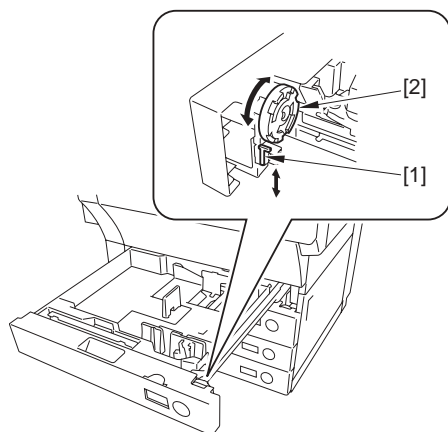
- When the operation is completed, 'OK!' is displayed.
- Execute 'Setting the Paper Cassette' during toner supply.

- 2) Exit from service mode.

2.2.35 Setting the Paper Cassette

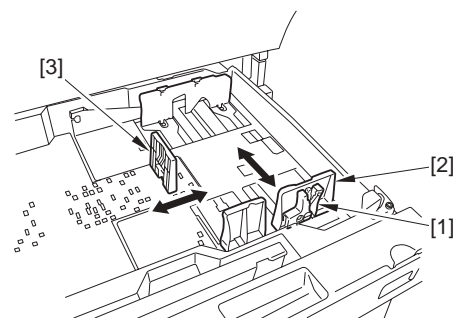
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Press the cassette release button, and pull out the cassette toward the front.
- 2) Find out the paper the user uses; then check to be sure that the paper configuration switch [1] of the cassette is in keeping with the paper configuration.
If it is not, change the position to the proper paper configuration
- 3) Turn the paper size registration dial [2] to the position of the proper paper size.



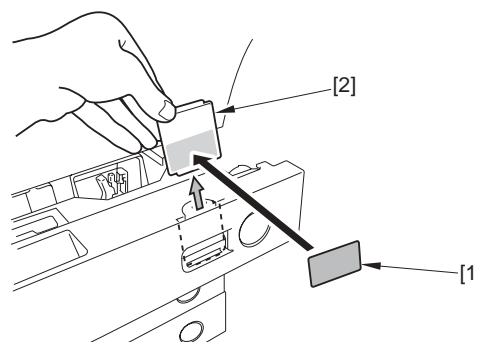
F-2-226

- 4) Hold the lever [1] of the side guide plate and move the side guide plate [2] to the specified size.
- 5) Hold the trailing edge guide plate [3] to remove.
Following the display of the underside of the cassette, move the trailing edge guide plate to the specified size.



F-2-227

- 6) Affix the appropriate Paper size label [1] to the size plate [2].



F-2-228

- 7) Deposit papers in the cassette, and put back the cassette.
- 8) Set other cassettes in the same way.

2.2.36 Setting for K paper

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Make the following settings for the use of K paper.

- 1) Enter the service mode (level 2).
- 2) Change from '0' to '1' in COPIER > OPTION > BODY > KSIZE-SW.
- 3) Press the reset key to enter (level 1)
- 4) Set to '0' in COPIER > OPTION > BODY > MODEL-SZ.

MEMO:

Enter the service mode (level 2).
COPIER > OPTION > BODY > KSIZE-SW
The switch for the use of K paper
0: Do not accept K paper (default)
1: Accept K paper

Set the paper size to 8K, 16K in the following service mode.

- 5) In the case that the paper size is set to 8K
Set to '40' in COPIER > OPTION > CST > CST-U2.
- 6) In the case that the paper size is set to 16K
Set to '39' in COPIER > OPTION > CST > CST-U1.
- 7) Turn off/on the main power supply according to the shutdown sequence.

2.2.37 Automatic Gradation Correction Setting

imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Clean the copyboard glass.
- 2) Select Initial Additional Functions > System Settings > Device Management Settings > Auto Gradation Adjustment.

MEMO:

'Printer Only' or 'Scanner + Printer' can be selected for 'Auto Gradation Adjust Method'.

- 3) Select 'Full Adjust'.
- 4) Select the source of paper for test print and press 'OK'.
- 5) Press 'Test print 1'. In a response, test print 1 will be printed.
- 6) Place the test print 1 on the copyboard glass by following the control panel.
- 7) Press 'Start scan'. In a response, the test print 1 will be read.
- 8) When the control panel shows the message that orders removal of the test print, remove the test print 1 from the copyboard glass.
- 9) Press 'Test print 2'. In a response, the test print 2 will be printed.
- 10) Place the test print 2 on the copyboard glass by following the control panel.

- el.
- 11) Press 'Start scan'. In a response, the test print 2 will be read.
 - 12) When the control panel shows the message that orders removal of the test print, remove the test print 2 from the copyboard glass.
 - 13) Press 'Test print 3'. In a response, the test print 3 will be printed.
 - 14) Place the test print 3 on the copyboard glass by following the control panel.
 - 15) Press 'Start scan'. In a response, the test print 3 will be read.
 - 16) When the control panel shows the message that orders removal of the test print, remove the test print 3 from the copyboard glass.
 - 17) Exit from 'Additional Functions' screen.

2.2.38 Automatic Gradation Correction Setting

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer)

- 1) Select Initial Additional Functions > System Settings > Device Management Settings > Auto Gradation Adjustment.

MEMO:
When attaching the reader (accessory) at the same time, there are selections available to execute as an auto gradation correction method from 'Auto Gradation Adjust Method': either 'Printer Only' or 'Scanner + printer'.

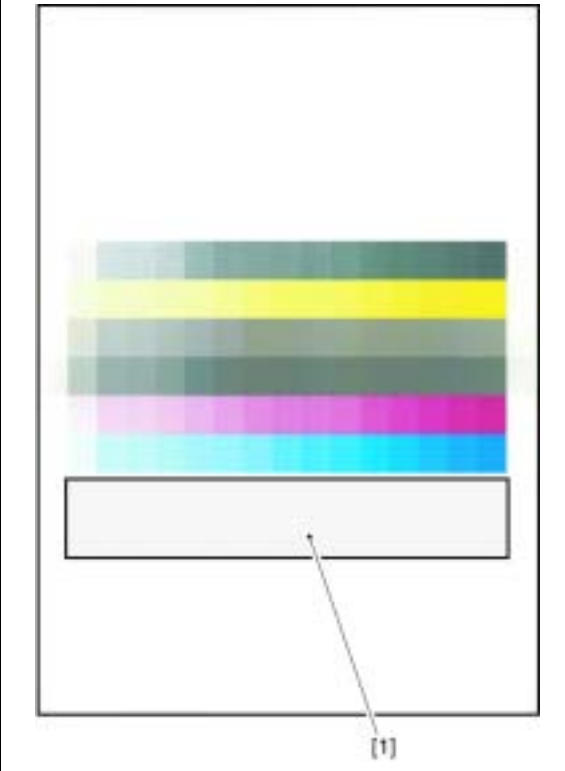
- 2) Select 'Full Adjust'.
- 3) Select the source of paper for test print and press 'OK'.
- 4) Press 'start'.
- 5) Exit from 'Additional Functions' screen.

2.2.39 Checking a Clear Color Image

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Set paper (A4/LTR) in the cassette 1.
- 2) Select a service mode item (COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE) and enter 14.
- 3) Select a service mode item (COPIER > TEST > PG > F/M-SW) and enter 3.
- 4) Press the [Start] button and perform a test print.

! Print a 5-full-color 16-gradation test pattern, and make sure that there is no color mixture in the clear area [1].



2.2.40 Checking Image / Operation

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Place the test chart (CANON CA-1 TEST SHEET) on the copyboard. Feed paper from each cassette and check the image.
 - Check to be sure that there is no unusual sound.
 - Check to be sure the image quality with each default magnification.
 - Check to be sure that the behavior to print the specified number of sheets is normal.
 - Check to be sure that the image printed from each cassette is within the

range of the standard value.
There are 2 standard values as follows:
Standard value of left margin of image: 2.5 +/- 1.5 mm
Standard value of margin along leading edge of image: 3.0 +1.5/-1.0 mm

! When the value is not within the standard value, refer to 'Adjusting left margin of image' or 'Adjusting margin along leading edge of image'. In the case of image fault (vertical/horizontal lines), see the item for 'cleaning the charging assembly'.

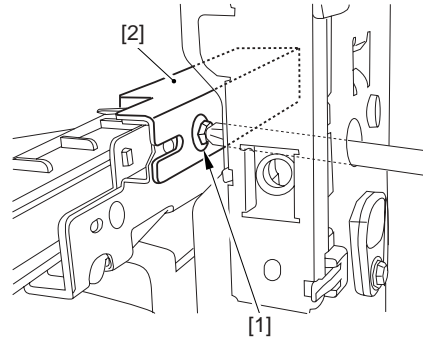
2.2.41 Adjusting Left Margin of Image

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Adjusting methods of left margin of image in accordance with each pickup slot are described below.

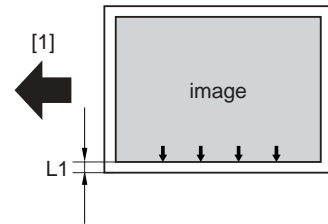
1. Adjusting Method of Cassette

- 1) Press the cassette release button, and pull out the cassette toward the front.
- 2) Open the upper right cover and the lower right cover.
- 3) Insert the screwdriver from the hole of the right front crossmember. Loosen the screw [1] and adjust the position of the adjusting plate [2].



F-2-229

- Move the slide guide toward the rear = left margin decreases
 - Move the slide guide toward the front = left margin increases
- 4) Tighten the screw.
 - 5) Close the upper right cover and the lower right cover.
 - 6) Put back the cassette.
 - 7) Check to be sure that the left margin of images printed from each cassette are within L1 = 2.5 +/-1.5 mm.

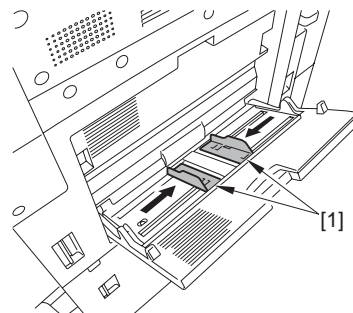


F-2-230

[1] Feeding direction of paper

2. Adjusting Method of Manual Feed Tray

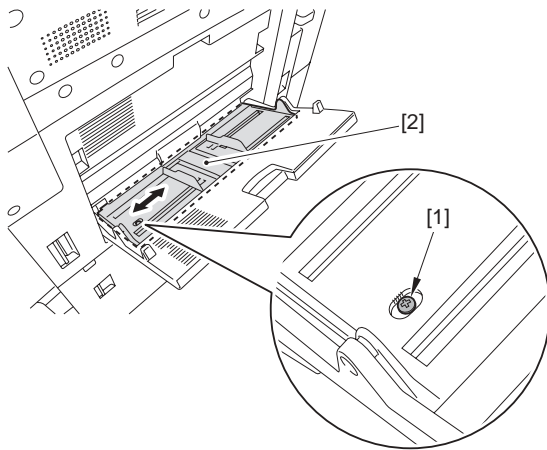
- 1) Open the manual feed tray.
- 2) Slide the side guide plate [1] in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-231

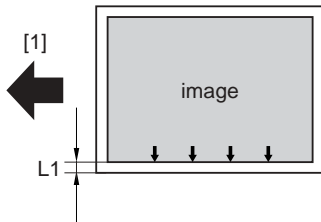
- 3) Loosen the screw [1], and adjust the left margin of image by moving the

setting position of the slide guide [2].



F-2-232

- Move the slide guide toward the rear = left margin decreases
- Move the slide guide toward the front = left margin increases
- 4) Tighten the screw loosened at step 3), and fix the slide guide.
- 5) Check to be sure that the left margin of image printed from the manual feed tray is $L1 = 2.5 \pm 1.5$ mm.



F-2-233

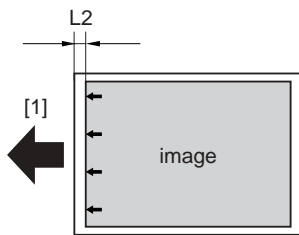
[1] Feeding direction of paper

2.2.42 Adjusting Margin along Leading Edge of Image

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Adjusting method of margin along leading edge of image from each pickup slot is described below.

- 1) Select COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REGIST from the service mode.
- 2) Adjust by changing the setting.
(Each 1 setting value change results in the movement of 0.1 mm. The image shifts toward the leading edge by setting the value larger.)
- 3) To activate the setting value, follow the shutdown sequence and turn OFF/ ON the main power switch.
- 4) Make sure that the margin along leading edge of image of which paper was fed from each cassette / deck is $L2 = 3.0 \pm 1.5 / -1.0$ mm.



F-2-234

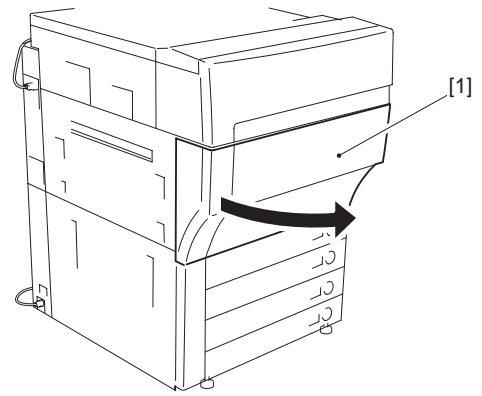
[1] Feeding direction of paper

2.2.43 Cleaning the Charging Assembly

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

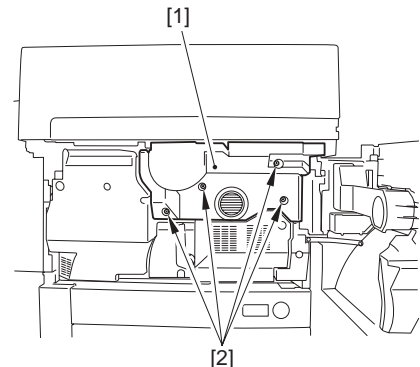
Perform the following procedure when image fault (vertical or horizontal lines) occurs.

- 1) Open the front door



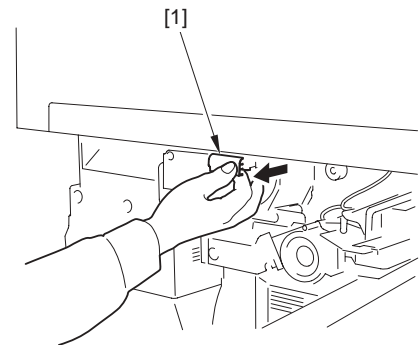
F-2-235

- 2) Remove the cover [1] of the process unit.
- 4 screws [2]



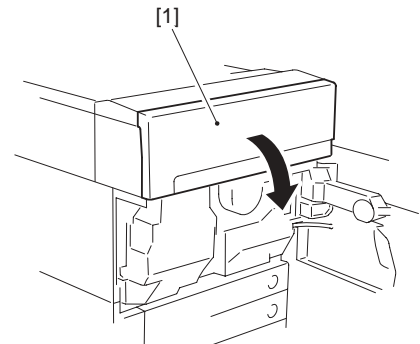
F-2-236

- 3) Pull the shutter lever [1] found at the hopper fully toward you



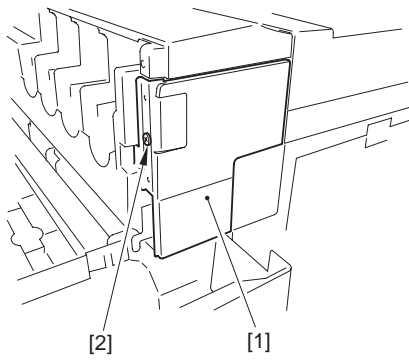
F-2-237

- 4) Open the toner replacement cover [1]



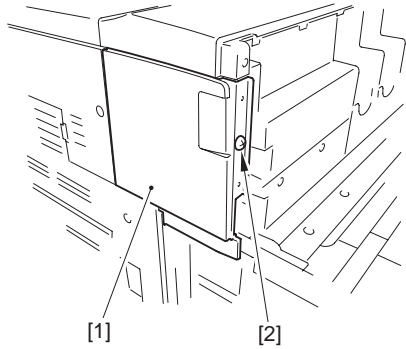
F-2-238

- 5) Remove the hopper cover (Right) [1].
- 1 screw [2]



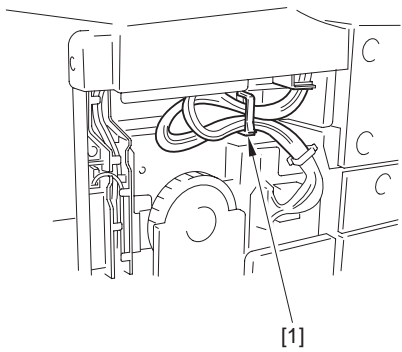
F-2-239

6) Remove the hopper cover (Left) [1].
- 1 screw [2]



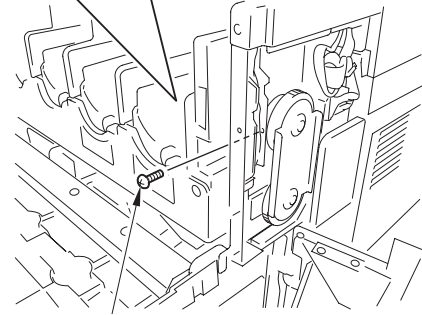
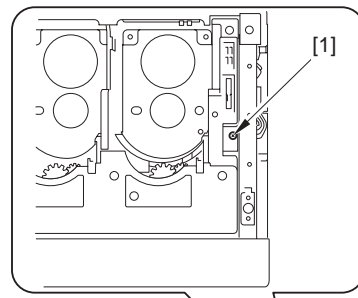
F-2-240

7) Free the 2 harnesses from the clamp [1]
Right Side



F-2-241

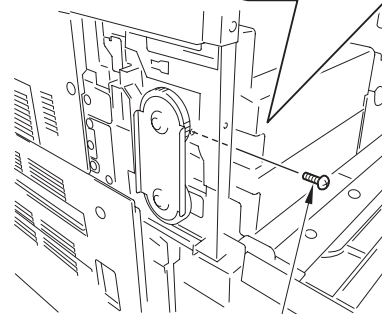
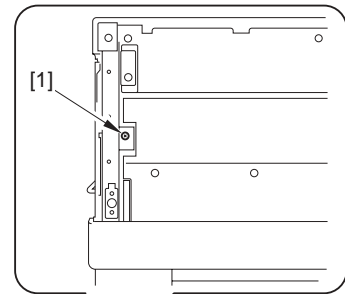
8) Remove the 2 hopper fixing screws [1]
The right side



[1]

F-2-242

The left side

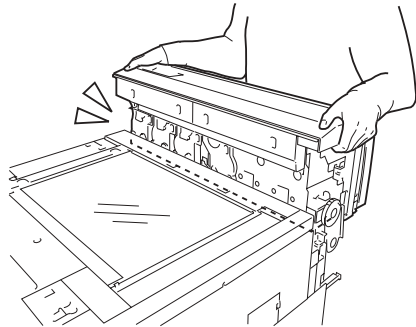
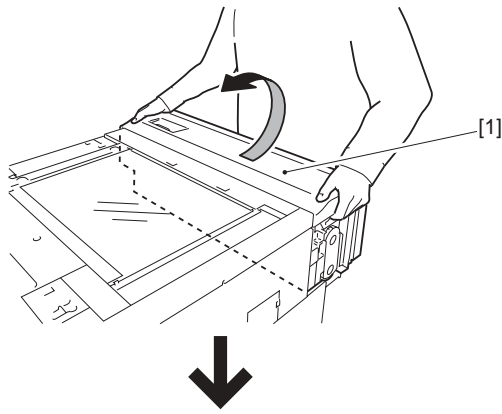


[1]

F-2-243

9) Close the toner replacement cover

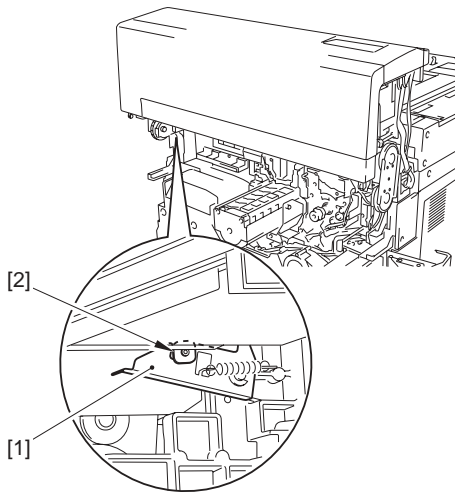
10) Lift the hopper [1] in the direction of the arrow until it stops



F-2-244

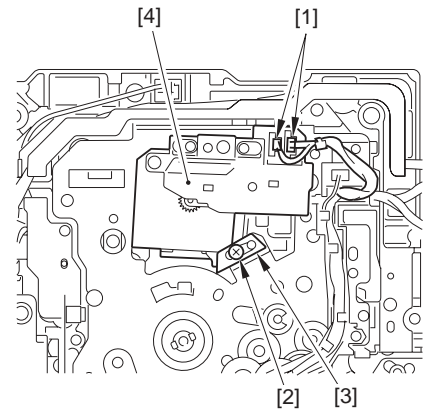
⚠ Points to Note when Pulling up the Hopper Unit

1. Be sure to check with eyes that the lock arm [1] on the lower left of the hopper is hooked to the shaft [2] and the hopper unit is locked.



2. Be sure not to swing the hopper unit.
In the case the hopper unit is not fully locked, the hopper unit may drop.

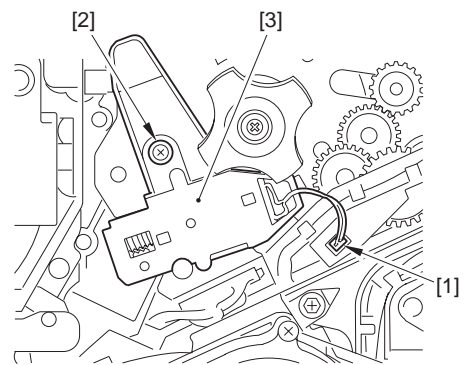
- 11) Remove the 2 connectors [1].
- 12) Loosen the screw [2], move the charging assembly fixing member [3] in the upper right direction and fix it with screw.
- 13) Remove the primary charging assembly [4].
Check the primary charging wire. If there is dirt or paper dust on it, clean it with alcohol solution.



F-2-245

- 14) Disconnect the connector [1], and remove the screw [2].
- 15) Remove the pre-transfer charging assembly [3].

Check the pre-transfer charging wire: if there is any dirt/paper lint attached to it, clean it with alcohol solution.

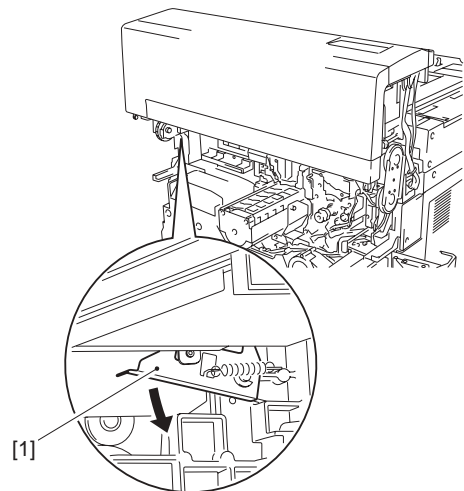


F-2-246

- 16) By reversing the steps used to remove it, mount the primary charging assembly and pre-transfer charging assembly.

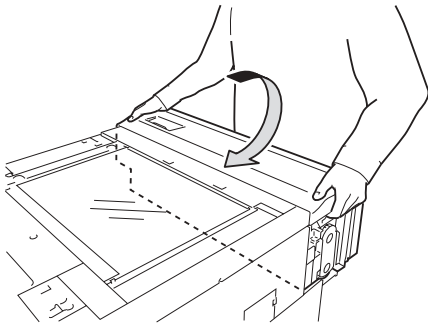
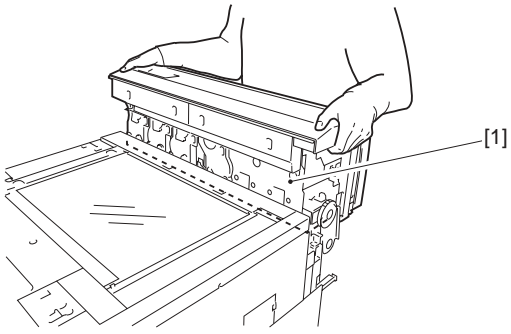
⚠ Check to see that the solution is completely dried out.

- 17) Shift down the lock lever [1] in the direction of the arrow to release.



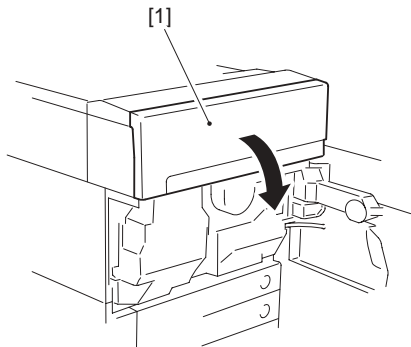
F-2-247

- 18) Grip it tightly by both hands, and shift down the hopper [1] gently in the direction of the arrow.



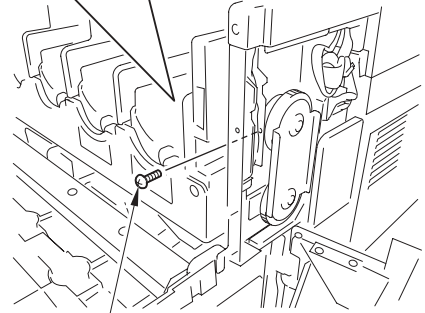
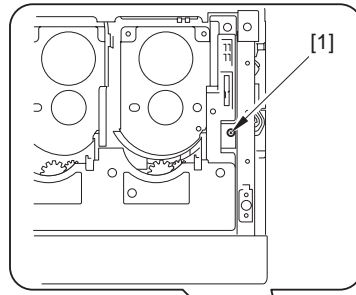
F-2-248

19) Open the toner replacement cover [1]



F-2-249

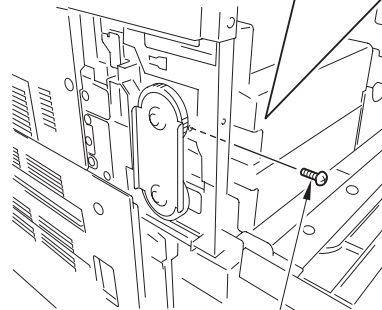
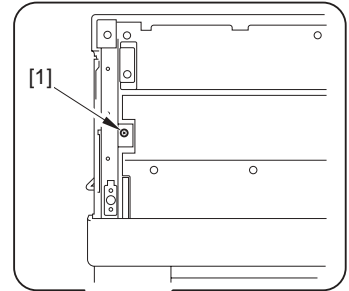
20) Tighten the 2 hopper fixing screws [1].
Right Side



[1]

F-2-250

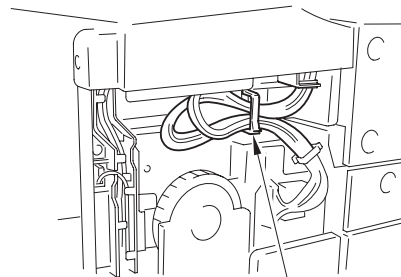
Left Side



[1]

F-2-251

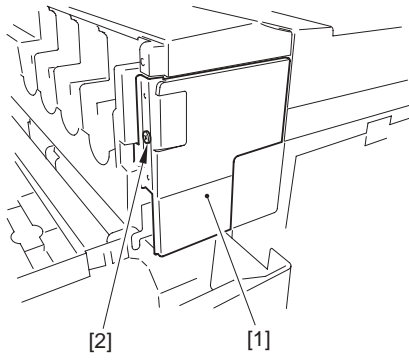
21) Fix the 2 harnesses with the clamp [1].



[1]

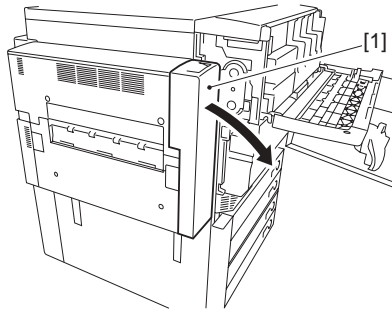
F-2-252

22) Attach the hopper cover (Right) [1].
- 1 screw [2]



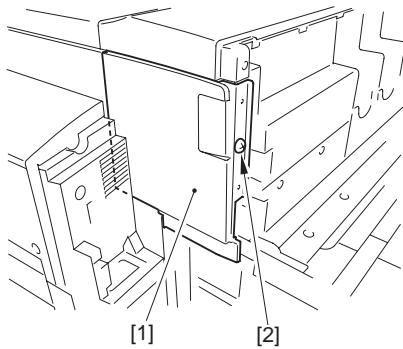
F-2-253

23) Open the decurler front cover [1].



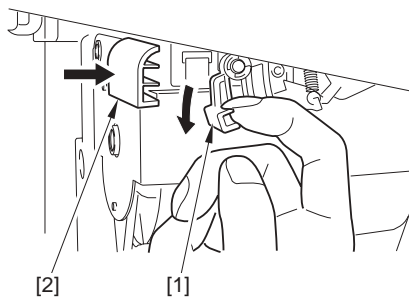
F-2-254

24) Attach the hopper cover (Left) [1].
- 1 screw [2]



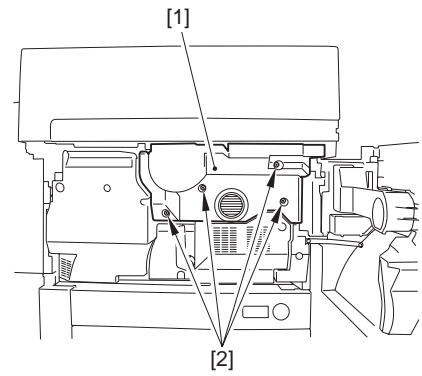
F-2-255

25) Close the decurler front cover.
26) Close the toner replacement cover.
27) With releasing the lock [1] of the shutter lever in the direction of the arrow, push the shutter lever [2].



F-2-256

28) Attach the cover [1] of the process unit.
- 4 screws [2]



F-2-257

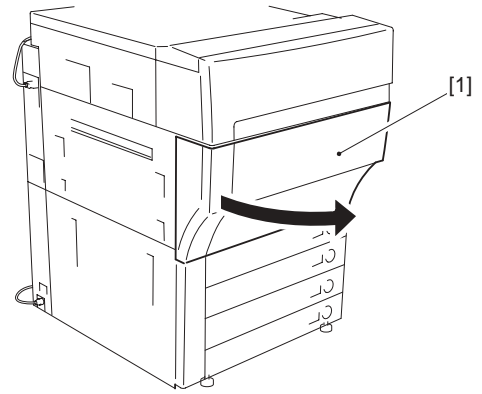
29) Close the front door.

2.2.44 Cleaning the Charging Assembly

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

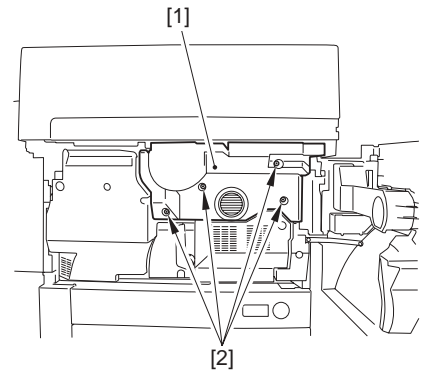
Perform the following procedure when image fault (vertical or horizontal lines) occurs.

1) Open the front door.



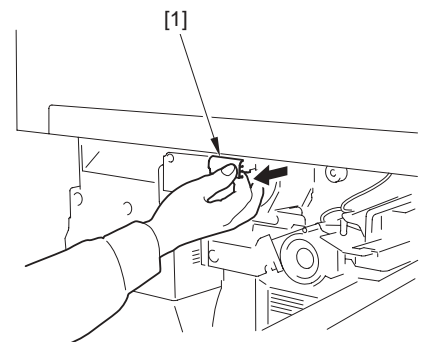
F-2-258

2) Remove the cover [1] of the process unit.
- 4 screws [2]



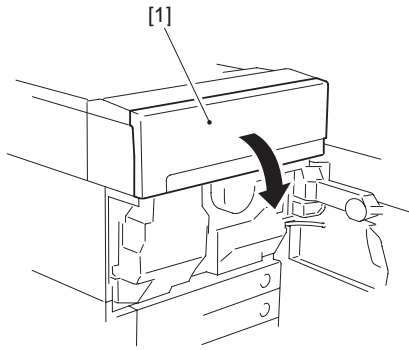
F-2-259

3) Pull the shutter lever [1] found at the hopper fully toward you.



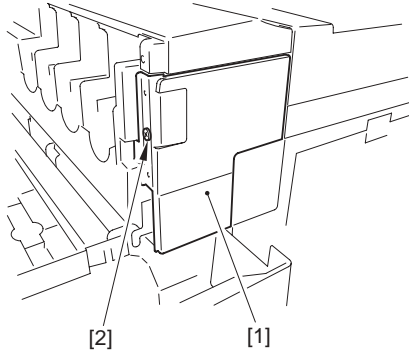
F-2-260

4) Open the toner replacement cover [1].



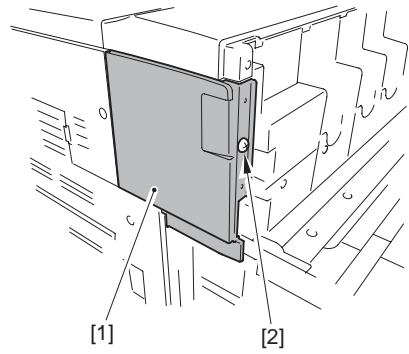
F-2-261

- 5) Remove the hopper cover (Right) [1].
- 1 screw [2]



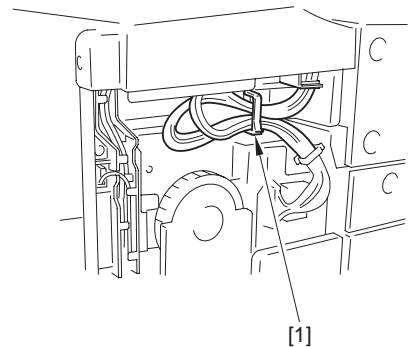
F-2-262

- 6) Remove the hopper cover (Left) [1].
- 1 screw [2]



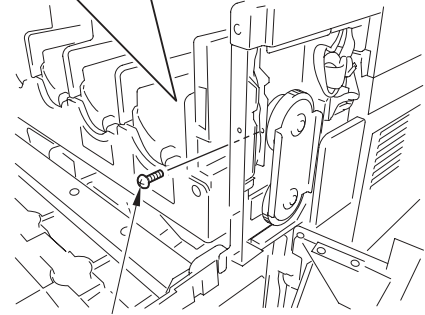
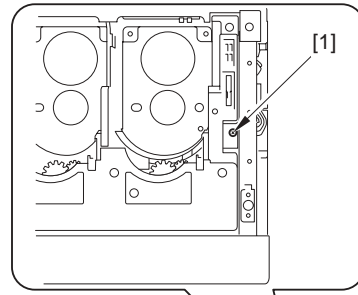
F-2-263

- 7) Free the 2 harnesses from the wire saddle [1].
<Right Side>



F-2-264

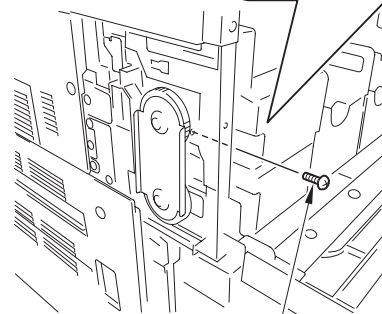
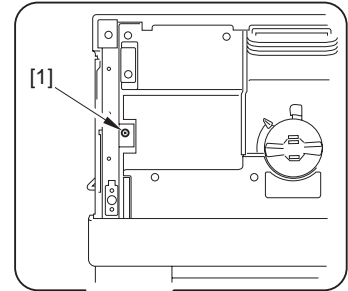
- 8) Remove the 2 hopper fixing screws [1] from each side.
<Right side>



[1]

F-2-265

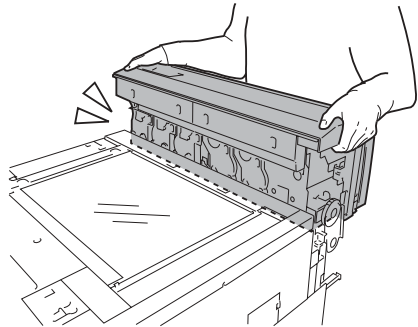
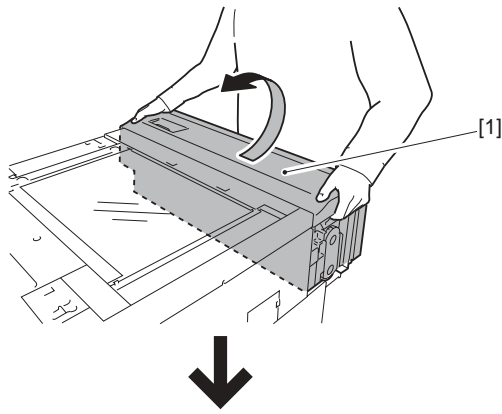
<Left side>



[1]

F-2-266

- 9) Close the toner replacement cover.
10) Lift the hopper [1] in the direction of the arrow until it stops.



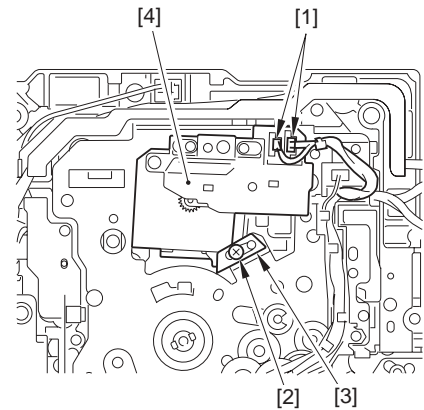
F-2-267

⚠ Points to Note when Pulling up the Hopper Unit

1. Be sure to check with eyes that the lock arm [1] on the lower left of the hopper is hooked to the shaft [2] and the hopper unit is locked.

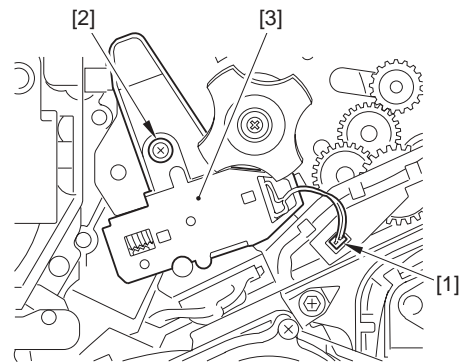
2. Be sure not to swing the hopper unit.
In the case the hopper unit is not fully locked, the hopper unit may drop.

- 11) Remove the 2 connectors [1].
- 12) Loosen the screw [2], move the charging assembly fixing member [3] in the upper right direction and fix it with screw.
- 13) Remove the primary charging assembly [4].
Check the primary charging wire. If there is dirt or paper dust on it, clean it with alcohol solution.



F-2-268

- 14) Disconnect the connector [1], and remove the screw [2].
- 15) Remove the pre-transfer charging assembly [3].
Check the pre-transfer charging wire: if there is any dirt/paper lint attached to it, clean it with alcohol solution.

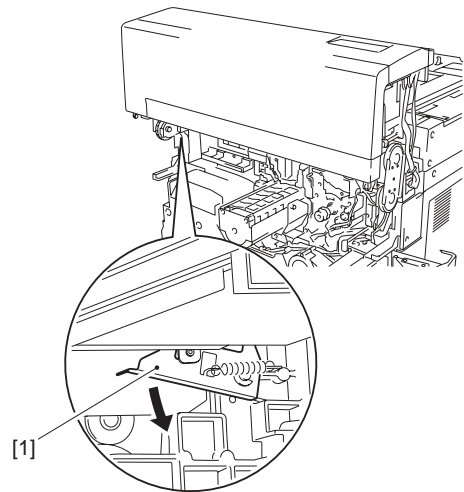


F-2-269

- 16) By reversing the steps used to remove it, mount the primary charging assembly and pre-transfer charging assembly.

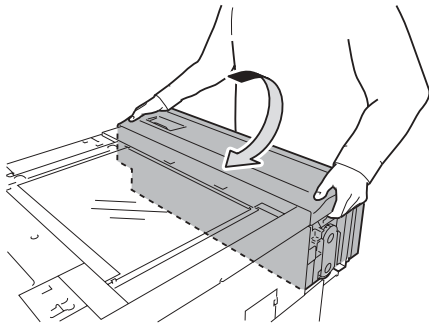
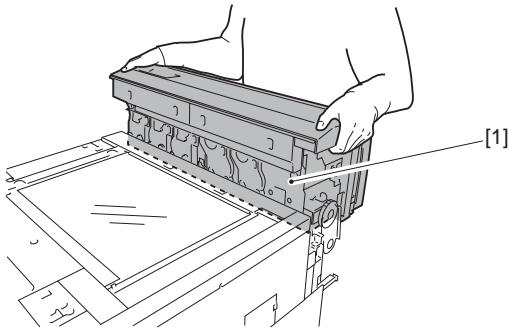
⚠ Check to see that the solution is completely dried out.

- 17) Shift down the lock lever [1] in the direction of the arrow to release.



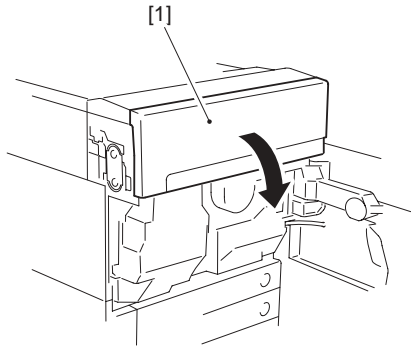
F-2-270

- 18) Grip it tightly by both hands, and shift down the hopper [1] gently in the direction of the arrow.



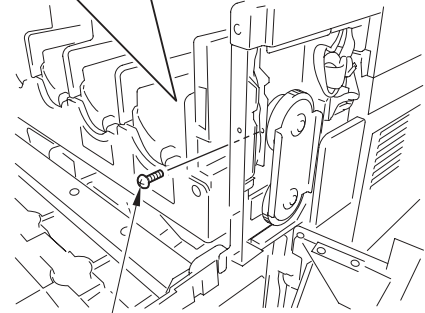
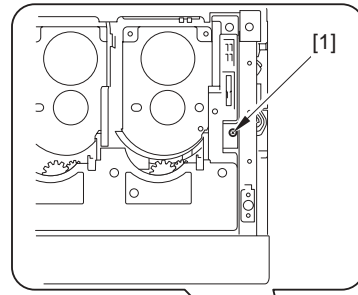
F-2-271

19) Open the toner replacement cover [1].



F-2-272

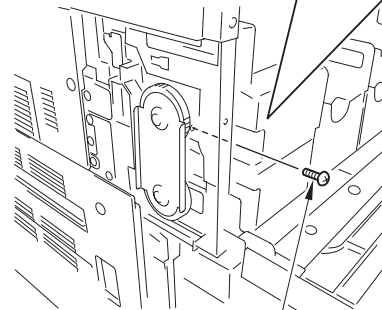
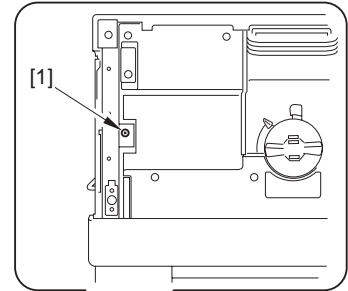
20) Tighten the 2 hopper fixing screws [1] from each side.
<Right Side>



[1]

F-2-273

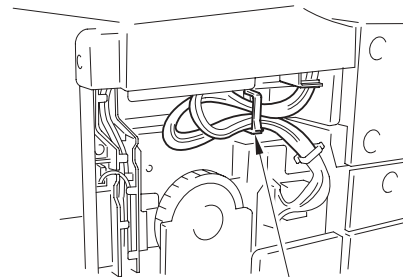
<Left Side>



[1]

F-2-274

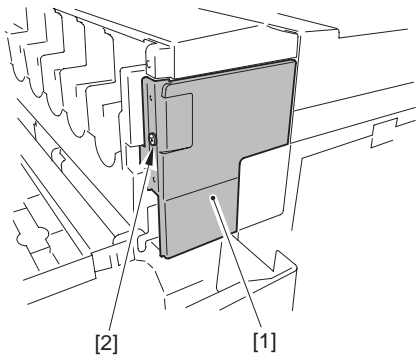
21) Fix the 2 harnesses with the wire saddle [1].
<Right Side>



[1]

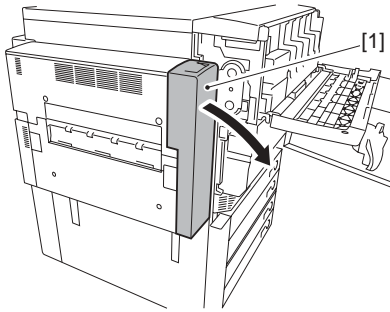
F-2-275

22) Attach the hopper cover (Right) [1].
- 1 screw [2]



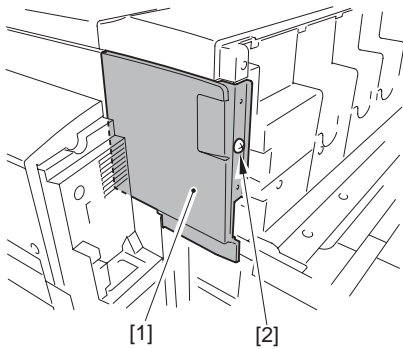
F-2-276

23) Open the decurler front cover [1].



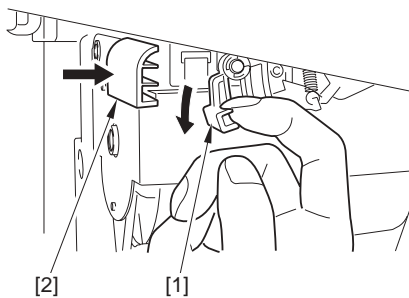
F-2-277

24) Attach the hopper cover (Left) [1].
- 1 screw [2]



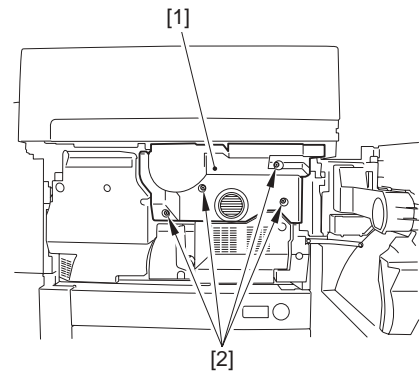
F-2-278

25) Close the decurler front cover.
26) Close the toner replacement cover.
27) With releasing the lock [1] of the shutter lever in the direction of the arrow, push the shutter lever [2].



F-2-279

28) Attach the cover [1] of the process unit.
- 4 screws [2]



F-2-280

29) Close the front door.

2.2.45 Other Works

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

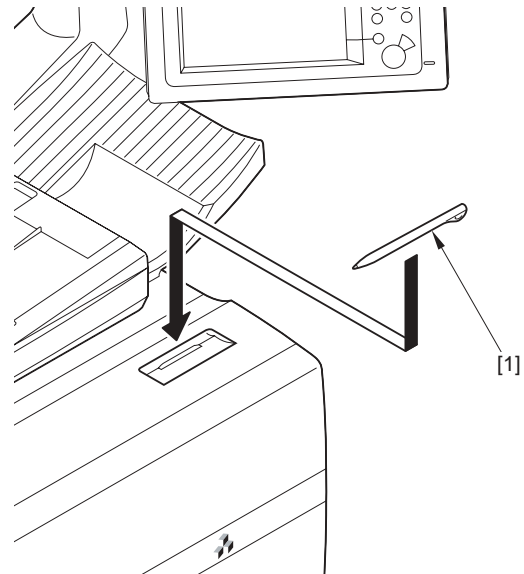
1. Service Book Case

1) Attach the service book case to the lower right cover of the host machine.

MEMO:
- Attach the case at which it does not disturb the opening/closing the lower right cover.
- In case of installing the paper deck, mount it to the right cover of the deck.

2. Touch Pen

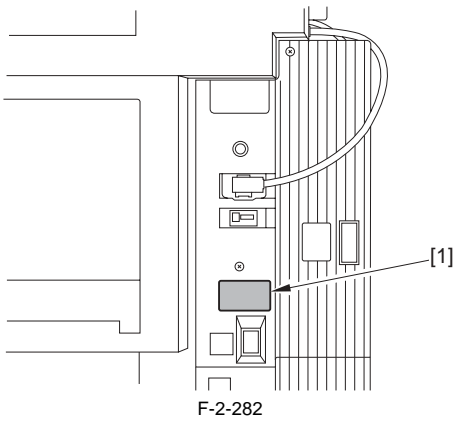
1) Place the touch pen [1] on the position shown in the figure.



F-2-281

3. Shutdown Label

1) Attach the shutdown label [1] in appropriate language to the upper rear right cover.



F-2-282

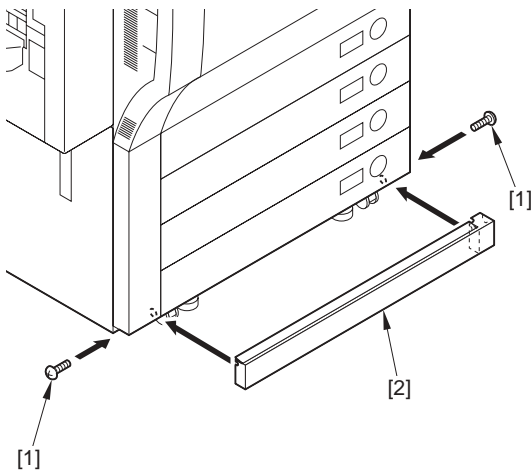
- 2) Execute the followings in service mode; COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > PRINT, store the output papers in the service book case.
- 2) Execute P-PRINT.
Service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT
- 3) Store the output paper in the service book case.

4. Attaching the caster cover

!

- Be sure to turn the caster cover to the position where it does not make contact with the caster cover.
- Check to see if the adjuster is fixed properly.

- 1) Temporary tighten the 2 screws (binding; M4X8) [1].
- 2) Attach the caster cover [2].



F-2-283

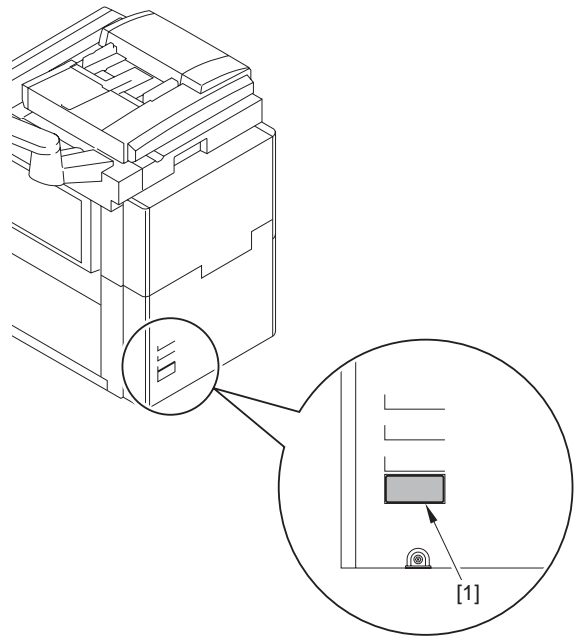
- 3) Tighten the screws in place.

2.2.46 Putting the Rating Plate.

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer)

- For Korea only

- 1) Put the rating plate [1] to the position as shown.



F-2-284

2.3 Unpacking and Installation (imagePRESS C1 Series)

2.3.1 Points to Note About Installation (imagePRESS C1 series)

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

!

Before mounting the decurler, install this equipment.

2.3.2 Turning Off the Machine (imagePRESS C1 series)

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

! **Turning Off the Main Power**

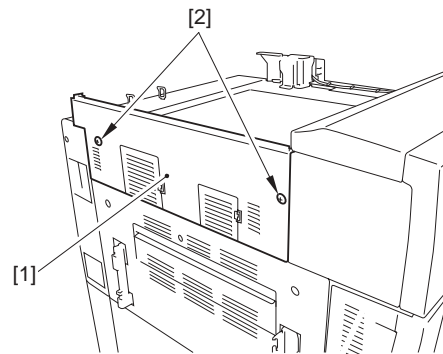
Be sure to go through the following steps when turning off the main power to protect the machine's hard disk:

- 1) Hold down the control panel power switch for 3 sec or more.
- 2) Follow the shut-down instructions on the screen. (The main power will go off automatically.)
- 3) Disconnect the 2 power plugs of the machine (1 at the for the rear, 1 at the left side).

2.3.3 Installation Procedure (imagePRESS C1 series)

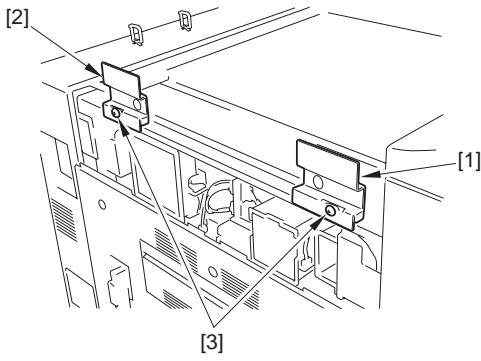
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the upper left cover [1].
- 2 stepped screws [2]



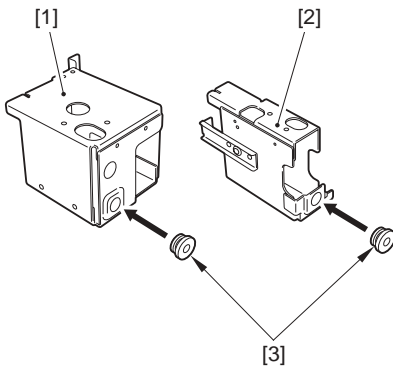
F-2-285

- 2) Remove the reader fixing plate at the front [1] and the rear [2].
- 2 screws [3]



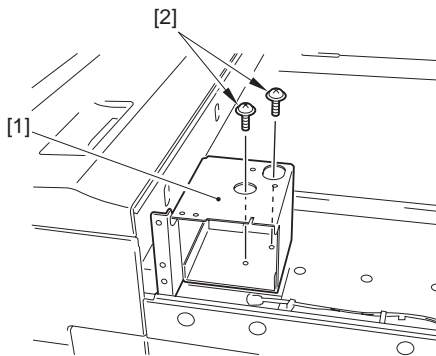
F-2-286

- 3) Attach the bush [3] to the reader fixing plate (right front) [1] and the reader fixing plate (right rear) [2].



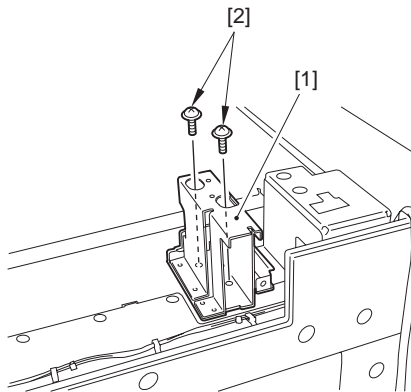
F-2-287

- 4) Attach the reader fixing plate (right front) [1].
- 2 screws (TP; M4X6) [2]



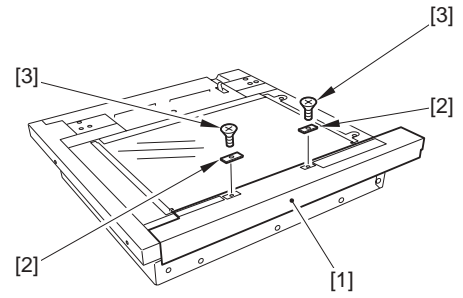
F-2-288

- 5) Attach the reader fixing plate (right rear) [1].
- 2 screws (TP; M4X6) [2]



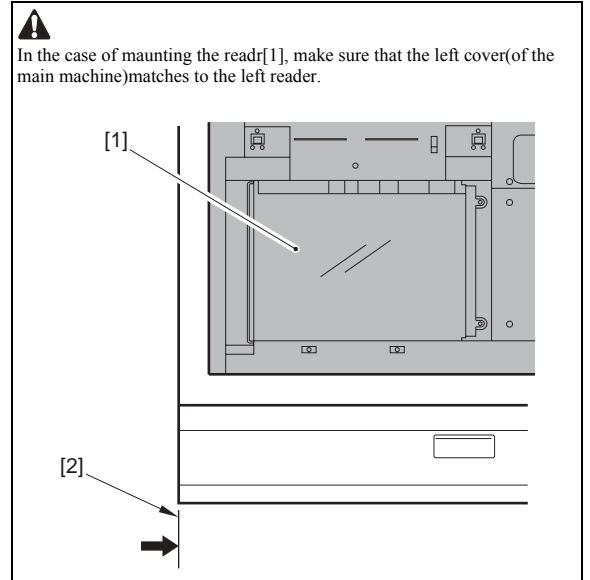
F-2-289

- 6) Attach the reader front cover [1].
- 2 magnet catches [2]
- 2 flat-head screws [3]



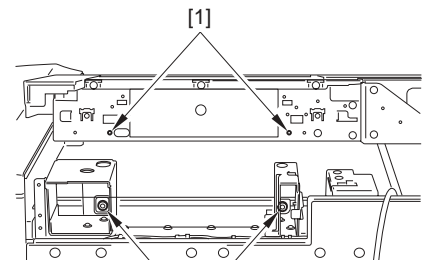
F-2-290

- 7) Place the reader unit [1] on the host machine.



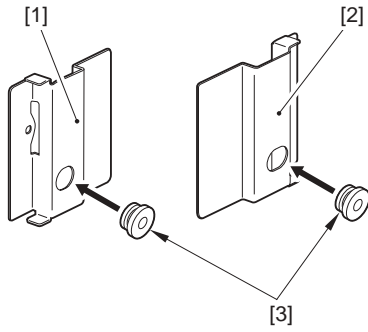
F-2-291

- 8) Match the screw hole [1] of the reader unit and the screw hole [2] of the reader fixing plate.



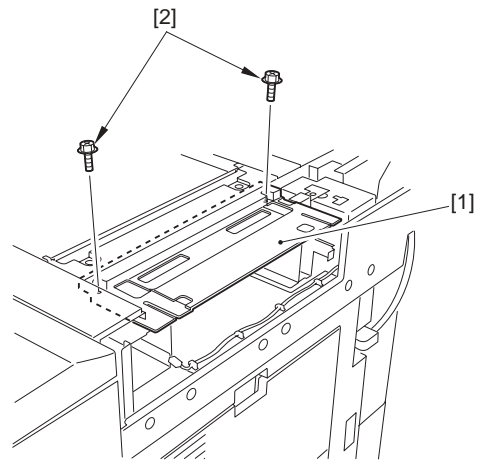
F-2-292

- 9) Fit the bush [3] to the reader fixing plate (front left [1] removed and rear left [2] which were removed in the step 2).



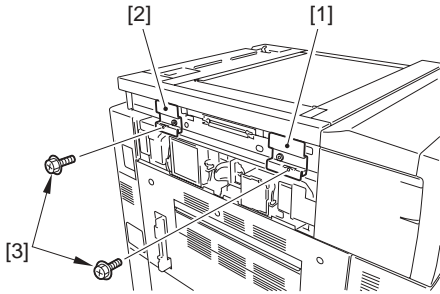
F-2-293

- 10) Attach the reader fixing plate (front left) [1] and (rear left) [2].
- 2 screw [3]



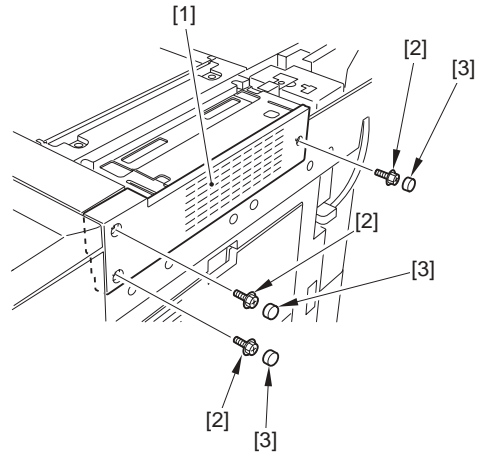
F-2-297

- 14) Attach the reader right cover [1].
- 3 screws (RS, tightening; M4X8) [2]
- 3 cover rubber pieces [3]
(Use the cover rubber that comes with the host machine.)



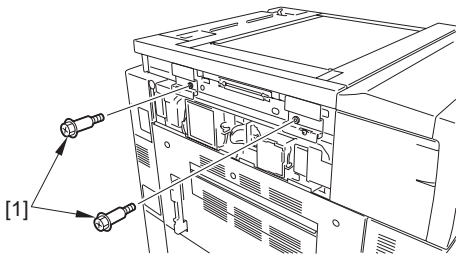
F-2-294

- 11) Secure the reader unit in place.
- 4 stepped screws (RS tightening; 6X9 dia.) [1]
Left View



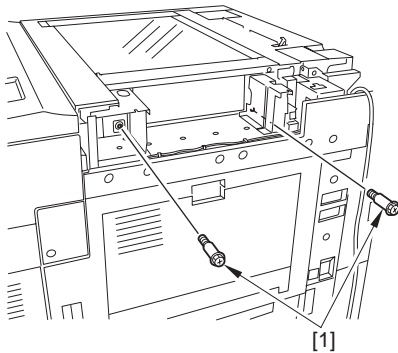
F-2-298

- 15) Remove the mirror fixing screw.
- 3 screws [1]



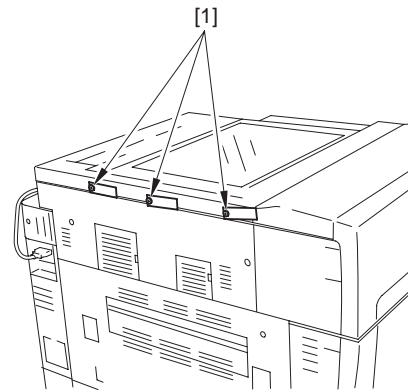
F-2-295

Right View



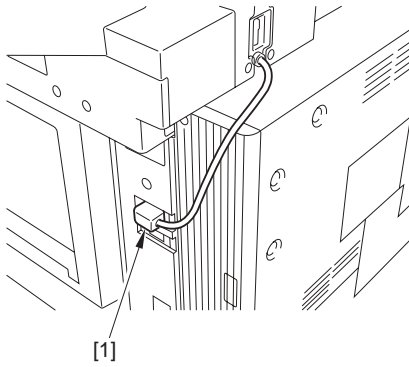
F-2-296

- 12) Attach the upper left cover removed in step 1).
13) Attach the reader upper right cover [1].
- 2 screws (RS, tightening; M4X8) [2]



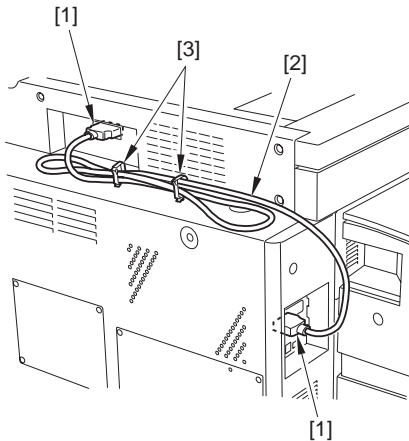
F-2-299

- 16) Connect the reader power cable [1].



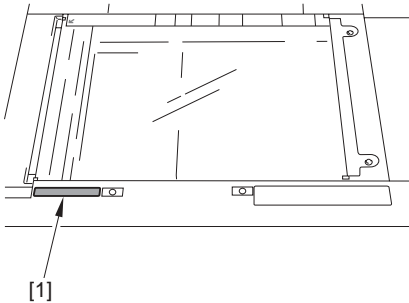
F-2-300

- 17) Connect the connector [1], and fix the reader communication cable [2] in place using 2 clamp [3].



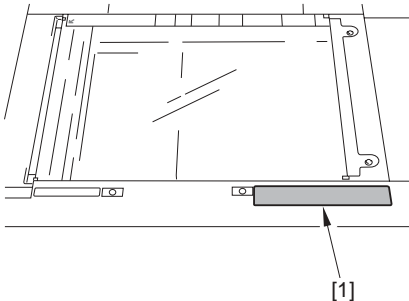
F-2-301

- 18) Attach the Caution Lamp label [1] of the appropriate language.



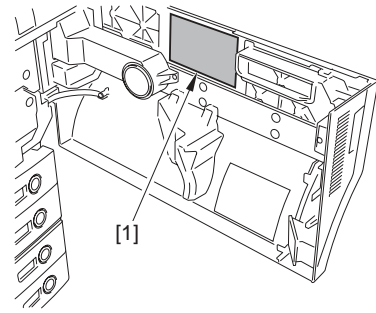
F-2-302

- 19) Attach the Do Not Copy label [1] of the appropriate language.



F-2-303

- 20) Attach the service label [1] to the front cover of the copying machine.



F-2-304

- 21) Connect the host machine's 2 power plugs (back, left) to 2 separate power supply systems; then, turn on the main power switch.
22) Following the message on the control panel, turn off the main power switch, and then turn on the main power switch.

2.3.4 Setting After the Installation (imagePRESS C1 series)

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

Check the following setting after the installation of this equipment is completed.

- 1) Enter the service mode.
- 2) Select COPIER > OPTION > BODY > W/SCNR.
- 3) Make sure that '1' is set.
Default: 0
- 4) Terminate the service mode.

2.4 Unpacking and Installation (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

2.4.1 Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the power of Host Machine (imagePRESS C7000 series)

Color Image Reader-H1

⚠ Power-On Order for Turning On the Power When Pickup/Delivery Accessories are Connected

Be sure to turn on the power in the correct order otherwise it may cause an error because the host machine fails to recognize accessories including this equipment.

<Power-On Order>

- 1) Accessories (accessories including this equipment)
- 2) Host machine

MEMO:

There is no power-on order among accessories

⚠ Points to Note When Turning Off the Main Power of the Host Machine

Be sure to turn off the main power in the following order to protect hard disk of the host machine.

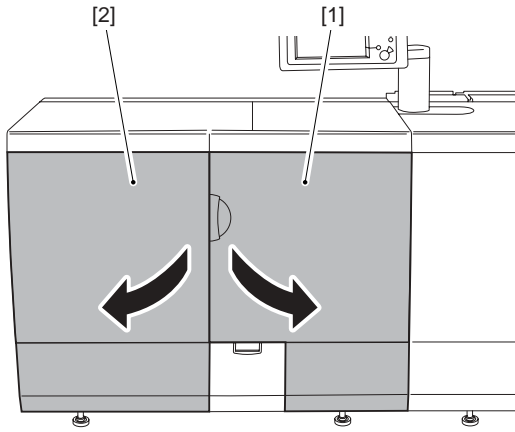
- 1) Press the power switch on control panel for 3 sec or more.
- 2) Follow the instruction on the shutdown sequence screen (the main power switch will go off automatically).
- 3) Turn off the breaker.
- 4) Disconnect the power plug.

2.4.2 Installation Procedure (imagePRSS C7000 series)

Color Image Reader-H1

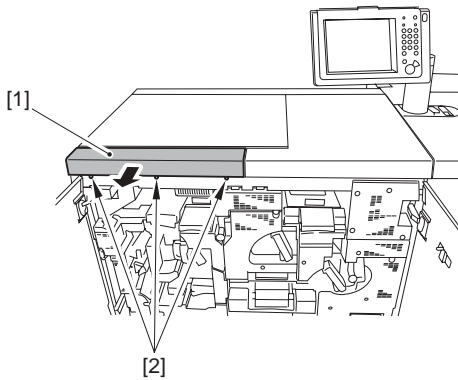
1. Installation procedure

- 1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2].



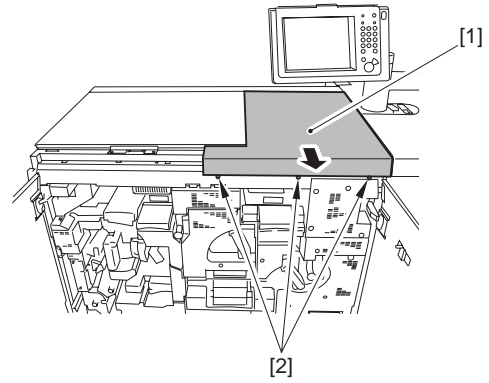
F-2-305

- 2) Detach the sub station upper front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



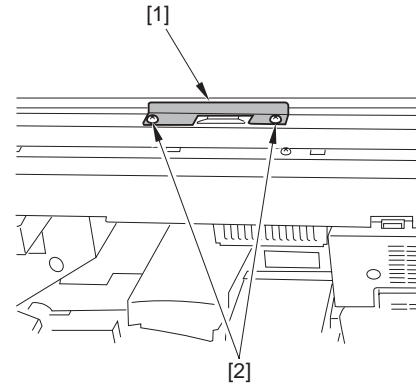
F-2-306

- 3) Detach the sub station upper right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



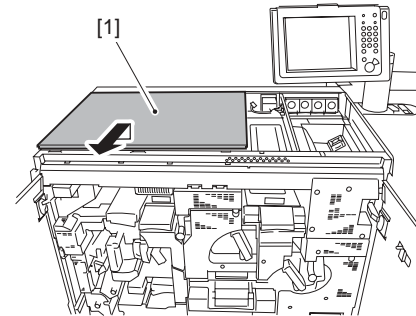
F-2-307

- 4) Detach the reader retaining plate [1]. (The reader retaining plate detached is not used.)
- 2 screws [2]



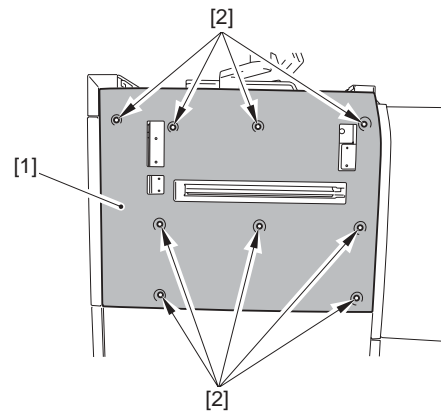
F-2-308

- 5) Lift the front side of the sub station upper left cover [1] and then, pull it to remove. (The sub station upper left cover detached is not used.)



F-2-309

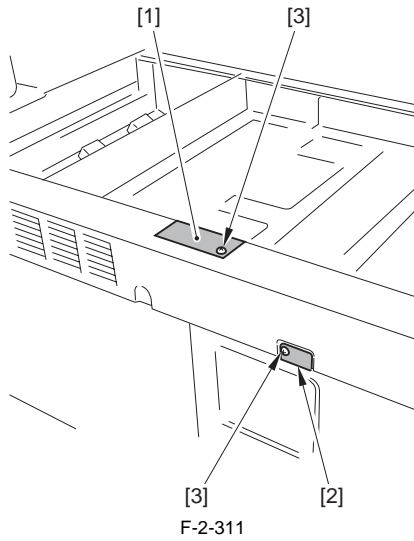
- 6) Detach the sub station left upper cover [1].
- 9 screws [2]



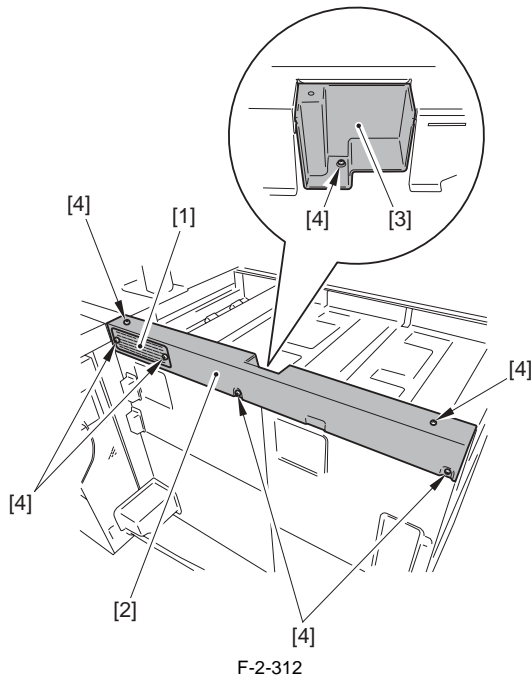
F-2-310

- 7) Detach the upper rear face cover 1 [1] and upper rear face cover 2 [2] (Upper rear face cover 1 is not used, when optional ADF is installed.) (Upper rear face cover 2 is not used after it is detached.)

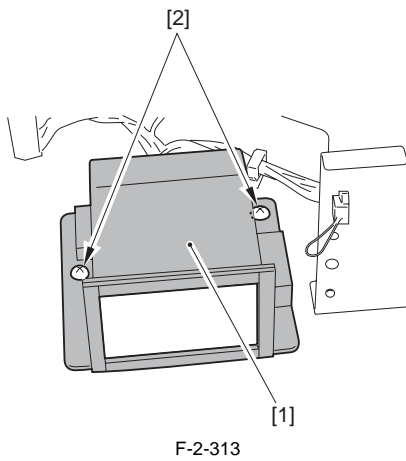
- 2 screw [3]



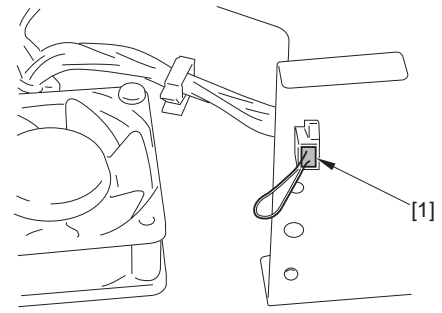
8) After removing the filter [1], remove the sub station upper rear [2]/rear upper [3] face covers.
- 7 screws [4]



9) Remove the fan duct [1]. (The fan duct detached is not used.)
- 2 screws [2]

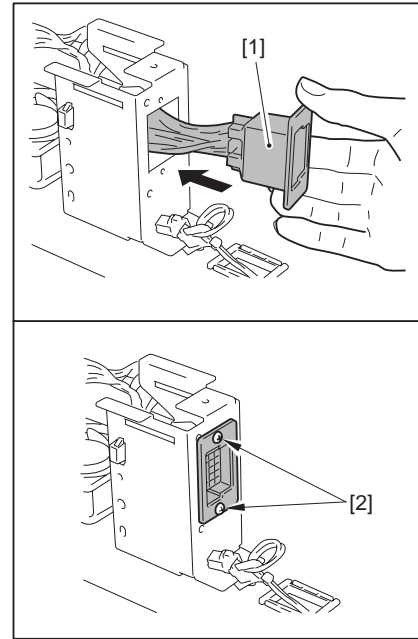


10) Disconnect the short connector [1].



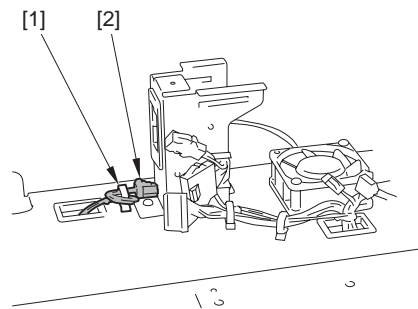
F-2-314

11) Connect the lattice cable [1].
- 2 screws (binding: M3X6) [2]



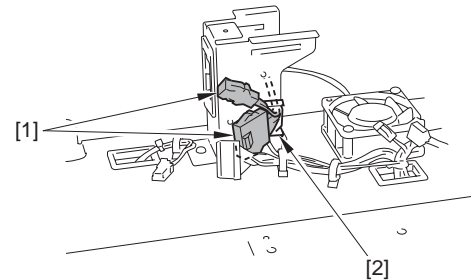
F-2-315

12) Free the harness [2] from the wire saddle [1] at the connector side only.



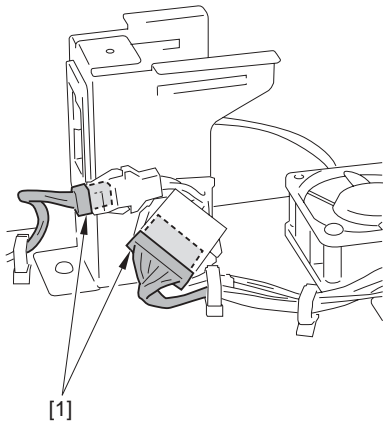
F-2-316

13) Secure the 2 harnesses [1] with the edge saddle [2].



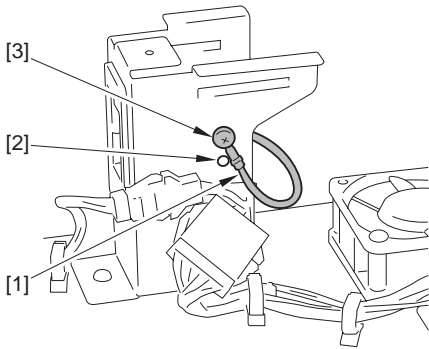
F-2-317

14) Connect the 2 connectors [1].



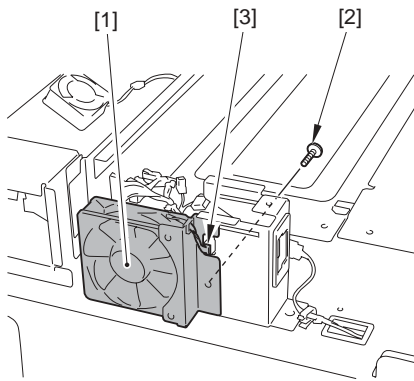
F-2-318

- 15) Attach the grounding wire [1] to be matched with the embossed mark [2].
 - 1 screw (TP; M4X6) [3]



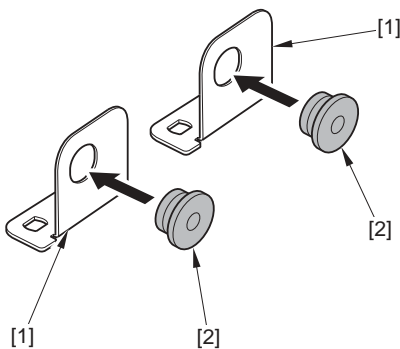
F-2-319

- 16) Attach the fan unit [1].
 - 1 screw (TP; M4X6) [2]
 - 1 connector [3]



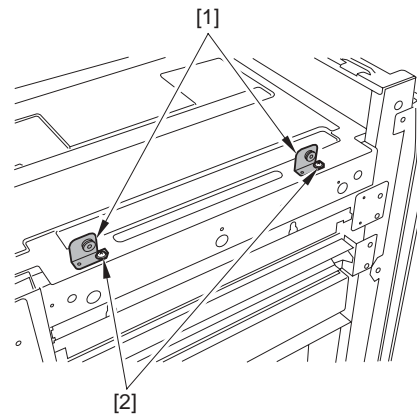
F-2-320

- 17) Put the Rubber bush [2] into the each 2 reader retaining plates [1]



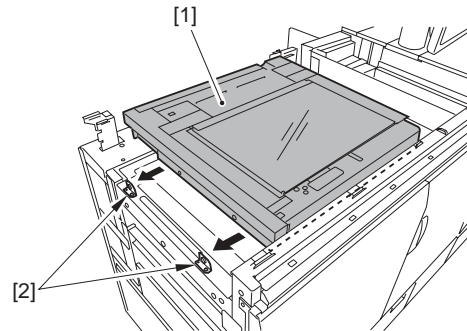
F-2-321

- 18) Attach the reader retaining plate [1] to the sub station top plate (left edge).
 - 2 screw (TP; M4X6) [2]



F-2-322

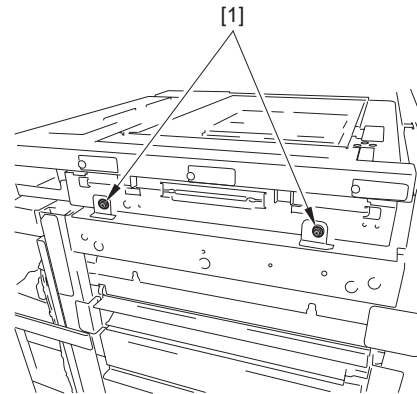
- 19) Place this equipment [1] onto the top board of the substation, then move it to the direction of the arrow and align it to the reader fixing plate left [2].



F-2-323

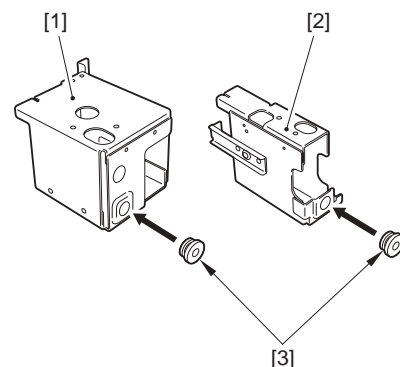
- 20) Remove the protective sheet and all the tapes which are affixed on the equipment.

- 21) Attach the reader.
 - 2 Stepped screws (RS tighten; 6.4X2.5) [1]



F-2-324

- 22) Put the 1 Rubber bush [3] into the each holes found at the reader retaining plate F (front right) [1] and the reader retaining plate R (rear right) [2].



F-2-325

- 23) Attach the reader fixing plate F (front right) [2] and the reader fixing plate R (rear right) [3] to the reader [1] with pushing them onto the direc-

tion of the arrow.
 - 4 screws (TP; M4X6) [4]

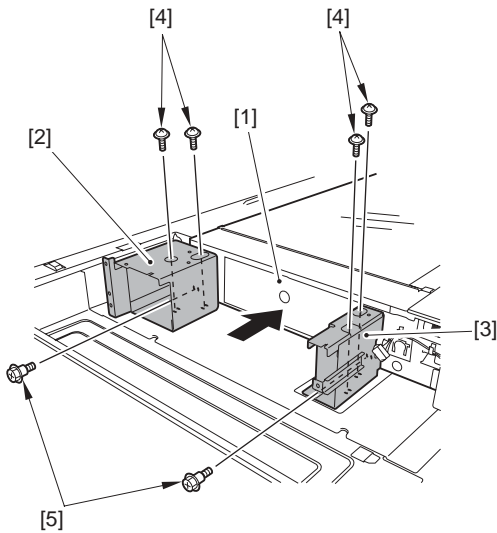


Before attaching the reader fixing plate R (rear right), be sure to attach the parts of the DADF-R1 described below. (Reader installation procedure step 5 to 20)

MEMO:

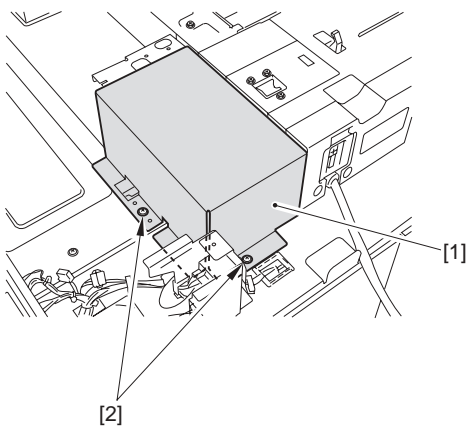
1. In the case of installing the DADF-R1, be sure to attach the following parts of the DADF-R1 before attaching the reader fixing plate R (rear right) in order to improve operational efficiency.
 - Fan unit
 - Fan holder
 - Fan duct
 - Electrostatic filter
2. After attaching the reader fixing plate R (rear right), continue the procedure from step 24 described below.

- 24) Fix the reader [1].
 - 2 Stepped screws (RS; tighten; 6.4X2.5) [5]



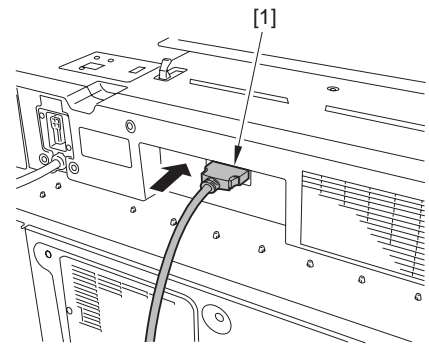
F-2-326

- 25) Attach the reader rear right cover [1]
 - 2 screws (TP; M4X6) [2]



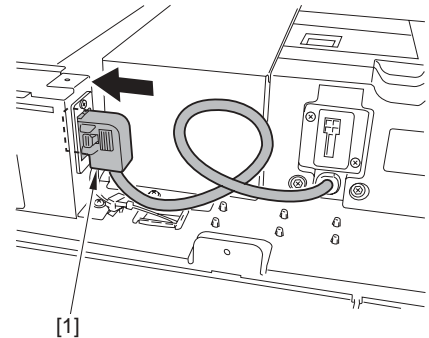
F-2-327

- 26) Connect the one side of the reader communication cable [1] with the I/F connector.



F-2-328

- 27) Connect the reader power supply cable [1].

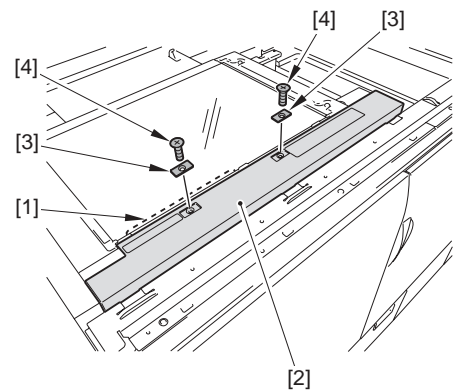


F-2-329

MEMO:

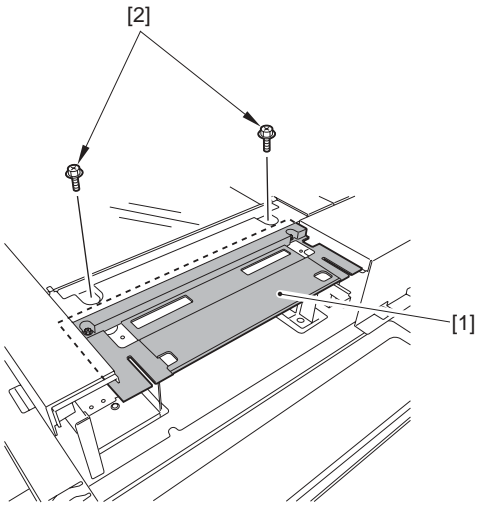
Make sure to place the reader power supply cable as shown in the diagram. (Because it may cause the difficulty when attaching the upper rear face cover 3 as the following order.)

- 28) While inserting the film [1] into the copy board glass, attach the reader front cover [2].
 - 2 magnetic catches [3]
 - 2 Flat head screw (M4X8) [4]



F-2-330

- 29) Attach the reader upper right cover [1].
 - 2 screws (RS tighten; M4X8) [2]



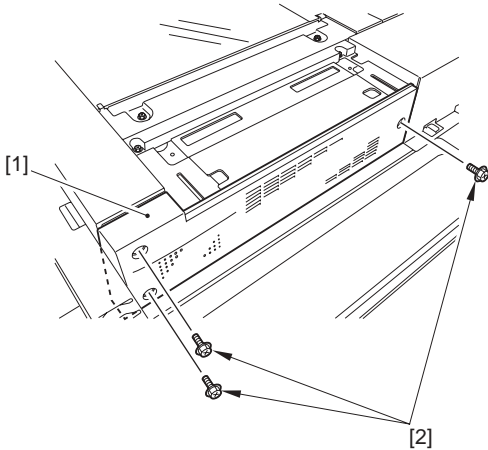
F-2-331

30) Attach the reader right cover [1].



In the case of installing the DADF-R1 simultaneously, be sure to attach the cover duct packaged with the DADF-R1 to the reader right cover in advance.

- 3 screws (RS tighten; M4X8) [2]

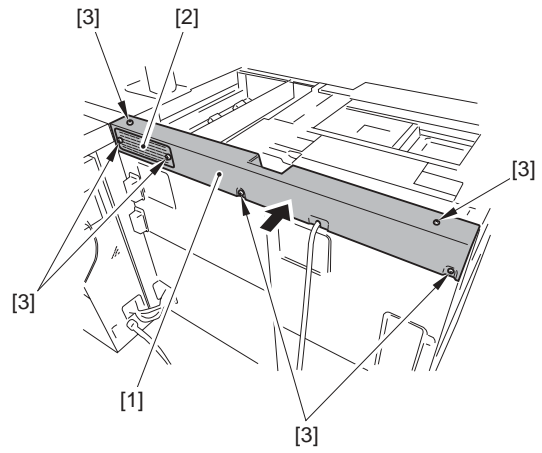


F-2-332

31) Attach the sub station upper rear cover [1] and filter [2], which are removed in the step 8.
- 6 screws [3]



When tighten the 2 upper screws, tighten the screws while pushing the upper rear cover in the direction of the arrow.

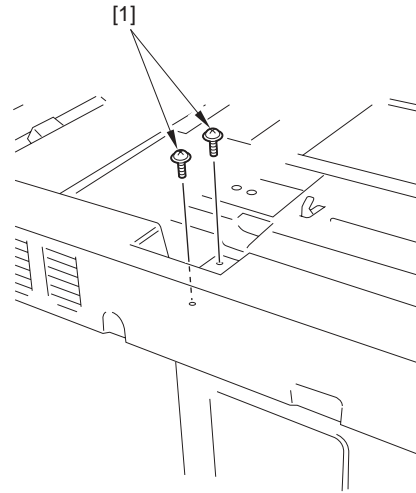


F-2-333

32) Put the upper rear face cover 3 detached in step 8 into the hole found at the sub station upper rear cover.

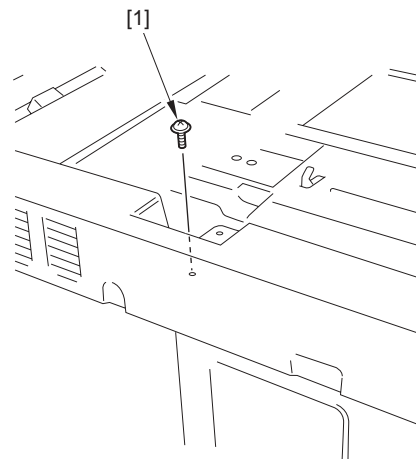
33) Fix the upper rear face cover 3.

<With ADF>
- 2 screws [1]



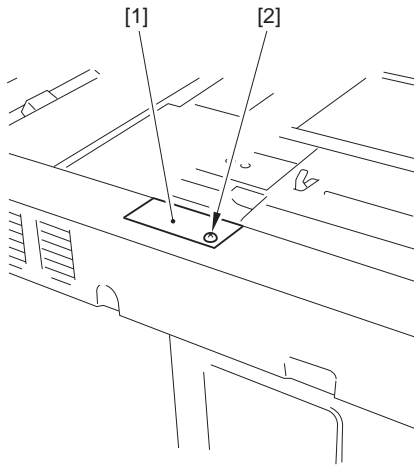
F-2-334

<With Platen Cover >
- 1 screw [1]



F-2-335

34) Only with the copy board cover, attach the upper rear face cover 1 [1].
- 1 screw [2]

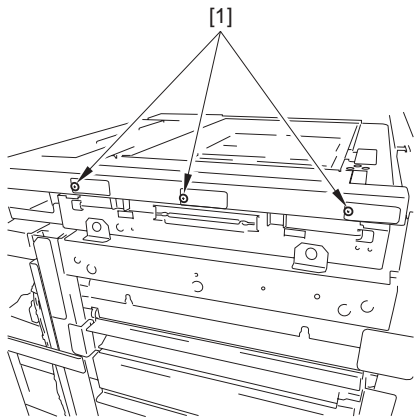


F-2-336

35) Remove the 3 mirror retaining screws [1].



Make sure to store the 3 mirror fixing screws [1] surely because they are required when carrying.



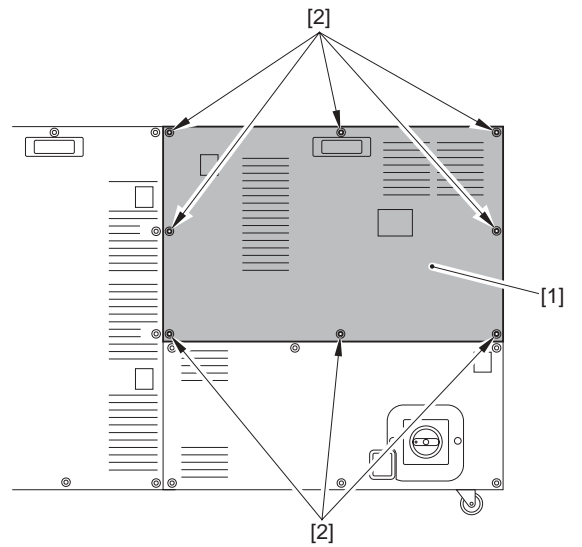
F-2-337

36) Attach the sub station left upper cover.

MEMO:

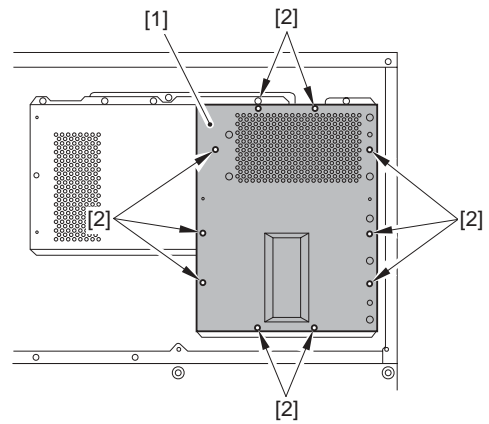
When attaching the Platen cover, attach the Platen cover upper right cover to improve the operation efficiency.
(See the installation procedure for the Platen cover.)

- 37) Attach the sub station upper right cover.
- 38) Attach the sub station upper front cover.
- 39) Close the sub station front right cover and sub station front left cover.
- 40) Detach the power unit station rear cover 1 [1].
- 8 screws [2]



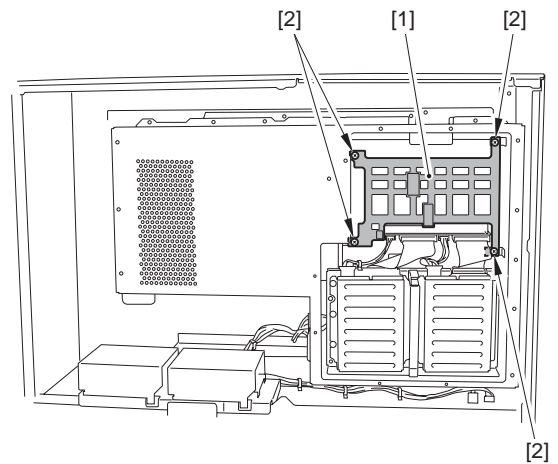
F-2-338

41) Detach the main controller cover 2 [1].
- 10 screws [2]



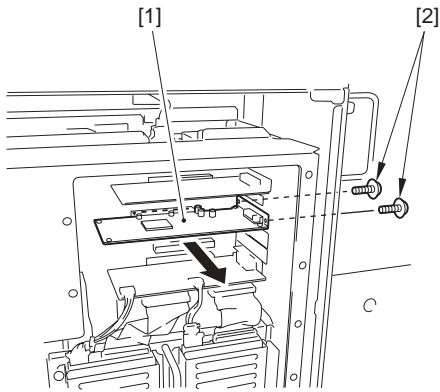
F-2-339

42) Detach the controller PCB guide [1].
- 4 screws [2]



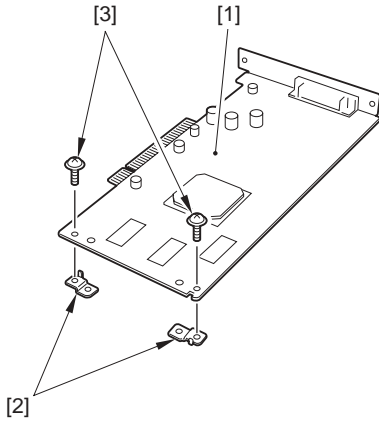
F-2-340

43) Detach the S-B board [1].
- 2 screws [2]



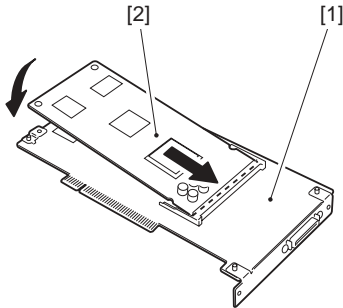
F-2-341

- 44) Attach the 2 S-B board fixing plates [2] to the S-B board [1].
- 2 screw (TP; M3X6) [3]



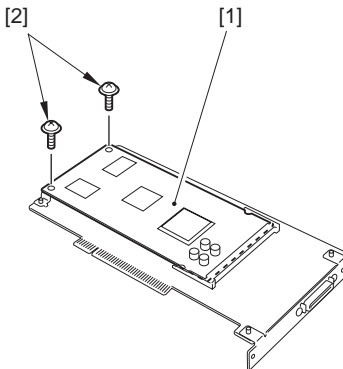
F-2-342

- 45) Insert the ZJ-A board [2] into the slot found at the back side of S-B board [1], and then tilt to the direction of the arrow.



F-2-343

- 46) Fix the ZJ-A board [1].
- 2 screws (TP; M3X6) [2]

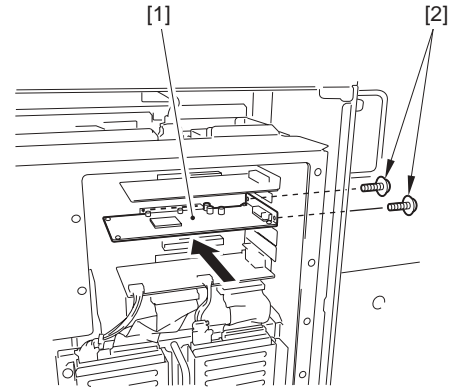


F-2-344

- 47) Insert the S-B board [1] into the original position and then, fix it.
- 2 screws [2] (Attach the screw removed in the step 42).



Make sure that the S-B board is inserted toward the rear side properly.

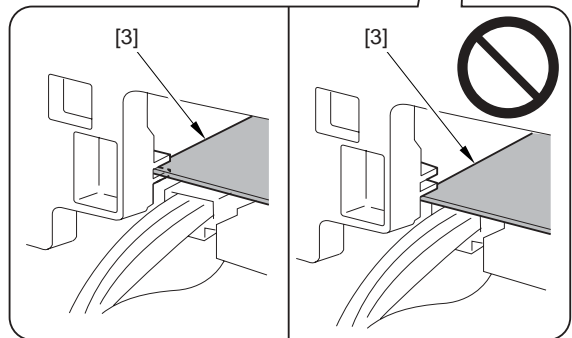
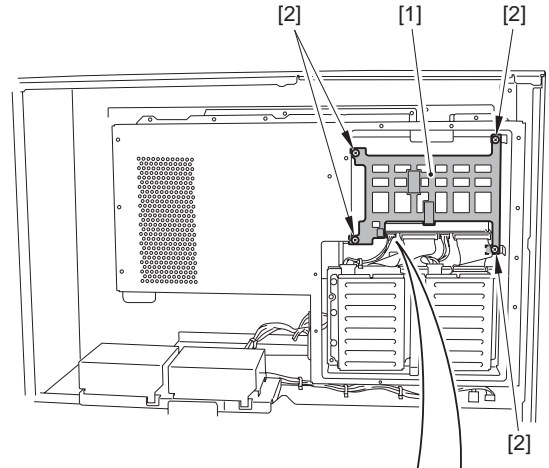


F-2-345

- 48) Attach the controller PCB guide [1].
- 4 screws [2]

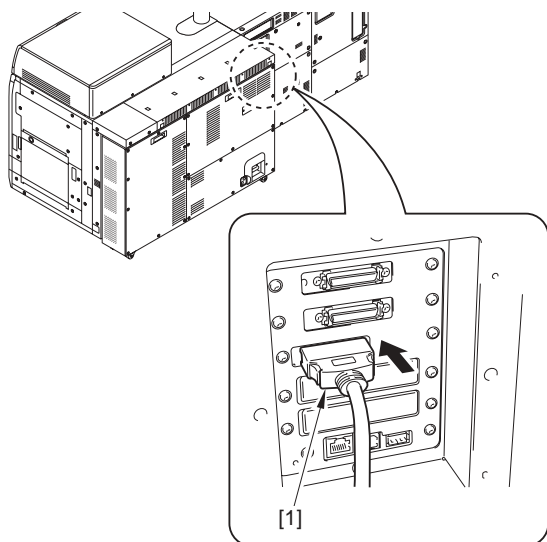


Be sure to check that the LAN-bar-B PCB [3] has surely been secured after securing the controller PCB guide [1] with the screw.



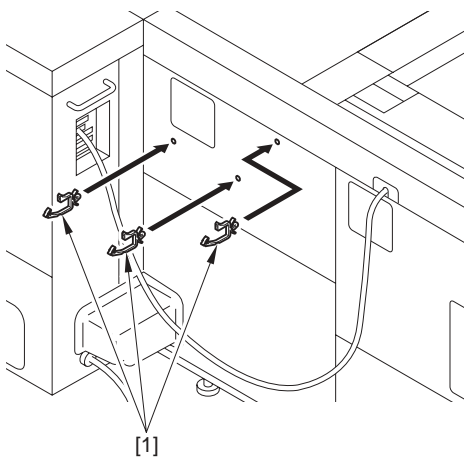
F-2-346

- 49) Attach the main controller cover 2.
50) Attach the power unit station rear cover 1.
51) Connect one side of the reader communication cable [1] into the reader I/F connector found at the right side of the power unit station.



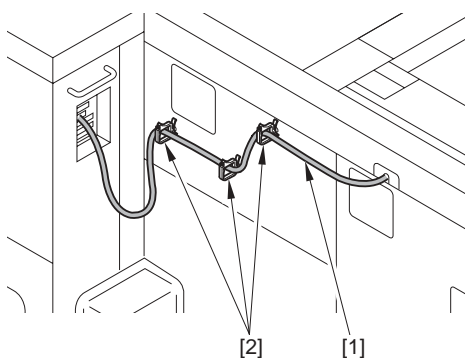
F-2-347

52) Attach the 3 wire saddles [1].



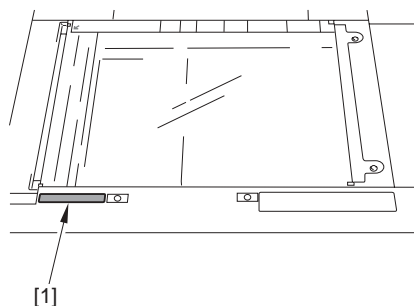
F-2-348

53) Secure the cable [1] with the 3 wire saddles [2].



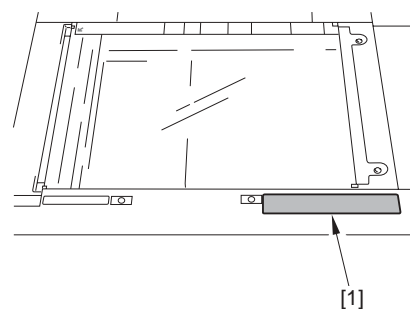
F-2-349

54) Affix the lamp caution label [1] in the appropriate language.



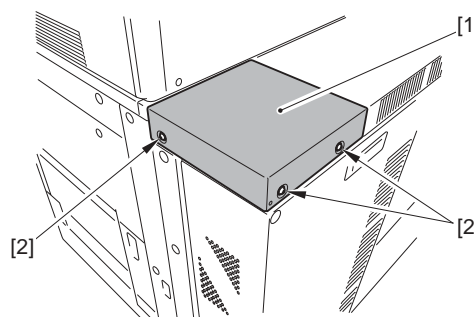
F-2-350

55) Affix the no copy label [1] in the appropriate language.



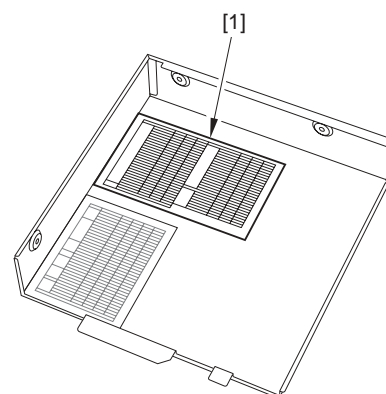
F-2-351

56) Remove the Main-Station Rear Upper Cover 2 left cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-2-352

57) Attach the service label [1] to the Main-Station Rear Upper Cover 2.



F-2-353

2. Settings check

- 1) Insert the power plug into the outlet and turn on the main power of the machine.
After turning on the power of the machine, perform the shutdown sequence to turn off the power.

MEMO:

At power on just after installing the reader, the screen to prompt shutdown is displayed. Reboot is required to change the setting from printer model into copy model. Copy model is enabled after rebooting. (The reader becomes available.)

- 2) Turn on the main power switch of the machine.
After turning on the power of the machine, check the following setting for usage of the ZJ-A board.
- 3) Enter service mode.
Check to find COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > GS-CHECK.

3. Operation Check

- 1) Set a paper on the copyboard glass.
- 2) After making the following selections: COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > GS-CHECK, press the OK key. Connection/operation check for the ZJ-A board is executed.
- 3) After completing the check, the judgment results (OK!/NG!) is displayed.

- In the case of "OK!": Normal
 - In the case of "NG!": Detach the ZJ-A board from the S-B board, attach it again and execute the following again; COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > GS-CHECK. In the case that "NG!" is displayed, replace the ZJ-A board.
- 4) Escape service mode.
 - 5) Perform shutdown sequence to turn off the power.
 - 6) Turn on the main power of the machine.

2.4.3 Setting After the Installation(imagePRESS C7000 Series)

Color Image Reader-H1

After completing the installation of the machine, check on settings of the following.

- 1) Service mode;
- 2) Select COPIER > OPTION > BODY > W/SCNR
- 3) Enter '1'.
Default: 0
- 4) Escape service mode.



By entering the value '1', the machine becomes the copier model.

2.5 Checking the Connection to the Network

2.5.1 Overview

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Perform the following procedures only when connecting the machine to the network.

When the network environment of the user is TCP/IP, use the Ping function to check to be sure that the network configuration is performed correctly. When the network environment of the user is IPX/SPX or Apple Talk, it is not necessary to check the above.

2.5.2 Checking the Network Connection

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



Perform the following procedures only when connecting the machine to the network.

- 1) Turn off the main power supply switch by following the shut-down sequence.
- 2) Connect the network cable to the machine and turn on the main power supply switch.
- 3) Report the completion of the installation to the user's system administrator and ask the machine's network configuration.



The following item 'Additional Function' must be 'ON' to perform the network configuration.
Additional Function > System Settings > Network Setting > Change Settings/Display Connection Confirm

- 4) Turn off the main power supply switch by following the shut-down sequence.
- 5) Turn on the main power supply switch.

2.5.3 Using the PING Command

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

- 1) Make the following selections: Additional Functions > System Settings > Network Setting > TCP/IP Setting > PING Command.
- 2) Using the keypad on the control panel, type in the correct IP address, and press the Execute key.
If successful, the message 'Response from host' will appear; otherwise, the message will read 'No response from host.'

2.5.4 Using the PING Command

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Make the following selections: Additional Functions > System Settings >

- Network Settings > TCP/IP Settings > IPv4 Settings > PING Command.
- 2) Using the keypad on the control panel, type in the correct IP address, and press the Execute key.
If successful, the message 'Response from host' will appear; otherwise, the message will read 'No response from host.'

2.5.5 Making a Check Using the Remote Host Address

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

You can execute the PING command using the appropriate remote host address to see if a connection to the network can be made.

Remote host address: The IP address of a PC terminal connected to the TCP/IP network to which the machine is also connected.

- 1) Inform the system administrator that you are going to check the network connection using the PING command.
- 2) Check with the system administrator to find out the remote host address.
- 3) Add the appropriate remote host address to the PING command:
 - If the message is 'Response from host,' the connection to the network is normal.
 - If the message is 'No response from host,' the machine is not correctly connected to the network. Start the following troubleshooting work:

2.6 Troubleshooting the Network

2.6.1 Overview

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The following information applies only when the machine is connected to a network.

If attempts to connect to the network fail, suspect the following:

- The machine's TCP/IP settings are wrong.
- The user's network is faulty.

To find out which, go through the following:

2.6.2 Checking the Connection of the Network Cable

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Check to be sure that the network cable is correctly connected to the Ethernet port.
 - If the connection is correct, make the next check.
 - If the connection is wrong, correct it and run the check once again using the remote host address.

2.6.3 Making a Check Using a Loopback Address

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

A loopback address comes back before reaching the network PCB. By executing the PING command using the address, you can find out whether the machine's TCP/IP settings are correct.

- 1) Add the appropriate loopback address (127.0.0.1) to the PING command.
 - If the message is "No response from host," check the machine's TCP/IP settings, and execute the PING command once again.
 - If the message is 'Response from host,' make the next check.

2.6.4 Making a Check Using a Local Host Address

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The "local host address" is the IP address of the machine, and the address comes back after reaching the network PCB. By executing the PING command using the address, you can find out whether the network PCB is free of a fault.

- 1) Add the IP address of the machine to the PING command.
If the message is "No response from host", go through the following and execute the PING command once again.
 - The machine's IP address may be wrong. Check the machine's IP address settings, and check with the system administrator to see if the assigned IP address is a valid one.
 - The connection of the network PCB may be wrong. Check the connection of the network PCB once again.
 - The network PCB may be faulty. Try replacing it.
 If the message is "Response from host", suspect a problem in the user's network environment. Report to the system administrator for appropriate action.

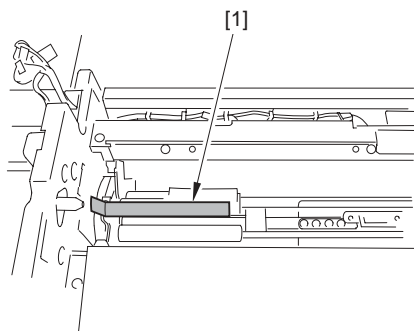
2.7 Relocating the Machine

2.7.1 Operation for Moving the Machine

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

When moving host machine to another place after installation, perform the following operations.

- 1) Take all papers out from each cassette.
- 2) Push the power switch of the control panel for 3 sec or more, and operate the touch panel according to the screen display of the shutdown sequence (The main power switch automatically turns off).
- 3) Disconnect the 2 power plugs (1 on the back of the host machine, 1 on the left side of the host machine) of the host machine.
- 4) Secure the scanner with the scanner fixing screw stored at installation.
- 5) Remove the developing assembly for each color and the toner container for each color and move them in other packagings.
- 6) After removing the developing assembly for each color, cover the toner supply mouth [1] of the developing rotary with vinyl tape.



F-2-354

- 7) Be sure to secure the developing assembly fixed arm with screw.
- 8) Affix tape to the release lever of the fixing feeder assembly to prevent it from being fallen out due to vibration.
- 9) Affix each cover and each cassette with tape.
- 10) Place an A3 copy paper on the copyboard glass, and affix tape to the ADF.
- 11) When walking the stairs to carry in / out the equipment at the installation place, take into account the followings.
 - Be sure to detach the caster cover and check to see that the 2 adjusters on the bottom of the host machine are completely tightened.



Incomplete tightening of the adjuster may cause its breakage when the machine climbs over the step.

- If accessory such as side paper deck and finisher has been installed, carry in / out the host machine after removing them.

- 12) For re-installation after moving, be sure to secure the machine in place with the 2 adjusters and fix the caster cover with the 2 screws before performing the operation.

2.8 Installing the Card Reader

2.8.1 Points to Note About Installation

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

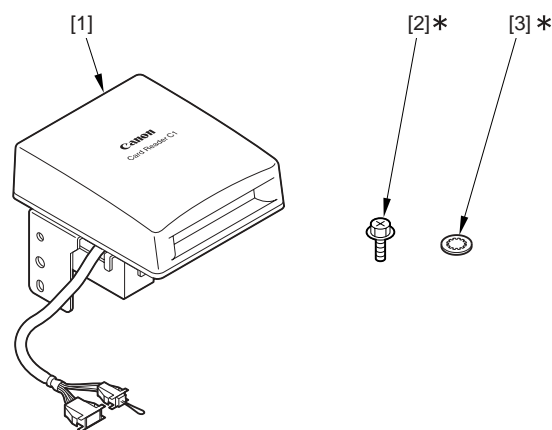


Installation of the card reader calls for a Card Reader Attachment-E1.

2.8.2 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

<Card Reader-C1>

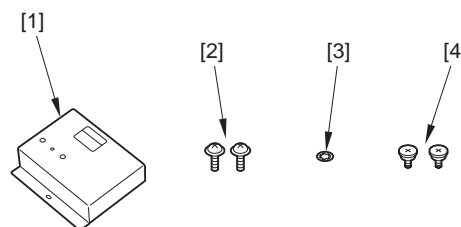


F-2-355

[1]	Card reader	1 pc.
[2]*	Screw (RS tightening; M4X10)	1 pc.
[3]*	Toothed washer	1 pc.

* Not used in this host machine.

<Card Reader Attachment-E1>



F-2-356

[1]	card reader mounting base	1 pc.
[2]	Screw (TP; M4X8)	2 pc.
[3]	Toothed washer	1 pc.
[4]	Stepped screw	2 pc.

2.8.3 Pre-Settings

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) (COPIER>FUNCTION>INSTALL>CARD), enter a card number (1 through 2001).
 - Enter the lowest number of those to be used by the user.
 - As many as 1000 numbers (i.e., cards) may be used starting with the number entered here.

2.8.4 Turning Off the Machine

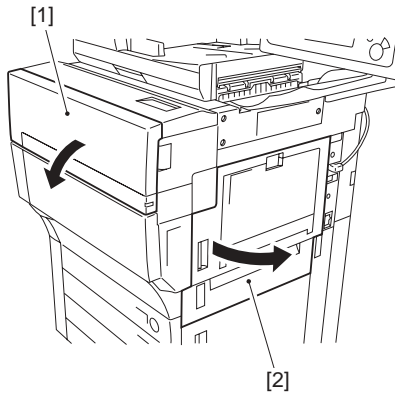
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

See the host machine installation [Points to note at the main power OFF].

2.8.5 Installation Procedure

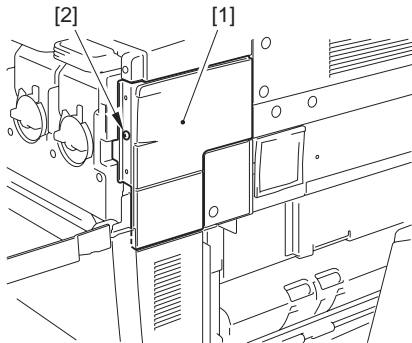
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the toner replacement cover [1].
- 2) Open the upper right cover [2].



F-2-357

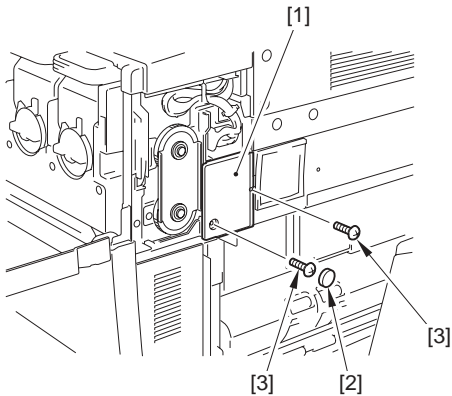
- 3) Detach the hopper cover (Right) [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-2-358

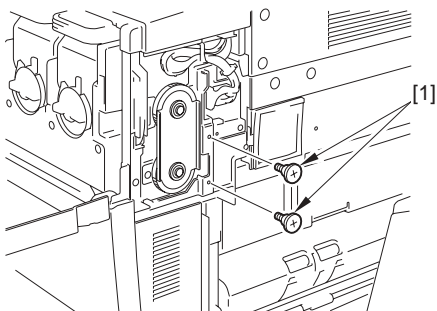
- 4) Remove the right door small cover [1].
- 1 cover rubber piece [2]
- 2 screws [3]

⚠
The removed right door small cover [1] will no longer be used.



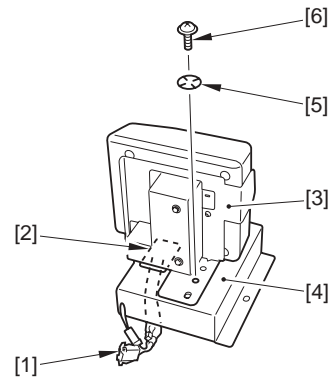
F-2-359

- 5) Fit the 2 stepped screws [1] of the card reader mounting kit to the host machine.



F-2-360

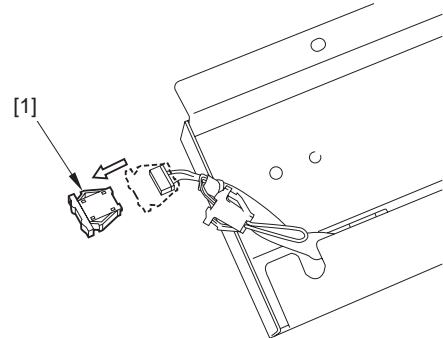
- 6) Put the cable [1] through the hole [2] of the card reader mounting base; then, fix it to the card reader [3] and the card reader mounting base [4].
- 1 toothed washer [5]
- 1 screw (TP; M4x8) [6]



F-2-361

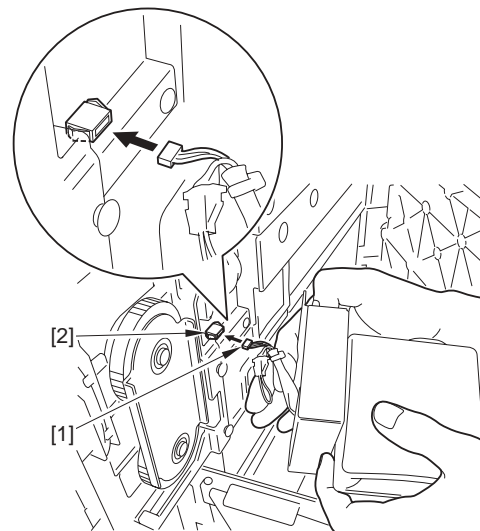
- 7) Disconnect the relay connector [1].

⚠
The removed relay connector [1] will no longer be used.



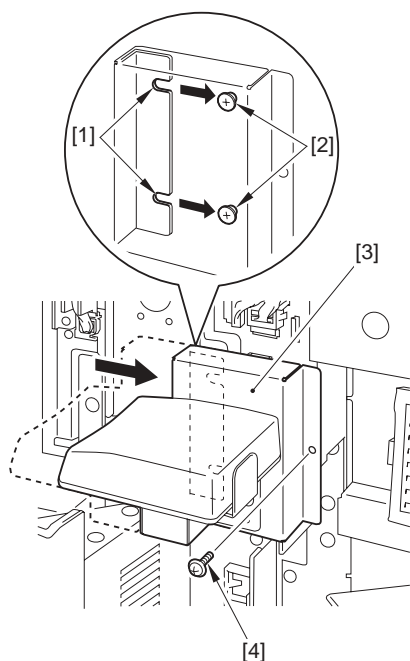
F-2-362

- 8) Connect the connector [1] of the card reader and the connector [2] of the host machine.



F-2-363

- 9) Fit the cut-off [1] of the card reader on the stepped screws [2] that have been fitted in place in step 5).
10) Fit the card reader [3] in the direction of the arrow, and fix it in place.
- 1 screw (TP; M4x8) [4]



F-2-364

- 11) Attach the hopper cover (Right) removed in step 3).
- 12) Close the upper right cover.
- 13) Close the toner replacement cover.
- 14) Connect the host machine's 2 power plugs (back, left) to 2 separate power supply systems; then, turn on the main power switch.
- 15) Check to see that there is a message asking for a control card.
- 16) Connect a control card, and see that the host machine has become ready for operation.

2.8.6 Installation Procedure in the imageWARE Accounting Manager (henceforth: iWAM) environment

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

- 1) Check to see that 'ID00000001 to ID00001000' have been created in '[Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [Dep ID Mangement] > [Register Dept.ID/Password] / [Page Totals]' (In the case of entering '1' as the first number in 'Service Mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD')
- 2) Press [Reset] to exit from [Additional Functions].
- 3) Select [Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [Network Settings] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IP Address Settings], and then make the setting of [IP Address], [Gateway Address], [Subnet Mask] according to the user environment.
- 4) Press [Reset] to exit from [Additional Functions].
- 5)

! [Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [System Manager Settings] is selected and [System Manager ID] and [System Password] are registered, 'Registration of card to the device' is impossible to execute in the setting of iWAM.

[Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [System Manager Settings], and then input any number into [System Manager ID] and [System Password].

- 6) Press [Reset] to exit from [Additional Functions].
- 7) Go through the shut-down sequence to turn off the power.

2.8.7 Installation Procedure in the imageWARE Accounting Manager (henceforth: iWAM) Environment

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Check to see that 'ID00000001 to ID00001000' have been created in '[Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [Dept. ID Mangement] > [Register Dept. ID/Password] / [Page Totals]' (In the case of entering '1' as the first number in 'Service Mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD')

- 2) Exit from [Additional Functions] screen.
- 3) Select [Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [Network Settings] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 Settings] > [IP Address Settings], and then make the setting of [IP Address], [Gateway Address], [Subnet Mask] according to the user environment.
- 4) Exit from [Additional Functions] screen.
- 5)

! [Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [System Manager Settings] is selected and [System Manager ID] and [System Password] are registered, 'Registration of card to the device' is impossible to execute in the setting of iWAM.

[Additional Functions] > [System Settings] > [System Manager Settings], and then input any number into [System Manager ID] and [System Password].

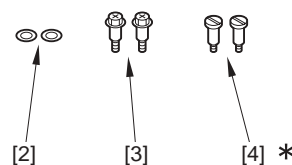
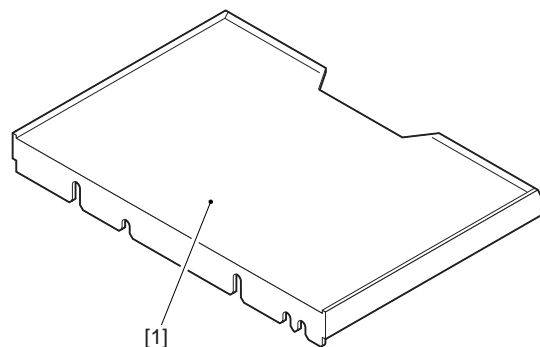
- 6) Exit from [Additional Functions] screen.
- 7) Go through the shut-down sequence to turn off the power.

2.9 Installing the Original Tray

2.9.1 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

<Document Tray-J1>



F-2-365

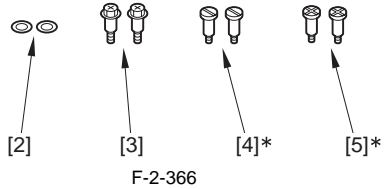
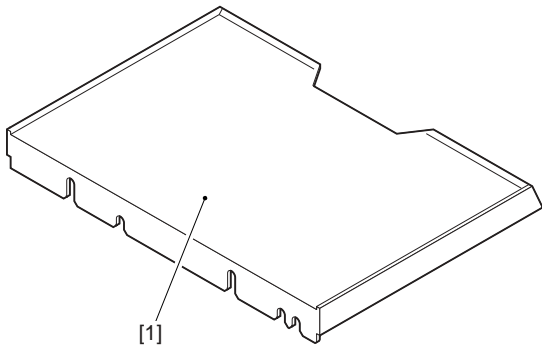
[1]	Document Tray	1 pc.
[2]	Washer	2 pc.
[3]	Stepped screw	2 pc.
[4]*	Stepped screw (M4)	2 pc.

* Not used in this host machine.

2.9.2 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

<Document Tray-J1>

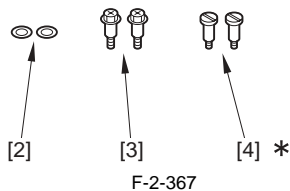
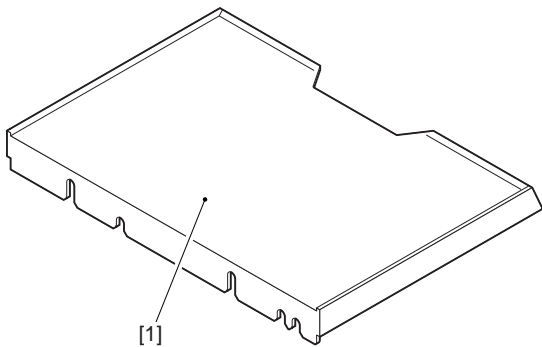


F-2-366

- [1] Document Tray 1 pc.
 - [2] Washer 2 pc.
 - [3] Stepped screw 2 pc.
 - [4]* Stepped screw (M4) 2 pc.
 - [5]* Stepped screw (M4X10.8) 2 pc.
- * Not used in this host machine.

2.9.3 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer)



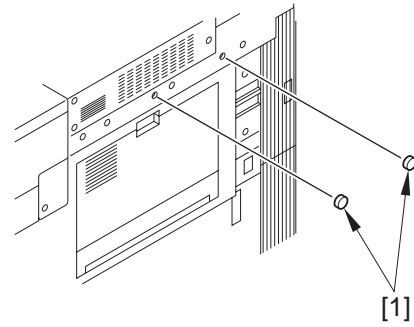
F-2-367

- [1] Document Tray 1 pc.
 - [2] Washer 2 pc.
 - [3] Stepped screw 2 pc.
 - [4]* Stepped screw (M4) 2 pc.
- * Not used in this host machine.

2.9.4 Installing the Document Tray

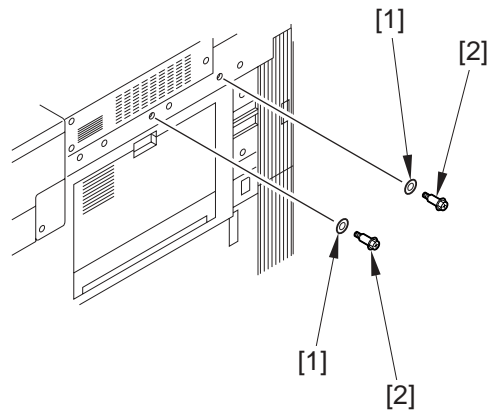
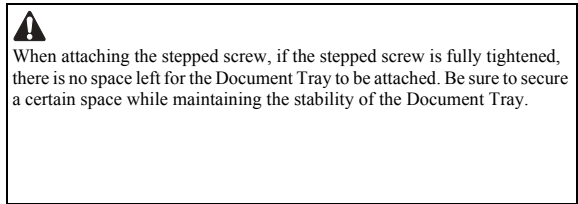
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Remove the 2 rubber caps [1].



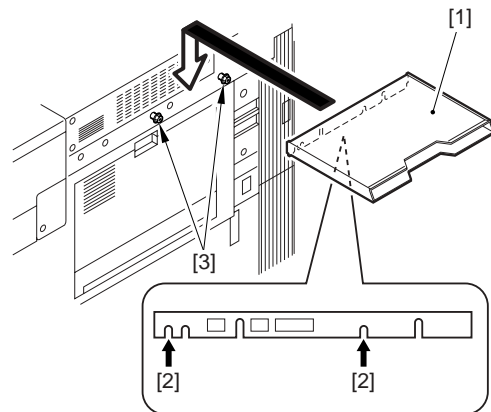
F-2-368

2) Mount the 2 washers [1] and the 2 stepped screws [2] on the upper right cover of the host machine.



F-2-369

3) Fit the notches [2] of the reinforcement plate of the Document Tray [1] into the stepped screws [3].



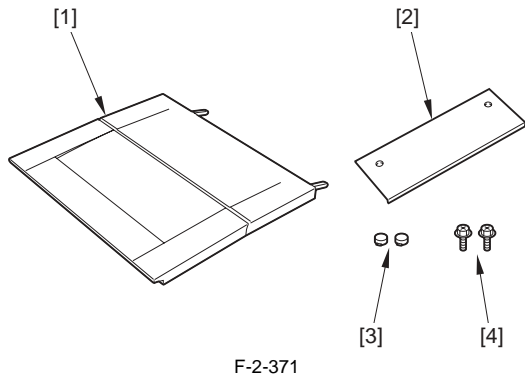
F-2-370

2.10 Installing the Platen Cover

2.10.1 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

<Platen Cover Type K>

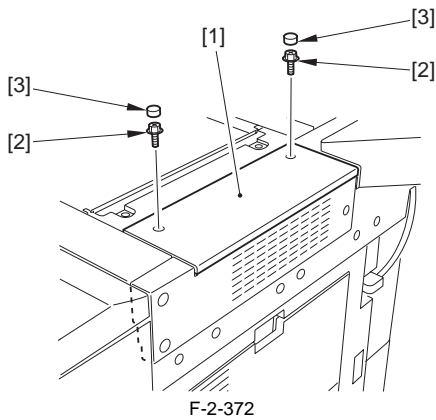


[1]	Platen cover	1 pc.
[2]	Platen cover upper right cover	1 pc.
[3]	Cover rubber piece	2 pc.
[4]	Screw (RS tightening; M4X8)	2 pc.

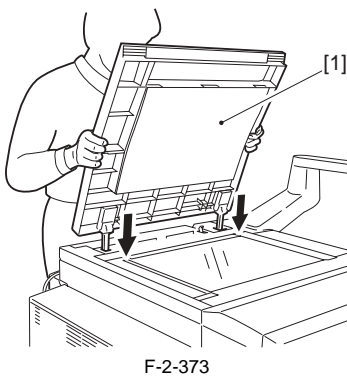
2.10.2 Installation Procedure

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Mount the Platen cover upper right cover [1].
 - 1 screw (RS tightening; M4X8)[2] 2 pc.
 - 2 cover rubber piece [3] 2 pc.



- 2) Attach the Platen cover [1].

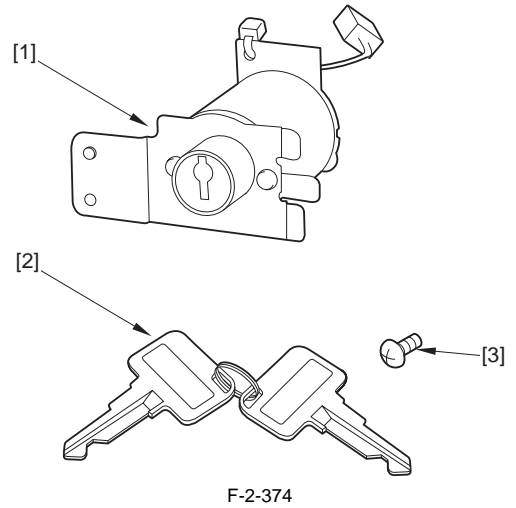


2.11 Installing the Key Switch Unit

2.11.1 Checking the Attachments

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

<Key Switch Unit-A2>



[1]	Key switch unit	1 pc.
[2]	Control key	1 pc.
[3]	Screw (Binding; M4X6)	1 pc.

2.11.2 Turning Off the Machine

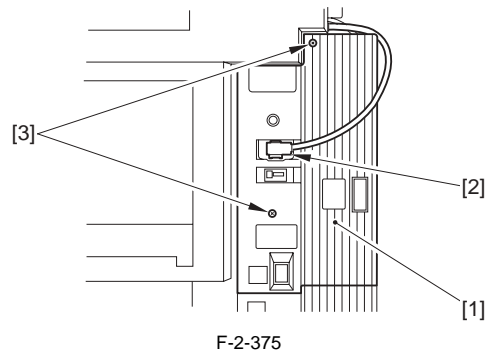
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

See the host machine installation [Points to note at the main power OFF].

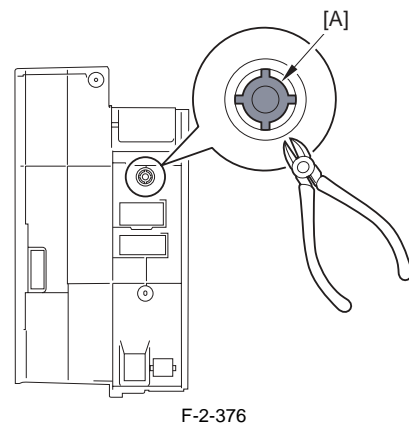
2.11.3 Installation Procedure

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

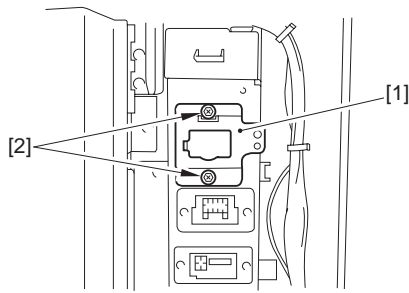
- 1) Detach the upper rear right cover [1].
 - Reader Communication Cable [2]
 - 2 screws [3]



- 2) Cut off the upper rear right cover [A] detached in step 1) with a tool (e.g., nippers)

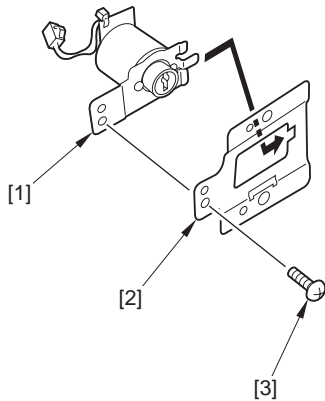


- 3) Remove the plate [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



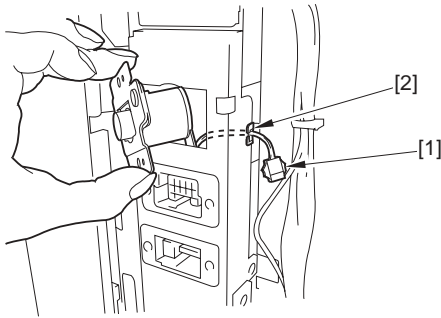
F-2-377

- 4) Fit the key switch unit [1] in the plate [2] in the direction of an arrow.
- 1 screw (binding: M4X6) [3]



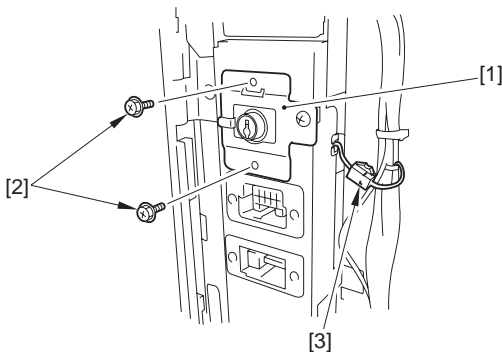
F-2-378

- 5) Put the harness of the key switch unit [1] through the edge saddle [2].



F-2-379

- 6) Fix the key switch unit [1] in place using two screws [2] removed in step 3).
7) Connect the connector of the Key Switch [3].



F-2-380

- 8) Attach the upper rear right cover detached in step 1).
9) Connect the host machine's 2 power plugs (back, left) to 2 separate power supply systems; then, turn on the main power switch.

2.11.4 After Installing the Key Switch Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Select a service mode item (COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > KEY) and enter 1.
- 2) Following the instructions on the shutdown sequence screen, turn off the

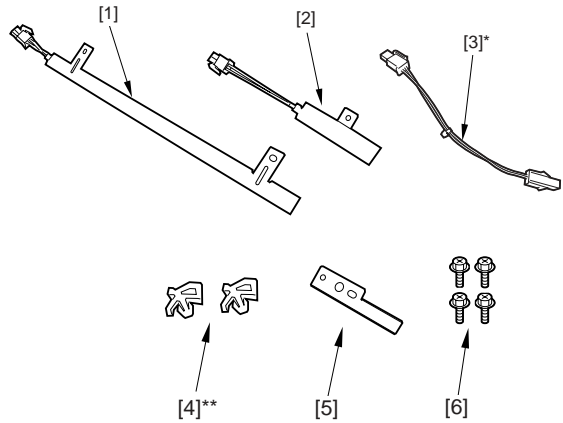
- 3) Turn the power back on.
- 4) Check to see that the message, "Please set the control key" appears on the control panel.
- 5) Insert the control key and check to see that copying operation becomes enabled.

2.12 Installing the Reader Heater

2.12.1 Checking the Parts

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Prepare the following parts because each part of the heater PCB is assigned as service part.



F-2-381
T-2-10

No.	Name	Part No.	Qty.
[1]	Mirror heater	FK2-0229-000	1 pc.
[2]	Lens heater	FK2-0228-000	1 pc.
[3]*	Relay cable	FM2-5072-000	1 pc.
[4]**	Cable clamp	WT2-0507-000	2 pc.
[5]	Heater harness retainer	FC5-2945-000	1 pc.
[6]	RS tightening screw (M4X8)	XB3-6400-805	4 pc.
	* Not used herein. ** Use one with this machine.		

2.12.2 Turning Off the Host Machine

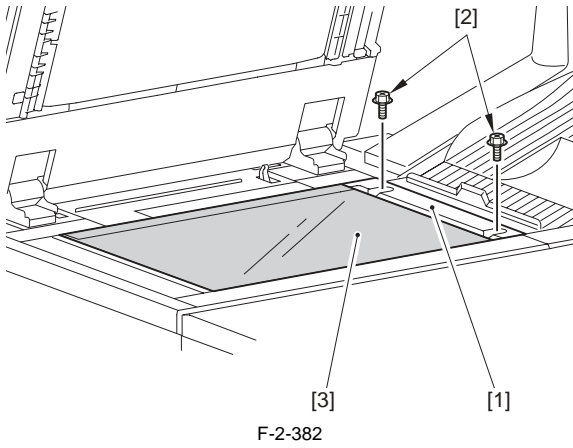
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

See the host machine installation [Points to note at the main power OFF].

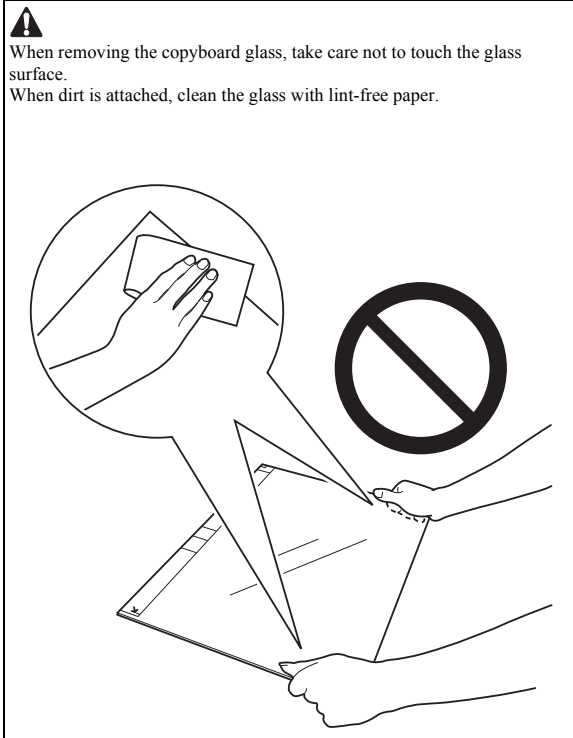
2.12.3 Installation Procedure

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the DADF or the platen cover.
- 2) Remove the glass retainer [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 3) Remove the copyboard glass [3].

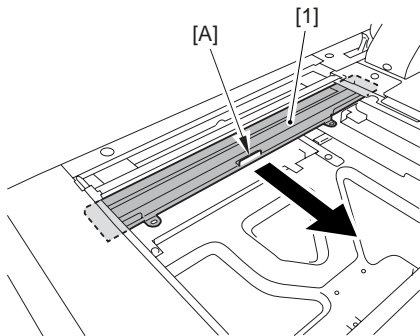


F-2-382



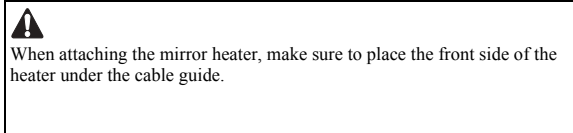
! When removing the copyboard glass, take care not to touch the glass surface.
When dirt is attached, clean the glass with lint-free paper.

4) Hold the bended area [1] on the mirror stay and move the mirror 1 mount [A] in the right direction until it stops.

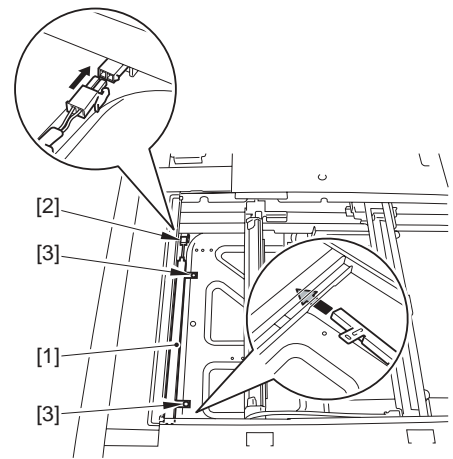


F-2-383

5) After connecting the connector [1] of the mirror heater to the connector [2] at the reader side, fix it with the 2 screws (RS tightening; M4X8) [3].

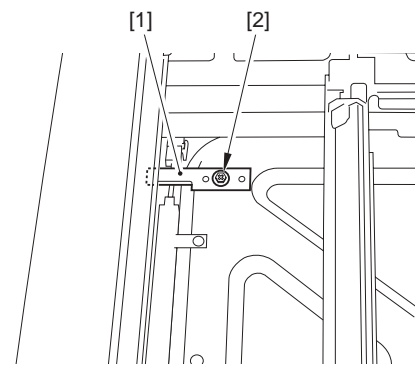


! When attaching the mirror heater, make sure to place the front side of the heater under the cable guide.



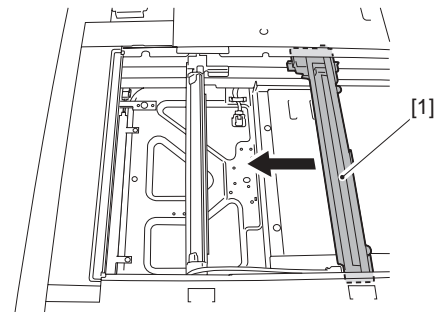
F-2-384

6) Attach the heater harness retainer [1].
- 1 screw (RS tightening; M4X8) [2]



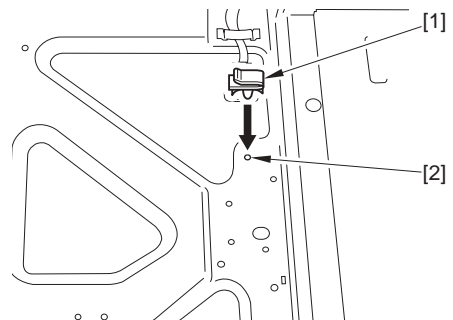
F-2-385

7) Move the mirror 1 base [1] in the left direction until it stops.



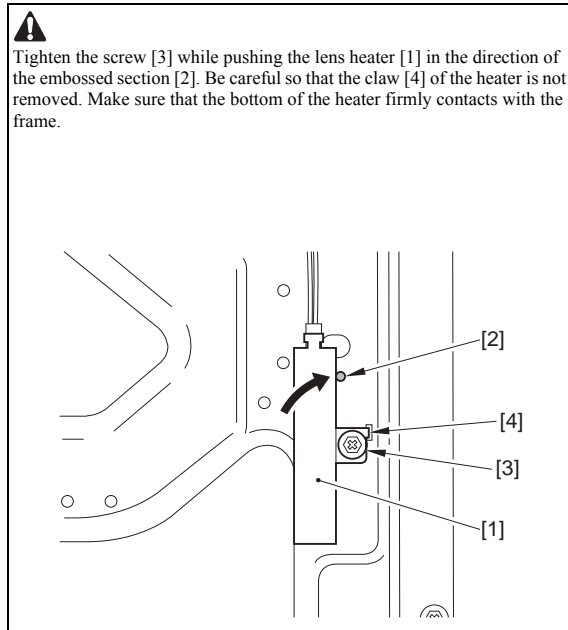
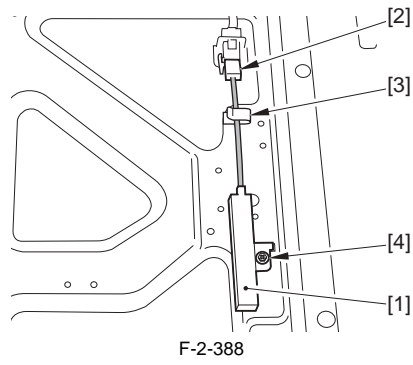
F-2-386

8) Insert the cable clamp [1] into the hole [2] of the frame.

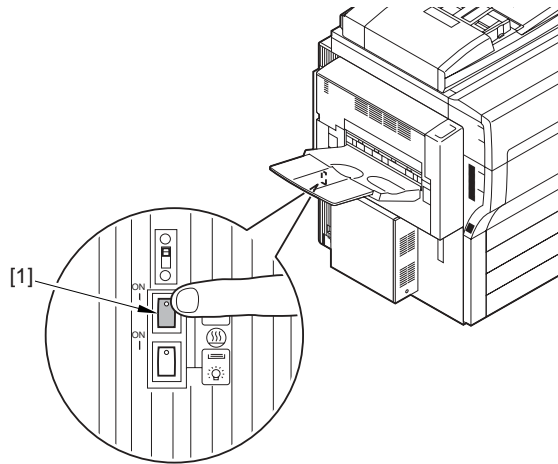


F-2-387

9) Attach the lens heater [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 1 cable clamp [3]
- 1 screw (RS tightening; M4X8) [4]



- 10) Attach the platen glass and glass retainer in the procedure opposite to the removal procedure.
- 11) Make sure that the environmental switch [1] located on the rear left side of the main unit is turned ON.



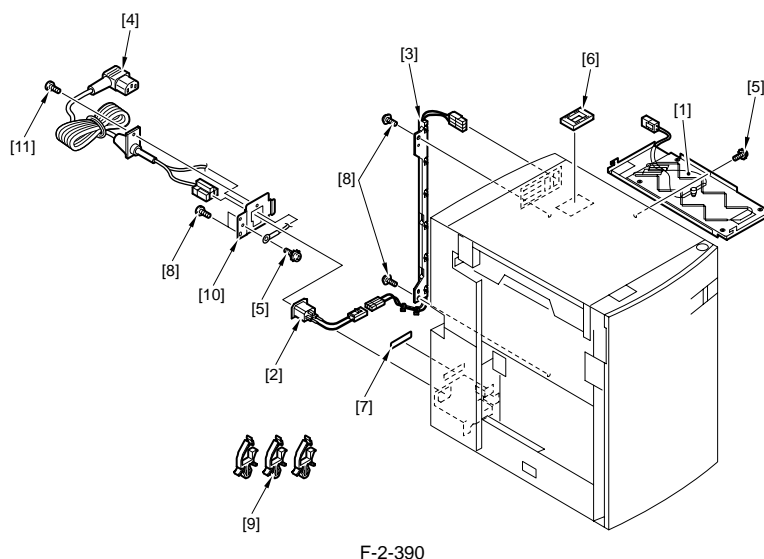
- 12) Connect the host machine's 2 power plugs (back, left) to 2 separate power supply systems; then, turn on the main power switch.

2.13 Installing the Deck Heater

2.13.1 Checking the Contents (Heater PCB-F1)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Every components of the cassette heater unit (heater PCB-F1) are supplied as service parts, so have the following parts on hand.



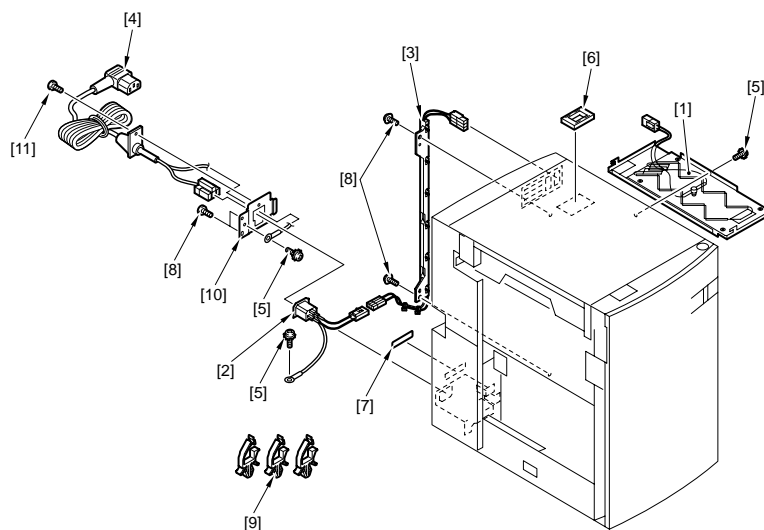
F-2-390

[1]	Heater unit	1pc.
[2]	AC input connector	1pc.
[3]	Relay harness unit	1pc.
[4]	AC cable	1pc.
[5]	Screw with toothed washer	2pcs.
[6]	Cable protection bushing	1pc.
[7]	Power supply label	2pcs.
[8]	Binding screw (M4X4)	4pcs.
[9]	Wire saddle (Not used for this product)	3pcs.
[10]	Cord mount	1pc.
[11]	Screw with flat spring	1pc.

2.13.2 Checking the Parts to Install

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Every components of the cassette heater unit (heater PCB-F1) are supplied as service parts, so have the following parts on hand.



F-2-391

No.	Part name	Part number	QTY	No.	Part name	Part number	QTY
[1]	Heater unit	FG6-9651-000	1pc.	[7]	Power supply label	FS6-8725-000	1pc.
[2]	AC input connector	FG6-1117-000	1pc.	[8]	Binding screw (M4X4)	XB1-2400-409	4pcs.
[3]	Relay harness unit	FG6-2957-000	1pc.	[9]	Wire saddle (Not used for this product)	WT2-5730-000	3pcs.
[4]	AC cable	FK2-4379-000	1pc.	[10]	Cord mount	FC7-5473-000	1pc.
[5]	screw (w/ washer)	XB2-7400-607	3pcs.	[11]	Screw with flat spring	XB2-7401-007	1pc.
[6]	Cable protection bushing	WT2-5098-000	1pc.				

2.13.3 Installing Procedure

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Installing to the paper deck

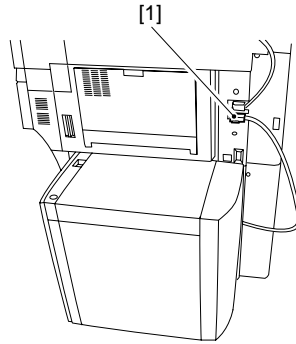


When installing the heater to the paper deck, take the following precautions.

- a. The AC power plug of the host machine must have been removed from the outlet.
- b. Install the heater after installing the host machine and paper deck.
- c. Use correct screws (length and diameters) at correct positions.

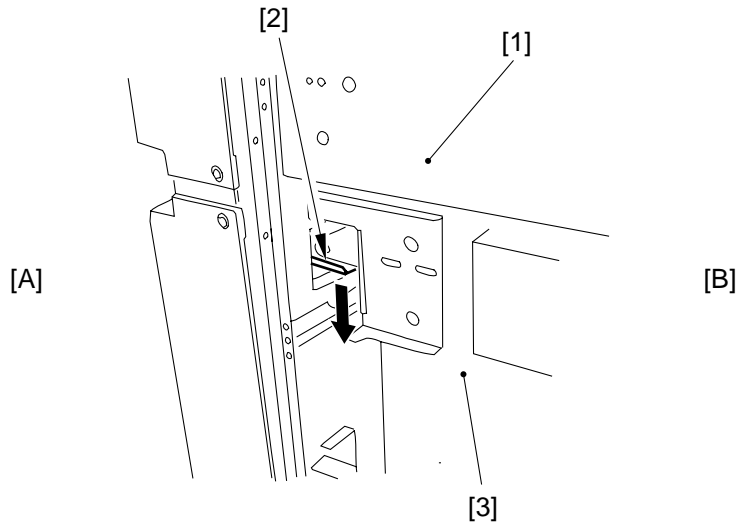
<Procedure>

1) Disconnect the connector [1] of the paper deck from the host machine



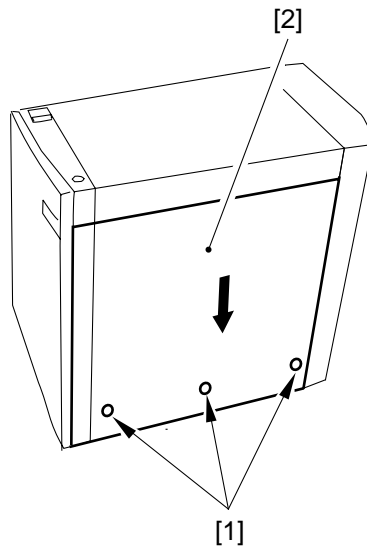
F-2-392

2) Release the paper deck [1] from the host machine, and then press down the latch plate [2] of the paper deck housing with your finger to open the housing [3].
(A: Rear, B: Front)



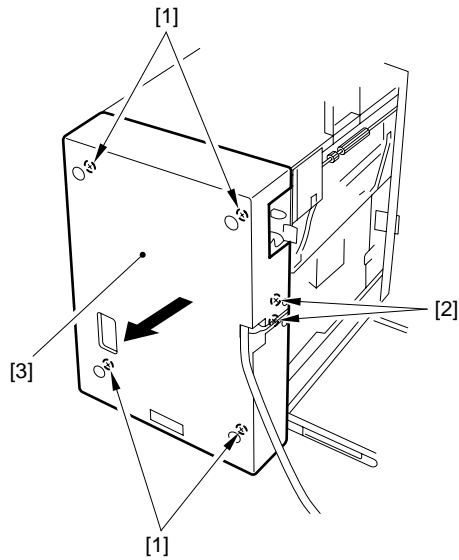
F-2-393

3) Remove three screws [1], and then detach the right cover [2] of the paper deck to the direction of the arrow shown.



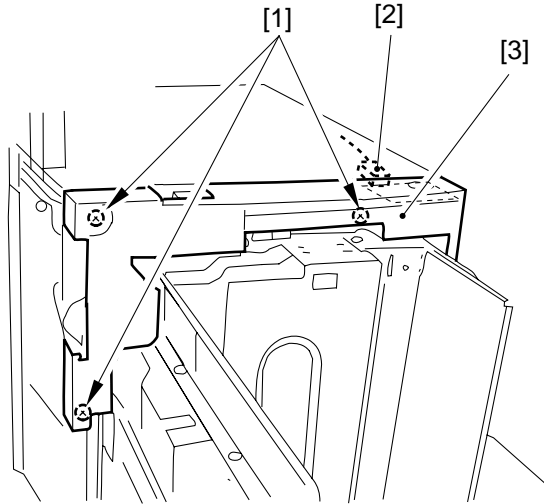
F-2-394

4) Remove four screws [1] and two other screws [2], and then detach the rear cover [3] of the paper deck.



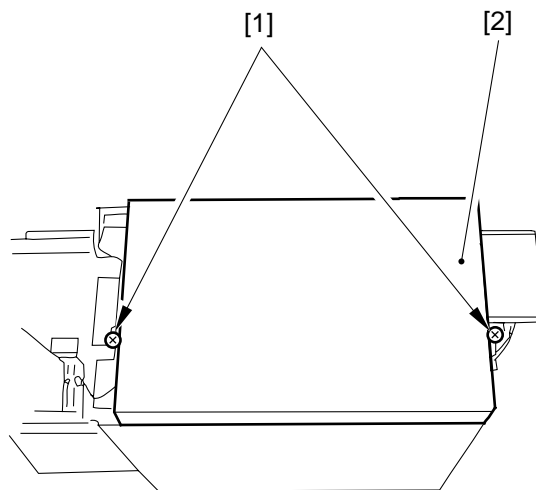
F-2-395

5) Remove three screws [1] and a connector [2], and then detach the front-upper cover [3].



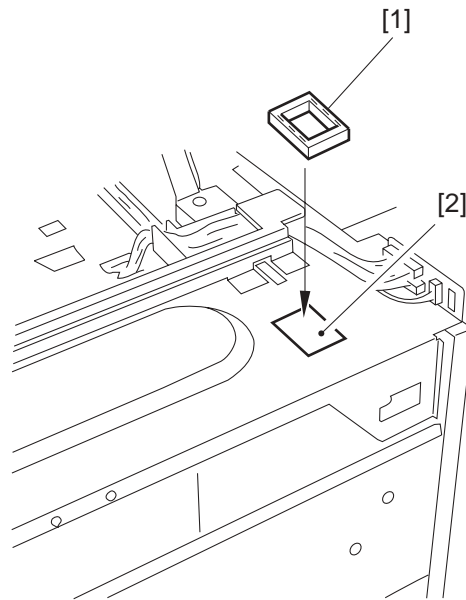
F-2-396

6) Remove two screws [1], and then detach the top cover [2].



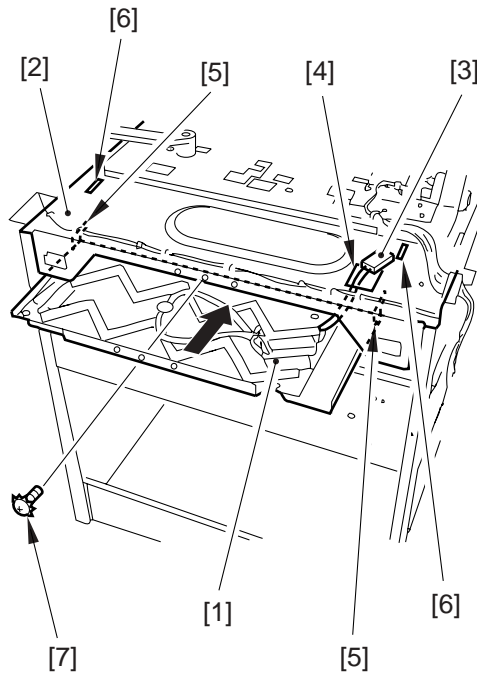
F-2-397

7) Attach the supplied cable protection bushing [1] into the hole [2] on the top panel of the paper deck.



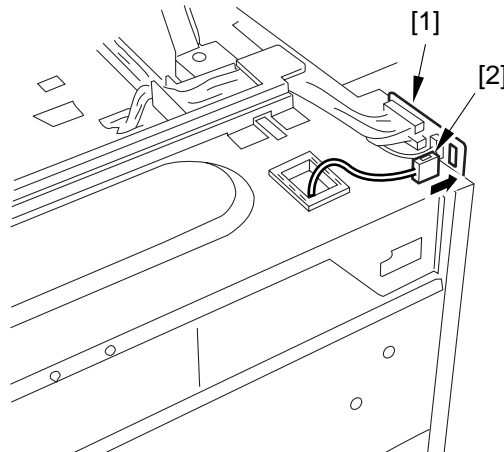
F-2-398

- 8) Place the heater unit [1] under the top panel [2] of the paper deck, and then take the connector [3] out from the hole [4] on the top plate.
- 9) Insert two hooks [5] of the heater unit [1] into the holes [6] on the top plate of the paper deck, and then secure the heater unit to the main body of the paper deck using a screw with toothed washer [7].



F-2-399

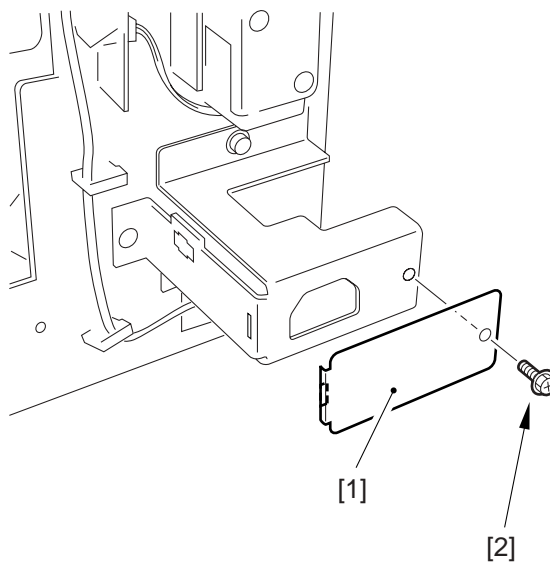
- 10) Attach the heater connector [2] to the panel mount [1].



F-2-400

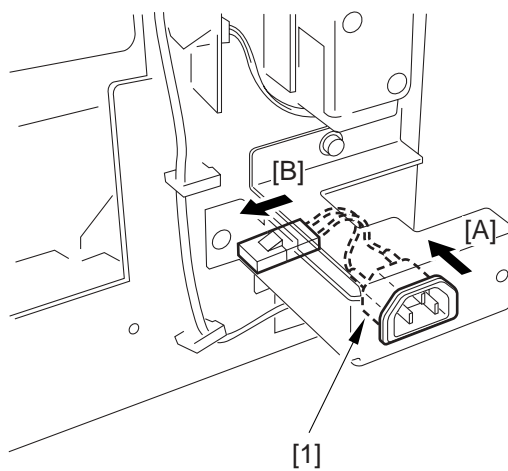
2. Connecting to the host machine.

- 1) Remove screw [2] to remove the blind plate [1] from the power core mount of the paper deck.



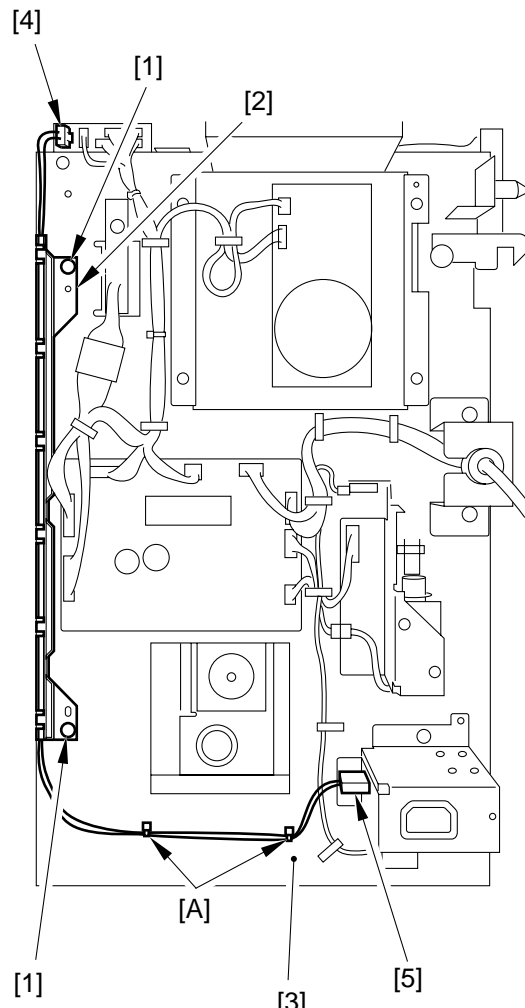
F-2-401

- 2) Install the supplied AC input connector [1] in two steps ([A] > [B]).



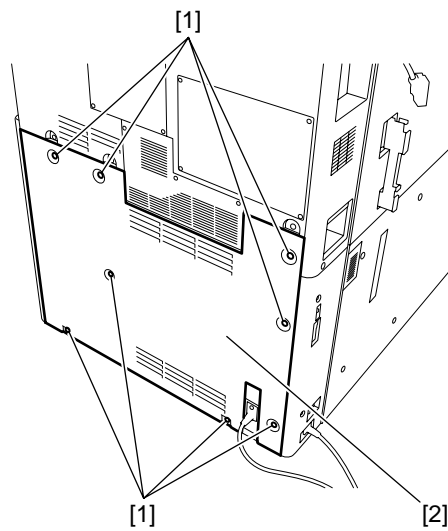
F-2-402

- 3) Using two binding screws (M4X4) [1], install the relay harness unit [2] to the rear side panel [3] of the paper deck.
- 4) Insert the bind locks of the cable ties in the holes (at [A] shown below) in the rear side panel to secure the relay harness.
- 5) Connect the connector at both ends of the relay harness unit to the heater connector [4] and AC power connector [5] respectively.



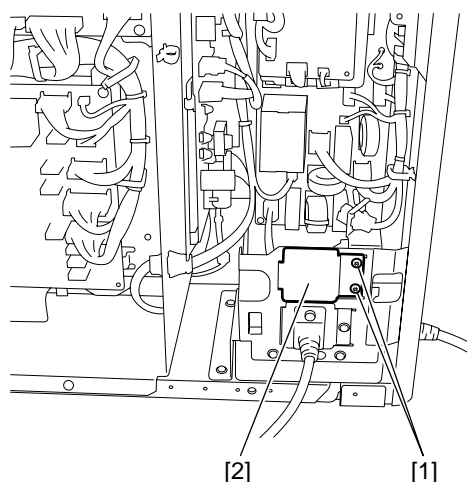
F-2-403

- 6) Connect the connector at one end of the AC cord to the power cord mount of the heater.
- 7) Remove eight screws [1], and then detach the rear-lower cover [2] of the host machine.



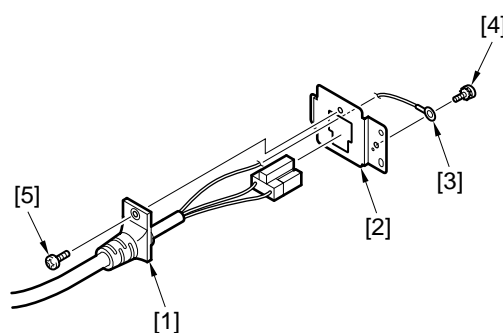
F-2-404

- 8) Remove two screws [1] at the lower right of the back of the host machine to remove the blind plate [2].



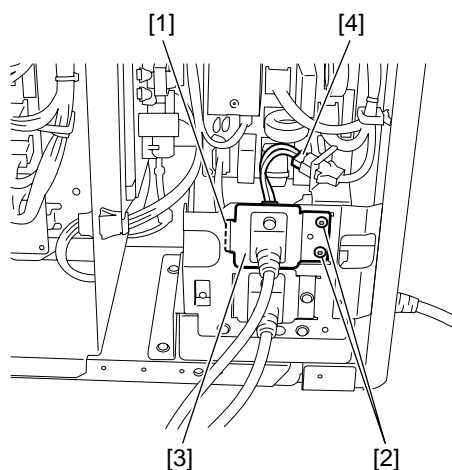
F-2-405

- 9) Insert the AC cord [1] into the hole of the cord mount [2], and then secure the ground cable [3] to the cord mount using a screw with toothed washer.
- 10) Secure the AC cord [1] to the cord mount using a screw [5] with flat spring .



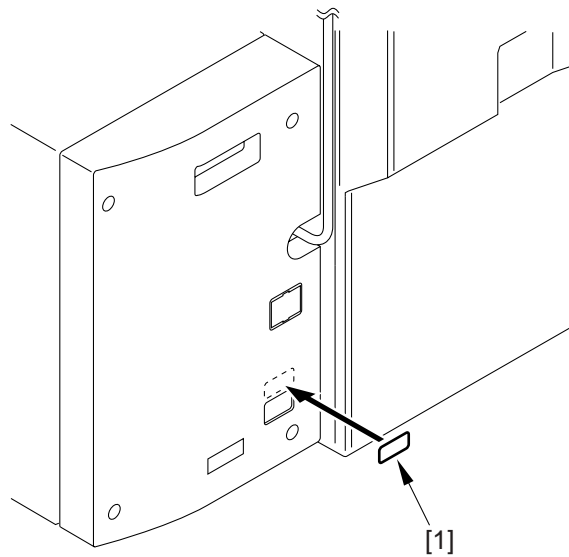
F-2-406

- 11) Hang the left-hand hook [1], and then secure the cord mount [3] to the host machine using two binding screws (M4X4) [2].
- 12) Connect the connector of the AC cord to the connector [4] on the host machine.



F-2-407

- 13) Install the rear-cover of the host machine using eight screws.
- 14) Reattach the exterior covers of the paper deck in the following sequence;
 - [1] Top cover (take care not to have the cables caught) [M4X8: 2pcs.]
 - [2] Front-upper cover (insert the connector) [M4X8: 3pcs]
 - [3] Rear cover [M3X8: 2pcs, M4X8: 4pcs.]
 - [4] Right cover [M4X8: 3pcs.]
- 15) Manually slide the paper deck to the left place in aside of the host machine.
- 16) Stick the power supply label [1] on the rear panel of the paper deck.



F-2-408

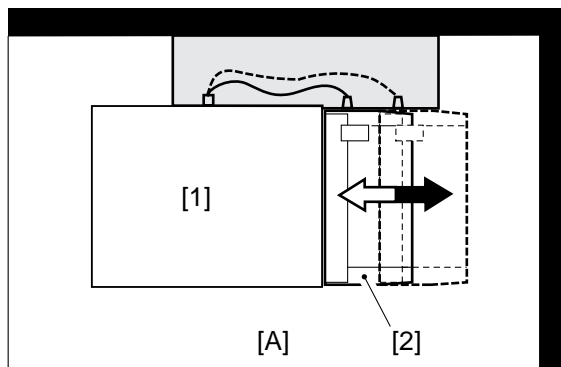


To ensure smooth connection of the heater power connectors, explain to the user that any obstacle that can prevent the paper deck from opening should not be placed in the hatched area.

[1]: Host machine

[2]: Paper deck

[A]: Front



2.13.4 Installing Procedure

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Installing to the paper deck

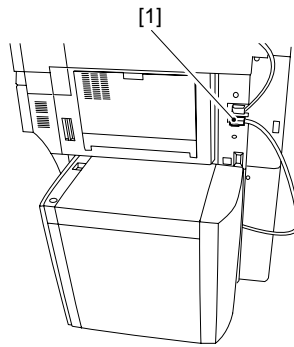


When installing the heater to the paper deck, take the following precautions.

- a. The AC power plug of the host machine must have been removed from the outlet.
- b. Install the heater after installing the host machine and paper deck.
- c. Use correct screws (length and diameters) at correct positions.

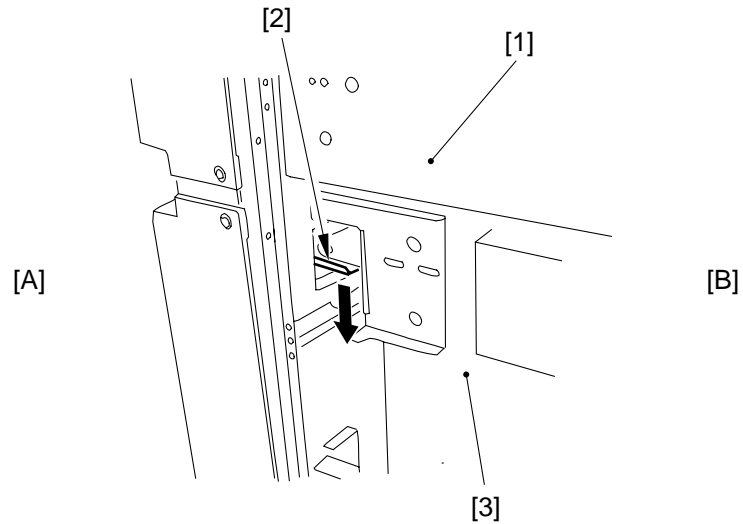
<Procedure>

- 1) Disconnect the connector [1] of the paper deck from the host machine.



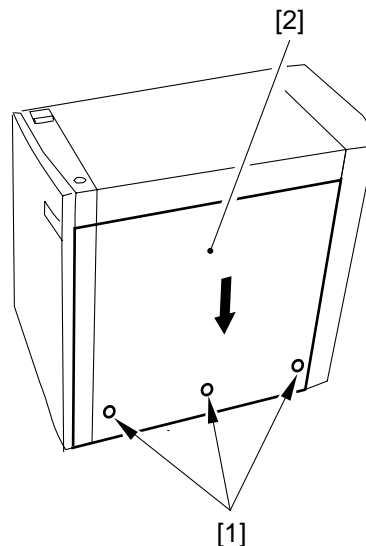
F-2-409

- 2) Release the paper deck [1] from the host machine, and then press down the latch plate [2] of the paper deck housing with your finger to open the housing [3].
 (A: Rear, B: Front)



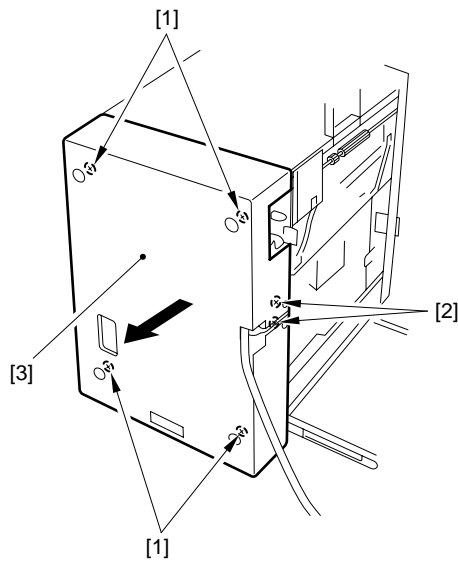
F-2-410

- 3) Remove three screws [1], and then detach the right cover [2] of the paper deck to the direction of the arrow shown.



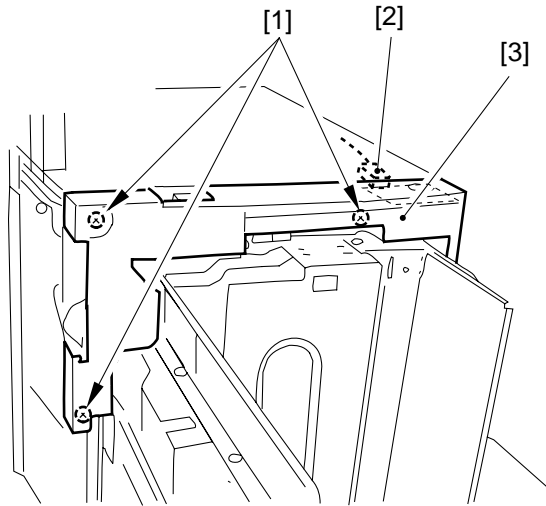
F-2-411

- 4) Remove four screws [1] and two other screws [2], and then detach the rear cover [3] of the paper deck.



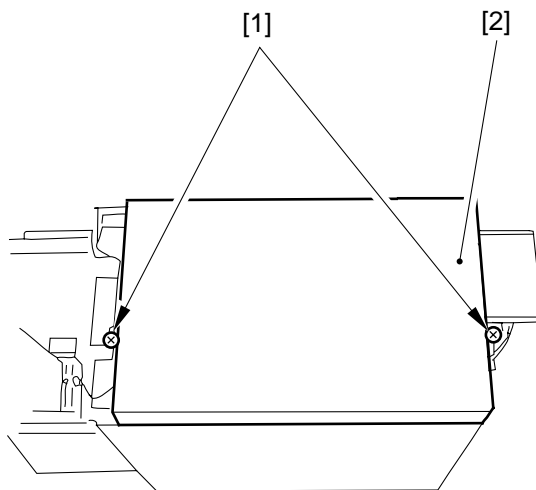
F-2-412

5) Remove three screws [1] and a connector [2], and then detach the front-upper cover [3].



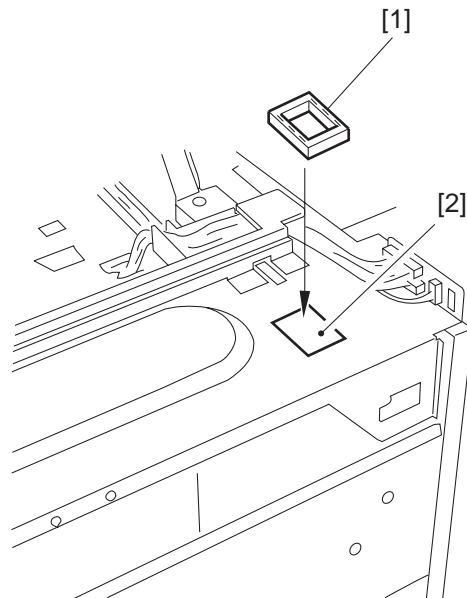
F-2-413

6) Remove two screws [1], and then detach the top cover.



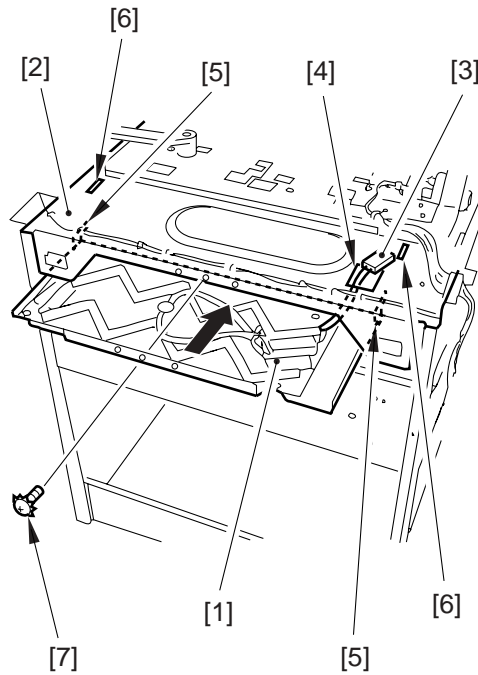
F-2-414

7) Attach the supplied cable protection bushing [1] to the hole [2] on the top panel of the paper deck.



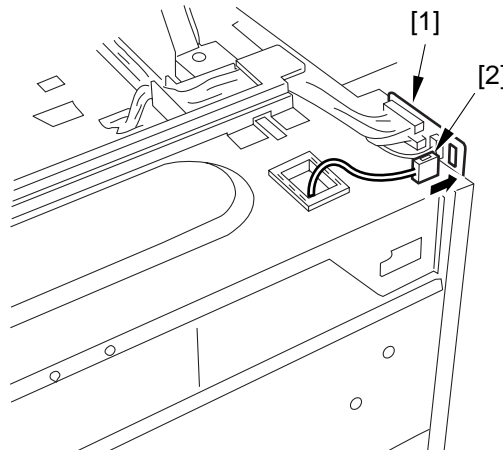
F-2-415

- 8) Place the heater unit [1] under the top panel [2] of the paper deck, and then take the connector [3] out from the hole [4] on the top plate.
 9) Insert two hooks [5] of the heater unit [1] into the holes [6] on the top plate of the paper deck, and then secure the heater unit to the main body of the paper deck using a screw with toothed washer [7].



F-2-416

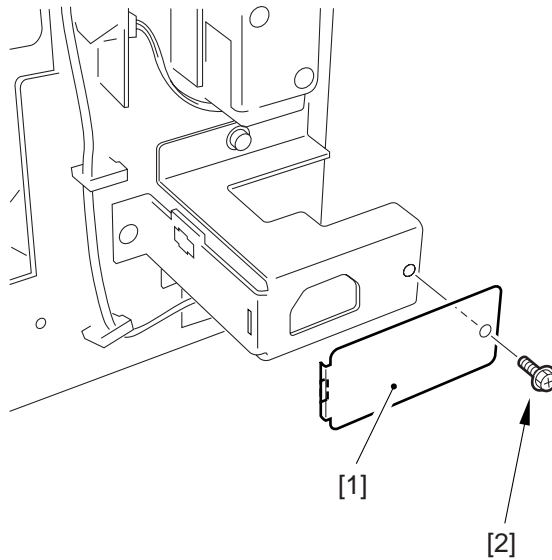
- 10) Attach the heater connector [2] to the panel mount [1].



F-2-417

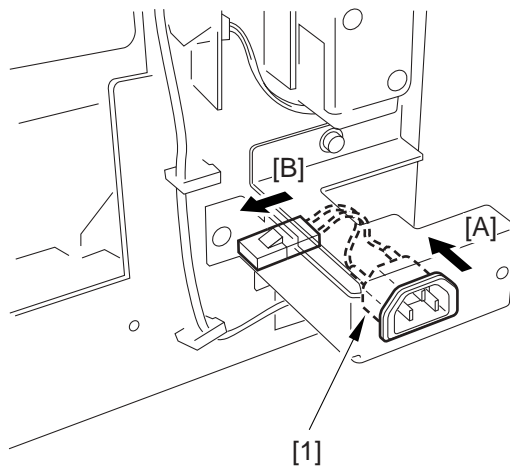
2. Connecting to the Host Machine

1) Remove screw [2] to remove the blind plate [1] from the power cord mount of the paper deck.



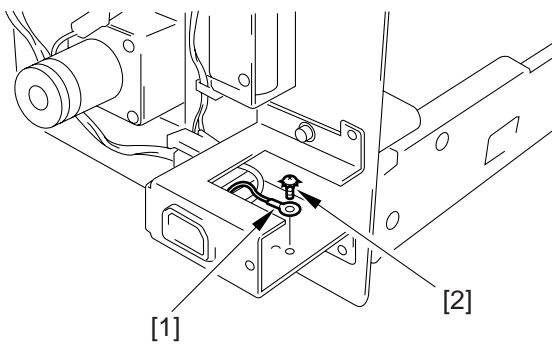
F-2-418

2) Install the supplied AC input connector [1] in two steps ([A] > [B]).



F-2-419

3) Secure the ground cable [1] using the screw with toothed washer [2].

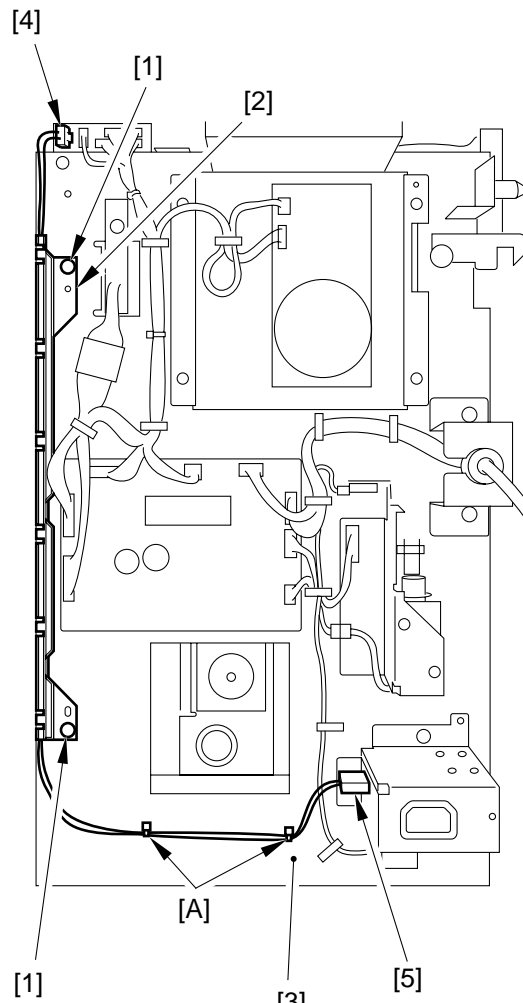


F-2-420

4) Using two binding screws (M4X4)[1], install the relay harness unit [2] to the rear side panel [3] of the paper deck.

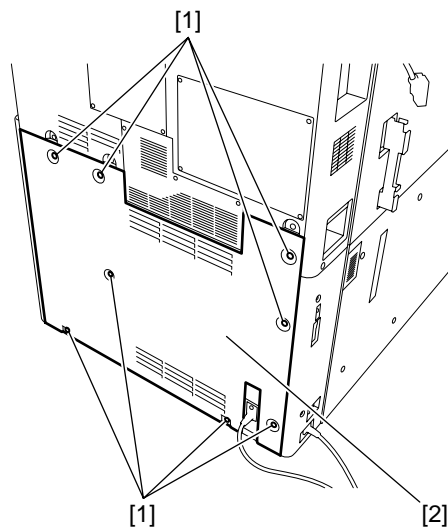
5) Insert the bind locks of the cable ties into the holes (at [A] shown below) on the rear side panel to secure the relay harness.

6) Connect the connectors at both ends of the relay harness unit to the heater connector [4] and AC power connector [5] respectively.



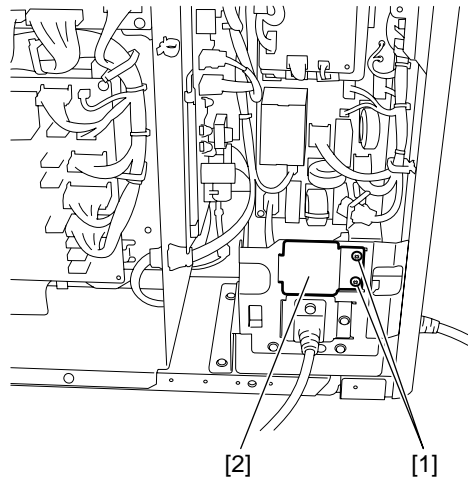
F-2-421

- 7) Connect the connector at one end of the AC cord to the power cord mount of the heater.
 8) Remove eight screws [1], and then detach the rear-lower cover [2] of the host machine.



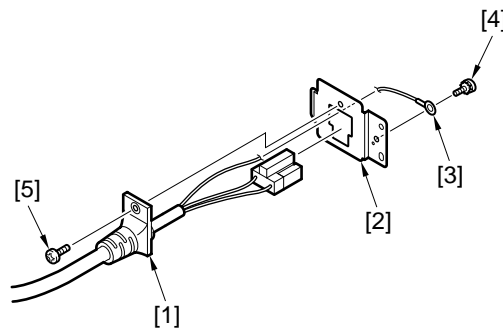
F-2-422

- 9) Remove two screws [1] at the lower right of the back of the host machine to remove the blind plate [2].



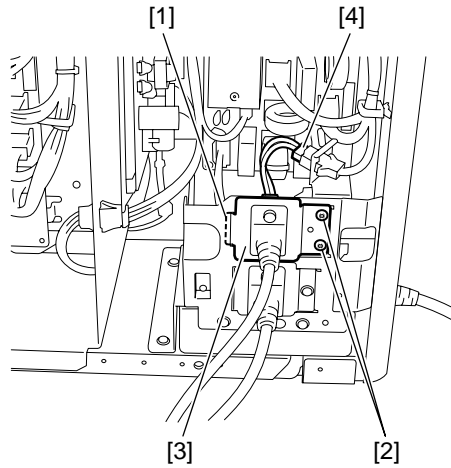
F-2-423

- 10) Insert the AC cord [1] into the hole of the cord mount [2], and then secure the ground cable [3] to the cord mount using a screw with toothed washer [4].
- 11) Secure the AC cord [1] to the cord mount using a screw [5] with flat spring.



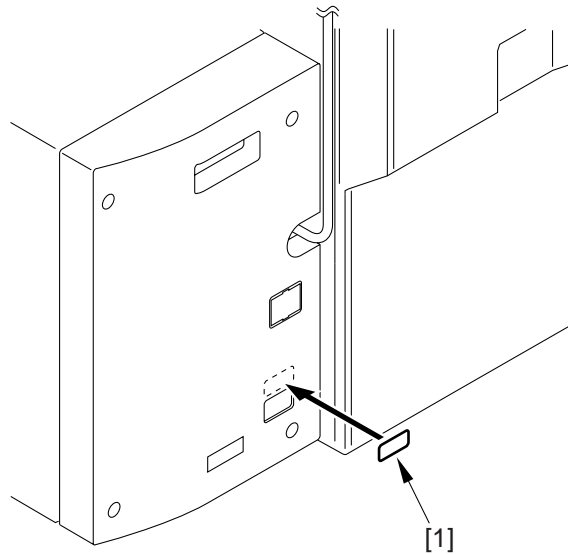
F-2-424

- 12) Hang the left-hand hook [1], and then secure the cord mount [3] to the host machine using two binding screws (M4X4) [2].
- 13) Connect the connector of the AC cord to the connector [4] on the host machine.



F-2-425

- 14) Install the rear-lower cover of the host machine using eight screws.
- 15) Reattach the exterior covers of the paper deck in the following sequence:
 - [1] Top cover (Take care not to have cables caught.) (M4X8: 2pcs.)
 - [2] Front-upper cover (Insert the connector.) (M4X8: 3pcs.)
 - [3] Rear cover (M3X8: 2pcs., M4X8: 4 pcs.)
 - [4] Right cover (M4X8: 3pcs.)
- 16) Manually slide the paper deck to the left to place it aside of the host machine.
- 17) Stick the power supply label [1] on the rear panel of the paper deck.



F-2-426

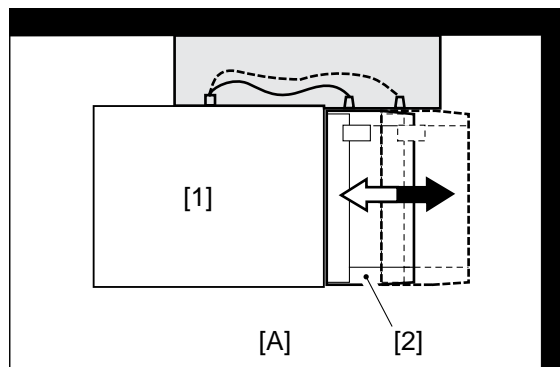


To ensure smooth connection of the heater power connectors, explain to the user that any obstacle that can prevent the paper deck from opening should not be placed in the hatched area.

[1]: Host machine

[2]: Paper deck

[A]: Front



2.14 Installing the Voice Guidance Kit

2.14.1 Points to Note at Installation

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

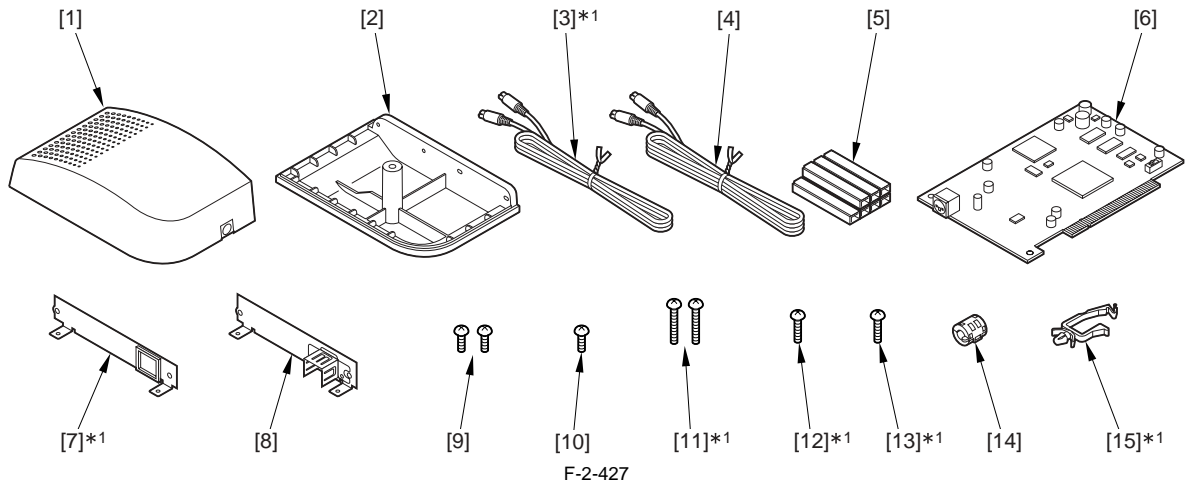


In order to install this machine, 'Voice Guidance Attachment-B1' is required.

2.14.2 Checking Components

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

<Voice Guidance Kit-A2/B1 (*2) >



[1]	Speaker Unit (Upper)	1pc.	[2]	Speaker Unit (Lower)	1pc.
[3]*1	Cable (1300mm)	1pc.	[4]	Cable (1850mm)	1pc.
[5]	Cord Guide (this machine requires 3 cord guides)	7pc.	[6]	Voice Board	1pc.
[7]*1	Voice Board Face Plate	1pc.	[8]	Voice Board Face Plate	1pc.
[9]	Screw (Binding; M3X6)	2pc.	[10]	Screw (Binding; M4X6)	1pc.
[11]*1	Screw (Binding; M4X40)	2pc.	[12]*1	Screw (Binding; M3X16)	1pc.
[13]*1	Screw (Binding; M4X16)	1pc.	[14]	Ferrite Core	1pc.
[15]*1	Clamp	1pc.			

*1 Not used for this machine

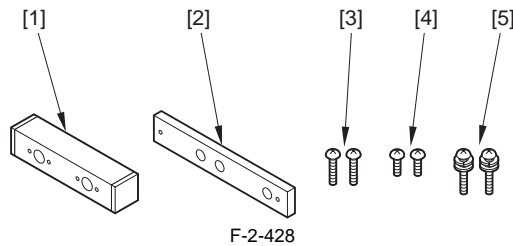
Check the contents (advice book, CD, and others) against the following tables:

T-2-11

Voice Guidance Kit-A2	Voice Guidance Kit-B1 (*2)
User's Guide	Voice Guidance Kit Users Guide
User's Manual CD	Voice Guidance Kit Users Guide CD

*2 Only supports imagePRESS C1 Series V2. (Body NO : CUEXXXXX)

<Voice Guidance Attachment-B1>

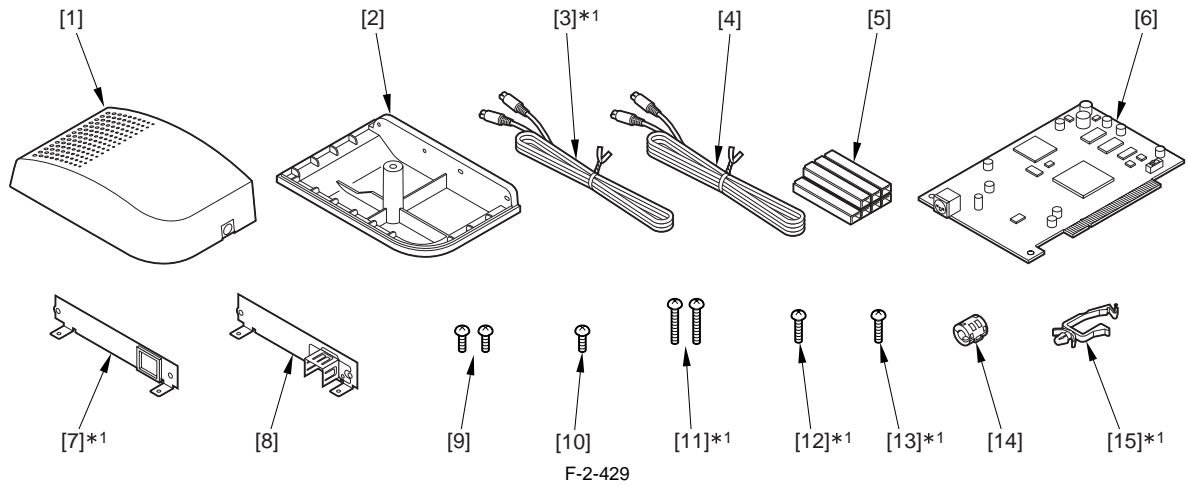


[1]	Option Stay A	1pc.
[2]	Option Stay B	1pc.
[3]	Screw (Binding; M4X12)	2pc.
[4]	Screw (Binding; M4X6)	2pc.
[5]	Screw (W, sems; M4X16)	2pc.

2.14.3 Checking Components

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

<Voice Guidance Kit-B1/C1>



F-2-429

[1]	Speaker Unit (Upper)	1pc.	[2]	Speaker Unit (Lower)	1pc.
[3]*1	Cable (1300mm)	1pc.	[4]	Cable (1850mm)	1pc.
[5]	Cord Guide (this machine requires 3 cord guides)	7pc.	[6]	Voice Board	7pc.
[7]*1	Voice Board Face Plate	1pc.	[8]	Voice Board Face Plate	1pc.
[9]	Screw (Binding; M3X6)	2pc.	[10]	Screw (Binding; M4X6)	1pc.
[11]*1	Screw (Binding; M4X40)	2pc.	[12]*1	Screw (Binding; M3X16)	1pc.
[13]*1	Screw (Binding; M4X16)	1pc.	[14]	Ferrite Core	1pc.
[15]*1	wire saddle	1pc.			

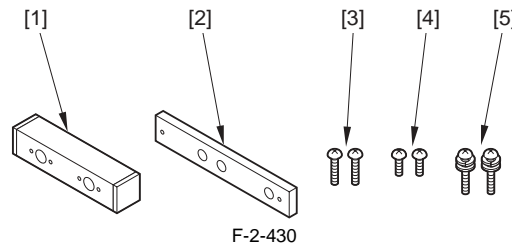
*1 Not used for this machine.

Check the CD, and guides according to the following table.

T-2-12

Voice Guidance Kit-B1	Voice Guidance Kit-C1
Voice Guidance Guide	Voice Guidance Guide (4pc.)
Voice Guidance Guide CD	Voice Guidance Guide CD
Sheet, FCC/IC	Sheet, FCC/IC

<Voice Guidance Attachment-B1>



F-2-430

[1]	Option Stay A	1pc.
[2]	Option Stay B	1pc.
[3]	Screw (Binding; M4X12)	2pc.
[4]	Screw (Binding; M4X6)	2pc.
[5]	Screw (W, sems; M4X16)	2pc.

2.14.4 Turning off the Machine

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

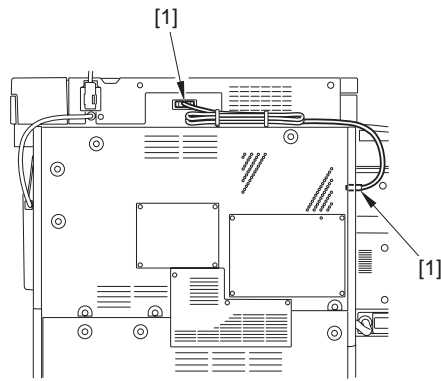
See the host machine installation [Points to note at the main power OFF].

2.14.5 Installation Procedure

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

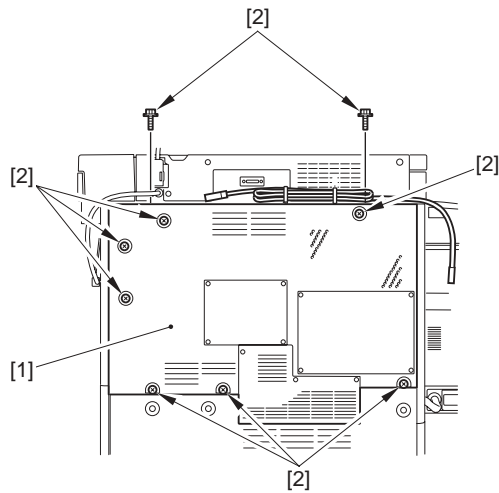
1. Installation Procedure

1) Disconnect the 2 reader communication cable connectors [1].



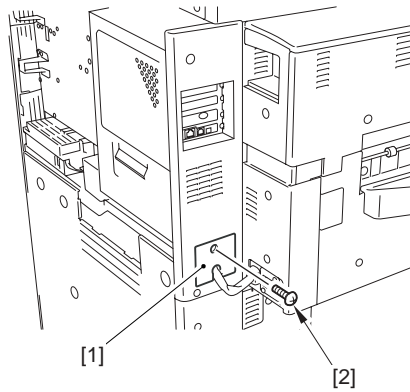
F-2-431

- 2) Detach the rear upper cover [1].
 - 9 screws [2]



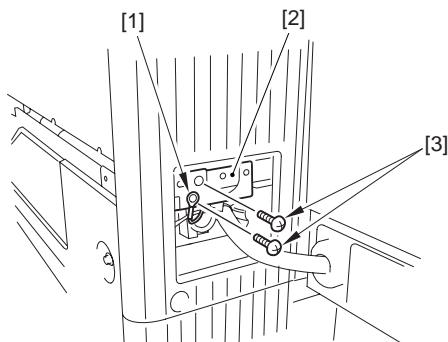
F-2-432

- 3) Detach the panel mount cover [1] on the left upper cover (rear).
 - 1 Screw [2]



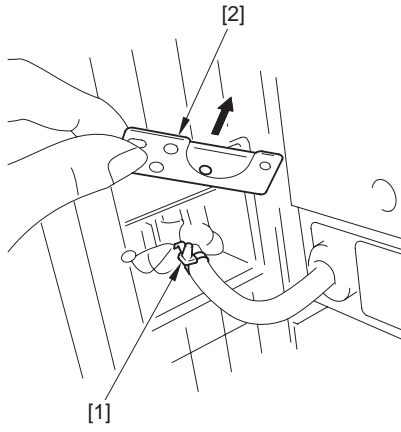
F-2-433

- 4) Remove the grounding wire [1], and detach the harness support plate [2].
 - 2 screws [3]



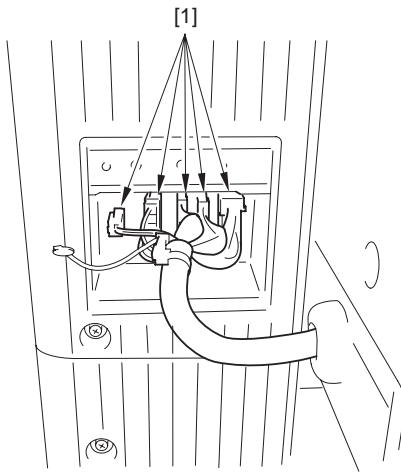
F-2-434

5) Detach the harness support plate [2] from the reuse band[1].



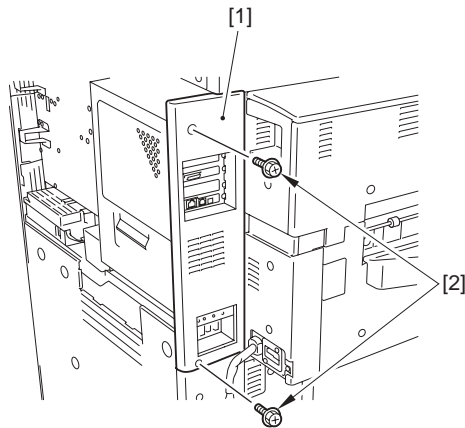
F-2-435

6) Disconnect the 5 connectors [1].



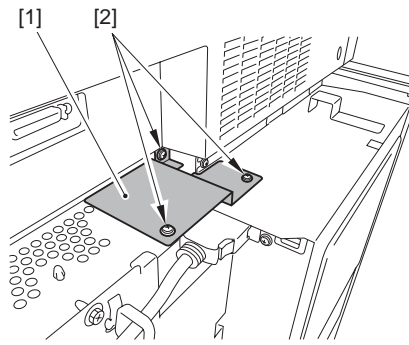
F-2-436

7) Detach the left upper cover (rear) [1].
- 2 screws [2]



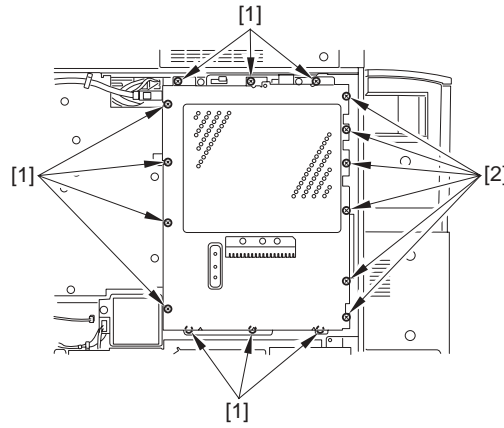
F-2-437

8) Detach the grounding plate [1].
- 3 screws [2]



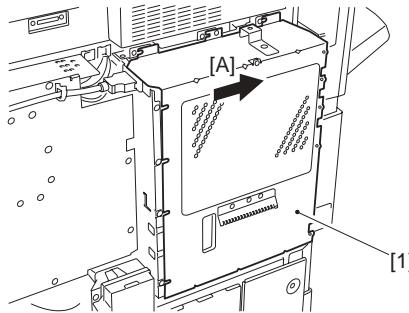
F-2-438

9) Loosen the 10 screws [1] on the controller box cover, and then remove the 6 screws [2].



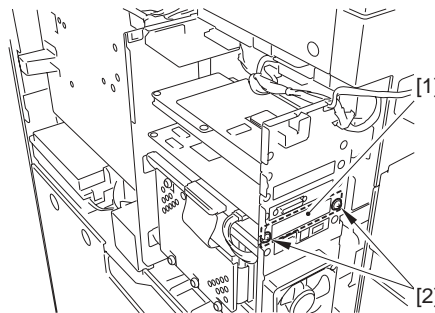
F-2-439

10) Slide the controller box cover [1] in the direction of [A] to detach it.



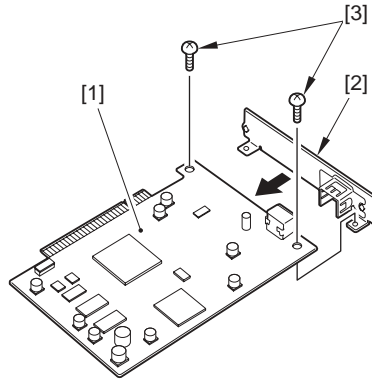
F-2-440

11) Detach the face cover plate [1]. (The face cover plate detached here will not be used hereafter.)
- 2 screws [2]



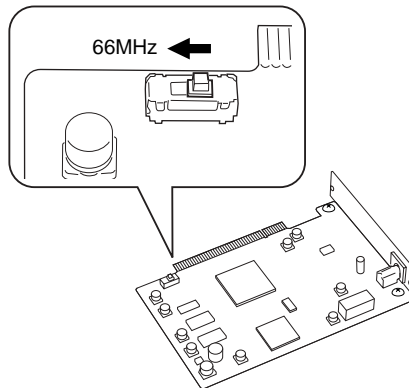
F-2-441

12) Attach the voice board face plate [2] onto the voice board [1].
- 2 screws (binding; M3X6) [3]



F-2-442

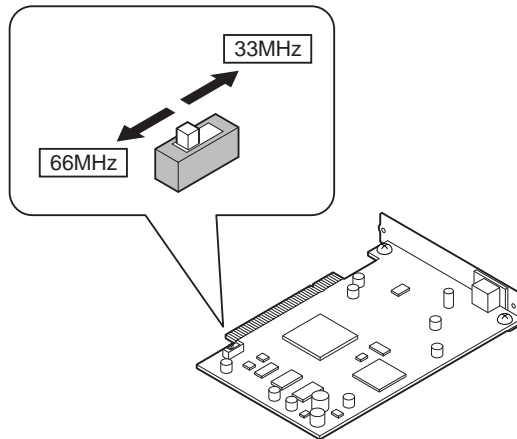
13) The slide switch SW 1 on the voice board is set 33MHz as a default. Change the switch to 66MHz.



F-2-443



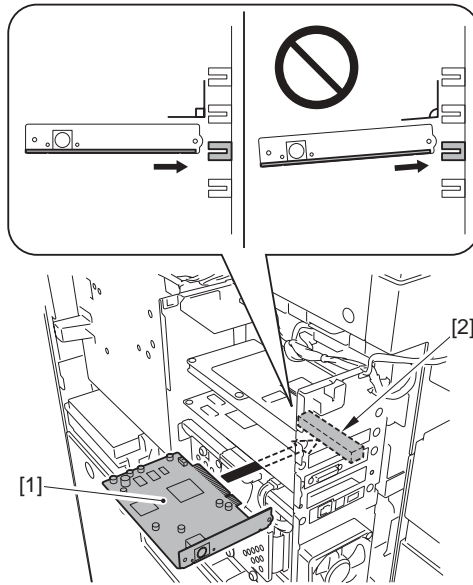
The purpose of the slide switch SW 1 on the voice board is to change the frequency (33MHz/66MHz) according to the PCI bus transfer rate. When the settings of the transfer rate and the switch are inappropriate, the voice is not played properly, resulting in catch during the play of the voice etc. If the switch was flicked by an error, return it to an appropriate position. In this machine, the switch must be positioned at 66MHz.



14) Insert the voice board [1] into the main controller PCB connector (J1012)[2].

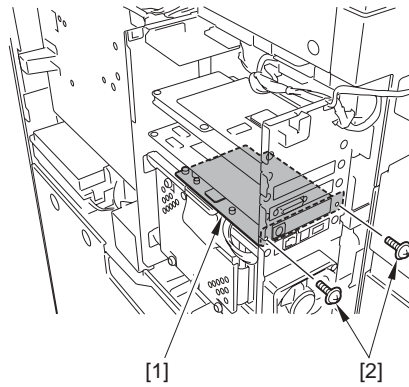


Insert the voice board perpendicularly against the connector.



F-2-444

15) Fix the voice board [1] in place by the 2 screws [2] removed in the step 11).

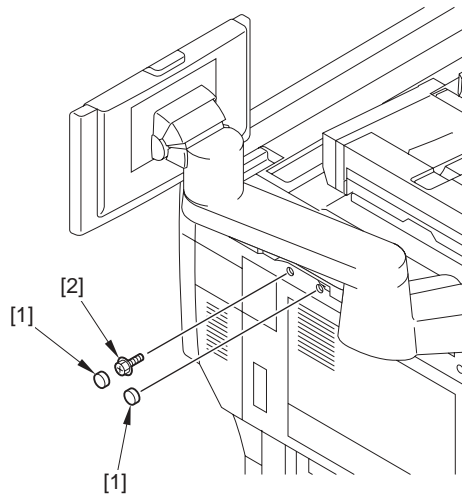


F-2-445

16) Attach the parts that were detached in the earlier steps.

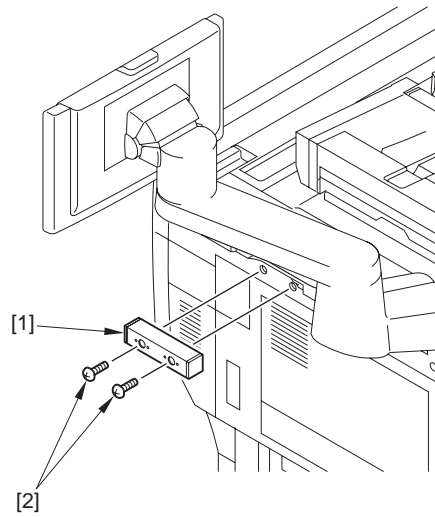
- Left upper cover (rear)
- 5 connectors
- Harness support plate
- Panel mount cover
- Controller box cover
- grounding plate
- Rear upper cover
- 2 reader communication cable connectors

17) Remove the 2 cover rubbers [1] and the screw [2] on the cover on the right upper area. (The cover rubbers and the screws removed here are not used.)



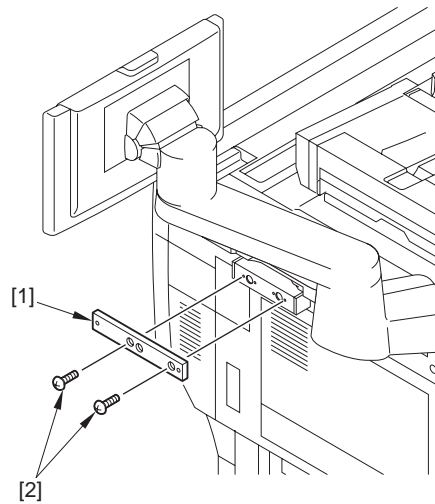
F-2-446

18) Attach the option stay A [1] included in the 'Voice Guidance Attachment-B1'on to the upper right cover.
- 2 screws [2] (binding; M4X12)



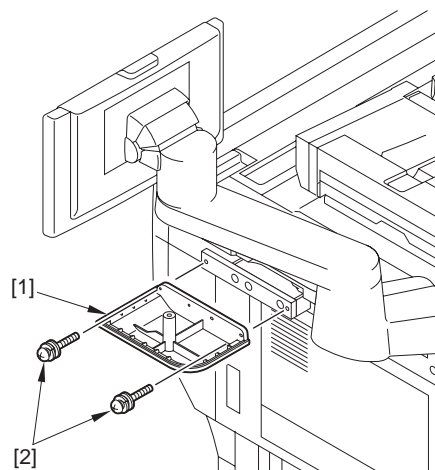
F-2-447

- 19) Attach the option stay B [1].
 - 2 screws [2] (binding; M4X6)



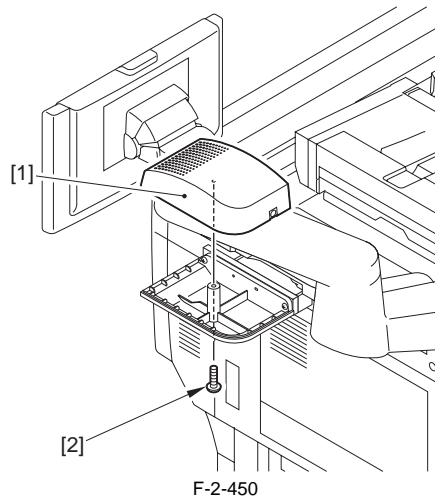
F-2-448

- 20) Mount the speaker unit (lower) [1].
 - 2 screws (W, sems; M4x16) [2] (Use the screws included in the 'Voice Guidance Attachment-B1'.)

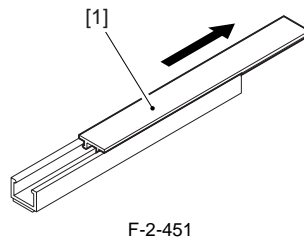


F-2-449

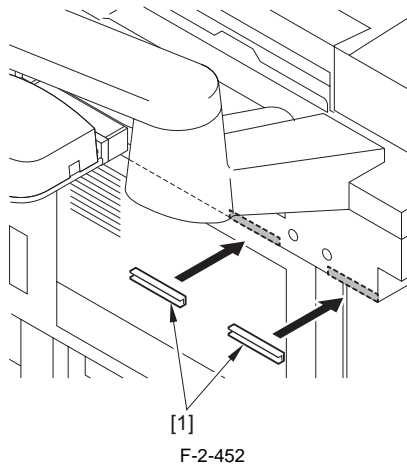
- 21) Mount the speaker unit (upper) [1] onto the speaker unit (lower), and then fix it in place by the screw (binding; M4X6) [2] from beneath.



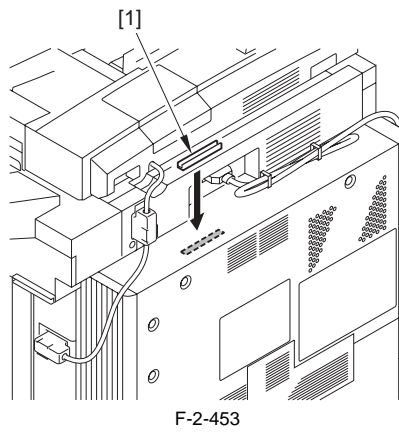
22) Detach the cover [1] of the cord guide.



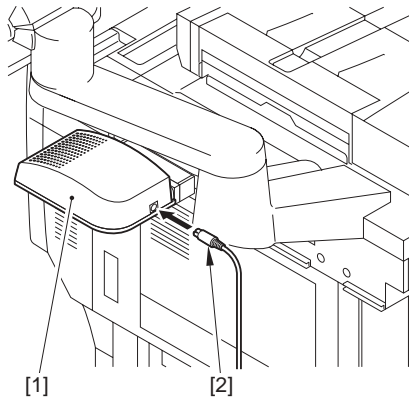
23) Attach the released paper of the cord guide [1] onto the position shown in the figure.
Right side --- 2 places



Back side --- 1 place

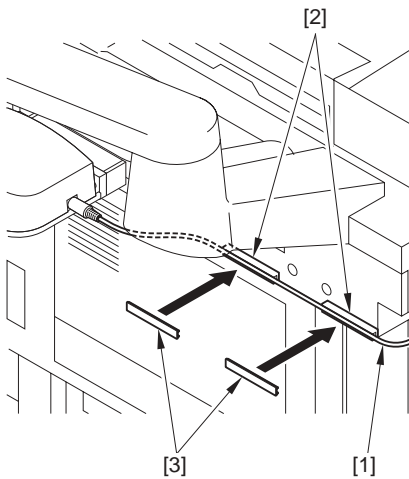


24) Connect the cable [2] with the speaker unit [1].



F-2-454

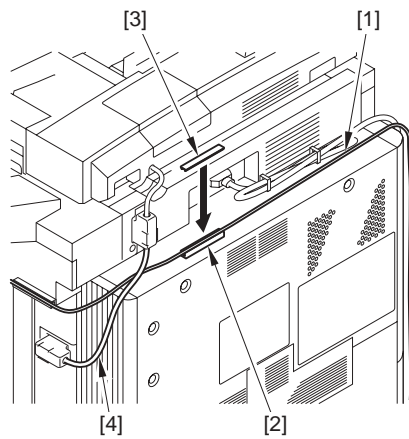
25) Lead the cable [1] along the cord guide [2], and then attach the cord guide cover [3].



F-2-455

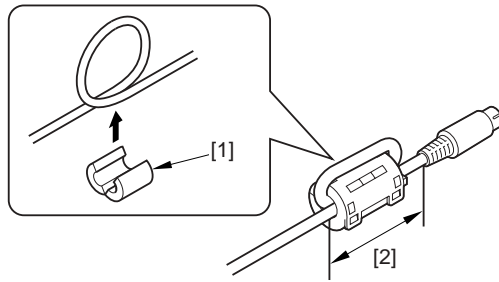
26) Lead the cable [1] along the cord guide [2], and then attach the cord guide cover [3].

 Be sure that the cable is led under the reader power supply cable [4].



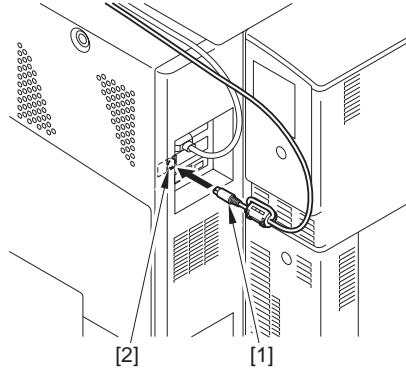
F-2-456

27) Attach the ferrite core [1] onto the cable. The distance [2] must be within 50mm.



F-2-457

28) Insert the cable [1] into the voice board terminal [2].

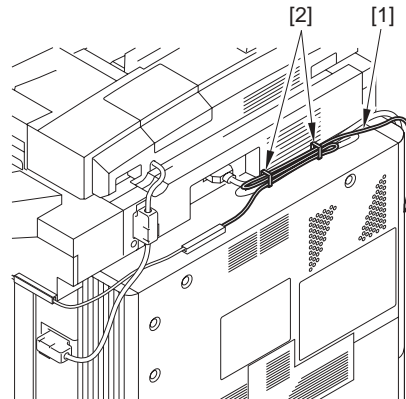


F-2-458

29) Fix the redundant cable [1] in place by the 2 wire saddles [2].



Be sure not to let the cable slacken.



F-2-459

30) Insert the 2 power supply plugs of the main body (1 on the backside of the machine, 1 on the left side of the machine) into 2 independent outlets from different power sources, and then turn on the main power.

31) Check that the voice board is recognized.

Service mode > COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STIS > PCI1

When indicated as 'Voice Board' on the screen, the voice board is successfully recognized.

2. Setup After Installation

To use the voice guidance kit-A2 after power-on, it is necessary to set the followings.

- 1) Additional Functions > System Settings > Voice Guide Management Settings > Use Voice Guide
 - 2) Select [ON]
 - 3) Press [ON]
- Default: [OFF]

3. Checking Operations

- At the Point of Use

- 1) Hold down [Reset] for 3 sec. or more.
- 2) If the copy number indication on the screen is surrounded by a red-colored frame, 'Voice Guidance' is available.

- At the Stop of Use

- 1) Hold down [Reset] for 3 sec. or more.

2.15 Installing the Printer Cover

2.15.1 Points to Note About Installation

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer)

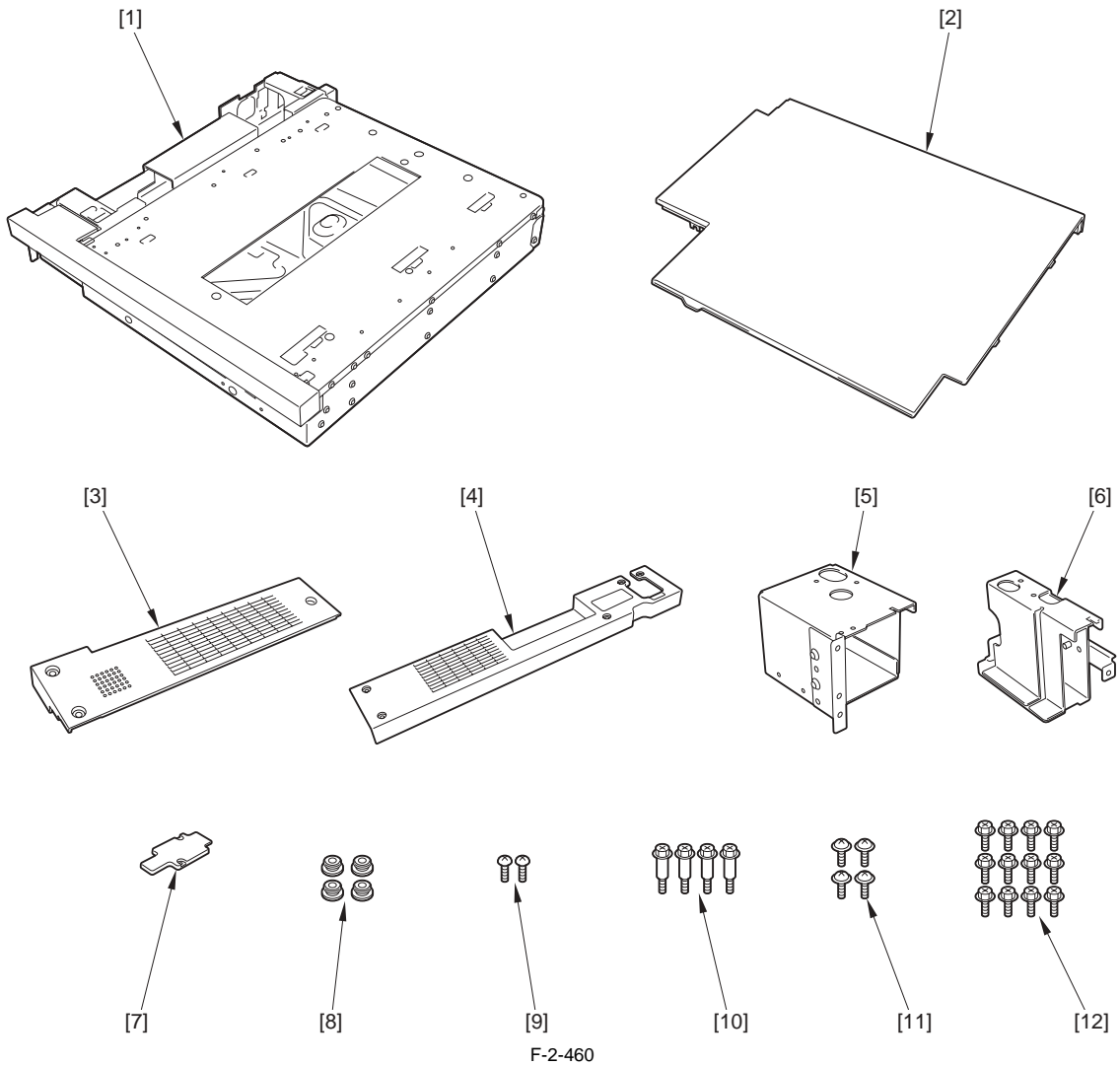


Before mounting the decurler, install the this equipment.

2.15.2 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer)

<Printer Cover-A1>



[1]	Dummy reader unit for printer	1 pc.
[2]	printer upper cover	1 pc.
[3]	Reader unit right cover	1 pc.
[4]	Reader unit rear cover	1 pc.
[5]	Reader unit fixing plate (front right)	1 pc.
[6]	Reader unit fixing plate (rear right)	1 pc.
[7]	Reader unit face cover	1 pc.
[8]	Rubber bush	4 pc.
[9]	Screw (binding; M3X6)	2 pc.

[10]	Stepped screw (RS tightening; 6X9 dia.)	4 pc.
[11]	Screw (TP; M4X6)	4 pc.
[12]	Screw (RS tightening; M4X8)	12 pc.

2.15.3 Turning Off the Machine

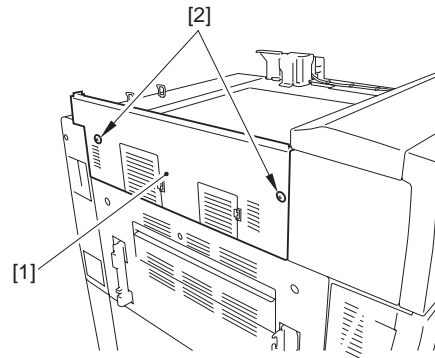
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer)

See the host machine installation [Points to note at the main power OFF].

2.15.4 Installation Procedure

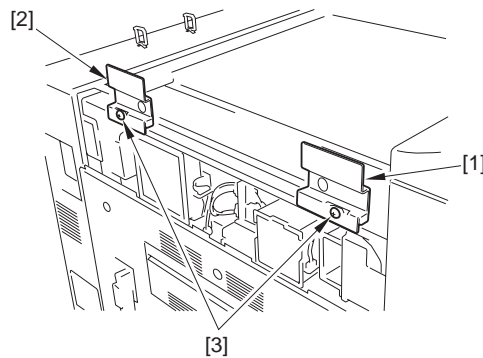
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer)

- 1) Remove the upper left cover [1].
- 2 stepped screws [2]



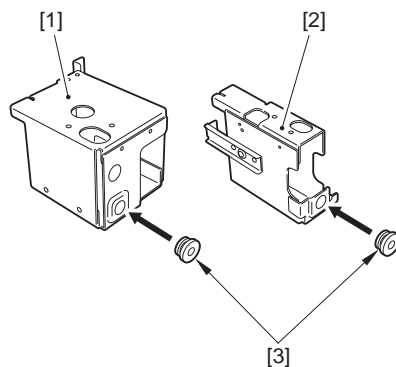
F-2-461

- 2) Remove the reader unit fixing plate (front left [1], rear left [2]).
- 2 screws [3]



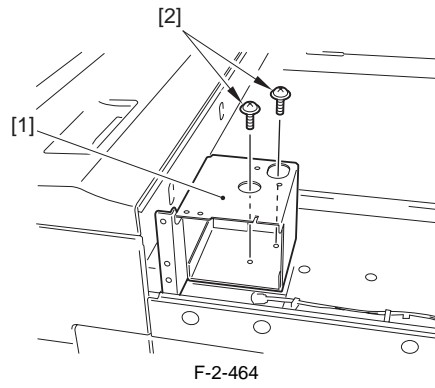
F-2-462

- 3) Fit the Rubber bush [3] to the reader unit fixing plate (front right) [1] and the reader unit fixing plate (rear right) [2].



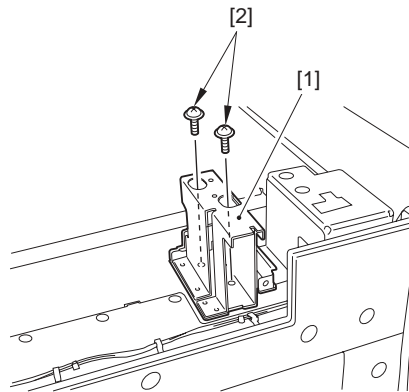
F-2-463

- 4) Mount the reader unit fixing plate (front right) [1].
- 2 screws (TP; M4X6) [2]



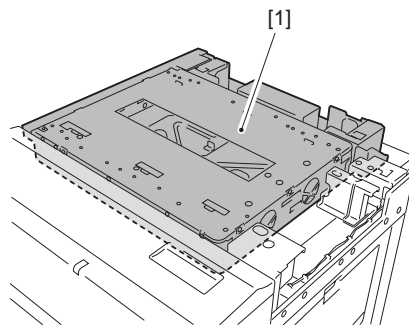
F-2-464

- 5) Mount the reader unit fixing plate (rear right) [1].
- 2 screws (TP; M4X6) [2]



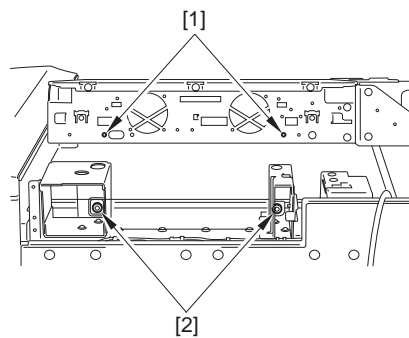
F-2-465

- 6) Place the dummy reader unit for printer [1] on the Host machine.



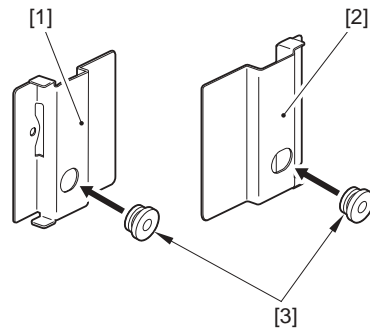
F-2-466

- 7) Match the screw hole [1] of the Dummy reader unit for printer and the screw hole [2] of the reader unit fixing plate.



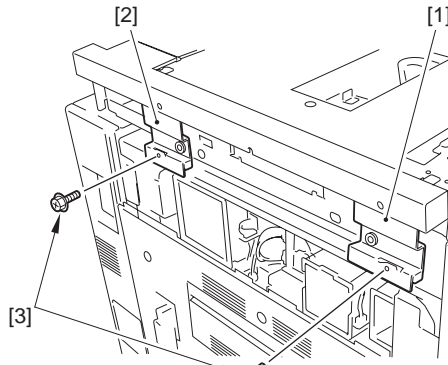
F-2-467

- 8) Fit the Rubber bush [3] to the reader unit fixing plate (front left [1], rear left [2]) removed in step 2).



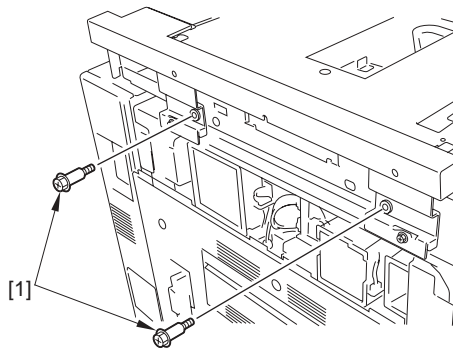
F-2-468

- 9) Mount the reader unit fixing plate (front left [1], rear left [2]).
- 2 screws [3]



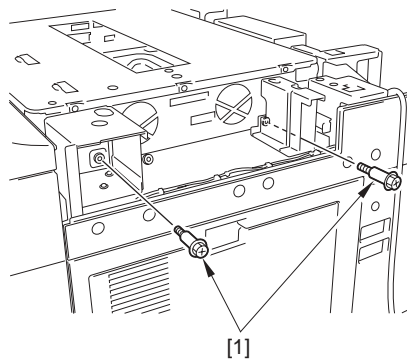
F-2-469

- 10) Fix the dummy reader unit for printer in place.
- 4 stepped screws (RS tightening; 6X9 dia.) [1]
Left Side



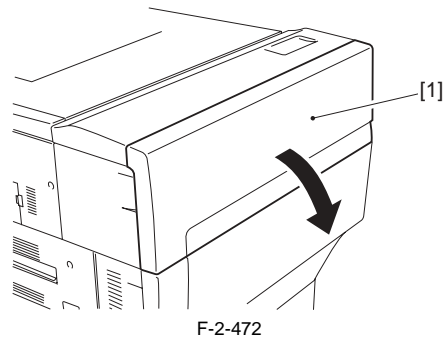
F-2-470

Right Side

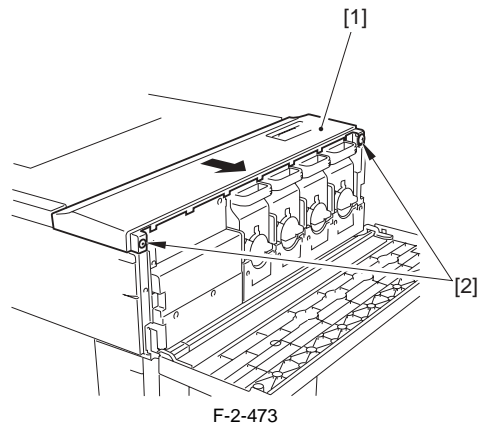


F-2-471

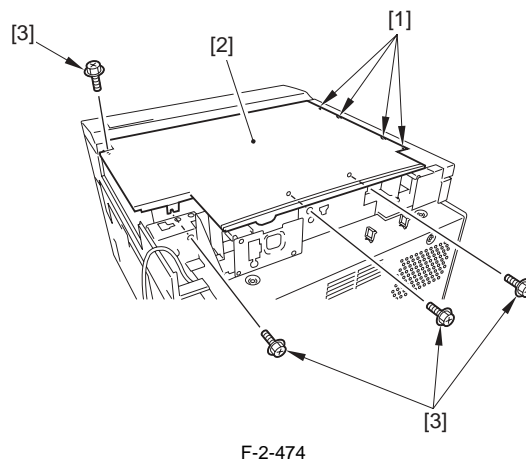
- 11) Mount the upper left cover removed in step 1).
12) Open the toner replacement cover [1].



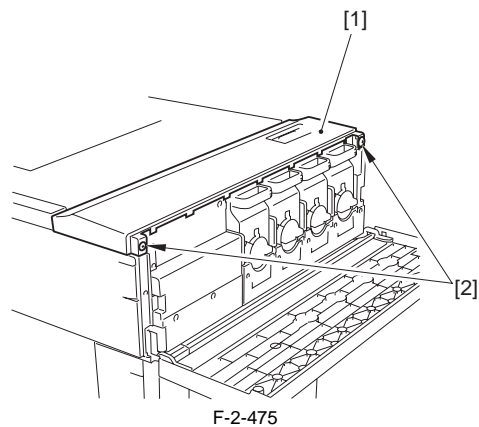
13) Remove the 2 screws [2] of the hopper cover (upper) [1] to slide it.



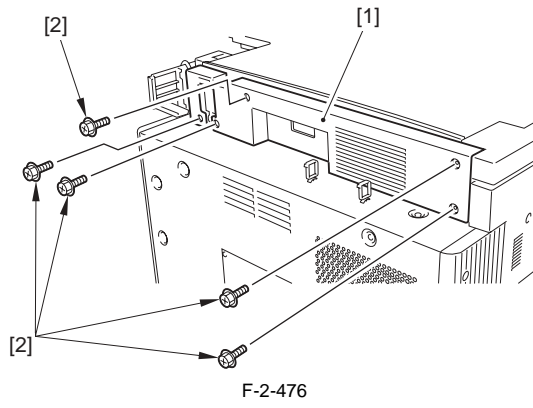
14) After four places of claw [1] are matched, printer upper cover [2] is installed.
- 4 screws (RS tightening; M4X8) [2]



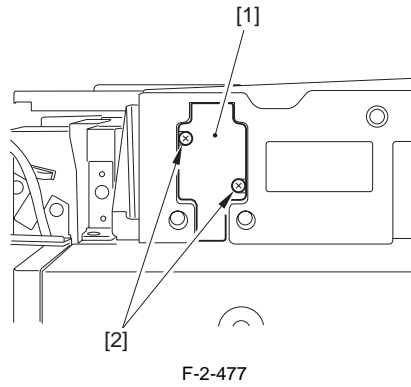
15) Secure the toner replacement cover [1] in place.
- 2 screws [2] (use the screws removed in step 13)



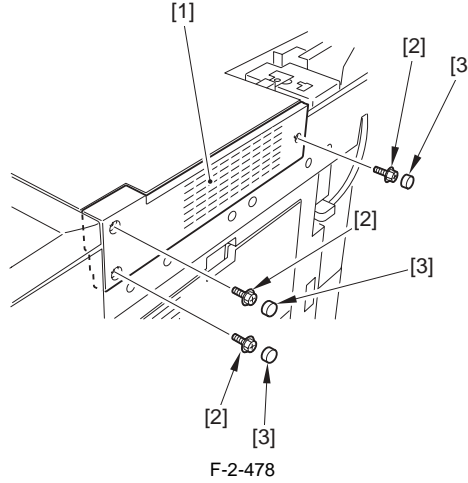
16) Close the toner replacement cover.
17) Mount the reader unit rear cover [1].
- 5 screws (RS tightening; M4X8) [2]



- 18) Mount the Reader unit face cover [1]
 - 2 screws (binding; M3X6) [2]



- 19) Mount the reader unit right cover [1].
 - 3 screws (RS tightening; M4X8) [2]
 - 3 cover rubber pieces [3]
 (Use the cover rubber that comes with the host machine.)



2.16 Installing the Serial Interface Kit

2.16.1 Points to Note About Installation

imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+

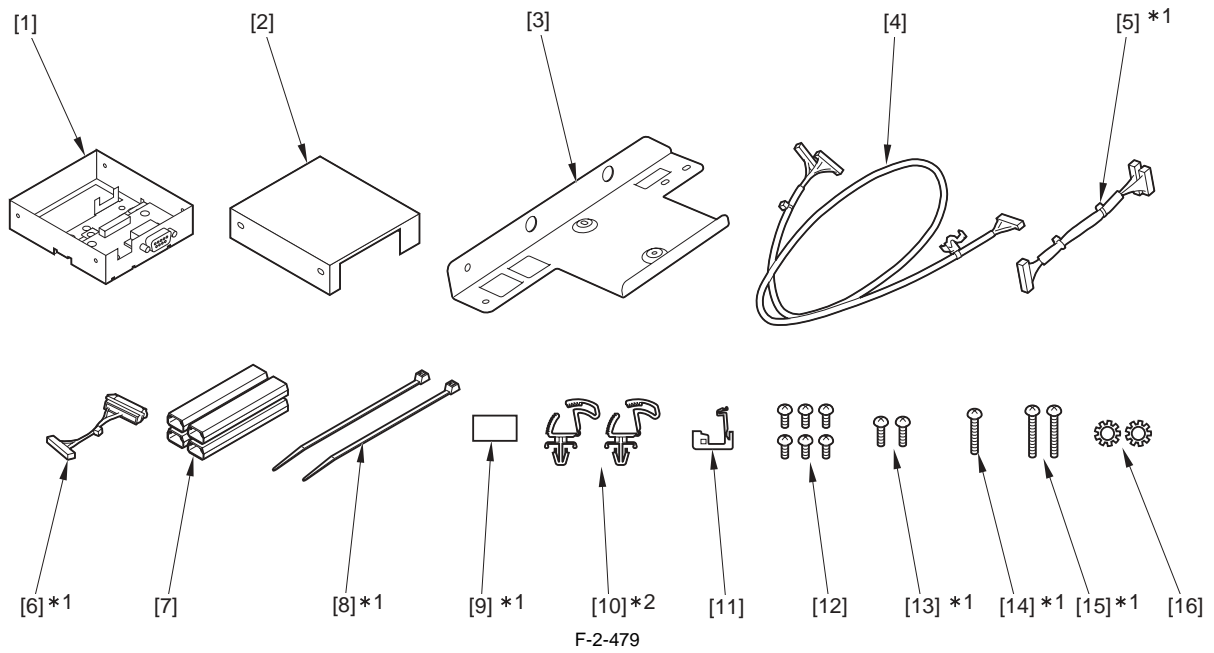


1. To install this product, "Voice Guidance Attachment-B1" is required.
2. In case this product has been installed, the card reader and the voice guidance kit cannot be installed.

2.16.2 Checking the Contents

imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+

<Serial Interface Kit-G1>

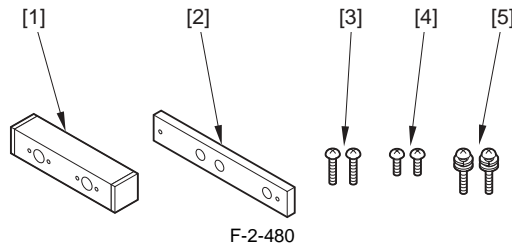


[1]	Coin vender I/F PCB unit	1 pc.	[2]	Coin vender I/F BOX cover	1 pc.
[3]	Coin vender I/F BOX joint mount	1 pc.	[4]	Serial RS main L cable	1 pc.
[5]*1	Serial RS main S cable	1 pc.	[6]*1	Serial RS sub cable	1 pc.
[7]	Cable guide	4 pc.	[8]*1	Cable tie	2 pc.
[9]*1	Blanking sheet	1 pc.	[10]*2	Wire saddle	2 pc.
[11]	Edge saddle	1 pc.	[12]	Screw (Binding; M3X6)	6 pc.
[13]*1	Screw (Binding; M4X12)	2 pc.	[14]*1	Screw (Binding; M4X25)	1 pc.
[15]*1	Screw (Binding; M4X30)	2 pc.	[16]	Toothed lock washer	2 pc.

*1 Not used in this host machine.

*2 Use 1 for this host machine.

<Voice Guidance Attachment-B1>



[1]	Option Stay A	1 pc.	[2]	Option Stay B	1 pc.
[3]	Screw (Binding; M4X12)	2 pc.	[4]	Screw (Binding; M4X6)	2 pc.
[5]	Screw (W, sems; M4X16)	2 pc.			

2.16.3 Turning Off the Machine

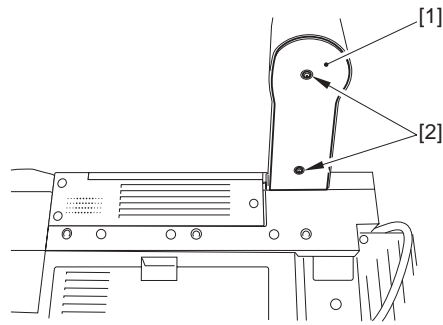
imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+

See the host machine installation [Points to note at the main power OFF].

2.16.4 Installation Procedure

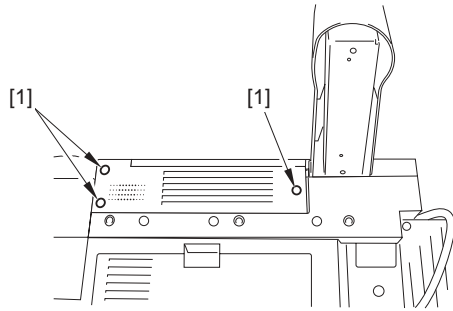
imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the arm cover 3 [1].
- 2 screws [2]



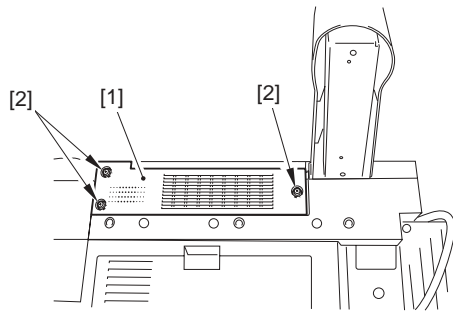
F-2-481

2) Remove the 3 cover rubber pieces [1].



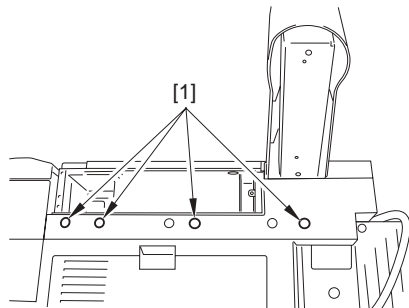
F-2-482

3) Detach the reader right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



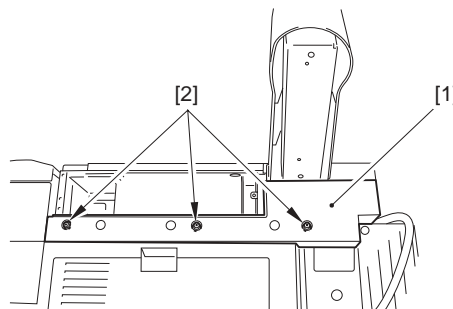
F-2-483

4) Remove the 4 cover rubber pieces [1] (2 of removed cover rubber pieces will not be used.)



F-2-484

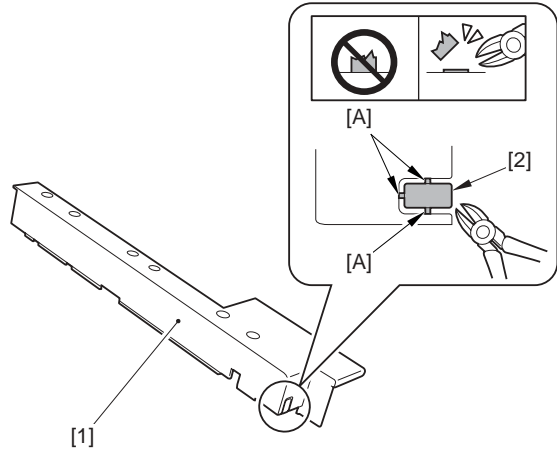
5) Detach the upper right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2] (1 removed screw will not be used.)



F-2-485

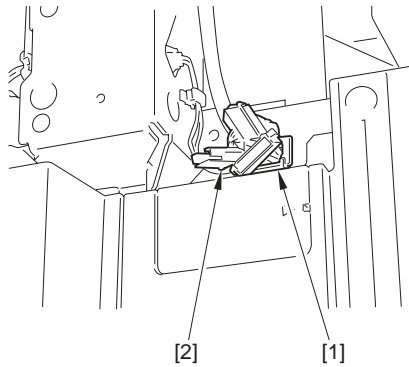
6) Using nippers cut off the face plate [2] of the upper right cover [1].

 Cut off the part [A] so that there are not burrs.



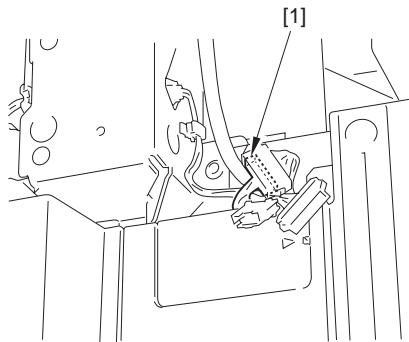
F-2-486

7) Free the cable [2] from the edge saddle [1].



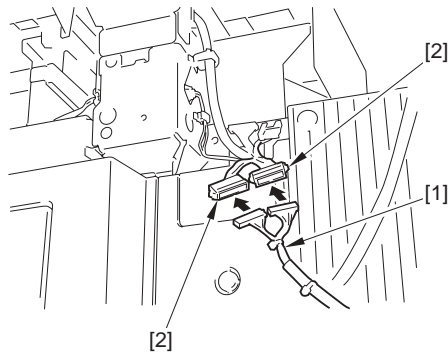
F-2-487

8) Disconnect the connector (5-pin side) [1] from the relay connector.



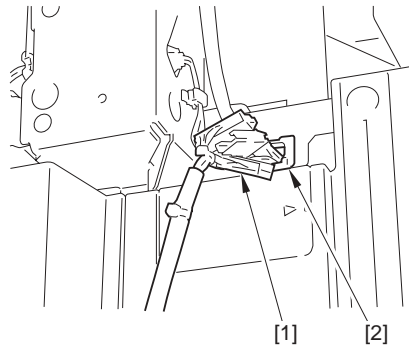
F-2-488

9) Connect the serial RS main L cable [1].
- 2 connectors [2]



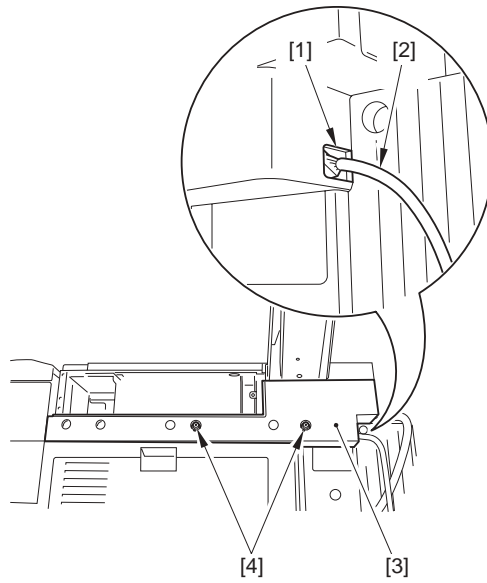
F-2-489

10) Secure the cable [1] with the edge saddle [2].



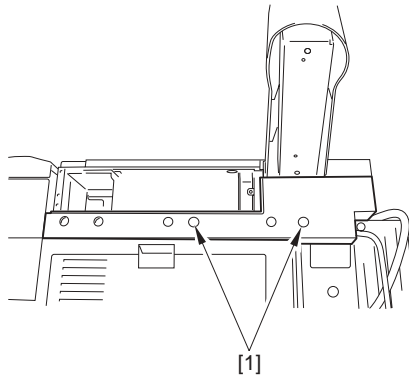
F-2-490

11) Pull out the serial RS main L cable [2] through the cut-off [1] and then attach the upper right cover [3].
- 2 screws [4]



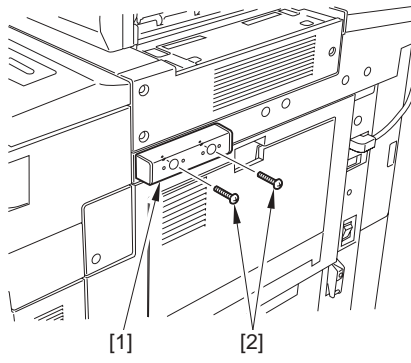
F-2-491

12) Attach the 2 cover rubber pieces [1].



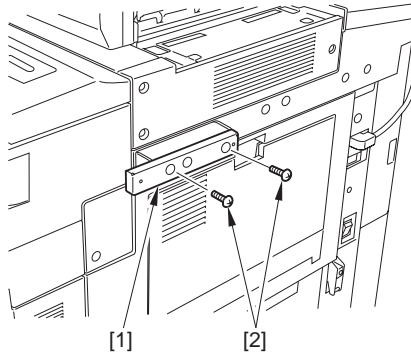
F-2-492

13) Attach the reader right cover.
14) Attach the arm cover 3.
15) Attach the option Stay A [1].
- 2 screws (biding: M4X12) [2]



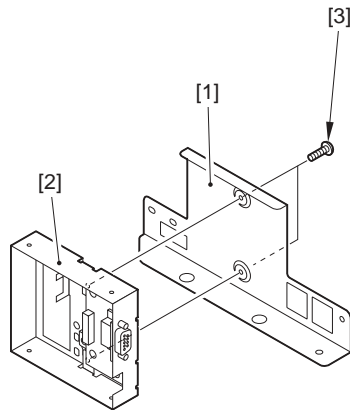
F-2-493

- 16) Attach the option Stay B [1].
 - 2 screws (biding; M4X6) [2]



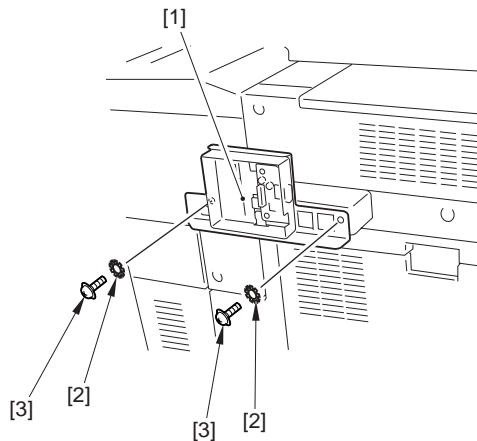
F-2-494

- 17) Attach the coin vendor I/F PCB unit [2] to the coin vendor I/F Box joint mount [1].
 - 2 screws (biding; M3X6) [3]



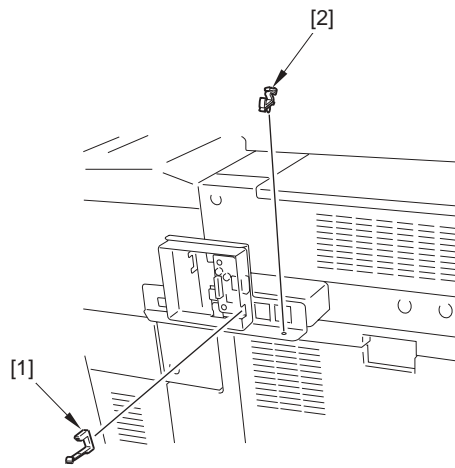
F-2-495

- 18) Attach the coin vendor I/F Box joint mount [1] to the host machine.
 - 2 toothed lock washes [2]
 - 2 screws (W, sems; M4X16) [3]



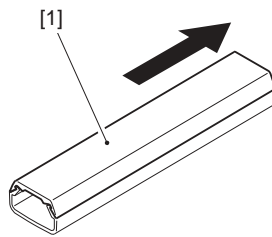
F-2-496

- 19) Attach the edge saddle [1] and wire saddle [2].



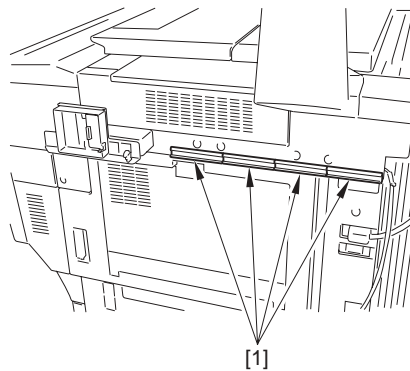
F-2-497

20) Slide the cable guide cover [1] and remove it.



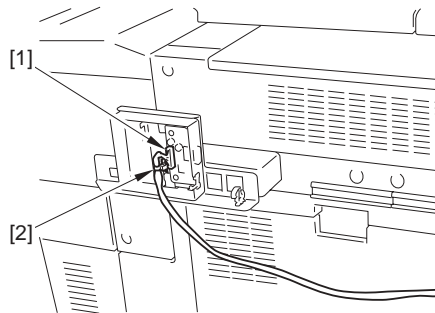
F-2-498

21) Peel the release paper on the 4 cable guides [1] and attach it at the position shown in the figure.



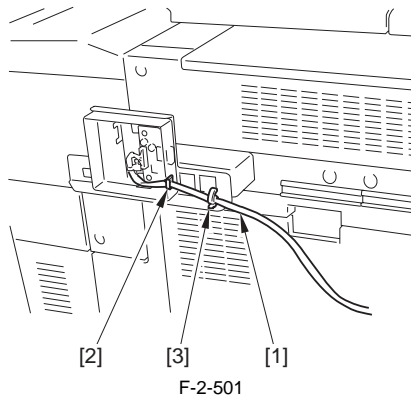
F-2-499

22) Insert the connector [1] of the serial RS main L cable, and attach the reuse band [2].



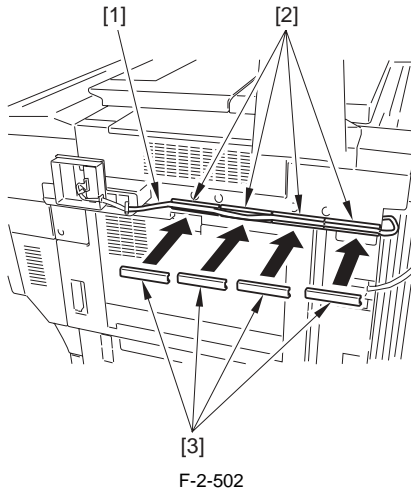
F-2-500

23) Fix the serial RS main L cable [1].
- 1 edge saddle [2]
- 1 wire saddle [3]



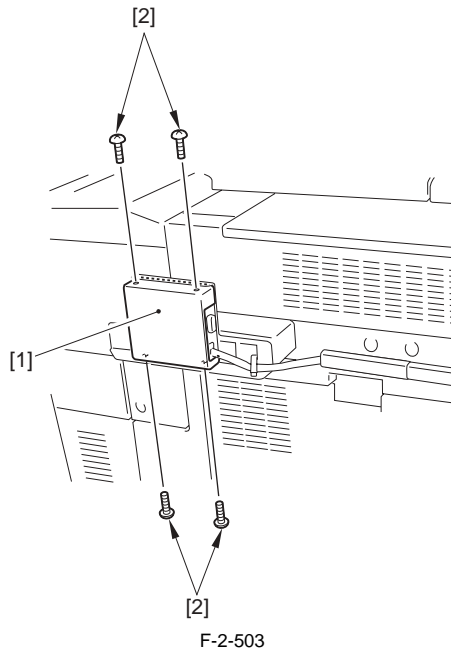
F-2-501

24) Put the serial RS main L cable [1] through the 4 cable guides [2] and attach the 4 cable guide covers [3].



F-2-502

25) Attach the coin vendor I/F Box cover [1].
- 4 screws [2] (Bind; M3X6)



F-2-503

Chapter 3 Basic Operation

Contents

3.1 Construction	3-1
3.1.1 Function Configuration	3-1
3.1.2 Function Configuration	3-2
3.1.3 Main PCB Connection	3-3
3.1.4 DC Controller.....	3-4

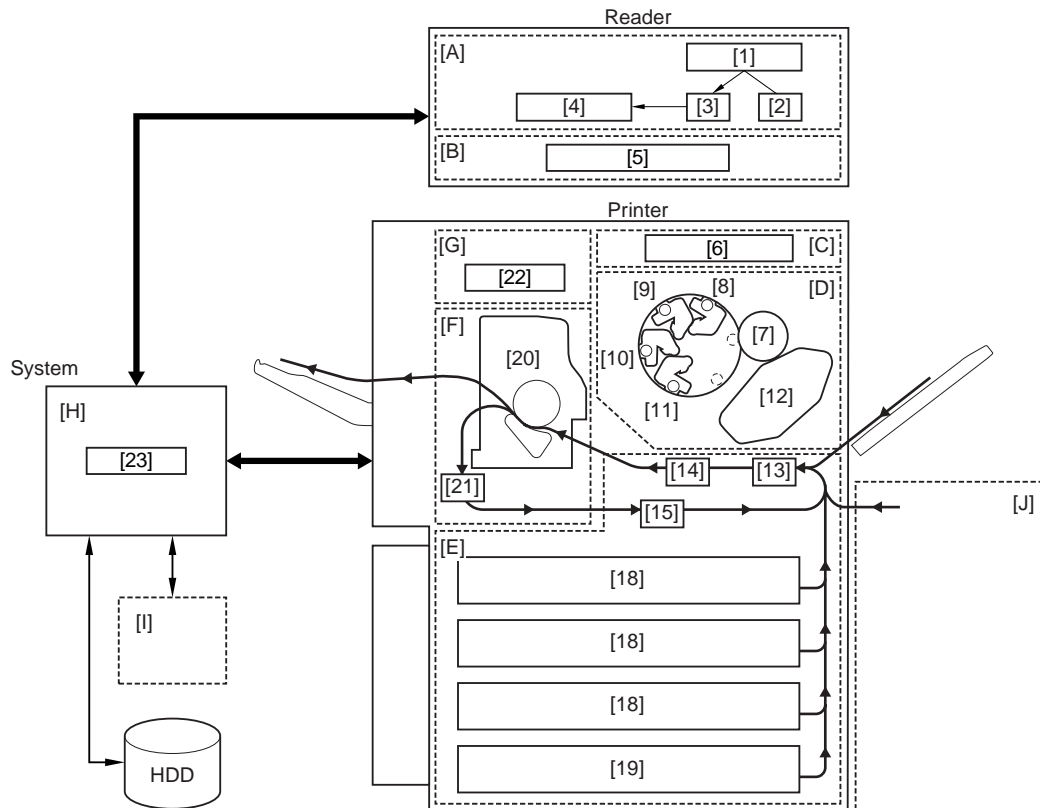
3.1 Construction

3.1.1 Function Configuration

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The copier is broadly divided into the reader assembly, the printer assembly, and the system assembly.

The printer assembly, a main part of the copier, consists of five system blocks: Laser exposure, Image formation, Pickup/Feed, Fixing/Delivery and Printer control.



F-3-1

1. Reader assembly

- [A] Original Exposure system
 - [1] Original
 - [2] Original lighting lamp
 - [3] Optical path
 - [4] CCD/Analog processor PCB
- [B] Reader Control
 - [5] Reader controller PCB

2. Printer assembly

- [C] Laser Exposure system
 - [6] Laser/Scanner assembly
- [D] Image Formation system
 - [7] Photosensitive drum
 - [8] Y Developing assembly
 - [9] M Developing assembly
 - [10] C Developing assembly
 - [11] Bk Developing assembly
 - [12] ITB (Intermediate Transfer Belt)
- [E] Pickup/Feed system
 - [13] Pickup control assembly
 - [14] Transfer assembly
 - [15] Lower feeder assembly
 - [16] Cassette 1
 - [17] Cassette 2
 - [18] Cassette 3
 - [19] Cassette 4
- [F] Fixing/Delivery system
 - [20] Fixing assembly
 - [21] Reversing assembly
- [G] Printer Control system
 - [22] DC Controller PCB

3. System assembly

- [H] System Control system
 - [23] Main controller PCB

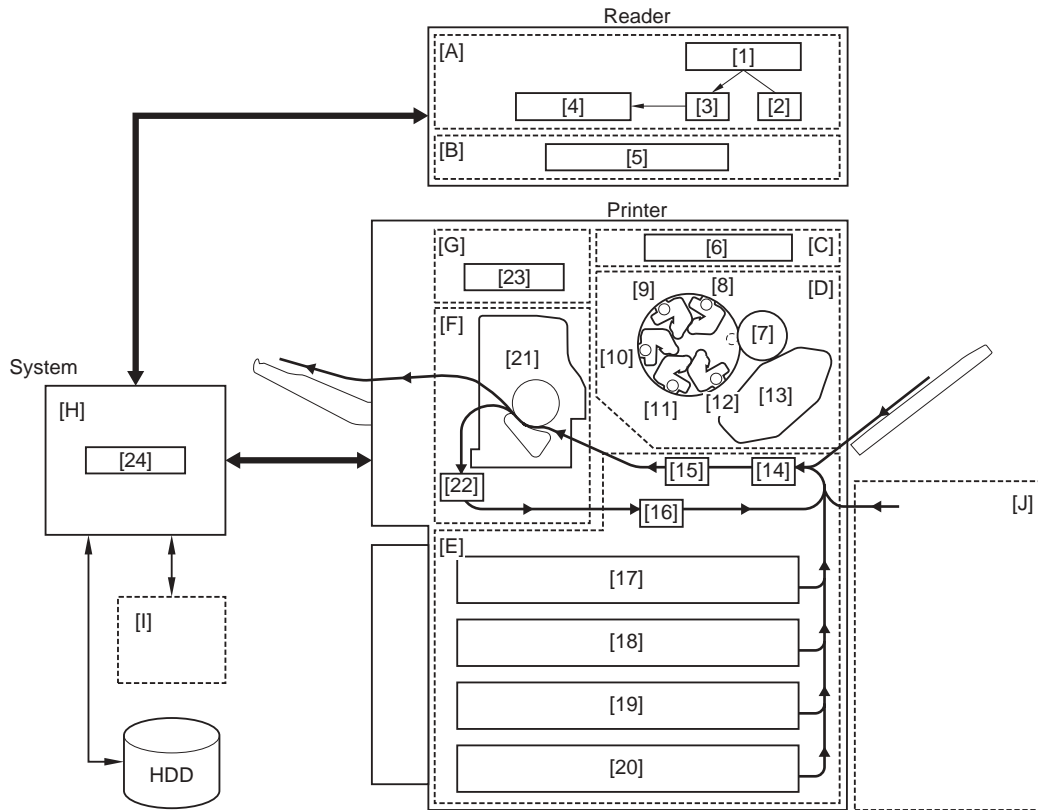
Accessories

- [I] Various optional boards
- [J] Side paper deck

3.1.2 Function Configuration

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The copier is broadly divided into the reader assembly, the printer assembly, and the system assembly.
 The printer assembly, a main part of the copier, consists of five system blocks: Laser exposure, Image formation, Pickup/Feed, Fixing/Delivery and Printer control.



F-3-2

1. Reader assembly

- [A] Original Exposure system
 - [1] Original
 - [2] Original lighting lamp
 - [3] Optical path
 - [4] CCD/Analog processor PCB
- [B] Reader Control
 - [5] Reader controller PCB

2. Printer assembly

- [C] Laser Exposure system
 - [6] Laser/Scanner assembly
- [D] Image Formation system
 - [7] Photosensitive drum
 - [8] Y Developing assembly
 - [9] M Developing assembly
 - [10] C Developing assembly
 - [11] Bk Developing assembly
 - [12] L Developing assembly
 - [13] ITB (Intermediate Transfer Belt)
- [E] Pickup/Feed system
 - [14] Pickup control assembly
 - [15] Transfer assembly
 - [16] Lower feeder assembly
 - [17] Cassette 1
 - [18] Cassette 2
 - [19] Cassette 3
 - [20] Cassette 4
- [F] Fixing/Delivery system
 - [21] Fixing assembly
 - [22] Reversing assembly
- [G] Printer Control system
 - [23] DC Controller PCB

3. System assembly

- [H] System Control system
 - [24] Main controller PCB

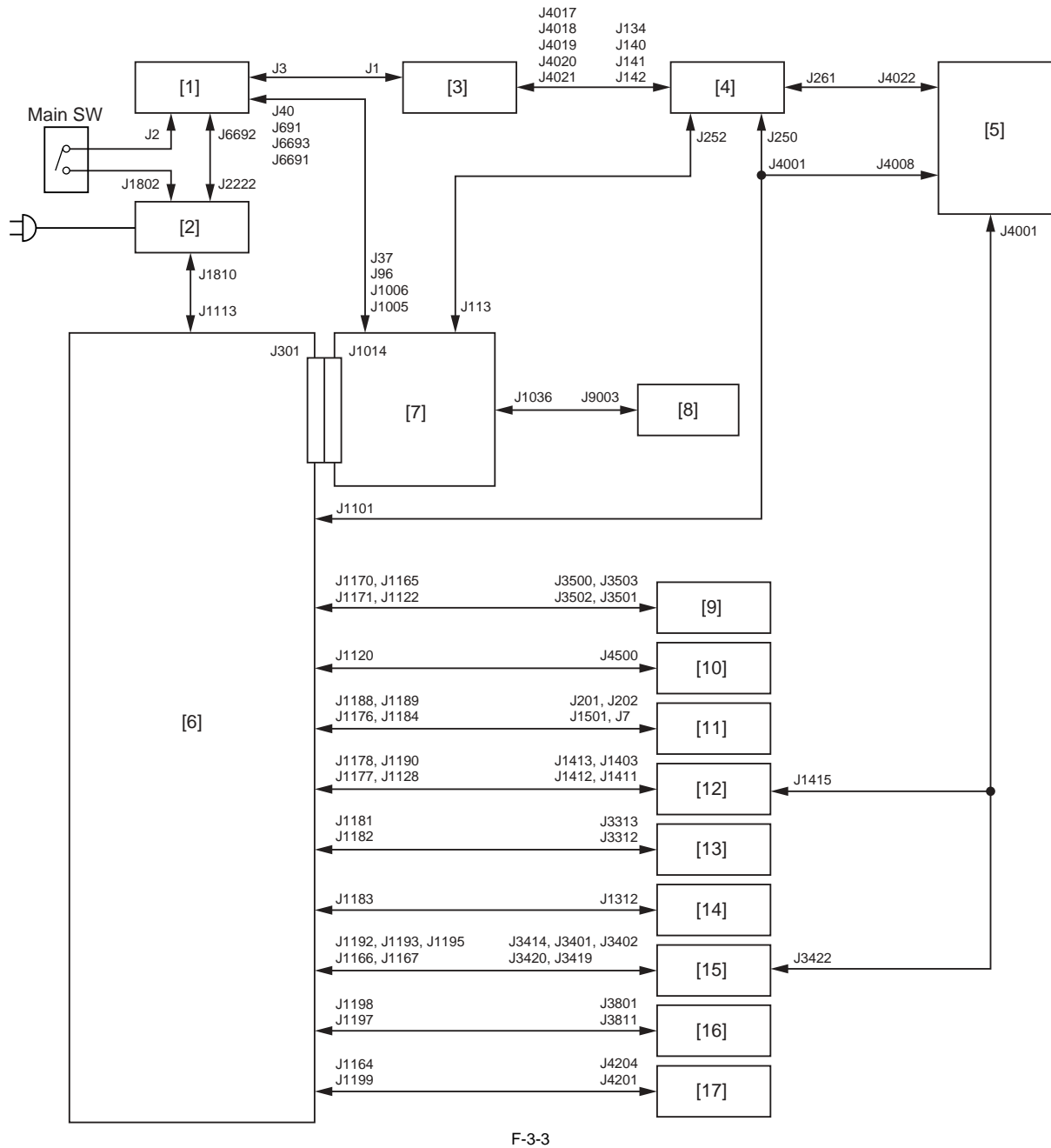
Accessories

- [I] Various optional boards
- [J] Side paper deck

3.1.3 Main PCB Connection

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Connections between main PCBs are shown in the figure below.



F-3-3

- [1] All night Power PCB
- [2] AC Driver PCB
- [3] DC Power PCB
- [4] DC-DC Power PCB
- [5] DC Power Relay PCB
- [6] DC Controller PCB
- [7] Main Controller PCB
- [8] Operation unit PCB
- [9] Laser Driver PCB
- [10] BD PCB
- [11] Various HV PCBs
- [12] Pickup driver PCB
- [13] Fixing driver PCB
- [14] Feeding driver PCB
- [15] Side driver PCB
- [16] Rear driver PCB
- [17] Buffer PCB

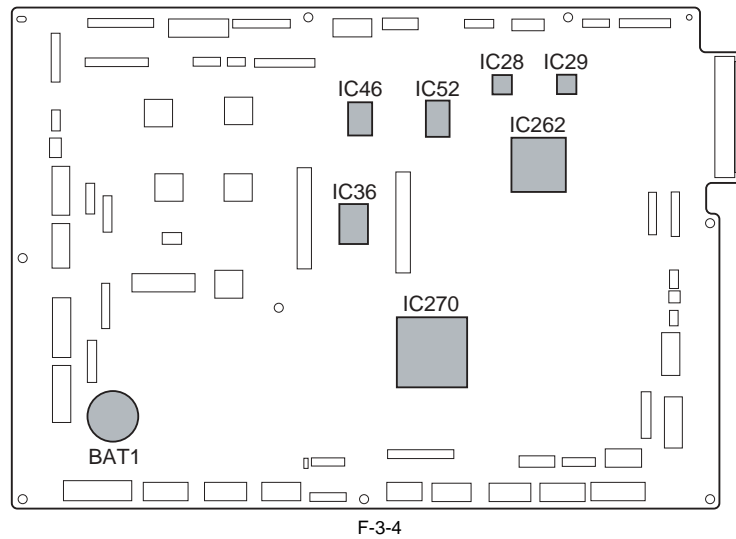


<- -> in the figure does not show the signal direction but shows main connections between PCBs.

3.1.4 DC Controller

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The function configuration of DC Controller PCB is shown below.



F-3-4

BAT1 (Lithium battery)

This is a back up battery for RAM

IC28 (PWM IC1)

This IC converts image data (in odd-numbered lines) output from ASIC1 into the Pulse Width Modulated data.

IC29 (PWM IC2)

This IC converts image data (in even-numbered lines) output from ASIC1 into the Pulse Width Modulated data.

IC36 (CPU)

This IC controls the print sequence and the interface with the controller.

IC46 (RAM)

This IC stores the setup data, such as service mode and the like.

IC52 (Flash ROM)

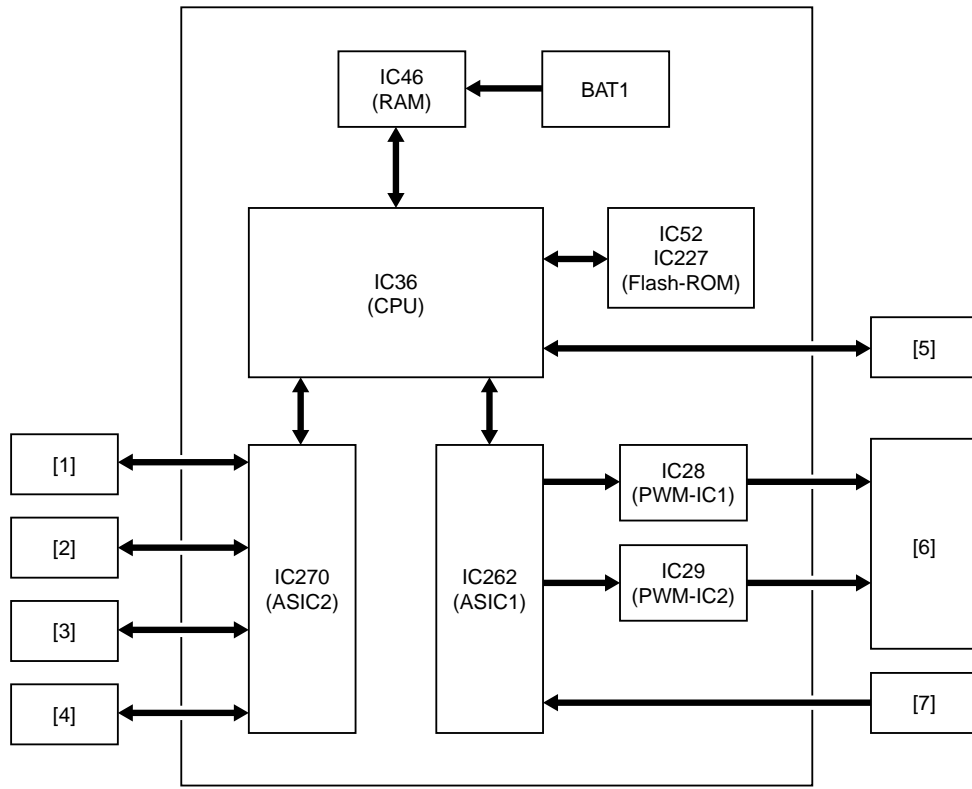
This IC stores the firmware.

IC262 (ASIC2)

This IC controls the laser driver and the BD.

IC270 (ASIC2)

This IC controls the high-voltage, fixing, various accessories (Finisher, Paper deck, etc.), and various loads (Motor, Sensor, Clutch, Solenoid, and so on).



F-3-5

- [1] Various HVTs
- [2] Fixing assembly
- [3] Various Accessories (Side paper deck, Finisher, etc.)
- [4] Various Loads (Motor, Sensor, Clutch, Solenoid)
- [5] Main controller PCB
- [6] Laser driver PCB
- [7] BD PCB

Chapter 4 Main Controller

Contents

4.1 Construction	4-1
4.1.1 Configuration and Functions	4-1
4.1.2 Configuration and Functions	4-2
4.2 Construction of the Electrical Circuitry	4-4
4.2.1 Main Controller Circuit Board (MAIN)	4-4
4.2.2 Main Controller Circuit Board (MAIN)	4-6
4.2.3 SRAM Circuit Board	4-7
4.3 Start-Up Sequence	4-7
4.3.1 Overview	4-7
4.3.2 Startup Sequence	4-7
4.4 Actions when HDD Error	4-9
4.4.1 E602 Details	4-9
4.5 Image Processing	4-12
4.5.1 Image Flow Overview	4-12
4.5.2 Reader Input Image Processing	4-13
4.5.3 Reader Input Image Processing	4-13
4.5.4 Printer Output Image Processing	4-14
4.5.5 Block for Compression, Expansion, and Editing Processing	4-15
4.5.6 Block for Compression, Expansion, and Editing Processing	4-16
4.6 Flow of Image Data	4-16
4.6.1 Image Data Flow When Using the Copy Function	4-16
4.6.2 Image Data Flow When Using the Copy Function	4-17
4.6.3 Image Data Flow When Using the BOX Function	4-17
4.6.4 Image Data Flow When Using the BOX Function	4-18
4.6.5 Image Data Flow When Using the SEND Function	4-18
4.6.6 Image Data Flow When Using the SEND Function	4-19
4.6.7 Image Data Flow When Using the FAX Receive Function	4-19
4.6.8 Image Data Flow When Using the FAX Receive Function	4-20
4.6.9 Image Data Flow When Using the PDL Function	4-20
4.6.10 Image Data Flow When Using the PDL Function	4-22
4.7 Parts Replacement Procedure	4-23
4.7.1 Controller Box	4-23
4.7.1.1 Preparation for Removing the Controller Box	4-23
4.7.1.2 Removing the Controller Box	4-23
4.7.2 Main Controller PCB (main)	4-24
4.7.2.1 Preparation for Removing the Main Controller PCB	4-24
4.7.2.2 Removing the Main Controller PCB (Main)	4-24
4.7.2.3 Removing the Main Controller PCB (Main)	4-25
4.7.3 HDD	4-26
4.7.3.1 Preparation for Removing the HDD	4-26
4.7.3.2 Removing the HDD	4-26

4.1 Construction

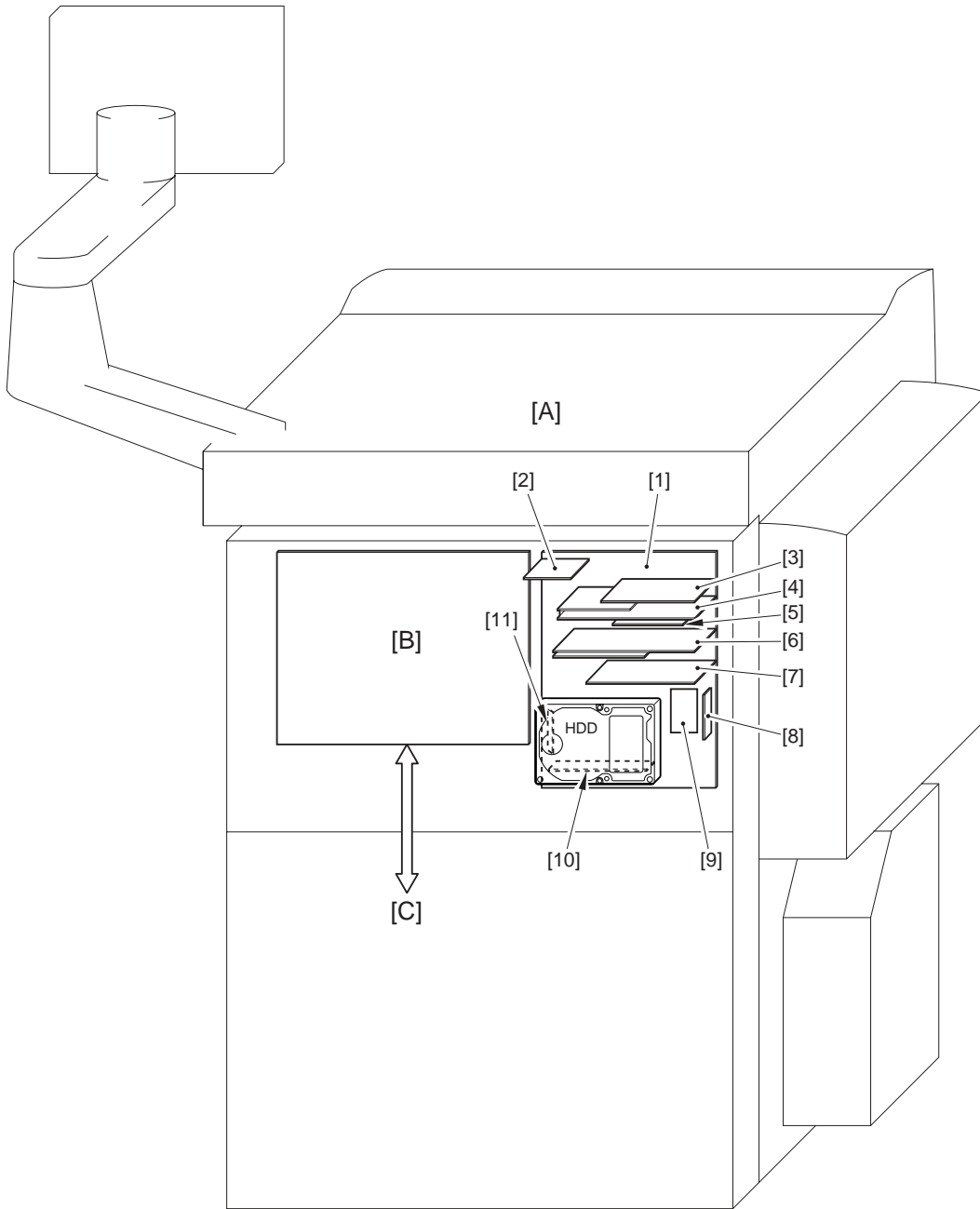
4.1.1 Configuration and Functions

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

The Main Controller primarily has the following configuration and functions.

T-4-1

	PC Board Name	Function
[1]	Main Controller Circuit Board (MAIN)	System control, memory control, and printer output image processing control
[2]	Panel I/F Circuit Board	Operation panel interface control
[3]	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB R-A)	Color space conversion, rotation for electronic sorting, binarization, resolution conversion
[4]	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB PF-A, DE-A)	Image processing for printer output (color space compression, under color removal, log conversion, direct mapping, color balance, fine zoom adjustment, gradation conversion, screen processing, trimming, add-on)
[5]	Relay Circuit Board (Gu-short)	Bus connections (when EFI controller is not connected)
	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB O-B)	EFI controller connection
[6]	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB S-B, ZJ-A)	Scanner interface, scanner image processing (resolution conversion, image rotation, compression/decompression)
[7]	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB LAN-bar-A)	LAN connection, HDD controller, HDD power supply
[8]	BOOT ROM	ROM memory storing the boot program
[9]	SRAM Circuit Board	SRAM mounting
[10]	DDR-SDRAM	Program-related data save, image data save
[11]	LIPS LX Printer & Scanner Kit Circuit Board (RB-A)	LIPS LX Printer & Scanner Kit features add-on (optional)
HDD	HDD	System software storage, image data storage, image data save for BOX/FAX function



F-4-1

- [A] Reader Unit
- [B] DC Controller Circuit Board
- [C] Printer Unit

4.1.2 Configuration and Functions

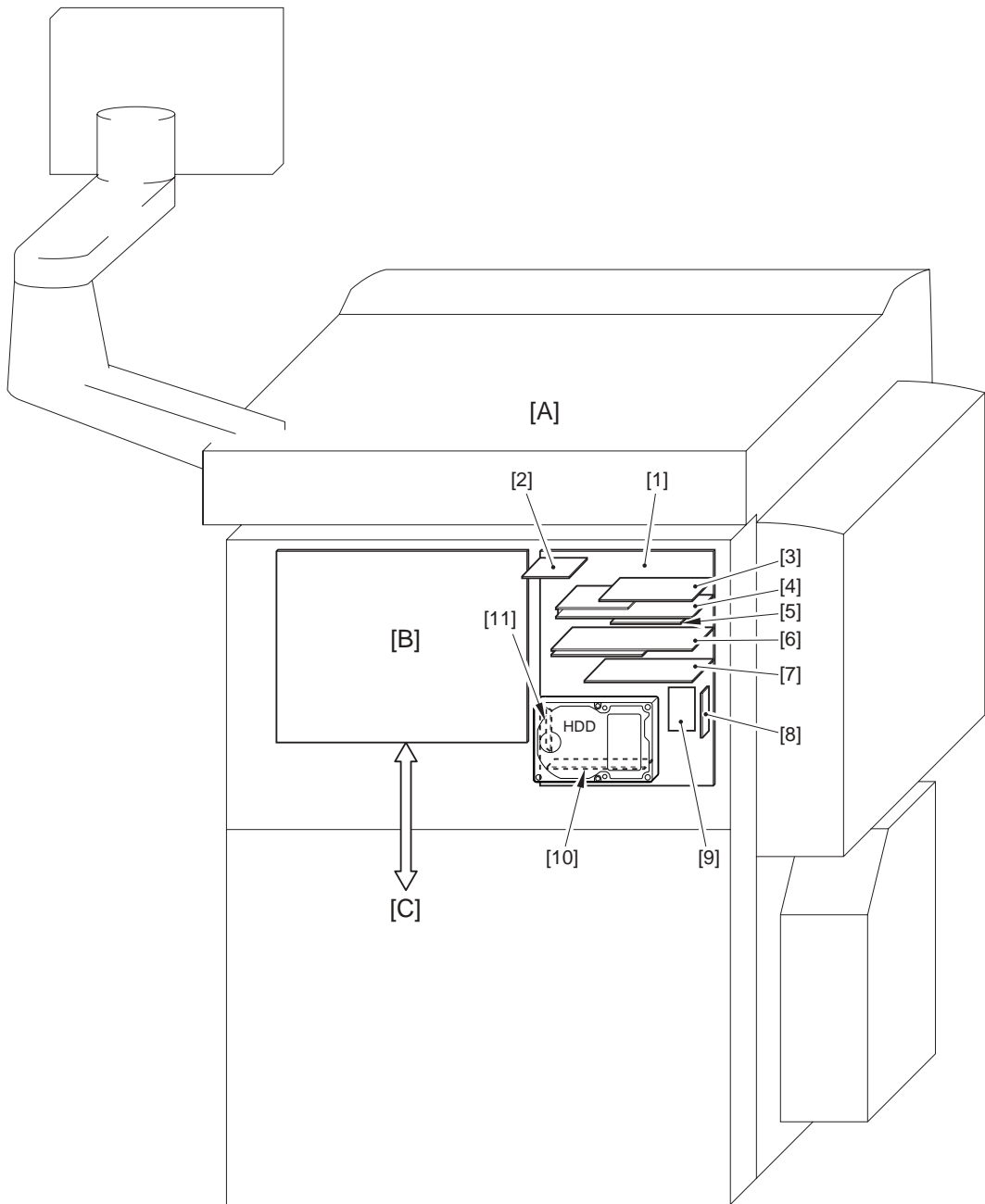
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The Main Controller primarily has the following configuration and functions.

T-4-2

	PC Board Name	Function
[1]	Main Controller Circuit Board (MAIN)	System control, memory control, and printer output image processing control
[2]	Panel I/F Circuit Board	Operation panel interface control
[3]	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB R-A)	Color space conversion, rotation for electronic sorting, binarization, resolution conversion
[4]	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB PPF-A, DQE-A)	Image processing for printer output (color space compression, under color removal, log conversion, direct mapping, color balance, fine zoom adjustment, gradation conversion, screen processing, trimming, add-on)

	PC Board Name	Function
[5]	Relay Circuit Board (Gu-short)	Bus connections (when EFI controller is not connected)
	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB O-B)	EFI controller connection
[6]	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB S-B, ZJ-A)	Scanner interface, scanner image processing (resolution conversion, image rotation, compression/decompression)
[7]	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB LAN-bar-A)	LAN connection, HDD controller, HDD power supply
[8]	BOOT ROM	ROM memory storing the boot program
[9]	SRAM Circuit Board	SRAM mounting
[10]	DDR-SDRAM	Program-related data save, image data save
[11]	LIPS LX Printer & Scanner Kit Circuit Board (RB-A)	LIPS LX Printer & Scanner Kit features add-on (optional)
HDD	HDD	System software storage, image data storage, image data save for BOX/FAX function



F-4-2

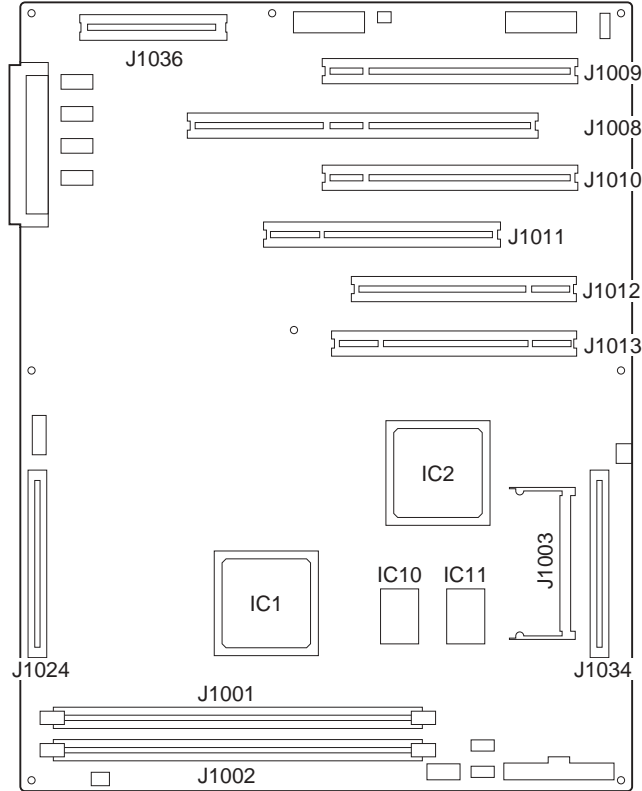
- [A] Reader Unit
- [B] DC Controller Circuit Board

4.2 Construction of the Electrical Circuitry

4.2.1 Main Controller Circuit Board (MAIN)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

The main jacks of the Main Controller Circuit Board (MAIN) are shown below.



F-4-3

T-4-3

J No.	Function
J1001	Image memory (1 GB DDR-SDRAM standard)
J1002	Image memory (512 MB DDR-SDRAM standard)
J1034	BOOTROM connector slot
J1003	SRAM circuit board connector slot
J1009	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB R-A) connector slot
J1008	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB PF-A, DE-A) connector slot
J1010	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB O-B) (optional) connector slot and Relay Circuit Board (Gu-short) connector slot
J1011	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB S-B, ZJ-A) connector slot
J1012	Option board connector slot
J1013	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB LAN-bar-A) connector slot
J1024	LIPS LX Printer & Scanner Kit connector slot (RB-A) (optional)
J1036	Panel I/F Circuit Board slot

T-4-4

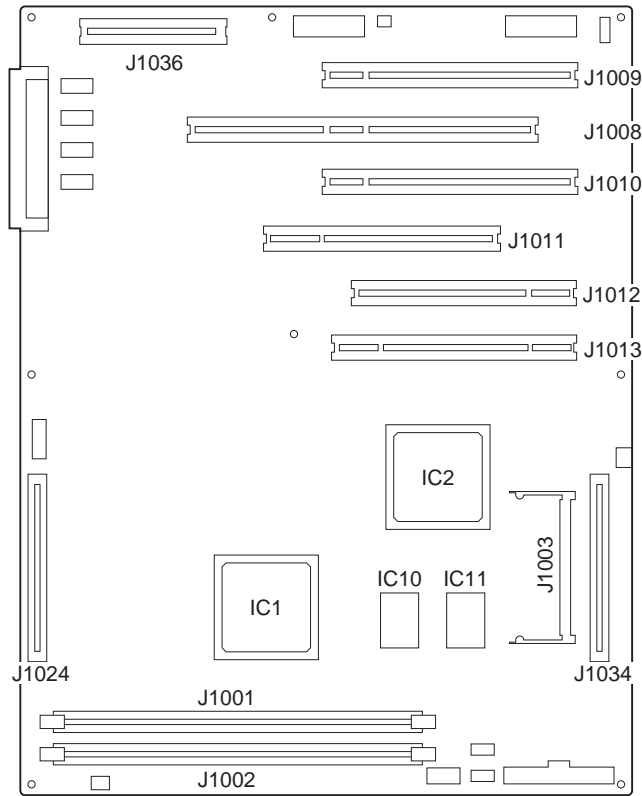
IC No.	Function
IC1(ASIC)	Overall system control, PDL rendering, expansion bus control

IC No.	Function
IC2(ASIC)	Operation panel control, various I/O control
IC10/IC11(SDRAM)	CPU work memory built into IC2

4.2.2 Main Controller Circuit Board (MAIN)

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The main jacks of the Main Controller Circuit Board (MAIN) are shown below.



F-4-4

T-4-5

J No.	Function
J1001	Image memory (1 GB DDR-SDRAM standard)
J1002	Image memory (512 MB DDR-SDRAM standard)
J1034	BOOTROM connector slot
J1003	SRAM circuit board connector slot
J1009	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB R-A) connector slot
J1008	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB PPF-A, DQE-A) connector slot
J1010	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB O-B) (optional) connector slot and Relay Circuit Board (Gu-short) connector slot
J1011	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB S-B, ZJ-A) connector slot
J1012	Option board connector slot
J1013	Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB LAN-bar-A) connector slot
J1024	LIPS LX Printer & Scanner Kit connector slot (RB-A) (optional)
J1036	Panel I/F Circuit Board slot

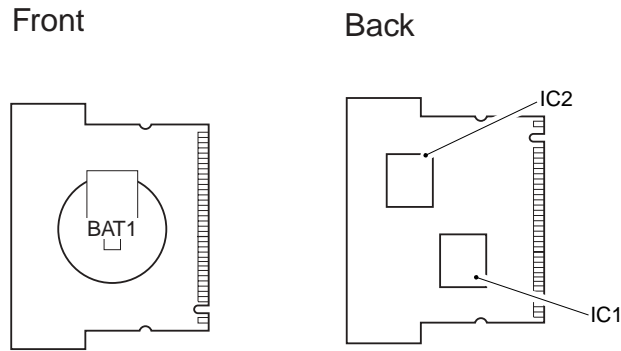
T-4-6

IC No.	Function
IC1(ASIC)	Overall system control, PDL rendering, expansion bus control
IC2(ASIC)	Operation panel control, various I/O control
IC10/IC11(SDRAM)	CPU work memory built into IC2

4.2.3 SRAM Circuit Board

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Primary control of the SRAM Circuit Board is shown below for each IC.



F-4-5
T-4-7

IC No.	Function
IC1, 2 (SRAM)	Saves image data management information, service mode settings data, and user mode settings data saved on the HDD

4.3 Start-Up Sequence

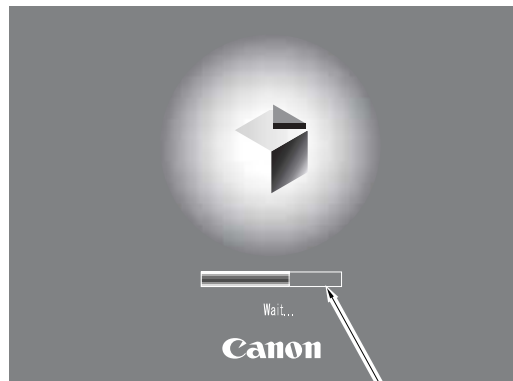
4.3.1 Overview

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

System software used to control this unit is stored on HDD.

At startup, the CPU on the Main Controller Circuit Board loads system software from the HDD into work memory (DDR-SDRAM) on the Main Controller Circuit Board in accordance with the BOOT ROM boot program and launches it.

The screen shown in the figure below is displayed on the Operation Panel while the CPU loads system software from the HDD and during initialization (of memory and other system resources). Progress status is represented by a Progress Bar displayed on-screen.



Progress bar

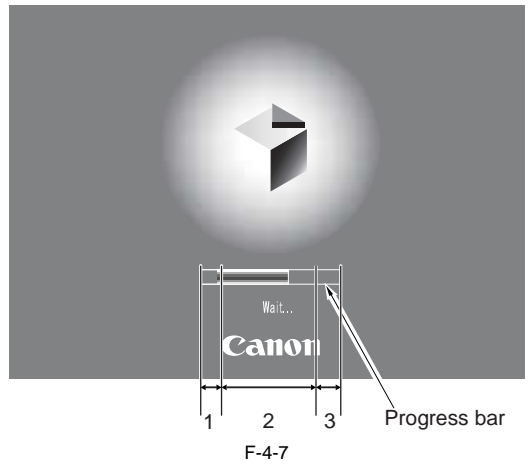
F-4-6



Display of the Progress Bar indicates that the HDD is being accessed. Do not turn off power during this time, as this may lead to malfunction of the HDD (E602).

4.3.2 Startup Sequence

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



1. Boot Program (Section 1)

The boot program is executed by the CPU on the Main Controller Circuit Board when the Main Power Switch is turned ON. A check is made of image memory (DDR-SDRAM) and HDD status. An error code is displayed if any abnormality is detected. If everything is normal, the control program is loaded from the HDD into memory.

2. Control Program 1 (Section 2)

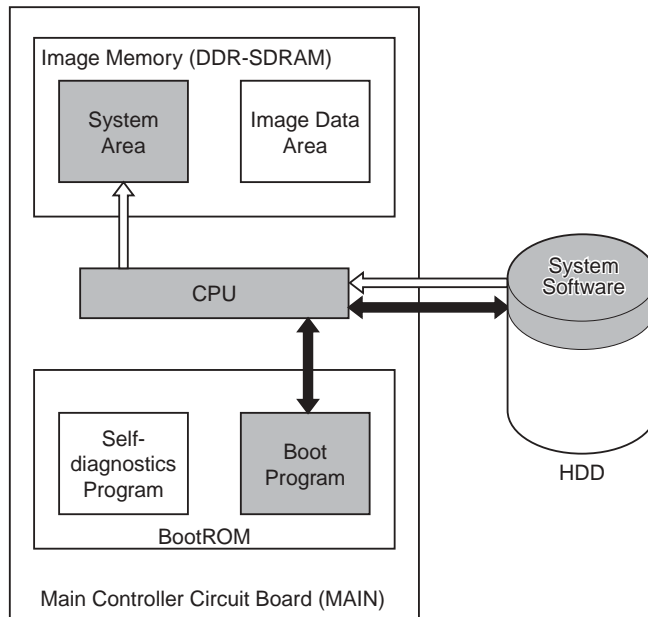
- 1) Each device (each hardware device on the Controller Circuit Board) is checked and initialized.
- 2) System files are restored as necessary if the previous shutdown was not carried out normally. Bootup requires more time than usual in this case.
- 3) Each program module is initialized.

3. Control Program 2 (Section 3)

- 1) The initialization of each software module and configuration of the printer and scanner are completed.
- 2) The startup sequences ends if the printer and scanner are detected normally. If they are not detected normally, a connection timeout occurs and E732/E733 is displayed.

Jobs can be accepted once the startup sequence ends normally.
 (An operation screen is displayed on the Operation Panel and the color of the Start Key LED indicator changes from red to green.)

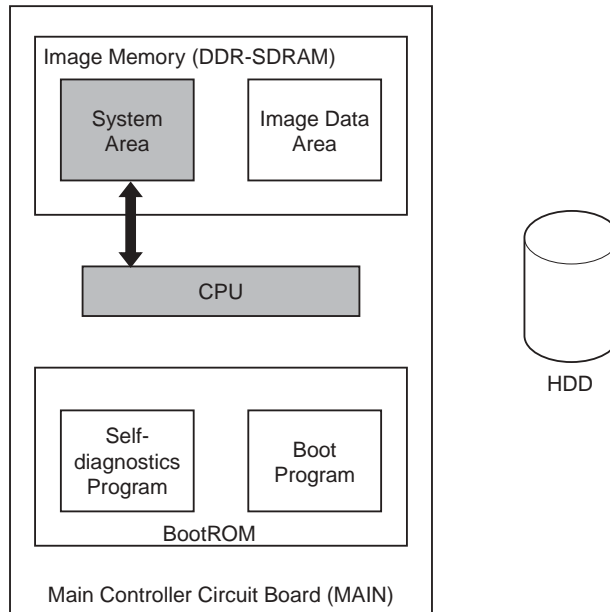
- During Boot Program Execution



↔ : The arrows represent access to the program during execution.
 ← : System Program Flow

F-4-8

- During Control Program Execution



↔ : The arrows represent access to the program during execution.

F-4-9

4.4 Actions when HDD Error

4.4.1 E602 Details

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

E602-XXYY

- When XX = 00

*1

CHK-TYPE = COPIER>FUNCTION>SYSTEM>CHK-TYPE
(Specifies the partitions to be formatted by HD-CLEAR)

HD-CHECK = COPIER>FUNCTION>SYSTEM>HD-CHECK
(Performs Write Abort repairs for the entire HDD when CHK-TYPE = 0)

HD-CLEAR = COPIER>FUNCTION>SYSTEM>HD-CLEAR
(Formats the partitions specified by CHK-TYPE)

XX	YY	Description	Remedy
00	01	HDD cannot be recognized. Boot partition (BOOTDEV) not found during startup.	<p>1. Turn the Main Power Switch OFF and check the HDD cable connection. After confirmation, turn the Main Power Switch ON.</p> <p>2. After turning the Main Power Switch ON, check that the HDD spins up and that 5 V/12 V power is being supplied.</p> <p>3. If the above does not correct the problem, replace the HDD and reinstall the system. If this doesn't work, replace the main board.</p>
	02	No system for main CPU	<p>1. Start the system in Safe Mode (1+7), perform a full format using SST, reinstall the system (System, Lang, RUI), and turn the Main Power Switch OFF and then ON again.</p> <p>2. If the above does not correct the problem, the HDD may be assumed to be damaged, so replace the HDD and reinstall the system.</p>
	03	Write Abort detected for Boot Device	<p>1. Perform Write Abort Sector detect and repair.</p> <p><When a monochrome-related Error Code is displayed> 1-1. Since Service Mode cannot be entered, perform the following procedure.</p> <p>1-2. Turn the power OFF. Turn the power ON again while holding down the 1 and 9 keys. This will automatically start the Write Abort Sector repair routine, causing the screen to go completely black.</p> <p>1-3. Progress status will appear after a short time as this routine takes about 40 to 50 minutes to execute. Execution is done when the screen goes completely white.</p> <p><When wrench mark (normal indication) is displayed> 1-1. Set CHK-TYPE = 0, execute HD-CHECK (takes 40 to 50 minutes), and turn the Main Power Switch OFF and then ON again.</p> <p>2. If the above does not correct the problem, start up in Safe Mode, perform a full format using SST, reinstall the system (System, Lang, RUI), and turn the Main Power Switch OFF and then ON again.</p> <p>3. If the problem is still not corrected, the HDD may be assumed to be damaged, so replace the HDD and reinstall the system.</p>
	06	No system for sub-CPU	<p>1. Start the system in Safe Mode (1+7), perform a full format using SST, reinstall the system (System, Lang, RUI), and turn the Main Power Switch OFF and then ON again.</p> <p>2. If the above does not correct the problem, the HDD may be assumed to be damaged, so replace the HDD and reinstall the system.</p>
	07	No ICCProfile	<p>1. Start the system in Safe Mode (1+7), perform a full format using SST, reinstall the system (System, Lang, RUI), and turn the Main Power Switch OFF and then ON again.</p> <p>2. If the above does not correct the problem, the HDD may be assumed to be damaged, so replace the HDD and reinstall the system.</p>

- When XX = 01 - FF

T-4-9

XX				YY						HDD Format			
XX	CHK-TYPE	Corresponding Partition	Contents	YY=03	YY=05	YY=00, 01, 02, 04	YY=11, 21	YY=13, 25	YY=10, 12, 14, 22, 23, 24				
				Generated at Startup			During Normal Operation						
				Remedy	Remedy	Remedy	Remedy	Remedy	Remedy	Typical Items Deleted	HDD Format during HD-CLEAR	HDD Format during Normal Mode + SST	HDD Format during Safe Mode + SST
1	1	FSTDEV	Image data save area (BOX, etc.)	*1	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12	All accumulated image data, such as BOX, etc.	Possible (3 partitions at once)	Specify FSTDEV (3 partitions at once)	
2		IMG_MNG	Image management data, etc.	*1	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12				
3		FSTCDEV	Image data save area (for Chasing)	*1	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12				
4		THUMDEV	Thumbnail	*1	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12				
5	2	APL_GEN	General-purpose data save area	*1	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12	General	Possible (4 partitions at once)	Specify APL_GEN (4 partitions at once)	
6		TMP_GEN	General-purpose data save area (temporary files)	*1	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12	General			
7		TMP_FAX	FAX (temporary files)	*1	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12	FAX			
8		TMP_PSS	PSS (temporary files)	*1	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12	PSS			
9	3	PDLDEV	PDL-related file save area (fonts, registration forms, color correction information file for ICCProfile-PDL function)	*1	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12	User Font, ICCProfile	Possible	Specify PDLDEV	-
10	4	BOOTDEV	Firmware save area (Bootable, MEAP, key, ID, PDF dictionary, RUI contents, audio dictionary (ICC profile, PS test data))	*3	*8	*9	*10	*11	*12	System	Impossible	Impossible	
11	5	APL_MEAP	MEAP	*1	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12	MEAP	Possible	Possible	
12	6	APL_SEND	Address book, filter	*2	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12	SEND	Impossible	Impossible	
13	7	APL_KEEP	MEAP save data	*3	*8	*9	*10	*11	*12	System	Impossible	Impossible	
14	8	APL_LOG	System log save area	*1	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12	Log	Possible	Possible	
FF	0	Cannot be identified	Overall HDD fault sector check and restore	*4	*7	*9	*10	*11	*12	-	-	-	

	YY	Contents	Remedy
*1	3	Write Abort (during startup)	1. Enter CHK-TYPE for the partition, execute HD-CHECK (may take anywhere from several minutes to several tens of minutes), and then turn the power OFF and then ON again. 2. If the above does not restore the system, enter CHK-TYPE for the partition, execute HD-CLEAR, and turn the Main Power Switch OFF and then ON again.

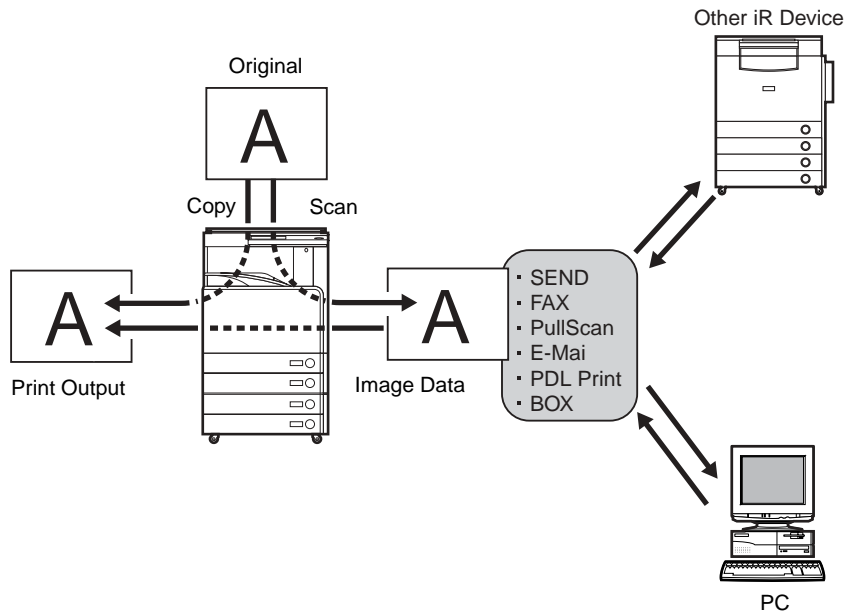
	YY	Contents	Remedy
*2	3	Write Abort (during startup)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If possible, have the user pull up address log data by remote UI. 2. Enter CHK-TYPE for the partition, execute HD-CHECK (may take anywhere from several minutes to several tens of minutes), and then turn the power OFF and then ON again. 3. If the above does not restore the system, enter Download Mode, perform a full format using SST, reinstall the system (System, Lang, RUI), and turn the Main Power Switch OFF and then ON again.
*3	3	Write Abort (during startup)	<p>Repair operations in the boot partition can only be performed when using SST in Safe Mode.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Set CHK-TYPE = 0, execute HD-CHECK (may take several tens of minutes), and then turn the power OFF and then ON again. 2. If the above does not restore the system, enter Download Mode, perform a full format using SST, reinstall the system (System, Lang, RUI), and turn the Main Power Switch OFF and then ON again.
*4	3	Write Abort (during startup)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Set CHK-TYPE = 0, execute HD-CHECK (may take several tens of minutes), and then turn the power OFF and then ON again. 2. If the above does not restore the system, execute HD-CLEAR for CHK-TYPE = 1, 2, 3, 5, and then turn the power OFF and then ON again.
*5	5	File system error	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter CHK-TYPE for the partition, execute HD-CLEAR, and turn the Main Power Switch OFF and then ON again. 2. If the above does not correct the problem, the HDD may be assumed to be damaged, so replace the HDD and reinstall the system.
*6	5	File system error	<p>To prevent the mistaken erasure of information in this partition such as address logs and filter data, HD-CLEAR cannot be executed in Service Mode.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If possible, have the user pull up address log data by remote UI. 2. From Service Mode, enter Download Mode, perform a full format using SST, reinstall the system (System, Lang, RUI), and turn the Main Power Switch OFF and then ON again.
*7	5	File system error	<p>This error is not usually generated.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Execute HD-CLEAR for CHK-TYPE = 1, 2, 3, 5, and then turn the power OFF and then ON again. 2. If the above does not correct the problem, the HDD may be assumed to be damaged, so replace the HDD and reinstall the system.
*8	5	File system error	<p>Repair operations in the boot partition can only be performed when using SST in Safe Mode.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Start the system in Safe Mode, perform a full format using SST, reinstall the system (System, Lang, RUI), and turn the Main Power Switch OFF and then ON again. 2. If the above does not correct the problem, the HDD may be assumed to be damaged, so replace the HDD and reinstall the system.
*9	00, 01, 02, 04	Faulty HDD connection or v x Works system error	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check cables and connectors. 2. If the above does not correct the problem, start the system in Safe Mode, perform a full format using SST, reinstall the system (System, Lang, RUI), and turn the Main Power Switch OFF and then ON again. 3. If the above still does not correct the problem, the HDD may be assumed to be damaged, so replace the HDD and reinstall the system.
*10	11, 21	Faulty HDD connection or similar problem	<p>This error is not usually generated at the read/write level.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check cables and connectors. 2. If the above does not correct the problem, the HDD may be assumed to be damaged, so replace the HDD and reinstall the system.
*11	13, 25	Write Abort	<p>There is a high likelihood that document data such as BOX on the HDD is damaged.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter the CHK-TYPE for the partition, execute HD-CHECK (may take anywhere from several minutes to several tens of minutes), and then turn the power OFF and then ON again. 2. If the above does not restore the system, enter CHK-TYPE for the partition, execute HD-CLEAR, and turn the Main Power Switch OFF and then ON again. (For the BOOTDEV, BOOTDEV2, and APL_SEND partitions, reformat and reinstall using SST.) 3. If the above still does not correct the problem, the HDD may be assumed to be damaged, so replace the HDD and reinstall the system.
*12	10, 12, 14, 22, 23, 24	System error or packet data error	<p>This error is generated due to invalid data or software bug.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Start the system in Safe Mode, perform a full format using SST, reinstall the system (System, Lang, RUI), and turn the Main Power Switch OFF and then ON again. 2. If the above does not correct the problem, the HDD may be assumed to be damaged, so replace the HDD and reinstall the system.

4.5 Image Processing

4.5.1 Image Flow Overview

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Image flow when using the functions of this unit is shown below.

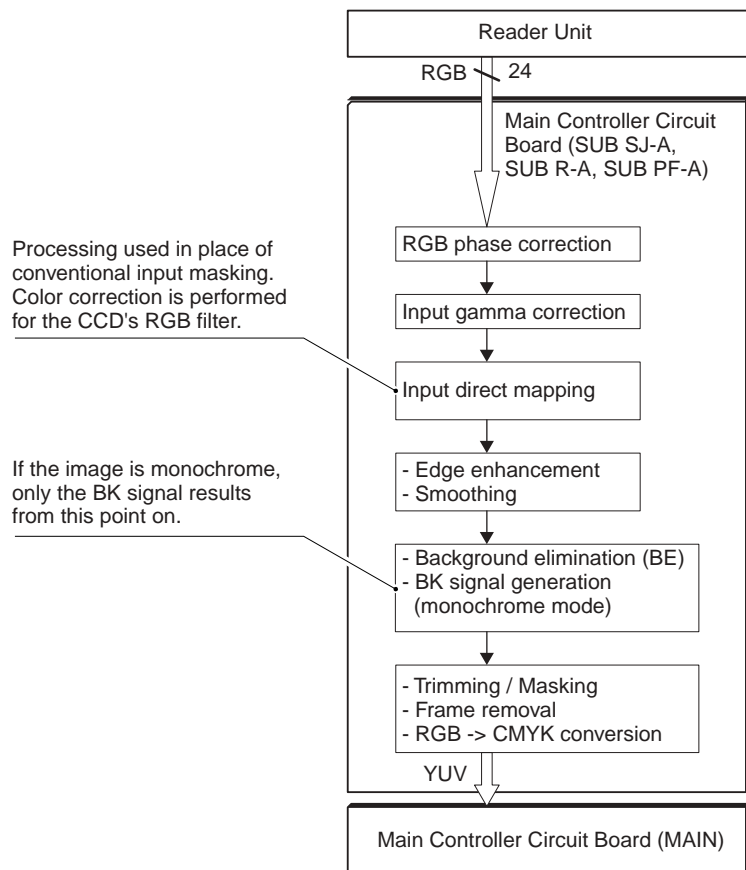


F-4-10

4.5.2 Reader Input Image Processing

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

Image processing of image data (RGB data) scanned by CCD is performed by the Main Controller Circuit Board (SUB SJ-A, SUB R-A, SUB PF-A).

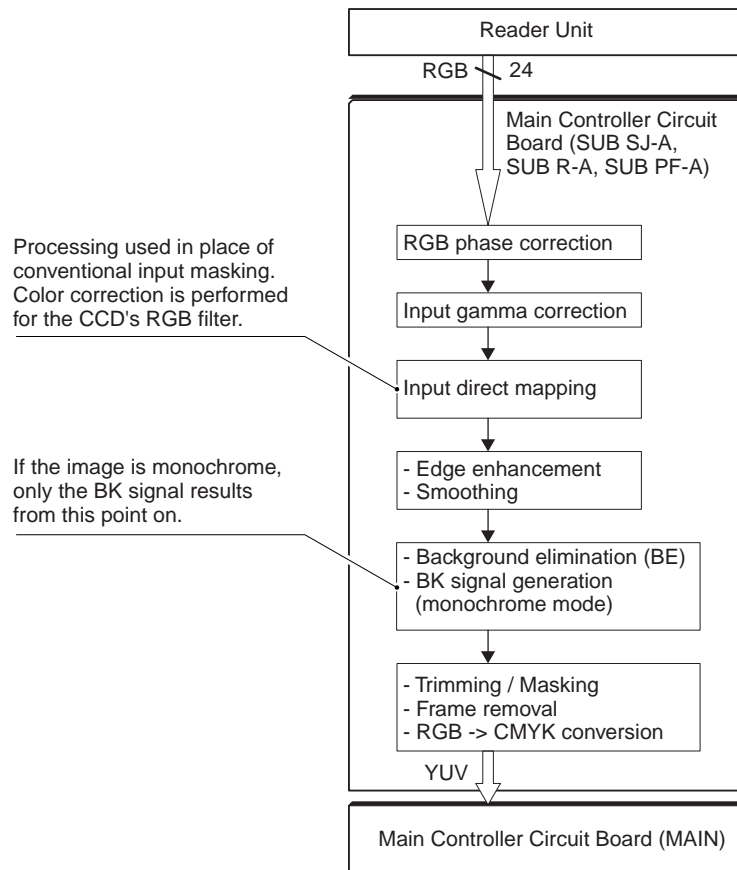


F-4-11

4.5.3 Reader Input Image Processing

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Image processing of image data (RGB data) scanned by CCD is performed by the Main Controller (MAIN, SUB S-B/ZJ-A/R-A/PPF-A/DQE-A).

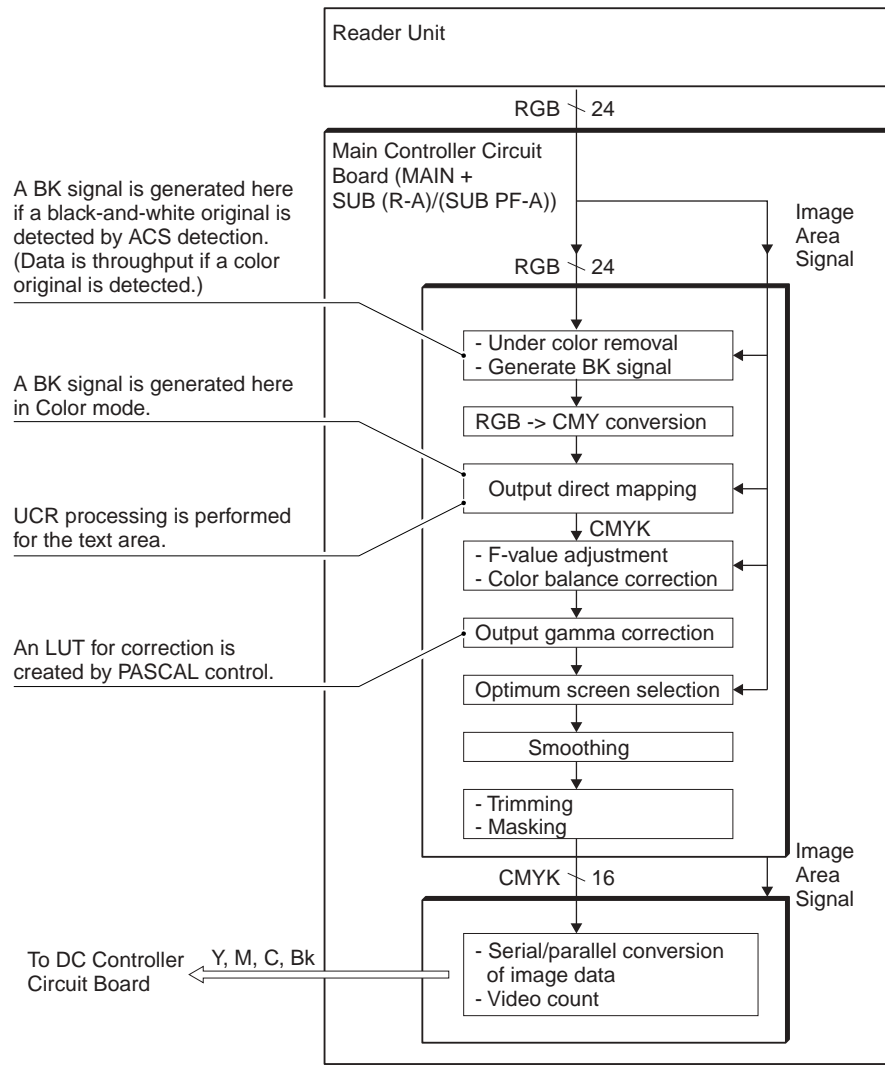


F-4-12

4.5.4 Printer Output Image Processing

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The Main Controller performs image processing on image data received from the Reader Unit so that it may be output to the printer.

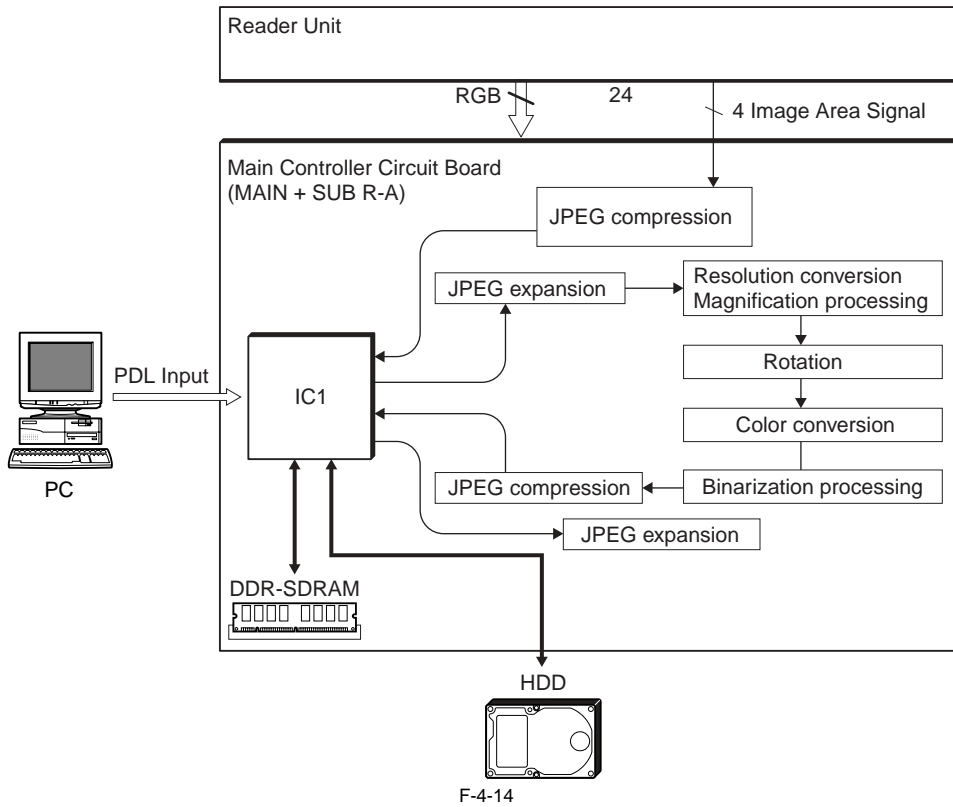


F-4-13

4.5.5 Block for Compression, Expansion, and Editing Processing

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

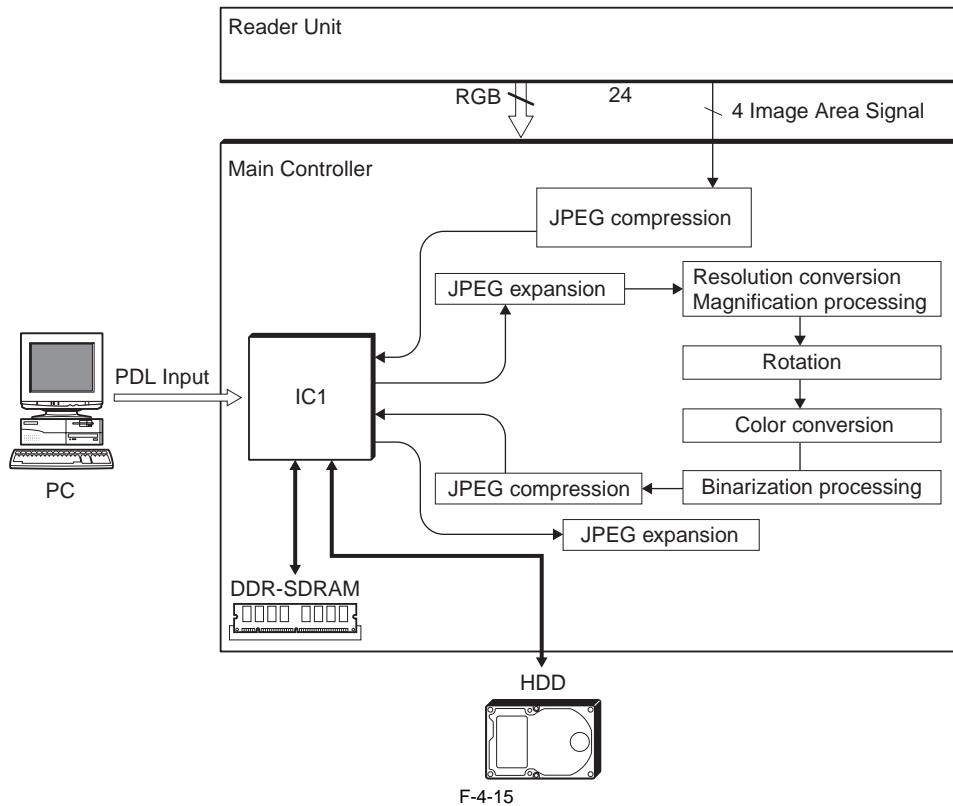
Compression, expansion, and editing processing are performed on the Main Controller Circuit Board.



4.5.6 Block for Compression, Expansion, and Editing Processing

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Compression, expansion, and editing processing are performed on the Main Controller Circuit Board.

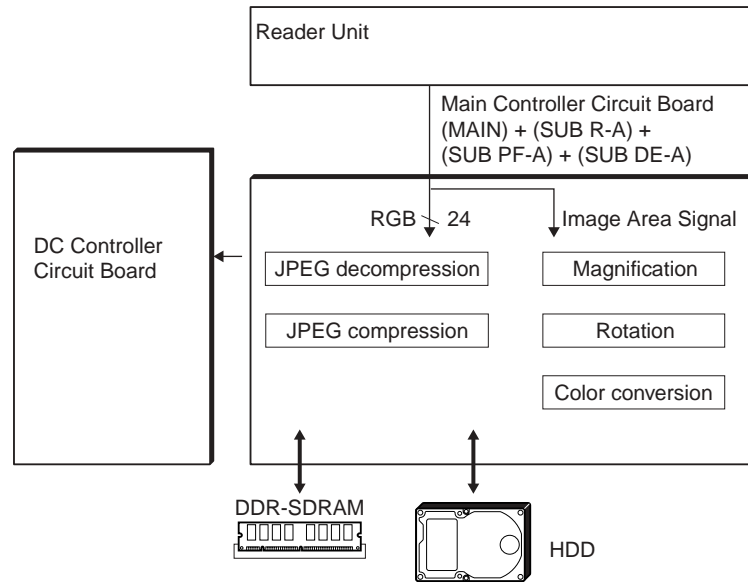


4.6 Flow of Image Data

4.6.1 Image Data Flow When Using the Copy Function

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

Image data flow when using the copy function is shown below.

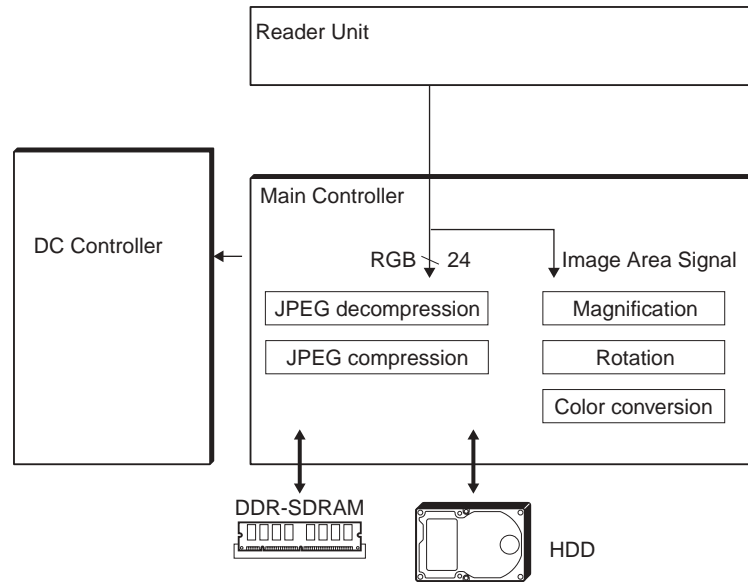


F-4-16

4.6.2 Image Data Flow When Using the Copy Function

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Image data flow when using the copy function is shown below.

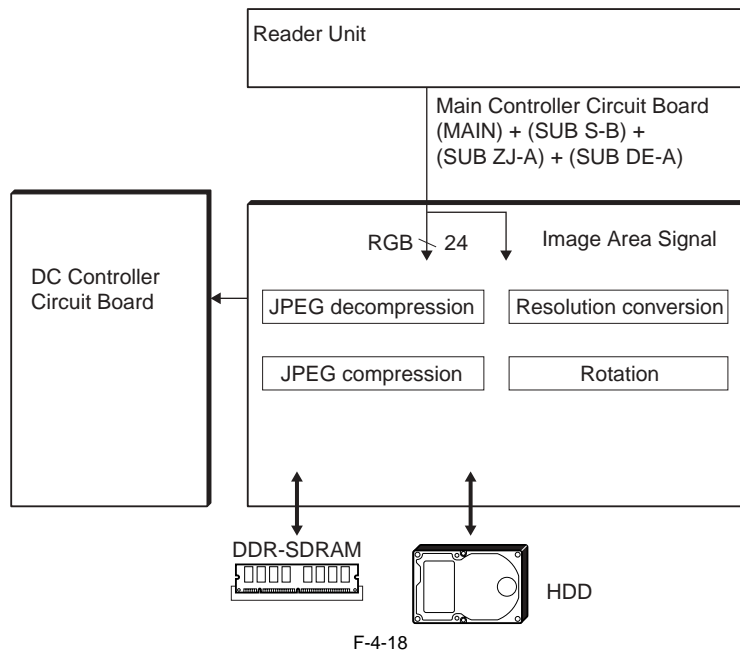


F-4-17

4.6.3 Image Data Flow When Using the BOX Function

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

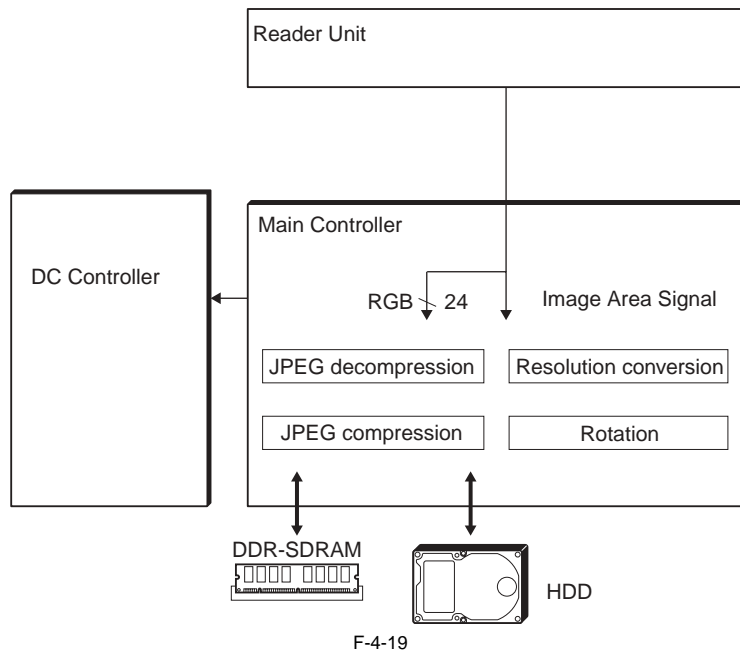
The flow of image data when using the BOX function is shown below.



4.6.4 Image Data Flow When Using the BOX Function

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

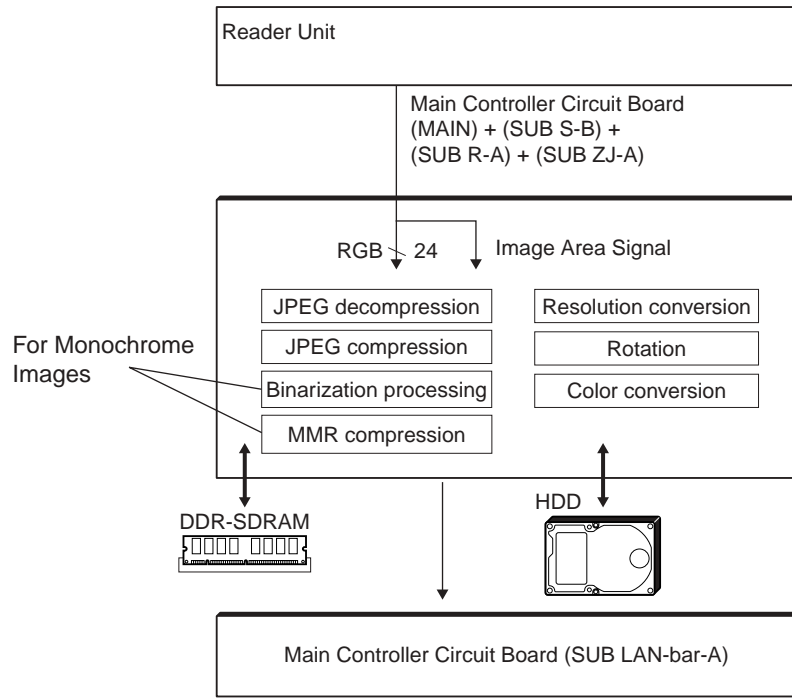
The flow of image data when using the BOX function is shown below.



4.6.5 Image Data Flow When Using the SEND Function

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

The flow of image data when using the SEND function is shown below.

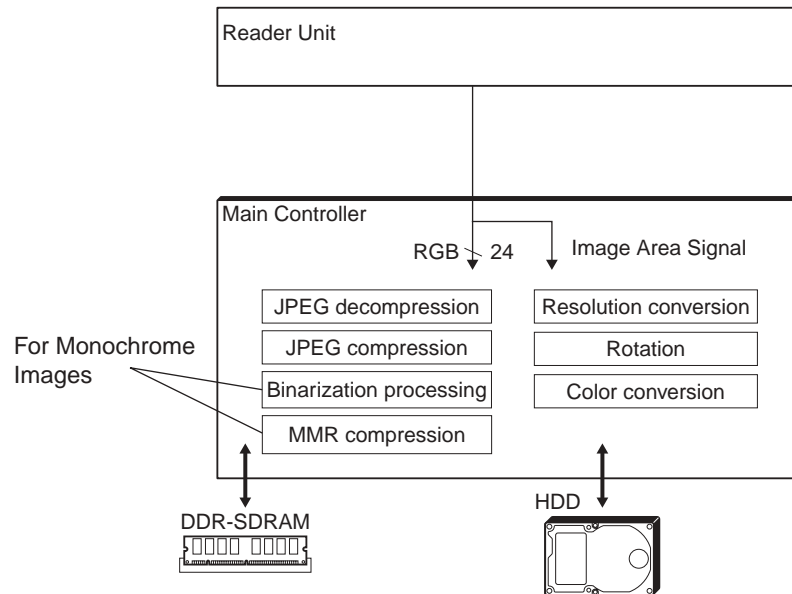


F-4-20

4.6.6 Image Data Flow When Using the SEND Function

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The flow of image data when using the SEND function is shown below.

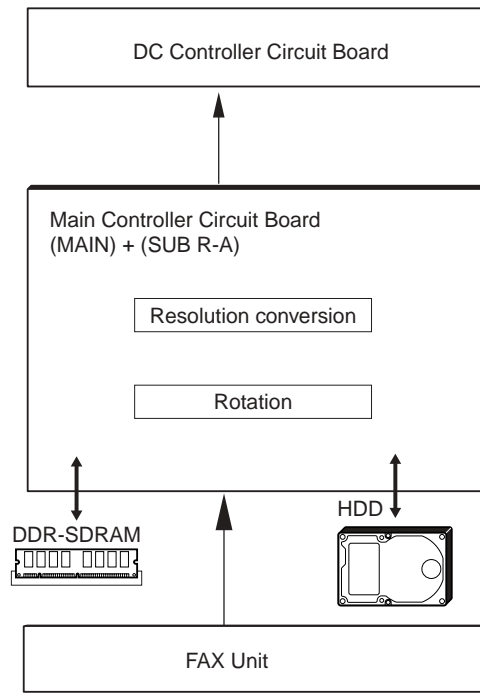


F-4-21

4.6.7 Image Data Flow When Using the FAX Receive Function

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

The flow of image data when using the FAX receive function is shown below.

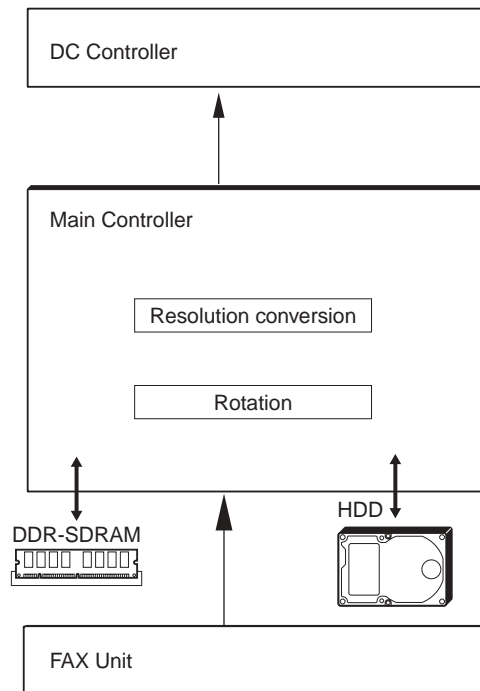


F-4-22

4.6.8 Image Data Flow When Using the FAX Receive Function

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The flow of image data when using the FAX receive function is shown below.

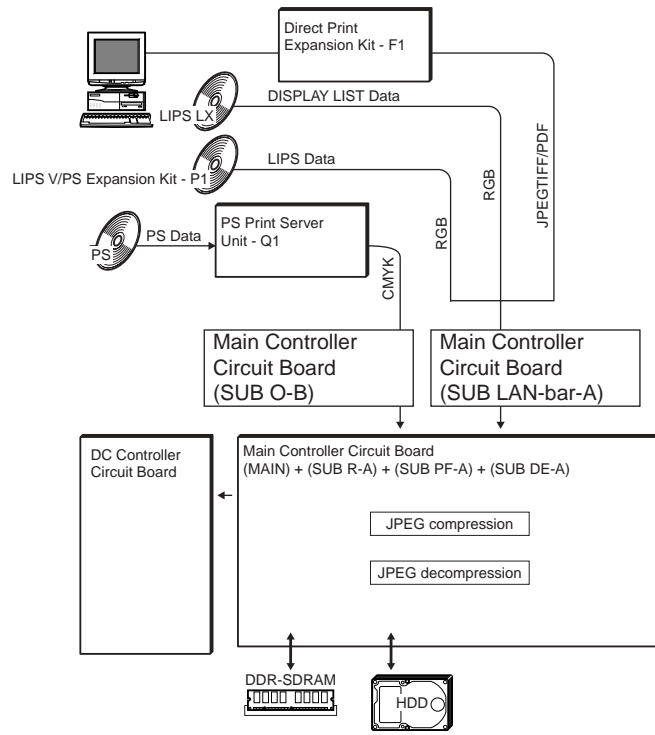


F-4-23

4.6.9 Image Data Flow When Using the PDL Function

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

The flow of image data when using the PDL function is shown below.

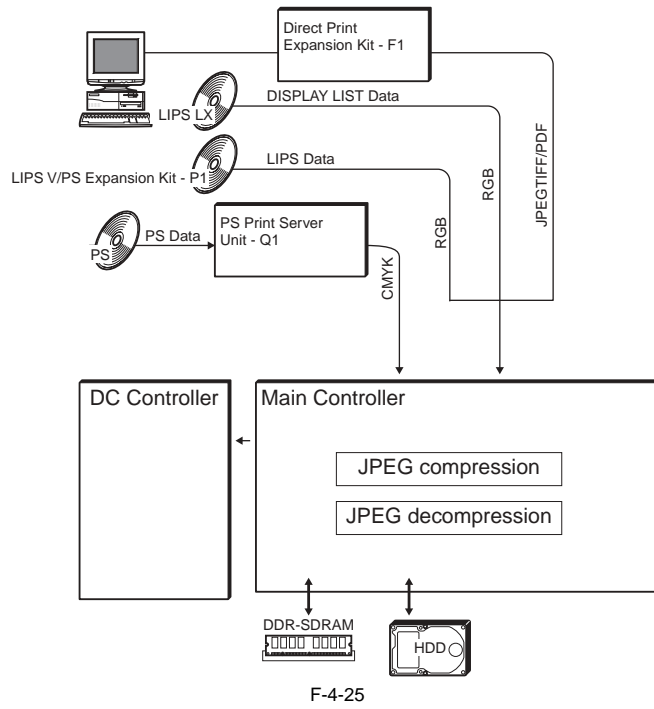


F-4-24

4.6.10 Image Data Flow When Using the PDL Function

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The flow of image data when using the PDL function is shown below.



4.7 Parts Replacement Procedure

4.7.1 Controller Box

4.7.1.1 Preparation for Removing the Controller Box

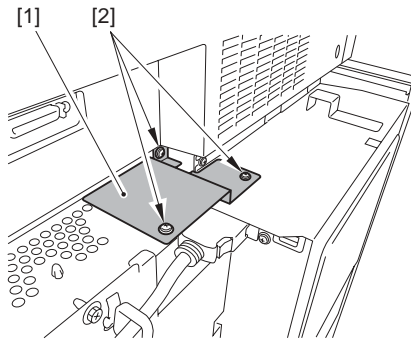
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the left rear upper cover.
- 2) Detach the rear upper cover.

4.7.1.2 Removing the Controller Box

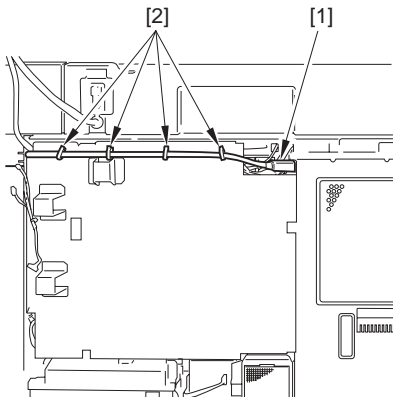
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the grounding plate [1].
- 3 screws [2]



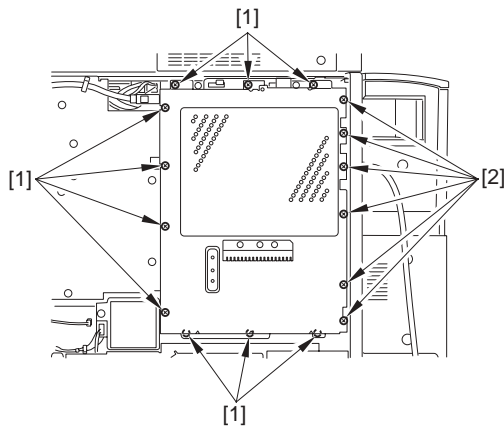
F-4-26

- 2) Disconnect the connector [1].
- 4 clamps [2]



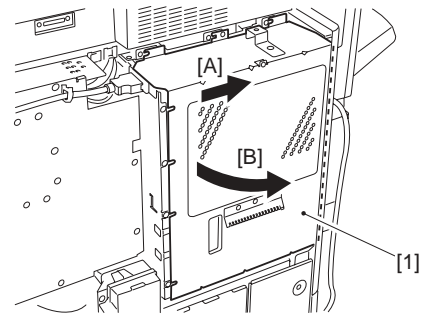
F-4-27

- 3) Loosen the 10 screws [1] on the controller box cover, and then, remove the 6 screws [2].



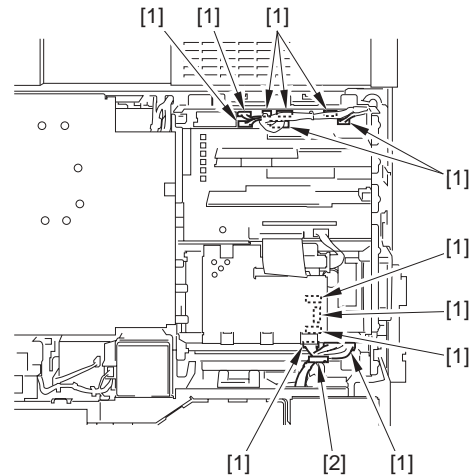
F-4-28

- 4) Slide the controller box cover [1] in the direction of [A], and then, open it in the direction of [B] to detach.



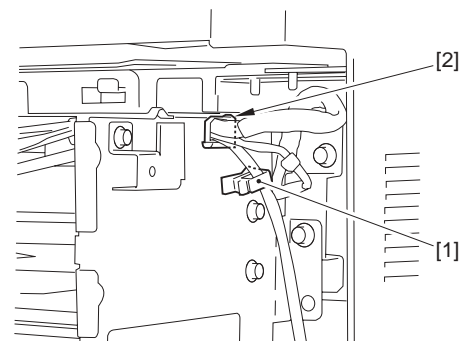
F-4-29

- 5) Disconnect the 12 connectors [1].
- 1 edge saddle [2]



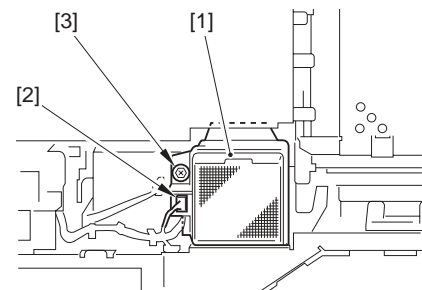
F-4-30

- 6) Remove the 1 clamp [1] and the 1 edge saddle [2].



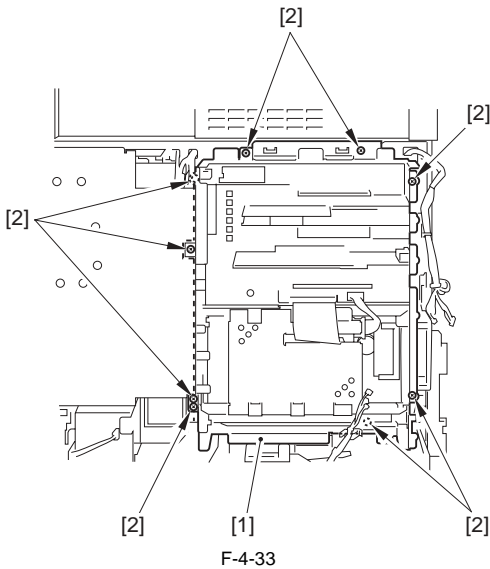
F-4-31

- 7) Detach the main body rear exhaust fan duct [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 1 screw [3]

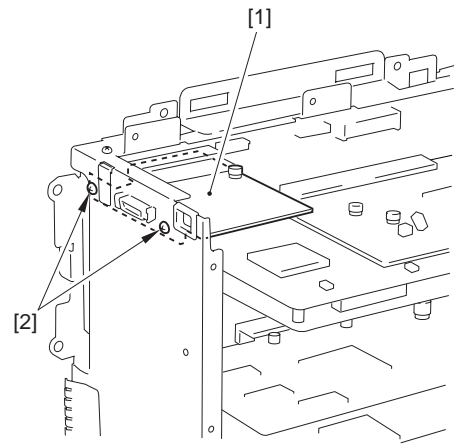


F-4-32

- 8) Detach the controller box [1].
- 9 screws [2]



F-4-33



F-4-35

- 3) Remove the main controller PCB (sub R-A) [1], the main controller PCB (sub PF-A, sub DE-A) [2], the relay PCB (GU-SHORT) [3], the main controller PCB (sub S-B, sub ZJ-A), [4], the main controller PCB (sub LANBAR-A).
 - 10 screws [6]
 - 1 connector [7]

4.7.2 Main Controller PCB (main)

4.7.2.1 Preparation for Removing the Main Controller PCB

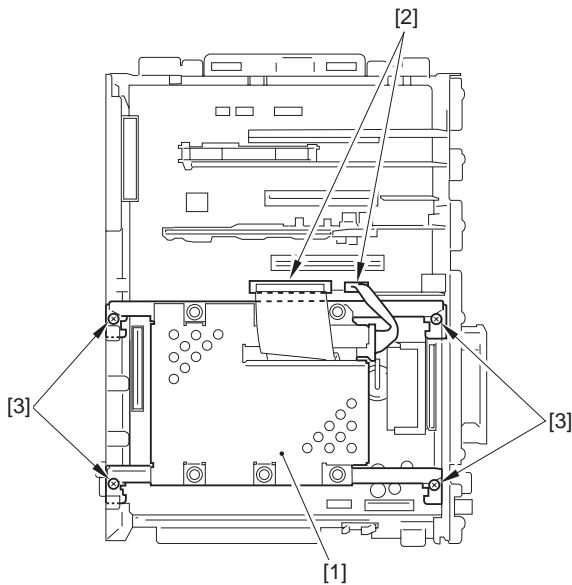
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the left rear upper cover.
- 2) Detach the rear upper cover.
- 3) Detach the controller box. (page 4-23) Reference [Removing the Controller Box]

4.7.2.2 Removing the Main Controller PCB (Main)

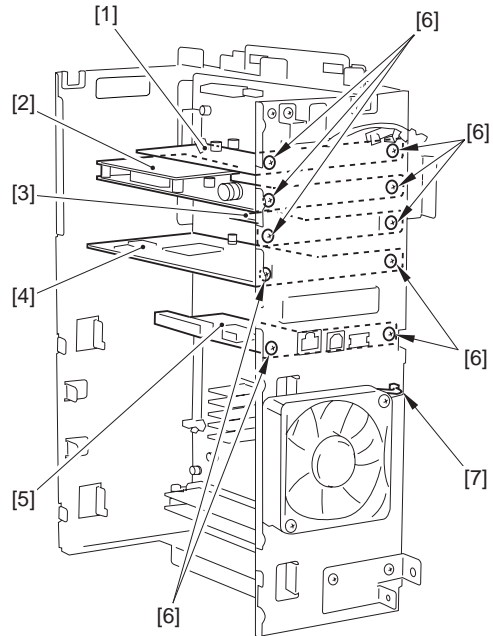
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

- 1) Remove the HDD unit [1] with support sheet metal.
 - 2 connectors [2]
 - 4 screws [3]



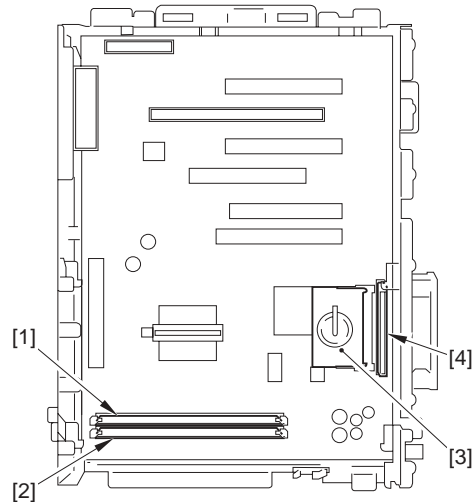
F-4-34

- 2) Remove the TFT converter PCB [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



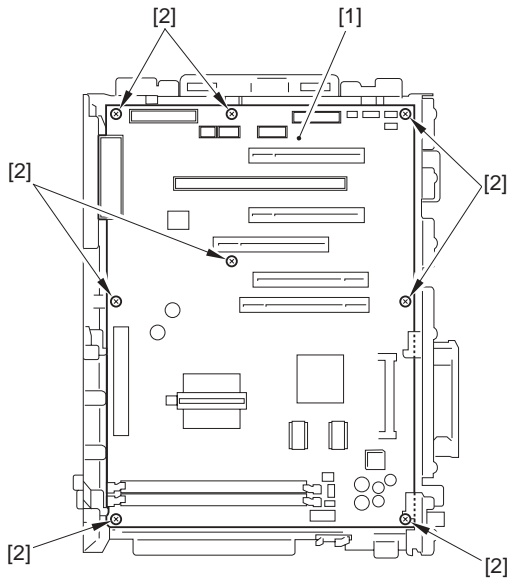
F-4-36

- 4) Remove each 1 memory PCB [1][2], the 1 BOOTROM PCB, the 1 SRAM PCB [4].



F-4-37

- 5) Remove the main controller PCB (main) [1].
 - 8 screws [2]

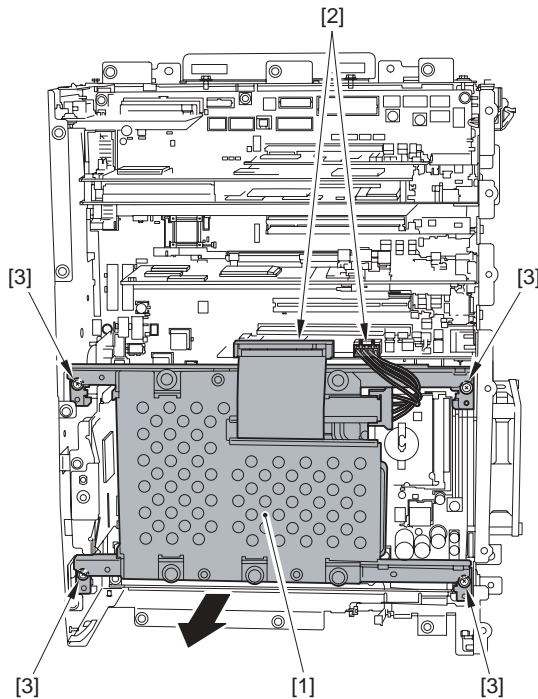


F-4-38

4.7.2.3 Removing the Main Controller PCB (Main)

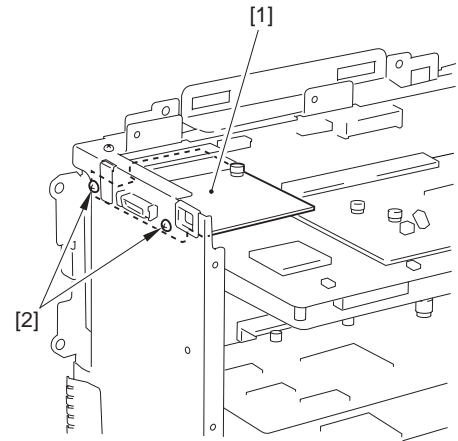
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the HDD unit [1] with support sheet metal.
 - 2 connectors [2]
 - 4 screws [3]



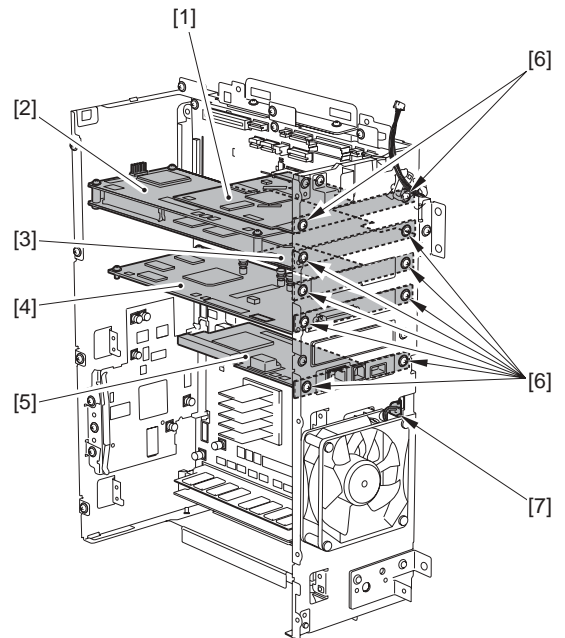
F-4-39

- 2) Remove the TFT converter PCB [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



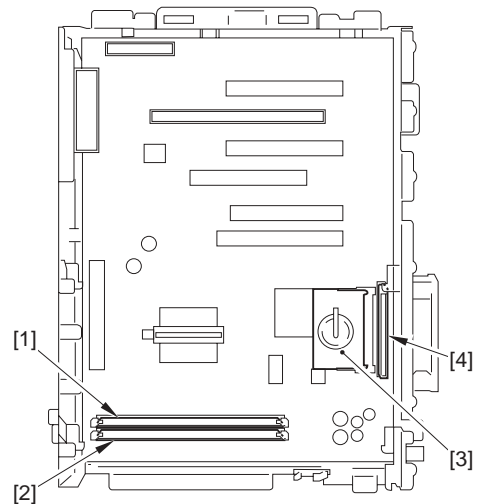
F-4-40

- 3) Remove the main controller PCB (sub R-A) [1], the main controller PCB (PPF-A, DQE-A) [2], the relay PCB (GU-SHORT) [3], the main controller PCB (sub S-B, sub ZJ-A) [4], the main controller PCB (sub LAN-BAR-A) [5].
 - 10 screws [6]
 - 1 connector [7]



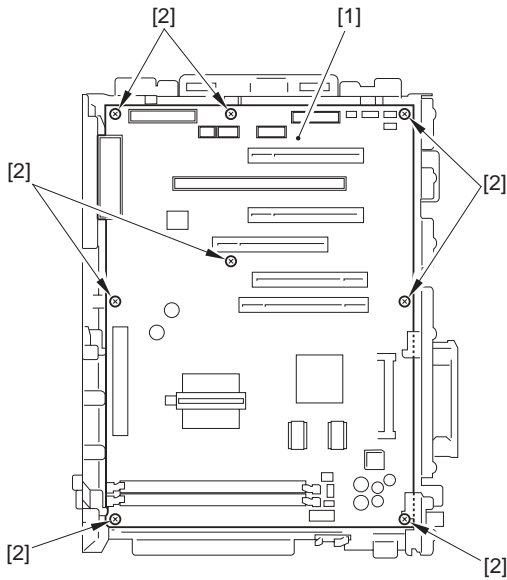
F-4-41

- 4) Remove each 1 memory PCB [1][2], the 1 BOOTROM PCB [3], the 1 SRAM PCB [4].



F-4-42

- 5) Remove the main controller PCB (main) [1].
 - 8 screws [2]



F-4-43

4.7.3 HDD

4.7.3.1 Preparation for Removing the HDD

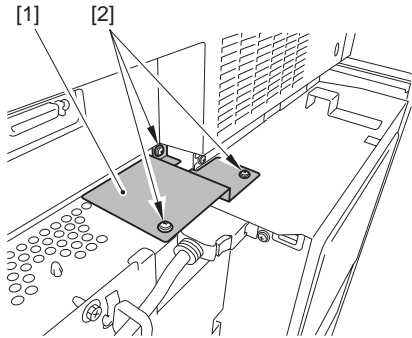
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the left rear upper cover.
- 2) Detach the rear upper cover.

4.7.3.2 Removing the HDD

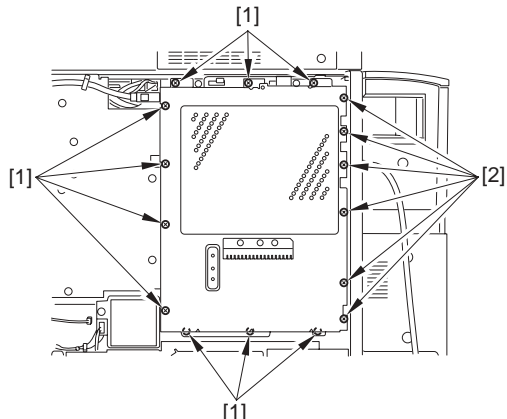
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the grounding plate [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-4-44

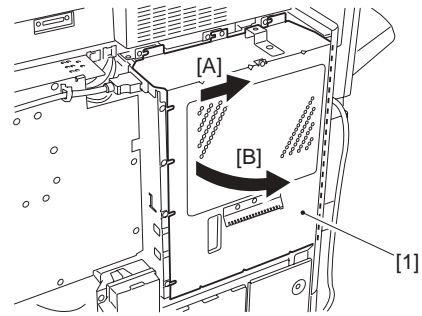
- 2) Loosen the 10 screws [1] on the controller box cover, and then, remove the 6 screws [2].



F-4-45

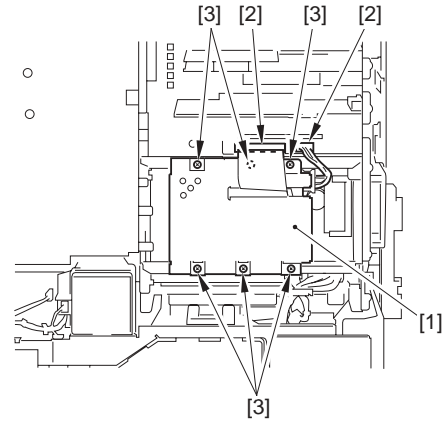
- 3) Slide the controller box cover [1] in the direction of [A], and then, open it

in the direction of [B] to detach.



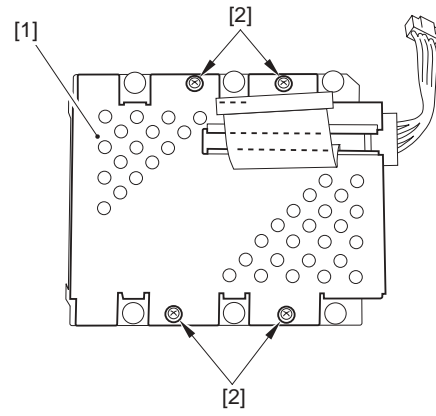
F-4-46

- 4) Remove the HDD unit [1].
- 2 connectors [2]
- 6 screws [3]



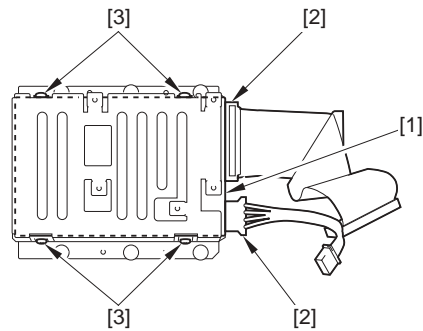
F-4-47

- 5) Detach the cover [1].
- 4 screws [2]



F-4-48

- 6) Remove the HDD [1].
- 2 connectors [2]
- 4 screws [3]



F-4-49



The HDD is vulnerable to vibration and shock and must be handled with

great care after it has been removed.

When placing the HDD on the floor or on a table, try to be as gentle as possible. It is better to place the HDD on a thick blanket or other shock absorbent material, rather than directly onto a surface.

Chapter 5 Original Exposure System

Contents

5.1 Construction	5-1
5.1.1 Specifications, Control Mechanisms, and Functions	5-1
5.1.2 Major Components	5-1
5.1.3 Construction of the Control System	5-3
5.1.4 Reader Controller PCB	5-3
5.2 Basic Sequence	5-4
5.2.1 Basic Sequence of Operation at Power-On	5-4
5.2.2 Basic Sequence of Operation in Response to a Press on the Start Key	5-4
5.3 Various Control Mechanisms	5-6
5.3.1 Controlling the Scanner Drive System	5-6
5.3.1.1 Overview	5-6
5.3.1.2 Controlling the Scanner Motor	5-6
5.3.2 Enlargement/Reduction	5-7
5.3.2.1 Changing the Magnification in Main Scanning Direction	5-7
5.3.2.2 Changing the Magnification in Sub Scanning Direction	5-7
5.3.3 Controlling the Scanning Lamp	5-7
5.3.3.1 Overview	5-7
5.3.3.2 Scanning Lamp	5-8
5.3.3.3 Turning On and Off the Scanning Lamp	5-8
5.3.4 Detecting the Size of Originals	5-8
5.3.4.1 Identifying the Size of Originals	5-8
5.3.4.2 Points of Measurement Used for Original Size Identification	5-8
5.3.4.3 Overview of Operation	5-10
5.3.5 Dirt Sensor Control	5-11
5.3.5.1 Dust Detection Control at Stream Reading	5-11
5.3.5.2 White Plate Dust Detection Control	5-12
5.3.6 Image Processing	5-13
5.3.6.1 Overview	5-13
5.3.6.2 CCD Drive	5-14
5.3.6.3 CCD Gain Correction, Offset Correction	5-15
5.3.6.4 CCD Output A/D Conversion	5-15
5.3.6.5 Outline of Shading Correction	5-15
5.3.6.6 Shading Adjustment	5-15
5.3.6.7 Shading Correction	5-15
5.4 Parts Replacement Procedure	5-16
5.4.1 DADF	5-16
5.4.1.1 Removing the DADF (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-16
5.4.2 Copyboard Glass	5-16
5.4.2.1 Removing the Copyboard Glass (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-16
5.4.2.2 Scanner Parts Replacement Procedure (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-16
5.4.3 Replacement of Standard White Plate	5-16
5.4.3.1 Removing the Standard White Plate (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-16
5.4.3.2 Scanner Parts Replacement Procedure (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-17
5.4.4 Exposure Lamp	5-17
5.4.4.1 Preparation for Removing the Scanner Lamp (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-17
5.4.4.2 Removing the Scanner Lamp (imagePRESS C1 Series)	5-17
5.4.4.3 Removing the Scanner Lamp (imagePRESS C1 Series)	5-19
5.4.4.4 Removing the Scanner Lamp (imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-21
5.4.5 Reader Controller PCB	5-24
5.4.5.1 Preparation for Removing the Reader Controller PCB (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-24
5.4.5.2 Removing the Reader Controller PCB (imagePRESS C1 Series)	5-24
5.4.5.3 Removing the Reader Controller PCB (imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-25
5.4.5.4 Procedure after Replacement of the Reader Controller PCB (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)	5-27

5.4.6 Interface PCB.....	5-27
5.4.6.1 Removing the Interface PCB.....	5-27
5.4.7 Inverter PCB.....	5-28
5.4.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Inverter PCB (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-28
5.4.7.2 Removing the Inverter PCB (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	5-28
5.4.7.3 Removing the Inverter PCB (imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-29
5.4.8 CCD Unit.....	5-31
5.4.8.1 Preparation for Removing the CCD Unit (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-31
5.4.8.2 Removing the CCD Unit (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	5-31
5.4.8.3 Removing the CCD Unit (imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-32
5.4.8.4 Scanner Parts Replacement Procedure (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-34
5.4.9 Scanner Motor.....	5-34
5.4.9.1 Preparation for Removing the Scanner Motor (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-34
5.4.9.2 Removing the Scanner Motor (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	5-34
5.4.9.3 Removing the Scanner Motor (imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-35
5.4.9.4 Attaching the Scanner Motor (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-36
5.4.10 ADF Open/Close Sensor.....	5-36
5.4.10.1 Removing the ADF Open/Close Sensor (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	5-36
5.4.10.2 Removing the ADF Open/Close Sensor(imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-37
5.4.11 Scanner Home Position Sensor.....	5-38
5.4.11.1 Removing the Scanner Home Position Sensor (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	5-38
5.4.11.2 Removing the Scanner Home Position Sensor (imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-39
5.4.12 Original Sensor.....	5-40
5.4.12.1 Preparation for Removing the Original Size Sensor (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-40
5.4.12.2 Removing the Original Size Sensor (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	5-40
5.4.12.3 Removing the Original Size Sensor (imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-41
5.4.13 Scanner Drive Cable.....	5-42
5.4.13.1 Preparation for Removing the Scanner Motor Drive Wire (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-42
5.4.13.2 Removing the Scanner Drive Wire (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	5-42
5.4.13.3 Removing the Scanner Drive Wire (imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-46
5.4.13.4 Attaching the Scanner Drive Wire (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-50
5.4.13.5 Adjustment of Positions of the Mirror 1, 2 Mount (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series).....	5-50
5.4.13.6 Points to Note When Attaching the Control Panel (imagePRESS C1 Series).....	5-51

5.1 Construction

5.1.1 Specifications, Control Mechanisms, and Functions

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The original scanning system is characterized by the following specifications, control mechanisms, and functions:

T-5-1

Item	Description
Scanning lamp	xenon lamp
Original scan	book mode: scanning by moving the scanner
	ADF in use (simplexing): scanning by moving the original (stream reading mode) ADF in use (duplexing): scanning by moving the scanner (copyboard mode)
Reading resolution	600 (main scanning) x 600 dpi (sub scanning)
Number of gradations	256
Scanner position detection	by scanner HP sensor
Lens	single-focus, fixed in place
Magnification	copyboard mode: 100%, 50%
	ADF mode: 100%, 50%
	sub scanning direction: image processing by controller
	main scanning direction: image processing by controller
Scanner drive control	No. 1/No. 2 mirror base: by pulse motor
Scanning lamp activation control	[1] by inverter circuit
	[2] by error detection
Original size identification	[1] Book Mode
	sub scanning direction: image processing by controller
	main scanning direction: by CCD
	[2] ADF in Use
	main scanning direction: by slide guide in ADF
	sub scanning direction: by photosensor in ADF

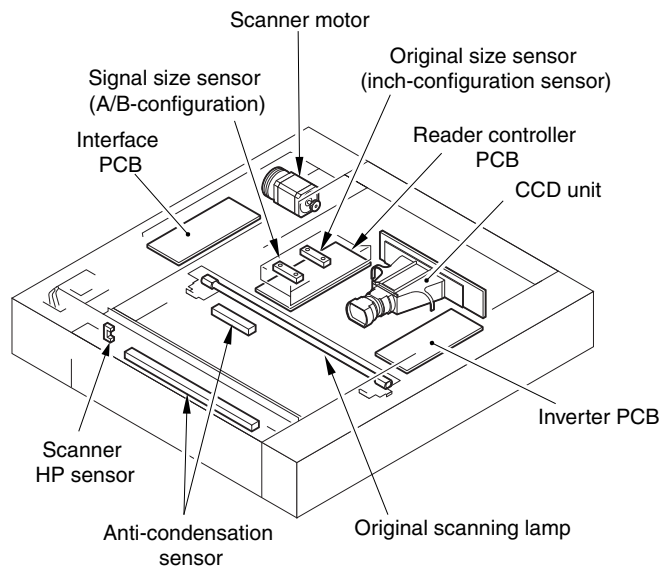
5.1.2 Major Components

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

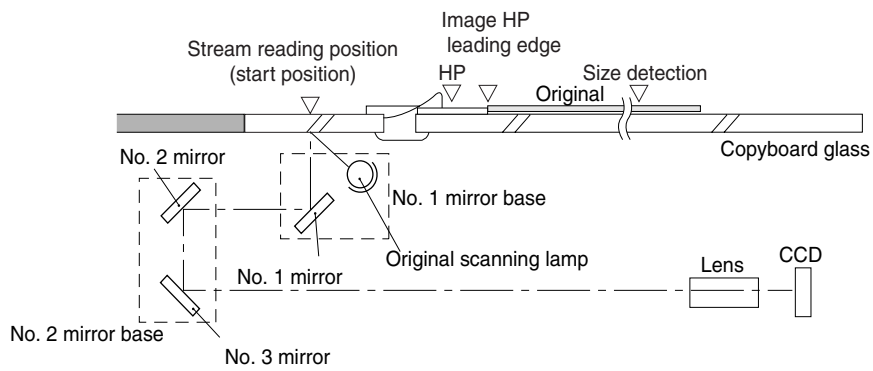
The scanning system consists of the following major components:

T-5-2

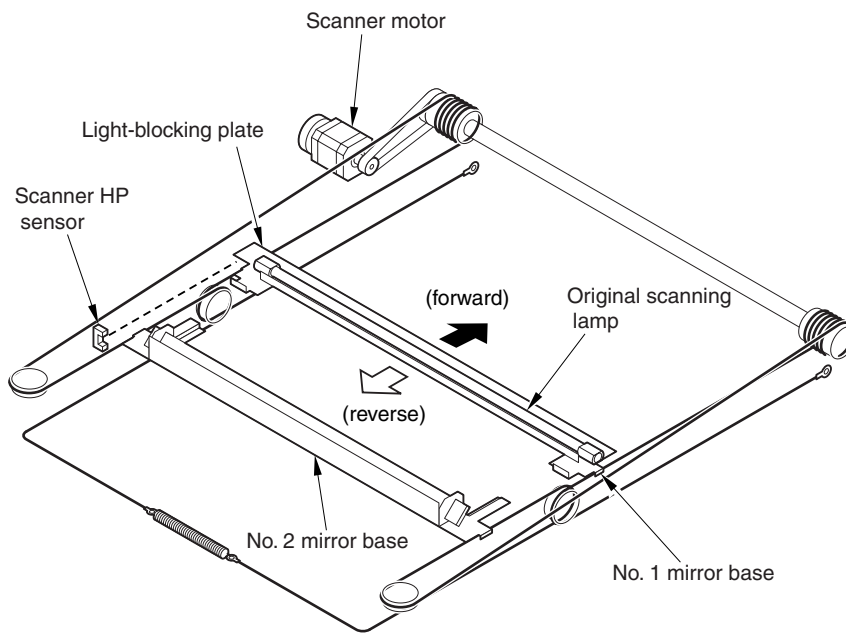
Item	Notation	Description
Scanning lamp	LA1	xenon tube (120,000 lx)
Scanner motor	M501	2-phase pulse motor (pulse control)
Reader cooling fan 2	FM1	cools the reader unit (if DF present)
Reader cooling fan 1	FM2	cools the reader unit (if DF present)
ADF open/closed sensor	PS501	ADF state (open/closed) detection (at angle of 25 deg)
Scanner HP sensor	PS502	detects scanner home position
Original size sensor (AB-configuration)	CF1	detects size in sub scanning direction (AB-configuration)
Original size sensor (INCH-configuration)	CF2	detects size in sub scanning direction (INCH-configuration)
Mirror	---	No. 1/No. 2/No. 3 mirror
Inverter PCB	---	operates scanning lamp
CCD unit	---	reads images, processes analog image data
reader controller PCB	---	controls reader as a whole, processes digital image data



F-5-1



F-5-2

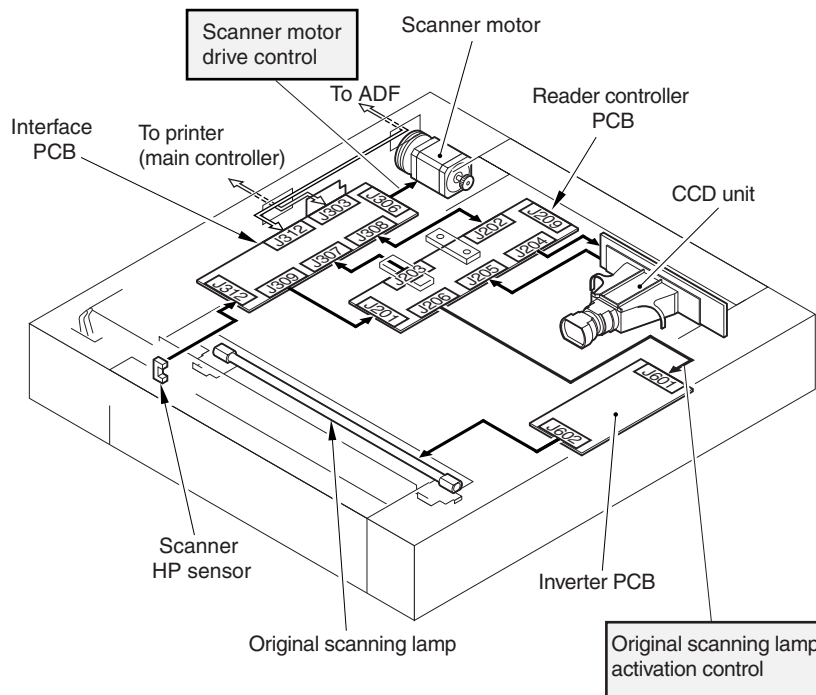


F-5-3

5.1.3 Construction of the Control System

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The following shows the construction of the control system of the original exposure system:

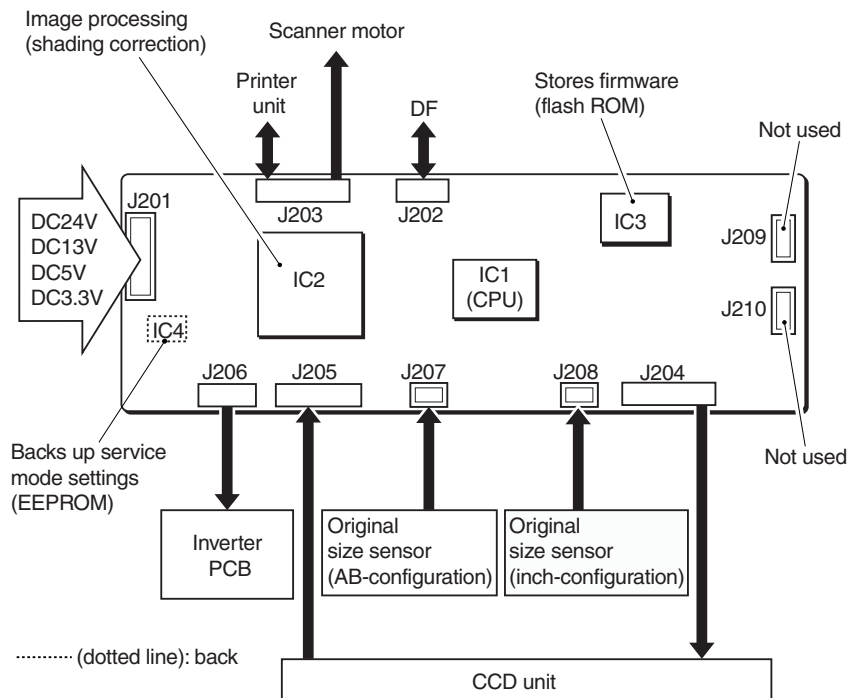


F-5-4

5.1.4 Reader Controller PCB

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The following shows the functional construction of the reader controller PCB:



F-5-5
T-5-3

Jack No	Description
J201	used for the power from the machine (printer unit).
J202	used for the power from the machine (printer unit).

Jack No	Description
J203	used for communications with the printer unit (connection with the scanner motor). used for communications with the ADF (image signal input).
J204	used for connection with the CCD unit.
J205	used for communication with the CCD unit.
J206	used for connection with the inverter PCB.
J207	used for connection with the original size sensor (AB-configuration).
J208	used for connection with the original size sensor (inch-configuration).
J209	not used
J210	not used.

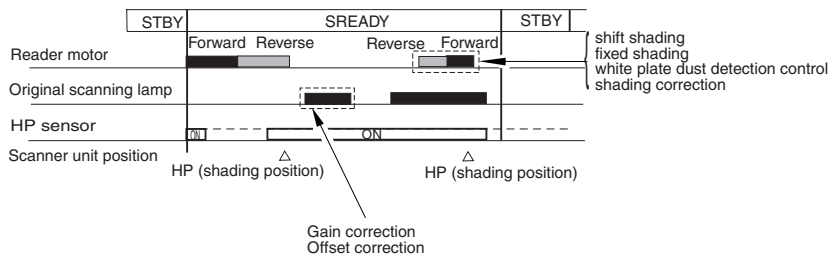
T-5-4

IC	Description
IC1	CPU (stores boot program)
IC2	ASCI (built-in RAM)
IC3	flash RAM (stores firmware)
IC4	EEPROM (backs up service mode settings)

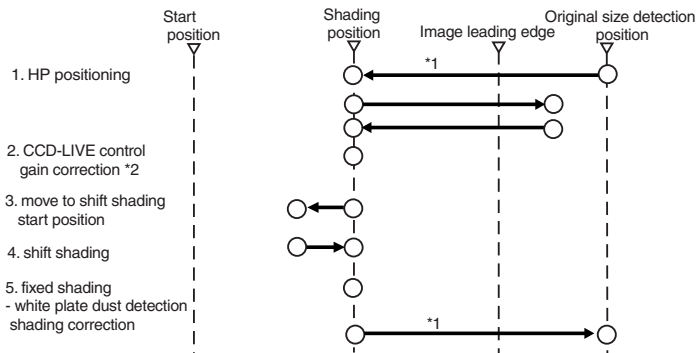
5.2 Basic Sequence

5.2.1 Basic Sequence of Operation at Power-On

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



F-5-6



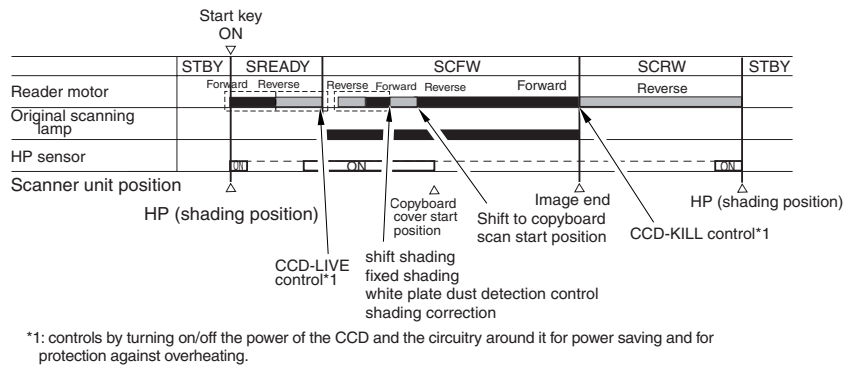
*1: shifts only if the copyboard (ADF) is open.
*2: controls by turning on/off the power of the CCD and the circuitry around it for power saving and for protection against overheating.

F-5-7

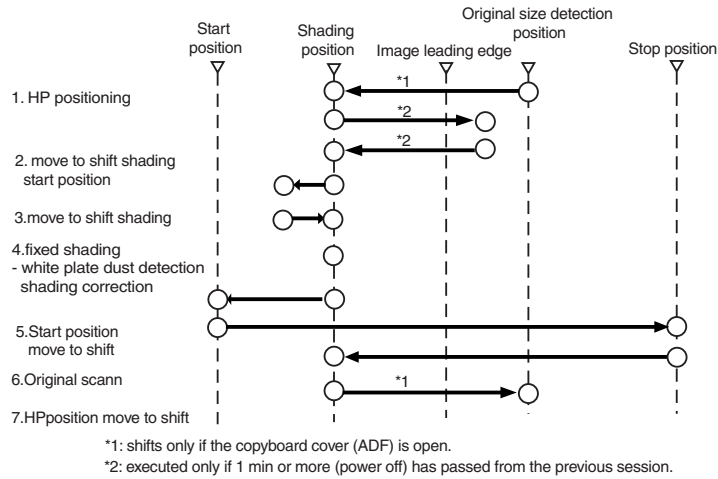
5.2.2 Basic Sequence of Operation in Response to a Press on the Start Key

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Basic Sequence of Operation in Response to a Press on the Start Key (book mode; 1 original)

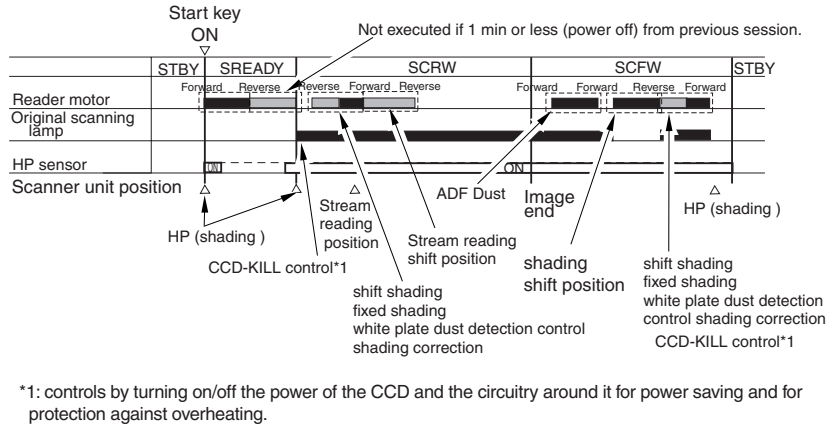


F-5-8

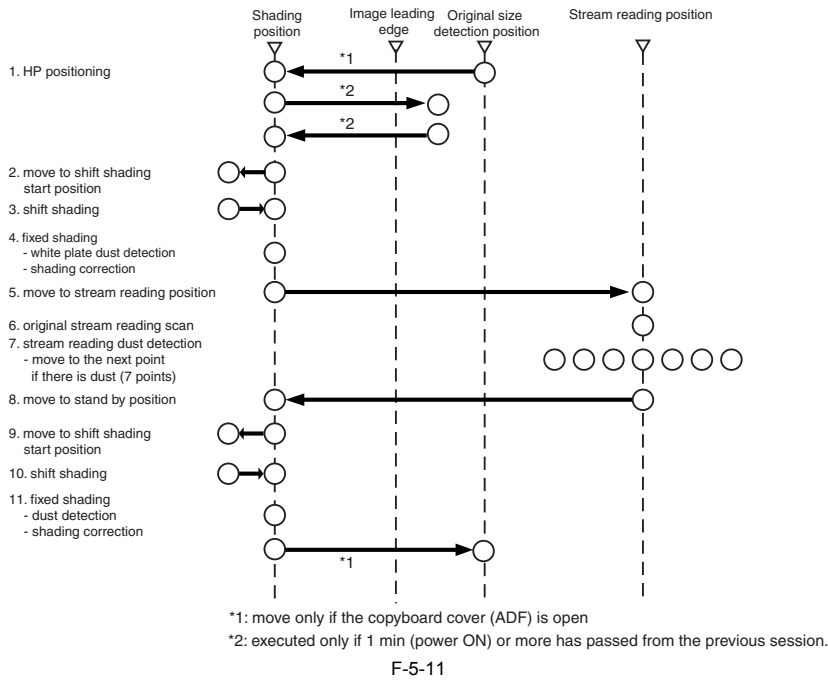


F-5-9

2. Basic Sequence of Operation in Response to a Press on the Start Key (ADF mode; 1 original)



F-5-10



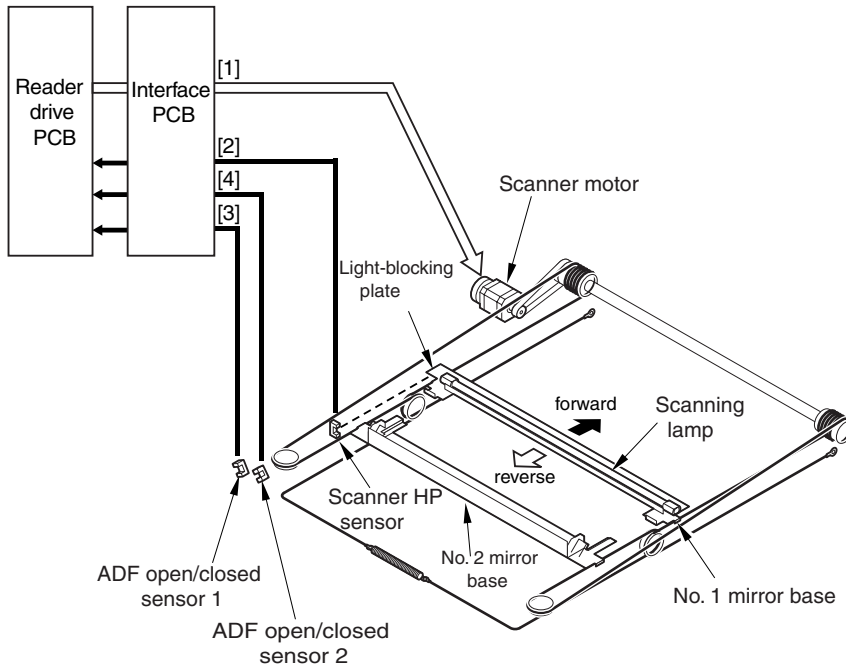
5.3 Various Control Mechanisms

5.3.1 Controlling the Scanner Drive System

5.3.1.1 Overview

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The following shows the arrangement of the components associated with the drive of the scanner:



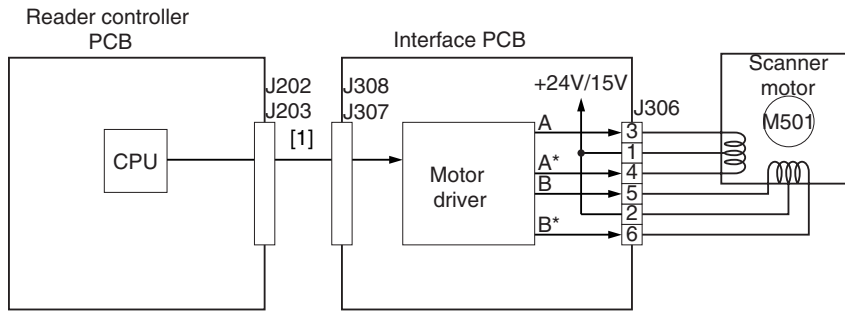
- [1] Scanner Motor M501 Drive Signal controls the activation/deactivation of the motor and the direction and speed of the motor.
- [2] Scanner HP Sensor PS501 Detection Signal used in reference to the detection of the No. 1 mirror base at its home position.
- [3] ADF Open/Closed Sensor 1 PS502 Detection Signal used in reference to the detection of the state (open/closed) of the ADF.
- [4] ADF Open/Closed Sensor 2 PS503 Detection Signal used in reference to the detection of the state (open/closed) of the ADF.

5.3.1.2 Controlling the Scanner Motor

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The following shows the construction of the mechanisms used to control the scanner motor.

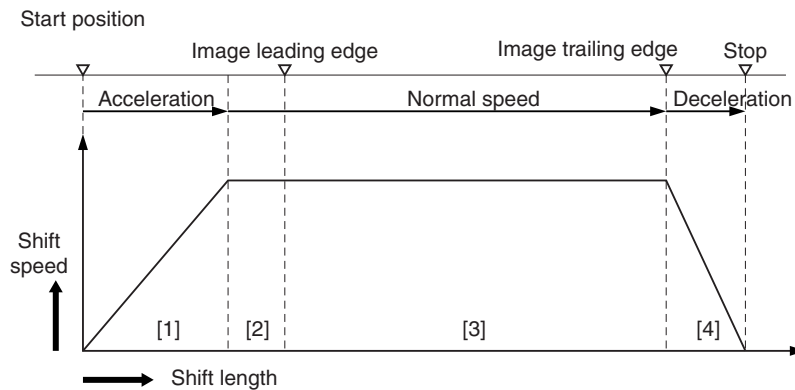
The motor driver on the interface PCB controls the rotation (activation/deactivation) of the scanner motor and its direction and speed of rotation according to the signals from the CPU.



1 Scanner motor control signal

F-5-13

- Moving the Scanner in Reverse After an Image Scan
After an image scan, the No. 1 mirror base is moved in reverse to shading position at 234 mm/sec regardless of the selected color mode.
 - Moving the Scanner Forward for an Image Scan
- When making an image scan, the No. 1 mirror base unit is moved by controlling the motor as follows:



1. Acceleration Zone: accelerates to suit the selected mode
2. Approach Zone: moves for speed stabilization.
3. Image Read Zone: reads the image at a specific speed.
(if black-and-white/SEND mode, twice as fast as in full-color mode)
4. Deceleration Zone: past the image trailing edge, immediately decelerates and stops.

F-5-14

The machine uses the following scanning speeds to suit different modes;

T-5-5

Function	Mode	Scanning speed
Copier	black-and-white	234 mm/sec
	full-color	234 mm/sec
SEND	black-and-white	468 mm/sec
	full-color	234 mm/sec

5.3.2 Enlargement/Reduction

5.3.2.1 Changing the Magnification in Main Scanning Direction

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

For main scanning direction in both copyboard and ADF modes, the image is read at 100%, and the magnification is varied by the main controller block.

5.3.2.2 Changing the Magnification in Sub Scanning Direction

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

For sub scanning direction in both copyboard and ADF modes, the image is read at 100%, and the magnification is changed by the main controller block. In SEND mode, the reading size is switched between 100% and 50% depending on the selected resolution.

5.3.3 Controlling the Scanning Lamp

5.3.3.1 Overview

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The scanning lamp is controlled for the following, with associated control mechanisms operating as follows:

1. Turning On and Off the Scanning Lamp

The scanning lamp is turned on or off by the drive signal (XE-ON) generated by the CPU of the reader controller PCB. When the signal is generated, the inverter

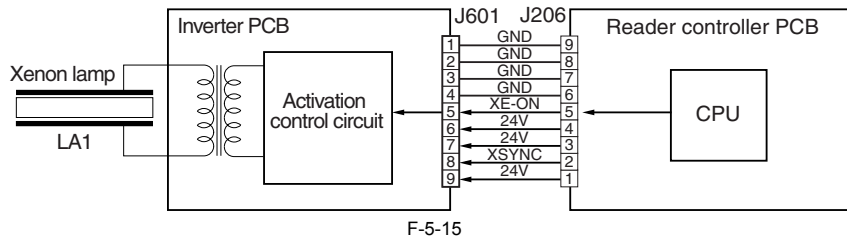
PCB generates high-frequency high voltage using the activation control circuit from the drive voltage (+24V) supplied by the reader controller PCB, thus turning on the scanning lamp.

2. Detection Error Activation

The machine detects a fault in the intensity of the lamp as an activation error caused by a fault in the intensity of the lamp at time of initial activation (shading correction).

MEMO:

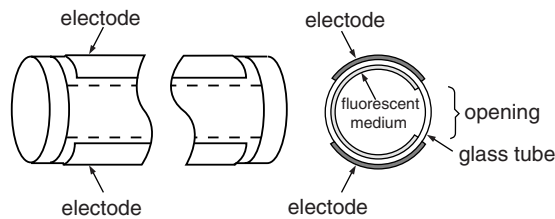
- E225
- the reader controller PCB is faulty
 - the inverter PCB is faulty
 - the scanning lamp (xenon tube) is faulty
 - CCD is faulty
 - flexible cable has poor contact



5.3.3.2 Scanning Lamp

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The machine's scanning lamp is a xenon lamp, which uses xenon gas sealed inside. On the outside of the glass tube, 2 electrodes are arranged in parallel with the tube; the inside of the tube, on the other hand, is coated with fluorescent material. When a high-frequency high voltage is applied to the electrodes, the gas inside the tube starts to discharge, causing the fluorescent material to emit light.



5.3.3.3 Turning On and Off the Scanning Lamp

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The scanning lamp is turned on and off by the drive signal (LAMP_ON) generated by the CPU of the reader control PCB. When the signal is generated, the inverter PCB generates high-frequency high voltage in the activation control circuit using the drive voltage (+24 V) supplied by the reader controller PCB to turn on the xenon lamp.

5.3.4 Detecting the Size of Originals

5.3.4.1 Identifying the Size of Originals

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The machine identifies the size of an original based on combinations of measurements taken of the light reflected by specific points (using a reflection type sensor and CCD). In consideration of possible displacement of the original when the ADF is closed, the machine uses a 2-point CCD check.

- Main Scanning Direction:
 - by CCD (AB-configuration; 8-point measurement; inch-configuration, 6-point measurement)
- Sub Scanning Direction:
 - reflection type photo sensor (AB-configuration: 1-point measurement; inch-configuration: 1-point measurement)

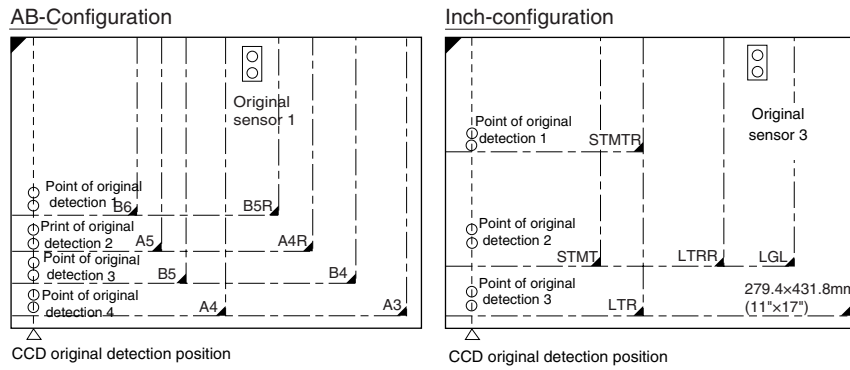
Specifically, the following takes place:

- 1) External Light Search (main scanning direction only)
 - While keeping the scanning lamp off, the machine measures the level of the CCD at specific points in main scanning direction.
- 2) Sensor Output Level Detection
 - The machine turns on the scanning lamp, and measures the sensor output at specific points. It then checks combinations of these measurement to find the size of the original.

5.3.4.2 Points of Measurement Used for Original Size Identification

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

For main scanning direction, the machine moves the No. 1 mirror base to the following points in relation to the location of the original to measure the levels of the CCD. For sub scanning direction, the machine checks the states of the sensors arranged as follows:

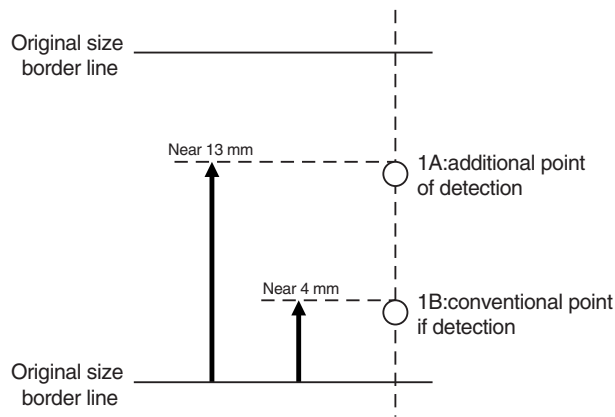


F-5-17

To raise the accuracy of original size identification (as when the original is displaced while the ADF is closed), the machine makes use of the following 2 types of mechanisms:

1. Presence/Absence of an Original at 2 Points (for each point of measurement)

For each point of measurement in main scanning direction, the machine checks the presence/absence of an original with reference to the CCD output at 2 points near the point of measurement.



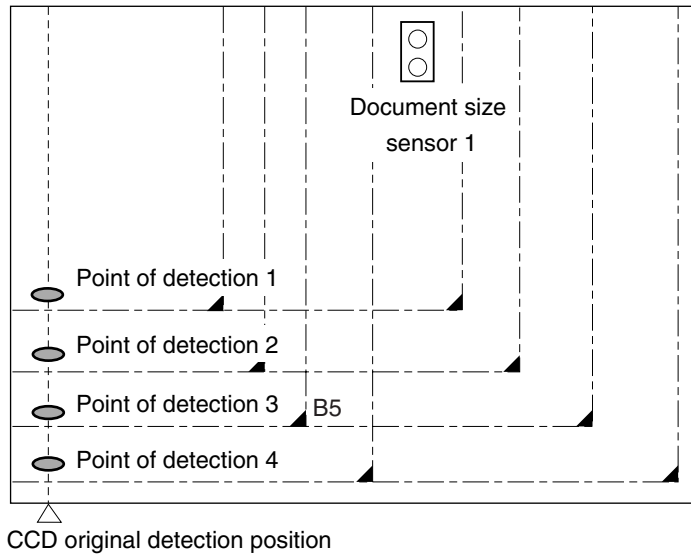
F-5-18
T-5-6

Result of measurement		Result of detection
1A	1B	
no	no	original absent
yes	no	original present
no	yes	original present
yes	yes	original present

Note:
Changes in the Signal (from ADF open to close)
change: no
other: yes
The machine uses OR combinations for identification.

2. Priority on the Front Sensors

When checking the measurements for main scanning direction, if the absence of an original is indicated at the rear while the presence of an original is indicated at the front, the machine will give priority to the indication at the front (i.e., presence of an original).



F-5-19
T-5-7

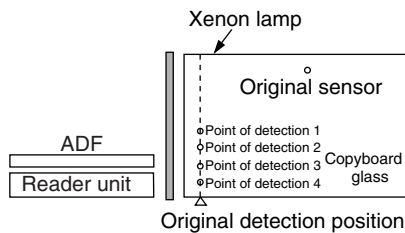
Point of detection	yes/no	Size identified
1	yes	yes
2	no	yes
3	yes	yes
4	no	no
Result		B5

Note:
Change in the Signal (ADF open to closed)
change: no
other: yes

5.3.4.3 Overview of Operation

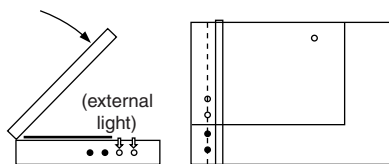
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Standby
No.1 mirror base: shading position
xenon lamp: off
original sensor: off



F-5-20

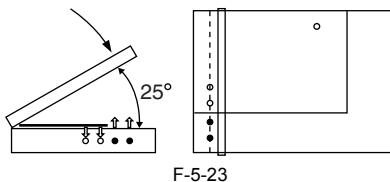
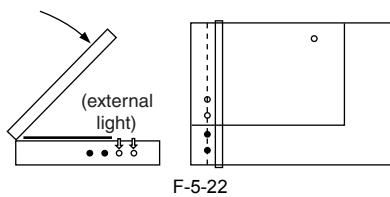
- 2) ADF Opened
No.1 mirror base: moves to original detection position
xenon tube: off
original sensor: off



F-5-21

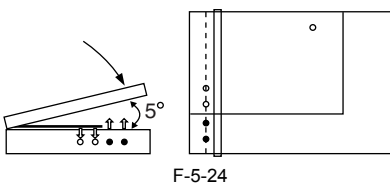
- 3) ADF Closed
3-1) When the ADF is brought to 25 deg, the area covered by an original will be blocked from external light; therefore, the machine will assume the absence of an original at points that detect external light (external search).
The ADF open/closed sensor identifies the condition as being "closed," and the machine starts original size identification.
At this position, B5, B4, A4, and A3 are excluded from the list of possible sizes.

3-2) The machine executes an external light search: for main scanning direction, it turns on the xenon lamp to check its light (reflected) at 4 points using the CCD; for the sub scanning direction, the machine checks the state of the original sensor.

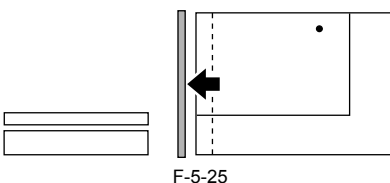


4) ADF Cover Fully Closed (5 deg or less).

The machine checks for a change in the output levels of the sensors for 2 sec after the ADF open/closed sensor of ADF side has identified the ADF as being "closed"; the machine assumes the absence of an original at points without a change. The machine then identifies the size of the original based on the combination of changes at 5 points.



5) Standby (in wait for a press on the Start key)
 No. 1 mirror base: at point of original detection
 xenon lamp: off
 original sensor: off



AB-Configuration						Inch-configuration					
Original size	Point of CCD				Original sensor 1	Original size	Point of CCD				Original sensor 3
	1		2				3		4		
	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	
A3	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
B4	○	○	○	○	●	●	○	○	○	○	○
A4R	○	○	○	○	●	●	●	●	○	○	○
A4	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	●
B5	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	●
B5R	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
A5	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
B6	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
absent	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

○:unchanged ●:changed

F-5-26

5.3.5 Dirt Sensor Control

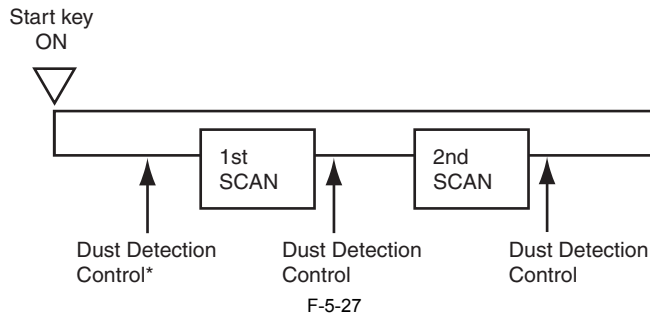
5.3.5.1 Dust Detection Control at Stream Reading

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-HI / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

At stream reading from the ADF, the presence/absence of dust is detected at the stream reading positions on the copyboard glass. According to the detection result, the original reading position is changed, or the image correction is executed to avoid dust appeared in the image.

1. Control Timing

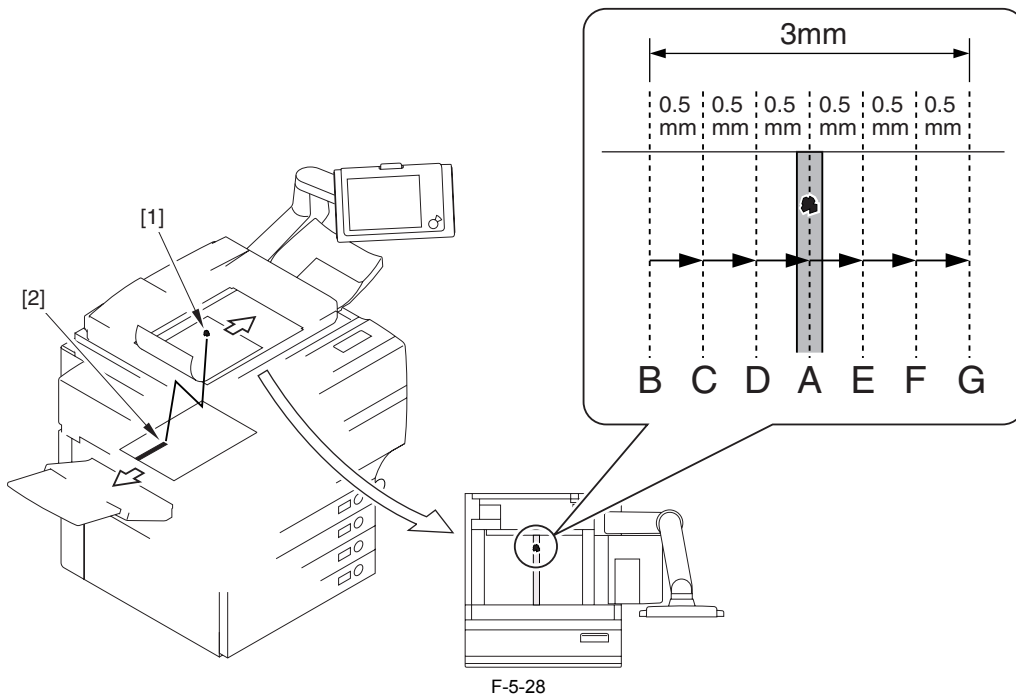
- (1) When the job is finished
- (2) At paper interval (every 1-print reading)



*: Only executes in the case of detecting dust at all reading points when the previous job is processed. In the case of detecting dust at all reading points, the dust correction is executed before reading to regard the less-dust position as the original reading position.

2. Control Description

- (1) When the job is finished (change the dust reading position at stream reading)
 Detect the reflection from the surface of the feeding belt (white color) at the reading reference position [A] to detect presence/absence of dust. In the case of detecting dust, shift to the following positions (maximum 7 points: A to B to C to D to E to F to G).
 The position that does not detect dust will be the reading point for the next job.



[1] dust
 [2] black line

- In the case of detecting dust at all reading positions, display the alarm screen to encourage cleaning when setting the original to the ADF.
- When a job is started, execute dust detection again to regard the dust-free position or the less-dust position as the reading position.

- (2) At paper interval (dust correction)
 There is no shift of the xenon lamp due to dust detection.
 In the case of detecting dust at paper interval, dust correction is executed by compensating the dust area with the pixels at both edges.

MEMO:
 COPIER > OPTION > BODY > DFDST-L1 (level 1)
 (Adjusting dust reading detection level at paper interval)
 COPIER > OPTION > BODY > DFDST-L2 (level 1)
 (Adjusting dust reading detection level when the job is finished)

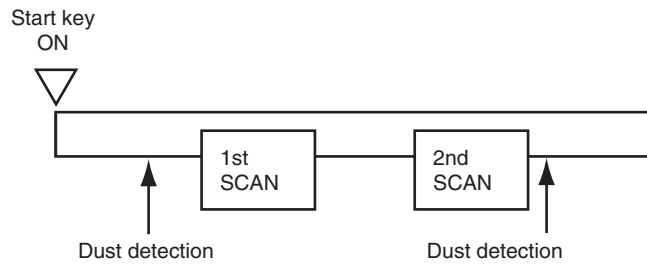
5.3.5.2 White Plate Dust Detection Control

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The machine uses a fan to cool the inside of the reader unit to prevent overheating otherwise caused by the xenon lamp in stream reading mode. The fact, however, can cause stray dust inside the reader unit to collect on the white plate, showing up as lines in output images.

- 1. Timing of Control**
 (1) Before a Job

- (a) white plate dust detection
- (b) white plate dust correction
- (2) After a Job
 - (a) white plate dust detection
 - (b) white plate dust correction



F-5-29

2. Particulars of Control

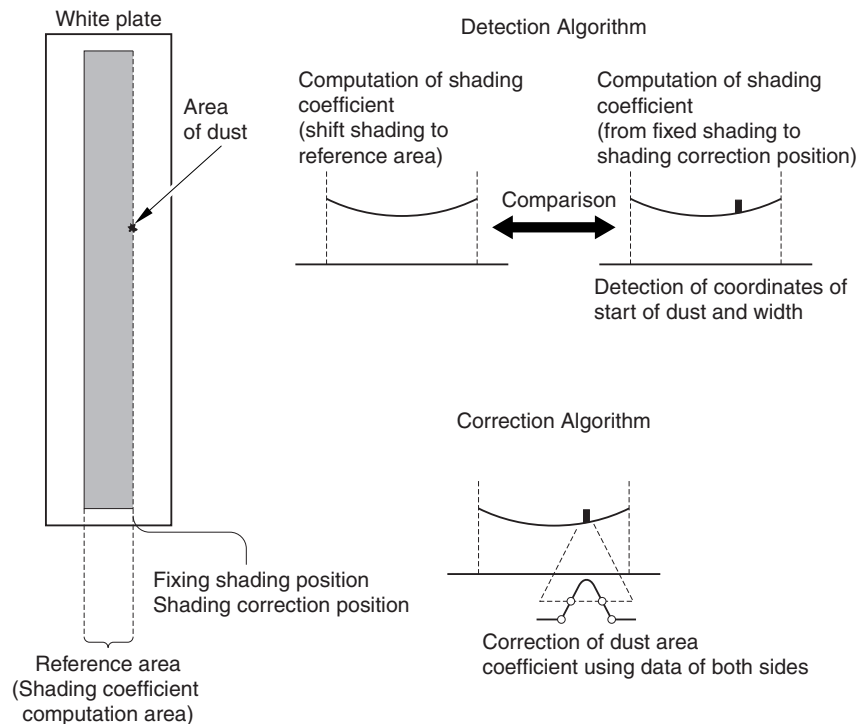
(1) White Plate Dust Detection

The machine compares the shading coefficient obtained from shift shading and the shading coefficient obtained from fixed shading to identify the presence/absence of dust and, if any, coordinates and width of the area.

(2) White Plate Dust Correction

If the machine detects dust as a result of white plate dust detection, it corrects the shading coefficient of the area using the shading coefficient of both sides so as to decrease the effects of the presence of dust. It executes shading correction using the coefficient it obtains after correction.

If the result of white plate dust detection indicates the presence of dust, the shading coefficient of the area in question will be corrected by the coefficients of its adjacent areas during shading correction with the aim of reducing the effects of the presence of dust. Thereafter, shading correction will be executed using the corrected coefficient.



F-5-30

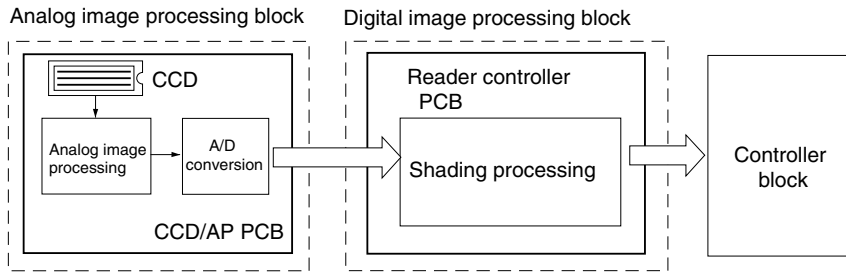
5.3.6 Image Processing

5.3.6.1 Overview

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The following shows the major functions of the machine's image processing system:

- CCD (image sensor)
 - number of lines: 3 (RGB, 1 line each)
 - number of pixels: 7350
 - size of pixel: 9.3 x 9.3 μ m
- Shading Correction
 - shading adjustment: in service mode
 - shading correction: performed for every copy



F-5-31

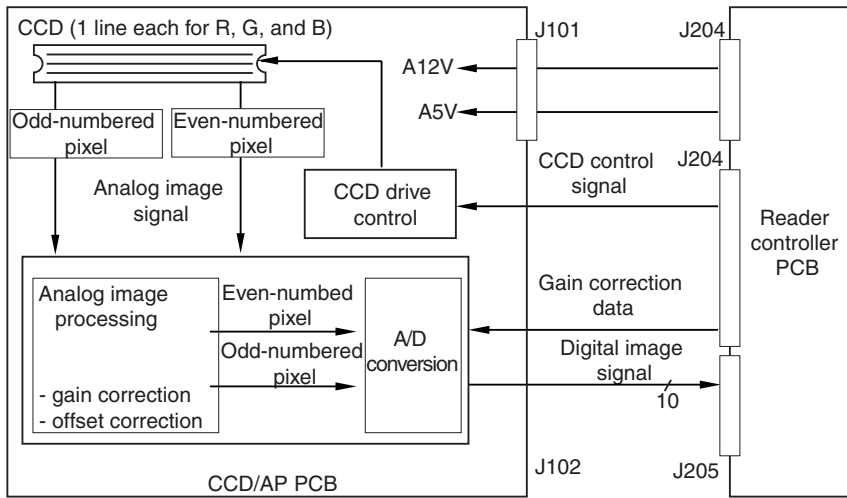
The following shows the functions of the PCBs associated with the image processing system:

CCD/AP PCB: CCD drive, analog image processing, A/D conversion

reader controller PCB: shading correction

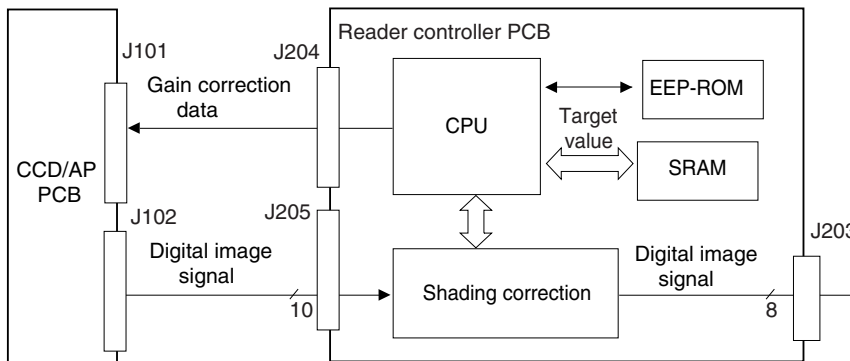
The machine performs image processing for every RGB line using the reader controller PCB, and the major functions involved are as follows:

- (1) Analog Image processing
 - (a) CCD drive
 - (b) CCD output gain correction, offset correction
 - (c) CCD output A/D conversion



F-5-32

(2) Digital Image Processing

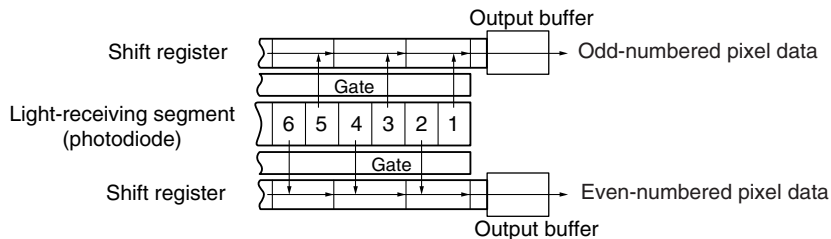


F-5-33

5.3.6.2 CCD Drive

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The machine's CCD is a linear image sensor consisting of 3 lines (R, G, B, 1 line each), each line composed of 7350 photo cells. The signal that has been put through photo-conversion in the light-receiving segment is divided into 2 analog signals of 2 channels for output: even-numbered pixels (EVEN) and odd-numbered pixels (ODD).



F-5-34

5.3.6.3 CCD Gain Correction, Offset Correction

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The analog video signal from the CCD is processed so that the rate of amplification is even (gain correction); the output in the absence of incident light is also processed for a specific level (offset correction).

5.3.6.4 CCD Output A/D Conversion

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The odd-numbered and even-numbered pixel analog video signals after the foregoing correction are then converted into 10-bit digital signals by the A/D converter according to their pixel voltage levels.

5.3.6.5 Outline of Shading Correction

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The output of the CCD may not always be uniform because of the following reasons even when the density of the original in question is uniform:

- variation in the sensitivity among individual pixels of the CCD.
- difference in the level of transmission between the center and the edge of the lens.
- difference in the intensity of light between the middle and the edges of the scanning lamp.
- deterioration of the scanning lamp

The machine executes shading correction to even out the output of the CCD.

The machine executes either of the following 2 shading mechanisms: shading correction it carries out for every copy and shading adjustment for which the target value is set in service mode.

5.3.6.6 Shading Adjustment

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The machine performs shading adjustment in response to a command made in service mode. The machine measures the density of blank white paper and that of the white plate to obtain density data; it then computes the data to produce the target value for use at time of shading correction.

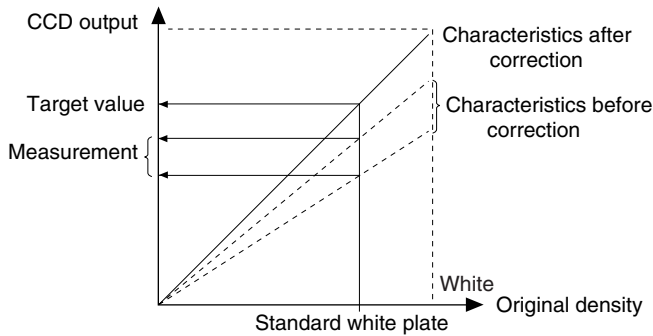
5.3.6.7 Shading Correction

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The machine executes shading correction each time it scans an original.

The machine directs the light from the scanning lamp against the standard white plate, and converts the reflected light into a digital signal by the analog image processing block on the CCD/AP PCB. The result (i.e., a digital signal representing the intensity of the reflected light) is sent to the shading correction circuit of the reader controller PCB as a shading coefficient. The shading correction circuit in turn compares the coefficient against the target value it holds, and offers the difference as the shading correction value.

The machine uses the shading correction value to correct the variation that may exist among the individual pixels of the CCD, thereby keeping the image density to a specific level at all times.



F-5-35

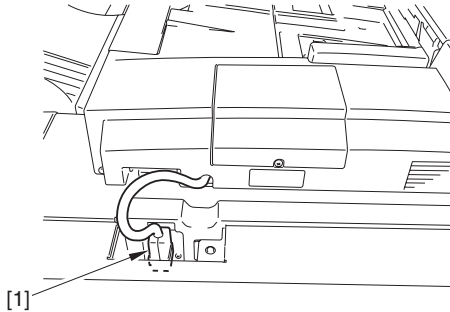
5.4 Parts Replacement Procedure

5.4.1 DADF

5.4.1.1 Removing the DADF (imagePRESS C1 Series/ imagePRESS C7000 Series)

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Fit the cable [1] of the DADF to the host machine.

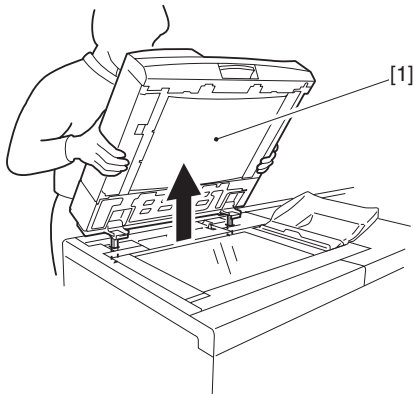


F-5-36

- 2) Lift the DADF [1] to fit it into the reader unit.



Be careful not to pinch your hands between the DADF and the copier.



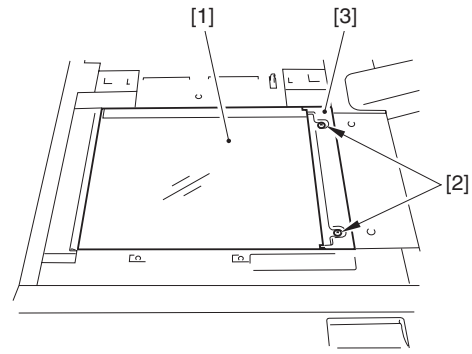
F-5-37

5.4.2 Copyboard Glass

5.4.2.1 Removing the Copyboard Glass (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the ADF or the copyboard cover. (page 5-16)[Removing the DADF (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)]
- 2) Remove the copyboard glass [1].
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 1 glass retainer (right) [3]



F-5-38



When detaching the copyboard glass, take care not to touch the glass surface and the white plate on its back. The soiled glass could cause a line image. If soiled, clean the area using lint-free paper and alcohol agent. When the glass is soiled, it could cause a line.

5.4.2.2 Scanner Parts Replacement Procedure (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

Parts

CCD unit / copyboard glass / scanning lamp / inverter PCB

Procedure

Execute the following Service Modes in order:

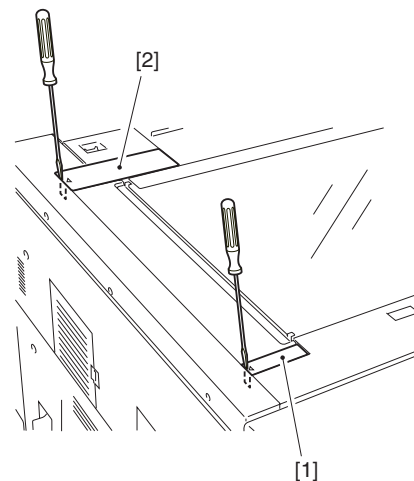
- 1) COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-X
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-Y
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-Z
(Enter the white level data for the white plate)
- 2) COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > EC-R
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > EC-G
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > EC-B
(Color correction of the copyboard glass)

5.4.3 Replacement of Standard White Plate

5.4.3.1 Removing the Standard White Plate (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)

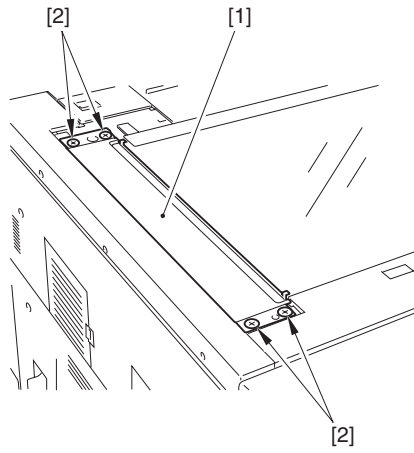
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the small cover (left front) [1] and the small cover (left rear) [2] using flat-blade screwdriver.



F-5-39

- 2) Remove the standard white plate [1].
 - 4 screws [2]



F-5-40

**5.4.3.2 Scanner Parts Replacement Procedure
(imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)**

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

Parts:

CCD unit / copyboard glass / scanning lamp / standard white plate / inverter PCB

Procedure

Execute the following Service Modes:

- 1) COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-X
 - COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-Y
 - COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-Z
- (Enter the white level data for the white plate)

5.4.4 Exposure Lamp

**5.4.4.1 Preparation for Removing the Scanner Lamp
(imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)**

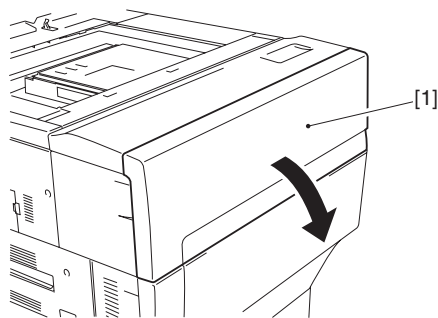
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Removing the copyboard glass. (page 5-16) Reference [Removing the Copyboard Glass]

5.4.4.2 Removing the Scanner Lamp (imagePRESS C1 Series)

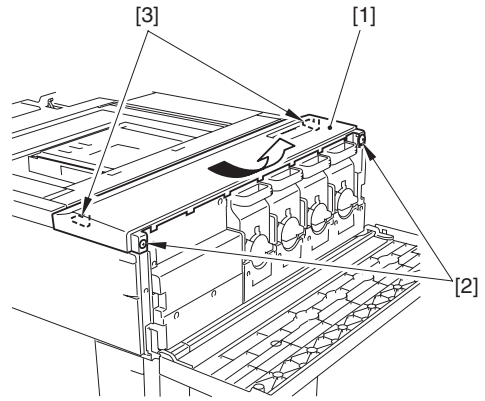
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1

- 1) Open the toner replacement cover [1].



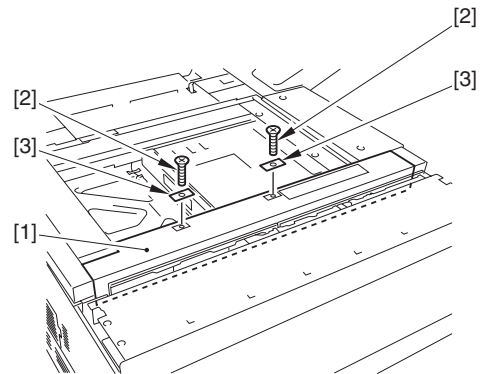
F-5-41

- 2) Detach the hopper upper cover [1] in the direction shown by the arrow.
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 2 claws [3]



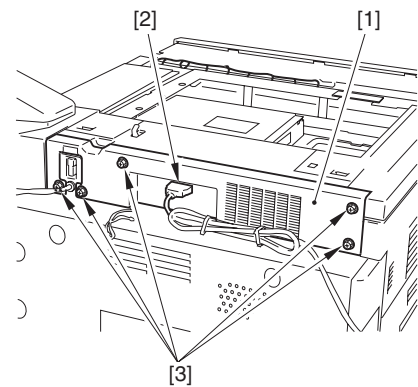
F-5-42

- 3) Close the toner replacement cover.
- 4) Detach the reader front cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 2 magnet catches [3]



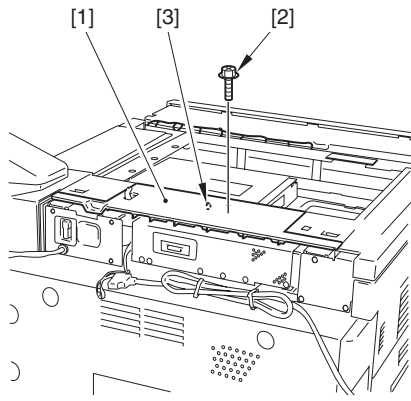
F-5-43

- 5) Detach the reader rear cover [1].
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 5 screws [3]



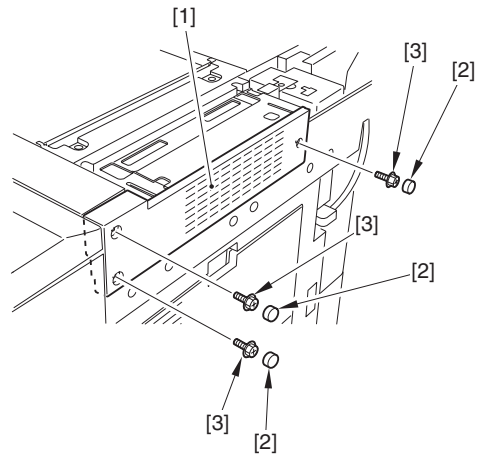
F-5-44

- 6) Detach the reader rear upper cover [1].
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 embossed section [3]



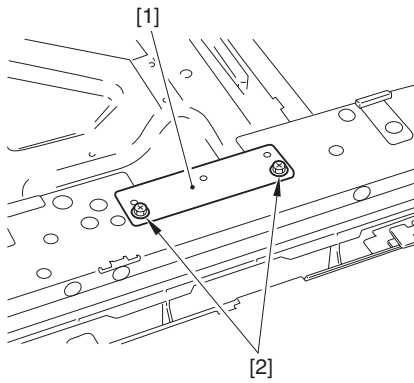
F-5-45

- 7) Remove the magnet support plate [1].
- 2 screws [2]



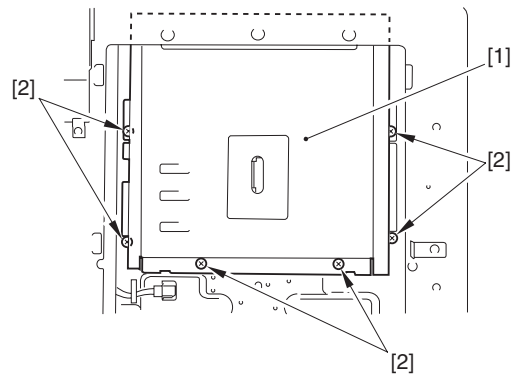
F-5-48

- 10) Detach the CCD unit cover [1].
- 9 screws [2] (3 on the right side of the reader unit)

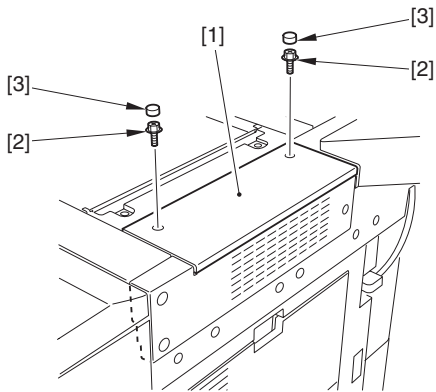


F-5-46

- 8) Detach the reader right upper cover [1].
- 2 cover rubbers [2]
- 2 screws [3]

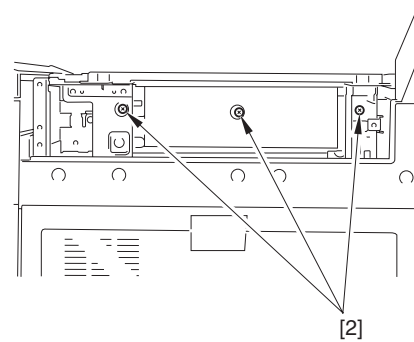


F-5-49



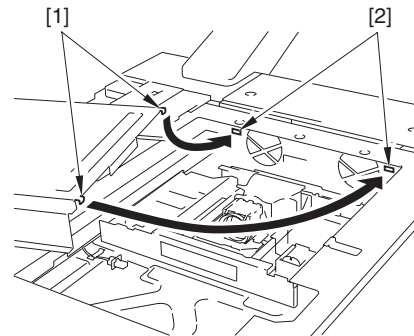
F-5-47

- 9) Detach the reader right cover [1].
- 3 cover rubbers [2]
- 3 screws [3]



F-5-50

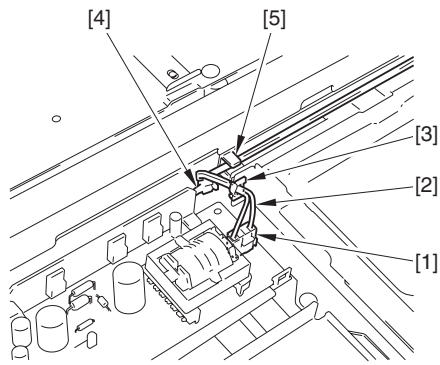
- ⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the CCD Unit Cover**
When attaching the CCD unit cover, be sure to hook the 2 claws [1] on the 2 slots and then fix it by screw.



F-5-51

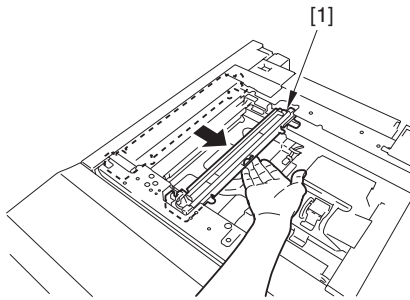
- 11) Disconnect the connector [1], and then remove the cable [2] from the edge saddle [3].
12) Remove the reused band [4] and then remove the cable [5] from the cable

guide.



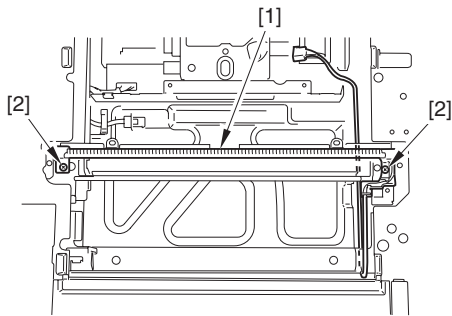
F-5-52

13) Hold at the bottom side of the mirror 1 mount [1] and slide toward right position shown in the figure.



F-5-53

14) Remove the scanning lamp [1].
- 2 screws [2]

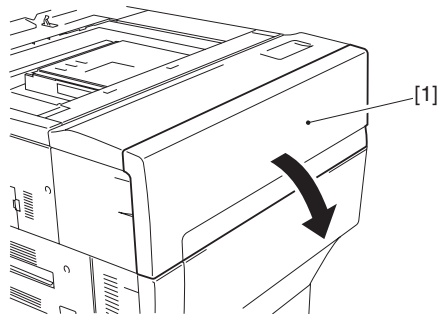


F-5-54

5.4.4.3 Removing the Scanner Lamp (imagePRESS C1 Series)

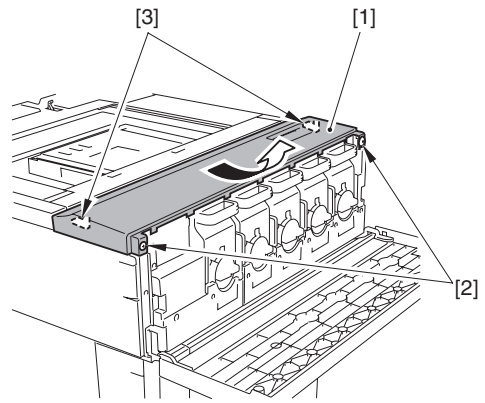
Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

1) Open the toner replacement cover [1].



F-5-55

2) Detach the hopper upper cover [1] in the direction shown by the arrow.
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 claws [3]

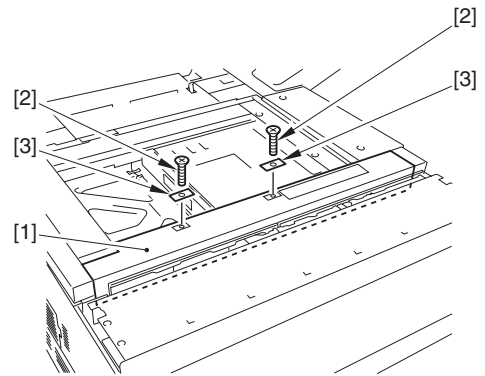


F-5-56

3) Close the toner replacement cover.

4) Detach the reader front cover [1].

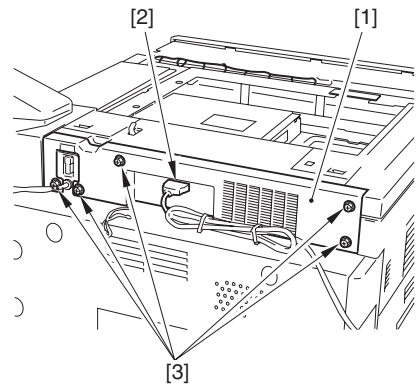
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 magnet catches [3]



F-5-57

5) Detach the reader rear cover [1].

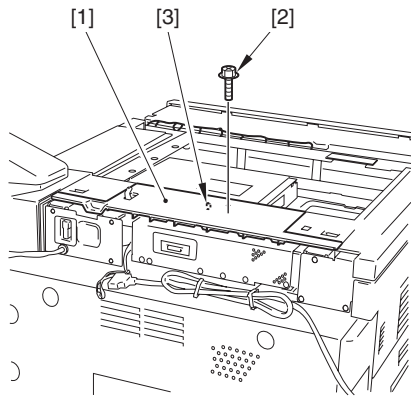
- 1 connector [2]
- 5 screws [3]



F-5-58

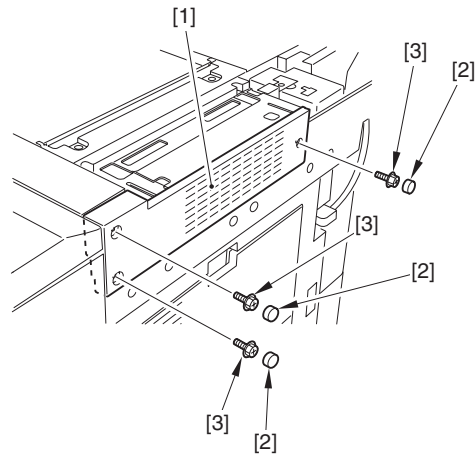
6) Detach the reader rear upper cover [1].

- 1 screw [2]
- 1 embossed section [3]



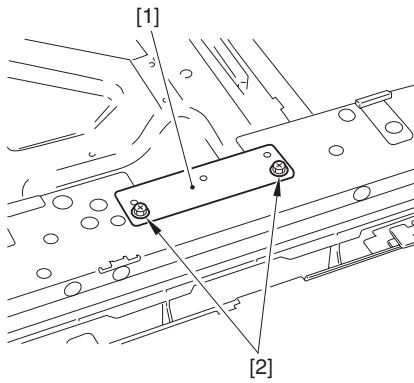
F-5-59

- 7) Remove the magnet support plate [1].
- 2 screws [2]



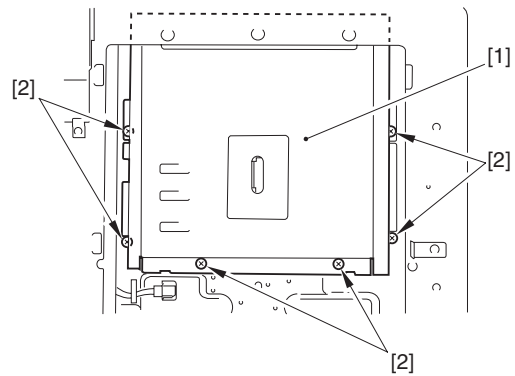
F-5-62

- 10) Detach the CCD unit cover [1].
- 9 screws [2] (3 on the right side of the reader unit)

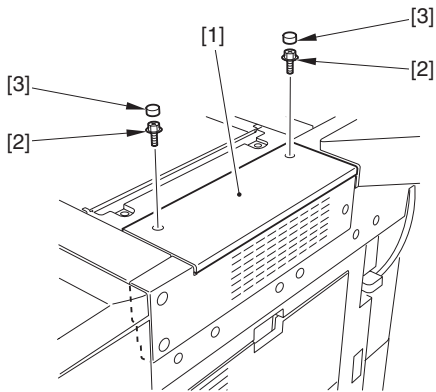


F-5-60

- 8) Detach the reader right upper cover [1].
- 2 cover rubbers [2]
- 2 screws [3]

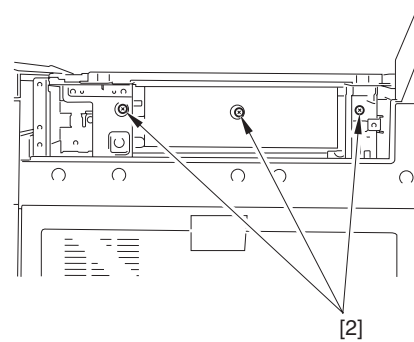


F-5-63



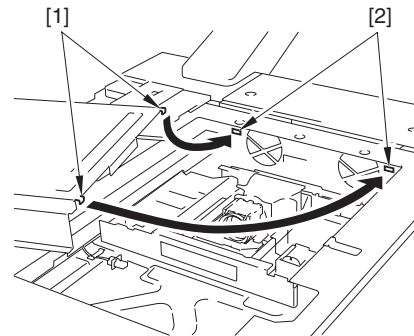
F-5-61

- 9) Detach the reader right cover [1].
- 3 cover rubbers [2]
- 3 screws [3]



F-5-64

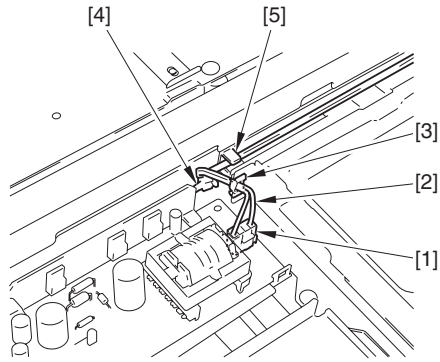
- ⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the CCD Unit Cover**
When attaching the CCD unit cover, be sure to hook the 2 claws [1] on the 2 slots and then fix it by screw.



F-5-65

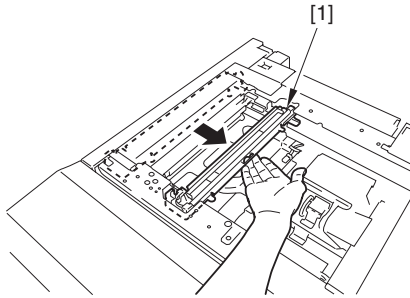
- 11) Disconnect the connector [1], and then remove the cable [2] from the edge saddle [3].
12) Remove the reused band [4] and then remove the cable [5] from the cable

guide.



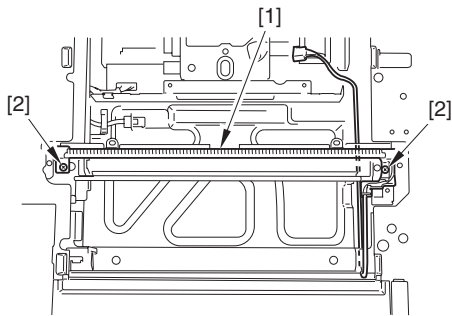
F-5-66

13) Hold at the bottom side of the mirror 1 mount [1] and slide toward right position shown in the figure.



F-5-67

14) Remove the scanning lamp [1].
- 2 screws [2]

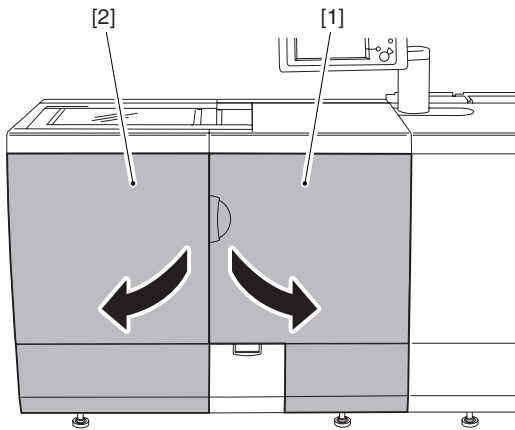


F-5-68

5.4.4.4 Removing the Scanner Lamp (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

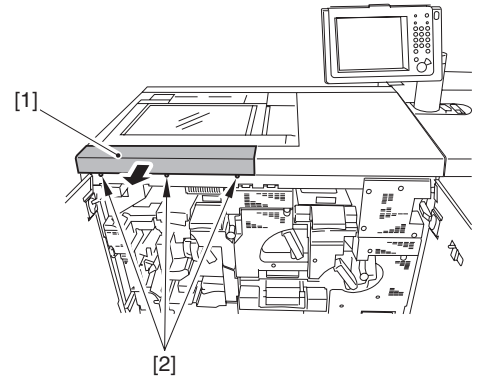
Color Image Reader-H1

1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2].



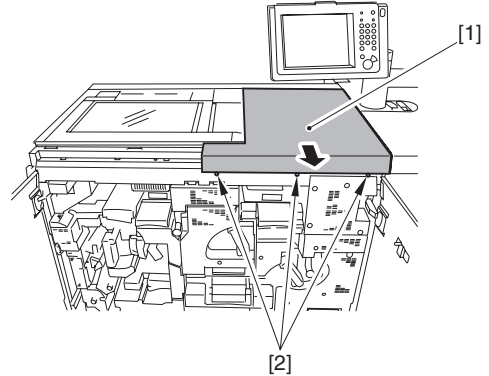
F-5-69

2) Detach the sub station upper front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



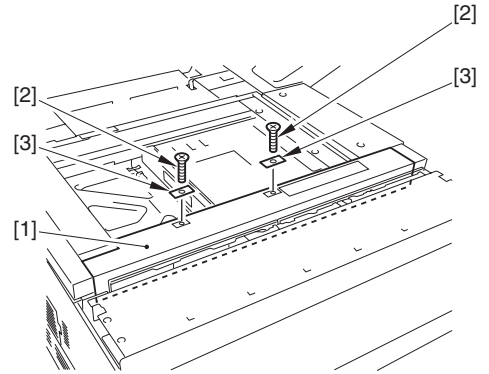
F-5-70

3) Detach the sub station upper right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



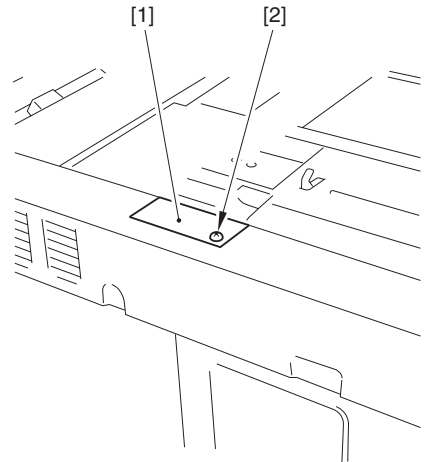
F-5-71

4) Detach the reader front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 magnet catches [3]



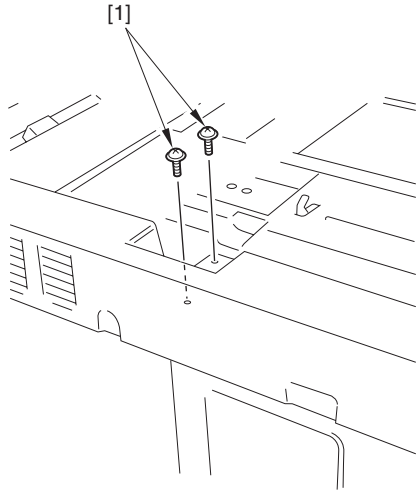
F-5-72

5) Detach the upper rear face plate 1 [1].
- 1 screw [2]



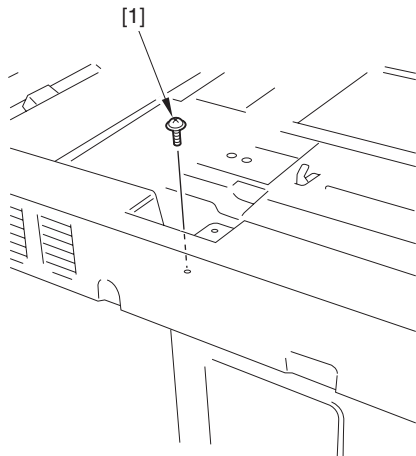
F-5-73

- 6) Detach the upper rear face cover 3 [1].
 <In case of ADF>
 - 2 screws [2]



F-5-74

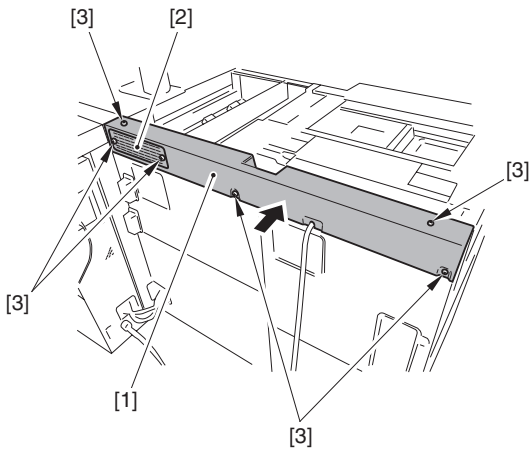
- <In case of Copyboard Cover>
 - 1 screws [1]



F-5-75

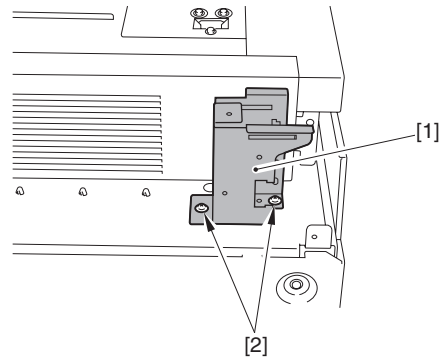
- 7) Remove the filter [2] of the sub station top rear cover [1].
 - 6 screws [3]

! Be sure to tighten the 2 screws on the top while pressing the upper rear cover in the direction of the arrow.



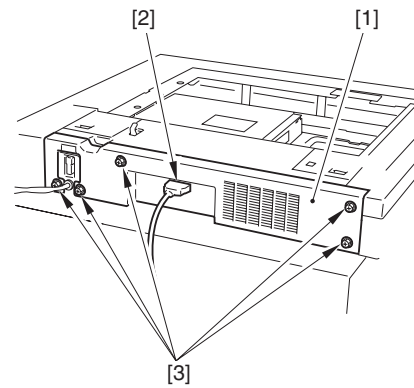
F-5-76

- 8) Remove the connector base [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



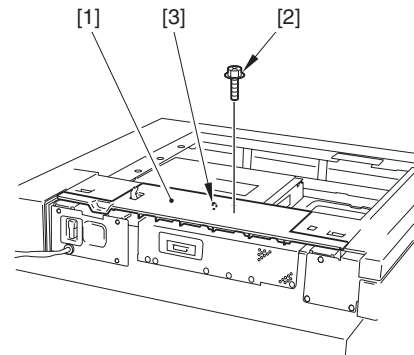
F-5-77

- 9) Detach the reader rear cover [1].
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 5 screws [3]



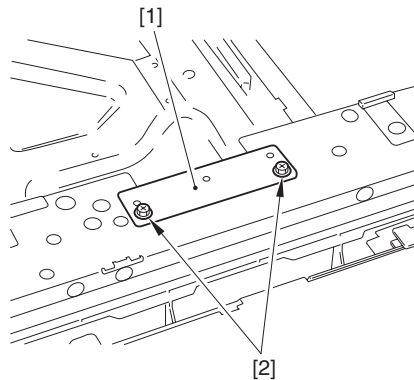
F-5-78

- 10) Detach the reader upper rear cover [1].
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 embossed section [3]



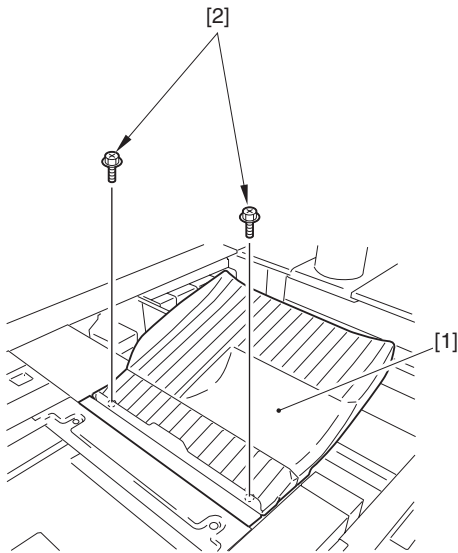
F-5-79

- 11) Remove the magnet support [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



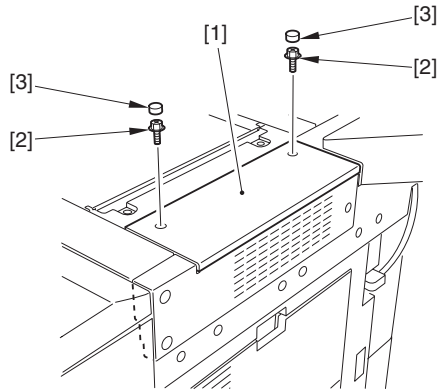
F-5-80

- <In case of ADF>
 12) Remove the document tray [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



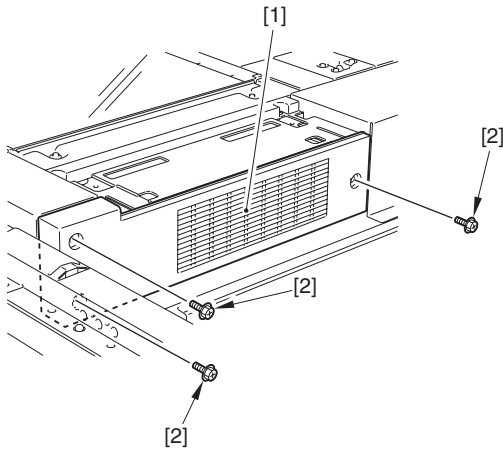
F-5-81

- <In case of Copyboard Cover>**
 13) Detach the upper right cover [1] for the copyboard cover.
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 2 cover rubbers [3]



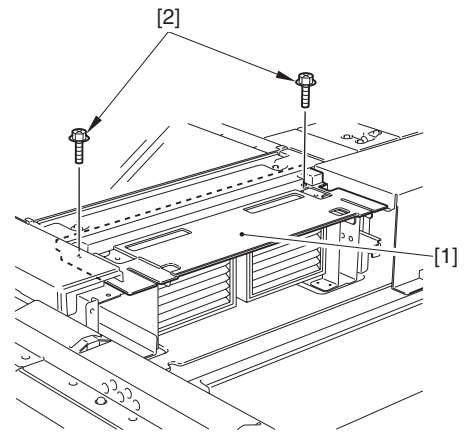
F-5-82

- 14) Detach the reader right cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



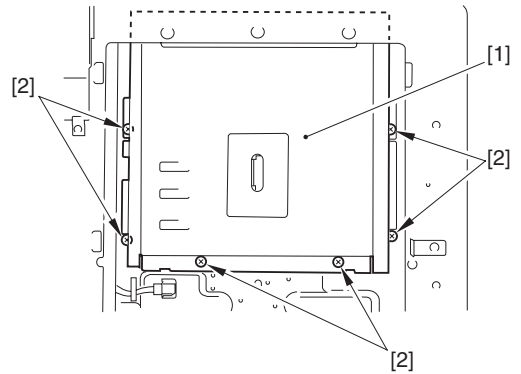
F-5-83

- (Only in case of ADF)
 15) Detach the reader upper right cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]

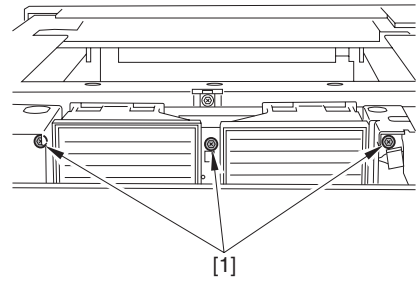


F-5-84

- (Subsequent steps are applied only for the ADF)
 16) Detach the CCD unit cover [1].
 - 9 screws [2] (3 screws at the right side of the reader)



F-5-85



F-5-86

⚠ Point to Note When Attaching CCD Unit Cover
 Be sure to hook the CCD unit cover onto the 2 claws [2] and secure it in place with the screws when attaching it.

- 17) For the subsequent steps, see step 11 to 14 in 'Removing Scanning Lamp' (in the case of imagePRESS C1 Series).

5.4.5 Reader Controller PCB

5.4.5.1 Preparation for Removing the Reader Controller PCB (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)

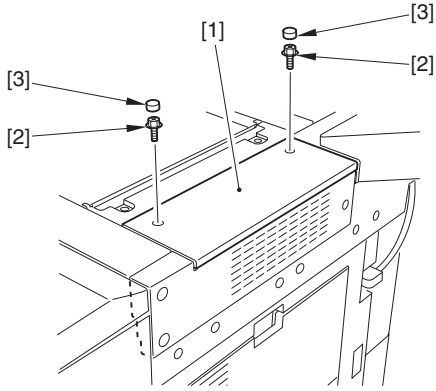
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the copyboard glass. (page 5-16)Reference [Removing the Copyboard Glass]

5.4.5.2 Removing the Reader Controller PCB (imagePRESS C1 Series)

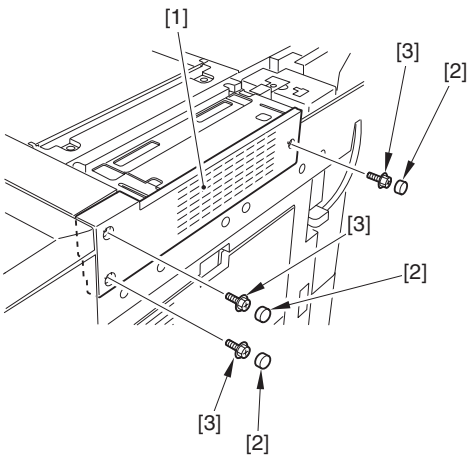
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the reader right upper cover [1].
 - 2 cover rubbers [2]
 - 2 screws [3]



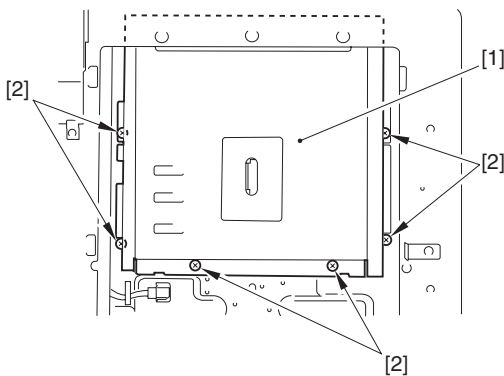
F-5-87

- 2) Detach the reader right cover [1].
 - 3 cover rubbers [2]
 - 3 screws [3]

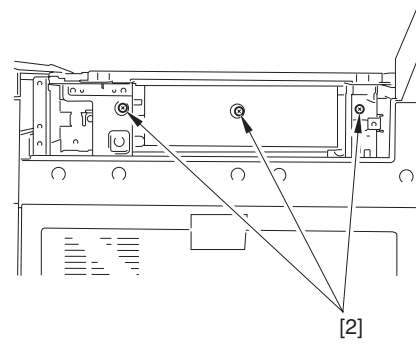


F-5-88

- 3) Detach the CCD unit cover [1].
 - 9 screws [2] (3 on the right side of the reader assembly)

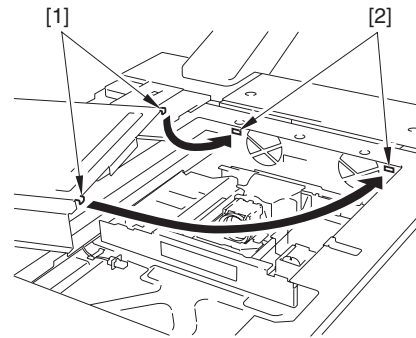


F-5-89



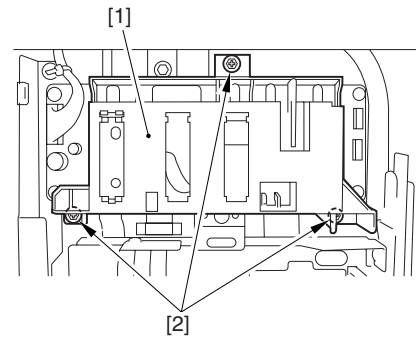
F-5-90

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the CCD Unit Cover
When attaching the CCD unit cover, be sure to hook the 2 claws [1] on the 2 slots and then fix it by screw.



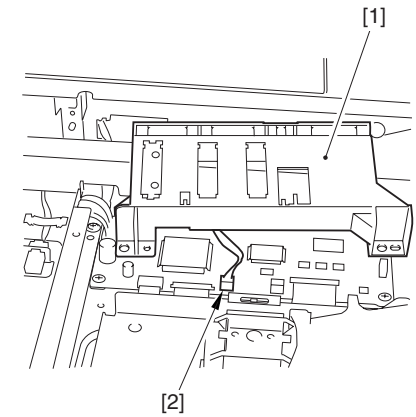
F-5-91

- 4) Lift the original size sensor unit [1] slightly.
 - 3 screws [2]



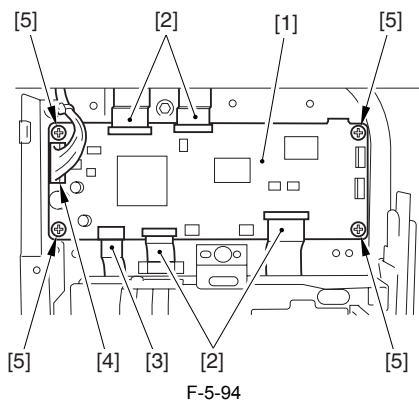
F-5-92

- 5) Remove the original size sensor unit [1].
 - 1 connector [2]

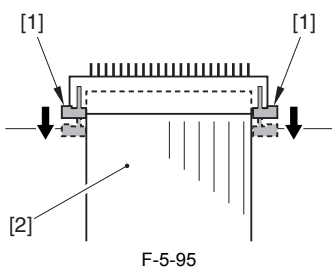


F-5-93

- 6) Remove the reader controller PCB [1].
 - 4 flat cable [2]
 - 1 frat cable [3]
 - 1 connector [4]
 - 4 screws [5]



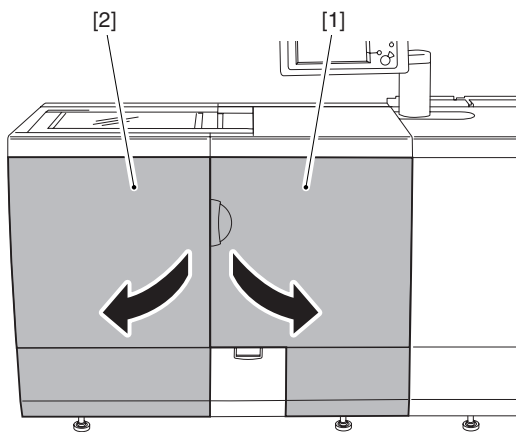
⚠ How to remove the flat cable [2]
 Release the lock lever [1] in the direction shown by the arrow, and then remove the flat cable [2].



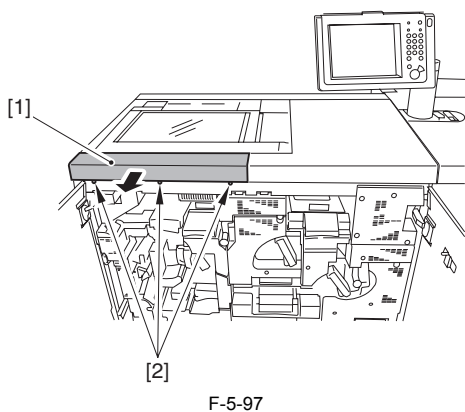
5.4.5.3 Removing the Reader Controller PCB (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

Color Image Reader-H1

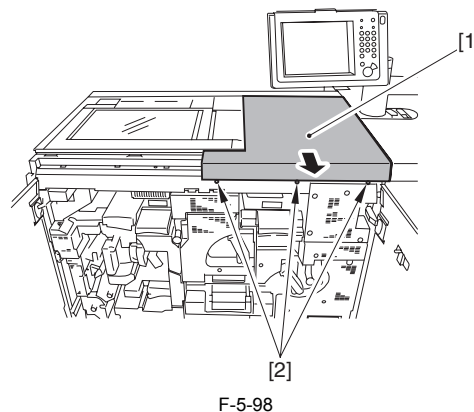
1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2].



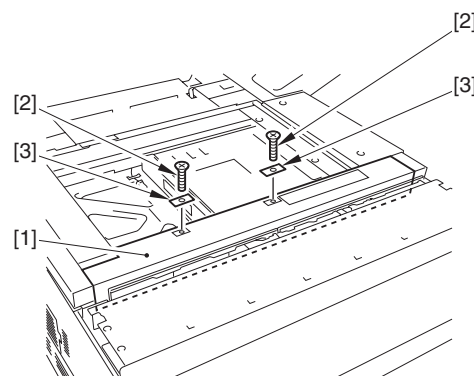
2) Detach the sub station upper front cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



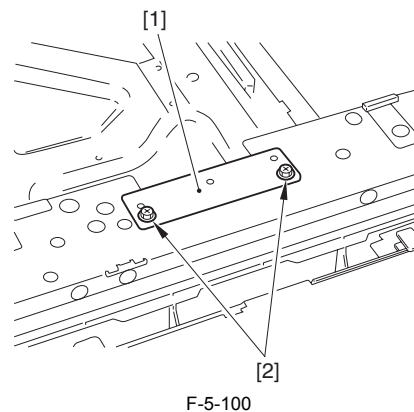
3) Detach the sub station upper right cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



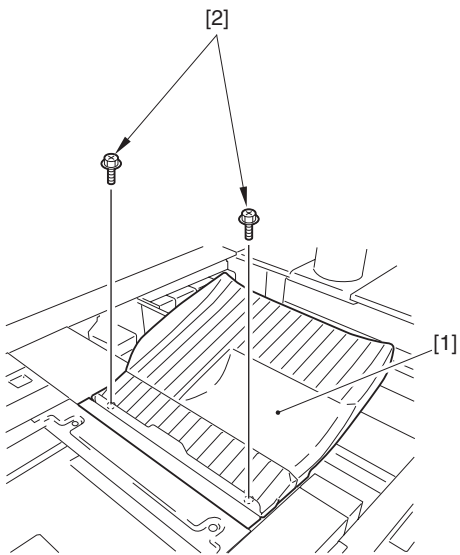
4) Detach the reader front cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 2 magnet catches [3]



5) Remove the magnet support [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



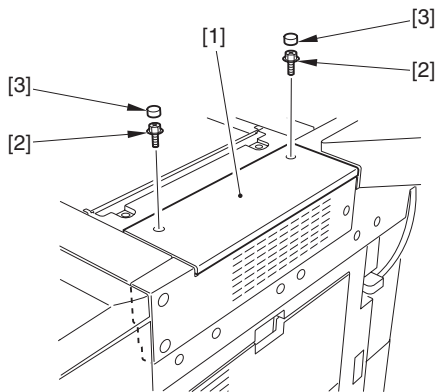
<In case of ADF>
 6) Remove the document tray [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



F-5-101

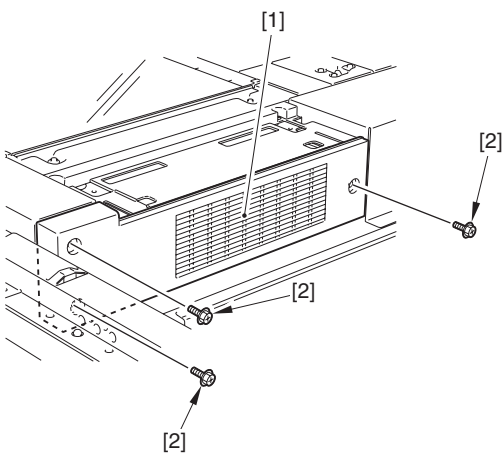
<In case of Copyboard Cover>

- 7) Detach the upper right cover [1] for the copyboard cover.
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 2 cover rubbers [3]



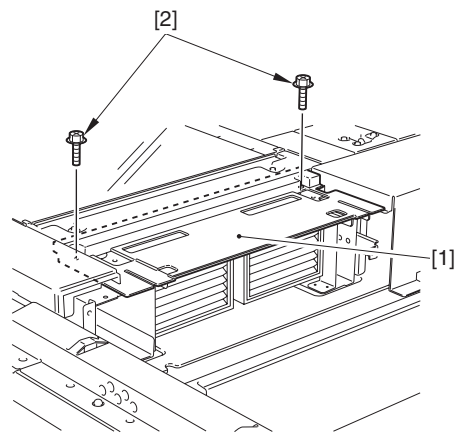
F-5-102

- 8) Detach the reader right cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



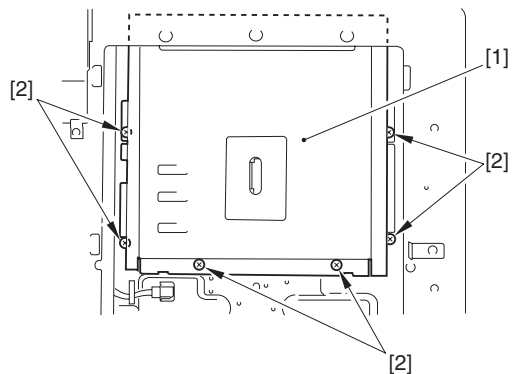
F-5-103

- (Only in case of ADF)
 9) Detach the reader upper right cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]

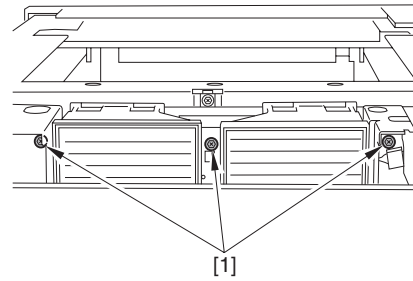


F-5-104

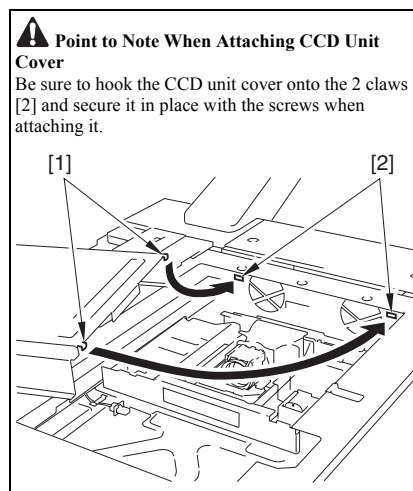
- (Subsequent steps are applied only for the ADF)
 10) Detach the CCD unit cover [1].
 - 9 screws [2] (3 screws at the right side of the reader)



F-5-105



F-5-106



- 11) For the subsequent steps, see step 4 to 6 in 'Removing the Reader Controller PCB' (in the case of imagePRESS C1 Series).

5.4.5.4 Procedure after Replacement of the Reader Controller PCB (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

⚠ Before Replacement (Data Backup)

If possible, go through the following procedure:

- Download the data registered in the reader controller RAM by SST.
- Print out the data in the User Mode / Service Mode.

- 1) After turning ON the power, execute the following service mode:
COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > R-CON
- 2) If you had downloaded by SST prior to replacement, upload the data.
- 3) Set the service mode item values as described on the service label.
COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-X (adjustment of image-scanning start position (leading edge of image) in the direction of the sub-scanner)
COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y (adjustment of image-scanning start position (side-registration) in the direction of the main-scanner)
COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y-DF (adjustment of the main scanner position at ADF stream reading)
COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS (adjustment of the CCD reading position at ADF stream reading)
COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-X-MG (fine adjustment of the sub-scanner reproduction ratio at reading by the pressure plate)
FEEDER > ADJUST > DOCST (adjustment of original stop position at pickup by ADF)
FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPEED (adjustment of original feeding speed)
FEEDER > ADJUST > STRD-S (adjustment of the optical system stop position at stream reading mode for small size document)
FEEDER > ADJUST > STRD-L (adjustment of the optical system stop position at stream reading mode for large size document)
- 4) Execute the following Service Modes in order.
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-X
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-Y
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-Z
(Enter the white level data for the white plate)
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > EC-R
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > EC-G
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > EC-B
(Color correction of the copyboard glass)
- 5) Turn OFF/ON the power.

MEMO:

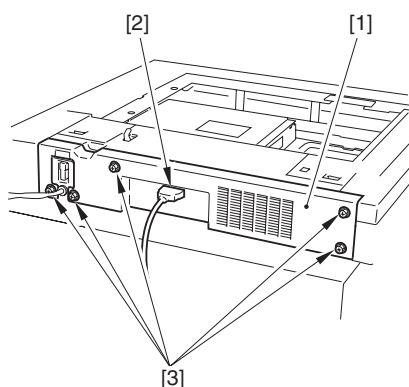
In DADF-R1 model (outside Japan: imagePRESS C1), ADF service mode data are stored in the reader controller RAM. For this reason, clearance of the reader controller PCB RAM / service mode setup or adjustment at replacement are required.

5.4.6 Interface PCB

5.4.6.1 Removing the Interface PCB

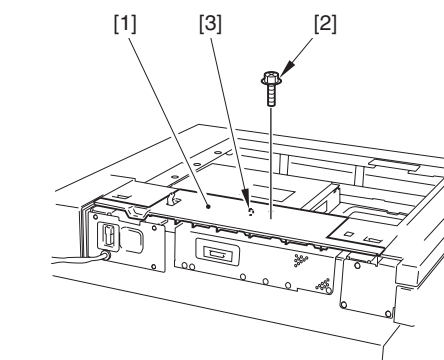
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the reader rear cover [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 5 screws [3]



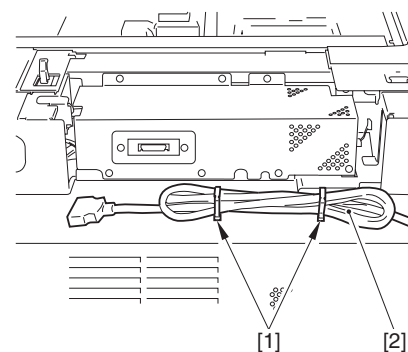
F-5-107

- 2) Detach the reader rear upper cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]
- 1 embossed section [3]



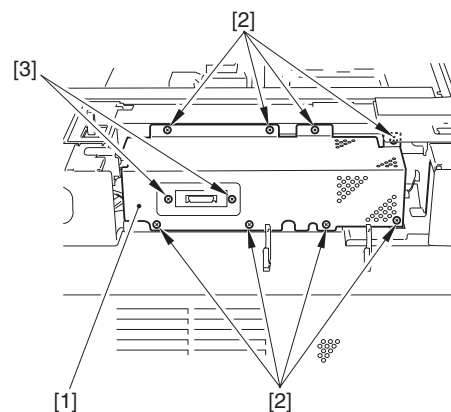
F-5-108

- 3) Remove the reader I/F cable [2] from the 2 wire saddle [1]. (imagePRESS C1 Series)



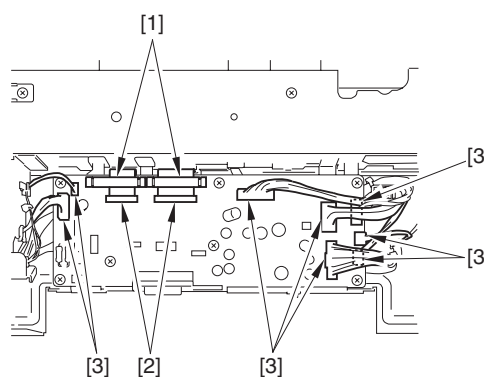
F-5-109

- 4) Remove the shielding plate [1].
- 8 screws [2]
- 2 screws [2]



F-5-110

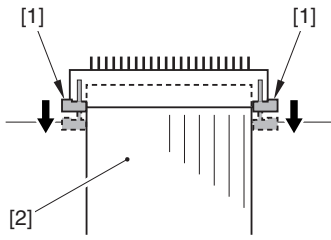
- 5) Remove the 2 cable clips [1], the 2 flat cables [2], and then disconnect the 8 connectors [3].



F-5-111

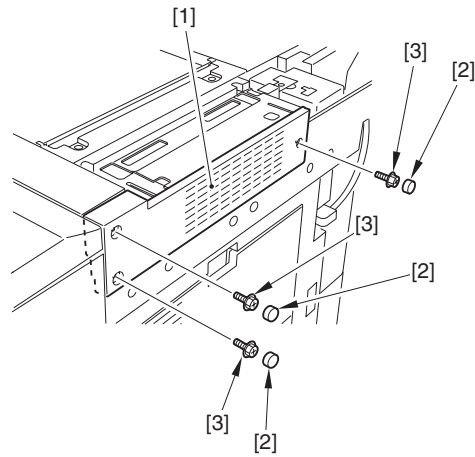
⚠ How to remove the flat cable

Release the lock lever [1] in the direction shown by the arrow, and then remove the flat cable [2].



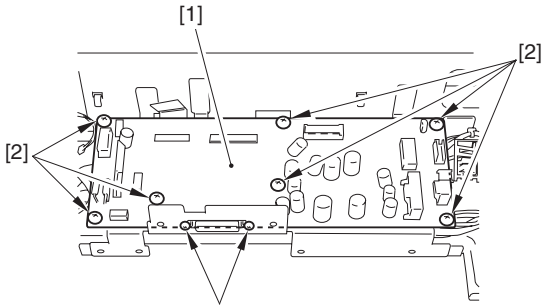
F-5-112

- 6) Remove the interface PCB [1].
 - 7 screws [2]
 - 2 screws [3]

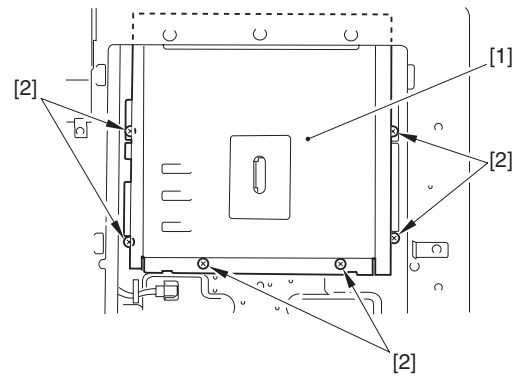


F-5-115

- 3) Remove the CCD unit cover [1].
 - 9 screws [2] (3 on the right side of the reader assembly)



F-5-113



F-5-116

5.4.7 Inverter PCB

5.4.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Inverter PCB (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)

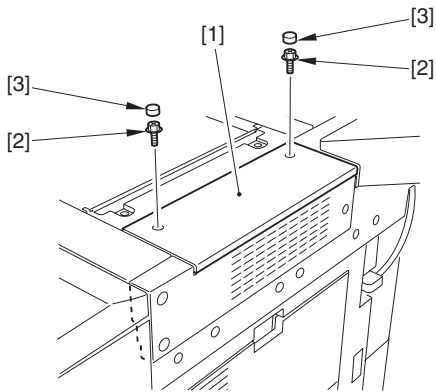
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the copyboard glass. (page 5-16)Reference [Removing the Copyboard Glass]

5.4.7.2 Removing the Inverter PCB (imagePRESS C1 Series)

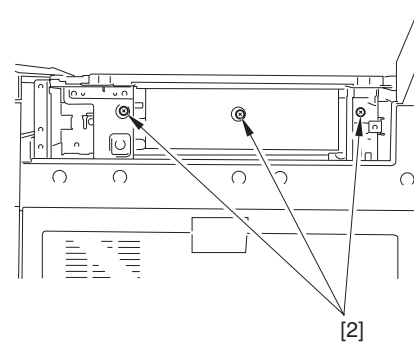
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the reader right upper cover [1].
 - 2 cover rubbers [2]
 - 2 screws [3]



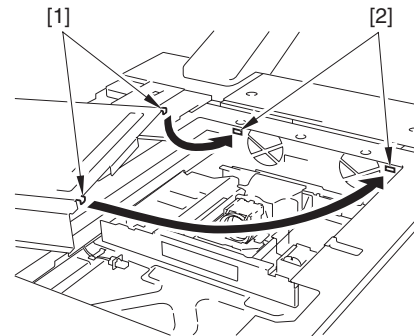
F-5-114

- 2) Detach the reader right cover [1].
 - 3 cover rubbers [2]
 - 3 screws [3]



F-5-117

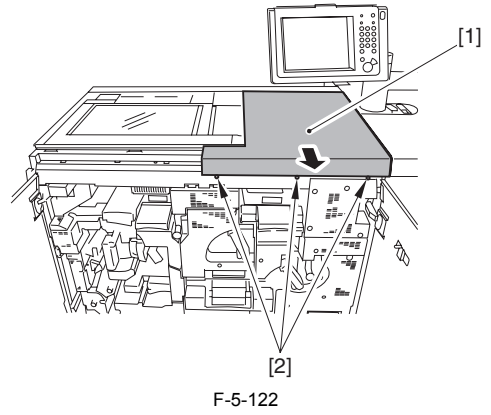
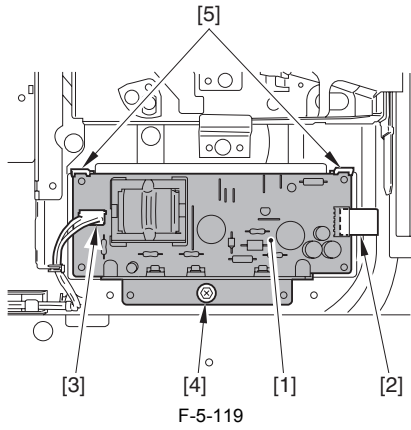
⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the CCD Unit Cover
 When attaching the CCD unit cover, be sure to hook the 2 claws [1] on the 2 slots [2] and then fix it by screw.



F-5-118

- 4) Remove the inverter PCB [1].
 - 1 flat cable [2]
 - 1 connector [3]

- 1 screw [4]
- 2 PCB support [5]

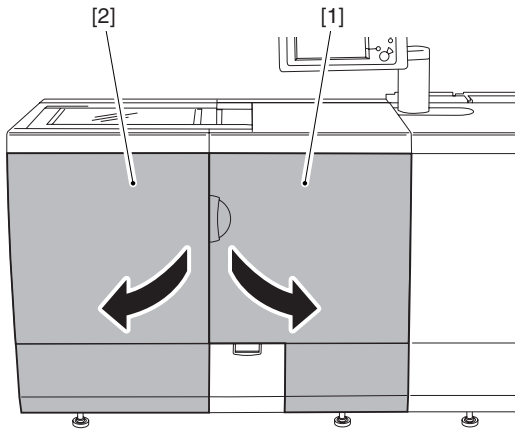


- 4) Detach the reader front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]
 - 2 magnet catches [3]

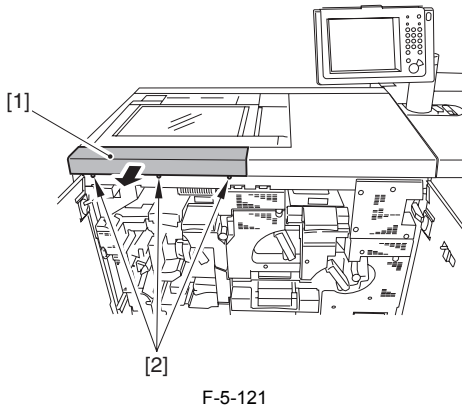
5.4.7.3 Removing the Inverter PCB (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

Color Image Reader-H1

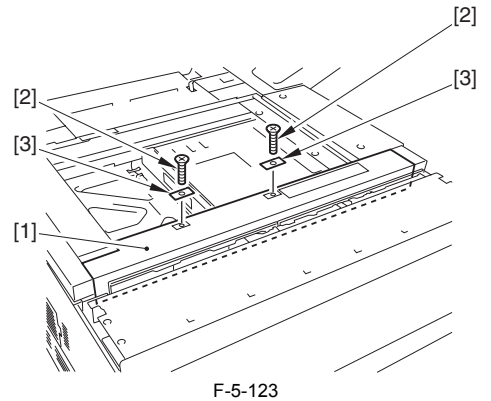
- 1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2].



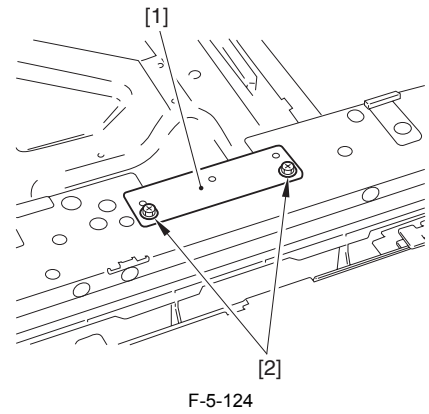
- 2) Detach the sub station upper front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



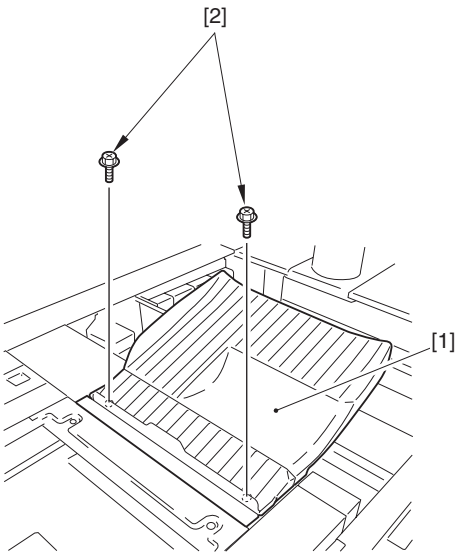
- 3) Detach the sub station upper right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



- 5) Remove the magnet support [1].
- 2 screws [2]



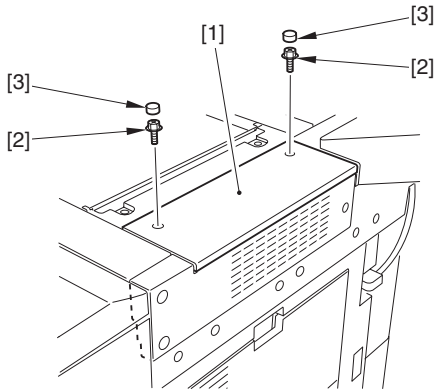
- <In case of ADF>
- 6) Detach the document tray [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-5-125

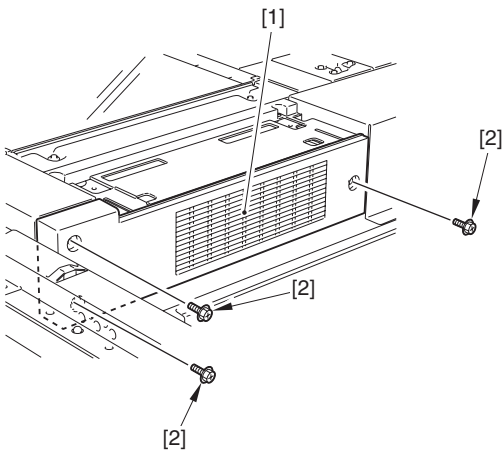
<In case of copyboard cover>

- 7) Detach the upper right cover [1] for the copyboard cover.
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 2 cover rubbers [3]



F-5-126

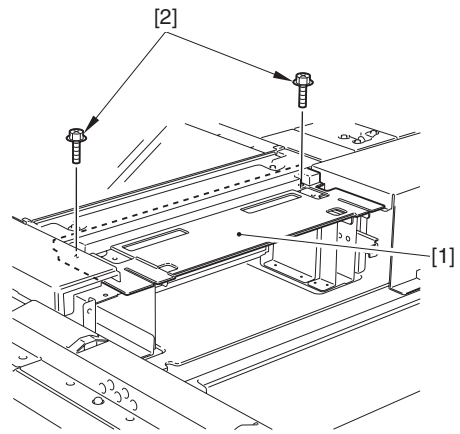
- 8) Detach the reader right cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



F-5-127

(Only in case of ADF)

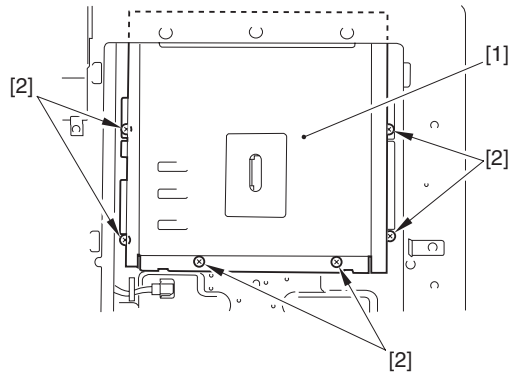
- 9) Detach the reader upper right cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



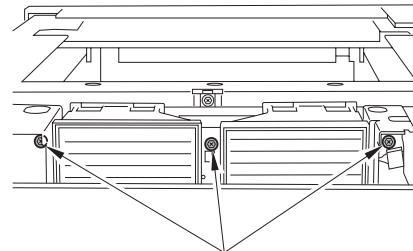
F-5-128

(The subsequent steps are applied only for ADF.)

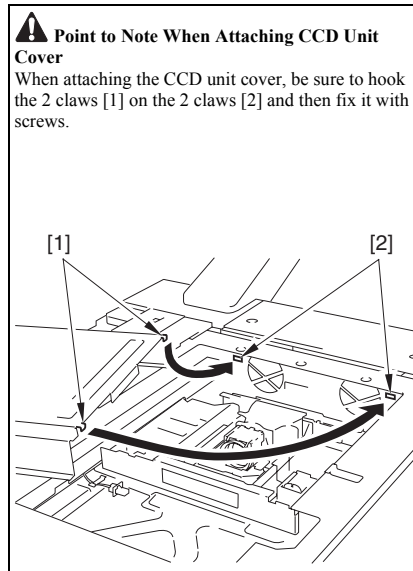
- 10) Detach the CCD unit cover [1].
 - 9 screws [2] (3 screws at the right side of the reader)



F-5-129

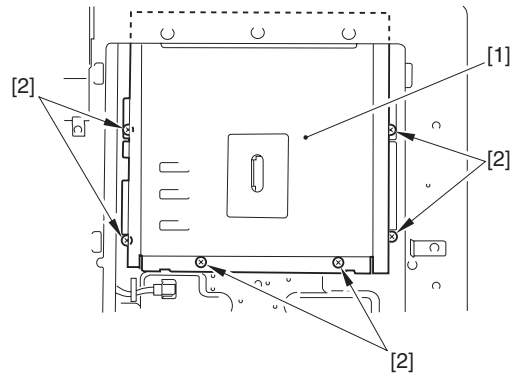
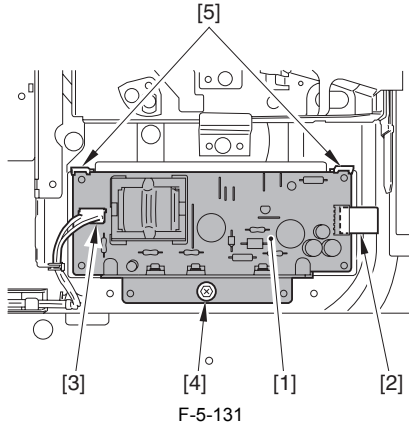


F-5-130



- 11) Remove the inverter PCB [1].
 - 1 flat cable [2]

- 1 connector [3]
- 1 screw [4]
- 2 PCB supports [5]



5.4.8 CCD Unit

5.4.8.1 Preparation for Removing the CCD Unit (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)

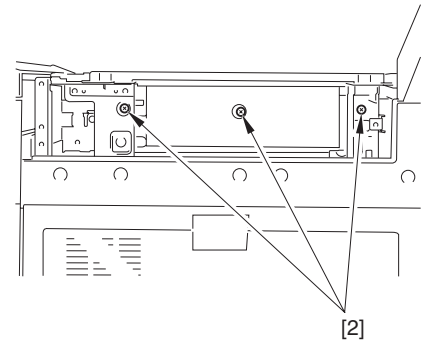
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the copyboard glass. (page 5-16)Reference [Removing the Copyboard Glass]

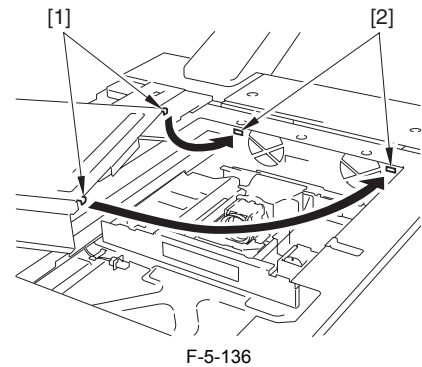
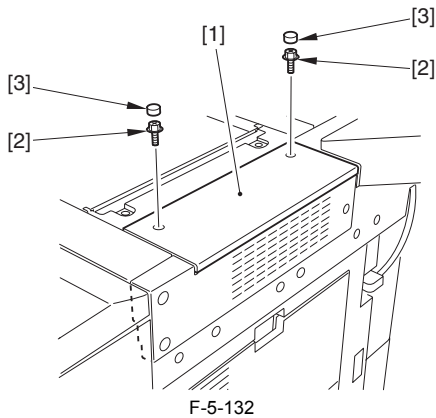
5.4.8.2 Removing the CCD Unit (imagePRESS C1 Series)

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the reader upper right cover[1].
 - 2 cover rubbers [2]
 - 2 screws [3]

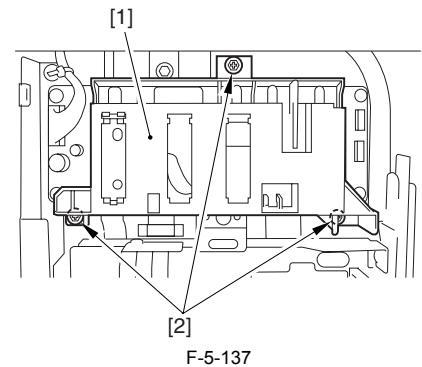
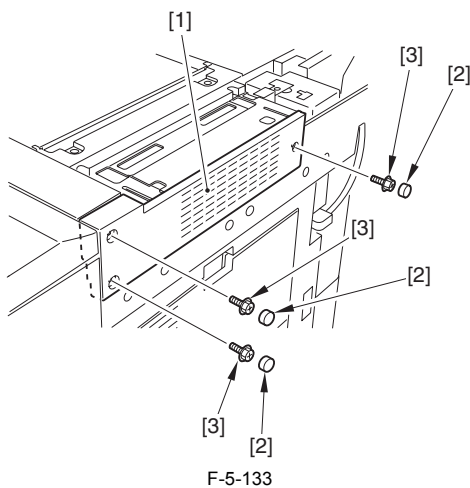


⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the CCD Unit Cover
 When attaching the CCD unit cover, be sure to hook the 2 claws [1] on the 2 slots [2] and then fix it with screws.



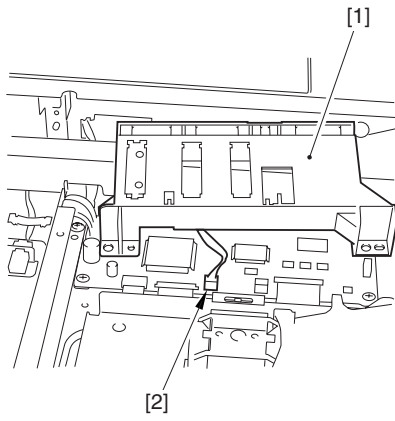
- 2) Detach the reader right cover [1].
 - 3 cover rubbers [2]
 - 3 screws [3]

- 4) Slightly lift up the document size sensor unit [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



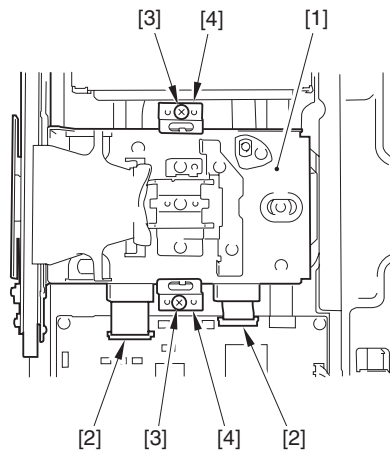
- 3) Detach the CCD unit cover [1].
 - 9 screws [2] (3 screws at the right side of the reader)

- 5) Remove the document size sensor unit [1].
 - 1 connector [2]



F-5-138

- 6) Remove the CCD unit [1].
 - 2 flat cables [2]
 - 2 screws [3]
 - 2 leaf springs [4]

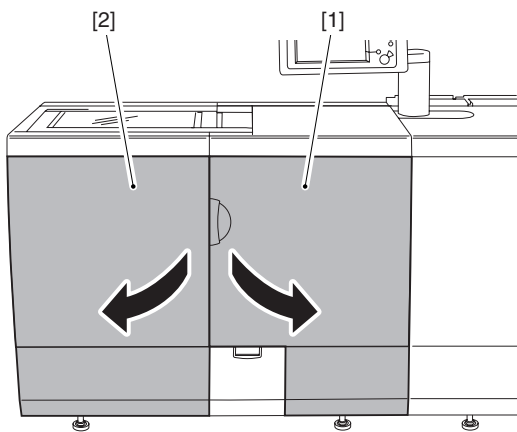


F-5-139

5.4.8.3 Removing the CCD Unit (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

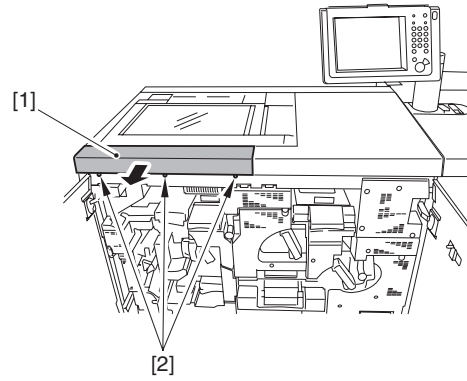
Color Image Reader-H1

- 1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2].



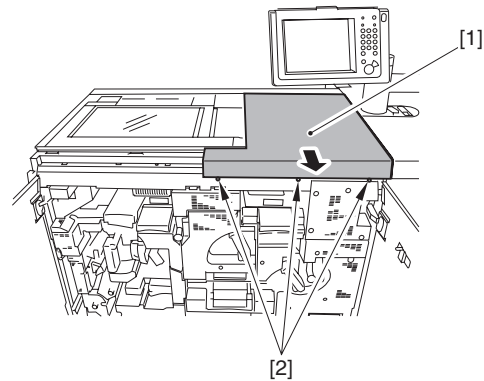
F-5-140

- 2) Detach the sub station upper front cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



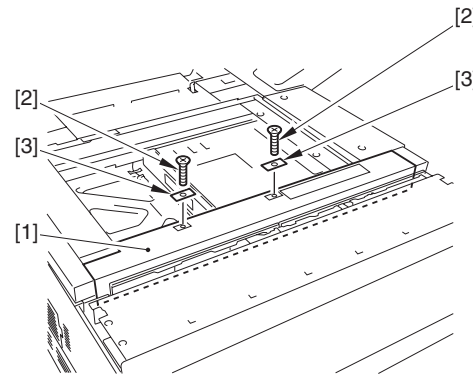
F-5-141

- 3) Detach the sub station upper right cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



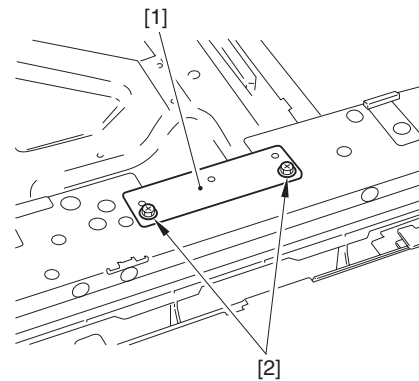
F-5-142

- 4) Detach the reader front cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 2 magnet catches [3]



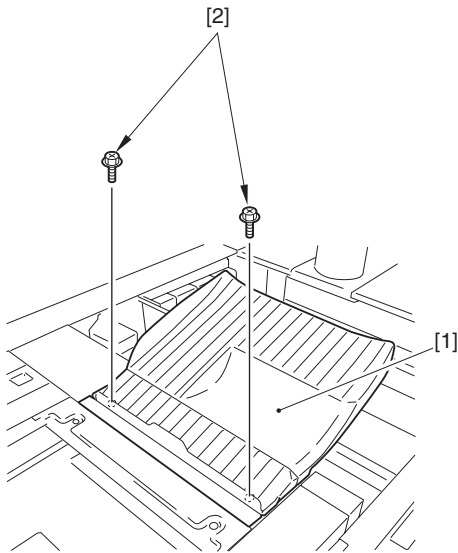
F-5-143

- 5) Remove the magnet support [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



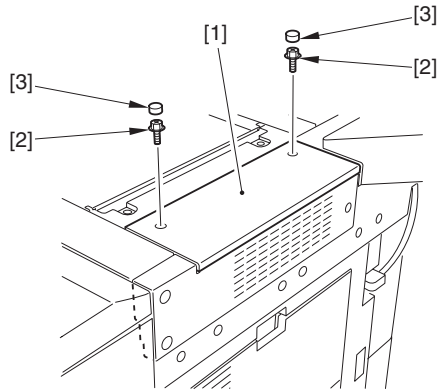
F-5-144

- <In case of ADF>
 6) Remove the document tray [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



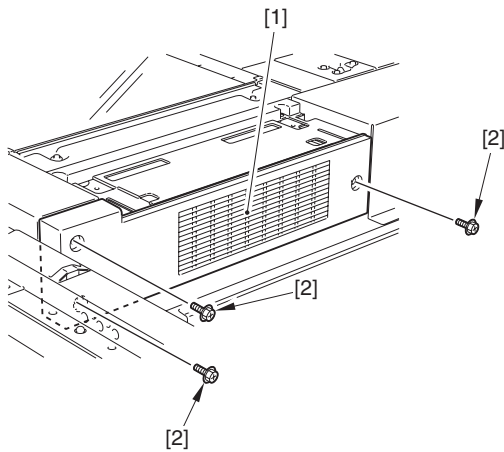
F-5-145

- <In case of Copyboard Cover>**
 7) Detach the upper right cover [1] for the copyboard cover.
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 2 cover rubbers [3]



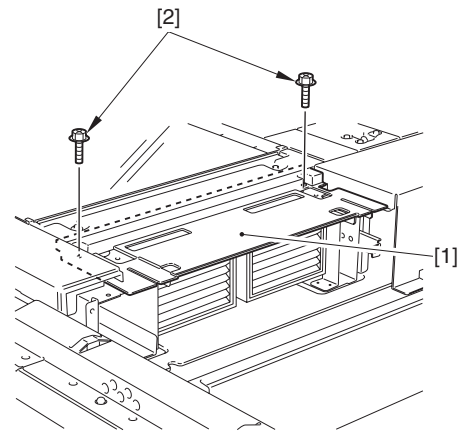
F-5-146

- 8) Detach the reader right cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



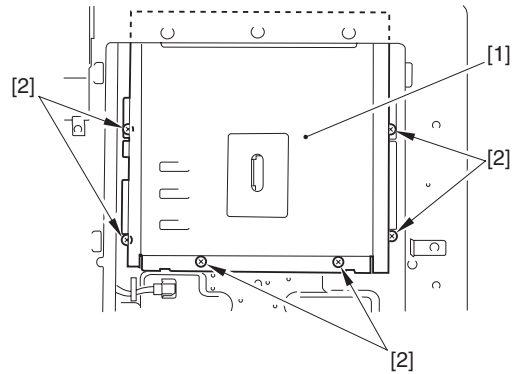
F-5-147

- (Only in case of ADF)**
 9) Detach the reader upper right cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]

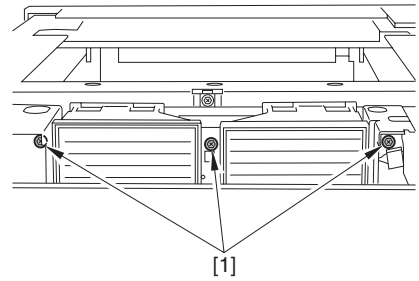


F-5-148

- (The subsequent steps are applied only for ADF.)
 10) Detach the CCD unit cover [1].
 - 9 screws [2] (3 screws at the right side of the reader)



F-5-149



F-5-150

⚠ Point to Note When Attaching CCD Unit Cover
Cover
 When attaching the CCD unit cover, be sure to hook the 2 claws [1] on the 2 claws [2] and then fix it with screws.

- 11) For the subsequent steps, see step 4 to 6 in 'Removing the CCD Unit' (in case of imagePRESS C1 Series).

**5.4.8.4 Scanner Parts Replacement Procedure
(imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)**

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

Parts:
CCD unit / copyboard glass / scanning lamp / inverter PCB

Procedure
Execute the following Service Modes in order.

- 1) COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-X
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-Y
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-Z
(Enter the white level data for the white plate)
- 2) COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > EC-R
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > EC-G
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > EC-B
(Color correction of the copyboard glass)

5.4.9 Scanner Motor

**5.4.9.1 Preparation for Removing the Scanner Motor
(imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)**

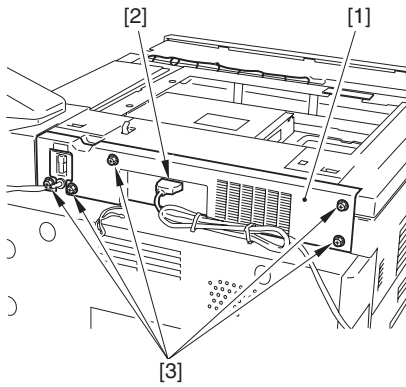
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the copyboard glass. (page 5-16)Reference [Removing the Copyboard Glass]

5.4.9.2 Removing the Scanner Motor (imagePRESS C1 Series)

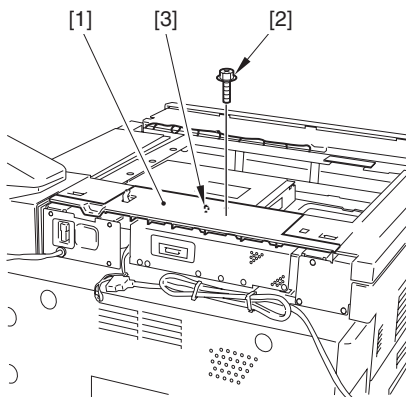
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the reader rear cover [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 5 screws [3]



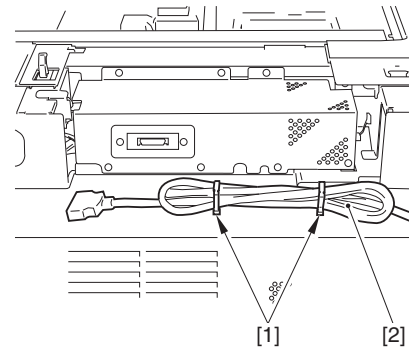
F-5-151

- 2) Detach the reader rear upper cover [1].
- 1 screw [1]
- 1 embossed section [3]



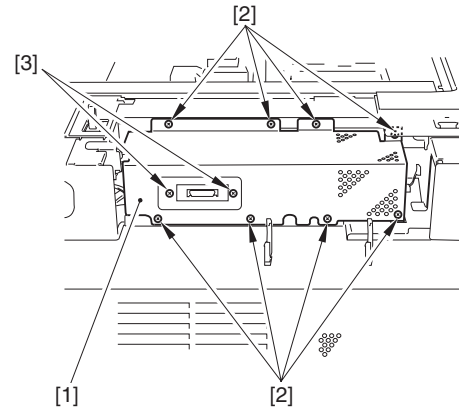
F-5-152

- 3) Remove the reader I/F cable [2] from the 2 wire saddles [1].



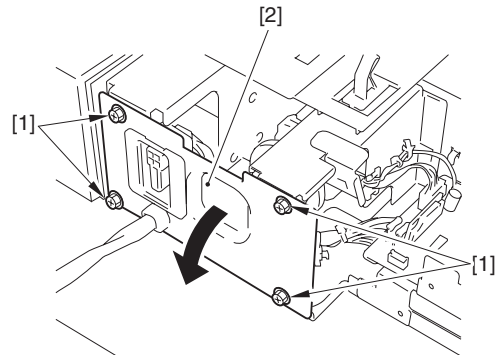
F-5-153

- 4) Remove the I/F board shielding plate [1].
- 8 screws [2]
- 2 screws [3]



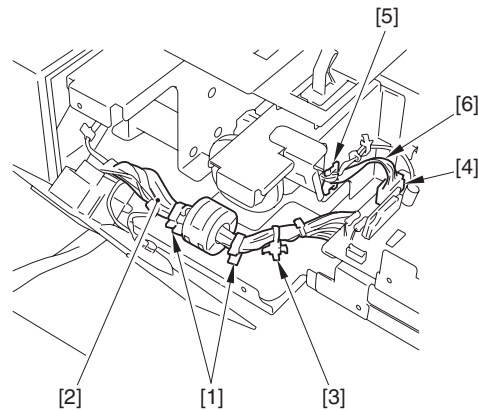
F-5-154

- 5) Remove the 4 screws [1] and then bring down the connector mount [2] to the front.



F-5-155

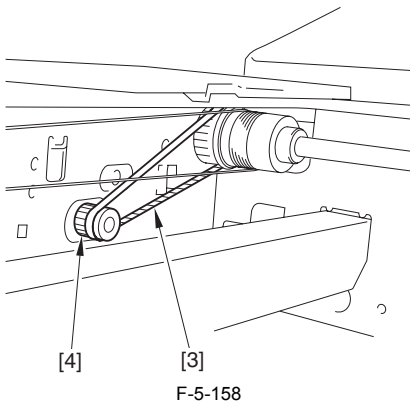
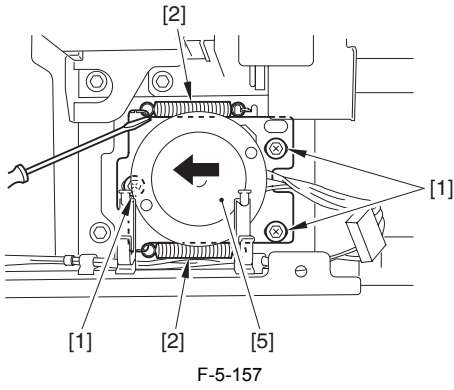
- 6) Remove the cable [2] from the 2 wire saddles [1], and then remove the re-use band [3].
- 7) Disconnect the connector [4], and then remove the cable [6] from the edge saddle [5].



F-5-156

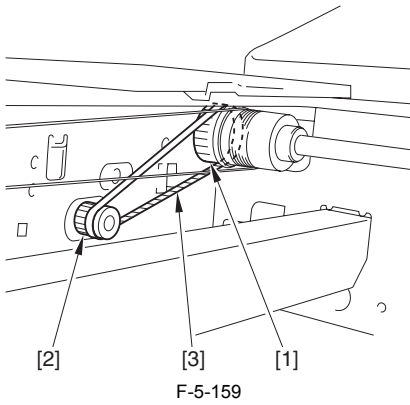
- 8) Remove the 3 screws [1] and the 2 springs (using a fine flat blade screw

driver etc.)
 9) Slide the scanner motor [5] in the direction shown by the arrow, and then remove the belt [3] from the gear [4].



Points to Note When Attaching the Belt

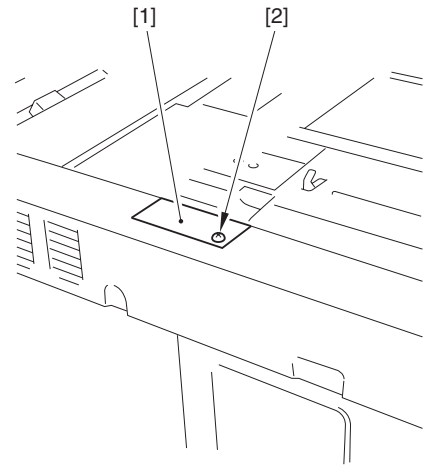
When attaching the scanner motor, be sure that the timing belt [3] is hooked onto the scanner pulley [1] and the motor shaft [2].



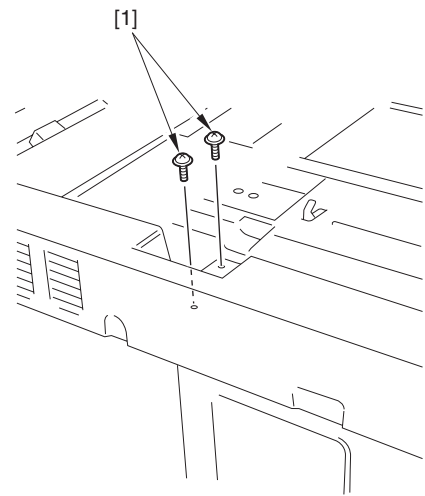
5.4.9.3 Removing the Scanner Motor (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

Color Image Reader-H1

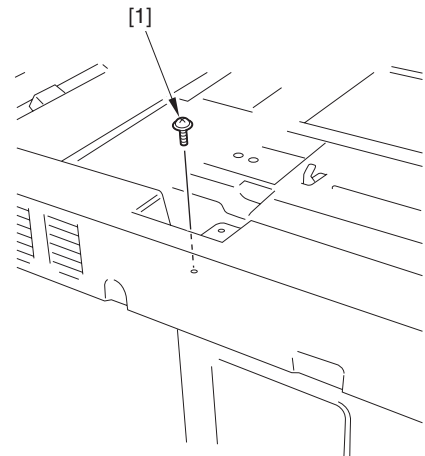
1) In case of the copyboard cover, detach the upper rear face plate 1 [1].
 - 1 screw [2]



2) Detach the upper rear face cover 3 [1].
 <In case of ADF>
 - 2 screws [1]



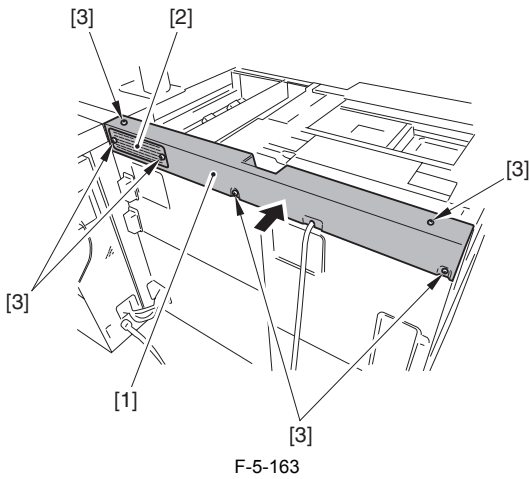
<In case of copyboard cover>
 - 1 screw [1]



4) Remove the sub station upper rear cover [1] and the filter [2].
 - 6 screws [3]

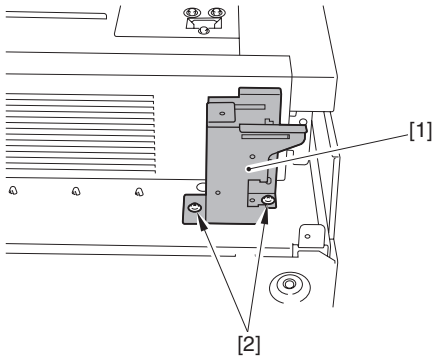


Be sure to tighten the 2 screws on the top while pressing the upper rear cover in the direction of the arrow.



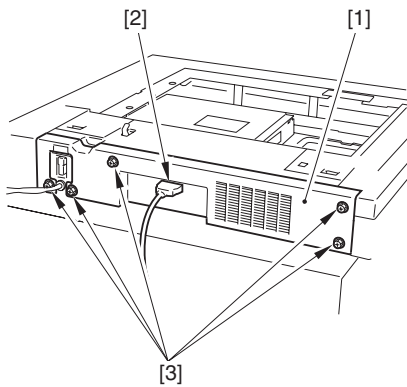
F-5-163

- 5) Remove the connector base [1].
- 2 screws [2]



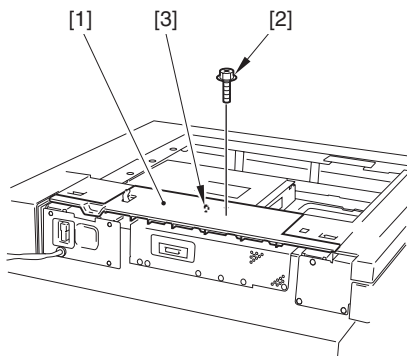
F-5-164

- 6) Detach the reader rear cover [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 5 screws [3]



F-5-165

- 7) Detach the reader upper rear cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]
- 1 emboss [3]



F-5-166

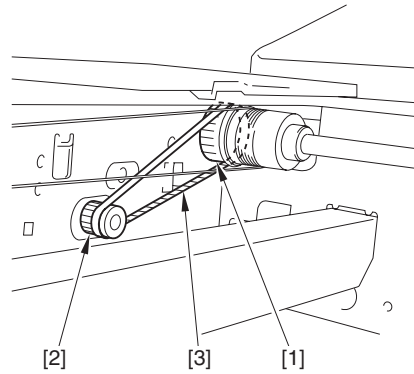
- 8) For the subsequent steps, see step 4 to 9 in 'Removing the Scanner Motor'

(in the case of imagePRESS C1 Series).

5.4.9.4 Attaching the Scanner Motor (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

When attaching the scanner motor, be sure to check that the timing belt [3] has been surely set to the scanner pulley [1] and the motor shaft [2].



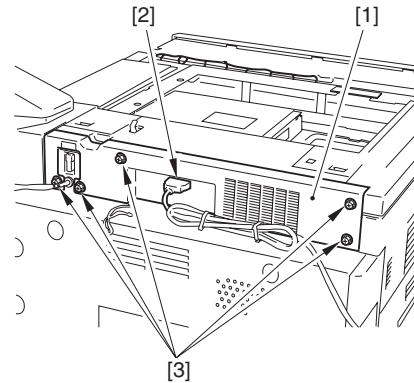
F-5-167

5.4.10 ADF Open/Close Sensor

5.4.10.1 Removing the ADF Open/Close Sensor (imagePRESS C1 Series)

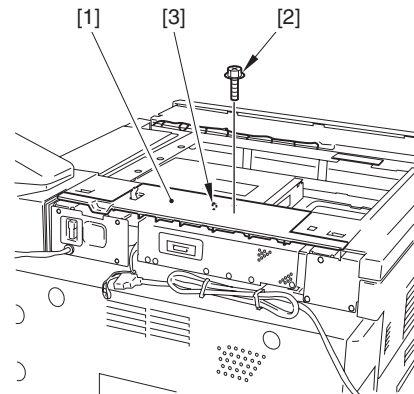
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the reader rear cover [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 5 screws [3]



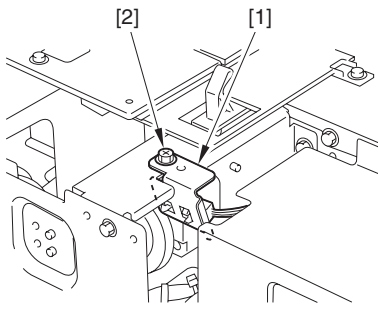
F-5-168

- 2) Detach the reader rear upper cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]
- 1 embossed section [3]



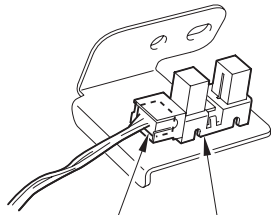
F-5-169

- 3) Remove the ADF open/close sensor support plate [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-5-170

- 4) Remove the ADF open/close sensor [1].
- 1 connector [2]

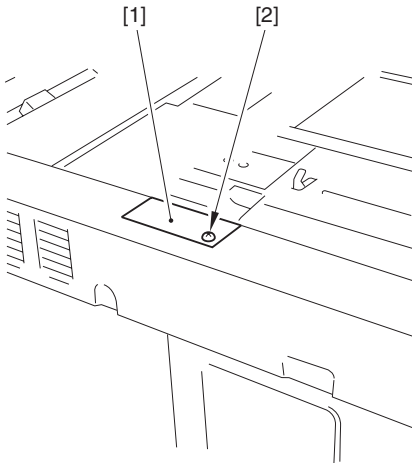


F-5-171

5.4.10.2 Removing the ADF Open/Close Sensor(imagePRESS C7000 Series)

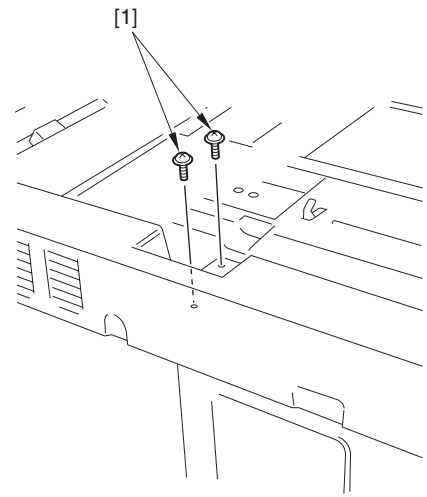
Color Image Reader-H1

- 1) In the case of the copyboard cover, detach the upper rear face plate 1 [1].
- 1 screw [2]



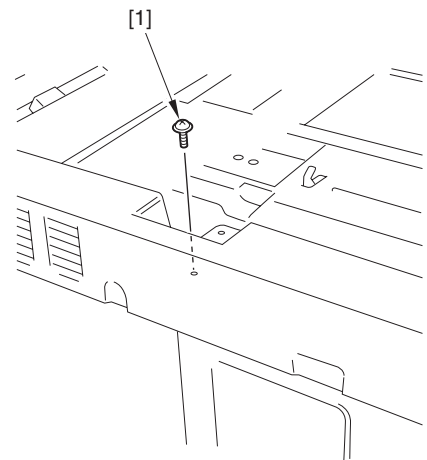
F-5-172

- 2) Detach the upper rear face cover 3 [1].
<In case of ADF>
- 2 screws [1]



F-5-173

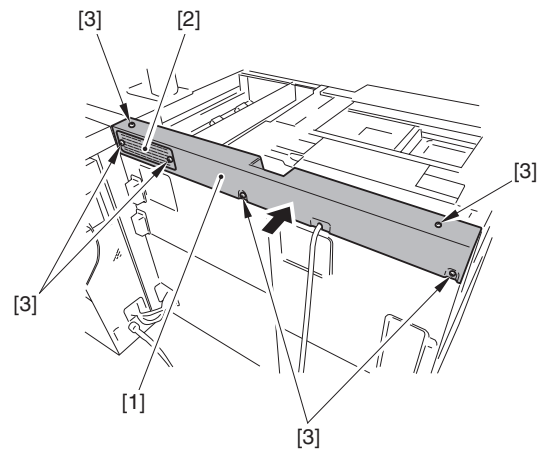
- <In case of copyboard cover>
- 1 screw [1]



F-5-174

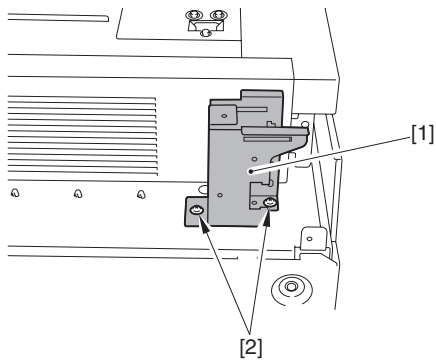
- 3) Detach the top rear cover [1] of the sub station and remove the filter [2].
- 6 screws [3]

! When tightening the 2 screws at the top surface, be sure to tighten them while pressing the upper rear cover in the direction of the arrow.



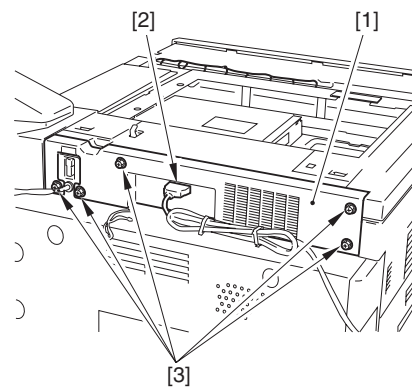
F-5-175

- 4) Detach the connector base [1].
- 2 screws [2]



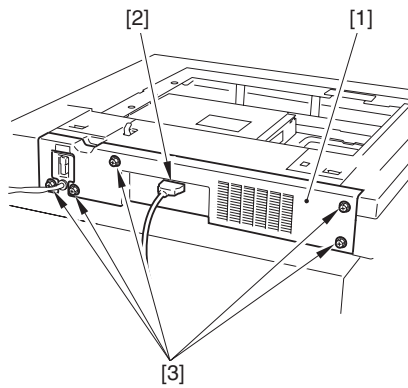
F-5-176

- 5) Detach the reader rear cover [1].
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 5 screws [3]



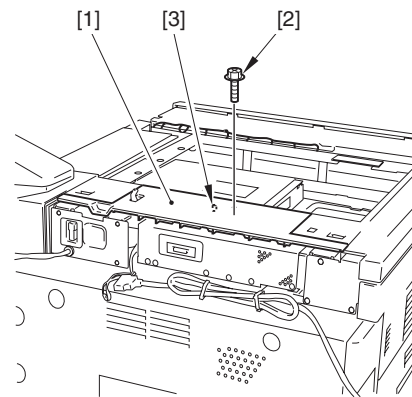
F-5-179

- 2) Detach the reader rear upper cover [1].
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 embossed section [3]



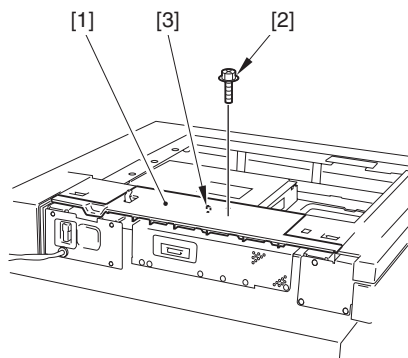
F-5-177

- 6) Detach the reader upper rear cover [1].
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 emboss [3]



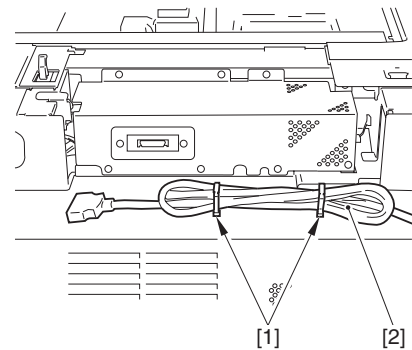
F-5-180

- 3) Remove the reader I/F cable [2] from the 2 wire saddles [1].



F-5-178

- 7) For the subsequent steps, see step 3, 4 in 'Removing the ADF Open/Close Sensor' (in the case of imagePRESS C1 Series).



F-5-181

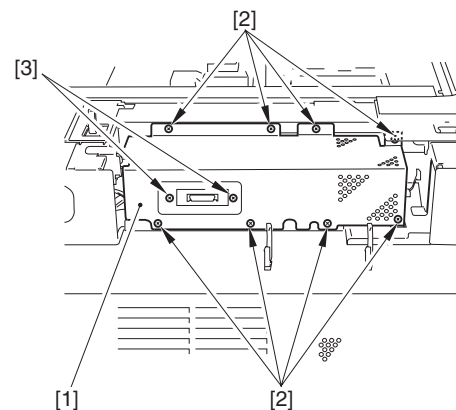
- 4) Remove the I/F board shielding plate [1].
 - 8 screws [2]
 - 2 screws [3]

5.4.11 Scanner Home Position Sensor

5.4.11.1 Removing the Scanner Home Position Sensor (imagePRESS C1 Series)

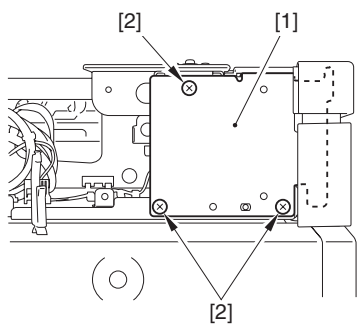
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the reader rear cover [1].
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 5 screws [3]



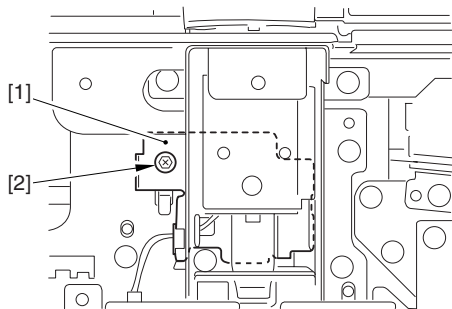
F-5-182

- 5) Dismount the DF mount reinforcement plate [1].
 - 3 connectors [2]



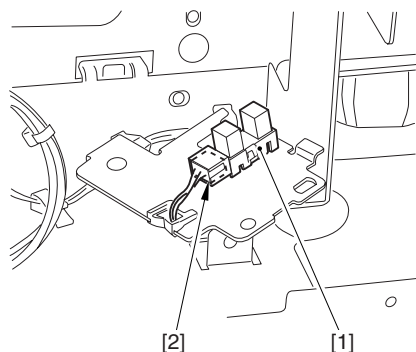
F-5-183

- 6) Remove the sensor mount [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-5-184

- 7) Remove the scanner home position sensor [1].
- 1 connector [2]

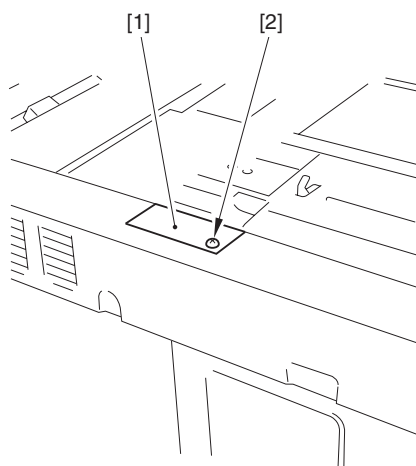


F-5-185

5.4.11.2 Removing the Scanner Home Position Sensor (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

Color Image Reader-H1

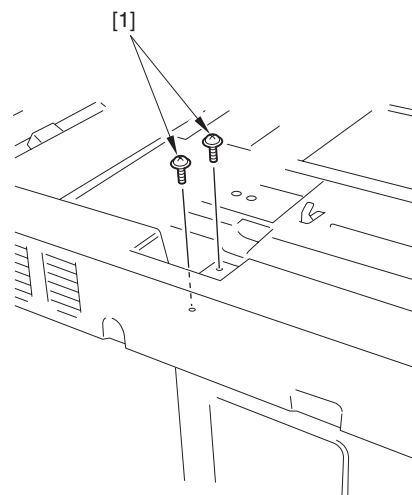
- 1) In the case of the copyboard cover, detach the upper rear face plate 1 [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-5-186

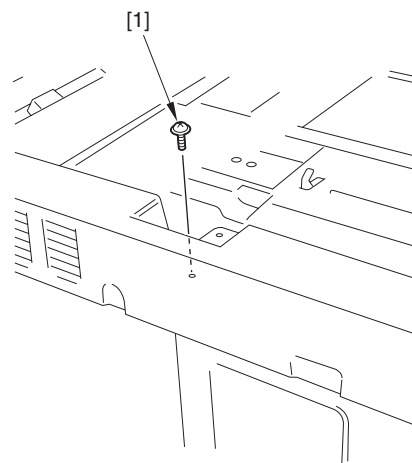
- 2) Detach the upper rear face cover 3 [1].
<In case of ADF>

- 2 screws [1]



F-5-187

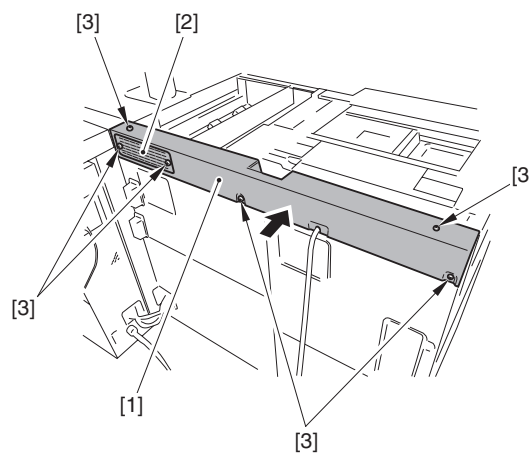
<In case of copyboard cover>
- 1 screw [1]



F-5-188

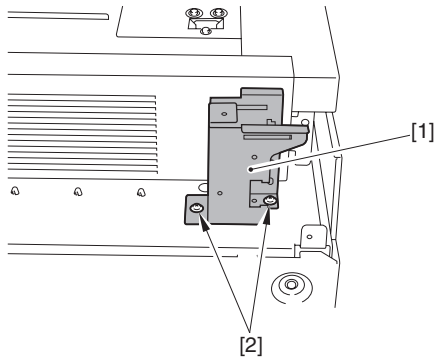
- 3) Detach the top rear cover [1] of the sub station and remove the filter [2].
- 6 screws [3]

! When tightening the 2 screws at the top surface, be sure to tighten them while pressing the upper rear cover in the direction of the arrow.



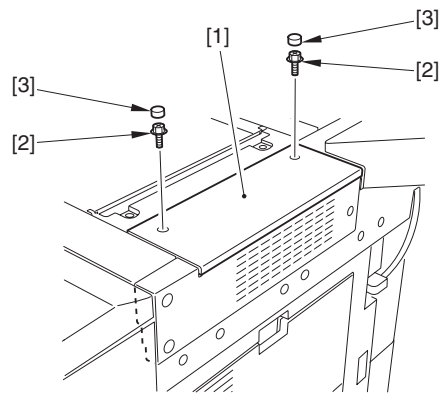
F-5-189

- 4) Detach the connector base [1].
- 2 screws [2]



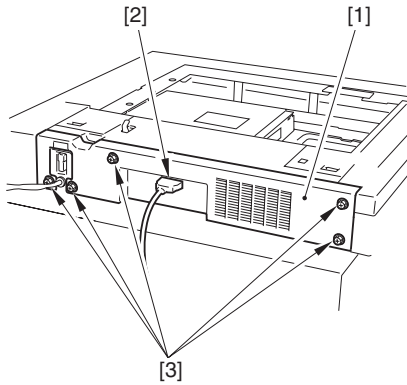
F-5-190

- 5) Detach the reader rear cover [1].
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 5 screws [3]



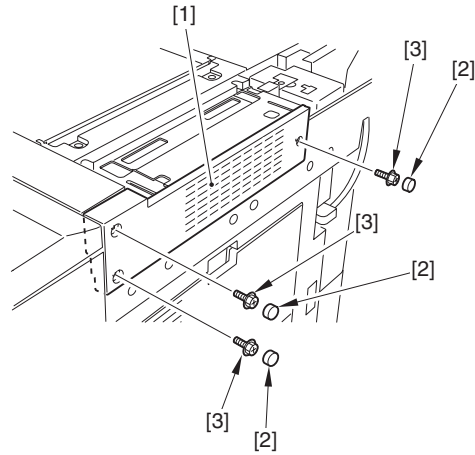
F-5-193

- 2) Detach the reader right cover [1].
 - 3 cover rubbers [2]
 - 3 screws [3]



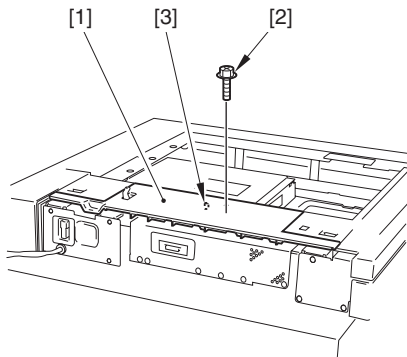
F-5-191

- 6) Detach the reader upper rear cover [1].
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 emboss [3]



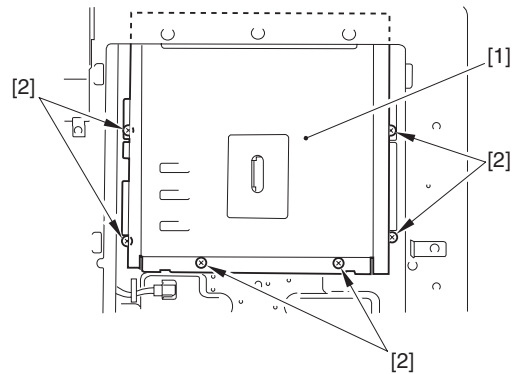
F-5-194

- 3) Detach the CCD unit cover [1].
 - 9 screws [2] (3 screws at the right side of the reader)



F-5-192

- 7) For the subsequent steps, see step 4 to 7 in 'Removing the Scanner Motor' (in the case of imagePRESS C1 Series).



F-5-195

5.4.12 Original Sensor

5.4.12.1 Preparation for Removing the Original Size Sensor (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)

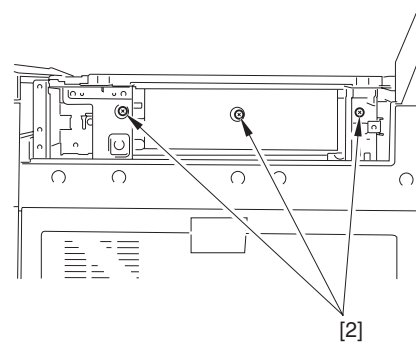
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the copyboard glass. (page 5-16)Reference [Removing the Copyboard Glass]

5.4.12.2 Removing the Original Size Sensor (imagePRESS C1 Series)

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

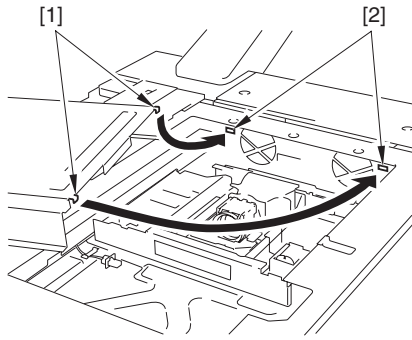
- 1) Detach the reader upper right cover [1].
 - 2 cover rubbers [2]
 - 2 screws [3]



F-5-196

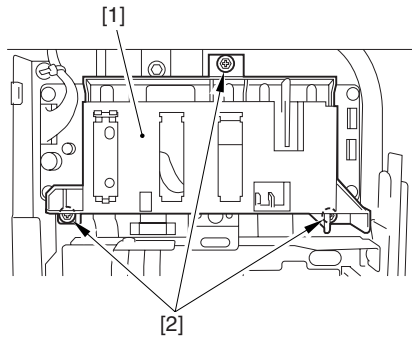
⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the CCD Unit Cover
 When attaching the CCD unit cover, be sure to hook the 2 claws [1] on the 2

slots [2] and then fix it with screws.



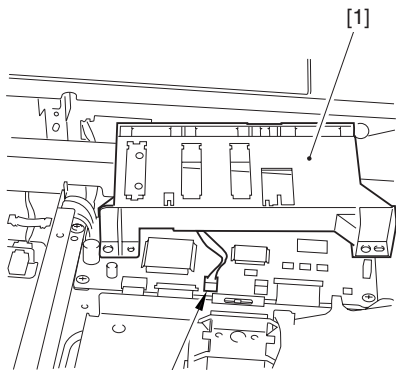
F-5-197

- 4) Slightly lift up the document size sensor unit [1].
- 3 screws [2]



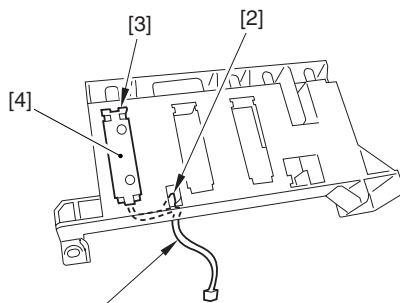
F-5-198

- 5) Remove the document size sensor unit [1].
- 1 connector [2]



F-5-199

- 6) Free the cable [1] from the cable guide [2], disengage the claw [3] and remove the document size sensor [4].



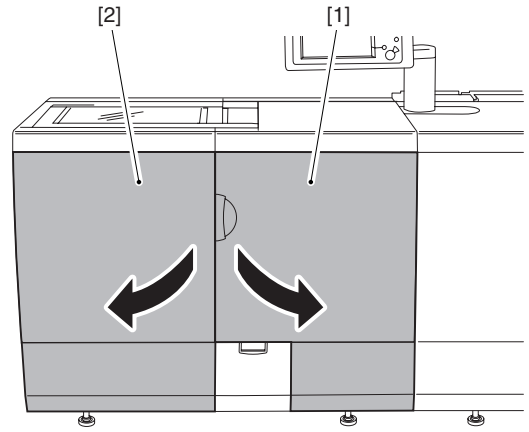
F-5-200

5.4.12.3 Removing the Original Size Sensor (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

Color Image Reader-H1

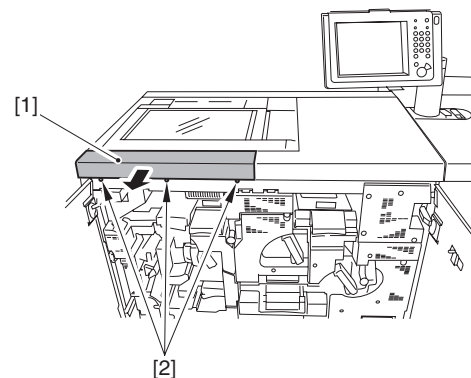
- 1) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cov-

er [2].



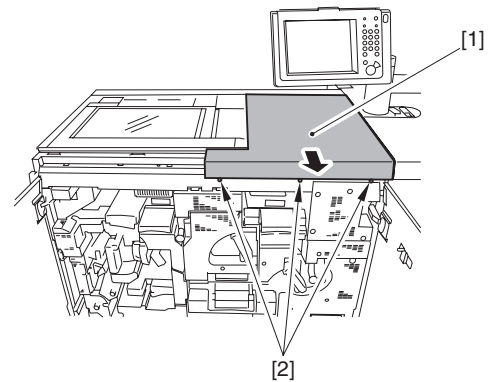
F-5-201

- 2) Detach the sub station upper front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



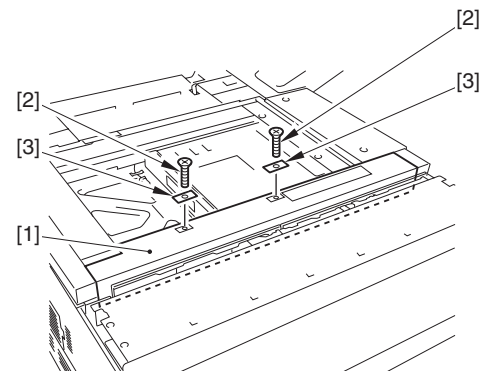
F-5-202

- 3) Detach the sub station upper right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-5-203

- 4) Detach the reader front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 magnet catches [3]



F-5-204

7) For the subsequent steps, see step 4 to 6 in 'Removing the Original Size Sensor' (in the case of imagePRESS C1 Series).

5.4.13 Scanner Drive Cable

5.4.13.1 Preparation for Removing the Scanner Motor Drive Wire (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)

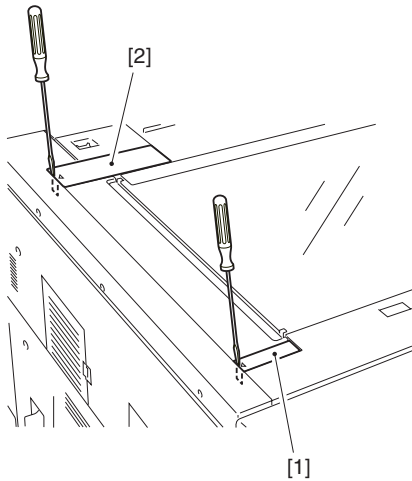
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the decurler.
- 2) Detach the control panel.
- 3) Remove the copyboard glass. (page 5-16)Reference [Removing the Copyboard Glass]
- 4) Remove the hopper unit.

5.4.13.2 Removing the Scanner Drive Wire (imagePRESS C1 Series)

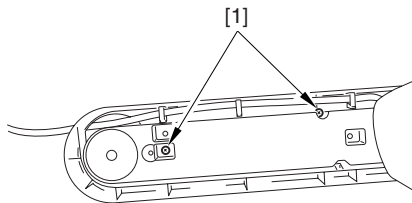
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the small cover (left front) [1] and the small cover (left rear) [2] using a flat-blade screwdriver etc.,.



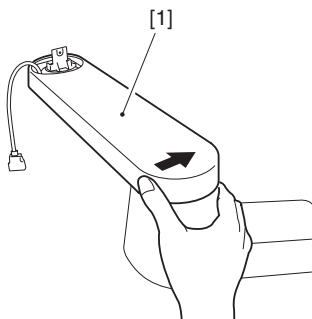
F-5-205

- 2) Remove the 2 screws [1] on the back side of the arm unit.



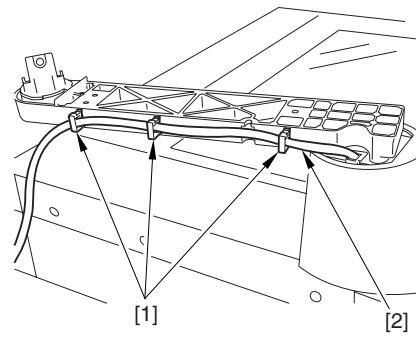
F-5-206

- 3) Press the arm cover 1 [1] in the direction shown by the arrow to detach it upward.



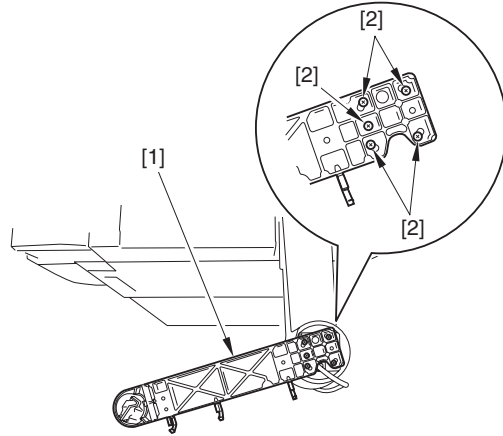
F-5-207

- 4) Remove the control panel interface cable [2] from the 3 wire saddle [1].



F-5-208

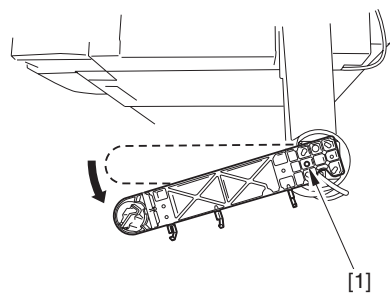
- 5) Remove the arm unit [1].
- 5 screws [2]



F-5-209

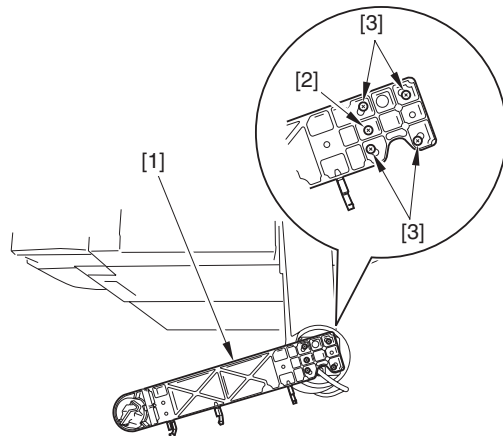


- Turn the arm unit in the direction shown by the arrow until the screw hole [1] matches that of the control panel arm unit.



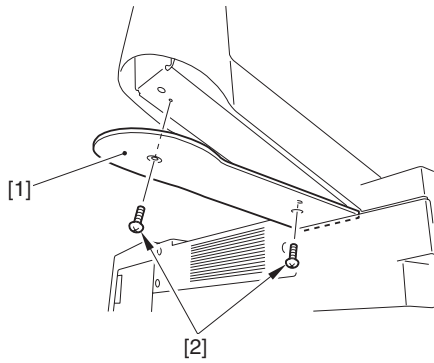
F-5-210

- When attaching the arm unit [1], determine the position with the 1 screw [2] and then fix it with the 4 screws [3].



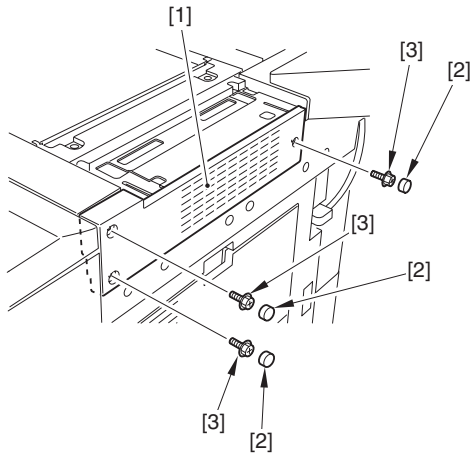
F-5-211

- 6) Detach the arm cover 3 [1].
- 2 screws [2]



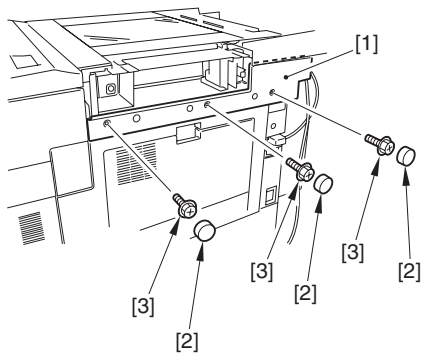
F-5-212

- 7) Detach the reader right cover [1].
 - 3 cover rubber (large) [2]
 - 3 screws [3]



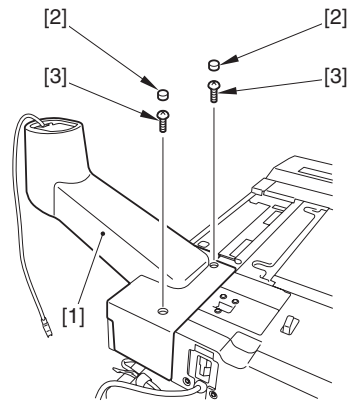
F-5-213

- 8) Detach the upper right cover [1].
 - 3 cover rubbers (large) [2]
 - 3 screws [3]



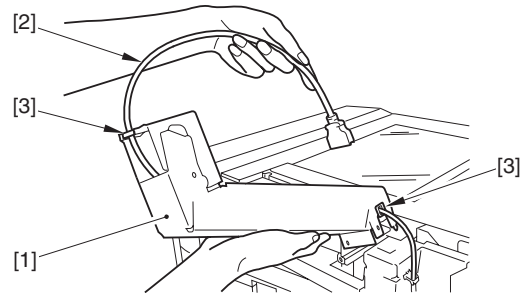
F-5-214

- 9) Detach the arm cover 2 [1].
 - 2 cover rubbers (large) [2]
 - 2 screws [3]



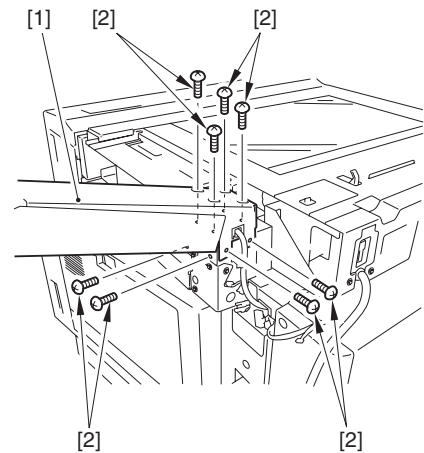
F-5-215

- 10) Remove the control panel interface cable [2] from the control panel arm unit [1].
 - 2 edge saddles [3]



F-5-216

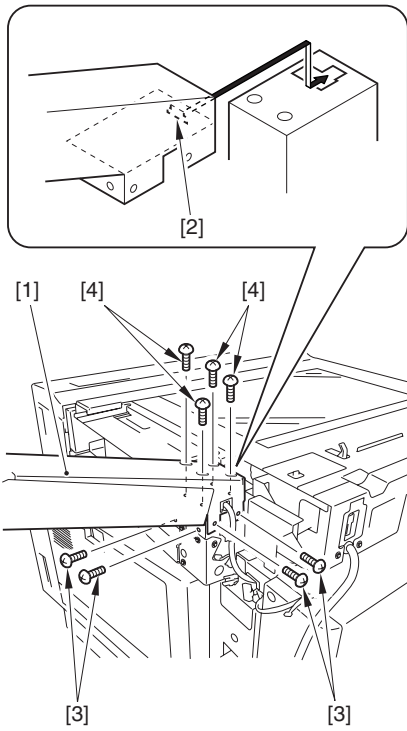
- 11) Remove the control panel arm unit [1].
 - 8 screws [2]



F-5-217

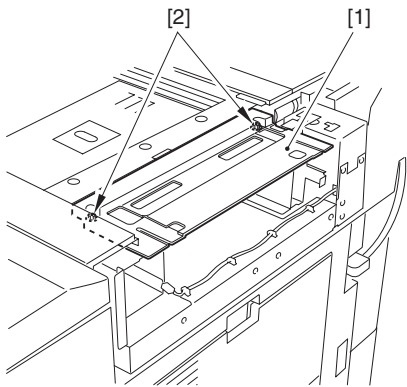


- Hook the claw [2] of the control panel arm unit [1], attach the 4 screws [3] and attach by the 4 screws [4].
 - Be careful not to drop the screws.



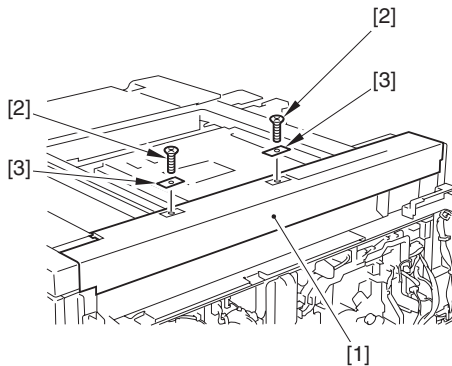
F-5-218

- 12) Detach the reader upper right cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



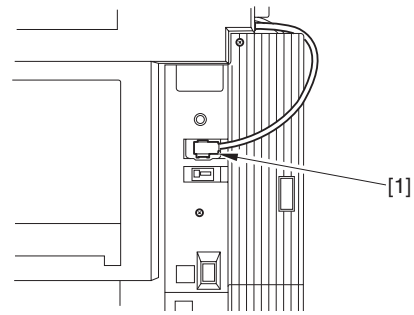
F-5-219

- 13) Detach the reader front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 magnet catches [3]



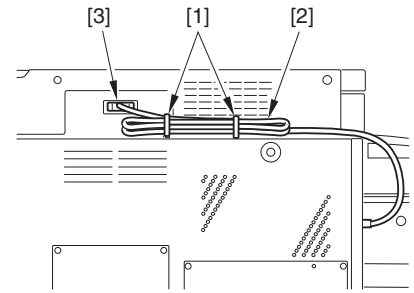
F-5-220

- 14) Disconnect the reader power supply cable connector [1].



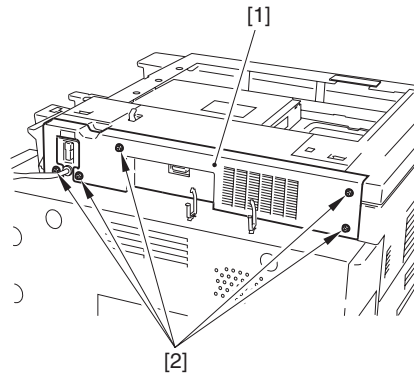
F-5-221

- 15) Remove the control panel interface cable [2] from the 2 wire saddles [1] and then disconnect the connector [3].



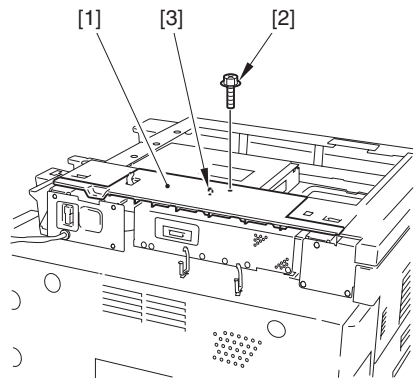
F-5-222

- 16) Detach the reader rear cover [1].
- 5 screws [2]



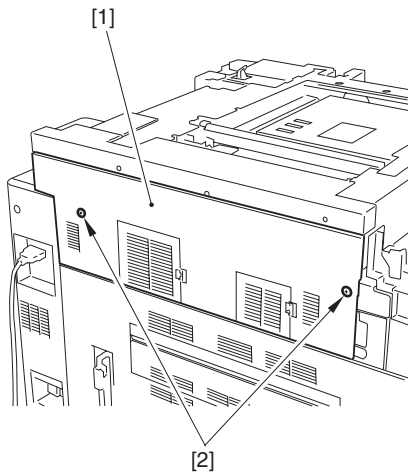
F-5-223

- 17) Detach the reader rear upper cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]
- 1 emboss [3]



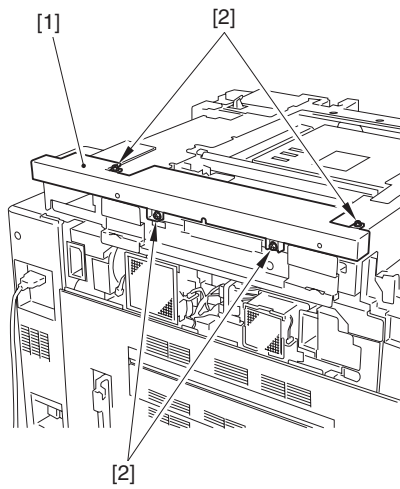
F-5-224

- 18) Detach the upper left cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



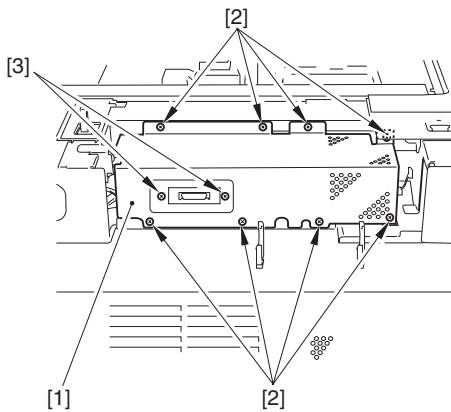
F-5-225

- 19) Detach the reader left cover [1].
- 4 screws [2]



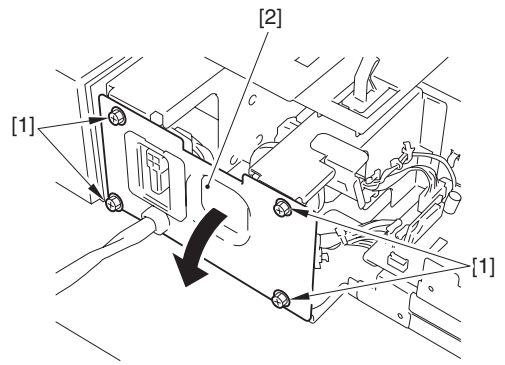
F-5-226

- 20) Remove the I/F board shielding plate [1].
- 8 screws [2]
- 2 screws [3]



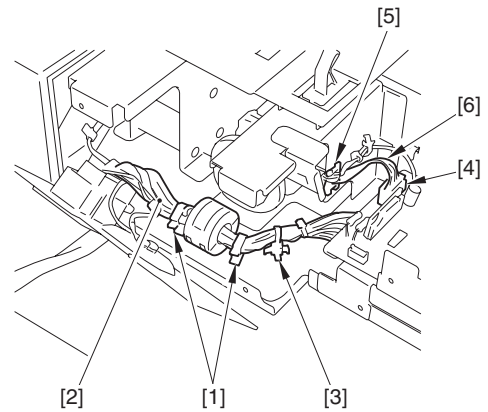
F-5-227

- 21) Remove the 4 screws [1] and tilt the connector mount [2] forward.



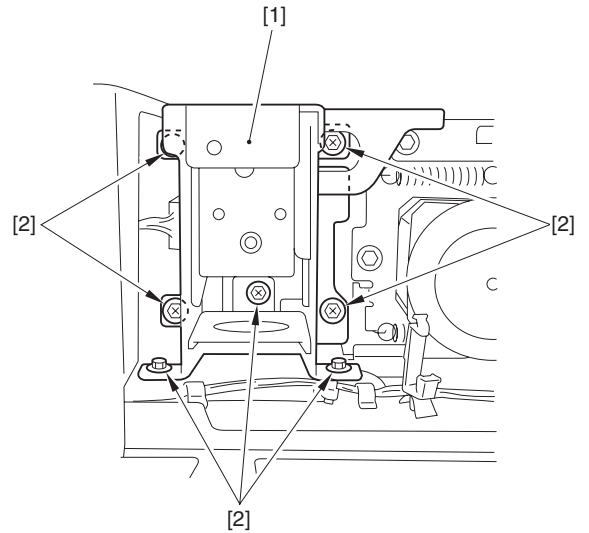
F-5-228

- 22) Remove the cable [3] from the 2 wire saddles [1] and then remove the reuse band [3].
23) Disconnect the connector [4] and then remove the cable [6] from the edge saddle [5].



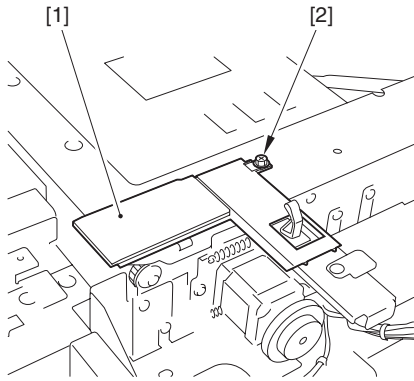
F-5-229

- 24) Remove the DF right hinge mount [1].
- 7 screws [2]



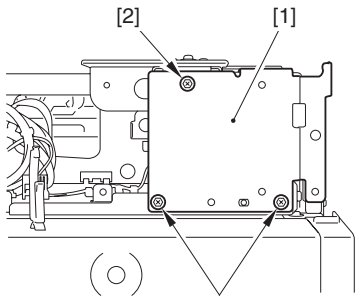
F-5-230

- 25) Detach the small cover (right rear).
- 1 screw [2]



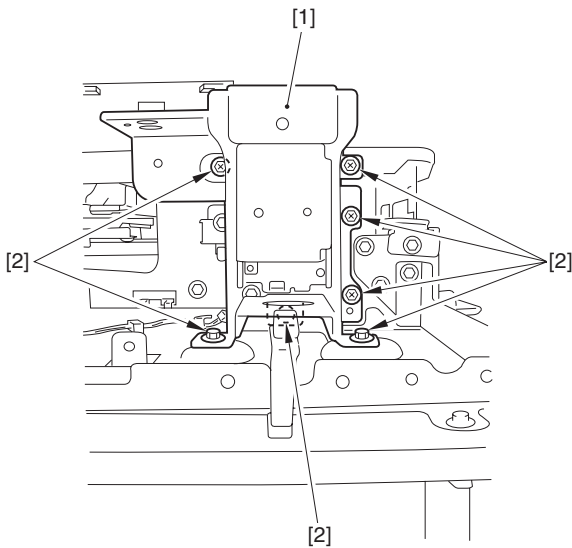
F-5-231

26) Detach the DF mount reinforcement plate [1]
- 3 screws [2]



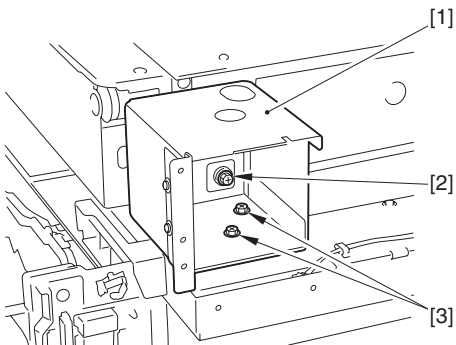
F-5-232

27) Remove the DF left hinge mount [1].
- 7 screws [2]



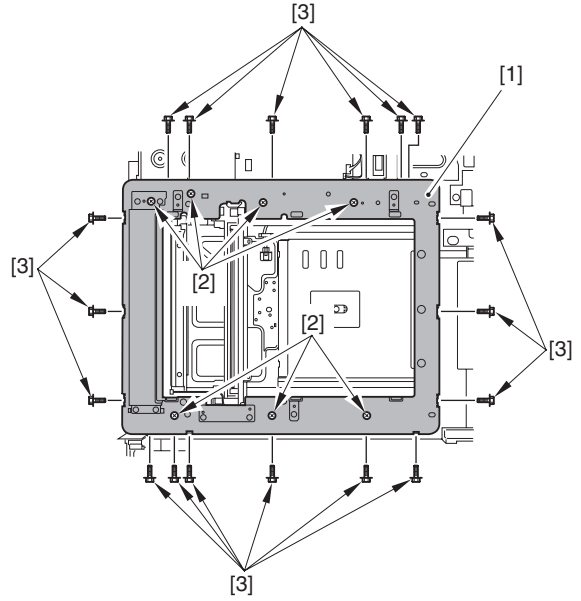
F-5-233

28) Remove the reader fixing plate (right front) [1].
- 1 stepped screw [2]
- 2 screws [3]



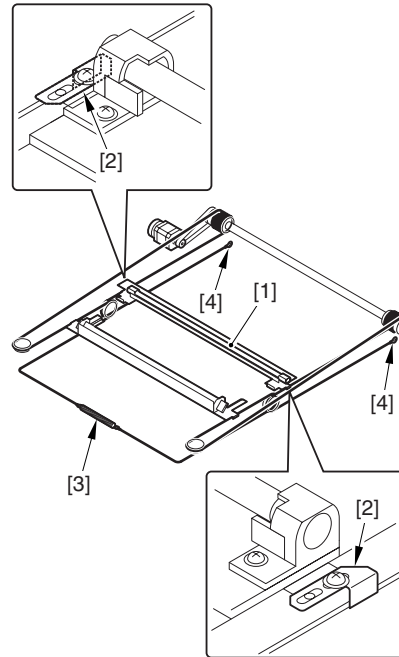
F-5-234

29) Remove the reader upper frame [1].
- 7 screws [2]
- 18 screws [3]



F-5-235

30) Remove the 2 wire fixing screws [2] on the primary mirror mount [1].
31) Remove the spring [3] to fix the wire.
32) Remove the 2 hooks [4] of the wire from the right side of the reader frame.
33) Remove the wire from each pulley.

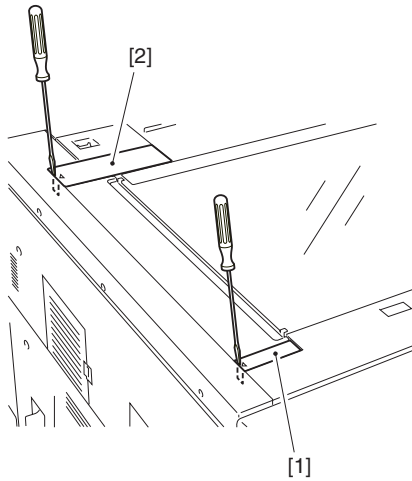


F-5-236

5.4.13.3 Removing the Scanner Drive Wire (imagePRESS C7000 Series)

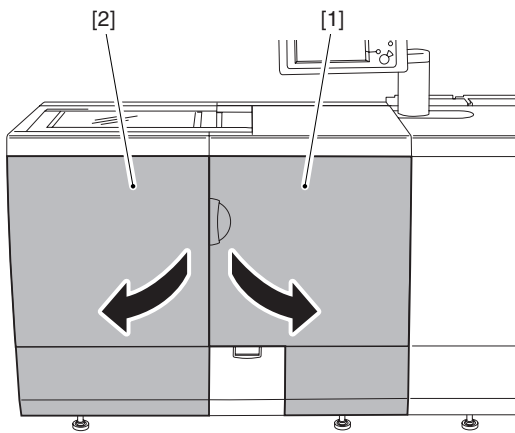
Color Image Reader-H1

1) Detach the small cover (left front) [1] and the small cover (left rear) [2] with flat-blade screwdriver etc.



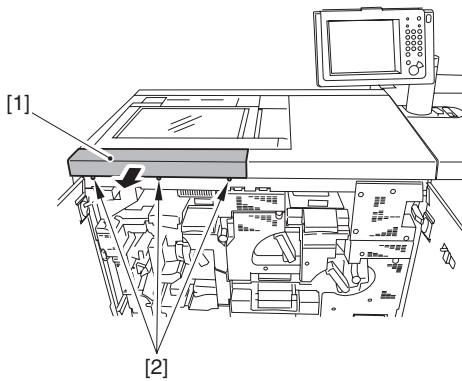
F-5-237

2) Open the sub station front right cover [1] and the sub station front left cover [2].



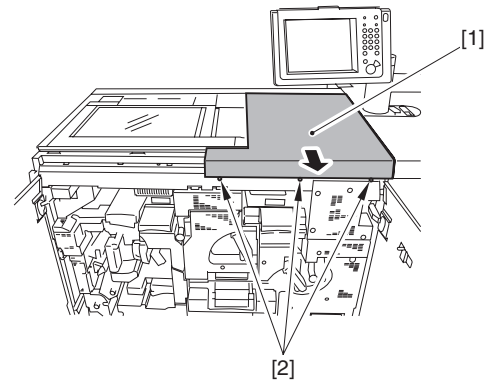
F-5-238

3) Detach the sub station upper front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



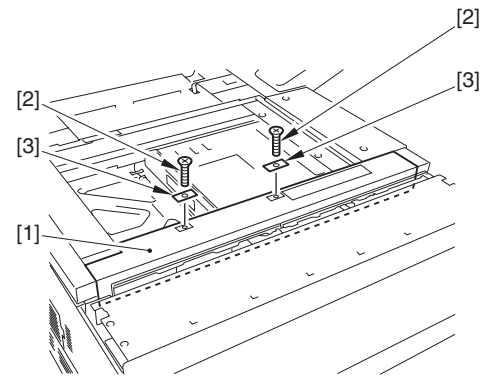
F-5-239

4) Detach the sub station upper right cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



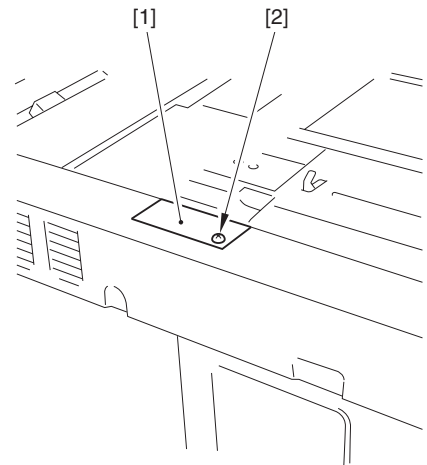
F-5-240

5) Detach the reader front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 magnet catches [3]



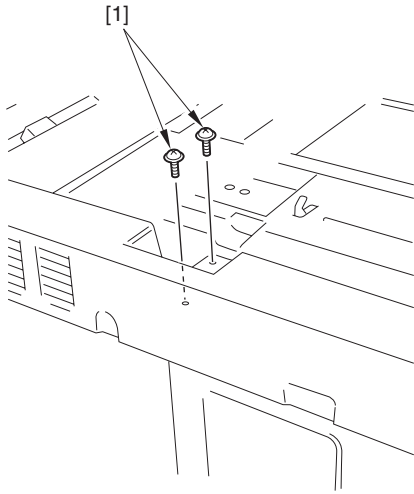
F-5-241

6) Detach the upper rear face cover 1 [1].
- 1 screw [2]



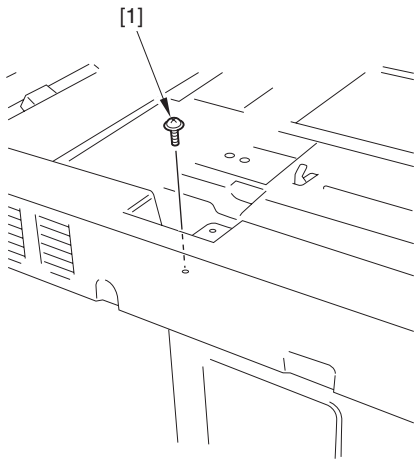
F-5-242

7) Detach the upper rear face cover 3 [1].
<In case of ADF>
- 2 screws [1]



F-5-243

<In case of copyboard cover>
- 1 screw [1]

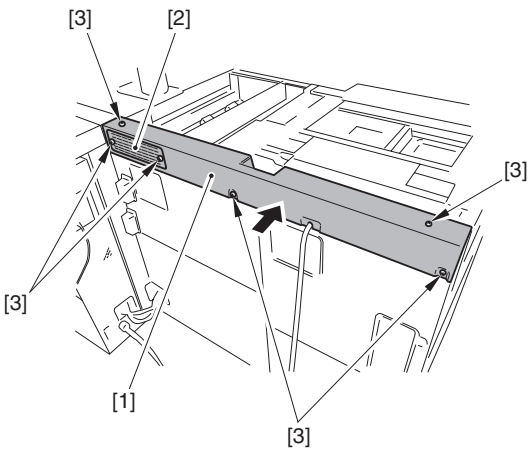


F-5-244

8) Detach the sub station upper rear cover [1] and the filter [2].
- 6 screws [3]

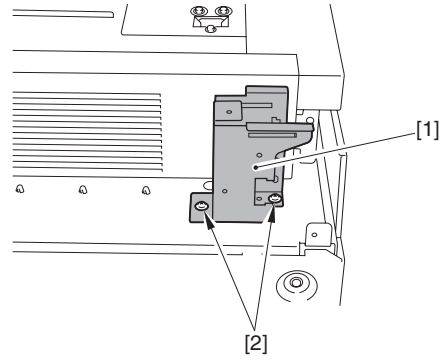


When tightening the 2 screws at the top surface, be sure to tighten them while pressing the upper rear cover in the direction of the arrow.



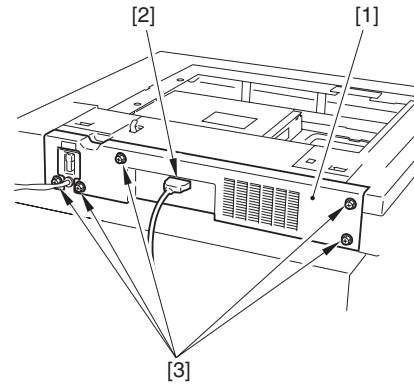
F-5-245

9) Remove the connector mount [1].
- 2 screws [2]



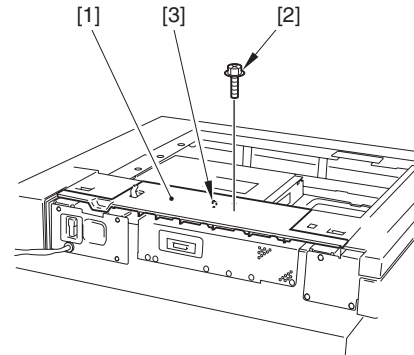
F-5-246

10) Detach the reader rear cover [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 5 screws [3]



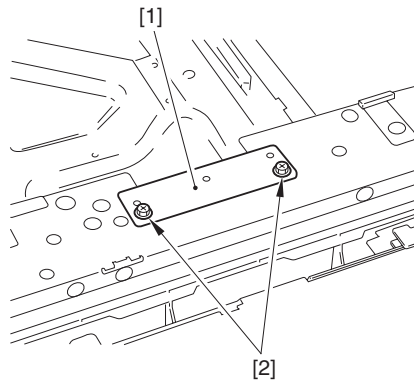
F-5-247

11) Detach the reader upper rear cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]
- 1 emboss [3]



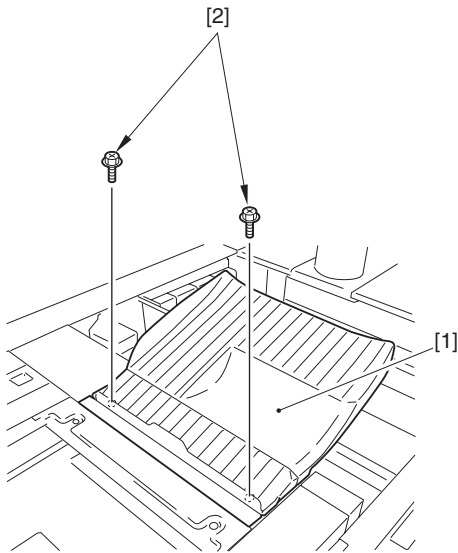
F-5-248

12) Detach the magnet support plate [1].
- 2 screws [2]



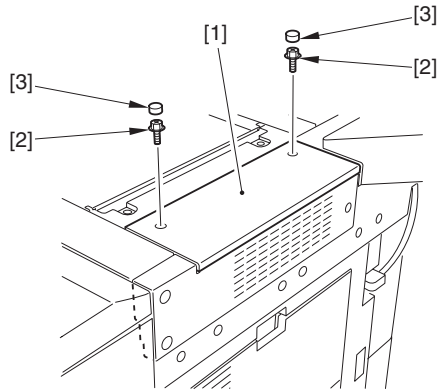
F-5-249

<In case of ADF>
13) Remove the document tray [1].
- 2 screws [2]



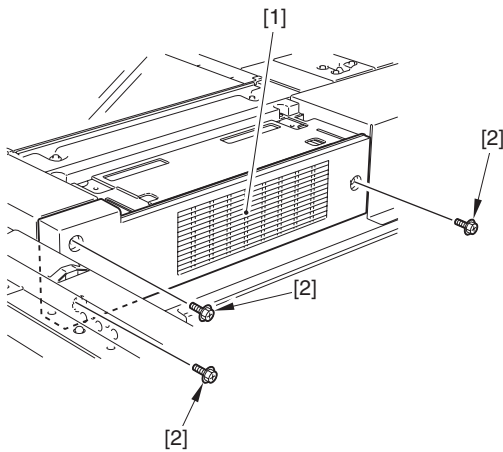
F-5-250

- <In case of copyboard cover>**
 14) Detach the upper right cover [1] for the copyboard cover.
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 2 cover rubbers [3]



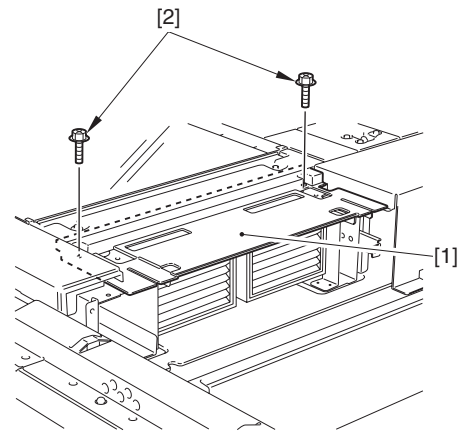
F-5-251

- 15) Detach the reader right cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



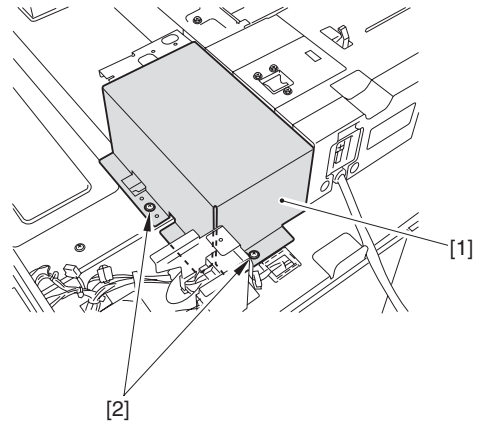
F-5-252

- (Only in case of ADF)**
 16) Detach the reader upper right cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



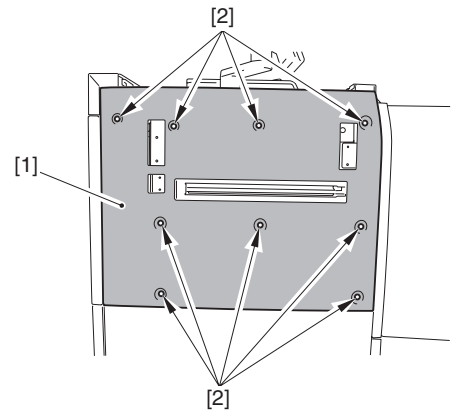
F-5-253

- 17) Attach the reader right rear cover [1].
 - 2 screws (TP; M4X6)[2]



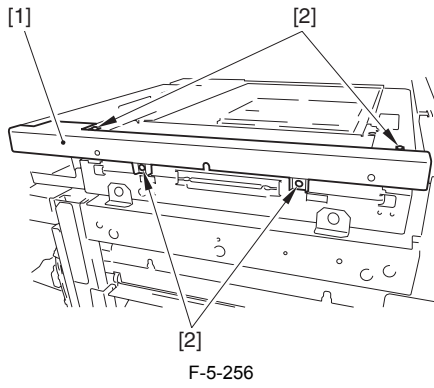
F-5-254

- 18) Detach the sub station upper left cover [1].
 - 9 screws [2]



F-5-255

- 19) Detach the reader left cover [1].
 - 4 screws [2]



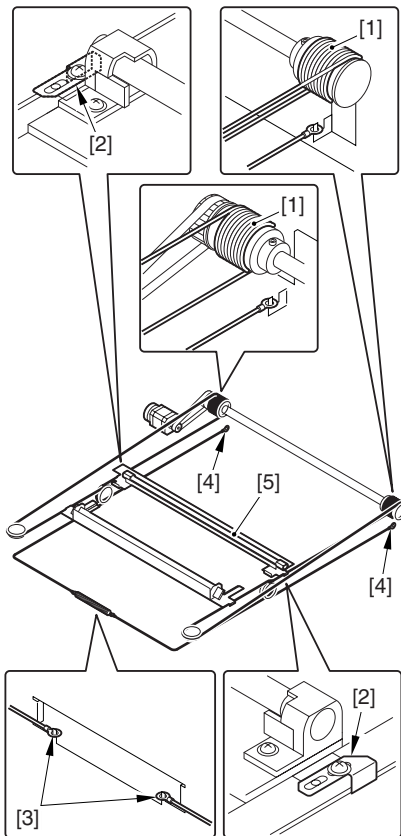
F-5-256

20) For the subsequent steps, see step 20 to 33 in 'Removing the Scanner Drive Wire' (in case of imagePRESS C1 Series).

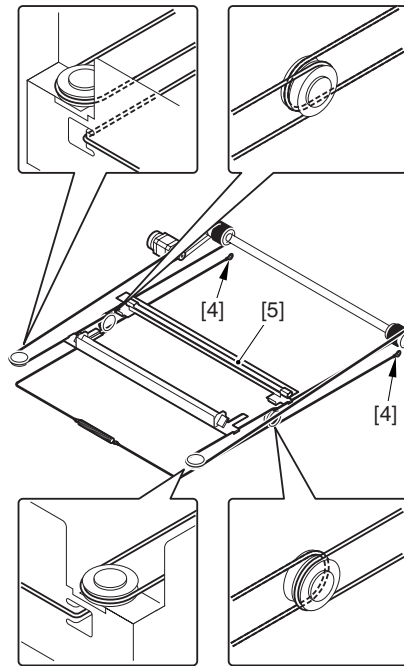
5.4.13.4 Attaching the Scanner Drive Wire (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Put the ball of the wire into the hole on the drive pulley[1] and wind the wire around it (inner side 4 turns, outer side 5 turns), then fix it with the tape etc. At this time, wind it with the wire retaining fixture [2] inside (same as shown below).
- 2) Hook the wire onto each pulley and then fix one end onto the hook[3] at the left side and the other end onto the hook[4] at the right side temporarily.
- 3) Temporarily fix the wire fixing plate [2] to the primary mirror mount [5].
- 4) Attach the reader upper frame.



F-5-257

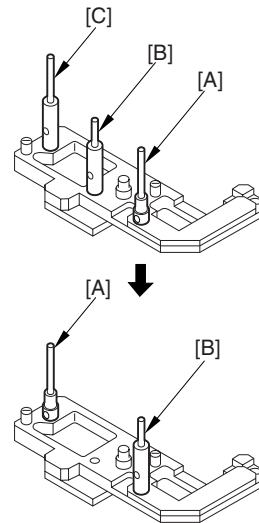


F-5-258

5.4.13.5 Adjustment of Positions of the Mirror 1, 2 Mount (imagePRESS C1 Series/imagePRESS C7000 Series)

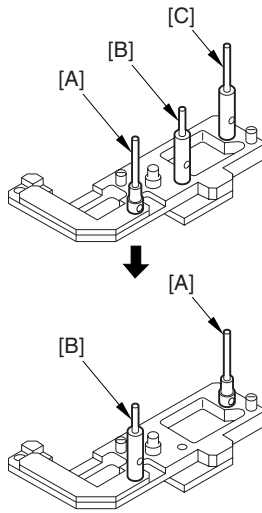
imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Arrange the pin position for rear on the mirror positioning tool (FY9-3009-040) from the initial position to the operational position.



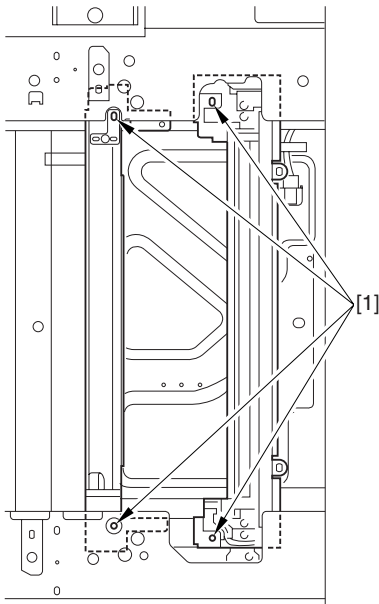
F-5-259

- 2) Arrange the pin position for front on the mirror positioning tool from the initial position to the operational position.

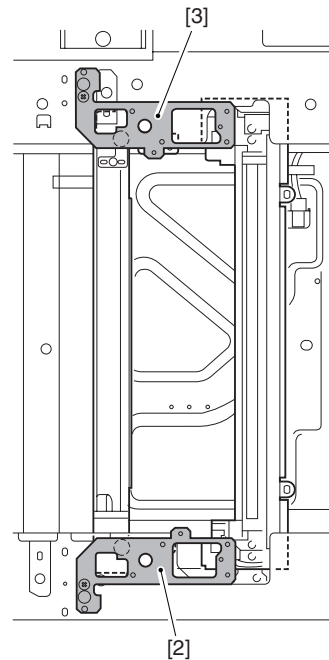


F-5-260

3) Insert the pin of the mirror positioning tool (front [2], rear [3]) into each hole [1] of the primary mirror base and the secondary mirror base.



F-5-261



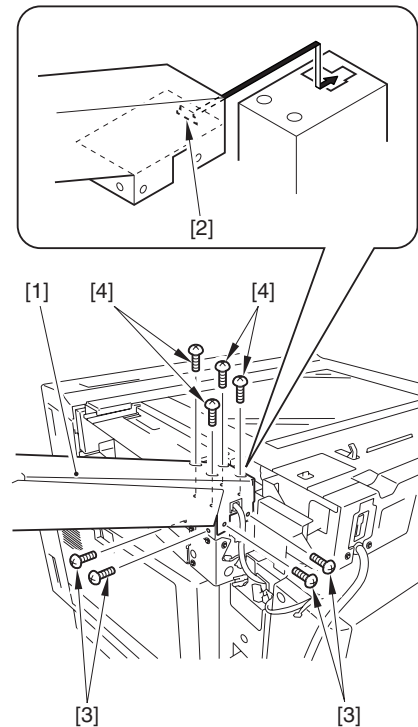
F-5-262

- 4) Fix the ends of the wire (temporarily fixed to the reader frame) with the spring.
- 5) Fully tighten the screw on the rear and the front wire mount.
- 6) Remove the mirror positioning tool (front, rear).
- 7) Assemble the mirror mounts by the reverse procedure to disassemble them.

5.4.13.6 Points to Note When Attaching the Control Panel (imagePRESS C1 Series)

imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+

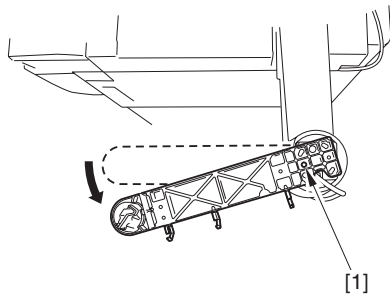
- ⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Control Panel Arm Unit**
- Be sure to fit the screws in order. Hook the claw [2] of the control panel arm unit [1] and then fit the 4 screws [3], and then the 4 screws [4].
 - Be sure not to drop the screws.



F-5-263

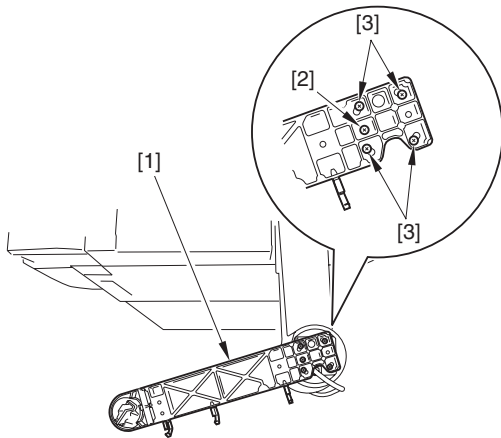
⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Arm Unit

- Turn the arm unit in the direction shown by the arrow until the screw hole [1] matches that of the control panel arm unit.

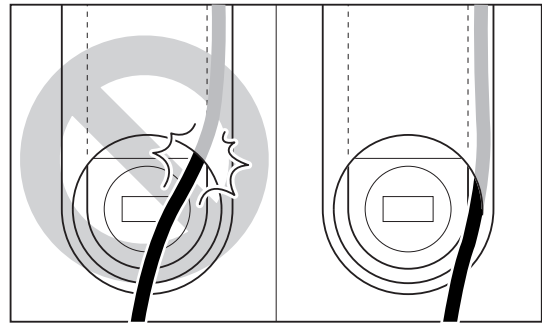


F-5-264

- Be sure to fit the screws in order. Adjust the position of the arm unit [1] by the 1 screw [2], and then secure it in place by the 4 screws [3].



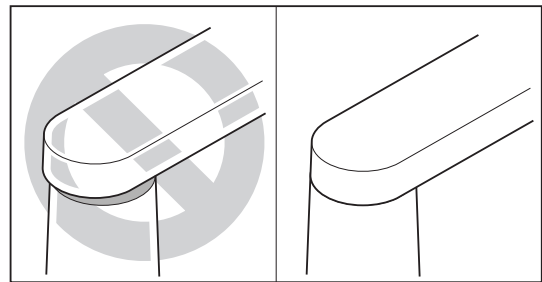
F-5-265



F-5-267

⚠ Points to Note when Securing the Arm Cover 1 in Place

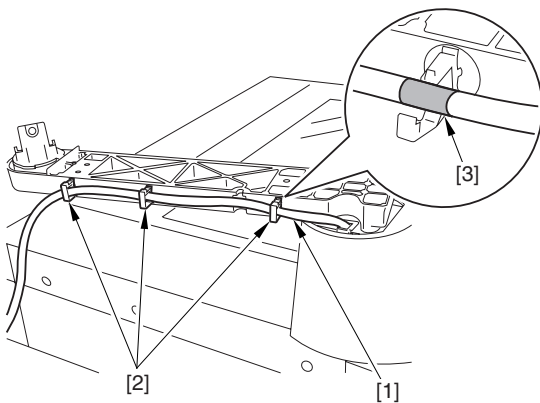
Be sure that the arm cover 1 and the arm cover 2 are not displaced.



F-5-268

⚠ Points to Note when Fixing the Control Panel Interface Cable [1] in Place

Of the 3 positions of wire saddle [2] to be secured in place, adjust the position of the wire saddle on the rear side and the seal [3].



F-5-266

⚠ Points to Note when Attaching the Arm Cover 1

Be sure not to have the cable caught in.

Chapter 6 Laser Exposure

Contents

6.1 Construction	6-1
6.1.1 Specifications/Control Mechanisms/Functions	6-1
6.1.2 Major Components.....	6-1
6.1.3 Control System Configuration	6-2
6.2 Basic Sequence	6-2
6.2.1 Basic Sequence	6-2
6.3 Various Control.....	6-3
6.3.1 Controlling the Laser Activation Timing.....	6-3
6.3.1.1 ON/OFF Control	6-3
6.3.1.2 Main Scan Sync Control	6-4
6.3.1.3 Sub Scan Sync Control.....	6-5
6.3.2 Controlling the Intensity of Laser Light	6-6
6.3.2.1 APC Control	6-6
6.3.2.2 PWM Control	6-6
6.3.3 Controlling the Laser Scanner Motor	6-6
6.3.3.1 Laser Scanner Motor Control	6-6
6.3.4 Controlling the Laser Shutter	6-7
6.3.4.1 Laser Shutter Control	6-7
6.4 Parts Replacement Procedure.....	6-9
6.4.1 Laser Scanner Unit.....	6-9
6.4.1.1 Preparation for Removing the Laser Scanner Unit	6-9
6.4.1.2 Removing the Laser Scanner Unit	6-9

6.1 Construction

6.1.1 Specifications/Control Mechanisms/Functions

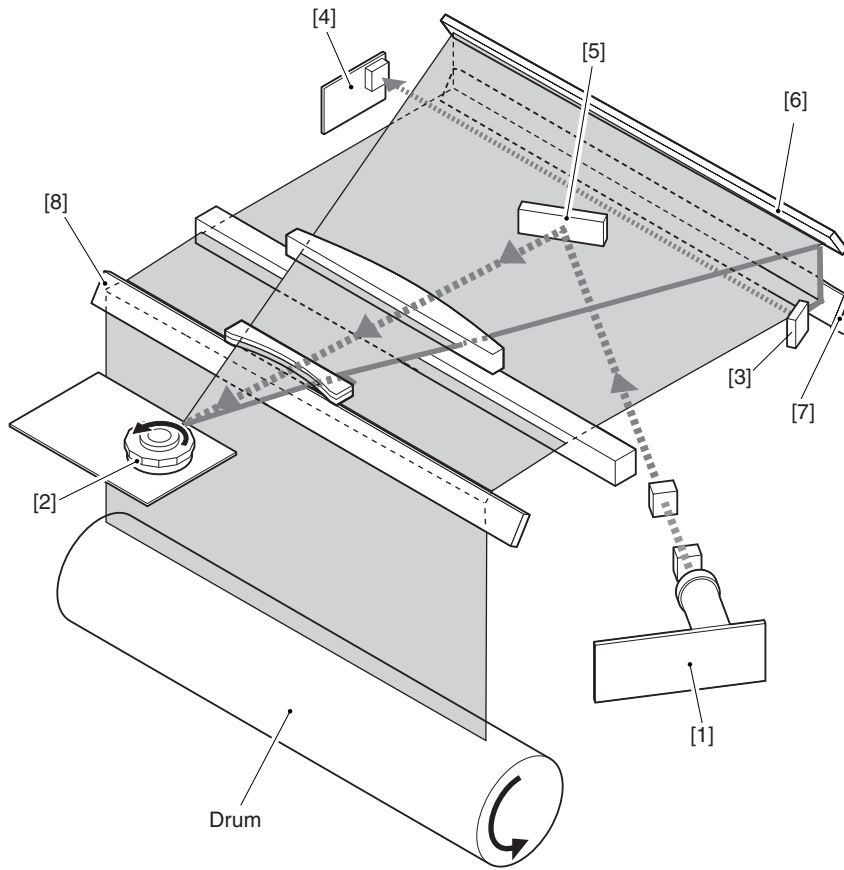
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Laser Beam	
Wavelength	645 to 665 nm (Visible laser)
Output	20mW
Number of laser beams	2-beam laser
Laser scanner motor	
Kinds of motor	DC brushless motor
Rotation	Approx. 33700 rpm
Kinds of bearing	Air bearing
Polygonal mirror	
Number of facets	12 facets (29 dia)
Control list	
Sync control	Main scan sync control
	Sub scan sync control
Light intensity control	APC control
	PWM control
Others	Laser ON/OFF control
	Laser scanner motor control
	Laser shutter control

6.1.2 Major Components

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Item	Description
[1] Laser Unit	Emit the laser beam.
[2] Polygonal Mirror	Scan the laser beam in the main scan direction.
[3] BD Mirror	Reflect the laser beam on BD PCB.
[4] BD PCB	Produce BD signal.
[5] Laser Mirror 1	Reflect the laser beam with the mirror to apply it to the photosensitive drum.
[6] Laser Mirror 2	Reflect the laser beam with the mirror to apply it to the photosensitive drum.
[7] Laser Mirror 3	Reflect the laser beam with the mirror to apply it to the photosensitive drum.
[8] Reflection Mirror	Reflect the laser beam with the mirror to apply it to the photosensitive drum.



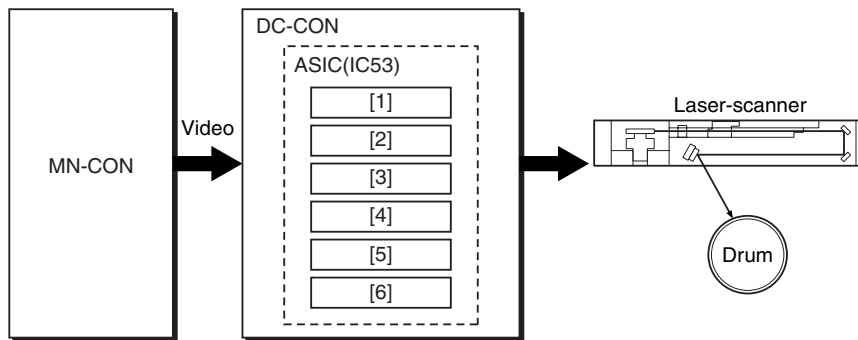
F-6-1

6.1.3 Control System Configuration

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Control of the laser exposure system is mainly performed at ASIC1 (IC53) in DC controller PCB.

ASIC1 (IC53) performs the following six controls and produces the electrostatic latent image on the photosensitive drum based on the video signals sent from the main controller PCB.



F-6-2

- [1] Laser ON/OFF control
 - [2] Main Scan Sync Control
 - [3] Sub Scan Sync Control
 - [4] APC Control
 - [5] PWM Control
 - [6] Laser Scanner Motor Control
- MN-CON: Main Controller PCB
DC-CON: DC Controller PCB

6.2 Basic Sequence

6.2.1 Basic Sequence

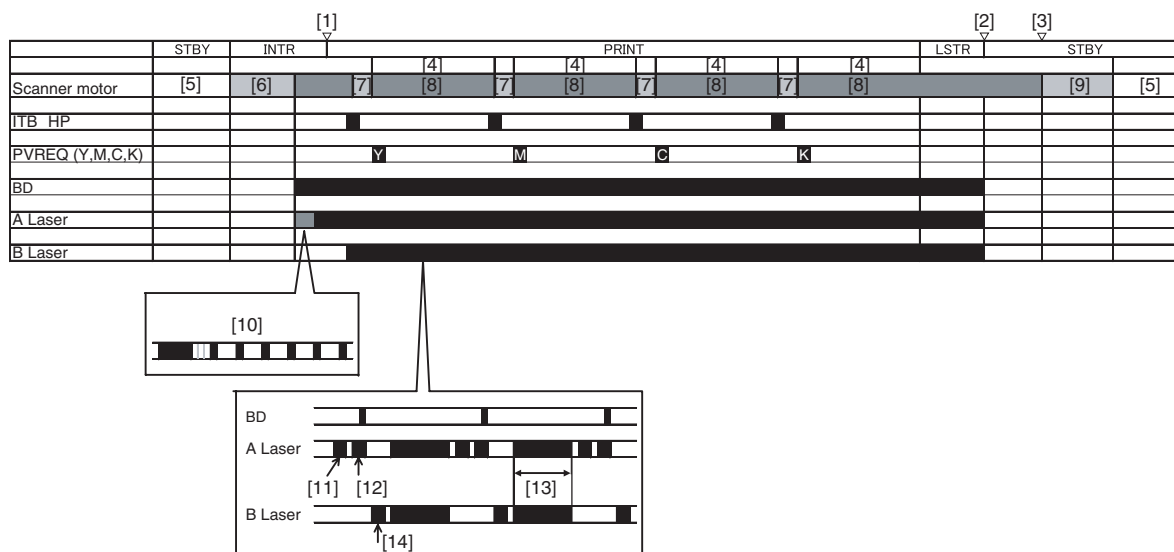
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The basic sequence for the laser exposure system is shown as follows.

- 1) The print demand signal is input by the start key ON or from the main controller PCB.
- 2) DC controller PCB rotates the laser scanner motor.

- 3) DC controller PCB controls so that the laser scanner motor reaches its target rotation. At the same time, it forcibly emits the laser beam and detects troubles.
- 4) The preparation for the image formation is completed.
- 5) DC controller PCB produces the sub scan sync signal (See NOTE) for each color (PVREQ-Y, PVREQ-M, PVREQ-C, PVREQ-K) and sends them to the main controller PCB.
- 6) The main controller PCB produces the video signal for each color based on the sub scan sync signal, send them to DC controller.
- 7) DC controller PCB turns on the laser beam according to the video signals.

- Basic sequence for 1-page print of full-color A4 standard paper



F-6-3

- | | |
|--|---|
| [1] Start key ON (Print demand signal) | [2] Laser Stop Operation |
| [3] Motor Stop Operation | [4] Image Formation Possible |
| [5] Stopping | [6] Accelerating |
| [7] Phase Control | [8] At Stable Rotation |
| [9] Decelerating | [10] A/B Laser
BD Detection/APC Control On |
| [11] APC Control | [12] BD Detection/APC Control On |
| [13] Image for 1 Line | [14] APC Control On |

MEMO:

The sub scan sync signal (PVREQ signal) is the signal to match the toner image edge on the drum with the leading edge of the print paper. In this machine, the timing of producing PVREQ signal varies according to the color mode.

- For full color mode

For full color mode, the image forming of four colors (Y, M, C, Bk) is necessary.

The image for each color is formed on ITB (intermediate transfer belt). To prevent color displacement, the positions of the leading edges should be matched.

For full color mode, ITBHP signal, which is the standard position for color adjustment, is detected from the ITB home position sensor when the image formation becomes possible. PVREQ signal for each color is produced according to this signal.

- For monochrome

For monochrome, it is unnecessary to adjust color. When the image formation becomes possible, PVREQ signal is produced at the specified timing regardless of the ITB home position signal (ITBHP signal).

6.3 Various Control

6.3.1 Controlling the Laser Activation Timing

6.3.1.1 ON/OFF Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

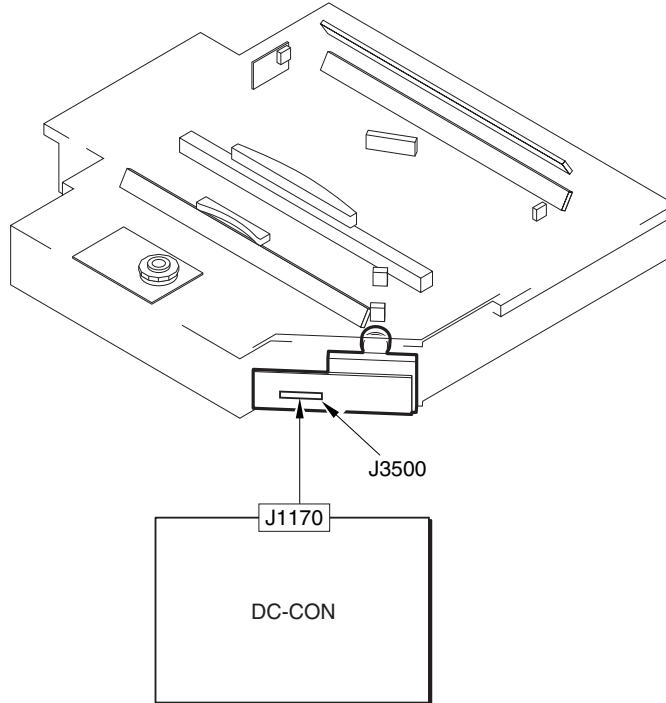
The laser beam ON/OFF is performed at the laser driver PCB.

This circuit controls the laser beam ON/OFF according to the combination of the laser control signal sent from DC controller PCB.

T-6-1

Laser control signal							Operation status	Laser status
CTL2A	CTL1A	CTL0A	CTL2B	CTL1B	CTL0B	ASW-A	ASW-B	

0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Standby	OFF
0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	LD-A_APC-H	ON
0	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	LD-B_APC-H	ON
1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	LD-A_APC-L	ON
1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	LD-B_APC-L	ON
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	Print	Video signal input allowed
0	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	Forced OFF	OFF



F-6-4

Reference:

The light density set at APC is cleared at standby mode.

Memo:

Laser On Control at 1200dpi

The image representation of one dot has only been possible only by the process at the center area of the dot. In this machine, the combination of the process at left/right area of the dot with the one at the center area based on the peripheral dot information enables the high image quality with 1200dpi.

Related Error Code:

E100 (BD detection error)

- 0001 When the specified time passed after starting polygonal scanner, BD signal cannot be detected.
- 0002 During stable rotation of the polygonal scanner, BD signal cannot be detected.

E102 (Laser EEPROM error)

- 0001 The EEPROM checksum of the laser driver is mismatched.

6.3.1.2 Main Scan Sync Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Sync control of main scanning is the control for adjustment of the writing position in the main scanning.

This control is performed at BD sync control circuit in PWM IC.

This circuit produces the sync signal of the main scanning used in DC controller PCB based on BD signal sent from BD PCB.

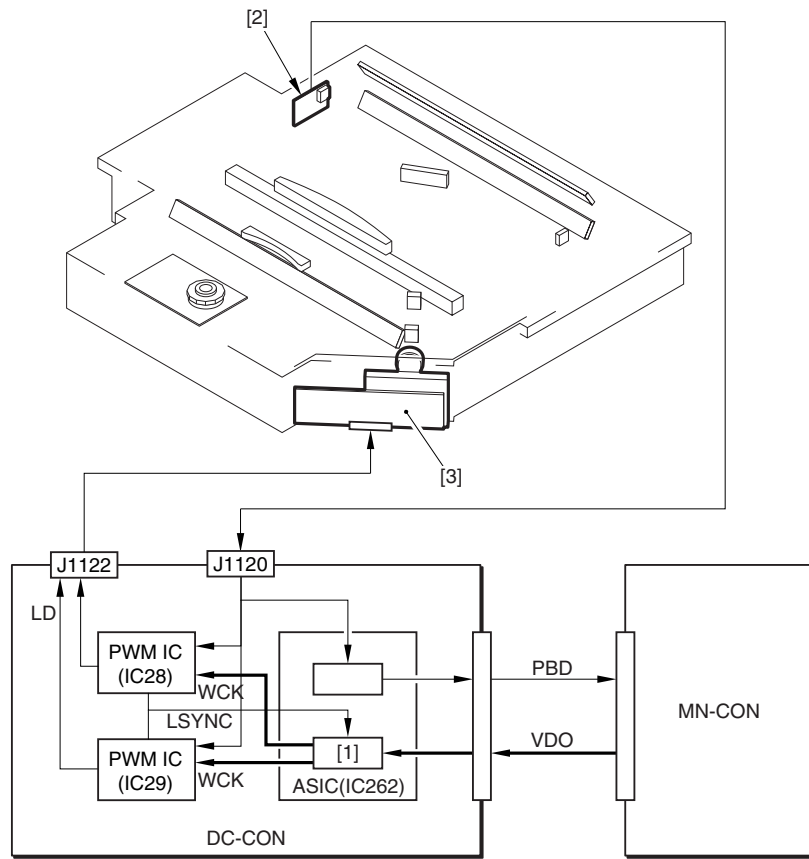
Here the operation of this circuit is explained.

VIDEO signal sent from the main controller PCB is sent to FIFO in PWM IC via FIFO inside ASIC.

At the same time, BD sync control circuit produces the printer sync signal (LSYNC) inside PWM IC based on BD signal, output it to FIFO inside PWM IC.

After that, FIFO reads out the image signal to PWM IC synchronized with the printer sync signal.

PWM IC converses the image signal to the laser drive signal (LD), send it to the laser unit.



- [1] FIFO
- [2] BD PCB
- [3] Laser Unit
- MN-CON: Main controller PCB
- DC-CON: DC controller PCB

6.3.1.3 Sub Scan Sync Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The sync control of the sub scanning is the control for adjustment of the writing position of each color image formed on ITB at full-color print. This control is performed at the sub scan sync control circuit in ASIC.

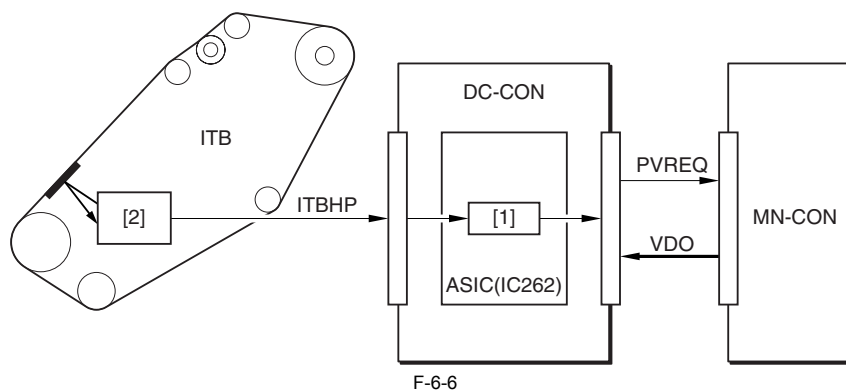
This circuit produces the sync signal (PVREQ) of the sub scanning based on ITB home position signal (ITBHP) detected by ITB home position sensor. Here the operation of this circuit is explained.

ITB home position signal (ITBHP) output from the ITB home position sensor is detected at the sub scanning sync control circuit.

At the same time, this circuit produces PVREQ signal for each color based on ITBHP signal, output them to the main controller PCB.

The main controller PCB sends VIDEO signal to DC controller PCB synchronized with PVREQ signal for each color.

After that, DC controller PCB produces the image for each color at the specified position on ITB.



- [1] Sub Scanning Sync Control Circuit
- [2] ITB Home Position Sensor
- MN-CON: Main Controller PCB
- DC-CON: DC Controller PCB

6.3.2 Controlling the Intensity of Laser Light

6.3.2.1 APC Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

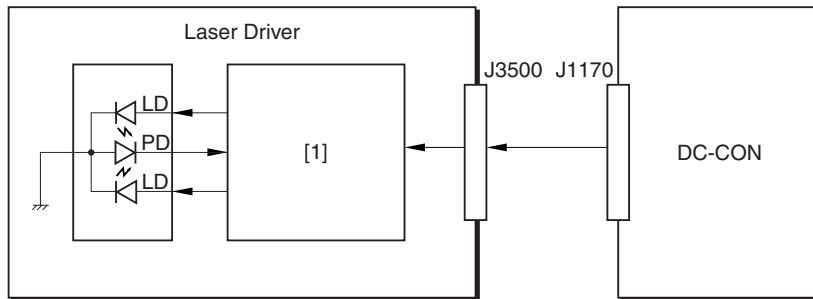
In the APC control, the laser is controlled to keep the constant light intensity by adjusting the laser diode output on the laser driver.

This control is executed with the DC controller PCB.

The DC controller PCB outputs the laser signal to the laser driver IC in the laser driver PCB.

Herewith, the APC mode is set to the laser driver IC, and the laser diode (LD) is compulsorily emitted.

At the same time, the laser driver IC monitors the laser diode (LD) with the photo diode (PD), and it adjusts the laser diode output until the light intensity becomes constant.



F-6-7

[1] Laser Driver IC

DC-CON: DC Controller PCB

6.3.2.2 PWM Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The PWM control determines the laser lighting time depending on the image data transmitted from the main controller PCB.

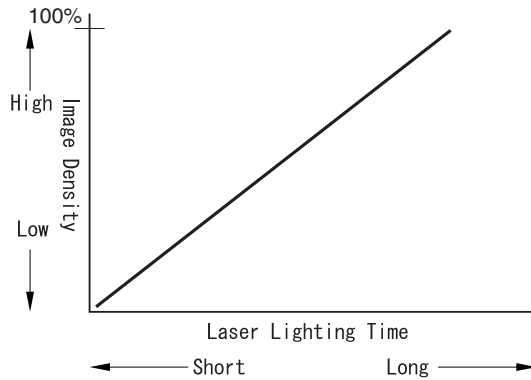
The laser lighting time (see Note) is selected at the DC controller PCB, and it determines the one pattern from 30-level of lighting patterns for each pixel.

MEMO:

The relationship between the laser lighting time and the image density is shown below.

With this machine, the laser is exposed to the dark area (image area), not to the bright area (non-image area).

When the image density gets higher, the laser lighting time becomes longer, whereas when it gets lower, the time becomes shorter.



F-6-8

6.3.3 Controlling the Laser Scanner Motor

6.3.3.1 Laser Scanner Motor Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

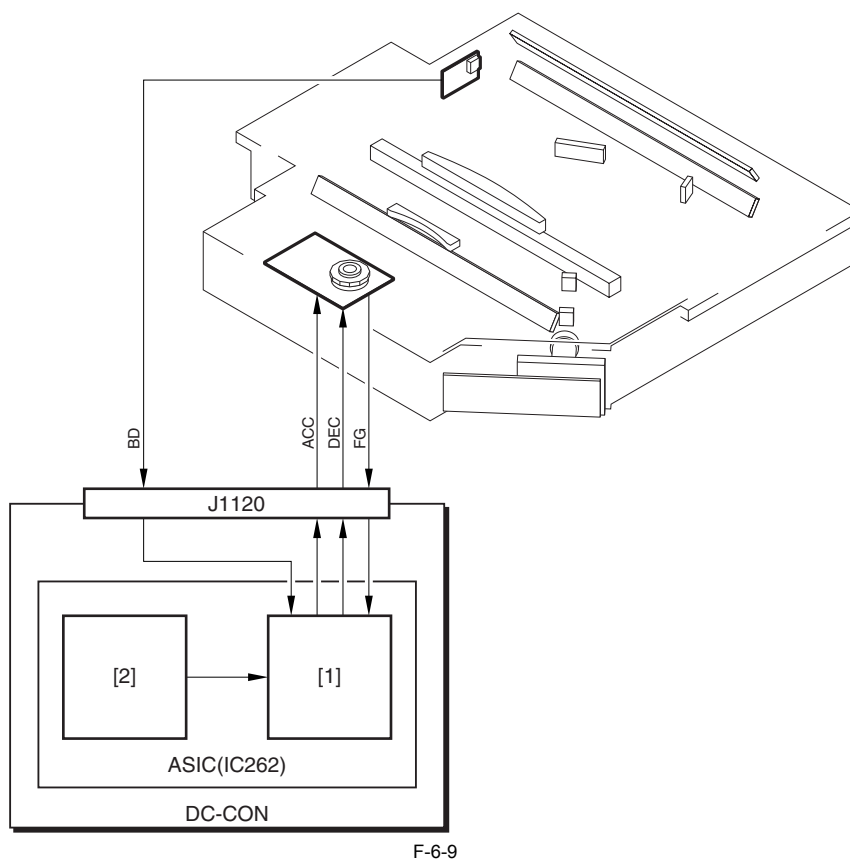
The laser scanner motor control is used for rotating the scanner motor with the specified speed.

This control is executed at the motor speed control block in the DC controller PCB and the standard signal generation block.

The motor speed control block detects the speed detection signal (FG, BD), and controls the acceleration signal (ACC) and deceleration signal (DEC) to be the specified speed by comparing the standard signal generated in the standard signal generation block.

With this machine, in order to shorten the scanner motor control time, the speed detection point is switched depending on the printer condition. FC signal is the detection signal for roughly adjusting the motor speed, and it is used when turning on the power or at the last rotation.

BD signal is the detection signal for finely adjusting the motor speed, and it is used at printing.



[1] Motor Speed Control Block
 [2] Standard Signal Generation Block
 DC-CON: DC Controller PCB

Relevant Error Code:

E110 (Scanner Motor Error)

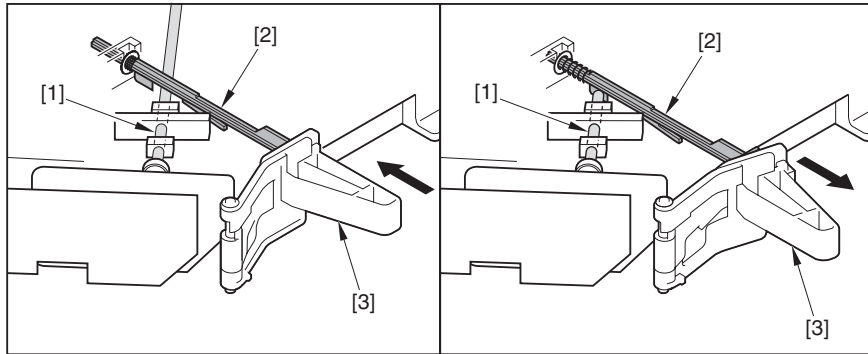
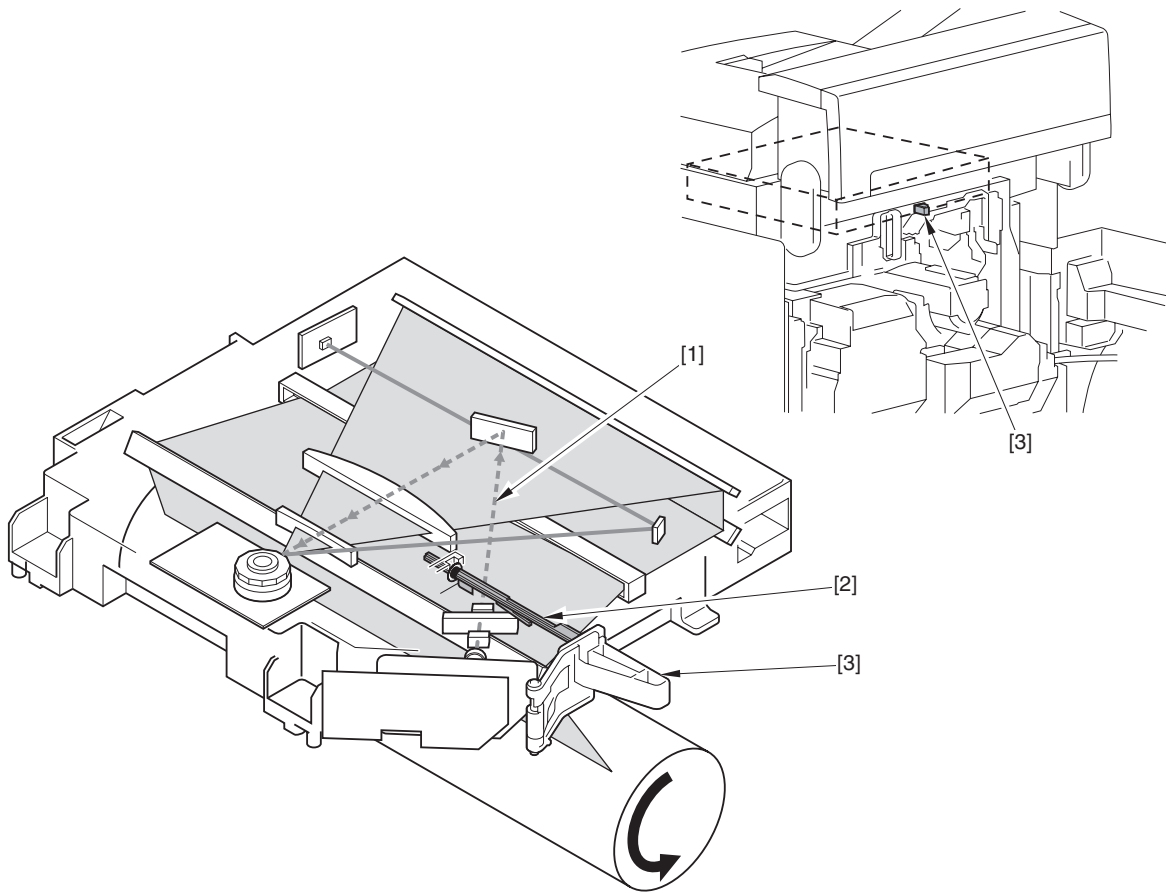
- 0001: indicates that the FG signal is not detected when passing the specified time after the activation of the polygon scanner.
- 0002/0003: indicates that the FG signal cannot be detected while the polygon scanner rotates stably.

6.3.4 Controlling the Laser Shutter

6.3.4.1 Laser Shutter Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine has the protection function that prevents exposing the laser to inside of the machine when opening the toner hopper assembly. In this function, the laser shutter lever that pushes the laser shutter in the laser scanner unit is opened when lifting the toner hopper assembly. As a result of that, the laser shutter is closed, and the path of the laser light is forcibly blocked. When the DC controller detects that the front cover, upper right door, lower right door, or toner replacement cover is opened, it forcibly turn OFF the drive of the laser scanner and the laser exposure.



F-6-10

- [1] Laser Light
- [2] Laser Shutter
- [3] Laser Shutter Lever

6.4 Parts Replacement Procedure

6.4.1 Laser Scanner Unit

6.4.1.1 Preparation for Removing the Laser Scanner Unit

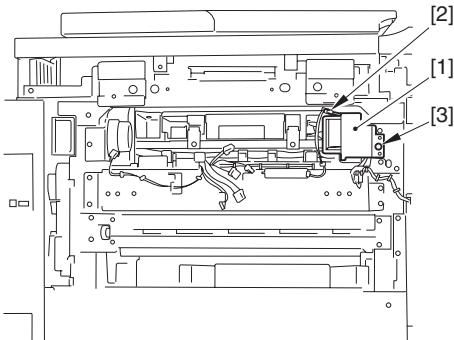
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the decurler.
- 2) Detach the left upper cover.
- 3) Detach the left middle cover.
- 4) Open the toner replacement cover.
- 5) Detach the high-voltage box unit.

6.4.1.2 Removing the Laser Scanner Unit

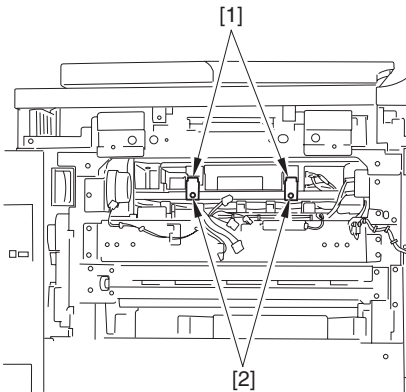
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the delivery upper cooling fan 2 [1].
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 1 screw [3]



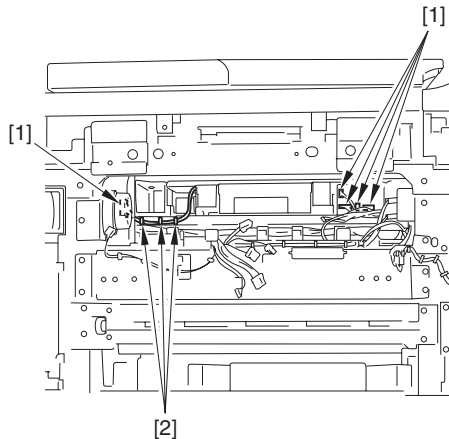
F-6-11

- 2) Remove the 2 scanner mount [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



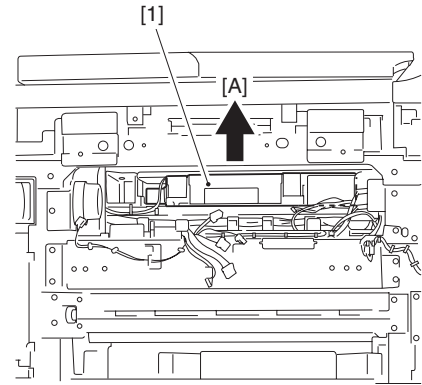
F-6-12

- 3) Disconnect the 5 connectors [1] and remove the 3 clamps [2].



F-6-13

- 4) Slide the laser scanner unit [1] to the front while keeping it in the direction shown by the arrow [A].



F-6-14

Chapter 7 Image Formation

Contents

7.1 Construction	7-1
7.1.1 Image Formation Specification List	7-1
7.1.2 Main Components	7-2
7.1.3 Main Components	7-2
7.1.4 Charge Specification	7-3
7.1.5 Charge Specification	7-4
7.2 Image Formation Process	7-5
7.2.1 Image Formation Process	7-5
7.3 Basic Sequence	7-8
7.3.1 When Turning the Power ON	7-8
7.3.2 When Turning the Power ON	7-9
7.3.3 Copy / Print (Normal Speed)	7-9
7.3.4 Copy / Print (Normal Speed)	7-10
7.3.5 Copy / Print (1/3 Speed)	7-12
7.4 Image Stabilization Control	7-12
7.4.1 Overview of Image Stabilization Control	7-12
7.4.2 Overview of Image Stabilization Control	7-13
7.4.3 Image Stabilization Control Timing	7-15
7.4.4 Image Stabilization Control Timing	7-15
7.4.5 Potential Control	7-16
7.4.6 ATVC Control	7-17
7.4.7 ATR Control	7-20
7.4.8 ATR Control	7-21
7.4.9 ACVC Control	7-23
7.4.10 D-max Control	7-24
7.4.11 D-max Control	7-25
7.4.12 D-half Control	7-26
7.4.13 D-half Control	7-28
7.4.14 ARCDAT Control	7-30
7.4.15 ARCDAT Control	7-32
7.4.16 PASCAL Control	7-34
7.4.17 ACR Control (Auto Carrier Refresh Control)	7-37
7.4.18 ACR Control (Auto Carrier Refresh Control)	7-38
7.5 Charging Mechanism	7-39
7.5.1 Primary Charging Bias Control	7-39
7.5.2 Primary Charging Assembly Cleaning Control	7-40
7.5.3 Pre-Transfer Charging Bias Control	7-41
7.5.4 Pre-Transfer Charging Assembly Cleaning Control	7-42
7.5.5 Pre-Exposure LED	7-43
7.6 Developing Rotary	7-43
7.6.1 Overview of Developing Rotary	7-43
7.6.2 Overview of Developing Rotary	7-44
7.6.3 Developing Rotary Control	7-45
7.6.4 Developing Rotary Control	7-47
7.7 Developing Unit	7-49
7.7.1 Developing Unit Configuration	7-49
7.7.2 Developing Unit Configuration	7-49
7.7.3 Developing Assembly Drive Control	7-49
7.7.4 Developing Bias Control	7-50
7.7.5 Developing Bias Control	7-51

7.8 Toner Container.....	7-52
7.8.1 Outline.....	7-52
7.8.2 Outline.....	7-53
7.8.3 Toner Bottle Presence Detection	7-54
7.8.4 Toner Bottle Presence Detection	7-55
7.8.5 Toner Supply.....	7-55
7.8.6 Toner Supply.....	7-57
7.8.7 Toner Level Detection	7-58
7.8.8 Toner Level Detection	7-59
7.9 Transfer Device	7-60
7.9.1 Overview of Transfer Assembly.....	7-60
7.9.2 Transfer Bias Control.....	7-61
7.9.3 Overview of the Primary Transfer Assembly	7-63
7.9.4 ITB Cleaner Attachment/Detachment Control	7-63
7.9.5 ITB Cleaner Attachment/Detachment Detection	7-64
7.9.6 Overview of the Secondary Transfer Assembly	7-65
7.9.7 Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Attachment/Detachment Control	7-66
7.9.8 Secondary Transfer Roller Attachment/Detachment Detection	7-67
7.9.9 Secondary Transfer Roller Cleaning Control	7-68
7.9.10 ITB Home Position Detection.....	7-70
7.9.11 ITB Home Position Detection.....	7-71
7.10 Photosensitive Drum Cleaning	7-74
7.10.1 Overview of Drum Cleaning Unit.....	7-74
7.10.2 Drum Cleaning Unit Drive Control	7-74
7.11 Waste Toner Collection Mechanism	7-75
7.11.1 Collecting Waste Toner	7-75
7.11.2 Waste Toner Full Detection	7-76
7.12 Drum Heater	7-79
7.12.1 Drum Heater Control	7-79
7.13 ITB Heater	7-80
7.13.1 ITB Heater Control.....	7-80
7.14 Parts Replacement Procedure	7-83
7.14.1 Process Unit	7-83
7.14.1.1 Preparation for Sliding the Processing Unit	7-83
7.14.1.2 Sliding the Processing Unit.....	7-83
7.14.1.3 Sliding the Processing Unit.....	7-84
7.14.2 Pre-exposure LED Array	7-86
7.14.2.1 Preparation for Removing the Pre-Exposure LED	7-86
7.14.2.2 Removing the Pre-Exposure LED unit	7-86
7.14.3 Preconditioning Exposure LED Unit.....	7-86
7.14.3.1 Preparation for Removing the Drum Cleaning Pre-Exposure LED Unit	7-86
7.14.3.2 Removing the Drum Cleaning Pre-Exposure LED Unit	7-86
7.14.4 Primary Charging Assembly.....	7-86
7.14.4.1 Preparation for Removing the Primary Corona Assembly	7-86
7.14.4.2 Removing the Primary Corona Assembly	7-86
7.14.4.3 After Replacing the Primary Charging Assembly	7-87
7.14.5 Primary Corona Grid Panel.....	7-87
7.14.5.1 Preparation for Removing the Primary Grid Plate.....	7-87
7.14.5.2 Removing the Primary Grid Plate.....	7-87
7.14.6 Primary Corona Pad Holder.....	7-87
7.14.6.1 Preparation for Removing the Primary Corona Pad Holder	7-87
7.14.6.2 Removing the Primary Corona Assembly Pad Holder	7-87
7.14.7 Primary Corona Slider	7-88
7.14.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Primary Corona Assembly Slider.....	7-88
7.14.7.2 Removing the Primary Corona Assembly Slider.....	7-88
7.14.8 Pre-transfer Charging Assembly.....	7-88
7.14.8.1 Preparation for removing the Pre-transfer Corona Assembly	7-88

7.14.8.2 Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly	7-88
7.14.8.3 After Replacing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly	7-88
7.14.9 Pre-Transfer Corona Pad Holder	7-88
7.14.9.1 Preparation for Removing the Pre-transfer Corona Assembly Pad Holder	7-88
7.14.9.2 Removing the Pre-transfer corona assembly pad folder	7-89
7.14.10 Pre-Transfer Corona Slider	7-89
7.14.10.1 Preparation for Removing the Pre-transfer Corona Assembly Slider	7-89
7.14.10.2 Removing the Pre-transfer Corona Assembly Slider	7-89
7.14.11 Drum Unit	7-89
7.14.11.1 Preparation for Removing the Drum Unit	7-89
7.14.11.2 Removing the Drum Unit	7-89
7.14.12 Photosensitive Drum	7-90
7.14.12.1 Points to Note When Handling the Photosensitive Drum	7-90
7.14.12.2 Preparation for Removing the Photosensitive Drum	7-90
7.14.12.3 Removing the Photosensitive Drum	7-90
7.14.12.4 After Replacing the Photosensitive Drum	7-90
7.14.13 Seal Support Plate (Front)	7-91
7.14.13.1 Preparation for Removing the Seal Support Plate (Front)	7-91
7.14.13.2 Removing the Seal Support Plate (Front)	7-91
7.14.14 Seal Support Plate (Rear)	7-91
7.14.14.1 Preparation for Removing the Seal Support Plate (Rear)	7-91
7.14.14.2 Removing the Seal Support Plate (Rear)	7-91
7.14.15 Scoop-Up Sheet Support Plate	7-92
7.14.15.1 Preparation for Removing the Scoop-Up Sheet Support Plate	7-92
7.14.15.2 Removing the Scoop-Up Sheet Support Plate	7-92
7.14.16 End Seal (Front)	7-92
7.14.16.1 Preparation for Removing the End Seal (Front)	7-92
7.14.16.2 Removing the End Seal (Front)	7-92
7.14.17 End Seal (Rear)	7-92
7.14.17.1 Preparation for Removing the End Seal (Rear)	7-92
7.14.17.2 Removing the End Seal (Rear)	7-93
7.14.18 Drum Cleaner Brush	7-93
7.14.18.1 Preparation for Removing the Drum Cleaner Brush	7-93
7.14.18.2 Removing the Drum Cleaner Brush	7-93
7.14.19 Photosensitive Drum Cleaning Blade	7-93
7.14.19.1 Preparation for Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade	7-93
7.14.19.2 Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade	7-93
7.14.20 Hopper Assembly	7-93
7.14.20.1 Preparation for Removing the Sub Hopper Unit	7-93
7.14.20.2 Removing the Sub Hopper Unit	7-93
7.14.20.3 Removing the Sub Hopper Unit	7-94
7.14.20.4 Procedure after Replacing the Sub Hopper Unit	7-96
7.14.21 Development Unit	7-96
7.14.21.1 Preparation for Removing the Developing Assembly	7-96
7.14.21.2 Removing the Developing Assembly	7-96
7.14.22 Development Clutch	7-97
7.14.22.1 Preparation for Removing the Developing Clutch	7-97
7.14.22.2 Removing the Developing Clutch	7-97
7.14.23 ITB Cleaning Unit	7-99
7.14.23.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB Cleaning Unit	7-99
7.14.23.2 Removing the ITB Cleaning Unit	7-99
7.14.24 Intermediate Transfer Unit	7-100
7.14.24.1 Preparation for Removing the Intermediate Transfer Unit	7-100
7.14.24.2 Removing the Intermediate Transfer Unit	7-100
7.14.25 Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Unit	7-101
7.14.25.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller Unit	7-101
7.14.25.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller Unit	7-101
7.14.26 Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Sub Unit	7-102
7.14.26.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Sub-Unit	7-102
7.14.26.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Sub-Unit	7-102

7.14.27 Intermediate Transfer Belt	7-102
7.14.27.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB	7-102
7.14.27.2 Removing the ITB	7-102
7.14.28 Primary Transfer Roller	7-103
7.14.28.1 Preparation for Removing the Primary Transfer Roller	7-103
7.14.28.2 Removing the Primary Transfer Roller	7-103
7.14.29 Secondary Transfer External Roller.....	7-104
7.14.29.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller.....	7-104
7.14.29.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller	7-104
7.14.30 Secondary Transfer Internal Roller.....	7-104
7.14.30.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Inside Roller.....	7-104
7.14.30.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Inside Roller.....	7-104
7.14.31 Secondary Transfer Bias Roller Cleaning Blade	7-105
7.14.31.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Bias Roller Cleaning Blade	7-105
7.14.31.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Bias Roller Cleaning Blade.....	7-105
7.14.32 ITB Cleaner Brush (Large)	7-105
7.14.32.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB Cleaner Brush (Large)	7-105
7.14.32.2 Removing the ITB Cleaner Brush (Large)	7-105
7.14.33 ITB Cleaner Brush (Small)	7-106
7.14.33.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB Cleaner Brush (Small)	7-106
7.14.33.2 Removing the ITB Cleaner Brush (Small)	7-106
7.14.34 Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Upper).....	7-106
7.14.34.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Upper)	7-106
7.14.34.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Upper)	7-106
7.14.35 Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Lower)	7-107
7.14.35.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Lower).....	7-107
7.14.35.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Lower).....	7-107
7.14.36 ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Upper).....	7-107
7.14.36.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Upper).....	7-107
7.14.36.2 Removing the ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Upper).....	7-107
7.14.37 ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Lower).....	7-107
7.14.37.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Lower)	7-107
7.14.37.2 Removing the ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Lower)	7-107
7.14.38 Potential Sensor Unit	7-108
7.14.38.1 Preparation for Removing the Potential Sensor Unit.....	7-108
7.14.38.2 Removing the Potential Sensor.....	7-108
7.14.38.3 Replacing the Potential Sensor	7-108
7.14.39 ATR Sensor Unit.....	7-109
7.14.39.1 Preparation for Removing the ATR Sensor Unit.....	7-109
7.14.39.2 Removing the ATR Sensor	7-109
7.14.39.3 After Replacing the ATR Sensor	7-110
7.14.40 Drum Thermal Sensor Unit.....	7-110
7.14.40.1 Preparation for Removing the Drum Thermal Sensor Unit.....	7-110
7.14.40.2 Removing the Drum Thermal Sensor Unit	7-110
7.14.41 Patch Image Sensor	7-111
7.14.41.1 Preparation for Removing the Patch Image Sensor Unit.....	7-111
7.14.41.2 Removing the Patch Image Sensor Unit.....	7-111
7.14.41.3 After Replacing the Patch Image Reading Sensor	7-111
7.14.42 Charging Wire.....	7-111
7.14.42.1 Preparation for Setting Up Charging Wire	7-111
7.14.42.2 Setting Up Charging Wire	7-111
7.14.42.3 After Replacing the Primary Charging Wire	7-112

7.1 Construction

7.1.1 Image Formation Specification List

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-7-1

Drum Unit Specification	
Photosensitive Drum	
Drum type	OPC drum
Drum diameter	84 dia
Cleaning mechanism	Blade / brush roller
Process speed	285mm/s
Primary Charging Assembly Specification	
Charging method	Corona charging
Cleaning method	Wire automatic cleaning
Pre-conditioning Exposure Specification	
Exposure method	LED array
Monochrome / Color Developing Assembly Specification	
Developing cylinder diameter	20 dia
Developing method	Dry development, 2 components
Toner	Non-magnetic negative toner
Toner level sensor within the developing assembly	None
Toner Container Specification	
Toner level sensor (monochrome / color)	Level sensor with the video counter / piezoelectric oscillator sensor
Toner amount	About 666g (Toner: 600g + Carrier: 66g)
Intermediate Transfer Block Specification	
Mechanism	ITB (Intermediate transfer belt)
Drive method	Drum / ITB motor
Cleaning mechanism	Brush roller
Secondary Transfer Block Specification	
Mechanism	Secondary transfer outside roller
Drive method	Secondary transfer outside roller separation / drive motor
Cleaning mechanism	Brush roller
Pre-transfer Charging Assembly Specification	
Charging system	Corona charging
Cleaning method	Wire automatic cleaning

T-7-2

Process Speed	Color Mode	Paper Type
285mm/s	Monochrome / color	Plain paper (80g to 105g), thin paper (64g to 79g)
95mm/s	Monochrome / color	Heavy paper / coated paper (106g to 256g), OHT

T-7-3

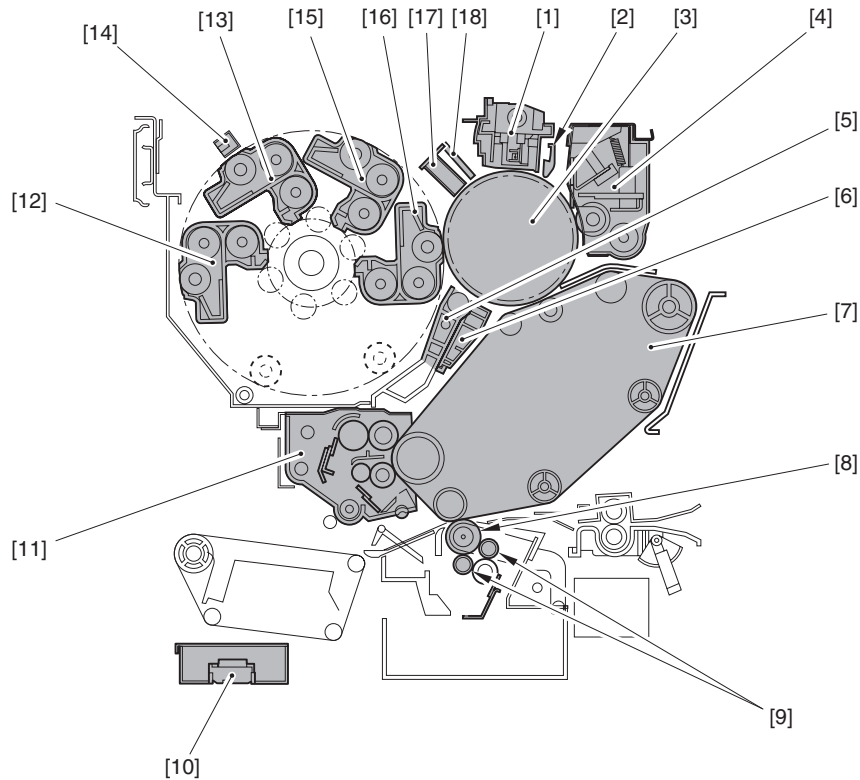
Image Stabilization Control	
Control Item	Description
D-max control	Determines the appropriate developing bias value.
ATR control	Determines the toner supply.
ATVC control	Determines the appropriate transfer bias value.

Image Stabilization Control	
Control Item	Description
ACVC control	Determines the appropriate cleaning bias value.
Potential control	Determines the appropriate primary grid bias value.
Dhalf control	Determines the appropriate gradation table. (Printer)
ARCDAT control	Determines the appropriate gradation table. (Simple version)
PASCAL control	Determines the appropriate gradation table. (Printer + Reader)
Printer PASCAL control	Determines the appropriate gradation table. (Printer)

7.1.2 Main Components

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

The main units used in the developing system of the machine are shown in the following figure.

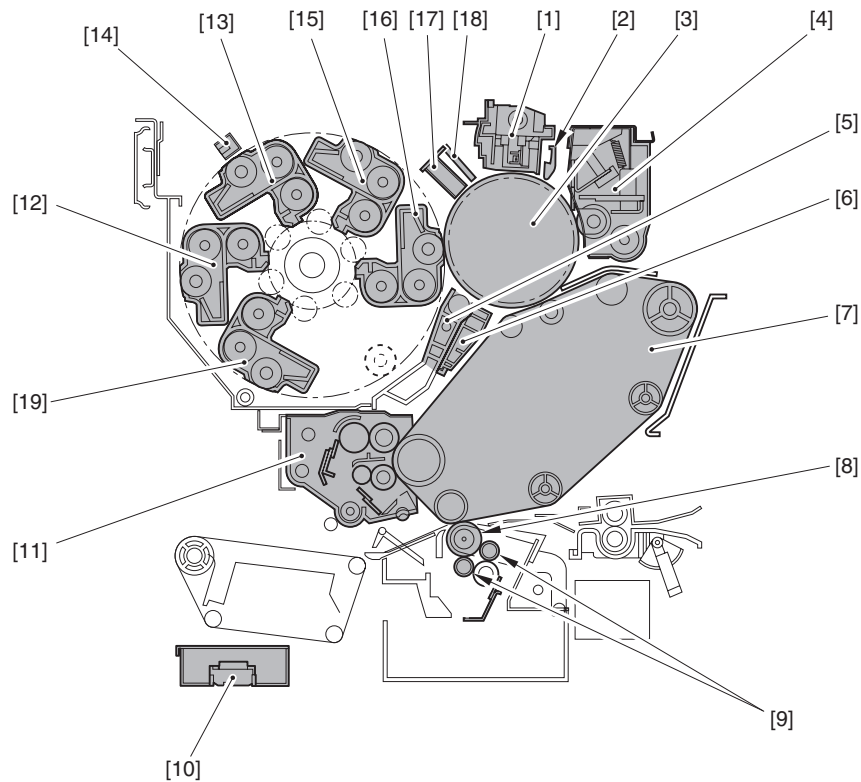


- [1] Primary Charging Assembly
- [2] Pre-exposure LED
- [3] Photosensitive Drum
- [4] Drum Cleaner Unit
- [5] Pre-transfer Charging Assembly
- [6] Patch Image Sensor
- [7] ITB Unit
- [8] Secondary Transfer Outside Roller
- [9] Secondary Transfer Cleaning Brush Roller
- [10] Color Sensor
- [11] ITB Cleaner Unit
- [12] Color Developing Assembly (Y)
- [13] Color Developing Assembly (M)
- [14] ATR Sensor
- [15] Color Developing Assembly (C)
- [16] Black Developing Assembly
- [17] Thermal Sensor
- [18] Potential Sensor

7.1.3 Main Components

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The main units used in the developing system of the machine are shown in the following figure.



F-7-2

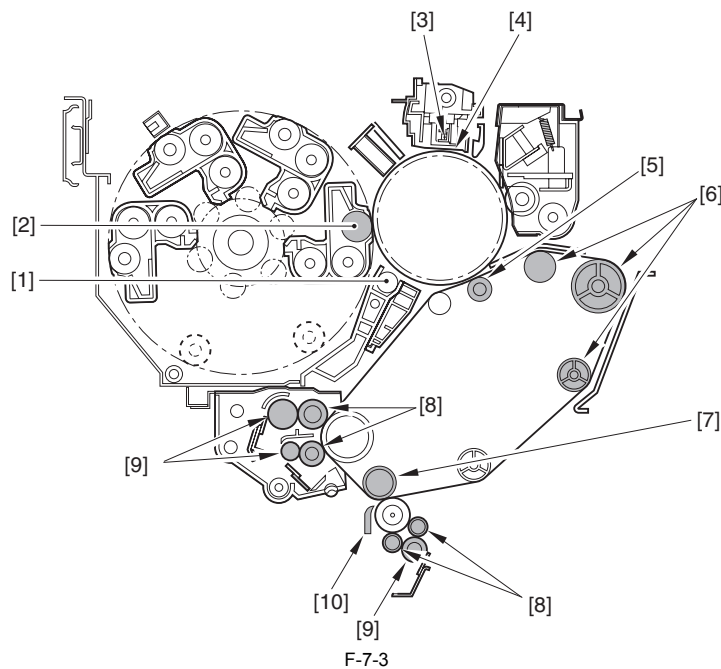
- [1] Primary Charging Assembly
- [2] Pre-exposure LED
- [3] Photosensitive Drum
- [4] Drum Cleaner Unit
- [5] Pre-transfer Charging Assembly
- [6] Patch Image Sensor
- [7] ITB Unit
- [8] Secondary Transfer Outside Roller
- [9] Secondary Transfer Cleaning Brush Roller
- [10] Color Sensor
- [11] ITB Cleaner Unit
- [12] Developing Assembly (Y)
- [13] Developing Assembly (M)
- [14] ATR Sensor
- [15] Developing Assembly (C)
- [16] Developing Assembly
- [17] Thermal Sensor
- [18] Potential Sensor
- [19] Developing Assembly (L)

7.1.4 Charge Specification

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

- Primary Charging Bias
 - Charging method: Corona charging
 - Charging object: Primary charging wire
 - DC bias value: 9k V (-1000u A)
- Grid Bias
 - Charging method: Corona charging
 - Charging object: Grid wire
 - DC bias value: -400 to -950V
- Developing Bias
 - Charging method: Roller charging
 - Charging object: Developing cylinder
 - AC bias value: 1.85k V (Vpp)
 - DC bias value: 0 to -700V
- Stray Toner Collection Bias
 - Charging method: Toner blocking terminal plate
 - DC bias value: DC-920V
- Pre-transfer Charging Bias
 - Charging method: Corona charging
 - Charging object: Pre-transfer charging wire
 - AC bias value: 8.3k V (Vpp)
 - DC bias value: about -2k V (-600u A)
- Primary Transfer Bias
 - Charging method: Roller charging
 - Charging object: Primary transfer roller
 - DC bias value: -2.5 to 5k V (60u A)
- Secondary Transfer Static Charge Eliminator Bias
 - Charging method: Static charge eliminator charging

- Charging object: Secondary transfer static charge eliminator
DC bias value: -4.0k V
- Secondary Transfer Bias
Charging method: Roller charging
Charging object: Secondary transfer roller
DC bias value: -7.0k V (-375u A)
- ITB Cleaning Roller 1
Charging method: Roller charging
Charging object: Bias roller / brush roller
DC bias value: -3k V
- ITB Cleaning Roller 2
Charging method: Roller charging
Charging object: Bias roller / brush roller
DC bias value: +3k V
- Tension Roller Bias
Charging method: Roller charging
Charging object: Tension roller
DC bias value: -2k V
- Secondary Transfer Cleaning Roller
Charging method: Roller charging
Charging object: Bias roller / brush roller
DC bias value: 80u A



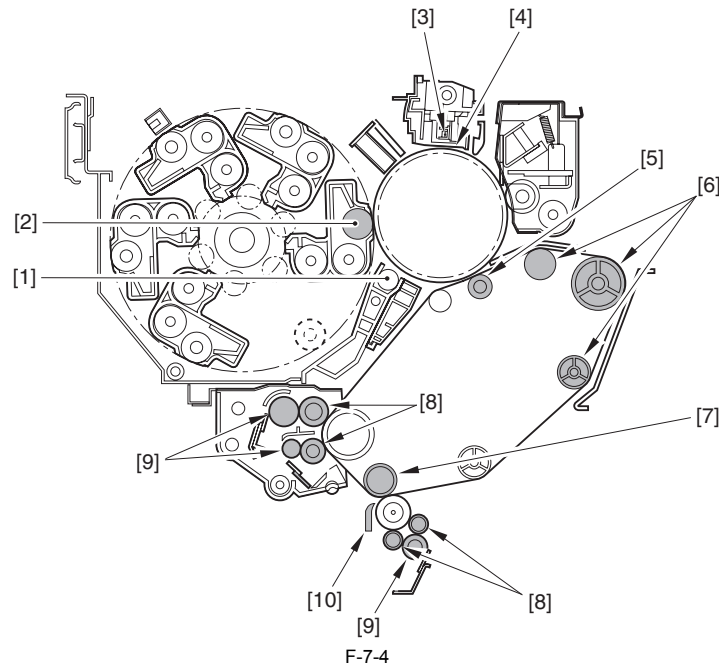
- [1] Pre-transfer Charging Wire
- [2] Developing Cylinder
- [3] Primary Charging Wire
- [4] Grid Plate
- [5] Primary Transfer Roller
- [6] Tension Roller
- [7] Secondary Transfer Inside Roller
- [8] Brush Roller
- [9] Bias Roller
- [10] Secondary Transfer Static Charge Eliminator

7.1.5 Charge Specification

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- Primary Charging Bias
Charging method: Corona charging
Charging object: Primary charging wire
DC bias value: 9k V (-1000u A)
- Grid Bias
Charging method: Corona charging
Charging object: Grid wire
DC bias value: -400 to -950V
- Developing Bias
Charging method: Roller charging
Charging object: Developing cylinder
AC bias value: 1.85k V (Vpp)
DC bias value: 0 to -700V
- Stray Toner Collection Bias
Charging method: Toner blocking terminal plate
DC bias value: DC-920V
- Pre-transfer Charging Bias
Charging method: Corona charging
Charging object: Pre-transfer charging wire
AC bias value: 8.3k V (Vpp)
DC bias value: about -2k V (-600u A)

- Primary Transfer Bias
Charging method: Roller charging
Charging object: Primary transfer roller
DC bias value: -2.5 to 5k V (60u A)
- Secondary Transfer Static Charge Eliminator Bias
Charging method: Static charge eliminator charging
Charging object: Secondary transfer static charge eliminator
DC bias value: -4.0k V
- Secondary Transfer Bias
Charging method: Roller charging
Charging object: Secondary transfer roller
DC bias value: -7.0k V (-375u A)
- ITB Cleaning Roller 1
Charging method: Roller charging
Charging object: Bias roller / brush roller
DC bias value: -3k V
- ITB Cleaning Roller 2
Charging method: Roller charging
Charging object: Bias roller / brush roller
DC bias value: +3k V
- Tension Roller Bias
Charging method: Roller charging
Charging object: Tension roller
DC bias value: -2k V
- Secondary Transfer Cleaning Roller
Charging method: Roller charging
Charging object: Bias roller / brush roller
DC bias value: 80u A



- [1] Pre-transfer Charging Wire
- [2] Developing Cylinder
- [3] Primary Charging Wire
- [4] Grid Plate
- [5] Primary Transfer Roller
- [6] Tension Roller
- [7] Secondary Transfer Inside Roller
- [8] Brush Roller
- [9] Bias Roller
- [10] Secondary Transfer Static Charge Eliminator

7.2 Image Formation Process

7.2.1 Image Formation Process

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Electrostatic Latent Image Formation Block

This block consists of 3 steps, and forming the electrostatic latent image onto the photosensitive drum.

- Step 1: Pre-conditioning Exposure [1]
By exposing the light from the pre-conditioning LED to the surface of the photosensitive drum as a prearrangement of the primary charging, delete the residual charge on the surface of the photosensitive drum and prevent uneven density.
- Step 2: Primary Charging [2]
As a prearrangement of the laser exposure, charging the surface of the photosensitive drum to the negative potential evenly.
This machine adopts the charging method with which the photosensitive drum is charged indirectly with the charging wire.
- Step 3: Laser Exposure [3]
area is neutralized with exposing the laser beam. The negative potential on the surface of the photosensitive drum is eliminated, and the eliminated area

becomes the electrostatic latent image.

2. Developing Block

- Step 4: Development [4]

By putting toner to the electrostatic latent image on the surface of the photosensitive drum, turning the image visible. Black toner/color toner of this machine executes the toner projection development with non-magnetic 2 components development.

3. Transfer Block

The purpose of this block is to transfer the toner image on the surface of the photosensitive drum to a sheet via ITB.

- Step 5: Pre-transfer Charging [5]

Although the toner layer of 4 colors are formed on the ITB when executing full color print, potential of each toner varies. Thus, by applying the specified bias when developing each color, uniform the potential on the toner layer formed on the ITB and increase the efficiency of the primary transfer.

- Step 6: Primary Transfer [6]

By applying the positive charge from the back of the ITB, transfer the toner on the surface of the photosensitive drum to the ITB.

Execute the procedure to each color (Y,M,C,BK)

- Step 7: Secondary Transfer [7]

Transfer the toner on the ITB belt to a sheet.

- Step 8: Separation [8]

Separate the sheet from the ITB belt.

4. Fixing Block

- Step 9: ITB Cleaning [9]

Fixing the non-fixed toner on a sheet to the sheet with heat and pressure.

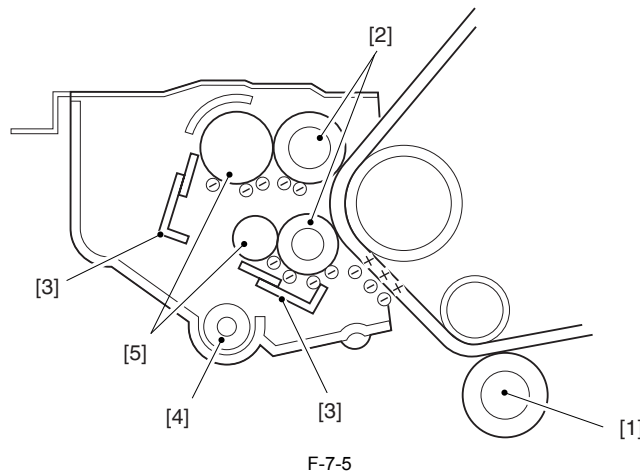
5. ITB Cleaning Block

- Step 10: ITB Cleaning [10]

After the secondary transfer, execute the ITB cleaning by contacting the brush roller to the ITB to remove the residual toner on it.

The brush roller attracts the residual toner. The residual toner collected with the brush roller is passed to the bias roller and scraped with the cleaning blade.

The scraped residual toner is collected to the waste toner case placed at the back of the machine with the waste toner delivery screw.



- [1] Secondary Transfer Outside Roller
- [2] Brush Roller
- [3] Cleaning Blade
- [4] Waste Toner Delivery Screw
- [5] Bias Roller

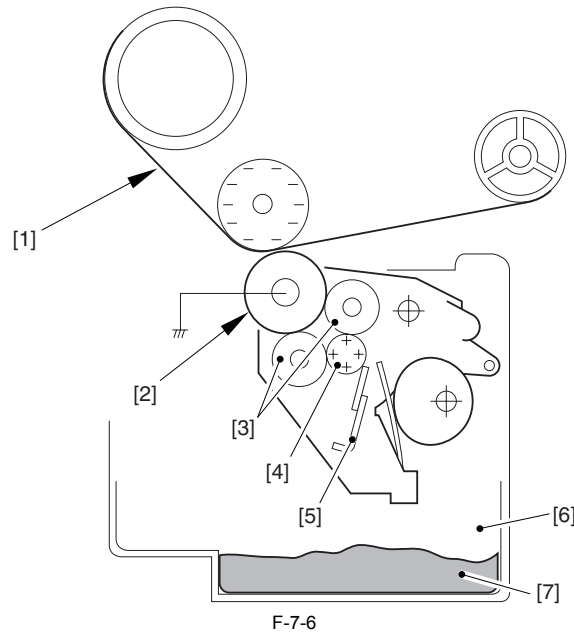
6. Cleaning Block in Secondary Transfer Block

- Step 11: Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Cleaning [11]

Remove the patch image on the ITB or the residual toner on the secondary transfer outside roller, and execute cleaning.

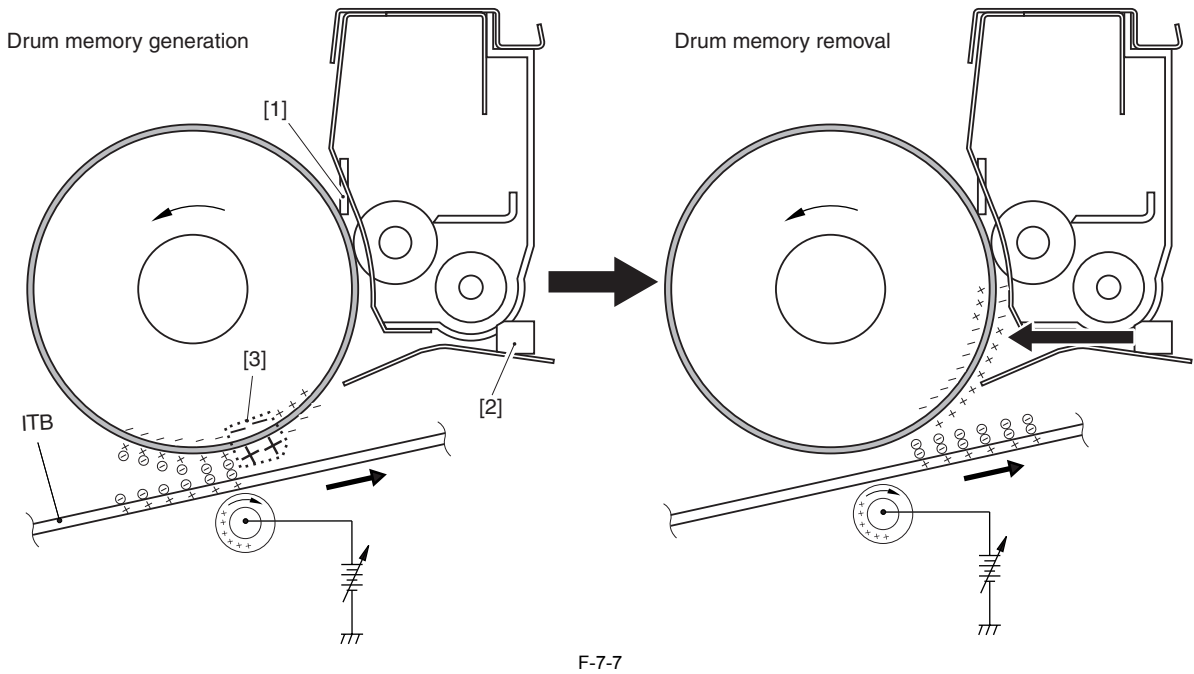
The roller brush that contacts to the secondary transfer outside roller attracts the residual toner.

The residual toner collected with the brush roller is passed to the bias roller, and then, is scraped with the cleaning blade and collected to the waste toner case.



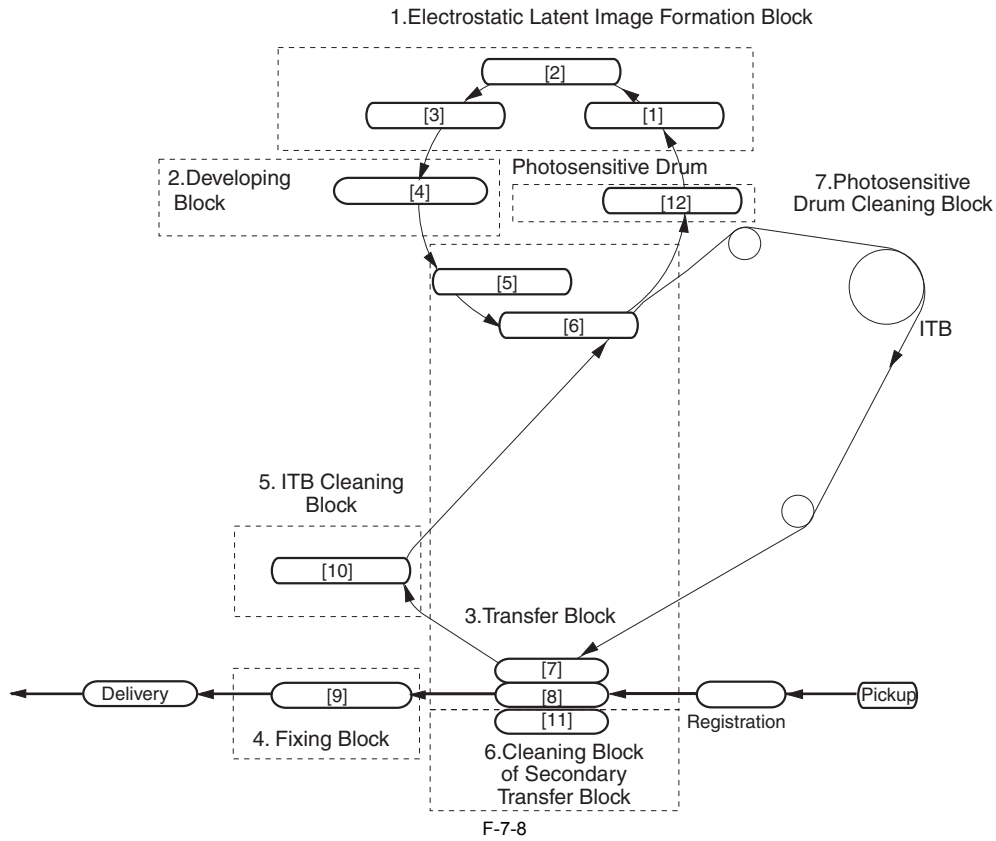
- [1] ITB
 - [2] Secondary Transfer Outside Roller
 - [3] Brush Roller
 - [4] Bias Roller
 - [5] Cleaning Blade
 - [6] Waste Toner Case
 - [7] Waste Toner
- 7. Photosensitive Drum Cleaning Block**
 - Step 12: Pre-cleaning Exposure [12]

Because of the difference in the level of toner layers that are formed on the ITB, the potential difference occurs. With the occurrence of the discharging phenomenon, it becomes the drum memory. As a result of that, it attracts the residual toner on the cleaning blade at the drum memory area. In order to remove the drum memory, the pre-cleaning exposure is executed.



- [1] Cleaning Blade
- [2] Pre-cleaning Exposure LED
- [3] Drum Memory

- Step 13: Drum Cleaning [13]
 Remove the residual toner attached to the photosensitive drum, and execute the cleaning of the photosensitive drum.



7.3 Basic Sequence

7.3.1 When Turning the Power ON

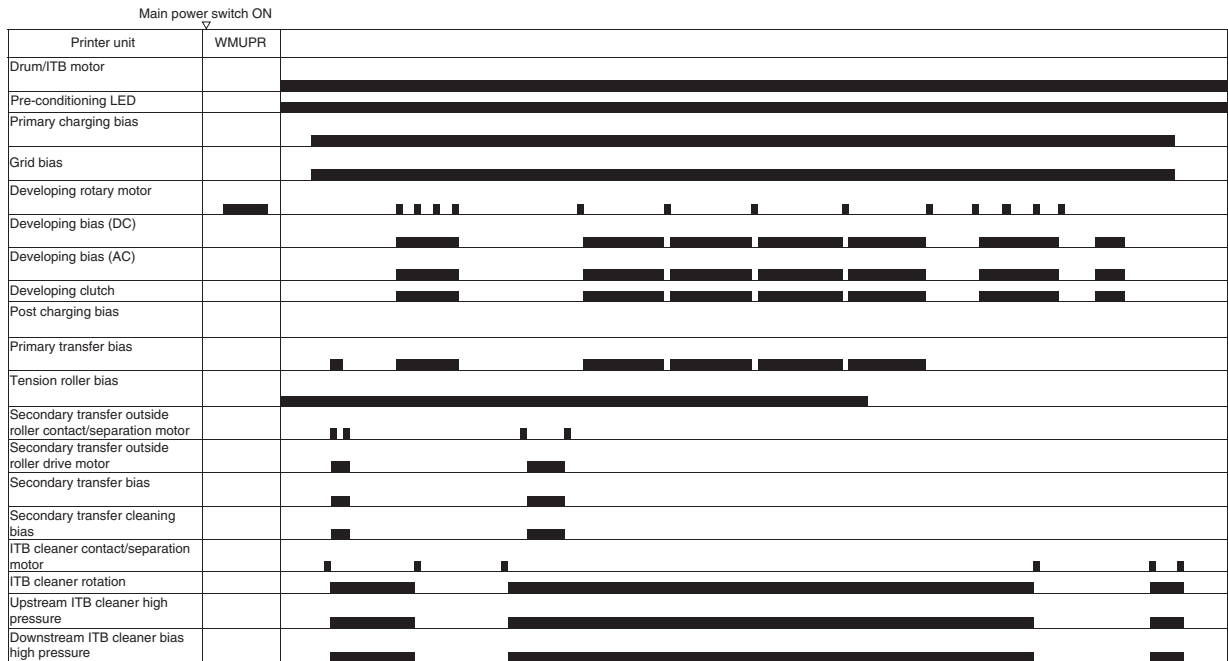
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

In case of turning on the main power switch when the temperature of the fixing roller surface is under 50 deg C. (when turning on the main power switch after leaving it for a long time, e.g., in the morning)

1. Feature

- Right after starting the sequence, execute the HP detection of the developing rotary and eliminate static from the drum surface.
- The approximate time required from turning on the main power switch to being the standby state is about 9min 10sec. (max. time is less than 11min 40sec)
- During the warm-up rotation, the following controls are executed:
Wire cleaning, potential control, primary/secondary transfer ATVC control, ITB cleaner ACVC control, ATR patch control, development idle rotation control, D-half control *1

*1: Execute the control if there is the history of more than 500 sheets color printing, or when the environment is changed.



F-7-9

7.3.2 When Turning the Power ON

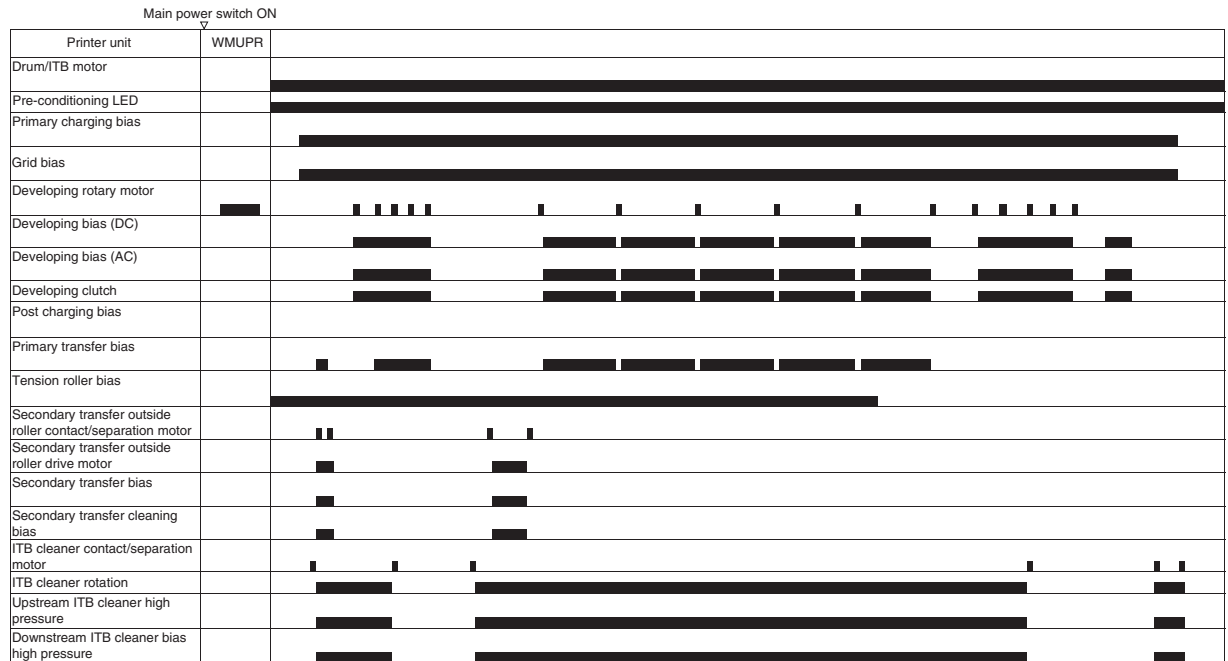
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

In case of turning on the main power switch when the temperature of the fixing roller surface is under 50 deg C. (when turning on the main power switch after leaving it for a long time, e.g., in the morning)

1. Feature

- Right after starting the sequence, execute the HP detection of the developing rotary and eliminate static from the drum surface.
- The approximate time required from turning on the main power switch to being the standby state is about 9min 10sec. (max. time is less than 11min 40sec)
- During the warm-up rotation, the following controls are executed:
Wire cleaning, potential control, primary/secondary transfer ATVC control, ITB cleaner ACVC control, ATR patch control, development idle rotation control, D-half control *1

*1: Execute the control if there is the history of more than 500 sheets color printing, or when the environment is changed.



F-7-10

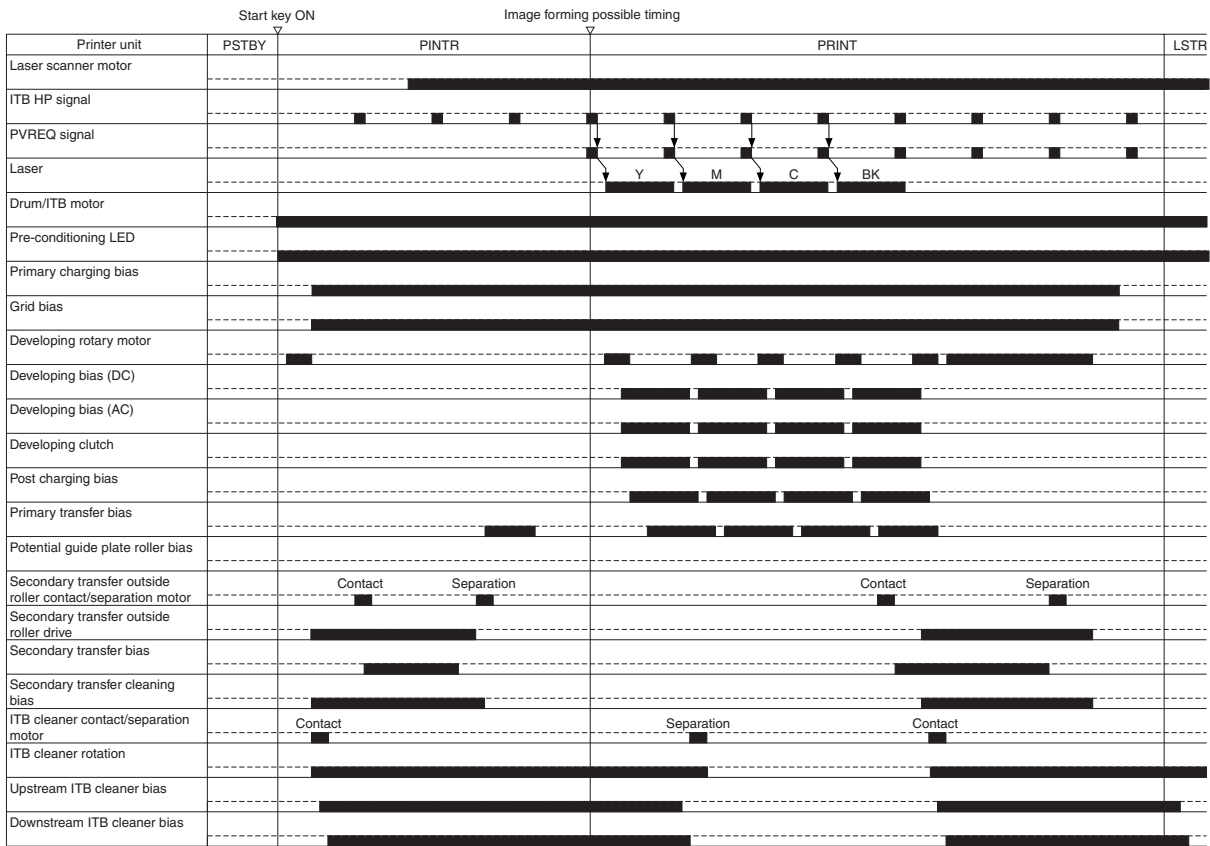
7.3.3 Copy / Print (Normal Speed)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

In case of full color, plain paper, an A4 sheet.

1. Feature

- While forming the image on the ITB, the ITB cleaning brush roller and the secondary transfer outside roller are separated from the ITB.



F-7-11

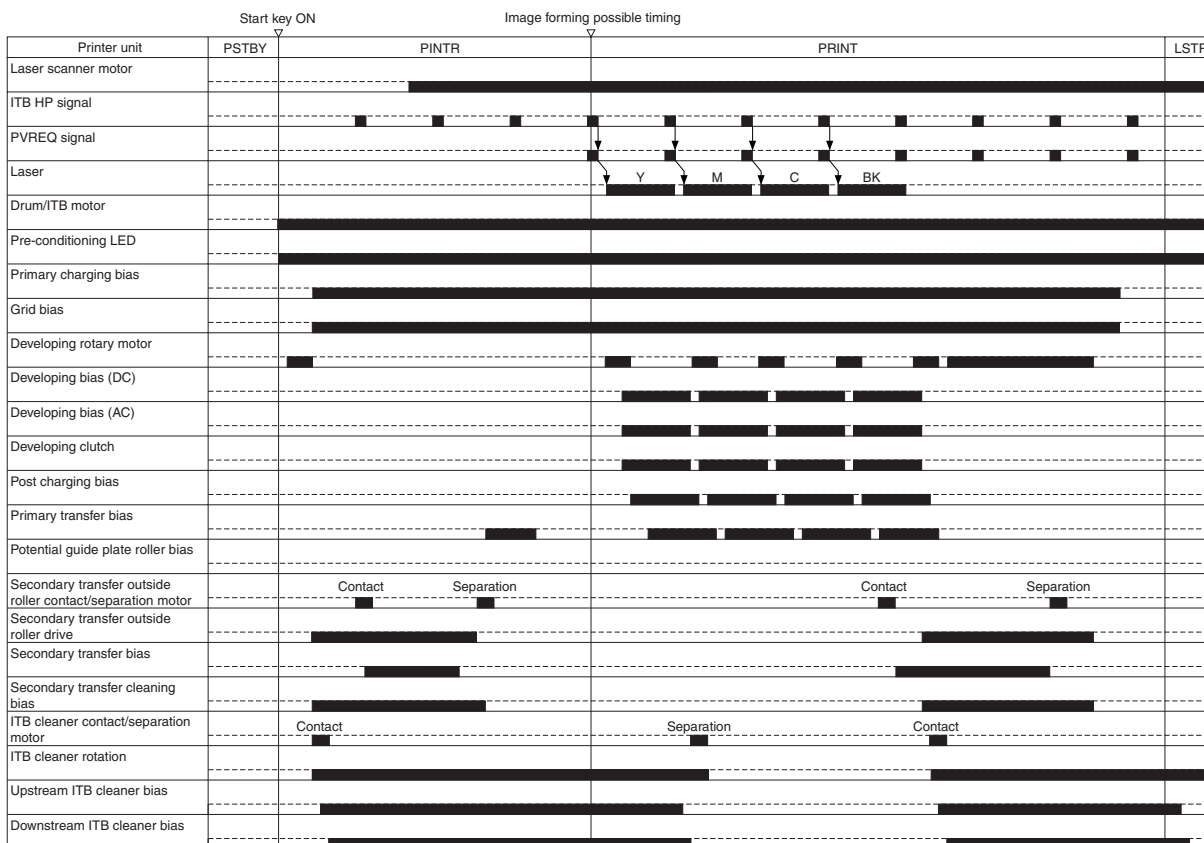
Remark:
When executing monochrome print, the ITB cleaner brush roller and the secondary transfer outside roller are always contacted to the ITB although while forming image on the ITB.

7.3.4 Copy / Print (Normal Speed)

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

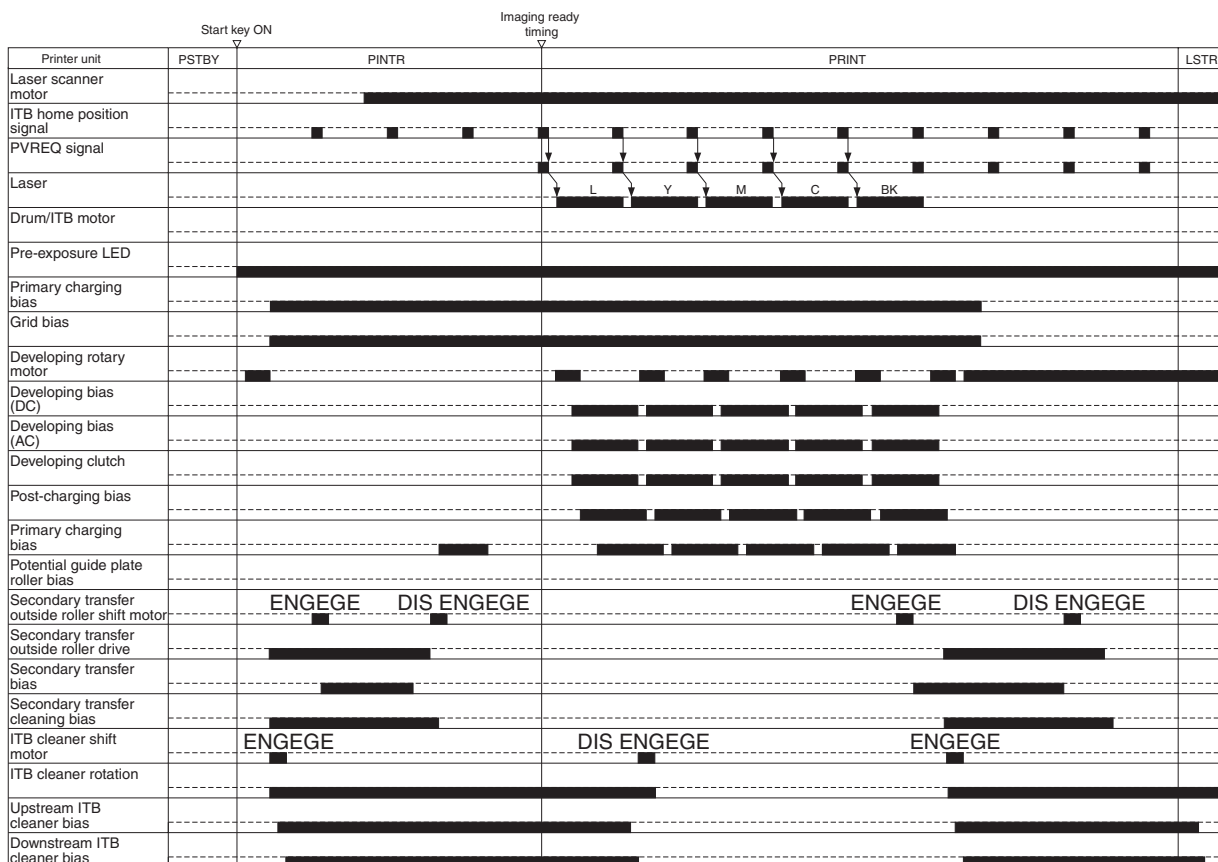
1. Feature

- While forming the image on the ITB, the ITB cleaning brush roller and the secondary transfer outside roller are separated from the ITB.
<In case of 4 full color, plain paper, an A4 sheet. >



F-7-12

<In case of 5 full color, plain paper, an A4 sheet. >



F-7-13

Remark:

When executing monochrome print, the ITB cleaner brush roller and the secondary transfer outside roller are always contacted to the ITB although while forming image on the ITB.

7.3.5 Copy / Print (1/3 Speed)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Feature

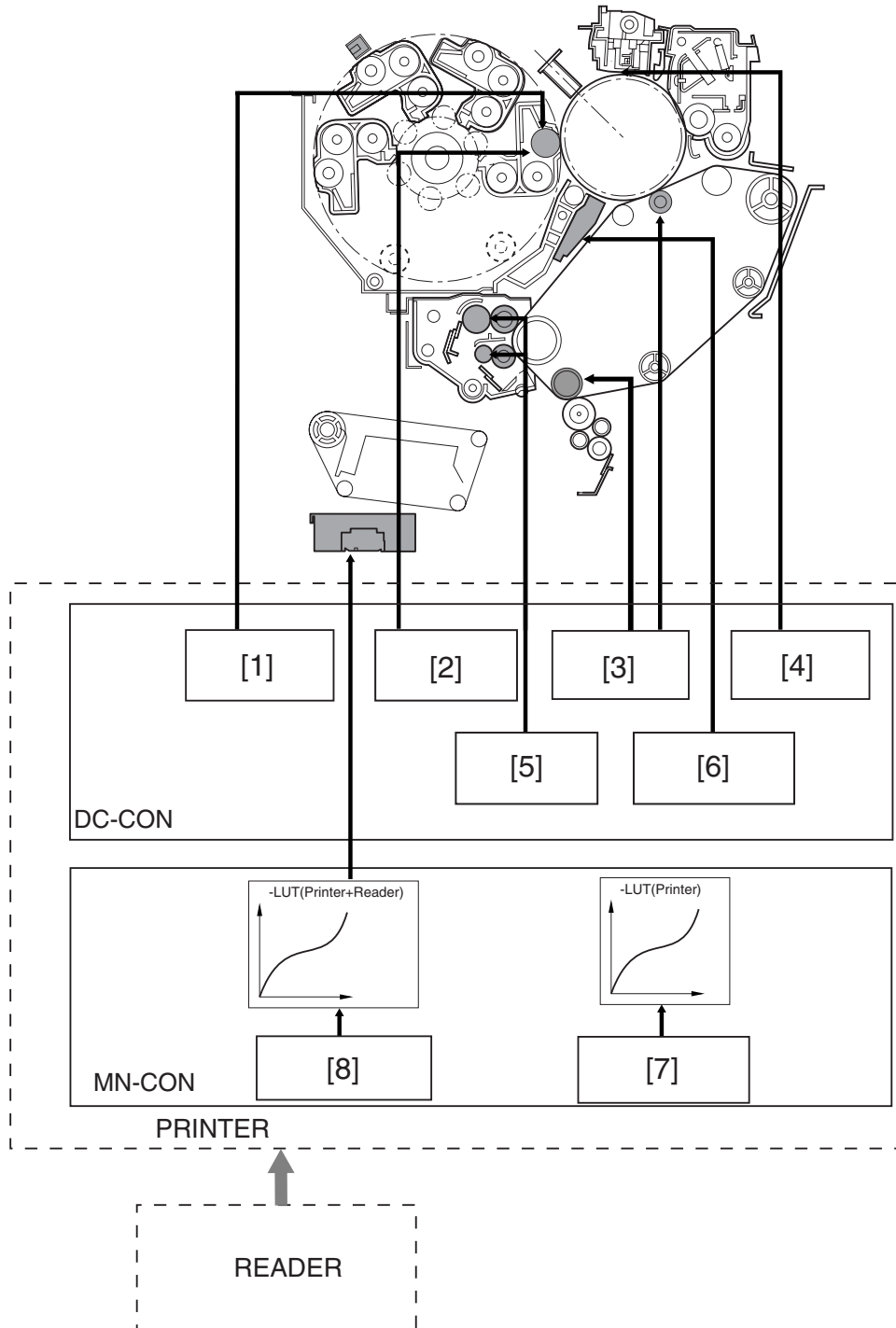
In both monochrome and full color, the 1/3 speed is used with the heavy paper (105 to 256g), the single-sided coated paper (106 to 256g), double-sided coated paper (106 to 256g), and OHT. The sequence of the 1/3 speed is the same as its of the normal speed. The difference is that reducing the process speed to 1/3 by detecting the HP detection side (2 reflecting surfaces) that is located at the edge of the ITB with the ITB HP sensor (PS1, PS2).

7.4 Image Stabilization Control

7.4.1 Overview of Image Stabilization Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

In order to produce stabled images regardless of the installation environment change or the deterioration of parts for image formation due to the product durability, the machine executes the following control.



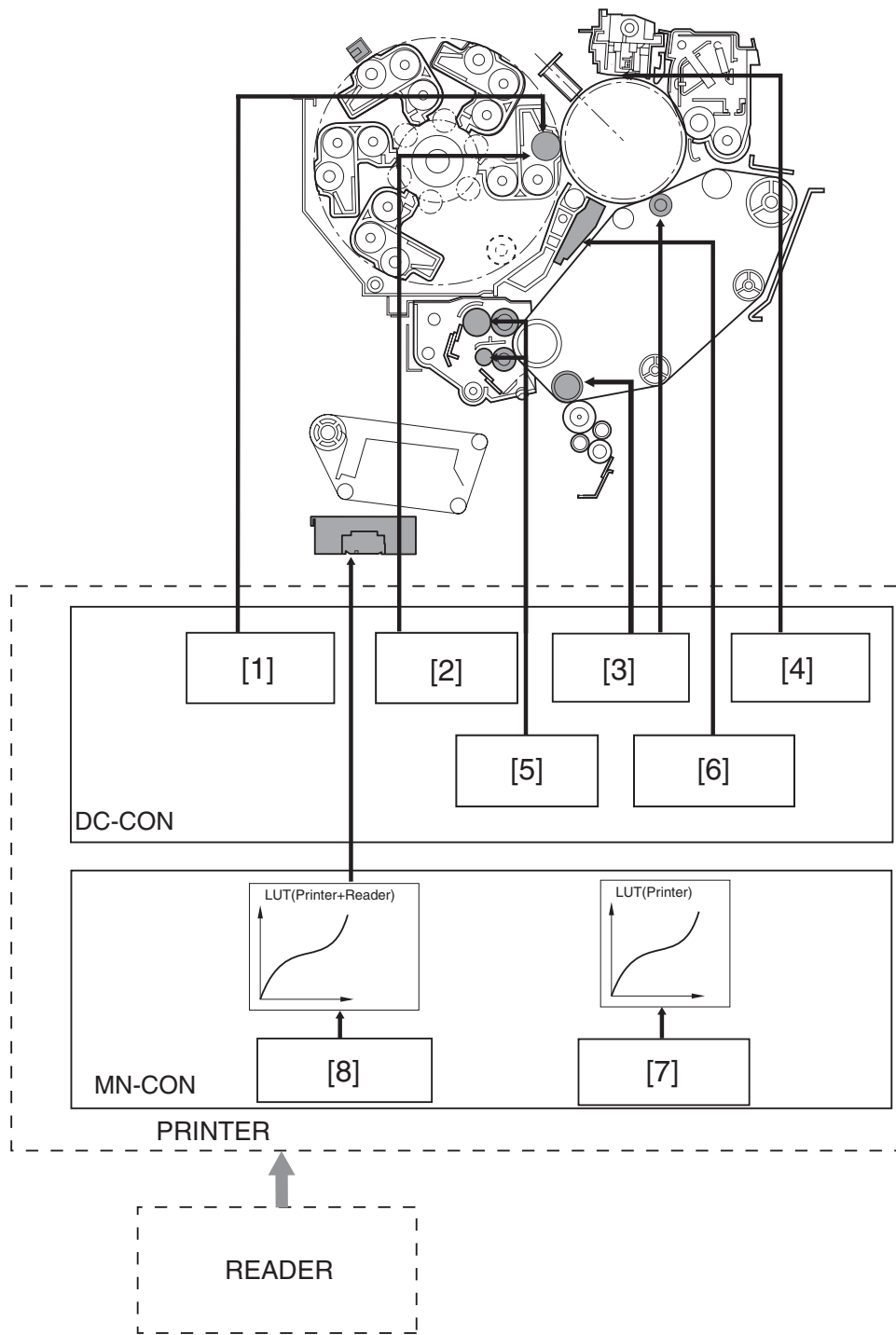
F-7-14

Control Item	Description
[1]D-max control	Determines the appropriate developing bias value.
[2]ATR control	Determines the toner supply.
[3]ATVC control	Determines the appropriate transfer bias value.
[4]Potential control	Determines the appropriate primary grid bias value.
[5]ACVC control	Determines the appropriate cleaning bias value.
[6]ARCDAT control	Determines the appropriate gradation table.
[7]Dhalf control	Determines the appropriate gradation table. (Printer)
[8]PASCAL control	Determines the appropriate gradation table. (Printer + Reader)
[8]Printer PASCAL control	Determines the appropriate gradation table. (Printer)

7.4.2 Overview of Image Stabilization Control

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

In order to produce stabled images regardless of the installation environment change or the deterioration of parts for image formation due to the product durability, the machine executes the following control.



F-7-15
T-7-5

Control Item	Description
[1] D-max control	Determines the appropriate developing bias value.
[2] ATR control	Determines the toner supply.
[3] ATVC control	Determines the appropriate transfer bias value.
[4] Potential control	Determines the appropriate primary grid bias value.
[5] ACVC control	Determines the appropriate cleaning bias value.
[6] ARCDAT control	Determines the appropriate gradation table.
[7] Dhalf control	Determines the appropriate gradation table. (Printer)
[8] PASCAL control	Determines the appropriate gradation table. (Printer + Reader)
[8] Printer PASCAL control	Determines the appropriate gradation table. (Printer)

7.4.3 Image Stabilization Control Timing

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The items to be implemented in this control differ by the condition (environment or the duration status of the image formation system parts) of the product. Following are the control items in each sequence.

T-7-6

Control item	Required time	PASCAL control	Initial rotation		Interruption		Last rotation after 500 sheets	JAM recovery
			First in the morning	Door open	400-sheet *4	2000-sheet *5		
Potential control	Full: approx. 20 sec Simple: approx. 4.5 sec	Yes	Yes*1	Yes*1	Yes*6	Yes*6	Yes*1	
Patch sensor light intensity correction	approx. 30 sec		Yes					
D-half control	approx. 22 sec	Yes	Yes	Yes*3			Yes	
ARCDAT control	approx. 20 sec	Yes						
First idle rotation in the morning	approx. 60 sec		Yes					
Primary transfer ATCV control	approx. 13.6 sec	Yes	Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes	Yes
Secondary transfer ATCV control	approx. 1 sec		Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes	Yes

*1: Full potential control

*2: Implemented after potential control

*3: Fixing temperature at a certain level or less

*4: At single-color (Bk)

Full colors are 100 sheets

*5: At single-color (Bk)

Full colors are 500 sheets

*6: Simple potential control

7.4.4 Image Stabilization Control Timing

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The items to be implemented in this control differ by the condition (environment or the duration status of the image formation system parts) of the product. Following are the control items in each sequence.

T-7-7

Control item	Required time	PASCAL control	Initial rotation		Interruption		Last rotation after 500 sheets	JAM recovery
			First in the morning	Door open	400-sheet *4	2000-sheet *5		
Potential control	Full: approx. 20 sec Simple: approx. 4.5 sec	Yes	Yes*1	Yes*1	Yes*6	Yes*6	Yes*1	
Patch sensor light intensity correction	approx. 30 sec		Yes					
D-half control	approx. 22 sec	Yes	Yes	Yes*3			Yes	
ARCDAT control	approx. 20 sec	Yes						
First idle rotation in the morning	approx. 60 sec		Yes					
Primary transfer ATCV control	approx. 13.6 sec	Yes	Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes	Yes

Control item	Required time	PASCAL control	Initial rotation		Interruption		Last rotation after 500 sheets	JAM recovery
			First in the morning	Door open	400-sheet *4	2000-sheet *5		
Secondary transfer ATCV control	approx. 1 sec		Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes	Yes

- *1: Full potential control
- *2: Implemented after potential control
- *3: Fixing temperature at a certain level or less
- *4: At single-color (Bk,L)
4 colors are 100 sheets
5 colors are 80 sheets
- *5: At single-color (Bk,L)
4 colors are 500 sheets
5 colors are 400 sheets
- *6: Simple potential control

7.4.5 Potential Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

In order to realize stable printing, the machine executes the potential control against the electrostatic latent image factors, i.e. deterioration of the photosensitive drum sensitivity and the environmental changes.

1. Startup Condition

The potential control has the following two control methods: the full potential control that measures V_g for each color, and the partial potential control that calculates the potential of Magenta and reflects the result to other colors.

Full Potential Control

- At the warm-up rotation after first power on in the morning.
- When executing PASCAL control.
- At the last rotation after passing 500 sheets.
- When executing the service mode FUNCTION > DPC > DPC. (Drum surface potential measurement and dark area potential decay measurement)

Partial Potential Control

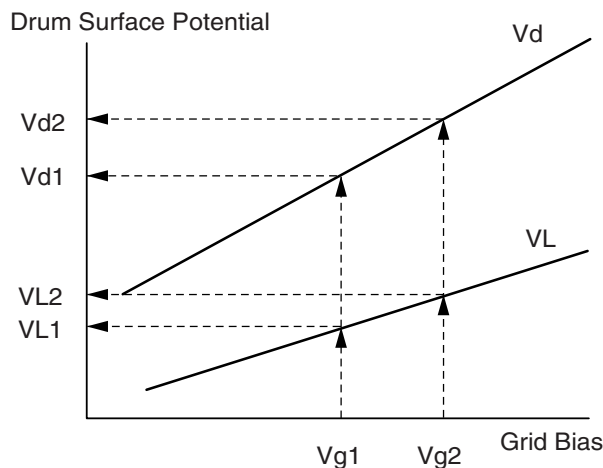
- This control is performed at the following timing.
- During continuous printing, when the counter reaches the following timing, print operation will be suspended and this control will be executed.
- Every 100 sheets (in case of 4-color full)
 - Every 80 sheets (in case of 5-color full)

2. Drum Surface Potential Measurement

In the drum surface potential measurement, as a prearrangement of the measurement, it is checked if the charging assembly is worked normally by charging the photosensitive drum with V_g in the environment and executing the potential measurement (V_d1) during the warm-up rotation or copying. If there is any fault, an error message (E061-0001, 0007 to 0012) is displayed on the control panel. The V_d1 measurement is not available in the service mode (FUNCTION > DPC > DPC).

In the normal drum surface potential measurement, set the grid bias (V_{g1}/V_{g2}) of the primary charging assembly, and measure the dark area potential (V_d) when the laser is OFF and the light area potential (V_L) when the laser is ON with the potential sensor.

Based on the measured V_d/V_L and the grid bias (V_g), create a graph as indicated below.



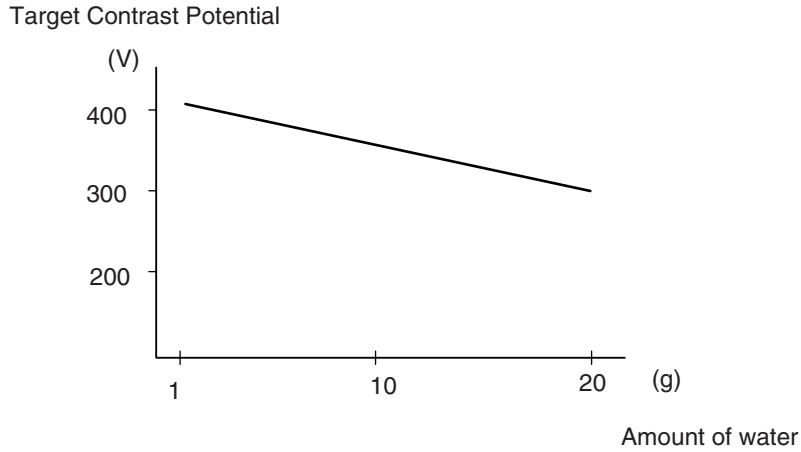
Environment Control
 V_{g1} :-500V
 V_{g2} :-800V

F-7-16

3. Environment Control

In the environmental contrast potential control, the target contrast potential is determined by measuring the environment around the developing assembly. The characteristic of the developer changes as the environment around the developing assembly changes, and it affects to the image density. Therefore, the target contrast potential is determined by measuring the environment (temperature / humidity) around the developing assembly with the environment sensor.

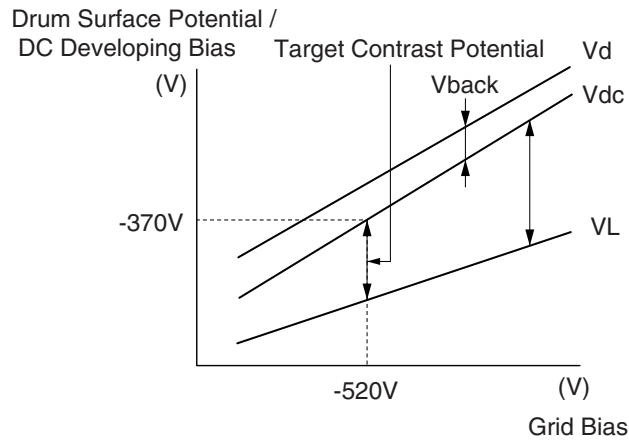
The following figure indicates the relationship between the environmental change and the target contrast potential.



F-7-17

4. Setup of Grid Bias and Developing Bias

Based on V_d , V_L and target contrast potential found with the drum surface potential control, determine the grid bias and the DC developing bias. First, for eliminating the overlap, draw a line for the developing bias DC (V_{dc}) at the point where V_{back} voltage is added to V_d . (The V_{back} voltage is determined as 148-165V by the water amount that is measured with the environment sensor.) Then, find out the point where the value of the contrast potential between V_{dc} and V_L indicated in the following figure is the same as of the target contrast potential, and obtain the target values of the grid bias and the developing bias from the point.



F-7-18

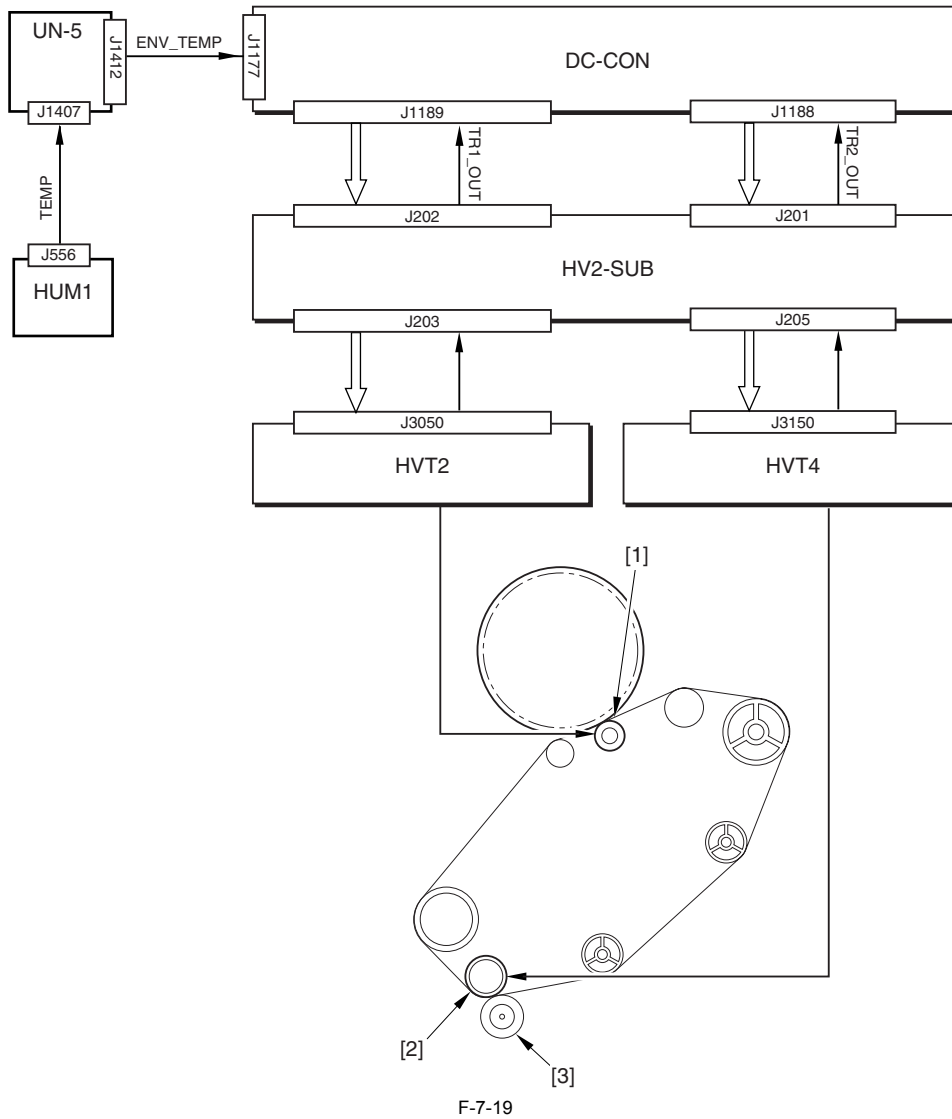
The measured data of the surface potential can be checked with DISPLAY > DPOT after executing the service mode (FUNCTION > DPC > DPC). The target values in the field are indicated below.

Screen Display	Target Value
V00-500V	-450V
V00-800V	-730V
VFF-500V	-180V
VFF-800V	-300V

7.4.6 ATVC Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

When transferring toner from the photosensitive drum to the ITB, from the ITB to a paper, the ATVC control is executed to determine the appropriate transfer voltage. The ATVC control has the following two control types: the primary transfer ATVC and the secondary transfer ATVC.



- [1] Primary Transfer Roller
- [2] Secondary Transfer Inside Roller
- [3] Secondary Transfer Outside Roller
- DC-CON: DC Controller
- HUM1: Environment Sensor
- UN5: Pickup Driver PCB

1. Primary Transfer ATVC

The primary transfer ATVC determines the primary transfer voltage in order to obtain the target transfer current at the time of the transfer. The primary transfer ATVC control has the following two control types: the full ATVC control executed by facing the developing assembly of each color to the drum (considering the drum potential variation, and the state with the influence of the developing bias), and the partial potential control executed without facing the developing assembly to the drum (the state without the influence of the developing bias).

a. Startup Condition

- Full Potential Control
 - At the warm-up rotation after the power is ON.
 - When executing the PASCAL control.
 - At the last rotation after passing 500 sheets.

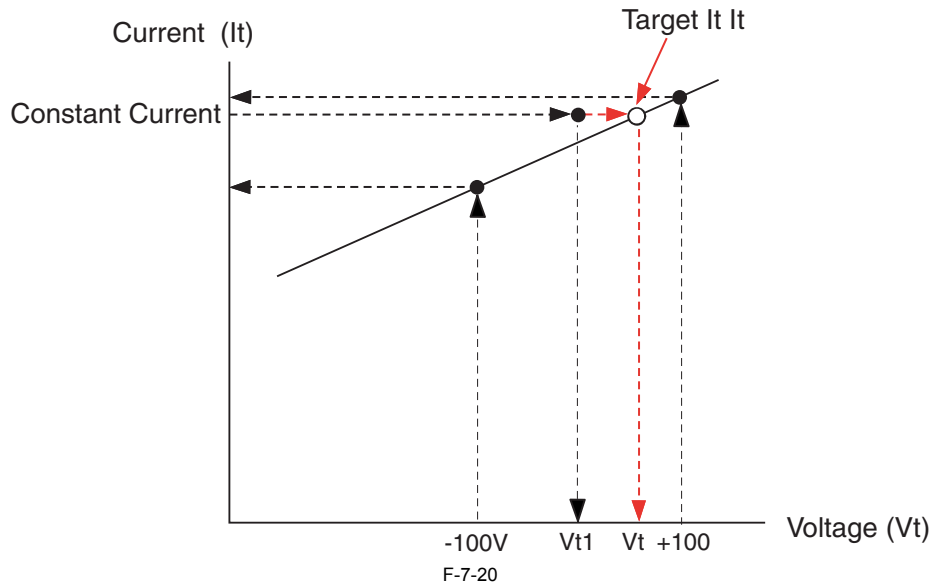
- Partial Potential Control
 - At the warm-up rotation.

b. Description

T-7-8

Sequence	Operation	Description
1	Apply the constant current	By applying the constant current to the primary transfer roller, feedback the voltage data of the primary transfer roller to the DC controller.

2	Create It - Vt Curve	By adding the predefined voltage (+/-100V: vary depending on the environment) to the voltage value obtained from the constant current and measuring each current value, create the It-Vt Curve.
3	Environment Sensor Monitor	The DC controller calculates the correction value from the environment sensor information.
4	Determine the primary transfer bias	The DC controller determines the appropriate primary transfer bias in consideration of the correction value.



2. Secondary Transfer ATVC

The secondary transfer ATVC determines the secondary transfer voltage to obtain the target transfer current at the time of transfer.

a. Startup Condition

- At the warm-up rotation after the power is ON.
- At the last rotation after passing 500 sheets.
- At the warm-up rotation.

b. Description

T-7-9

Sequence	Operation	Description
1	Apply the constant current	By applying the constant current to the secondary transfer roller, feedback the voltage data of the secondary transfer roller to the DC controller.
2	Create It - Vt Curve	By adding the predefined voltage (+/-100V: vary depending on the environment) to the voltage value obtained from the constant current and measuring each current value, create the It-Vt Curve.
3	Environment Sensor Monitor	The DC controller calculates the correction value from the environment sensor output and the print information (paper type).
4	Determine the secondary transfer bias	The DC controller determines the appropriate secondary transfer bias in consideration of the correction value.

7.4.7 ATR Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

The ATR control is executed to supply the toner to the developing assembly by calculating the supply amount from the toner consumption.

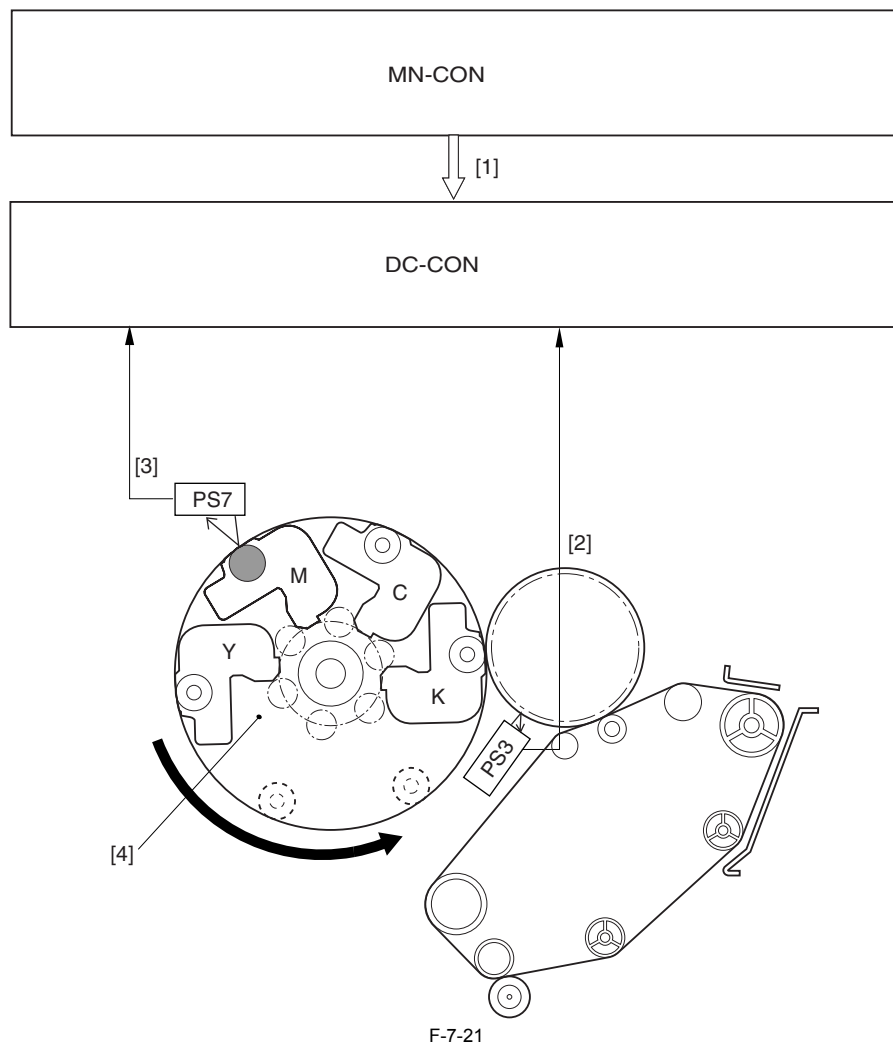
1. Description

a. Toner Supply Calculation

The amount of toner supplied to each developing assembly is determined.

This equipment calculates the necessary volume of toner supply based on data collected in three different ways.

- Video Count (counts each document output when printing)
 - Estimates the amount of toner consumption from video counts data, and thus calculates the amount actually consumed.
- Data from the Patch Image Scan Sensor (PS3) (performed sheet-to-sheet)
 - The patch image scan sensor measures toner image formed in the drum, and based on the data collected the amount of toner supply is adjusted so that the over all density will get close to the target density.
- Data from the ATR Sensor (PS7) (detects every 8 document output of color print on A4 paper)
 - The ATR sensor detects the patch image density and the developer (toner and carrier) in the developing assembly cylinder of each color. If the results fall outside of the target density range, toner supply target will be either increased or decreased.



- [1] Video count
- [2] Data from the patch image scan sensor
- [3] Data from the ATR sensor
- [4] Development rotary assembly

PS7: ATR sensor
 PS3: patch image scan sensor
 DC-CON: DC controller
 MN-CON: main controller

Related Error Codes:

- E020-xx10 Standard deviation of Sig (initial data) is less than 62 in default patch detection
- E020-xx11 Standard deviation of Sig (initial data) is 960 or greater in default patch detection
- E020-xx12 Standard deviation of Ref (initial data) is less than 62 in default patch detection
- E020-xx13 Standard deviation of Ref (initial data) is 960 or greater in default patch detection
- E020-xx81 Scan data obtained in background (facing intermediate transfer belt) scans of the patch detection is less than the minimum (225) value
- E020-xx82 Dark current measurement is 30 or less in patch detection

E020-xx83 Dark current measurement is 90 or greater in patch detection
 E020-xx84 Difference between the background measurement and the dark current measurement is 30 or less in patch detection
 E020-xx85 Difference between the patch measurement and the dark current measurement is 30 or less in patch detection
 E020-xx86 Difference between the patch measurement and the background measurement is 30 or less in patch detection
 E020-xx87 Dark current measurement is 930 or greater in patch detection
 E020-xx88 Dark current measurement detected by the front sensor is 30 or less in patch detection
 E020-xx89 Dark current measurement detected by the rear sensor is 30 or less in patch detection
 E020-xx8A Dark current measurement detected by the front sensor is 90 or greater in patch detection
 E020-xx8B Dark current measurement detected by the rear sensor is 90 or greater in patch detection
 E020-xx90 Calculation result of the patch scans with the patch sensor (analogue) is less than 16
 E020-xx91 Calculation result of the patch scans with the patch sensor (analogue) is 880 or greater
 E020-xx92 Value obtained from calculation results of the patch scans with the patch sensor is - 5.0 % or less in three consecutive times
 E020-xx93 Value obtained from calculation results of the patch scans with the patch sensor is + 5.0 % in three consecutive times
 E020-xxA0 Sig value is less than 62 in the ATR control
 E020-xxA1 Ref value is less than 62 in the ATR control
 E020-xxA2 Sig value is 960 or greater in the ATR control
 E020-xxA3 Ref value is 960 or greater in the ATR control
 E020-xxA8 Detected T/D ratio in the ATR control exceeds the maximum value (14%) in three consecutive times
 E020-xxA9 Detected T/D ratio in the ATR control falls below the minimum value (3%) in three consecutive times
 E020-xxC0 Standard deviation in light Sig values of 8 samples is 100 or greater
 E020-xxC1 Ref standard deviation is 100 or greater in the ATR control
 E020-xxC2 Standard deviation of Sig (average data) is 400 or more in default patch detection
 E020-xxDA Standard deviation of Sig (initial data) is 100 or more in default patch detection
 E020-xxDB Standard deviation of Ref (initial data) is 100 or more in default patch detection

xx refers to the numbers assigned to each color developing assembly.

01=Y
 02=M
 03=C
 04=Bk

7.4.8 ATR Control

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The ATR control is executed to supply the toner to the developing assembly by calculating the supply amount from the toner consumption.

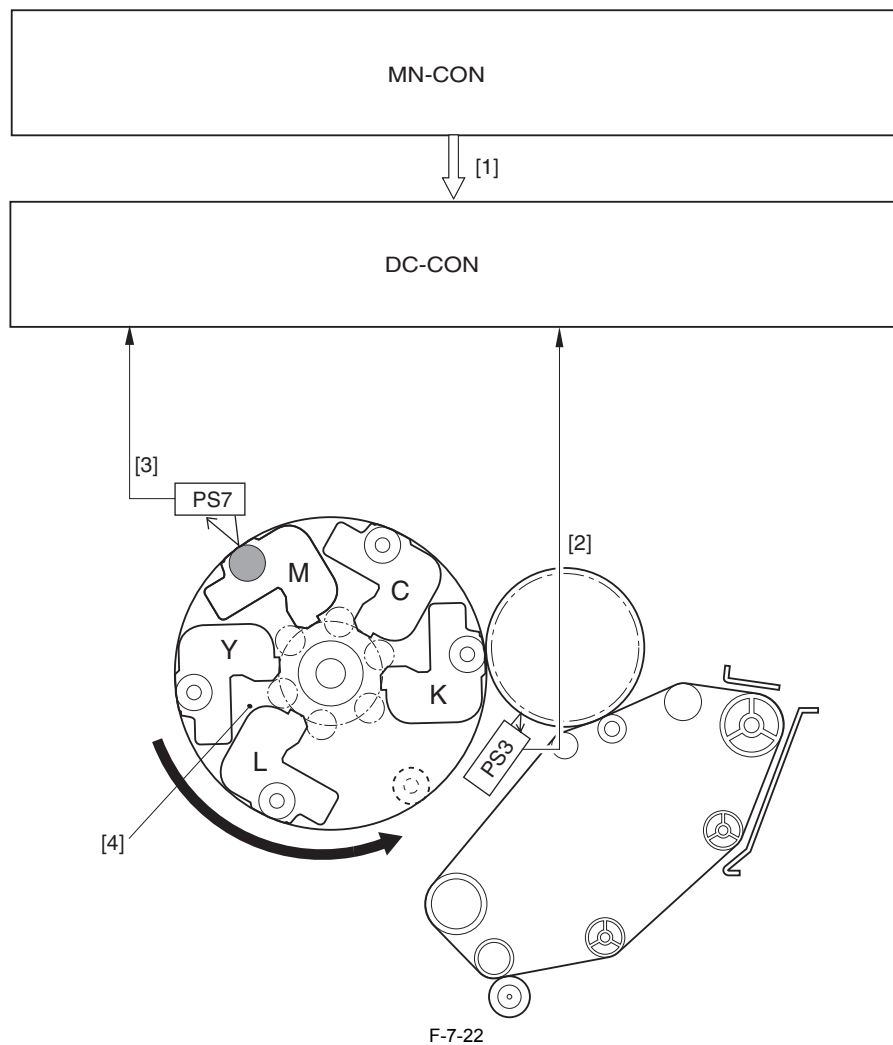
1. Description

a. Toner Supply Calculation

The amount of toner supplied to each developing assembly is determined.

This equipment calculates the necessary volume of toner supply based on data collected in three different ways.

- Video Count (counts each document output when printing)
 - Estimates the amount of toner consumption from video counts data, and thus calculates the amount actually consumed.
- Data from the Patch Image Scan Sensor (PS3) (performed sheet-to-sheet)
 - The patch image scan sensor measures toner image formed in the drum, and based on the data collected the amount of toner supply is adjusted so that the over all density will get close to the target density.
- Data from the ATR Sensor (PS7) (detects every 8 document output of color print on A4 paper)
 - The ATR sensor detects the patch image density and the developer (toner and carrier) in the developing assembly cylinder of each color. If the results fall outside of the target density range, toner supply target will be either increased or decreased.



- [1] Video count
 [2] Data from the patch image scan sensor
 [3] Data from the ATR sensor
 [4] Development rotary assembly

PS7: ATR sensor
 PS3: patch image scan sensor
 DC-CON: DC controller
 MN-CON: main controller

Related Error Codes:

- E020-xx10 Standard deviation of Sig (initial data) is less than 62 in default patch detection
 E020-xx11 Standard deviation of Sig (initial data) is 960 or greater in default patch detection
 E020-xx12 Standard deviation of Ref (initial data) is less than 62 in default patch detection
 E020-xx13 Standard deviation of Ref (initial data) is 960 or greater in default patch detection
 E020-xx81 Scan data obtained in background (facing intermediate transfer belt) scans of the patch detection is less than the minimum (225) value
 E020-xx82 Dark current measurement is 30 or less in patch detection
 E020-xx83 Dark current measurement is 90 or greater in patch detection
 E020-xx84 Difference between the background measurement and the dark current measurement is 30 or less in patch detection
 E020-xx85 Difference between the patch measurement and the dark current measurement is 30 or less in patch detection
 E020-xx86 Difference between the patch measurement and the background measurement is 30 or less in patch detection
 E020-xx87 Dark current measurement is 930 or greater in patch detection
 E020-xx88 Dark current measurement detected by the front sensor is 30 or less in patch detection
 E020-xx89 Dark current measurement detected by the rear sensor is 30 or less in patch detection
 E020-xx8A Dark current measurement detected by the front sensor is 90 or greater in patch detection
 E020-xx8B Dark current measurement detected by the rear sensor is 90 or greater in patch detection
 E020-xx90 Calculation result of the patch scans with the patch sensor (analogue) is less than 16
 E020-xx91 Calculation result of the patch scans with the patch sensor (analogue) is 880 or greater
 E020-xx92 Value obtained from calculation results of the patch scans with the patch sensor is - 5.0 % or less in three consecutive times
 E020-xx93 Value obtained from calculation results of the patch scans with the patch sensor is + 5.0 % in three consecutive times
 E020-xxA0 Sig value is less than 62 in the ATR control
 E020-xxA1 Ref value is less than 62 in the ATR control
 E020-xxA2 Sig value is 960 or greater in the ATR control
 E020-xxA3 Ref value is 960 or greater in the ATR control
 E020-xxA8 Detected T/D ratio in the ATR control exceeds the maximum value (14%) in three consecutive times
 E020-xxA9 Detected T/D ratio in the ATR control falls below the minimum value (3%) in three consecutive times
 E020-xxC0 Standard deviation in light Sig values of 8 samples is 100 or greater
 E020-xxC1 Ref standard deviation is 100 or greater in the ATR control
 E020-xxC2 Standard deviation of Sig (average data) is 400 or more in default patch detection

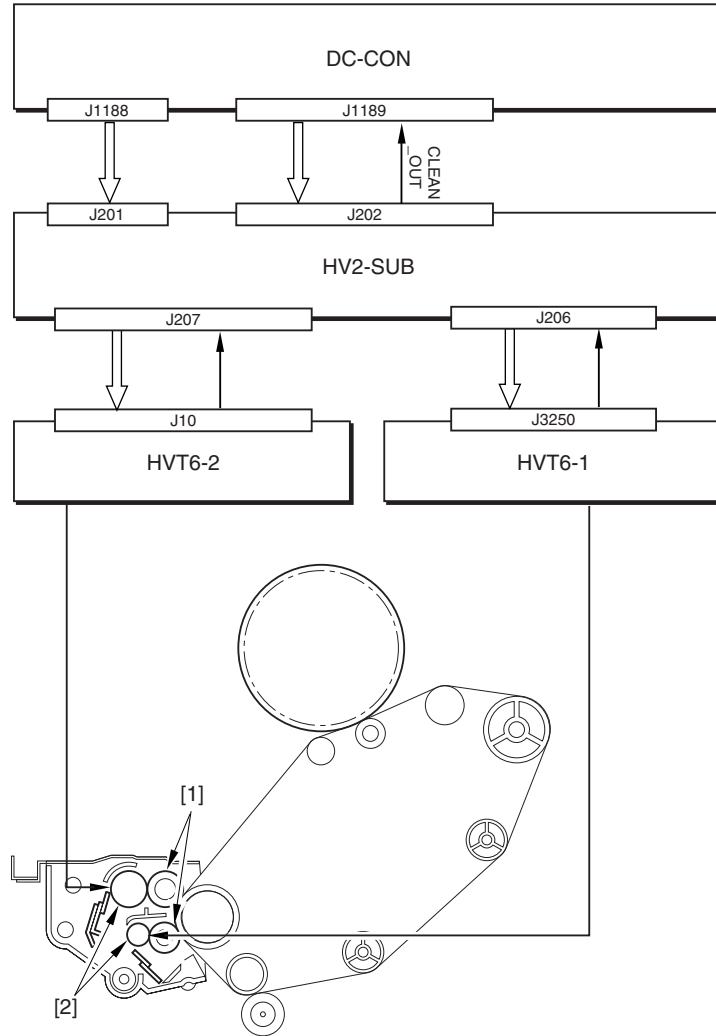
E020-xxDA Standard deviation of Sig (initial data) is 100 or more in default patch detection
 E020-xxDB Standard deviation of Ref (initial data) is 100 or more in default patch detection

xx refers to the numbers assigned to each color developing assembly.
 01=Y
 02=M
 03=C
 04=Bk

7.4.9 ACVC Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This equipment performs ACVC control which determines the most suitable cleaning bias in order to clear the residual toner from the surface of ITB.



F-7-23

[1]Brush roller
 [2]Bias roller
 DC-CON: DC controller

a. Start-Up Conditions

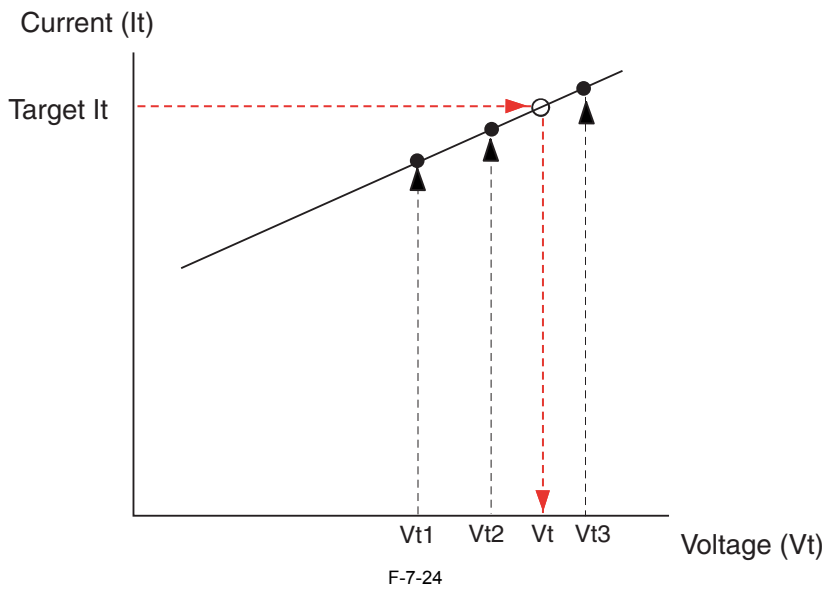
- When power is on / during initial multiple rotation
- During last rotation after 500 printing jobs
- During initial rotation

b. Description

T-7-10

Sequence	Operation	Description

1	Vt Application	Estimate the voltage corresponding the current listed on the environmental table and then apply Vt1 to Vt3 to the bias roller. Gauge the current at HVT6 and feed back the results to the DC controller.
2	Drawing Target It-Vt Curve	Measure the current (It) at the voltages Vt1 to Vt3, and draw an It-Vt curve.
3	Determining the Cleaning Bias	DC controller calculates a target Vt from the target It and then determines the most suitable cleaning bias based the target Vt.



7.4.10 D-max Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

This D-max control (image density correction control) is executed to control the variation in image density caused by the change in environment, or deterioration of the photosensitive drum or toner.

Activation Timing

- At PASCAL control
- At every paper interval

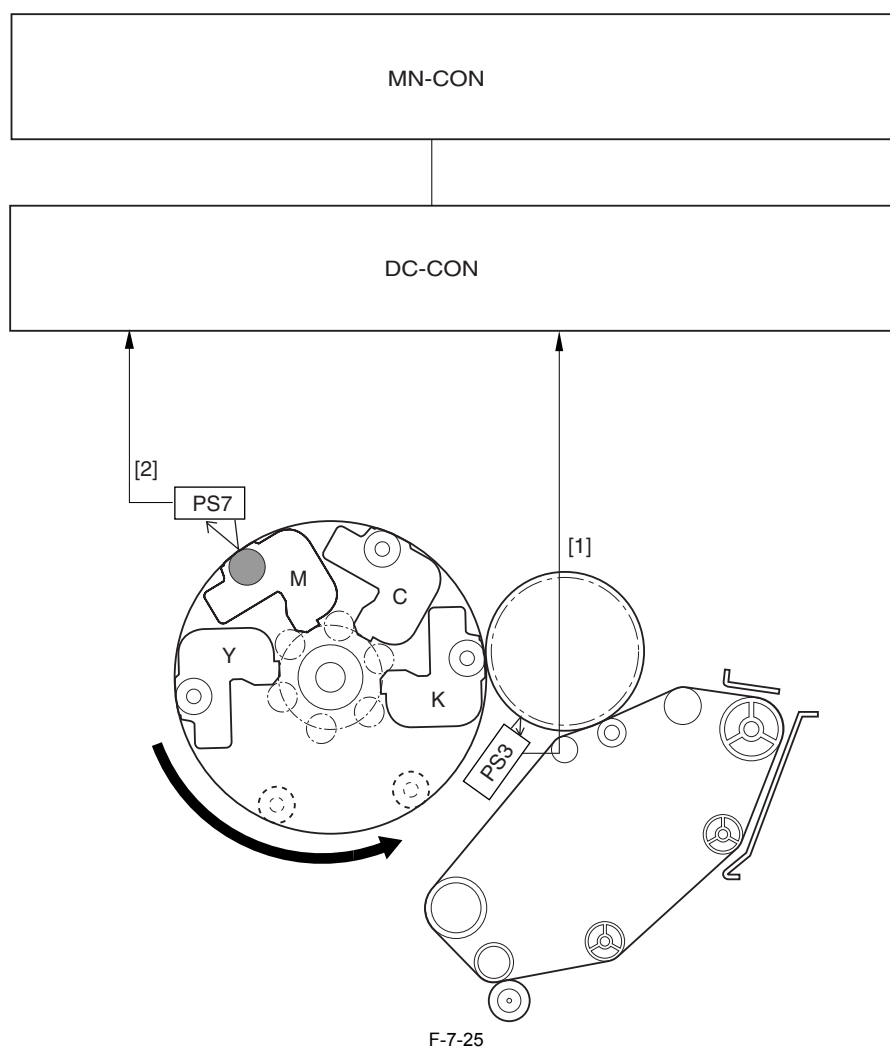
Control Description

The DC controller creates patch patterns of each color (Y, M, C, Bk) on the drum at every paper interval. Afterwards, the patch image read sensor (PS3) measures the patch patterns to execute toner supply control according to patch density. At this point, the ATR sensor (PS7) reads the sleeve surface of the developing assembly to measure the T/D ratio. The DC controller evaluates whether to execute toner supply by measuring result of the T/D ratio to determine the developing bias and the grid bias for each color (Y, M, C, Bk) in order to realize optimal density.

Memo:

T-7-11

Condition	Cause	Remedy
The patch density is light, and the sleeve surface is dark	The toner density developed to the drum is getting lower due to developing-related reasons,	Stop toner supply, and determine the developing bias and the grid bias in order to obtain optimal density.
The patch density is dark, and the sleeve surface is light	The toner density developed to the drum is getting higher due to developing-related reasons,	Execute toner supply forcibly, and determine the developing bias and the grid bias in order to obtain optimal density.



- [1] Detection result of the patch image read sensor
 [2] Detection result of the ATR sensor

PS7: ATR sensor
 PS3: Patch image read sensor
 DC-CON: DC controller
 MN-CON: Main controller

7.4.11 D-max Control

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This D-max control (image density correction control) is executed to control the variation in image density caused by the change in environment, or deterioration of the photosensitive drum or toner.

Activation Timing

- At PASCAL control
- At every paper interval

Control Description

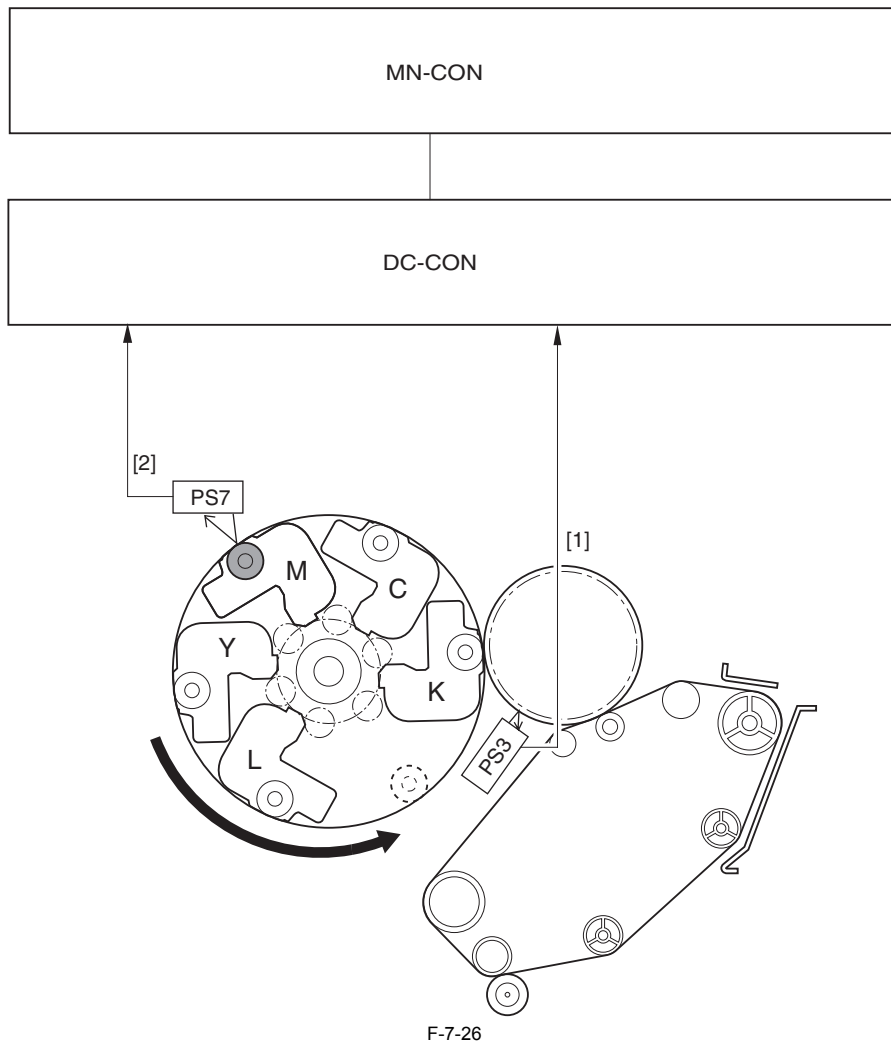
The DC controller creates patch patterns of each color (L, Y, M, C, Bk) on the drum at every paper interval. Afterwards, the patch image read sensor (PS3) measures the patch patterns to execute toner supply control according to patch density. At this point, the ATR sensor (PS7) reads the sleeve surface of the developing assembly to measure the T/D ratio. The DC controller evaluates whether to execute toner supply by measuring result of the T/D ratio to determine the developing bias and the grid bias for each color (L, Y, M, C, Bk) in order to realize optimal density.

Memo:

T-7-12

Condition	Cause	Remedy
The patch density is light, and the sleeve surface is dark	The toner density developed to the drum is getting lower due to developing-related reasons,	Stop toner supply, and determine the developing bias and the grid bias in order to obtain optimal density.

The patch density is dark, and the sleeve surface is light	The toner density developed to the drum is getting higher due to developing-related reasons,	Execute toner supply forcibly, and determine the developing bias and the grid bias in order to obtain optimal density.
--	--	--



[1] Detection result of the patch image read sensor
 [2] Detection result of the ATR sensor

PS7: ATR sensor
 PS3: Patch image read sensor
 DC-CON: DC controller
 MN-CON: Main controller

7.4.12 D-half Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

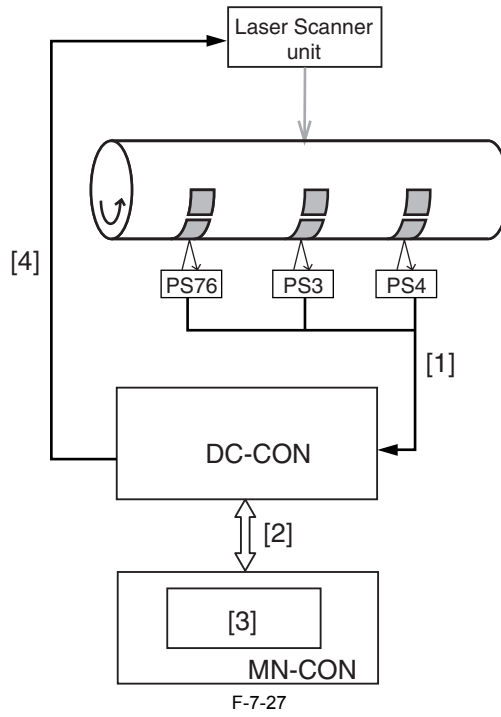
This control regulates gradation correction in the main controller of the printer in order to achieve optimum gradation characteristics.

Start-Up Timing

- While performing the PASCAL control
- During last rotation after 500 printing jobs (When the full-color prints)
- During initial multiple rotation at power-on (The fixing temperature must be 50 deg C or lower.)

Description

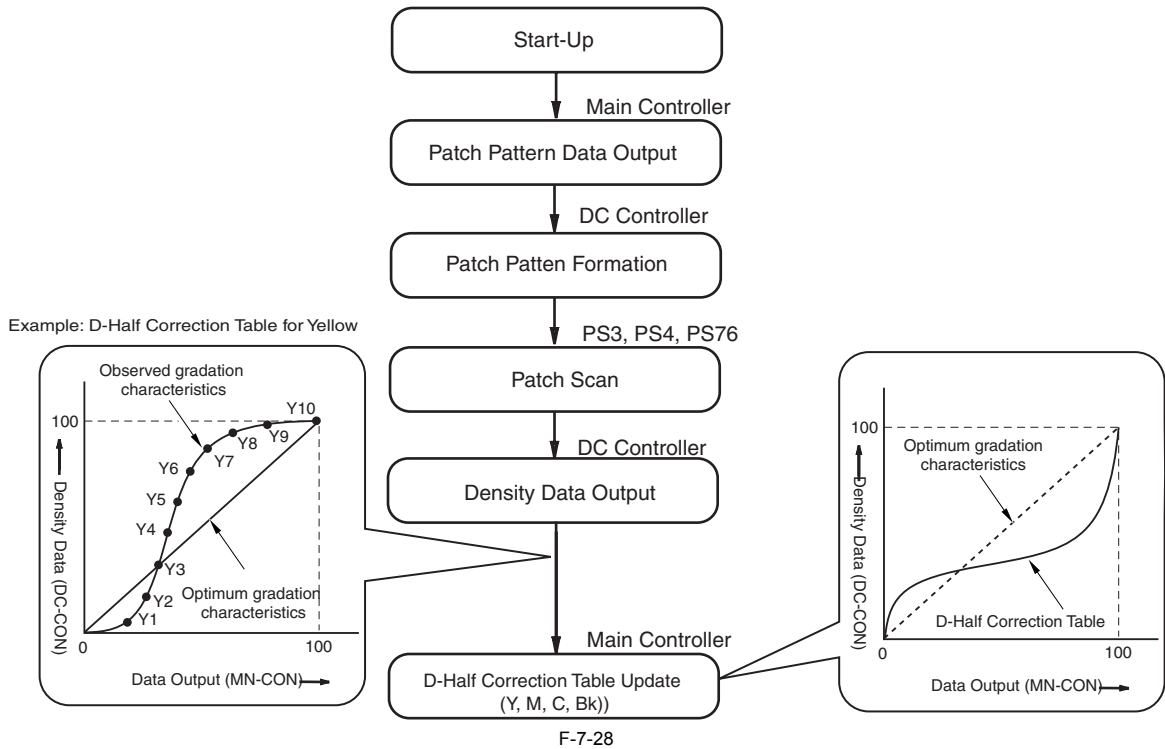
Main controller outputs the patch data of each color (Y, M, C, Bk) at the DC controller when given conditions are met. DC controller produces patch patterns of each color (Y, M, C, Bk) on the drum based on this data. Subsequently DC controller measures patch patterns with the patch image scan sensor (PS3, PS4, PS76) and sends the results back to the main controller. Based on the obtained measurements, main controller then regulates the gradation correction in order to achieve optimal halftone image/ This control also produces a standard patch used in the ARCDAT control and stores a set of standard data for the AR CDAT collected from PS3, PS4, PS76. (See Note.)



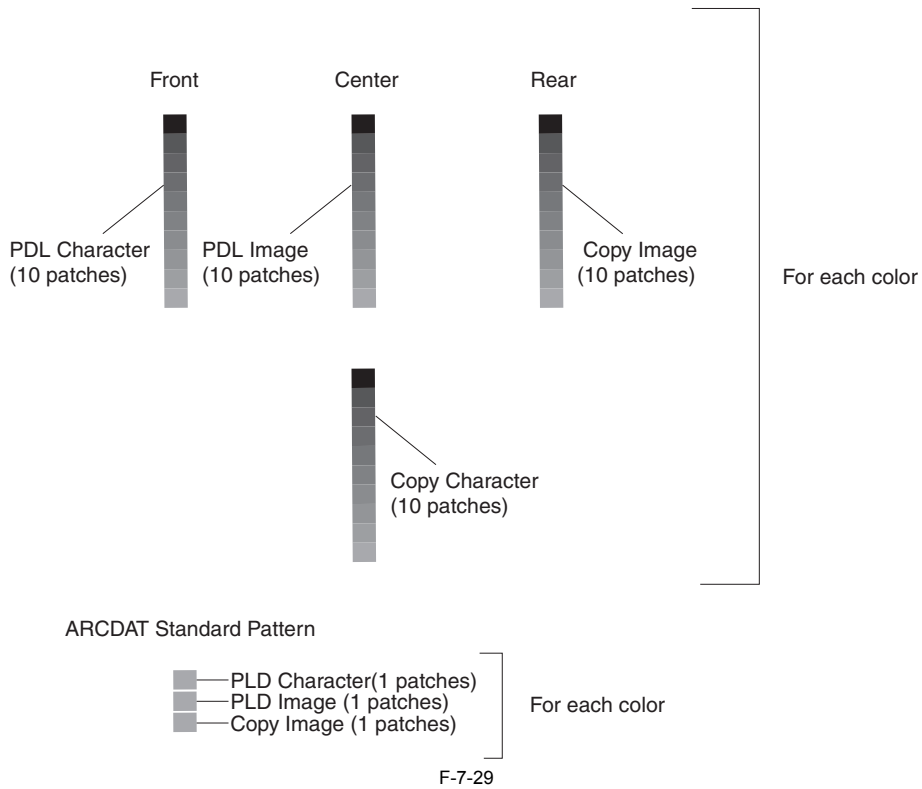
- [1] Patch image data
 - [2] Density data
 - [3] D-half control
 - [4] Video data
- PS3, PS4, PS76: patch image sensor

Operation Flow Chart

Below is operation flow chart of D-half control.

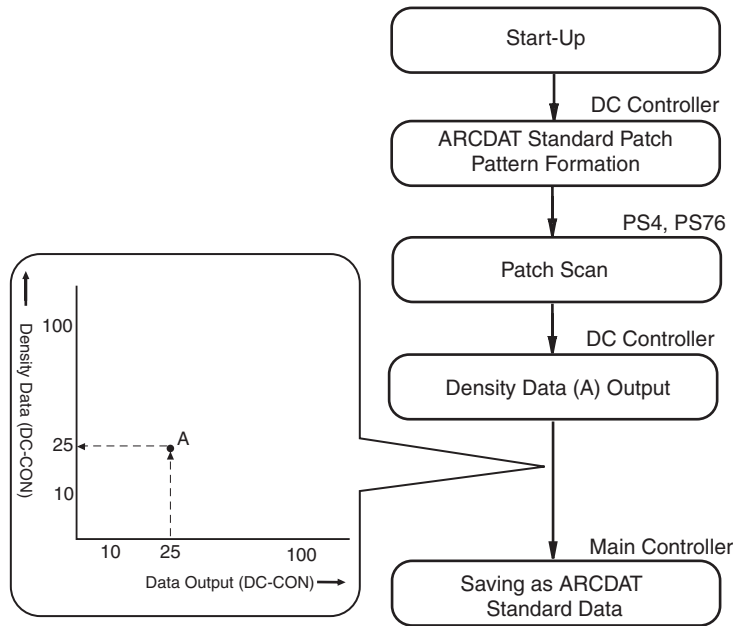


Memo:
The patch patterns produced in D-half control are as follows.



F-7-29

ARCDAT Correction Calculation Flow Chart



F-7-30

7.4.13 D-half Control

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This control regulates gradation correction in the main controller of the printer in order to achieve optimum gradation characteristics.

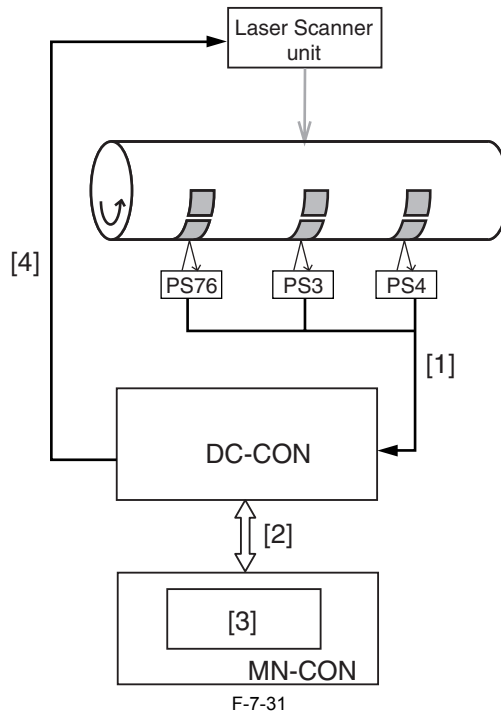
Start-Up Timing

- While performing the PASCAL control
- During last rotation after 500 printing jobs (When the 4-color prints)
- During last rotation after 400 printing jobs (When the 5-color prints)
- During initial multiple rotation at power-on (The fixing temperature must be 50 deg C or lower.)

Description

Main controller outputs the patch data of each color (L, Y, M, C, Bk) at the DC controller when given conditions are met. DC controller produces patch patterns of each color (L, Y, M, C, Bk) on the drum based on this data. Subsequently DC controller measures patch patterns with the patch image scan sensor (PS3, PS4, PS76) and sends the results back to the main controller. Based on the obtained measurements, main controller then regulates the gradation correction in order to achieve optimal halftone image/ This control also produces a standard patch used in the ARCDAT control and stores a set of standard data for the AR CDAT collected from PS3, PS4, PS76.

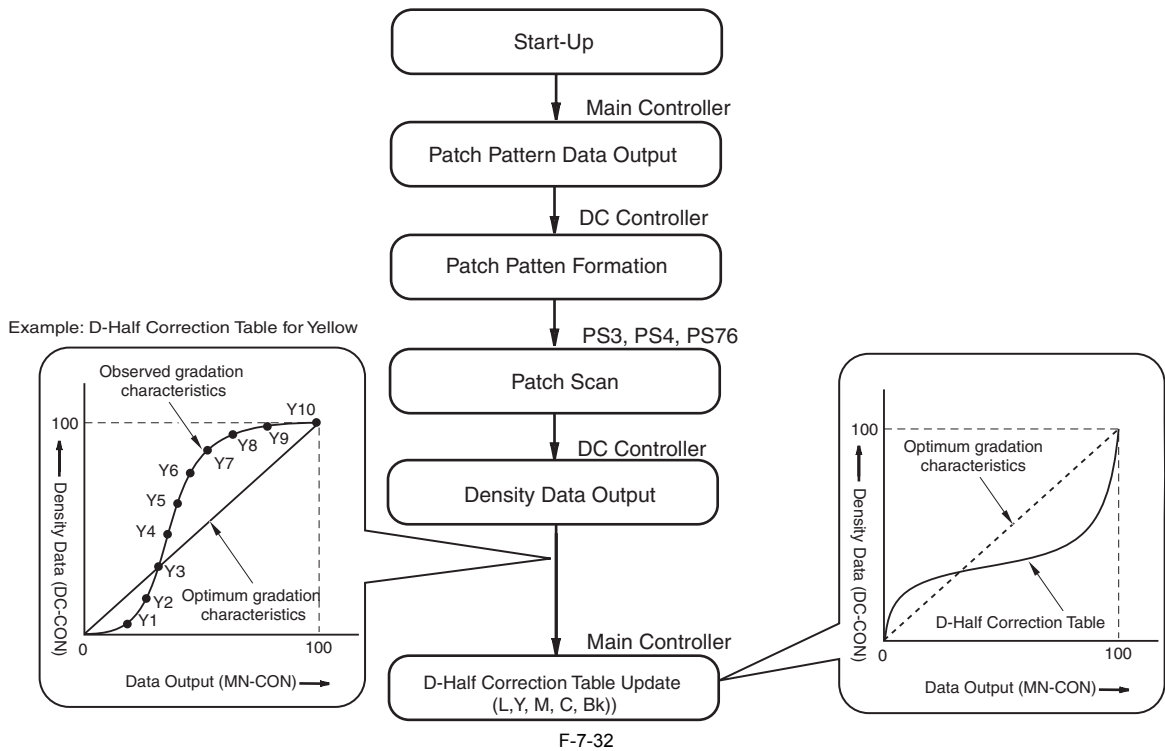
(See Note.)



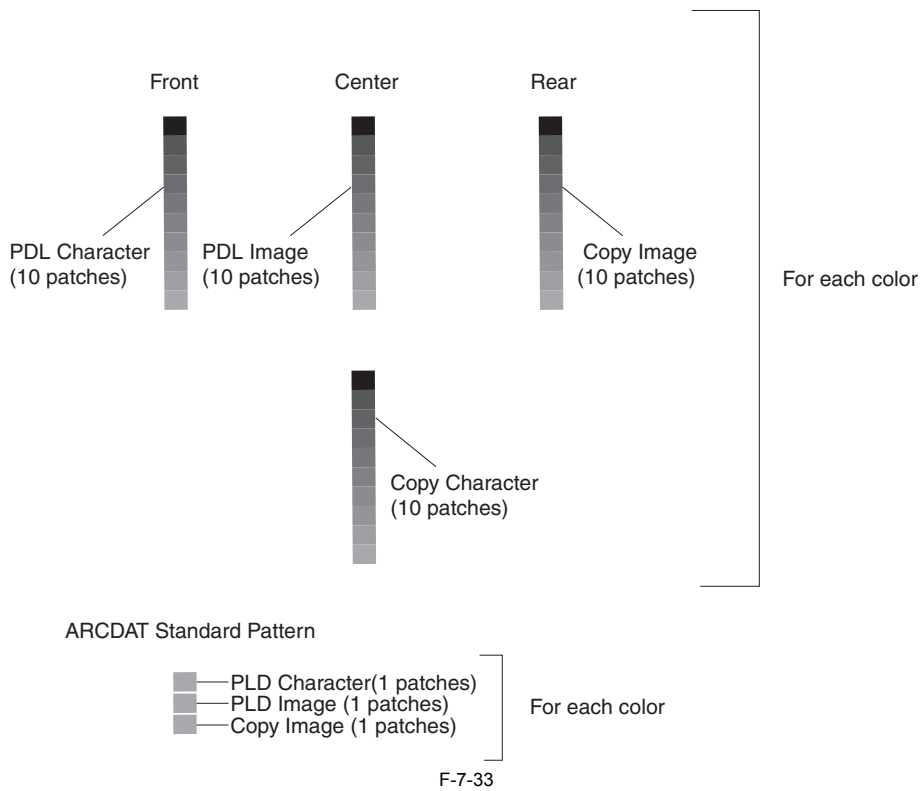
- [1] Patch image data
- [2] Density data
- [3] D-half control
- [4] Video data
- PS3, PS4, PS76: patch image sensor

Operation Flow Chart

Below is operation flow chart of D-half control.

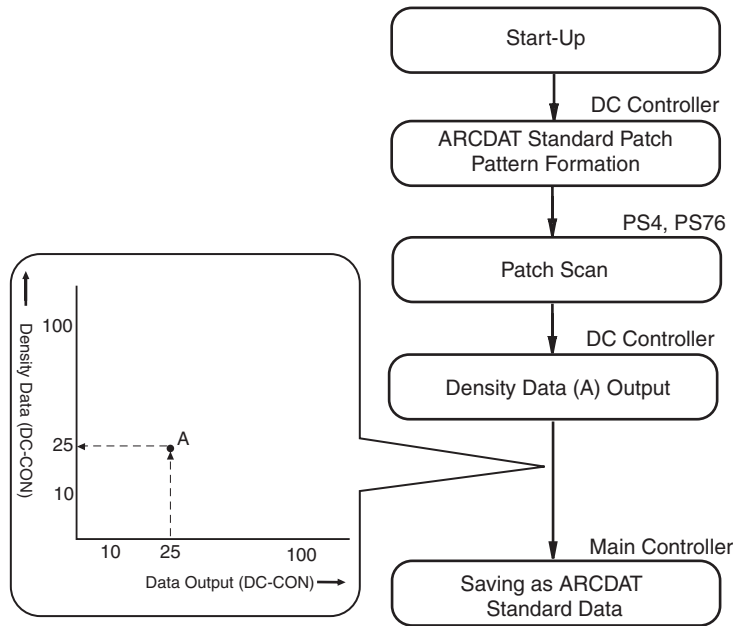


Memo:
The patch patterns produced in D-half control are as follows.



F-7-33

ARCDAT Correction Calculation Flow Chart



F-7-34

7.4.14 ARCDAT Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

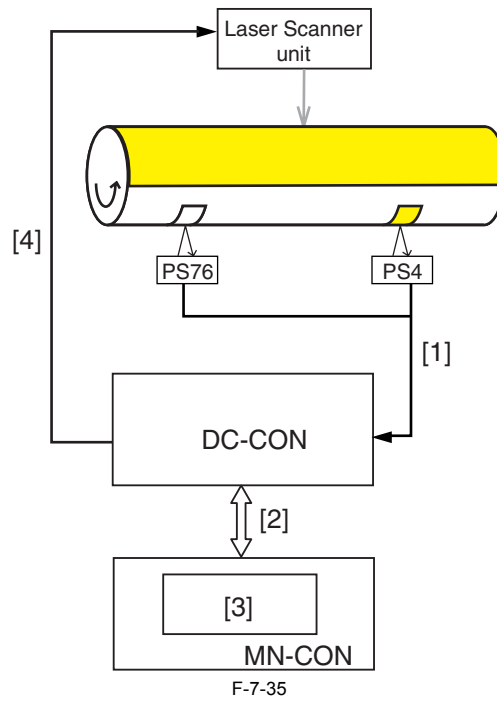
ARCDAT control regulates the gradation correction in the main controller in order to achieve desired gradation characteristics.

Start-up Conditions

- Performed sheet-to-sheet

Description

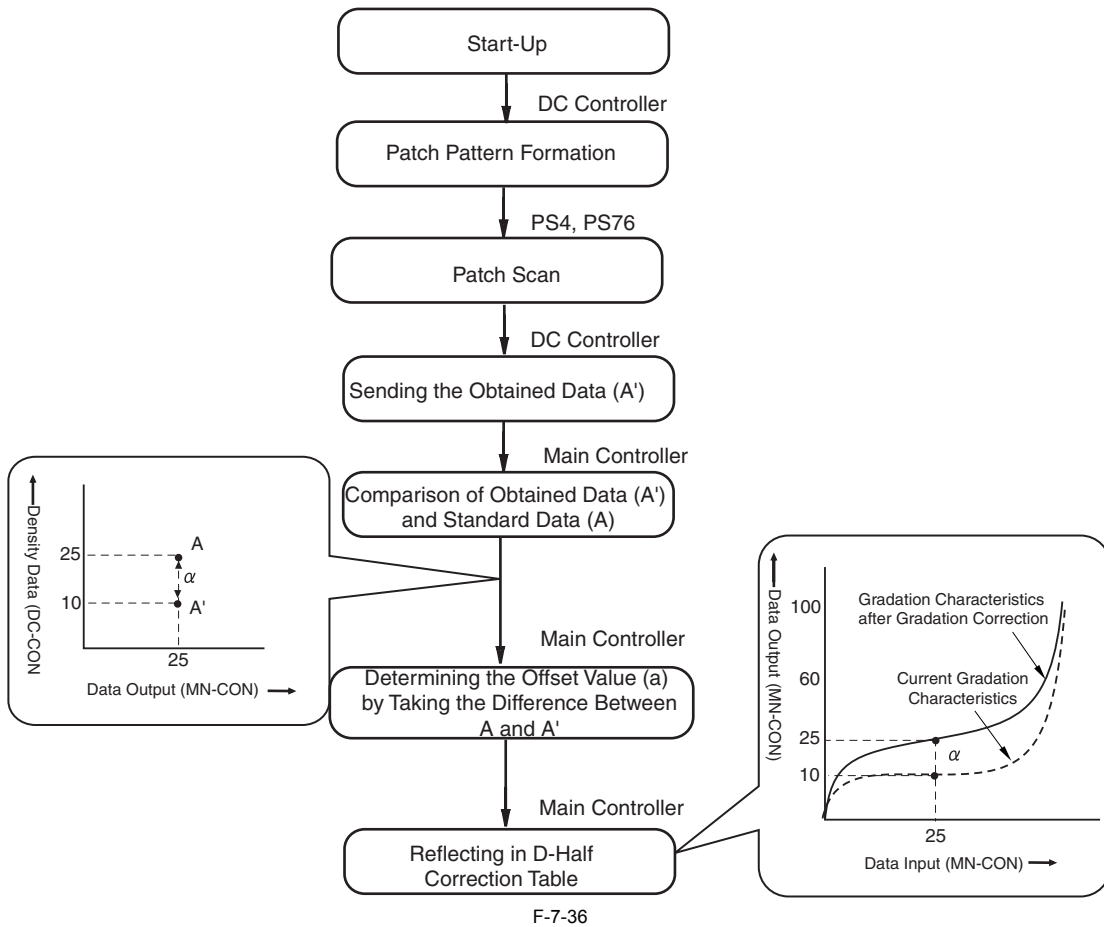
Main controller outputs the patch data of each color (Y, M, C, Bk) at the DC controller sheet-to-sheet. DC controller produces patch patterns of each color (Y, M, C, Bk) on the drum based on this data. (The total of 4 patterns, 1 pattern for each color.) Subsequently DC controller measures patch patterns with the patch image scan sensor (PS4, PS76) and sends the results back to the main controller. Main controller then measures the obtained data up against the backup of ARCDAT standard data. Main controller reflects the differences found between the two data as the offset value in D-Half results and then in the next page.



- [1] Patch image data
- [2] Density data
- [3] ARCDAT control
- [4] Video data
- PS4: patch image sensor (for Y and Bk)
- PS76: patch image sensor (for M and C)

Operation Flow Chart

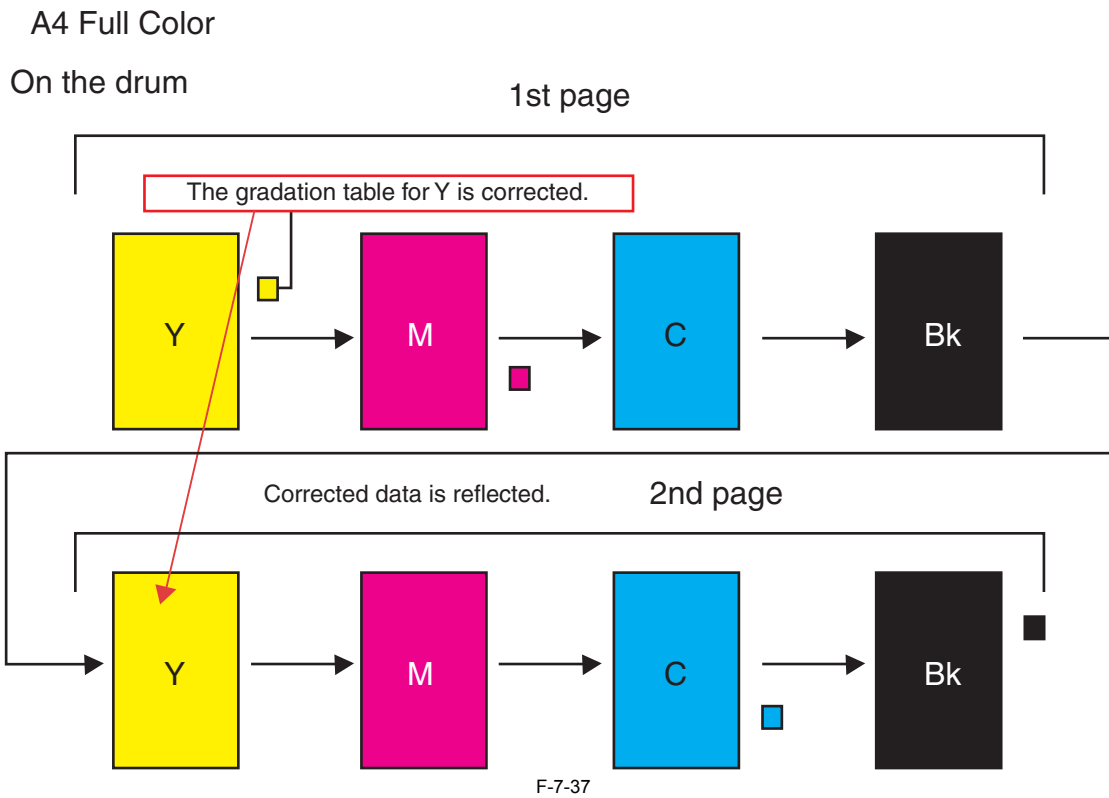
Below is operation flow chart of ARCDAT control.



Memo:

This is an example of 2 full-color printing jobs on A4 document. Patch patterns of Y and M are measured while printing the first document, and the results will be reflected in the second printed document. As for patch patterns of

C and Bk, measurements are performed while printing the second document, and the results will be reflected in the third printed document. In the case of 2-image print, patch pattern measurement results of Y and M will be reflected not in the second but the third printed document as data processing takes more time.



7.4.15 ARCDAT Control

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

ARCDAT control regulates the gradation correction in the main controller in order to achieve desired gradation characteristics.

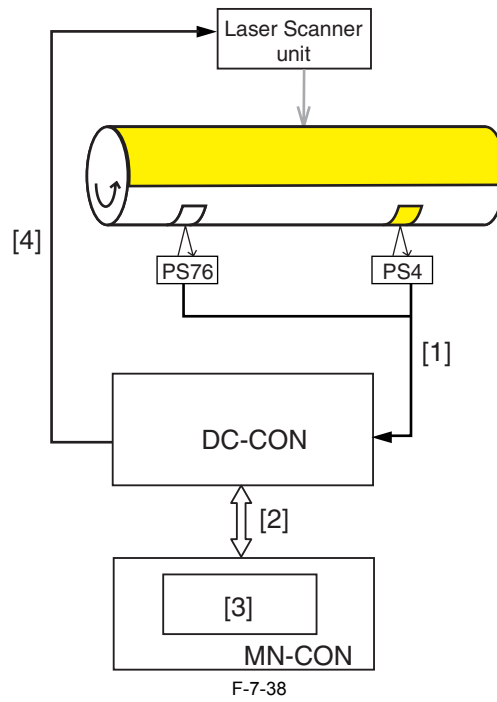
Start-up Conditions

- Performed sheet-to-sheet

Description

Main controller outputs the patch data of each color (L, Y, M, C, Bk) at the DC controller sheet-to-sheet. DC controller produces patch patterns of each color (L, Y, M, C, Bk) on the drum based on this data. (The total of 5 patterns, 1 pattern for each color.)

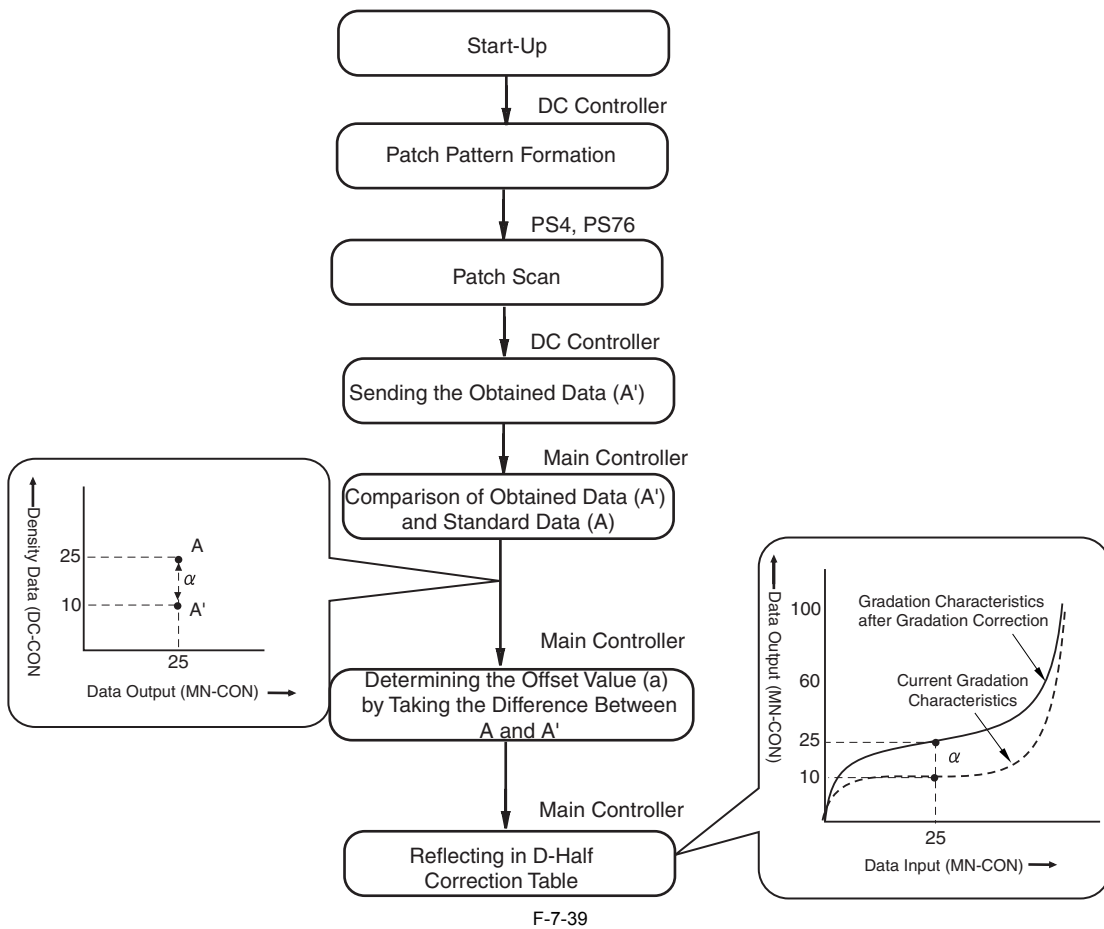
Subsequently DC controller measures patch patterns with the patch image scan sensor (PS4, PS76) and sends the results back to the main controller. Main controller then measures the obtained data up against the backup of ARCDAT standard data. Main controller reflects the differences found between the two data as the offset value in D-Half results and then in the next page.



- [1] Patch image data
- [2] Density data
- [3] ARCDAT control
- [4] Video data
- PS4: patch image sensor (for Y and Bk)
- PS76: patch image sensor (for M and C)

Operation Flow Chart

Below is operation flow chart of ARCDAT control.



F-7-39

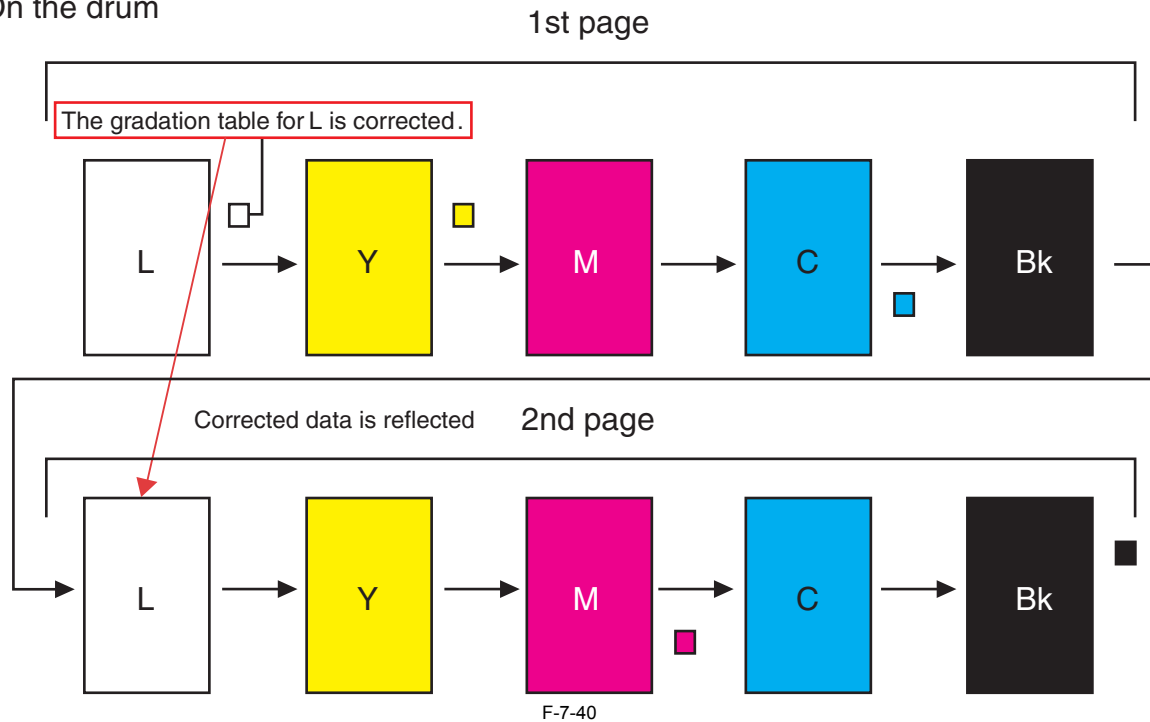
Memo:

This is an example of 2 full-color printing jobs on A4 document. Patch patterns of L, Y and M are measured while printing the first document, and the results will be reflected in the second printed document. As for patch patterns

of M and Bk, measurements are performed while printing the second document, and the results will be reflected in the third printed document. In the case of 2-image print, patch pattern measurement results of L, Y and C will be reflected not in the second but the third printed document as data processing takes more time.

5-color full color (A4)

On the drum



F-7-40

7.4.16 PASCAL Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine provides two types of PASCAL control (image characteristics correction control); Reader PASCAL and Printer PASCAL.

- Reader PASCAL (3-page output paper):

Reads the 3-page output images at the reader unit and expresses them in ideal image characteristics by the PASCAL control (image characteristics correction control).

- Printer PASCAL (10-page output paper)

Expresses the output image in ideal image characteristics using two color sensors mounted in the duplexing feeding unit without using the reader unit, by the PASCAL control (image characteristics correction control).

Memo:

This control is executed by the automatic gradation correction provided in the user mode.

Switch the Reader PASCAL and Printer PASCAL in the following mode.

System administration setting > Device administration setting > Automatic gradation correction > Method of automatic gradation correction

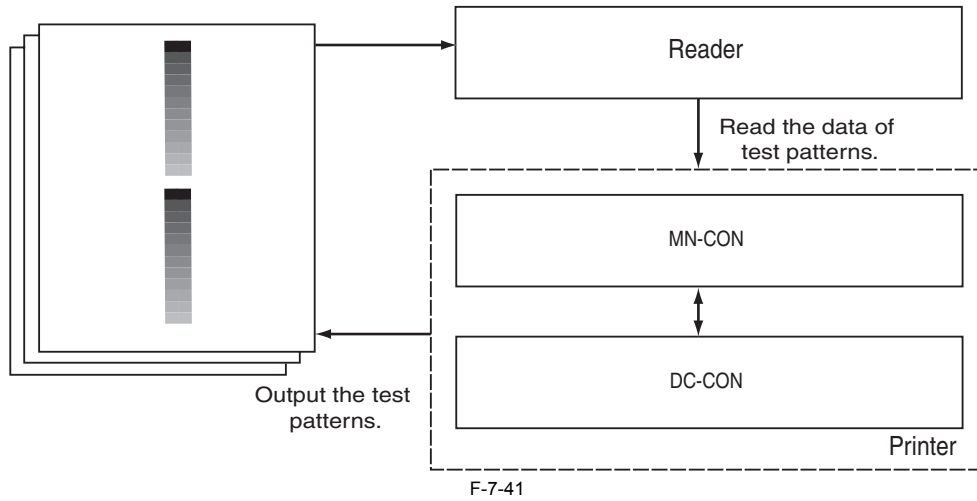
Reader PASCAL Control

This machine performs PASCAL control (image characteristics correction control) to express the image read by the reader unit in ideal image characteristics.

This control is performed in the main controller.

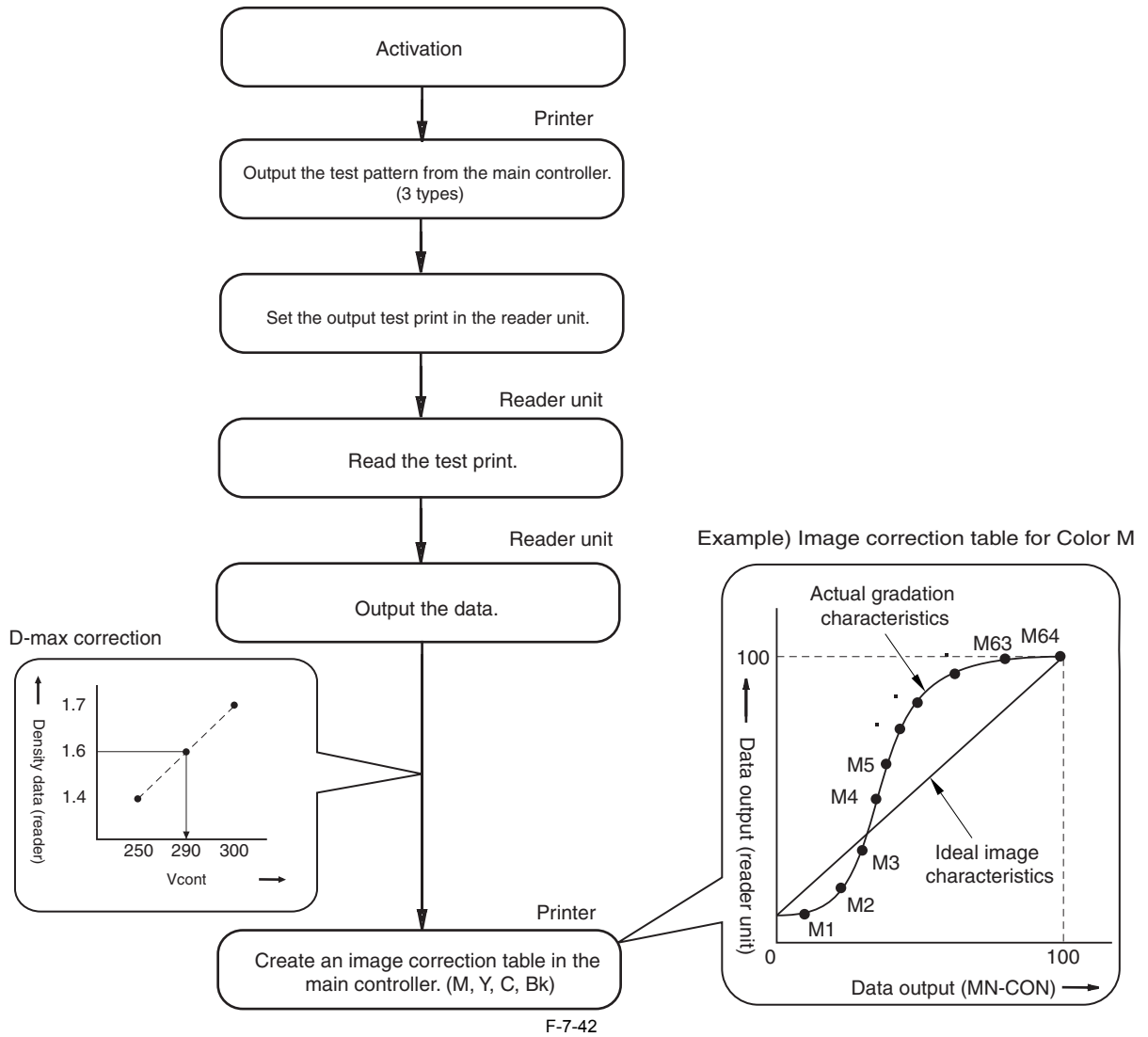
The printer outputs three test patterns (*1) based on the data in the main controller. The reader unit sequentially reads the output test patterns and the main controller performs gradation correction to obtain ideal image characteristics.

In addition, in this control, the machine compares the electric potential contrast with the density value read by the reader, and performs D-max control (image density correction control) to determine the contrast electric potential for the target density.



MN-CON: Main controller
DC-CON: DC controller

1. Operation Flow

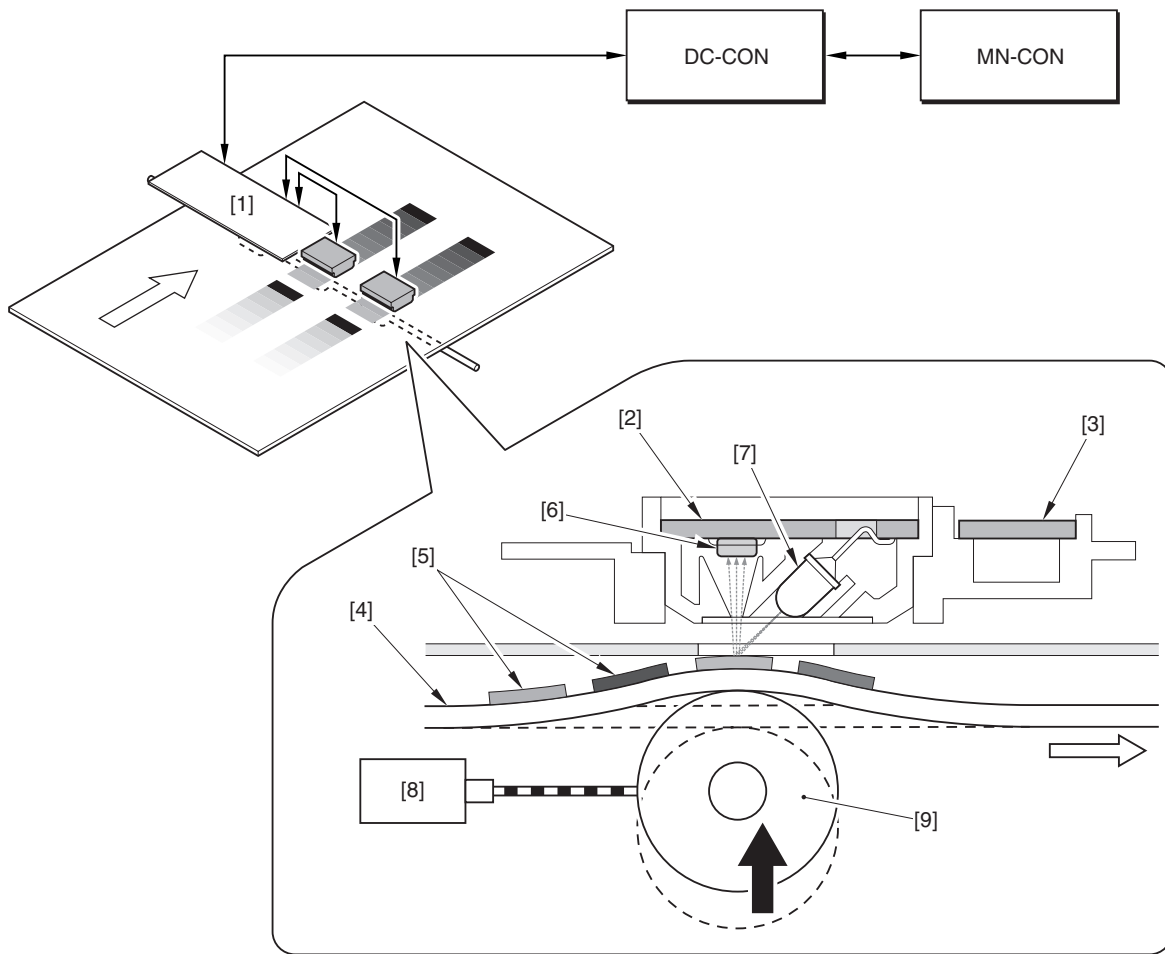


*1: Difference in the three types of test patterns

- Test Print 1: For D-max
- Test Print 2: 64-gradation by error diffusion processing, 64-gradation by high LPI screen
- Test Print 3: 64-gradation by low LIP screen, 64-gradation by copy reproduction screen

Printer PASCAL Control

This machine performs PASCAL control (image characteristics correction control) on the printer side only to realize ideal image characteristics by using the two color sensors mounted in the duplexing feeding unit, without using the reader unit. This control is performed in the main controller on the printer side. The printer outputs the test patterns based on the data in the main controller. The color sensor sequentially reads the output test patterns and the main controller performs gradation correction to obtain ideal image characteristics.



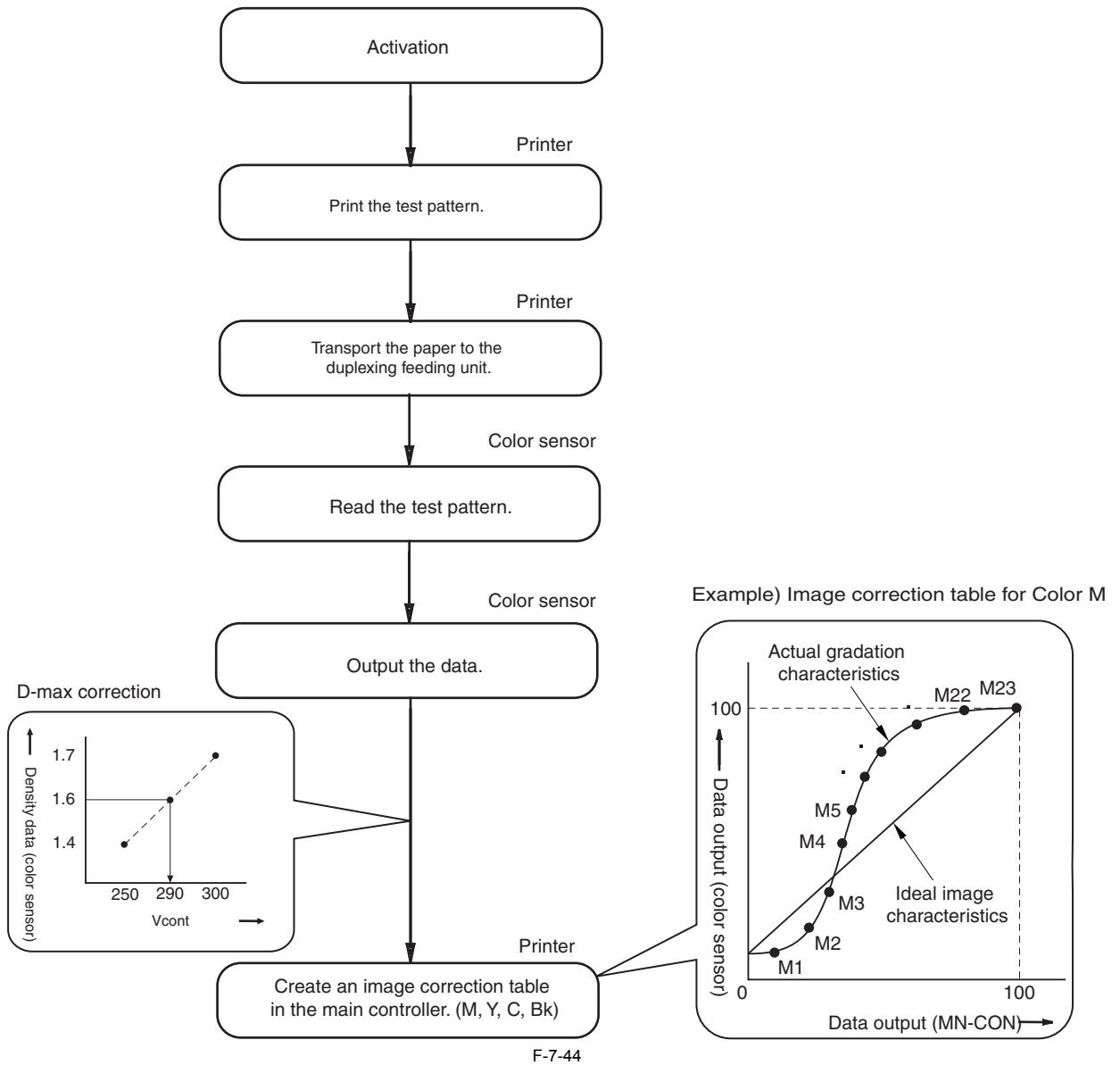
F-7-43

- [1] Color sensor driver PCB
- [2] Color sensor PCB
- [3] ROM PCB
- [4] Paper
- [5] Toner image
- [6] Photo unit
- [7] LED
- [8] Color sensor solenoid
- [9] Color sensor roller
- NM-CON: main controller
- DC-CON: DC controller

The machine transports the test pattern to the reverse vertical path unit at a constant speed (105g/m² or less), and transports it from the reverse vertical path unit to the duplexing feeding unit at 1/3 speed.

When the duplexing left sensor (PS19) in the duplexing feeding unit detects the paper, the machine turns on the color sensor and moves up the color sensor roller. When the duplexing left sensor (PS19) detects the paper, LED lights up after a specified period of time and the test pattern is read.

1. Operation Flow



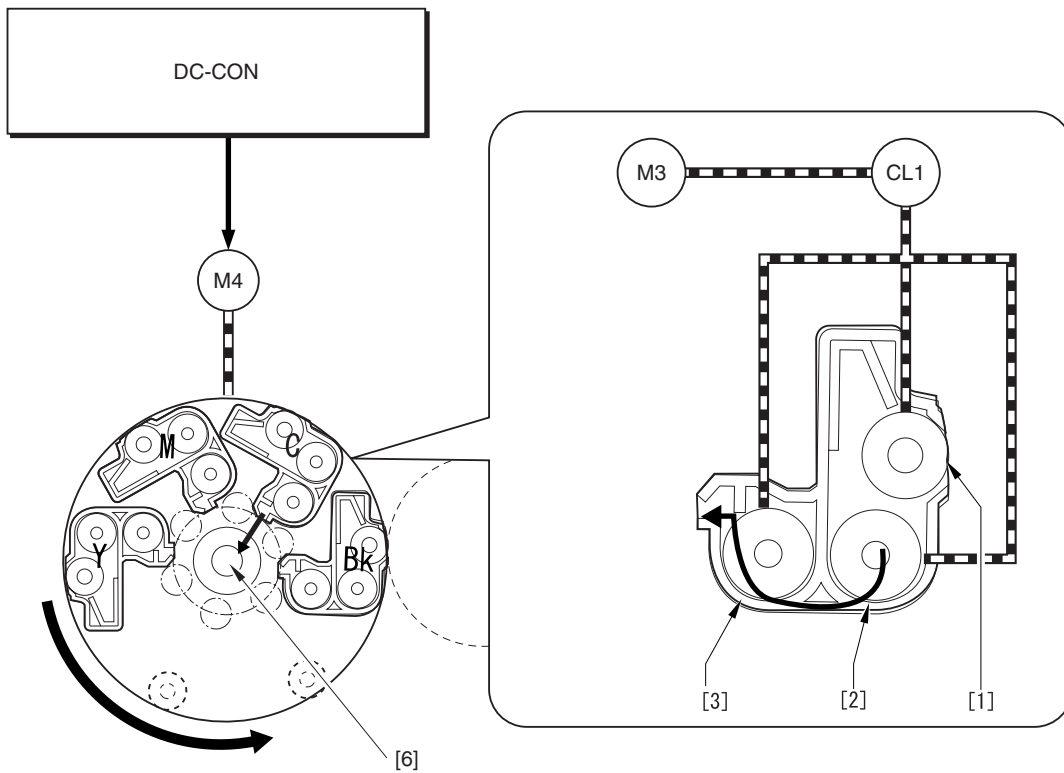
F-7-44

7.4.17 ACR Control (Auto Carrier Refresh Control)

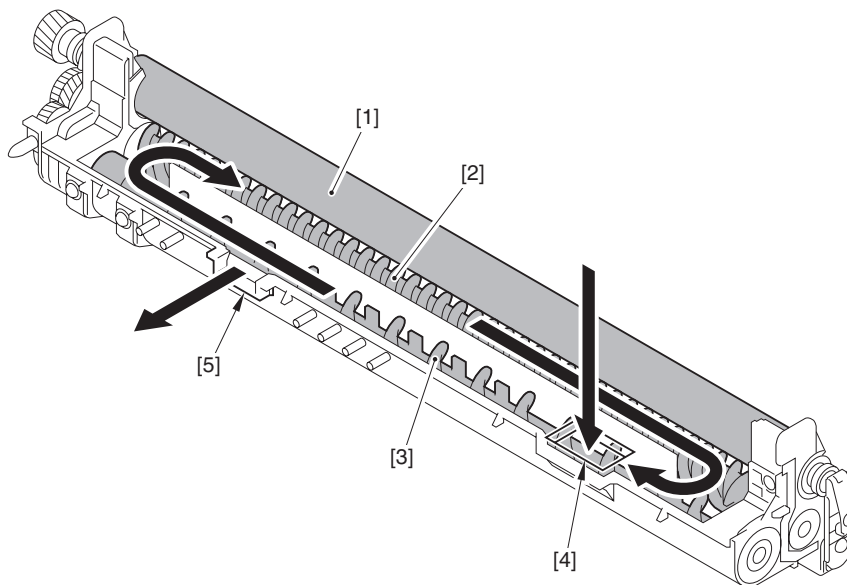
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

This machine performs ACR control, which works for supplying developer and also discharging deteriorated carrier, to increase the life of each developing unit.

The supplied developer is transported by the developer stirring screw in the developing unit. After the waste toner is discharged by the developer stirring screw in the developing unit to the discharge mouth of the developing unit, it drops by its own weight when the developing rotary is rotating and will be collected to the waste toner bottle by the waste toner feeding screw located inside the rotary shaft.



F-7-45



F-7-46

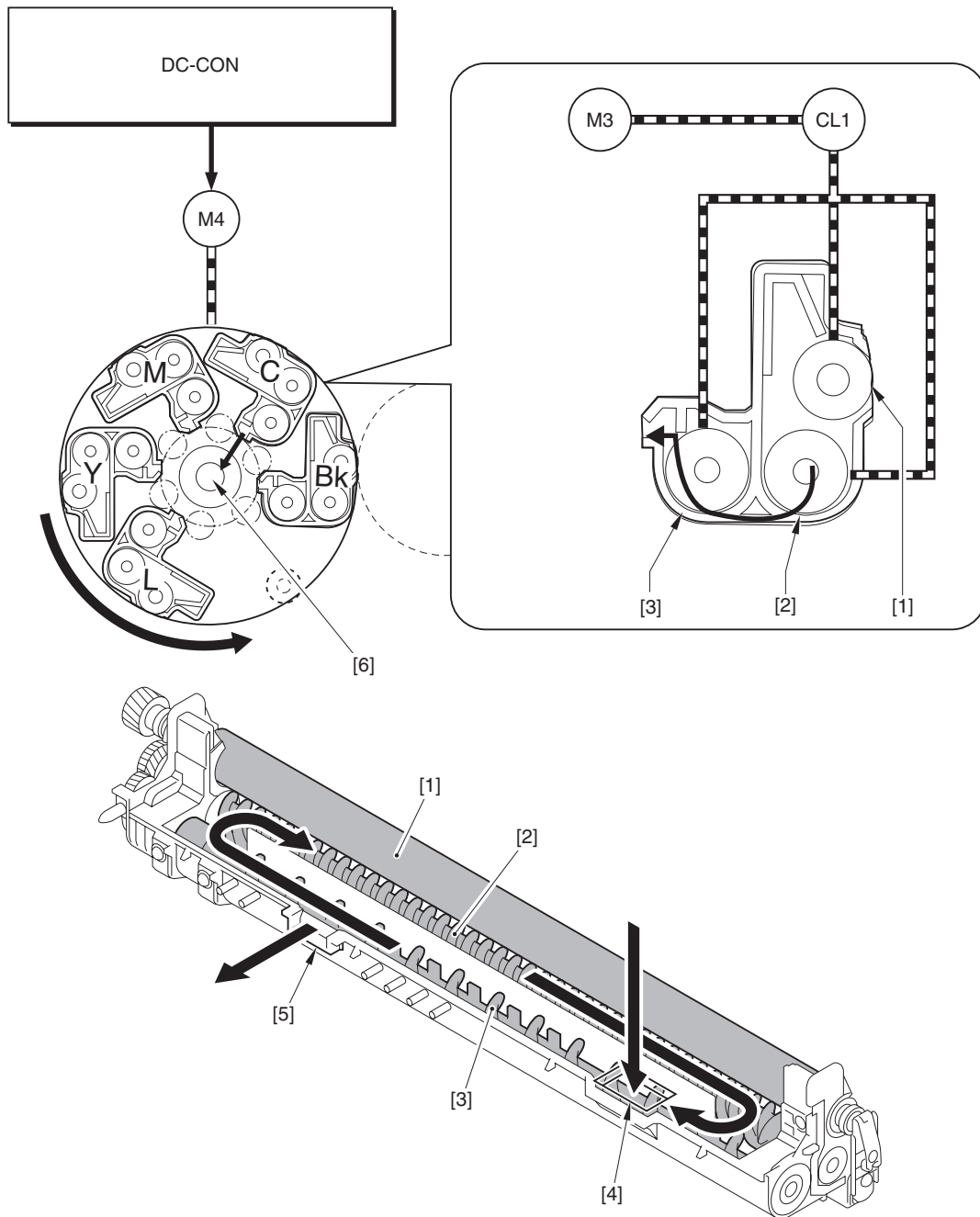
- [1] developing cylinder
- [2] developer stirring screw A
- [3] developer stirring screw B
- [4] toner supply mouth
- [5] toner discharge mouth
- [6] waste toner feeding screw
- M3: developing motor
- M4: developing rotary motor
- CL1: developing clutch

7.4.18 ACR Control (Auto Carrier Refresh Control)

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine performs ACR control, which works for supplying developer and also discharging deteriorated carrier, to increase the life of each developing unit.

The supplied developer is transported by the developer stirring screw in the developing unit. After the waste toner is discharged by the developer stirring screw in the developing unit, it drops by its own weight when the developing rotary is rotating and will be collected to the waste toner bottle by the waste toner feeding screw located inside the rotary shaft.



F-7-47

- [1] developing cylinder
- [2] developer stirring screw A
- [3] developer stirring screw B
- [4] toner supply mouth
- [5] toner discharge mouth
- [6] waste toner feeding screw
- M3: developing motor
- M4: developing rotary motor
- CL1: developing clutch

7.5 Charging Mechanism

7.5.1 Primary Charging Bias Control

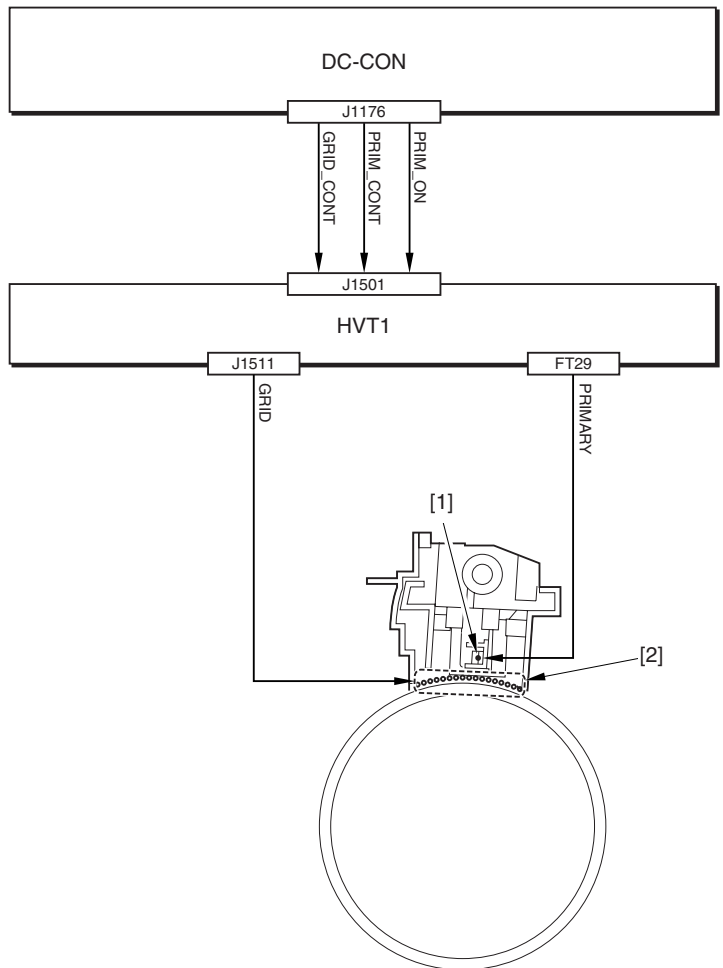
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The primary charging bias is created to charge the photosensitive drum surface with even minus electric potential as a preparation for image formation.

The primary charging bias provides two types of biases; primary charging DC bias and grid DC bias.

These biases are created in the high voltage PCB 1 based on an instruction by the DC controller, and applied to the primary charging wire and grid line at a specified timing.

The grid bias value is determined based on the result of electric potential control.



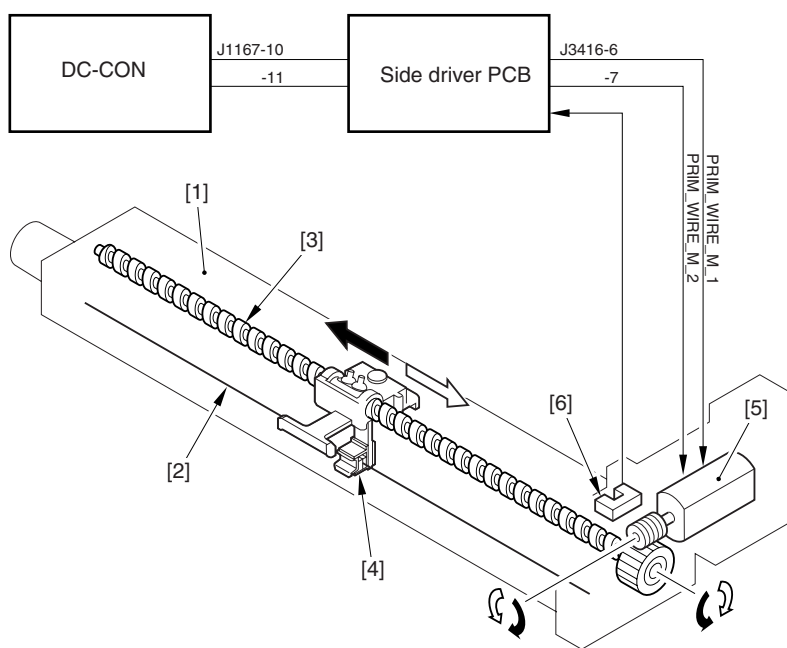
F-7-48

- [1] Primary charging wire
- [2] Grid line
- HVT1: High voltage PCB 1
- DC-CON: DC controller

7.5.2 Primary Charging Assembly Cleaning Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine cleans the charging wire to prevent dirt on the charging wire in the primary charging assembly. In this function, the primary charging wire cleaning motor (M19) rotates forward and reverse, and it rotates the cleaner screw. This moves the wire cleaner to the front side or backside to clean the charging wire. The DC controller drives the primary charging cleaning motor by controlling two primary charging wire cleaning motor drive signals (PRIM_WIRE_M_1, PRIM_WIRE_M_2) via the side driver PCB. The relationship between the drive signal output from the DC controller and the cleaning operation is shown below. When PRIM_WIRE_M_1 is "0", the wire cleaner moves to the backside. When PRIM_WIRE_M_1 is "1", the wire cleaner moves to the front side.



- [1] Primary charging assembly
 - [2] Charging wire
 - [3] Cleaner screw
 - [4] Wire cleaner
 - [5] Primary charging wire cleaning motor
- DC-CON: DC controller

The cleaning operation is activated at the following timing.

- The temperature of the fixing roller is 100 deg C or lower when the power is turned on.
- Wire cleaning is performed in the user mode.
- Every 2000 copies (2000 copies in the mono color mode, 500 copies in the full color mode) (*1)

*1: Adjust the cleaning interval for the number of copies using the following service mode.

In the normal environment: COPIER>OPTION>BODY>

In the high temperature/humidity environment: COPIER>OPTION>BODY>

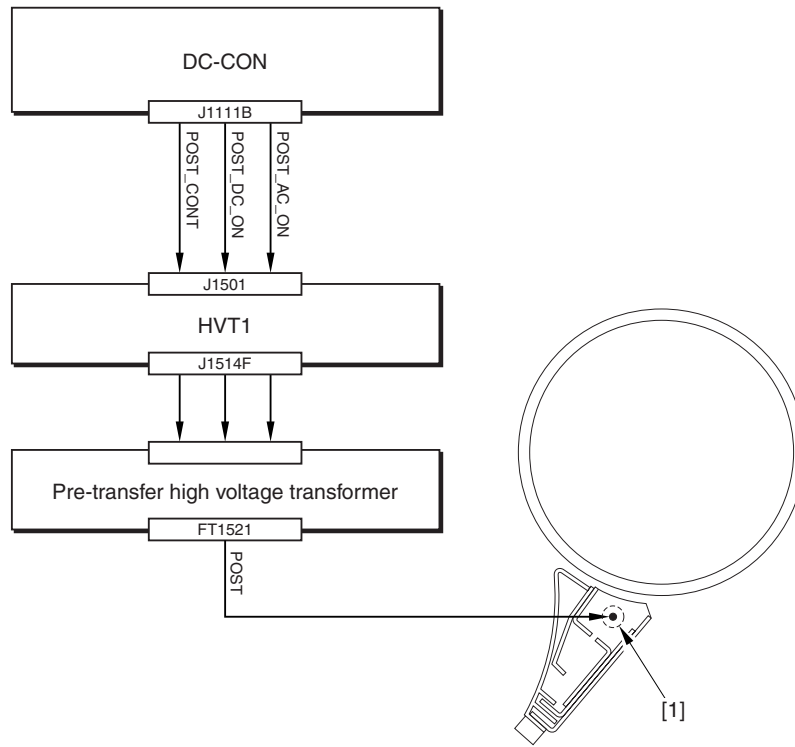
7.5.3 Pre-Transfer Charging Bias Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The pre-transfer charging bias is applied to the toner on the photosensitive drum when development is performed in order to align the electric potential for the toner layer formed on the ITB.

The pre-transfer charging bias provides two types of biases; pre-transfer charging DC bias and pre-transfer charging AC bias.

These biases are created in the high voltage PCB 1 based on an instruction by the DC controller, and applied to the pre-transfer charging wire.



F-7-50

[1] Pre-transfer charging wire
 HVT1: High voltage PCB 1
 DC-CON: DC controller

7.5.4 Pre-Transfer Charging Assembly Cleaning Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine cleans the charging wire to prevent dirt on the charging wire in the pre-transfer charging assembly.

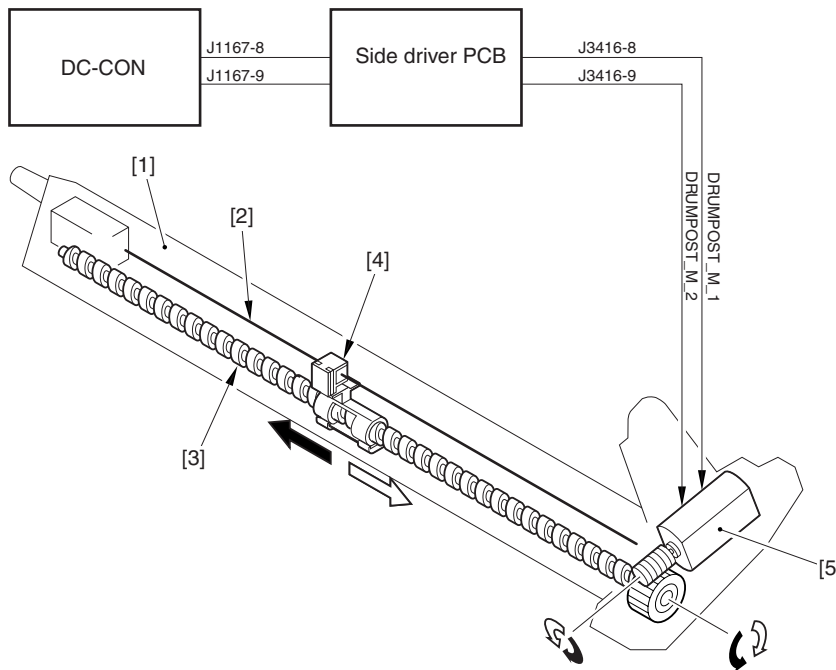
In this function, the pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor (M20) rotates forward and reverse, and it rotates the cleaner screw.

This moves the wire cleaner to the front side or backside to clean the charging wire.

The DC controller drives the pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor by controlling two pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor drive signals (DRUMPOST_M_1, DRUMPOST_M_2) via the side driver PCB.

The relationship between the drive signal output from the DC controller and the cleaning operation is shown below.

- When DRUMPOST_M_1 is "0", the wire cleaning moves to the backside.
- When DRUMPOST_M_1 is "1", the wire cleaning moves to the front side.



F-7-51

[1] Pre-transfer charging assembly
 [2] Charging wire

[3] Cleaner screw
 [4] Wire cleaner
 [5] Pre-transfer charging wire cleaning motor
 [6] Backside
 [7] Front side
 DC-CON: DC controller

The cleaning operation is activated at the following timing.

- The temperature of the fixing roller is 100 deg C or lower when the power is turned on.
- Wire cleaning is performed in the user mode.
- Every 2000 copies (2000 copies in the mono color mode, 500 copies in the full color mode) (*1)

*1: Adjust the cleaning interval for the number of copies using the following service mode.

In the normal environment: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > W-CLN-P

In the high temperature/humidity environment: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > W-CLN-PH

7.5.5 Pre-Exposure LED

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine uses the pre-exposure LED to prevent uneven density in the print image by removing the remanent charge on the photosensitive drum.

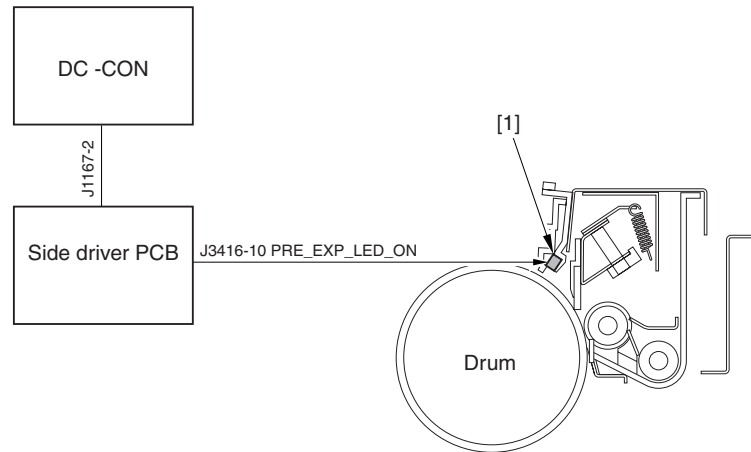
The pre-exposure LED is located in the position opposed to the photosensitive drum, and LED lights up for every printing.

This removes the remanent charge on the drum surface and realizes a stable image formation.

The DC controller turns on/off the pre-exposure LED by controlling the pre-exposure LED drive signal (PRE_EXP_LED_ON) via the side driver PCB.

The following drive signal is output from the DC controller.

- When PRE_EXP_LED_ON is "0", the pre-exposure LED lights off.
- When PRE_EXP_LED_ON is "1", the pre-exposure LED lights up.



F-7-52

[1] Pre-exposure LED

7.6 Developing Rotary

7.6.1 Overview of Developing Rotary

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

The developing rotary has a function to move the developing unit to the specified position.

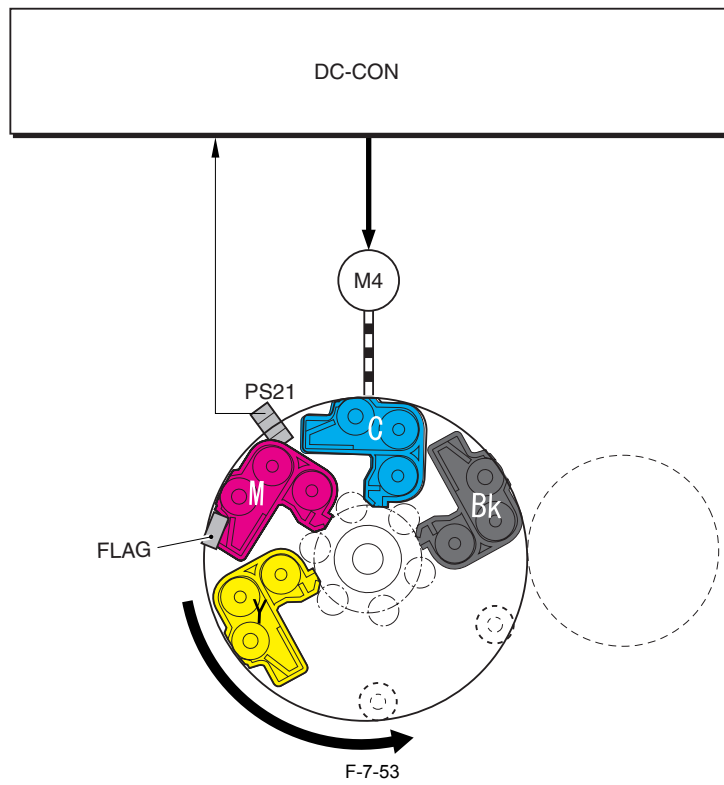
4 types of developing units (Y, M, C, Bk) are stored inside the rotary.

When making prints, the developing rotary motor (M4) rotates the rotary counterclockwise. The mechanism is to make the 4-color developing units sequentially face against the photosensitive drum.

The developing rotary motor (M4), a stepping motor, executes locking/unlocking of the rotary.

A sensor (PS21) is equipped in the rotary to detect the position of the rotary unit.

The DC controller controls these electric loads (M4, PS21).



DC-CON: DC controller
 M4: developing rotary motor
 PS21: developing rotary home position sensor

7.6.2 Overview of Developing Rotary

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The developing rotary has a function to move the developing unit to the specified position.

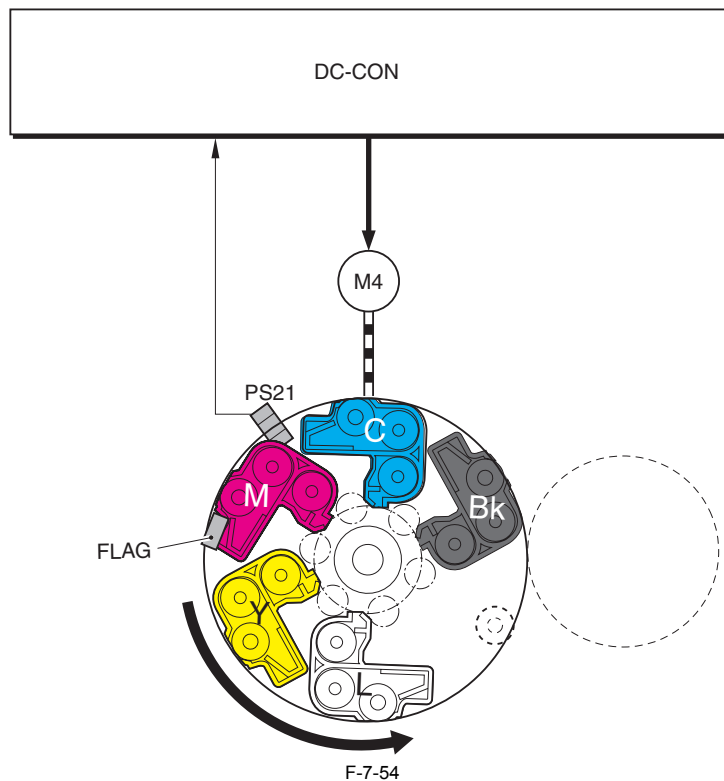
5 types of developing units (L, Y, M, C, Bk) are stored inside the rotary.

When making prints, the developing rotary motor (M4) rotates the rotary counterclockwise. The mechanism is to make the 5-color developing units sequentially face against the photosensitive drum.

The developing rotary motor (M4), a stepping motor, executes locking/unlocking of the rotary.

A sensor (PS21) is equipped in the rotary to detect the position of the rotary unit.

The DC controller controls these electric loads (M4, PS21).



DC-CON: DC controller
 M4: developing rotary motor
 PS21: developing rotary home position sensor

7.6.3 Developing Rotary Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

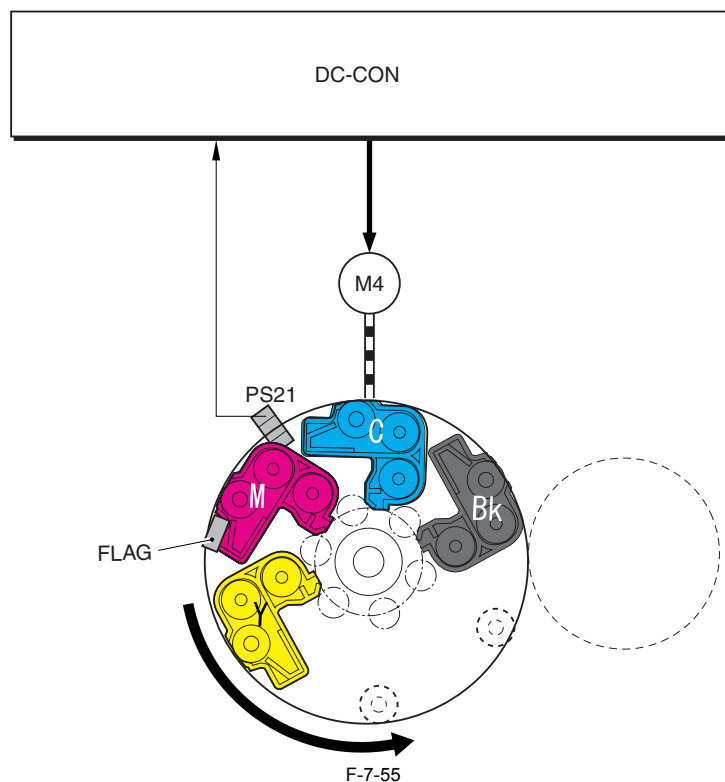
This machine moves the developing units (Y, M, C, Bk), which are stored in the developing rotary, timely to the specified position.
 The DC controller moves the developing rotary by turning ON and OFF the developing rotary motor (M4) while monitoring the rotary position with the developing rotary home position sensor (PS21).

The DC controller executes detection of the rotary position by monitoring PS21.

A home position detection flag is equipped at the back of the rotary. The DC controller detects the rotary's home position to let the detection flag pass the PS21.
 Based on this home position, the DC controller rotates the rotate the rotary, and then, stops the rotary at the specified position.

The rotary stop positions are the following 11 points.

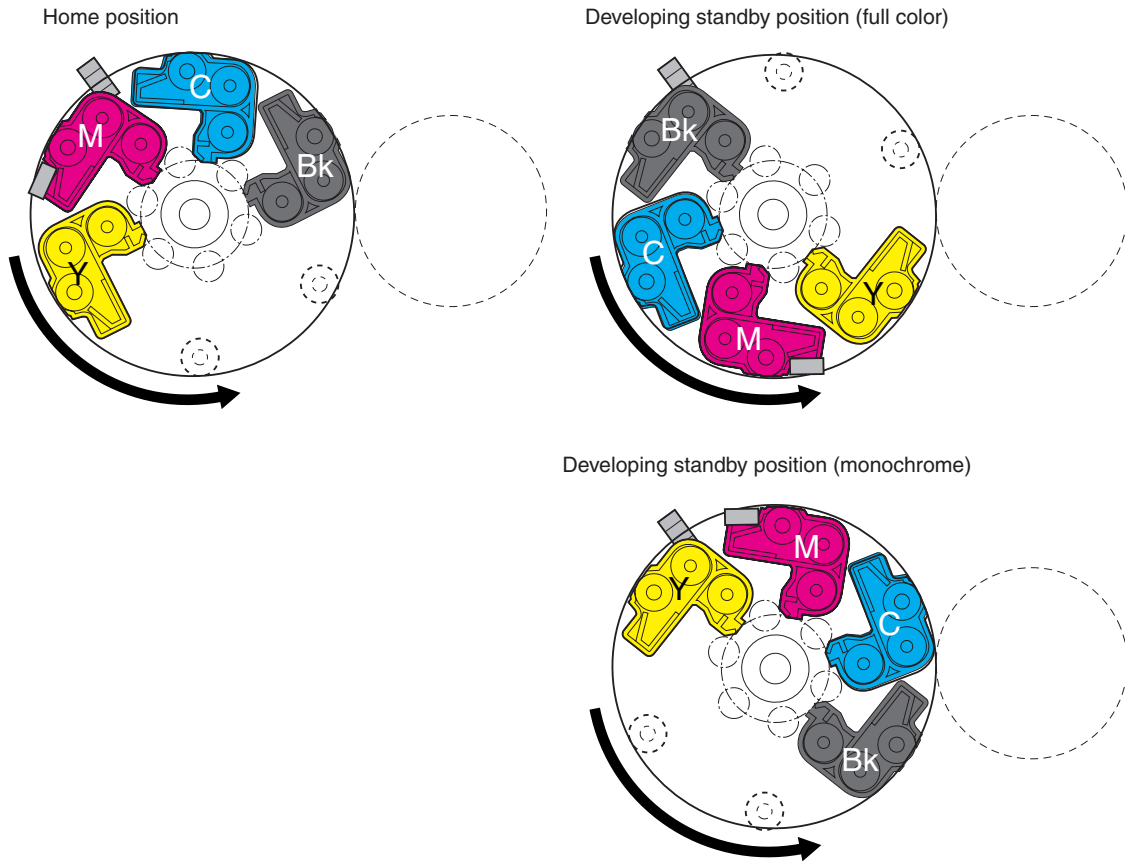
- home position: 1-point
- developing standby position: 2-point total (each 1-point for monochrome and color)
- developing position of each color: 4-point total
- ATR control stop position: 4-point total (see the ATR control)



DC-CON: DC controller
 M4: developing rotary motor
 PS21: developing rotary home position sensor

Memo:

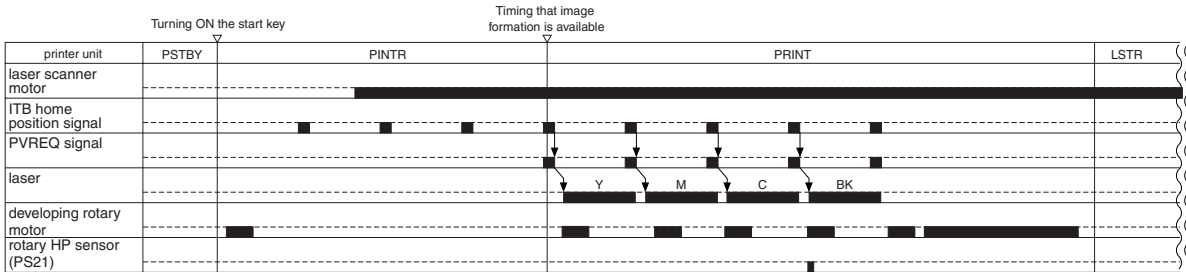
To prevent rotating shock of the rotary, the developing unit is shifted to the standby position of the developing unit before performing image formation.



F-7-56

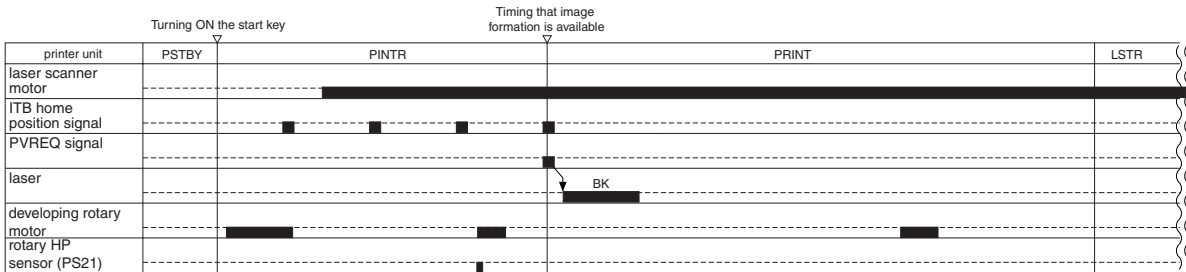
The followings show the timing of the developing rotary at printing.

- Timing chart of the developing rotary (at full-color print)



F-7-57

- Timing chart of the developing rotary (at monochrome print)



F-7-58

Relevant error code:

E021 (error of abnormal rotation of the developing unit)

The error is identified if the symptom meets the following 2 conditions:

-0001 (developing rotary HP sensor error)

- in the case that developing rotary HP fails to be detected

- 0002 (developing rotary driver sequence error)

- in the case that there is an operational instruction during the drive of the rotary motor

7.6.4 Developing Rotary Control

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine moves the developing units (L, Y, M, C, Bk), which are stored in the developing rotary, timely to the specified position.

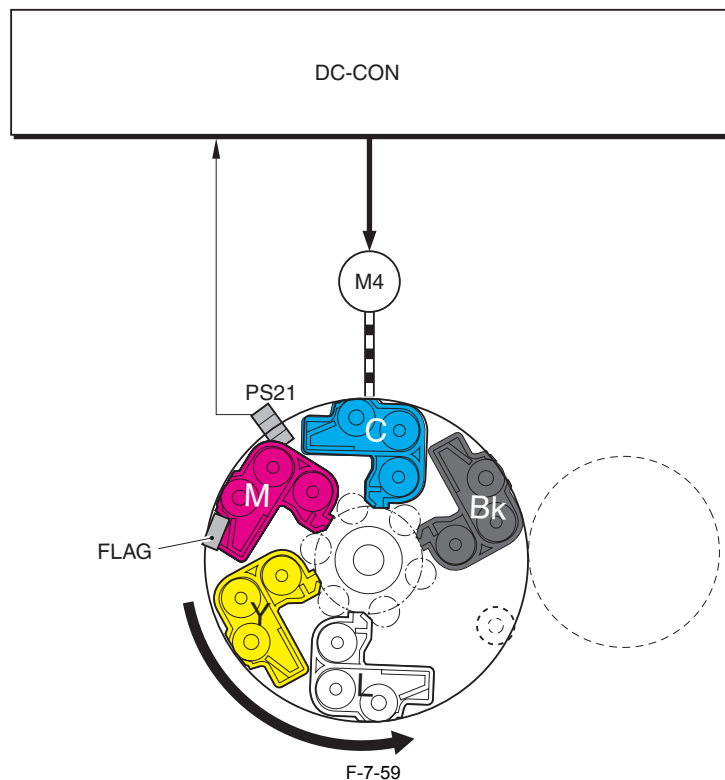
The DC controller moves the developing rotary by turning ON and OFF the developing rotary motor (M4) while monitoring the rotary position with the developing rotary home position sensor (PS21).

The DC controller executes detection of the rotary position by monitoring PS21.

A home position detection flag is equipped at the back of the rotary. The DC controller detects the rotary's home position to let the detection flag pass the PS21. Based on this home position, the DC controller rotates the rotate the rotary, and then, stops the rotary at the specified position.

The rotary stop positions are the following 14 points.

- home position: 1-point
- developing standby position: 3-point total (each 1-point for monochrome and color)
- developing position of each color: 5-point total
- ATR control stop position: 5-point total (see the ATR control)



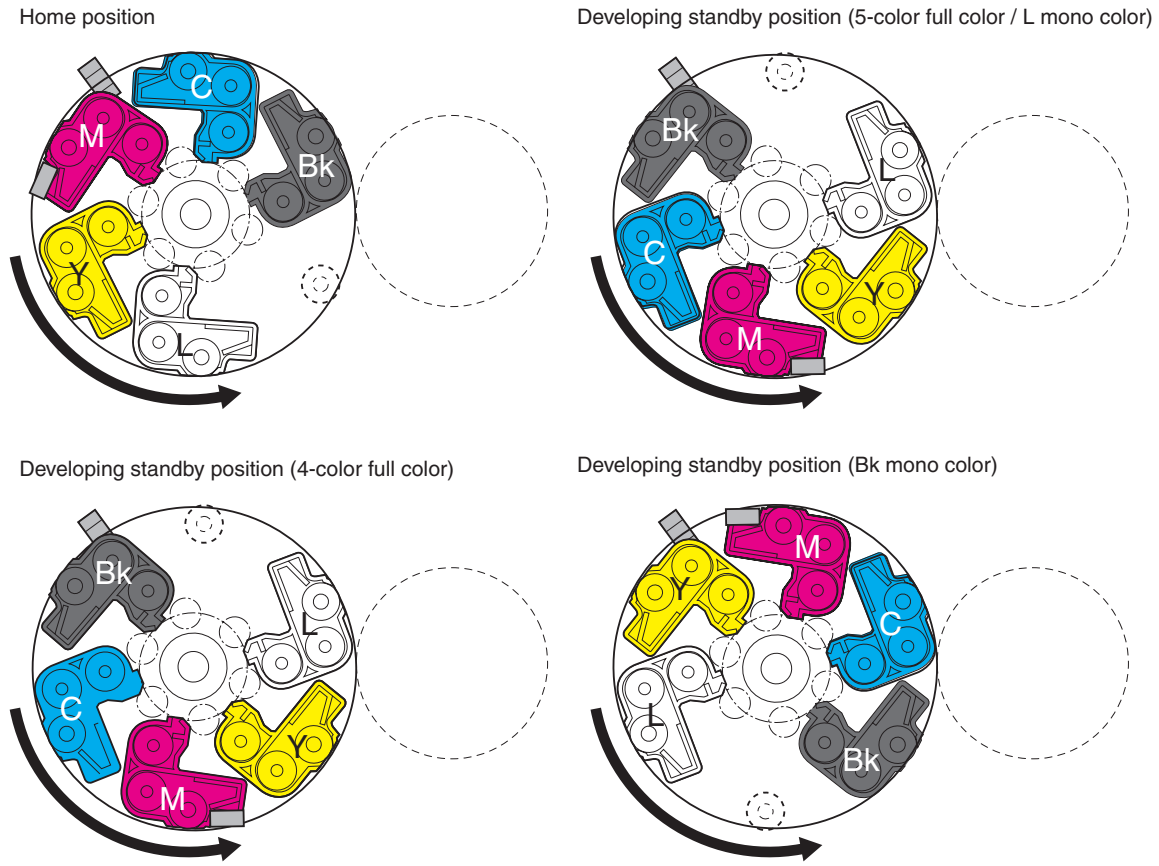
DC-CON: DC controller

M4: developing rotary motor

PS21: developing rotary home position sensor

Memo:

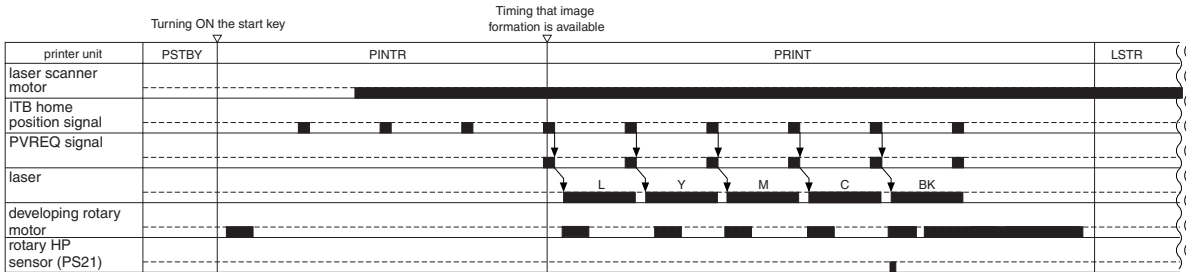
To prevent rotating shock of the rotary, the developing unit is shifted to the standby position of the developing unit before performing image formation.



F-7-60

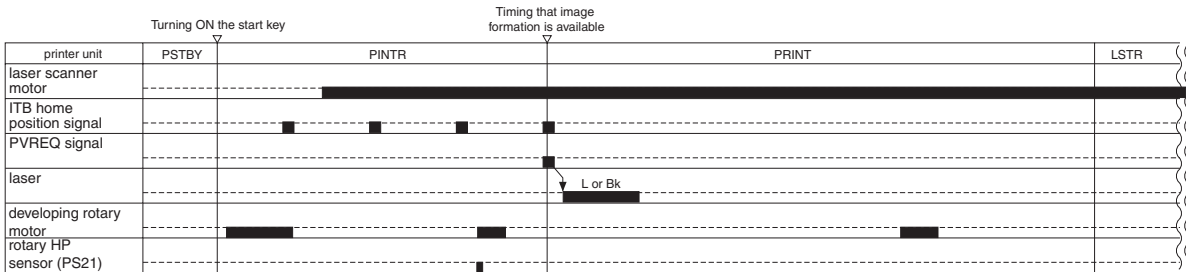
The followings show the timing of the developing rotary at printing.

- Timing chart of the developing rotary (at full-color print)



F-7-61

- Timing chart of the developing rotary (at monochrome print)



F-7-62

Relevant error code:

E021 (error of abnormal rotation of the developing unit)

The error is identified if the symptom meets the following 2 conditions:

-0001 (developing rotary HP sensor error)

- in the case that developing rotary HP fails to be detected

- 0002 (developing rotary driver sequence error)

- in the case that there is an operational instruction during the drive of the rotary motor

7.7 Developing Unit

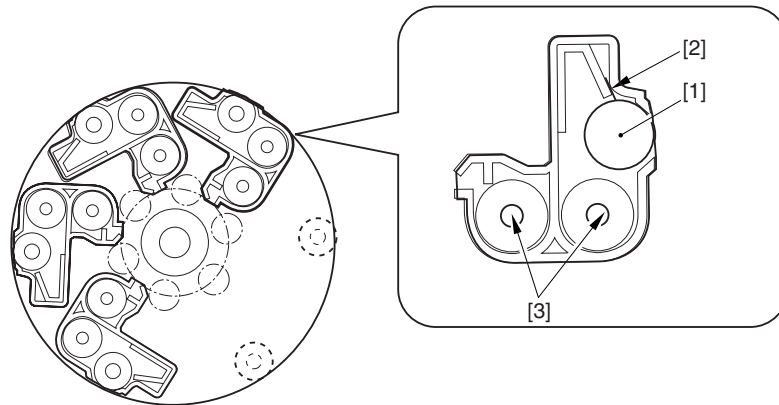
7.7.1 Developing Unit Configuration

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

This machine has four developing assemblies (Y, M, C, Bk), which are stored in the developing rotary. Each developing assembly has the same configuration. The toner bottles supply toner with different components (pigments). The configuration and function of the developing assembly are shown below.

T-7-13

Configuration	Function
[1] Developing cylinder	Stores the developer (toner/carrier).
[2] Blade	Forms an even developer layer on the developing cylinder.
[3] Developer stirring screw	Stirs the developer and supplies it to the developing cylinder.



F-7-63

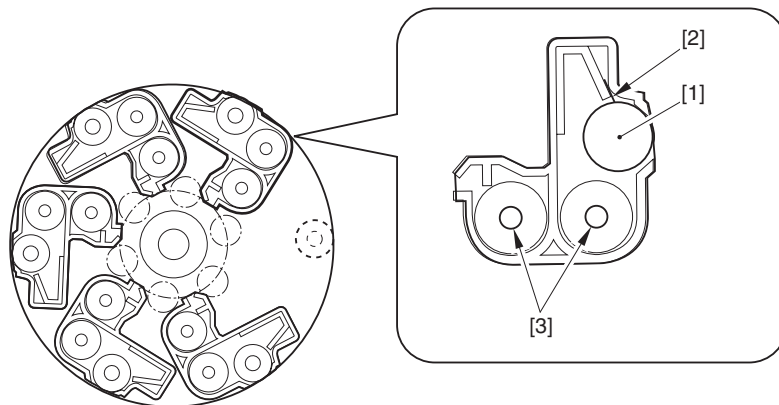
7.7.2 Developing Unit Configuration

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine has 5 developing assemblies (L, Y, M, C, Bk), which are stored in the developing rotary. Each developing assembly has the same configuration. The toner bottles supply toner with different components (pigments). The configuration and function of the developing assembly are shown below.

T-7-14

Configuration	Function
[1] Developing cylinder	Stores the developer (toner/carrier).
[2] Blade	Forms an even developer layer on the developing cylinder.
[3] Developer stirring screw	Stirs the developer and supplies it to the developing cylinder.



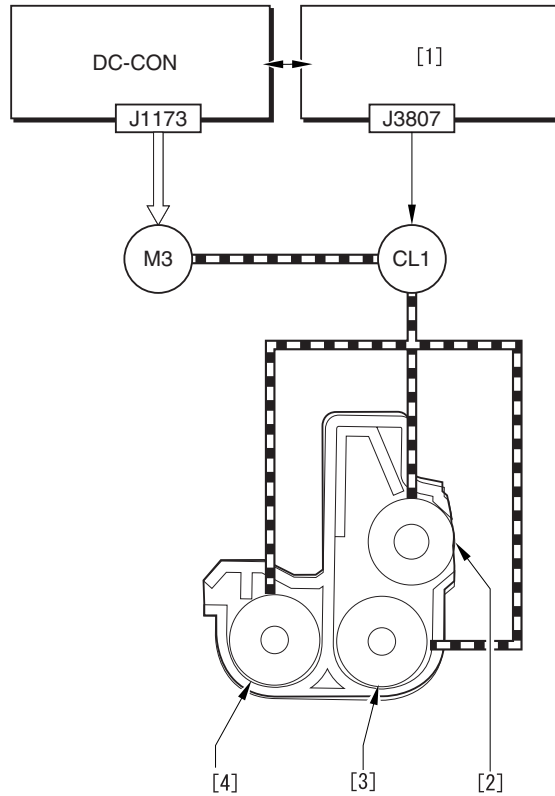
F-7-64

7.7.3 Developing Assembly Drive Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

The developing assembly consists of the developing cylinder, developing stirring screw A, and developing stirring screw B, applying driving load. When the developing motor (M3) and developing clutch (CL1) are turned on, driving load is communicated.

The machine has a mechanism in which driving load in each developing assembly is communicated only when development is performed.



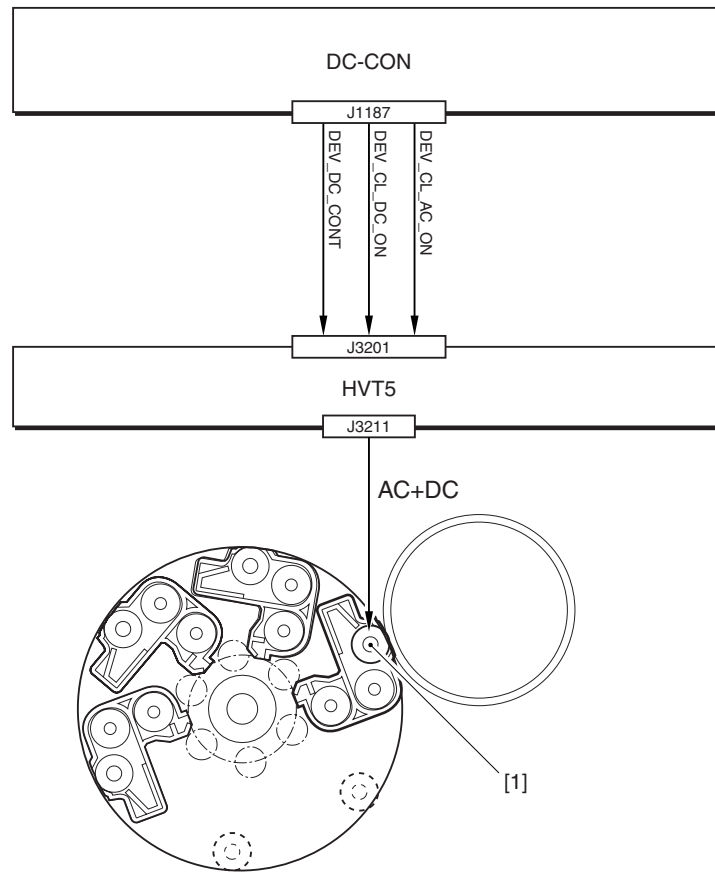
F-7-65

- [1] Side driver PCB
- [2] Developing cylinder
- [3] Developing stirring screw A
- [4] Developing stirring screw B
- M3: Developing motor
- CL1: Developing clutch
- DC-CON: DC controller

7.7.4 Developing Bias Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

The developing bias is created to apply toner on the electrostatic latent image on the surface of the photosensitive drum. The developing bias provides two types of biases (developing DC bias and developing AC bias). These biases are created in the high voltage PCB based on an instruction from the DC controller, and applied to the developing cylinder at a specified timing. The developing DC bias value is determined based on the result of electric potential control.

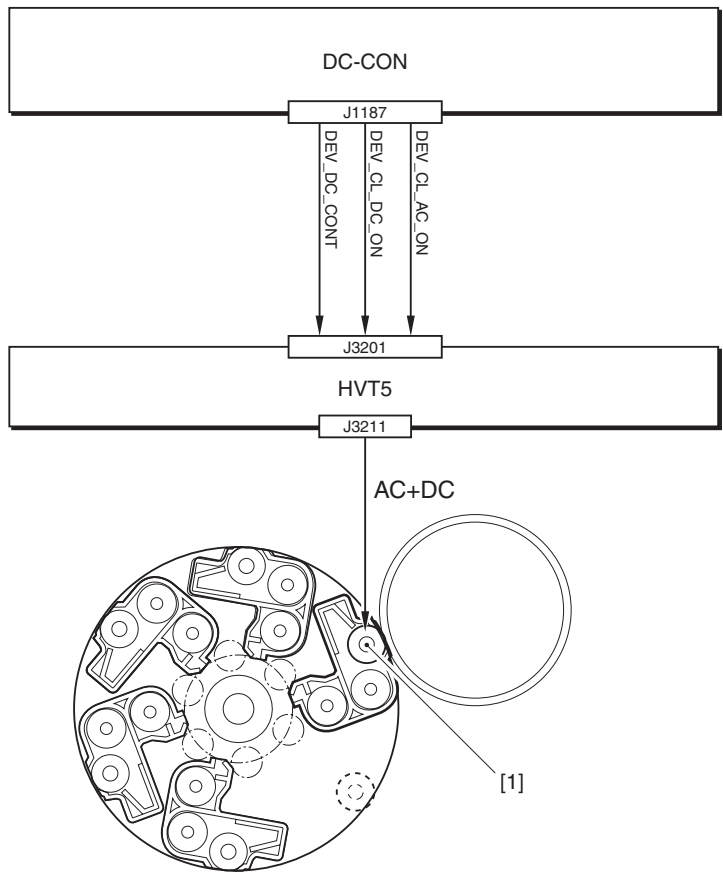


[1] Developing cylinder
 DC-CON: DC controller
 HVT: High voltage PCB

7.7.5 Developing Bias Control

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The developing bias is created to apply toner on the electrostatic latent image on the surface of the photosensitive drum. The developing bias provides two types of biases (developing DC bias and developing AC bias). These biases are created in the high voltage PCB based on an instruction from the DC controller, and applied to the developing cylinder at a specified timing. The developing DC bias value is determined based on the result of electric potential control.



F-7-67

[1] Developing cylinder
 DC-CON: DC controller
 HVT: High voltage PCB

7.8 Toner Container

7.8.1 Outline

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

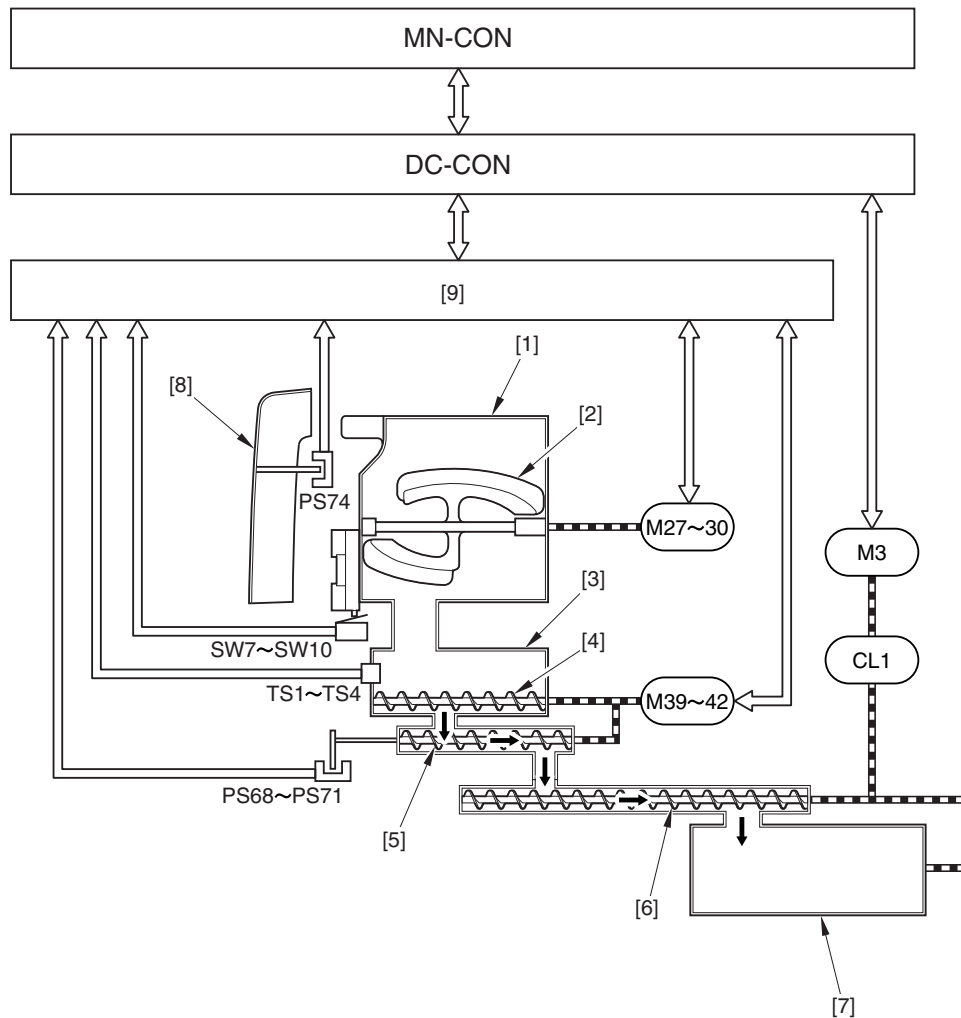
The machine has four toner bottles (Y, M, C, Bk). Each toner bottle consists of toner and a stirring plate.

The hopper unit consists of the toner supply screw, toner feeder screw, and toner level sensor.

When the toner bottle is set to the main unit, toner is transported to the hopper unit and sent to the developing assembly on a timely basis.

The following seven types of electric loads are used in the toner supply route.

- Motor: 2 types (cartridge motor, hopper motor)
- Sensor: 3 types (toner supply volume sensor, toner replacement cover sensor, toner level sensor)
- Clutch: 1 type (developing clutch)
- Switch: 1 type (toner bottle presence detection switch)



F-7-68

- [1] Toner bottle
- [2] Stirring plate
- [3] Hopper unit
- [4] Toner supply screw
- [5] Toner feeder screw
- [6] Toner feeder screw
- [7] Developing assembly
- [8] Toner replacement cover
- [9] Side driver PCB
- M3: Developing motor
- M27 - M30: Toner bottle motor
- M39 - M42: Hopper motor
- CL1: Developing clutch
- PS68 to PS71: toner supply volume sensor
- PS74: Toner replacement cover sensor
- TS1 to TS4: Toner level sensor (piezo sensor)

7.8.2 Outline

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

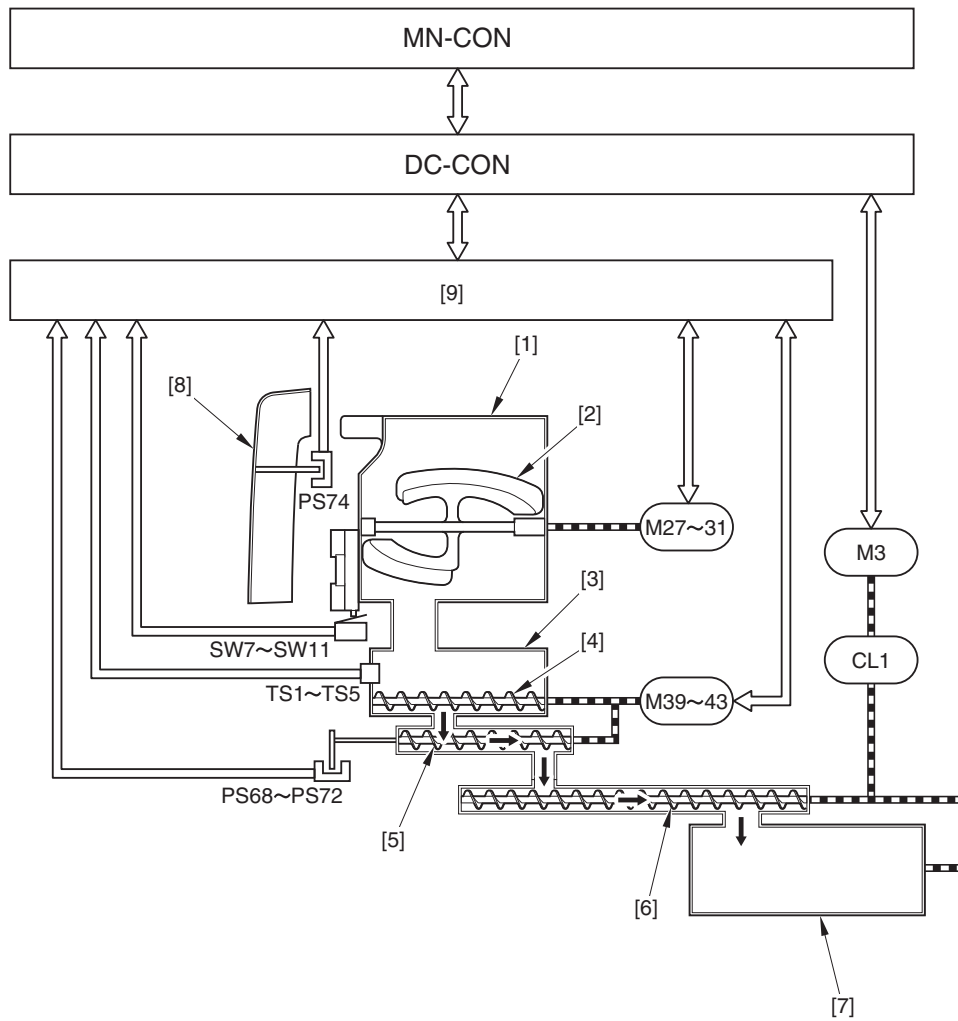
The machine has 5 toner bottles (L, Y, M, C, Bk). Each toner bottle consists of toner and a stirring plate.

The hopper unit consists of the toner supply screw, toner feeder screw, and toner level sensor.

When the toner bottle is set to the main unit, toner is transported to the hopper unit and sent to the developing assembly on a timely basis.

The following seven types of electric loads are used in the toner supply route.

- Motor: 2 types (cartridge motor, hopper motor)
- Sensor: 3 types (toner supply volume sensor, toner replacement cover sensor, toner level sensor)
- Clutch: 1 type (developing clutch)
- Switch: 1 type (toner bottle presence detection switch)



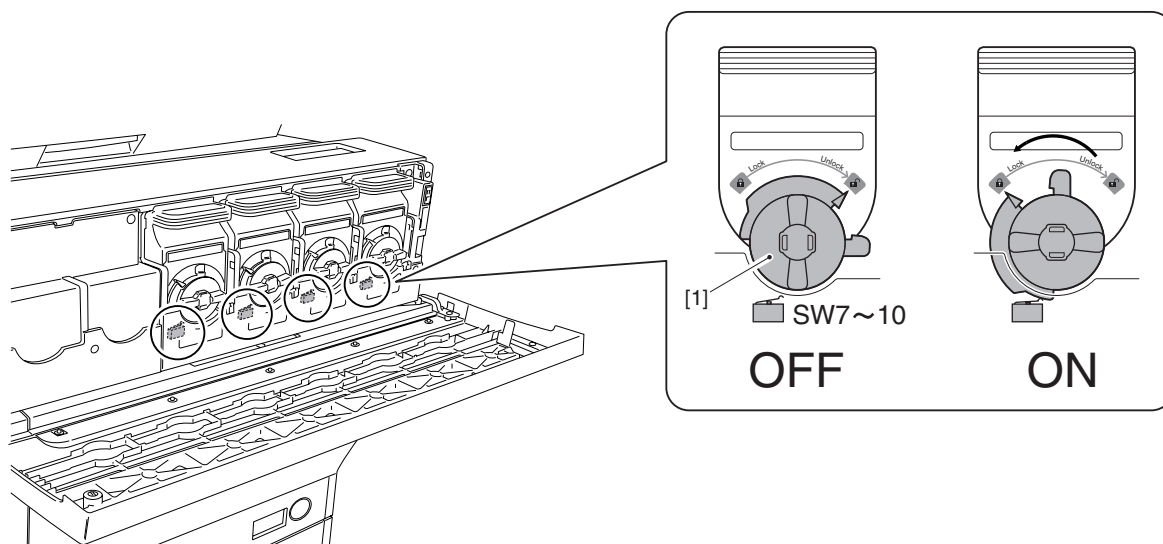
F-7-69

- [1] Toner bottle
- [2] Stirring plate
- [3] Hopper unit
- [4] Toner supply screw
- [5] Toner feeder screw
- [6] Toner feeder screw
- [7] Developing assembly
- [8] Toner replacement cover
- [9] Side driver PCB
- M3: Developing motor
- M27 - M31: Toner bottle motor
- M39 - M43: Hopper motor
- CL1: Developing clutch
- PS68 to PS72: toner supply volume sensor
- PS74: Toner replacement cover sensor
- TS1 to TS5: Toner level sensor (piezo sensor)

7.8.3 Toner Bottle Presence Detection

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

This machine detects the presence of the toner bottle when the side driver PCB detects the toner bottle presence detection switch (SW7 to SW10). The machine rotates the knob of the toner bottle, of which protrusion presses the micro switch (SW7 to SW10), and detects the presence of the toner bottle.



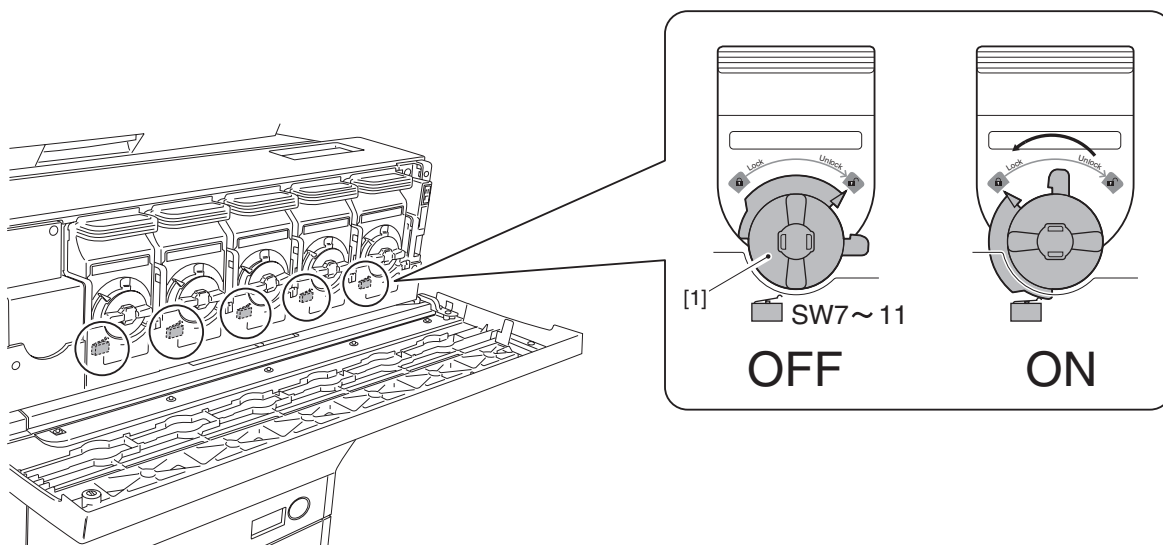
F-7-70

[1] Knob of the toner bottle
SW7 to SW10: Toner bottle presence detection switch

7.8.4 Toner Bottle Presence Detection

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine detects the presence of the toner bottle when the side driver PCB detects the toner bottle presence detection switch (SW7 to SW11). The machine rotates the knob of the toner bottle, of which protrusion presses the micro switch (SW7 to SW11), and detects the presence of the toner bottle.



F-7-71

[1] Knob of the toner bottle
SW7 to SW11: Toner bottle presence detection switch

7.8.5 Toner Supply

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

Toner of each color is sent from the toner bottle to the hopper unit, and sent to the developing assembly on a timely basis.

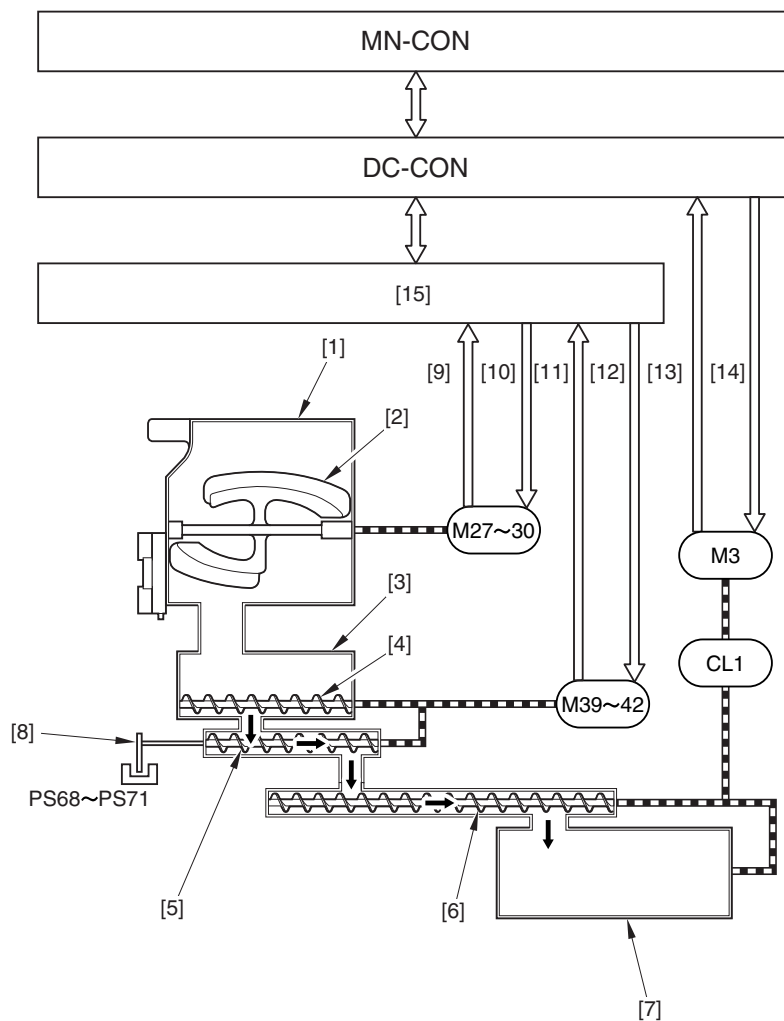
There are two supply routes; "hopper supply" between the toner bottle and hopper unit, and "developing assembly toner supply" between the hopper unit and developing assembly.

In the "hopper supply" as the first step of toner supply, when the toner bottle is set to the main unit, toner in the bottle freely falls into the hopper unit.

In addition, since the machine drops the toner remained in the bottle into the hopper unit, it rotates the toner bottle motor (M27 - M30) after the "developing assembly toner supply". This rotates the stirring plate and removes the toner in the bottle.

The "developing assembly toner supply" as the next step is performed by the hopper motor (M39 to M42), developing motor (M3), and developing clutch (CL1). The hopper motor (M39 to M42) rotates the toner in the hopper unit, and it drives the toner supply screw and transports the toner to the toner feeder screw. During this operation, the machine turns on the developing clutch (CL1) and rotates the developing motor (M3). This rotates the toner feeder screw and transports the toner into the developing assembly.

A series of this electric load operation is controlled by the side driver PCB and DC controller. The side driver PCB calculates the toner consumption volume based on the ATR control results. Accordingly, the side driver PCB judges the toner supply volume and supplies required volume of toner to the developing assembly.



F-7-72

- [1] Toner retainer
- [2] Stirring plate
- [3] Hopper unit
- [4] Toner feed screw
- [5] Toner supply screw
- [6] Toner supply screw
- [7] Developing assembly
- [8] Sensor flag
- [9] Toner retainer motor drive signal
- [10] Toner retainer motor error detection signal
- [11] Hopper motor drive signal
- [12] Hopper motor error detection signal
- [13] Hopper motor error detection signal
- [14] Developing motor error detection signal
- [15] Side driver PCB
- M27 to M30: Toner retainer motor
- M39 to M42: Hopper motor
- CL1: Developing clutch
- PS68 to PS71: Toner Supply Level Sensor

This machine has toner supply level sensors (PS68 to PS71) to perform accurate toner supply.

This sensor detects the sensor flag installed at the supply screw shaft. This flag is moved forth and back by the activation of the toner supply motor. When the flag travels once, the supply screw rotates to supply the specified amount of toner into the developing assembly.

At toner supply, the side driver PCB monitors this sensor while activating the hopper motor. After toner supply is completed, the motor is stopped. Accurate toner supply is completed by this step.

Related Error Code

E025-0101: Y toner retainer motor error

E025-0201: M toner retainer motor error

E025-0301: C toner retainer motor error

E025-0401: Bk toner retainer motor error

This error (overcurrent detection) occurs in the case that the power voltage of the toner retainer motor exceeds the specified value when supplying toner (while the stirring plate is operated).

Related Error Code

E025-0102: Y hopper supply error

E025-0202: M hopper supply error

E025-0302: C hopper supply error

E025-0402: Bk hopper supply error

This error occurs in the case that the detection time for toner supply level sensor exceeds the specified value when supplying toner (while the toner feeding screw is operated).

Related Error Code**E025-0103: Y toner retainer motor connection detection error****E025-0203: M toner retainer motor connection detection error****E025-0303: C toner retainer motor connection detection error****E025-0403: Bk toner retainer motor connection detection error**

In the case of detecting that the connector of the toner retainer motor is disconnected.

Related Error Code**E025-0004: Hopper Shutter Error**

In the case of supplying toner while the hopper shutter is closed

Related Error Code**E023-0001: Developing motor error**

When the motor is detected as out of locking state for 1 sec or more after its stable rotation.

7.8.6 Toner Supply

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Toner of each color is sent from the toner bottle to the hopper unit, and sent to the developing assembly on a timely basis.

There are two supply routes; "hopper supply" between the toner bottle and hopper unit, and "developing assembly toner supply" between the hopper unit and developing assembly.

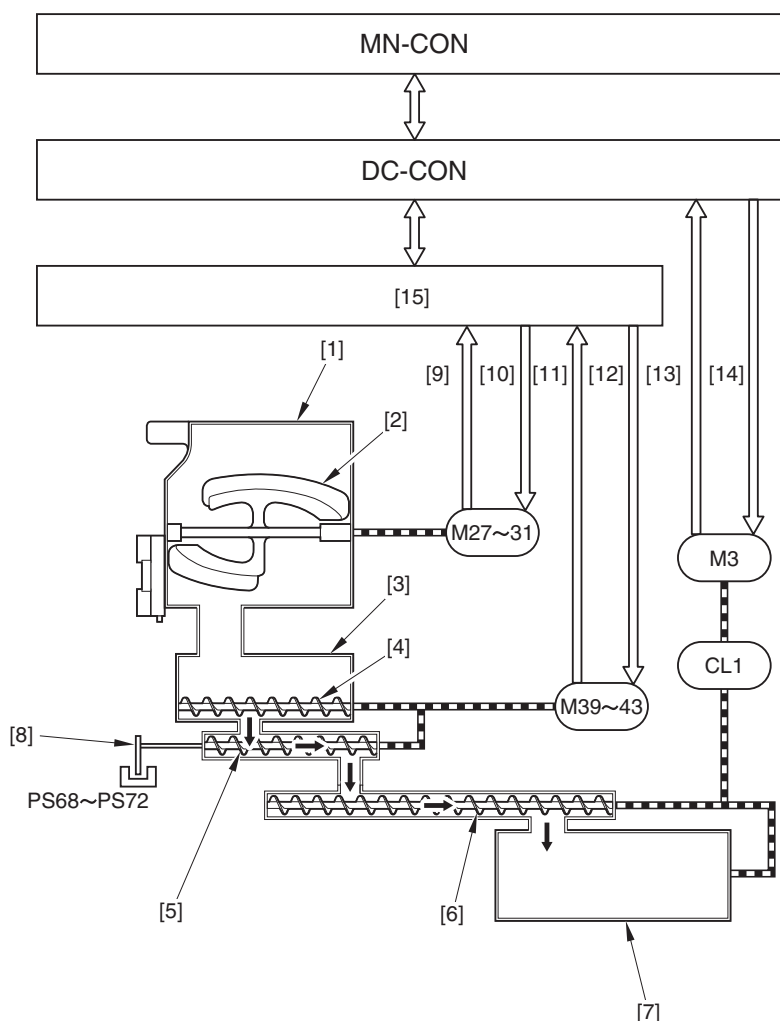
In the "hopper supply" as the first step of toner supply, when the toner bottle is set to the main unit, toner in the bottle freely falls into the hopper unit.

In addition, since the machine drops the toner remained in the bottle into the hopper unit, it rotates the toner bottle motor (M27 - M31) after the "developing assembly toner supply". This rotates the stirring plate and removes the toner in the bottle.

The "developing assembly toner supply" as the next step is performed by the hopper motor (M39 to M43), developing motor (M3), and developing clutch (CL1).

The hopper motor (M39 to M43) rotates the toner in the hopper unit, and it drives the toner supply screw and transports the toner to the toner feeder screw. During this operation, the machine turns on the developing clutch (CL1) and rotates the developing motor (M3). This rotates the toner feeder screw and transports the toner into the developing assembly.

A series of this electric load operation is controlled by the side driver PCB and DC controller. The side driver PCB calculates the toner consumption volume based on the ATR control results. Accordingly, the side driver PCB judges the toner supply volume and supplies required volume of toner to the developing assembly.



F-7-73

- [1] Toner retainer
- [2] Stirring plate
- [3] Hopper unit
- [4] Toner feed screw
- [5] Toner supply screw

[6] Toner supply screw
 [7] Developing assembly
 [8] Sensor flag
 [9] Toner retainer motor drive signal
 [10] Toner retainer motor error detection signal
 [11] Hopper motor drive signal
 [12] Hopper motor error detection signal
 [13] Hopper motor error detection signal
 [14] Developing motor error detection signal
 [15] Side driver PCB
 M27 to M31: Toner retainer motor
 M39 to M43: Hopper motor
 CL1: Developing clutch
 PS68 to PS72: Toner Supply Level Sensor

This machine has toner supply level sensors (PS68 to PS72) to perform accurate toner supply.

This sensor detects the sensor flag installed at the supply screw shaft. This flag is moved forth and back by the activation of the toner supply motor. When the flag travels once, the supply screw rotates to supply the specified amount of toner into the developing assembly.

At toner supply, the side driver PCB monitors this sensor while activating the hopper motor. After toner supply is completed, the motor is stopped. Accurate toner supply is completed by this step.

Related Error Code

E025-0101: Y toner retainer motor error

E025-0201: M toner retainer motor error

E025-0301: C toner retainer motor error

E025-0401: Bk toner retainer motor error

E025-0501: L toner retainer motor error

This error (overcurrent detection) occurs in the case that the power voltage of the toner retainer motor exceeds the specified value when supplying toner (while the stirring plate is operated).

Related Error Code

E025-0102: Y hopper supply error

E025-0202: M hopper supply error

E025-0302: C hopper supply error

E025-0402: Bk hopper supply error

E025-0502: L hopper supply error

This error occurs in the case that the detection time for toner supply level sensor exceeds the specified value when supplying toner (while the toner feeding screw is operated).

Related Error Code

E025-0103: Y toner retainer motor connection detection error

E025-0203: M toner retainer motor connection detection error

E025-0303: C toner retainer motor connection detection error

E025-0403: Bk toner retainer motor connection detection error

E025-0503: L toner retainer motor connection detection error

In the case of detecting that the connector of the toner retainer motor is disconnected.

Related Error Code

E025-0004: Hopper Shutter Error

In the case of supplying toner while the hopper shutter is closed

Related Error Code

E023-0001: Developing motor error

When the motor is detected as out of locking state for 1 sec or more after its stable rotation.

7.8.7 Toner Level Detection

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

This machine employs two different methods shown below to detect toner level of each color in the hopper assembly.

1. Video count detection
2. Piezo sensor detection

Toner level is detected at all times. When the amount of toner falls below a specified volume, the side driver PCB sends 2 types of message (Toner Low, Toner Empty) to the main controller via the DC controller.

Below is a table showing how each message relates to toner level.

T-7-15

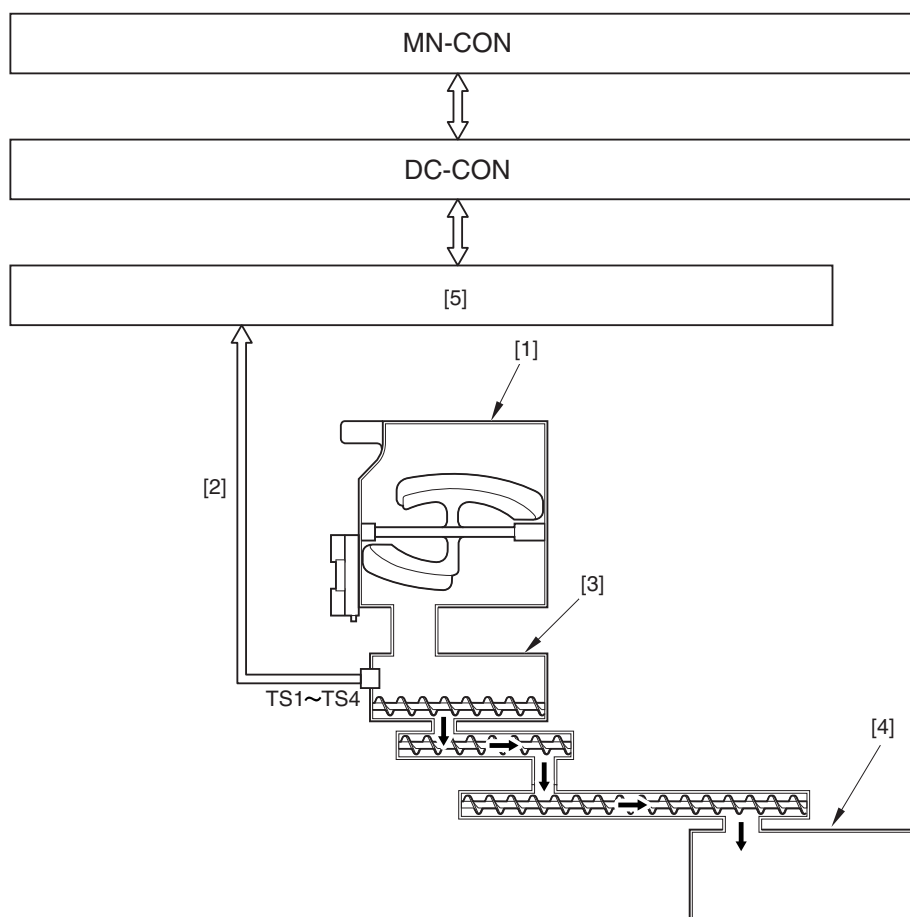
Message Type	Message Content	Toner level	Detector
Toner Low 1	'Prepare a new toner cartridge.' (Printing can be continued.)	10% (See *1.)	Video count
Toner Low 2	'Replace the toner cartridge.' (Printing can be continued.)	0% (See *1.)	Piezo sensor
Toner Empty	'Replace the toner container.' (Printing cannot be continued.)	0% (See *2.)	Video count

*1: The percentage indicates the toner level in the toner container.

*2: The percentage indicates the toner level in the toner path between the hopper assembly and the developing assembly.



If switching OFF/ON the knob on the toner container during the period between Toner Low 1 and Toner Low 2, the machine considers the toner container has been replaced, and clears the toner level counter.



F-7-74

- [1] Toner cartridge
 [2] Toner sensor signal
 [3] Hopper assembly
 [4] Developing assembly
 [5] Side driver PCB
 TS1 to TS4: toner sensor (piezo sensor)

Video count detection

The mechanism of the video count detection is that toner level in the hopper assembly is determined by calculating the amount of toner consumption for each color based on video data received from the main controller. This detection operates when the toner level is in the range of 100 to 10 %. The detection result after the toner level becomes 0% will be sent to the side driver PCB.

The DC controller sends Toner Low 1 message to the main controller when the toner level reaches 10%. When reaching the specified print (A4, 200-print, color ratio 10%) after the toner level reaches 0%, it sends Toner Empty message to the main controller.

Piezo sensor detection

The mechanism of piezo sensor detection is that piezoelectric oscillator toner sensor (TS1 to TS4) placed on the side of the hopper assembly determines the presence of toner in the hopper assembly. This detection is activated when the toner level is 10% or less and the detection result will be sent to the side driver PCB. The side driver PCB sends Toner Low 2 message to the main controller via the DC controller when the toner level reaches 0%.



- 1, When the toner is empty, this machine stops operation.
 2, The toner level at which the Toner Low message appears can be changed to a different value anywhere between toner levels 5 % and 100% using the following items in the Service Mode.
 Service Mode: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > T-LW-LVL

7.8.8 Toner Level Detection

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine employs two different methods shown below to detect toner level of each color in the hopper assembly.

1. Video count detection
2. Piezo sensor detection

Toner level is detected at all times. When the amount of toner falls below a specified volume, the side driver PCB sends 2 types of message (Toner Low, Toner Empty) to the main controller via the DC controller.

Below is a table showing how each message relates to toner level.

T-7-16

Message Type	Message Content	Toner level	Detector
Toner Low 1	'Prepare a new toner cartridge.' (Printing can be continued.)	10% (See *1.)	Video count
Toner Low 2	'Replace the toner cartridge.' (Printing can be continued.)	0% (See *1.)	Piezo sensor

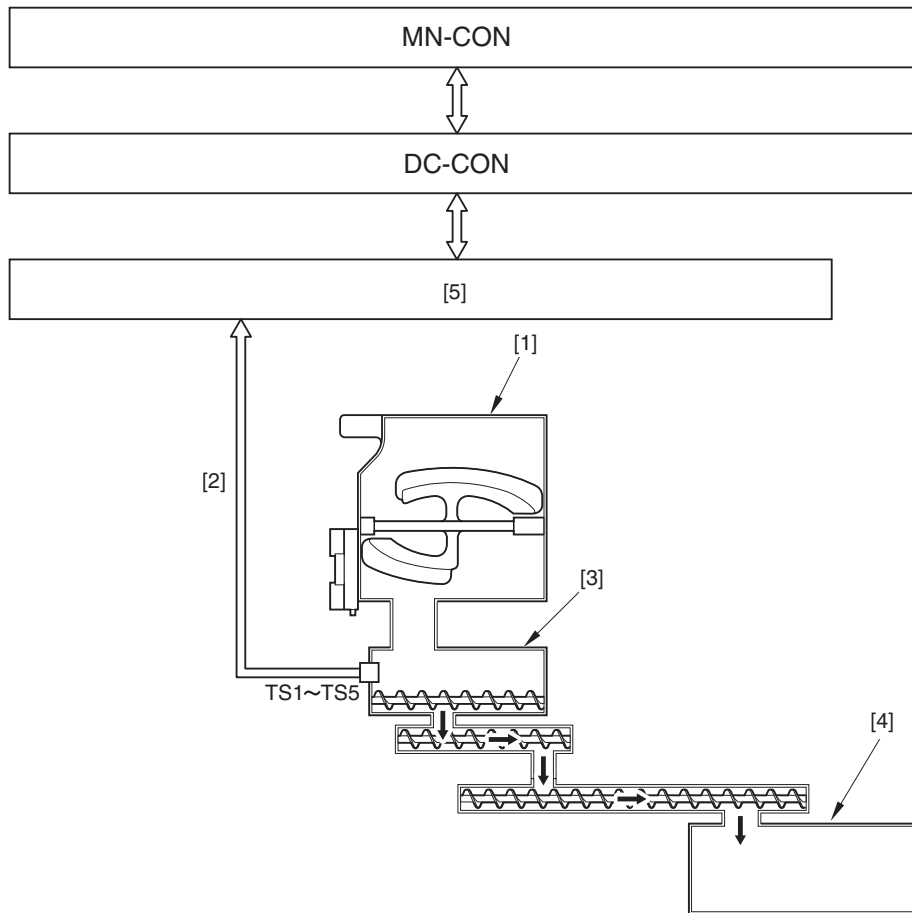
Message Type	Message Content	Toner level	Detector
Toner Empty	'Replace the toner container.' (Printing cannot be continued.)	0% (See *2.)	Video count

*1: The percentage indicates the toner level in the toner container.

*2: The percentage indicates the toner level in the toner path between the hopper assembly and the developing assembly.



If switching OFF/ON the knob on the toner container during the period between Toner Low 1 and Toner Low 2, the machine considers the toner container has been replaced, and clears the toner level counter.



F-7-75

- [1] Toner cartridge
 - [2] Toner sensor signal
 - [3] Hopper assembly
 - [4] Developing assembly
 - [5] Side driver PCB
- TS1 to TS5: toner sensor (piezo sensor)

Video count detection

The mechanism of the video count detection is that toner level in the hopper assembly is determined by calculating the amount of toner consumption for each color based on video data received from the main controller. This detection operates when the toner level is in the range of 100 to 10%. The detection result after the toner level becomes 0% will be sent to the side driver PCB.

The DC controller sends Toner Low 1 message to the main controller when the toner level reaches 10%. When reaching the specified print (A4, 200-print, color ratio 10%) after the toner level reaches 0%, it sends Toner Empty message to the main controller.

Piezo sensor detection

The mechanism of piezo sensor detection is that piezoelectric oscillator toner sensor (TS1 to TS5) placed on the side of the hopper assembly determines the presence of toner in the hopper assembly. This detection is activated when the toner level is 10% or less and the detection result will be sent to the side driver PCB.

The side driver PCB sends Toner Low 2 message to the main controller via the DC controller when the toner level reaches 0%.



1, When the toner is empty, this machine stops operation.

2, The toner level at which the Toner Low message appears can be changed to a different value anywhere between toner levels 5% and 100% using the following items in the Service Mode.

Service Mode: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > T-LW-LVL

7.9 Transfer Device

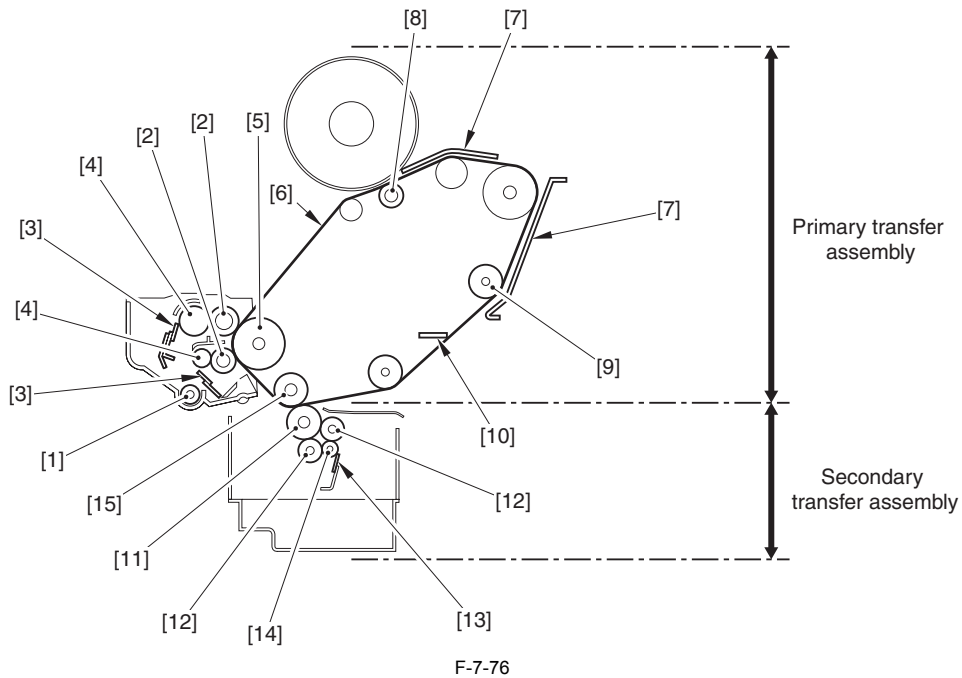
7.9.1 Overview of Transfer Assembly

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The transfer assembly is composed of the primary transfer assembly and the secondary transfer assembly.

The primary transfer assembly has the function of transferring the toner on the photosensitive drum to ITB. The secondary transfer assembly has the function of transferring the toner transferred primarily on ITB to the print paper.

The main parts of the transfer assembly are ITB cleaning screw, brush roller/blade for ITB cleaning, ITB drive roller, ITB, potential plate, primary transfer roller, tension roller, ITB inside scraper, secondary transfer outside roller, brush roller/blade for secondary transfer cleaning, etc.



- [1] ITB cleaning screw
- [2] Brush roller for ITB cleaning
- [3] Blade for ITB cleaning
- [4] Cleaning bias roller
- [5] ITB drive roller
- [6] ITB
- [7] Potential plate
- [8] Primary transfer roller
- [9] Tension roller
- [10] ITB inside scraper
- [11] Secondary transfer outside roller
- [12] Brush roller for secondary transfer cleaning
- [13] Blade for secondary transfer cleaning
- [14] Secondary transfer cleaning bias roller
- [15] Secondary transfer inside roller

7.9.2 Transfer Bias Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

There are primary transfer bias used at the primary transfer assembly and secondary transfer bias used at the secondary transfer assembly.

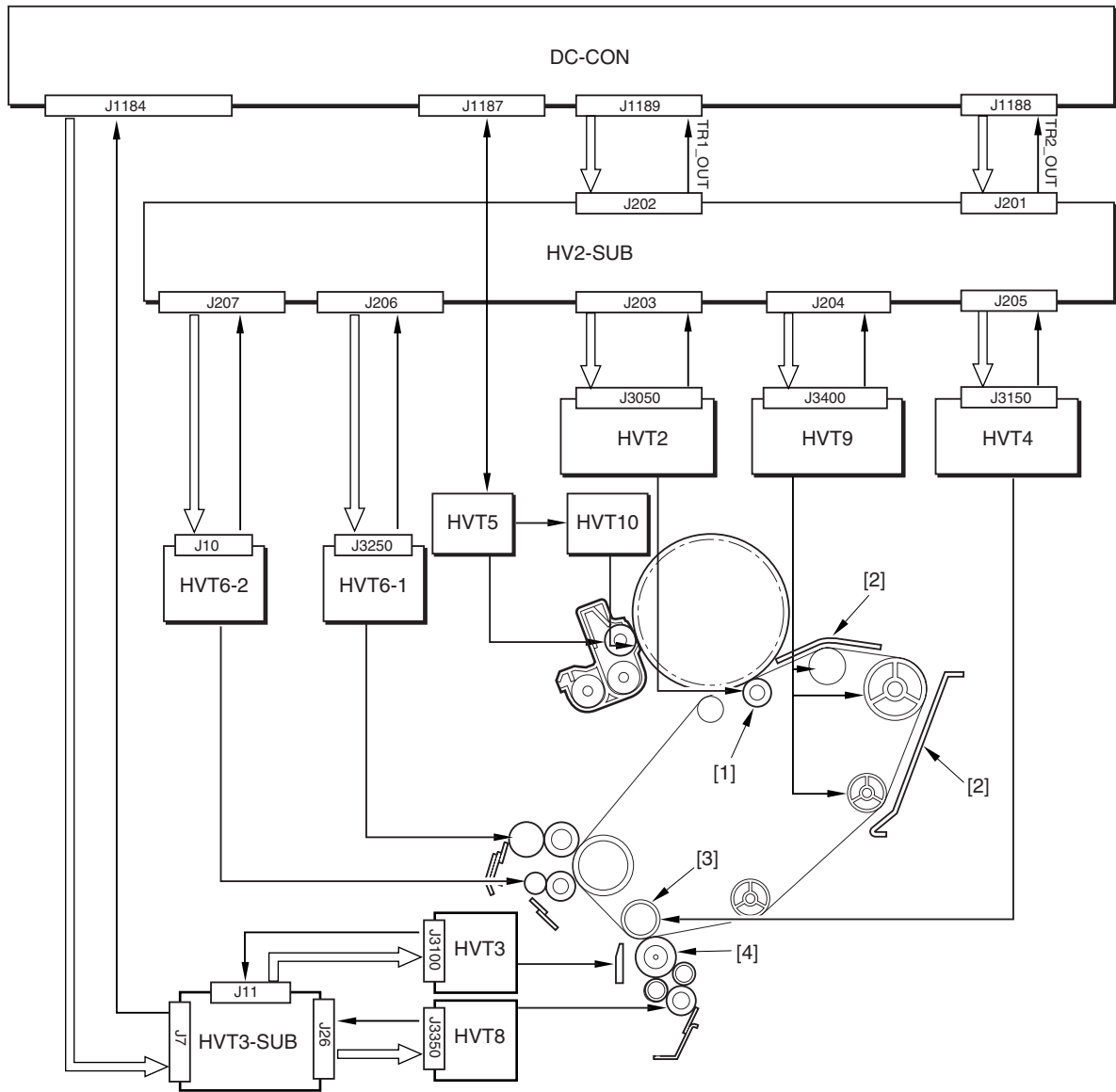
There are three kinds of bias (DC bias for primary transfer, DC reverse bias for primary transfer, tension roller bias) for the primary transfer bias.

And there is a bias roller to collect the residual toner on ITB.

There are two kinds of bias (DC bias for secondary transfer, DC reverse bias for secondary transfer) for the secondary transfer bias.

And there is a bias roller to collect the patch image at paper-to-paper interval.

These biases are generated by the high-voltage PCBs 2, 4 and 9 according to the instructions of the DC controller, and are applied to their respective loads (primary transfer roller, tension roller, secondary transfer inside roller).



F-7-77

- [1] Primary transfer roller
- [2] Potential plate
- [3] Secondary transfer inside roller
- [4] Secondary transfer outside roller
- HVT2: High-voltage PCB 2
- HVT3: High-voltage PCB 3
- HVT4: High-voltage PCB 4
- HVT5: High-voltage PCB 5
- HVT6: High-voltage PCB 6
- HVT8: High-voltage PCB 8
- HVT9: High-voltage PCB 9
- HVT10: High-voltage PCB 10
- HVT2-SUB: Sub high-voltage PCB 2
- HVT3-SUB: Sub high-voltage PCB 3
- DC-CON: DC controller

The following is the additional explanation for each bias used at the transfer assembly.

- Primary transfer bias (applied bias: DC)
The primary transfer bias is the bias for transferring the toner on the photosensitive drum to ITB. It is applied to the primary transfer roller.
- Primary transfer reverse bias (applied bias: -DC)
This bias is the bias for cleaning the patch pattern formed on the drum by the image stabilization control (D-half control, simplified D-half, ATR control). The patch pattern on the drum is not transferred to ITB by applying this bias at the time of the image stabilization control, and is collected by the photosensitive drum cleaner.
- Tension roller bias (applied bias: DC)
To prevent toner splash at roller position with belt pulled, two potential plates covering ITB are installed. Applying bias to three tension rollers (tension roller bias) against these potential plates prevents the toner splash. Electric field is produced between the tension roller and the potential plate when applying bias, to attract the excess toner to the potential plate.
- Secondary transfer bias (applied bias: -DC)
The secondary transfer bias is the bias for transferring the toner on ITB to the print paper. There is one kind of the secondary transfer bias. It is applied to the secondary transfer inside roller. DC reverse bias is applied to the secondary inside roller at printing. The residual toner attached on the secondary transfer outside roller is collected by the brush roller in the waste toner case of the secondary transfer assembly.
- Secondary transfer static eliminator bias (applied bias: -DC)

The secondary transfer static eliminator bias reduces the charge on the back of the print paper to weaken electrostatic absorption of the paper, enabling easy separation.

- Splash toner collecting bias (applied bias: -DC)

In the splash toner collecting bias, the high-voltage is applied on the toner-blocking terminal plate beneath the developing cylinder to attract the suspended toner and prevent toner splash in the machine.

7.9.3 Overview of the Primary Transfer Assembly

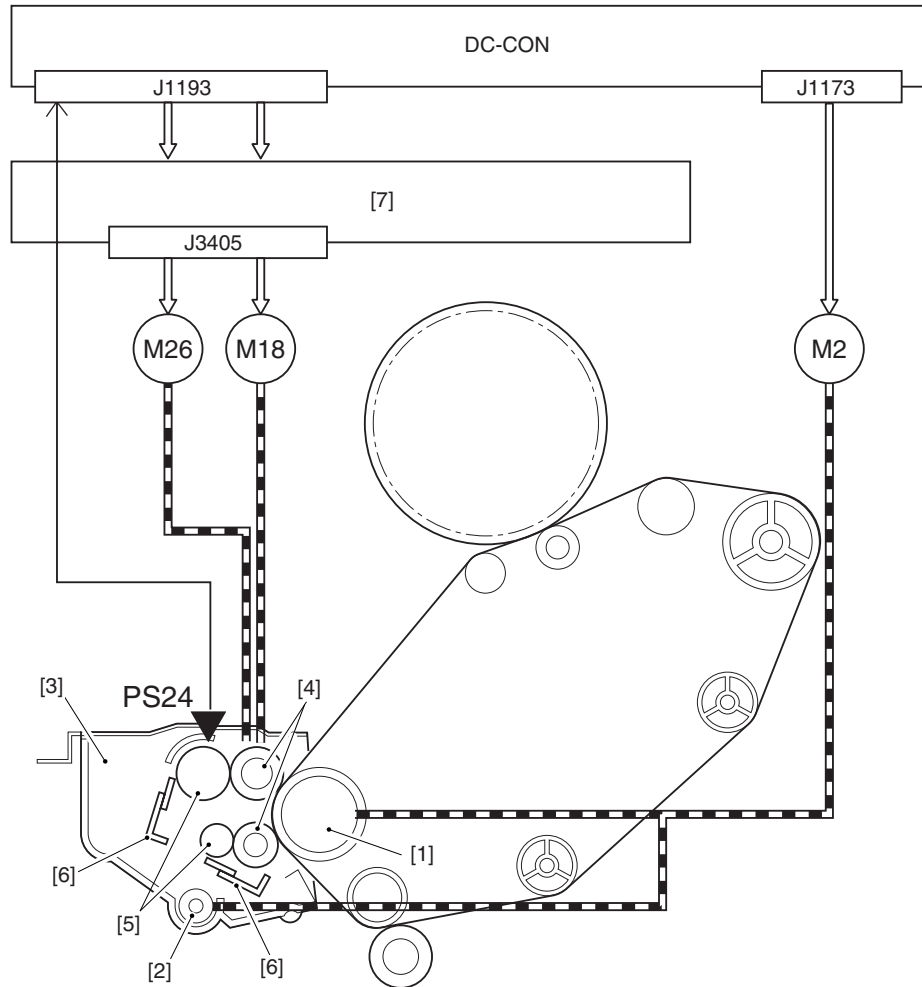
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The primary transfer assembly has three motors to activate/detach the main roller.

The drum/ITB motor (M2) rotates the ITB drive roller and the ITB cleaning screw. The brush roller attachment/detachment motor (M18) performs attachment/detachment between the brush roller for ITB cleaning and the ITB. The brush roller drive motor (M26) activates the brush roller to collect the residual toner on the ITB.

The DC controller performs drive/detachment by controlling three motors via the side driver PCB.

The DC controller performs ITB cleaner attachment/detachment detection to detect the position of the brush roller for ITB cleaning via the side driver PCB.



F-7-78

- [1] ITB drive roller
- [2] ITB cleaning screw
- [3] ITB cleaner
- [4] Brush roller
- [5] Bias roller
- [6] Cleaner blade
- [7] Side driver PCB
- PS24: Brush roller home position sensor
- M2: Drum/ITB motor
- M18: Brush roller attachment/detachment motor
- M26: Brush roller drive motor
- DC-CON: DC controller

7.9.4 ITB Cleaner Attachment/Detachment Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

To remove the residual toner on the ITB, this machine performs attachment/detachment between the brush roller for ITB cleaning and the ITB.

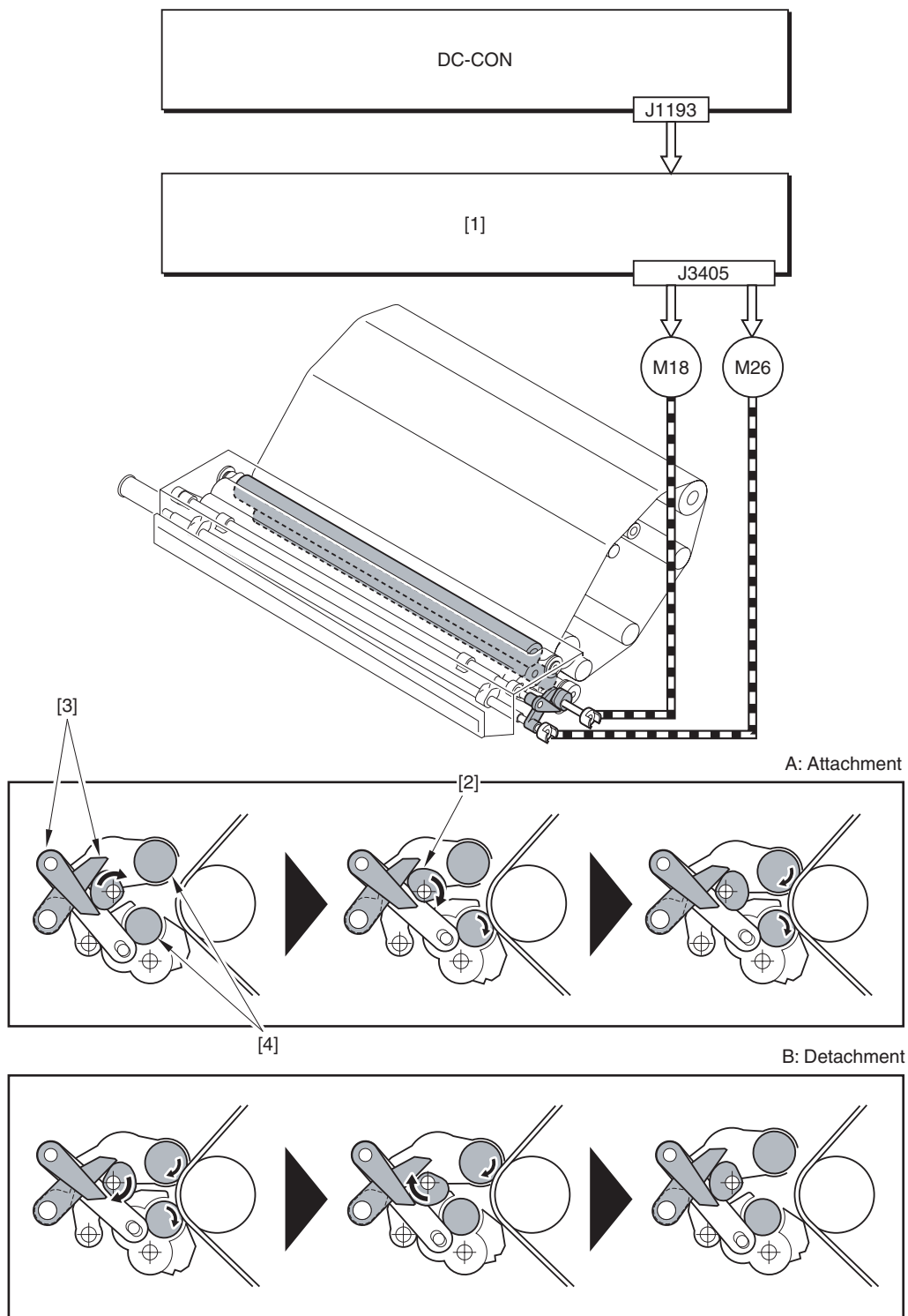
The DC controller performs attachment/detachment by activating the brush roller attachment/detachment motor (M18) via the side driver PCB.

The DC controller activates the brush roller by driving the brush roller drive motor (M26) via the side driver PCB.

The following is the timing of attachment/detachment.

1. At initial rotation or just after the start of secondary transfer, the DC controller outputs the brush roller attachment/detachment drive signal via the side driver PCB.
2. The attachment/detachment arm is activated by rotating the attachment/detachment cam clockwise (See the following chart A). (thereby locking brush roller in place against ITB)
3. After applying pressure on the ITB, the DC controller outputs the brush roller drive motor drive signal via the side driver PCB.

- (The brush roller is activated)
4. The DC controller applies positive/negative bias to the bias roller, and removes the residual toner on the ITB via the brush roller.
 5. After cleaning the ITB, the DC controller outputs the brush roller attachment/detachment motor drive signal via the side driver PCB.
 6. The attachment/detachment arm is activated by rotating the attachment/detachment cam clockwise (See the following chart B).
- (The brush roller is separated from the ITB)



F-7-79

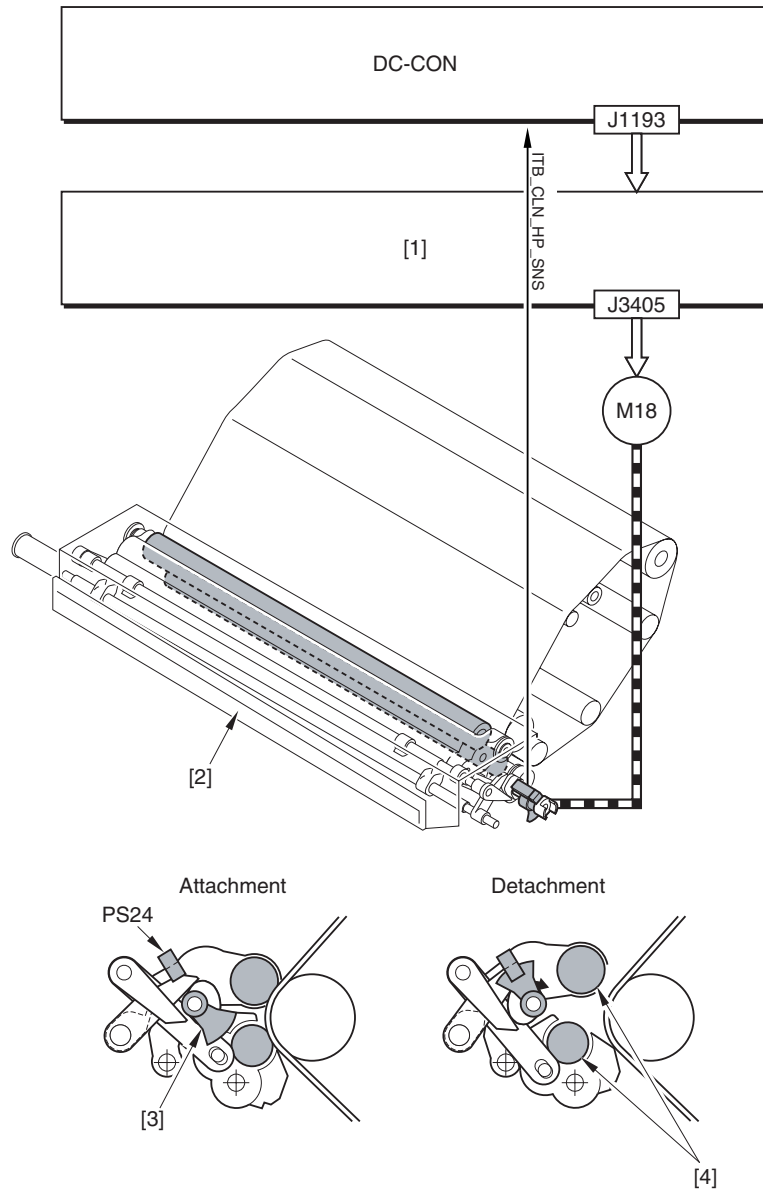
- [1] Side driver PCB
- [2] Attachment/detachment cam
- [3] Attachment/detachment arm
- [4] Brush roller
- M18: Brush roller attachment/detachment motor
- M26: Brush roller drive motor
- DC-CON: DC controller

7.9.5 ITB Cleaner Attachment/Detachment Detection

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine performs home position detection to detect the position of the brush roller for ITB cleaning.

The DC controller monitors the output of the brush roller home position sensor (PS24) via the side driver PCB to perform this detection. At power ON or after opening/closing the front cover, the DC controller detects the position of the brush roller by checking whether the home position flag fixed on the drive shaft of the brush roller attachment/detachment motor (M18) interrupts PS24 or not.



F-7-80

[1] Side driver PCB
 [2] ITB cleaner
 [3] Brush roller home position flag
 [4] Brush roller
 PS24: Brush roller home position sensor
 M18: Brush roller attachment/detachment motor
 DC-CON: DC controller

Related Error Code:

E078-0001 (Brush roller attachment/detachment motor error)

When the brush roller for ITB cleaning continues to be pressured (PS24=1) after 5 sec passed from the activation of the brush roller attachment/detachment motor (M18), this status should be judged as this error.

E078-0101 (Brush roller attachment/detachment motor error)

Attachment/detachment sensor detects if it is placed in the specified position after the operation. It should be error if there is any fault.

E078-0011 (Brush roller attachment/detachment motor error)

If HP sensor is displaced logically at the time of executing the operation, it should be error.

7.9.6 Overview of the Secondary Transfer Assembly

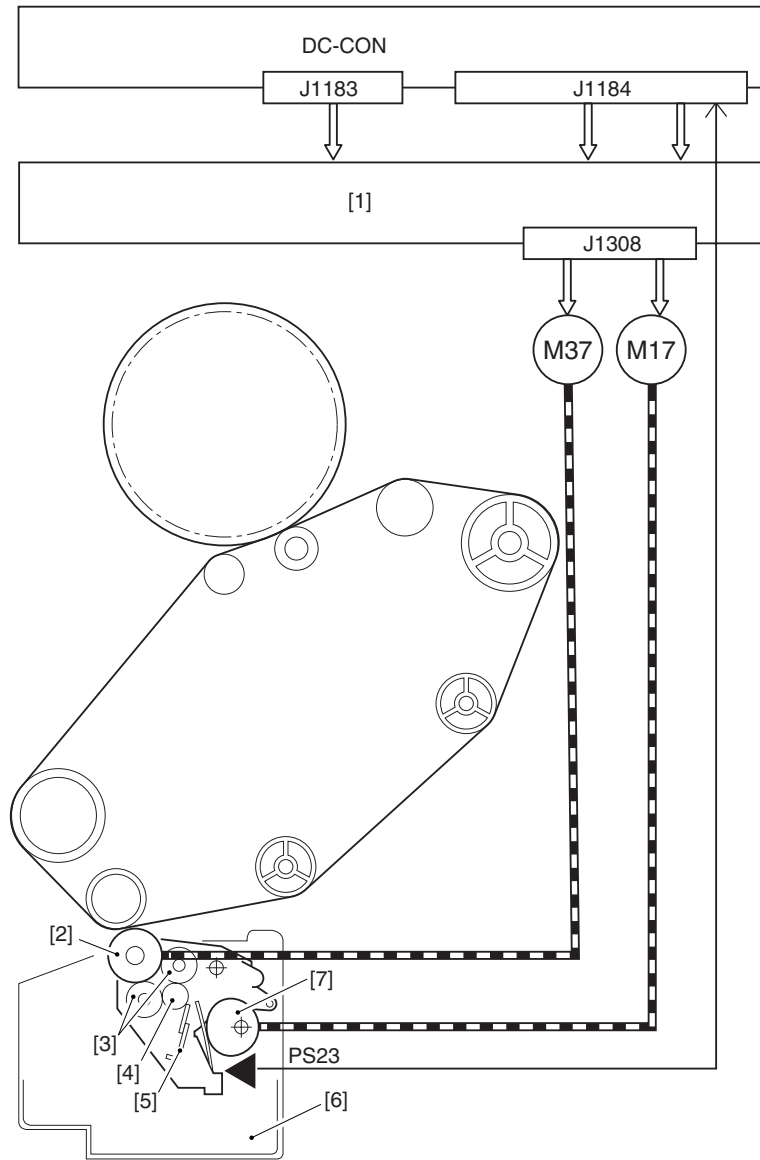
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The secondary transfer assembly has the secondary transfer outside roller attachment/detachment motor (M17) for attachment/detachment between the secondary transfer outside roller and the ITB, and the secondary transfer outside roller drive motor (M37) that activates the main roller (the secondary transfer outside roller, the brush roller, the bias roller).

Besides, the patch pattern remained on the ITB and the residual toner on the secondary transfer outside roller are collected into the waste toner case beneath the secondary transfer outside roller by the image stabilization control (ATR, simplified D-half control).

The DC controller performs activation/detachment by controlling two motors via the feeding drier PCB.

The DC controller performs attachment/detachment for the secondary transfer outside roller to detect the position of the secondary transfer outside roller via the feeding driver PCB.



F-7-81

- [1] Feeding driver PCB
- [2] Secondary transfer outside roller
- [3] Brush roller
- [4] Bias roller
- [5] Blade
- [6] Waste toner case
- [7] Attachment/detachment cam
- PS23: Secondary transfer outside roller home position sensor
- M17: Secondary transfer outside roller attachment/detachment motor
- M37: Secondary transfer outside roller drive motor
- DC-CON: DC controller

7.9.7 Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Attachment/Detachment Control

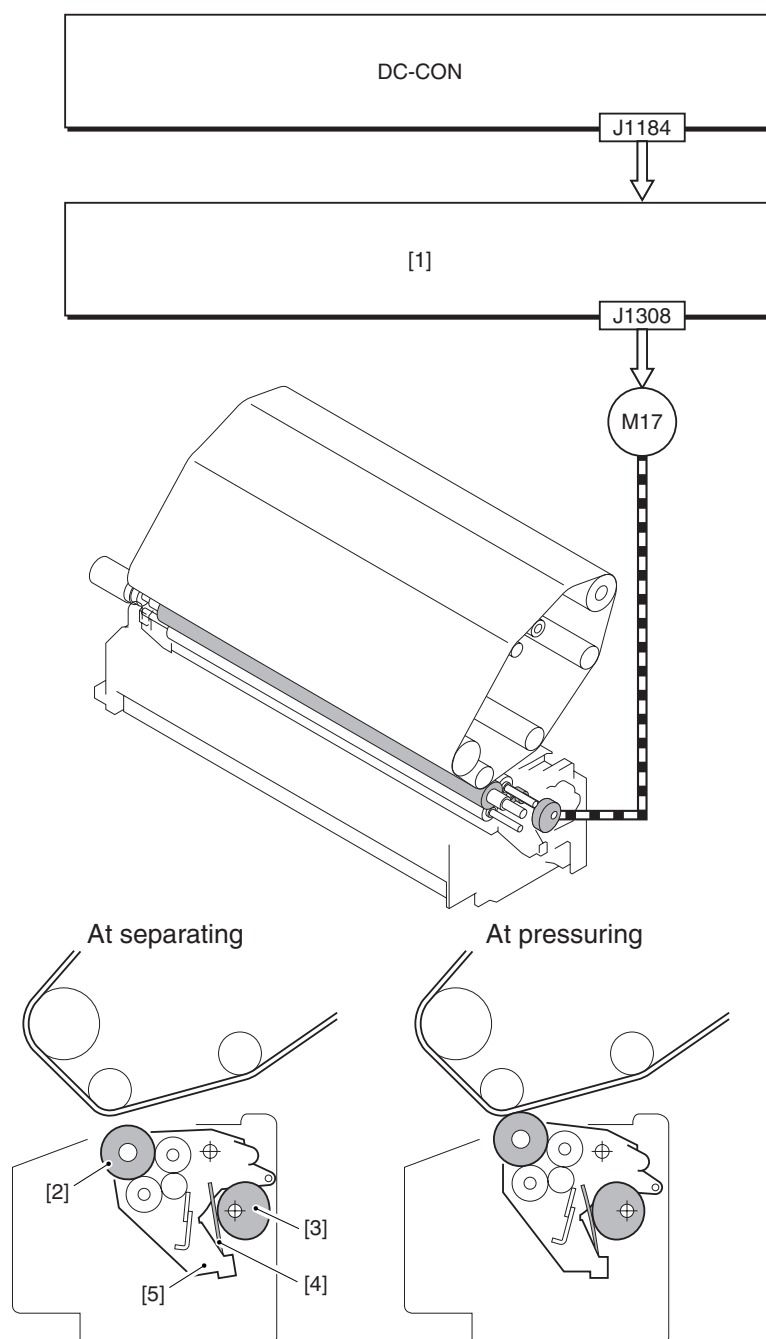
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine performs attachment/detachment between the secondary transfer outside roller and the ITB to transfer the toner on the ITB to the print paper. The DC controller activates the secondary transfer outside roller attachment/detachment motor (M17) via the feeding driver PCB to perform attachment/detachment. The following is the timing of attachment/detachment.

1. After completing primary transfer, the DC controller outputs the secondary transfer outside roller attachment/detachment motor drive signal.
2. The clockwise rotation of the attachment/detachment cam pushes the attachment/detachment plate, and pushes the attachment/detachment arm down. (thereby locking the secondary transfer outside roller in place against the ITB)
3. After completing secondary transfer, the DC controller outputs the secondary transfer outside roller attachment/detachment motor drive signal.
4. The clockwise rotation of the attachment/detachment cam releases the attachment/detachment plate, pushes down the attachment/detachment arm. (thereby locking the secondary transfer outside roller in place against the ITB)



This operation is performed also at initial rotation and cleaning the secondary transfer outside roller.



F-7-82

- [1] Feeding driver PCB
- [2] Secondary transfer outside roller
- [3] Attachment/detachment cam
- [4] Attachment/detachment plate
- [5] Attachment/detachment arm
- M17: Secondary transfer outsider roller attachment/detachment motor
- DC-CON: DC controller

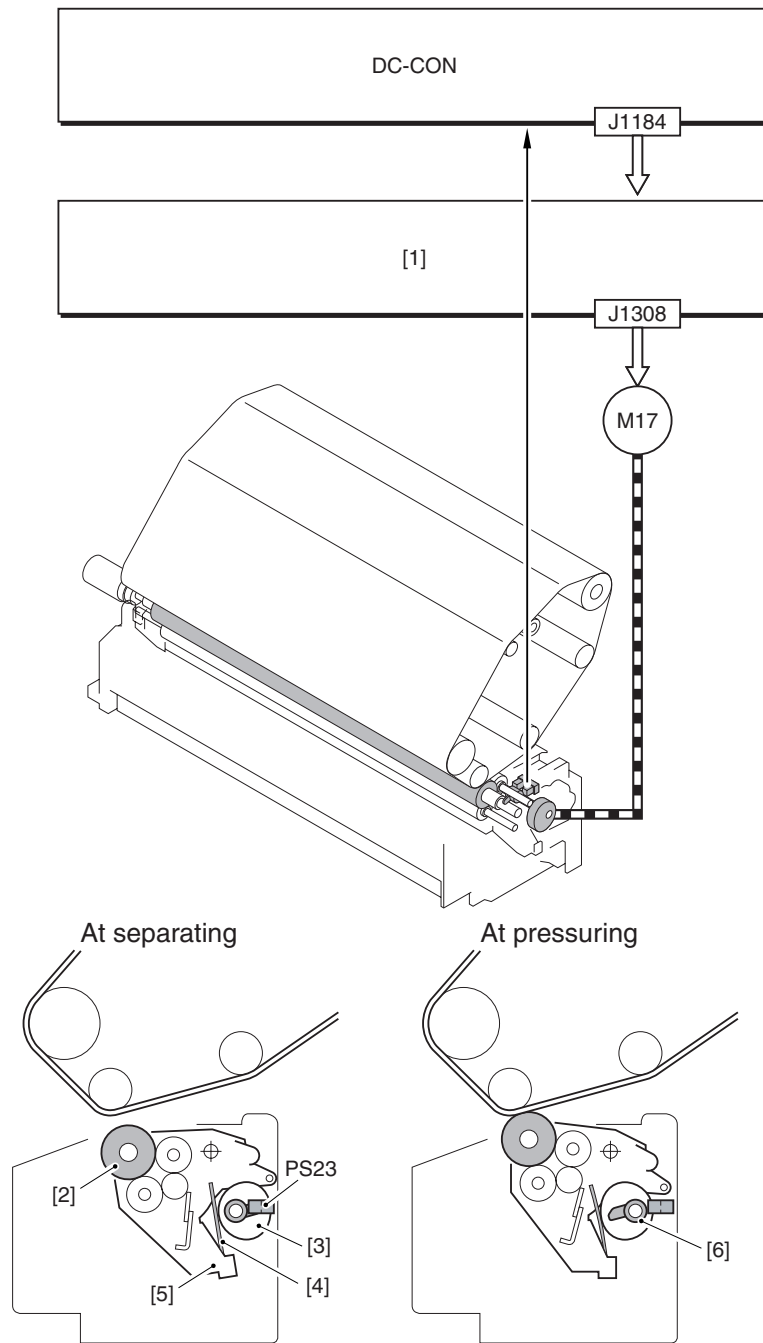
7.9.8 Secondary Transfer Roller Attachment/Detachment Detection

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine performs home position detection to detect the position of the secondary transfer outside roller.

The DC controller monitors the output of the secondary transfer outside roller home position sensor (PS23) to perform this detection.

At power ON or opening/closing the front cover, the DC controller detects the position of the secondary transfer outside roller by checking whether the home position flag fixed with the M17 drive shaft interrupts PS23 or not.



F-7-83

- [1] Feeding driver PCB
- [2] Secondary transfer outside roller
- [3] Attachment/detachment cam
- [4] Attachment/detachment plate
- [5] Attachment/detachment arm
- [6] Secondary transfer outside roller home position flag
- PS23: Secondary transfer outside roller home position sensor
- M17: Secondary transfer outside roller attachment/detachment motor
- DC-CON: DC controller

Related Error Code

E077-0001 (Secondary transfer outside roller attachment/detachment motor error)

When the secondary transfer outside roller continues to be pressured (PS23=1) after 5 sec passed after the activation of the secondary transfer outside roller attachment/detachment motor (M17), this status should be judged as error.

7.9.9 Secondary Transfer Roller Cleaning Control

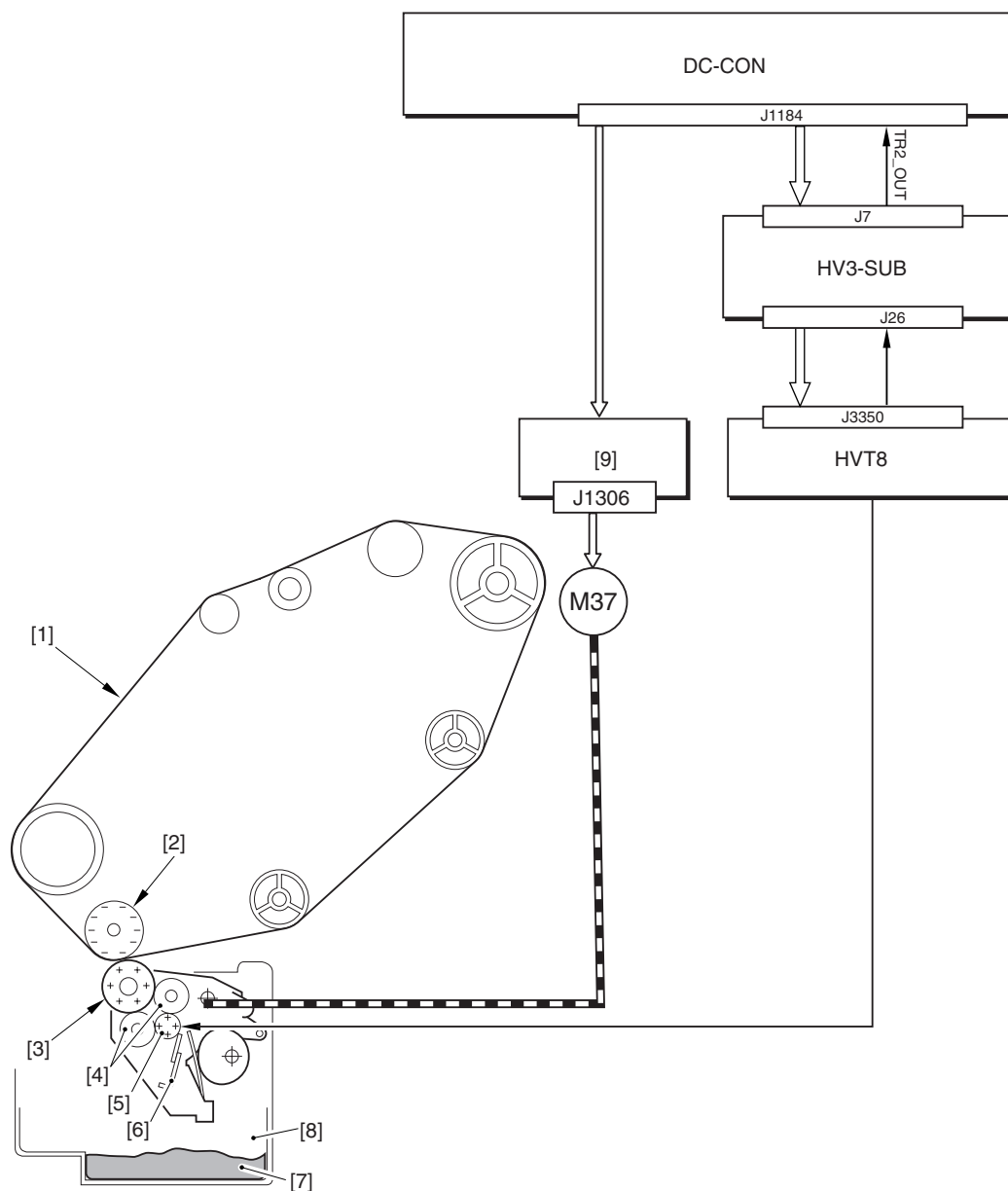
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine collects the patch pattern remained on the ITB and the residual toner on the secondary transfer outside roller into the waste toner case beneath the secondary transfer outside roller by the image stabilization control (ATR, simplified D-half control).
The following is the timing of cleaning.

1. After completing primary transfer, the DC controller outputs the secondary transfer outside roller drive motor drive signal and applies positive bias to the bias

roller.

2. After completing primary transfer, the DC controller outputs the secondary transfer outside roller attachment/detachment motor drive signal.
3. The clockwise rotation of the attachment/detachment cam (thereby locking the secondary transfer outside roller in place against the ITB)
4. The patch image (paper-to-paper interval) remained on the ITB is attracted to the secondary transfer outside roller.
5. Clean the residual toner on the secondary transfer outside roller by the brush roller, wipe it off by the blade through via the bias roller to collect it into the waste toner case.
6. After completing secondary transfer, the DC controller outputs the secondary transfer outside roller attachment/detachment motor drive signal.
7. The clockwise rotation of the attachment/detachment cam releases the attachment/detachment plate and pushes up the attachment/detachment arm. (The secondary transfer outside roller is separated from the ITB)



F-7-84

- [1] ITB
- [2] Secondary transfer inside roller
- [3] Secondary transfer outside roller
- [4] Brush roller
- [5] Bias roller
- [6] Blade
- [7] Waste toner
- [8] Waste toner case
- [9] Feeding driver PCB
- M37: Secondary transfer outside roller drive motor
- DC-CON: DC controller



Detection by Waste Toner Counter

The waste toner level collected in the waste toner case is calculated based on the image data sent from the main controller.

For the waste toner collected, see the value of the soft counter recorded in the DC controller.

The DC controller constantly monitors the soft counter. If it exceeds the specified counter value, execute the following steps. When it reaches the waste toner level corresponding to 50,000 sheets, the waste toner full is alarmed. At that time, the DC controller displays the user message 'Waste toner case is nearly full'.

When it reaches the waste toner level corresponding to 60,000 sheets, the DC controller notices the waste toner full to the main controller.

When the waste toner is filled, the machine is stopped and the service error code (E013-0005) is displayed.

The value of the soft counter can be checked and cleared by the following service mode.
 COPIER>COUNTER>MISC>2TC-BOX

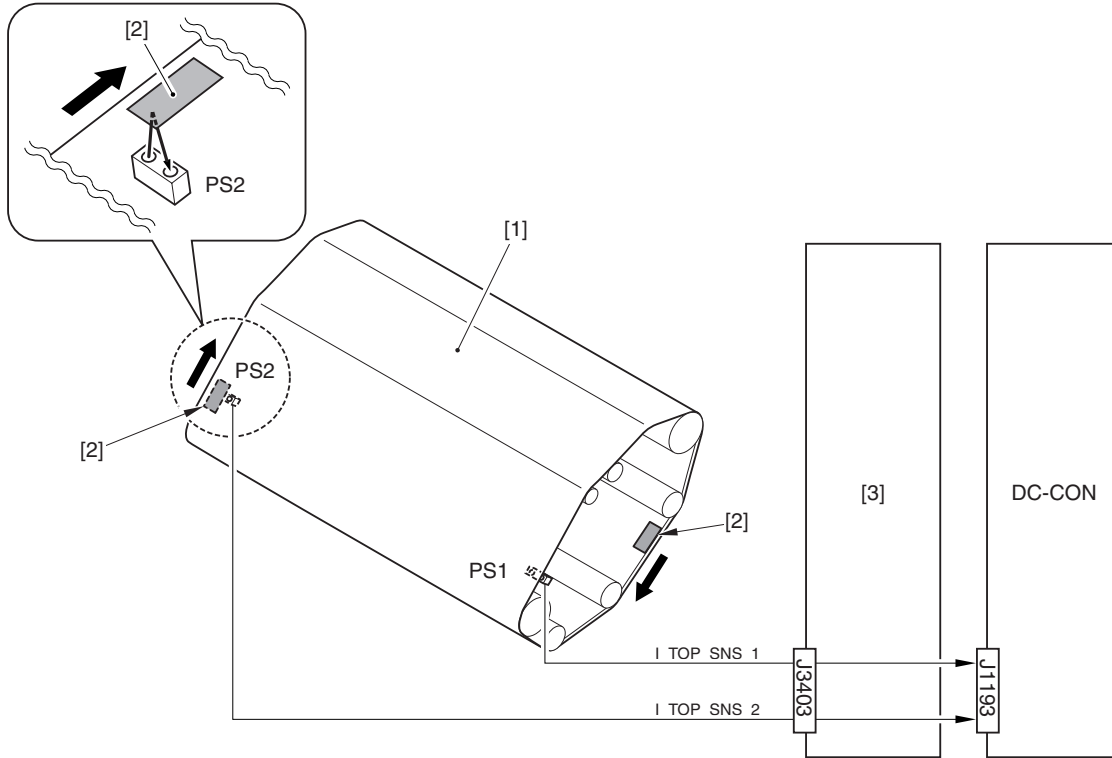
7.9.10 ITB Home Position Detection

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

This machine detects the ITB home position to adjust the reading position of the image.

The ITB home position sensor (PS1, PS2) detects the home position detection surface (two reflecting surfaces) prepared at the end of the ITB to detect the home position. The following is the operation procedure.

- 1) When receiving the print instruction, the DC controller turns the ITB. When detecting the reflecting surfaces, PS1 and PS2 send the home position detection signal respectively (I_TOP_SNS_A, I_TOP_SNS_B) to the DC controller via the side driver PCB.
- 2) The DC controller determines the sensor detection signal that was first input as the home position (see REMARK) (I_TOPIA), and counts the home position each time the next reflection surface is detected, such as I_TOP2A, I_TOP3A, I_TOP4A.
- 3) For full color print, the DC controller produces sub scanning synchronized signal (PVREQ) four times based on this signal, send them to the main controller. After that, the DC controller receives the video data for each color four times from the main controller and forms the toner image for each color in order on the specified position on the ITB.



F-7-85

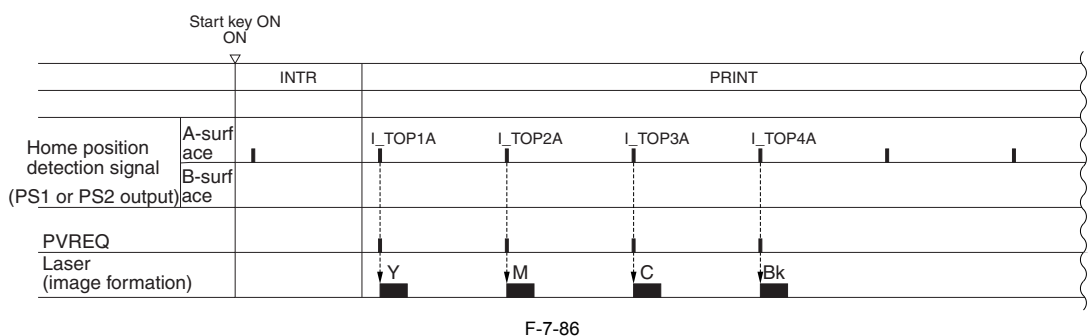
- [1] ITB
- [2] Reflecting surface
- [3] Side driver PCB
- PS1: ITB home position sensor A
- PS2: ITB home position sensor B
- DC-CON: DC controller

MEMO:
 A-surface home position (I_TOPIA) is the signal to form images by one surface on the ITB.
 B-surface home position (I_TOPIB) is the signal to form images by two surfaces on the ITB.
 The DC controller determines the first sensor output (PS1 or PS2) that detects the reflecting surface on the ITB after receiving the print instruction as A-surface home position.
 It then assumes the point reached a specific period of time after side A home position to be side B home position.

The following are the timing of image forming for each print mode.

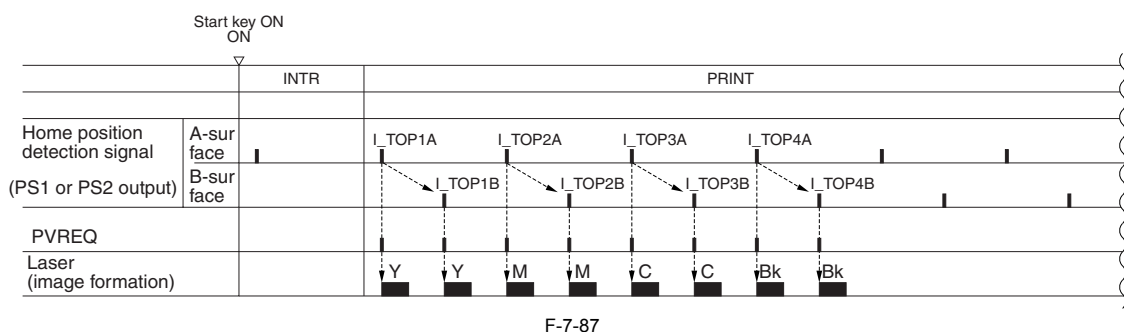
1. Full-color one-sheet print

PVREQ signal (image demanding signal) for each color is produced based on A-surface ITB home position detection signal (I_TOPIA). The image is formed based on this PVREQ signal.



2. Full-Color 2-Sheet Continuous Printing (2-image printing) (See after-mentioned note)

PVREQ signal (image demanding signal) for each color is produced based on the A-surface ITB home position detection signal (I_TOP1A) and the B-surface ITB home position detection signal (I_TOP1B). The image is formed at constant speed based on this PVREQ signal. The image is formed in order based on I_TOP1A for the first surface, I_TOP1B for the second surface.

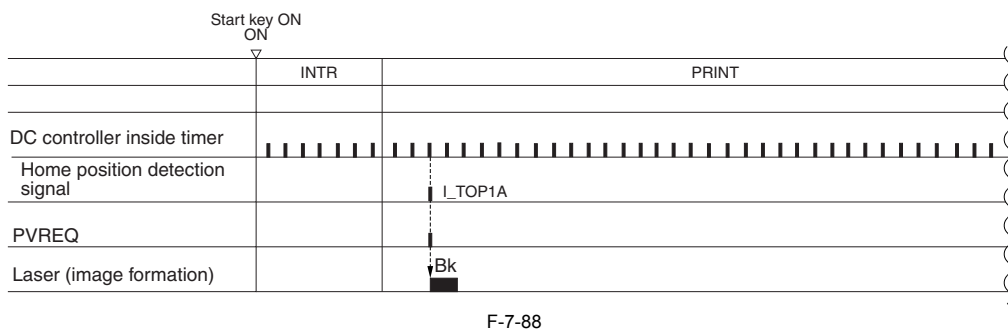


2-image printing is the print with image forming by 2 surfaces on the ITB. 2-image printing is available for up to LTR size (sub scanning direction) that is equivalent to the interval between two home position detection signals.

3. Monochrome Continuous Printing

The image forming position on the ITB is arbitrary because the monochrome printing has single color. The DC controller does not perform the ITB home position detection at monochrome printing.

After determining the home position by the timer inside the DC controller, PVREQ signal (image demanding signal) is produced. The image is formed based on this PVREQ signal.



Related Error Code

E070 (ITB HP detection fault error)

xx=01: ITB home position sensor B, xx=02: ITB home position sensor A, only at ITB 1/1 speed, XX=00: No discrimination

00xx: When ITB HP is not detected after the specified period of time passed, there is an error of ITB home position detection sensor

01xx: When the time from the detection of ITB HP to the detection of the next HP is less than the specified time (884msec or less)

02xx: When the time from the detection of ITB HP to the detection of the next HP is more than the specified time (939msec or more)

03xx: ITB HP was not detected only once. ITB home position sensor A/B should have detected alternately, however, the same HP were continuously detected.

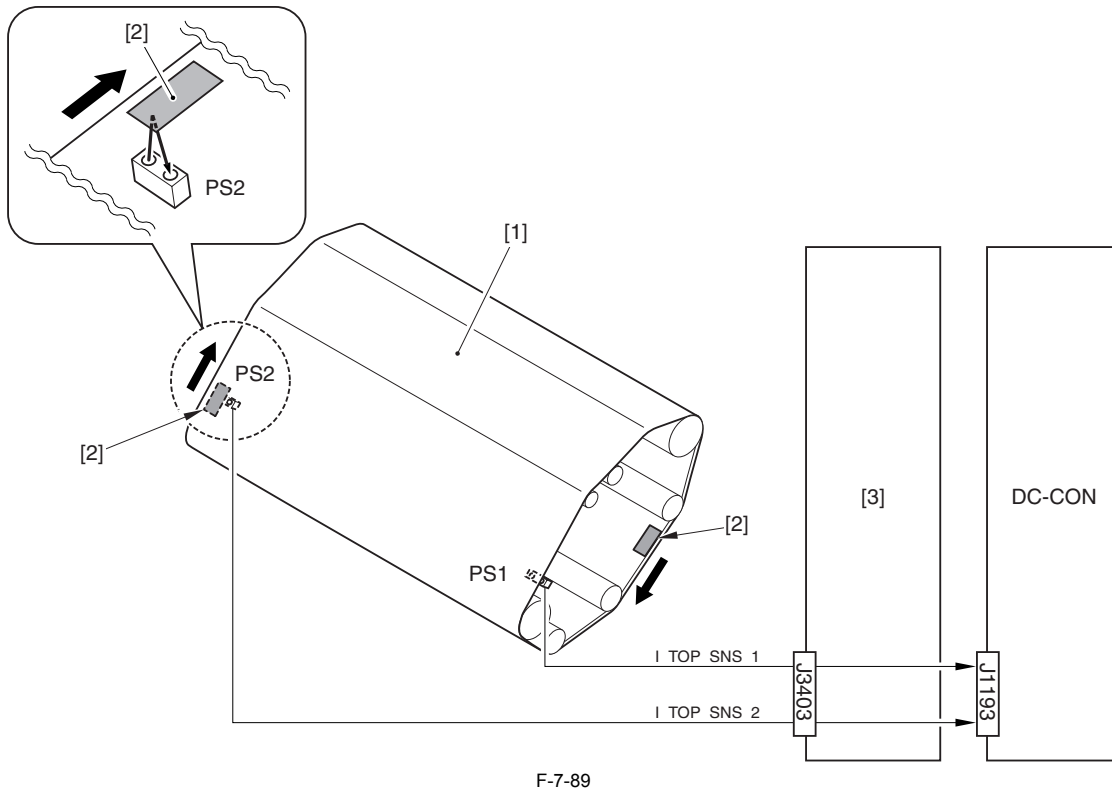
7.9.11 ITB Home Position Detection

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine detects the ITB home position to adjust the reading position of the image.

The ITB home position sensor (PS1, PSS2) detects the home position detection surface (two reflecting surfaces) prepared at the end of the ITB to detect the home position. The following is the operation procedure.

- 1) When receiving the print instruction, the DC controller turns the ITB. When detecting the reflecting surfaces, PS1 and PS2 send the home position detection signal respectively (I_TOP_SNS_A, I_TOP_SNS_B) to the DC controller via the side driver PCB.
- 2) The DC controller determines the sensor detection signal that was first input as the home position (see REMARK) (I_TOPIA), and counts the home position each time the next reflection surface is detected, such as I_TOP2A, I_TOP3A, I_TOP4A.
- 3) For 5 full color print, the DC controller produces sub scanning synchronized signal (PVREQ) 5 times based on this signal, send them to the main controller. After that, the DC controller receives the video data for each color 5 times from the main controller and forms the toner image for each color in order on the specified position on the ITB.



F-7-89

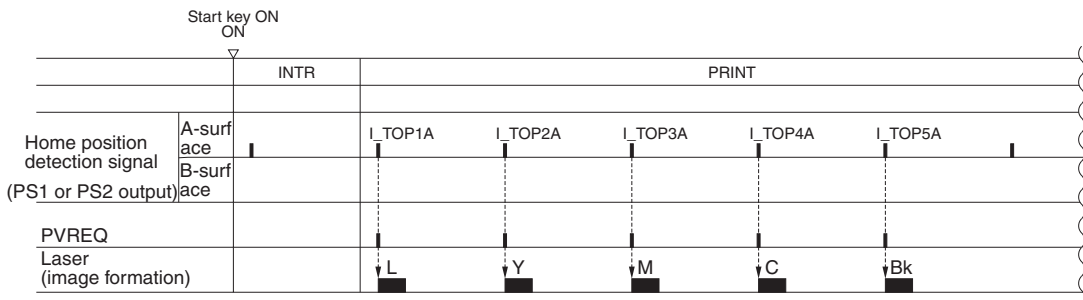
- [1] ITB
- [2] Reflecting surface
- [3] Side driver PCB
- PS1: ITB home position sensor A
- PS2: ITB home position sensor B
- DC-CON: DC controller

MEMO:
 A-surface home position (I_TOP1A) is the signal to form images by one surface on the ITB.
 B-surface home position (I_TOP1B) is the signal to form images by two surfaces on the ITB.
 The DC controller determines the first sensor output (PS1 or PS2) that detects the reflecting surface on the ITB after receiving the print instruction as A-surface home position.
 It then assumes the point reached a specific period of time after side A home position to be side B home position.

The following are the timing of image forming for each print mode.

1.5 Full-color one-sheet print

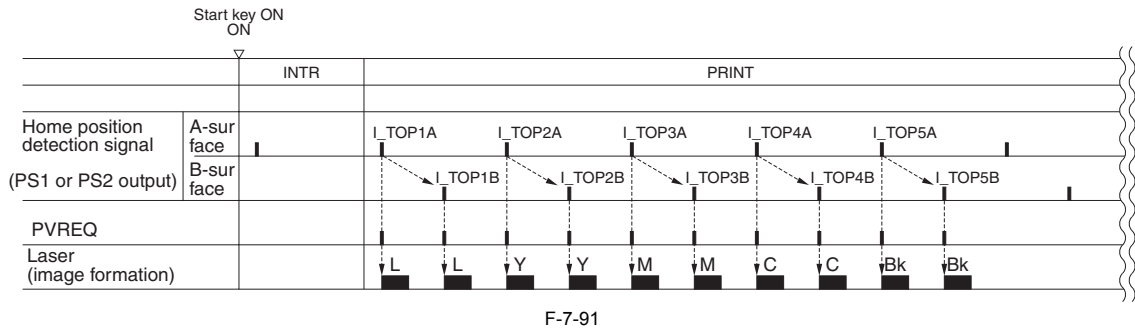
PVREQ signal (image demanding signal) for each color is produced based on A-surface ITB home position detection signal (I_TOP1A). The image is formed based on this PVREQ signal.



F-7-90

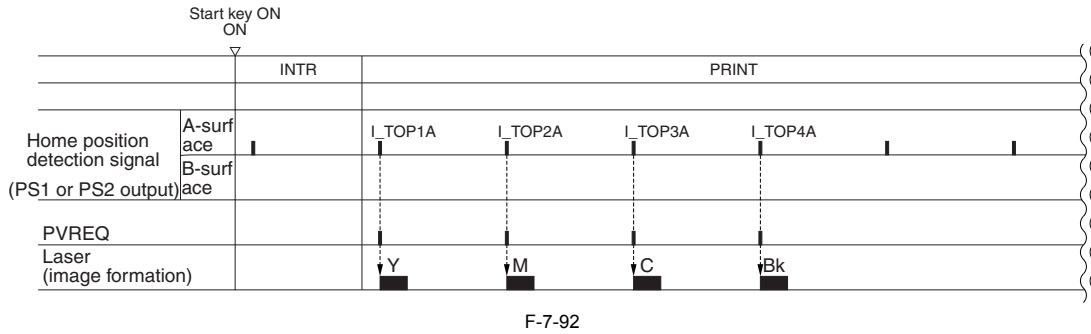
2.5 Full-Color 2-Sheet Continuous Printing (2-image printing) (See after-mentioned note)

PVREQ signal (image demanding signal) for each color is produced based on the A-surface ITB home position detection signal (I_TOP1A) and the B-surface ITB home position detection signal (I_TOP1B). The image is formed at constant speed based on this PVREQ signal. The image is formed in order based on I_TOP1A for the first surface, I_TOP1B for the second surface.



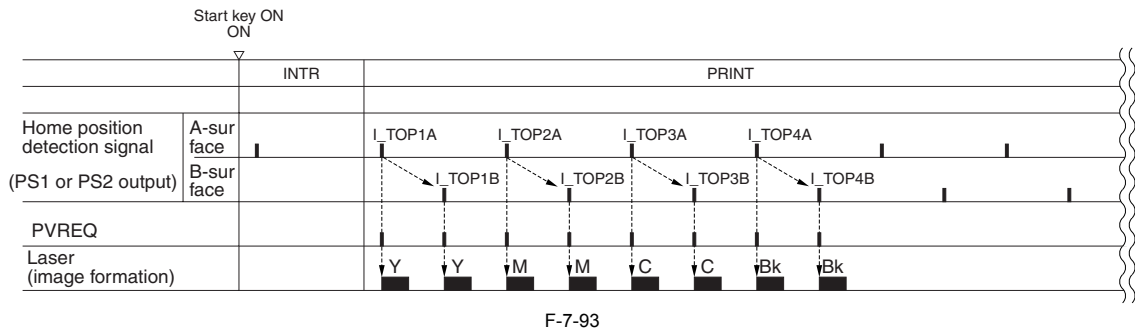
3. Full-color one-sheet print

PVREQ signal (image demanding signal) for each color is produced based on the A-surface ITB home position detection signal (I_TOP1A). The image is formed based on this PVREQ signal.



4. Full-Color 2-Sheet Continuous Printing (2-image printing) (See after-mentioned note)

PVREQ signal (image demanding signal) for each color is produced based on the A-surface ITB home position detection signal (I_TOP1A) and the B-surface ITB home position detection signal (I_TOP1B). The image is formed at constant speed based on this PVREQ signal. The image is formed in order based on I_TOP1A for the first surface, I_TOP1B for the second surface.

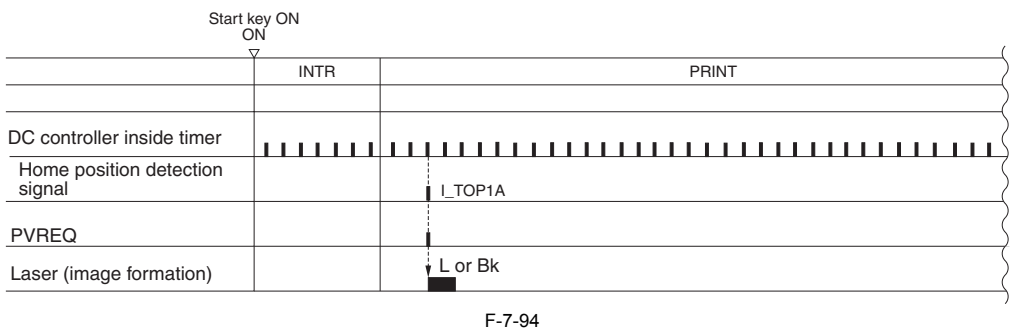


2-image printing is the print with image forming by 2 surfaces on the ITB. 2-image printing is available for up to LTR size (sub scanning direction) that is equivalent to the interval between two home position detection signals.

5. Monocolor Continuous Printing

The image forming position on the ITB is arbitrary because the monocolored printing has single color. The DC controller does not perform the ITB home position detection at monocolored printing.

After determining the home position by the timer inside the DC controller, PVREQ signal (image demanding signal) is produced. The image is formed based on this PVREQ signal.



Related Error Code

E070 (ITB HP detection fault error)

xx=01: ITB home position sensor B, xx=02: ITB home position sensor A, only at ITB 1/1 speed, XX=00: No discrimination
 00xx: When ITB HP is not detected after the specified period of time passed, there is an error of ITB home position detection sensor

01xx: When the time from the detection of ITB HP to the detection of the next HP is less than the specified time (884msec or less)

02xx: When the time from the detection of ITB HP to the detection of the next HP is more than the specified time (939msec or more)

03xx: ITB HP was not detected only once. ITB home position sensor A/B should have detected alternately, however, the same HP were continuously detected.

7.10 Photosensitive Drum Cleaning

7.10.1 Overview of Drum Cleaning Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

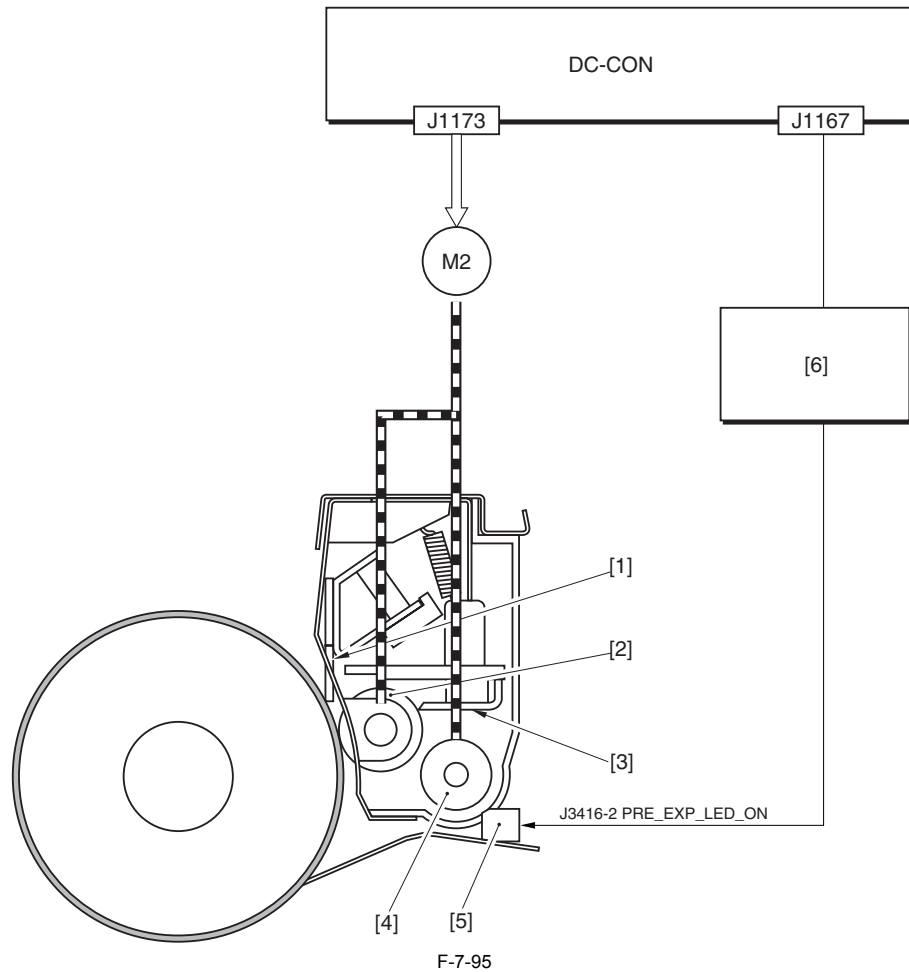
The drum cleaning unit is placed at the side of the photosensitive drum inside the process unit. It has the function of collecting the residual toner on the photosensitive drum.

This unit is composed of five parts. It cleans the photosensitive drum to be ready for the next print.

The residual toner collected by the brush roller and the cleaning blade is scraped by the scraper on the brush roller, collected by the waste toner feed screw into the waste toner case at the back of the machine.

These driving loads are controlled by the DC controller and transmitted by turning ON ITB/drum motor (M2).

The cleaning pre-conditioning LED turns on at the same time.



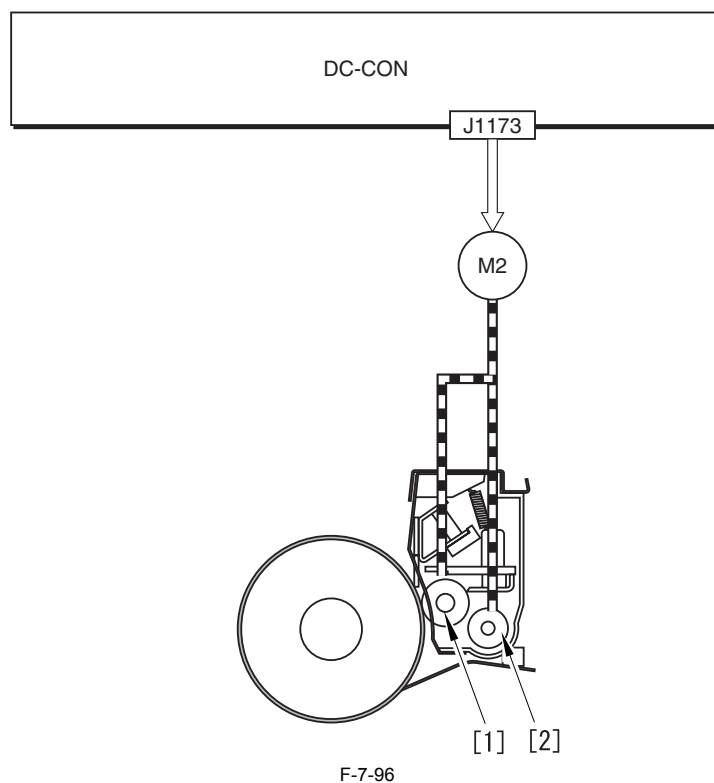
- [1] Cleaning blade
- [2] Brush roller
- [3] Scraper
- [4] Waste toner feed screw
- [5] Drum cleaning pre-conditioning LED
- [6] Side driver PCB

7.10.2 Drum Cleaning Unit Drive Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The drum cleaning unit has two parts for activating load.

These driving loads are controlled by the DC controller, transmitted by turning ON ITB/drum moto



- [1] Brush roller
- [2] Waste toner feed screw
- M2: ITB/drum motor
- DC-CON: DC controller

7.11 Waste Toner Collection Mechanism

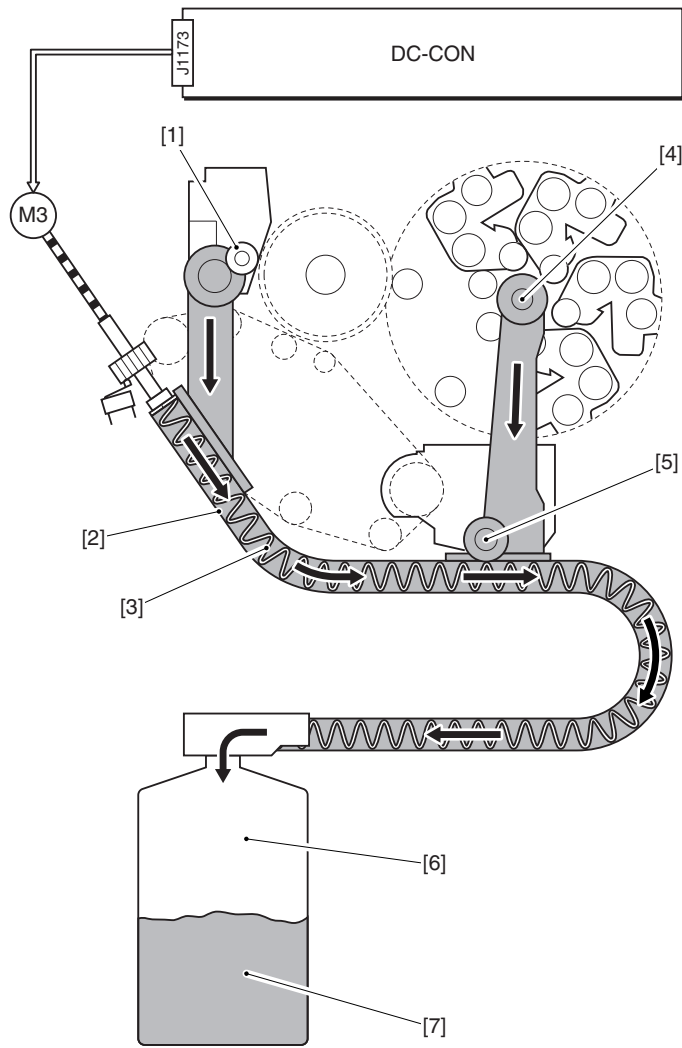
7.11.1 Collecting Waste Toner

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine collects the waste toner discharged from the outlets of three image forming units (drum cleaning unit, toner developing assembly, ITB cleaning unit) into the waste toner bottle.

The DC controller activates the developing motor (M3) to rotate the screw inside the waste toner pipe and transfer the waste toner.

The waste toner pipe is connected with the toner exhaust outlets. Waste toner is transferred by the M3 drive to the waste toner bottle in order via the waste toner pipe.



< Back of the machine >
F-7-97

- [1] Drum cleaning unit exhaust outlet
- [2] Waste toner tube
- [3] Waste toner screw
- [4] Developing assembly exhaust outlet
- [5] ITB cleaning unit exhaust outlet
- [6] Waste toner bottle
- [7] Waste toner
- M3: Developing motor
- DC-CON: DC controller

7.11.2 Waste Toner Full Detection

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine performs the following two detections to detect the waste toner level collected into the waste toner bottle.

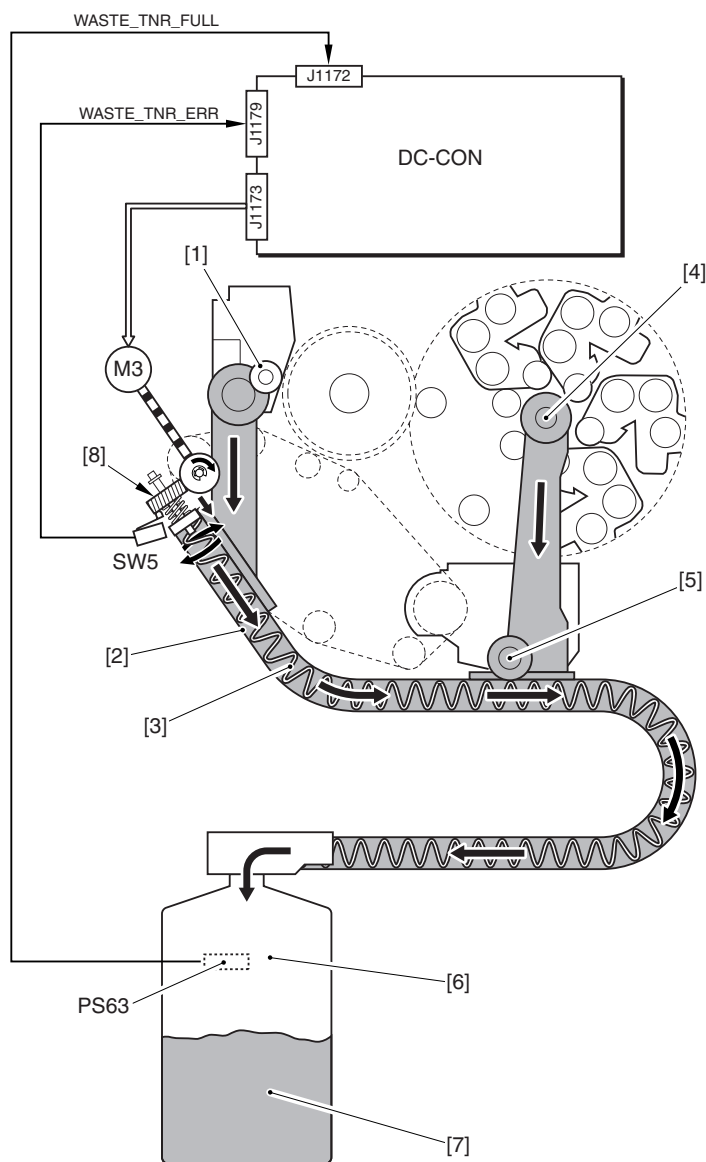
- Detection by the magnetic sensor
- Detection by the waste toner counter

The DC controller refers to these detection results for each print at power ON and opening/closing the front door. When the waste toner level exceeds the specified value, the DC controller sends two kinds of messages (full with waste toner alarm, full with waste toner) to the main controller. The following are the display messages and the waste toner level.

T-7-17

Message	Description	Waste toner level	By which tool
Waste toner full alarm	'Full with waste toner'	80%	Magnetic sensor
Waste toner full	'Service error display' *1	100%	Waste toner counter

*1: When the waste toner level is full, it should be judged as error. See the related error code for details.



< Back of the machine >

F-7-98

- [1] Drum cleaning unit exhaust outlet
- [2] Waste toner tube
- [3] Waste toner screw
- [4] Toner developing assembly exhaust outlet
- [5] ITB cleaning unit exhaust outlet
- [6] Waste toner bottle
- [7] Waste toner
- [8] Waste toner screw drive gear
- M3: Developing motor
- SW5: Waste toner lock detection switch
- PS63: Full waste toner sensor (magnetic sensor)
- DC-CON: DC controller

The following are the detailed explanation for each detection.

Detection by magnetic sensor

The magnetic sensor (PS63) installed at the back of the waste toner bottle detects the waste toner level. This detection is performed when the waste toner level is 0 to 80%. The detection results are sent to the DC controller.

When the waste toner level reaches 80%, the DC controller notices the full waste toner alarm to the main controller.

Memo:

The magnetic sensor changes the output due to the carrier level in the waste toner to detect the magnetic substance.

The DC controller judges from the change of the sensor output that 80% of waste toner is collected into the waste toner bottle.

This machine does not have the function of detecting presence/absence of the waste toner bottle.



At alarming the full waste toner, printing can be continued in this machine.

Detection by the waste toner counter

The waste toner level collected into the waste toner bottle is calculated based on the image data sent from the main controller.

This detection is performed when the waste toner level is 80% or more (after alarming full waste toner). The detection results are sent to the DC controller. When the waste toner level reaches 100%, the DC controller notices the full waste toner to the main controller.



This machine is stopped at full waste toner.

The number of sheets available for printing from the full waste toner alarm to the machine stop is as follows.

- 6,000 sheets: Calculated for small-size, image ratio 1% document (large size: 3,000 sheets)
- 2,500 sheets: Calculated for small-size, image ratio 5% document (large size: 1,250 sheets)
- 1,250 sheets: Calculated for small-size, image ratio 10% document (large size: 625 sheets)

These are the targets. The values vary due to the usage of this machine.

Related Error Code

E013-0001 (Full waste toner error)

When the value of the soft counter exceeds the specified value

E013-0002 (Waste toner screw lock error)

When the output of the waste toner lock detection switch (SW5) becomes '1' for 1 sec or more.

In the case that the waste toner screw does not rotate after activating the developing motor (M3), the waste toner screw drive gear is pushed in the direction of the arrow and SW5 is turned ON.



(1) The soft counter value of the waste toner can be checked and cleared by the following service mode.

COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>WST-TN-CLR

(2) The display timing of the waste toner messages (full waste toner alarm, full waste toner) is not adjustable in this machine.

7.12 Drum Heater

7.12.1 Drum Heater Control

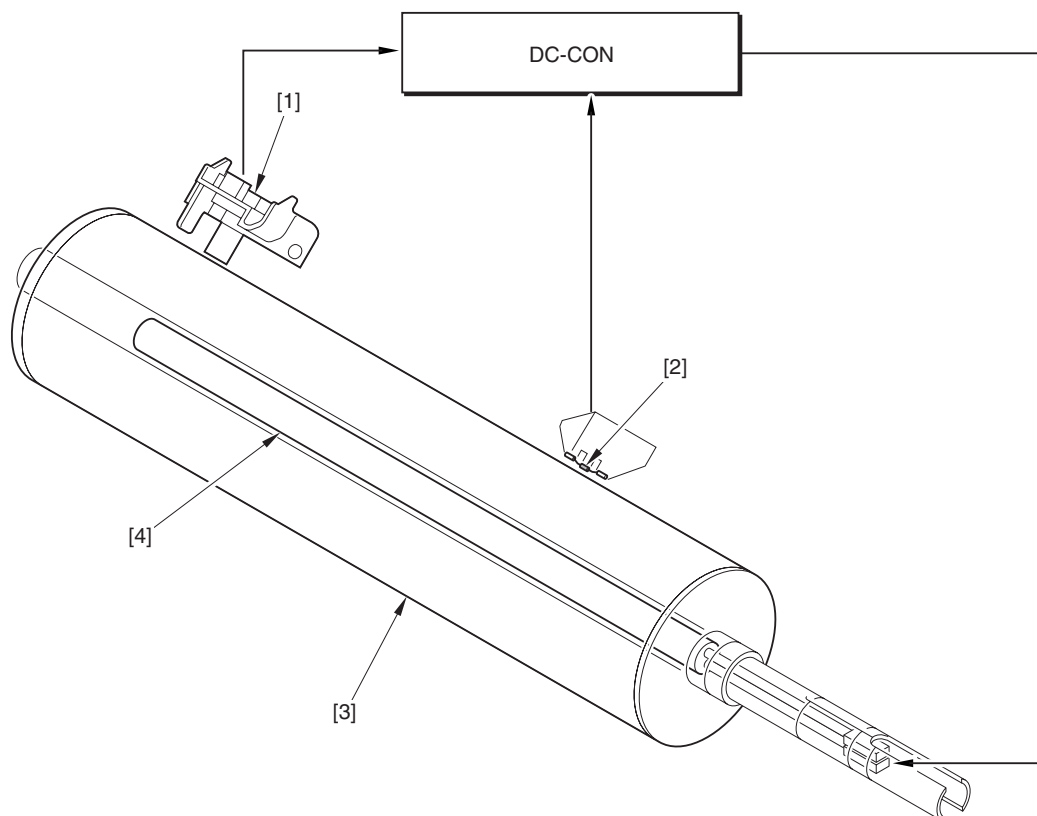
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The sensitivity of the photosensitive drum varies due to the installation environment (temperature, humidity). This machine has the drum heater inside of the drum axis to keep the drum surface temperature stable.

The function of thermo-sensor and thermistor

The dirt thermo-sensor recognizes the temperature as lower than the actual, causing the excessive activation of the heater and the temperature rise of the drum surface.

To prevent this, the thermistor turns OFF the heater when detecting the upper limit of temperature.



F-7-99

- [1] Thermo-sensor
- [2] Thermistor
- [3] Photosensitive drum
- [4] Drum heater

The drum heater control is activated by turning ON the environmental switch on the inside left side of the machine regardless of whether the main switch is turned on or off.

Temperature control by the thermo-sensor (32 deg C/42 deg C) is possible by switching the drum temperature switch.

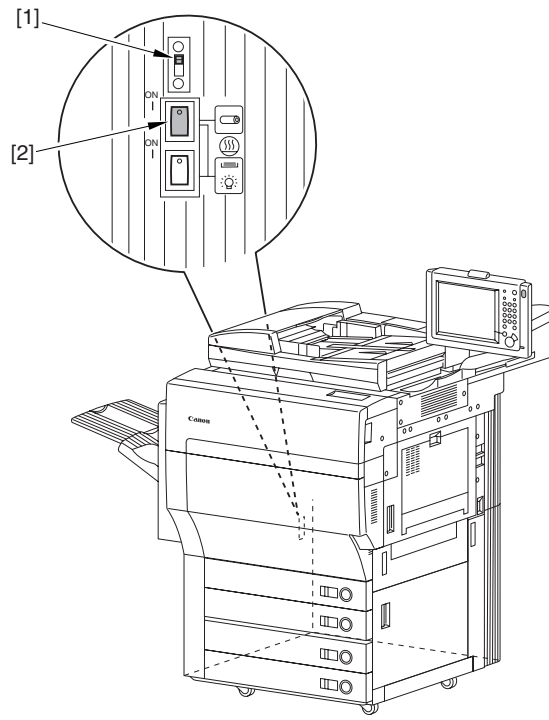
The timing of switching is determined by the absolute water level inside the machine.

Memo:

Switch the drum temperature switch to the lower side ('H') for high-humidity environment.

Whether the environment is under high humidity or not is judged by the absolute water level inside the machine at service mode.

When the value of COPIER>DISPLAY>ANALOG>ABS-HUM is 10g or more.



F-7-100

- [1] Drum temperature switch
- [2] Environmental switch

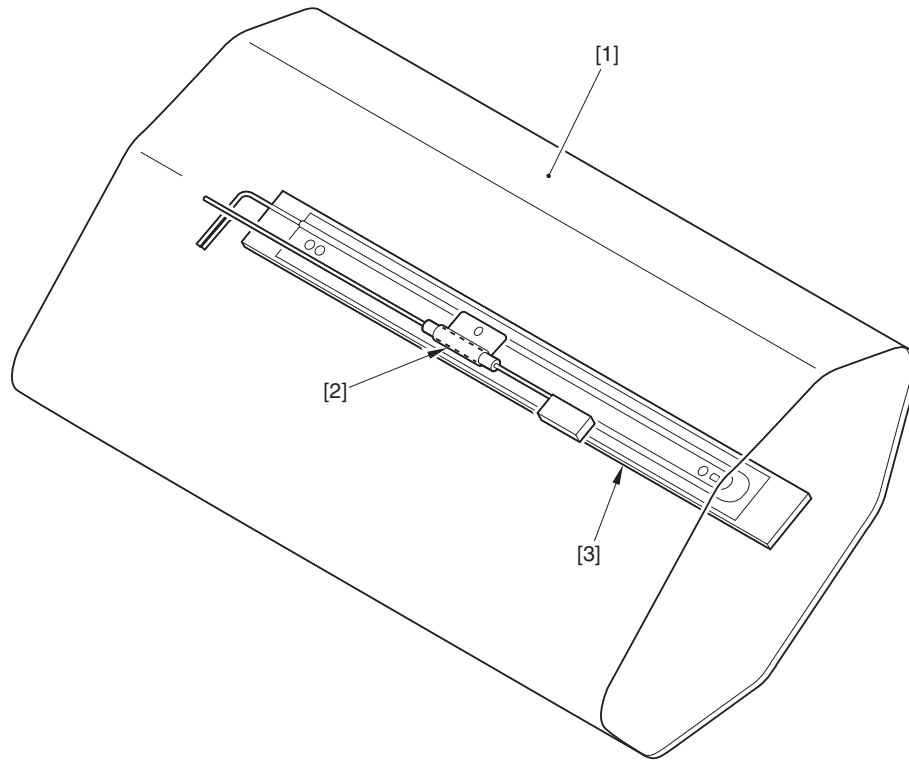
7.13 ITB Heater

7.13.1 ITB Heater Control

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine has ITB heater inside ITB to prevent the temperature reduction of the drum surface. The thermal reed switch inside the ITB constantly measures the ITB temperature. ITB temperature is controlled by repeating ON/OFF of the ITB heater.

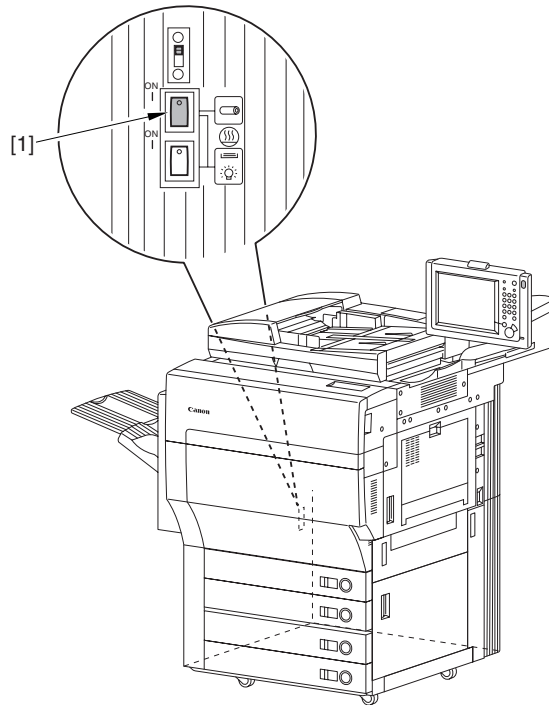
Memo:
When ITB temperature is low at printing etc., ITB absorb the heat of the photosensitive drum to reduce the drum temperature. ITB heater keeps the fixed temperature (45 deg C) and prevents the reduction of the temperature of the drum surface.
The thermal reed switch on the ITB heater detects ON/OFF of the ITB heater.



F-7-101

- [1] ITB
- [2] Thermal reed switch
- [3] ITB heater

ITB heater control is activated by turning ON the environmental switch on the inside left side of the machine when the main switch is ON and also OFF.



F-7-102

- [1] Environmental switch

Reference

The thermistor for the temperature is used. Then the temperature of ITB heater is not adjustable. The temperature of the ITB heater cannot be checked by the service mode.

7.14 Parts Replacement Procedure

7.14.1 Process Unit

7.14.1.1 Preparation for Sliding the Processing Unit

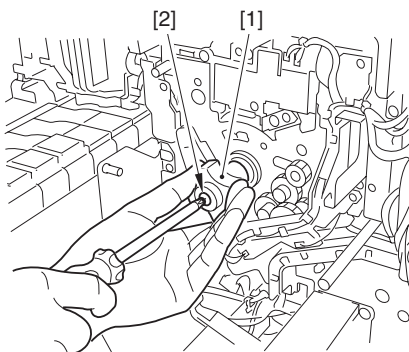
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the processing unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.

7.14.1.2 Sliding the Processing Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

- 1) Remove the drum fixing mount [1].
- 1 screw [2]

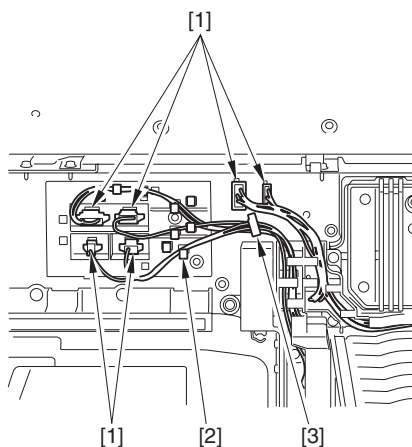


F-7-103

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Drum Fixtures

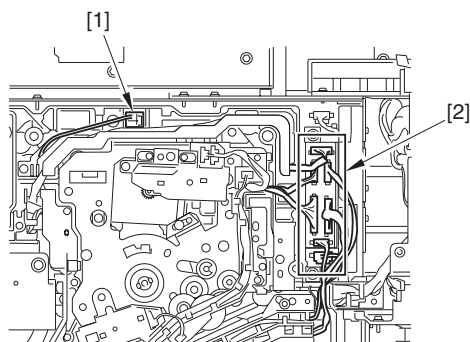
When attaching the drum fixtures, be sure not to rotate the drum clockwise. If the drum is rotated clockwise, which is the reverse of its normal direction, the scoop-up sheet may become soiled and toner may scatter.

- 2) Disconnect the 6 connectors [1], and remove the cable from the cable guide [2] and the clamp [3].



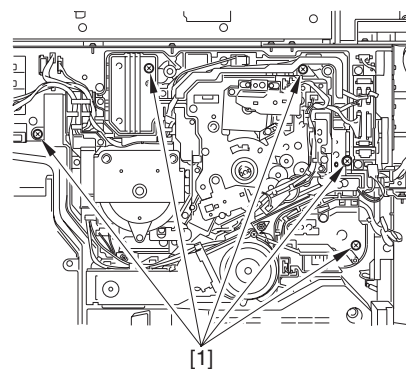
F-7-104

- 3) Disconnect the 1 connector [1] and the 7 connectors [2].



F-7-105

- 4) Remove the 5 screws [1].

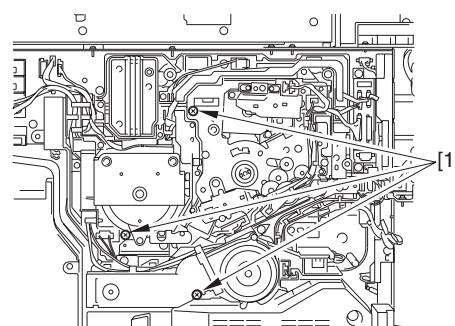


F-7-106

- 5) Loosen the 3 processing link shafts [1].

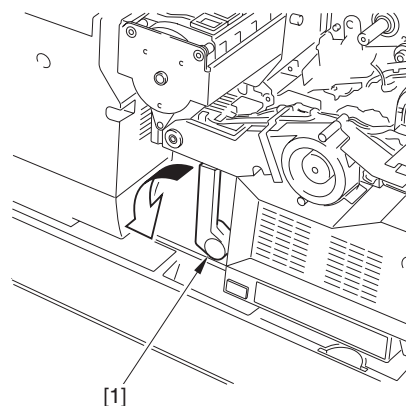


Check to see that processing link shafts can be moved back and front.



F-7-107

- 6) Bring down the fixing feeding release lever [1] in the direction below.

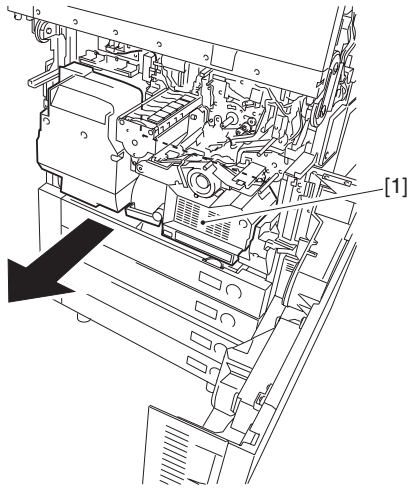


F-7-108

- 7) Slide the fixing feeding unit [1].

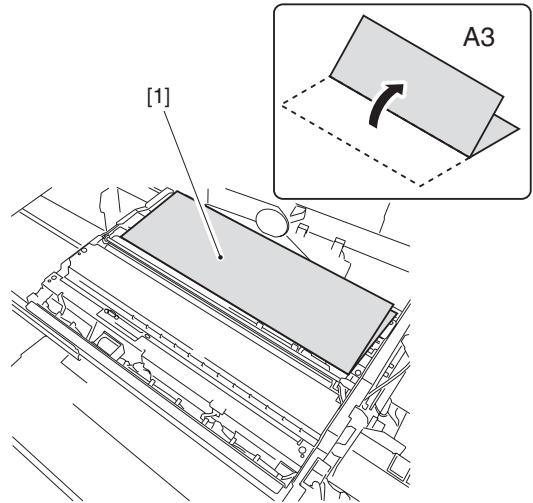


When sliding the fixing feeding unit, be sure to completely disconnect the connectors [1] in step 3.



F-7-109

8) Hold down the claw [1] and then slide the fixing feeding unit.

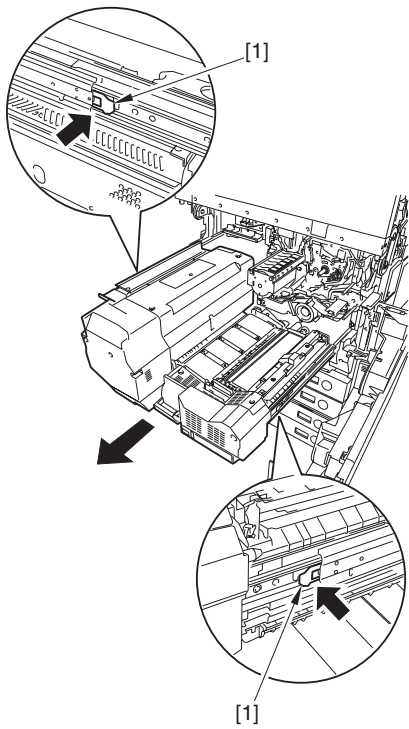


F-7-112

7.14.1.3 Sliding the Processing Unit

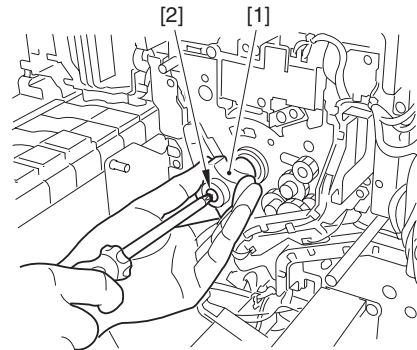
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the drum fixing mount [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-7-110

9) Slide the processing unit [1].

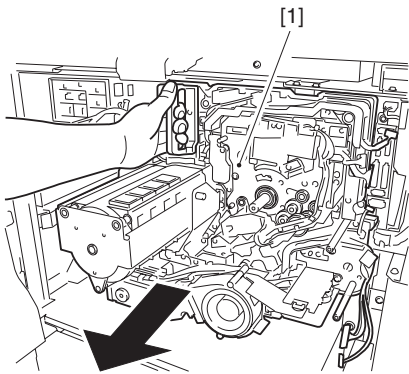


F-7-113

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Drum Fixtures

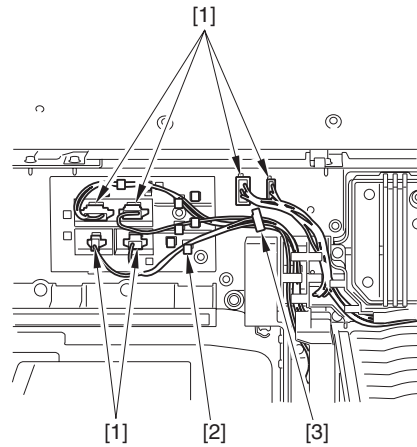
When attaching the drum fixtures, be sure not to rotate the drum clockwise. If the drum is rotated clockwise, which is the reverse of its normal direction, the scoop-up sheet may become soiled and toner may scatter.

- 2) Disconnect the 6 connectors [1], and remove the cable from the cable guide [2] and the clamp [3].



F-7-111

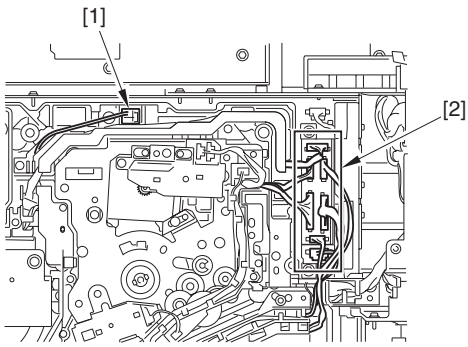
10) Place the A3 paper [1] onto the drum as shown in the figure.



F-7-114

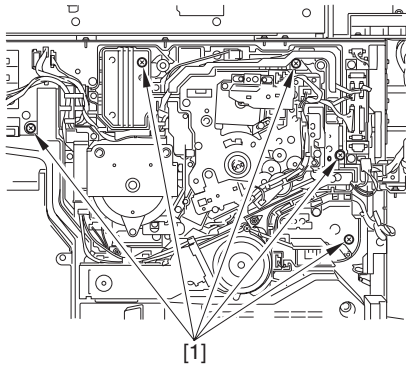
3) Disconnect the 1 connector [1] and the 7 connectors [2].

⚠ This is for the purpose of light shielding.



F-7-115

4) Remove the 5 screws [1].

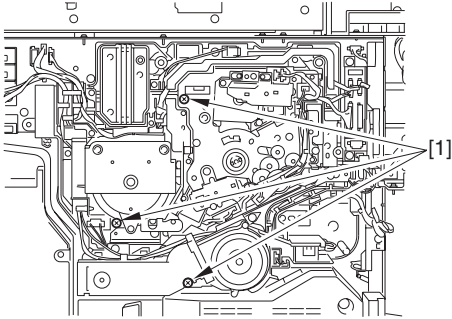


F-7-116

5) Loosen the 3 processing link shafts [1].

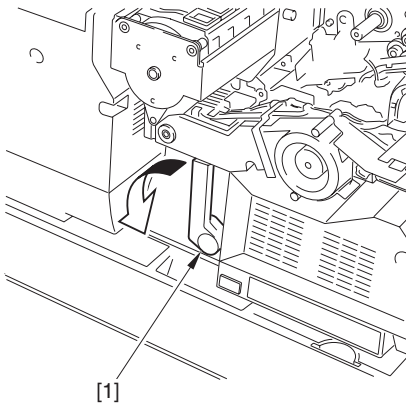


Check to see that processing link shafts can be moved back and front.



F-7-117

6) Bring down the fixing feeding release lever [1] in the direction below.

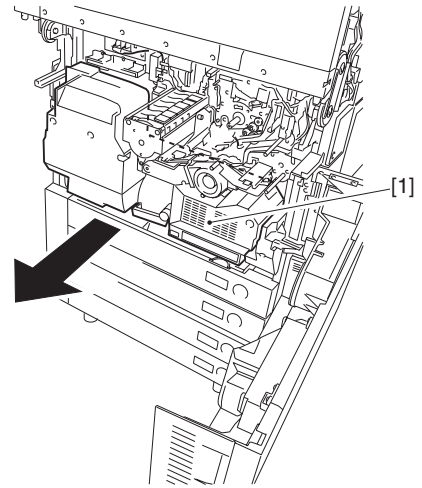


F-7-118

7) Slide the fixing feeding unit [1].

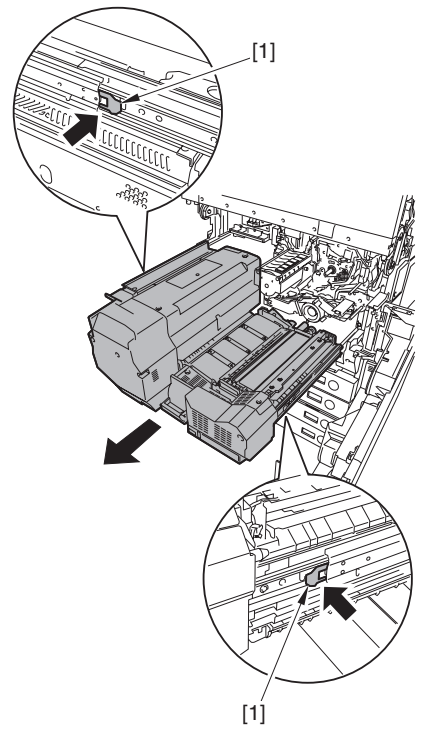


When sliding the fixing feeding unit, be sure to completely disconnect the connectors [1] in step 3.



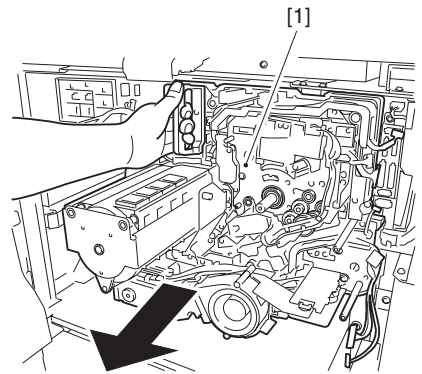
F-7-119

8) Hold down the claw [1] and then slide the fixing feeding unit.



F-7-120

9) Slide the processing unit [1].

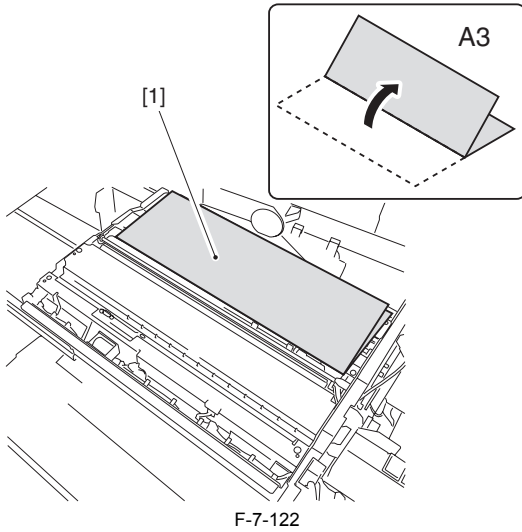


F-7-121

10) Place the A3 paper [1] onto the drum as shown in the figure.



This is for the purpose of light shielding.



F-7-122

7.14.2 Pre-exposure LED Array

7.14.2.1 Preparation for Removing the Pre-Exposure LED

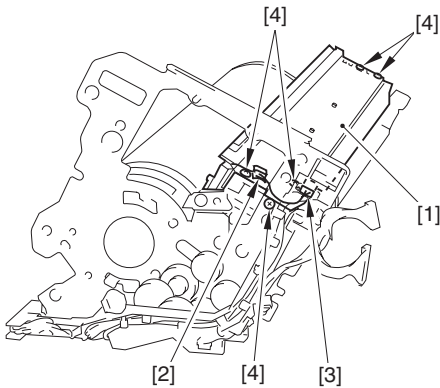
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the processing unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary corona assembly. (page 7-86)Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer corona assembly. (page 7-88)Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-89)Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]

7.14.2.2 Removing the Pre-Exposure LED unit

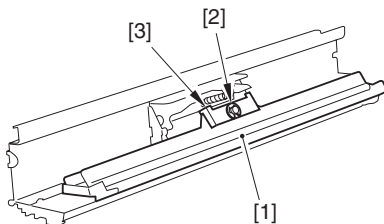
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the drum cleaner cover [1].
 - 1 wire saddle [2] (free the harness)
 - 1 connector [3]
 - 5 screws [4]



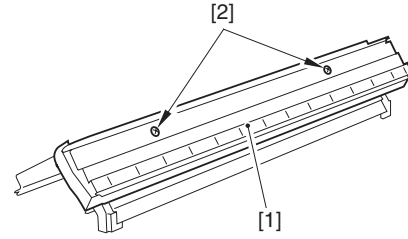
F-7-123

- 2) Remove the drum cleaning blade unit [1].
 - 1 E-ring [2]
 - 1 leaf spring [3]



F-7-124

- 3) Remove the pre-exposure LED unit [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



F-7-125

7.14.3 Preconditioning Exposure LED Unit

7.14.3.1 Preparation for Removing the Drum Cleaning Pre-Exposure LED Unit

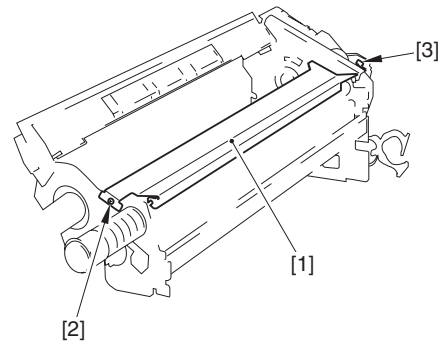
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the processing unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary corona assembly. (page 7-86)Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer corona assembly. (page 7-88)Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-89)Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]
- 7) Remove the photosensitive drum. (page 7-90)Reference [Removing the Photosensitive Drum]

7.14.3.2 Removing the Drum Cleaning Pre-Exposure LED Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the drum cleaning pre-exposure LED unit [1].
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 connector [3]



F-7-126

7.14.4 Primary Charging Assembly

7.14.4.1 Preparation for Removing the Primary Corona Assembly

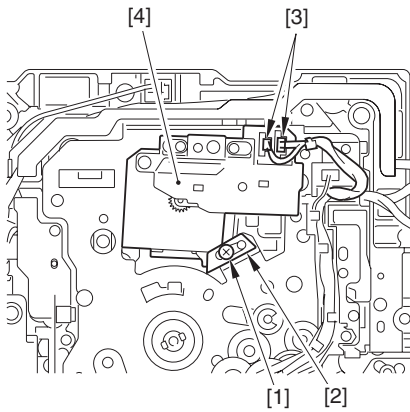
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the processing unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.

7.14.4.2 Removing the Primary Corona Assembly

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Loosen the screw [1], and shift the corona assembly mount [2] to the upper right. Then secure it in place by the screw.
- 2) Disconnect the 2 connectors [3] and then remove the primary corona assembly [4].

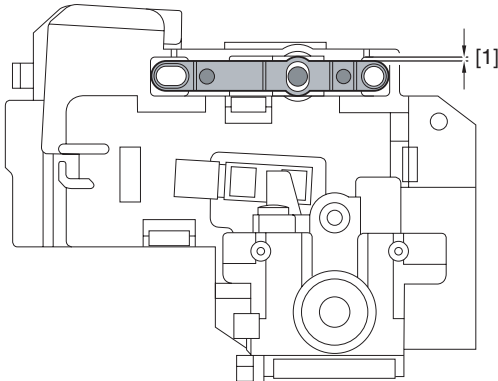


F-7-127

7.14.4.3 After Replacing the Primary Charging Assembly

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

When replacing the primary charging wire, measure the grid height of the charging assembly before replacing to check to see that the value is the same.



F-7-128

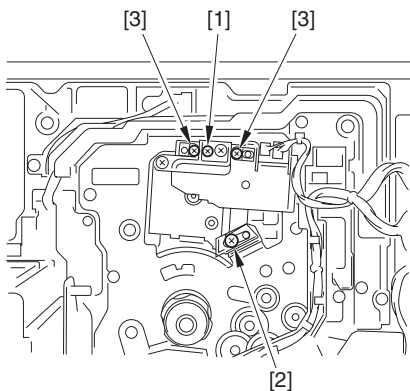
[1] Places to check (reference value: 1.0mm)

In case the measurement value is different, adjust the primary charging assembly grid following the procedures below:

- 1) Loosen the screw [2] and release the stop.
- 2) Loosen the 2 fixing screws [3] and then turn the adjusting screw [3] to adjust.

Reference:

- When moving the front side down, turn the adjusting screw clockwise.
- When moving the front side up, turn the adjusting screw counterclockwise.
- 1 turn of the adjusting screw changes the grid height by 0.35mm.



F-7-129

- 3) Execute the primary charging assembly cleaning from service mode.
(primary charging wire cleaning: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-CLN)
- 4) Select the service mode (execution of potential control: COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC) and then press [OK].
- 5) Turn OFF/ON the main power.

7.14.5 Primary Corona Grid Panel

7.14.5.1 Preparation for Removing the Primary Grid Plate

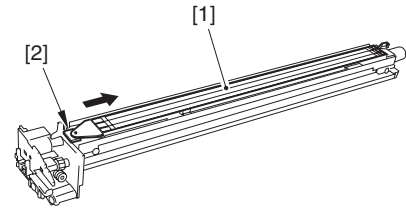
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the processing unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the Primary Corona Assembly. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]

7.14.5.2 Removing the Primary Grid Plate

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Hold down the grid plate mount block [2] in the direction shown by the arrow, and then remove the primary grid plate [1].



F-7-130

7.14.6 Primary Corona Pad Holder

7.14.6.1 Preparation for Removing the Primary Corona Pad Holder

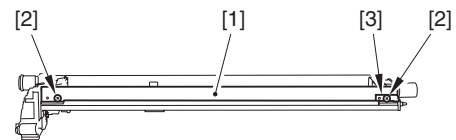
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the processing unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary corona assembly. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the primary grid plate. (page 7-87) Reference [Removing the Primary Grid Plate]

7.14.6.2 Removing the Primary Corona Assembly Pad Holder

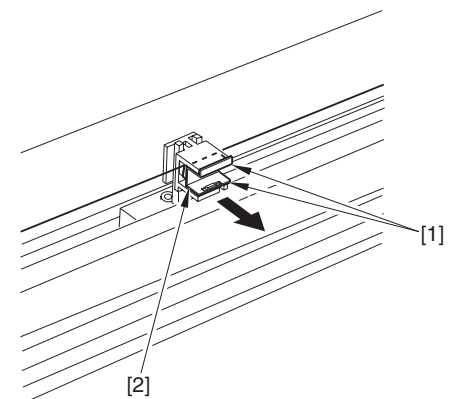
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the shielding plate [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 1 holder [3]



F-7-131

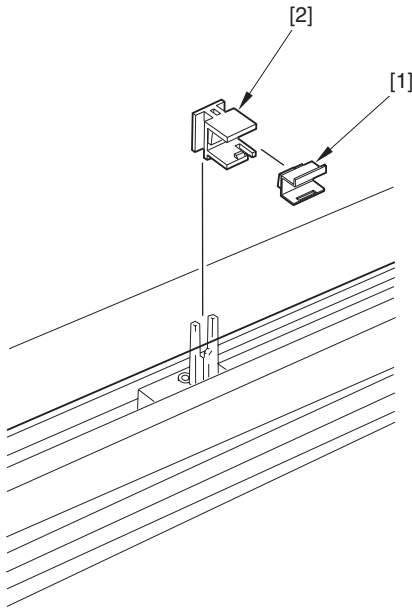
- 2) Pinch the hook [1] of the primary corona assembly pad holder to remove the primary corona assembly pad holder [2].



F-7-132

⚠ Points to Note when attaching the Primary Corona Assembly Pad Holder

When attaching the primary corona assembly slider [1] and the primary corona assembly pad holder [2], fit them in the direction shown by the figure below.



F-7-133

7.14.7 Primary Corona Slider

7.14.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Primary Corona Assembly Slider

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the processing unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary corona assembly. (page 7-86)Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the primary grid plate. (page 7-87)Reference [Removing the Primary Grid Plate]
- 6) Remove the primary corona assembly pad holder. (page 7-87)Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly Pad Holder]

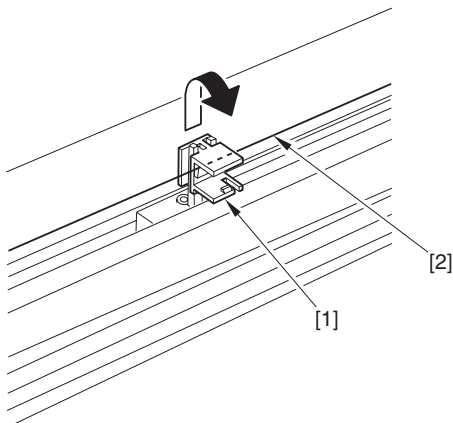
7.14.7.2 Removing the Primary Corona Assembly Slider

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Turn the primary corona assembly slider [1] in the direction shown by the arrow to remove it.



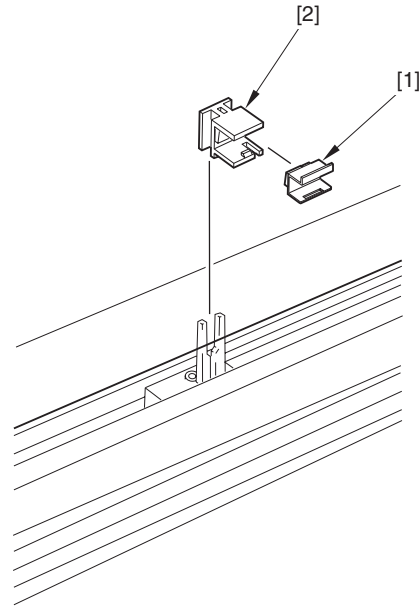
When removing, be sure not to cut the corona wire [2].



F-7-134

⚠ Points to Note when attaching the Primary Corona Assembly Slider

When attaching the primary corona assembly slider [1] and the primary corona assembly pad holder [2], fit them in the direction shown in the figure.



F-7-135

7.14.8 Pre-transfer Charging Assembly

7.14.8.1 Preparation for removing the Pre-transfer Corona Assembly

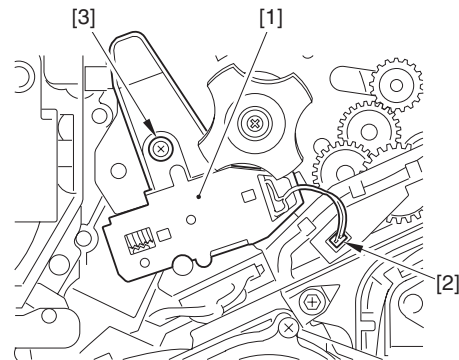
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the processing unit cover.

7.14.8.2 Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the pre-transfer corona assembly [1].
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 1 screw [3]



F-7-136

7.14.8.3 After Replacing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Execute the service mode (pre-transfer charging wire cleaning: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-CLN).

7.14.9 Pre-Transfer Corona Pad Holder

7.14.9.1 Preparation for Removing the Pre-transfer Corona Assembly Pad Holder

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / image-

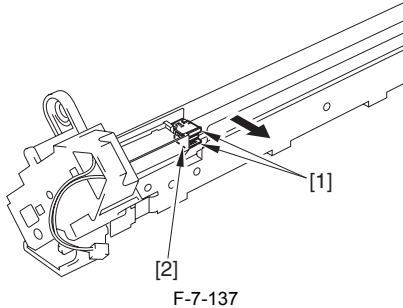
PRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the processing unit cover.
- 3) Remove the pre-transfer corona assembly. (page 7-88)Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]

7.14.9.2 Removing the Pre-transfer corona assembly pad folder

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

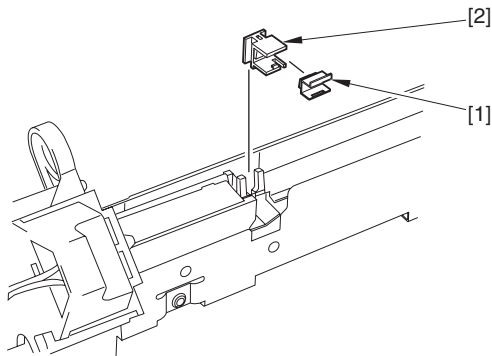
- 1) Pinch the hook [1] of the pre-transfer corona assembly pad holder to remove the pre-transfer corona assembly pad holder [2] in the direction shown by the arrow.



F-7-137

⚠ Points to Note when Attaching the Pre-transfer Corona Assembly Pad Holder

When attaching the pre-transfer corona assembly slider [1] and the pre-transfer corona assembly pad holder [2], fit them in the direction shown by the figure below.



F-7-138

7.14.10 Pre-Transfer Corona Slider

7.14.10.1 Preparation for Removing the Pre-transfer Corona Assembly Slider

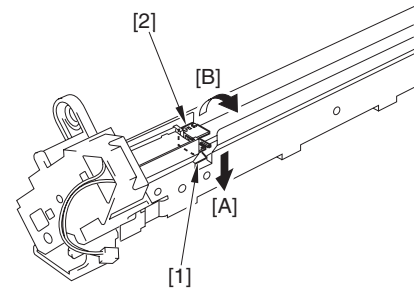
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the processing unit cover.
- 3) Remove the pre-transfer corona assembly. (page 7-88)Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 4) Remove the pre-transfer corona assembly pad holder. (page 7-89)Reference [Removing the Pre-transfer corona assembly pad folder]

7.14.10.2 Removing the Pre-transfer Corona Assembly Slider

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

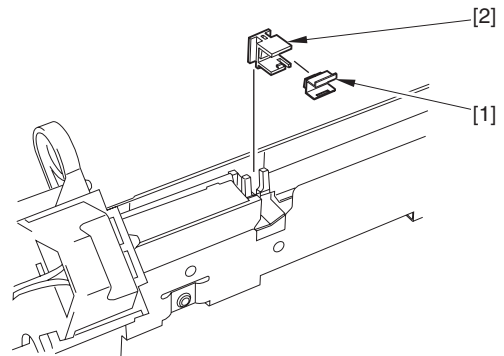
- 1) Slide the pre-transfer corona assembly slider hook [1] in the direction shown by the arrow [A] (Be careful not to get the corona wire stuck on) and then turn the pre-transfer corona assembly slider [2] in the direction shown by the arrow [B].



F-7-139

⚠ Points to Note when Attaching the Pre-transfer Corona Assembly Slider

When attaching the pre-transfer corona assembly slider [1] and the pre-transfer corona assembly pad holder [2], fit them in the direction shown by the figure below.



F-7-140

7.14.11 Drum Unit

7.14.11.1 Preparation for Removing the Drum Unit

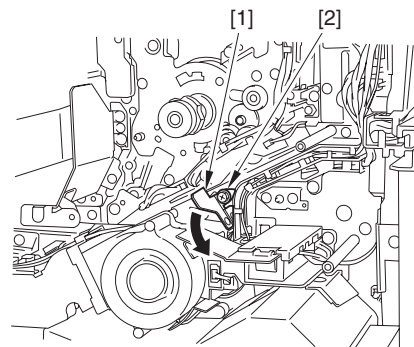
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the processing unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary corona assembly. (page 7-86)Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer corona assembly. (page 7-88)Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]

7.14.11.2 Removing the Drum Unit

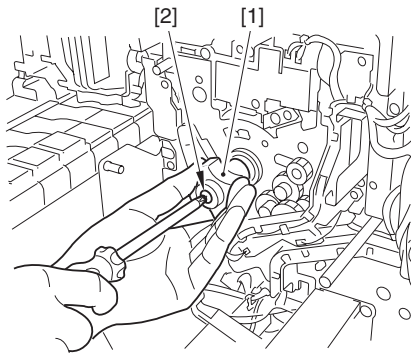
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Turn the primary transfer pressure lever [1] down.
 - 1 screw [2]



F-7-141

- 2) Remove the drum fixing parts [1].
 - 1 screw [2]

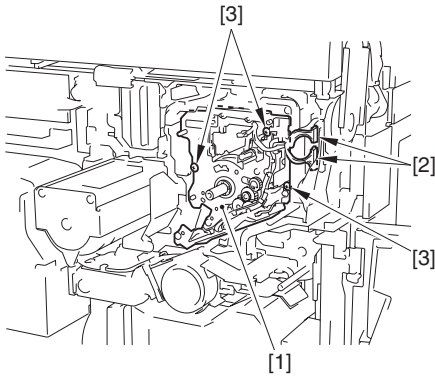


F-7-142

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Drum Fixtures

When attaching the drum fixtures, be sure not to rotate the drum clockwise. If the drum is rotated clockwise, which is the reverse of its normal direction, the scoop-up sheet may become soiled and toner may scatter.

- 3) Remove the drum unit [1].
 - 2 connectors [2]
 - 3 screws [3]



F-7-143

7.14.12 Photosensitive Drum

7.14.12.1 Points to Note When Handling the Photosensitive Drum

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The high-sensitivity amorphous silicon drum is employed for this machine. If there are some mistakes when handling the process unit and the photosensitive drum, the sensitivity of the photosensitive drum deteriorates. When handling the process unit or photosensitive drum, be careful to keep the following points.

- 1) When detaching the process unit, keep the photosensitive drum from the light. The method of light-blocking is either covering the photosensitive drum protective sheet, or wrapping six sheets or more of A3 paper around it.
- 2) Do not leave the process unit and photosensitive drum exposed to the sun, for example near the window.
- 3) Do not store them in any place where it will be subjected to high temperature, high humidity, low temperature, low humidity, or where the temperature or humidity radically changes.
- 4) Do not store them in any place where there is much dust or full of ammonia gas/organic solvent.

In addition, keep these points also when handling all of the photosensitive drums.

7.14.12.2 Preparation for Removing the Photosensitive Drum

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

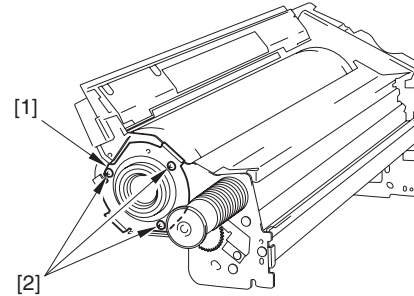
- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Remove the process unit cover.
- 3) Hold up the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary corona assembly. (page 7-86)Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]

- 5) Remove the pre-transfer corona assembly. (page 7-88)Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Detach the drum unit. (page 7-89)Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]

7.14.12.3 Removing the Photosensitive Drum

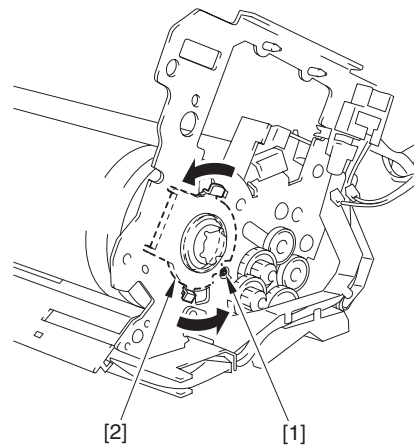
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the photosensitive rear fixing plate [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



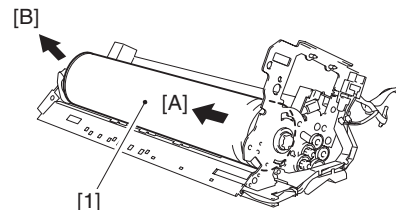
F-7-144

- 2) After pushing the drum holder pin [1], rotate the drum holder [2] in the direction of the arrow.



F-7-145

- 3) Move the photosensitive drum [1] in the direction of the arrow [A], detach it in the direction of the arrow [B].



F-7-146

⚠ Points to Note when Attaching the Photosensitive Drum

When attaching the photosensitive drum, be sure to do it while having it covered with the shielding sheet. Remove the shielding sheet after you finished attaching it.

7.14.12.4 After Replacing the Photosensitive Drum

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Follow the procedure below to replace the photosensitive drum.

- 1) Turn on the main power switch.
- 2) Select the following items in the Service Mode and then hit OK.
- 3) Run the service mode for drum replacement mode enforcement execution (COPIER > FUNCTION > DCP > DRM-RSET).
- 4) Run automatic gradation correction (full correction).

7.14.13 Seal Support Plate (Front)

7.14.13.1 Preparation for Removing the Seal Support Plate (Front)

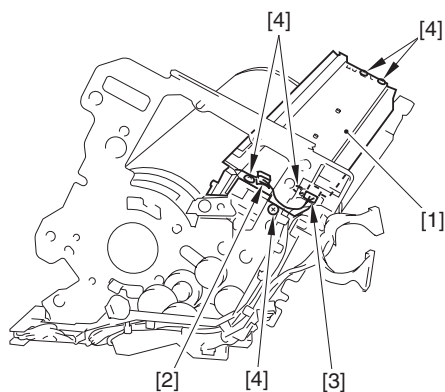
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Remove the process unit cover.
- 3) Hold up the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary corona assembly. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer corona assembly. (page 7-88) Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Detach the drum unit. (page 7-89) Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]
- 7) Remove the photosensitive drum. (page 7-90) Reference [Removing the Photosensitive Drum]
- 8) Detach the drum cleaning pre-exposure LED unit. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Drum Cleaning Pre-Exposure LED Unit]
- 9) Detach the scoop-up sheet support plate. (page 7-92) Reference [Removing the Scoop-Up Sheet Support Plate]

7.14.13.2 Removing the Seal Support Plate (Front)

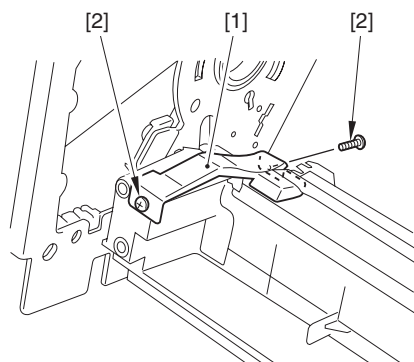
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the drum cleaner cover [1].
 - 1 wire saddle [2] (Remove the harness)
 - 1 connector [3]
 - 5 screws [4]



F-7-147

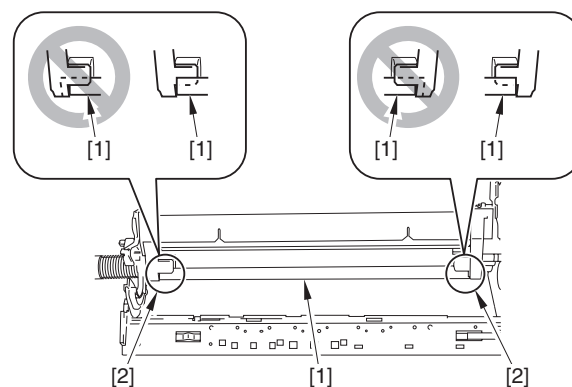
- 2) Detach the seal support plate (front).
 - 2 screws [2]



F-7-148

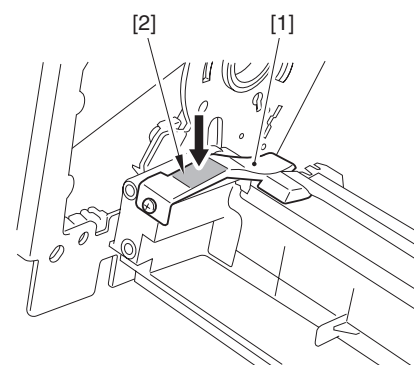
⚠ When Mounting the Seal Support Plate (Front/Rear)

- When mounting the seal support plate (front/rear), make the seal support plate [2] on the scoop-up sheet [1].



F-7-149

- When attaching the seal support plate (front) [1], be sure to support the area shown in [2] so that the seal support plate (front) is not tilted.



F-7-150

7.14.14 Seal Support Plate (Rear)

7.14.14.1 Preparation for Removing the Seal Support Plate (Rear)

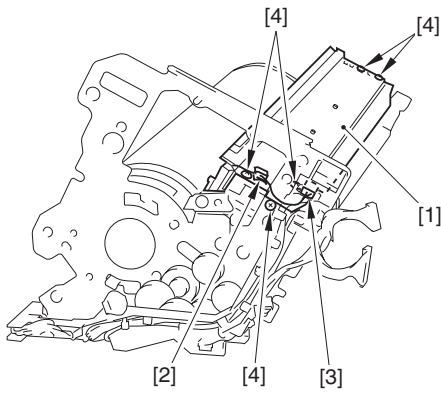
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Remove the process unit cover.
- 3) Hold up the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary corona assembly. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer corona assembly. (page 7-88) Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Detach the drum unit. (page 7-89) Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]
- 7) Detach the photosensitive drum. (page 7-90) Reference [Removing the Photosensitive Drum]
- 8) Detach the drum cleaning pre-exposure LED unit. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Drum Cleaning Pre-Exposure LED Unit]
- 9) Detach the scoop-up sheet support plate. (page 7-92) Reference [Removing the Scoop-Up Sheet Support Plate]

7.14.14.2 Removing the Seal Support Plate (Rear)

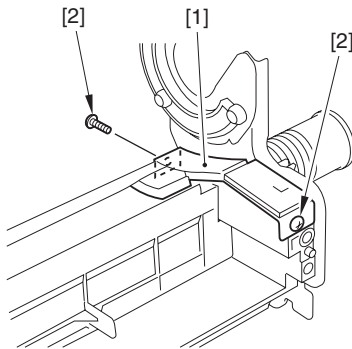
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the drum cleaner cover [1].
 - 1 wire saddle [2] (Remove the harness)
 - 1 connector [3]
 - 5 screws [4]



F-7-151

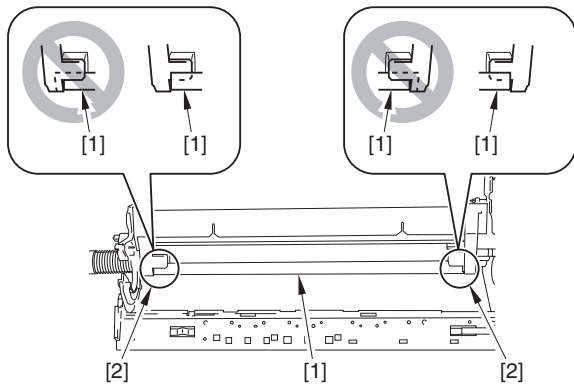
- 2) Detach the seal support plate (rear) [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-7-152

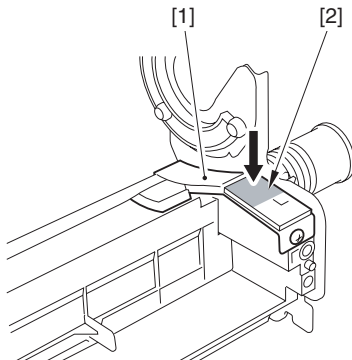
⚠ When Mounting the Seal Support Plate (Front/Rear)

- When mounting the seal support plate (front/rear), make the seal support plate [2] on the scoop-up sheet [1].



F-7-153

- When attaching the seal support plate (rear) [1], be sure to support the area shown in [2] so that the seal support plate (rear) is not tilted.



F-7-154

7.14.15 Scoop-Up Sheet Support Plate

7.14.15.1 Preparation for Removing the Scoop-Up Sheet Support Plate

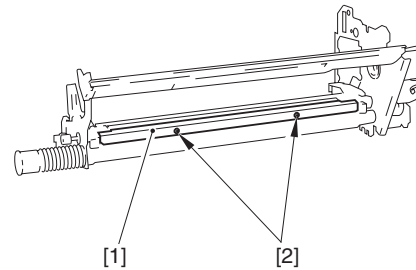
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Remove the process unit cover.
- 3) Hold up the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary corona assembly. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer corona assembly. (page 7-88) Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Detach the drum unit. (page 7-89) Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]
- 7) Detach the photosensitive drum. (page 7-90) Reference [Removing the Photosensitive Drum]
- 8) Detach the drum cleaning pre-exposure LED unit. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Drum Cleaning Pre-Exposure LED Unit]

7.14.15.2 Removing the Scoop-Up Sheet Support Plate

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the scoop-up sheet support plate [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-7-155

7.14.16 End Seal (Front)

7.14.16.1 Preparation for Removing the End Seal (Front)

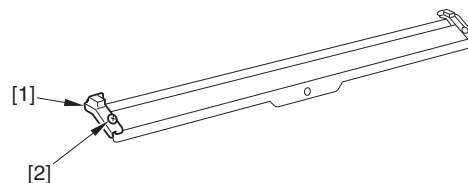
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Hold up the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary corona assembly. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer corona assembly. (page 7-88) Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Detach the drum unit. (page 7-89) Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]
- 7) Detach the drum cleaning blade. (page 7-93) Reference [Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade]

7.14.16.2 Removing the End Seal (Front)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the end seal (front) [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-7-156

7.14.17 End Seal (Rear)

7.14.17.1 Preparation for Removing the End Seal (Rear)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

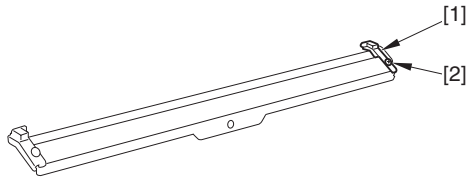
- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Hold up the hopper unit.

- 4) Remove the primary corona assembly. (page 7-86)Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer corona assembly. (page 7-88)Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Detach the drum unit. (page 7-89)Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]
- 7) Detach the drum cleaning blade. (page 7-93)Reference [Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade]

7.14.17.2 Removing the End Seal (Rear)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the end seal (rear) [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-7-157

7.14.18 Drum Cleaner Brush

7.14.18.1 Preparation for Removing the Drum Cleaner Brush

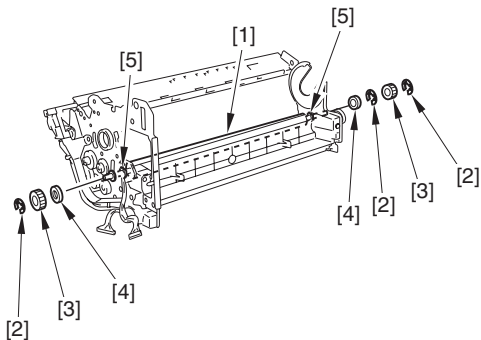
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Hold up the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary corona assembly. (page 7-86)Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer corona assembly. (page 7-88)Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Detach the drum unit. (page 7-89)Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]
- 7) Detach the photosensitive drum. (page 7-90)Reference [Removing the Photosensitive Drum]
- 8) Detach the drum cleaning pre-exposure LED unit. (page 7-86)Reference [Removing the Drum Cleaning Pre-Exposure LED Unit]
- 9) Detach the scoop-up sheet support plate. (page 7-92)Reference [Removing the Scoop-Up Sheet Support Plate]
- 10) Detach the seal support plate (rear). (page 7-91)Reference [Removing the Seal Support Plate (Rear)]
- 11) Detach the seal support plate (front). (page 7-91)Reference [Removing the Seal Support Plate (Front)]

7.14.18.2 Removing the Drum Cleaner Brush

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the drum cleaner brush [1].
- 3 E-rings [2]
- 2 gears [3]
- 2 bearings [4]
- 2 sponges [5]



F-7-158

7.14.19 Photosensitive Drum Cleaning Blade

7.14.19.1 Preparation for Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade

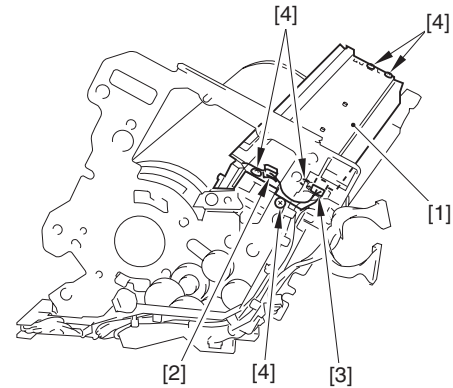
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Hold up the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary corona assembly. (page 7-86)Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer corona assembly. (page 7-88)Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Detach the drum unit. (page 7-89)Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]

7.14.19.2 Removing the Drum Cleaning Blade

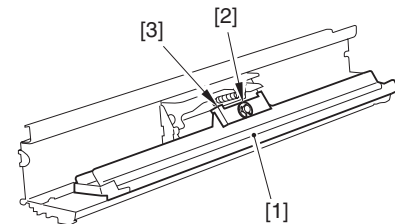
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the drum cleaner cover [1].
- 1 wire saddle [2] (Remove the harness)
- 1 connector [3]
- 5 screws [4]



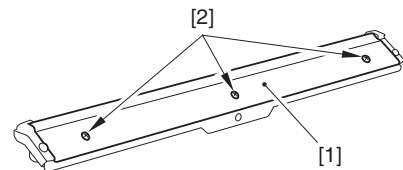
F-7-159

- 2) Detach the drum cleaning blade unit [1].
- 1 E-ring [2]
- 1 leaf spring [3]



F-7-160

- 3) Detach the drum cleaning blade [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-7-161

7.14.20 Hopper Assembly

7.14.20.1 Preparation for Removing the Sub Hopper Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Open the toner replacement cover.

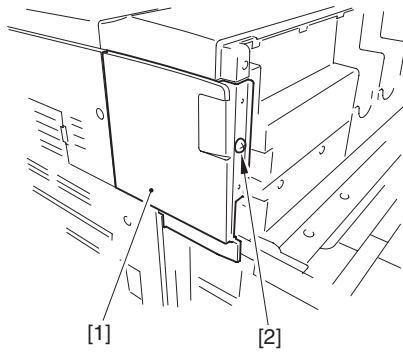
7.14.20.2 Removing the Sub Hopper Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1



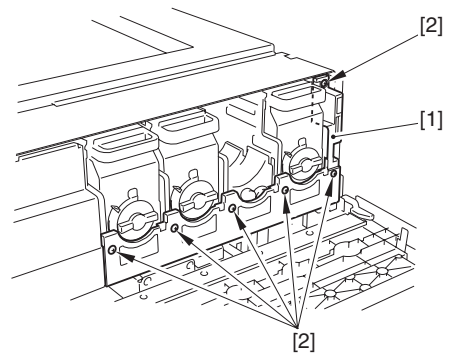
The sub hopper for Cyan is explained here as the example. The procedure is same for other colors.

- 1) Detach the hopper left cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



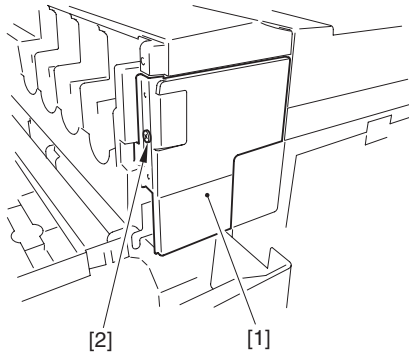
F-7-162

- 2) Detach the hopper right cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



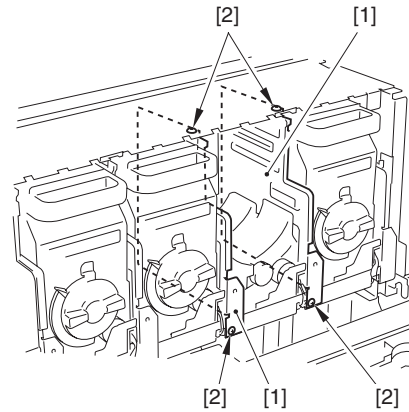
F-7-166

- 7) Remove two toner retainer partitions [1].
- 4 screws [2]



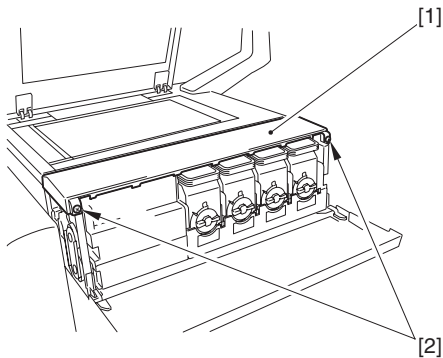
F-7-163

- 3) Detach the hopper upper cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



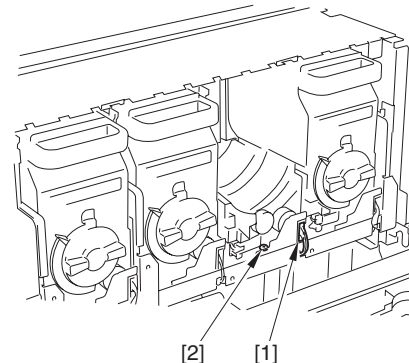
F-7-167

- 8) Remove one connector [1] and one screw [2].



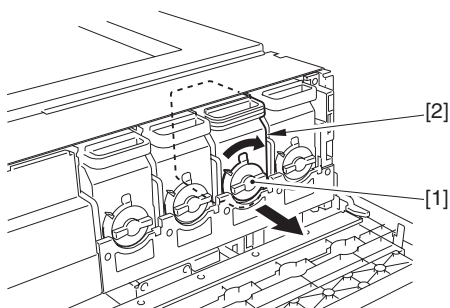
F-7-164

- 4) Rotate the knob of the toner retainer [1] in the direction of the arrow to release the lock.
5) Hold the grip of the toner retainer [2], pull it out in the direction of the arrow.



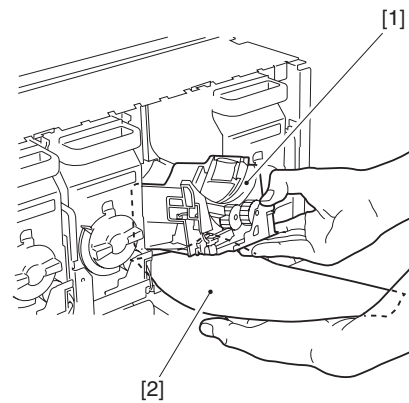
F-7-168

- 9) Hold up the sub hopper [1], insert the paper [2] underneath as in the following figure and pull it out while preventing the toner from pouring.



F-7-165

- 6) Detach the hopper right inside cover [1].
- 6 screws [2]



F-7-169

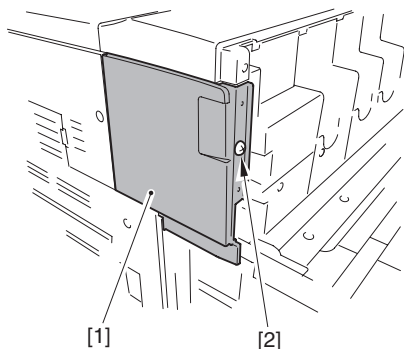
7.14.20.3 Removing the Sub Hopper Unit

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



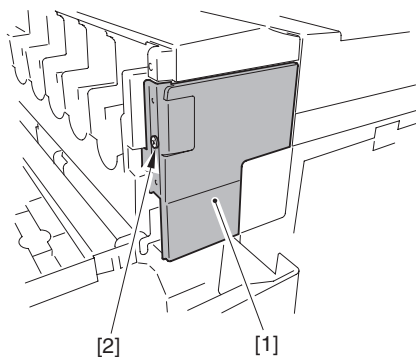
The sub hopper for Cyan is explained here as the example. The procedure is same for other colors.

- 1) Detach the hopper left cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



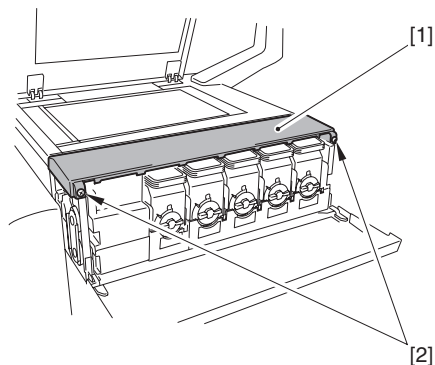
F-7-170

- 2) Detach the hopper right cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



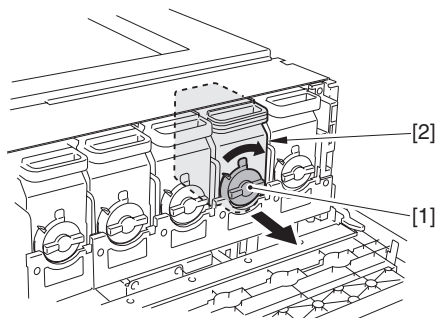
F-7-171

- 3) Detach the hopper upper cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-7-172

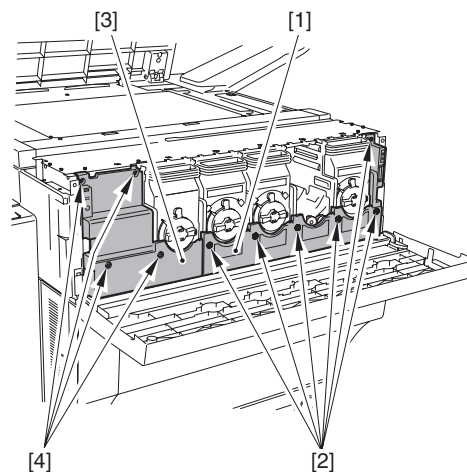
- 4) Rotate the knob of the toner retainer [1] in the direction of the arrow to release the lock.
5) Hold the grip of the toner retainer [2], pull it out in the direction of the arrow.



F-7-173

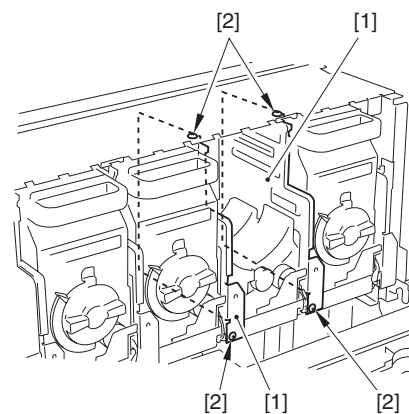
- 6) Detach the hopper right inside cover [1].

- 6 screws [2]
7) Detach the hopper left inside cover [3].
- 4 screws [4]



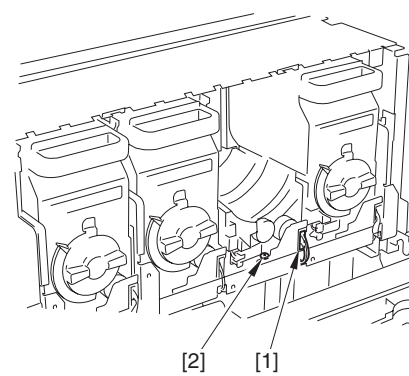
F-7-174

- 8) Remove two toner retainer partitions [1].
- 4 screws [2]



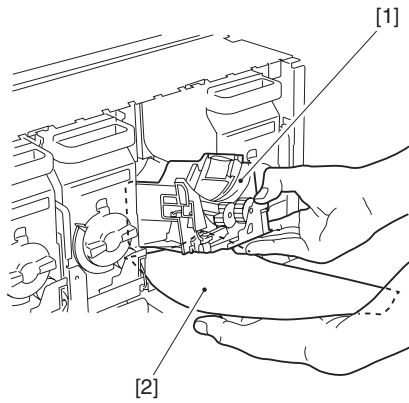
F-7-175

- 9) Remove one connector [1] and one screw [2].

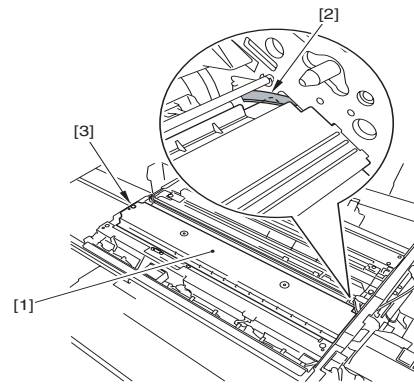


F-7-176

- 10) Hold up the sub hopper [1], insert the paper [2] underneath as in the following figure and pull it out while preventing the toner from pouring.



F-7-177



F-7-180

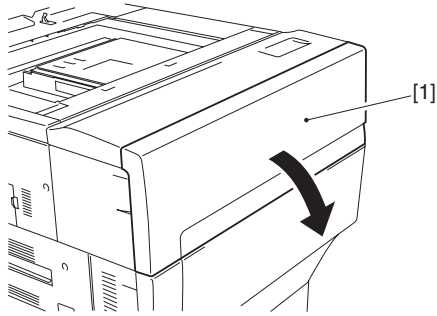
- 2) Hold the gear of the developing rotary [1], rotate the developing rotary [2] manually counterclockwise to turn around the developing assembly to be removed.

7.14.20.4 Procedure after Replacing the Sub Hopper Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

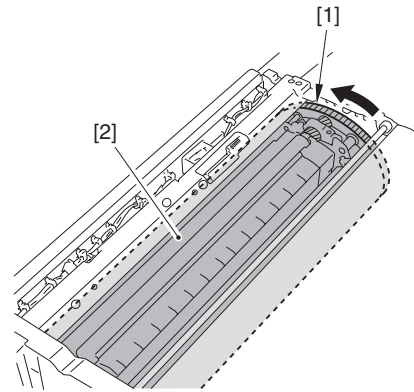
It is not filled with the toner after replacing the sub hopper unit. When turning on the power supply of the machine body, the error message 'No toner' is displayed.

Repeat the following procedure until the error message disappears.
1) Open the toner replacement cover.



F-7-178

- 2) Rotate the knob of the toner retainer [1] to the right to release the lock.
- 3) Rotate the knob of the toner retainer [1] to the left to lock.

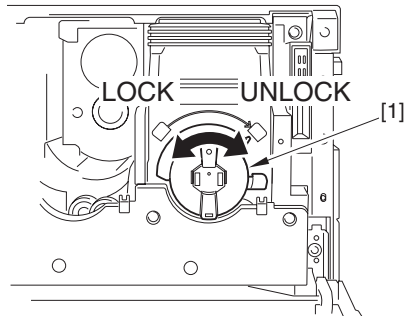


F-7-181



If rotating the developing rotary clockwise with the developing assembly inserted, the toner-blocking sheet fixed on the developing cylinder may interfere with the photosensitive drum and peel off. Be sure to rotate the developing rotary counterclockwise.

- 3) Stop it at the location that [A] is alignment with [B] as in the figure.



F-7-179

- 4) Close the toner replacement cover.

7.14.21 Development Unit

7.14.21.1 Preparation for Removing the Developing Assembly

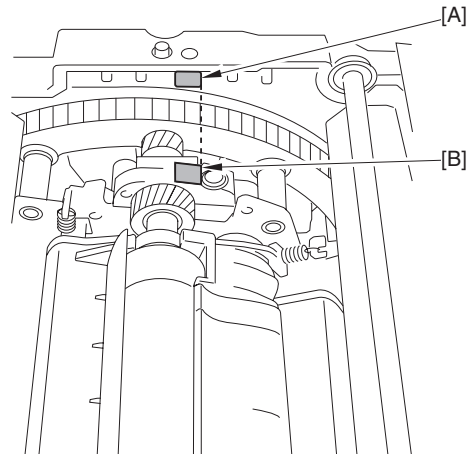
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Remove the process unit cover.
- 3) Hold up the hopper unit.
- 4) Pull out the process unit. (page 7-83) Reference [Sliding the Processing Unit]

7.14.21.2 Removing the Developing Assembly

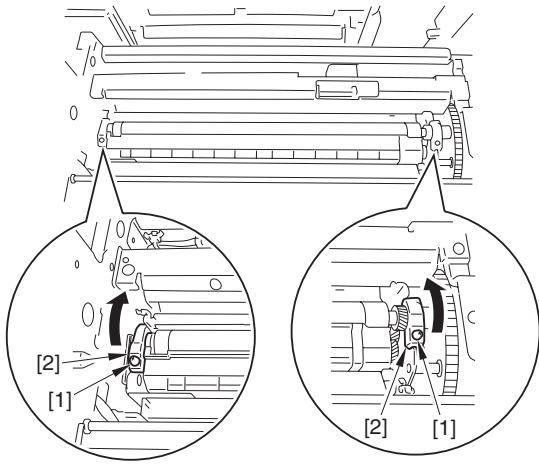
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the developing assembly cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-7-182

- 4) Loosen two screws [1], open two developing assembly fixed arms [2].

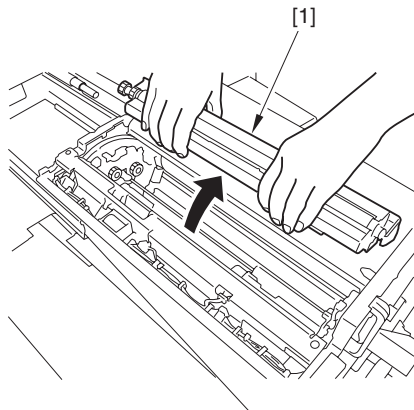


F-7-183



When turning the developing rotary, be sure to tighten the developing assembly fixed arm with screw.

5) Remove the developing assembly [1].



F-7-184

7.14.22 Development Clutch

7.14.22.1 Preparation for Removing the Developing Clutch

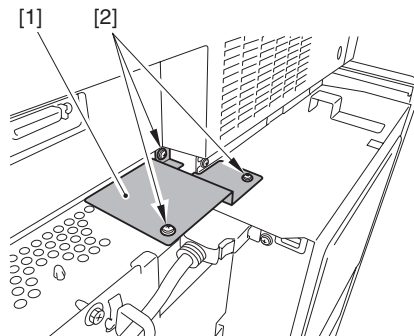
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the upper rear right cover.
- 2) Detach the upper rear cover.

7.14.22.2 Removing the Developing Clutch

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

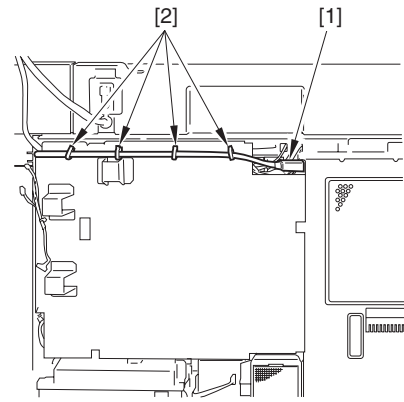
- 1) Detach the grounding plate [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-7-185

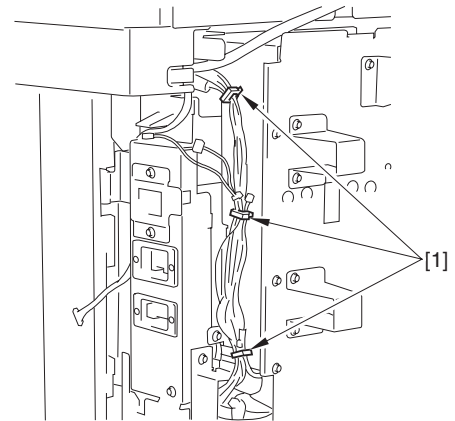
- 2) Remove the connector [1].

- 4 clamps [2]



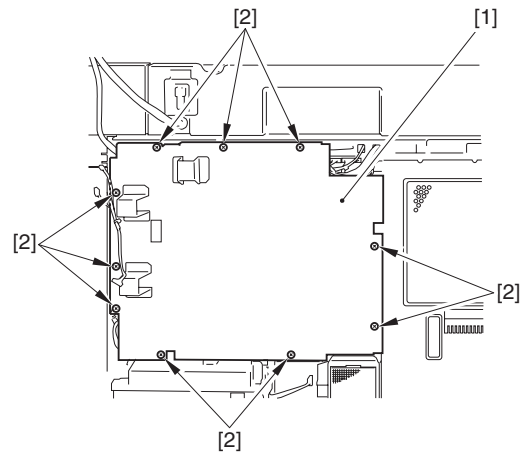
F-7-186

- 3) Remove 3 clamps [1].



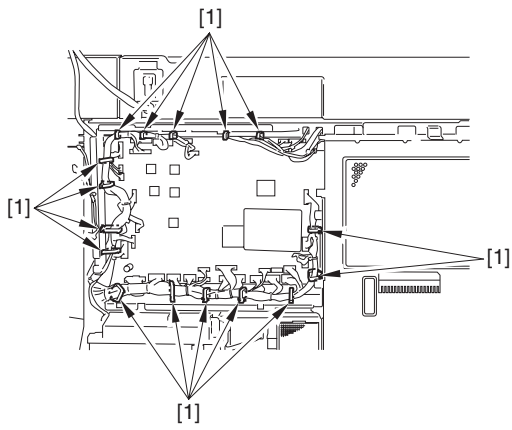
F-7-187

- 4) Remove the DC controller box cover [1].
- 10 screws [2]



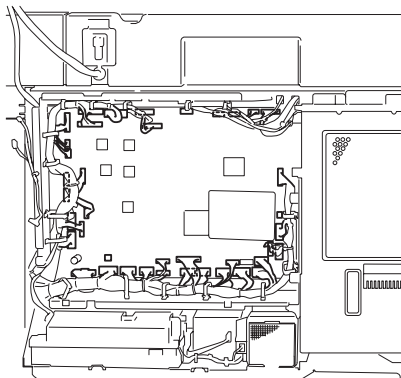
F-7-188

- 5) Remove 16 clamps [1].



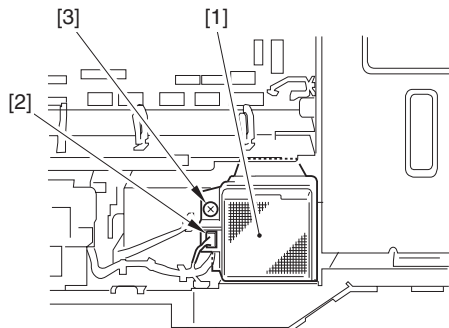
F-7-189

6) Remove 40 connectors.



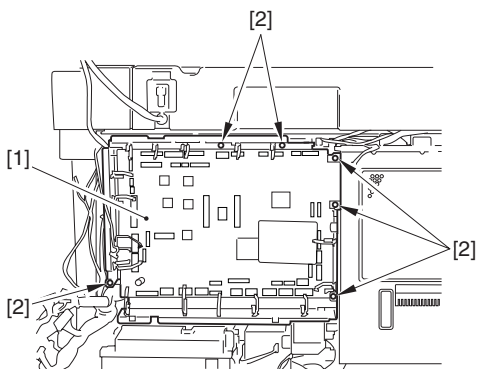
F-7-190

7) Remove the main body rear exhaust fan duct [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 1 screw [3]



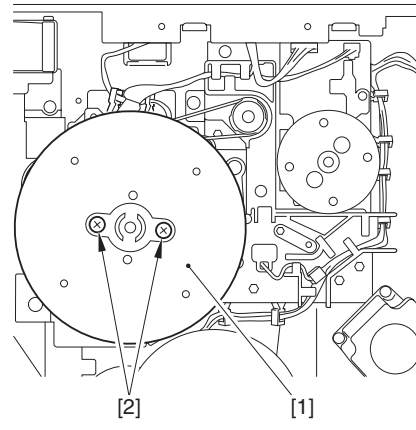
F-7-191

8) Move the DC controller box [1] to the left and remove it.
- 6 screws [2]



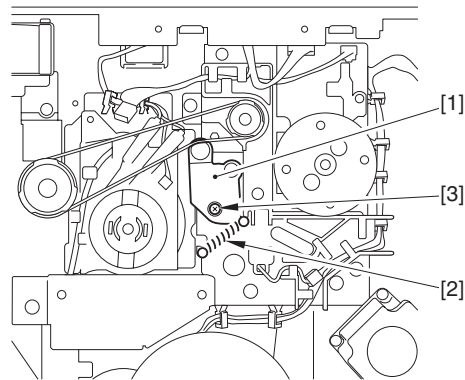
F-7-192

9) Remove the flywheel.
- 2 screws [2]



F-7-193

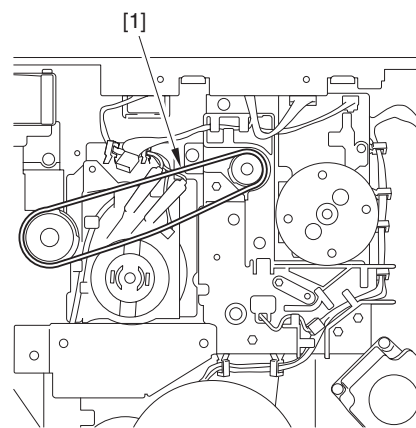
10) Remove the tensioner [1].
- 1 spring [2]
- 1 screw [3]



F-7-194

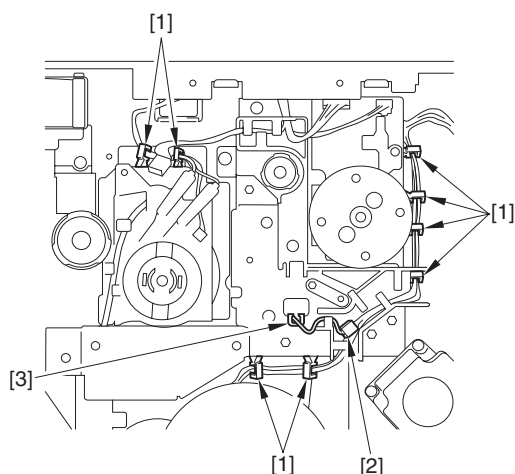
⚠ Points to Note When Mounting the Tensioner
In the case of mounting the tensioner, mount it with the spring [2] first, and then with the screw [3].

11) Remove the timing belt [1].



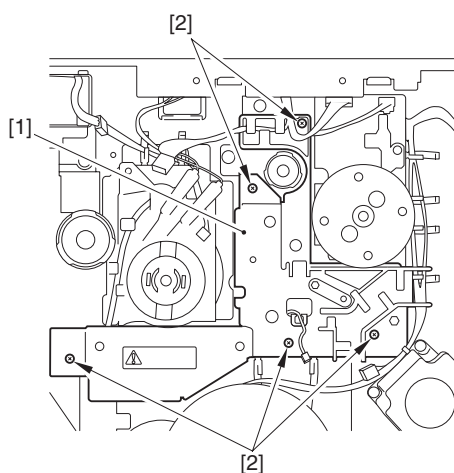
F-7-195

12) Remove the 8 clamps [1], disconnect the connector [2], and remove the edge saddle [3].



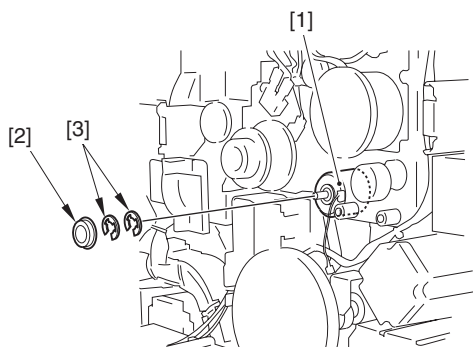
F-7-196

- 13) Detach the developing clutch cover [1].
- 5 screws [2]



F-7-197

- 14) Remove the developing clutch [1].
- 1 bearing [2]
- 2 E-rings [3]



F-7-198

7.14.23 ITB Cleaning Unit

7.14.23.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB Cleaning Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

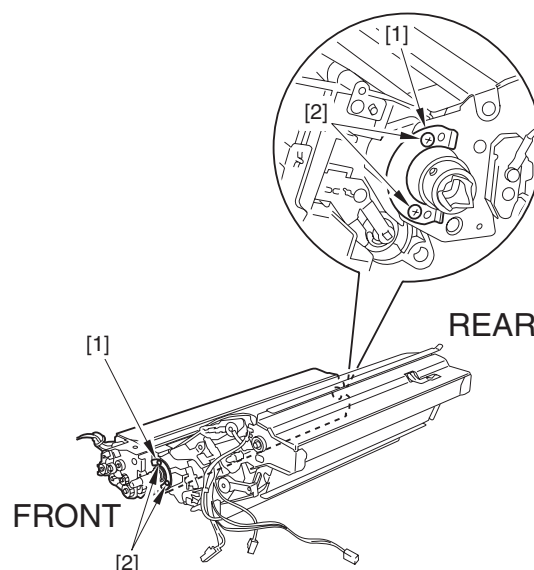
- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary charging assembly. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer charging assembly. (page 7-88) Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-89) Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]
- 7) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit.

- 8) Remove the intermediate transfer unit. (page 7-100) Reference [Removing the Intermediate Transfer Unit]

7.14.23.2 Removing the ITB Cleaning Unit

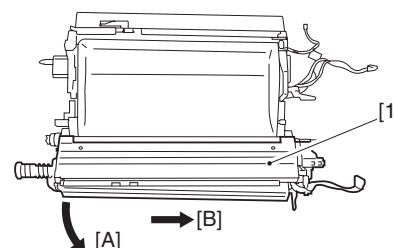
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the mounts (the front and the rear) [1].
- 4 screws [2]



F-7-199

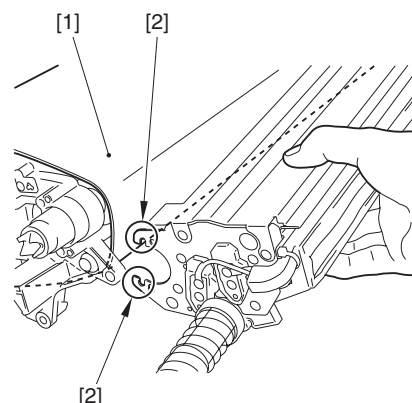
- 2) Move the ITB cleaning unit [1] in the direction of [A], and then, move it in the direction of [B] to remove.



F-7-200

⚠ Points to Note When Removing/Mounting ITB Cleaning Unit

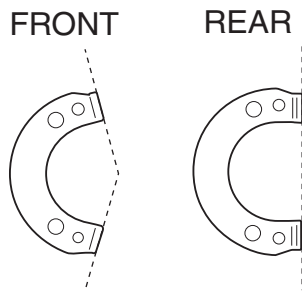
In the case of removing/mounting the ITB cleaning unit, make sure not to scratch the ITB [1] with the metal areas [2].



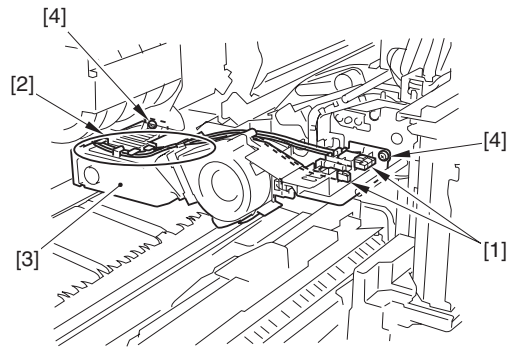
F-7-201

⚠ Points to Note When Mounting the ITB Cleaning Unit

In the case of attaching the mounts, make sure to attach the correct ones because the shape of the plates is different between the front one and the rear one.



F-7-202



F-7-205

7.14.24 Intermediate Transfer Unit

7.14.24.1 Preparation for Removing the Intermediate Transfer Unit

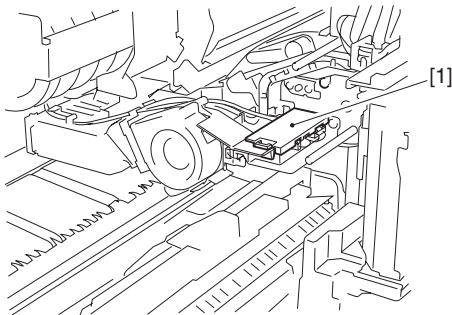
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary charging assembly. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer charging assembly. (page 7-88) Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-89) Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]
- 7) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit.

7.14.24.2 Removing the Intermediate Transfer Unit

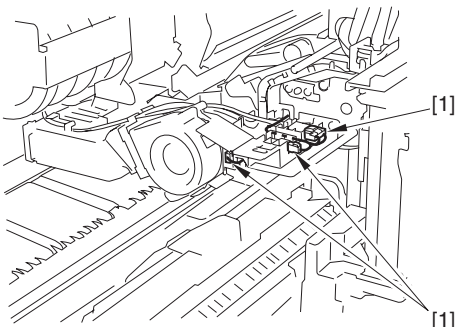
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the high voltage connector cover [1].



F-7-203

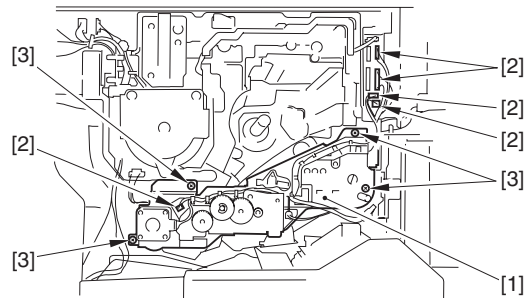
- 2) Disconnect the 3 connectors [1].



F-7-204

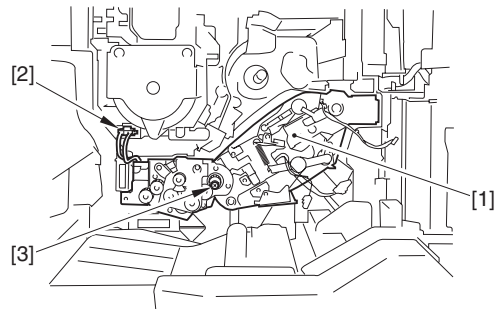
- 3) Free the 2 harnesses [1] from the harness guide [2].
- 4) Remove the ITB fan duct cover unit [3].
- 2 screws [4]

- 5) Remove the ITB drive unit [1].
- 5 connectors [2]
- 4 screws [3]



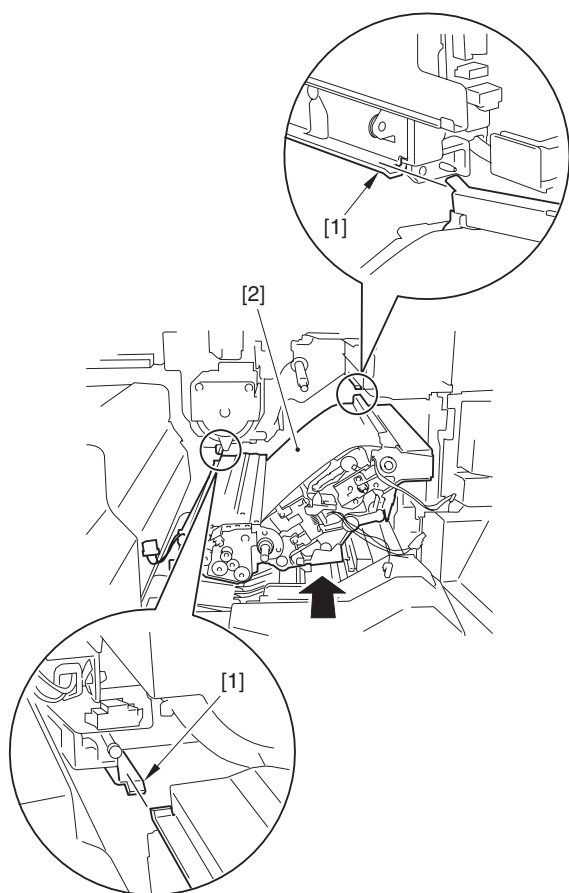
F-7-206

- 6) Remove the intermediate transfer unit [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 1 screw [3]



F-7-207

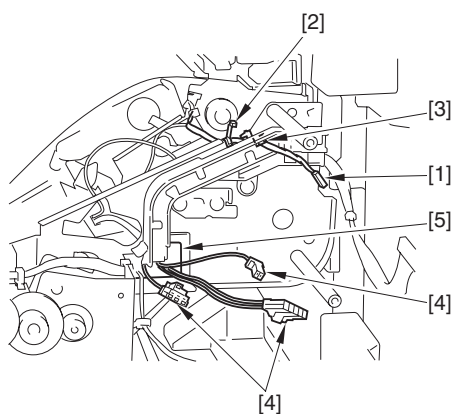
⚠ Points to Note When Mounting the Intermediate Transfer Unit
Make sure to move in the direction of the arrow with the intermediate transfer unit [2] on the rail [1] of the host machine.



F-7-208

⚠ Points to Note When Mounting the ITB Drive Unit

- 1) Route the harness [1] through the hole of the harness guide [3] and the edge saddle [2].
- 2) Route the 3 harnesses [4] through the hole [5] of the ITB drive side plate.



F-7-209

7.14.25 Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Unit

7.14.25.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

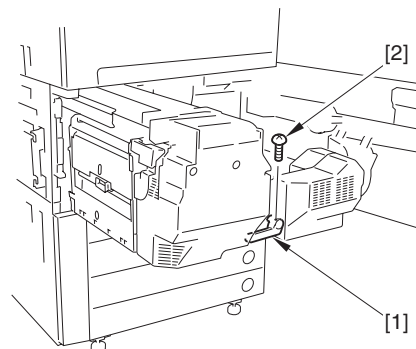
- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

7.14.25.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / image-

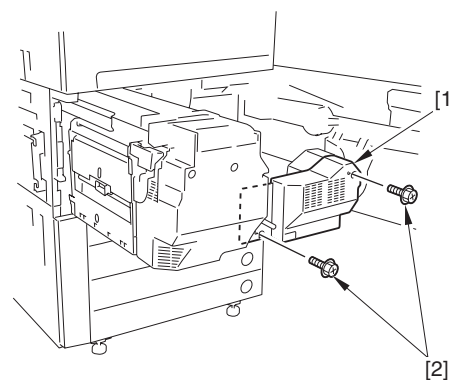
PRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the lever [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-7-210

- 2) Detach the feeding front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



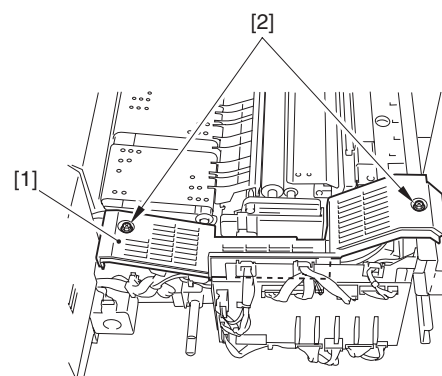
F-7-211

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Feeding Front Cover

The feeding front cover has the button to open the lower cover of the fixing/feed unit.

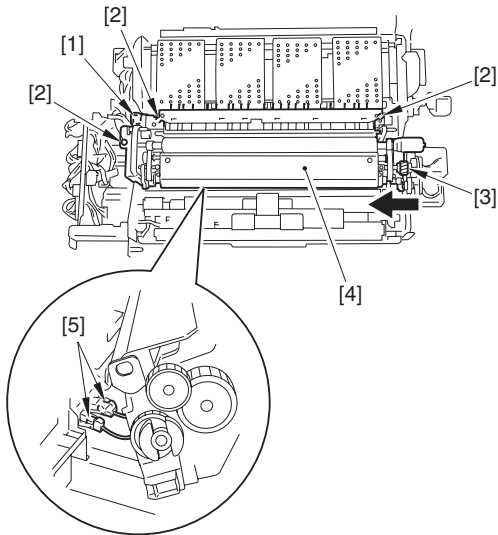
To prevent the bar at the end of the button from being broken, take care to attach the feeding front cover so that the bar is in proper position.

- 3) Detach the feeding upper front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-7-212

- 4) Disconnect the connector [1], and remove the 3 screws [2].
- 5) Press the gear [3] in the direction of the arrow to pull out the secondary transfer outer roller unit [4].
- 6) Disconnect the 2 connectors [5].



F-7-213

7.14.26 Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Sub Unit

7.14.26.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Sub-Unit

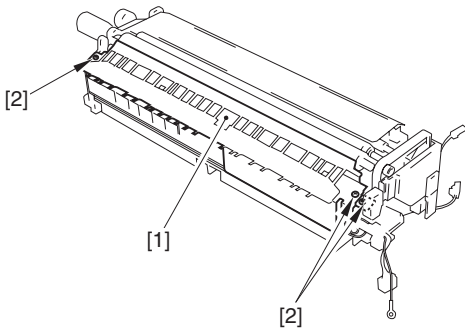
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Slide the fixing/feeding unit toward the front.
- 3) Remove the secondary transfer outside roller unit. (page 7-101) Reference [Removing the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller Unit]

7.14.26.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Sub-Unit

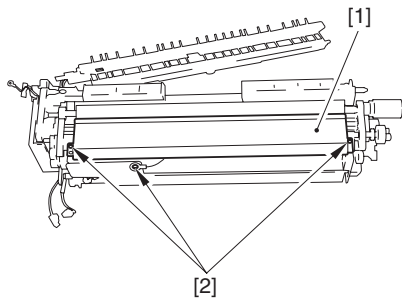
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the feeding guide [1].
- 3 screws [2]



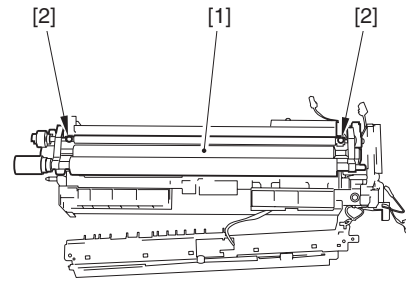
F-7-214

- 2) Remove the secondary transfer front guide [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-7-215

- 3) Remove the secondary transfer outside roller subunit [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-7-216

7.14.27 Intermediate Transfer Belt

7.14.27.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB

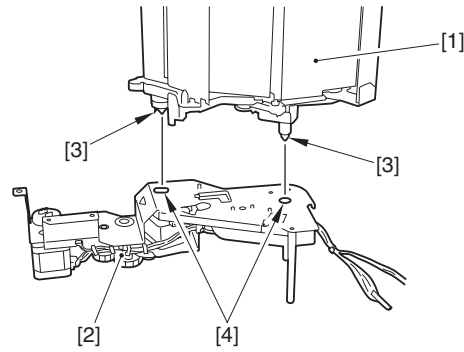
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary charging assembly. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer charging assembly. (page 7-88) Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-89) Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]
- 7) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit.
- 8) Remove the intermediate transfer unit. (page 7-100) Reference [Removing the Intermediate Transfer Unit]
- 9) Remove the ITB cleaning unit. (page 7-99) Reference [Removing the ITB Cleaning Unit]

7.14.27.2 Removing the ITB

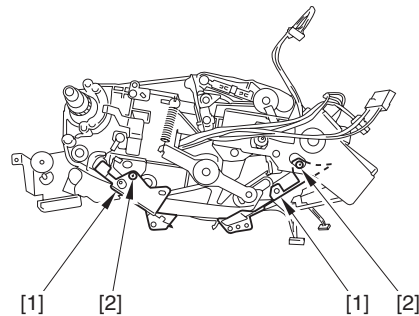
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Place the ITB sub unit on the motor base.
1-1) Insert the 2 shafts [3] of the ITB sub unit [1] to the holes [4] on the motor base [2].



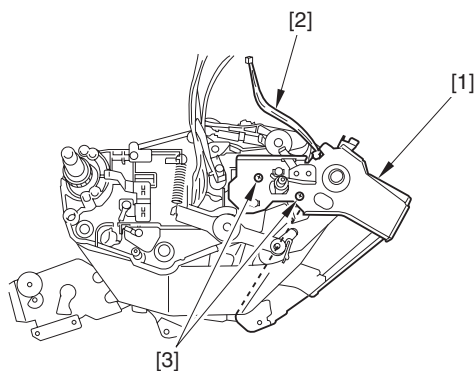
F-7-217

- 2) Remove the 2 potential guide plates [1].
- 2 screws [2]



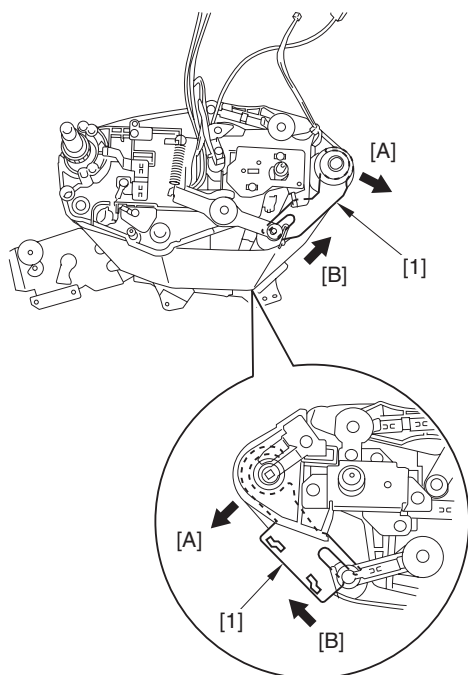
F-7-218

- 3) Detach the ITB rail plate [1].
- 1 harness [2]
- 2 screws [3]



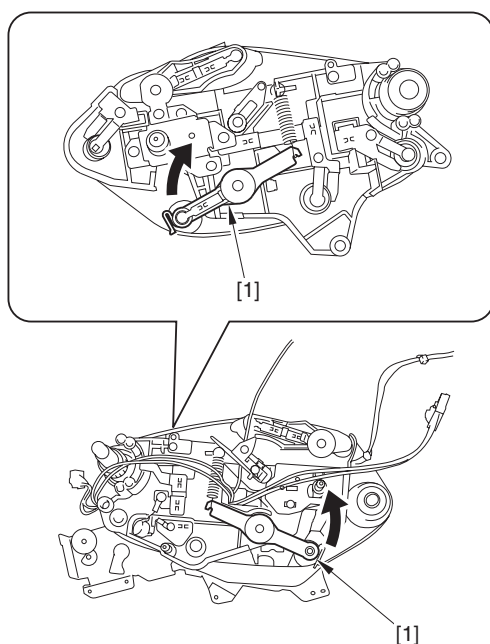
F-7-219

- 4) Move the 2 potential guide plate arms [1] in the direction of [A] first, and then, move them in the direction of [B].



F-7-220

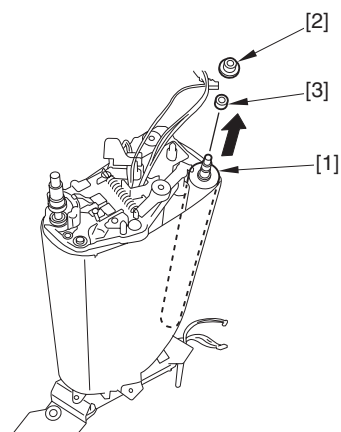
- 5) Lift the tension roller pressure lever [1] in the direction of the arrow.



F-7-221

- 6) Remove the idler roller [1] in the direction of the arrow.
- 1 bearing [2]

- 1 wheel [3]

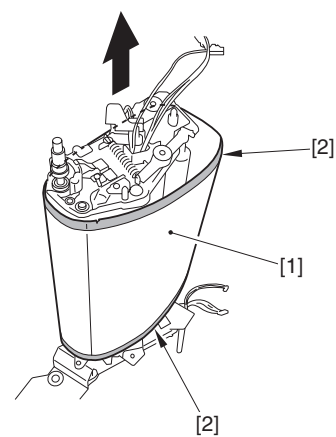


F-7-222

- 7) By holding the 1cm areas [2] from the both edges of the ITB [1], pull it out in the direction of the arrow to remove.



Take care not to touch the surface of the ITB with hands.



F-7-223



Once removed, the ITB should be stood on its end on paper spread on the floor.

7.14.28 Primary Transfer Roller

7.14.28.1 Preparation for Removing the Primary Transfer Roller

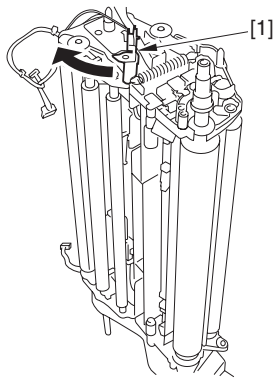
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary charging assembly. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer charging assembly. (page 7-88) Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-89) Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]
- 7) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit.
- 8) Remove the intermediate transfer unit. (page 7-100) Reference [Removing the Intermediate Transfer Unit]
- 9) Remove the ITB cleaning unit. (page 7-99) Reference [Removing the ITB Cleaning Unit]
- 10) Remove the ITB. (page 7-102) Reference [Removing the ITB]

7.14.28.2 Removing the Primary Transfer Roller

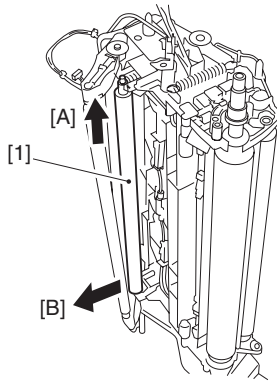
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Shift the primary transfer roller pressure arm [1] in the direction of the arrow.



F-7-224

- 2) Shift the primary transfer roller [1] in the direction of the arrow [A] and then [B], and remove the roller.



F-7-225

7.14.29 Secondary Transfer External Roller

7.14.29.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller

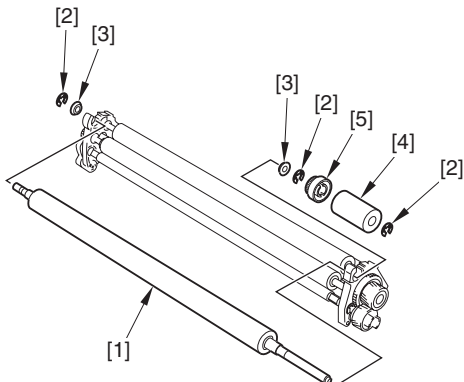
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward the front.
- 3) Remove the secondary transfer outside roller unit. (page 7-101) Reference [Removing the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller Unit]
- 4) Remove the secondary transfer outside roller sub-unit. (page 7-102) Reference [Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Sub-Unit]

7.14.29.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the secondary transfer outside roller [1].
 - 3 E-rings [2]
 - 2 bearings [3]
 - 1 curler [4]
 - 1 gear [5]



F-7-226

7.14.30 Secondary Transfer Internal Roller

7.14.30.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Inside Roller

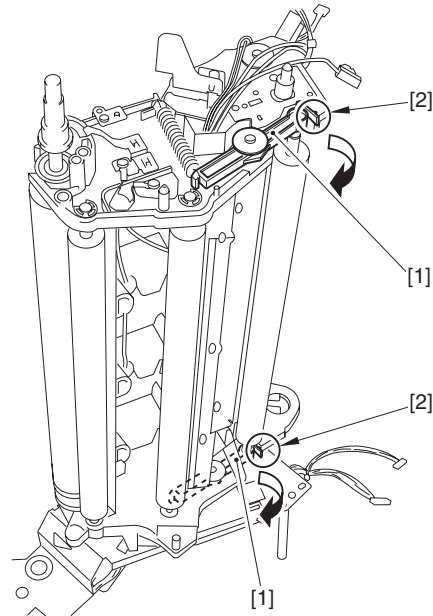
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary charging assembly. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer charging assembly. (page 7-88) Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-89) Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]
- 7) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit.
- 8) Remove the intermediate transfer unit. (page 7-100) Reference [Removing the Intermediate Transfer Unit]
- 9) Remove the ITB cleaning unit. (page 7-99) Reference [Removing the ITB Cleaning Unit]
- 10) Remove the ITB. (page 7-102) Reference [Removing the ITB]

7.14.30.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Inside Roller

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Release 2 tension roller pressure arms [1] by pressing the knob [2], and shift the arm in the direction of the arrow.



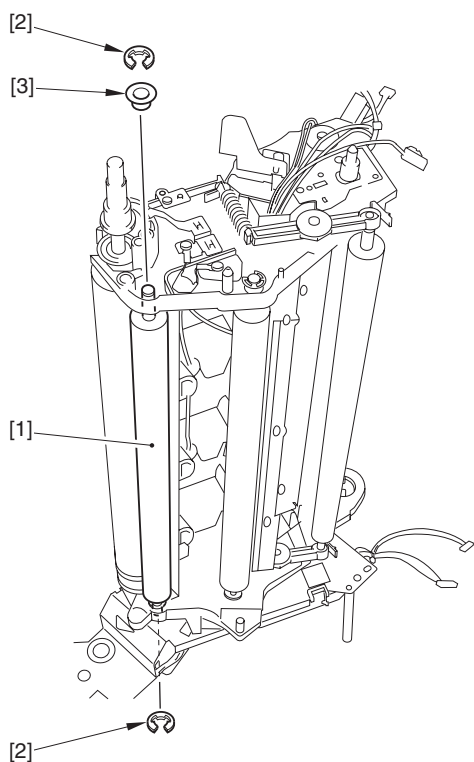
F-7-227

- 2) Remove the secondary transfer inside roller [1].



Cover the roller section of the secondary transfer inner roller with paper, to avoid touching it directly.

- 2 E-rings [2]
- 1 bearing [3]



F-7-228

7.14.31 Secondary Transfer Bias Roller Cleaning Blade

7.14.31.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Bias Roller Cleaning Blade

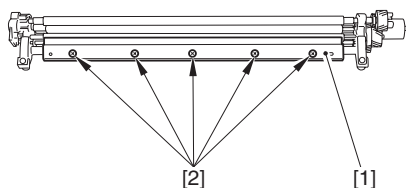
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward the front.
- 3) Remove the secondary transfer outside roller unit. (page 7-101) Reference [Removing the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller Unit]
- 4) Remove the secondary transfer outside roller sub-unit. (page 7-102) Reference [Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Sub-Unit]

7.14.31.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Bias Roller Cleaning Blade

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the secondary transfer bias roller cleaning blade [1].
- 5 screws [2]



F-7-229

7.14.32 ITB Cleaner Brush (Large)

7.14.32.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB Cleaner Brush (Large)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

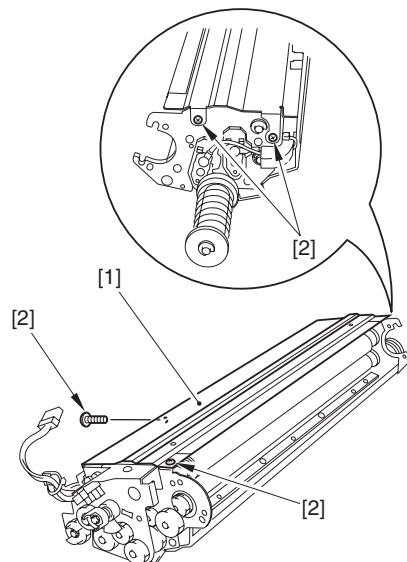
- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary charging assembly. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer charging assembly. (page 7-88) Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-89) Reference [Removing the Drum

- Unit]
- 7) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit.
- 8) Remove the intermediate transfer unit. (page 7-100) Reference [Removing the Intermediate Transfer Unit]
- 9) Remove the ITB cleaning unit. (page 7-99) Reference [Removing the ITB Cleaning Unit]

7.14.32.2 Removing the ITB Cleaner Brush (Large)

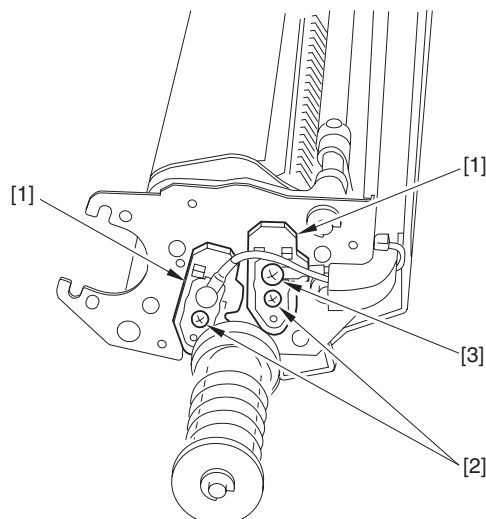
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the ITB cleaner cover [1].
- 4 screws [2]



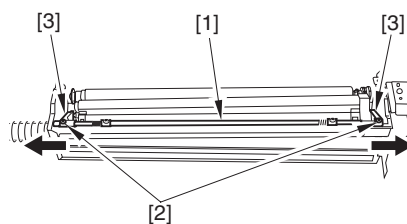
F-7-230

- 2) Remove the two cleaning roller shafts [1].
- 2 screws (black) [2]
- 1 screw (silver) [3]



F-7-231

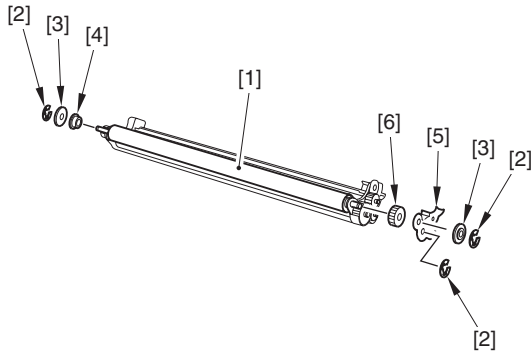
- 3) Remove two screws [2] on the cleaner brush mobile arm [1], and shift in the direction of each arrow.
- 4) Remove the ITB cleaner brush unit (large) [3].



F-7-232

- 5) Remove the ITB cleaner brush (large) [1].
- 3 E-rings [2]
- 2 bearings [3]

- 1 bushing [4]
- 1 gear holder [5]
- 1 gear [6]



F-7-233

7.14.33 ITB Cleaner Brush (Small)

7.14.33.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB Cleaner Brush (Small)

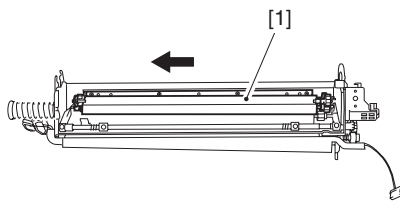
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary charging assembly. (page 7-86)Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer charging assembly. (page 7-88)Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-89)Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]
- 7) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit.
- 8) Remove the intermediate transfer unit. (page 7-100)Reference [Removing the Intermediate Transfer Unit]
- 9) Remove the ITB cleaning unit. (page 7-99)Reference [Removing the ITB Cleaning Unit]
- 10) Remove the ITB cleaner brush (large). (page 7-105)Reference [Removing the ITB Cleaner Brush (Large)]

7.14.33.2 Removing the ITB Cleaner Brush (Small)

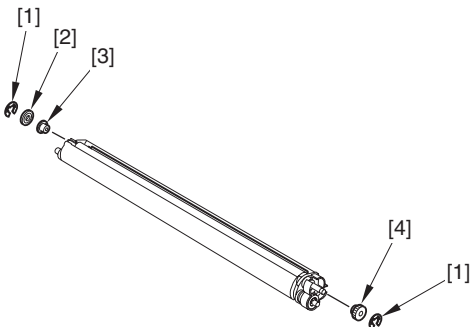
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the ITB cleaner brush unit [1] by shifting it in the direction of arrow.



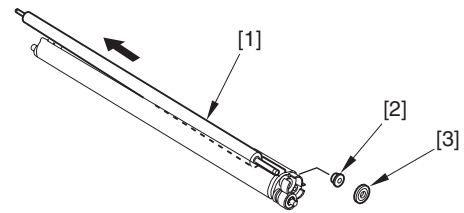
F-7-234

- 2) Remove 2 E-rings [1], 1 bearing [2], 1 bushing [3], and 1 gear [4].



F-7-235

- 3) Remove the ITB cleaner brush (small) [1] by shifting it in the direction of arrow.
 - 1 bushing [2]
 - 1 bearing [3]



F-7-236

7.14.34 Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Upper)

7.14.34.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Upper)

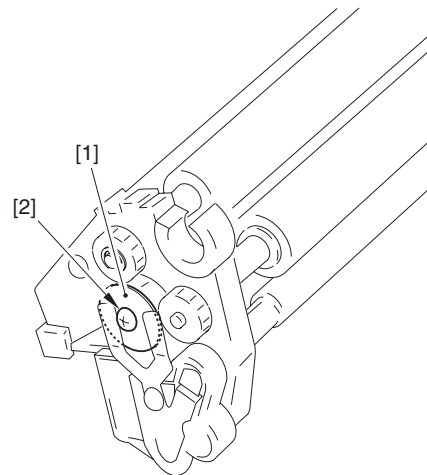
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward the front.
- 3) Remove the secondary transfer unit outside roller unit. (page 7-101)Reference [Removing the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller Unit]
- 4) Remove the secondary transfer outside roller sub-unit. (page 7-102)Reference [Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Sub-Unit]
- 5) Remove the secondary transfer outside roller. (page 7-104)Reference [Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller]

7.14.34.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Upper)

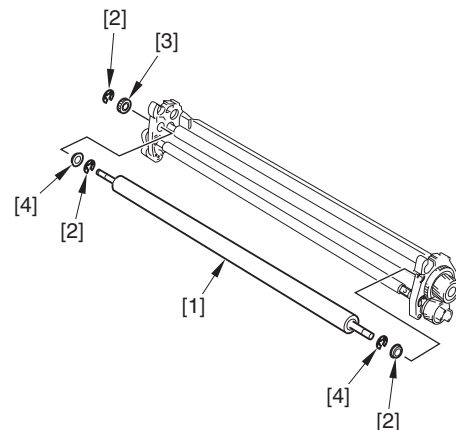
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the washer [1].
 - 1 screw [2]



F-7-237

- 2) Remove the secondary transfer roller brush (upper) [1].
 - 3 E-rings [2]
 - 1 gear [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]



F-7-238

7.14.35 Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Lower)

7.14.35.1 Preparation for Removing the Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Lower)

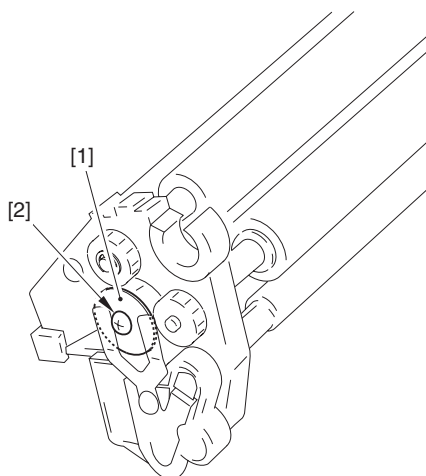
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward the front.
- 3) Remove the secondary transfer outside roller unit. ([page 7-101](#))Reference [Removing the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller Unit]
- 4) Remove the secondary transfer outside roller sub-unit. ([page 7-102](#))Reference [Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller Sub-Unit]
- 5) Remove the secondary transfer outside roller. ([page 7-104](#))Reference [Removing the Secondary Transfer Outside Roller]

7.14.35.2 Removing the Secondary Transfer Roller Brush (Lower)

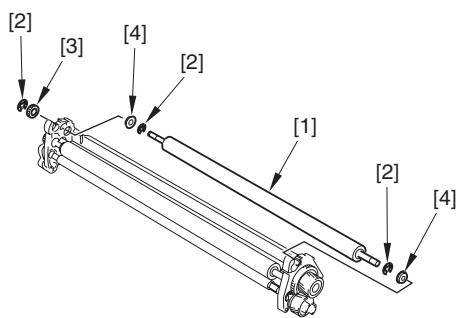
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the washer [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-7-239

- 2) Remove the secondary transfer roller brush (lower) [1].
- 3 E-rings [2]
- 1 gear [3]
- 2 bearings [4]



F-7-240

7.14.36 ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Upper)

7.14.36.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Upper)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

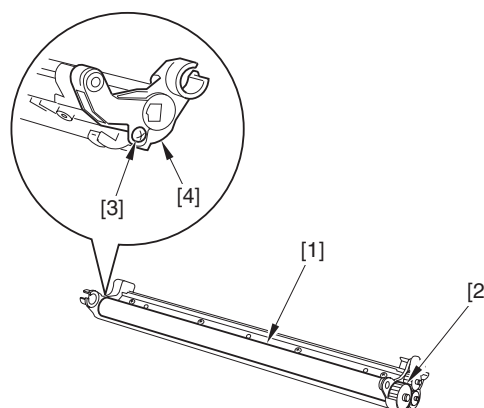
- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary charging assembly. ([page 7-86](#))Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer charging assembly. ([page 7-88](#))Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Remove the drum unit. ([page 7-89](#))Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]
- 7) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit.

- 8) Remove the intermediate transfer unit. ([page 7-100](#))Reference [Removing the Intermediate Transfer Unit]
- 9) Remove the ITB cleaning unit. ([page 7-99](#))Reference [Removing the ITB Cleaning Unit]
- 10) Remove the ITB cleaner brush (large). ([page 7-105](#))Reference [Removing the ITB Cleaner Brush (Large)]

7.14.36.2 Removing the ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Upper)

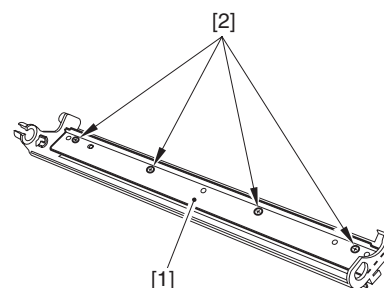
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the ITB bias roller [1].
- 1 gear [2]
- 1 screw [3]
- 1 contact cover [4]



F-7-241

- 2) Remove the ITB bias roller cleaning blade (upper) [1].
- 4 screws [2]



F-7-242

7.14.37 ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Lower)

7.14.37.1 Preparation for Removing the ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Lower)

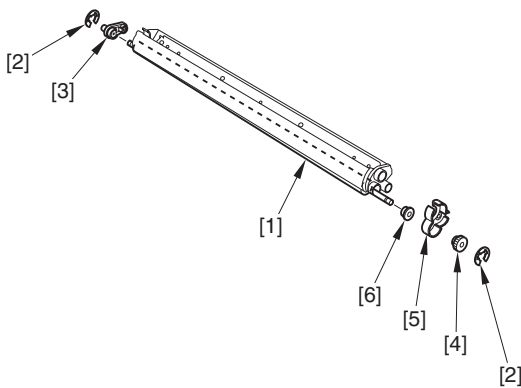
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary charging assembly. ([page 7-86](#))Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer charging assembly. ([page 7-88](#))Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Remove the drum unit. ([page 7-89](#))Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]
- 7) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit.
- 8) Remove the intermediate transfer unit. ([page 7-100](#))Reference [Removing the Intermediate Transfer Unit]
- 9) Remove the ITB cleaning unit. ([page 7-99](#))Reference [Removing the ITB Cleaning Unit]
- 10) Remove the ITB cleaner brush (large). ([page 7-105](#))Reference [Removing the ITB Cleaner Brush (Large)]
- 11) Remove the ITB cleaner brush (small). ([page 7-106](#))Reference [Removing the ITB Cleaner Brush (Small)]

7.14.37.2 Removing the ITB Bias Roller Cleaning Blade (Lower)

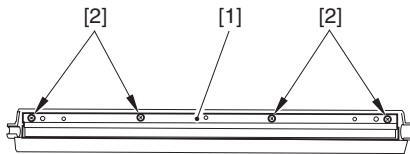
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the ITB bias roller [1].
 - 2 E-rings [2]
 - 1 contact cover [3]
 - 1 gear [4]
 - 1 gear case [5]
 - 1 roller [6]



F-7-243

- 2) Remove the ITB bias roller cleaning blade (lower) [1].
 - 4 screws [2]



F-7-244

7.14.38 Potential Sensor Unit

7.14.38.1 Preparation for Removing the Potential Sensor Unit

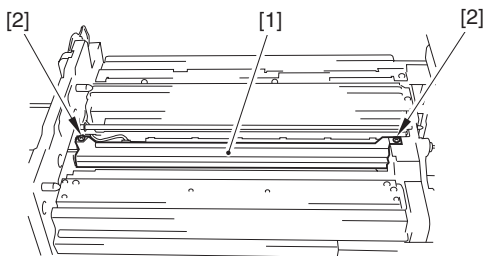
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Pull out the process unit. (page 7-83)Reference [Sliding the Processing Unit]
- 5) Remove the primary charging assembly. (page 7-86)Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 6) Remove the pre-transfer charging assembly. (page 7-88)Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 7) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-89)Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]

7.14.38.2 Removing the Potential Sensor

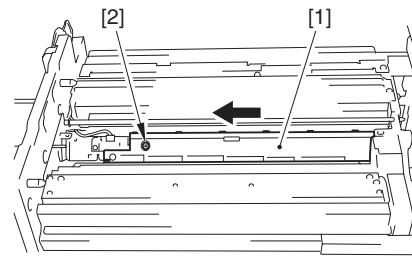
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the process unit guide [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



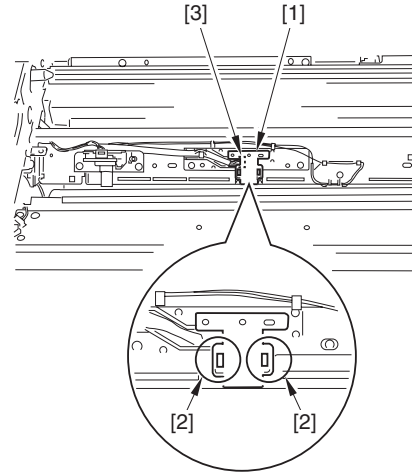
F-7-245

- 2) Remove the duct [1] by shifting it in the direction of the arrow.
 - 1 screw [2]



F-7-246

- 3) Remove the potential sensor [1] by removing the claw [2].
 - 1 connector [3]



F-7-247

7.14.38.3 Replacing the Potential Sensor

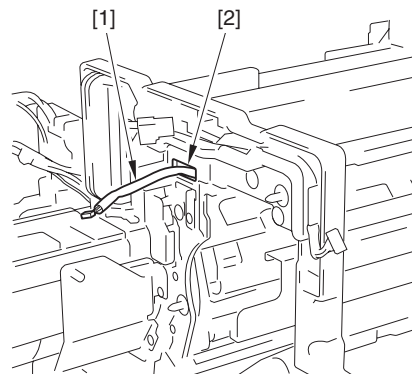
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

When replacing the potential sensor, go through the following procedure.



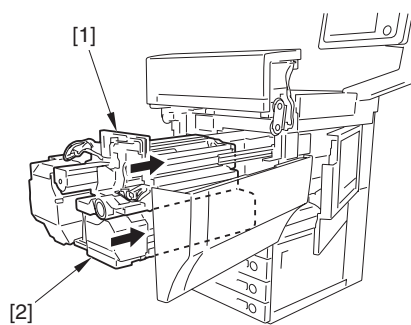
The potential sensor and the potential control PCB are adjusted in pairs. Replacement of them must be performed at the same time.

- 1) Pull out the potential sensor cable [1] from the processing unit hole [2].



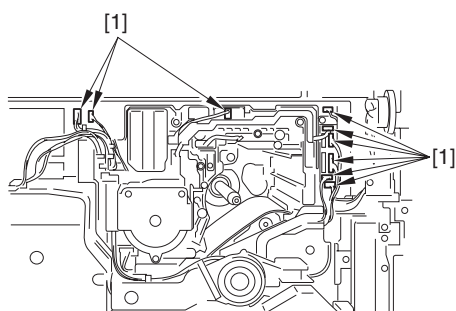
F-7-248

- 2) Return the processing unit [1] and the fixing/feeding unit [2].



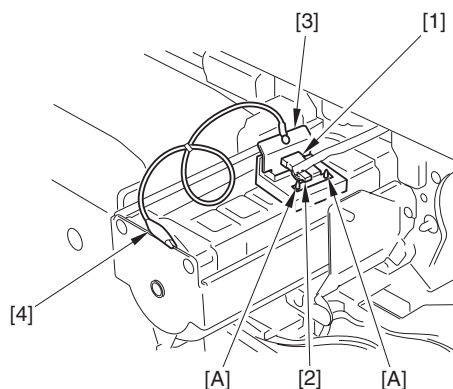
F-7-249

3) Connect the cable [1].



F-7-250

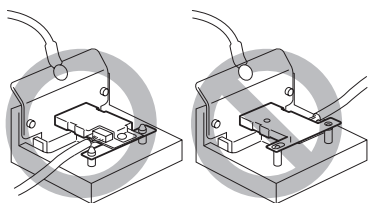
- 4) Connect the cable to the connector [2] of the potential sensor [1].
- 5) Attach the potential sensor [1] by reference to the boss [A] of the electrode for checking potential (FY9-3057-000) [3].
- 6) Connect the clip [4] for checking the potential sensor to the main body frame (GND).



F-7-251

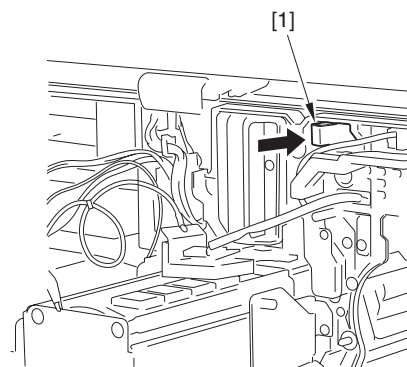


Check to see that potential sensor is attached in an appropriate direction to the electrode for checking the potential sensor.



F-7-252

- 7) After turning ON the main power, set the service mode COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > AINR-OFF as '1'.
- 8) Monitor the fixing upper roller temperature by the service mode COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > FIX-UC and go through the following operations depending on conditions:
 - In case the temperature indicated as 50 deg C or less, place hand on the shutter assembly [1] when the temperature reaches 145 deg C. Release hand from the shutter assembly when the drum rotation stops (approx. 20sec).
 - In case the temperature indicated as 50 deg C or more, place hand on the shutter assembly [1] when the temperature reaches 158 deg C. Release hand from the shutter assembly when the drum rotation stops (approx. 20 sec).



F-7-253

- 9) Execute the service mode COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > OFST.
- 10) Return the value of the service mode COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > AINR-OFF as '0'.
- 11) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 12) Attach the potential sensor onto the main body.

7.14.39 ATR Sensor Unit

7.14.39.1 Preparation for Removing the ATR Sensor Unit

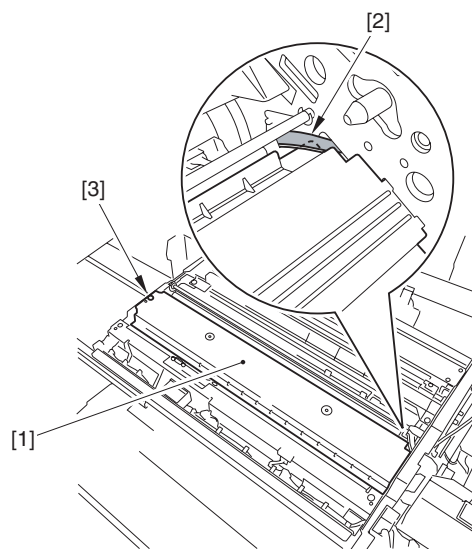
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the processing unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary charging assembly. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer charging assembly. (page 7-88) Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]

7.14.39.2 Removing the ATR Sensor

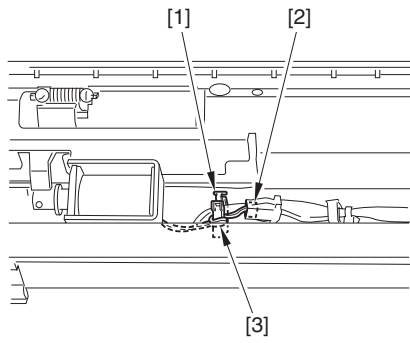
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Attach the developing assembly cover [1] while holding up the cable [2].
- 1 screw [3]



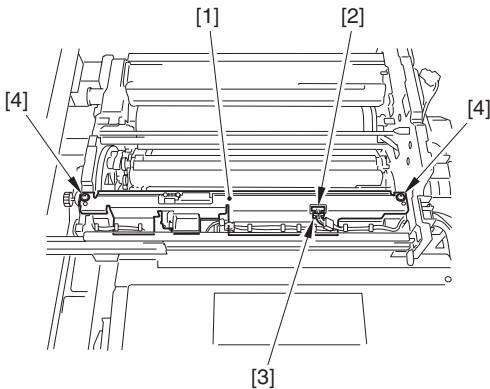
F-7-254

- 2) Open the wire saddle [1] and then disconnect the connector [2].
- 3) The wire saddle [1] is coiled with harness [3] (1 turn). Release the harness and then disconnect the connector.



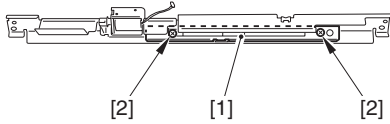
F-7-255

- 4) Remove the ATR sensor unit [1].
- 1 connector [2]
 - 1 edge saddle [3]
 - 2 screws [4]



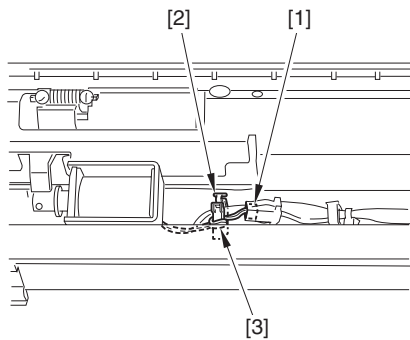
F-7-256

- 5) Remove the ATR sensor [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-7-257

⚠ Points to Note when Attaching the ATR Sensor
When connecting the connector [1], coil the wire saddle [2] with harness [3] (1 turn).



F-7-258

7.14.39.3 After Replacing the ATR Sensor

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Perform the following steps when replacing the ATR sensor. Follow the procedure below to replace the ATR sensor.

- 1) Replace the color developing assembly (Y, M, C).
- 2) Turn on the main power switch.
- 3) Run automatic gradation correction (full correction).

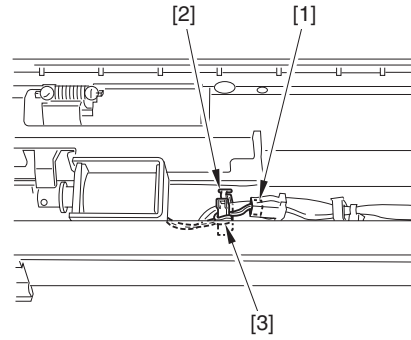


When Installing the ATR Sensor

* Be careful not to touch the developing cylinder, which can cause image fault.

Upon installation of the ATR sensor, make sure to move the developing cylinder away from the mounting location of the sensor by rotating the developing rotary clockwise.

* When plugging in the connector [1], wrap the harness [3] around the wire saddle [2] once.



F-7-259

7.14.40 Drum Thermal Sensor Unit

7.14.40.1 Preparation for Removing the Drum Thermal Sensor Unit

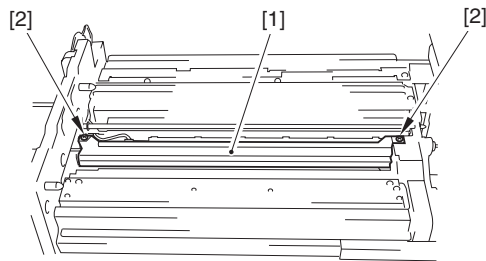
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Pull out the process unit. (page 7-83) Reference [Sliding the Processing Unit]
- 5) Remove the primary charging assembly. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 6) Remove the pre-transfer charging assembly. (page 7-88) Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 7) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-89) Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]

7.14.40.2 Removing the Drum Thermal Sensor Unit

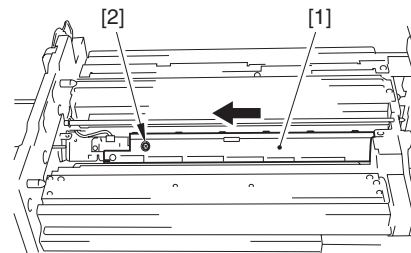
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the process unit guide [1].
- 2 screws [2]



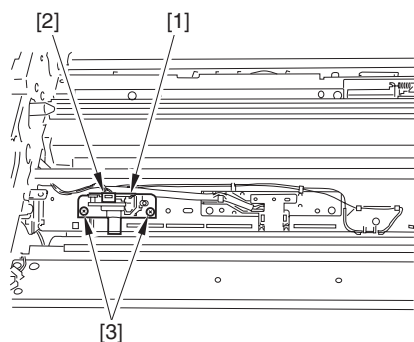
F-7-260

- 2) Remove the duct [1] by shifting it in the direction of the arrow.
- 1 screw [2]



F-7-261

- 3) Remove the drum thermal sensor unit [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 2 screws [3]



F-7-262

7.14.41 Patch Image Sensor

7.14.41.1 Preparation for Removing the Patch Image Sensor Unit

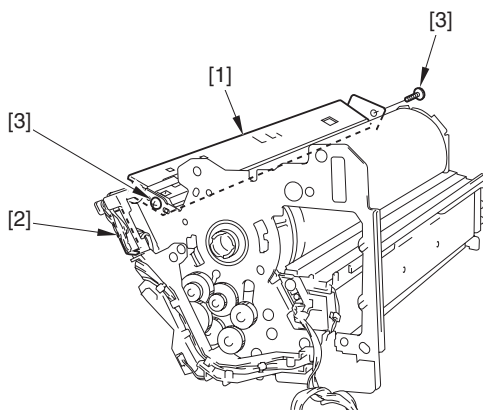
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary charging assembly. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the pre-transfer charging assembly. (page 7-88) Reference [Removing the pre-transfer corona assembly]
- 6) Remove the drum unit. (page 7-89) Reference [Removing the Drum Unit]

7.14.41.2 Removing the Patch Image Sensor Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the patch image sensor unit [1].
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 2 screws [3]



F-7-263

7.14.41.3 After Replacing the Patch Image Reading Sensor

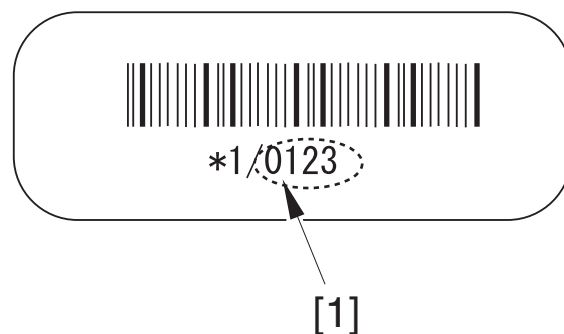
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Run the following items in the Service Mode after replacing the patch image scan sensor.

Service Mode (Patch Detection Sensor Default Correction) :

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > ALF-F <for patch image scan sensor (front)>
COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > ALF-C <for patch image scan sensor (center)>

This sensor unit comes with the following correction value labels (3 in total). The labels contain correction values for each sensor (front, center and rear). Enter the label values (4 digits) [1] using the above service mode. After entering the values, put the labels onto the new sensor unit.



F-7-264

7.14.42 Charging Wire

7.14.42.1 Preparation for Setting Up Charging Wire

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

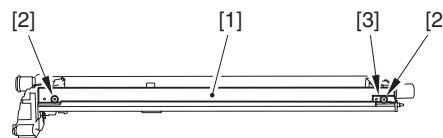
- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Detach the process unit cover.
- 3) Lift the hopper unit.
- 4) Remove the primary charging assembly. (page 7-86) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly]
- 5) Remove the primary grit plate. (page 7-87) Reference [Removing the Primary Grid Plate]
- 6) Remove the primary charging assembly pad folder. (page 7-87) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly Pad Holder]
- 7) Remove the primary charging assembly slider. (page 7-88) Reference [Removing the Primary Corona Assembly Slider]

7.14.42.2 Setting Up Charging Wire

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The following procedure is basically the common procedure among all charging assemblies. The primary charging assembly is used here as an example.

- 1) Remove the shield plate [1].
 - 2 screws [2]
 - 1 holder [3]



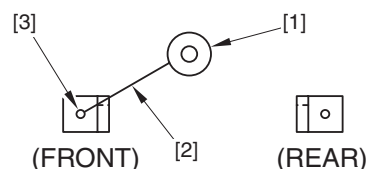
F-7-265

- 2) Remove the wire cleaner.
- 3) Loosen the charging wire [2] about 5 cm from the charging wire reel [1] of wire diameter 0.06 mm, and make a loop of diameter 2 mm on the edge.

MEMO:

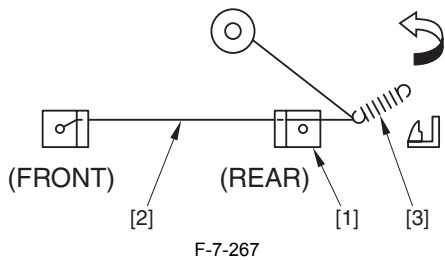
When making a loop, roll the charging wire in the hex key once, and roll the hex key three to four times to twist the charging wire. By doing so, you can easily make a loop.

- 4) Cut the edge of the twisted charging wire (excess wire) using a wire cutter.
- 5) Hook the loop on the stud [3].



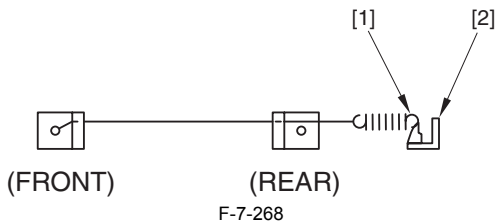
F-7-266

- 6) Hook the charging wire [2] on the charging wire positioning [1] at rear side, and then, hook the charging wire tension spring [3] to the charging wire at the position indicated below and twist it.



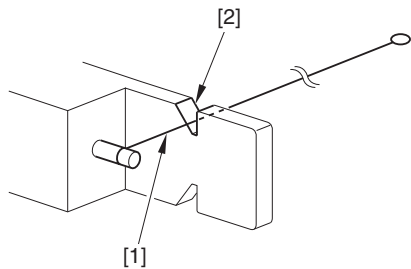
F-7-267

- 7) Cut the excess charging wire using a wire cutter.
- 8) Pinch the edge of the charging wire tension spring [1] using tweezers, and hook it to the charging electrode [2].
In case of the pre-transfer charging assembly, hook the spring to the pin located in the front.



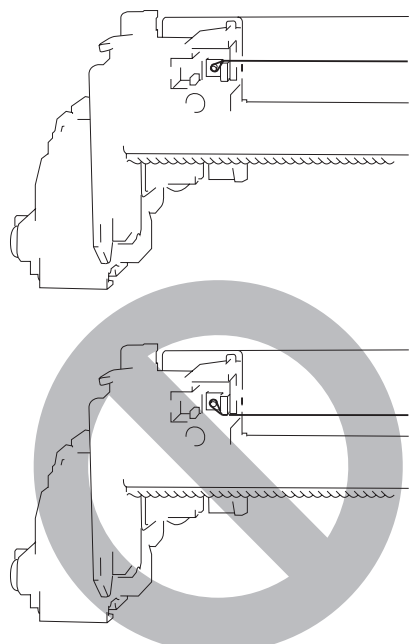
F-7-268

- ⚠** After hooking the spring, check the following:
- The charging wire [1] is not bended or twisted.
 - The charging wire [1] is fitted in the groove [2] on the upper side of the charging wire positioning.



F-7-269

- ⚠** In case of the primary charging assembly, lead the charging wire as indicated below.



F-7-270

- 10) Clean the charging wire using lint-free paper moistened with alcohol solution.
- 11) Mount the wire cleaner.

- ⚠** Be sure the direction when mounting the wire cleaner.

7.14.42.3 After Replacing the Primary Charging Wire

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Execute the primary charging wire cleaning from service mode.
(primary charging wire cleaning: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-CLN)

- 9) Assemble the primary charging assembly in the reverse steps.

Chapter 8 Pickup/Feeding System

Contents

8.1 Construction	8-1
8.1.1 Specification/Control/Function	8-1
8.1.2 Arrangement of Rollers	8-2
8.1.3 Paper Delivery Path	8-3
8.1.4 Arrangement of Sensors	8-4
8.1.5 Distribution of Drives	8-6
8.1.6 Interval Speed	8-8
8.2 Basic Sequence	8-13
8.2.1 Cassette Feeding	8-13
8.2.2 Manual Feeding	8-13
8.3 Detecting Jams	8-15
8.3.1 Jam Detection Outline.....	8-15
8.3.1.1 Overview	8-15
8.3.1.2 Operation at Jam Occurrence	8-16
8.3.2 Delay Jams	8-16
8.3.2.1 Cassette Pickup Assembly	8-16
8.3.2.2 Other than Cassette Pickup Assembly	8-17
8.3.3 Stationary Jams	8-18
8.3.3.1 Normal Stationary Jam.....	8-18
8.3.3.2 Stationary Jam (Residual Jam) at the Power ON	8-19
8.3.4 Other Jams	8-19
8.3.4.1 Paper Thickness Detection	8-19
8.4 Cassette	8-20
8.4.1 Overview	8-20
8.4.2 Paper Size Detection	8-21
8.4.3 Setting the Universal Cassette	8-22
8.4.4 Paper Level Sensor	8-22
8.5 Cassette Pick-Up Unit.....	8-25
8.5.1 Configuration	8-25
8.5.2 Behavior of Lifter	8-25
8.5.3 Behavior of Pickup	8-26
8.5.4 Feeding Control (Cassette 1)	8-27
8.5.5 Pickup Control (Cassette 2 to 4)	8-28
8.6 Manual Feed Pickup Unit	8-29
8.6.1 Configuration.....	8-29
8.6.2 Feeding Operation.....	8-29
8.6.3 Paper Size Detection.....	8-30
8.6.4 Last Paper Detection.....	8-31
8.7 Registration Unit.....	8-32
8.7.1 Overview.....	8-32
8.8 Duplex Feeding Unit.....	8-33
8.8.1 Overview.....	8-33
8.8.2 Side Registration Position Detection	8-35
8.8.3 A4 size 5-Sheet-Circulation.....	8-37
8.8.4 A3 Size 3-Sheet-Circulation	8-43
8.9 Delivery.....	8-50
8.9.1 Overview.....	8-50
8.9.2 Face-up Delivery.....	8-50
8.9.3 Face-down Delivery.....	8-50
8.9.4 Curl-Removing Operation (Decurler Unit).....	8-54

8.10 Parts Replacement Procedure	8-58
8.10.1 Cassette Pickup Unit	8-58
8.10.1.1 Preparation for Removing the Cassette Pickup Unit	8-58
8.10.1.2 Removing the Cassette Pickup Unit	8-58
8.10.2 Cassette Heater	8-59
8.10.2.1 Removing the Cassette Heater	8-59
8.10.3 Cassette Pickup/Feed/Separation Roller	8-60
8.10.3.1 Removing the Cassette Pickup/Feed/Separation Roller	8-60
8.10.4 Manual Feed Roller	8-60
8.10.4.1 Removing the Manual Feed Roller	8-60
8.10.5 Manual Feed Separation Roller	8-61
8.10.5.1 Preparation for Removing the Manual Separation Roller	8-61
8.10.5.2 Removing the Manual Separation Roller	8-61
8.10.6 Horizontal Registration Assembly	8-61
8.10.6.1 Preparation for Removing the Horizontal Registration	8-61
8.10.6.2 Removing the Horizontal Registration	8-61
8.10.7 Pre-Fixing Feeding Unit	8-62
8.10.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Pre-Fixing/Feeding Unit	8-62
8.10.7.2 Removing the Pre-Fixing/Feeding Unit	8-62
8.10.7.3 Removing the Pre-Fixing/Feeding Unit	8-63
8.10.8 Fixing/Feeder Unit	8-63
8.10.8.1 Preparation for Pulling/Removing the Fixing/Feeding Unit	8-63
8.10.8.2 Pulling/Removing the Fixing/Feeding Unit	8-63
8.10.9 Buffer Decurler	8-65
8.10.9.1 Removing the Decurler	8-65
8.10.10 Decurler Adjustment Roller (Upper)	8-66
8.10.10.1 Preparation for Removing the Decurler Sponge Roller (upper)	8-66
8.10.10.2 Removing the Decurler Sponge Roller (upper)	8-66
8.10.11 Decurler Adjustment Roller (Lower)	8-67
8.10.11.1 Preparation for Removing the Decurler Sponge Roller (lower)	8-67
8.10.11.2 Removing the Decurler Sponge Roller (lower)	8-67

8.1 Construction

8.1.1 Specification/Control/Function

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-8-1

Item		Function/Method
Paper accommodation		Front loading
Pickup	Cassette (1 to 4)	Separation retard
	Manual feed tray	Separation retard
Paper feed reference		Center reference
Max. recording size		330.2 mm X 482.6 mm (13" x 19")
Max. image assurance size		316 mm X 466.6 mm
Max. printable size		323 mm X 476.6 mm (single-sided)
		316 mm X 476.6 mm (second side of double-sided)
Margin	Leading edge	4.0 +/- 1.5/-1.0 mm
	Left	2.5 +/- 1.5 mm (single sided), 2.5 +/- 2.0 mm (second side of double-sided)
	Back end	2.0 +/- 1.5 mm (reference value)
Paper stack	Cassette (1 to 4)	550 sheets (equivalent of 80 g/m2 paper)
	Manual feed tray	100 sheets (equivalent of 80 g/m2 paper)
Paper size	Cassette (1 to 4)	A3,B4,A4,A4R,B5,B5R,A5R,LGL,LTR,LTRR,STMTR,11"x17"(279 mm x 432 mm),12"x18"(305 mm x 457 mm),SRA3(320 mm x 450 mm),13"x19"(330 mm x 482 mm),EXEC,8KR,16K
	Manual feed tray	Main scanning direction 100 mm to 330 mm Sub scanning direction 148.5 mm to 482 mm (*1)
Paper weight	Cassette (1 to 4)	64 to 209 g/m2 (*2,*3)
	Manual feed tray	64 to 256 g/m2 (*3)
	Duplexing	Auto duplexing 64 to 209 g/m2 paper Manual feed duplexing 64 to 256 g/m2 paper
Size switchover	Cassette (1 to 4)	By user
	Manual feed tray	By user
Duplexing		Through path

*1: At lengthy mode, papers that size are up to 630 mm can be used.

Service Mode: COPIER>OPTION>USER>MF-LG-ST (level 2), and set 'MF-LG-ST (level 2)' as '1' so that the lengthy original button is displayed on the application mode screen.

*2: Only for the papers indicated below, a paper that weights up to 216 g/m2 paper can be used.

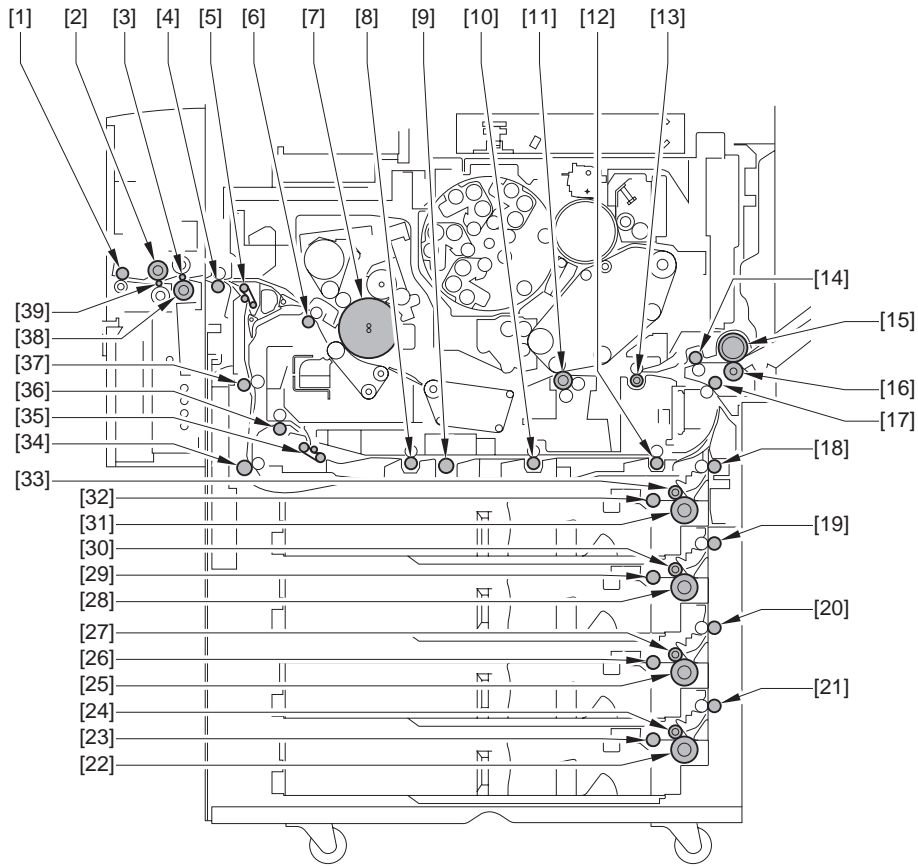
- COUGAR (216 g/m2)

- Mohawk (216 g/m2)

*3: The coated paper that weights less than 105 g/m2 paper is over spec request.

8.1.2 Arrangement of Rollers

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



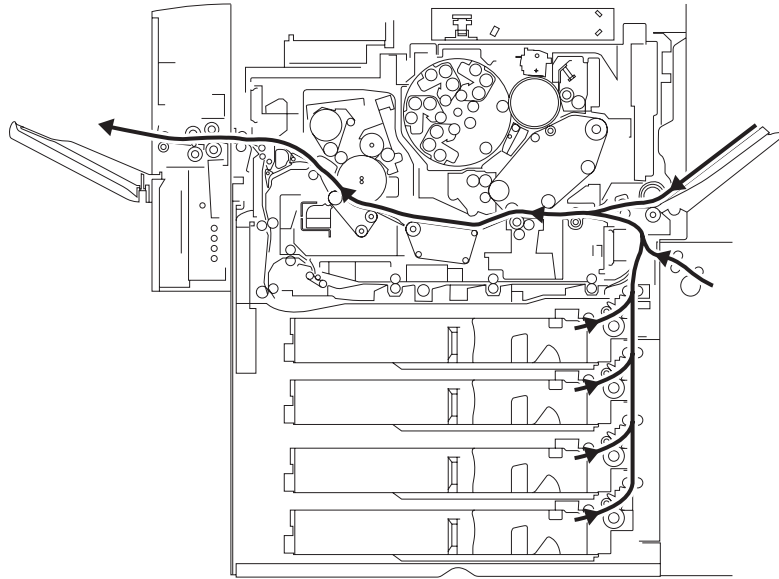
F-8-1

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| [1] Decurler delivery roller | [21] Vertical path 4 roller |
| [2] Decurler adjustment 2 roller | [22] Cassette 4 separation roller |
| [3] Decurler adjustment 1 roller | [23] Cassette 4 pickup roller |
| [4] External delivery roller | [24] Cassette 4 delivery roller |
| [5] Reversal delivery decurler | [25] Cassette 3 separation roller |
| [6] Inside delivery roller | [26] Cassette 3 pickup roller |
| [7] Fixing roller | [27] Cassette 3 delivery roller |
| [8] Duplexing left roller | [28] Cassette 2 separation roller |
| [9] Color sensor roller | [29] Cassette 2 pickup roller |
| [10] Duplexing middle sensor | [30] Cassette 2 delivery roller |
| [11] Secondary transfer outside roller | [31] Cassette 1 separation roller |
| [12] Duplexing right sensor | [32] Cassette 1 delivery roller |
| [13] Registration roller | [33] Cassette 1 separation roller |
| [14] Manual feeding pull-out roller | [34] Reversal 2 roller |
| [15] Manual feeding roller | [35] Duplexing reversal decurler |
| [16] Manual feeding separation roller | [36] Duplexing inlet roller |
| [17] Registration front roller | [37] Reversing 1 roller |
| [18] Vertical path 1 roller | [38] Decurler adjustment 1 roller |
| [19] Vertical path 2 roller | [39] Decurler drive 2 roller |
| [20] Vertical path 3 roller | |

8.1.3 Paper Delivery Path

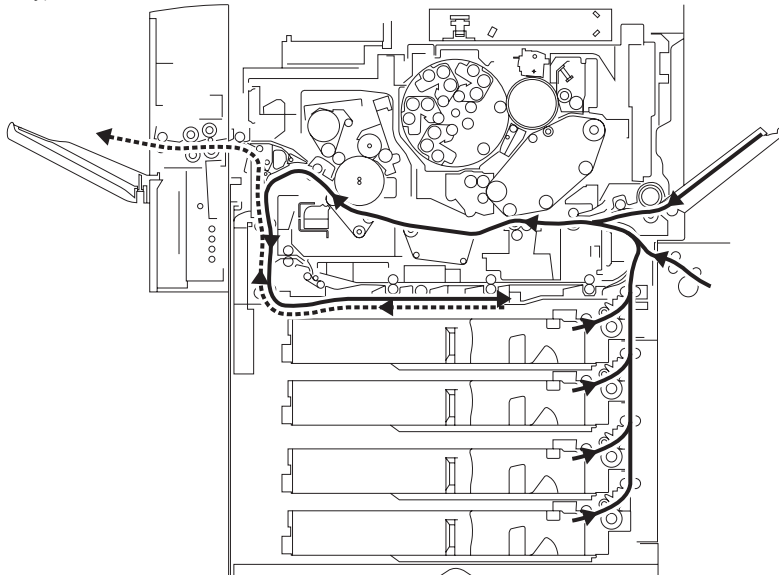
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- Face-up delivery (straight delivery)



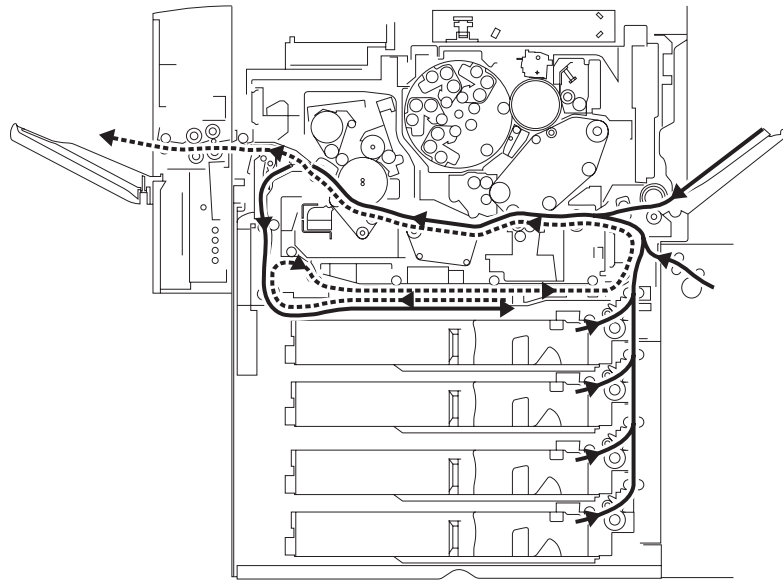
F-8-2

- Face-down delivery (reversal delivery)



F-8-3

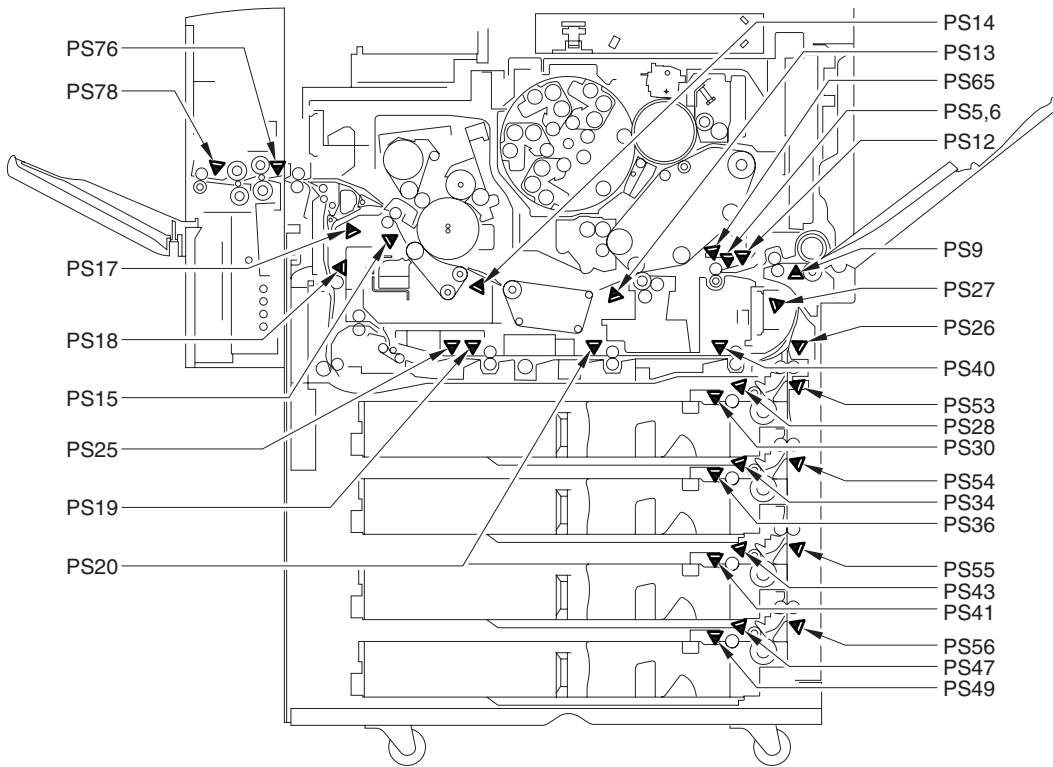
- Duplexing re-pickup



F-8-4

8.1.4 Arrangement of Sensors

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

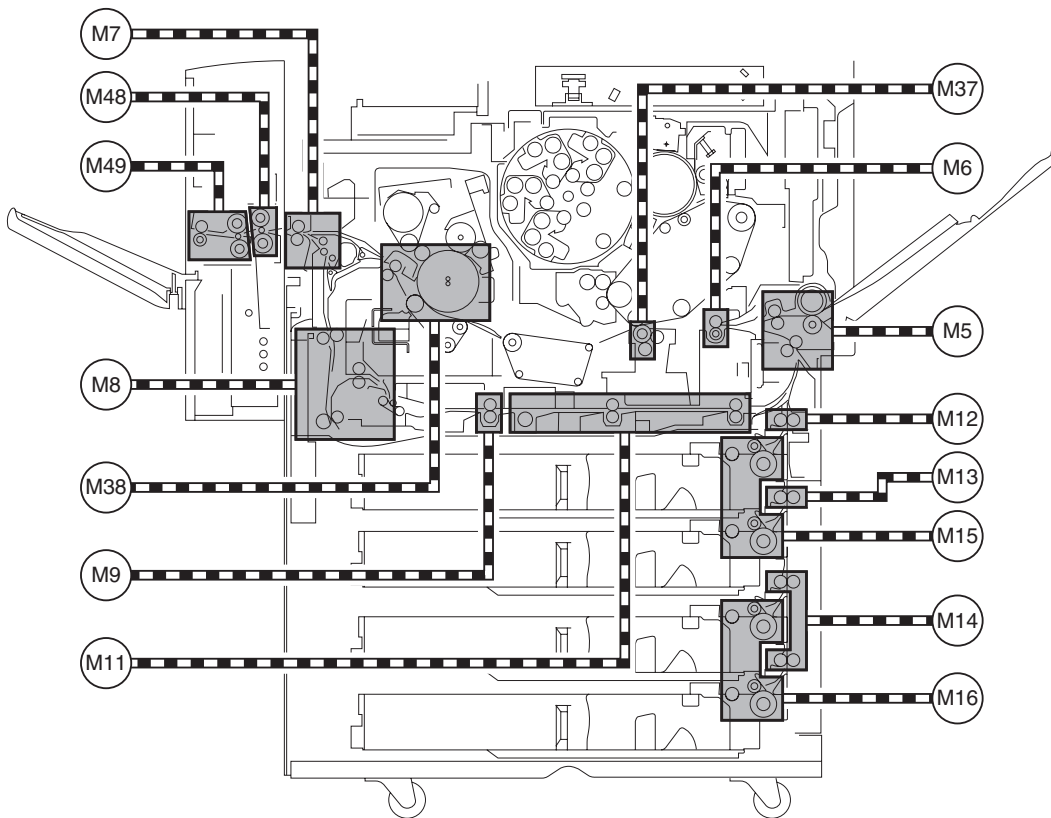


F-8-5

PS5: OHT sensor (front)	PS30: Cassette 1 paper sensor
PS6: OHT sensor (rear)	PS34: Cassette 2 pickup sensor
PS9: Manual feeding paper sensor	PS36: Cassette 2 paper sensor
PS12: Registration front sensor	PS40: Duplexing right sensor
PS13: Secondary transfer rear sensor	PS41: Cassette 3 paper sensor
PS14: Fixing assembly inlet sensor	PS43: Cassette 3 pickup sensor
PS15: Inside delivery sensor	PS47: Cassette 4 pickup sensor
PS17: Reversal sensor	PS49: Cassette 4 paper sensor
PS18: Reversal vertical path sensor	PS53: Vertical path 1 sensor
PS19: Duplexing left sensor	PS54: Vertical path 2 sensor
PS20: Duplexing middle sensor	PS55: Vertical path 3 sensor
PS25: Side registration sensor	PS56: Vertical path 4 sensor
PS26: Vertical path 0 sensor	PS65: Paper thickness sensor
PS27: Confluence sensor	PS76: Decurler inlet sensor
PS28: Cassette 1 pickup sensor	PS78: Decurler outlet sensor

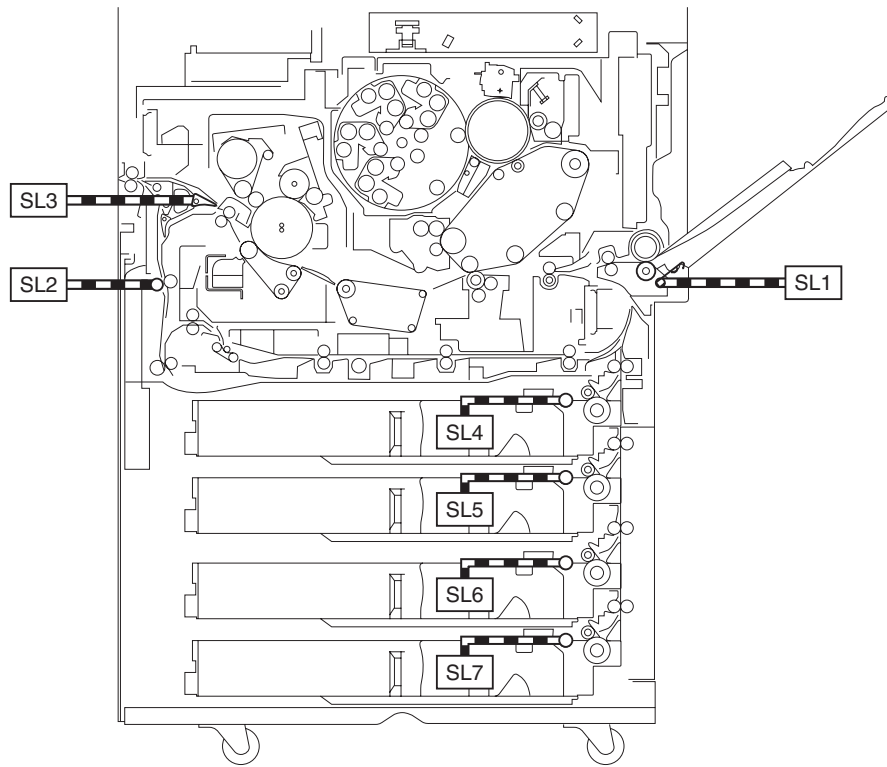
8.1.5 Distribution of Drives

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



F-8-6

- M5: Registration front motor
- M6: Registration motor
- M7: Outside delivery roller
- M8: Reversal motor
- M9: Duplexing left motor
- M11: Duplexing right motor
- M12: Vertical path upper motor
- M13: Vertical path middle motor
- M14: Vertical path lower motor
- M15: Cassette 1/2 pickup motor
- M16: Cassette 3/4 pickup motor
- M37: Secondary transfer outside motor
- M38: Fixing motor
- M48: Decurler delivery 1 motor
- M49: Decurler delivery 2 motor



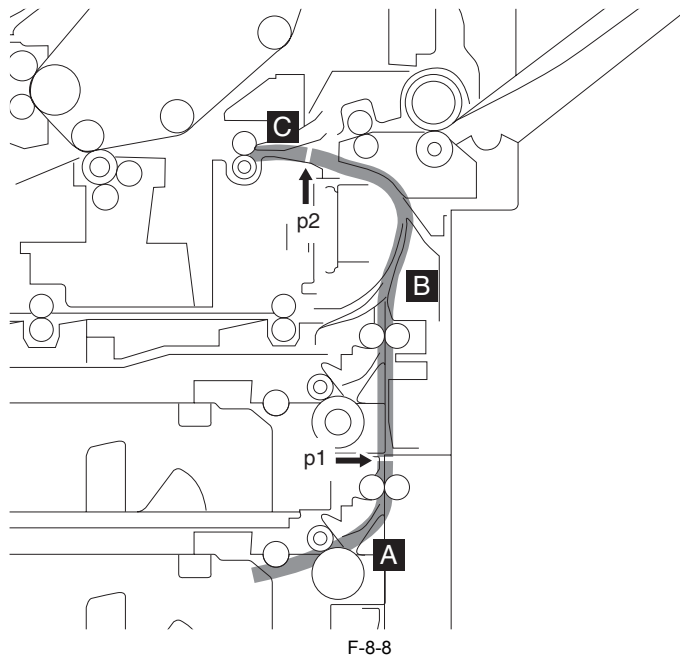
- F-8-7
- SL1: Manual feeding solenoid
 - SL2: Reversal roller separation solenoid
 - SL3: Delivery flapper solenoid
 - SL4: Cassette 1 pickup solenoid
 - SL5: Cassette 2 pickup solenoid
 - SL6: Cassette 3 pickup solenoid
 - SL7: Cassette 4 pickup solenoid

8.1.6 Interval Speed

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Pickup Position to Registration Position

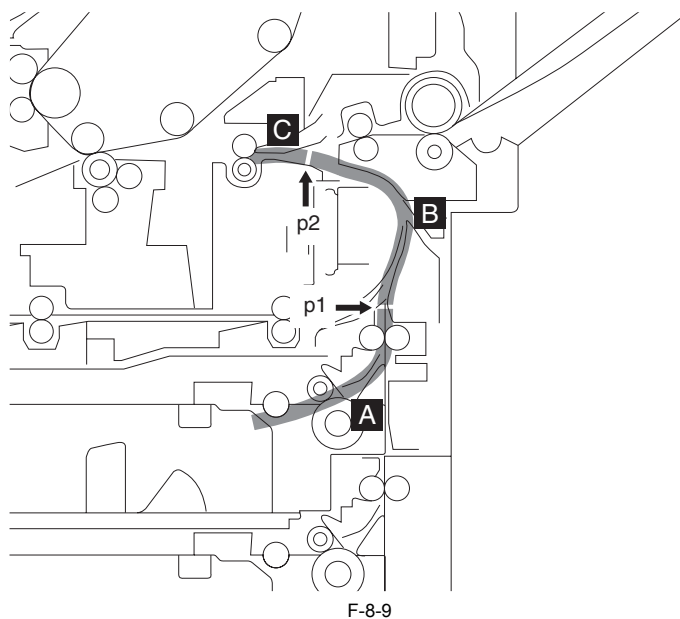
a. In case of Cassette 2/3/4 pickup



Interval	Paper delivery speed
[A]	500 mm/sec
[B]	600 mm/sec
[C]	Normal speed mode: 500 mm/sec 1/3 speed mode: 285 mm/sec

p1: Point of start of acceleration (pre-registration stop position)
p2: Point of deceleration

b. In case of Cassette 1 pickup

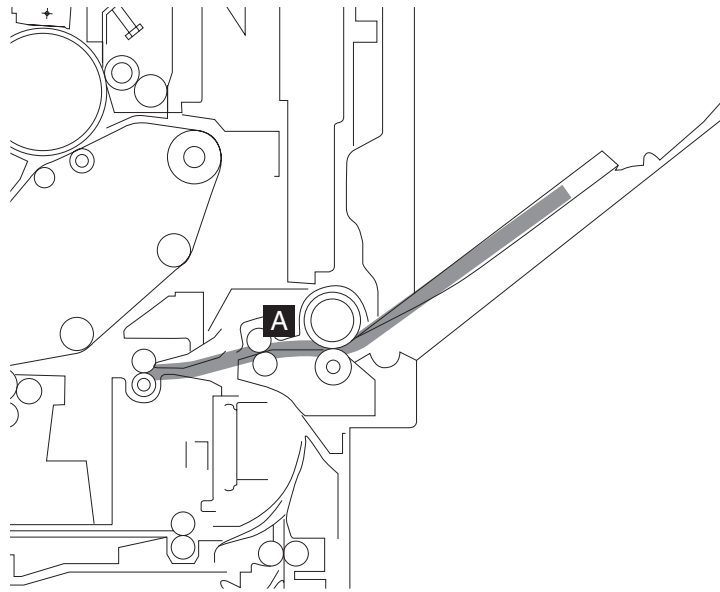


Interval	Paper delivery speed
[A]	500 mm/sec
[B]	255 mm/sec to 600 mm/sec (The time varies depending on the time required from the pickup start to the vertical path 1 sensor ON.)
[C]	Normal speed mode: 500 mm/sec 1/3 speed mode: 285 mm/sec

p1: Point of start of acceleration (vertical path 1 sensor)

p2: Point of deceleration

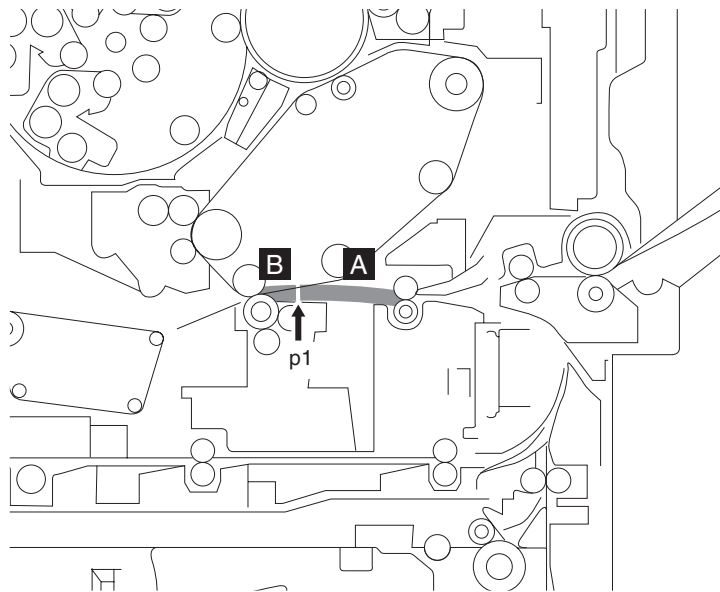
c. In case of manual feeding tray



F-8-10

Interval	Paper delivery speed
[A]	Normal speed mode: 285 mm/sec 1/3 speed mode: 95 mm/sec (= processing speed)

2. Registration Position to Secondary Transfer Position



F-8-11

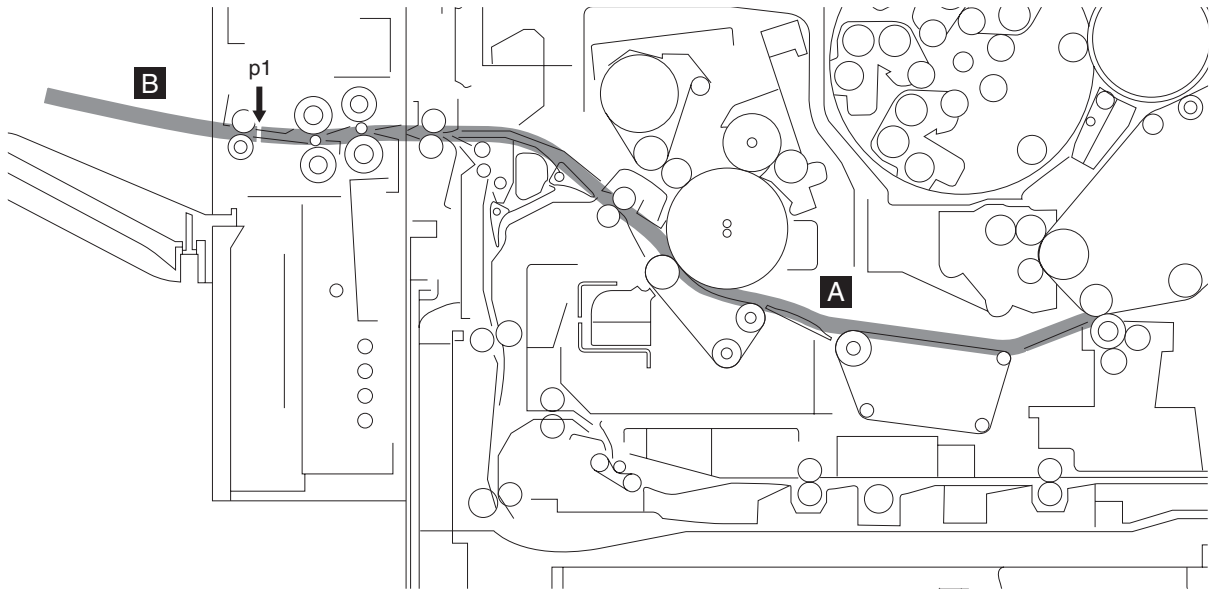
Interval	Paper delivery speed
[A]	Normal speed mode: 600 mm/sec 1/3 speed mode: 200 mm/sec
[B]	Normal speed mode: 285 mm/sec 1/3 speed mode: 95 mm/sec (=processing speed)

p1: Point of start of deceleration

3. Secondary Transfer Position to Delivery Position

a. In case of face-up delivery

Accelerate the delivery to prevent the trail edge lapse at the delivery outlet due to the upward curl of a sheet.



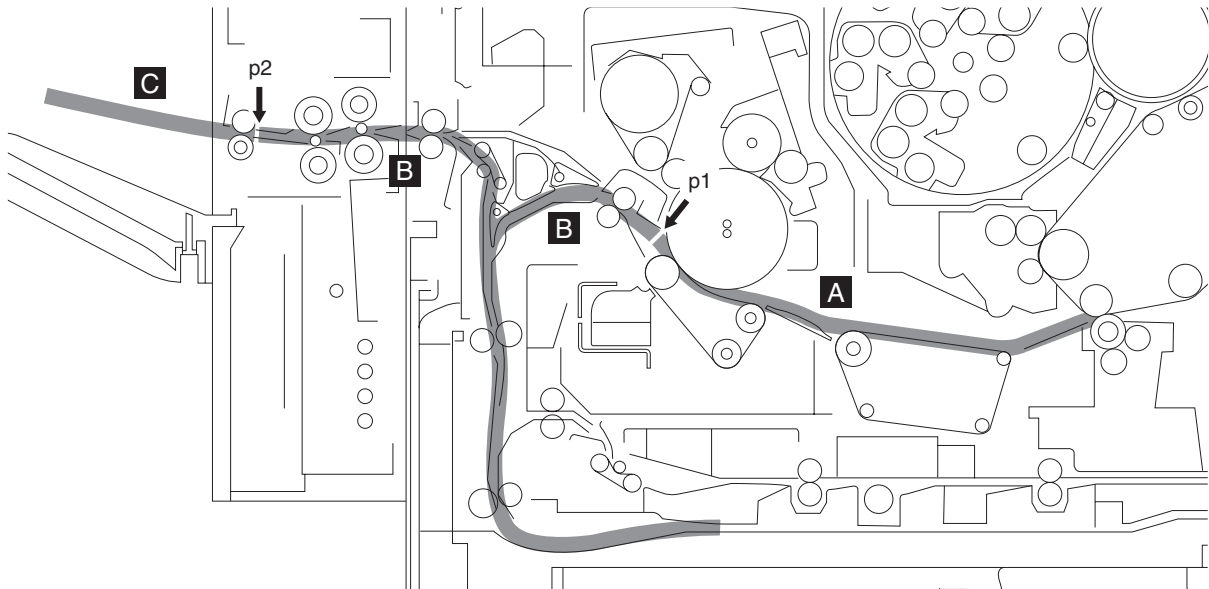
F-8-12

Interval	Paper delivery speed
[A]	Normal speed mode: 285 mm/sec 1/3 speed mode: 95 mm/sec (=processing speed)
[B]	314 mm/sec

p1: Point of start of acceleration (=point where a point 60 mm of the trail edge passes the delivery outlet)

b. In case of face-down delivery

Decelerate the delivery to prevent the delivery stacking fault due to the downward curl of a sheet.



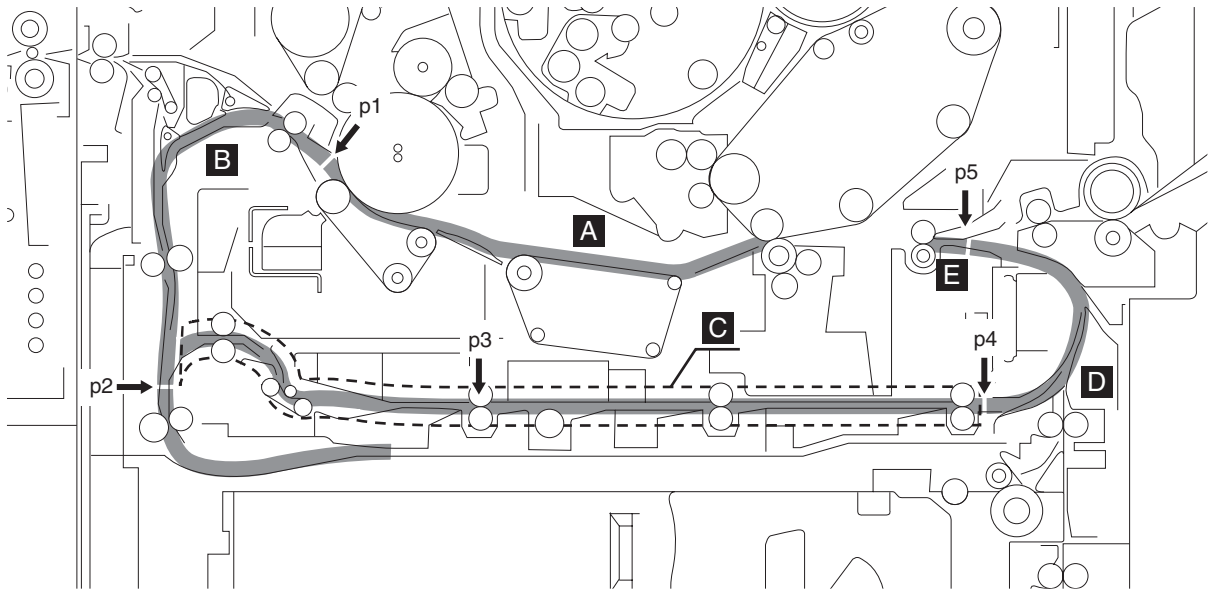
F-8-13

Interval	Paper delivery speed
[A]	Normal speed mode: 285 mm/sec 1/3 speed mode: 95 mm/sec (=processing speed)
[B]	Normal speed mode: 627 mm/sec 1/3 speed mode: 314 mm/sec

Interval	Paper delivery speed
[C]	Normal speed mode: 627 mm/sec 1/3 speed mode: 180 mm/sec
[D]	600 mm/sec
[E]	Normal speed mode: 500 mm/sec 1/3 speed mode: 285 mm/sec

p1: Point of start of acceleration (=a point where the trail edge reaches a point 20 mm downstream from the fixing nip area)
p2: Point of start of deceleration (=point where a point 40 mm of the trail edge passes the delivery outlet)

c. In case of duplexing re-pickup



F-8-14

Interval	Paper delivery speed
[A]	Normal speed mode: 285 mm/sec 1/3 speed mode: 95 mm/sec (=processing speed)
[B]	Normal speed mode: 627 mm/sec 1/3 speed mode: 314 mm/sec
[C]	600 mm/sec
[D]	500 mm/sec

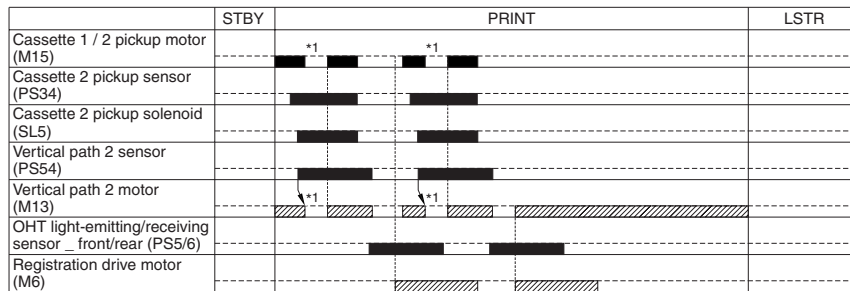
- p1: Point of start of acceleration (=a point where the trail edge reaches a point 20 mm downstream from the fixing nip area)
- p2: Point of stop of duplexing reversal
- p3: Point of stop of side registration
- p4: Point of stop of duplexing re-pickup
- p5: Point of start of deceleration

8.2 Basic Sequence

8.2.1 Cassette Feeding

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

A4, plain paper, 2-sheet, Cassette 2 feeding, and face-up delivery







F-8-15

*1: Stops at pre-registration position.
There are acceleration/deceleration in the shaded intervals in the figure.

8.2.2 Manual Feeding

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

A4, plain paper, 2-sheet, and face-up delivery

	STBY	PRINT	LSTR
Manual feeder holding plate solenoid (SL1)			
Manual feed pre-registration drive motor (M5)			
OHT light-emitting/receiving sensor _ front/rear (PSS/6)			
Registration drive motor (M6)			

F-8-16

8.3 Detecting Jams

8.3.1 Jam Detection Outline

8.3.1.1 Overview

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-8-2

Jam code	Sensor		XX		
			01:Delay jam	02:Stationary jam	0A:Residual jam 0B:Door open jam
XX01	Cassette 1 pickup sensor	PS28	Detect	Detect	Not detect
XX02	Cassette 2 pickup sensor	PS34	Detect	Detect	Not detect
XX03	Cassette 3 pickup sensor	PS41	Detect	Detect	Not detect
XX04	Cassette 4 pickup sensor	PS47	Detect	Detect	Not detect
XX05	Vertical path 4 sensor	PS56	Detect	Detect	Detect
XX06	Vertical path 3 sensor	PS55	Detect	Detect	Detect
XX07	Vertical path 2 sensor	PS54	Detect	Detect	Detect
XX08	Vertical path 1 sensor	PS53	Detect	Detect	Detect
XX09	Confluence sensor	PS27	Detect	Detect	Detect
XX0A	OHT sensor (optical sensor) / Registration front sensor (flag sensor) *1	PS5-6 /PS12	Detect	Detect	Not detect
XX0B	Secondary transfer rear sensor	PS13	Detect *2	Not detect	Detect *2
XX0C	Fixing assembly inlet sensor	PS14	Not detect	Not detect	Detect
XX0D	Inside delivery sensor	PS15	Detect *3	Not detect	Detect *3
XX0E	Reversal inlet sensor	PS17	Detect	Detect	Detect
XX10	Reversal vertical path sensor	PS18	Detect	Detect	Detect
XX11	Vertical path 0 sensor	PS26	Detect	Detect	Not detect
XX12	Duplexing left sensor	PS19	Detect	Detect	Detect
XX13	Duplexing middle sensor	PS20	Not detect	Not detect	Detect
XX14	Duplexing right sensor	PS40	Detect	Detect	Detect
XX1B	Decurler inlet sensor	PS76	Detect	Detect	Detect
XX1C	Decurler outlet sensor	PS78	Not detect	Detect	Detect

*1:When detecting the registration position, use OHT sensor (optical sensor) to pass papers other than OHT and use the registration front sensor (flag sensor) to pass OHT.

*2:Use the sensor to detect the paper wrapping over the ITB.

*3: Use the sensor to detect the paper wrapping over the fixing roller.

<Other Jam>

T-8-3

Jam code	Type	Sensor	Description	
E10A	Registration ON delay jam	OHT sensor (optical sensor) / Registration front sensor (flag sensor)	PS5-6 /PS12	Indicates that the registration sensor fails to detect paper when the registration clutch is ON.
E20A	Heavy paper detection jam	Paper thickness sensor	PS65	Indicates that the thickness of paper is over the specifications.
0B01	Timeout error	-	-	Indicates the timeout due to the continuous rotation of the motor.

0D91	Misprint 1	OHT sensor (optical sensor) / Registration front sensor (flag sensor)	PS5-6 /PS12	Indicates that the registration sensor detects paper which length is shorter than as it is specified.
0D92	Misprint 2	OHT sensor (optical sensor)	PS5-6	Indicates that the OHT sensor detects the plain paper when OHT is set.
0D93	Misprint 3	OHT sensor (optical sensor)	PS5-6	Indicates that the OHT sensor detects OHT when OHT is not set.

8.3.1.2 Operation at Jam Occurrence

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

<Operation When Detecting Delay/Stationary Jam>

- The driving at upstream from the sensor that jam has been detected stops its operation, whereas the driving at downstream from the sensor stops after delivering papers.
- When the paper is not reached to the registration front, the paper is delivered to the registration front sensor (PS12). (Purpose: improve the jam processing at the time of jam occurrence in the registration area.)

<Jam Reset Methods>

The sensor detecting the jam is kept in memory. The method for resetting the memory to delete the sensor information is as follow:

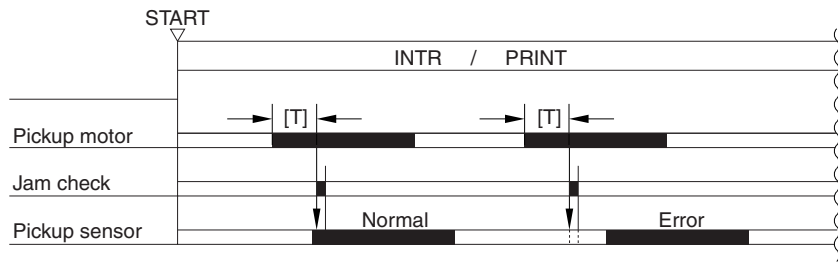
Sensor	Clearing method
Cassette 4 pickup sensor (PS47)	Open/close the cassette 4
Vertical path 4 sensor (PS56)	Open/close the lower right cover
Cassette 3 pickup sensor (PS41)	Open/close the cassette 3
Vertical path 3 sensor (PS55)	Open/close the lower right cover
Cassette 2 pickup sensor (PS34)	Open/close the cassette 2
Vertical path 2 sensor (PS54)	Open/close the lower right cover
Cassette 1 pickup sensor (PS28)	Open/close the cassette 1
Vertical path 0 sensor (PS26)	Open/close the manual feed tray cover
Vertical path 1 sensor (PS53)	
Confluence sensor (PS27)	
OHT sensor (PS5/6)	
Secondary transfer sensor (PS13)	Open/close the front cover
Inside delivery sensor (PS15)	
Reversal inlet sensor (PS17)	
Reversal vertical path sensor (PS18)	
Duplexing left sensor (PS19)	
Duplexing middle sensor (PS20)	
Duplexing right sensor (PS40)	

8.3.2 Delay Jams

8.3.2.1 Cassette Pickup Assembly

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

In the case where the leading edge of paper does not reach the sensor within a specific period of time after the pickup motor has gone on.



F-8-17

T: specific period of feed time

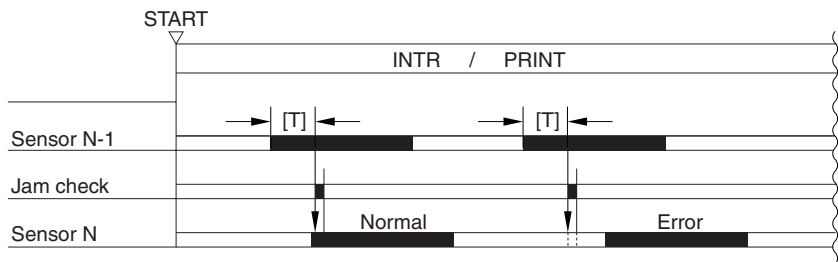
T-8-4

Pickup assembly	Motor	Delay jam detection sensor N
Cassette 1	Cassette 1/2 pickup motor (M15)	Cassette 1 pickup sensor (PS28)
Cassette 2	Cassette 1/2 pickup motor (M15)	Cassette 2 pickup sensor (PS34)
Cassette 3	Cassette 3/4 pickup motor (M16)	Cassette 3 pickup sensor (PS41)
Cassette 4	Cassette 3/4 pickup motor (M16)	Cassette 4 pickup sensor (PS47)

8.3.2.2 Other than Cassette Pickup Assembly

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

In the case where the delay jam detection sensor N does not go on within a specific period of time after the sensor N-1 has gone on.



F-8-18

T: specific period of feed time

T-8-5

Sensor N	Sensor N-1	Remarks
Vertical path 4 sensor (PS56)	Cassette 4 pickup sensor (PS47)	
Vertical path 3 sensor (PS55)	Cassette 3 pickup sensor (PS43)	Vertical path 4 sensor (PS56)
Vertical path 2 sensor (PS54)	Cassette 2 pickup sensor (PS34)	Vertical path 3 sensor (PS55)
Vertical path 1 sensor (PS53)	Cassette 1 pickup sensor (PS28)	Vertical path 2 sensor (PS54)
Vertical path 0 sensor (PS26)	Vertical path 1 sensor (PS53)	Duplexing right sensor (PS40)
Confluence sensor (PS27)	Vertical path 0 sensor (PS26)	

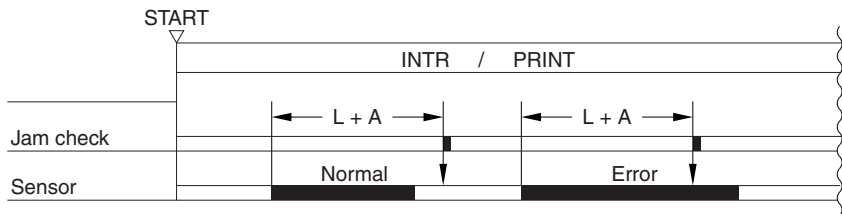
Sensor N	Sensor N-1	Remarks
Registration sensor (PS12)	Confluence sensor (PS27)	Passage of paper other than OHT
	Manual feeding paper sensor (PS9)	
OHT sensor (PS5/6)	Confluence sensor (PS27)	Passage of OHT
	Manual feeding paper sensor (PS9)	
Secondary transfer rear sensor (PS13)	Registration sensor (PS12)	Passage of paper other than OHT / detection of the paper wrapping over ITB
	OHT sensor (PS5/6)	Passage of OHT / detection of the paper wrapping over ITB
Inside delivery sensor (PS15)	Fixing assembly inlet sensor (PS14)	Detection of the paper wrapping over the fixing assembly
Reversal inlet sensor (PS17)	Inside delivery sensor (PS15)	
Reversal vertical path sensor (PS18)	Reversal inlet sensor (PS17)	
Duplexing left sensor (PS19)	Reversal vertical path sensor (PS18)	
Duplexing middle sensor (PS20)	Duplexing left sensor (PS19)	
Duplexing right sensor (PS40)	Duplexing middle sensor (PS20)	
Decurler inlet sensor (PS76)	Inside delivery sensor (PS15)	
	Reversal vertical path sensor (PS18)	

8.3.3 Stationary Jams

8.3.3.1 Normal Stationary Jam

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

In the case where the sensor N does not go off within a specific period of time after the sensor N has gone on.



F-8-19

L = feed over paper length; A = feed over specific distance

T-8-6

Sensor N	Remarks
Vertical path 4 sensor (PS56)	
Vertical path 3 sensor (PS55)	
Vertical path 2 sensor (PS54)	
Vertical path 1 sensor (PS53)	
Vertical path 0 sensor (PS26)	
Confluence sensor (PS27)	
Registration sensor (PS12)	Passage of paper other than OHT
OHT sensor (PS5/6)	Passage of OHT
Reversal inlet sensor (PS17)	
Reversal vertical path sensor (PS18)	
Duplexing left sensor (PS19)	
Duplexing middle sensor (PS20)	

Sensor N	Remarks
Duplexing right sensor (PS40)	
Decurler inlet sensor (PS76)	
Decurler outlet sensor (PS78)	

8.3.3.2 Stationary Jam (Residual Jam) at the Power ON

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Check to make sure if there is a residual paper within the machine at the time of the initial multiple rotation (after the power on, opening/closing the cover, or jam recovery).

T-8-7

Sensor N	Remarks
Vertical path 4 sensor (PS56)	
Vertical path 3 sensor (PS55)	
Vertical path 2 sensor (PS54)	
Vertical path 1 sensor (PS53)	
Confluence sensor (PS27)	
Registration sensor (PS12)	
Secondary transfer sensor (PS13)	
Inside delivery sensor (PS15)	
Fixing assembly inlet sensor (PS14)	
Reversal inlet sensor (PS17)	
Reversal vertical path sensor (PS18)	
Duplexing left sensor (PS19)	
Duplexing middle sensor (PS20)	
Duplexing right sensor (PS40)	
Decurler inlet sensor (PS76)	
Decurler outlet sensor (PS78)	

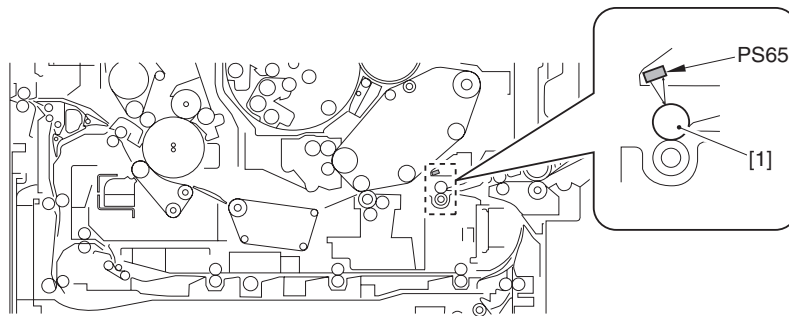
8.3.4 Other Jams

8.3.4.1 Paper Thickness Detection

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Detecting the thickness of paper being passed using the paper thickness sensor (displacement sensor). If the sensor detects paper whose thickness exceeds the specified thickness, it considers as jam and stops the driving.

Purpose: prevent cracking the surface of the fixing roller by passing heavy paper that exceeds the specified thickness.

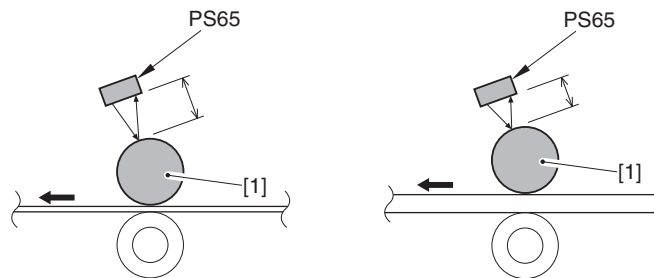


F-8-20

[1] Registration roller
PS65: Paper thickness sensor

<Principle of Detection>

The LED light emitted from the light-emitting part of the paper thickness sensor reflects on the surface of the registration roller and reach to the sensor light-receiving part. Registration roller is displacement due to the thickness of passing paper. paper thickness sensor (displacement sensor) detects the change of distance between the roller and the sensor.



F-8-21

[1] Registration roller
PS65: Paper thickness sensor

<Operation After the Detection>

- If the paper that exceeds the specified thickness (350 μ m) is detected, the machine stops assuming the presence of a jam. (Paper thickness sensor jam; **E20A**)
- The paper stops in front of the secondary transfer roller.

MEMO:
Double feeding paper detection is not enabled. Thus, if the double feeding occurs and the thickness of the paper is over 350 μ m, it is judged as the paper thickness sensor jam.

Service Mode:

COPIER > ADJUST > MISC > DF-S-NK

Input the value of the paper thickness sensor.

<Setting Range>

1 to 5

After replacing the paper thickness sensor, input the new labels ('A' to 'E') as '1' to '5'.

8.4 Cassette

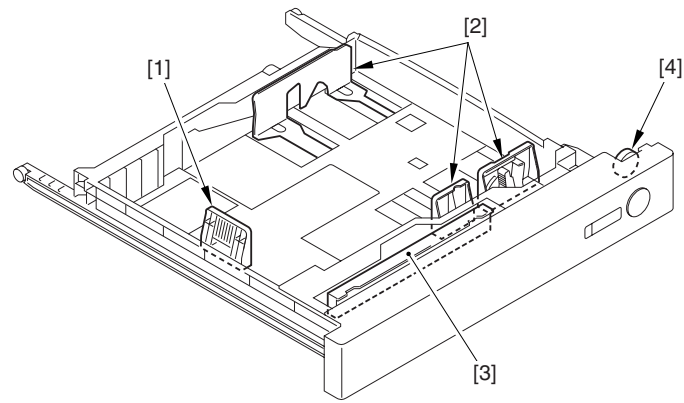
8.4.1 Overview

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Hold papers with the trail edge guide plate [1] and the side guide plate [2].

In case of using index papers, mount the guide for the index paper [3], instead of using the trail edge guide plate [1].

Set the paper size using the cassette size dials [4].



F-8-22

8.4.2 Paper Size Detection

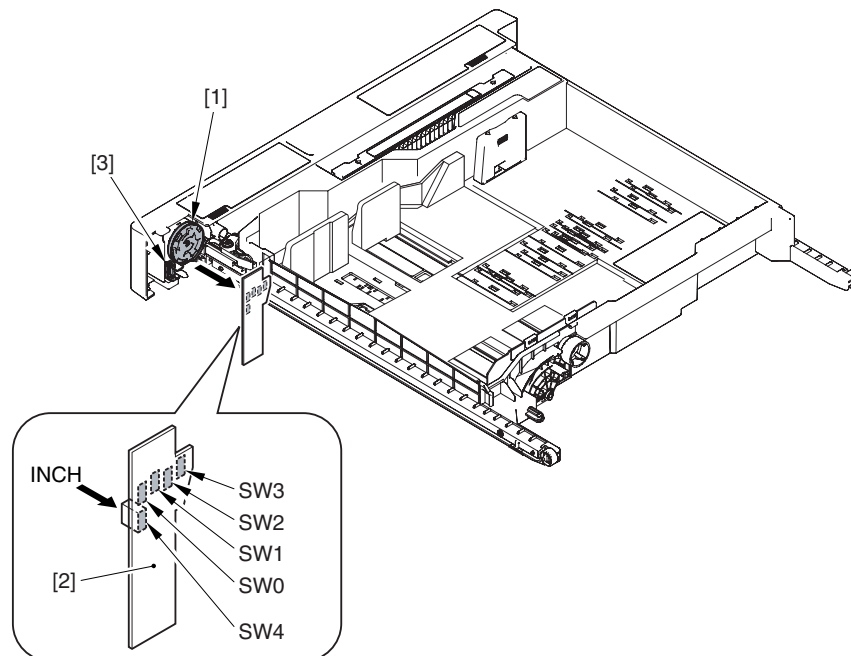
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Set the paper size using the cassette size dials [4].

When setting a cassette, depending on the setting of the cassette size dial [1], the switch (SW0 to SW3) of the cassette size detection PCB [2] turns ON/OFF. Based on the combination of ON/OFF, the paper size can be set up to 15 settings.

When not setting a cassette, all switches (SW0 to SW3) turn OFF, and the machine judges as no cassette.

When switchover AB paper and inch paper, use the AB/inch switch [3]. When setting a cassette, the switch (SW4) turns OFF/ON and recognizes the paper size either the AB or the inch.



F-8-23
T-8-8

AB size					
Size	SW0	SW1	SW2	SW3	SW4
(No cassette)	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
A5R	ON	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
A4	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF
A4R	OFF	ON	ON	ON	OFF
A3	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
B5	ON	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
B5R	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF
B4	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF
305 x 457 mm	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
320 x 450 mm (SRA3)	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
330 x 483 mm	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF
U1	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
U2	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF

Inch size	SW0	SW1	SW2	SW3	SW4
(No cassette)	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
STMTR	ON	OFF	ON	ON	ON
LTR	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON
LTRR	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
LGL	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	ON
11 x 17	ON	ON	OFF	ON	ON
EXEC	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
12 x 18	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	ON
12-5/8 x 17-11/16	ON	ON	ON	OFF	ON
13 x 19	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF	ON
U3	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	ON
U4	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	ON

8.4.3 Setting the Universal Cassette

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The default paper sizes in case of detecting the universal size setting are as follows:

Paper setting group	Default paper size
U1	EXECTIVE
U2	FOOLSCAP
U3	Government LEGAL
U4	Argentine LETTER

The paper size can be changed in the service mode.

Service Mode:

COPIER> OPTION> CST> CST-U1/U2/U3/U4

<Setting values>

24: FOOLSCAP (CST-U2: default)

25: Australian FOOLSCAP

26: OFFICIO

27: Ecuador OFFICIO

28: Bolivian OFFICIO

29: Argentine LETTER (U4: default)

30: Argentine LETTER-R

31: Government LETTER

32: Government LETTER-R

34: Government LEGAL (U3: default)

35: FOLIO

36: Argentine OFFICIO

37: Mexico OFFICIO

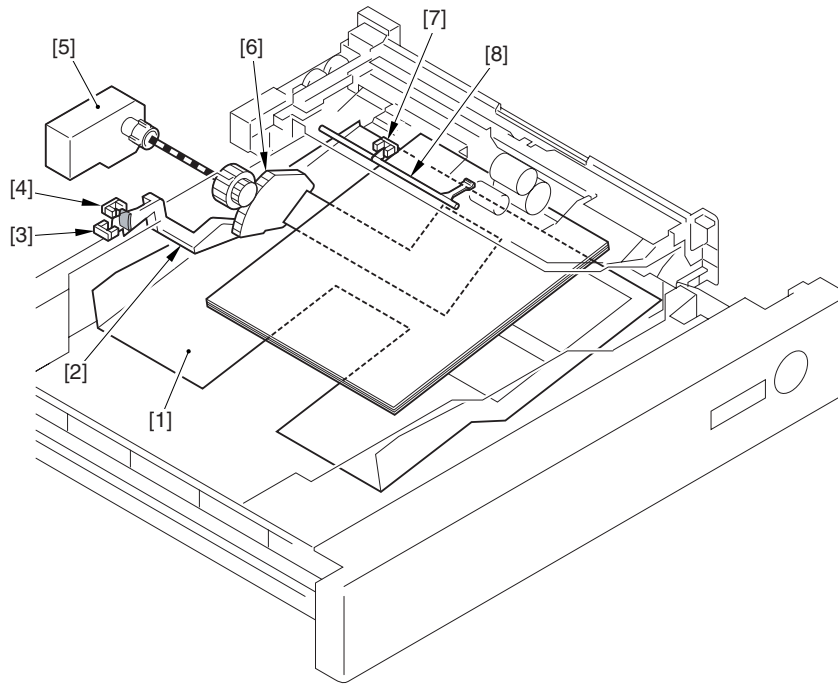
38: EXECTIVE (U1: default)

8.4.4 Paper Level Sensor

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The paper level is detected based on the ON/OFF combinations of the sensors indicated below.

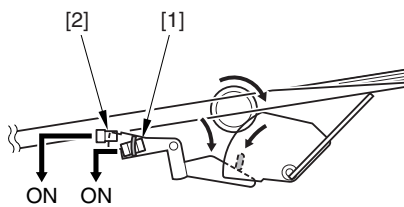
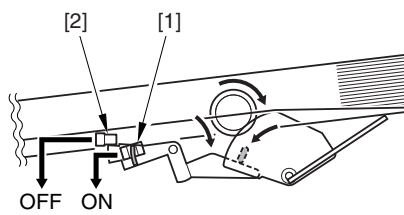
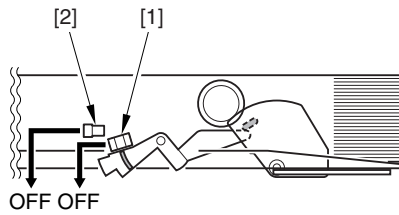
Sensor	Cassette 1	Cassette 2	Cassette 3	Cassette 4
Cassette paper level 1 sensor	PS32	PS38	PS45	PS51
Cassette paper level 2 sensor	PS33	PS39	PS46	PS52
Cassette paper sensor	PS30	PS36	PS43	PS49



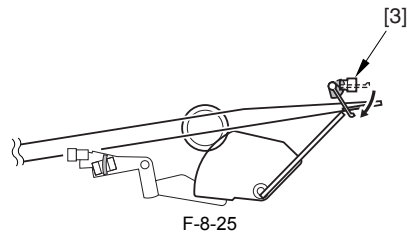
F-8-24

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| [1] Tray | [5] Lifter motor |
| [2] Paper level sensor flag | [6] Lifter gear |
| [3] Cassette paper level 1 sensor | [7] Cassette paper sensor |
| [4] Cassette paper level 2 sensor | [8] Flag |

- In case the paper is fully loaded



- In case no paper is left in a cassette

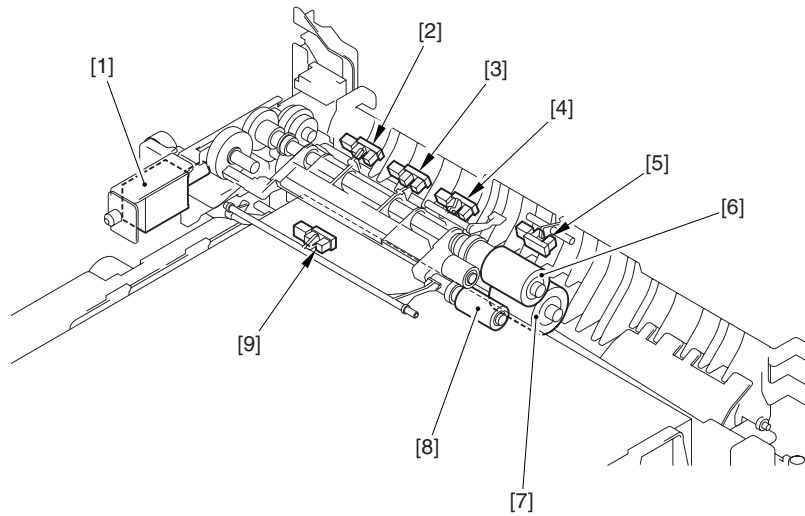


Paper level sensor 1 [1]	Paper level sensor 2 [2]	Paper sensor [3]	Paper level	Display on the control panel
OFF	OFF	OFF	100% to about 50% of the capacity	
ON	OFF	OFF	About 50% to 10% of the capacity	
ON	ON	OFF	Less than about 10% of the capacity	
--	--	ON	No paper	

8.5 Cassette Pick-Up Unit

8.5.1 Configuration

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



F-8-26

- [1] Cassette pickup solenoid (SL4/SL5/SL6/SL7)
- [2] Cassette limit sensor (PS29/PS35/PS42/PS48)
- [3] Cassette lifter sensor (PS31/PS36/PS42/PS48)
- [4] Cassette pickup sensor (PS28/PS34/PS41/PS47)
- [5] Vertical path sensor (PS53/PS54/PS55/PS56)
- [6] Cassette delivery roller
- [7] Cassette separation roller
- [8] Cassette pickup roller
- [9] Cassette paper sensor (PS30/PS36/PS43/PS49)

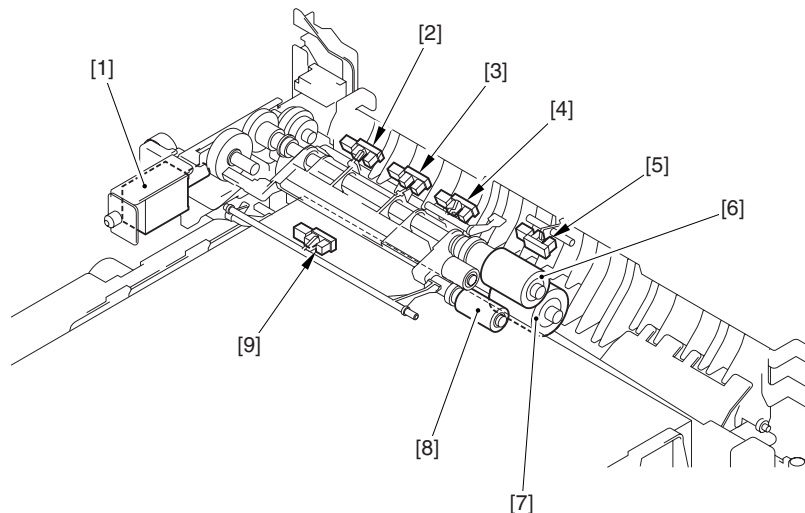
The numbers in parentheses indicates in case of the cassette 1/2/3/4.

8.5.2 Behavior of Lifter

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

When mounting a cassette, the pickup roller descent and unfastening of the sensor flag from the stack height sensor simultaneously. As a result of that, the cassette lifter motor starts to drive and the lifter moves upward.

When the stack height sensor detect the surface of the paper, the lifter motor stops. For the case the lifter motor does not stop for some reasons, the limiter and the limit sensor are equipped.



F-8-27

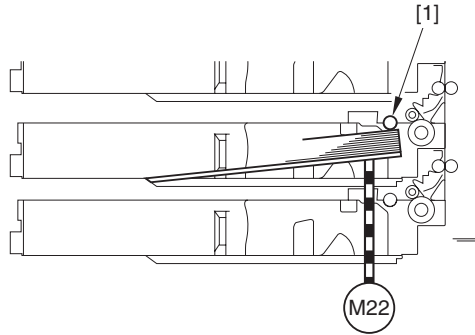
- [1] Cassette 1/2/3/4 pickup solenoid (SL4/SL5/SL6/SL7)
- [2] Cassette 1/2/3/4 limit sensor (PS29/PS35/PS42/PS48)
- [3] Cassette 1/2/3/4 tack height sensor (PS31/PS37/PS44/PS50)
- [4] Cassette 1/2/3/4 pickup sensor (PS28/PS34/PS41/PS50)
- [5] Vertical path 1/2/3/4 sensor (PS53/PS54/PS55/PS56)
- [6] Cassette 1/2/3/4 delivery roller
- [7] Cassette 1/2/3/4 separation roller
- [8] Cassette 1/2/3/4 pickup roller
- [9] Cassette 1/2/3/4 paper sensor (PS30/PS36/PS43/PS49)

8.5.3 Behavior of Pickup

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

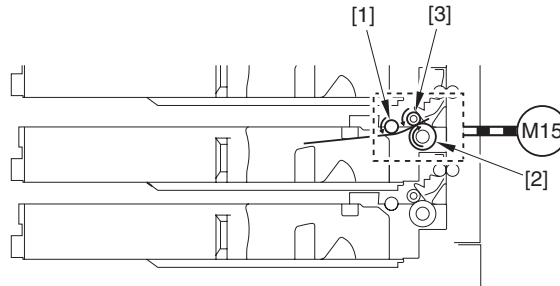
In case of Cassette 1 Pickup Assembly

1) The cassette lifter is lifted with the cassette lifter motor 1 (M22), and the surface of a paper contacts with the cassette pickup roller 1 [1].



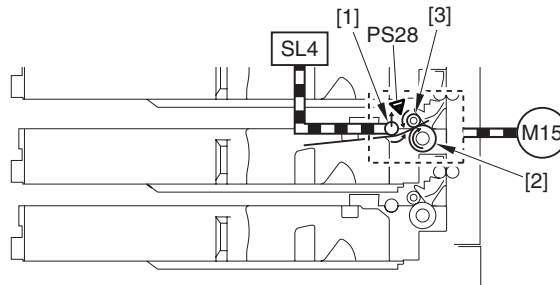
F-8-28

2) When driving the cassette 1 pickup motor (M15), the cassette 1 pickup roller [1], the cassette 1 separation roller [2], and the cassette 1 delivery roller [3] rotates, and then, papers are fed from the cassette.



F-8-29

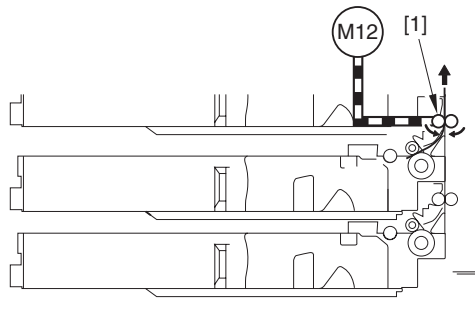
3) When the cassette 1 pickup sensor (PS28), the cassette 1 pickup solenoid (SL4) turns ON and moving away the cassette 1 pickup roller [1] from the surface of a paper. As a result of that, it is possible to pickup only one paper without pulling the subsequent paper. In addition, in order to prevent the double feeding, the torque limiter is mounted to the cassette 1 separation roller [2], and the roller rotates reversely if the torque drops below a specific value.



F-8-30

4) The paper that was fed is delivered to the registration assembly by the vertical path 1 roller [1].

M12: Vertical path 1 motor

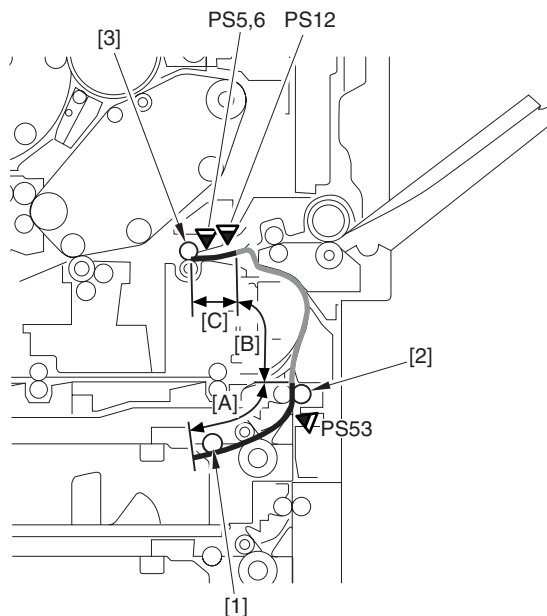


F-8-31

8.5.4 Feeding Control (Cassette 1)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The distance between the Cassette 1 pickup position and the secondary transfer position is so short that the machine cannot secure time for pre-registration stop control. For this reason, speed adjustment control is performed at the time of cassette 1 pickup. In case pickup is delayed, the pickup speed is added in order to prevent the delayed pickup, and in case the pickup goes ahead, the pickup speed is decreased in order to prevent encounter with the prior paper.



F-8-32

- [1] Cassette 1 pickup roller
- [2] Vertical path 1 roller
- [3] Registration roller
- PS5/6: OHT sensor (light emission /reception)
- PS12: Registration sensor
- PS53: Vertical path 1 sensor

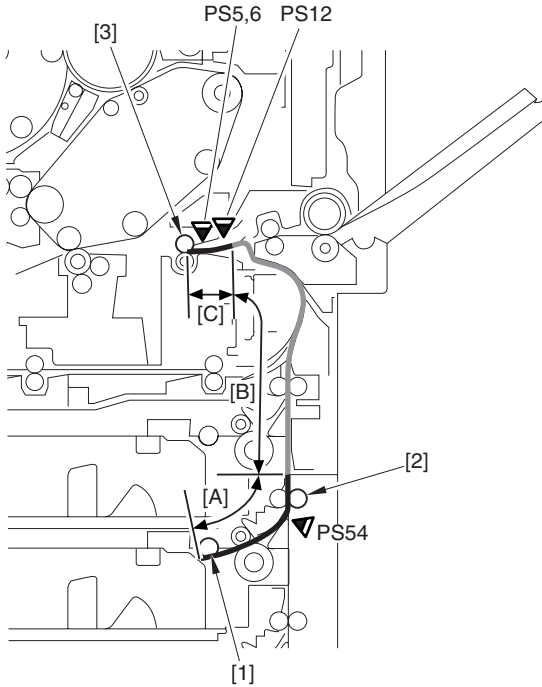
Interval		Paper Pickup Speed
[A]	Pickup start position-Vertical path 1 sensor	500mm/sec
[B]	Vertical path 1 sensor-OHT/Registration sensor	255-600 mm/sec (varies depending of the time between start of pickup/vertical path 1 sensor ON)
[C]	OHT/registration sensor-registration position	500mm/sec

8.5.5 Pickup Control (Cassette 2 to 4)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

After the pickup, a paper is stopped at the specified position once, and then, is delivered to the point of the registration. (Pre-registration stop control)
 The pickup control is the control to make up for the variation in pickup (timing jam, delay jam) due to the paper type, size, and environmental condition, and keeping the constant reaching time of paper to the registration point.
 In addition, in order to achieve the productivity, the speed at the interval from the pre-registration point to the registration point is accelerated.

The detail of control at each cassette (Cassette 2 to 4) is the same; thus, the following is the explanation of the pickup control using the cassette 2 pickup as an example.



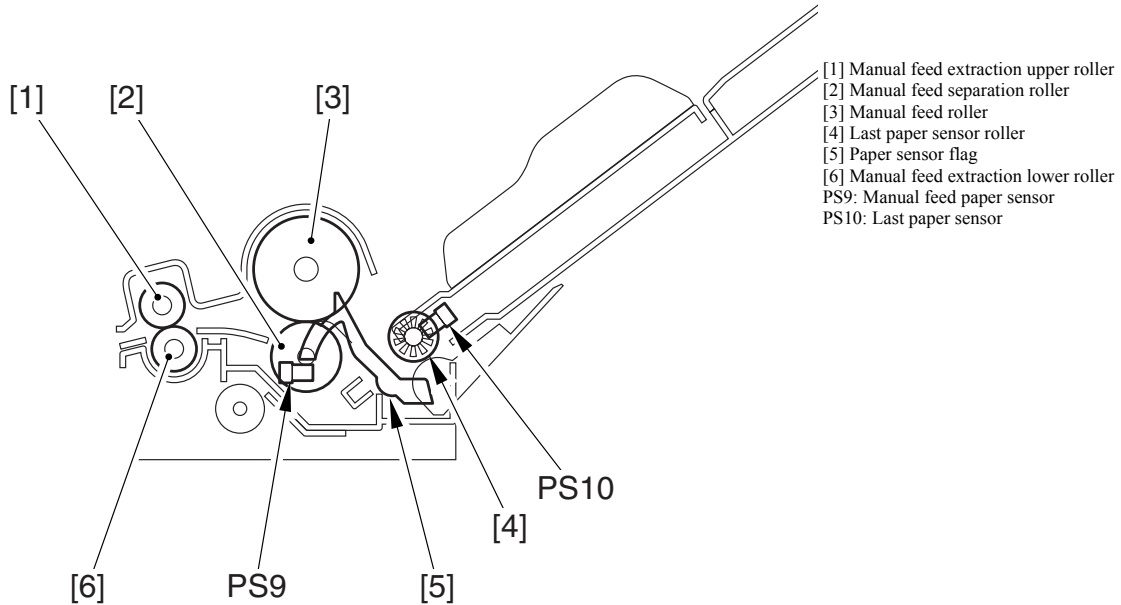
- [1] Cassette 2 pickup roller
- [2] Vertical path 2 roller
- [3] Registration roller
- PS5/6: OHT sensor (light-emitting/light-receiving)
- PS12: Registration sensor
- PS54: Vertical path 2 sensor

Interval		Paper delivery speed
[A]	Pickup start position to pre-registration stop position (A point 25 mm downstream from the vertical path 2 roller. Vertical path 2 sensor standard.)	500 mm/sec
[B]	Pre-registration stop position to OHT sensor/registration sensor	600 mm/sec
[C]	OHT sensor/registration sensor to registration position	Normal speed mode: 500 mm/sec 1/3 speed mode: 285 mm/sec

8.6 Manual Feed Pickup Unit

8.6.1 Configuration

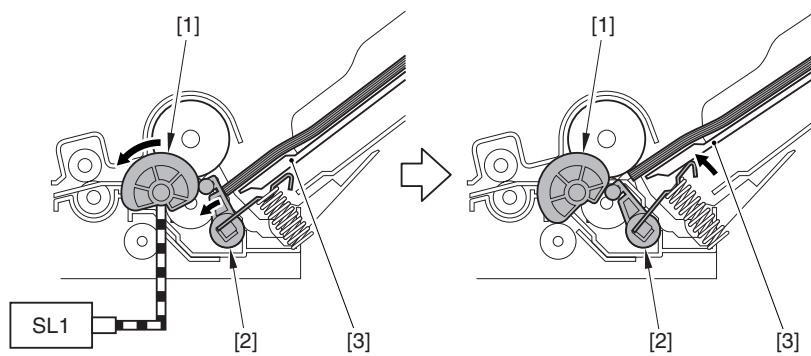
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



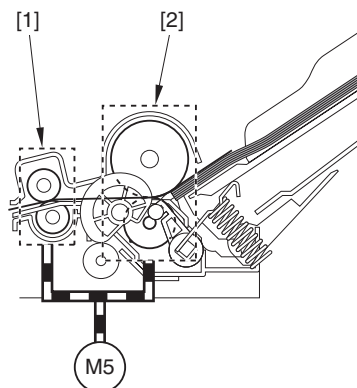
8.6.2 Feeding Operation

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) When turning on the manual feed solenoid (SL1), drive is transmitted to the toothless gear [1], then the toothless gear rotates. Lifting plate fixing component [2] is released and then the lifting plate is lifted [3].



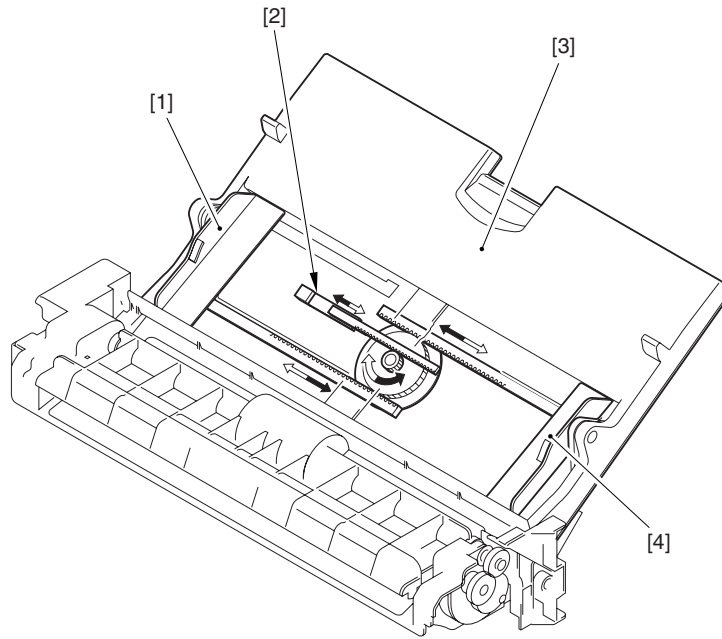
- 2) By the drive of the pre-registration motor (M5), the manual feed extraction roller [1] and the manual feed roller/manual separation roller [2] rotate, and then pickup/feeding of only 1 sheet of paper is carried out.



8.6.3 Paper Size Detection

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Paper width is detected by the output from the variable resistor coupled with the move of the slide guide.
The width of the slide guide on the manual feed tray is adjusted by users by sliding the slide guide when setting paper.



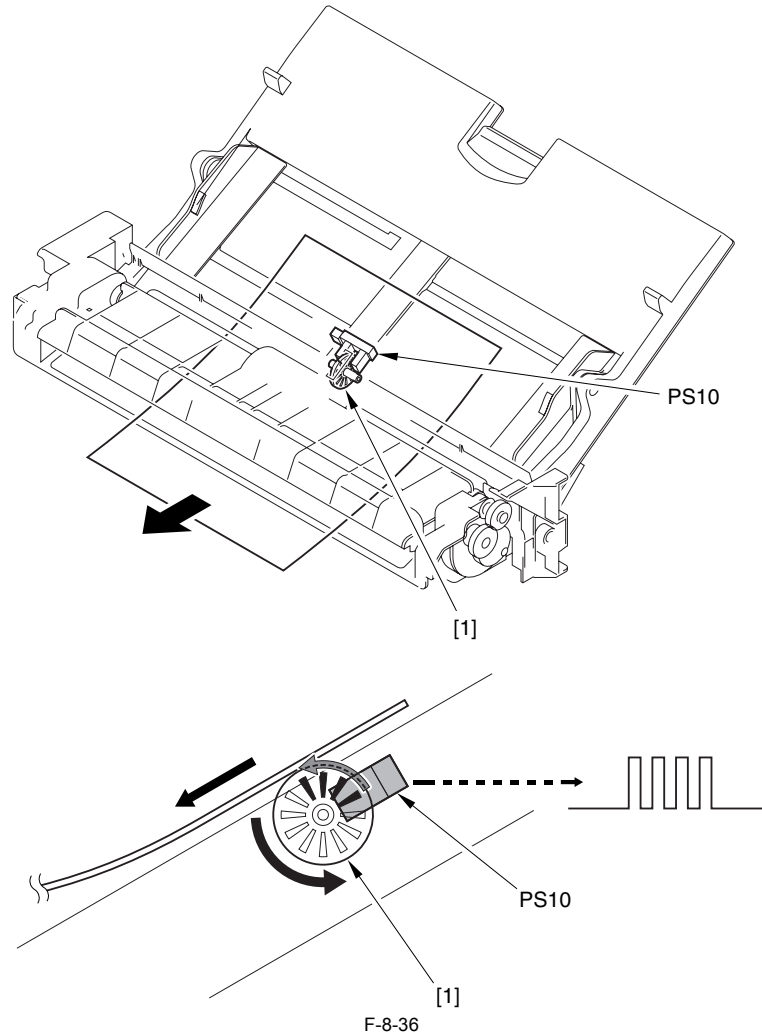
F-8-35

- [1] Slide guide (rear)
- [2] Variable resistor
- [3] Manual feed tray
- [4] Slide guide (front)

8.6.4 Last Paper Detection

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Last paper detection is performed so as not to form images within the ITB when the paper is out. Only when feeding the last paper, the last paper roller [1] rotates. The rotation of the last paper roller [1] induces the output of the pulse signal from the last paper sensor (PS10) by the slits on the roller. When 4 output pulses or more were detected, the paper is determined as the last one.



8.7 Registration Unit

8.7.1 Overview

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The registration roller [1] is driven by the registration motor (M6), and controlled to turn ON/OFF so that the paper and the image on the intermediary transfer belt match on a specified position.

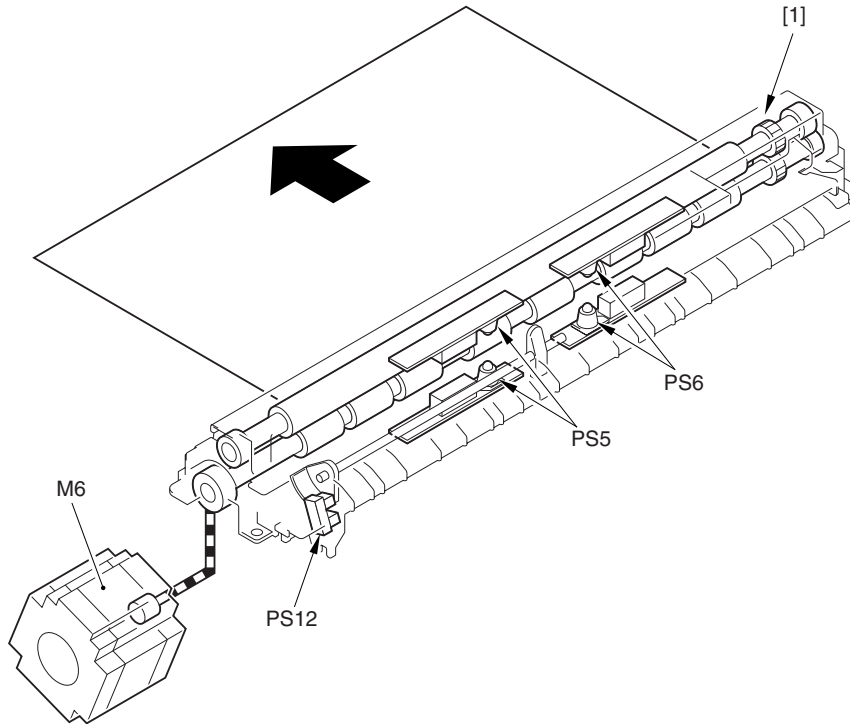
The paper sensors used for the registration control vary depending on the paper type.

Paper types except OHT (ex: Plain Paper etc.)

Transmission photosensor OHT sensor (front) (PS5)/OHT sensor (rear) (PS6)

OHT

Flag photosensor pre-registration sensor (PS12)



F-8-37

Also, the OHT sensor (front) (PS6) and the OHT sensor (rear) (PS6) detect whether the paper fed into is OHT sheet or not when printing in the OHT mode.

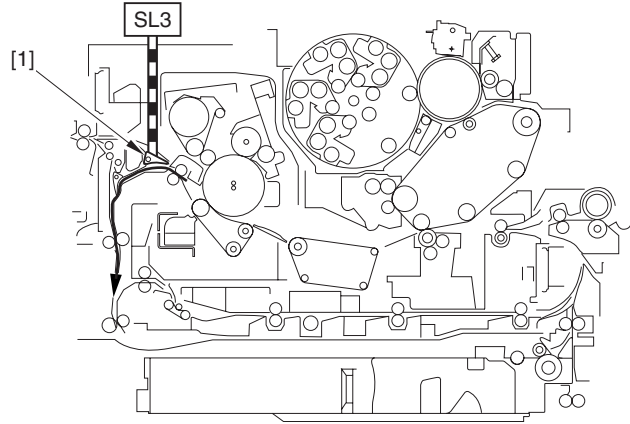
Jam Code	Description
0D90	Indicates that the OHT sheet for CLC (out of specification sheet) is detected.
0D91	Indicates that the sheet shorter than specified is detected.
0D92	Indicates that plain paper is detected although specified as OHT sheet.
0D93	Indicates that OHT sheet is detected although not specified.

8.8 Duplex Feeding Unit

8.8.1 Overview

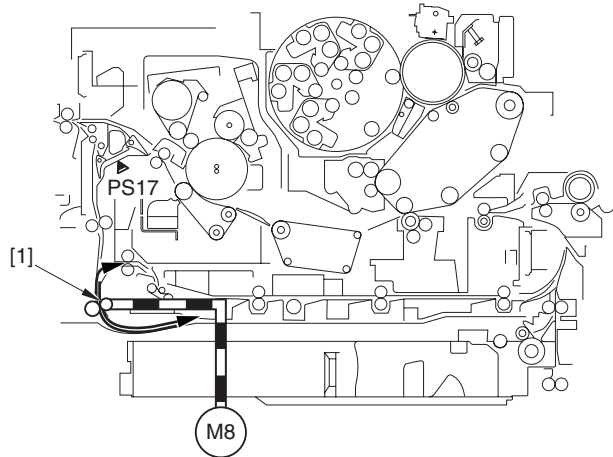
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) The reversal solenoid (SL3) is turned OFF and the reversing flapper [1] is moved upward. The paper after fixing is fed to the reversal vertical path assembly.



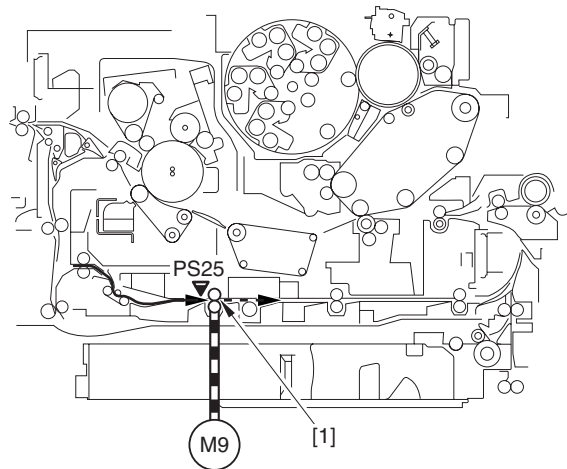
F-8-38

2) When the trailing edge of the paper reaches the specified position (position about 19 mm from the reversal 2 roller [1]; criterion for the reversal sensor (PS17)), the duplexing reversal motor (M8) stops/reverse-rotates, and then feeds the paper to the duplexing left feeding assembly.



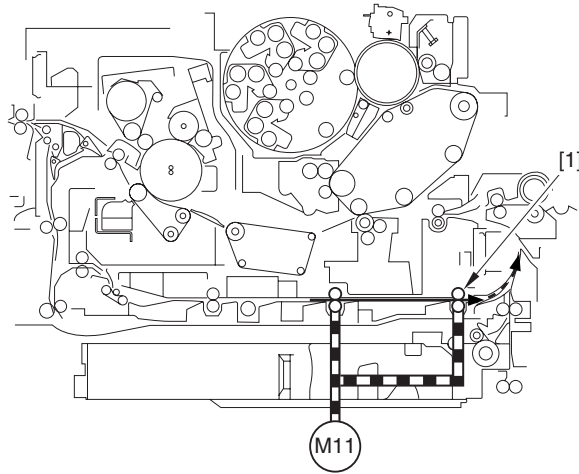
F-8-39

3) Side registration sensor (PS25) performs the side registration detection of paper. Then the paper is pressed by the duplexing left roller [1] to remove the skew by arching, and fed to the duplexing re-pickup standby position by the duplexing left motor (M9).



F-8-40

- 4) The paper stops at the re-pickup standby position (leading edge of the paper at the position about 14mm downstream of the duplexing right roller [1]) and then fed to the registration assembly by the duplexing middle motor (M11)

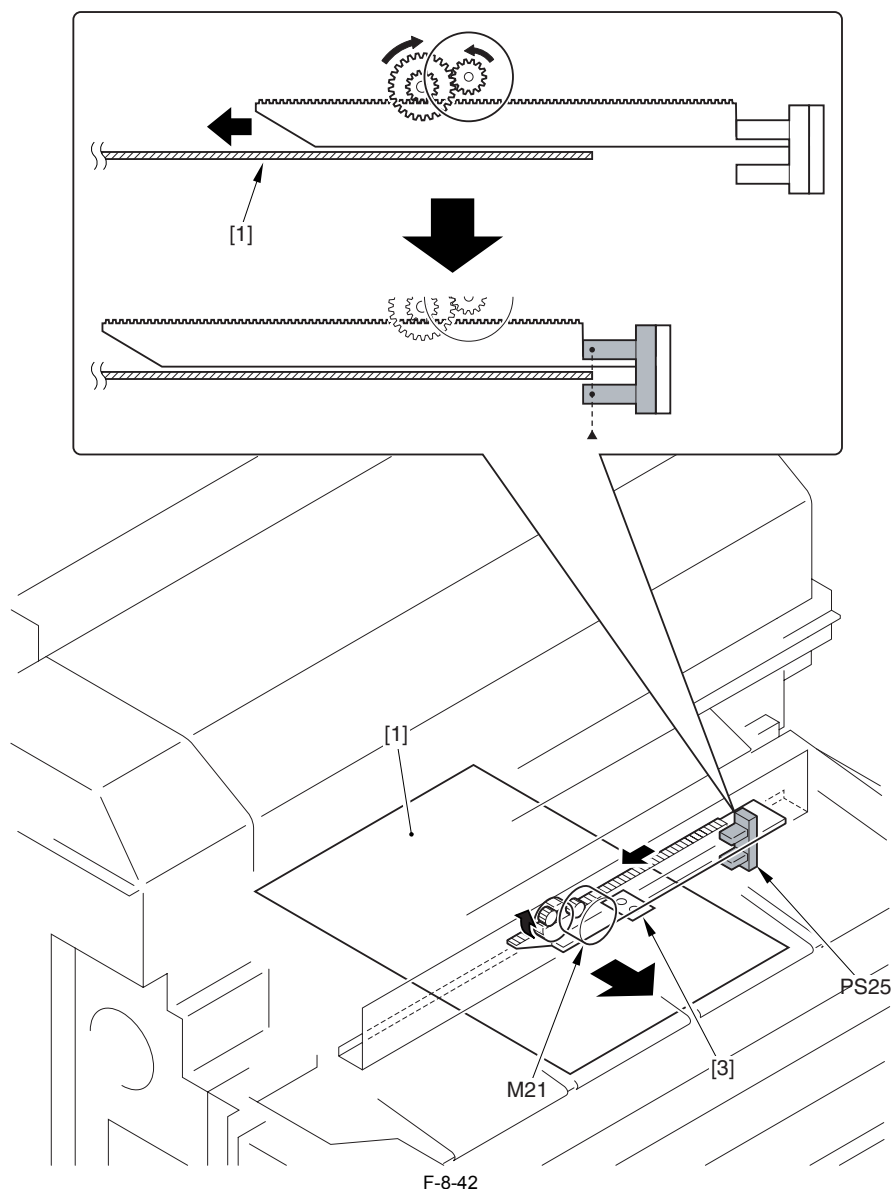


F-8-41

8.8.2 Side Registration Position Detection

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

At double-sided printing, in order to correct the displacement of the image position of the second side in the main scanning direction, side registration detection is performed and thus the laser write start position is corrected.



- [1] Paper
- [2] Side registration sensor (PS25)
- [3] Sensor plate
- [4] Side registration motor (M21)

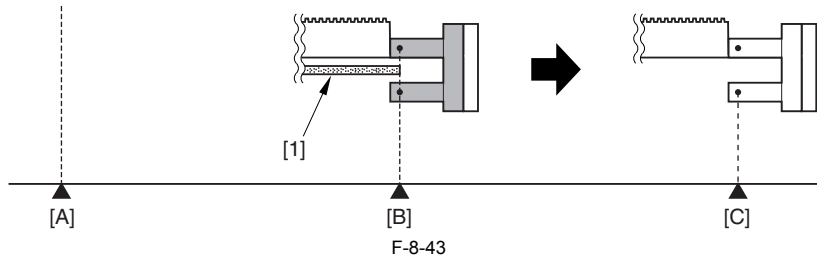
Detection of the home position of the side registration sensor (PS25) is performed at power-on, open/close of the front cover, open/close of the right upper cover, open/close of the right lower cover, recovery from the power-saving function, and end of print, and then brought to the 13x19 paper detection position.

When the paper fed to the duplexing left feeding assembly reaches the duplexing left sensor (PS19), side registration motor (M21) is turned ON and then the side registration sensor (PS25) detects the edge of paper.

Detection start position is set by recognizing the cassette size and the slide guide width of the manual feed tray at the start of copying so that the paper edge is positioned to feed ideally (In case of A4 paper, 165 mm from the center of the unit).

<Side Registration Detection Operation>

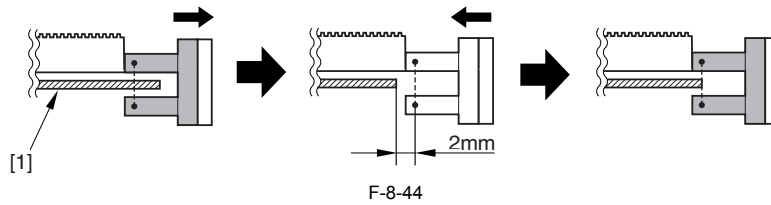
1) After detection of the home position, the side registration sensor (PS25) shifts to the 13x19 paper detection position.



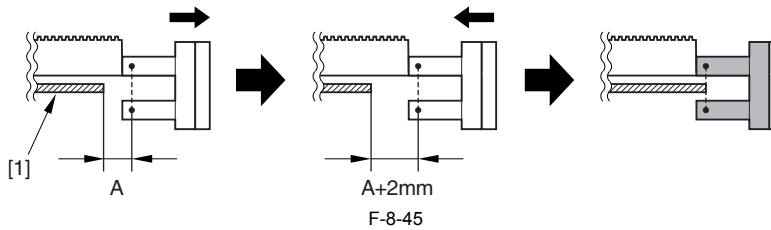
- [1] Sensor plate
- [A] Center of the feeding assembly
- [B] Home position detection position (position 65 mm rear from the center of the feeding assembly)
- [C] 13x19 paper detection position (position 165 mm from the center of the feeding assembly)

2) The machine uses the side registration sensor to detect paper.

2-1) In case a paper is detected in step 1, the machine separates the side registration sensor from the paper [1]. After separating another 2 mm, the machine put the side registration sensor closer to the paper to recognize the position the paper was detected as the edge of the paper.



2-2) In case no paper is detected in step 1, the machine separates the side registration sensor from the paper [1] by another 2 mm, then the machine put the side registration sensor closer to the paper to recognize the position the paper was detected as the edge of the paper.

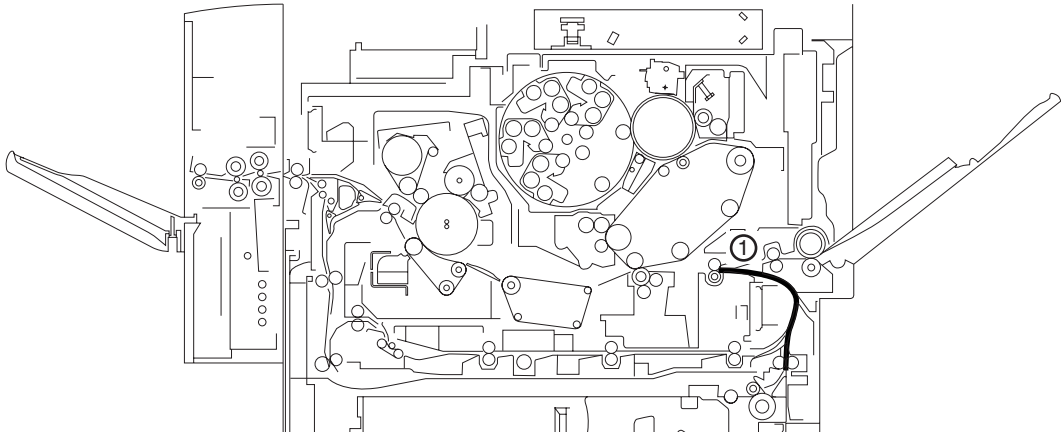


3) The machine calculates the length of displacement from the pulse number of the motor required for the side registration sensor to shift in step 2-1) or 2-2) and then determine the image writing position (the length of sensor shift is 0.157 mm/pulse)

8.8.3 A4 size 5-Sheet-Circulation

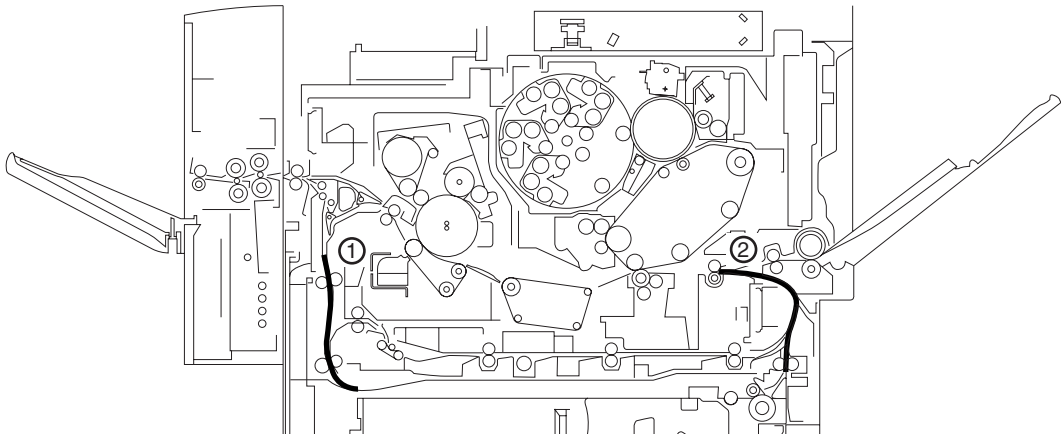
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1)



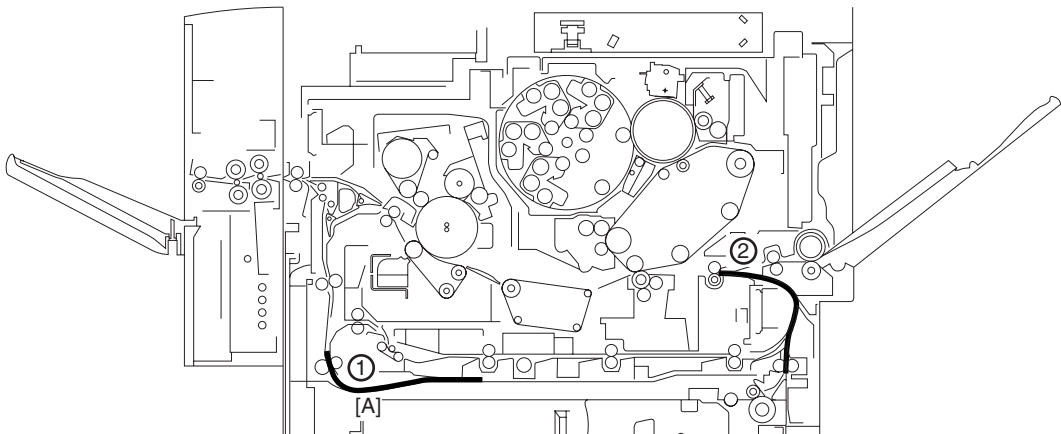
F-8-46

2)



F-8-47

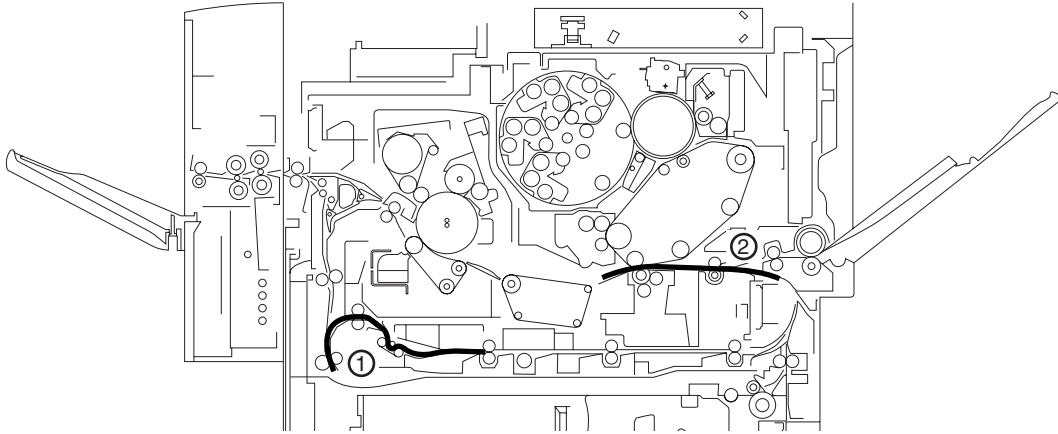
3)



F-8-48

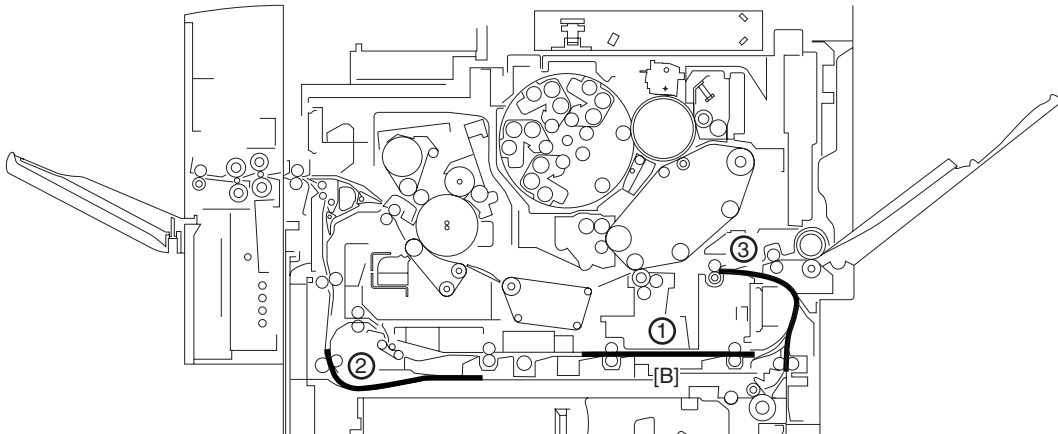
[A] Duplexing reversal position

4)



F-8-49

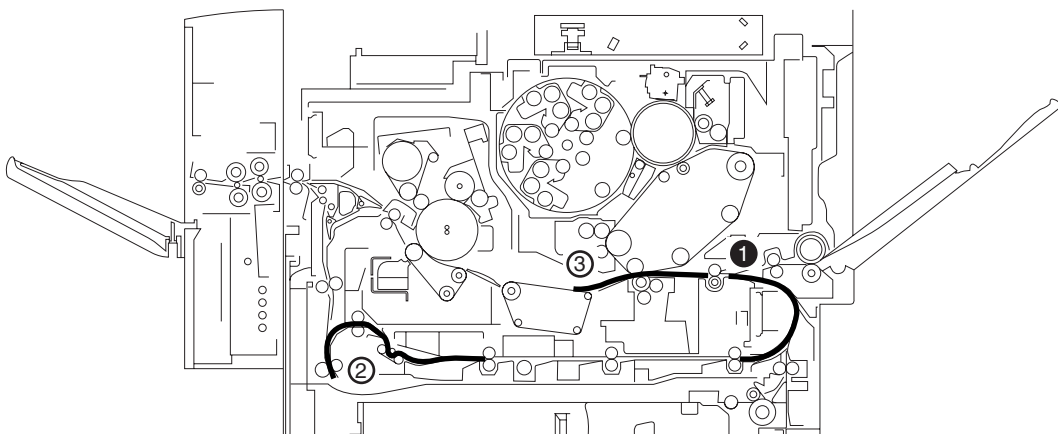
5)



F-8-50

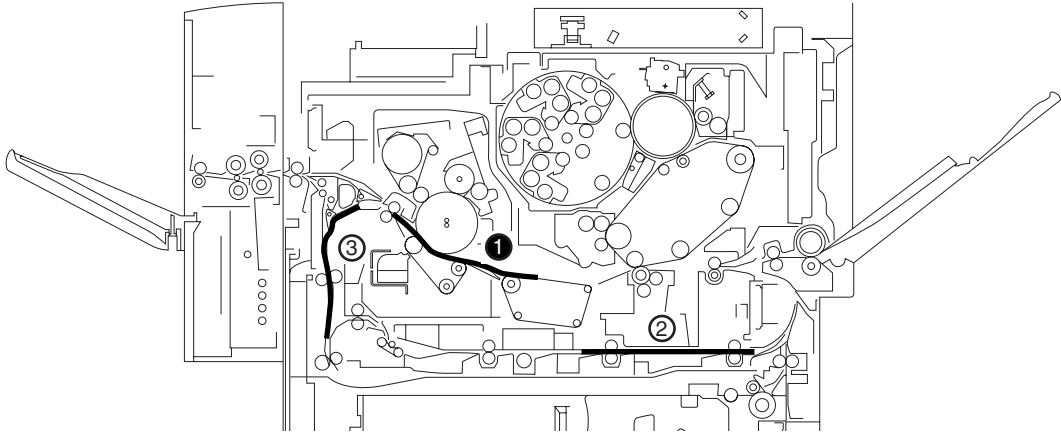
[B] Duplexing re-pickup stop position

6)



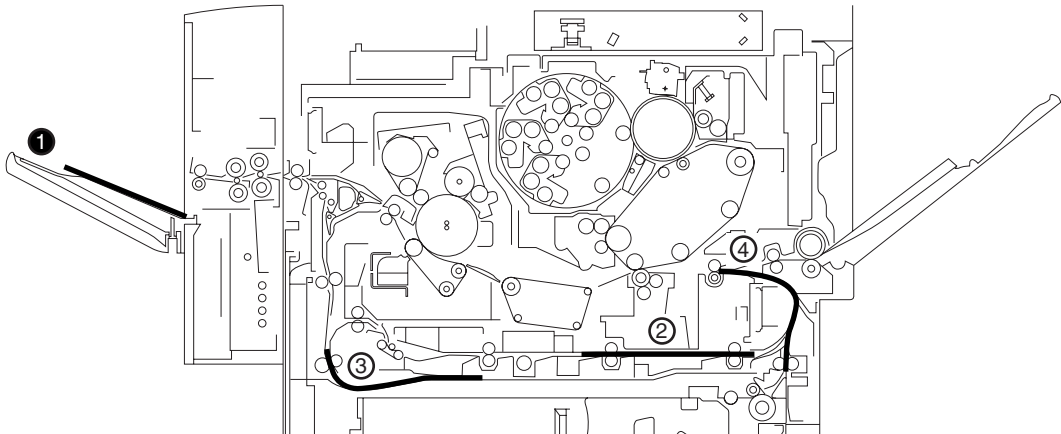
F-8-51

7)



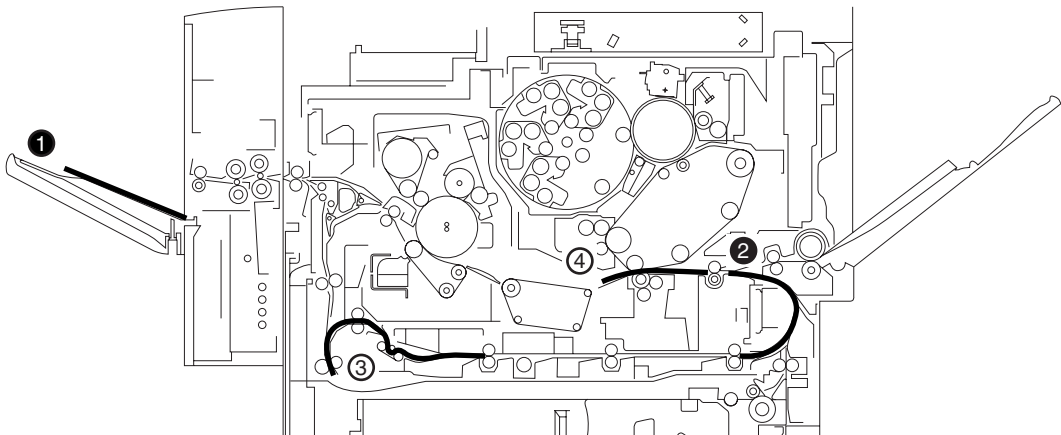
F-8-52

8)



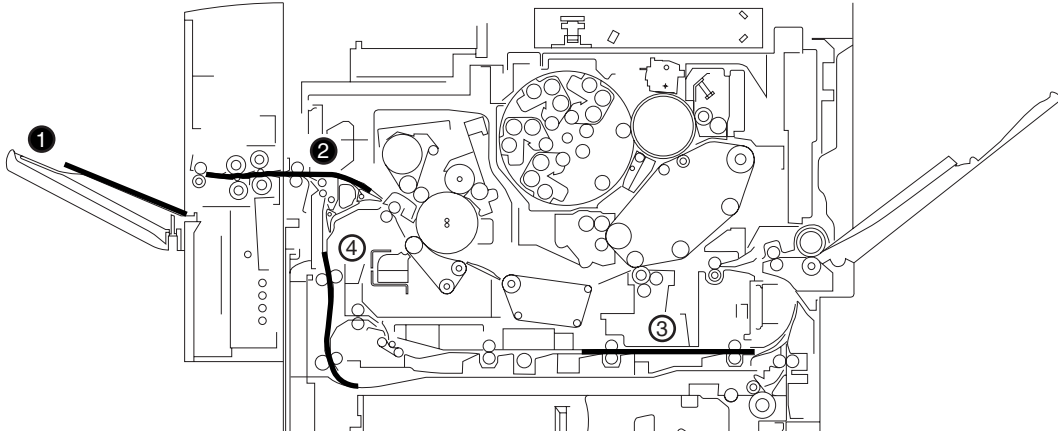
F-8-53

9)



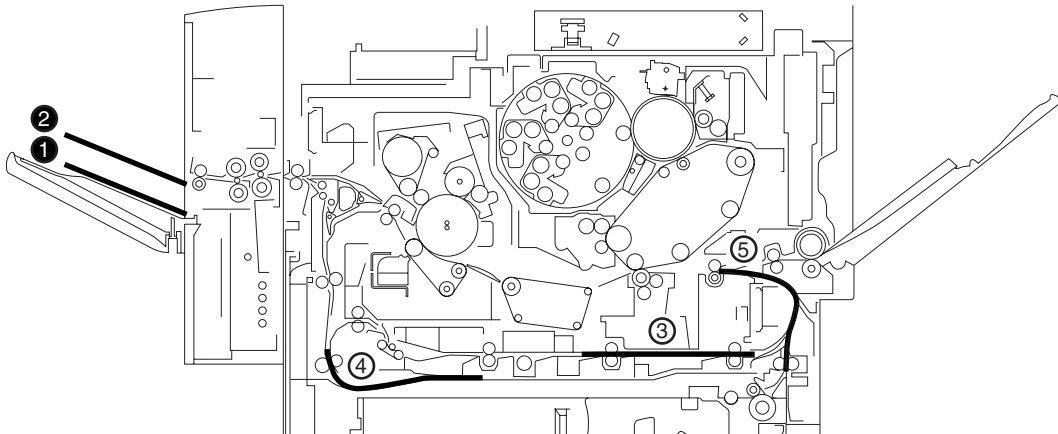
F-8-54

10)



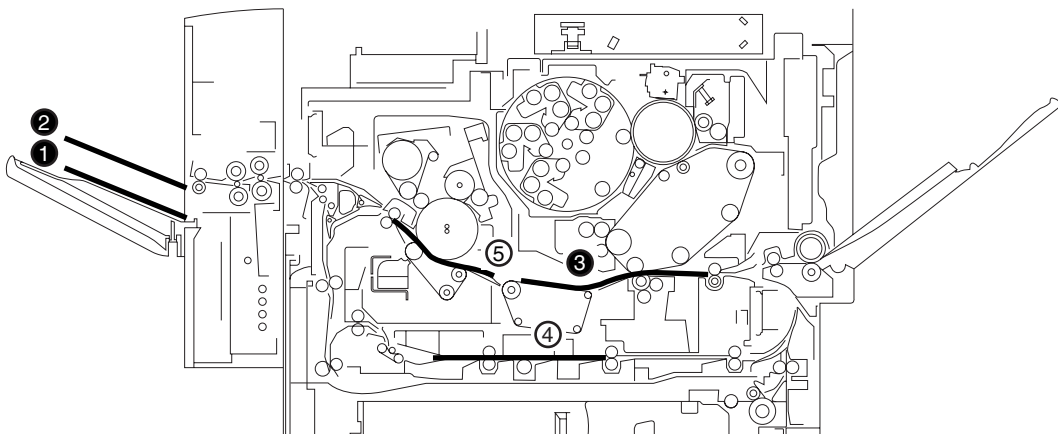
F-8-55

11)



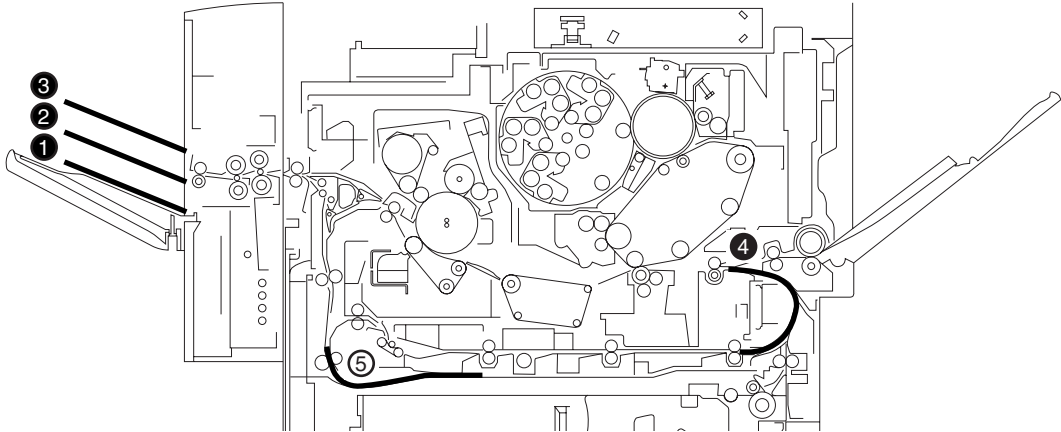
F-8-56

12)



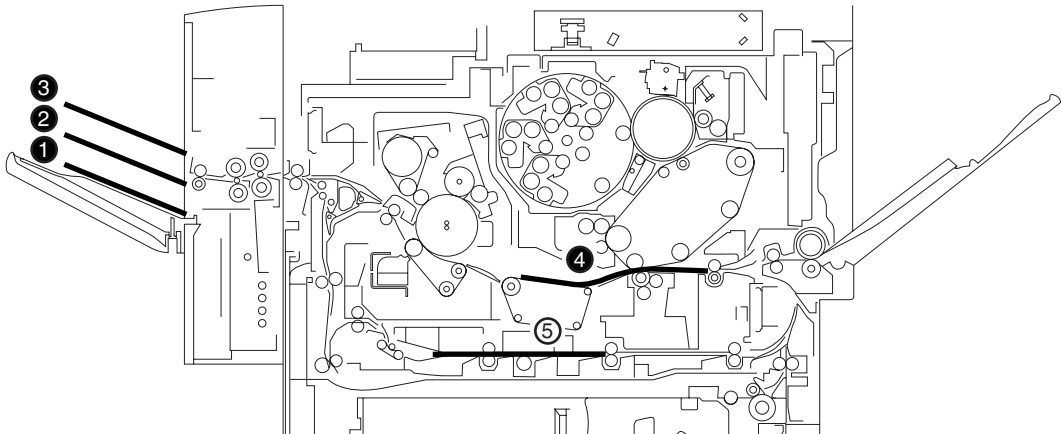
F-8-57

13)



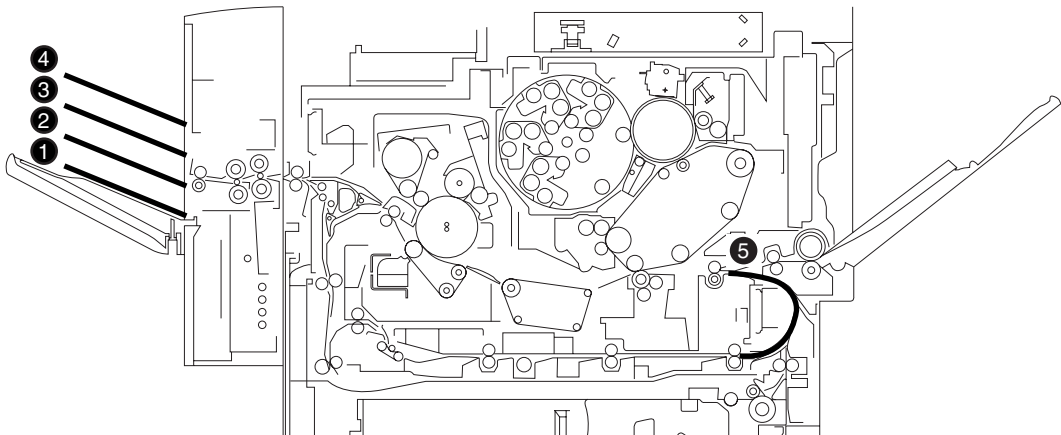
F-8-58

14)



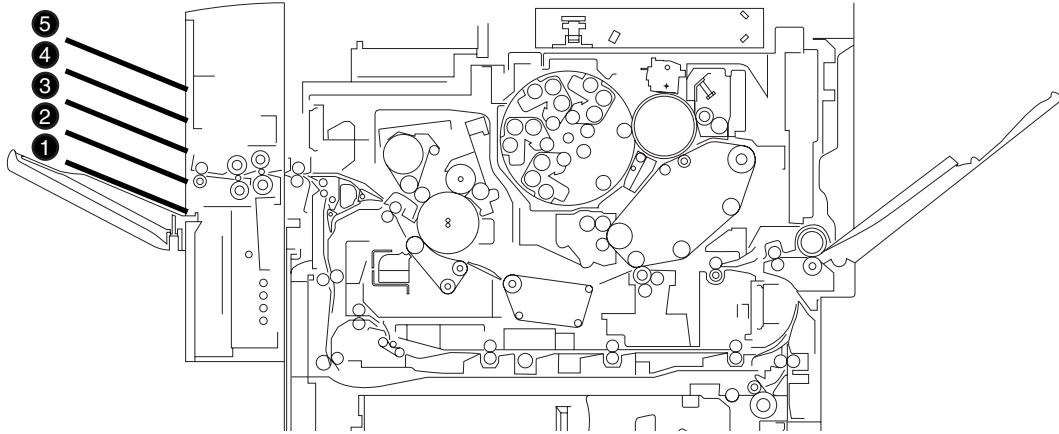
F-8-59

15)



F-8-60

16)

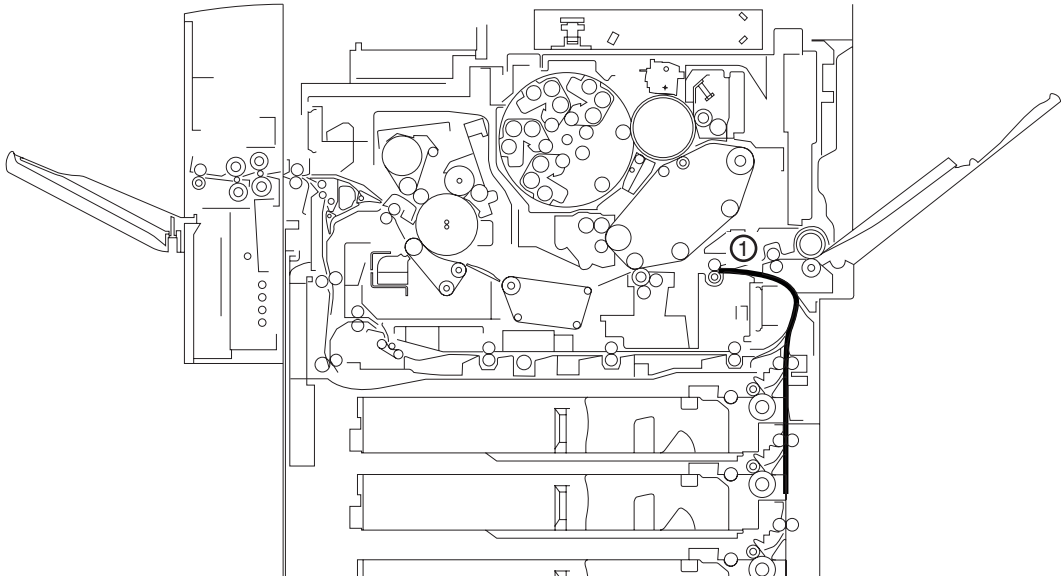


F-8-61

8.8.4 A3 Size 3-Sheet-Circulation

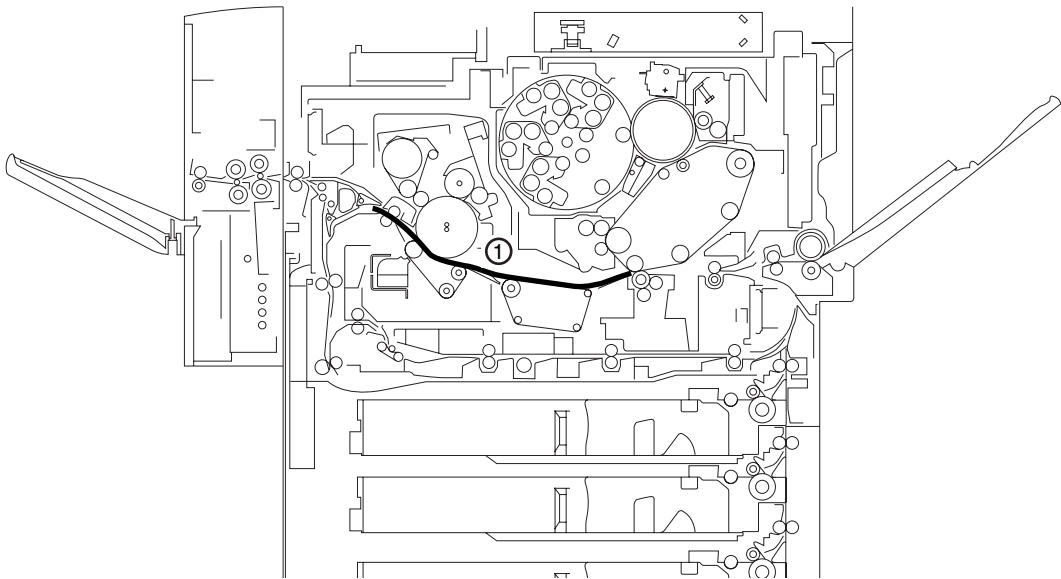
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1)



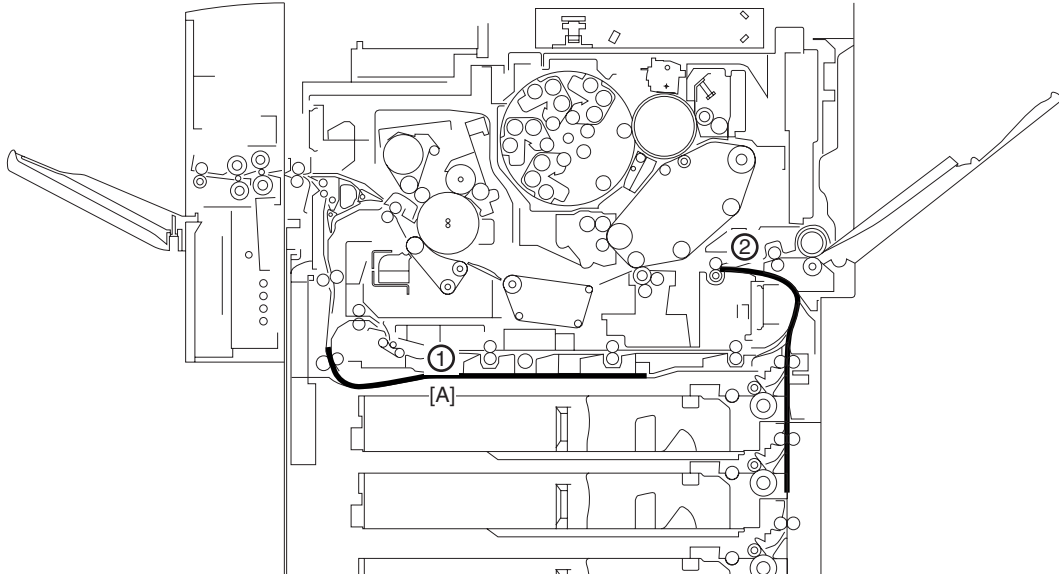
F-8-62

2)



F-8-63

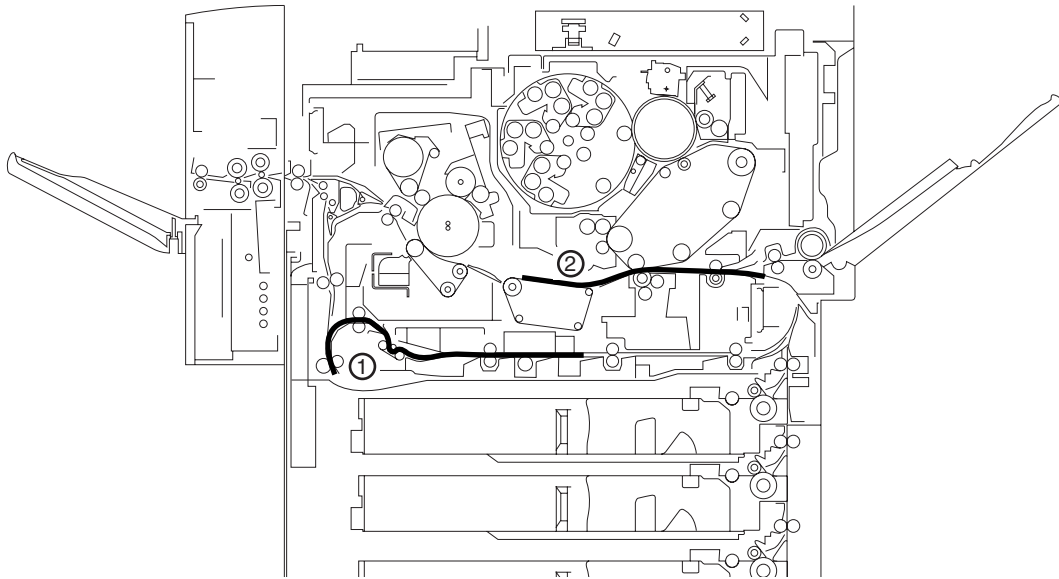
3)



F-8-64

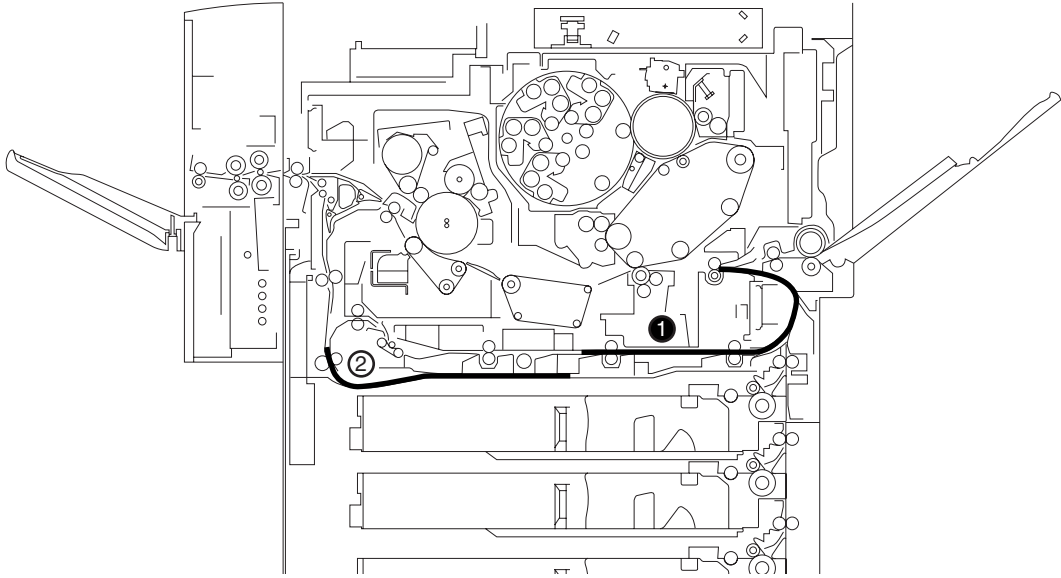
[A] Duplexing reversal position

4)



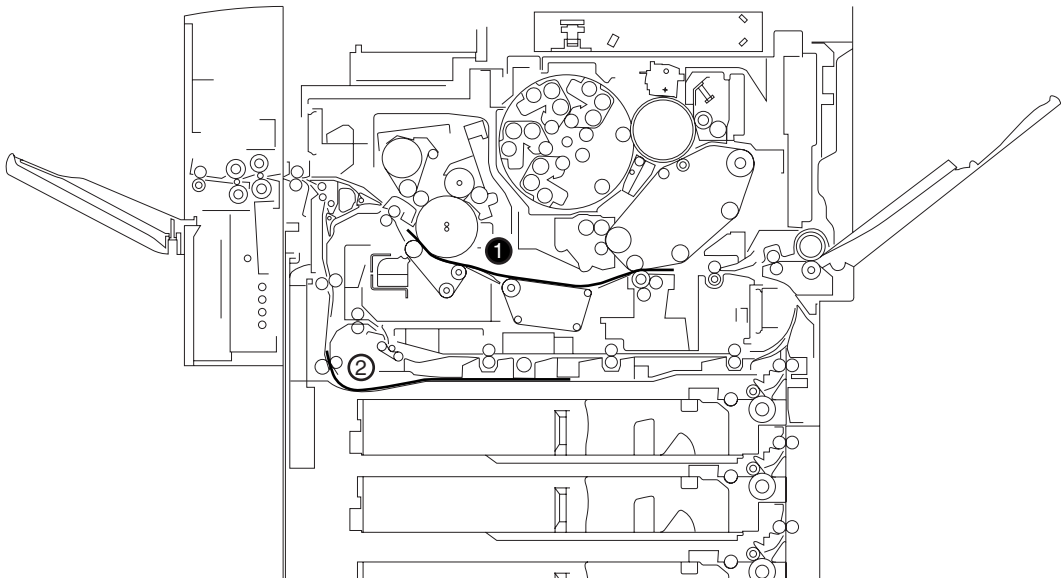
F-8-65

5)



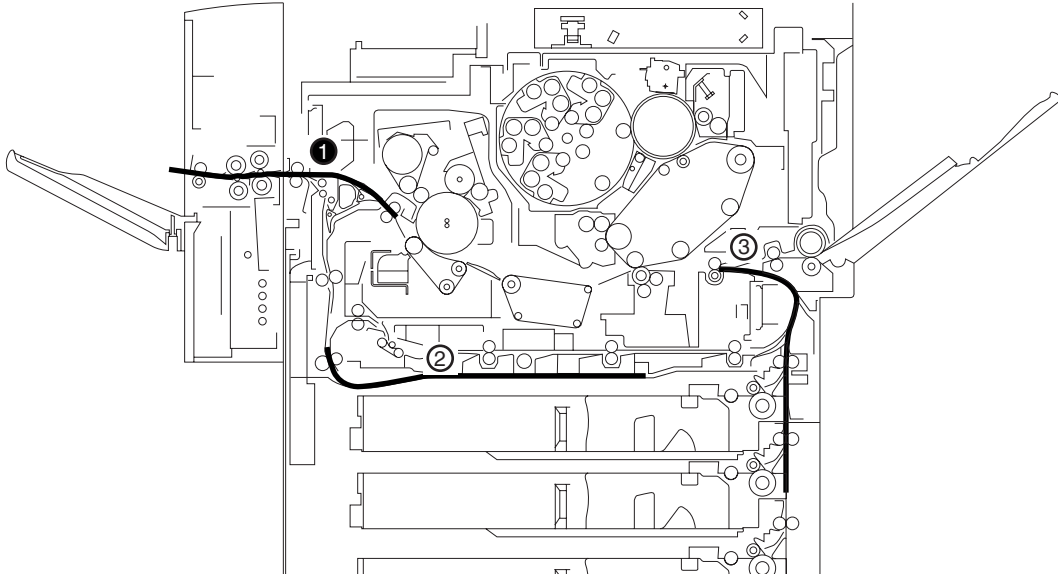
F-8-66

6)



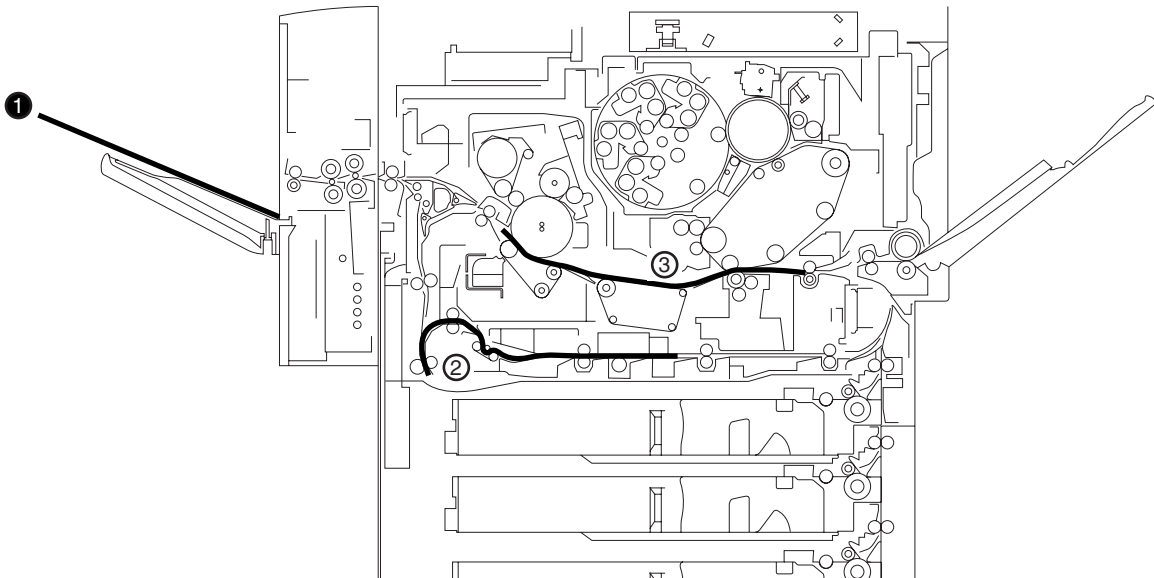
F-8-67

7)



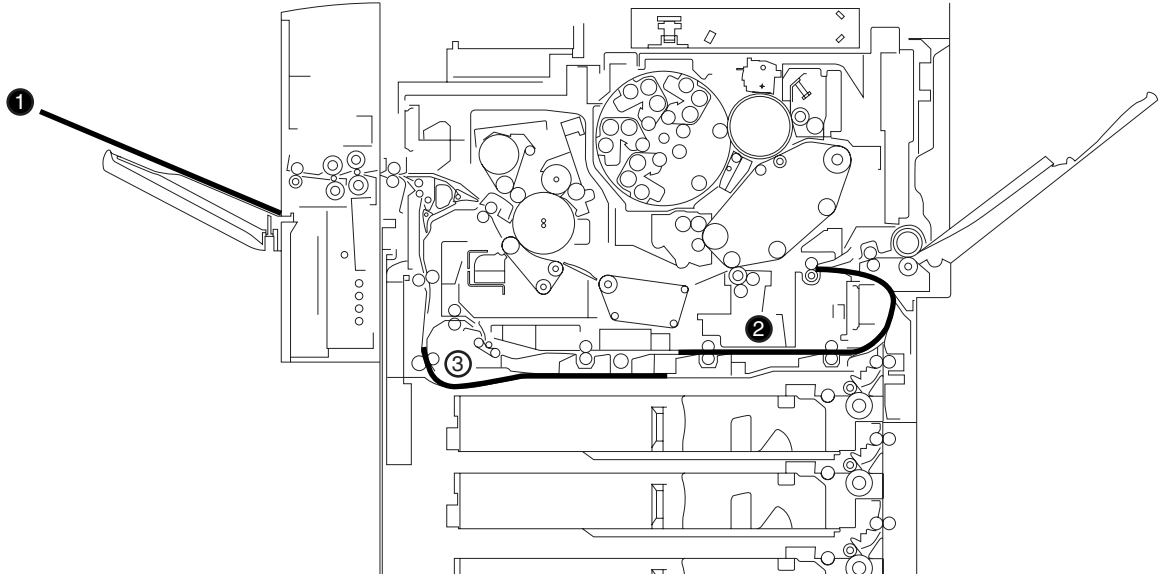
F-8-68

8)



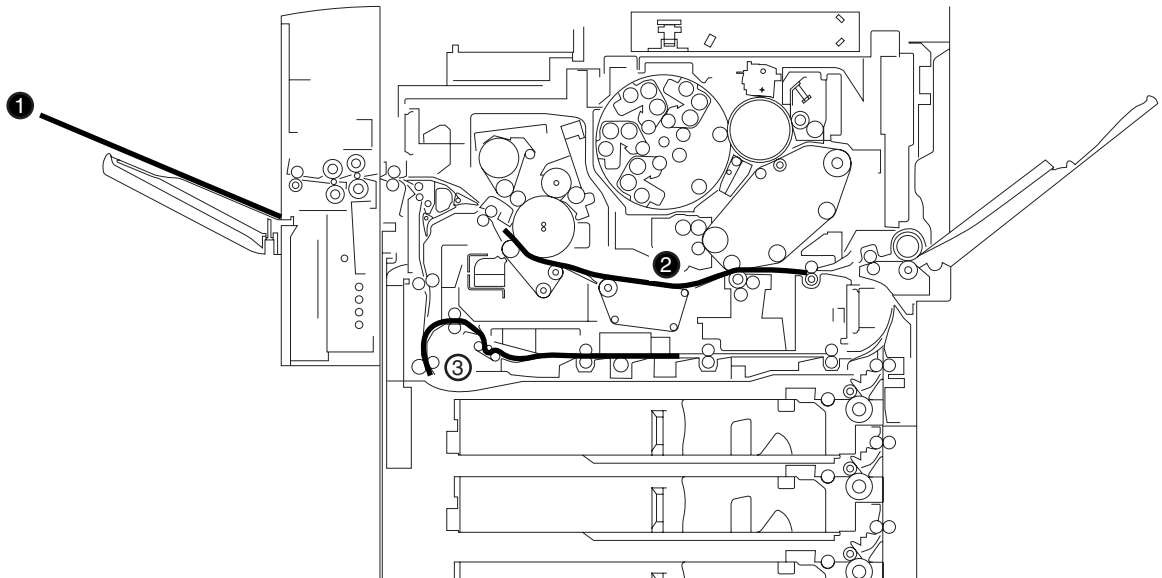
F-8-69

9)



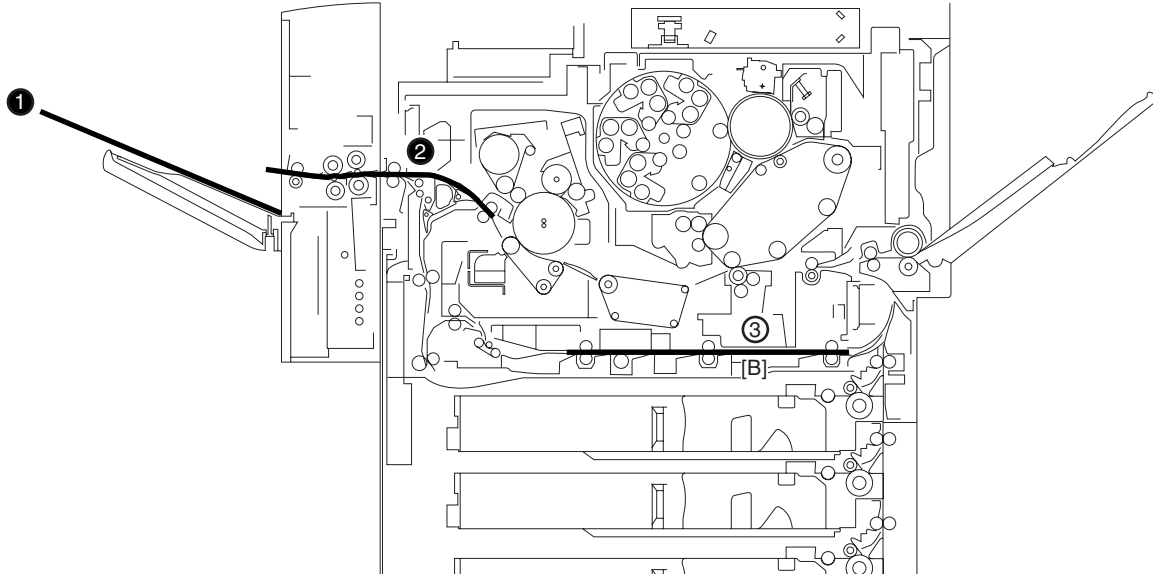
F-8-70

10)



F-8-71

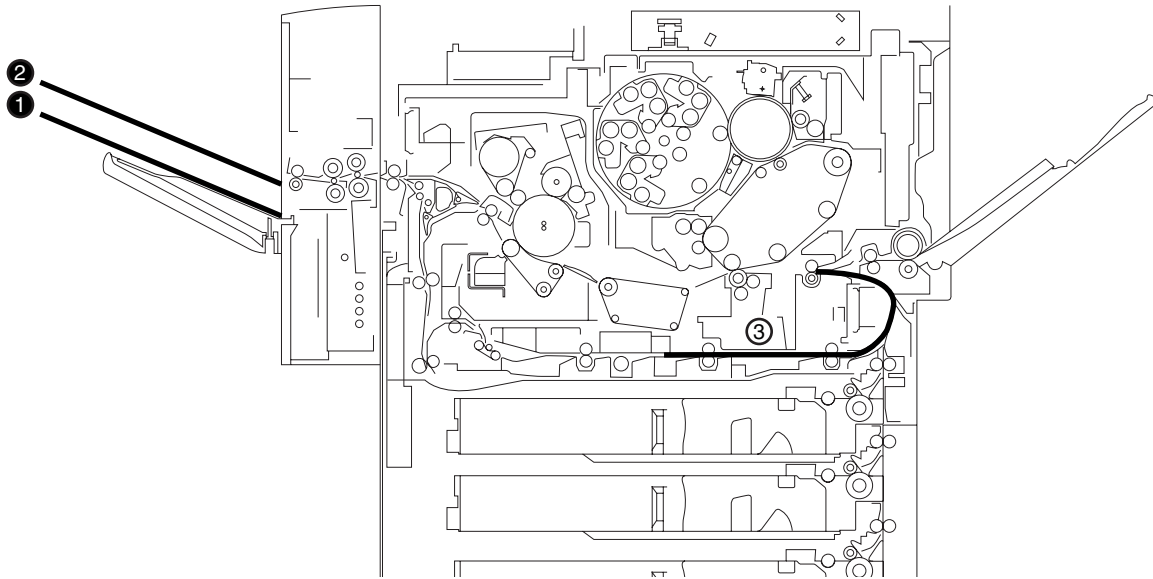
11)



F-8-72

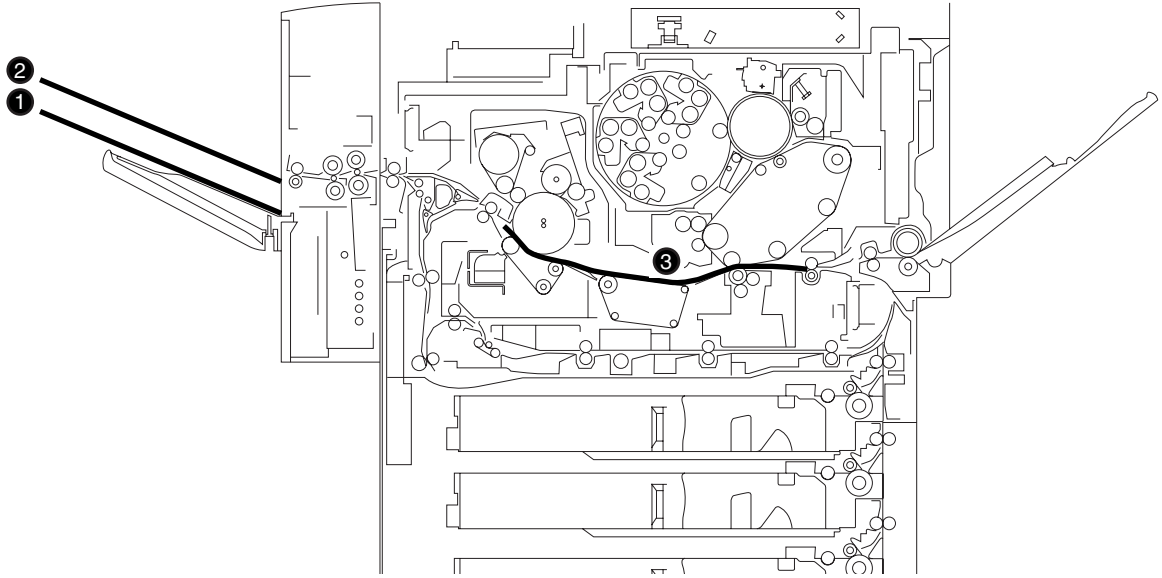
[B] Duplexing re-pickup stop position

12)



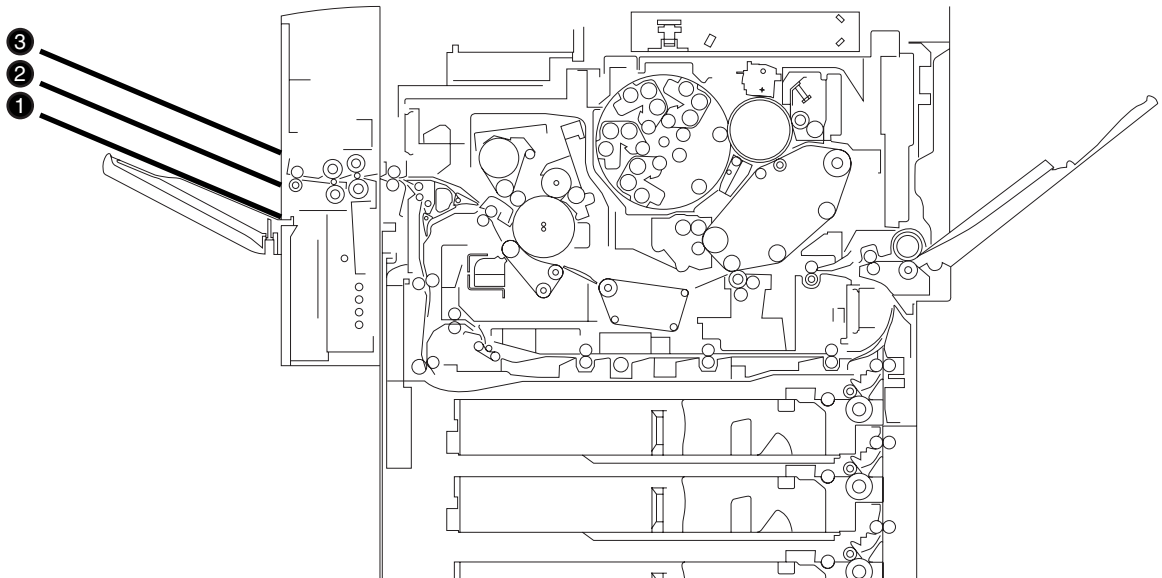
F-8-73

13)



F-8-74

14)



F-8-75

8.9 Delivery

8.9.1 Overview

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

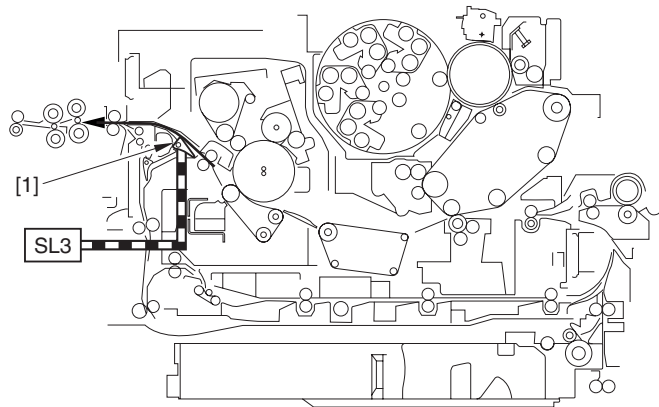
T-8-11

Delivery Method	Operation Mode
Face-up delivery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When printing by 1-on-1 copying - When printing multi-copies from 1 sheet of original (Face-down delivery is used when the finisher is mounted) - When selecting non-fixed size for manual tray feeding - When selecting OHT/label/post card
Face-down delivery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When operation modes other than those above are used - Can be switched to face-down delivery from Service Mode (COPIER>OPTION>BODY>FDW-DLV) when using above-mentioned modes

8.9.2 Face-up Delivery

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

When the delivery solenoid (SL3) is turned ON, the flapper [1] moves down, and paper is fed to the decurler assembly.



F-8-76

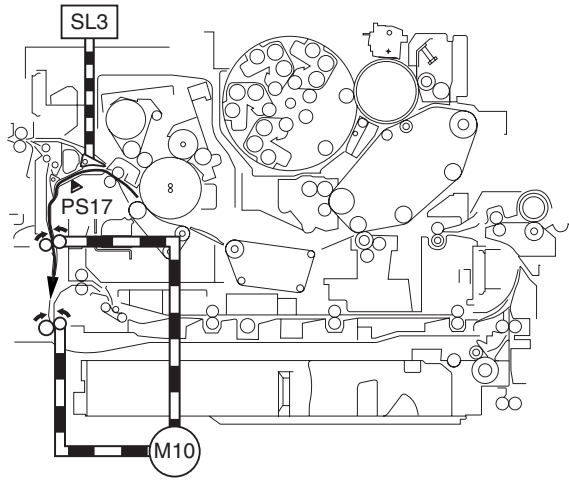
8.9.3 Face-down Delivery

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) When the delivery solenoid (SL3) is turned OFF, paper is fed in the direction of duplexing feeding assembly.

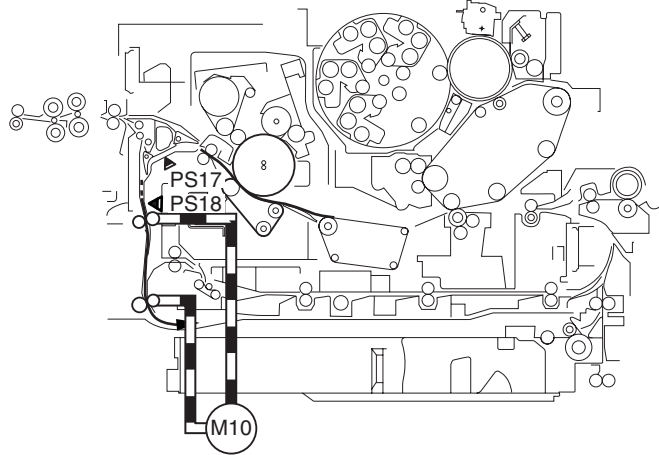
M10: Duplexing reversal motor

PS17: Reversal inlet sensor



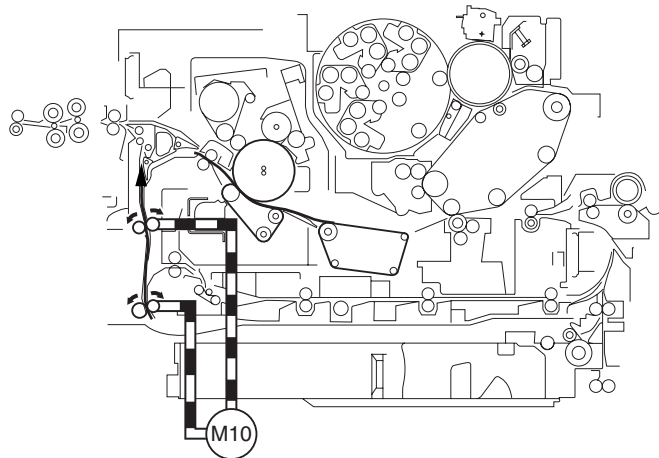
F-8-77

- 2) A specific time after the reversal inlet sensor (PS17) is turned ON, the edge of the paper reaches the duplexing reverse stop position (position about 18mm upstream of the reversal vertical path sensor (PS18)), then the duplexing reversal motor (M10) stops.



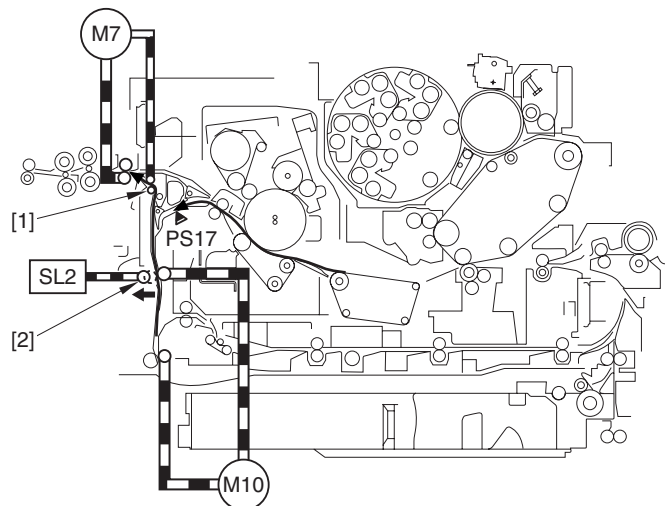
F-8-78

- 3) The duplexing reversal motor (M10) reverse-rotates 100msec after its stop, and then the paper is fed in the direction of the decurler assembly with its trailing edge at the top.



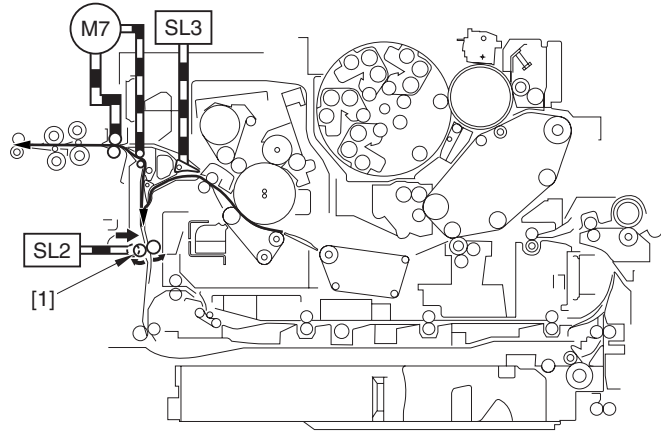
F-8-79

- 4) When the leading edge of the prior paper exceeds 20 mm upstream of the decurler roller [1], reversal separation solenoid (SL2) is turned ON in preparation for the approach of the subsequent paper, and then the reversal 1 roller [2] is moved away. The subsequent paper is fed in the direction of the duplexing feeding assembly.



F-8-80

- 5) When the edge of the previous paper exceeds 40 mm upstream of the reversal 1 roller [1], the reversal separation solenoid (SL2) is turned OFF to bring the reversal 1 roller [1] into contact. Subsequent paper is fed to the reversal stop position.

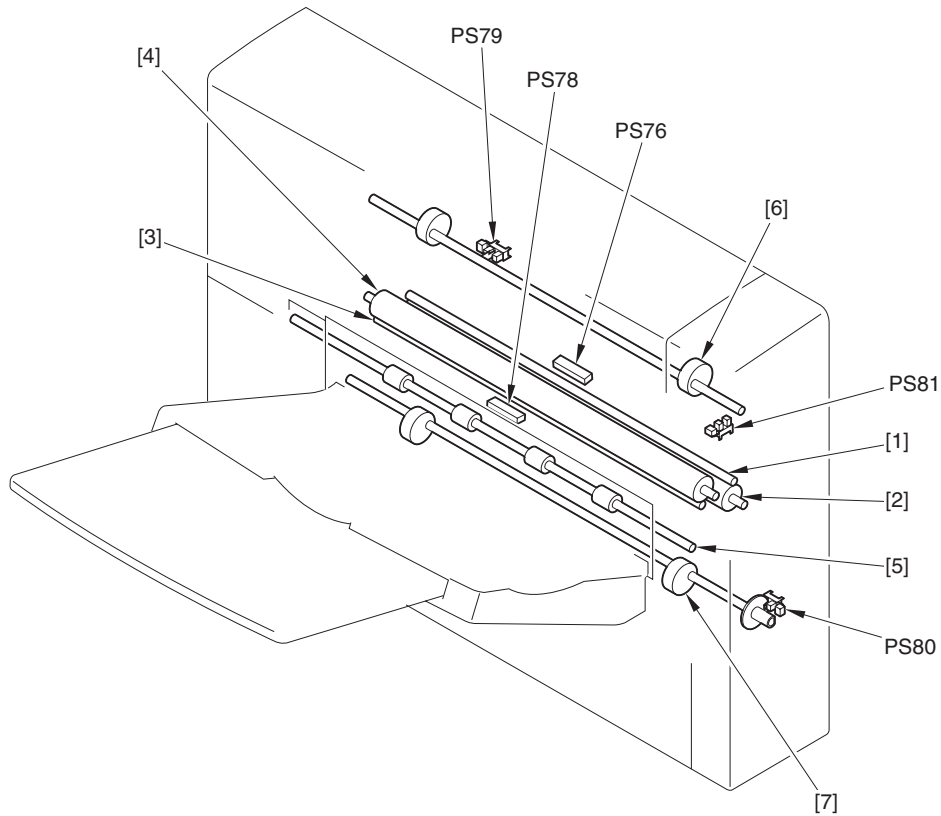


F-8-81

8.9.4 Curl-Removing Operation (Decurler Unit)

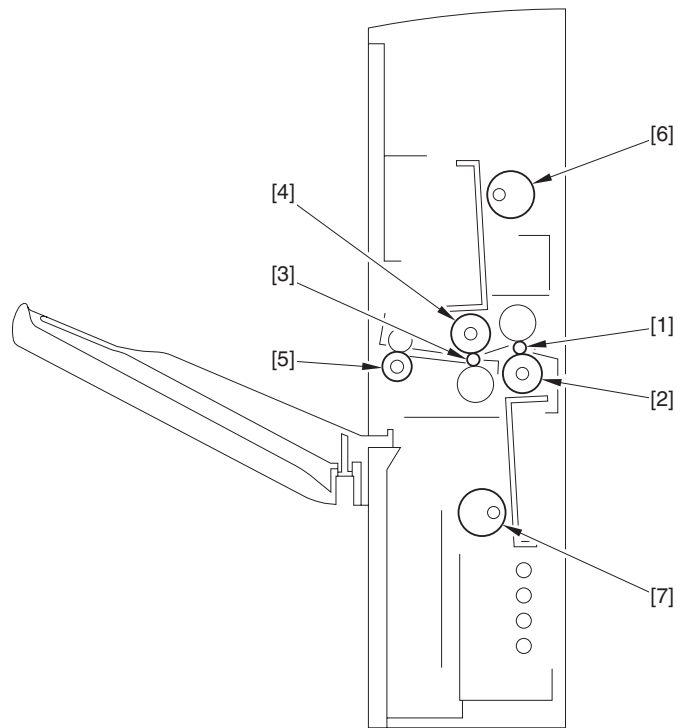
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

In the decurler assembly, paper curl generated after fixing is removed and then delivered outside of the machine.



F-8-82

- [1] Decurler drive 1 roller
- [2] Decurler adjustment 1 roller
- [3] Decurler drive 2 roller
- [4] Decurler adjustment 2 roller
- [5] Decurler delivery roller
- [6] Decurler advancement adjustment 1 cam
- [7] Decurler advancement adjustment 2 cam
- PS76: Decurler inlet sensor
- PS78: Decurler outlet sensor
- PS79: Decurler advancement 1 HP (home position) sensor
- PS80: Decurler advancement 2 HP (home position) sensor
- PS81: Decurler front cover sensor

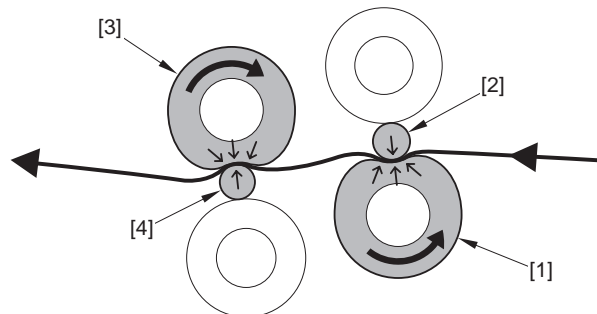


F-8-83

- [1] Decurler drive 1 roller
- [2] Decurler adjustment 1 roller
- [3] Decurler drive 2 roller
- [4] Decurler adjustment 2 roller
- [5] Decurler delivery roller
- [6] Decurler advancement adjustment 1 cam
- [7] Decurler advancement adjustment 2 cam

<Principle>

By advancing the decurler advancement adjustment roller (material: sponge) into the decurler drive roller (material: stainless steel), the decurler decreases the curl of paper passing between the rollers by making a curl on the opposite side against the existing curl.



F-8-84

- [1] Decurler adjustment 1 roller
- [2] Decurler drive 1 roller
- [3] Decurler adjustment 2 roller
- [4] Decurler drive 2 roller

<Controlling Contents>

1. Print

1) Determine length of paper advancement (8-levels)

Conditions

- paper type (coated, non-coated)
- paper weight
- paper size
- toner deposit amount (based on video count)
- delivery mode (face-up, face-down)
- print mode (single-sided, second-side of the double-sided print)

2) The decurler advancement adjustment motor is driven according to the length of advancement determined in 1)

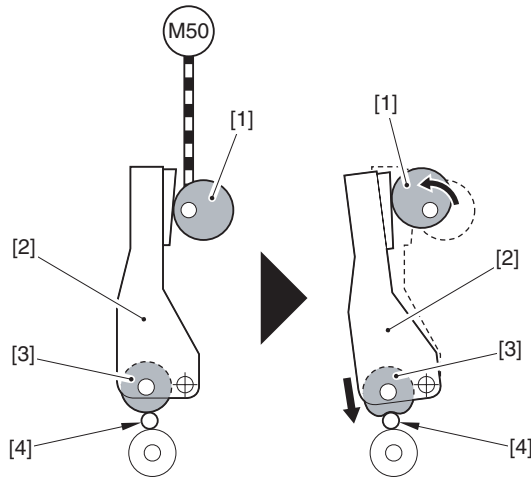
Timing of Start-up

Face-down delivery: When the reversal motor turns ON

Face-up delivery, pickup of the second-side of the paper:

When the paper reaches 60 mm downstream of the Inside delivery roller

3) The drive of the decurler advancement adjustment motor is transmitted to the decurler advancement adjustment cam. The advancement adjustment cam rotates to push the pressure plate. The decurler advancement adjustment roller which is coupled with the pressure plate is pressed to the decurler drive roller. (The figure shows the operation upstream of the decurler.)



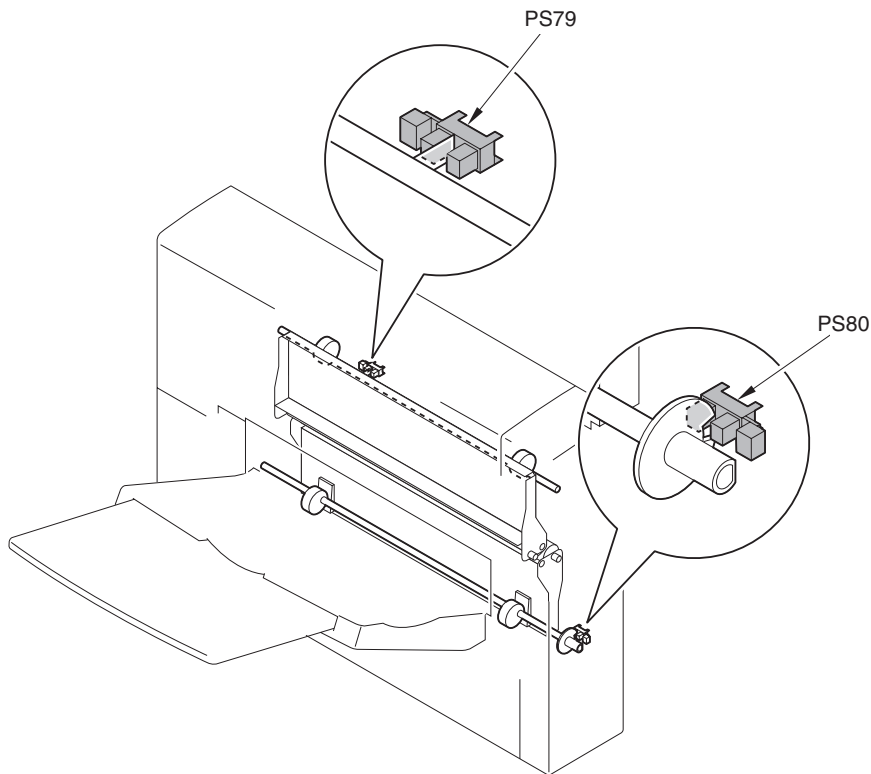
F-8-85

- [1] Decurler advancement adjustment 1 cam
- [2] Pressure plate
- [3] Decurler advancement adjustment 1 roller
- [4] Decurler drive adjustment 1 roller
- M50: Decurler advancement adjustment 1 motor

4) During the last rotation after printing, the machine returns the decurler advancement adjustment roller to the home position (the level of advancement is adjusted to 0)

2. Detection of the Home Position

Detect the home position for the position control of the decurler advancement adjustment roller.



F-8-86

- PS79: Decurler advancement 1HP sensor
- PS80: Decurler advancement 2 Hp sensor

Timing of Start-up

- At power on
- during jam recovery
- during last rotation

Error Code:

E015 (Decurler HP detection error)

0001 Indicates that the HP of the advancement adjustment 1 cam (upstream) cannot be detected within 2 sec.

0002 Indicates that the HP of the advancement adjustment 2 cam (downstream) cannot be detected within 2 sec.

8.10 Parts Replacement Procedure

8.10.1 Cassette Pickup Unit

8.10.1.1 Preparation for Removing the Cassette Pickup Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

A. In the case of Cassette 1

- 1) Detach the upper rear right cover.
- 2) Detach the lower rear right cover.

B. In the case of Cassette 2/3/4

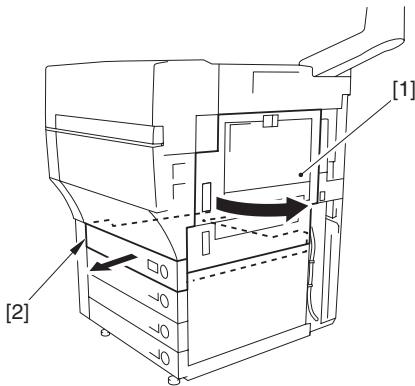
- 1) Detach the lower rear right cover.

8.10.1.2 Removing the Cassette Pickup Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

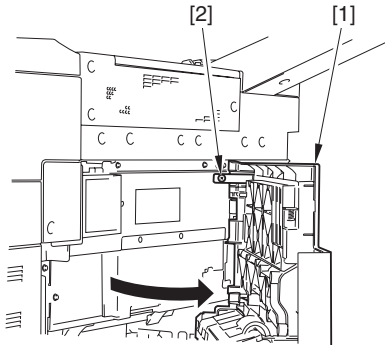
A. In the case of cassette 1

- 1) Open the upper right cover [1] to pull out the cassette 1 [2].



F-8-87

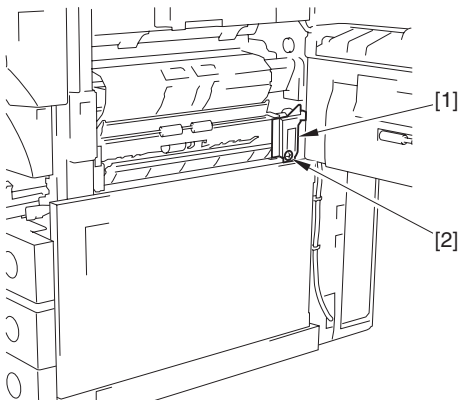
- 2) Remove the screw [2] to open the upper right cover [1] all the way.



F-8-88

- 3) Detach the connector cover [1]

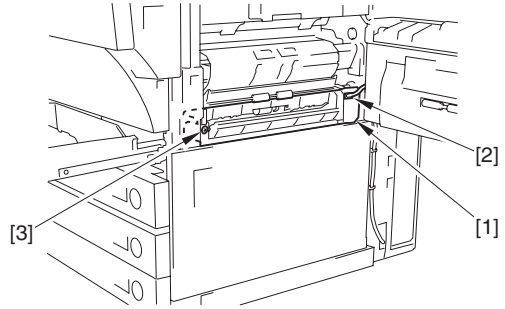
- 1 screw [2]



F-8-89

- 4) Remove the cassette pickup unit [1].

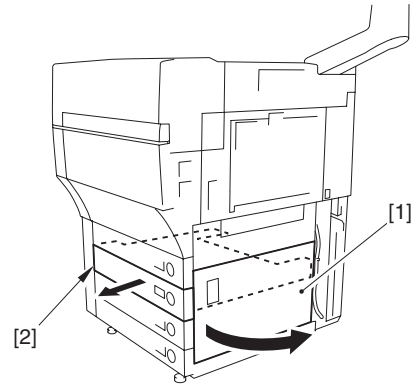
- 1 connector [2]
- 1 screw [3]



F-8-90

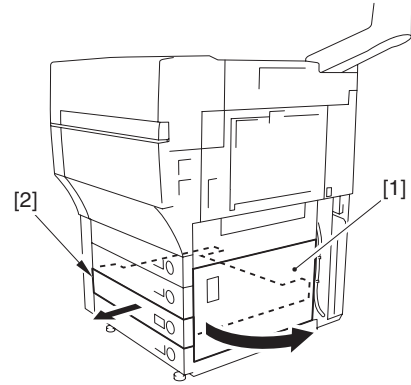
B. In the case of cassette 2/3/4

- 1) Open the lower right cover [1] to pull out the cassette 2/3/4 [2].
Cassette 2



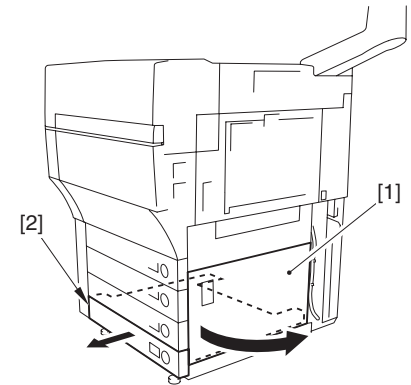
F-8-91

Cassette 3



F-8-92

Cassette 4

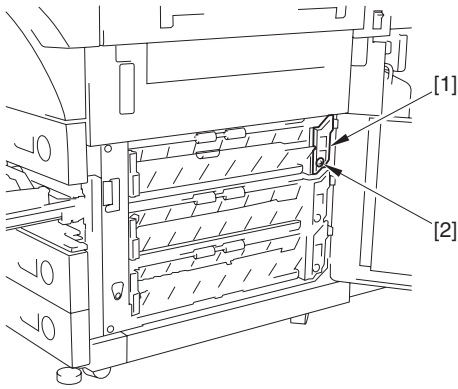


F-8-93

- 2) Detach the connector cover [1].

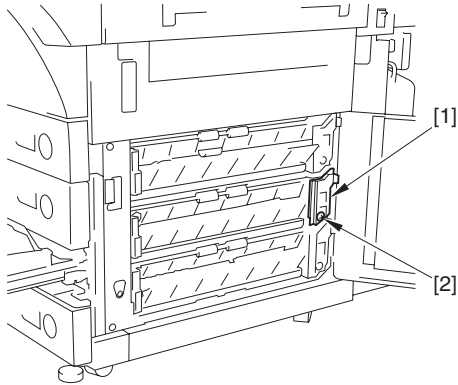
- 1 screw [2]

Cassette 2



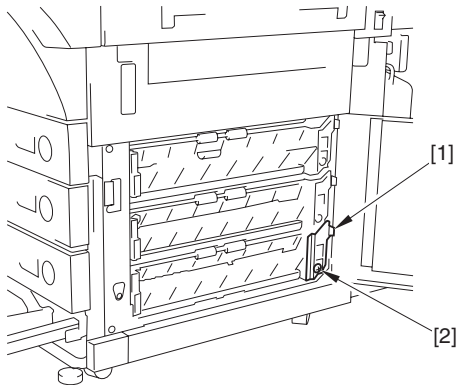
F-8-94

Cassette 3



F-8-95

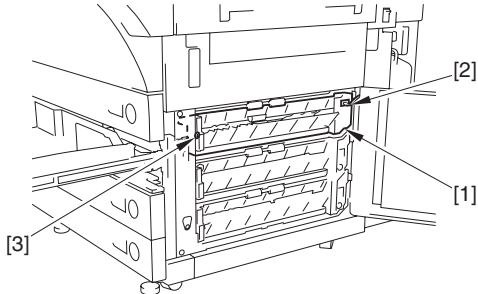
Cassette 4



F-8-96

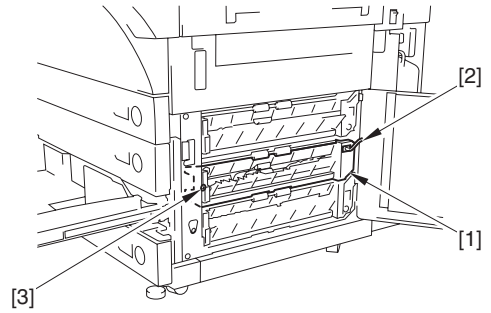
- 3) Remove the cassette pickup unit [1].
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 1 screw [3]

Cassette 2



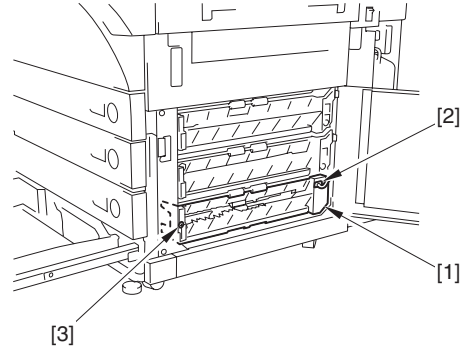
F-8-97

Cassette 3



F-8-98

Cassette 4



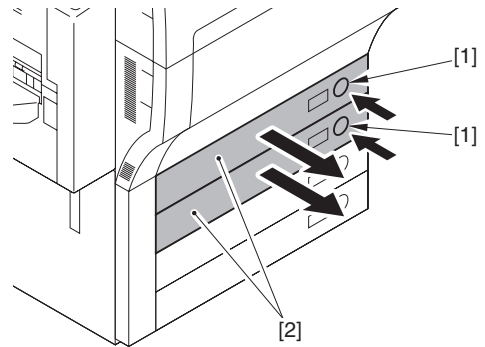
F-8-99

8.10.2 Cassette Heater

8.10.2.1 Removing the Cassette Heater

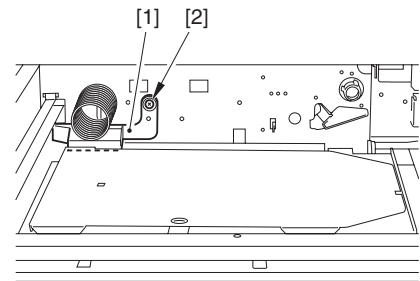
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Press the cassette release button [1] to take out the cassette 1 and 2 [2].



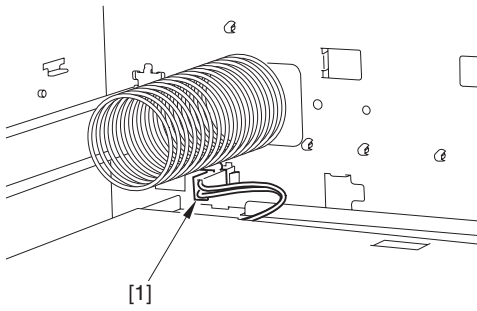
F-8-100

- 2) Detach the cable cover [1].
 - 1 screw [2]



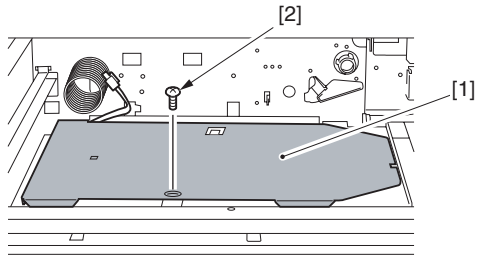
F-8-101

- 3) Connect the connector [1].



F-8-102

- 4) Remove the cassette heater [1].
- 1 screw [2]



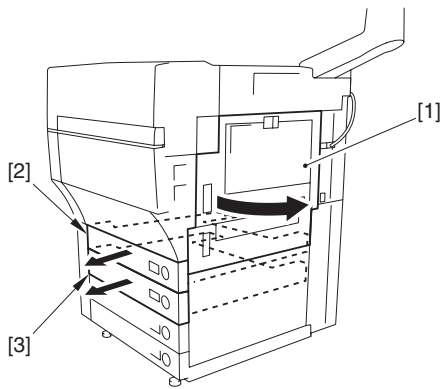
F-8-103

8.10.3 Cassette Pickup/Feed/Separation Roller

8.10.3.1 Removing the Cassette Pickup/Feed/Separation Roller

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

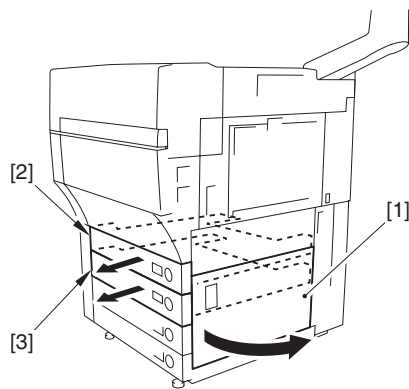
- 1) Open the upper/lower right cover [1] to pull out the cassette.
A. In the case of cassette 1
Pull out the cassette 1 [2] and the cassette 2 [3].



F-8-104

B. In the case of cassette 2

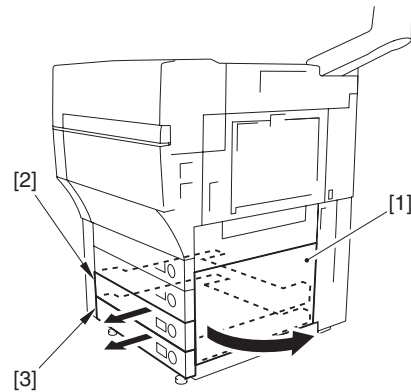
Pull out the cassette 1 [2] and the cassette 2 [3].



F-8-105

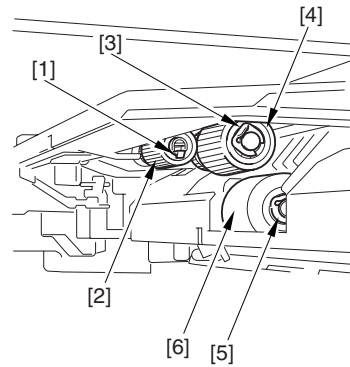
C. In the case of cassette 3/4

Pull out the cassette 3 [2] and the cassette 4 [3].



F-8-106

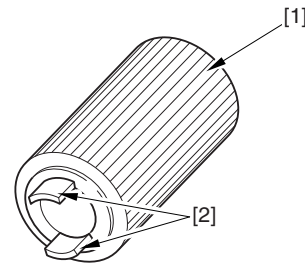
- 2) Remove the pickup roller [2].
- 1 hook [1]
3) Remove the feed roller [4].
- 1 resin ring [3]
4) Remove the separation roller [6].
- 1 resin ring [5]



F-8-107

Ref.:

As for pickup roller [1], mount it with the protrusions [2] (shown in the figure below) facing to the rear.



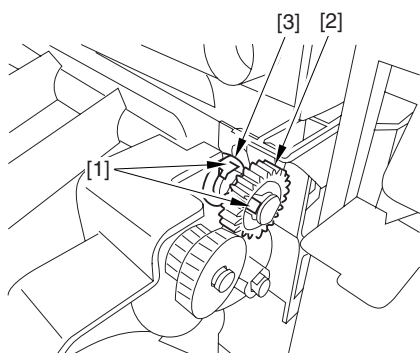
F-8-108

8.10.4 Manual Feed Roller

8.10.4.1 Removing the Manual Feed Roller

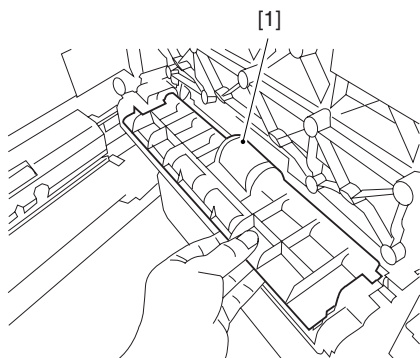
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the upper right cover.
2) Release the claws [1] to remove the gear [2] and the bearing [3].



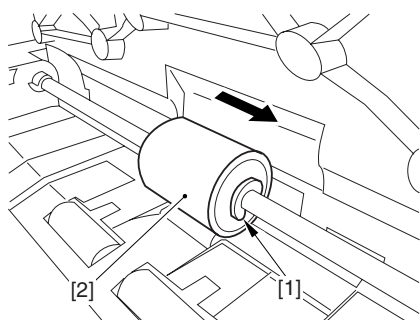
F-8-109

3) Remove the upper feed cover [1].



F-8-110

4) Pull out the feed roller [2] toward you.
- 1 resin ring [1]



F-8-111

8.10.5 Manual Feed Separation Roller

8.10.5.1 Preparation for Removing the Manual Separation Roller

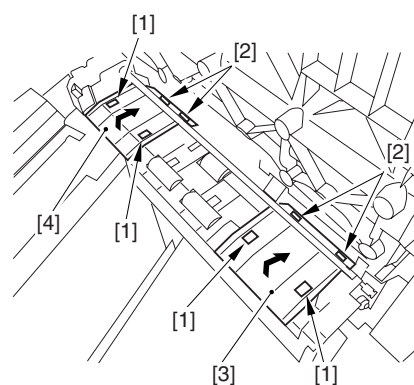
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Remove the manual feed roller. (page 8-60)Reference [Removing the Manual Feed Roller]

8.10.5.2 Removing the Manual Separation Roller

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) With lifting the paper guide, release the hooks [1], and then, release the claws [2] to remove the paper guide (front) [3] and the paper guide (rear) [4].

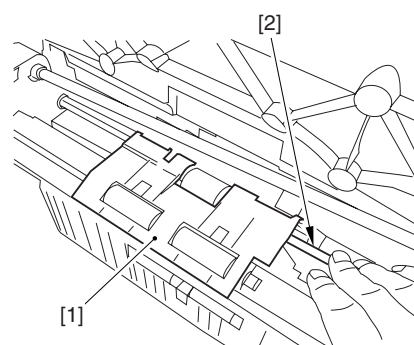


F-8-112

2) As in the step 1), remove the paper guide (center) [1].

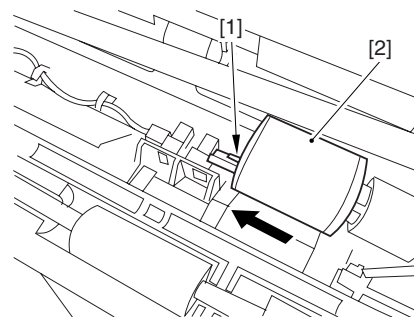
MEMO:

As for removing/mounting the paper guide (center), it is easier to work by pressing the separation roller shaft [2].



F-8-113

3) Pick up the tab [1] of the separation roller to remove the separation roller [2] toward the rear side.



F-8-114

8.10.6 Horizontal Registration Assembly

8.10.6.1 Preparation for Removing the Horizontal Registration

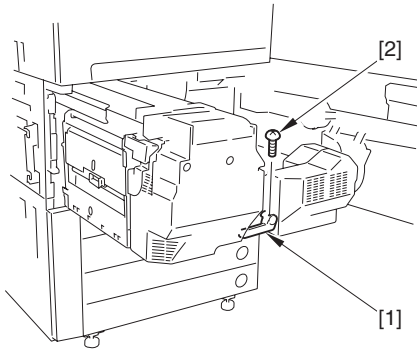
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Open the front door.
2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you. (page 8-63)Reference [Pulling/Removing the Fixing/Feeding Unit]

8.10.6.2 Removing the Horizontal Registration

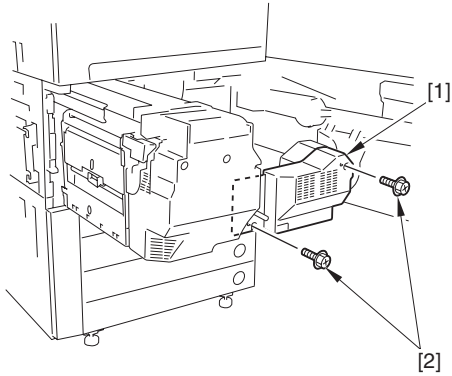
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Remove the lever [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-8-115

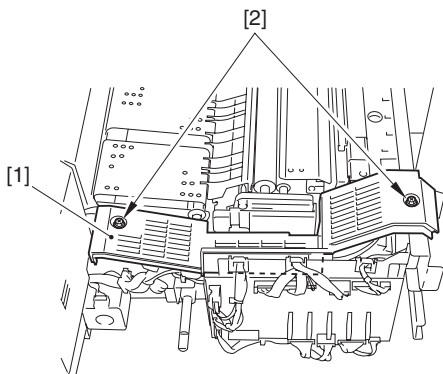
- 2) Detach the feeding front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-8-116

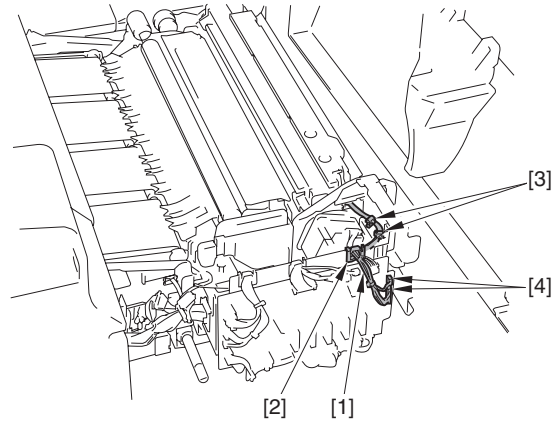
⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Feeding Front Cover
The feeding front cover has the button to open the lower cover of the fixing/feed unit.
To prevent the bar at the end of the button from being broken, take care to attach the feeding front cover so that the bar is in proper position.

- 3) Detach the feeding upper front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



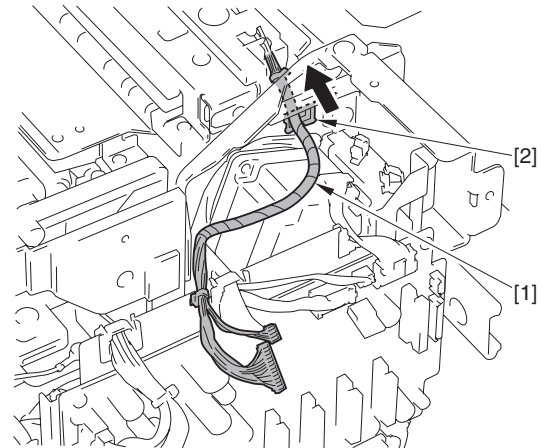
F-8-117

- 4) Remove the registration unit cable [1].
- Edge saddle [2]: 1 pc.
- Wire saddle [3]: 2 pc.
- Connector [4]: 2 pc.



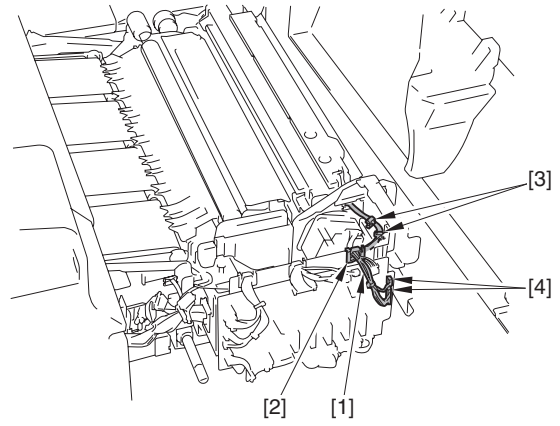
F-8-118

- 5) Draw the registration unit cable [1] from the edge saddle [2] in the direction of an arrow.



F-8-119

- 6) Remove the registration base.
- Screw [2]: 4 screws



F-8-120

8.10.7 Pre-Fixing Feeding Unit

8.10.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Pre-Fixing/Feeding Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

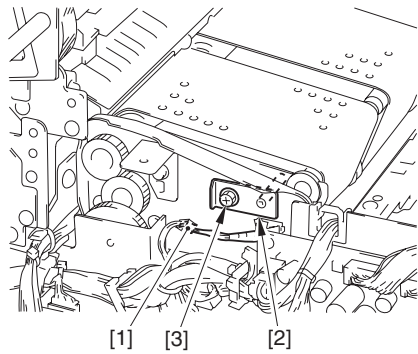
- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you. (page 8-63) Reference [Pulling/Removing the Fixing/Feeding Unit]
- 3) Remove the secondary transfer outer roller unit.

8.10.7.2 Removing the Pre-Fixing/Feeding Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

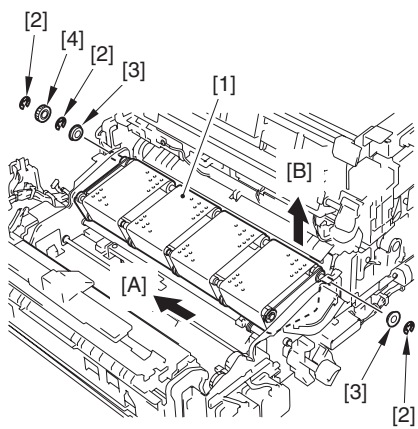
- 1) Disconnect the connector [1].
- 2) Remove the fixing pin [2].

- 1 screw [3]



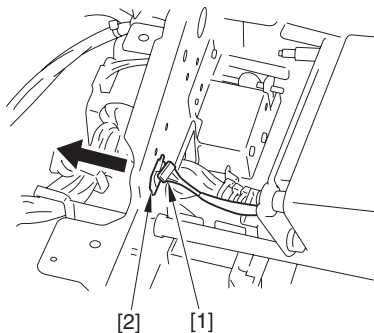
F-8-121

- 3) Remove the pre-fixing/feeding unit [1].
 3-1) Move it in the direction of the arrow [A], and then, lift it in the direction of the arrow [B] to remove.
 - 3 E-rings [2]
 - 2 bearings [3]
 - 1 gear [4]



F-8-122

⚠ Points to Note When Mounting the Pre-Fixing/Feeding Unit.
 In the case of mounting the pre-fixing/feeding unit, make sure to execute after passing the harness [1] through a hole of the edge saddle [2].

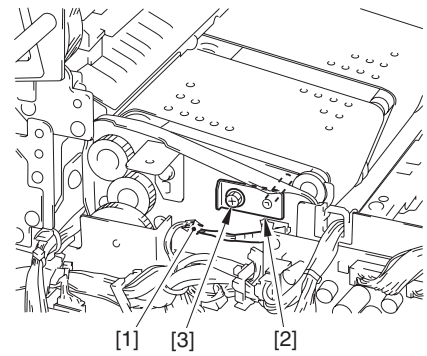


F-8-123

8.10.7.3 Removing the Pre-Fixing/Feeding Unit

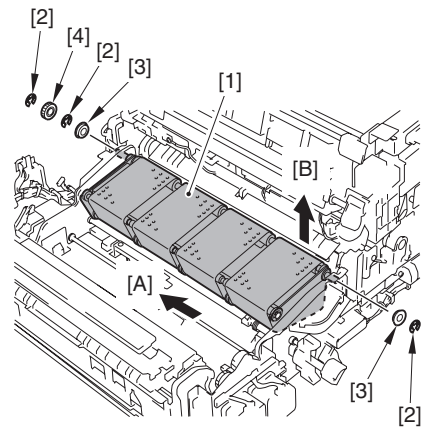
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Disconnect the connector [1].
 2) Remove the fixing pin [2].
 - 1 screw [3]



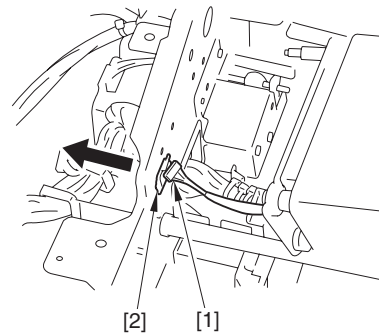
F-8-124

- 3) Remove the pre-fixing/feeding unit [1].
 3-1) Move it in the direction of the arrow [A], and then, lift it in the direction of the arrow [B] to remove.
 - 3 E-rings [2]
 - 2 bearings [3]
 - 1 gear [4]



F-8-125

⚠ Points to Note When Mounting the Pre-Fixing/Feeding Unit.
 In the case of mounting the pre-fixing/feeding unit, make sure to execute after passing the harness [1] through a hole of the edge saddle [2].



F-8-126

8.10.8 Fixing/Feeder Unit

8.10.8.1 Preparation for Pulling/Removing the Fixing/Feeding Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

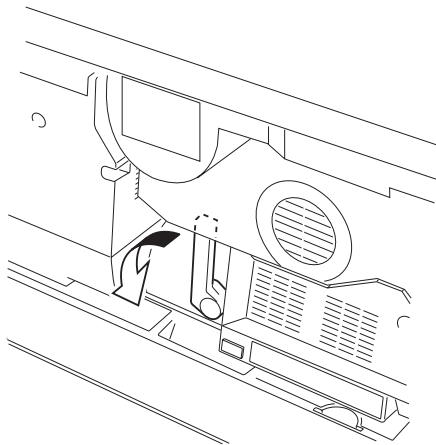
- 1) Open the front door.

8.10.8.2 Pulling/Removing the Fixing/Feeding Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

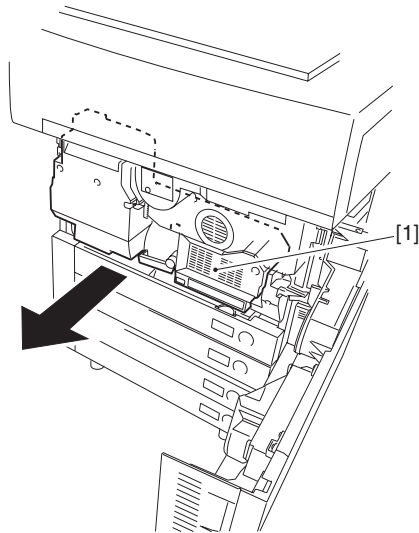
[Pulling out the fixing/feeding unit]

- 1) Turn the handle in the direction of the arrow.



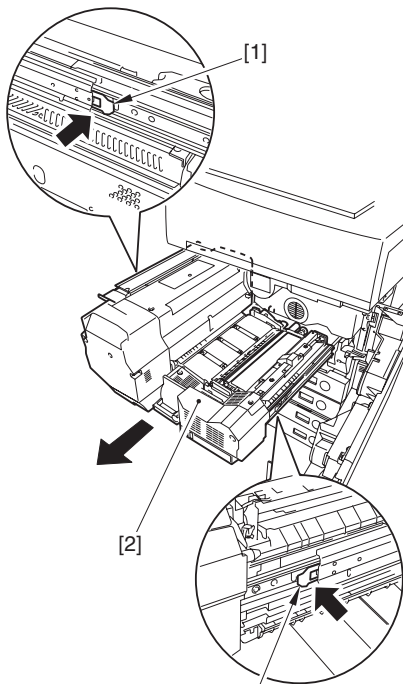
F-8-127

2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit [1] toward you.



F-8-128

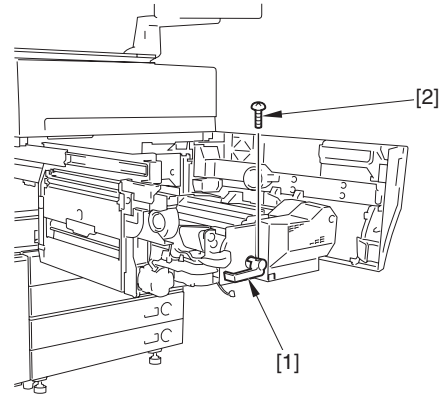
3) Press the 2 leaf springs [1] in the direction of the arrow to pull out the fixing/feeding unit [2] toward you.



F-8-129

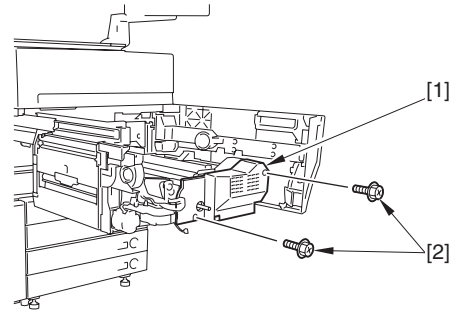
[Removing the fixing/feeding unit]

- 1) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit.
- 2) Remove the fixing assembly.
- 3) Remove the handle [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-8-130

- 4) Detach the feeding front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



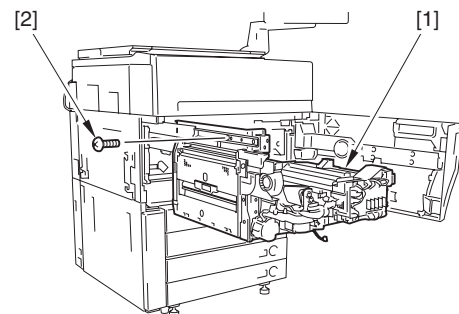
F-8-131

⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Feeding Front Cover

The feeding front cover has the button to open the lower cover of the fixing/feed unit.

To prevent the bar at the end of the button from being broken, take care to attach the feeding front cover so that the bar is in proper position.

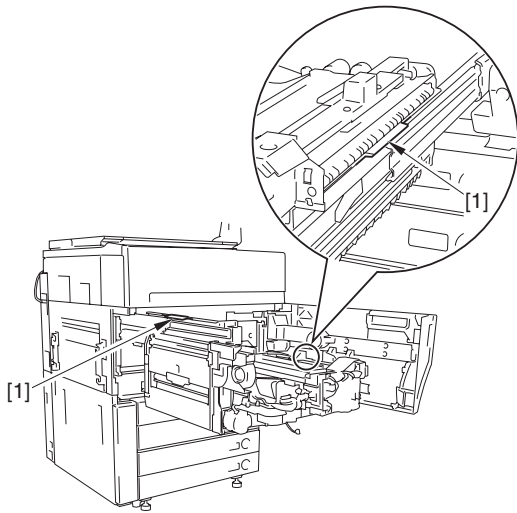
- 5) Remove the fixing/feeding unit [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-8-132

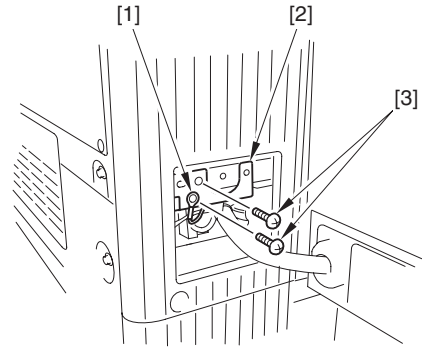
⚠ Points to Note When Removing/Mounting the Fixing/Feeding Unit

- Make sure to hold the rib [1] to remove/mount the fixing/feeding unit.
- In the case of removing/mounting the unit, work with 2 persons.



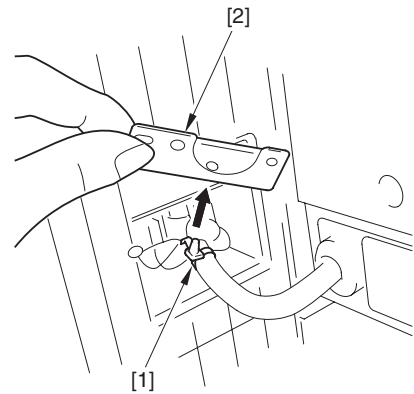
F-8-133

- 2) Disconnect the grounding wire [1], and detach the harness support plate [2].
- 2 screws [3]



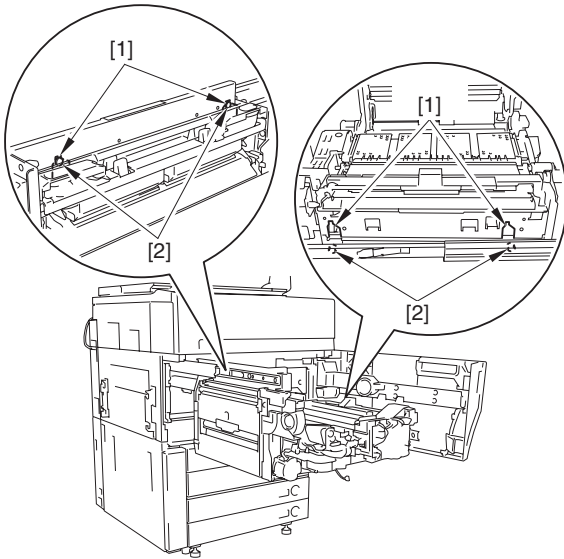
F-8-136

- 3) Remove the harness support plate [2] from the reuse band [1].



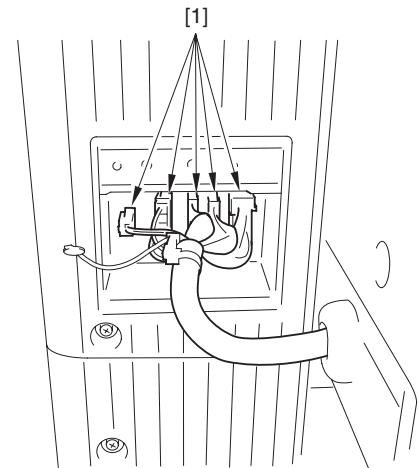
F-8-137

⚠ Points to Note When Mounting the Fixing/Feeding Unit
Make sure to fit the 4 pins [2] to the 4 cut-offs [1].



F-8-134

- 4) Disconnect the 5 connectors [1].



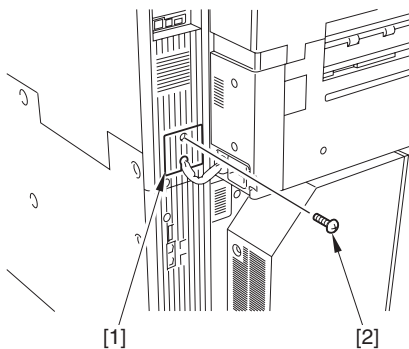
F-8-138

8.10.9 Buffer Decurler

8.10.9.1 Removing the Decurler

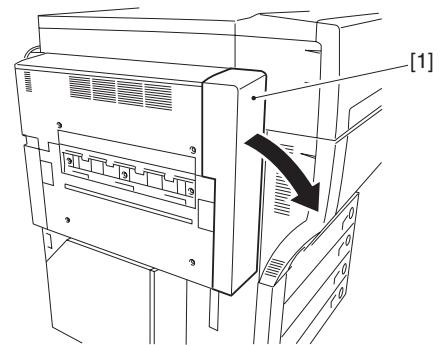
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the panel mount cover [1] attached to the upper left cover (rear).
- 1 screw [2]



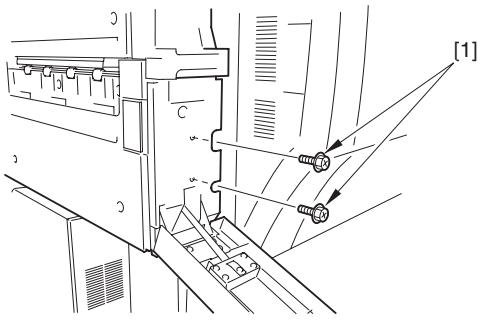
F-8-135

- 5) Open the decurler front cover [1].



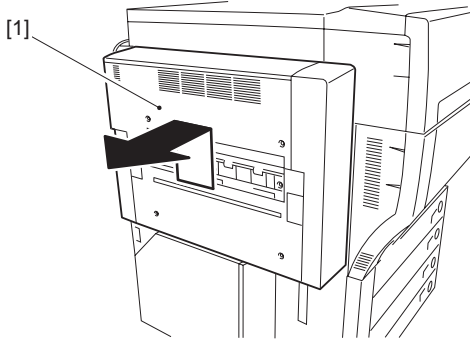
F-8-139

- 6) Remove the 2 screws [1].



F-8-140

- 7) Close the decurler front cover.
- 8) Remove the decurler [1] in the direction of the arrow.



F-8-141

8.10.10 Decurler Adjustment Roller (Upper)

8.10.10.1 Preparation for Removing the Decurler Sponge Roller (upper)

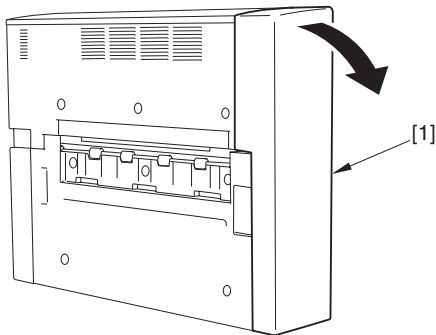
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the decurler. (page 8-65)Reference [Removing the Decurler]

8.10.10.2 Removing the Decurler Sponge Roller (upper)

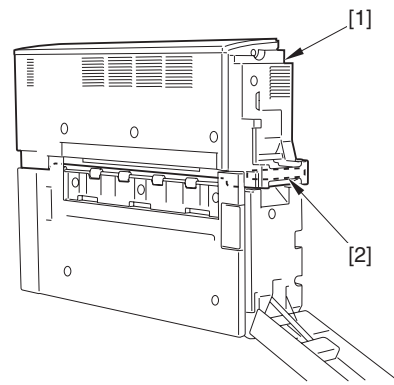
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door [1].



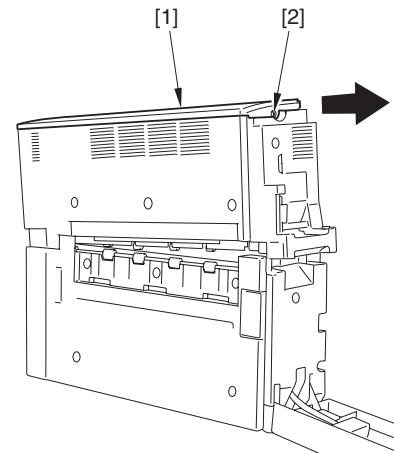
F-8-142

- 2) Pull the handle [2] of the decurler (upper) unit [1] toward you to release the lock.



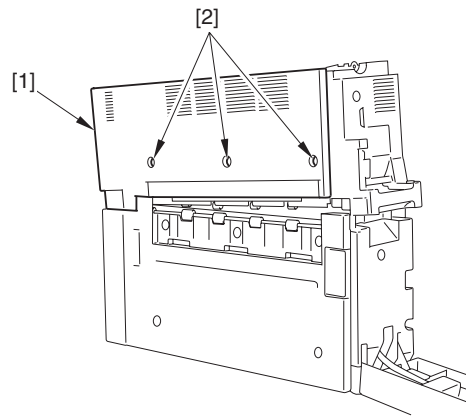
F-8-143

- 3) Detach the upper cover [1] in the direction of the arrow. - 1 screw [2]



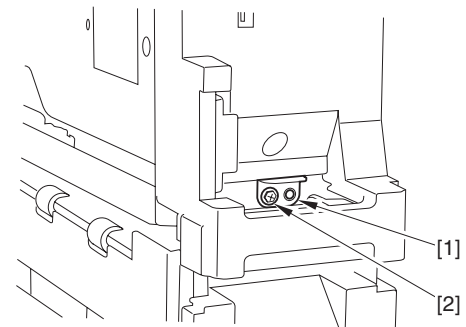
F-8-144

- 4) Detach the upper left cover [1]. - 3 screws [2]



F-8-145

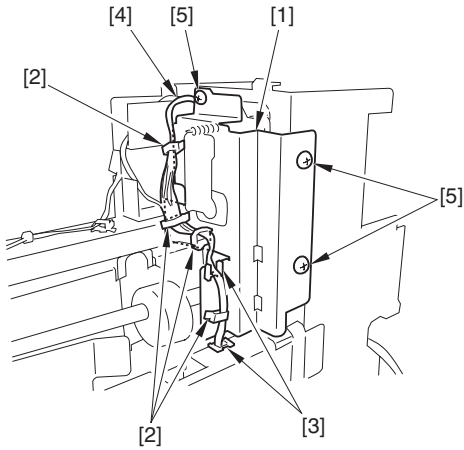
- 5) Remove the stopper [1]. - 1 screw [2]



F-8-146

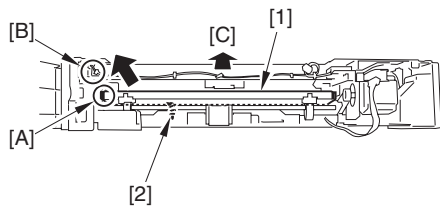
- 6) Detach the motor support plate [1]. - 4 wire saddles [2]

- 2 edge saddles [3]
- 1 harness [4]
- 3 screws [5]



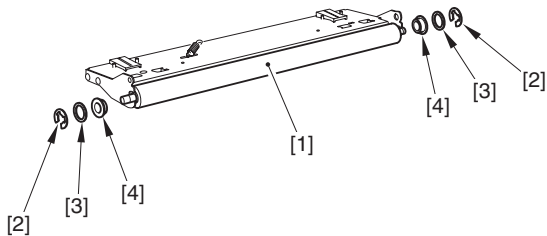
F-8-147

- 7) Remove the decurler sponge roller (upper) unit [1].
 7-1) Pull out the corner [A] area of the decurler sponge roller unit to the position of [B], and then remove it in the upper direction of the arrow [C].
 - 1 spring [2]



F-8-148

- 8) Remove the decurler sponge roller (upper) [1].
 - 2 E-rings [2]
 - 2 washers [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]



F-8-149

8.10.11 Decurler Adjustment Roller (Lower)

8.10.11.1 Preparation for Removing the Decurler Sponge Roller (lower)

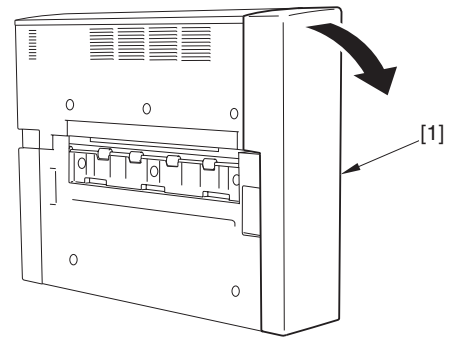
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the decurler. (page 8-65) Reference [Removing the Decurler]

8.10.11.2 Removing the Decurler Sponge Roller (lower)

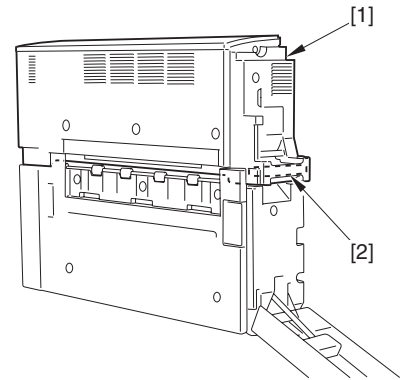
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door [1] in the direction of the arrow.



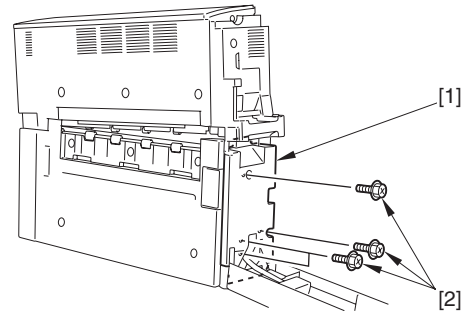
F-8-150

- 2) Pull out the handle [2] of the decurler (upper) unit [1] toward you to release the lock.



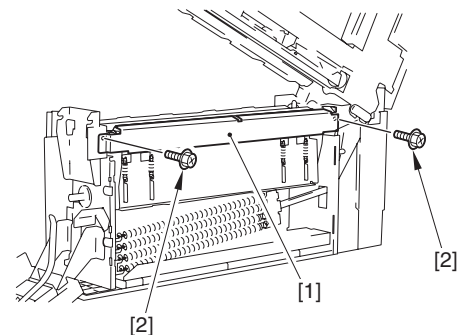
F-8-151

- 3) Detach the decurler lower inside cover [1].
 - 4 screws [2]



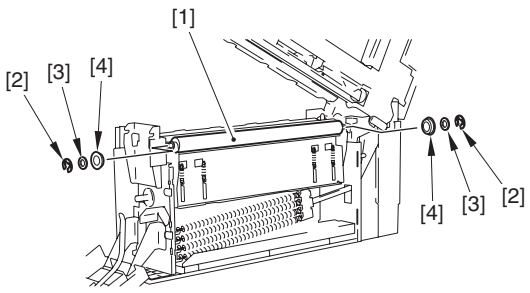
F-8-152

- 4) Detach the lower roller guide plate [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



F-8-153

- 5) Remove the decurler sponge roller (lower) [1].
 - 2 E-rings [2]
 - 2 washers [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]



F-8-154

Chapter 9 Fixing System

Contents

9.1 Construction	9-1
9.1.1 Specifications/Control/Function	9-1
9.1.2 Major Components (Section).....	9-2
9.1.3 Major Components (Thermistor / Thermal switch).....	9-3
9.1.4 Major Components (Sensor/Solenoid).....	9-4
9.1.5 Control System Configuration	9-5
9.1.6 Fixing Roller/Belt Drive Control	9-8
9.2 Basic Sequence	9-10
9.2.1 At Power-On	9-10
9.2.2 Print (Constant Speed).....	9-11
9.2.3 Print (1/3-Speed).....	9-12
9.3 Various Control Mechanisms.....	9-13
9.3.1 Controlling the Fixing Roller Temperature	9-13
9.3.1.1 Down Sequence.....	9-13
9.3.1.2 Power Save Mode	9-14
9.3.2 Detecting the Passage of Paper	9-14
9.3.2.1 Detection for Paper Wrapping	9-14
9.3.3 External Heat Roller Drive Control	9-17
9.3.3.1 Detached/Attached Mechanism of the External Heat Roller	9-17
9.3.4 Belting inclined Control.....	9-19
9.3.4.1 Control for adjusting Fixing Belt Displacement	9-19
9.4 Belt Pressurizing Mechanism.....	9-22
9.4.1 Locking Mechanism of the Fixing Belt	9-22
9.5 Fixing Cleaning Web Mechanisms	9-24
9.5.1 Control of the Fixing Cleaning Web Drive	9-24
9.5.2 Control of the Fixing Cleaning Web Length Detection	9-25
9.5.3 Detached/Attached Mechanism of the Cleaning Web (Web Roller).....	9-26
9.5.4 Refresh Roller Attach/Detach Mechanism	9-28
9.6 Protective Functions.....	9-29
9.6.1 Protective Circuit	9-29
9.6.2 Related Error Code	9-31
9.7 Parts Replacement Procedure.....	9-34
9.7.1 Fixing Drive Unit.....	9-34
9.7.1.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Drive Second Gear	9-34
9.7.1.2 Removing the Fixing Drive Second Gear	9-34
9.7.2 Fixing Unit	9-35
9.7.2.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Assembly Unit.....	9-35
9.7.2.2 Removing the Fixing Assembly Unit.....	9-35
9.7.2.3 Removing the Fixing Assembly Unit.....	9-36
9.7.3 Fixing Belt Unit	9-38
9.7.3.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Belt Unit.....	9-38
9.7.3.2 Removing the Fixing Belt Unit	9-38
9.7.3.3 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Separation Roller Ball Bearing	9-40
9.7.3.4 Removing the Fixing Separation Roller Ball Bearing	9-40
9.7.4 Fixing Roller	9-40
9.7.4.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Roller.....	9-40
9.7.4.2 Removing the Fixing Roller.....	9-40
9.7.4.3 After Replacing the Fixing Roller.....	9-40
9.7.5 Fixing Belt	9-42
9.7.5.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Belt	9-42
9.7.5.2 Removing the Fixing Belt	9-42
9.7.5.3 After Replacing the Fixing Belt	9-43

9.7.6 External Heat Roller	9-44
9.7.6.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Roller.....	9-44
9.7.6.2 Removing the External Heat Roller.....	9-44
9.7.6.3 When Replacing the External Heat Roller.....	9-44
9.7.7 Oil Applying Roller	9-44
9.7.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Oil Coating Roller.....	9-44
9.7.7.2 Removing the Oil Coating Roller.....	9-44
9.7.8 External Heat Cleaning Roller.....	9-44
9.7.8.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Cleaning Roller.....	9-44
9.7.8.2 Removing the External Heat Cleaning Roller.....	9-44
9.7.9 Fixing Web Roller.....	9-45
9.7.9.1 Preparation for Removing the Web Roller.....	9-45
9.7.9.2 Removing the Web Roller.....	9-45
9.7.9.3 Removing the Web Roller.....	9-46
9.7.10 Refresh Roller.....	9-46
9.7.10.1 Preparation for Removing the Refresh Roller.....	9-46
9.7.10.2 Removing the Refresh Roller.....	9-46
9.7.10.3 Removing the Refresh Roller.....	9-48
9.7.11 Steering Roller.....	9-49
9.7.11.1 Preparation for Removing the Steering Roller.....	9-49
9.7.11.2 Removing the Steering Roller.....	9-49
9.7.12 Pressure Pad.....	9-49
9.7.12.1 Preparation for Removing the Pressure Pad.....	9-49
9.7.12.2 Removing the Pressure Pad.....	9-49
9.7.13 Pressure Pad Cover.....	9-49
9.7.13.1 Preparation for Removing the Pressure Pad Cover.....	9-49
9.7.13.2 Removing the Pressure Pad Cover.....	9-49
9.7.13.3 After Replacing the Pressure Pad Cover.....	9-50
9.7.14 Fixing Main Thermistor.....	9-50
9.7.14.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Main Thermistor.....	9-50
9.7.14.2 Removing the Fixing Main Thermistor.....	9-50
9.7.15 Fixing Sub Thermistor.....	9-50
9.7.15.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Sub Thermistor.....	9-50
9.7.15.2 Removing the Fixing Sub Thermistor.....	9-50
9.7.16 Outside Heating Main Thermistor.....	9-51
9.7.16.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Main Thermistor.....	9-51
9.7.16.2 Removing the External Heat Main Thermistor.....	9-51
9.7.17 Outside Heating Sub Thermistor.....	9-51
9.7.17.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Sub Thermistor.....	9-51
9.7.17.2 Removing the External Heat Sub Thermistor.....	9-51
9.7.18 Inlet Thermistor.....	9-52
9.7.18.1 Preparation for Removing the Inlet Main Thermistor/Sub Thermistor.....	9-52
9.7.18.2 Removing the Inlet Main Thermistor/Sub Thermistor.....	9-52
9.7.19 Fixing Thermal Switch.....	9-52
9.7.19.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Thermal Switch.....	9-52
9.7.19.2 Removing the Fixing Thermal Switch.....	9-52
9.7.20 Thermal Switch.....	9-53
9.7.20.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Thermal Switch.....	9-53
9.7.20.2 Removing the External Heat Thermal Switch.....	9-53
9.7.21 Fixing Belt Thermal Switch.....	9-53
9.7.21.1 Preparation for Removing the Belt Thermal Switch.....	9-53
9.7.21.2 Removing the Belt Thermal Switch.....	9-53
9.7.22 Fixing Main Heater/Fixing Sub Heater.....	9-54
9.7.22.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Main Heater/the Fixing Sub Heater.....	9-54
9.7.22.2 Removing the Fixing Main Heater/the Fixing Sub Heater.....	9-54
9.7.23 Inlet Heater.....	9-55
9.7.23.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Belt Inlet Heater.....	9-55
9.7.23.2 Removing the Fixing Belt Inlet Heater.....	9-55
9.7.24 Fixing Locking Heater.....	9-56
9.7.24.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heater.....	9-56

9.7.24.2 Removing the External Heater	9-56
9.7.25 Fixing Web.....	9-57
9.7.25.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web.....	9-57
9.7.25.2 Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web.....	9-57
9.7.25.3 Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web.....	9-58
9.7.25.4 After Replacing the Fixing Cleaning Web.....	9-59
9.7.26 Insulating Bush	9-59
9.7.26.1 Preparation for Removing the Insulating Bush.....	9-59
9.7.26.2 Removing the Insulating Bush.....	9-59
9.7.26.3 After Replacing the Insulating Bush.....	9-59
9.7.27 Outside Heat Insulating Bush	9-59
9.7.27.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Insulating Bush.....	9-59
9.7.27.2 Removing the External Heat Insulating Bush.....	9-59
9.7.27.3 When Replacing the External Heat Insulating Bush.....	9-59
9.7.28 Lower Separation Claw.....	9-60
9.7.28.1 Preparation for Removing the Lower Separation Plate.....	9-60
9.7.28.2 Removing the Lower Separation Plate.....	9-60
9.7.29 Delivery Upper Separation Plate	9-61
9.7.29.1 Preparation for Removing the Upper Separation Plate.....	9-61
9.7.29.2 Detaching the Upper Separation Plate	9-61

9.1 Construction

9.1.1 Specifications/Control/Function

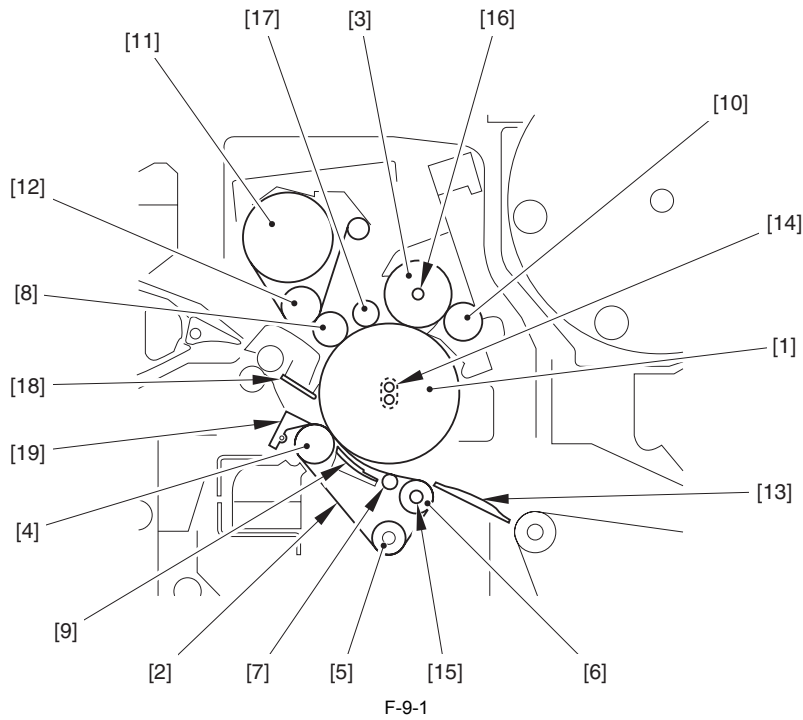
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-9-1

Item	Description	
Fixing Method	by lower fixing belt	
Heater	inside fixing roller	2pc (main heater/sub heater; integrated type)
	Inside inlet roller	1pc.
	Inside outside heating roller	1pc.
Control temperature	fixing roller	165 deg C (standby)
	Fixing belt (inlet roller)	95 deg C (standby)
	Outside heating roller	200 deg C (standby)
Fixing temperature detection	Fixing roller	Main thermistor THM1 (roller center; non-contact) Sub thermistor THM2 (roller rear end; contact)
	Inlet roller	Main thermistor THM3 (roller center; contact) Sub thermistor THM4 (roller rear end; contact)
	Outside heating roller	Main thermistor THM5 (roller center; contact) Sub thermistor THM6 (roller rear end; contact)
Fixing temperature control	during warm-up, standby, printing, last rotation, power save mode	
Fixing speed control	down sequence (black-and-white, constant velocity only)	
Protective mechanism	A check is run for the following to cut power to the heater in the event of a fault.	
	check on the temperature using the main/sub thermistor	
	cutting the supply power using the thermal switch	
	Fixing roller	TP1 (roller front end; contact; operating temperature of 180 +/-7 deg C)
	Fixing belt	TP2 (roller center; non-contact; operating temperature of 130 +/-5 deg C)
	Outside heating roller	TP3 (roller front end; contact; operating temperature of 220 +/-8 deg C)
	check for a thermistor open circuit/paper wrap	
Separation mechanism	-Separation Roller Separates paper from the fixing roller. Separates paper by pressing the separation roller of which first diameter is 20 mm dia into the fixing roller to generate a local curvature change. -Lower Separation Claw Prevents wrapping of paper around the fixing belt (as when paper is curling downward)	
Cleaning mechanism	fixing roller	by using the collecting roller and taking up the cleaning web
	Fixing belt	none
	outside heating roller	by the cleaning roller
Control mechanisms	-cleaning web drive control - cleaning web length detection - belt/web/outside heating roller attachment/detachment control - belt displacement control - paper wrap control	

9.1.2 Major Components (Section)

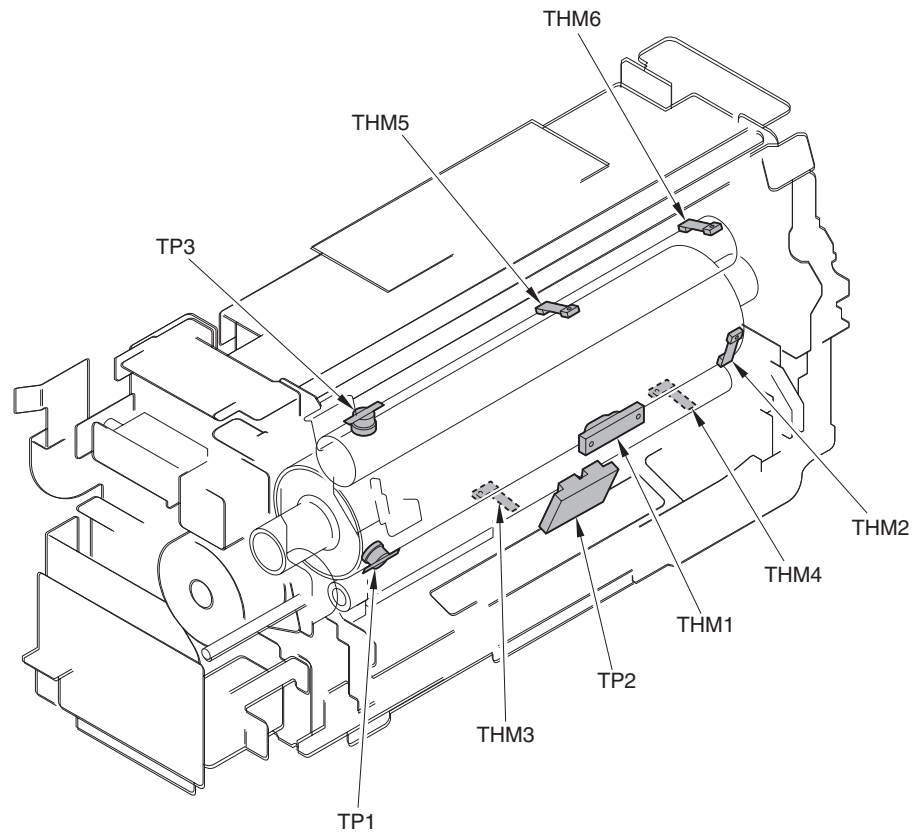
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



Construction		Characteristics/Function/Method	Remarks
[1]	Fixing roller	Fixing of toner onto the sheet improved gross evenness	80 mm dia
[2]	Fixing belt		width: 348+/-2mm
[3]	outside heating roller	prevents the temperature decline at continuous printing	36 mm dia
[4]	Separation roller	separates of paper from the fixing roller	21 mm dia
[5]	Steering roller	Corrects the belt displacement	
[6]	Inlet roller	Controls the temperature of the fixing belt	20 mm dia
[7]	Oil applying roller	Decreases the friction of sliding surfaces inside the belt	includes silicon oil; 10 mm dia
[8]	Collecting roller	Collects the toner on the fixing roller temporarily	
[9]	Pressure pad	Forms an appropriate fixing nip	
[10]	Outside heating cleaning roller	Cleans the outside heating roller	
[11]	Cleaning web	Cleans the fixing roller via collecting roller	
[12]	Web roller	Cleans the toner attached on the collecting roller	
[13]	Fixing inlet guide	Determines the advancing angle into the fixing nip area (prevents end plate spring, crease, and friction)	
[14]	Fixing main heater (H1)	Halogen heater: 400W (100V/120V), 437W (230V)	main heater/sub heater; integrated type
	Fixing main heater (H2)	Halogen heater: 400W (100V/120V), 437W (230V)	
[15]	Inlet heater (H3)	Halogen heater: 400W (100V/120V), 437W (230V)	
[16]	Outside heater (H4)	Halogen heater: 400W (100V/120V), 437W (230V)	
[17]	Fixing refresh roller	Refreshes the surface of the fixing roller	
[18]	Upper separation guide	Guides paper to the inside delivery area	
[19]	Lower separation claw	Separates paper from the fixing belt	

9.1.3 Major Components (Thermistor / Thermal switch)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

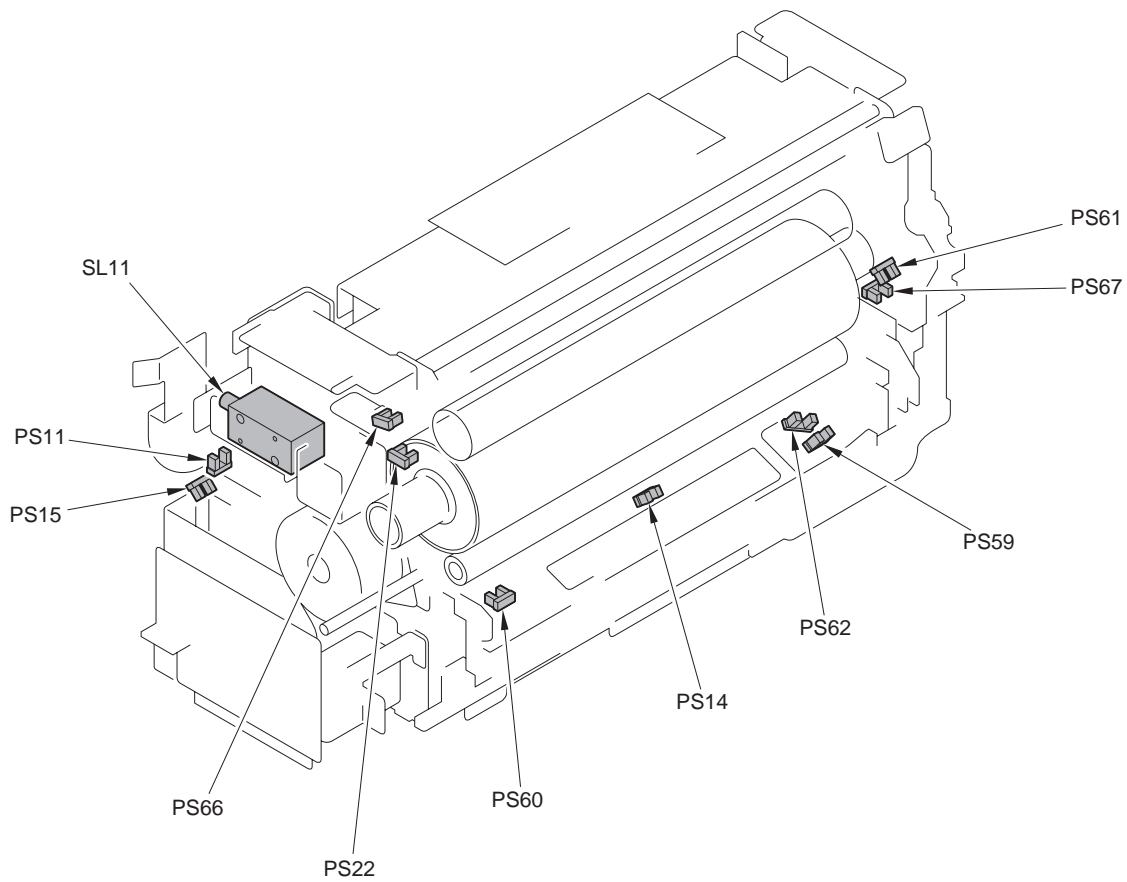


F-9-2

Component		Notation	Function/Method
Main thermistor	Fixing roller	THM1	Non-contact (temperature control, detection of rapid temperature rise)
	Fixing belt	THM3	Contact (temperature control, detection of rapid temperature rise)
	Outside heating roller	THM5	Contact (temperature control, detection of rapid temperature rise)
Sub thermistor	Fixing roller	THM2	Contact (detection of rapid temperature rise)
	Fixing belt	THM4	Contact (detection of rapid temperature rise)
	Outside heating roller	THM6	Contact (detection of rapid temperature rise)
Thermal switch	Fixing roller	TP1	Contact (180+/-7 deg C)
	Fixing belt	TP2	Non-contact (130+/-5 deg C)
	Outside heating roller	TP3	Contact (220+/-8 deg C)

9.1.4 Major Components (Sensor/Solenoid)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



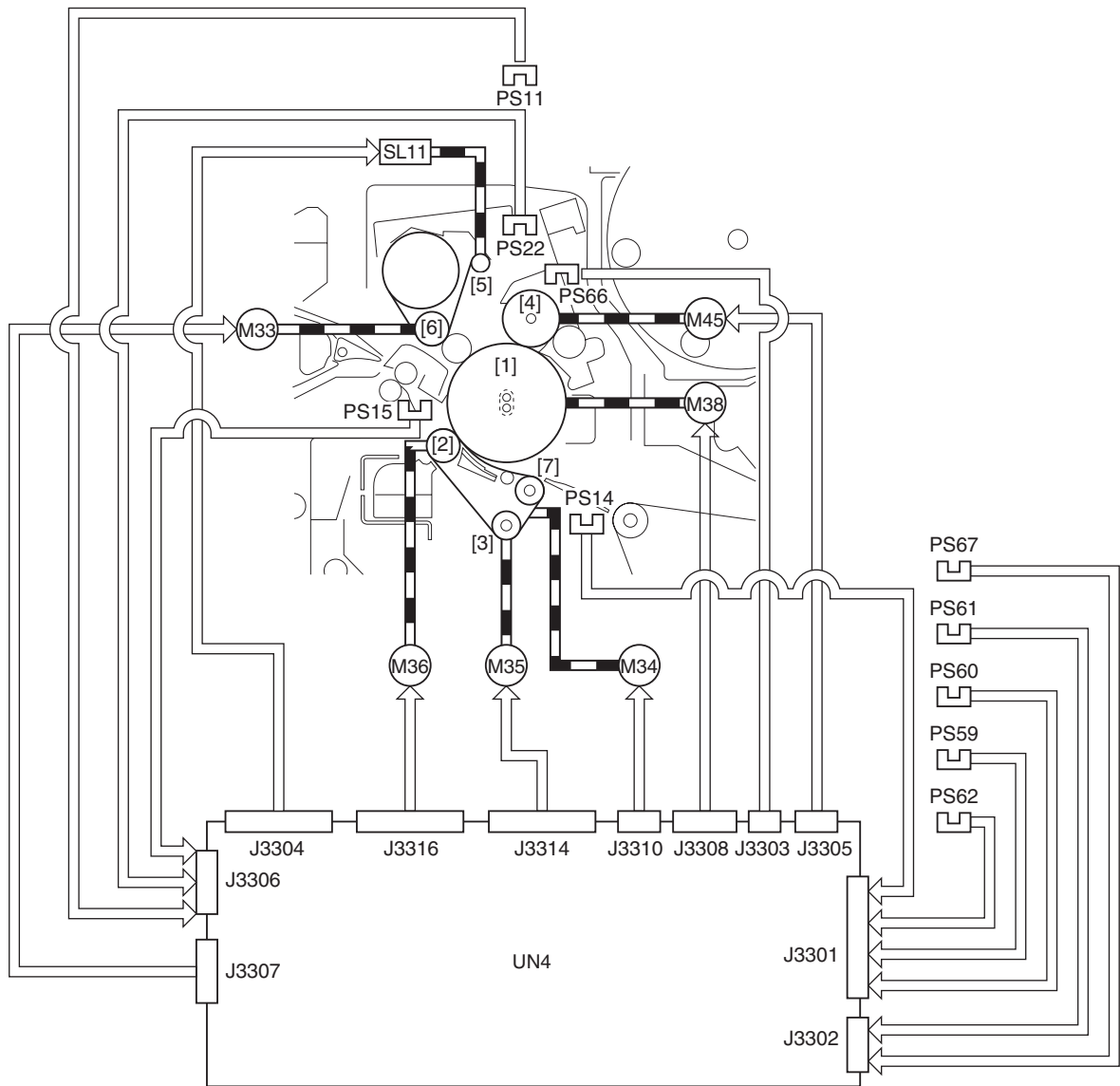
F-9-3

Notation	Component
PS11	Web roller attach/detach sensor
PS14	Fixing inlet sensor
PS15	Inside delivery sensor
PS22	Web length sensor
PS59	Fixing belt displacement control sensor (front)
PS60	Fixing belt displacement control HP sensor
PS61	Fixing belt attach/detach HP sensor
PS62	Fixing belt displacement control sensor (rear)
PS66	Outside heating roller HP sensor
PS67	Fixing belt state (attached) sensor
SL11	Web solenoid

9.1.5 Control System Configuration

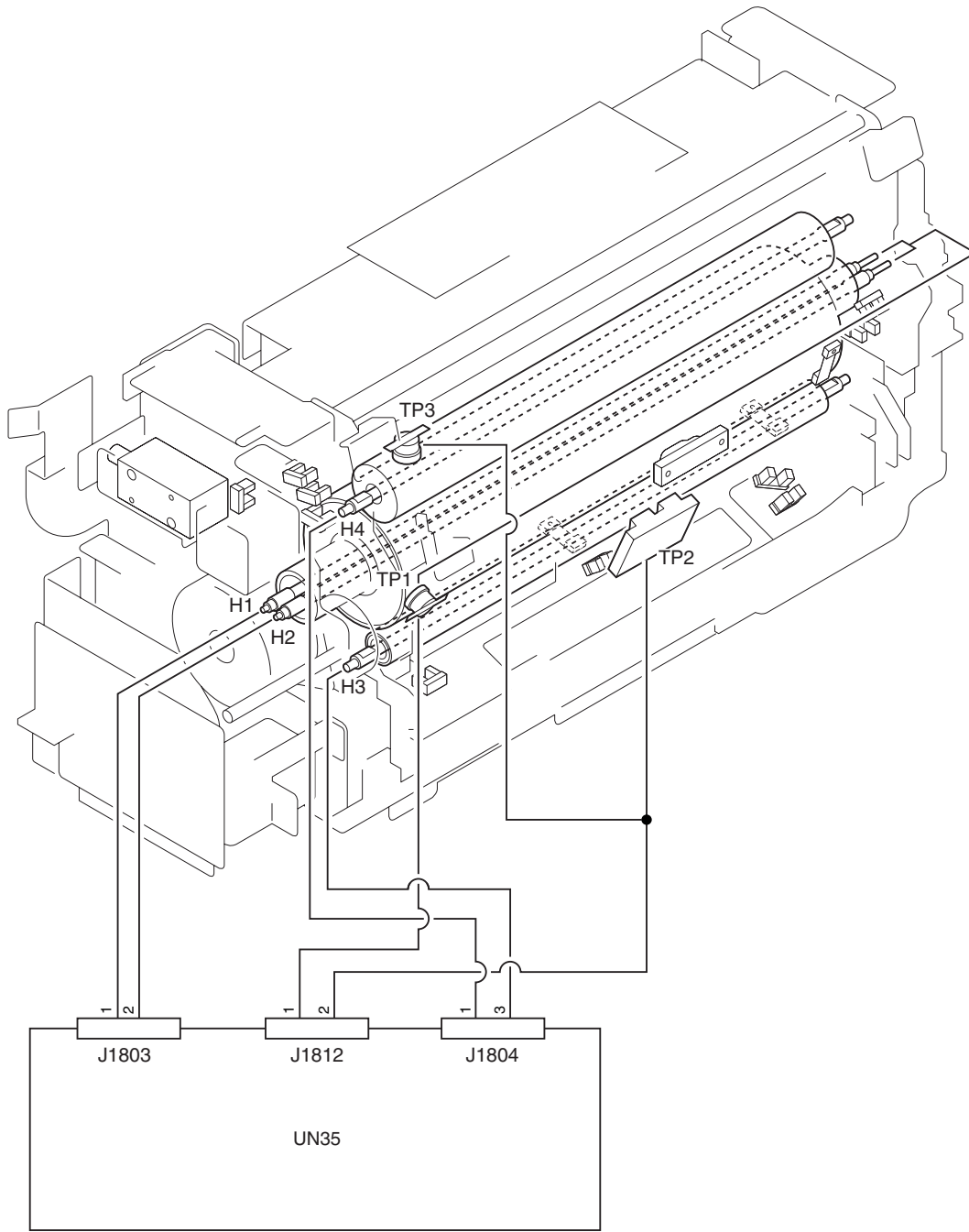
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

<drive system>



F-9-4

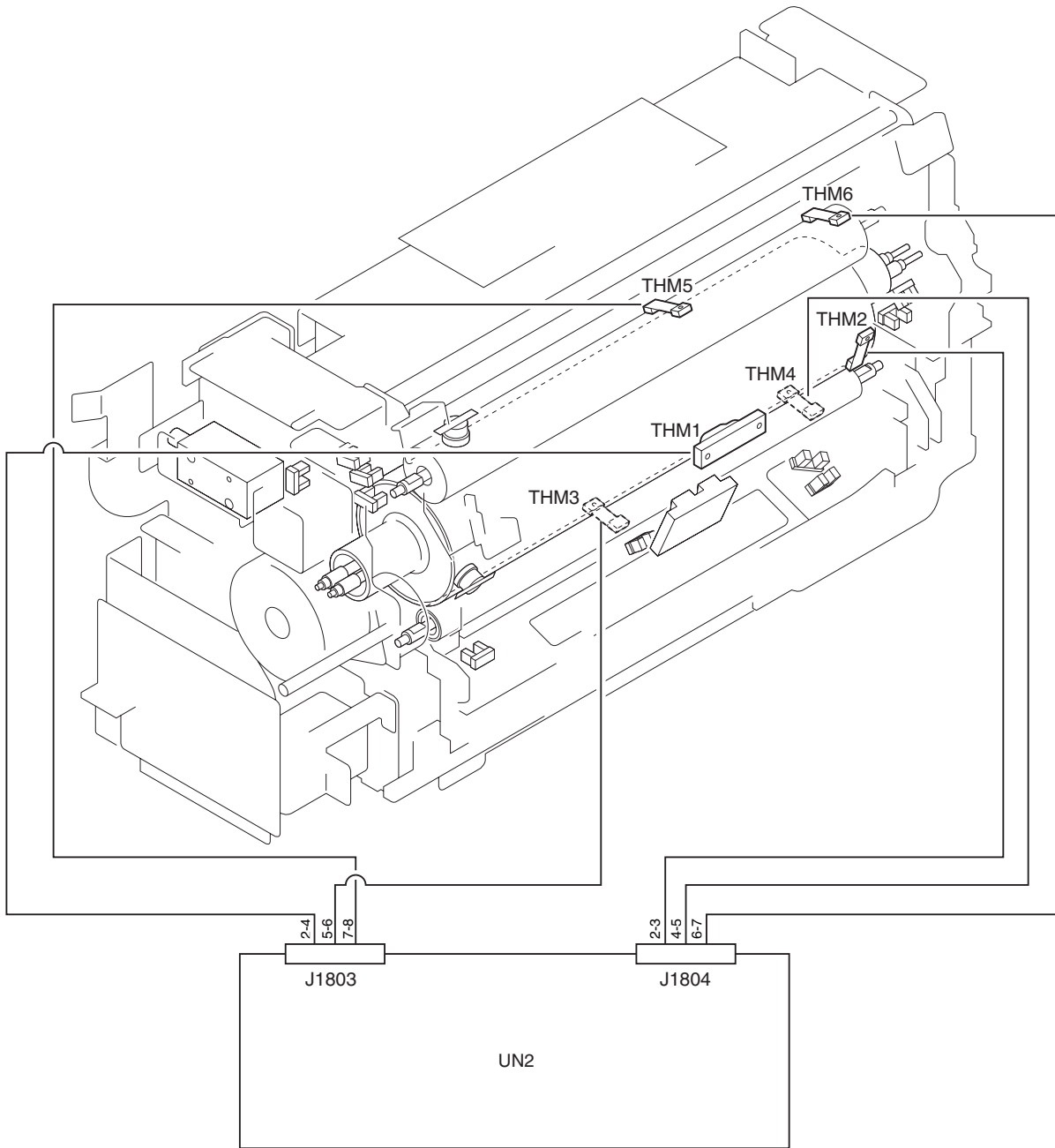
[1]	Fixing roller	M38	Fixing motor
[2]	Separation roller	M45	Outside heating roller attach/detach motor
[3]	Steering roller	PS11	Fixing web attach/detach HP sensor
[4]	Outside heating roller	PS14	Fixing inlet sensor
[5]	Fixing web	PS15	Inside delivery sensor
[6]	Web roller	PS22	Web length sensor
[7]	Inlet roller	PS59	Fixing belt displacement control sensor (front)
SL11	Web solenoid	PS60	Fixing belt displacement control HP sensor
M33	Cleaning web attach/detach motor	PS61	Fixing belt attach/detach HP sensor
M34	Fixing belt attach/detach motor	PS62	Fixing belt displacement control sensor (rear)
M35	Fixing belt displacement control motor	PS66	Outside heating roller HP sensor
M36	Fixing belt drive motor	PS67	Fixing belt state (attach) sensor
		UN4	Fixing driver PCB



F-9-5

- | | | | |
|----|--------------------|------|---------------------------------|
| H1 | Fixing main heater | TP1 | Thermal switch (fixing roller) |
| H2 | Fixing sub heater | TP2 | Thermal switch (fixing belt) |
| H3 | Inlet heater | TP3 | Thermal switch (outside heater) |
| H4 | Outside heater | UN35 | AC driver PCB |

<thermistor>



F-9-6

- | | | | |
|------|---------------------------------|------|----------------------------------|
| THM1 | Main thermistor (fixing roller) | THM5 | Main thermistor (outside heater) |
| THM2 | Sub thermistor (fixing roller) | THM6 | Sub thermistor (outside heater) |
| THM3 | Main thermistor (fixing belt) | UN2 | DC controller PCB |
| THM4 | Sub thermistor (fixing belt) | | |

9.1.6 Fixing Roller/Belt Drive Control

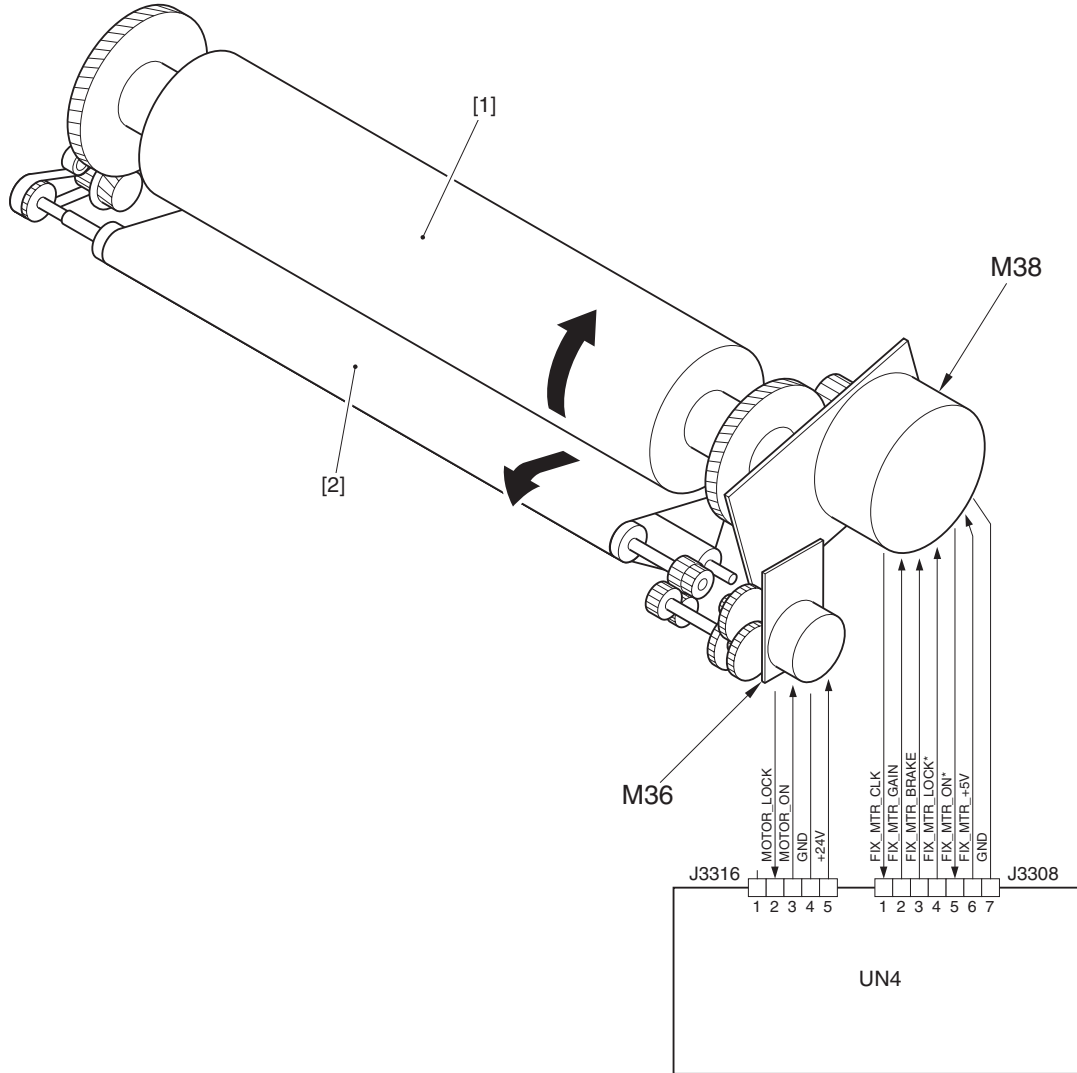
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The diagram shows the configuration of the control system of the fixing roller and fixing belt drive system.

Fixing motor (M38) is driven at 285 mm/sec for constant velocity print, and 95 mm/sec for 1/3 print.

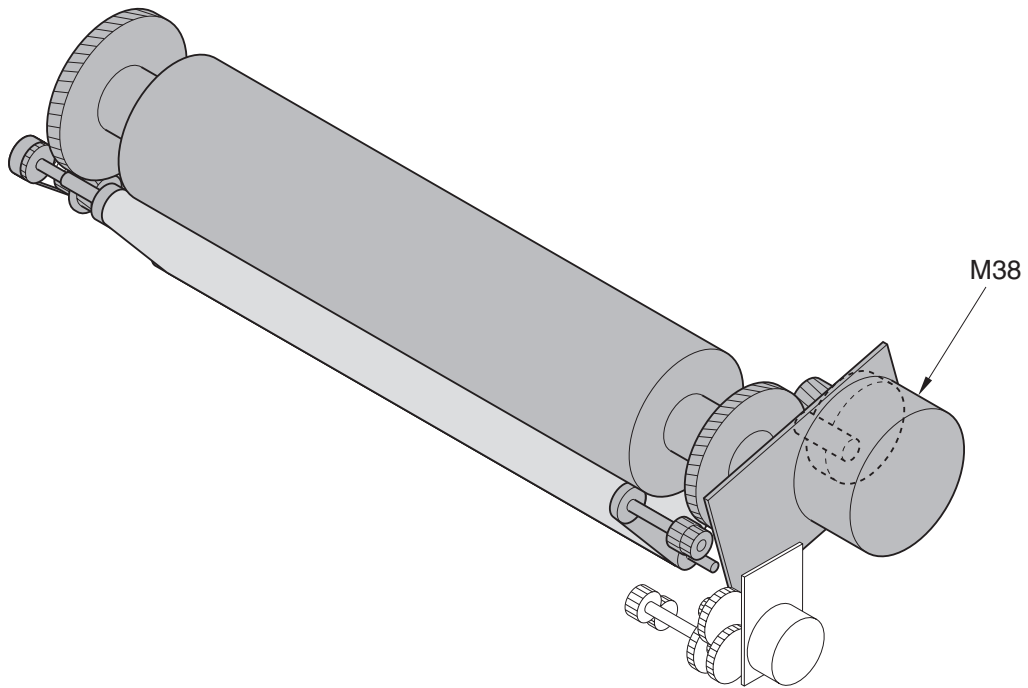
At warm-up and print (in the state that the fixing roller is driven), the fixing belt is pressed by the fixing roller. In this case, the fixing belt is driven by the fixing motor (M38). In a stand-by state (in the state that the fixing roller is stopped), the fixing belt is separated from the fixing roller. In this case, the driving source of the fixing belt is switched to the fixing belt drive motor (M36).

The fixing belt is driven in the stand-by mode in order to control temperature. It is driven at low speed (about 30-40 mm/sec) to prevent belt displacement.



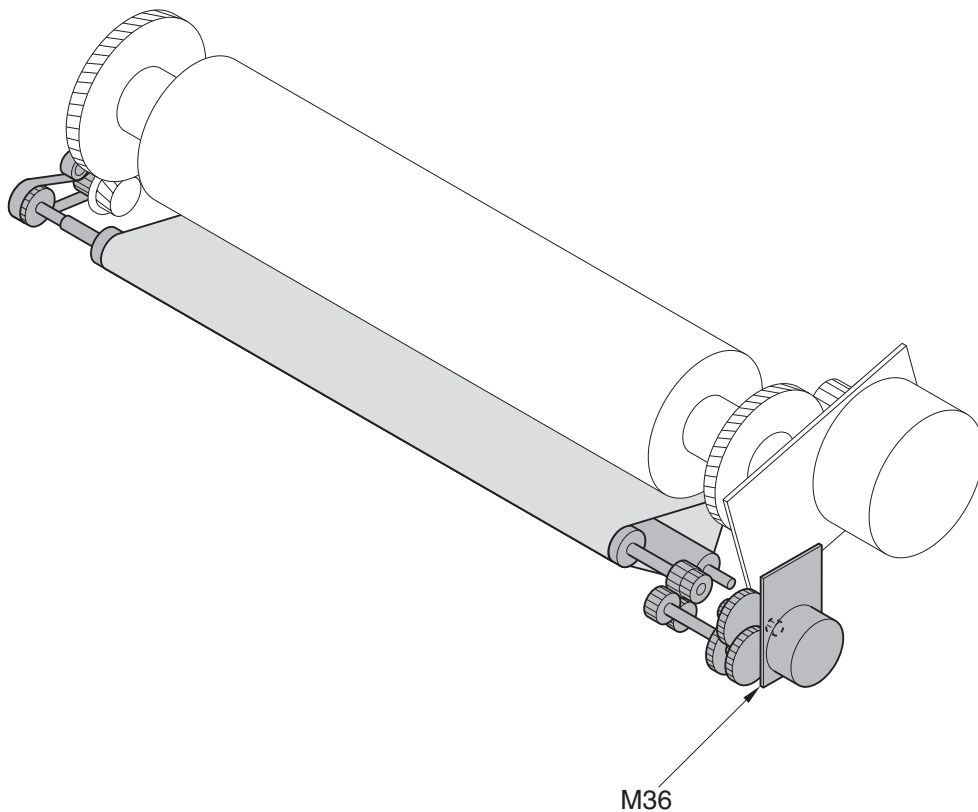
F-9-7

- [1] Fixing roller
- [2] Fixing belt
- M36: Fixing belt drive motor
- M38: Fixing motor
- UN4: Fixing driver PCB
- FIX_MTR_ON*: Fixing motor ON signal
- FIX_MTR_LOCK*: Fixing motor lock signal
- FIX_MTR_BRAKE: Fixing motor brake signal
- MOTOR_ON: Fixing belt drive motor ON signal
- MOTOR_LOCK: Fixing belt drive motor lock signal
- FIX_MTR_GAIN: Fixing motor speed gain signal

Warm-up / Print

F-9-8

- The fixing belt is pressed by the fixing roller.
- The fixing roller and the fixing belt are driven by the fixing motor (M38).

Stand-by

F-9-9

- The fixing belt is separated from the fixing roller.
- The fixing motor (M38) is stopped. The fixing belt is driven by the fixing belt drive motor (M36).

Error code :**E014** (Fixing motor error)

0001 Indicates that after the stable rotation of the fixing motor, the phase-lock signal of the fixing motor is not detected for 1 sec or more.

0002 Indicates that after the stable rotation of the fixing belt motor, the phase-lock signal of the fixing belt motor is not detected for 1 sec or more.

9.2 Basic Sequence

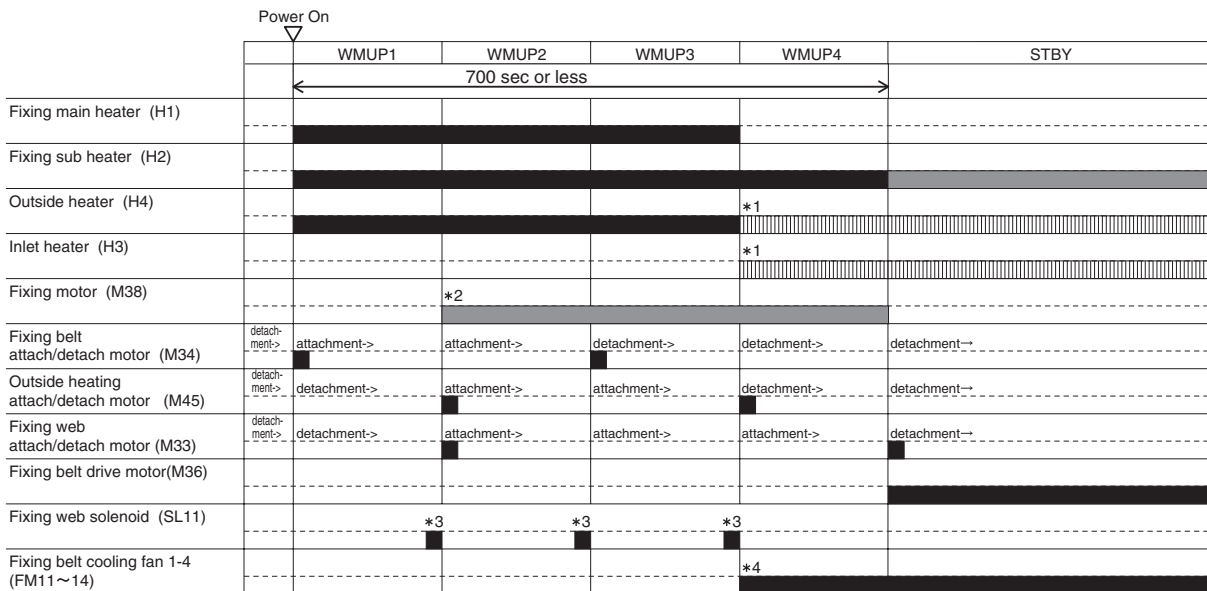
9.2.1 At Power-On

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

<First Power-ON>

In case the surface of the fixing roller is < 50 deg C

Interval	Description
WMUP1 (warm-up 1)	From when the power is turned on until the fixing roller surface temperature reaches 100 deg C. Thereafter, shifts to WMUP2.
WMUP2 (warm-up 2)	Until the fixing belt surface temperature reaches 100 deg C. Thereafter, shifts to WMUP3.
WMUP3 (warm-up 3)	Unit the fixing roller surface temperature reaches 160 deg C. Thereafter, shifts to WMUP4.
WMUP4 (warm-up 4)	Until the fixing roller surface temperature reaches 160 deg C, the fixing belt surface temperature reaches 190 deg C, and the outside heating roller surface temperature reaches 90 deg C. Thereafter, shifts to STBY.
STBY(standby)	Ready for a print request signal. <Control Temperature> fixing roller surface temperature = 165 deg C/outside heating roller surface temperature = 200 deg C/fixing belt surface temperature = 95 deg C



F-9-10

*1: H3 and H4 turn ON in alternate shifts

*2: 1/3-speed rotation

*3: Goes on every 30 seconds (web take-up).

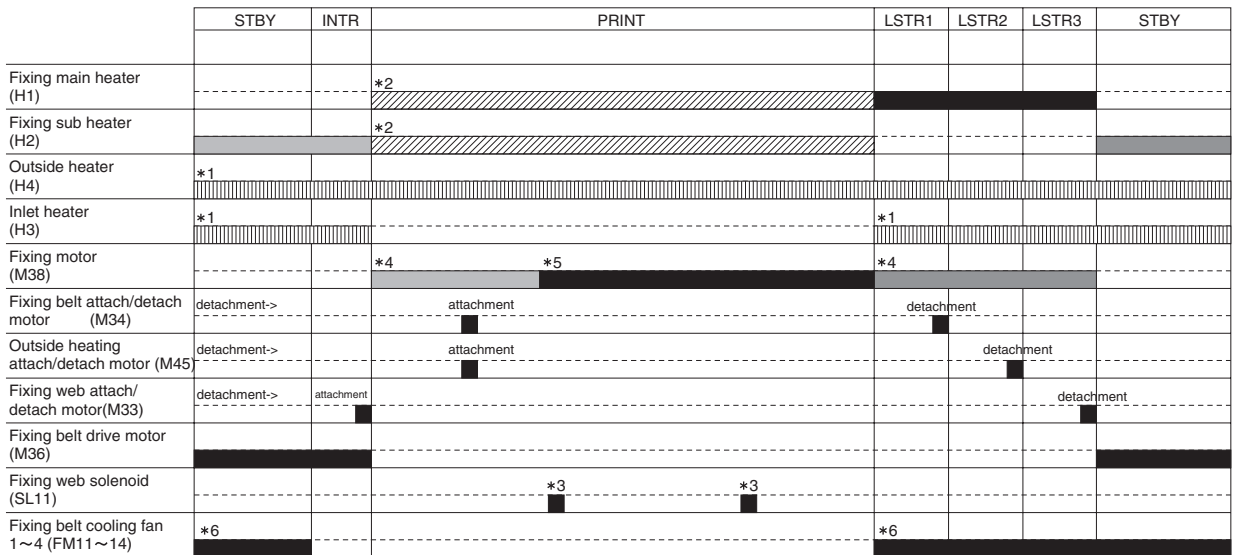
*4: Only when the temperature of the inlet roller main thermistor (THM3) is detected as 100 deg C or more.

9.2.2 Print (Constant Speed)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- In the case of plain paper ($\approx < 105\text{g/m}^2$)

Interval	Description
STBY (standby)	Ready for a print request signal <Control Temperature> fixing roller surface temperature = 165 deg C/outside heating roller surface temperature = 200 deg C/fixing belt surface temperature = 95 deg C
INTR (initial rotation)	Time from receipt of the print request signal to sending image signal
PRINT (print)	Time from the print start to delivery of paper. Control temperature varies according to the color mode. <Control Temperature.> Full color: Fixing roller surface temperature = 155 deg C / Outside heating roller surface temperature = 200 deg C / Fixing belt surface temperature = 95 deg C Black-and-white: Fixing roller surface temperature = 160 deg C / Outside heating roller surface temperature = 200 deg C / Fixing belt surface temperature = 95 deg C
LSTR1 (last rotation 1)	In the case the fixing belt surface temperature reaches $\approx > 95$ deg C
LSTR2 (last rotation 2)	In the case the fixing belt surface temperature reaches $\approx > 160$ deg C
LSTR3 (last rotation 3)	In the case the fixing roller surface temperature $\approx > 155$ deg C / outside heating roller surface temperature $\approx > 200$ deg C / fixing belt surface temperature $\approx > 90$ deg C



F-9-11

*1: H3 and H4 turn ON in alternate shifts

*2: In the black-and-white mode/overseas models, temperature is controlled according to the temperature detected by the main thermistor (THM1) and sub thermistor (THM2). As for black-and-white/Japanese models, temperature is controlled by the main heater.

*3: Fixing web solenoid is turned ON once for each small paper, and twice for each paper larger than that.

*4: 1/3-speed rotation

*5: Constant speed rotation

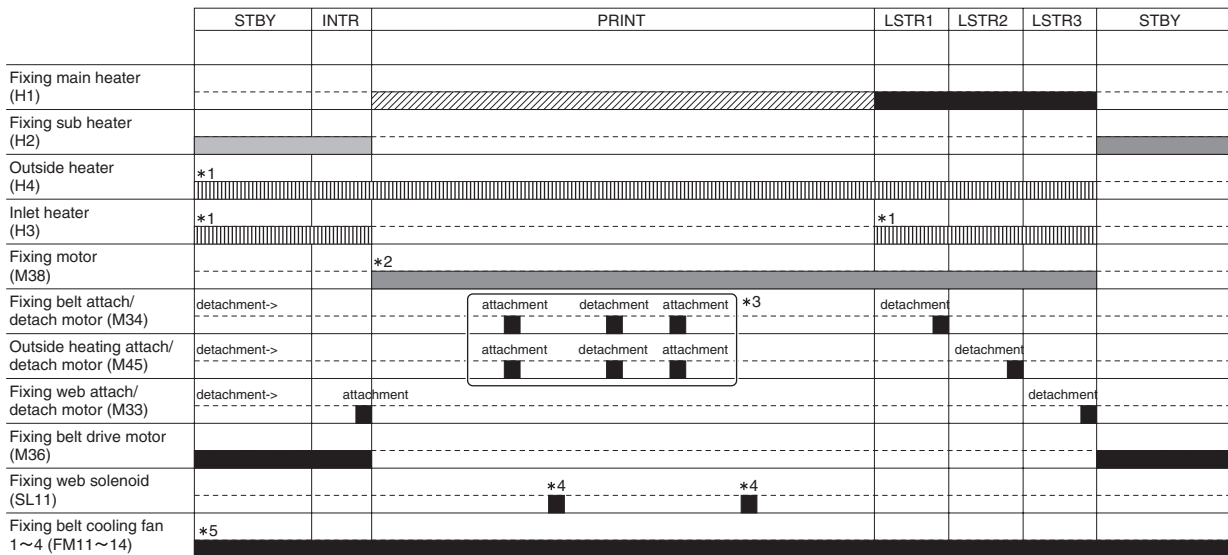
*6: Only when the temperature of the inlet roller main thermistor (THM3) is detected as 100 deg C or more.

9.2.3 Print (1/3-Speed)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- In the case of thick paper (>105g/m2)
- OHT

Interval	Description
STBY(standby)	Ready for a print request signal <Control Temperature> fixing roller surface temperature = 165 deg C/outside heating roller surface temperature = 200 deg C / fixing belt surface temperature = 95 deg C
INTR(initial rotation)	Time from receipt of the print request signal to sending image signal
PRINT(print)	Time from the print start to delivery of paper. Control temperature is constant regardless of the color mode. <Control Temperature> Fixing roller surface temperature = 155 deg C / Outside heating roller surface temperature = 200 deg C / Fixing belt surface temperature = 95 deg C
LSTR1(last rotation 1)	In the case the fixing belt surface temperature reaches => 95 deg C
LSTR2(last rotation 2)	In the case the fixing belt surface temperature reaches => 160 deg C
LSTR3(last rotation 3)	In the case the fixing roller surface temperature => 155 deg C / outside heating roller surface temperature => 200 deg C / fixing belt surface temperature => 90 deg C



F-9-12

- *1: H3 and H4 turn ON in alternate shifts (50 % Duty)
- *2: 1/3-speed rotation
- *3: Sheet-to-sheet attachment/detachment of the fixing belt
- *4: Fixing web solenoid is turned ON once for each small paper, and twice for each paper larger than that.
- *5: Only when the temperature of the inlet roller main thermistor (THM3) is detected as 100 deg C or more.

<Differences from the Constant Speed Mode>

The fixing belt is attached/detached during the sheet-to-sheet interval.

Cause:

When paper is not passing (=sheet-to-sheet interval), the fixing belt is detached to prevent temperature rise.

9.3 Various Control Mechanisms

9.3.1 Controlling the Fixing Roller Temperature

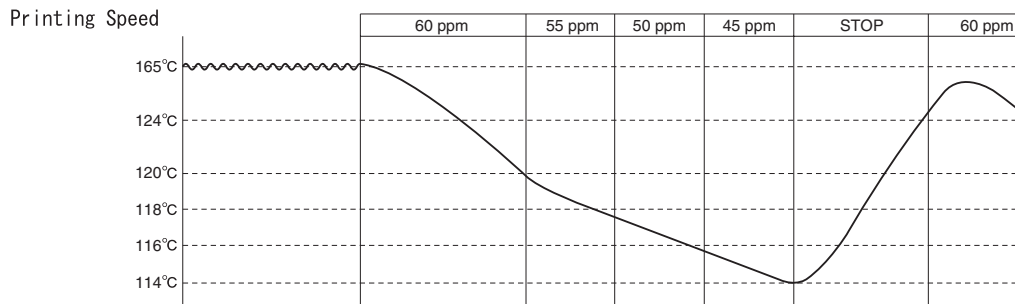
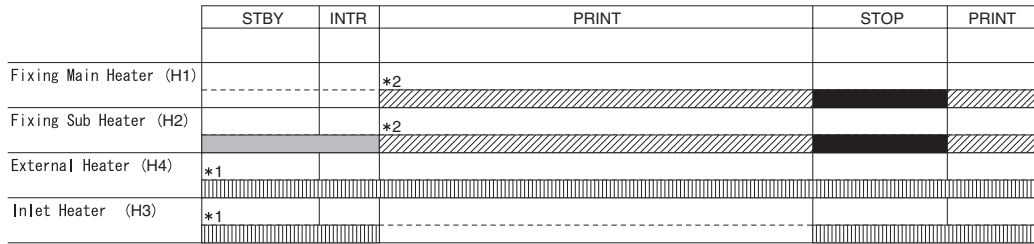
9.3.1.1 Down Sequence

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

<Execution Condition>

- When printing at Black/White or Normal Speed mode, the surface temperature of the fixing roller goes down to the specified temperature.
- Down sequence will not be executed for 1/3 Speed mode or Normal Speed/Full Color mode (because of small reduction in temperature of the roller)

In the case of the following conditions: 200V machine, 20 deg C, A4 paper



F-9-13

Service Mode:

COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FIX-TEMP (Setting for shutdown sequence of the plain paper)

T-9-2

Environment	Set-up Value	Operation					
Less than 20 deg C	0(Default)	Temperature	120 deg C	118 deg C	116 deg C	114 deg C	124 deg C
		Printing speed	55ppm	50ppm	45ppm	Suspend	Resume
	1(Priority for fixing performance)	Temperature	126 deg C	124 deg C	122 deg C	120 deg C	130 deg C
		Printing speed	50ppm	45ppm	40ppm	Suspend	Resume
	2(Priority for productivity)	Temperature	118 deg C	116 deg C	114 deg C	112 deg C	122 deg C
		Printing speed	57ppm	55ppm	50ppm	Suspend	Resume
20 deg C or more	0(Default)	Temperature	128 deg C	126 deg C	124 deg C	122 deg C	132 deg C
		Printing speed	50ppm	45ppm	40ppm	Suspend	Resume
	1(Priority for fixing performance)	Temperature	134 deg C	132 deg C	130 deg C	128 deg C	138 deg C
		Printing speed	45ppm	40ppm	35ppm	Suspend	Resume
	2(Priority for productivity)	Temperature	126 deg C	124 deg C	122 deg C	120 deg C	128 deg C
		Printing speed	55ppm	50ppm	45ppm	Suspend	Resume

9.3.1.2 Power Save Mode

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

In the case of power save mode (power save mode/low power save mode/sleep mode), target temperature is set low at standby, and power saving is enabled by the following controls:

- Stop the drive system
- Reduce the power distribution to the heater

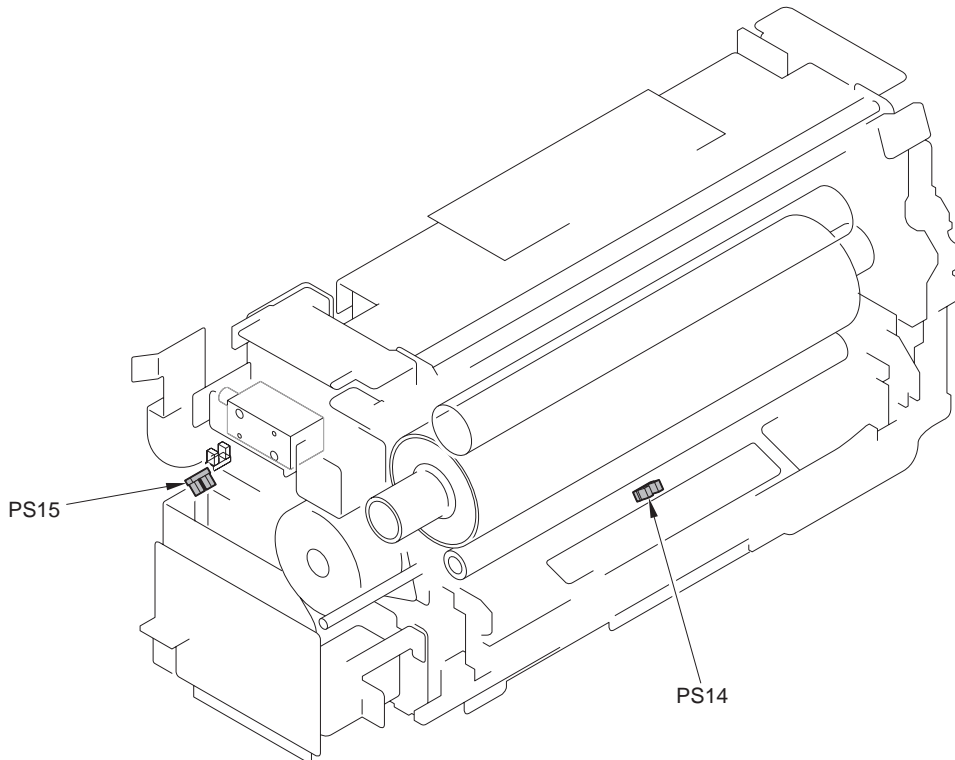
Mode	Target Temperature			Heater State				
	Fixing Roller	External Heat Roller	Fixing Belt	Fixing Main Heater (H1)	Fixing Sub Heater (H2)	External Heat Roller Heater (H3)	Inlet Roller Heater (H4)	
Standby Mode	165 deg C	200 deg C	95 deg C	OFF	ON	Alternately lighting of H3 and H4		
Save Energy Mode	Set to -10%	160 deg C	190 deg C	-	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
	Set to -25%	140 deg C	160 deg C	-	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
	Set to -50%	100 deg C	-	-	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
Low Electricity Mode	100 deg C	-	-	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Sleep Mode	-	-	-	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF

9.3.2 Detecting the Passage of Paper

9.3.2.1 Detection for Paper Wrapping

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Inside delivery sensor (PS15) detects the paper wrapping over the fixing roller/belt. In the case of detecting the delay of paper lead edge by inside delivery sensor, it is perceived as wrapping jam of the fixing to stop the fixing motor, and separate the fixing belt from the fixing roller. When the jam is cleared after the fixing wrapping jam, it executes the detection of residual paper at the fixing inlet sensor (PS14).

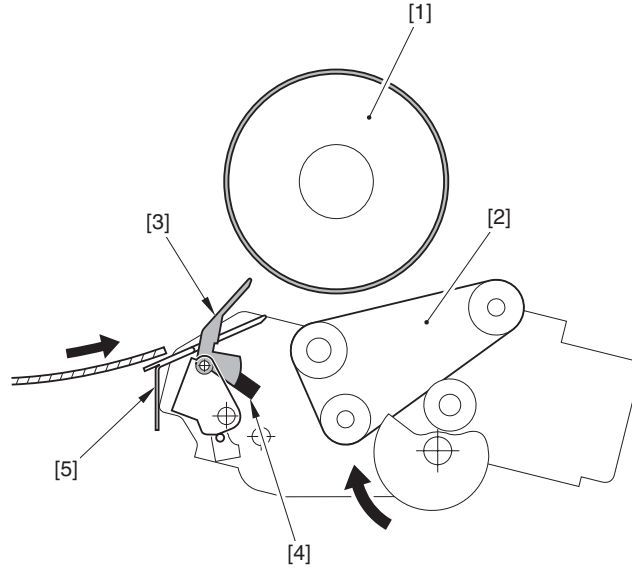


F-9-14

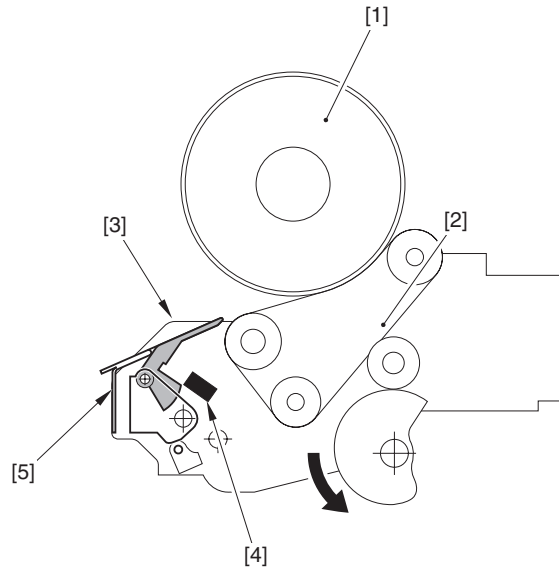
PS14: Fixing inlet sensor
PS15: Inside delivery sensor

The inlet sensor flag of the fixing assembly is equipped with a mechanism that moves up and down in keeping with the locking/unlocking of the fixing belt unit. It moves up when the power is ON or when the jam is cleared (when unlocking of the fixing belt unit) to detect residual paper. During printing (when adding pressure to the fixing belt unit), it is located below the surface of paper passage in order not to affect the feeding performance of the paper.

- When the power is ON, and the jam is cleared (unlocking of the fixing belt)



- When printing (Adding pressure to the fixing belt)



F-9-15

- [1] Fixing roller
- [2] Fixing belt unit
- [3] Fixing inlet sensor flag
- [4] Fixing inlet sensor
- [5] Inlet guide

<Content of the Controls>

- In the case of detecting the delay of the arrival of paper lead edge to the inside delivery sensor, brake the fixing motor to stop. (Jam code=010D)
- Afterwards, when the jam is cleared, and the power is OFF/ON, execute detection for the residual paper by the fixing inlet sensor. (Jam code=0A0C)

<Applied Condition>

Paper	Paper size	Detection for the wrap	Detection for the residual
Plain paper	Less than B5	Available	N/A
	B5 or more	Available	Available

Paper	Paper size	Detection for the wrap	Detection for the residual
Heavy paper	Less than B5	Available	Available
	B5 or more	Available	Available

9.3.3 External Heat Roller Drive Control

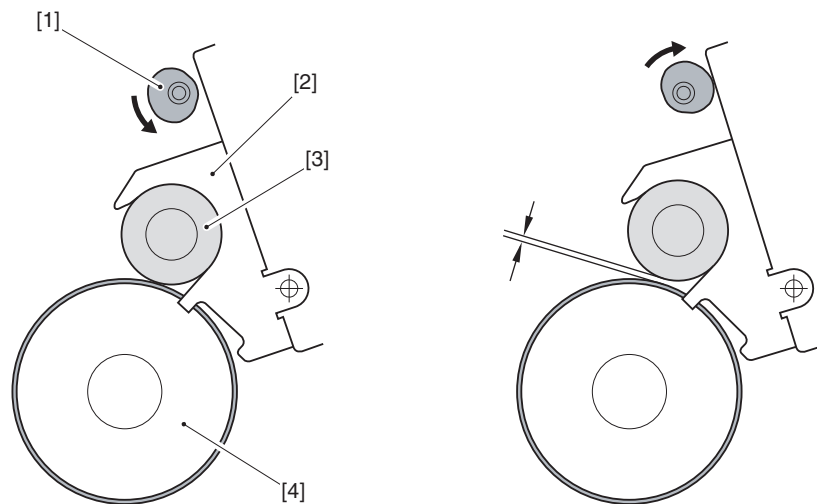
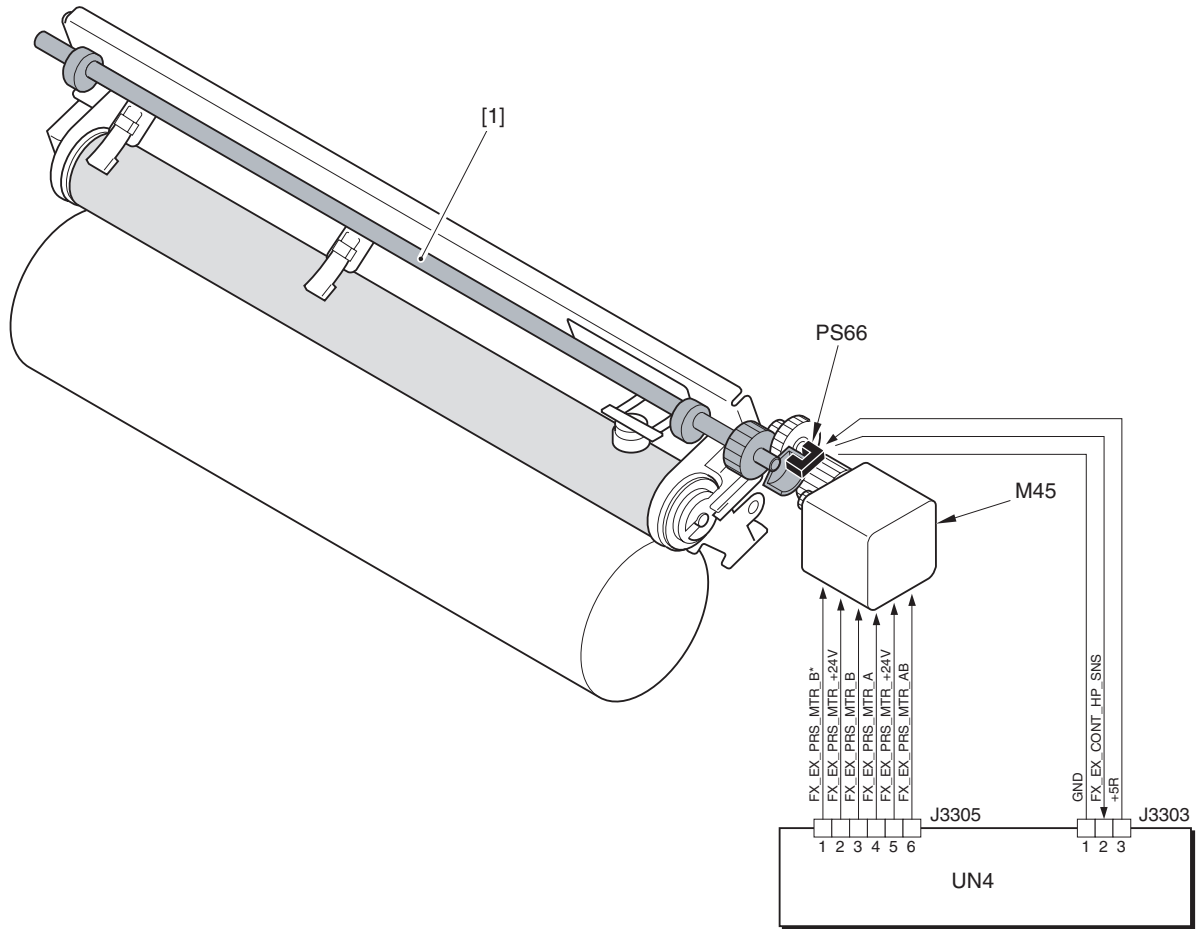
9.3.3.1 Detached/Attached Mechanism of the External Heat Roller

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The external heat roller has a built-in heater. At the time of warm-up, printing, or the last rotation, it's heated by contacting the fixing roller to support control of fixing temperature.

When it's standby, it is unlocked from the fixing roller to avoid heat-caused deformation of the fixing roller.

The external heat roller locks/unlocks against the fixing roller by the drive of the external heat detaching motor (M45) communicates the cam shaft. For controlling locking/unlocking control of the external heat roller, home position is detected by the external heat detached HP sensor (PS66).



F-9-16

- [1] Cam shaft
- [2] Roller support plate
- [3] External heat roller
- [4] Fixing roller
- M45: External heat detached/attached motor
- PS66: External heat detached/attached HP sensor
- UN4: Fixing driver PCB
- FX_EX_CONT_HP_SNS: External heat detached/attached HP signal

Error code:

E842 (External heat roller detached/attached error)

0001 In the case that the HP sensor fails to detect within 5 sec after detecting the home position.

0009 Indicates that a hardware detecting mechanism has detected that the external heat roller has remained in contact with the fixing roller for 300sec or more.

0011 In the case that the HP sensor is logically misplaced when executing operation.

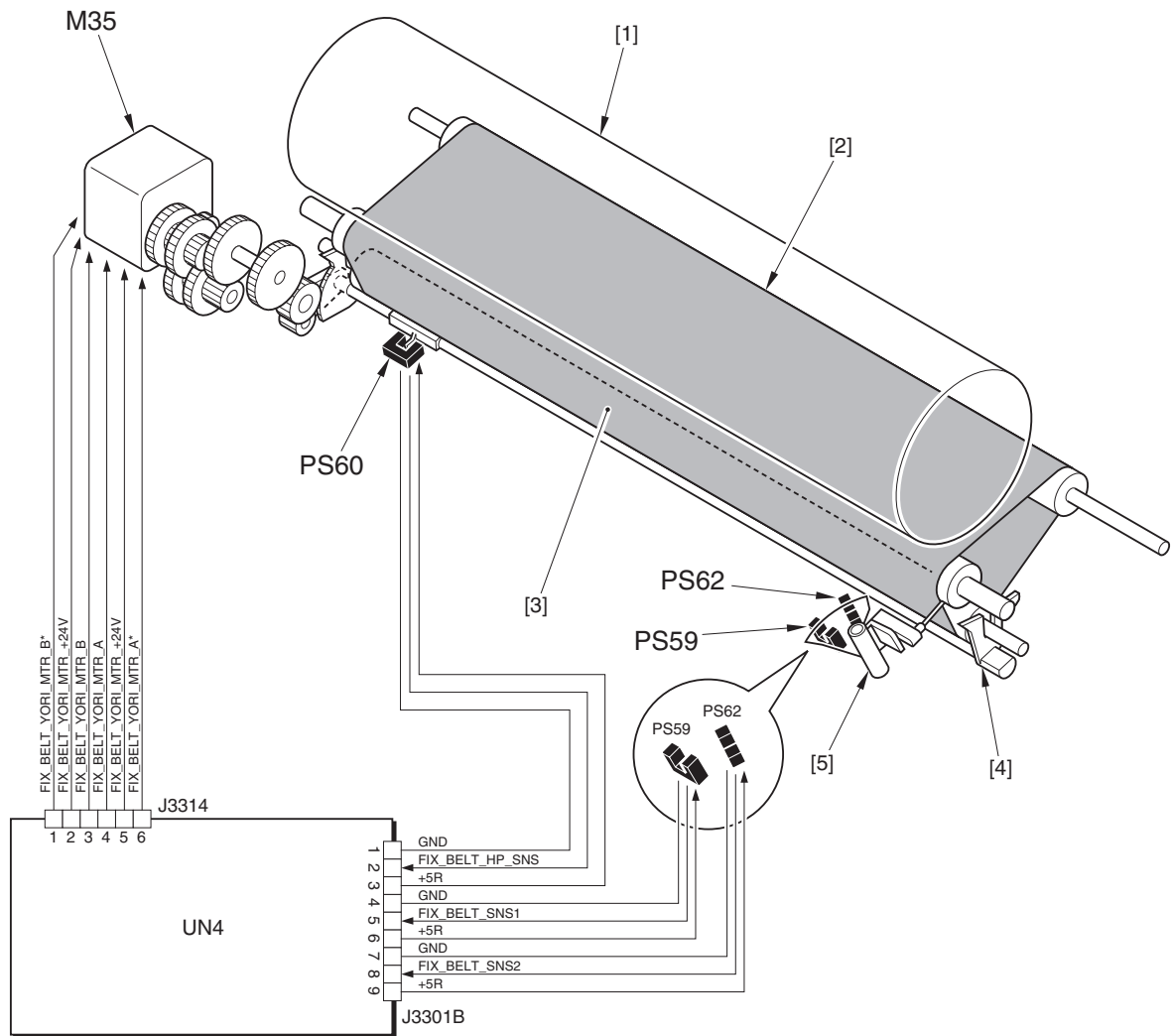
0101 When completing the operation, it's not located at the specified position.

9.3.4 Belting inclined Control

9.3.4.1 Control for adjusting Fixing Belt Displacement

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Fixing belt tends to be displaced during the drive. During the drive of the fixing belt, fixing belt position is always detected to control its location to be in the center.



F-9-17

[1] Fixing roller

[2] Fixing belt

[3] Steering roller

[4] Swing arm

[5] Sensor arm

M35: Fixing belt displacement control motor

UN4: Fixing driver PCB

PS59: Fixing belt displacement control sensor (front)

PS60: Fixing belt displacement control HP sensor

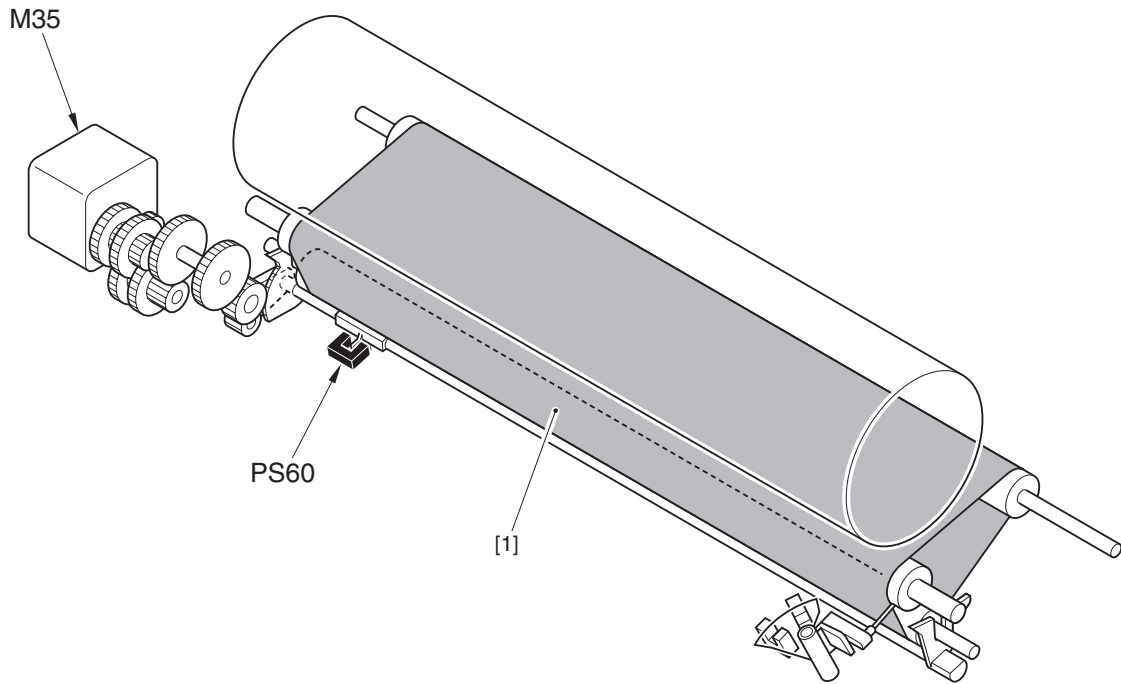
PS62: Fixing belt displacement control sensor (rear)

FIX_BELT_HP_SNS: Fixing belt HP detecting signal

FIX_BELT_SNS1: Fixing belt displacement (front side) detecting signal

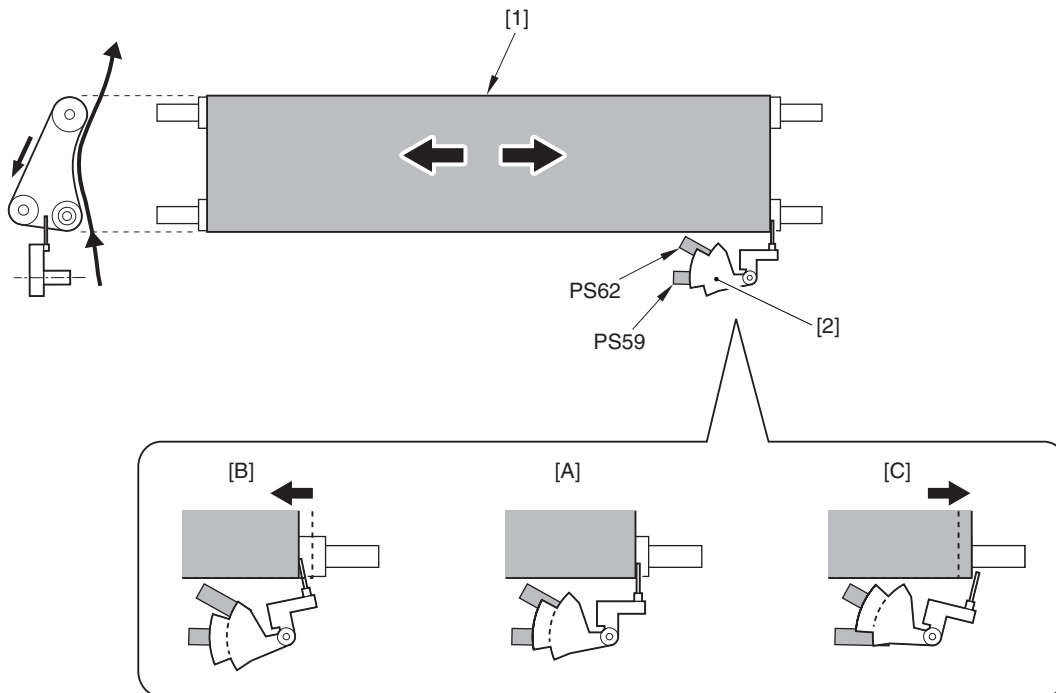
FIX_BELT_SNS2: Fixing belt displacement (rear side) detecting signal

- 1) Before starting the fixing belt drive, home position detection is executed for the steering roller shaft position (skew). The position where the sensor flag [1] located on the steering roller shaft crosses the light path of the fixing belt displacement control HP sensor (PS60) is the home position.

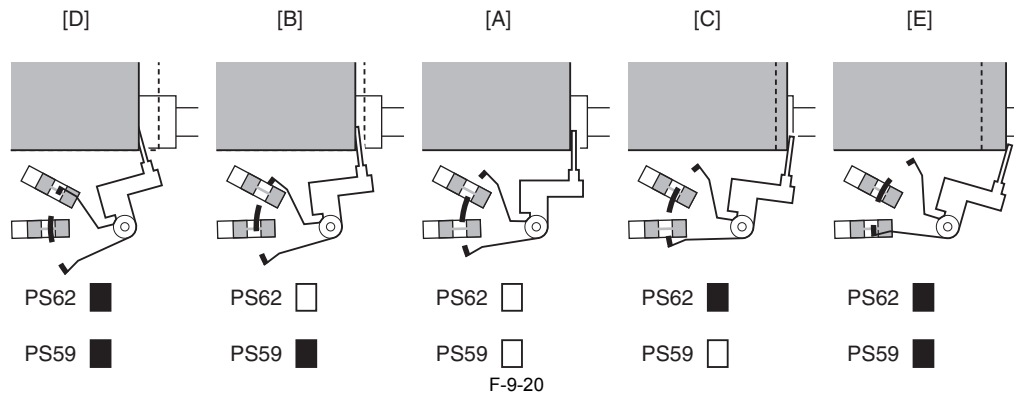


F-9-18

- 2) The position of the fixing belt is detected by the sensor arm [2] that locks the edge of the fixing belt [1], and by the fixing belt displacement control sensor (front/rear) (PS59/PS62)

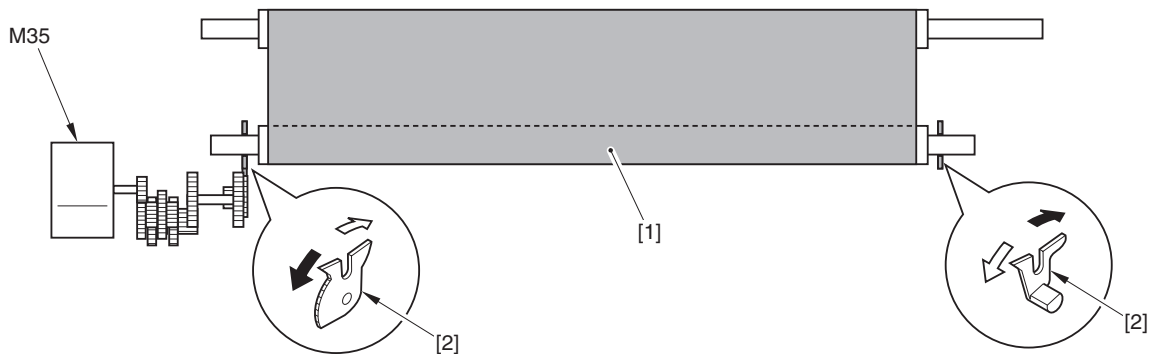


F-9-19



- [A] Center
 [B] Displaced in the rear
 [C] Displaced in the front
 [D] Further displaced in the rear from the position of [B]
 [E] Further displaced in the front from the position of [B]

3) In the case of detecting the position of [B] or [C] indicated above, move the fixing belt to the center. Each bearing [2] for the steering roller shaft turns in the opposite directions in the front and the rear by the drive of the fixing belt displacement control motor (M35), causing the skew of the steering roller shaft, and the fixing belt is displaced the shaft direction.



4) In the case of detecting the position of [D] or [E], the machine stops the drive to detect as an error because the adjustment of the belt displacement is timed-out.

Error code:

E007 (Belt displacement error)

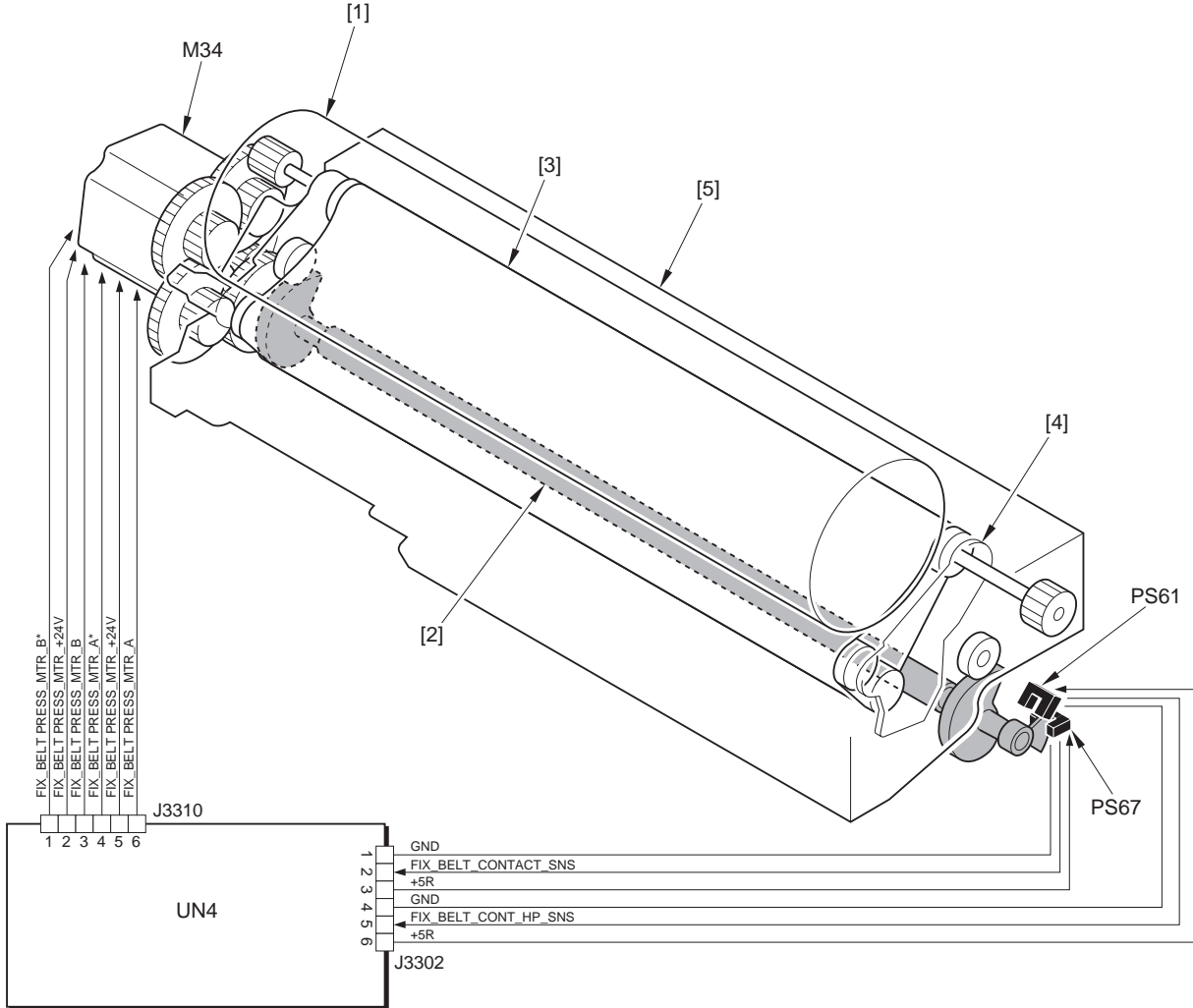
- 0001 : Front side belt displacement error
 0002 : Rear side belt displacement error
 0007 : Detection of displacement error by the double error detection
 0010 : In the case that after the steering monitor ON, HP detection failed to be within 1 sec.
 0100/0200 : HP detection error on initialization

9.4 Belt Pressurizing Mechanism

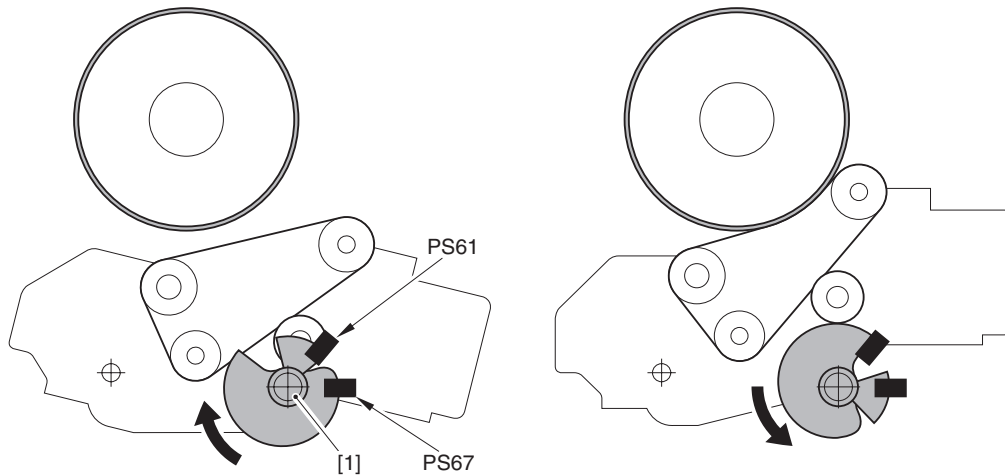
9.4.1 Locking Mechanism of the Fixing Belt

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The fixing belt is equipped to lock/unlock against the fixing roller in accordance with the state of the printing or standby. The drive of the fixing belt detached/attached motor (M34) communicates to the swing shaft so the fixing belt unit itself moves up and down, and the fixing belt lock/unlocks the fixing roller. HP sensor (PS61) detects the home position of the fixing belt (fixing belt unit). Also, to detect that the fixing belt is securely locked, the fixing belt attached sensor (PS67) detects the locking state of the belt.



F-9-22



F-9-23

[1] Fixing roller

PS61: Fixing belt detached/attached HP sensor

[2] Swing shaft	PS67: Fixing belt attached sensor
[3] Fixing belt	UN4: Fixing driver PCB
[4] Fixing belt unit	
[5] Fixing belt unit support base	FIX_BELT_CONT_HP_SNS: Fixing belt home position signal
M34: Fixing belt detached/attached motor	FIX_BELT_CONTACT_SNS: Fixing belt attached detecting signal

Error code:

E842(Fixing belt locking error)

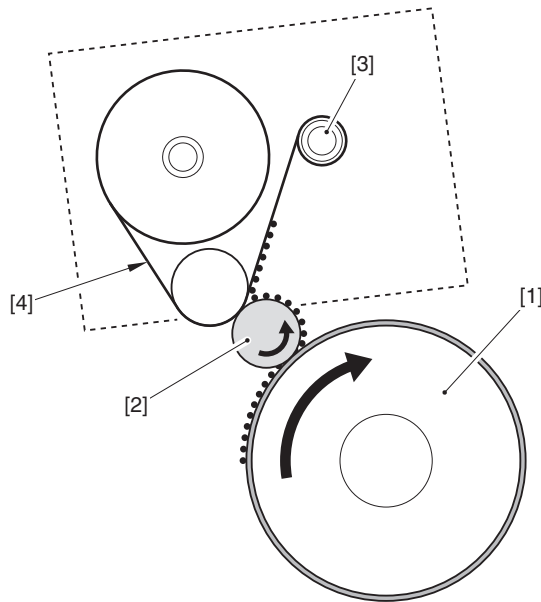
- 0002 Belt HP sensor fails to detect within 5 sec after detecting home position
- 0012 In the case that the home position is logically displaced when starting the operation.
- 0102 In the case that it's not located in the specified position when completing the operation.

9.5 Fixing Cleaning Web Mechanisms

9.5.1 Controll of the Fixing Cleaning Web Drive

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

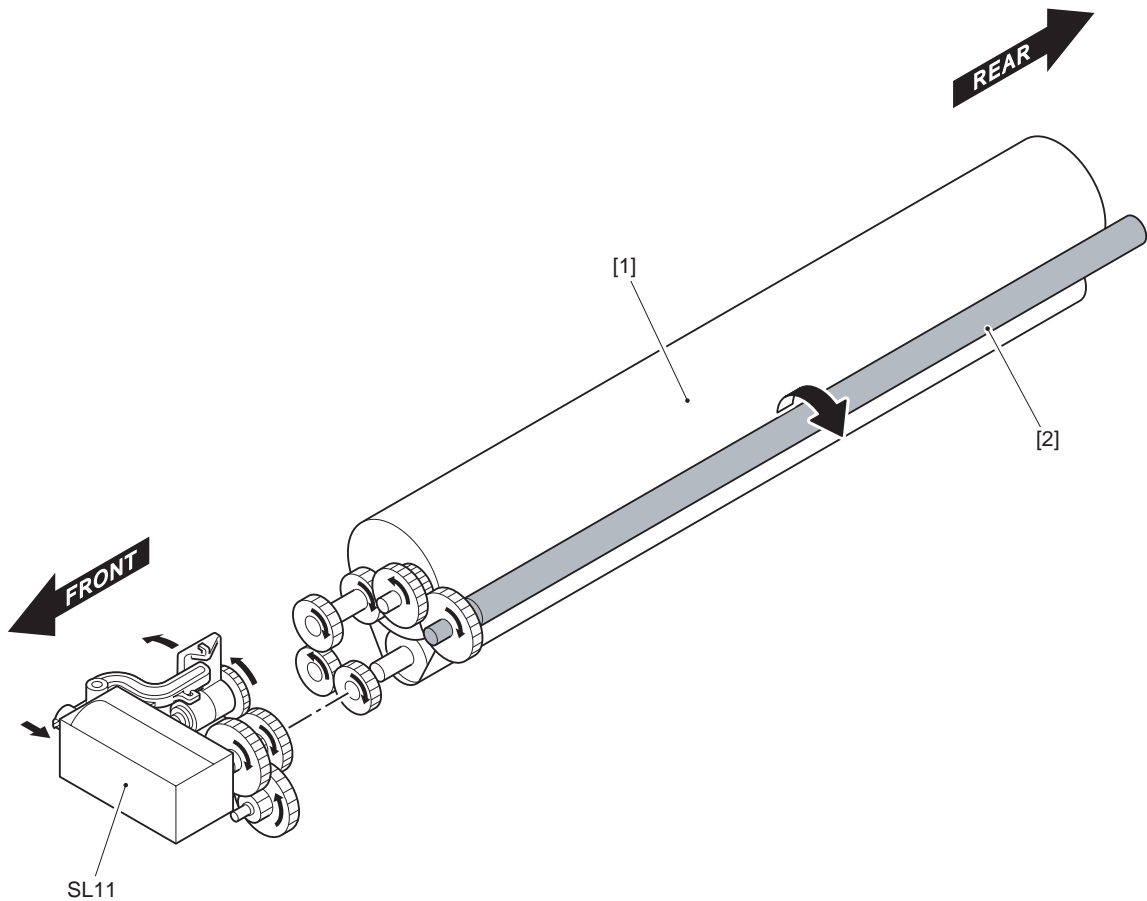
To avoid fixing offset, the residual toner found on the fixing roller is first collected on the collecting roller, and then removed by the cleaning web (maybe with silicone oil).



F-9-24

- [1] Fixing roller
- [2] Collecting roller
- [3] Web wrapping roller
- [4] Cleaning web

The cleaning web is taken up by the web take-up roller when the drive of the fixing web solenoid (SL11) reaches the web take-up roller drive gear through a one-way clutch.



F-9-25

- [1] Cleaning web
- [2] Web take-up roller
- SL11: Web solenoid

Take-up amount of the web

State		The number of web SL ON	Remarks
During the warm-up		Once per 30 sec	Change of the number of ON according to the warm-up time
During the jam recovery		10	In the case that the detection temperature of the fixing main thermistor is 145 deg C or more
		20	In the case that the detection temperature of the fixing main thermistor is less than 145 deg C.
During the print	Black and white mode/small size	1	1
	Black and white mode/large size	1	2
	Color mode/small size	1	1
	Color mode/large size	1	2

Small size: A4/A4R/B5/B5R/A5R/LTR/LTRR
 Large size: A3/B4/LGR/LGL

Error code:

E005 (Web wrapping error)

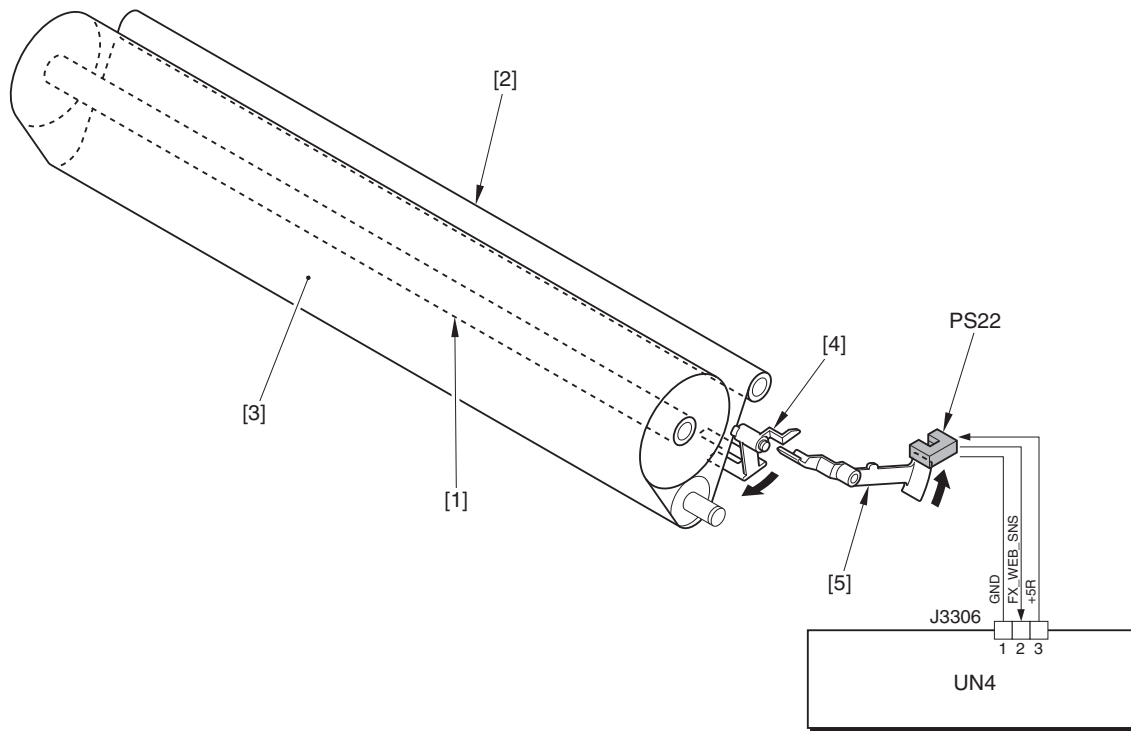
0001 In the case of detecting open circuit of the web solenoid

9.5.2 Control of the Fixing Cleaning Web Length Detection

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The following is the method to detect cleaning web length and the content of control.

- 1) During the initial phase of use, the fixing web, which is wrapped around the web take-up roller, is wrapped by the web take-up roller as the copy/print are made.
- 2) When the fixing web found on the web feed roller decreases, the web length detecting arm 1 moves in the direction of the arrow, causing the web length detecting arm 2 block the light path to the web level sensor (PS22). After this sensor detection, when the fixing web solenoid is ON for 4 times, warning message for fixing web length is displayed on control panel.



F-9-26

- [1] Web feed roller
- [2] Web take-up roller
- [3] Cleaning web
- [4] Web length detecting arm 1

[5] Web length detecting arm 2

PS22: Web length detecting sensor

UN4: Fixing driver PCB

FX_WEB_SNS: Fixing web length detecting signal

3) After the indication of the warning message of the fixing web length, when copies/prints are made after, the count of fixing web counter starts to increase. When the 3000th count (A4) is reached, the machine indicates an error mode (E0005-0000).

Service Mode:

COPIER > OPTION > USER > WEB-DISP

ON/OFF of the warning message of the fixing web length

0 : OFF (In this case, the warning message is displayed on the initial screen of the service mode)

1 : ON [Default]

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX-WEB

Fixing web counter



In the case of changing the fixing web, set the value clear '0' for the following service counters.

- **COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX-WEB**

Error Code:

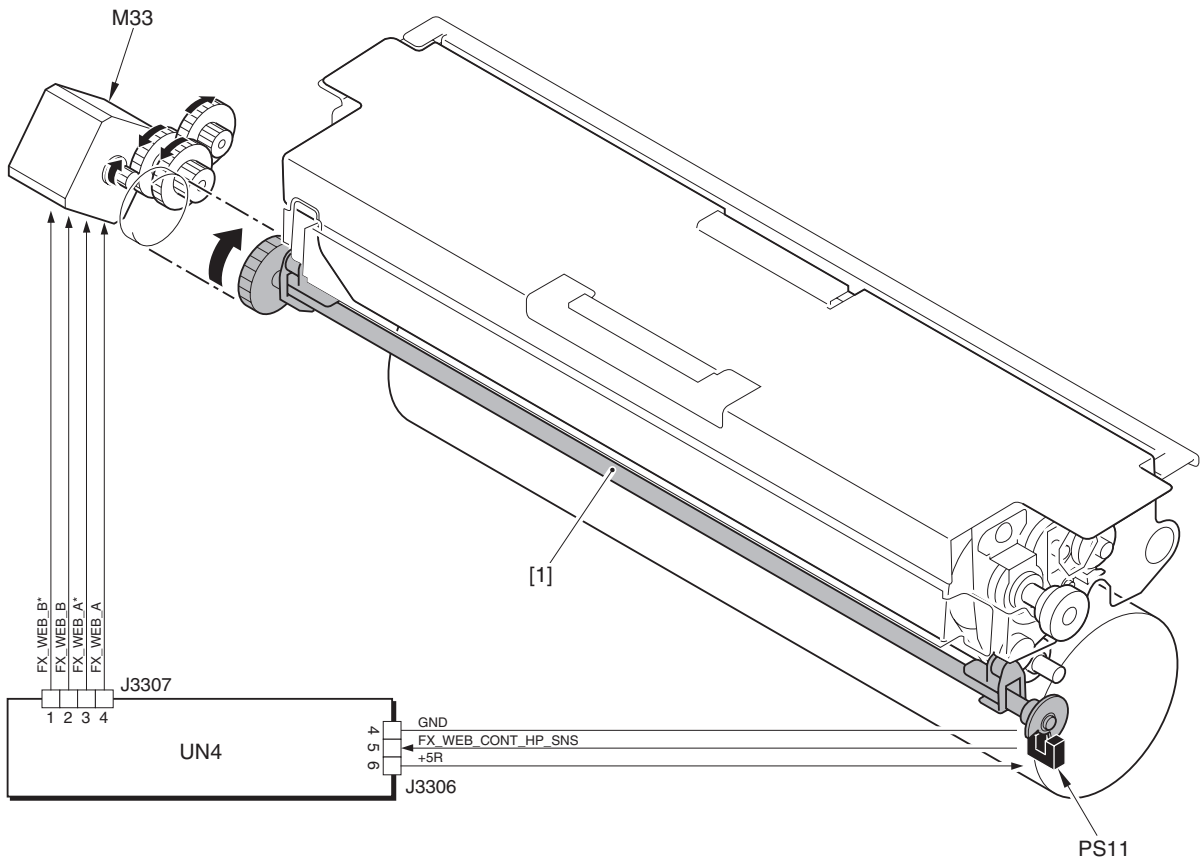
E005 (Fixing web: absent)

0000 After the fixing web length detecting sensor detects the absence of the web, when printing more than 3000 counts.

9.5.3 Detached/Attached Mechanism of the Cleaning Web (Web Roller)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

In the case of cleaning the fixing roller, the cleaning web is locked/unlocked to the collecting roller by the web roller. When the fixing roller is under suspension, the web roller is unlocked from the collecting roller to avoid heat-caused deformation of the fixing roller. The web roller is locked/unlocked to the collecting roller by communication of the drive of the web detached/attached motor (M33). The fixing web detached/attached HP sensor (PS11) detects the home position to control the web roller locking/unlocking.

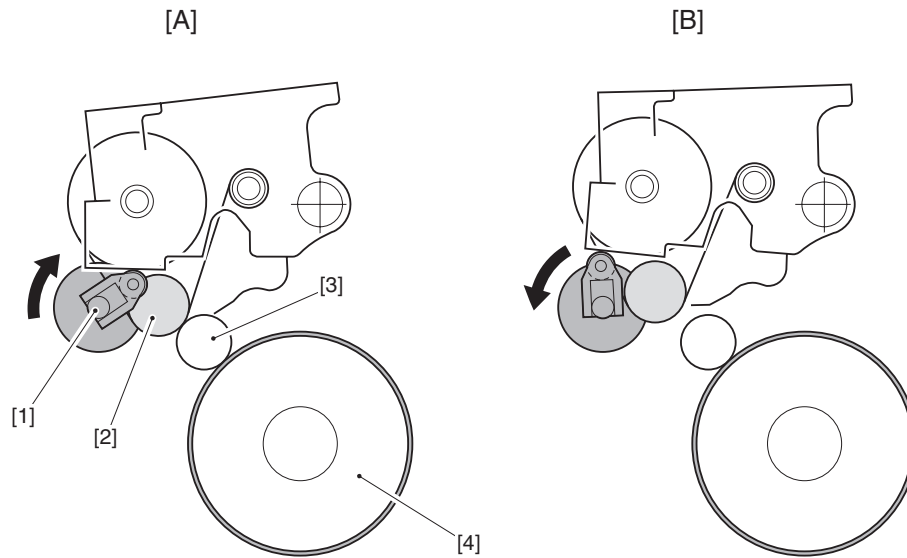


F-9-27

- [1] Swing shaft
- [2] Web roller
- [3] Collecting roller
- [4] Fixing roller
- M33: Web attach/detach motor
- PS11: Web attach/detach HP sensor
- UN4: Fixing driver PCB
- FX_WEB_CONT_HP_SNS: Web attach/detach HP signal

Positioning of Web Roller

- [A] In-contact while the fixing roller is in operation. (To remove the residual toner on the collecting roller.)
- [B] Off-contact while the fixing roller is not in operation. (To prevent from the deformation of the roller by the pressure.)



F-9-28

- [1] Swing shaft
- [2] Web roller
- [3] Collecting roller
- [4] Fixing roller

Error Code:
E842 (Cleaning belt attach/detach error)

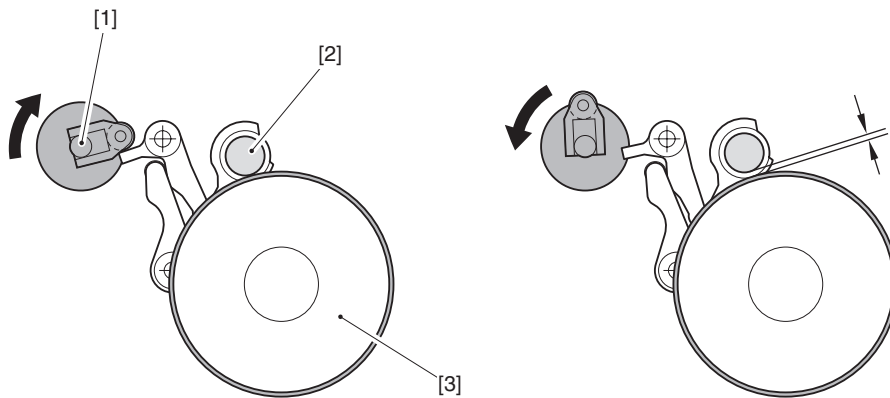
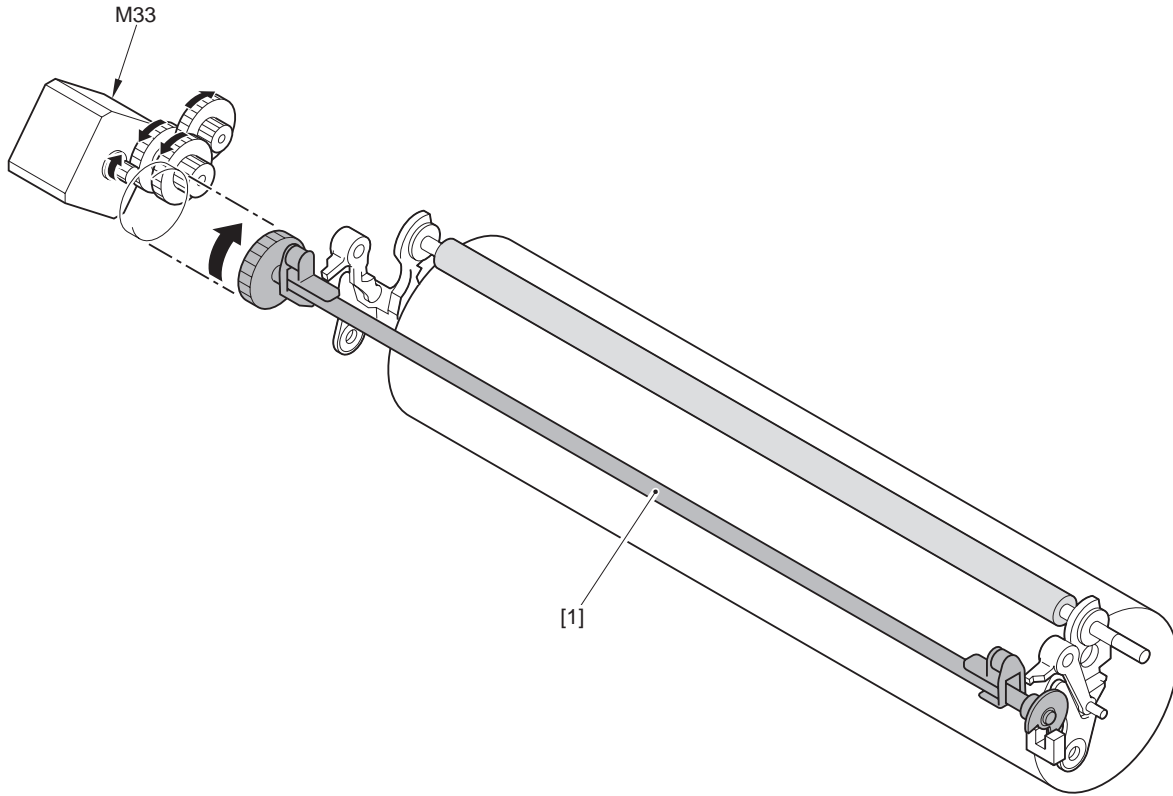
- 0003 Indicates the failure of detection within 5 sec from the start of HP detection.
- 0013 Indicates the logical displacement of HP sensor when starting the operation.
- 0103 Indicates that the belt is not at the specified position when completing the operation.

9.5.4 Refresh Roller Attach/Detach Mechanism

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

By bringing the refresh roller into contact with the fixing roller, remove scratches on the surface of the fixing roller caused by continuously feeding the large amount of the small size paper (smaller than A4/LTR).

The refresh roller is locked/unlocked to the fixing roller by sending the driving of the web attach/detach motor (M33) to the shaft. The driving source of the refresh roller shift is the web attach/detach motor (M33), and its shift is executed in synchronization with the cleaning web (web roller) shift.



F-9-29

- [1] Shaft
- [2] Refresh roller
- [3] Fixing roller
- M33: Web attach/detach motor



In the service mode and the user mode (enabled by the service mode), the following operation can be executed: manually executing the fixing roller refresh, and changing the amount of the overlap (or contact period) of the refresh roller to the fixing roller while the refresh operation is active. But, too much refresh operation causes the abrasion of the fixing roller surface, and may decrease the durability.

Service Mode/User Mode:

- Executing the refresh operation of the fixing roller
- Service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEANING>FX-CLN-E (level 2)

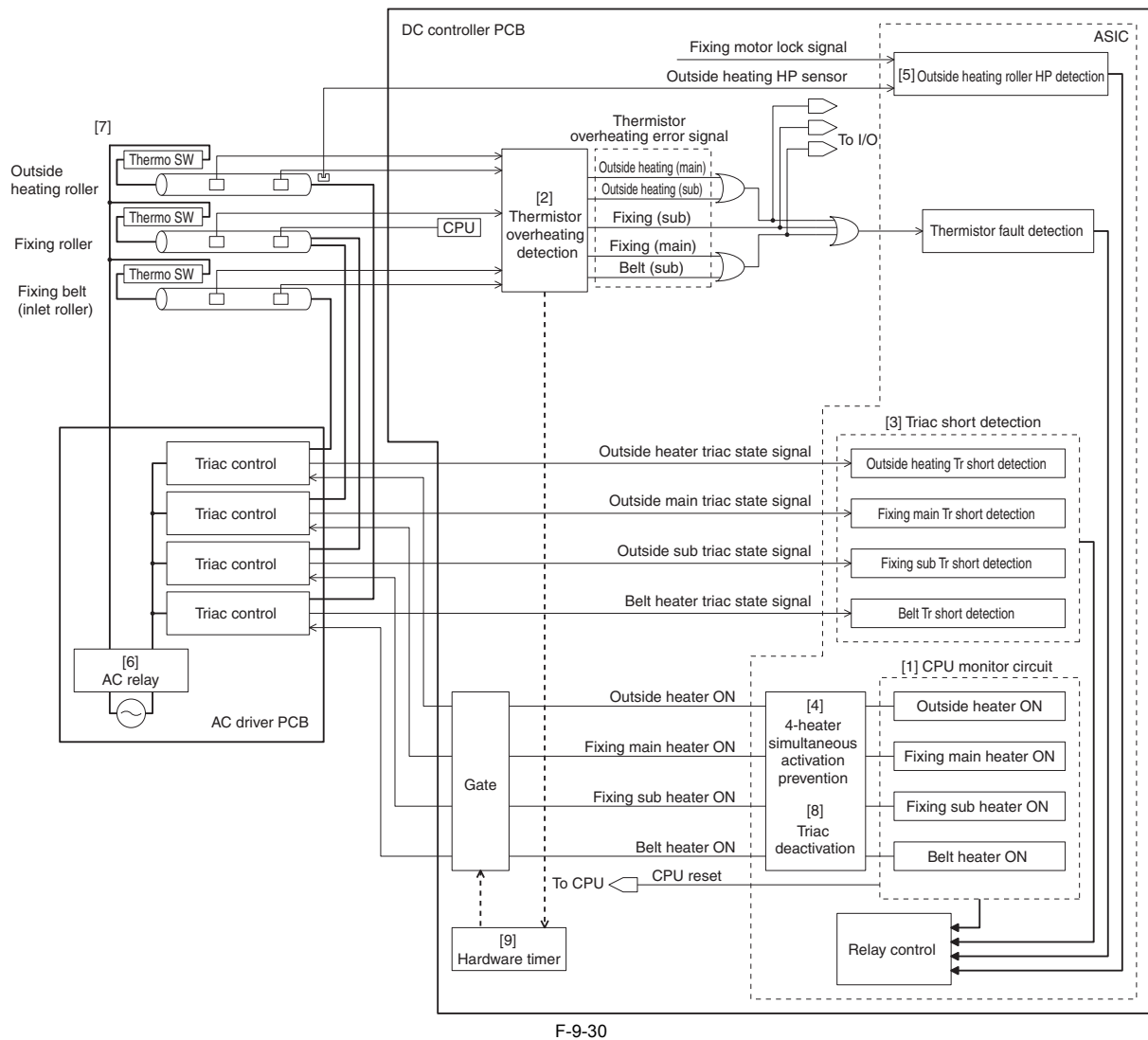
- User mode: System management settings>Device management settings>Refresh the fixing roller (*)
 - Setting the refresh level of the fixing roller
 Service mode: COPIER>OPTION>USER>FX-CLNLV (level 2)
 User mode: System management settings>Device management settings>Automatic refresh level of the fixing roller (*)
 Setting range: -5 (30 sec) to +5 (330 sec) [Default: 0 (180 sec)]

* By selecting COPIER>OPTION>BODY>IMGC-ADJ, and set 'IMGC-ADJ' as '1', items will be displayed on the 'Device management Setting' screen.

9.6 Protective Functions

9.6.1 Protective Circuit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



Protection methods	Functions
[1] CPU monitor block	Monitors the CPU's erratic behaviors
[2] Thermistor overheating detection block	Detects the overheating of the heater.
[3] Triac short detection block	Detects the triac short and malfunction of transistor for turning ON/OFF the heater.
[4] Heater simultaneous activation prevention block	Protects in case CPU behaves erratically and attempts to turn on all heaters simultaneously.
[5] Outside heating roller HP detection	Prevents the damage caused by contacting the outside heating roller with the fixing roller while the fixing motor stops.
[6] AC relay	Shut off the AC line in case of the triac short.
[7] Thermo switch	Shut off the AC line in case of the triac short or AC relay fault.

Protection methods		Functions
[8]	Triac deactivation control block	Fixes the heater ON signal as OFF using ASIC in case a fixing system error occurs.
[9]	Hardware timer	Activates the timer when the ASIC control clock stops and [1], [2], [6] are not function properly.

9.6.2 Related Error Code

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-9-3

E-code	Main cause	Detail code	Detail	Recovery method
E000	Heating delay error	0001	Indicates that the temperature does not increase after the specified time has passed during the warm-up. (300 sec)	FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
		0002	Indicates that the temperature does not increase after the specified time has passed during the warm-up. (360 sec after reaching warm-up 1)	
		0003	Indicates that the temperature does not increase after the specified time has passed during the warm-up. (120 sec after reaching warm-up 2)	
		0004	Indicates that the temperature does not increase after the specified time has passed during the warm-up. (360 sec after reaching warm-up 3)	
		0005	Indicates that the temperature does not increase after the specified time has passed during the warm-up after the occurrence of jam at the fixing assembly. (600 sec)	
E001	High temperature detection error	0001	Indicates the fixing roller high temperature detection error. (200 deg C; Hardware detection)	FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
		0002	Indicates the outside heating roller high temperature detection error. (220 deg C; Hardware detection)	
		0003	Indicates the inlet roller high temperature detection error. (150 deg C; Hardware detection)	
		0004	Indicates the outside heating roller edge high temperature detection error. (220 deg C; Hardware detection)	
		0005	Indicates the inlet roller edge high temperature detection error. (150 deg C; Hardware detection)	
		0011	Indicates the fixing roller high temperature software detection error: Condition that the temperature of the fixing main thermistor is above 200 deg C for 500msec	
E002	Low temperature detection error 1 (Full-time monitoring)	0010	Indicates the condition that the temperature of the fixing roller is less than 50 deg C for 1 sec after reaching 80 deg C.	FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
		0020	Indicates the condition that the temperature of the outside heating roller is less than 50 deg C for 1 sec after reaching 80 deg C.	
		0030	Indicates the condition that the temperature of the inlet roller is less than 50 deg C for 1 sec after reaching 80 deg C.	
E003	Low temperature detection error 1 (Mode correspondence)	0041	Indicates the fixing roller low temperature detection while it is in the standby state: (Detection temperature of either main or sub thermistor) Condition that the temperature of the fixing roller is less than 130 deg C for 1 sec while it is in the standby state.	FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
		0042	Indicates the outside heating roller low temperature detection while it is in the standby state: (Detection temperature of either main or sub thermistor) Condition that the temperature of the outside heating roller is less than 160 deg C for 1 sec while it is in the standby state.	
		0043	Indicates the inlet roller low temperature detection while it is in the standby state: (Detection temperature of either main or sub thermistor) Condition that the temperature of the inlet roller is less than 60 deg C for 1 sec while it is in the standby state.	
		0051	Indicates the fixing roller low temperature detection while performing black-and-white print: (Detection temperature of either main or sub thermistor) Condition that the temperature of the fixing roller is less than 100 deg C for 1 sec while performing black-and-white print.	
		0052	Indicates the outside heating roller low temperature detection while performing black and white print: (Detection temperature of either main or sub thermistor) Condition that the temperature of the outside heating roller is less than 150 deg C for 1 sec while performing black-and-white print.	
		0053	Indicates the inlet roller low temperature detection while performing black-and-white print: (Detection temperature of either main or sub thermistor) Condition that the temperature of the inlet roller is less than 60 deg C for 1 sec while performing black-and-white print.	

E-code	Main cause	Detail code	Detail	Recovery method
E004	Fixing Main Thermistor short-circuit/open-circuit error	0101	Indicates the open-circuit detection at the film side of the fixing main thermistor.	
		0102	Indicates the short-circuit detection at the film side of the fixing main thermistor.	
		0103	Indicates the open-circuit detection at the case side of the fixing main thermistor.	
		0104	Indicates the short-circuit detection at the case side of the fixing main thermistor.	
	Thermistor open circuit/heater open circuit	0010	Indicates the fixing roller thermistor open circuit: Condition that the difference of the detected temperature between the main thermistor and sub thermistor of the fixing roller is more than 50 deg C for 500 msec.	
		0020	Indicates the outside heating thermistor open circuit: Condition that the difference of the detected temperature between the main thermistor and the sub thermistor of the outside heating roller is more than 50 deg C for 500 msec.	
		0030	Indicates the inlet thermistor open circuit:	
		0040	Indicates the fixing main thermistor foreign substance error: Condition that the difference of the detected temperature between the main thermistor and the sub thermistor of the fixing roller is more than 25 deg C for 500 msec.	
		0050	Indicates the outside heating thermistor open circuit while it is in the standby state.	
		0060	Indicates the inlet thermistor open circuit while it is in the standby state.	
0000 000F	Indicates the heater open circuit (triac short error): Condition that the hardware error detection is kept for 200 msec. bit 0: Outside heater SSR error bit 1: Fixing sub heater SSR error bit 2: Fixing main heater SSR error bit 3: Inlet heater SSR error			
E005	Web take-up error	0000	Indicates the fixing web absent error: Indicated when exceeding 4000 counts after the fixing web length detection detects the web absent state.	- FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR - COUNTER>MISC>FX-WEB - COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-WEB
		0001	Indicates the fixing web drive solenoid open-circuit error.	FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
E006	Fixing unit connection error	0001	Indicates that the fixing unit absent state is detected for 500 msec while the front cover is closed.	
E007	Belt full displacement error	0001	Indicates the front side belt full displacement error.	
		0002	Indicates the rear side belt full displacement error.	
		0007	Indicates that the double error detections detect the full displacement error.	
		0010	Indicates that HP detection is not enabled within 1 sec after turning on the stealing motor.	
		0100	Indicates HP detection error 1 at the time of initialization.	
		0200	Indicates HP detection error 2 at the time of initialization.	
E008	Fixing assembly life error	0001	Indicates the counter value for the fixing roller exceeds the specified value. (This error is effective when changing the service settings.) The specified value is determined by the service modes indicated below: - Warning service mode (FXWRNLVL) 0:180k/1:150k/2:120k [default 0] - Error service mode (FXERRLVL) 0:+/-20k/1:+/-40k/2:+/-60k/3:error invalid [default 3] - ON/OFF of warning display (FXMSG-SW) 0:nondisplay/1:display [default 0]	COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-UP-RL
E009	Power supply connector error	0001	Indicates that the power supply identification connector is not inserted or faulty.	
E014	Fixing motor error	0001	Condition that the motor clock discrepancy is detected for more than 1 sec after the motor rotates stably.	

E-code	Main cause	Detail code	Detail	Recovery method
E197	Fixing unit communication error	0002	The communication error occurs 10 times in succession during the process of the communication initialization sequence between the DC controller and the fixing delivery unit.	
		0003	The communication error occurs 10 times in succession after the completion of the initialization sequence between the DC controller and the fixing delivery unit.	
		0004	Indicates that 24V ON notification of the fixing delivery block is not detected via the communication between the DC controller and the fixing delivery unit when starting the initial multiple rotation of the Bk drum.	
E805	Fixing belt cooling fan	000E	Indicates the detection of the lock signal of the fixing belt cooling fan 1.	
		000F	Indicates the detection of the lock signal of the fixing belt cooling fan 2.	
		0010	Indicates the detection of the lock signal of the fixing belt cooling fan 3.	
		0011	Indicates the detection of the lock signal of the fixing belt cooling fan 4.	
E842	Outside heating roller separation error	0009	Indicates that the condition, the outside heating roller keeps contact with the fixing roller for 300 msec while the fixing roller has been stopped, is detected in terms of the hardware.	
	Outside heating roller engagement error	0001	Indicates that the engagement is not detected by HP sensor within 5 sec from the start of HP detection.	
		0011	Indicates the logical displacement of HP sensor at the time of operation.	
		0101	Indicates that the outside heating roller is not at the predetermined position when completing the operation.	
	Fixing belt engagement error	0002	Indicates that the engagement is not detected by the belt HP sensor within 5 sec from the start of HP detection.	
		0012	Indicates the logical displacement of HP sensor at the time of operation.	
		0102	Indicates that the fixing belt is not at the predetermined position when completing the operation.	
	Cleaning belt engagement error	0003	Indicates that the engagement is not detected by the cleaning belt HP sensor within 5 sec from the start of HP detection.	
		0013	Indicates the logical displacement of HP sensor at the time of operation.	
		0103	Indicates that the cleaning belt is not at the predetermined position when completing the operation.	

9.7 Parts Replacement Procedure

9.7.1 Fixing Drive Unit

9.7.1.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Drive Second Gear

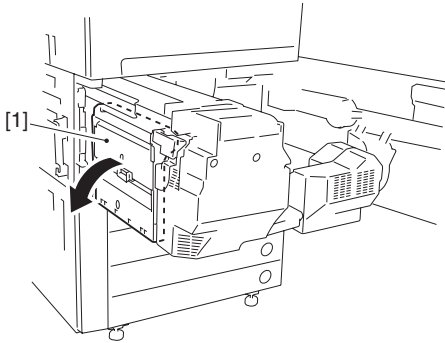
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.1.2 Removing the Fixing Drive Second Gear

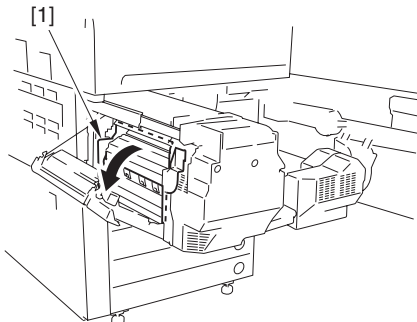
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the external delivery cover [1].



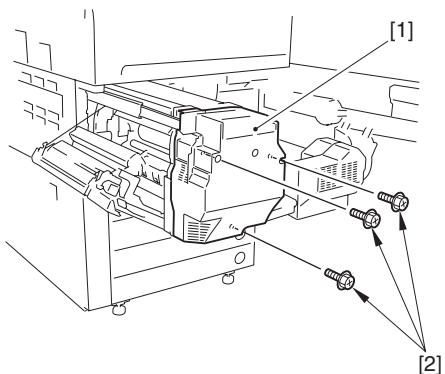
F-9-31

- 2) Open the internal delivery cover [1].



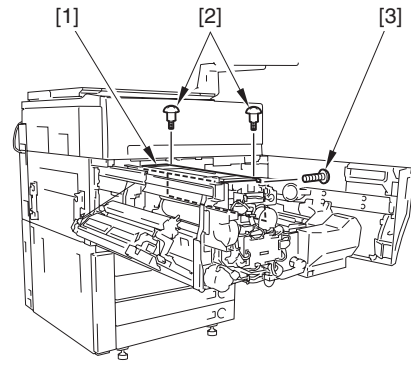
F-9-32

- 3) Detach the fixing front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



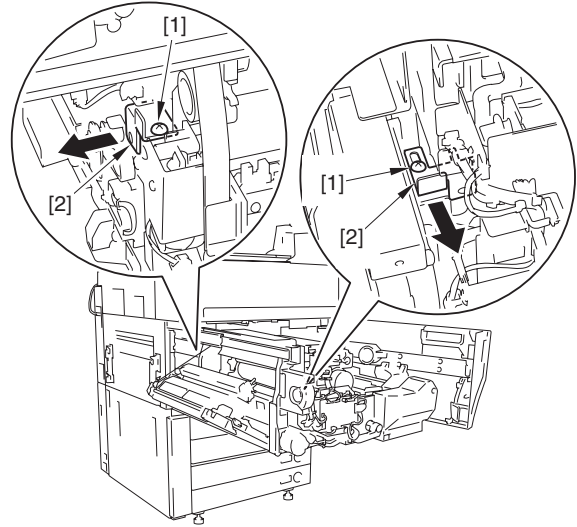
F-9-33

- 4) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
- 2 stepped screws [2]
- 1 screw [3]



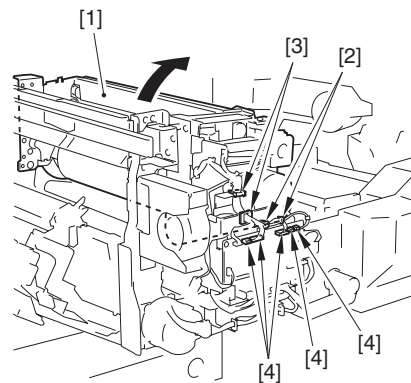
F-9-34

- 5) Move the 2 fixing upper unit mounts [1] in the direction of the arrow.
- 2 screws [2]



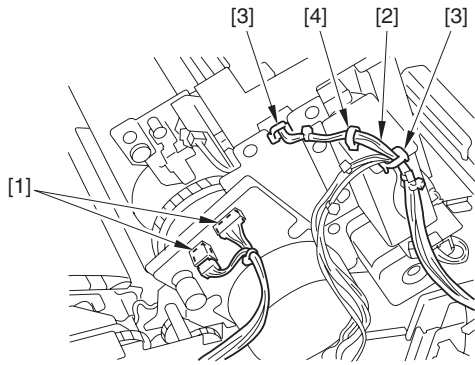
F-9-35

- 6) Open the fixing upper unit [1] in the direction of the arrow.
- 2 clamps [2]
- 2 edge saddles [3]
- 5 connectors [4]



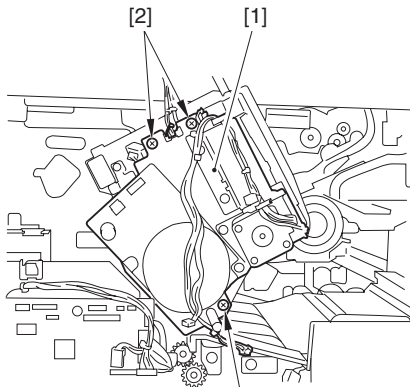
F-9-36

- 7) Disconnect the 2 connectors [1] and the cable [2].
- 2 edge saddles [3]
- 1 wire saddle [4]



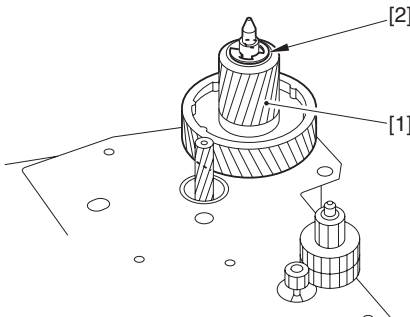
F-9-37

- 8) Remove the fixing drive unit [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-9-38

- 9) Remove the fixing drive second gear [1].
- 1 E-ring [2]



F-9-39

9.7.2 Fixing Unit

9.7.2.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Assembly Unit

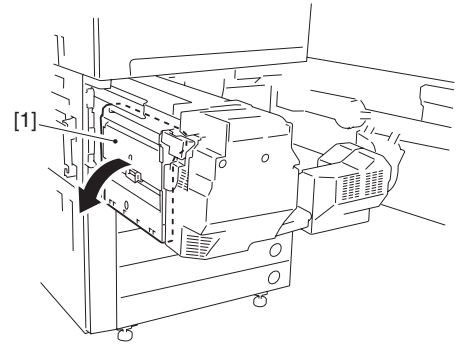
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.2.2 Removing the Fixing Assembly Unit

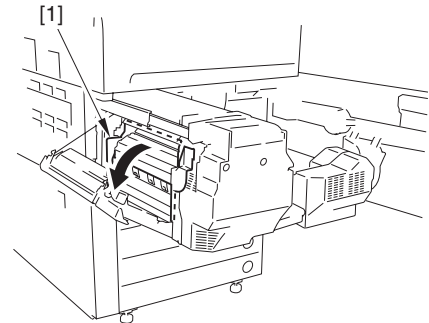
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

- 1) Open the external delivery cover [1].



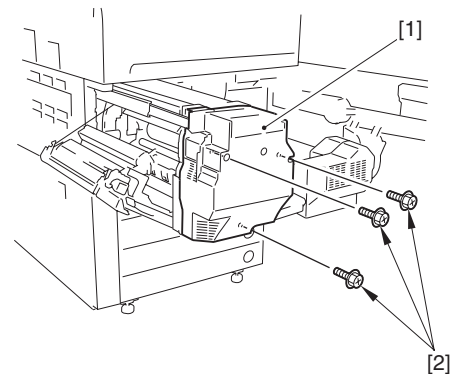
F-9-40

- 2) Open the internal delivery cover [1].



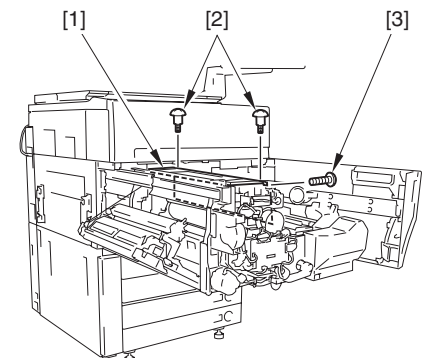
F-9-41

- 3) Detach the fixing front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



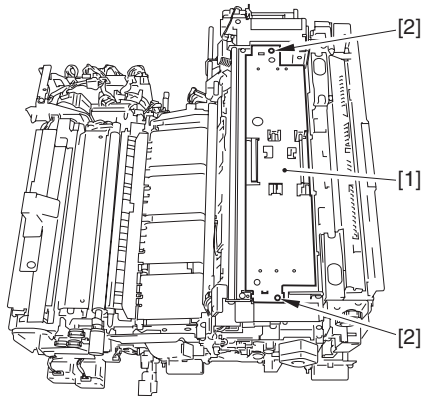
F-9-42

- 4) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
- 2 stepped screws [2]
- 1 screw [3]



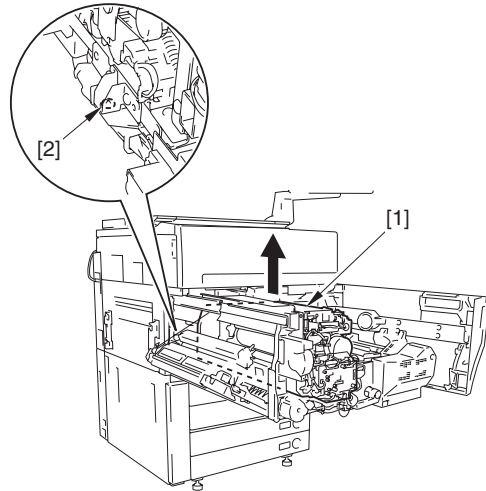
F-9-43

- 5) Remove the web roller unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-9-44

6) Remove the 5 edge saddles [1], the 3 clamps [2], and the 6 connectors [3].

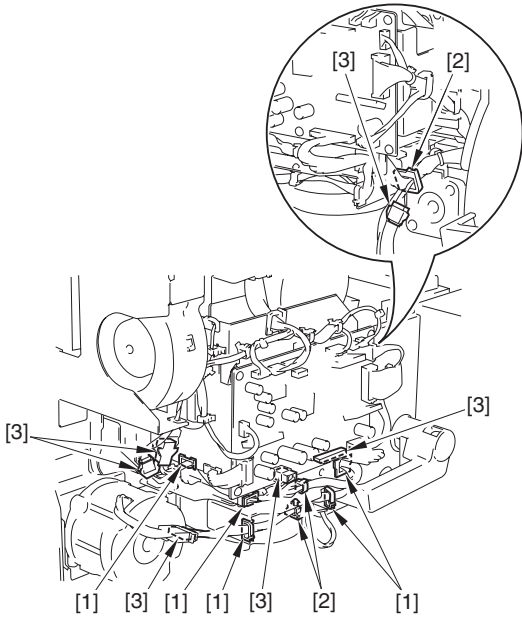


F-9-47

9.7.2.3 Removing the Fixing Assembly Unit

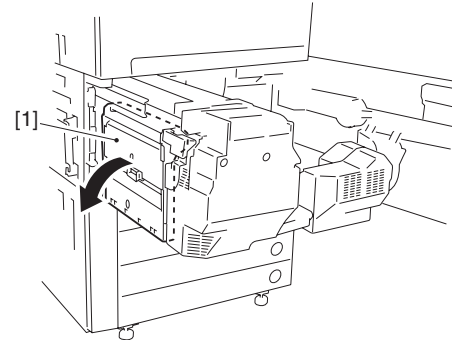
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Open the external delivery cover [1].



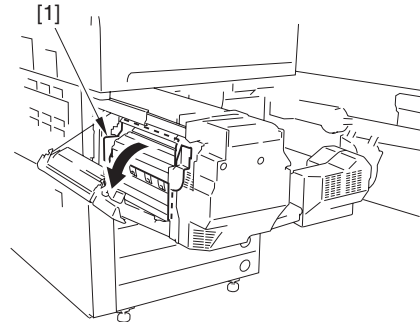
F-9-45

7) Remove the fixing driver PCB [1].
 - 13 connectors [2]
 - 6 screws [3]



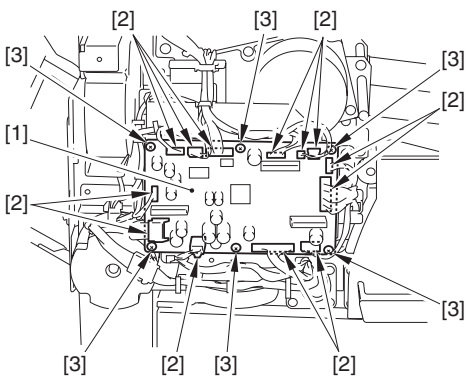
F-9-48

2) Open the internal delivery cover [1].



F-9-49

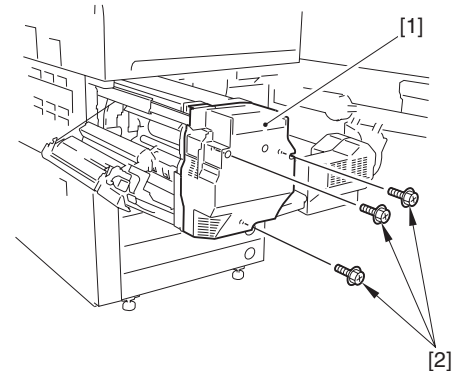
3) Detach the fixing front cover [1].
 - 3 screws [2]



F-9-46

⚠ Disconnect the connector [2] of J3313 with the connector hook surely held.

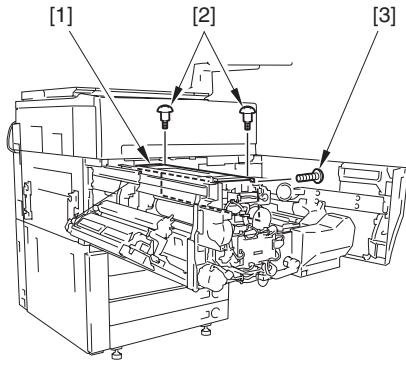
8) Lift the fixing unit [1] in the direction of the arrow to remove.
 - 1 screw [2]



F-9-50

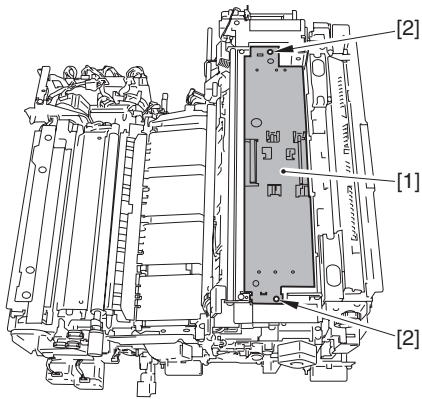
4) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].

- 2 stepped screws [2]
- 1 screw [3]



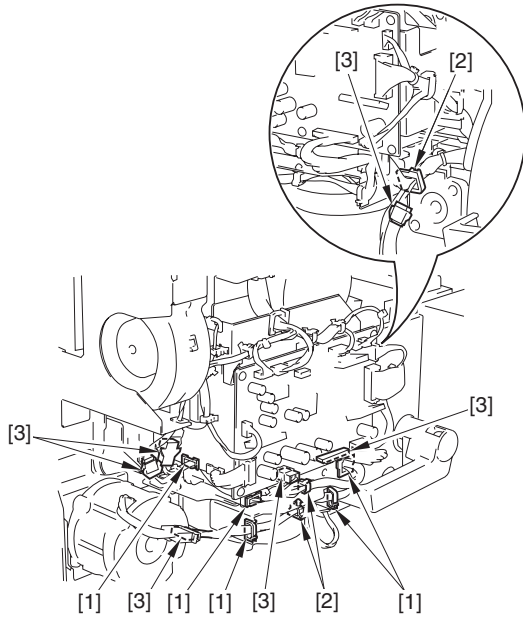
F-9-51

- 5) Remove the web roller unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]



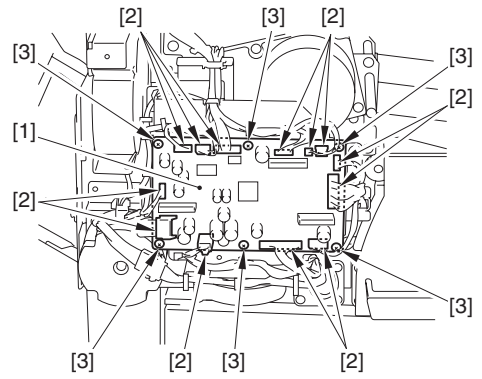
F-9-52

- 6) Remove the 5 edge saddles [1], the 3 clamps [2], and the 6 connectors [3].



F-9-53

- 7) Remove the fixing driver PCB [1].
- 13 connectors [2]
- 6 screws [3]

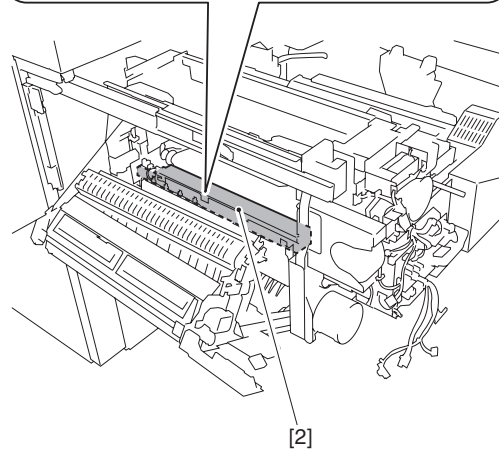
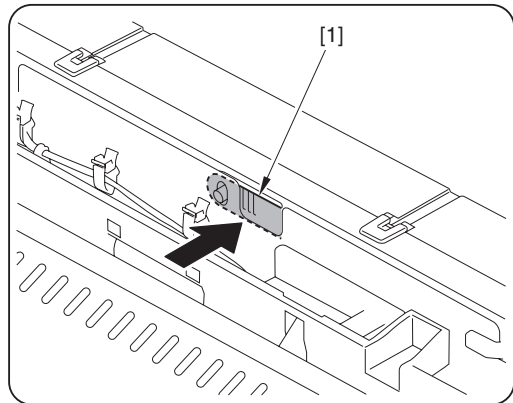


F-9-54



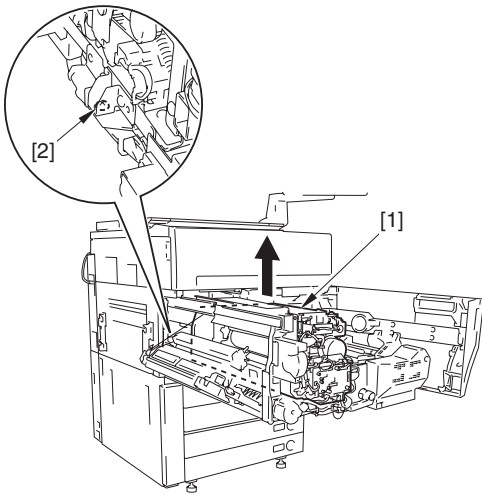
Disconnect the connector [2] of J3313 with the connector hook surely held.

- 8) Remove the exhaust duct [2].
Push the claw [1]



F-9-55

- 9) Lift the fixing unit [1] in the direction of the arrow to remove.
- 1 screw [2]



F-9-56

9.7.3 Fixing Belt Unit

9.7.3.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Belt Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

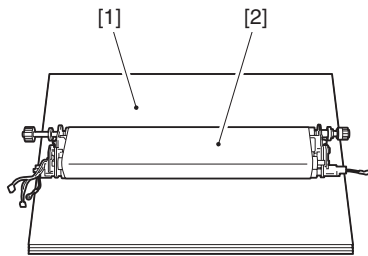
- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.3.2 Removing the Fixing Belt Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

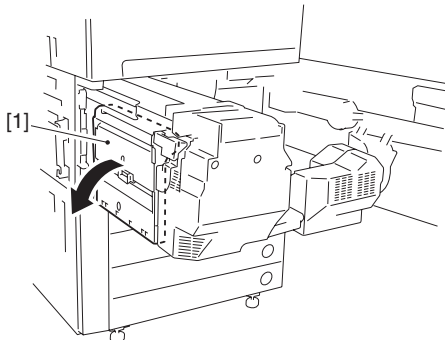


- In the case of placing the fixing belt unit [1] on the floor, put several sheets of paper [2] beneath it.
- In the case of holding the fixing unit, make sure not to directly touch the surface of the fixing belt, and hold it with paper wrapped. However, you can touch the areas of 10mm from the both edge of the fixing belt because they are non-image areas.
- If there is any soil or scar on the fixing unit, it may cause the image fault (such as unevenness). Clean it dry with a lint-free paper.



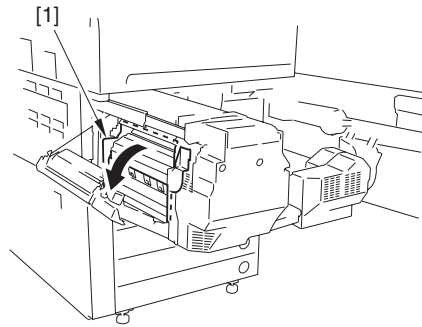
F-9-57

- 1) Open the external delivery cover [1].



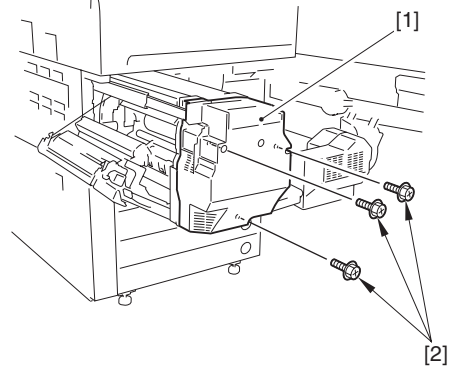
F-9-58

- 2) Open the internal delivery cover [1].



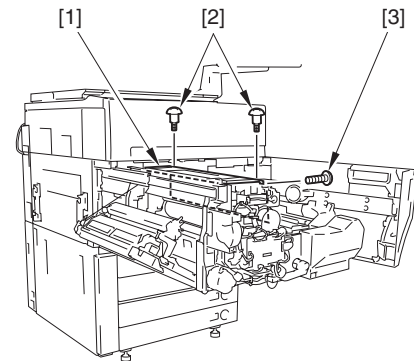
F-9-59

- 3) Detach the fixing front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



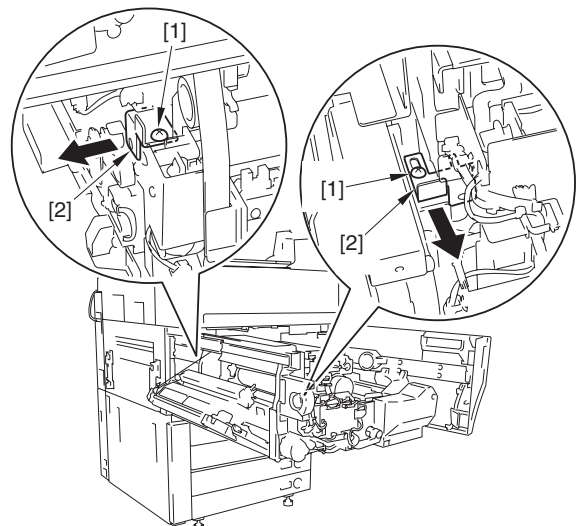
F-9-60

- 4) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
- 2 stepped screws [2]
- 1 screw [3]



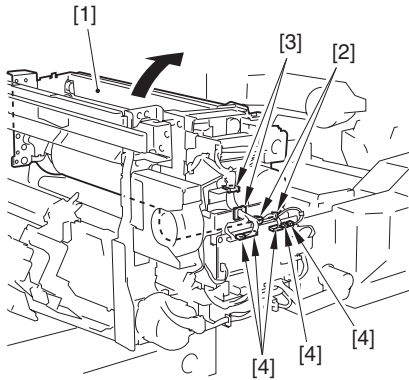
F-9-61

- 5) Move the 2 fixing upper unit holding plates [1] in the direction of the arrow.
- 2 screws [2]



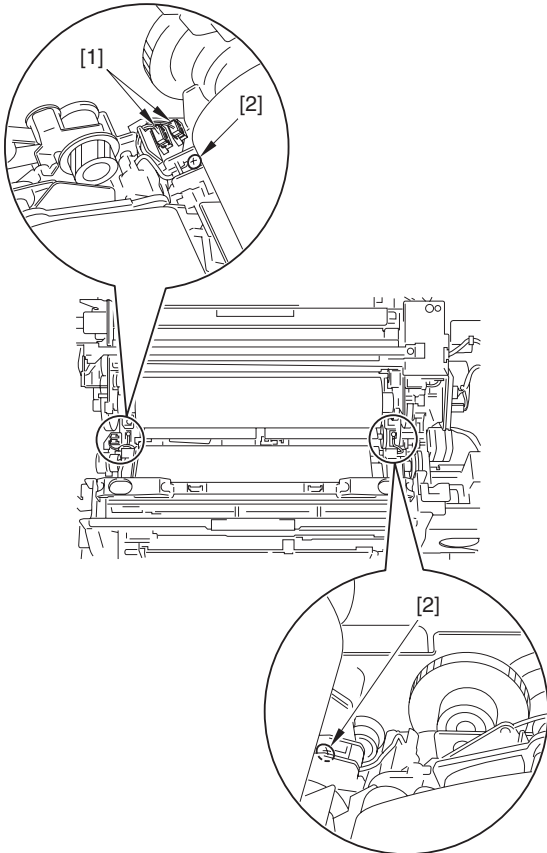
F-9-62

- 6) Open the fixing upper unit [1] in the direction of the arrow.
 - 2 clamps [2]
 - 2 edge saddles [3]
 - 5 connectors [4]



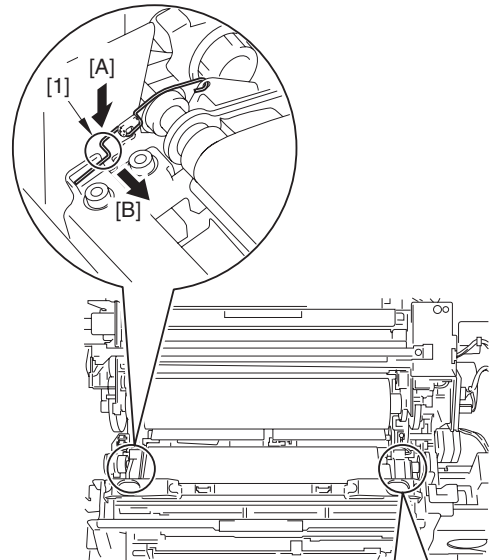
F-9-63

- 7) Disconnect the 2 connectors [1] and remove the 2 screws [2].



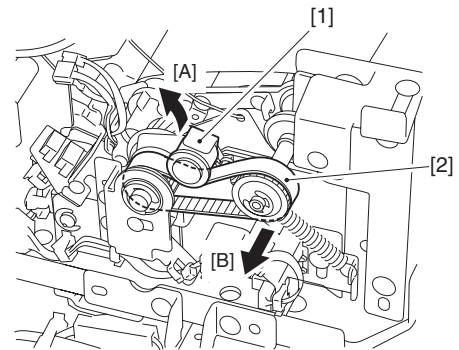
F-9-64

- 8) Push the 2 screws [1] in the direction of the arrow [A], and then move them in the direction of the arrow [B] to remove.



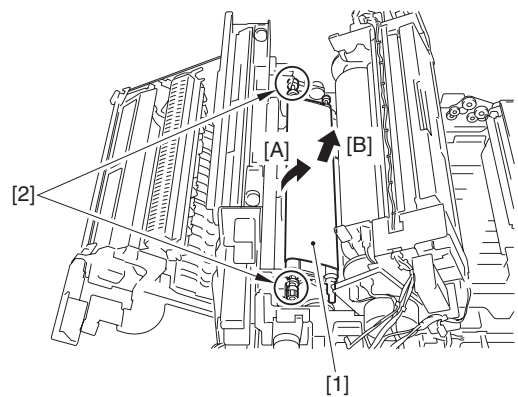
F-9-65

- 9) While pulling the belt tension area [1] in the direction of the arrow [A], pull out the belt [2] in the direction of the arrow [B].



F-9-66

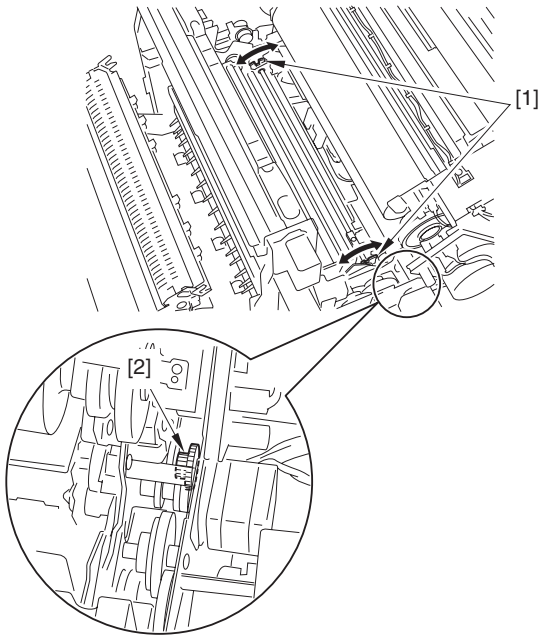
- 10) Hold the gear of the fixing belt unit [2], turn the fixing belt unit [1] in the direction of the arrow [A], and then pull it out in the direction of the arrow [B].



F-9-67

⚠ Points to Note When Mounting the Fixing Belt Unit
 - Before mounting the fixing belt unit, turn the gear [2] so that the holding area [1] of the steering roller moves to the position shown in the figure

(around the center). This makes the mounting work easier.



F-9-68

- Take care so that the bearing of the steering roller does not run over the frame.

9.7.3.3 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Separation Roller Ball Bearing

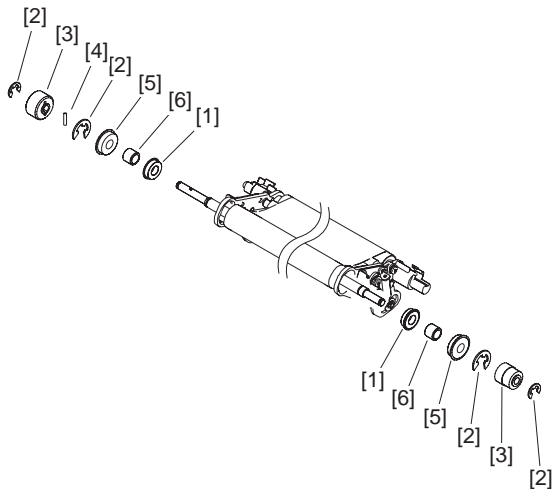
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.
- 3) Remove the fixing belt unit. (page 9-38) Reference [Removing the Fixing Belt Unit]

9.7.3.4 Removing the Fixing Separation Roller Ball Bearing

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the 2 fixing separation roller ball bearings [1].
 - 4 E-rings [2]
 - 2 gears [3]
 - 1 dowel pin [4]
 - 2 bearings [5]
 - 2 spacers [6]



F-9-69

9.7.4 Fixing Roller

9.7.4.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Roller

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / image-

PRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.
- 3) Remove the fixing main heater/fixing sub heater. (page 9-54) Reference [Removing the Fixing Main Heater/the Fixing Sub Heater]

9.7.4.2 Removing the Fixing Roller

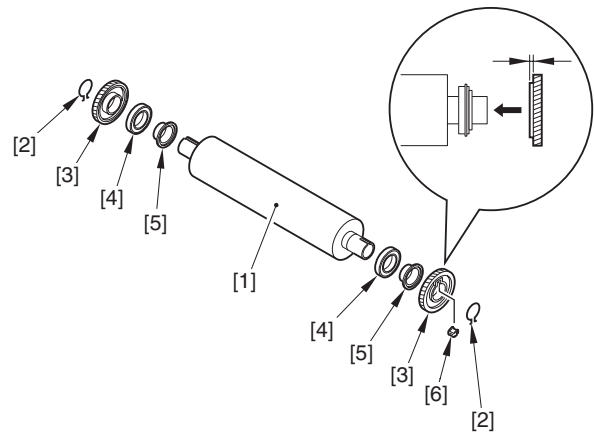
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the fixing roller [1].
 - 2 C-rings [2]
 - 2 gears [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]
 - 2 fixing roller heat insulating bushes [5]
 - 1 holder [6]



Points to Note When Mounting the Fixing Roller

- The orientation for mounting the gears [3] and the heat-insulating bushes [5] is specified. Mount them in the orientation shown in the below figure.
- When attaching the photosensitive drum, be sure to do it with the shielding sheet attached. Remove the shielding sheet after you finished attaching it.



F-9-70

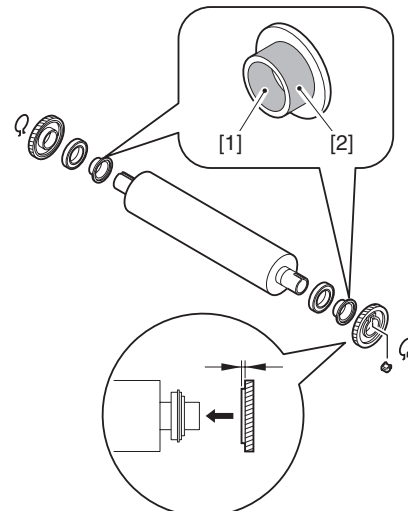
9.7.4.3 After Replacing the Fixing Roller

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- Apply grease (Molykote HP-300; CK-8012) to the inner diameter area [1] and the outer diameter area [2] of the bushings for about 20 mg, so that to make white coating in assigned areas.
Purpose: to avoid abnormal sound

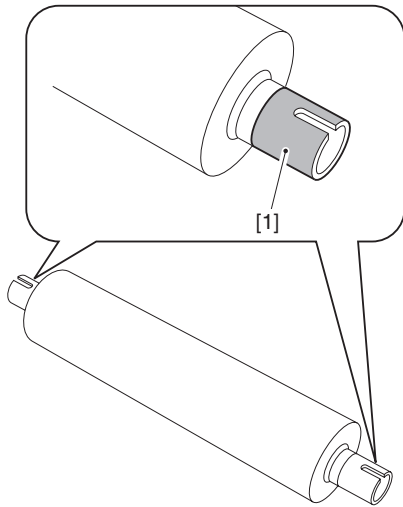


The orientation for mounting the gears is specified. Mount them in the orientation shown in the below figure.



F-9-71

- Make sure to wipe off the excessive grease because the grease adheres to the both edge [1] of the fixing roller when mounting the greased bushes to the fixing roller.

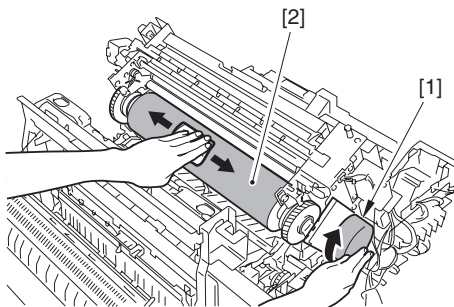


F-9-72

When replacing the fixing roller / the fixing belt, or both of them, be sure to clean the surface of the fixing roller and the fixing belt with a lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

Cleaning the Fixing Roller

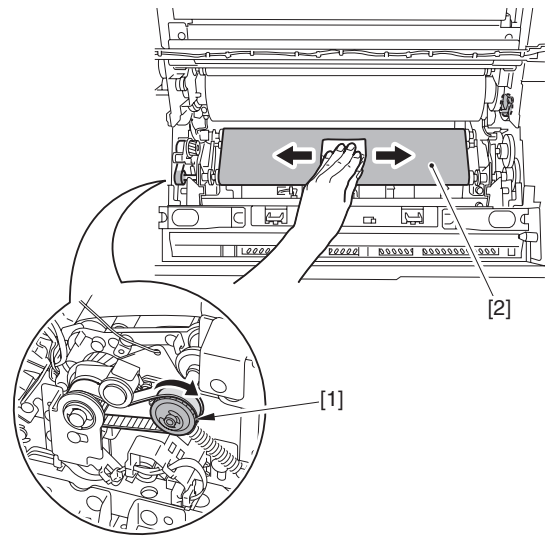
The fixing roller [2] rotates by turning the fixing motor [1] in the direction shown by the arrow. Clean evenly across the fixing roller with a lint-free paper moistened with alcohol while turning the fixing motor [1]. Clean for 1 to 2 rotations of the fixing roller [2].



F-9-73

Cleaning the Fixing Belt

The fixing belt [2] rotates by turning the belt [1] in the direction shown by the arrow. Clean evenly across the fixing belt with a lint-free paper moistened with alcohol while turning the belt [1]. Clean for 1 to 2 rotations of the fixing belt [2].



F-9-74

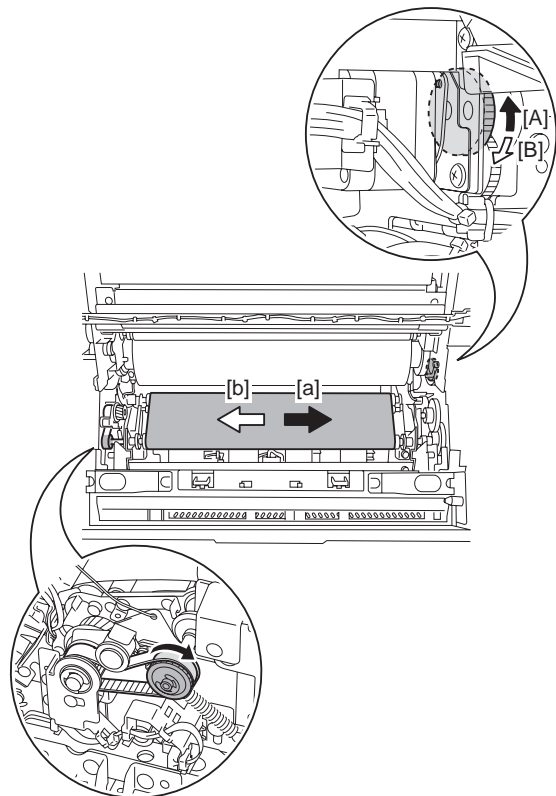
Remedy for Fixing Belt Replacement

The fixing belt may be displaced while rotating. When attaching it, be sure that the fixing belt is located at the center.

1) Turn the gear until it stops.

If turned in the direction shown by [A], the fixing belt shifts closer to [a] when turning the belt.

If turned in the direction shown by [B], the fixing belt shifts closer to [b] when turning the belt.



F-9-75

2) Turn the belt to shift the fixing belt to the center position.

Error code:

E007 (Belt displacement error)

0001 : Front side belt displacement error

0002 : Rear side belt displacement error

0007 : Detection of displacement error by the double error detection

0010 : In the case that after the steering monitor ON, HP detection failed to be within 1 sec.

0100/0200 : HP detection error on initialization

9.7.5 Fixing Belt

9.7.5.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Belt

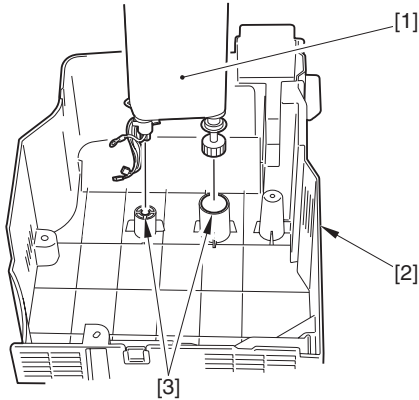
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.
- 3) Remove the fixing belt unit. (page 9-38) Reference [Removing the Fixing Belt Unit]

9.7.5.2 Removing the Fixing Belt

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

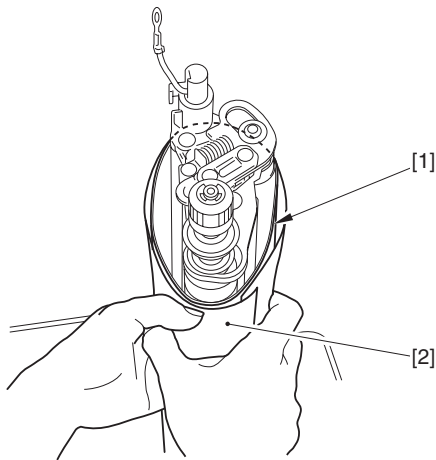
- 1) Fix the fixing belt unit [1] to the 2 ribs [3] of the fixing front cover [2] to stand.



F-9-76

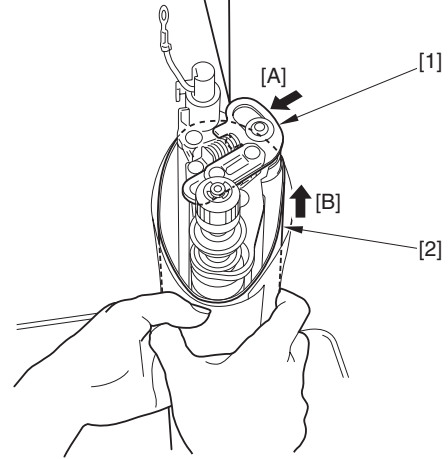
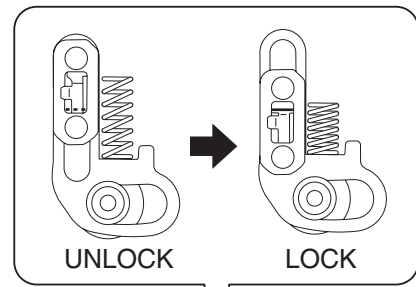


Wrap the fixing belt [1] with paper [2] to avoid direct contact with hands.



F-9-77

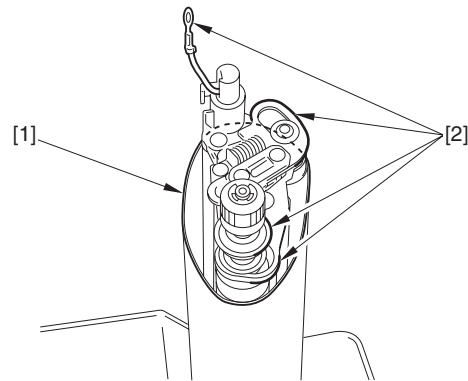
- 2) Push the steering roller [1] in the direction of the arrow [A] to release the tension of the belt, and then, pull out the fixing belt [2] in the direction of the arrow [B].



F-9-78



In the case of removing the fixing belt [1], take care to handle the areas indicated in [2] so that the fixing belt is not damaged.

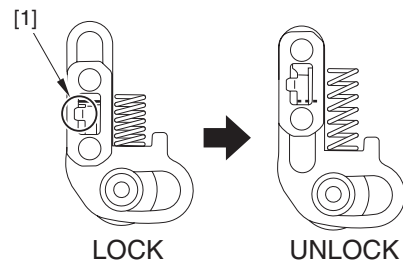


F-9-79



Points to Note When Mounting the Fixing Belt

- For the position to mount the fixing belt, make sure to set it around the center against the roller shaft. As for the position of the shaft direction of the fixing belt, it can be placed around the center (guess by the eye) at the time of mounting because it will be automatically corrected after turning on the power.
- When inserting the fixing belt to the fixing belt unit, make sure to apply tension of the belt by pulling the lock plate [1].



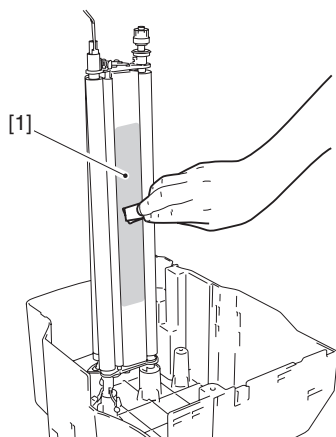
F-9-80

9.7.5.3 After Replacing the Fixing Belt

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Before installing a belt, apply silicon oil (S-20; FY9-6011) to the marked area of the pressure pad cover (within the radius of about 200 mm from the center).

Apply silicon oil to the pressure pad cover, after soaking lint-free paper into the oil to the extent that the oil does not drip from the paper.



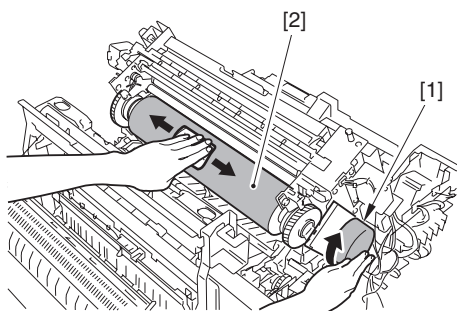
F-9-81

[1] pressure pad cover

When replacing the fixing roller / the fixing belt, or both of them, be sure to clean the surface of the fixing roller and the fixing belt with a lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

Cleaning the Fixing Roller

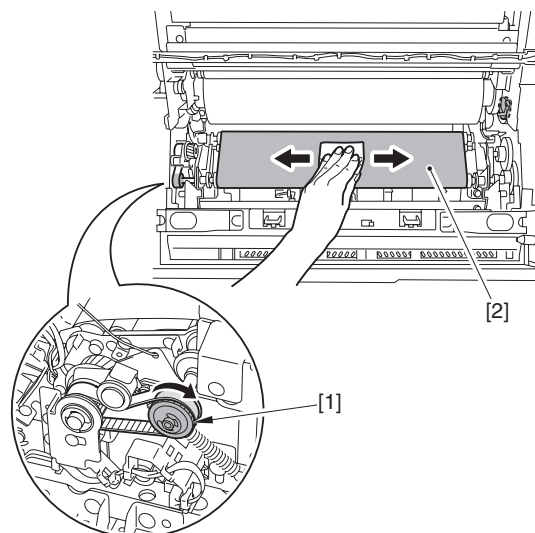
The fixing roller [2] rotates by turning the fixing motor [1] in the direction shown by the arrow. Clean evenly across the fixing roller with a lint-free paper moistened with alcohol while turning the fixing motor [1]. Clean for 1 to 2 rotations of the fixing roller [2].



F-9-82

Cleaning the Fixing Belt

The fixing belt [2] rotates by turning the belt [1] in the direction shown by the arrow. Clean evenly across the fixing belt with a lint-free paper moistened with alcohol while turning the belt [1]. Clean for 1 to 2 rotations of the fixing belt [2].



F-9-83

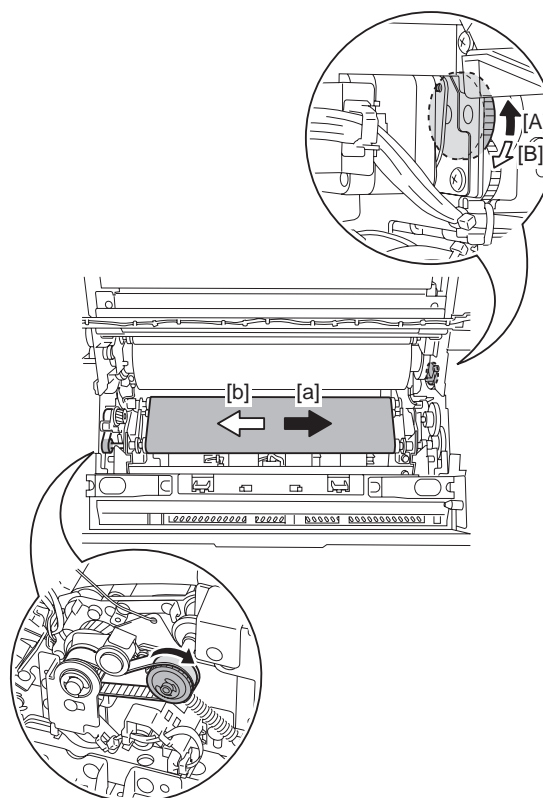
Remedy for Fixing Belt Replacement

The fixing belt may be displaced while rotating. When attaching it, be sure that the fixing belt is located at the center.

1) Turn the gear until it stops.

If turned in the direction shown by [A], the fixing belt shifts closer to [a] when turning the belt.

If turned in the direction shown by [B], the fixing belt shifts closer to [b] when turning the belt.



F-9-84

2) Turn the belt to shift the fixing belt to the center position.

Error code:

E007 (Belt displacement error)

0001 : Front side belt displacement error

0002 : Rear side belt displacement error

0007 : Detection of displacement error by the double error detection

0010 : In the case that after the steering monitor ON, HP detection failed to be within 1 sec.

0100/0200 : HP detection error on initialization

9.7.6 External Heat Roller

9.7.6.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Roller

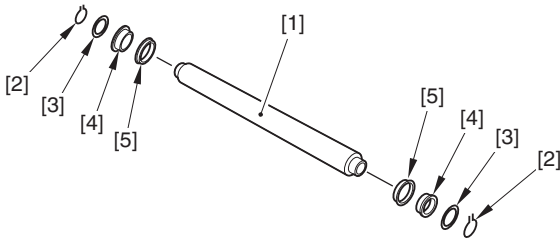
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.
- 3) Pull out the external heater. (page 9-56) Reference [Removing the External Heater]

9.7.6.2 Removing the External Heat Roller

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the external heat roller [1].
 - 2 C-rings [2]
 - 2 washers [3]
 - 2 external heat heat-insulating bushes [4]
 - 2 bearings [5]

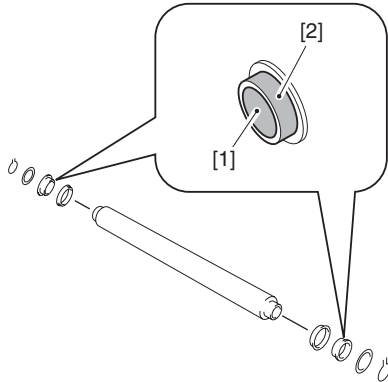


F-9-85

9.7.6.3 When Replacing the External Heat Roller

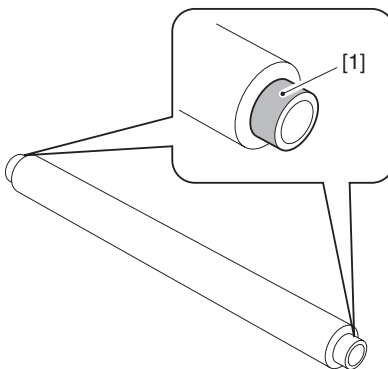
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- Apply grease (Molykote HP-300; CK-8012) to the inner diameter area [1] and the outer diameter area [2] of the bushings for about 20 mg, so that to make white coating in assigned areas.
Purpose: to avoid abnormal sound



F-9-86

- Make sure to wipe off the excessive grease because the grease adheres to the both edge [1] of the external heat roller when mounting the greased bushes to the fixing roller.



F-9-87

9.7.7 Oil Applying Roller

9.7.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Oil Coating Roller

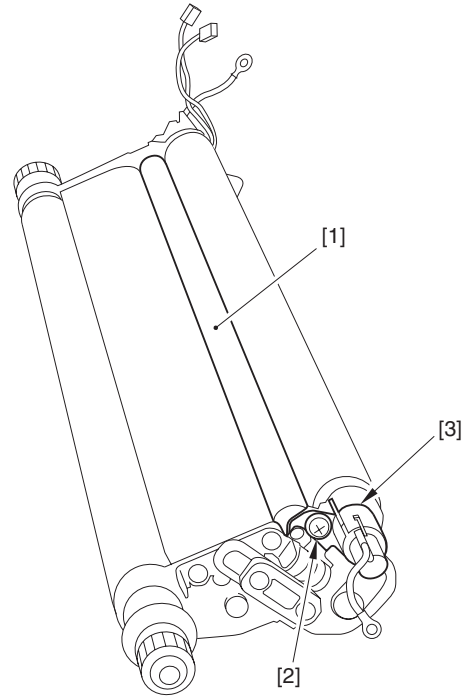
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.
- 3) Remove the fixing belt unit. (page 9-38) Reference [Removing the Fixing Belt Unit]
- 4) Remove the fixing belt. (page 9-42) Reference [Removing the Fixing Belt]

9.7.7.2 Removing the Oil Coating Roller

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the oil coating roller [1].
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 inlet heater contact cover [3]



F-9-88

9.7.8 External Heat Cleaning Roller

9.7.8.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Cleaning Roller

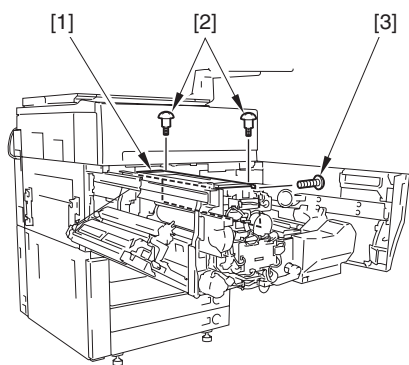
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.8.2 Removing the External Heat Cleaning Roller

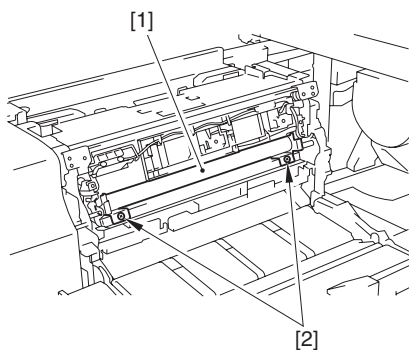
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
 - 2 stepped screws [2]
 - 1 screw [3]



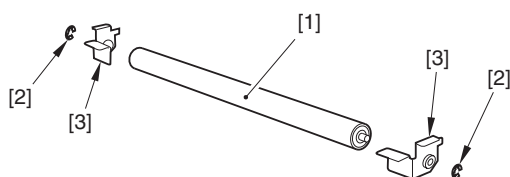
F-9-89

- 2) Remove the external heat cleaning roller unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-9-90

- 3) Remove the external heat cleaning roller [1].
- 2 E-rings [2]
- 2 mounts [3]



F-9-91

9.7.9 Fixing Web Roller

9.7.9.1 Preparation for Removing the Web Roller

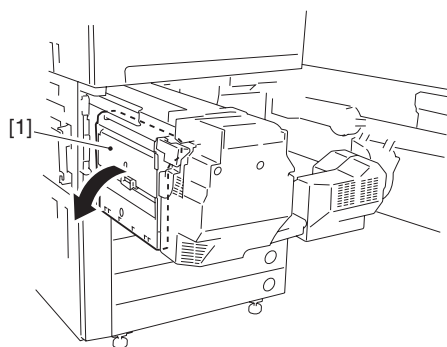
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.9.2 Removing the Web Roller

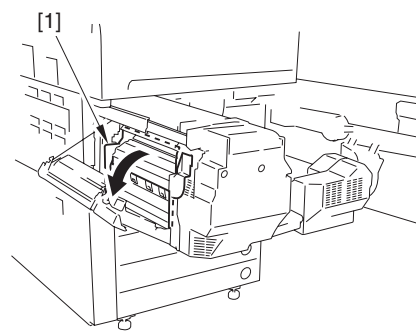
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

- 1) Open the external delivery cover [1].



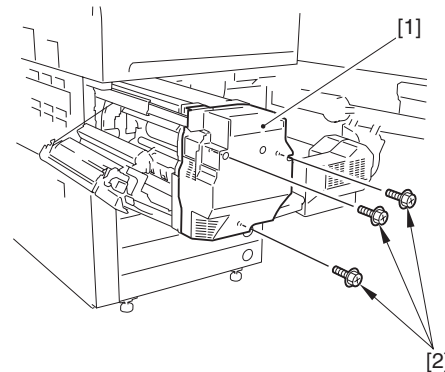
F-9-92

- 2) Open the internal delivery cover [1].



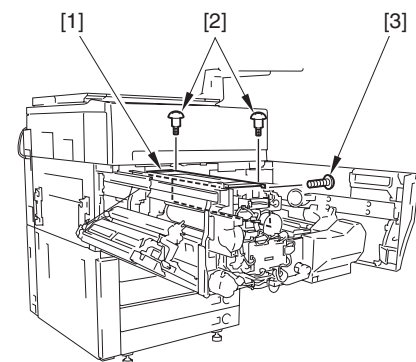
F-9-93

- 3) Detach the fixing front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



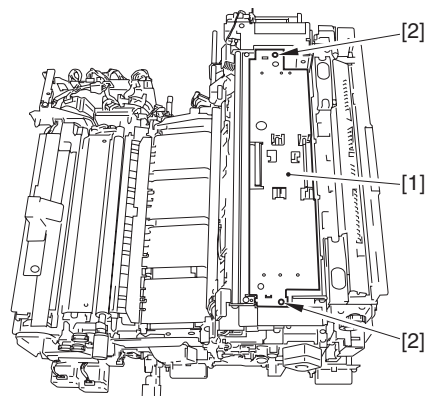
F-9-94

- 4) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
- 2 stepped screws [2]
- 1 screw [3]



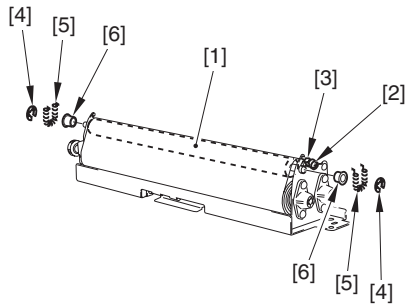
F-9-95

- 5) Remove the web roller unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-9-96

- 6) Remove the web roller [1].
- 1 screw [2]
- 1 pressure plate [3]
- 2 E-rings [4]
- 2 screws [5]
- 2 bushings [6]

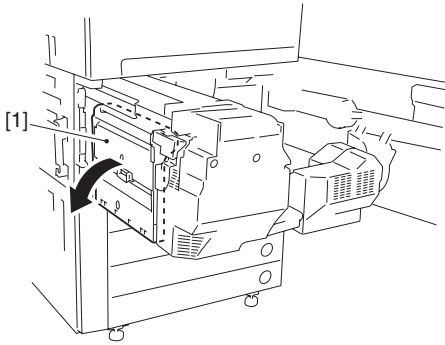


F-9-97

9.7.9.3 Removing the Web Roller

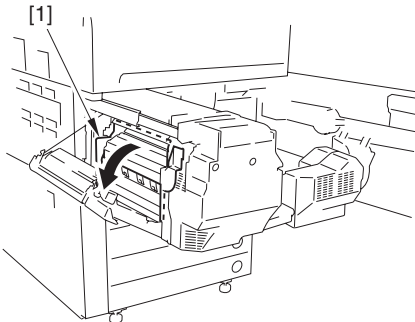
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Open the external delivery cover [1].



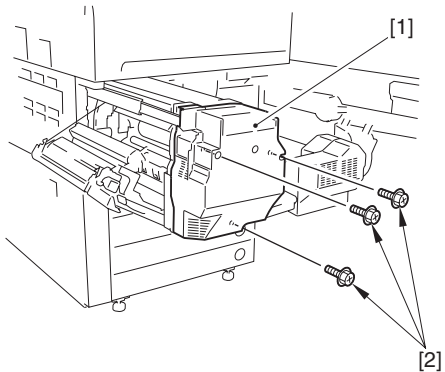
F-9-98

2) Open the internal delivery cover [1].



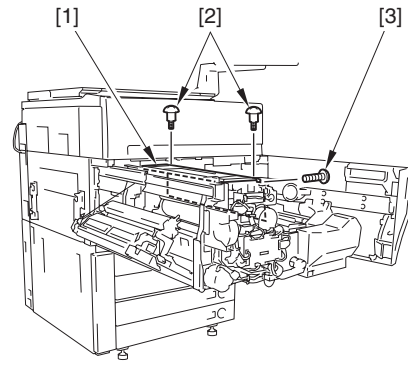
F-9-99

3) Detach the fixing front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



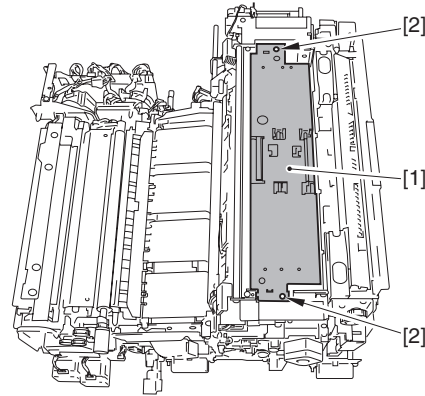
F-9-100

4) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
- 2 stepped screws [2]
- 1 screw [3]



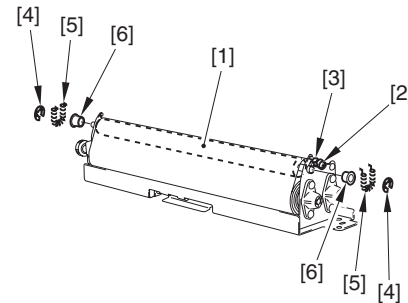
F-9-101

5) Remove the web roller unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-9-102

6) Remove the web roller [1].
- 1 screw [2]
- 1 pressure plate [3]
- 2 E-rings [4]
- 2 screws [5]
- 2 bushings [6]



F-9-103

9.7.10 Refresh Roller

9.7.10.1 Preparation for Removing the Refresh Roller

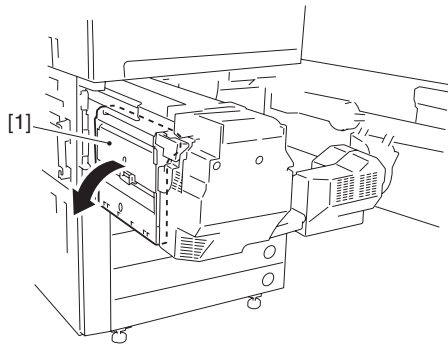
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Open the front door.
2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.10.2 Removing the Refresh Roller

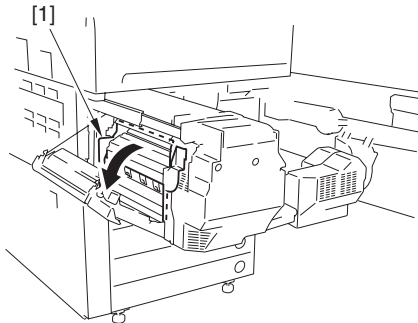
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

1) Open the external delivery cover [1].



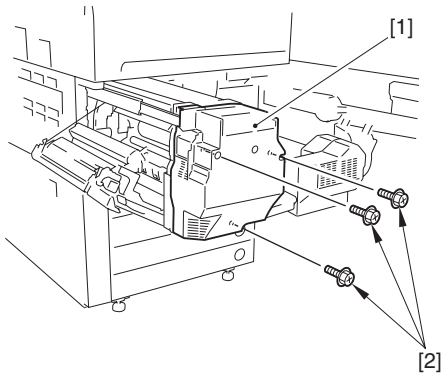
F-9-104

2) Open the internal delivery cover [1].



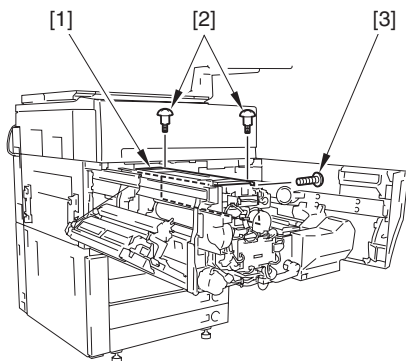
F-9-105

3) Detach the fixing front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



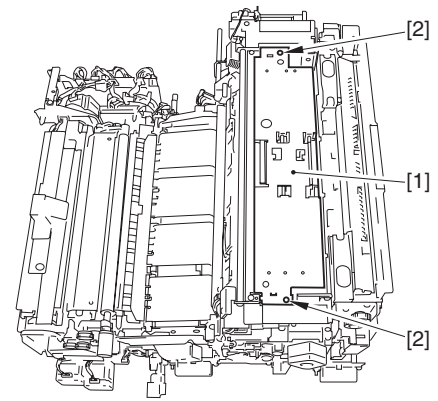
F-9-106

4) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
- 2 stepped screws [2]
- 1 screw [3]



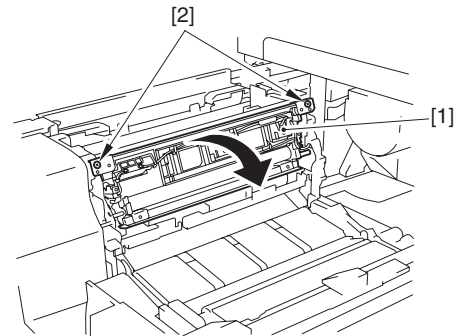
F-9-107

5) Remove the web roller unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]



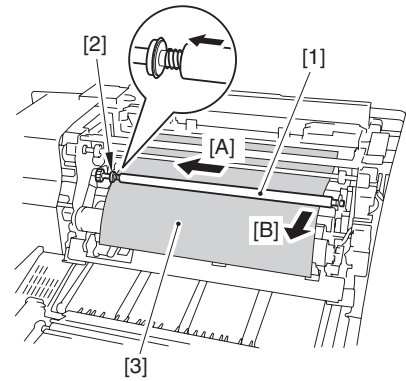
F-9-108

6) Pull out the external pressure roller assembly [1] in the direction of the arrow.
- 2 screws [2]



F-9-109

7) Shift the refresh roller unit [1] in the direction shown by [A], and slide it out in the direction shown by [B].
- 1 E-ring [2]

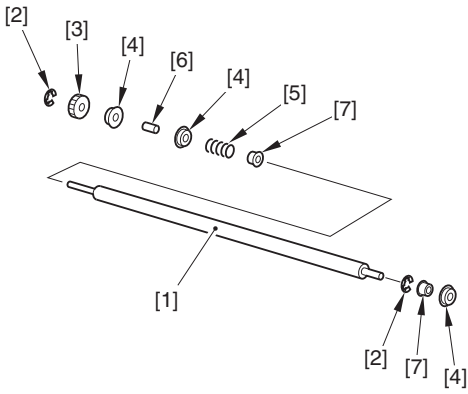


F-9-110

⚠ Be sure not to touch the refresh roller. Hold the gear or the bearing.

⚠ Points to Note when Attaching the Refresh Roller Unit
- Be sure to attach the refresh roller after removing the protection sheet. The protection sheet cannot be removed after attaching the refresh roller.
- Be sure to spread a sheet [3] beneath the fixing roller so as not to damage it. After attaching the refresh roller unit, draw the sheet [3] out.

8) Remove the refresh roller [1].
- 2 E-rings [2]
- 1 gear [3]
- 3 bearings [4]
- 1 spring [5]
- 1 spacer [6]
- 2 bushings [7]

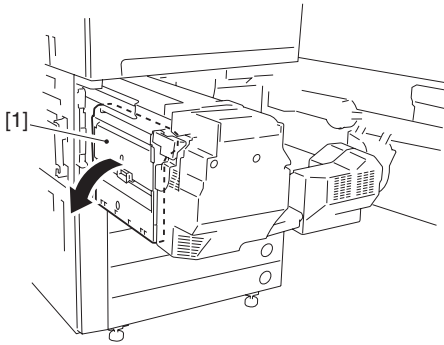


F-9-111

9.7.10.3 Removing the Refresh Roller

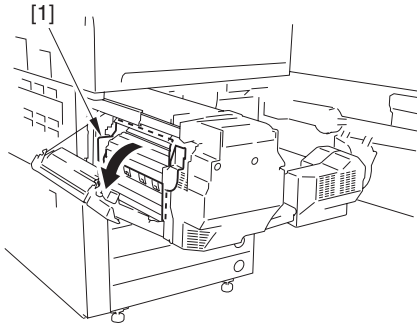
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Open the external delivery cover [1].



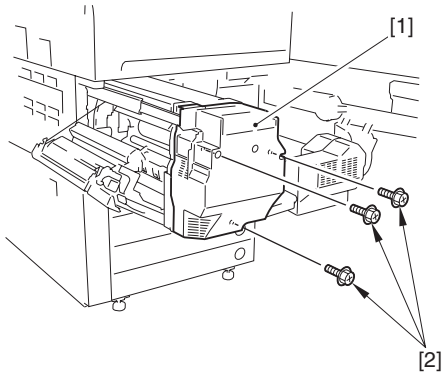
F-9-112

2) Open the internal delivery cover [1].



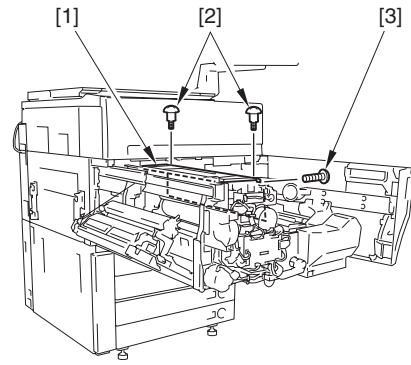
F-9-113

3) Detach the fixing front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



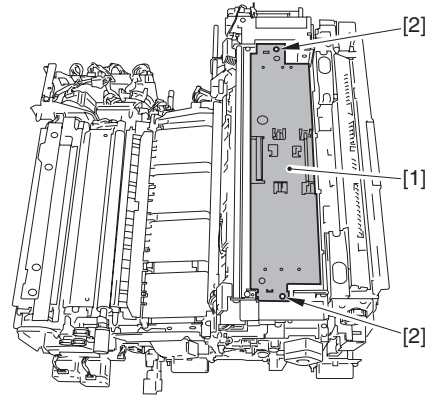
F-9-114

4) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
- 2 stepped screws [2]
- 1 screw [3]



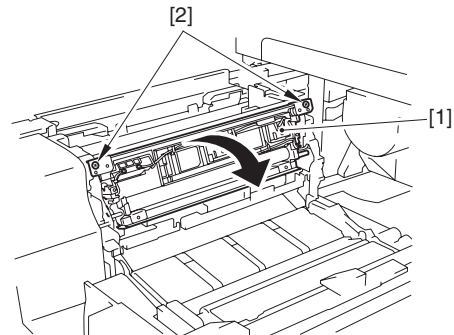
F-9-115

5) Remove the web roller unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]



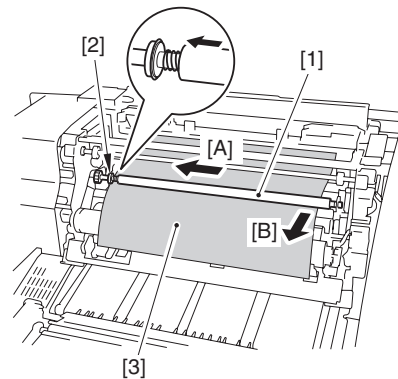
F-9-116

6) Pull out the external pressure roller assembly [1] in the direction of the arrow.
- 2 screws [2]



F-9-117

7) Shift the refresh roller unit [1] in the direction shown by [A], and slide it out in the direction shown by [B].
- 1 E-ring [2]



F-9-118



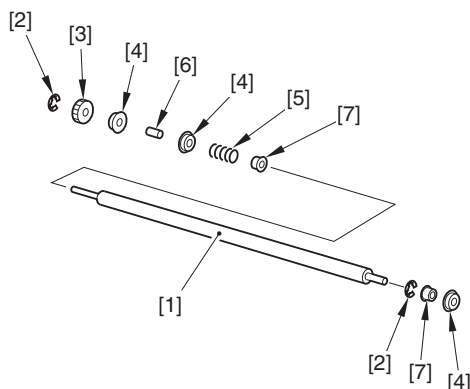
Be sure not to touch the refresh roller. Hold the gear or the bearing.

⚠ Points to Note when Attaching the Refresh Roller Unit

- Be sure to attach the refresh roller after removing the protection sheet. The protection sheet cannot be removed after attaching the refresh roller.
- Be sure to spread a sheet [3] beneath the fixing roller so as not to damage it. After attaching the refresh roller unit, draw the sheet [3] out.

8) Remove the refresh roller [1].

- 2 E-rings [2]
- 1 gear [3]
- 3 bearings [4]
- 1 spring [5]
- 1 spacer [6]
- 2 bushings [7]



F-9-119

9.7.11 Steering Roller

9.7.11.1 Preparation for Removing the Steering Roller

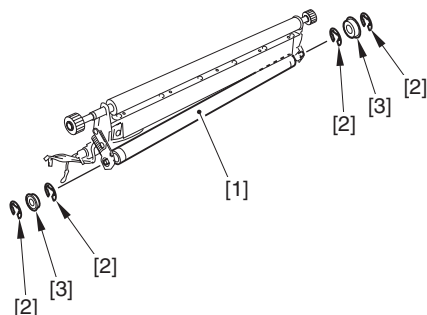
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.
- 3) Remove the fixing belt unit. (page 9-38) Reference [Removing the Fixing Belt Unit]
- 4) Remove the fixing belt. (page 9-42) Reference [Removing the Fixing Belt]

9.7.11.2 Removing the Steering Roller

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the steering roller [1].
 - 4 E-rings [2]
 - 2 gears [3]
 - 1 dowel pin [4]
 - 4 bearings [5]
 - 2 spacers [6]



F-9-120

9.7.12 Pressure Pad

9.7.12.1 Preparation for Removing the Pressure Pad

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

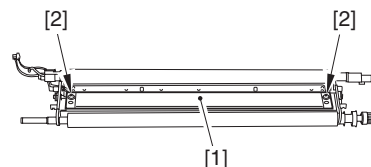
- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

- 3) Remove the fixing belt unit. (page 9-38) Reference [Removing the Fixing Belt Unit]
- 4) Remove the fixing belt. (page 9-42) Reference [Removing the Fixing Belt]
- 5) Remove the oil coating roller. (page 9-44) Reference [Removing the Oil Coating Roller]
- 6) Remove the pressure pad cover. (page 9-49) Reference [Removing the Pressure Pad Cover]

9.7.12.2 Removing the Pressure Pad

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

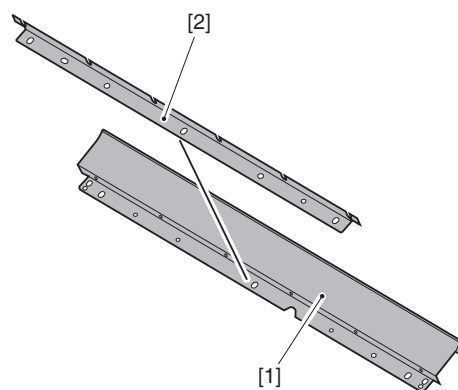
- 1) Remove the pressure pad [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



F-9-121

- 2) Detach the stopper plate [2] from the pressure pad [1].

MEMO:
When replacing the pressure pad, detach the stopper plate [2] from the pressure pad [1]. If the stopper plate [2] cannot be detached, replace the stopper plate (FC7-1842).



F-9-122

9.7.13 Pressure Pad Cover

9.7.13.1 Preparation for Removing the Pressure Pad Cover

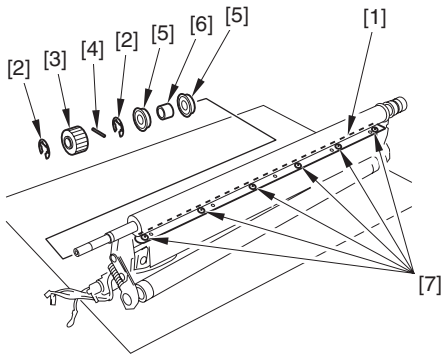
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.
- 3) Remove the fixing belt unit. (page 9-38) Reference [Removing the Fixing Belt Unit]
- 4) Remove the fixing belt. (page 9-42) Reference [Removing the Fixing Belt]
- 5) Remove the oil coating roller. (page 9-44) Reference [Removing the Oil Coating Roller]

9.7.13.2 Removing the Pressure Pad Cover

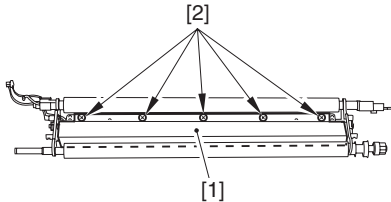
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the pressure pad cover support [1].
 - 2 E-rings [2]
 - 1 gear [3]
 - 1 dowel pin [4]
 - 2 bearings [5]
 - 1 spacer [6]
 - 6 screws [7]



F-9-123

- 2) Remove the pressure pad cover [1].
- 5 screws [2]



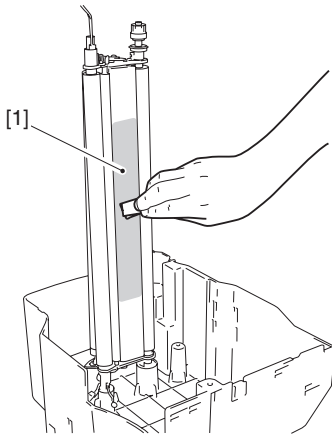
F-9-124

9.7.13.3 After Replacing the Pressure Pad Cover

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Before installing a belt, apply silicon oil (S-20; FY9-6011) to the marked area of the pressure pad cover (within the radius of about 200 mm from the center).

Apply silicon oil to the pressure pad cover, after soaking lint-free paper into the oil to the extent that the oil does not drip from the paper.



F-9-125

[1] pressure pad cover

9.7.14 Fixing Main Thermistor

9.7.14.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Main Thermistor

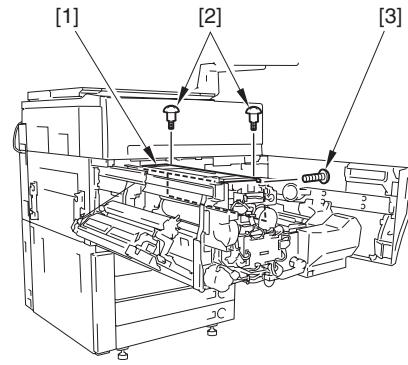
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.14.2 Removing the Fixing Main Thermistor

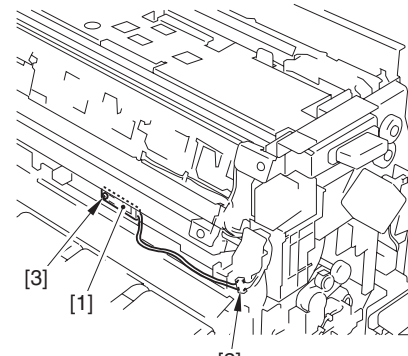
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
- 2 stepped screws [2]
- 1 screw [3]



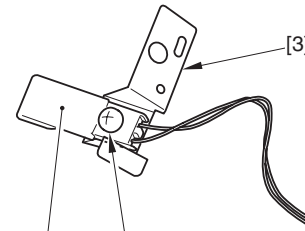
F-9-126

- 2) Remove the fixing main thermistor unit [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 1 screw [3]



F-9-127

- 3) Remove the fixing main thermistor [1].
- 1 screw [2]
- 1 mount [3]



F-9-128

9.7.15 Fixing Sub Thermistor

9.7.15.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Sub Thermistor

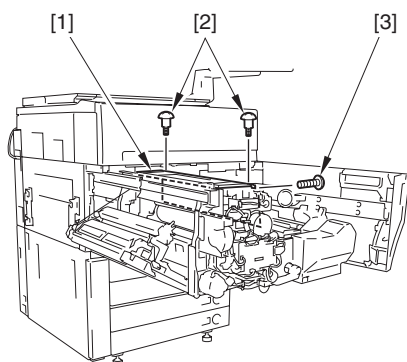
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.15.2 Removing the Fixing Sub Thermistor

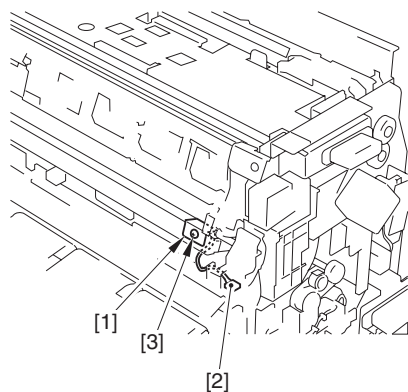
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the fixing upper cover [1].
- 2 stepped screws [2]
- 1 screw [3]



F-9-129

- 2) Remove the fixing sub thermistor [1].
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 1 screw [3]



F-9-130

9.7.16 Outside Heating Main Thermistor

9.7.16.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Main Thermistor

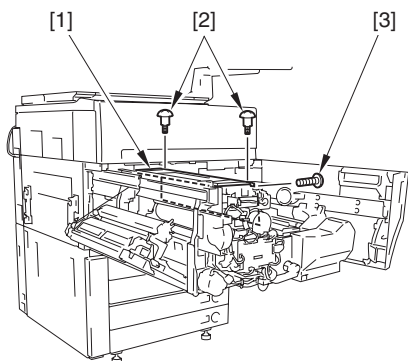
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.16.2 Removing the External Heat Main Thermistor

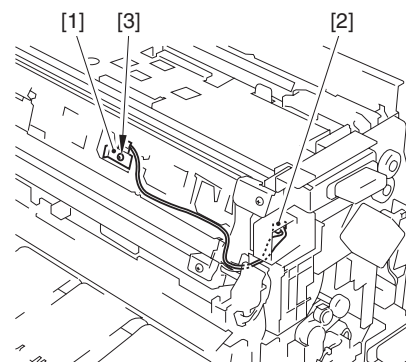
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
 - 2 stepped screws [2]
 - 1 screw [3]



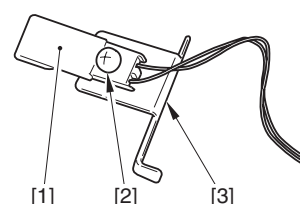
F-9-131

- 2) Remove the external heat main thermistor unit [1].
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 1 screw [3]



F-9-132

- 3) Remove the external heat main thermistor [1].
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 mount [3]



F-9-133

9.7.17 Outside Heating Sub Thermistor

9.7.17.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Sub Thermistor

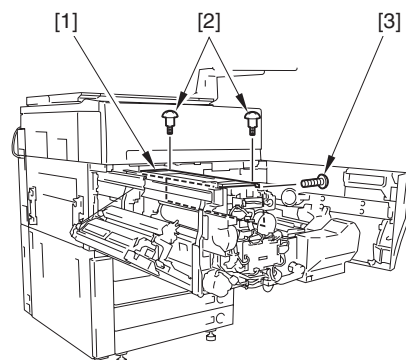
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.17.2 Removing the External Heat Sub Thermistor

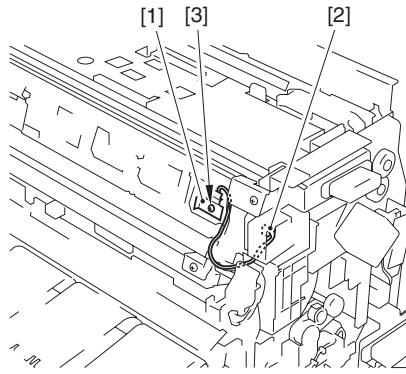
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
 - 2 stepped screws [2]
 - 1 screw [3]



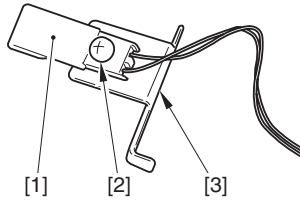
F-9-134

- 2) Remove the external heat sub thermistor unit [1].
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 1 screw [3]



F-9-135

- 3) Remove the external heat sub thermistor [1].
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 mount [3]



F-9-136

9.7.18 Inlet Thermistor

9.7.18.1 Preparation for Removing the Inlet Main Thermistor/Sub Thermistor

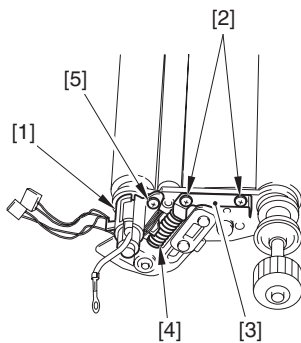
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.
- 3) Remove the fixing belt unit. (page 9-38) Reference [Removing the Fixing Belt Unit]
- 4) Remove the fixing belt. (page 9-42) Reference [Removing the Fixing Belt]

9.7.18.2 Removing the Inlet Main Thermistor/Sub Thermistor

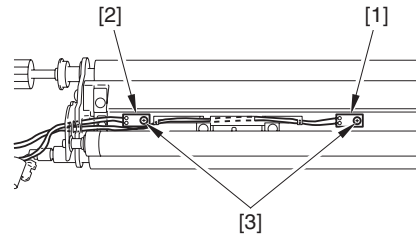
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the heater contact cover [1].
 - 2 screws (black) [2]
 - 1 mount [3]
 - 1 screw [4]
 - 1 screw (silver) [5]



F-9-137

- 2) Remove the inlet main thermistor [1] and the sub thermistor [2].
 - 2 screws [3]



F-9-138

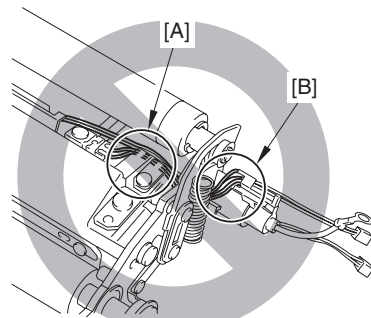
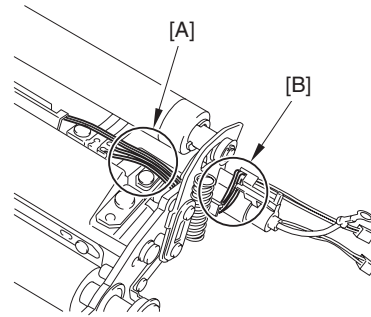


Be sure not to damage or break the steering roller overlapped with the inlet thermistor / inlet sub-thermistor when isolating it.



Points to Note When Mounting the Inlet Main Thermistor/Sub Thermistor

Make sure not to pinch harnesses to the areas [A] and [B] shown in the figure below.



F-9-139

9.7.19 Fixing Thermal Switch

9.7.19.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Thermal Switch

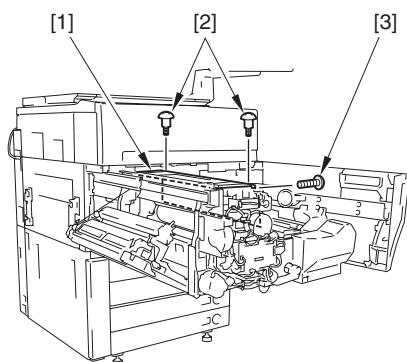
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.19.2 Removing the Fixing Thermal Switch

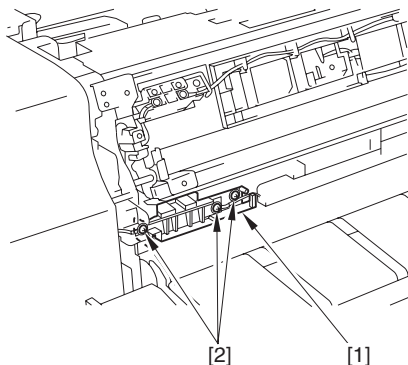
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
 - 2 stepped screws [2]
 - 1 screw [3]



F-9-140

- 2) Remove the fixing thermal switch unit [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-9-141

9.7.20 Thermal Switch

9.7.20.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Thermal Switch

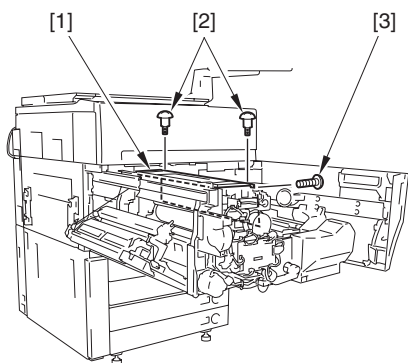
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.20.2 Removing the External Heat Thermal Switch

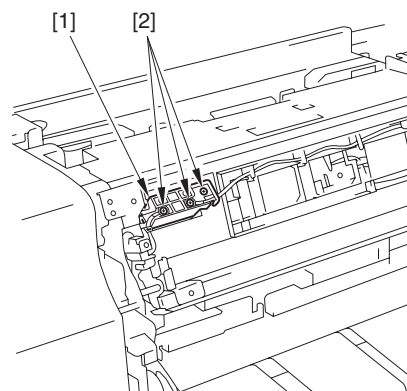
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
- 2 stepped screws [2]
- 1 screw [3]



F-9-142

- 2) Remove the external heat thermal switch unit [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-9-143

9.7.21 Fixing Belt Thermal Switch

9.7.21.1 Preparation for Removing the Belt Thermal Switch

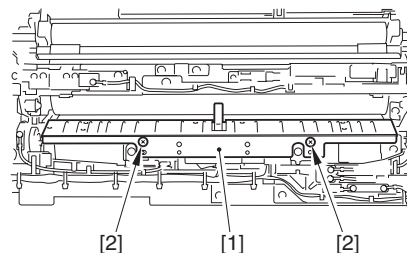
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.
- 3) Remove the fixing assembly unit. (page 9-35) Reference [Removing the Fixing Assembly Unit]

9.7.21.2 Removing the Belt Thermal Switch

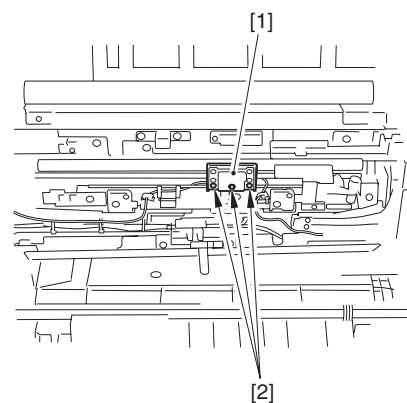
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the fixing inlet guide [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-9-144

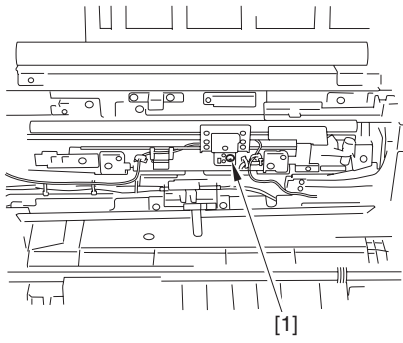
- 2) Remove the belt thermal switch unit [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-9-145



As for the belt thermal switch unit, do not remove it with the screw [1].



F-9-146

9.7.22 Fixing Main Heater/Fixing Sub Heater

9.7.22.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Main Heater/the Fixing Sub Heater

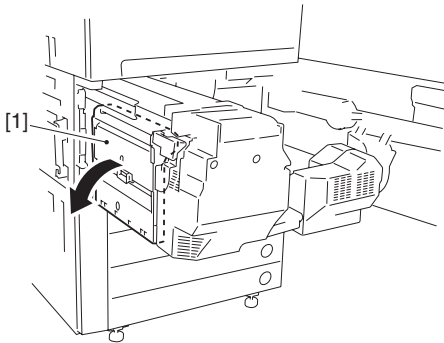
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.22.2 Removing the Fixing Main Heater/the Fixing Sub Heater

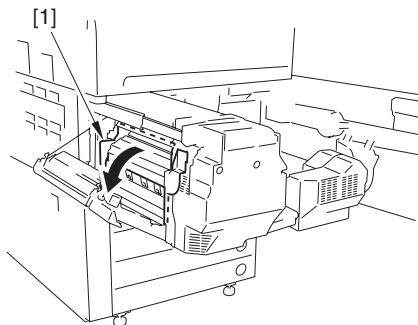
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the external delivery cover [1].



F-9-147

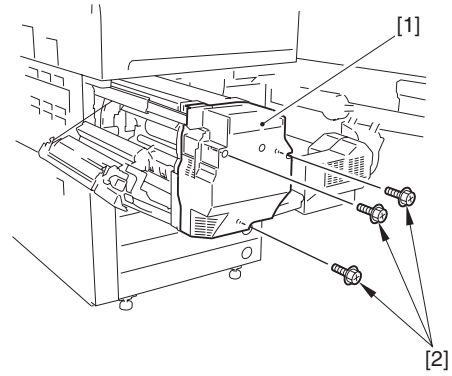
- 2) Open the internal delivery cover [1].



F-9-148

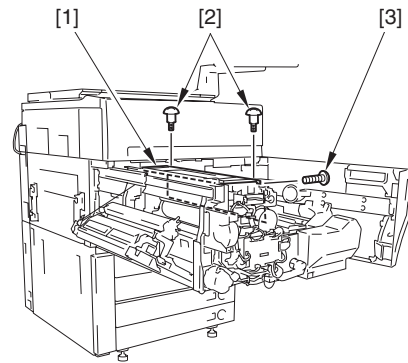
- 3) Detach the fixing front cover [1].

- 3 screws [2]



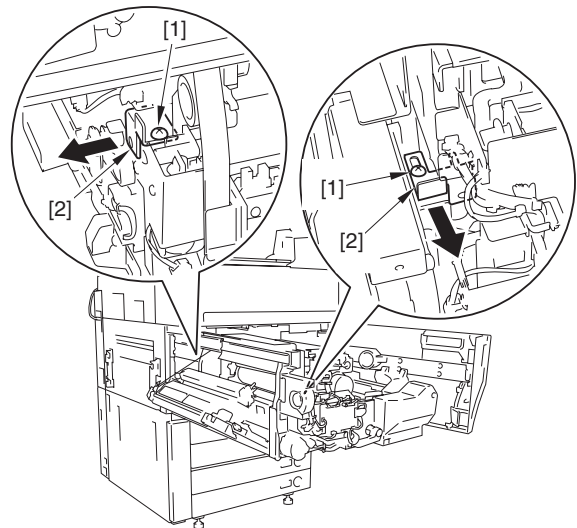
F-9-149

- 4) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
- 2 stepped screws [2]
 - 1 screw [3]



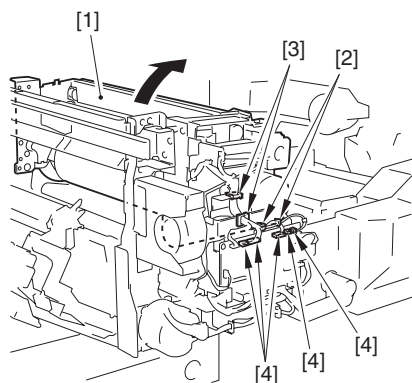
F-9-150

- 5) Move the 2 fixing upper unit mounts [1] in the direction of the arrow.
- 2 screws [2]



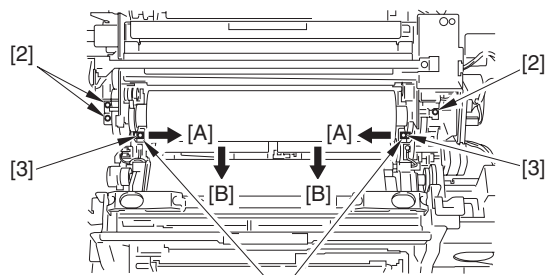
F-9-151

- 6) Open the fixing upper unit [1] in the direction of the arrow.
- 2 clamps [2]
 - 2 edge saddles [3]
 - 5 connectors [4]



F-9-152

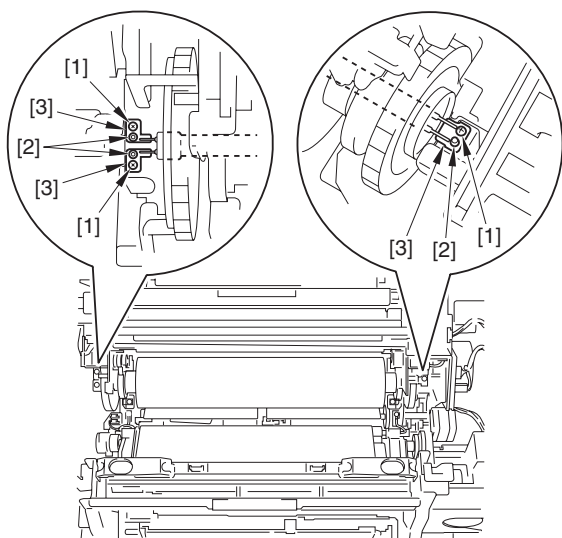
- 7) Move the 2 mounts [1] in the direction of the arrow [A] respectively, and then, remove them in the direction of the arrow [B].
- 3 fixing screws [2] of the fixing heater
 - 2 screws [3] (loosen)



F-9-153

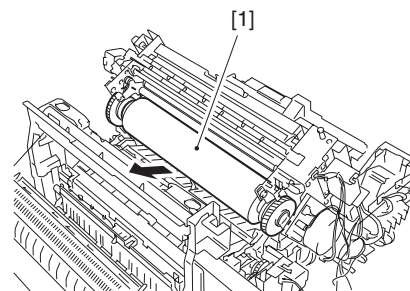


After removing 3 screws [1], make sure the three terminals [3] of the fixing main heater and the fixing sub-heater will be unattached to the three bosses [2]. Leaving the terminals attached to the bosses may cause the terminals to be damaged, when removing the fixing roller unit.



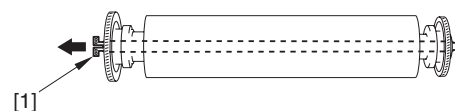
F-9-154

- 8) Remove the fixing roller unit [1] in the direction of the arrow.



F-9-155

- 9) From the fixing roller unit, remove the fixing main heater/fixing sub-heater [1] in the direction of the arrow.

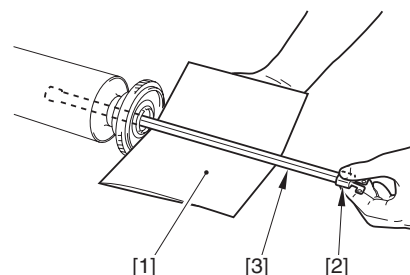


F-9-156



Points to Note when Attaching / Detaching the Fixing Main Heater / Fixing Sub-Heater

Hold the white part [2] of the fixing main heater and the fixing sub-heater [3] when handling them. To hold other parts of these heaters place a piece of paper [1] underneath them.



F-9-157

9.7.23 Inlet Heater

9.7.23.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Belt Inlet Heater

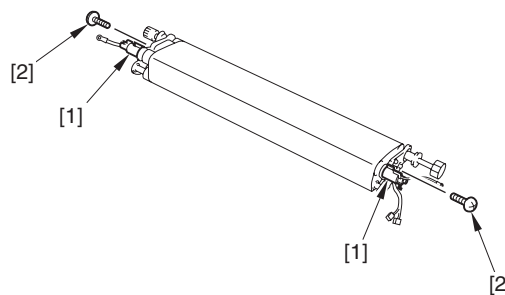
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.
- 3) Remove the fixing belt unit. (page 9-38) Reference [Removing the Fixing Belt Unit]

9.7.23.2 Removing the Fixing Belt Inlet Heater

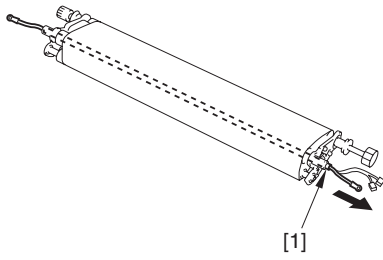
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the 2 heater fixing holders [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-9-158

- 2) Pull out the fixing belt inlet heater [1] in the direction of the arrow.



F-9-159

9.7.24 Fixing Locking Heater

9.7.24.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heater

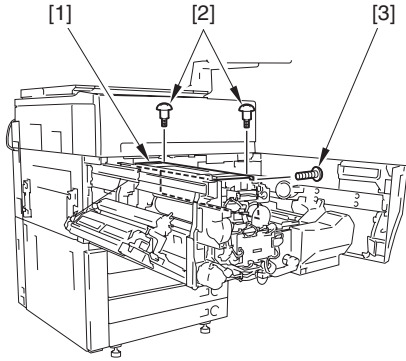
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.24.2 Removing the External Heater

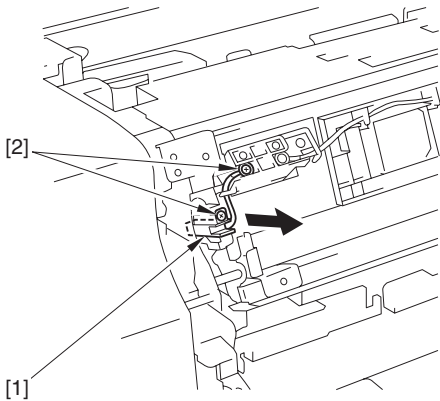
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
 - 2 stepped screws [2]
 - 1 screw [3]



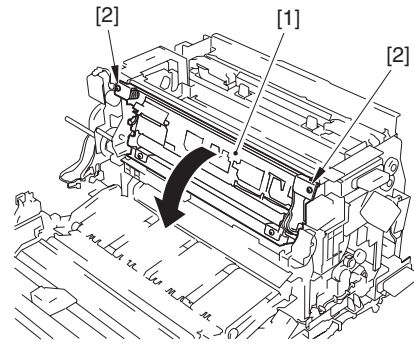
F-9-160

- 2) Remove the harness guide [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



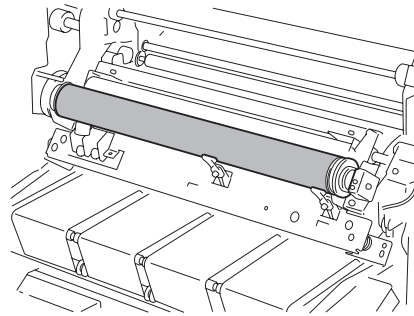
F-9-161

- 3) Pull out the external pressure roller assembly [1] in the direction of the arrow.
 - 2 screws [2]



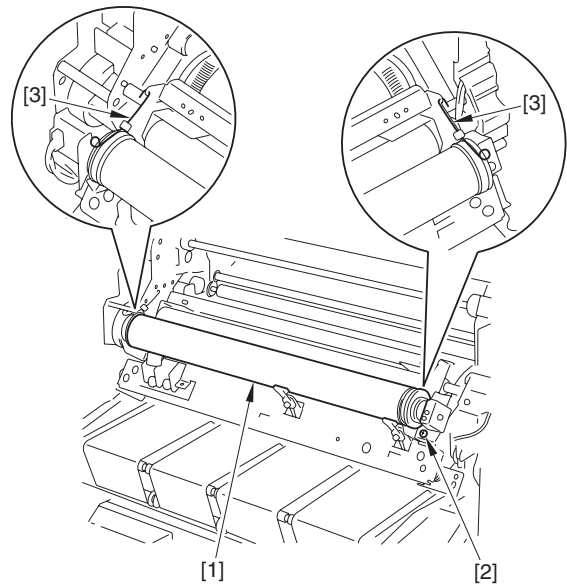
F-9-162

⚠ Points to Note When Removing/Mounting the External Heater
 In the case of removing/mounting the external heater, take care not to scratch the surface of the roller as indicated in the figure below.



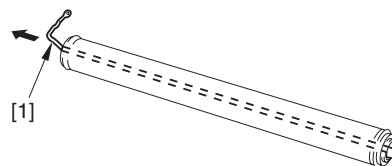
F-9-163

- 4) Remove the external heat roller unit [1].
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 2 springs [3]



F-9-164

- 5) Pull out the external heater [1] in the direction of the arrow.



F-9-165

9.7.25 Fixing Web

9.7.25.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web

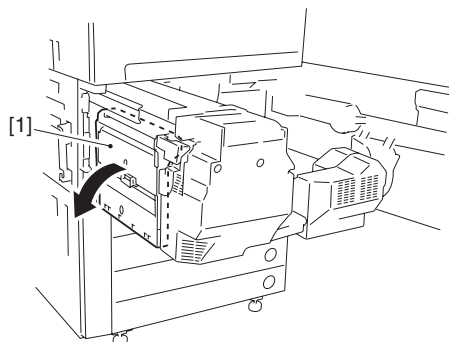
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.25.2 Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web

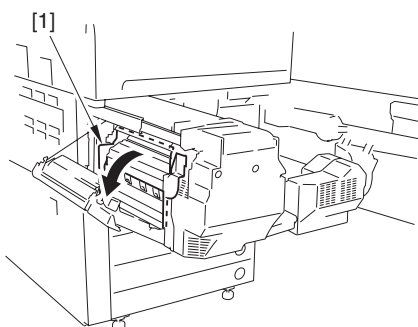
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

- 1) Open the external delivery cover [1]



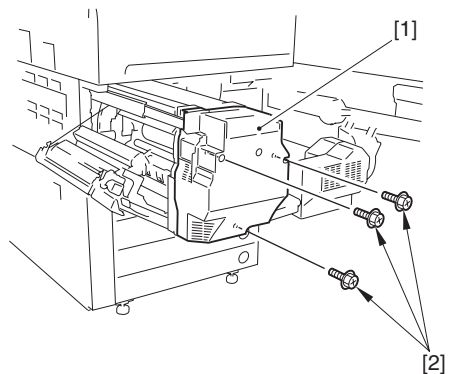
F-9-166

- 2) Open the internal delivery cover [1].



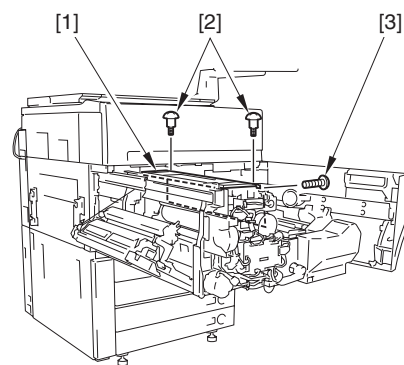
F-9-167

- 3) Detach the fixing front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



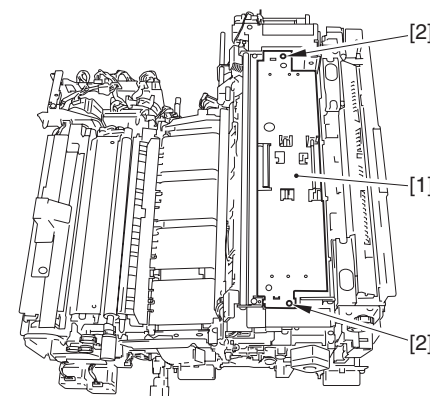
F-9-168

- 4) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].
- 2 stepped screws [2]
- 1 screw [3]



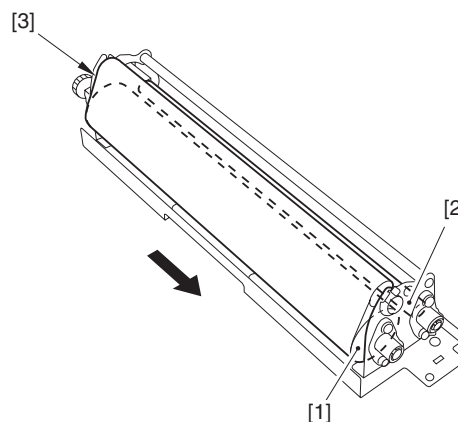
F-9-169

- 5) Remove the web roller unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-9-170

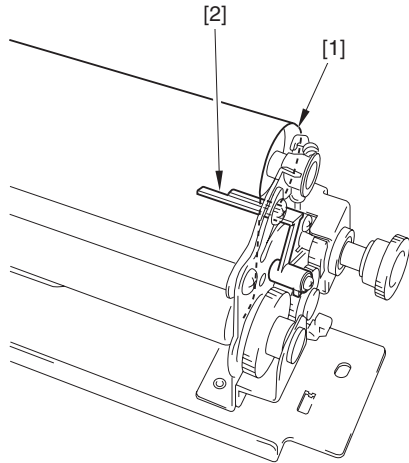
- 6) While pushing the web feed roller [1] and the web take-up roller [2] in the direction of the arrow, remove the fixing cleaning web [3].



F-9-171

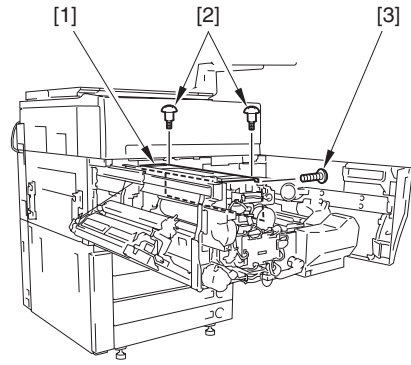
⚠ Points to Note When Mounting the Fixing Cleaning Web

- Make sure to mount the fixing cleaning web to follow the orientation shown in the figure.
- Make sure to make the mutual positions of the fixing cleaning web [1] and the web length detection arm [2] as in the figure.
- Make sure not to make slack of the fixing cleaning web.



F-9-172

- 2 stepped screws [2]
- 1 screw [3]



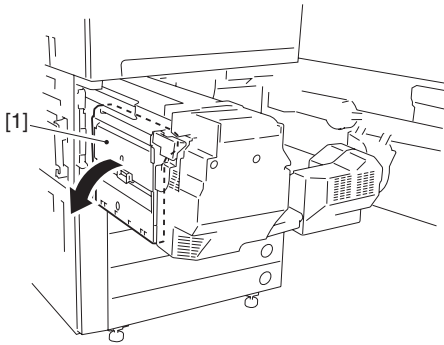
F-9-176

- 5) Remove the web roller unit [1].
- 2 screws [2]

9.7.25.3 Removing the Fixing Cleaning Web

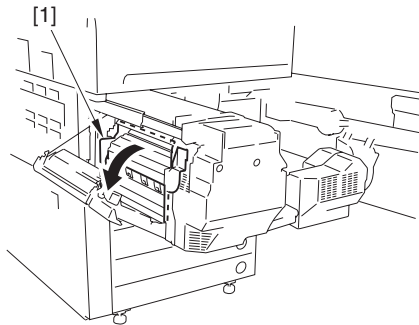
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the external delivery cover [1]



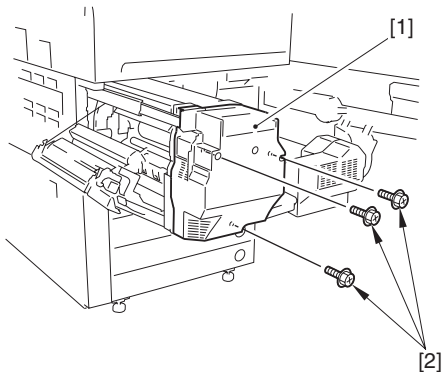
F-9-173

- 2) Open the internal delivery cover [1].



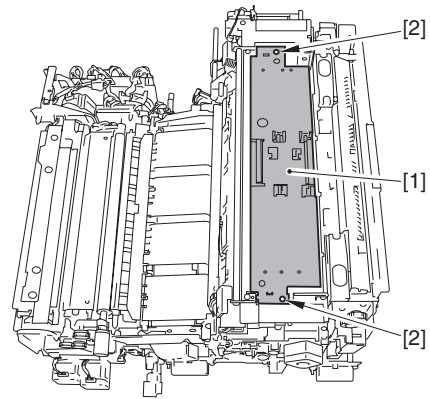
F-9-174

- 3) Detach the fixing front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



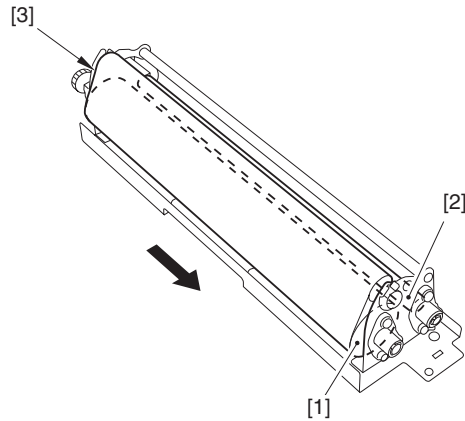
F-9-175

- 4) Detach the fixing upper cover [1].



F-9-177

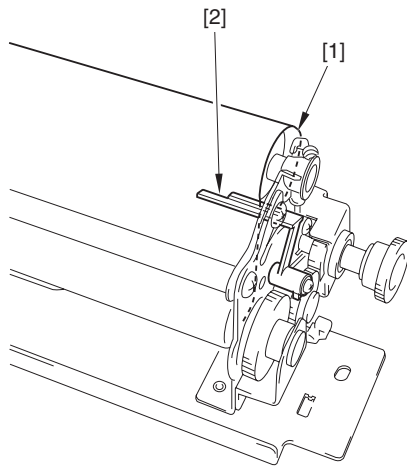
- 6) While pushing the web feed roller [1] and the web take-up roller [2] in the direction of the arrow, remove the fixing cleaning web [3].



F-9-178

⚠ Points to Note When Mounting the Fixing Cleaning Web

- Make sure to mount the fixing cleaning web to follow the orientation shown in the figure.
- Make sure to make the mutual positions of the fixing cleaning web [1] and the web length detection arm [2] as in the figure.
- Make sure not to make slack of the fixing cleaning web.



F-9-179

9.7.25.4 After Replacing the Fixing Cleaning Web

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Set the value clear '0' for the following service counters.
 - COPIER> COUNTER> DRBL-1> FX-WEB

9.7.26 Insulating Bush

9.7.26.1 Preparation for Removing the Insulating Bush

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

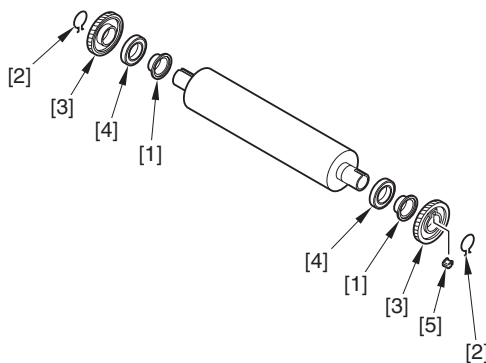
- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.
- 3) Remove the fixing main heater/fixing sub heater. (page 9-54)Reference [Removing the Fixing Main Heater/the Fixing Sub Heater]

9.7.26.2 Removing the Insulating Bush

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the 2 insulating bushes [1].
 - 2 C-rings [2]
 - 2 gears [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]
 - 1 holder [5]

▲ Points to Note When Mounting the Insulating Bush
 The orientation for mounting the insulating bushes is specified. Make sure to mount according to the figure below.

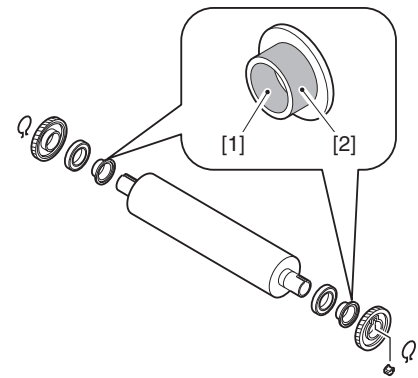


F-9-180

9.7.26.3 After Replacing the Insulating Bush

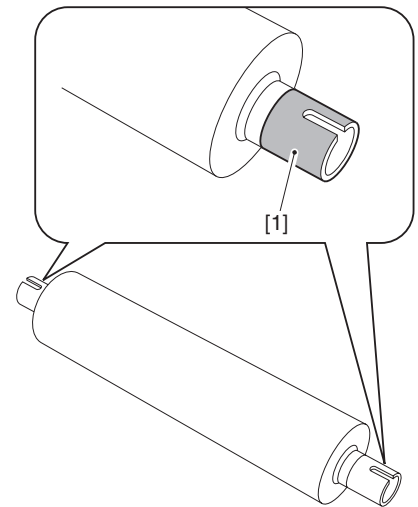
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- Apply grease (Molykote HP-300; CK-8012) to the inner diameter area [1] and the outer diameter area [2] of the bushings for about 20 mg, so that to make white coating in assigned areas.
 Purpose: to avoid abnormal sound



F-9-181

- Make sure to wipe off the excessive grease because the grease adheres to the both edges [1] of the fixing roller when mounting the greased bushes to the fixing roller.



F-9-182

9.7.27 Outside Heat Insulating Bush

9.7.27.1 Preparation for Removing the External Heat Insulating Bush

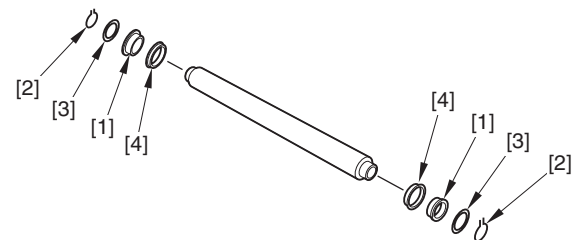
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.
- 3) Remove the external heater. (page 9-56)Reference [Removing the External Heater]

9.7.27.2 Removing the External Heat Insulating Bush

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the External Heat Insulating Bush [1].
 - 2 C-rings [2]
 - 2 washer [3]
 - 2 bearings [4]

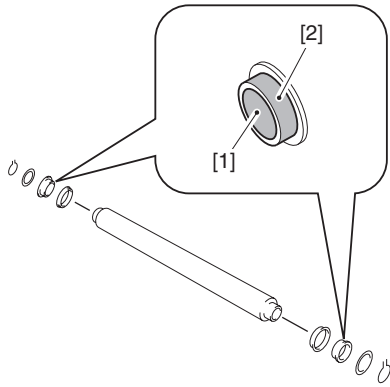


F-9-183

9.7.27.3 When Replacing the External Heat Insulating Bush

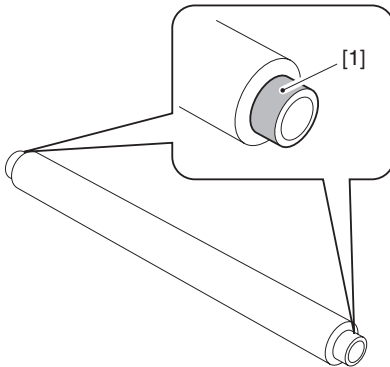
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- Apply grease (Molykote HP-300; CK-8012) to the inner diameter area [1] and the outer diameter area [2] of the bushings for about 20 mg, so that to make white coating in assigned areas.
Purpose: to avoid abnormal sound



F-9-184

- Make sure to wipe off the excessive grease because the grease adheres to the both edges [1] of the external heat roller when mounting the greased bushes to the external heat roller.



F-9-185

9.7.28 Lower Separation Claw

9.7.28.1 Preparation for Removing the Lower Separation Plate

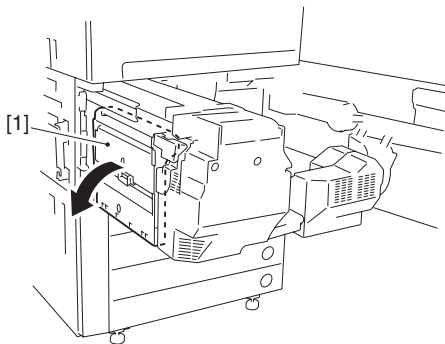
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.28.2 Removing the Lower Separation Plate

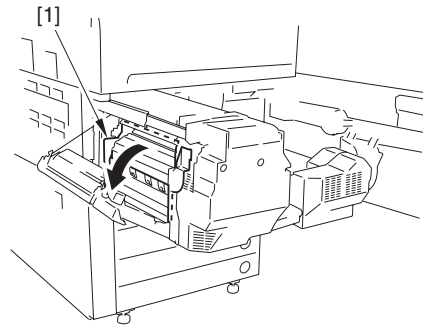
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the external delivery cover [1].



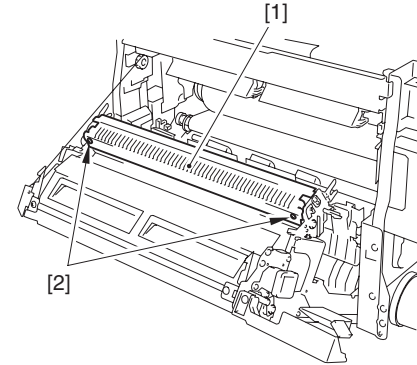
F-9-186

- 2) Open the internal delivery cover [1].



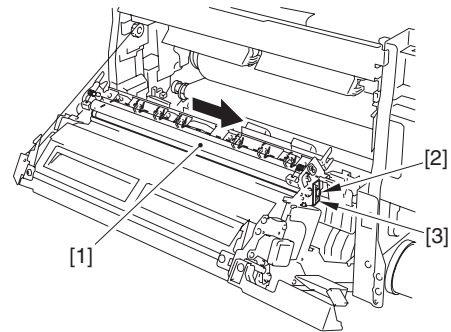
F-9-187

- 3) Detach the internal delivery roller cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



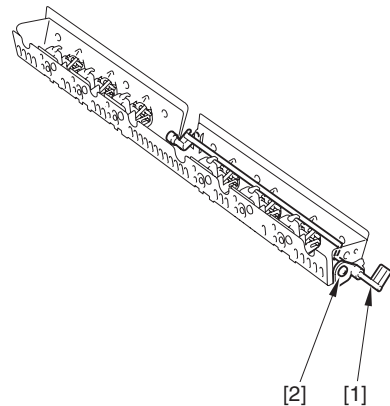
F-9-188

- 4) Remove the lower separation plate unit [1] in the direction of the arrow.
- 1 screw [2]
- 1 mount [3]



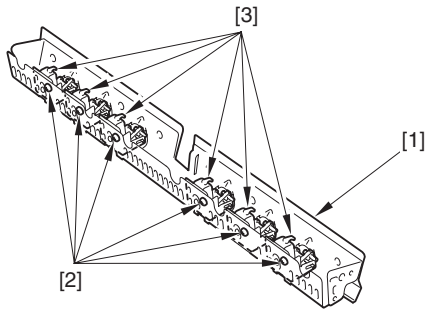
F-9-189

- 5) Remove the flag unit [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-9-190

- 6) Detach the lower separation plate [1].
- 6 screws [2]
- 6 separation claws [3]



F-9-191

9.7.29 Delivery Upper Separation Plate

9.7.29.1 Preparation for Removing the Upper Separation Plate

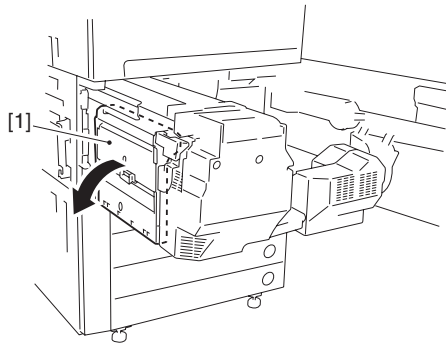
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front door.
- 2) Pull out the fixing/feeding unit toward you.

9.7.29.2 Detaching the Upper Separation Plate

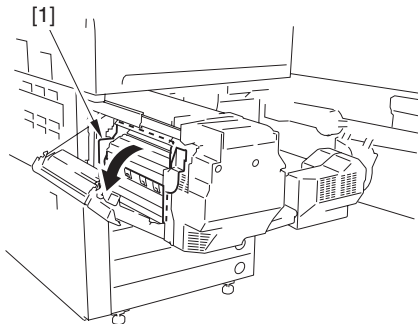
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the external delivery cover [1].



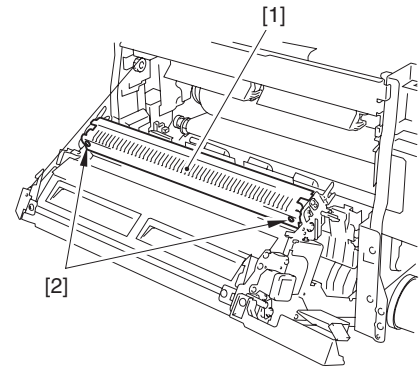
F-9-192

- 2) Open the internal delivery cover [1].



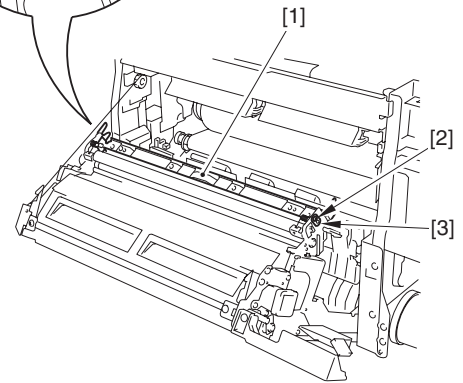
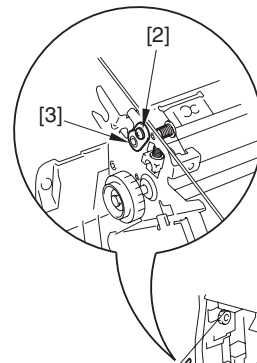
F-9-193

- 3) Detach the internal delivery roller cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



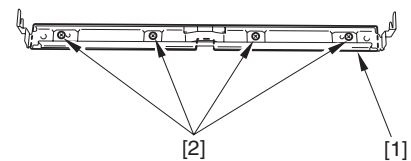
F-9-194

- 4) Remove the upper separation plate unit [1].
- 2 screws [1]
- 2 fixing pins [3]



F-9-195

- 5) Detach the upper separation plate [1].
- 4 screws [2]



F-9-196

Chapter 10 Externals and Controls

Contents

10.1 Control Panel.....	10-1
10.1.1 Overview.....	10-1
10.1.2 LCD Function.....	10-1
10.1.3 Contrast Adjusting Function.....	10-1
10.1.4 Function of Control Panel CPU.....	10-1
10.2 Counters.....	10-1
10.2.1 Overview.....	10-1
10.2.2 Count increment timing.....	10-3
10.3 Fans.....	10-3
10.3.1 Fan.....	10-3
10.3.2 Sequence of Fan Operation.....	10-5
10.4 Power Supply.....	10-6
10.4.1 Power Supply.....	10-6
10.4.1.1 Overview of Power Supply.....	10-6
10.4.2 Protection Function.....	10-8
10.4.2.1 Protective Functions.....	10-8
10.4.3 Backup Battery.....	10-8
10.4.3.1 Backup Battery.....	10-8
10.4.4 Energy-Saving Function.....	10-8
10.4.4.1 Overview.....	10-8
10.4.4.2 SNMP setup.....	10-10
10.5 Parts Replacement Procedure.....	10-11
10.5.1 External Covers.....	10-11
10.5.1.1 Front Cover.....	10-11
10.5.1.1.1 Front Cover Opening.....	10-11
10.5.1.2 Upper Right Cover.....	10-11
10.5.1.2.1 Removing the Right Upper Cover.....	10-11
10.5.1.3 Right Lower Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.3.1 Preparation for Removing the Right Lower Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.3.2 Removing the Right Lower Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.4 Right Rear Upper Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.4.1 Removing the Right Rear Upper Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.5 Right Rear Lower Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.5.1 Removing the Right Rear Lower Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.6 Upper Left Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.6.1 Preparation for Removing the Left Upper Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.6.2 Removing the Left Upper Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.7 Left Lower Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.7.1 Removing the Left Lower Cover.....	10-12
10.5.1.8 Left Middle Cover.....	10-13
10.5.1.8.1 Preparation for Removing the Left Middle Cover.....	10-13
10.5.1.8.2 Removing the Left Middle Cover.....	10-13
10.5.1.9 Left Rear Cover (Upper).....	10-13
10.5.1.9.1 Removing the Left Rear Upper Cover.....	10-13
10.5.1.10 Left Rear Cover (Lower).....	10-14
10.5.1.10.1 Removing the Left Rear Lower Cover.....	10-14
10.5.1.11 Rear Upper Cover.....	10-14
10.5.1.11.1 Removing the Rear Upper Cover.....	10-14
10.5.1.12 Rear Lower Cover.....	10-14
10.5.1.12.1 Removing the Rear Lower Cover.....	10-14
10.5.1.13 Toner Replacement Cover.....	10-15
10.5.1.13.1 Toner Replacement Cover Opening.....	10-15
10.5.1.14 Process Unit Cover.....	10-15

10.5.1.14.1 Preparation for Removing the Process Unit Cover.....	10-15
10.5.1.14.2 Removing the Process Unit Cover.....	10-15
10.5.2 Hopper Drive Unit	10-15
10.5.2.1 Preparation for Pulling Up/Removing the Hopper Unit	10-15
10.5.2.2 Pulling the Hopper Unit Up.....	10-15
10.5.2.3 Pulling the Hopper Unit Up.....	10-17
10.5.2.4 Removing the Hopper Unit.....	10-18
10.5.2.5 Removing the Hopper Unit.....	10-20
10.5.3 DC Power Supply Unit	10-22
10.5.3.1 Preparation for Removing the Power Supply Assembly	10-22
10.5.3.2 Removing the Power Supply Assembly	10-22
10.5.4 Sub DC Power Supply	10-22
10.5.4.1 Preparation for Removing the Sub DC Power Supply	10-22
10.5.4.2 Removing the Sub DC Power Supply.....	10-22
10.5.5 Control Panel	10-23
10.5.5.1 Removing the Control Panel.....	10-23
10.5.6 DC Controller PCB	10-25
10.5.6.1 Preparation for Removing the DC Controller PCB	10-25
10.5.6.2 Removing the DC Controller PCB	10-25
10.5.6.3 After Replacing the DC controller PCB	10-26
10.5.7 Leakage Breaker	10-26
10.5.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Leakage Breaker.....	10-26
10.5.7.2 Removing the Leakage Breaker.....	10-26
10.5.8 DC/DC Converter PCB.....	10-27
10.5.8.1 Preparation for Removing RD-DC-DC PCB.....	10-27
10.5.8.2 Removing the RD-DC-DC PCB.....	10-27
10.5.9 High-Voltage Box Unit.....	10-27
10.5.9.1 Preparation for Removing the High-Voltage Box Unit.....	10-27
10.5.9.2 Removing the High-Voltage Box Unit.....	10-27
10.5.9.3 Removing the High-Voltage Box Unit.....	10-28
10.5.10 HV1 PCB	10-29
10.5.10.1 Preparation for Removing the HV1 PCB Unit	10-29
10.5.10.2 Removing the HV1 PCB Unit	10-29
10.5.11 HV3 PCB	10-30
10.5.11.1 Preparation for Removing the HV3 PCB	10-30
10.5.11.2 Removing the HV3 PCB.....	10-30
10.5.12 HV5 PCB	10-30
10.5.12.1 Preparation for Removing the HV5 PCB	10-30
10.5.12.2 Removing the HV5 PCB.....	10-30
10.5.13 HV8 PCB	10-31
10.5.13.1 Preparation for Removing the HV8 PCB	10-31
10.5.13.2 Removing the HV8 PCB.....	10-31
10.5.14 Fixing Driver PCB	10-31
10.5.14.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Driver PCB	10-31
10.5.14.2 Removing the Fixing Driver PCB	10-31
10.5.15 Feeding Driver PCB.....	10-32
10.5.15.1 Preparation for Removing the Feeding Driver PCB.....	10-32
10.5.15.2 Removing the Feeding Driver PCB.....	10-32
10.5.16 AC Driver PCB.....	10-33
10.5.16.1 Preparation for Removing the AC Driver PCB	10-33
10.5.16.2 Removing the AC Driver PCB	10-33
10.5.17 Pickup Driver PCB	10-33
10.5.17.1 Preparation for Removing the Pick-Up Driver PCB	10-33
10.5.17.2 Removing the Pick-Up Driver PCB.....	10-33
10.5.18 Decurler Driver PCB.....	10-34
10.5.18.1 Removing the Decurler Driver PCB.....	10-34
10.5.19 Side Driver PCB	10-34
10.5.19.1 Preparation for Removing the Side Driver PCB.....	10-34
10.5.19.2 Removing the Side Driver PCB.....	10-34
10.5.20 Backside Driver Cover.....	10-35

10.5.20.1 Preparation for Removing the Backside Driver PCB	10-35
10.5.20.2 Removing the Backside Driver PCB.....	10-35
10.5.21 Primary Suction Fan	10-35
10.5.21.1 Removing the Air Filter	10-35
10.5.22 Ozone Filter (Right).....	10-36
10.5.22.1 Removing the Ozone Filter (Right).....	10-36
10.5.23 Ozone Filter (Left)	10-36
10.5.23.1 Preparation for Removing the Ozone Filter (Left).....	10-36
10.5.23.2 Removing the Ozone Filter (Left).....	10-36
10.5.24 Ozone Filter (Upper Left)	10-36
10.5.24.1 Preparation for Removing the Ozone Filter (Left Upper).....	10-36
10.5.24.2 Removing the Ozone Filter (Left Upper).....	10-36
10.5.25 Ozone Filter (Lower Left).....	10-37
10.5.25.1 Removing the Ozone Filter (Left Lower)	10-37
10.5.26 Ozone Filter (Rear)	10-37
10.5.26.1 Removing the Ozone Filter (Rear).....	10-37
10.5.27 Ozone Filter (Lower Rear).....	10-37
10.5.27.1 Removing the Ozone Filter (Rear Lower)	10-37
10.5.28 Toner Filter (Right).....	10-38
10.5.28.1 Removing the Toner Filter (Right)	10-38
10.5.29 Toner Filter (Left)	10-38
10.5.29.1 Preparation for Removing the Toner Filter (Left).....	10-38
10.5.29.2 Removing the Toner Filter (Left).....	10-38
10.5.30 Toner Filter (Rear)	10-39
10.5.30.1 Removing the Toner Filter (Rear).....	10-39

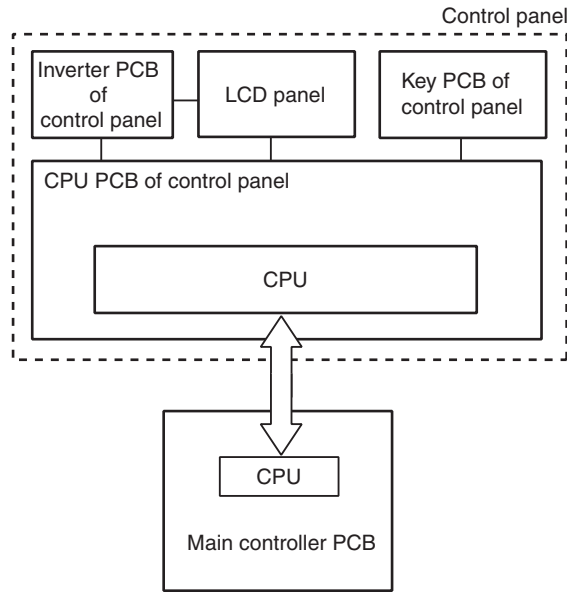
10.1 Control Panel

10.1.1 Overview

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The control panel of this machine consists of the PCBs, the LCD, and the touch panel described in the figure below. The followings show major functions of this machine:

- LCD function
- Contrast adjusting function
- Touch switch input function
- Hard key input function



F-10-1

10.1.2 LCD Function

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The CPU on the main controller PCB gives data (display information) to the CPU PCB of the control panel according to the program. The given data is sent to the color LCD via CPU PCB of the control panel.

10.1.3 Contrast Adjusting Function

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

There is the density adjustment volume (VR6801) on the numeric key PCB so that users can adjust contrast on LCD screen.

10.1.4 Function of Control Panel CPU

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- Key input monitoring
Transmits the numeric key/function key inputs to the CPU on main controller PCB.
- Touch panel input monitoring
Transmits the key input on touch panel to the CPU on main controller PCB.
- Buzzer sound control
- Control panel LED activation control

MEMO:

The main controller executes the color LCD drive, and the control panel CPU relays the drive signal.

10.2 Counters

10.2.1 Overview

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The device is equipped with counters that count pages according to printer type. The counters can be displayed by pressing the appropriate keys on the control panel. The table below shows the factory settings by region for each counter.

T-10-1

Model	Counter 1	Counter 2	Counter 3	Counter 4	Counter 5	Counter 6	Counter 7	Counter 8
100V (*1)	Total 1	Total (BW 1)	Copy (Full colour + mono-colour/ 1)	Copy (Full colour + mono-colour/ 1)	(Default not displayed) Service mode variable	(Default not displayed) Service mode variable	(Default not displayed) Service mode variable	(Default not displayed) Service mode variable
	101	108	232	324	0	0	0	0
120V (*2)	Total 1	Total (BW 1)	Copy (Full colour + mono-colour/ large)	Copy (Full colour + mono-colour/ small)	Print (Full colour + mono-colour/ large)	Print (Full colour + mono-colour/ small)	(Default not displayed) Service mode variable	(Default not displayed) Service mode variable
	101	108	229	230	321	322	0	0
230V General (*3)	Total 1	Total (BW 1)	Copy + print (Full colour/ large)	Copy + print (Full colour/ small)	Total (Mono-colour 1)	Total (Duplex)	(Default not displayed) Service mode variable	(Default not displayed) Service mode variable
	101	108	401	402	118	114	0	0
240V EUR (*4)	Total 1	Total (Full colour + mono-colour/ large)	Total (Full colour + mono-colour/ small)	Total (BW/ large)	Total (BW/ small)	Scan (Total 1)	(Default not displayed) Service mode variable	(Default not displayed) Service mode variable
	101	122	123	112	113	501	0	0
240V CA (*5)	Total 1	Total (BW 1)	Copy (Full colour + mono-colour/ large)	Copy (Full colour + mono-colour/ small)	Print (Full colour + mono-colour/ large)	Print (Full colour + mono-colour/ small)	(Default not displayed) Service mode variable	(Default not displayed) Service mode variable
	101	108	229	230	321	322	0	0

Explanation of descriptions

- Large: large size paper (paper exceeds 364 mm in feeding direction / count increment x 1)

- Small: small size paper (paper is less than 364 mm in feeding direction)

- Total: count increment x 1 in All (C + P)

- Duplex: count increment x 1 in automatic duplex copy

The three digit numbers in the counter columns are the settings found in the following service mode.

COPIER > OPTION > USER > COUNTER1 to 6

(For details, refer to the above item in the Service Mode section.)



Settings can be changed for other counter modes in service mode. (In 120/130V models, all counter settings can be changed.)

Middle order (printer assembly)

*1:F14-6211

*2:F14-6231

*3:F14-6241

*4:F14-6291

*5:F14-6261

10.2.2 Count increment timing

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The count increment timing differs according to whether printing is single sided or duplex and whether there is a finisher mounted.

1. Single sided print, duplex second page

Count increment for single sided print and the second page of duplex print takes place when the following sensors detect that the trailing edge of the paper has exited the device.

T-10-2

Conditions	Sensor
No finisher	Paper exit sensor (PS15)
With finisher	Finisher paper exit sensor

2. Duplex first page

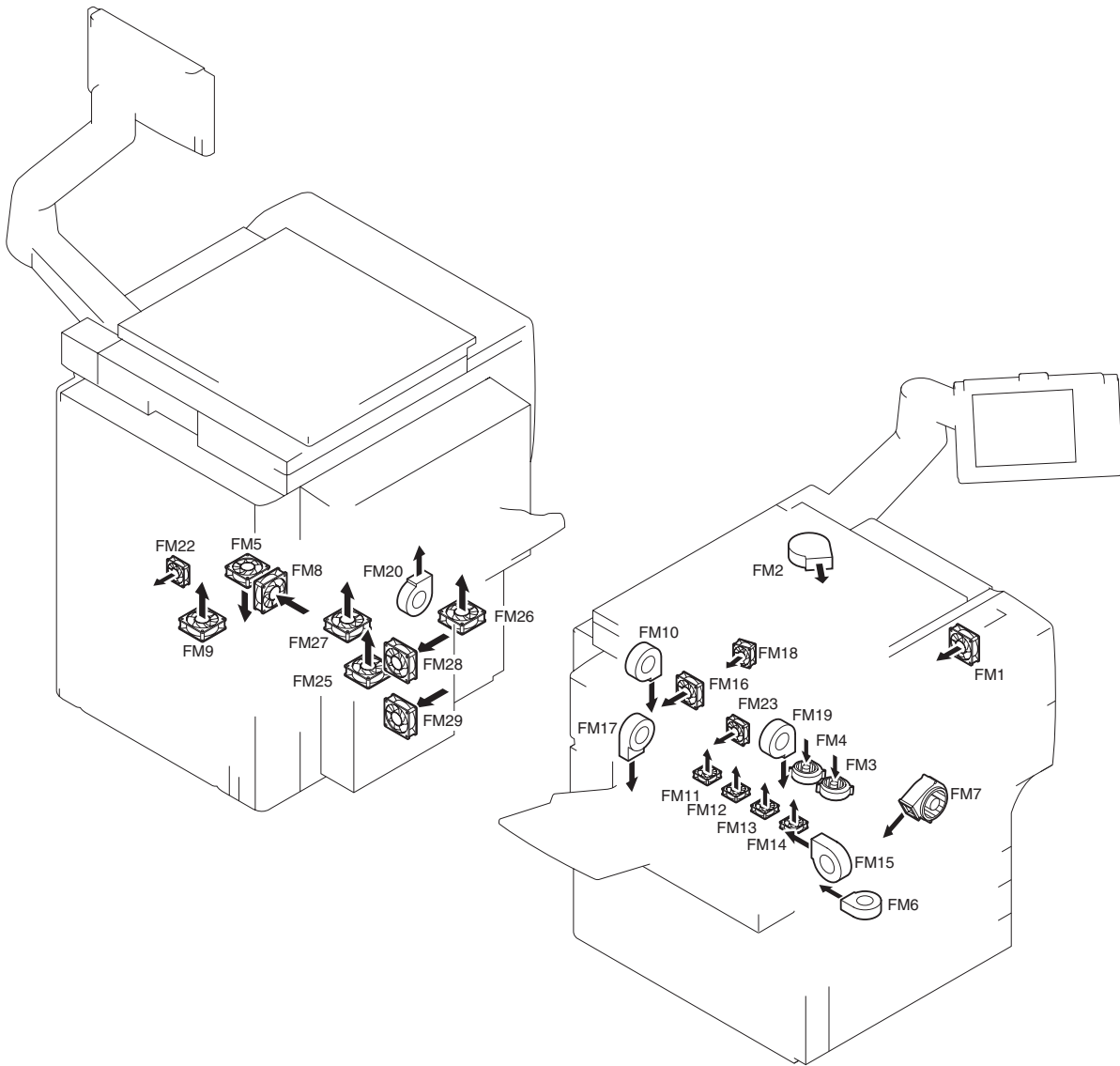
The count is incremented when, with the duplex left sensor (PS19) ON, the printing of the first page of the duplex print is judged finished.

10.3 Fans

10.3.1 Fan

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The fan configuration and the wind direction are shown in the following figure. Name and function of each fan are shown in the following table.



F-10-2
T-10-3

Number	Symbol	Name	Function	Filter	2-speed control	E-code/Alarm code
[1]	FM1	Primary Charging Inspiration Fan	Inspiration from outside to the primary charging assembly	YES	YES	E824-0000
[2]	FM2	Primary Exhaust Fan	Exhaust from the primary charging assembly	YES	YES	E824-0001
[3]	FM3	Feeding Fan 1	Attach a paper on the feeding belt	NO	NO	33-0014
[4]	FM4	Feeding Fan 2	Attach a paper on the feeding belt	NO	NO	33-0015
[5]	FM5	Fixing Exhaust Fan	Exhaust heat generated from the fixing assembly to outside	YES	YES	E805-0004
[6]	FM6	Fixing Lower Front Fan	Cool the fixing assembly	NO	NO	E805-000A
[7]	FM7	ITB Cleaning Cooling Fan	Cool the delivered paper	NO	YES	E820-0003
[8]	FM8	Controller Fan	Cool within the controller box	NO	NO	
[9]	FM9	Power Supply Fan	Exhaust heat from the power supply unit	NO	NO	E804-000B
[10]	FM10	Delivery Cooling Fan 1	Cool the delivery block	NO	YES	E805-000C
[11]	FM11	Fixing Belt Cooling Fan 1	Cool the fixing belt	NO	NO	E805-000E
[12]	FM12	Fixing Belt Cooling Fan 2	Cool the fixing belt	NO	NO	E805-000F
[13]	FM13	Fixing Belt Cooling Fan 3	Cool the fixing belt	NO	NO	E805-0010

Number	Symbol	Name	Function	Filter	2-speed control	E-code/Alarm code
[14]	FM14	Fixing Belt Cooling Fan 4	Cool the fixing belt	NO	NO	E805-0011
[15]	FM15	Reversing Cooling Fan	Cool the reversing block	NO	YES	E805-0012
[16]	FM16	Left Exhaust Fan		YES	YES	E805-0015
[17]	FM17	Fixing Lower Rear Fan	Cool the fixing assembly	NO	YES	E805-0014
[18]	FM18	Primary Exhaust Assist Fan		NO	YES	E824-0002
[19]	FM19	Delivery Cooling Fan 2	Cool the delivery block	NO	YES	E805-000D
[20]	FM20	Reversing Cooling Fan 2	Cool the reversing block	NO	YES	E805-0013
[21]	FM22	Rear Fan		YES	YES	E805-0006
[22]	FM23	Fixing Upper Exhaust Fan	Cool the fixing assembly	YES	YES	E805-0007
[23]	FM25	Optional Power Supply Fan	Cool the optional power supply	NO	NO	E804-0016
[24]	FM26	Sub DC Power Supply Fan	Cool the sub DC power supply	NO	NO	E804-0017
[25]	FM27	decurler cooling fan	cool the decurler block	NO	NO	E805-0005
[26]	FM28	air intake fan 1	air cleaning of external area of the machine	YES	NO	
[27]	FM29	air intake fan 2	air cleaning of external area of the machine	YES	NO	

10.3.2 Sequence of Fan Operation

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

	Main Power Switch ON					Control Panel Power Switch OFF		Main Power Switch OFF
	Warm-up	Warm-up Rotation	Print	Standby	Jam	Power-Saving Mode	Sleep Mode	
Primary Charging Inspiration (FM1)		*1	*1	*1	*1	*1	*2	
Primary Exhaust Fan (FM2)							*2	
Feeding Fan 1 (FM3)			*3					
Feeding Fan 2 (FM4)			*3					
Fixing Exhaust Fan (FM5)	*4	*4					*2	
Fixing Lower Front Fan (FM6)								
ITB Cleaning Cooling Fan (FM7)	*5	*5					*2	
Controller Fan (FM8)								
Power Supply Fan (FM9)								
Delivery Cooling Fan 1 (FM10)			*6					
Fixing Belt Cooling Fan 1 (FM11)			*7	*8				
Fixing Belt Cooling Fan 2 (FM12)			*7	*8				
Fixing Belt Cooling Fan 3 (FM13)			*7	*8				
Fixing Belt Cooling Fan 4 (FM14)			*7	*8				
Reversing Cooling Fan (FM15)			*6					
Left Exhaust Fan (FM16)							*2	
Fixing Lower Rear Fan (FM17)								
Primary Exhaust Assist Fan (FM18)							*2	
Delivery Cooling Fan 2 (FM19)			*6					
Reversing Cooling Fan 2 (FM20)			*6					
Rear Fan (FM22)	*4	*4					*2	
Fixing Upper Exhaust Fan(FM23)	*4	*4					*2	
Optional Power Supply Fan (FM25)								
Sub DC Power Supply Fan (FM26)								

: Normal speed rotation
 : Half speed rotation

F-10-3

- *1: Half speed rotation under the high temperature and high humidity environment.
- *2: Half speed rotation for 55 min after a job, after the occurrence of jam, or after the service automatic adjustment.
- *3: Normal speed rotation only at the normal speed mono color print.
- *4: - Normal speed rotation if the fixing temperature is 50 deg C and above.
 - Half speed rotation if the fixing temperature is 50 deg C and below and the outside heating roller temperature is 100 deg C and above.
 - No rotation if the fixing temperature is 50 deg C and below and the outside heating roller temperature is 100 deg C and below.
- *5: Normal speed rotation only when the fixing temperature is 50 deg C and above.
- *6: Depending on the interval sequence between sheets, the normal speed/half speed rotation may be switched.
- *7: Normal speed rotation if the fixing temperature is 100 deg C and above with 1/3 speed print / adjustment print.
- *8: Normal speed rotation only if the fixing temperature is 100 deg C and above.

10.4 Power Supply

10.4.1 Power Supply

10.4.1.1 Overview of Power Supply

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

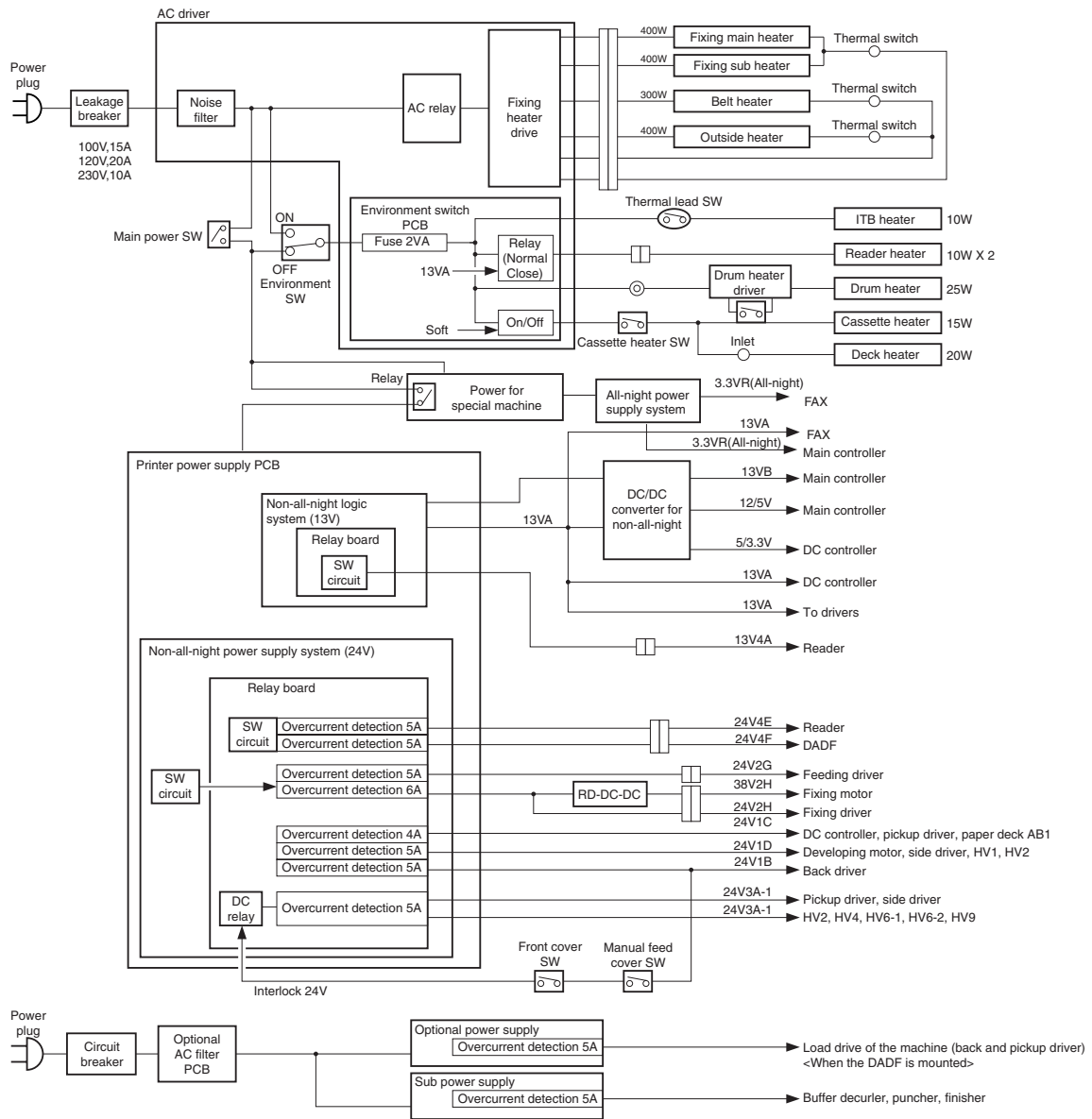
The DC power of the machine is supplied from the printer power supply PCB. The power of accessories is also supplied from the printer power supply PCB. The function of each PCB and distribution of power supply are as follow:

T-10-4

Name	Function
All-night power supply PCB	Supply power to the main controller.
Printer power supply PCB (DC power supply PCB + DC power relay PCB)	Generate the DC power supply (24V and 13V systems). Supply DC power to the controller power supply PCB, DC controller PCB, pickup driver PCB, fixing driver PCB, high-voltage power supply PCB, reader, finisher, side deck, and FAX board.
AC driver PCB	Supply AC power to the printer power supply PCB, fixing heater drive, and each environment heater.

Name	Function
Environment switch PCB	Turn ON/OFF the power for the drum heater, ITB heater, reader heater (*1), cassette heater (*2), and deck heater (*1).
DC/DC converter PCB 1	Supply DC power to the main controller PCB and DC controller PCB.
Main power switch	Turn ON/OFF the AC power for the printer power supply PCB.
Door switch	Turn ON/OFF the 24 V power for the interlock system.
Leakage breaker	Block the power supply at the time of power failure.
Circuit breaker	Block the power supply at the time of sub power failure. (overcurrent)
Sub power supply	Supply power to the buffer decurler, punch unit, and finisher.
Optional power supply	Supply power to the back driver, pickup driver, and paper deck AB when ADF is added.
AC filter	Supply AC power to the sub power supply and optional power supply.

*1: 100V/230V: optional, 120V: not available
 *2: 100V: standard, 230V: optional, 120V: not available



F-10-4

Operation mode		Main power SW OFF	Deep sleep	Shallow sleep	Low power (& power saving)	Door open	Fixing error	Print (*2)
Main power switch		OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON
All-night	3.3VR	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON
Non-all-night	13VA	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON
	13VB	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON
	13V4A	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
	24V1x	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
	24V2x	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
	24V3x (DC relay)	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	ON
	24V4x	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
	AC relay	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	ON
	Sub power supply (24V)	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
Optional power supply (24V) *1	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON	

*1: When the DADF is mounted.

*2: The same can be said at the time of standby, warm-up, and recovery.

10.4.2 Protection Function

10.4.2.1 Protective Functions

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The machine's DC power supply PCB and those of its accessories are equipped with protective functions against excess current and voltage, which will automatically cut off the output voltage in response to an error power condition (caused, for example, by a short-circuit on a load).

If any of these protective mechanism has gone on, turn off the main power switch of the printer unit, and remove the cause of activation; then, leave the machine alone for about 3 min, and turn its power back on to reset it.

10.4.3 Backup Battery

10.4.3.1 Backup Battery

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The SRAM PCB and the DC controller PCB of the machine's main controller PCB are equipped with a lithium battery (1 pc. each) serving as a backup source of power in the event of a power shortage or when the power plug is removed.

SRAM PCB	manganese dioxide lithium battery (3 V, 100 mAh)
DC controller PCB	lithium battery (3 V, 6000 mAh)
Life	10 yr or more (true of both; with power plug removed)
Replacement	not possible in the field on its own.



RIСК OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE.

DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

Do not use a battery which is not of a type specifically indicated (same name, or equivalent).

Dispose of any used battery according to the instructions of its manufacturer.

10.4.4 Energy-Saving Function

10.4.4.1 Overview

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Standby Mode

The machine is in operation or is ready to start operation, with all its loads supplied with power.

2. Power Save Mode

The machine decreases the control temperature while the fixing assembly is in a standby state according to the selected power save rating (variable through 'change power save mode' in user mode; default: -10%), thus decreasing the power consumption.

Conditions Initiating a Shift from Standby Mode (standby -> power save)

-
- press on the Power Save key
- Conditions Initiating a Shift Back to Standby Mode (power save -> standby)
- press on the Power Save key
 - press on the control panel power switch

3. Low Power Mode

The machine keeps the temperature of the fixing assembly low (100 deg C), with the reader unit and the printer unit supplied with a reduced level of power.

Conditions Initiating a Shift from Standby/Power Save Mode (standby -> low power)

- after a specific period of time in standby/power save mode (variable through 'low power mode shift interval'; default: 15 min)

Conditions Initiating a Shift Back to Standby Mode (low power -> standby)

- press on Power Save key
- press on control panel power switch

MEMO:

If the same setting is used for both 'low power mode shift interval' and 'auto sleep time', a shift is made to sleep mode if a specific period of time passes from a standby state (i.e., no shift takes place to low power mode).

4. Sleep Mode

The machine's sleep mode consists of 'sleep mode 1' (high rate of power saving in sleep) and 'sleep mode 3' (low rate of power saving in sleep), and the selection of one over the other depends on how the machine is set and the presence/absence of paper.

Conditions Initiating a Shift (standby/power save/low power -> sleep)

- The machine remains in a standby state for a specific period of time (variable through 'auto sleep time' in user mode; default: 60 min).
- The control panel power switch is turned off while the machine is in a standby state.

When a condition has occurred activating a shift to a sleep state, the machine drives the heat discharge fan for a specific period of time (6 min) to cool the inside of the machine and then enters sleep mode.

Conditions Initiating Standby Mode (sleep -> standby)

- press on the control panel power switch

5. Power-Off Mode

The machine enters and remains in power-off mode when its main power switch is turned off.

To return from power-off mode, the machine's main power switch must be turned on, in response to which it will automatically return to standby mode.

10.4.4.2 SNMP setup

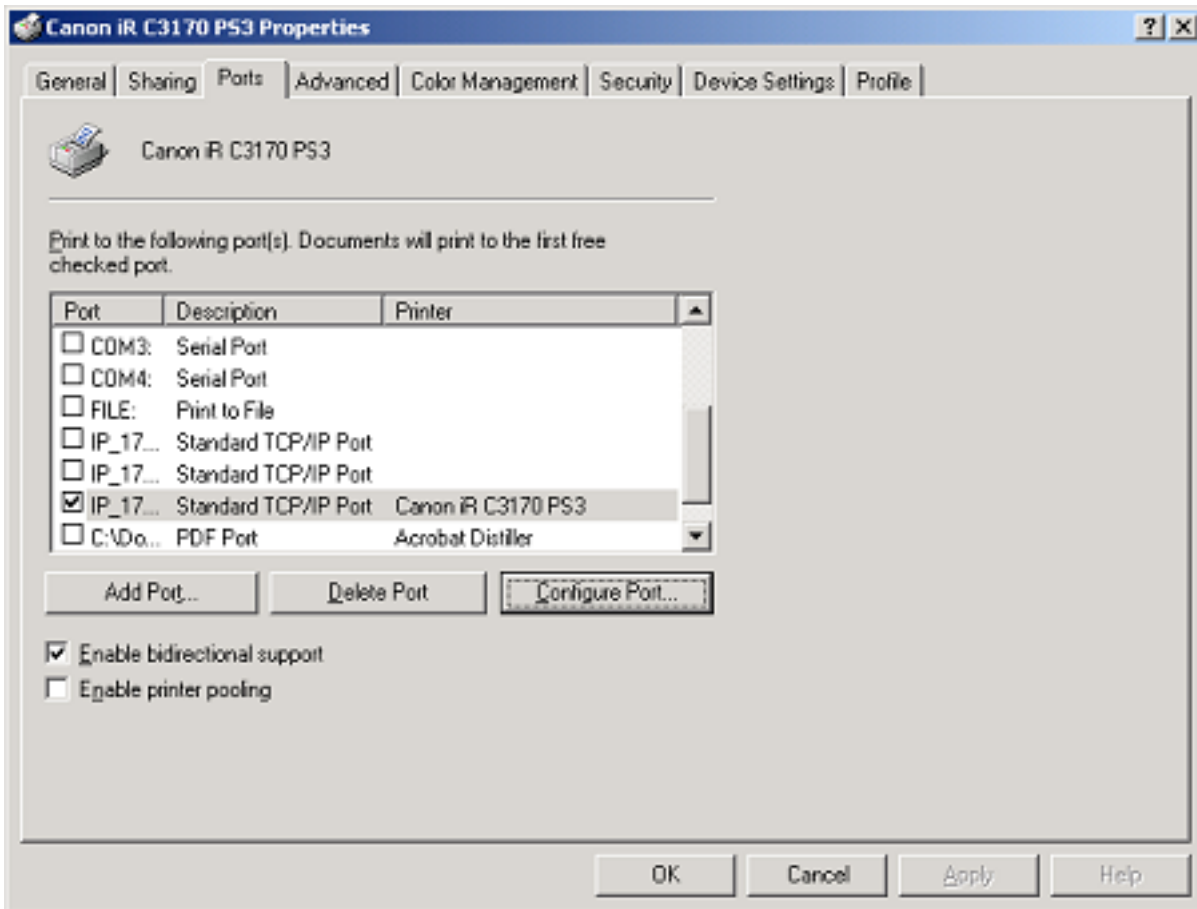
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

When the machine is used as a Windows printer, enabling 'Use SNMP' causes the operating system to collect machine status information at specific intervals, preventing the machine from starting a sleep state.

To avoid the situation, disable the setting (Windows' printer properties).

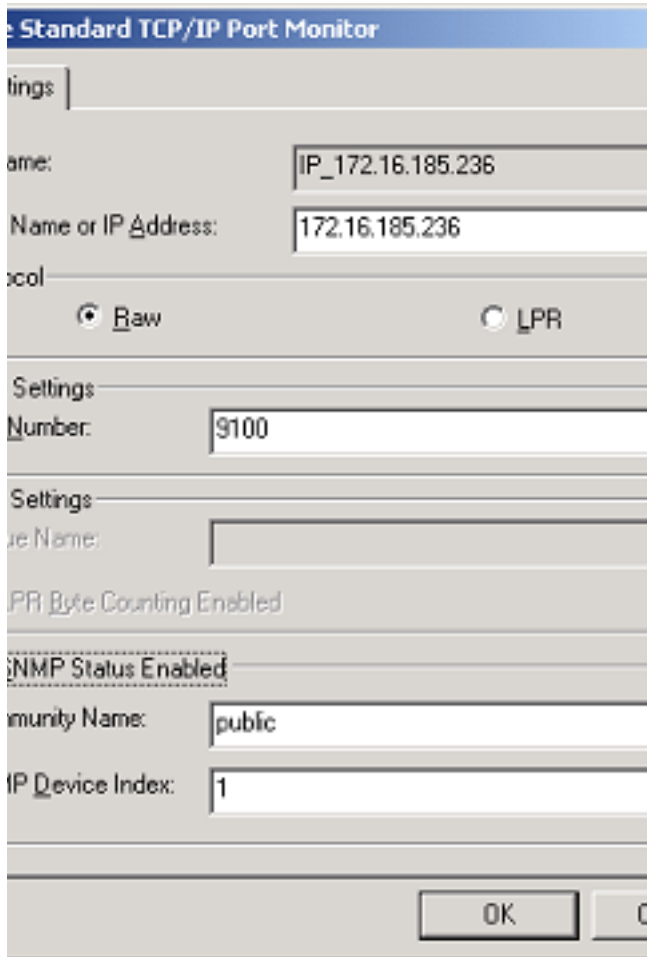
-Disabling 'Use SNMP'

1) Select 'Configure Port' on the Ports screen (printer properties).



F-10-5

2) Remove the check mark from 'SNMP Status Enabled'.



F-10-6

10.5 Parts Replacement Procedure

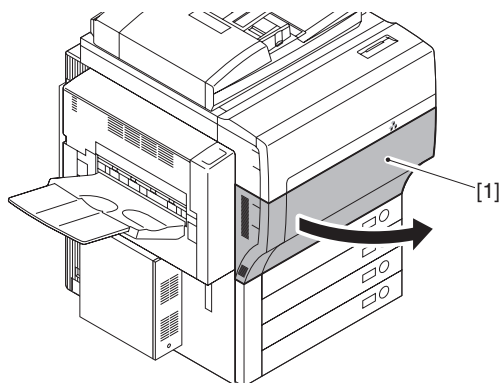
10.5.1 External Covers

10.5.1.1 Front Cover

10.5.1.1.1 Front Cover Opening

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Open the front cover [1].



F-10-7

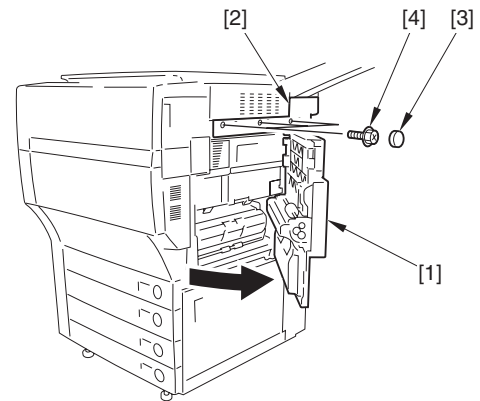
10.5.1.2 Upper Right Cover

10.5.1.2.1 Removing the Right Upper Cover

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

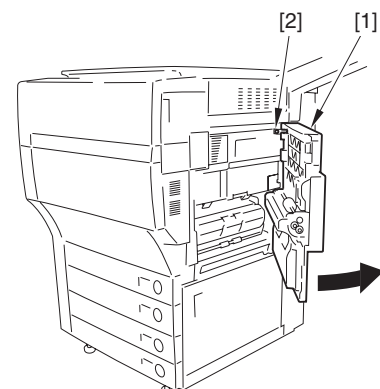
1) Open the right upper cover [1] in the direction of the arrow.

2) Remove the right upper area cover [2].
- 3 rubber covers [3]
- 3 screws [4]



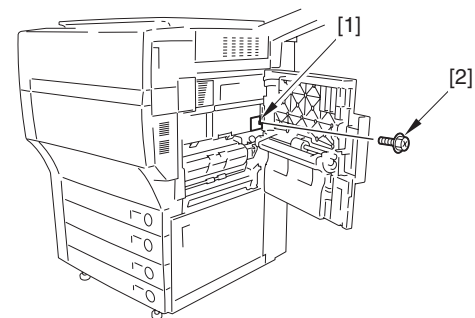
F-10-8

3) Open the right upper cover [1] in the direction of the arrow.
- 1 screw [2]



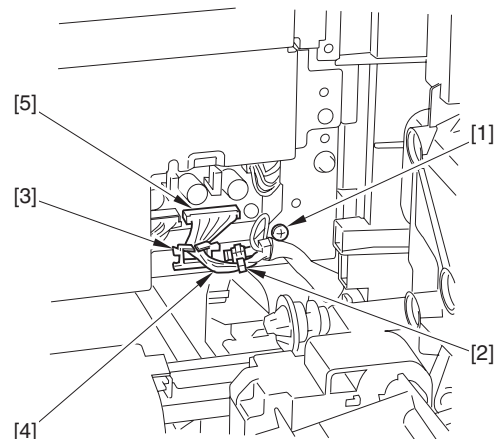
F-10-9

4) Remove the connector blanking cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



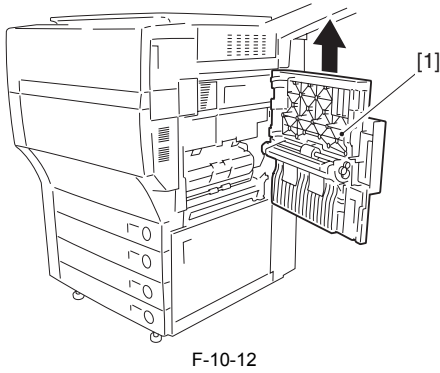
F-10-10

5) Remove one grounding terminal screw [1], and one reuse band [2].
6) Remove one harness [4] from one wire clip [3], and remove one connector [5].



F-10-11

7) Lift the right upper cover [1] in the direction of the arrow and remove it.



10.5.1.3 Right Lower Cover

10.5.1.3.1 Preparation for Removing the Right Lower Cover

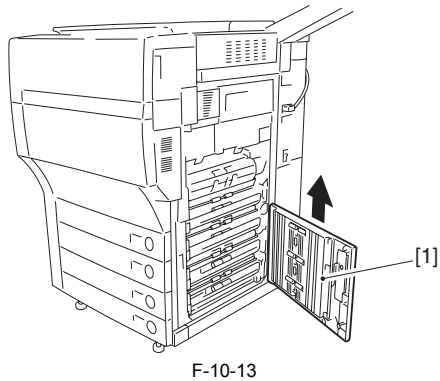
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Remove the right upper cover. (page 10-11)Reference [Removing the Right Upper Cover]

10.5.1.3.2 Removing the Right Lower Cover

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Lift the right lower cover [1] in the direction of the arrow and remove it.

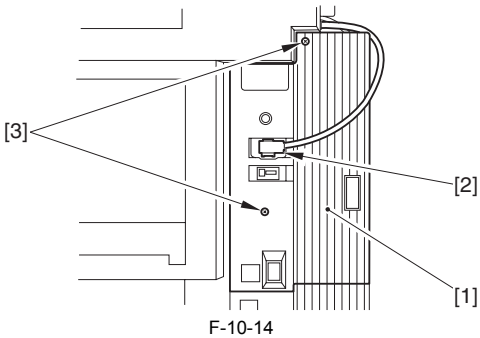


10.5.1.4 Right Rear Upper Cover

10.5.1.4.1 Removing the Right Rear Upper Cover

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Remove the right rear upper cover [1].
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 2 screws [3]



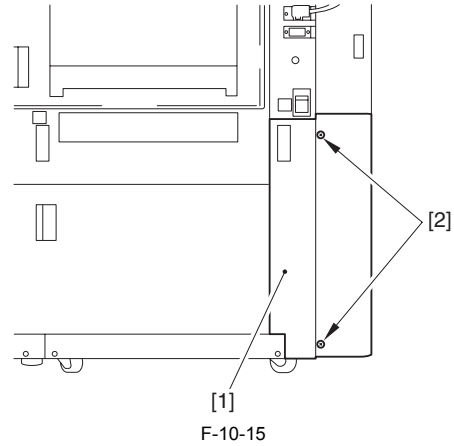
10.5.1.5 Right Rear Lower Cover

10.5.1.5.1 Removing the Right Rear Lower Cover

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / image-

PRESS C1+

1) Remove the right rear lower cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]



10.5.1.6 Upper Left Cover

10.5.1.6.1 Preparation for Removing the Left Upper Cover

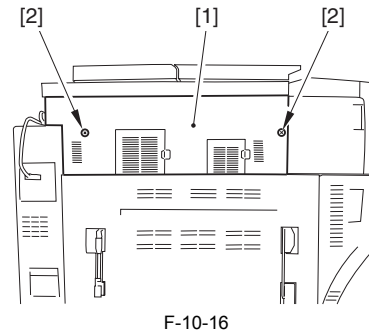
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Remove the decurler.

10.5.1.6.2 Removing the Left Upper Cover

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Remove the left upper cover [1].
 - 2 screws [2]

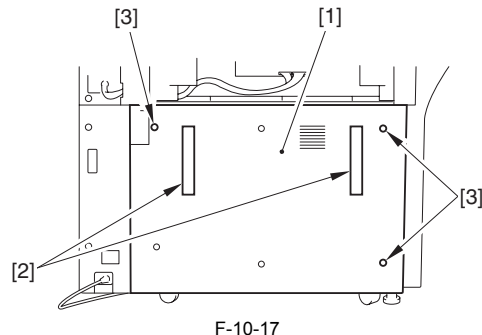


10.5.1.7 Left Lower Cover

10.5.1.7.1 Removing the Left Lower Cover

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Remove the lower left cover [1].
 - 2 face covers [2]
 - 3 screws [3]



F-10-17

10.5.1.8 Left Middle Cover

10.5.1.8.1 Preparation for Removing the Left Middle Cover

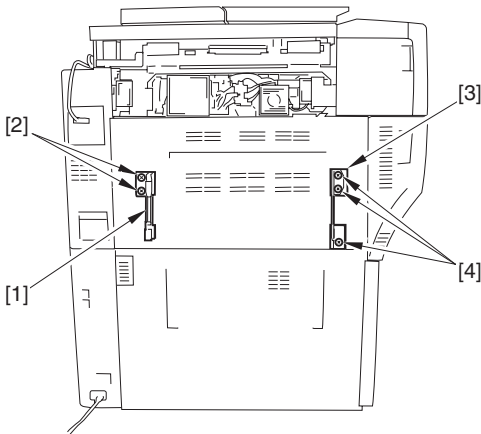
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the decurler.
- 2) Remove the left upper cover. (page 10-12)Reference [Removing the Left Upper Cover]

10.5.1.8.2 Removing the Left Middle Cover

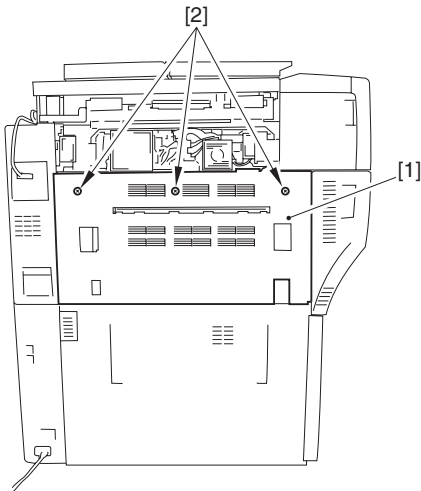
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the decurler hook (left) [1].
- 2 stepped screws [2]
- 2) Remove the decurler hook (right) [3].
- 3 stepped screws [4]



F-10-18

- 3) Remove the left middle cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



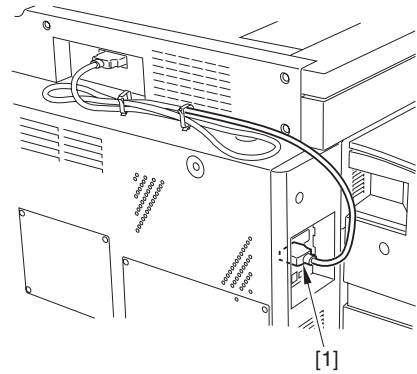
F-10-19

10.5.1.9 Left Rear Cover (Upper)

10.5.1.9.1 Removing the Left Rear Upper Cover

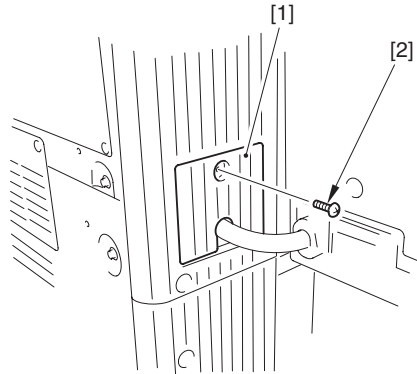
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the reader communication cable connector [1].



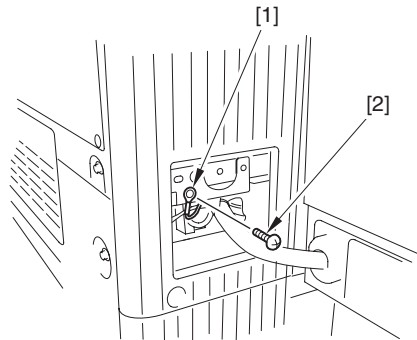
F-10-20

- 2) Remove the panel mount cover [1] attached on the left upper cover (rear).
- 1 screw [2]



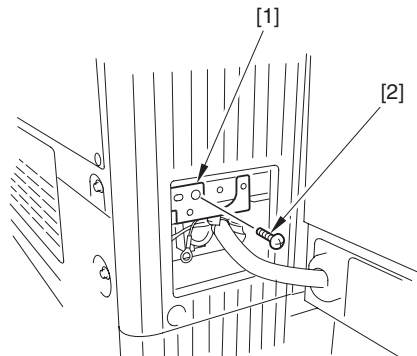
F-10-21

- 3) Remove the grounding wire [1].
- 1 screw [2]



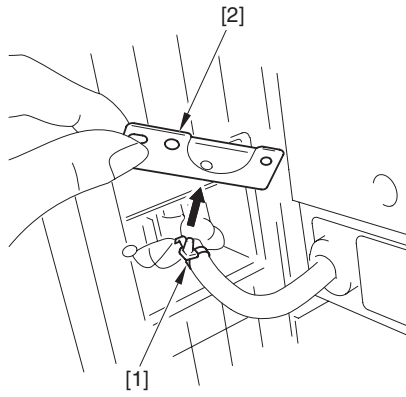
F-10-22

- 4) Remove the harness support plate [1].
- 1 screw [2]



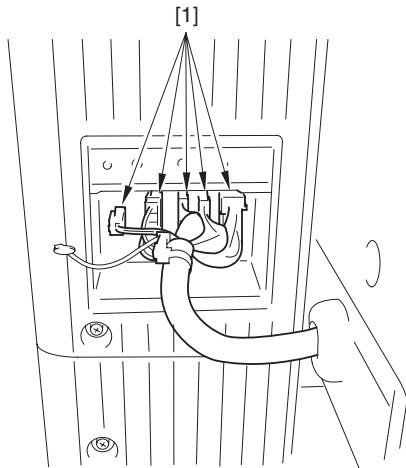
F-10-23

- 5) Remove the harness support plate [2] from the reuse band [1].



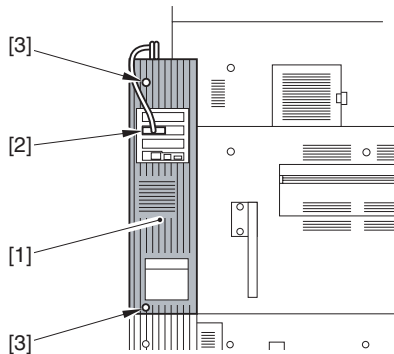
F-10-24

6) Remove five connectors [1].



F-10-25

7) Remove the left rear upper cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



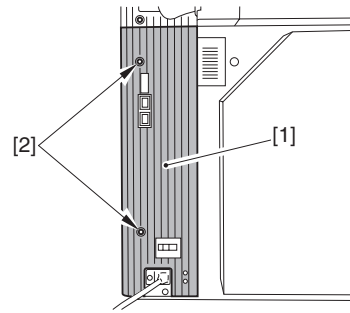
F-10-26

10.5.1.10 Left Rear Cover (Lower)

10.5.1.10.1 Removing the Left Rear Lower Cover

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Remove the left rear lower cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



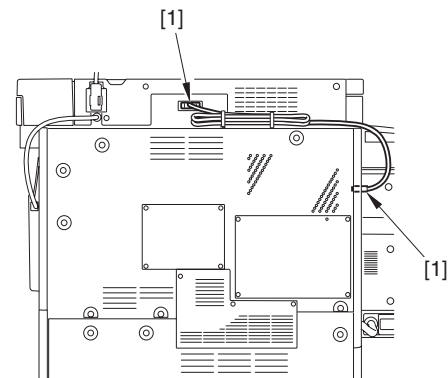
F-10-27

10.5.1.11 Rear Upper Cover

10.5.1.11.1 Removing the Rear Upper Cover

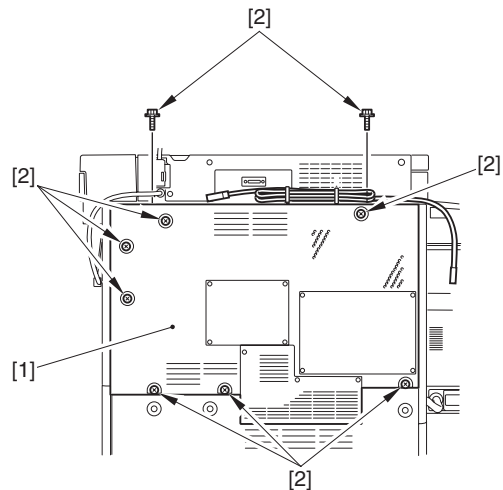
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Remove two reader communication cable connectors [1].



F-10-28

2) Remove the rear upper cover [1].
- 9 screws [2]



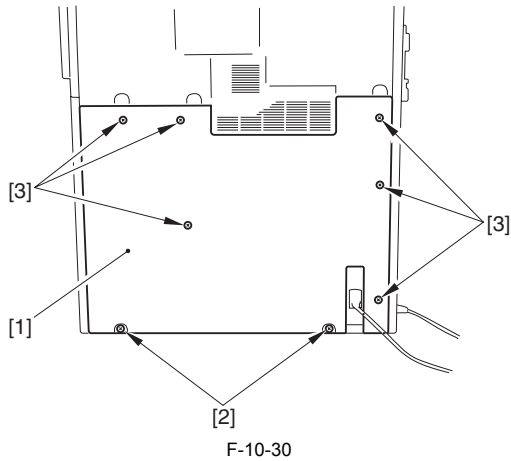
F-10-29

10.5.1.12 Rear Lower Cover

10.5.1.12.1 Removing the Rear Lower Cover

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Loosen two screws [2].
2) Remove the rear lower cover [1].
- 6 screws [3]

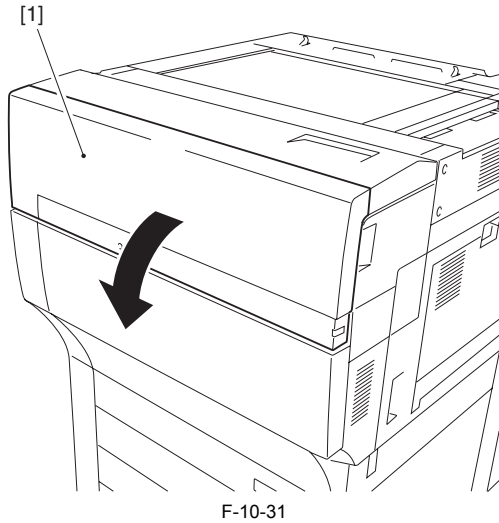


10.5.1.13 Toner Replacement Cover

10.5.1.13.1 Toner Replacement Cover Opening

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the toner replacement cover [1].



10.5.1.14 Process Unit Cover

10.5.1.14.1 Preparation for Removing the Process Unit Cover

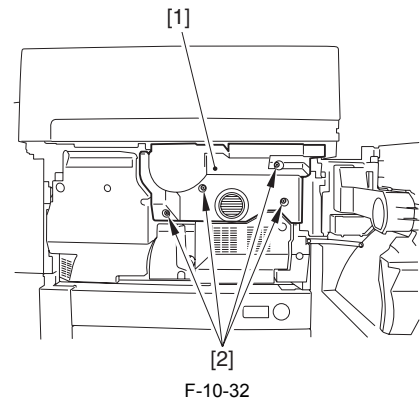
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover. (page 10-11)Reference [Front Cover Opening]

10.5.1.14.2 Removing the Process Unit Cover

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the process unit cover [1].
- 4 screws [2]



10.5.2 Hopper Drive Unit

10.5.2.1 Preparation for Pulling Up/Removing the Hopper Unit

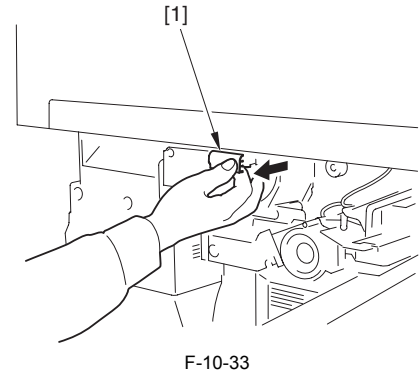
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover. (page 10-11)Reference [Front Cover Opening]
- 2) Remove the process unit cover. (page 10-15)Reference [Removing the Process Unit Cover]

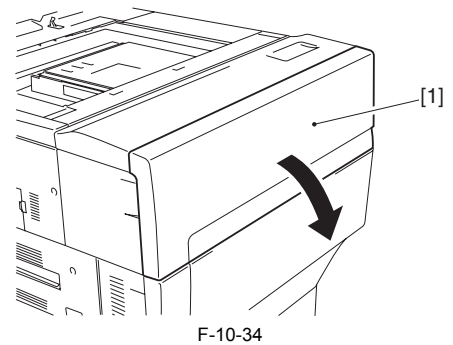
10.5.2.2 Pulling the Hopper Unit Up

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

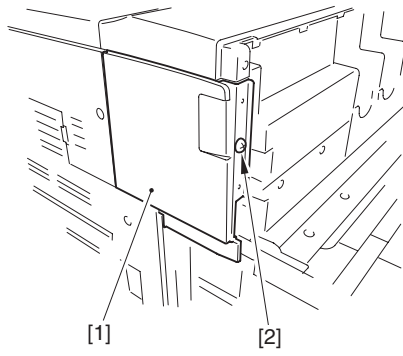
- 1) Pull the hopper unit shutter lever [1] forward to the end.



- 2) Open the toner replacement cover [1].

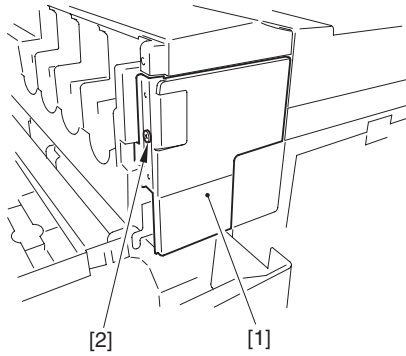


- 3) Remove the hopper left cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



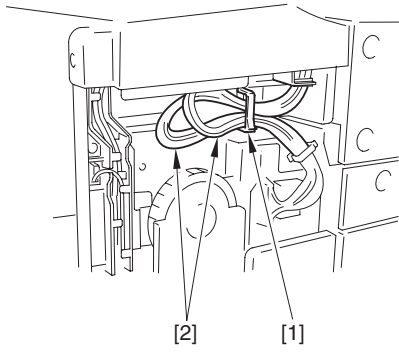
F-10-35

4) Remove the hopper right cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



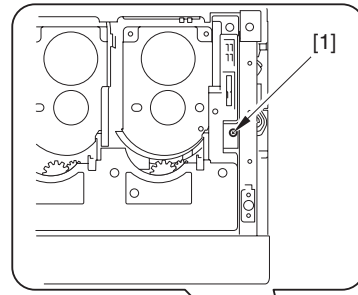
F-10-36

5) Remove two harnesses [2] from the clamp [1].



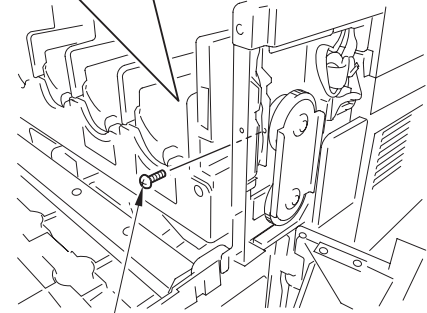
F-10-37

6) Remove one hopper right fixing screw [1].



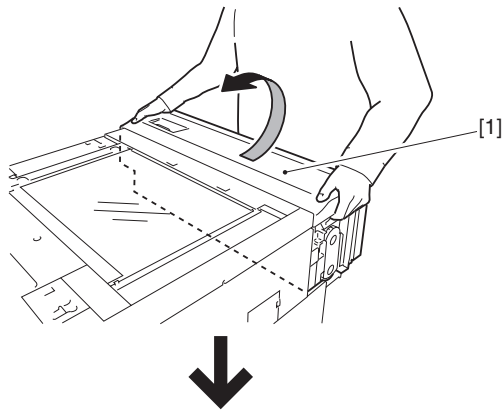
F-10-38

7) Remove one hopper left fixing screw [1].



F-10-39

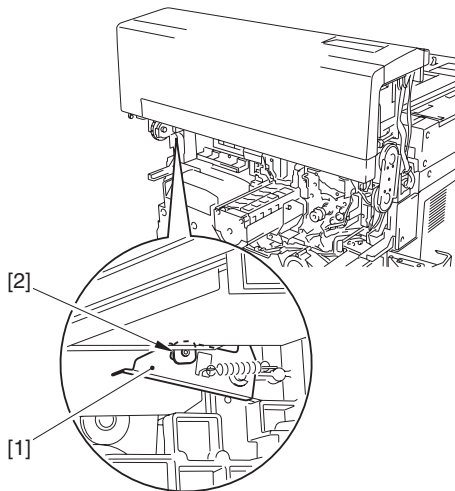
8) Pull the hopper unit [1] up in the direction of the arrow until it hits.



F-10-40

⚠ Points to Note When Lifting Up the Hopper Unit

- In case the copyboard cover is attached, make sure to open it prior to lifting up the hopper unit to prevent any damages caused by contact.
- Check if the lock arm [1] at the left-lower to the hopper is hooked by the shaft [2] and the hopper unit is locked.

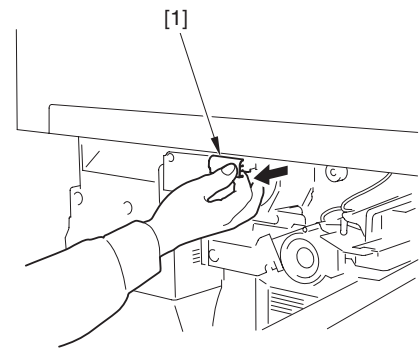


F-10-41

10.5.2.3 Pulling the Hopper Unit Up

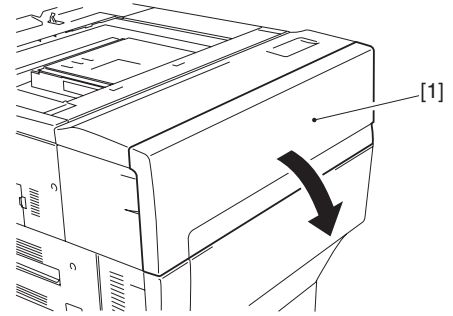
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Pull the hopper unit shutter lever [1] forward to the end.



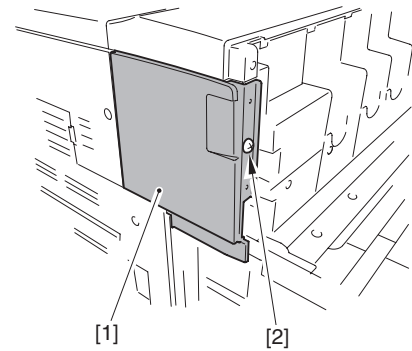
F-10-42

- 2) Open the toner replacement cover [1].



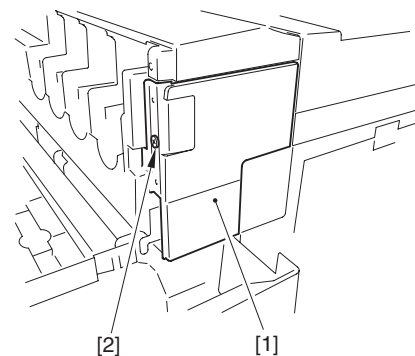
F-10-43

- 3) Remove the hopper left cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



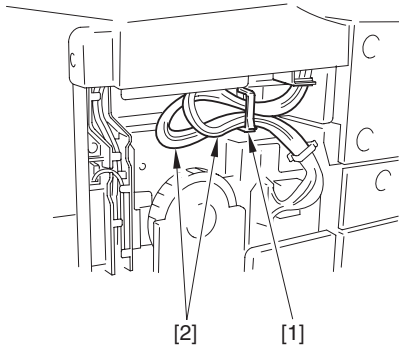
F-10-44

- 4) Remove the hopper right cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



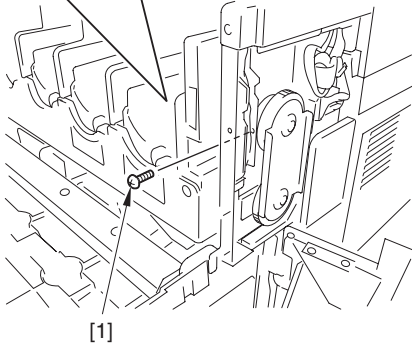
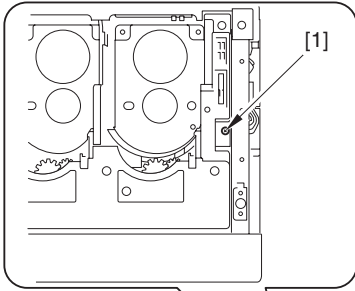
F-10-45

- 5) Remove two harnesses [2] from the clamp [1].



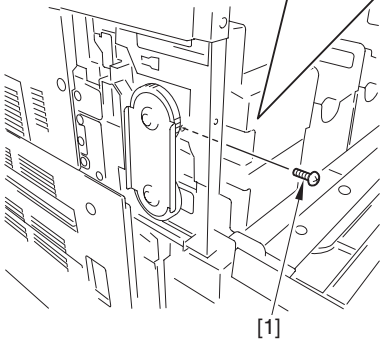
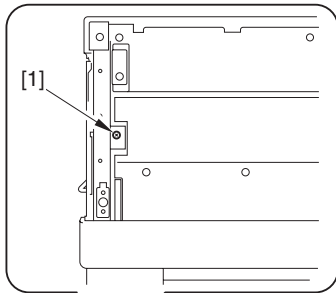
F-10-46

6) Remove one hopper right fixing screw [1].



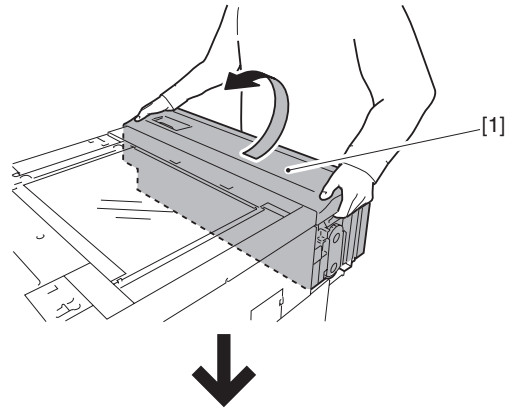
F-10-47

7) Remove one hopper left fixing screw [1].



F-10-48

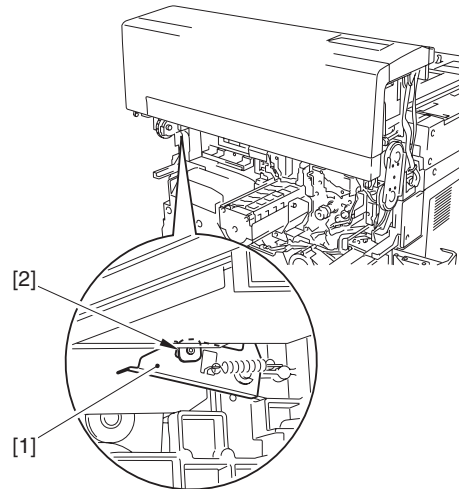
8) Pull the hopper unit [1] up in the direction of the arrow until it hits.



F-10-49

⚠ Points to Note When Lifting Up the Hopper Unit

- In case the copyboard cover is attached, make sure to open it prior to lifting up the hopper unit to prevent any damages caused by contact.
- Check if the lock arm [1] at the left-lower to the hopper is hooked by the shaft [2] and the hopper unit is locked.

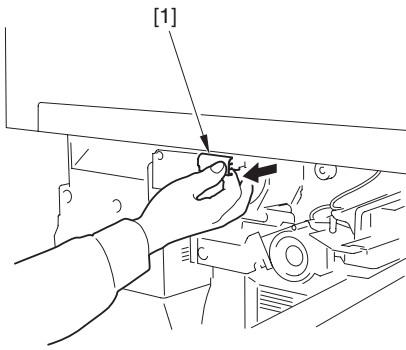


F-10-50

10.5.2.4 Removing the Hopper Unit

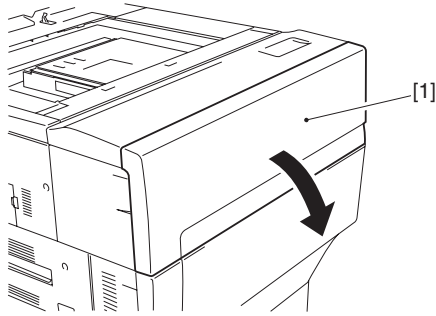
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

- 1) Pull the hopper unit shutter lever [1] forward to the end.



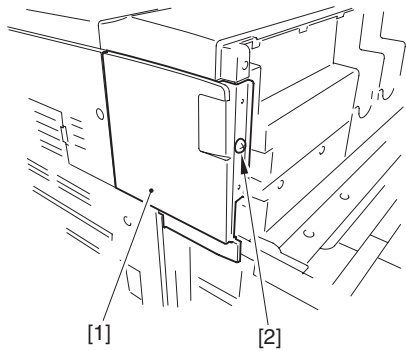
F-10-51

2) Open the toner replacement cover [1].



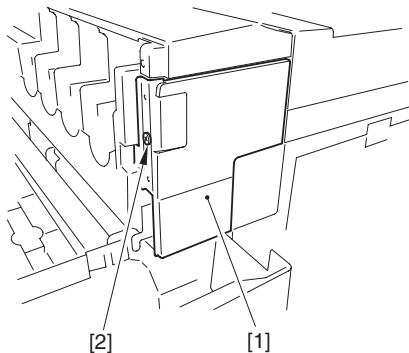
F-10-52

3) Remove the hopper left cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



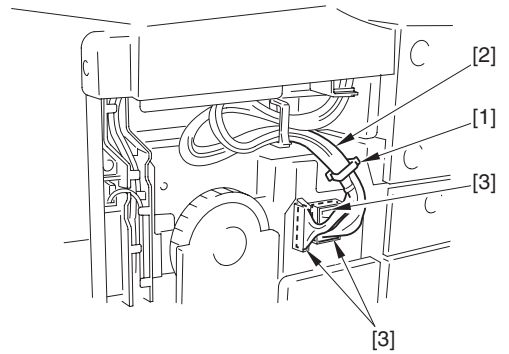
F-10-53

4) Remove the hopper right cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



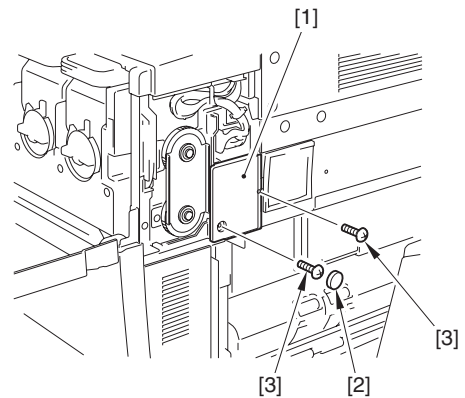
F-10-54

5) Remove the harness [2] from the wire saddle [1], and remove three connectors [3].



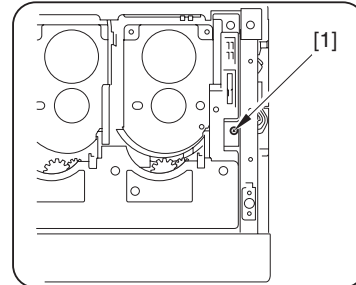
F-10-55

6) Open the right upper cover [1].
7) Remove the right door small cover [1].
- 1 cover rubber [2]
- 2 screws [3]



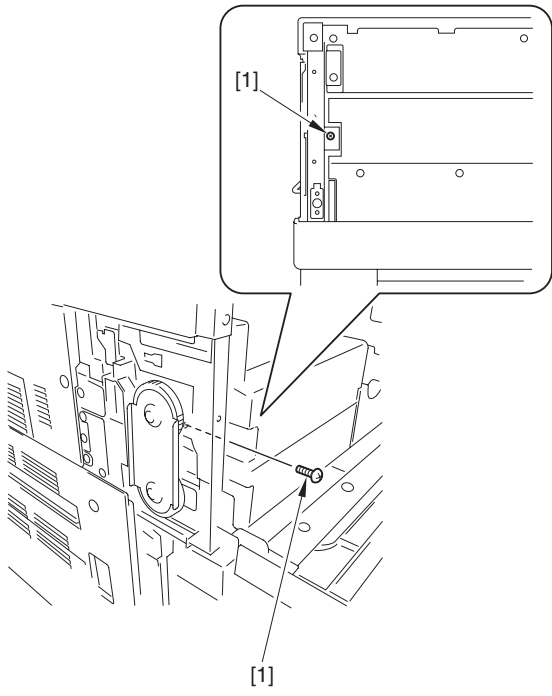
F-10-56

8) Remove one hopper right fixing screw [1].



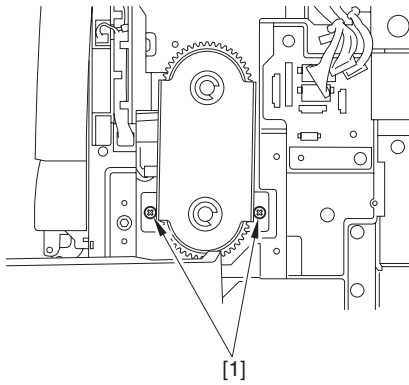
F-10-57

9) Remove one hopper left fixing screw [1].



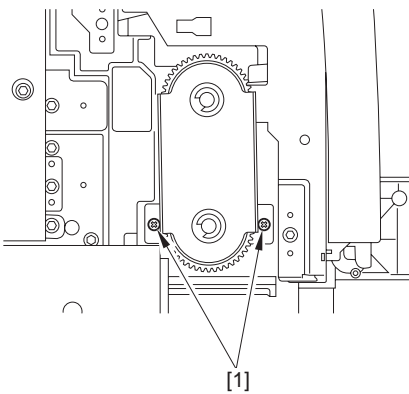
F-10-58

10) Remove two hopper right fixing screws [1].



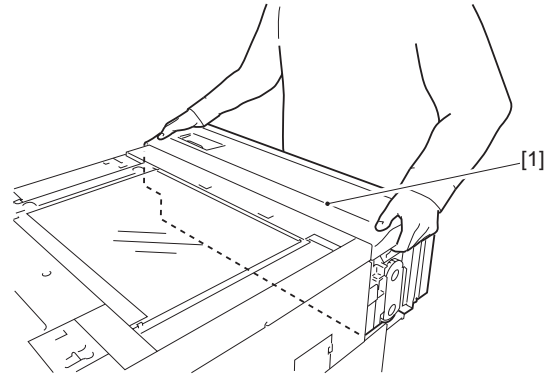
F-10-59

11) Remove two hopper left fixing screws [1].



F-10-60

12) Hold the hopper unit [1] as in the figure and remove it.

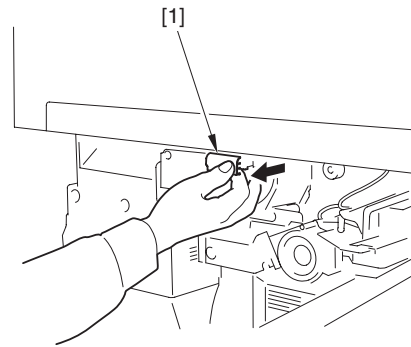


F-10-61

10.5.2.5 Removing the Hopper Unit

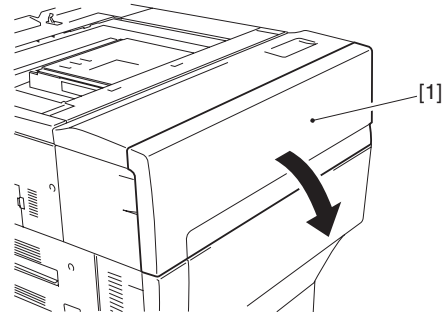
imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Pull the hopper unit shutter lever [1] forward to the end.



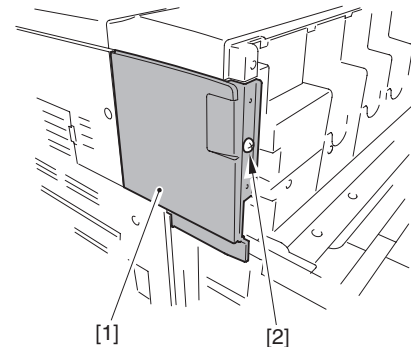
F-10-62

2) Open the toner replacement cover [1].



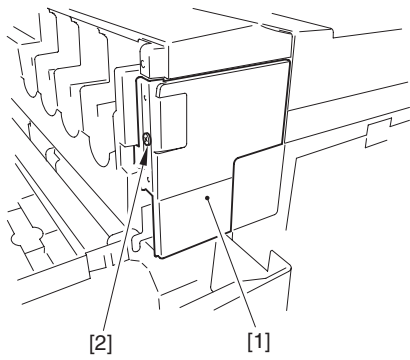
F-10-63

3) Remove the hopper left cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



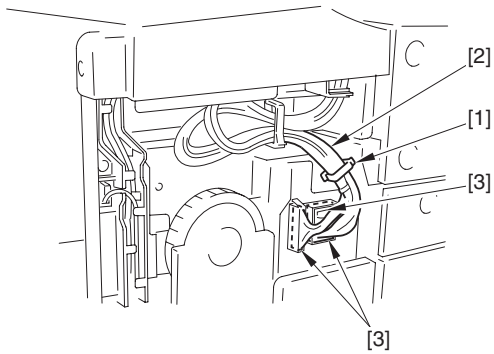
F-10-64

4) Remove the hopper right cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



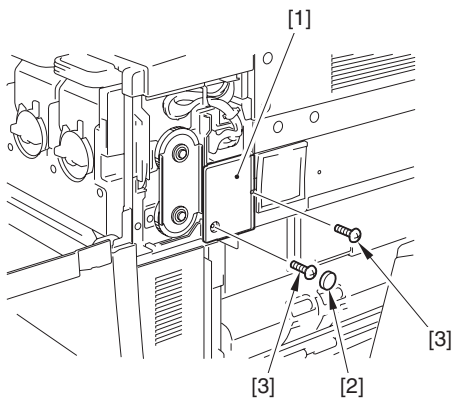
F-10-65

5) Remove the harness [2] from the wire saddle [1], and remove three connectors [3].



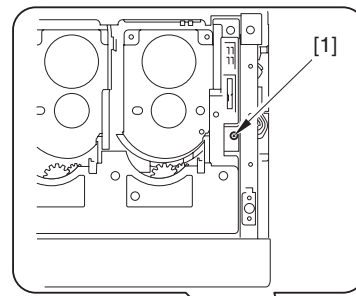
F-10-66

6) Open the right upper cover [1].
 7) Remove the right door small cover [1].
 - 1 cover rubber [2]
 - 2 screws [3]



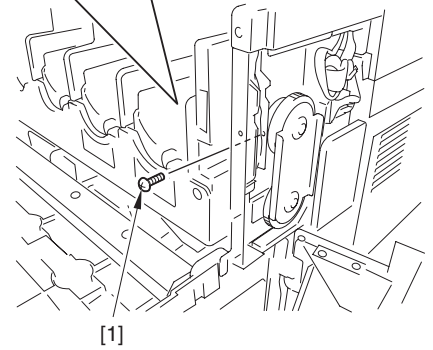
F-10-67

8) Remove one hopper right fixing screw [1].



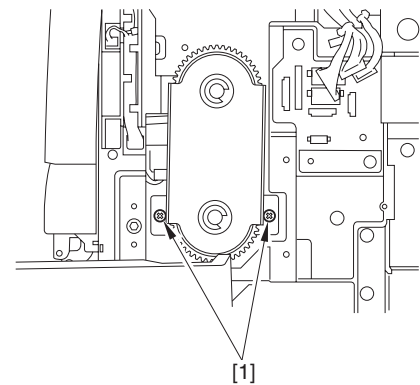
F-10-68

9) Remove one hopper left fixing screw [1].



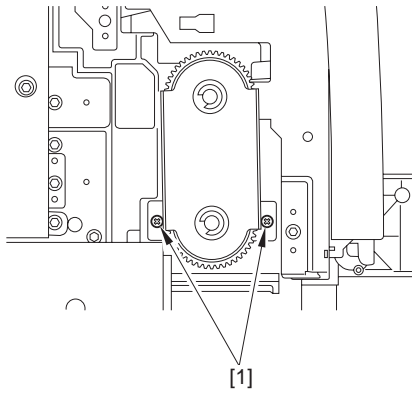
F-10-69

10) Remove two hopper right fixing screws [1].



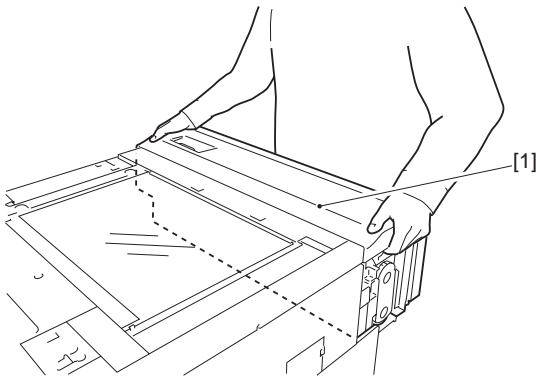
F-10-70

11) Remove two hopper left fixing screws [1].



F-10-71

12) Hold the hopper unit [1] as in the figure and remove it.



F-10-72

10.5.3 DC Power Supply Unit

10.5.3.1 Preparation for Removing the Power Supply Assembly

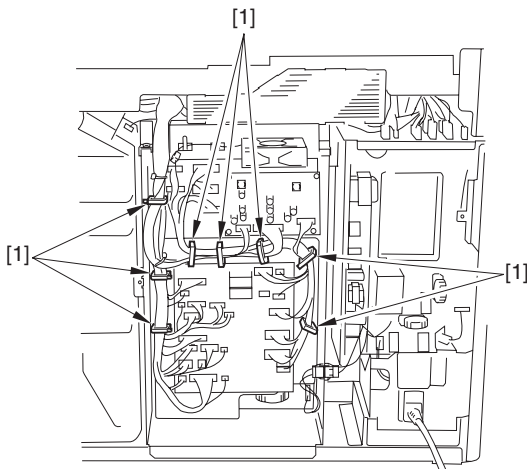
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the rear upper cover. (page 10-14)Reference [Removing the Rear Upper Cover]
- 2) Remove the rear lower cover. (page 10-14)Reference [Removing the Rear Lower Cover]

10.5.3.2 Removing the Power Supply Assembly

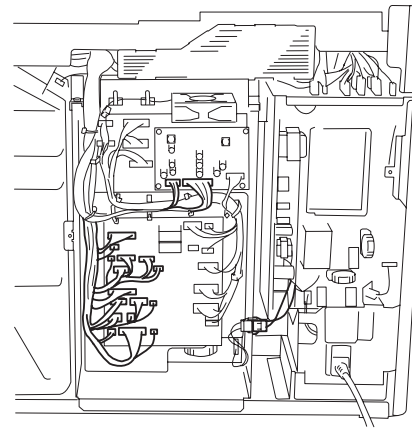
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove eight clamps [1].



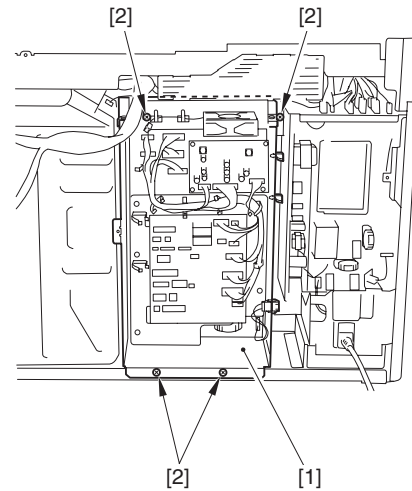
F-10-73

- 2) Remove 19 connectors.



F-10-74

- 3) Remove the DC Power supply assembly [1].
- 4 screws [2]



F-10-75

10.5.4 Sub DC Power Supply

10.5.4.1 Preparation for Removing the Sub DC Power Supply

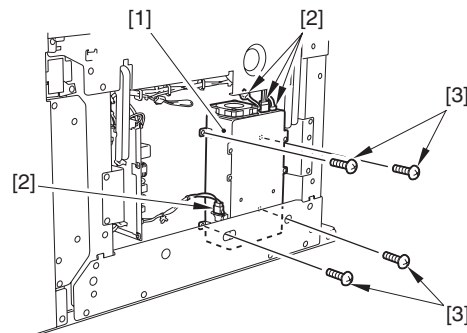
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the left lower cover. (page 10-12)Reference [Removing the Left Lower Cover]

10.5.4.2 Removing the Sub DC Power Supply

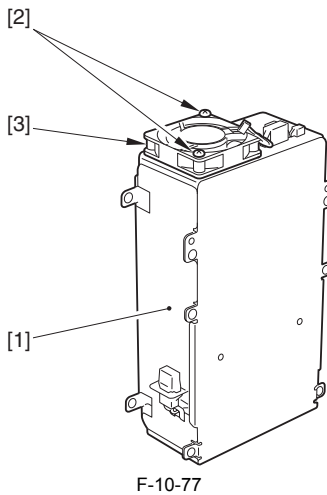
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the Sub DC power supply [1].
- 4 connectors [2]
- 4 screws [3]



F-10-76

- 2) Remove the sub DC power supply fan [3] from the sub DC power supply [1].
- 2 screws [2]

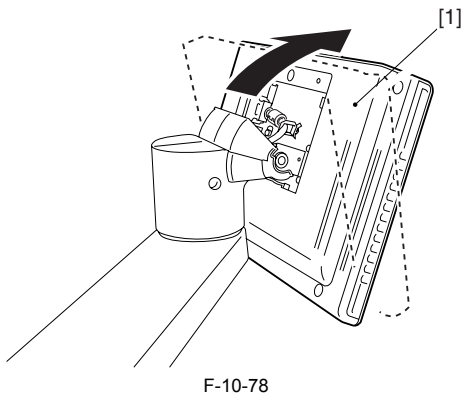


10.5.5 Control Panel

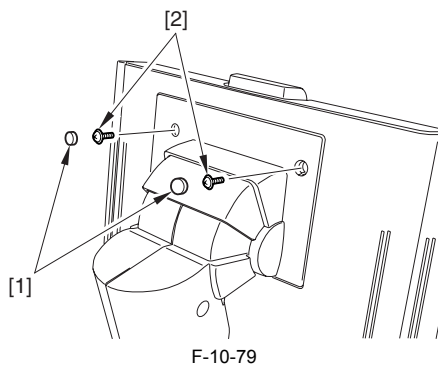
10.5.5.1 Removing the Control Panel

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Lean the control panel [1] in the direction of the arrow.



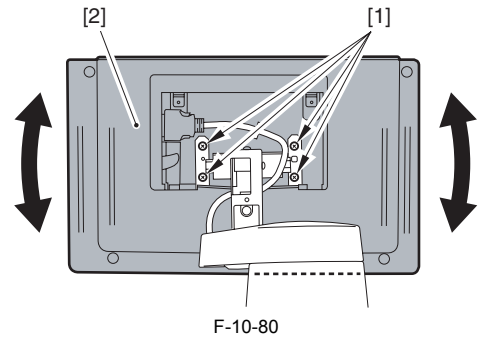
2) Remove two cover rubber [1] and two screws [2].



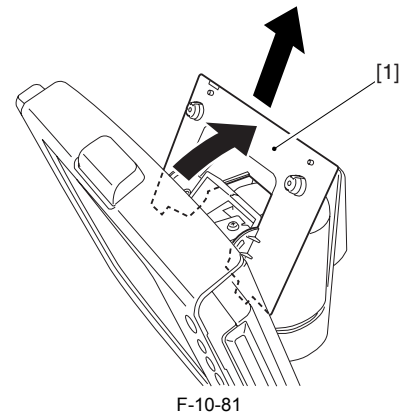
MEMO:

When the control panel tilts at installation, implement the following adjustment.

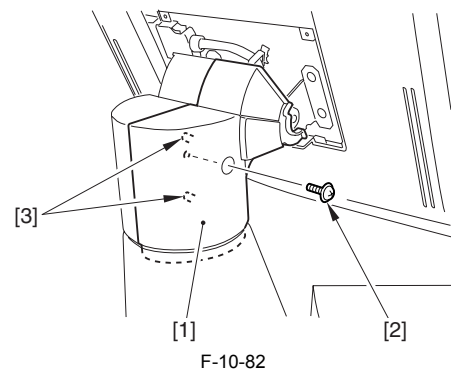
- 1) Loosen four screws [1] on the backside of the control panel.
- 2) Adjust and keep the control panel [2] at the desirable position, and tighten the loosened screw.



3) Remove the hinge slide cover [1] in the direction of the arrow.

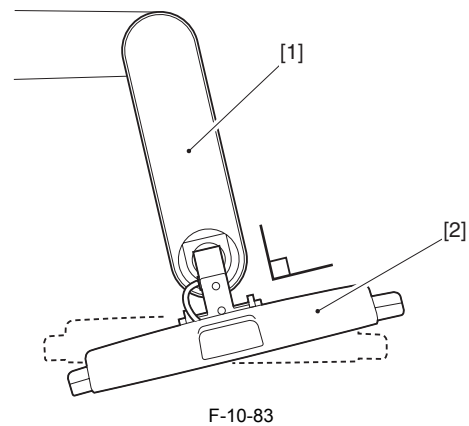


4) Remove the lock hinge cover L [1].
- 1 screw [2]
- 2 boss [3]

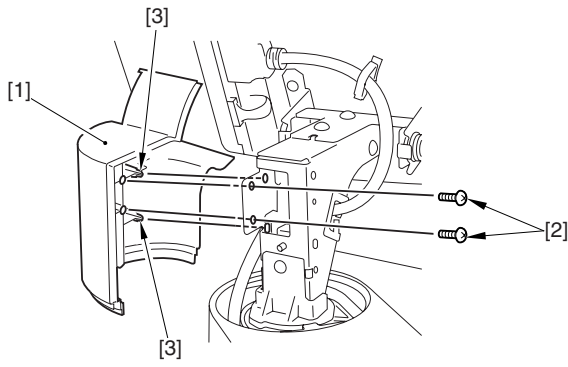


MEMO:

If the arm unit [1] is made perpendicular to the control panel [2], the lock hinge cover is easy to remove (Same at installation).

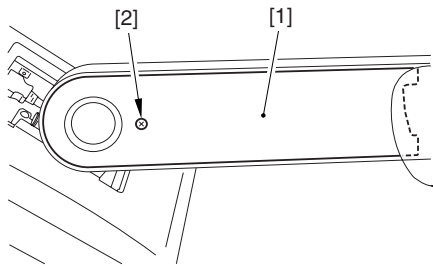


5) Remove the lock hinge cover R [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 2 boss [3]



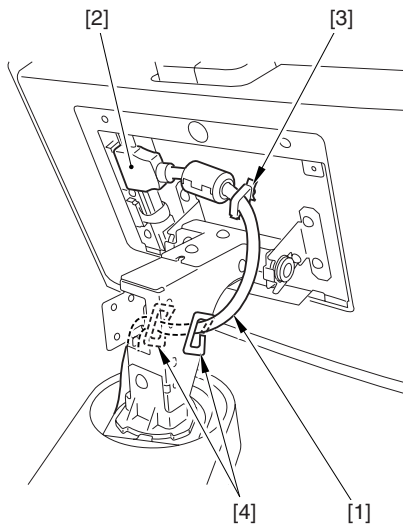
F-10-84

- 6) Remove the arm cover 4 [1] from the back of the arm unit.
- 1 screw [2]



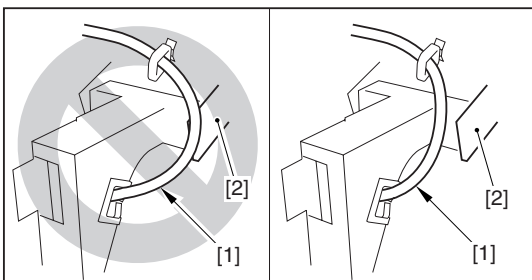
F-10-85

- 7) Remove the control panel interface cable [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 1 clamp [3]
- 2 wire clips [4]



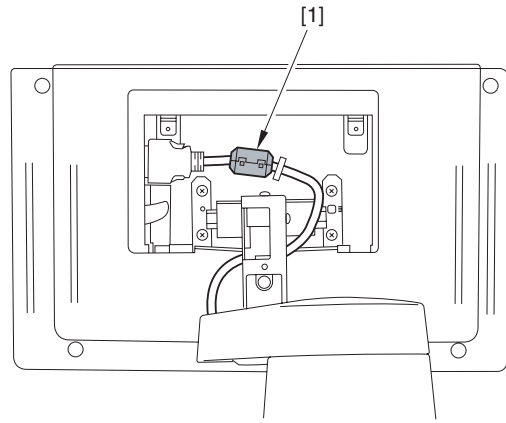
F-10-86

⚠ When Fixing the Control Panel Interface Cable
Adjust the cable length so that the cable [1] is in the inside of the sheet metal [2].



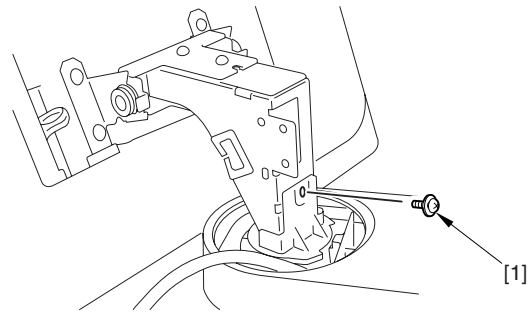
F-10-87

- 8) Remove the ferrite core [1].



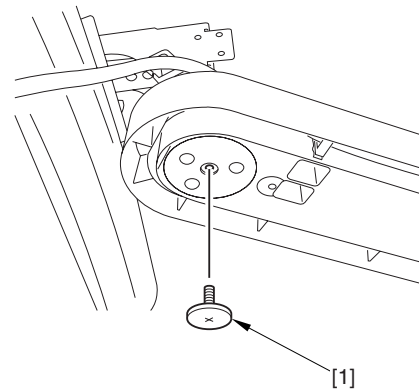
F-10-88

- 9) Remove one screw [1] from the backside of the control panel.



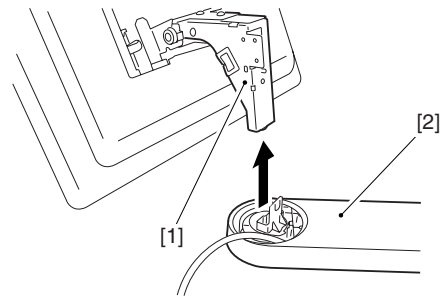
F-10-89

- 10) Remove one flat screw [1] from the back of the upper arm.



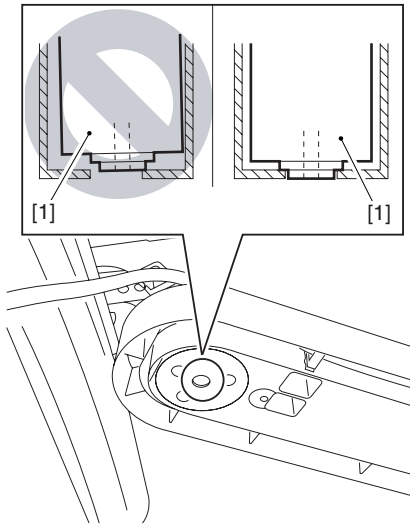
F-10-90

- 11) Remove the control panel shaft [1] from the arm unit [2].



F-10-91

⚠ When fixing the control panel shaft
Fix the control panel shaft [1] edge into the upper arm circular hole.



F-10-92

10.5.6 DC Controller PCB

10.5.6.1 Preparation for Removing the DC Controller PCB

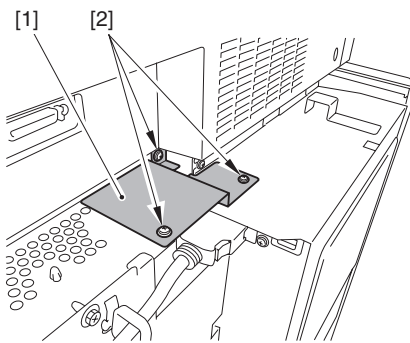
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the right rear upper cover. (page 10-12) Reference [Removing the Right Rear Upper Cover]
- 2) Remove the rear upper cover. (page 10-14) Reference [Removing the Rear Upper Cover]

10.5.6.2 Removing the DC Controller PCB

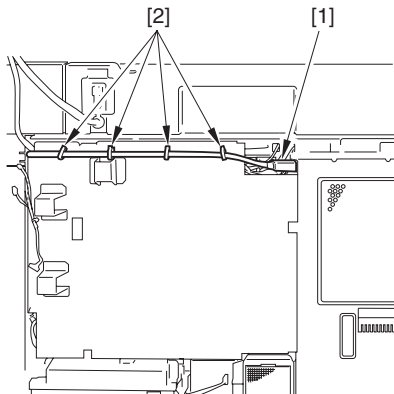
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Detach the grounding plate [1].
- 3 screws [2]



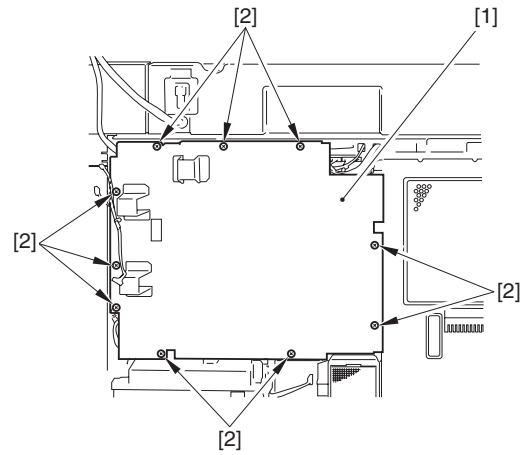
F-10-93

- 2) Remove the connector [1].
- 4 clamps [2]



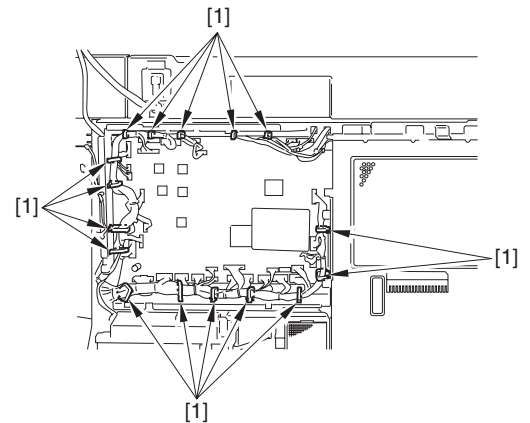
F-10-94

- 3) Remove the DC controller box cover [1].
- 10 screws [2]



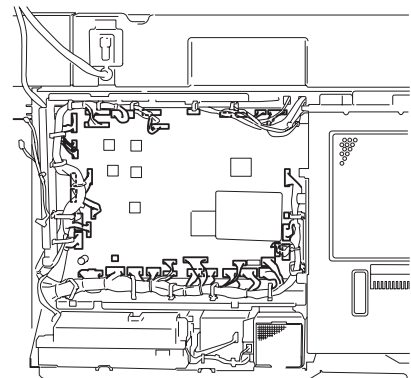
F-10-95

- 4) Remove 16 clamps [1].



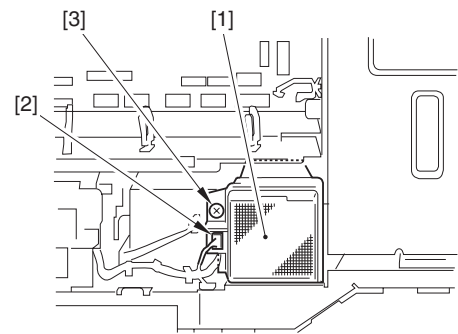
F-10-96

- 5) Remove 40 connectors.



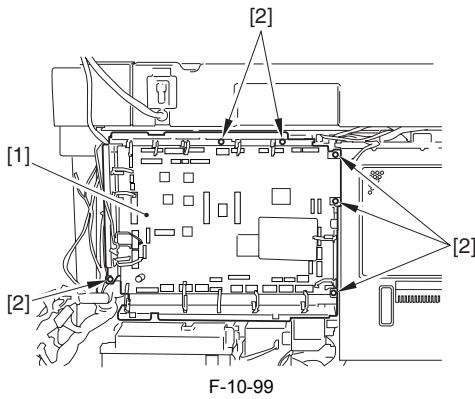
F-10-97

- 6) Remove the main body rear exhaust fan duct [1].
- 1 connector [2]
- 1 screw [3]



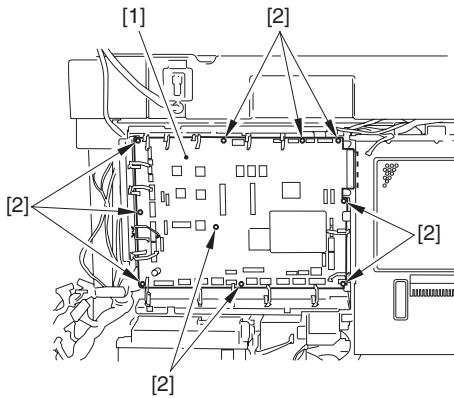
F-10-98

- 7) Move the DC controller box [1] to the left and remove it.
- 6 screws [2]



F-10-99

- 8) Remove the DC controller PCB [1].
- 10 screws [2]



F-10-100

10.5.6.3 After Replacing the DC controller PCB

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Upload the 'SramDCON.bin' from 'upload the backup data' using SST and save it.

MEMO:

For detailed uploading procedures, see the chapter of upgrading in the manual.

- 2) After replacing the DC controller PCB, download the latest system software using SST.
3) Execute RAM clear of the DC controller PCB by the service mode below.
COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > DC-CON
4) Select the uploaded file from 'download the backup data' and download it using SST.

MEMO:

For detailed downloading procedures, see the chapter of upgrading in the manual.

- 5) Select the uploaded file from 'download the backup data' and download it using SST.
6) Remove the waste toner in the waste toner receptacle (waste toner bottle, secondary transfer outside roller waste toner receptacle), and then clear the 2 types of waste toner counter (see Note 1).
7) Execute the service mode (high-voltage offset adjustment: COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > HV-ADOFS) (see Note 2).
8) Execute the service mode (compulsory initial rotation: COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P-INTR-FX).
9) Execute the full correction of the automatic gradation correction (image characteristics correction control).



Note 1:

You cannot re-enter the waste toner counter (waste toner bottle, secondary transfer roller waste toner receptacle) in the service mode. Therefore, in order to replace the DC controller PCB or clear the RAM, clear the 2 types of the waste toner counter using the following service modes:

- Waste toner bottle counter clear: COPIER > COUNTER > MISC > WST-TNR
- Secondary transfer outside roller waste toner receptacle counter clear: COPIER > COUNTER > MISC > 2TC-BOX

Note2:

On execution of this service mode, the waste toner sensor offset adjustment is executed.

If toner is left inside the waste toner bottle here, toner adjustment cannot be carried out properly, resulting in an error code in some cases (E0013-0006: waste toner sensor adjustment error).

Be sure to execute this service mode after removing the waste toner bottle from the main body.

10.5.7 Leakage Breaker

10.5.7.1 Preparation for Removing the Leakage Breaker

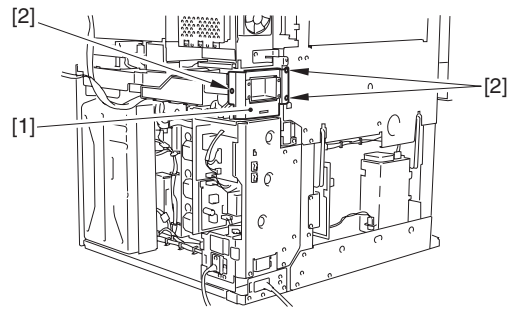
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the decurler.
- 2) Remove the left upper cover. (page 10-12)Reference [Removing the Left Upper Cover]
- 3) Remove the left middle cover. (page 10-13)Reference [Removing the Left Middle Cover]
- 4) Remove the left lower cover. (page 10-12)Reference [Removing the Left Lower Cover]
- 5) Remove the left rear upper cover. (page 10-13)Reference [Removing the Left Rear Upper Cover]
- 6) Remove the left rear lower cover. (page 10-14)Reference [Removing the Left Rear Lower Cover]
- 7) Remove the rear upper cover. (page 10-14)Reference [Removing the Rear Upper Cover]
- 8) Remove the rear lower cover. (page 10-14)Reference [Removing the Rear Lower Cover]
- 9) Remove the DC power supply assembly. (page 10-22)Reference [Removing the Power Supply Assembly]

10.5.7.2 Removing the Leakage Breaker

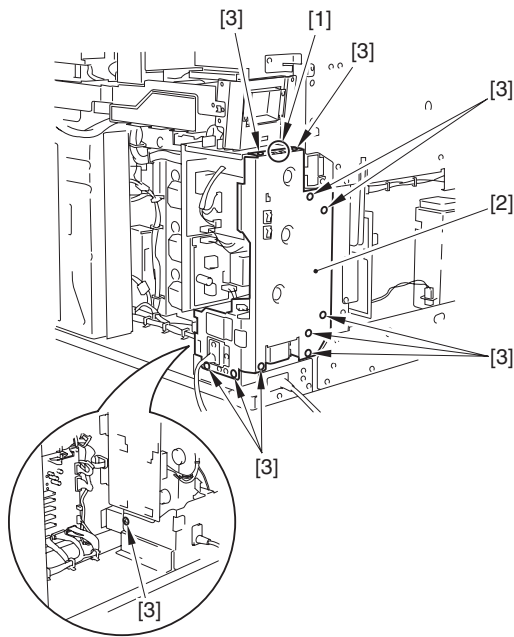
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Move the decurler connector plate [1] so that the screw beneath it can be seen.
- 3 screws [2]



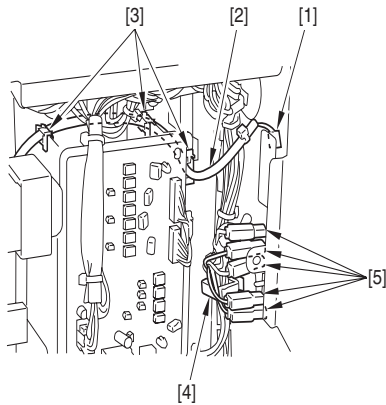
F-10-101

- 2) Remove the decurler connector plate cut-off [1], and remove the AC driver box [2].
- 11 screws [3]



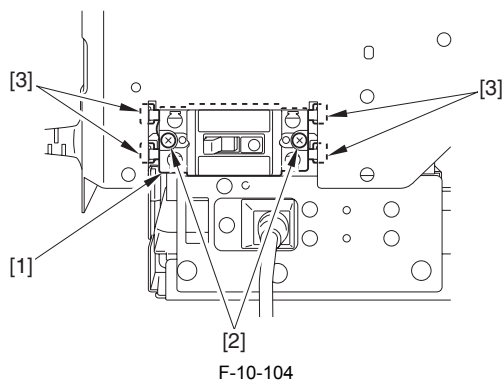
F-10-102

3) Remove three clamps [1], five faston terminals [2] and two connectors [3].



F-10-103

4) Remove the leakage breaker [1].
- 2 screws [2]
- 4 faston terminals [3]



F-10-104

10.5.8 DC/DC Converter PCB

10.5.8.1 Preparation for Removing RD-DC-DC PCB

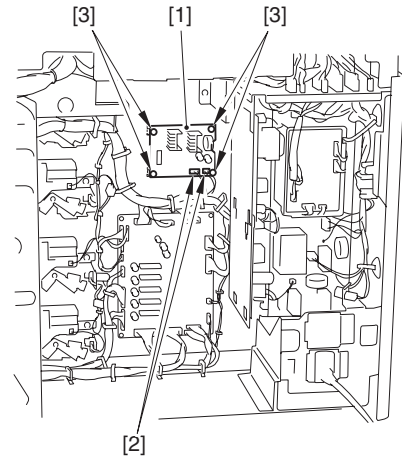
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the rear upper cover. (page 10-14) Reference [Removing the Rear Upper Cover]
- 2) Remove the rear lower cover. (page 10-14) Reference [Removing the Rear Lower Cover]
- 3) Remove the DC power supply assembly. (page 10-22) Reference [Removing the Power Supply Assembly]

10.5.8.2 Removing the RD-DC-DC PCB

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the RD-DC-DC PCB [1].
- 2 connectors [2]
- 4 screws [3]



F-10-105

10.5.9 High-Voltage Box Unit

10.5.9.1 Preparation for Removing the High-Voltage Box Unit

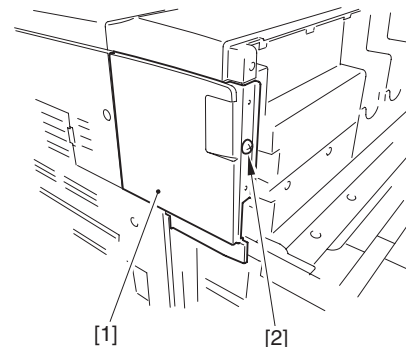
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the decurler.
- 2) Remove the left upper cover. (page 10-12) Reference [Removing the Left Upper Cover]
- 3) Remove the left middle cover. (page 10-13) Reference [Removing the Left Middle Cover]
- 4) Open the toner replacement cover. (page 10-15) Reference [Toner Replacement Cover Opening]

10.5.9.2 Removing the High-Voltage Box Unit

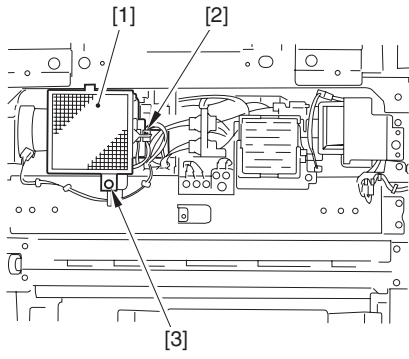
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

- 1) Remove the hopper cover (left) [1].
- 1 screw [2]



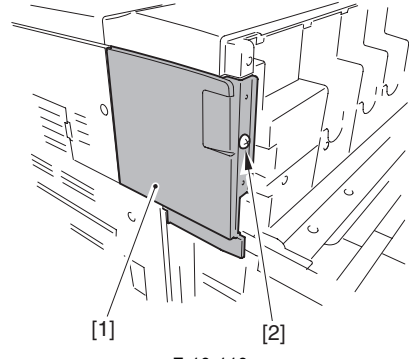
F-10-106

- 2) Remove the left exhaust fan [1] with the duct.
- 1 connector [2]
- 1 screw [3]



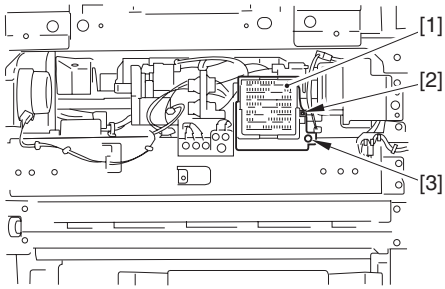
F-10-107

- 3) Remove the fixing upper exhaust fan [1] with the duct.
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 1 screw [3]



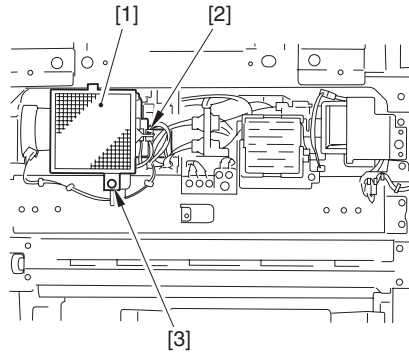
F-10-110

- 2) Remove the left exhaust fan [1] with the duct.
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 1 screw [3]



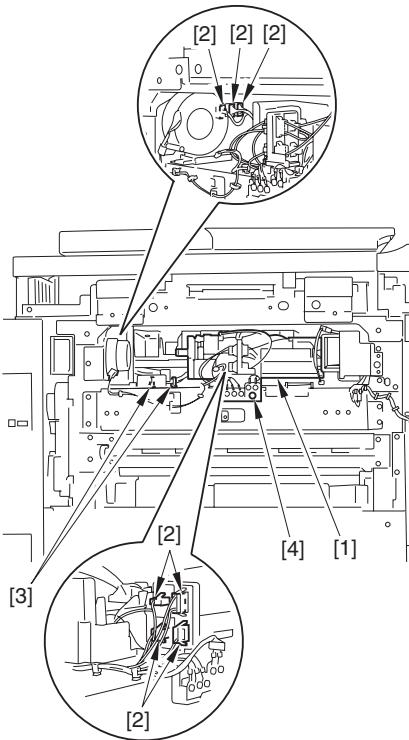
F-10-108

- 4) Pull the high-voltage box unit [1] out forward, and remove it.
 - 7 connectors [2]
 - 2 clamps [3]
 - 1 screw [4]

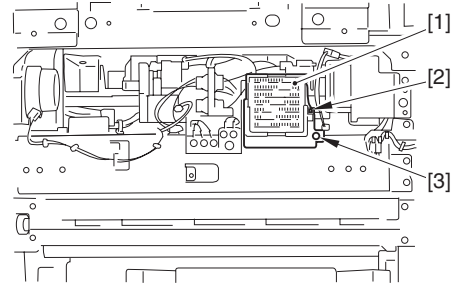


F-10-111

- 3) Remove the fixing upper exhaust fan [1] with the duct.
 - 1 connector [2]
 - 1 screw [3]



F-10-109



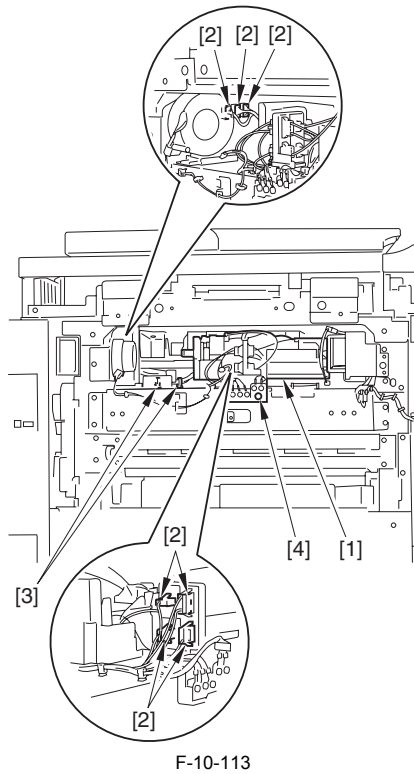
F-10-112

- 4) Pull the high-voltage box unit [1] out forward, and remove it.
 - 7 connectors [2]
 - 2 clamps [3]
 - 1 screw [4]

10.5.9.3 Removing the High-Voltage Box Unit

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the hopper cover (left) [1].
 - 1 screw [2]



F-10-113

10.5.10 HV1 PCB

10.5.10.1 Preparation for Removing the HV1 PCB Unit

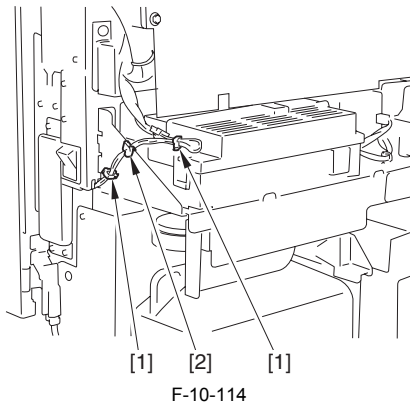
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the right rear upper cover. (page 10-12) Reference [Removing the Right Rear Upper Cover]
- 2) Remove the right rear lower cover. (page 10-12) Reference [Removing the Right Rear Lower Cover]
- 3) Remove the rear upper cover. (page 10-14) Reference [Removing the Rear Upper Cover]
- 4) Remove the rear lower cover. (page 10-14) Reference [Removing the Rear Lower Cover]

10.5.10.2 Removing the HV1 PCB Unit

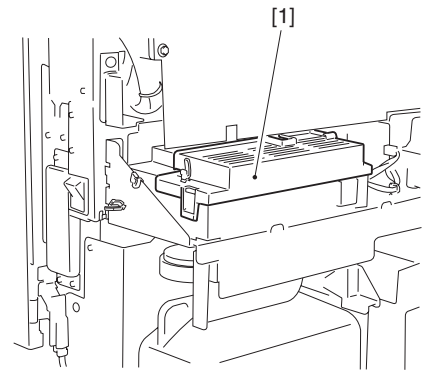
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove two clamps [1] and one wire clip [2].



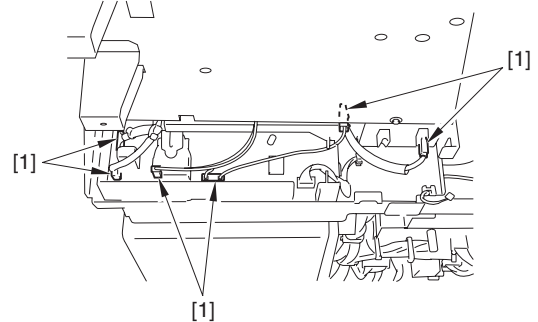
F-10-114

- 2) Remove the cover [1].



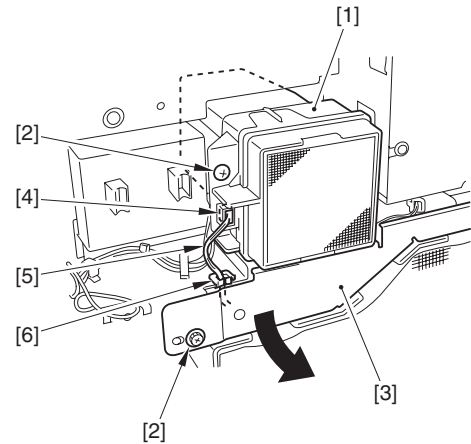
F-10-115

- 3) Remove six connectors [1].



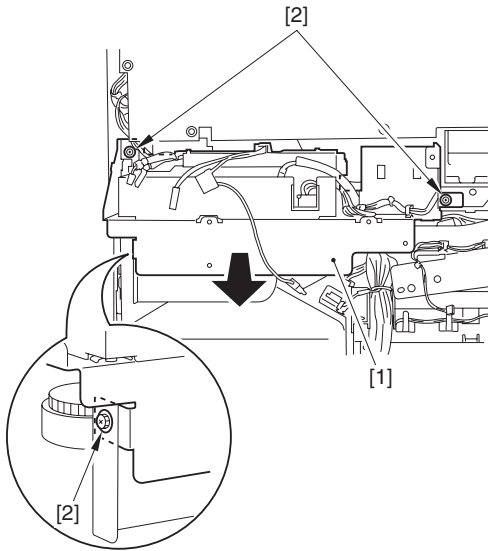
F-10-116

- 4) Remove the main body rear exhaust fan duct [1] and the sheet metal [3].
 - 1 screw [2]
 - 1 connector [4]
- 5) Remove the cable [5] from the edge saddle [6].



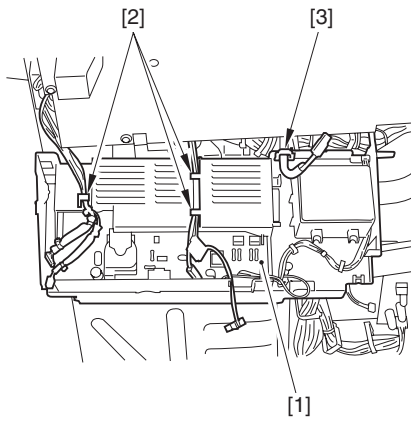
F-10-117

- 6) Pull out the HV1 PCB unit [1] in the direction of the arrow.
 - 3 screws [2]



F-10-118

- 7) Remove the HV1 PCB unit [1].
 - 3 guides [2]
 - 1 edge saddle [3]



F-10-119

10.5.11 HV3 PCB

10.5.11.1 Preparation for Removing the HV3 PCB

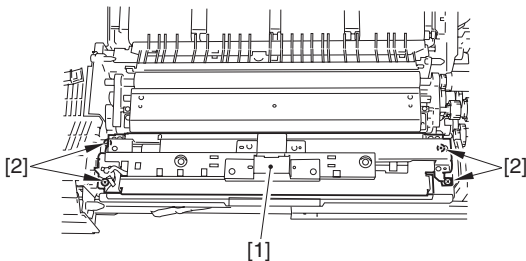
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover. (page 10-11) Reference [Front Cover Opening]
- 2) Pull the fixing feeder unit out forward.

10.5.11.2 Removing the HV3 PCB

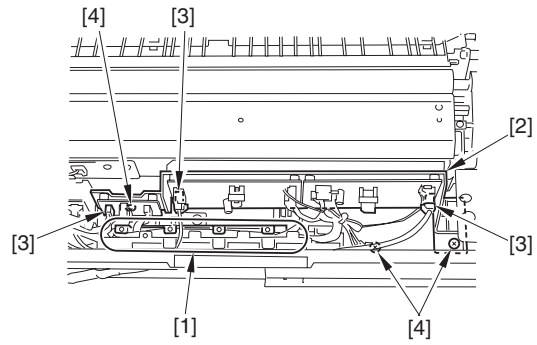
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Move the registration guide unit [1] in the direction of the arrow.
 - 4 screws [2]



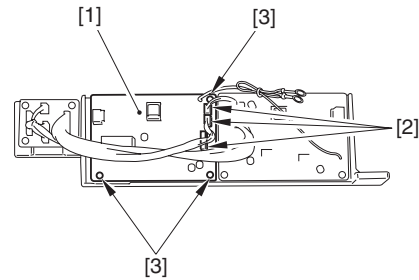
F-10-120

- 2) Remove the harness from the guide [1], and remove the HV PCB mount [2].
 - 3 connectors [3]
 - 3 screws [4]



F-10-121

- 3) Remove the HV3 PCB [1].
 - 3 connectors [2]
 - 3 screws [3]



F-10-122

10.5.12 HV5 PCB

10.5.12.1 Preparation for Removing the HV5 PCB

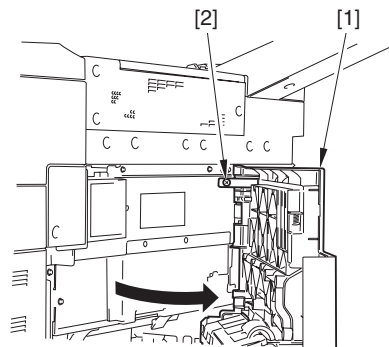
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the right rear upper cover. (page 10-12) Reference [Removing the Right Rear Upper Cover]

10.5.12.2 Removing the HV5 PCB

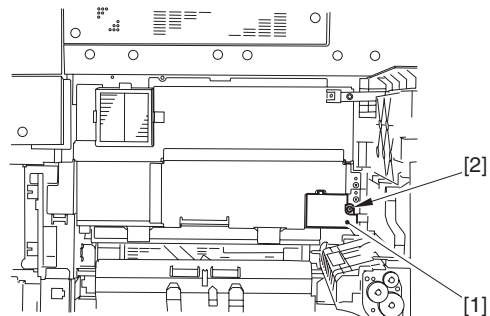
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the right upper cover [1], remove one screw [2].



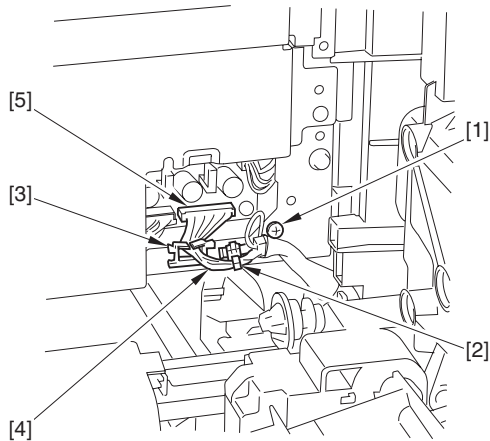
F-10-123

- 2) Remove the connector blanking cover [1].
 - 1 screw [2]



F-10-124

- 3) Remove one grounding terminal screw [1] and one reuse band [2].
- 4) Remove the harness [4] from one wire clip [3], and remove one connector [5].

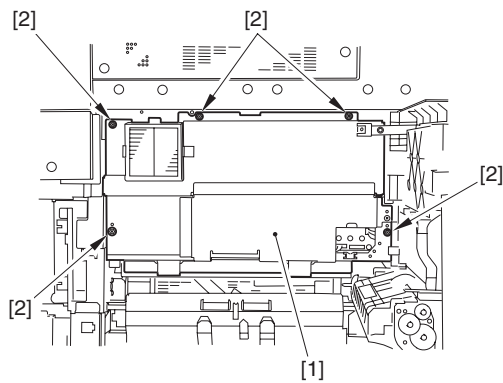


F-10-125

- 5) Remove the sheet metal [1].
- 5 screws [2]

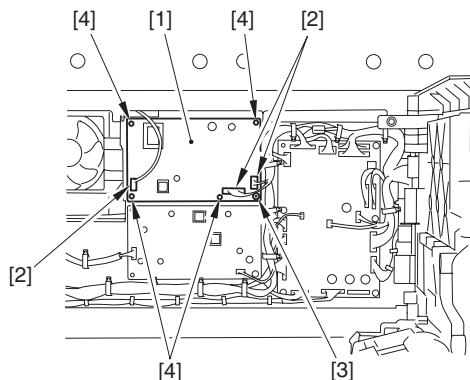


When removing the sheet metal [1], the primary suction fan air filter may come down. The air filter convex area is turned up, so be careful at installation.



F-10-126

- 6) Remove the HV5 PCB [1].
- 3 connectors [2]
- 1 screw [3]
- 4 PCB supports [4]



F-10-127

10.5.13 HV8 PCB

10.5.13.1 Preparation for Removing the HV8 PCB

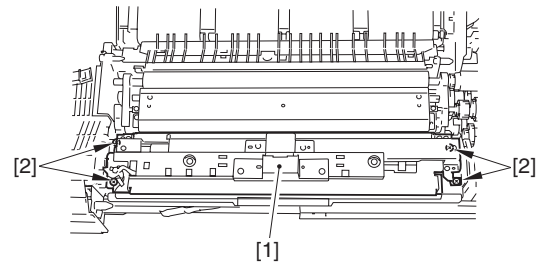
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover. (page 10-11) Reference [Front Cover Opening]
- 2) Pull out the fixing feeder unit forward.

10.5.13.2 Removing the HV8 PCB

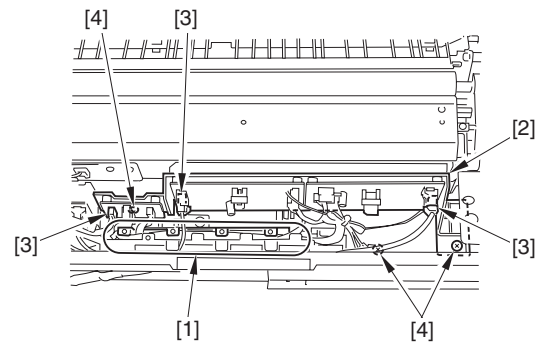
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Move the registration guide unit [1].
- 4 screws [2]



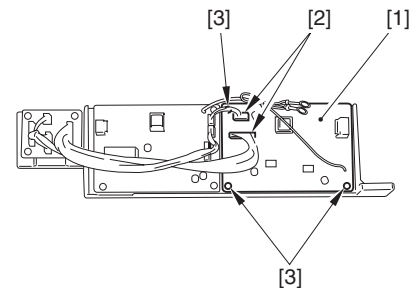
F-10-128

- 2) Remove the harness from the guide [A], remove the HV PCB mount [1].
- 3 connectors [2]
- 3 screws [3]



F-10-129

- 3) Remove the HV8 PCB [1].
- 2 connectors [2]
- 3 screws [3]



F-10-130

10.5.14 Fixing Driver PCB

10.5.14.1 Preparation for Removing the Fixing Driver PCB

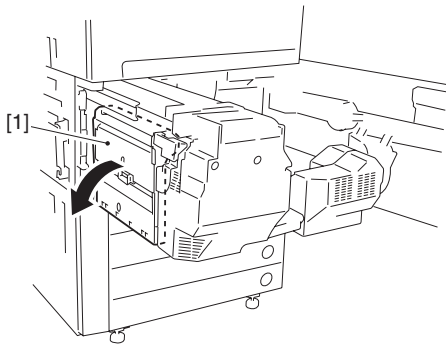
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover. (page 10-11) Reference [Front Cover Opening]
- 2) Pull out the fixing feeder unit.

10.5.14.2 Removing the Fixing Driver PCB

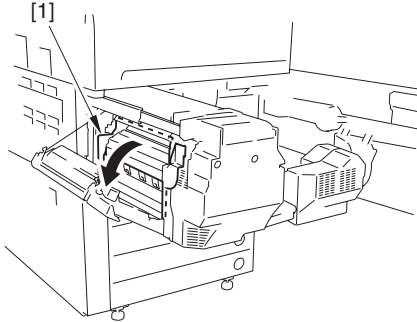
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the external delivery assembly cover [1].



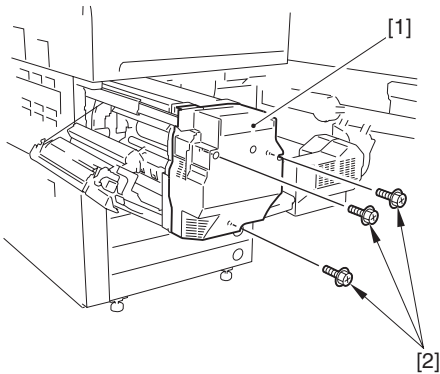
F-10-131

2) Open the internal delivery assembly cover [1].



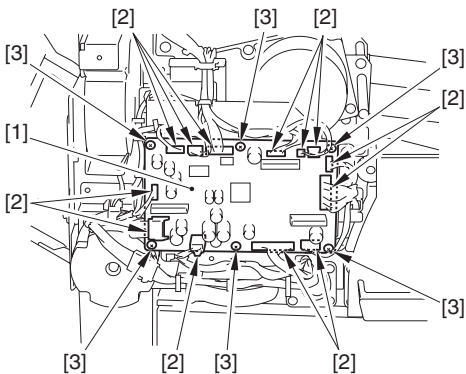
F-10-132

3) Remove the fixing front cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-10-133

4) Remove the fixing driver PCB [1].
- 13 connectors [2]
- 6 screws [3]



F-10-134

10.5.15 Feeding Driver PCB

10.5.15.1 Preparation for Removing the Feeding Driver PCB

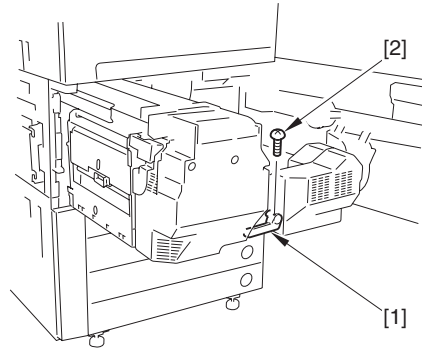
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover. (page 10-11) Reference [Front Cover Opening]
- 2) Pull out the fixing feeder unit.

10.5.15.2 Removing the Feeding Driver PCB

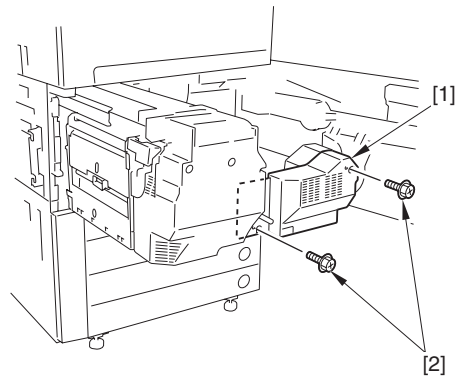
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the lever [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-10-135

- 2) Remove the feeding front cover [1].
- 2 screws [2]



F-10-136

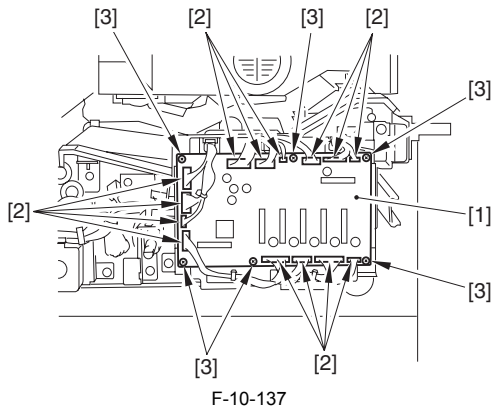
⚠ Points to Note When Attaching the Feeding Front Cover

The feeding front cover has the button to open the lower cover of the fixing/feed unit.
To prevent the bar at the end of the button from being broken, take care to attach the feeding front cover so that the bar is in proper position.

- 3) Remove the feeding driver PCB [1].
- 14 connectors [2]
- 6 screws [3]



Disconnect the connector [2] of J3313 with the connector hook surely held.



F-10-137

10.5.16 AC Driver PCB

10.5.16.1 Preparation for Removing the AC Driver PCB

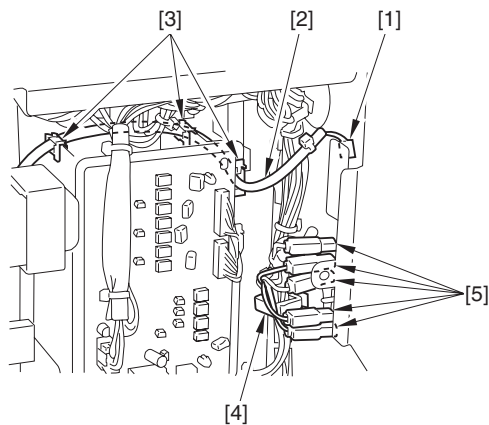
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the rear lower cover. (page 10-14) Reference [Removing the Rear Lower Cover]

10.5.16.2 Removing the AC Driver PCB

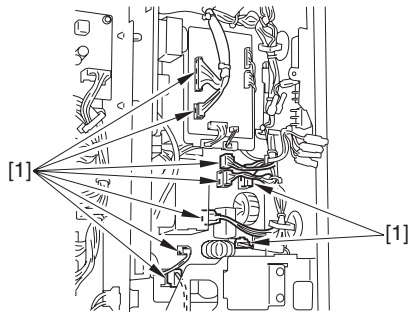
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the connector [1] and 5 faston terminals [5], and remove the cable [2].
 - 3 edge saddles [3]
 - 1 clamp [4]



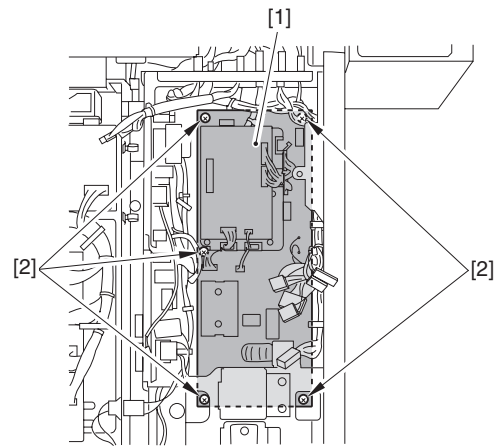
F-10-138

- 2) Remove 9 connectors [1].



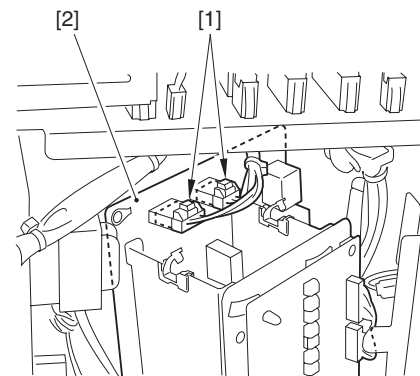
F-10-139

- 3) Pull out the AC driver PCB [1].
 - 5 screws [2]



F-10-140

- 4) Remove the 2 connectors [1], and remove the AC driver PCB [2].



F-10-141

10.5.17 Pickup Driver PCB

10.5.17.1 Preparation for Removing the Pick-Up Driver PCB

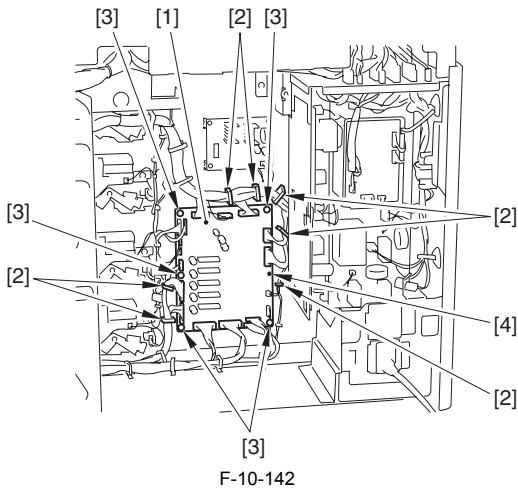
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the rear upper cover. (page 10-14) Reference [Removing the Rear Upper Cover]
- 2) Remove the rear lower cover. (page 10-14) Reference [Removing the Rear Lower Cover]
- 3) Remove the DC power supply assembly. (page 10-22) Reference [Removing the Power Supply Assembly]

10.5.17.2 Removing the Pick-Up Driver PCB

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the pick-up driver PCB [1].
 - 7 clamps [2]
 - 5 screws [3]
 - 1 PCB support [4]



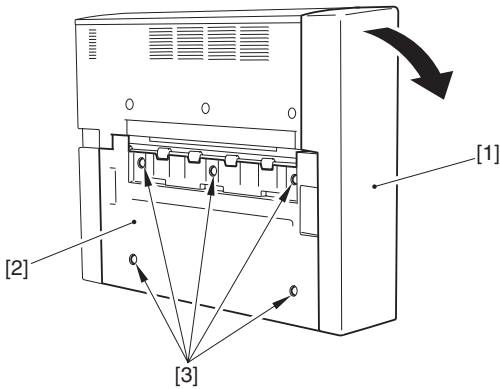
F-10-142

10.5.18 Decurler Driver PCB

10.5.18.1 Removing the Decurler Driver PCB

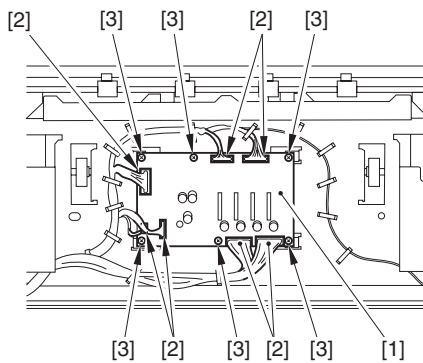
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover [1] and remove the left lower cover [2].
- 5 screws [3]



F-10-143

- 2) Remove the decurler driver PCB [1].
- 7 connectors [2]
- 6 screws [3]



F-10-144

10.5.19 Side Driver PCB

10.5.19.1 Preparation for Removing the Side Driver PCB

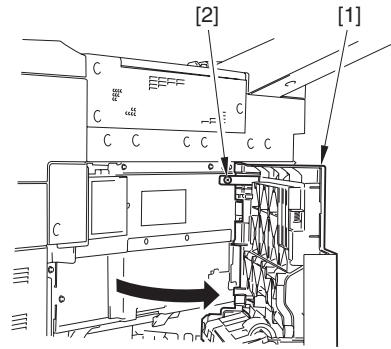
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the right rear upper cover. (page 10-12) Reference [Removing the Right Rear Upper Cover]

10.5.19.2 Removing the Side Driver PCB

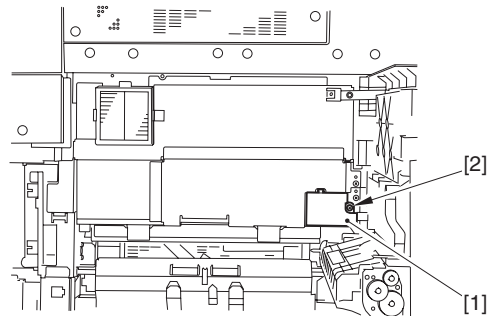
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the right upper cover [1] and remove one screw [2].



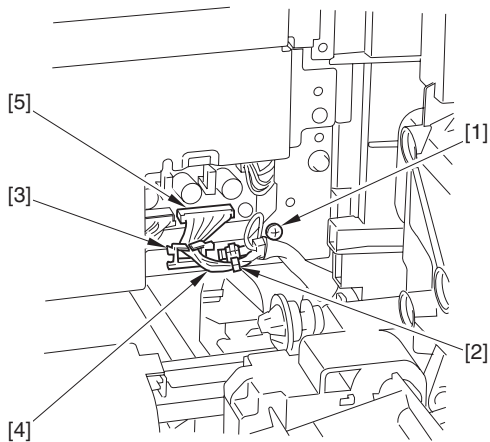
F-10-145

- 2) Remove the connector blanking cover [1].
- 1 screw [2]



F-10-146

- 3) Remove one grounding terminal screw [1], and remove one reuse band [2].
- 4) Remove the harness [4] from one wire clip [3], and remove one connector [5].

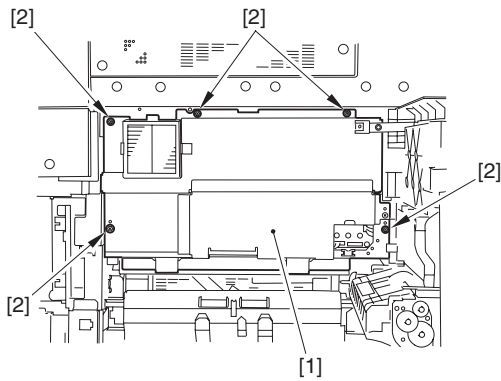


F-10-147

- 5) Remove the sheet metal [1].
- 5 screws [2]

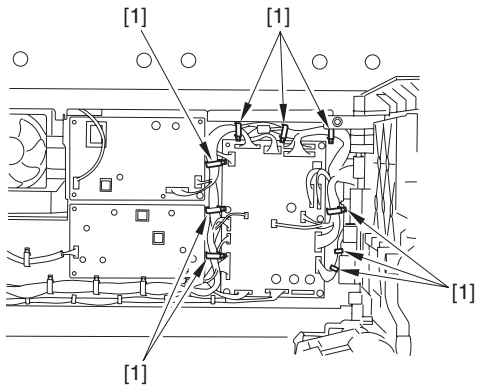


When removing the sheet metal [1], the primary suction fan air filter may come down. The air filter convex area is turned up, so be careful at installation.



F-10-148

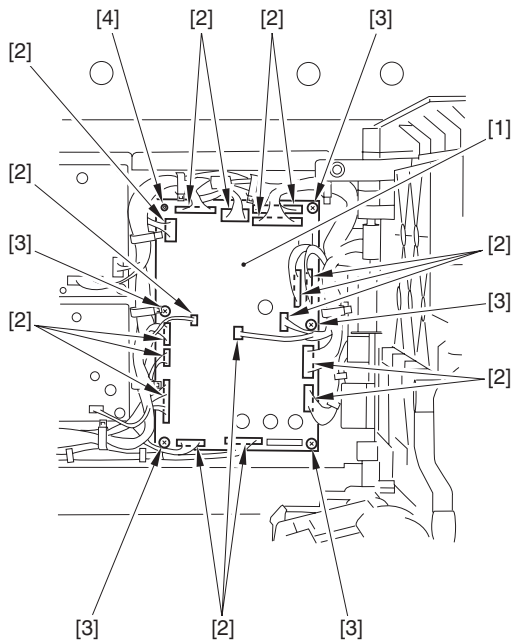
6) Remove nine clamps [1].



F-10-149

7) Remove the side driver PCB [1].

- 17 connectors [2]
- 5 screws [3]
- 1 PCB support [4]



F-10-150

10.5.20 Backside Driver Cover

10.5.20.1 Preparation for Removing the Backside Driver PCB

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

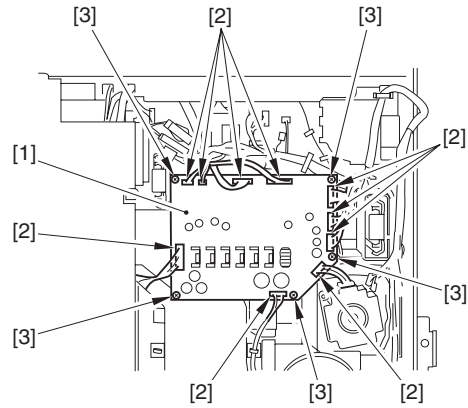
- 1) Remove the left rear upper cover. (page 10-13)Reference [Removing the Left Rear Upper Cover]
- 2) Remove the rear upper cover. (page 10-14)Reference [Removing the Rear Upper Cover]

3) Remove the controller box.

10.5.20.2 Removing the Backside Driver PCB

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the backside driver PCB [1].
 - 10 connectors [2]
 - 5 screws [3]



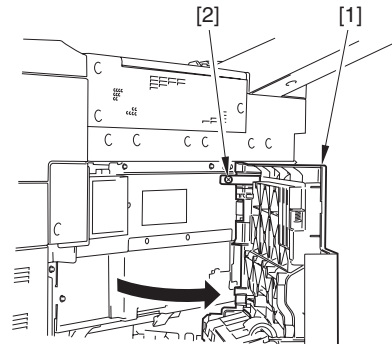
F-10-151

10.5.21 Primary Suction Fan

10.5.21.1 Removing the Air Filter

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

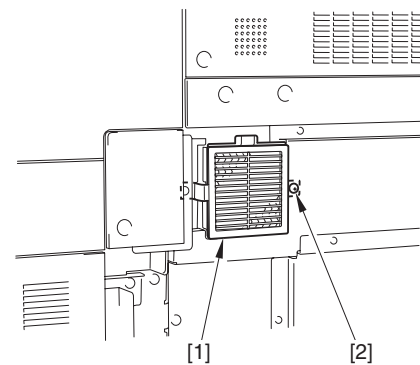
1) Open the right upper cover.



F-10-152

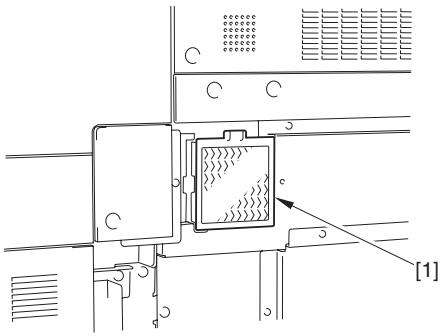
2) Remove the filter cover [1].

- 1 screw [2]



F-10-153

3) Remove the air filter [1].



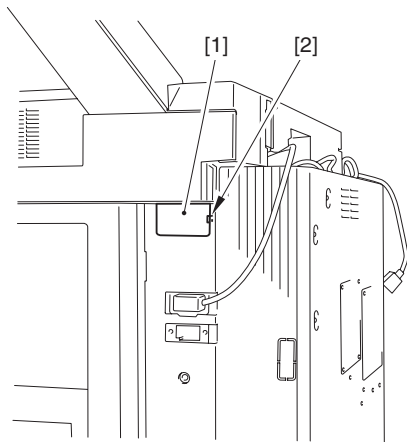
F-10-154

10.5.22 Ozone Filter (Right)

10.5.22.1 Removing the Ozone Filter (Right)

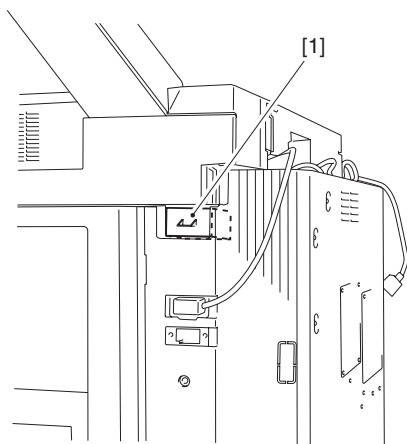
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the filter blanking plate [1].
- 1 claw [2]



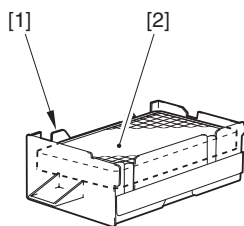
F-10-155

- 2) Remove the filter case [1].



F-10-156

- 3) Remove the ozone filter (right) [2] from the filter case [1].



F-10-157

10.5.23 Ozone Filter (Left)

10.5.23.1 Preparation for Removing the Ozone Filter (Left)

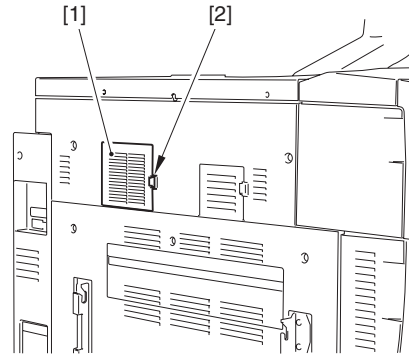
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the decurler.

10.5.23.2 Removing the Ozone Filter (Left)

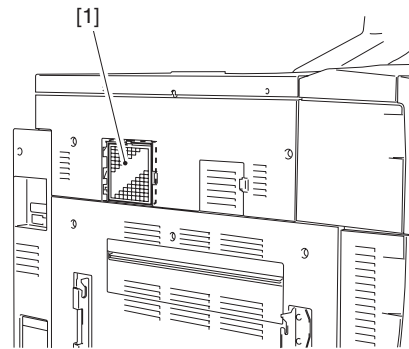
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the filter cover [1].
- 1 claw [2]



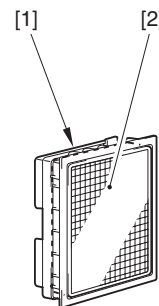
F-10-158

- 2) Remove the filter case [1].



F-10-159

- 3) Remove the ozone filter (left) [2] from the filter case [1].



F-10-160

10.5.24 Ozone Filter (Upper Left)

10.5.24.1 Preparation for Removing the Ozone Filter (Left Upper)

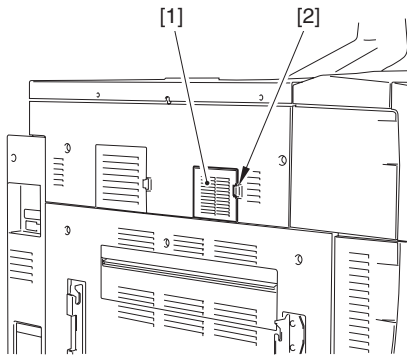
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the decurler.

10.5.24.2 Removing the Ozone Filter (Left Upper)

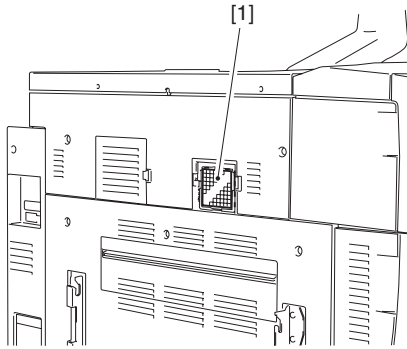
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the filter cover [1].
- 1 claw [2]



F-10-161

2) Remove the ozone filter (left upper) [1].



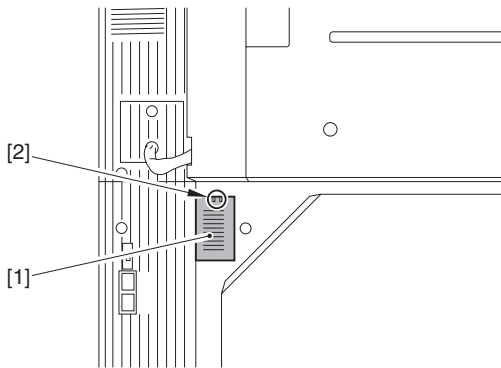
F-10-162

10.5.25 Ozone Filter (Lower Left)

10.5.25.1 Removing the Ozone Filter (Left Lower)

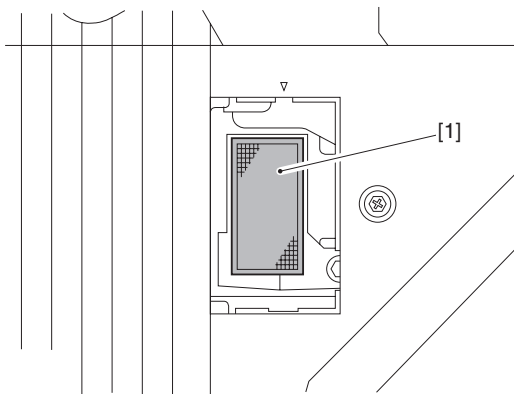
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the filter cover [1].
- 1 claw [2]



F-10-163

2) Remove the ozone filter (left lower) [1].



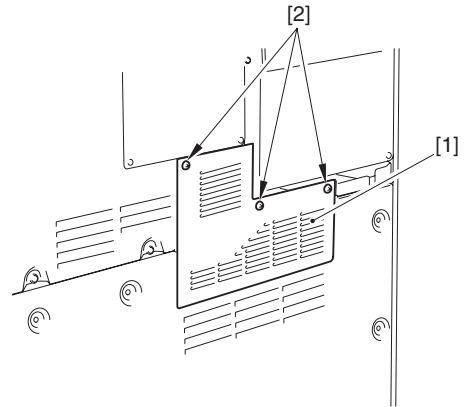
F-10-164

10.5.26 Ozone Filter (Rear)

10.5.26.1 Removing the Ozone Filter (Rear)

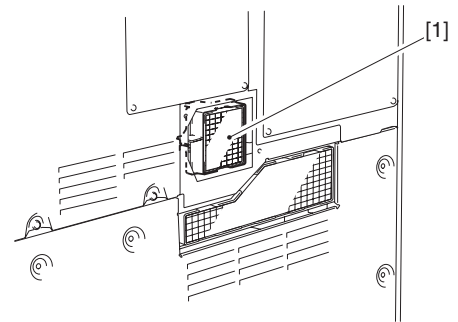
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the rear fan cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



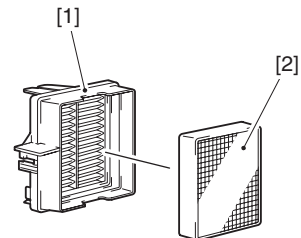
F-10-165

2) Remove the filter case [1].



F-10-166

3) Remove the ozone filter (rear) [2] from the filter case [1].



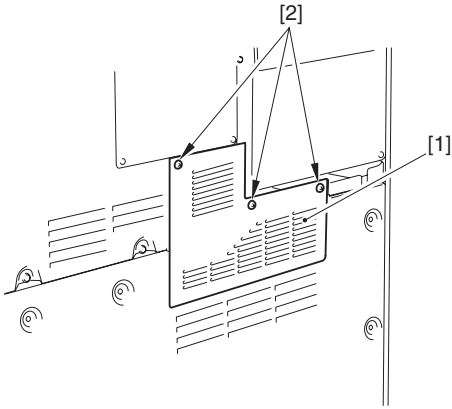
F-10-167

10.5.27 Ozone Filter (Lower Rear)

10.5.27.1 Removing the Ozone Filter (Rear Lower)

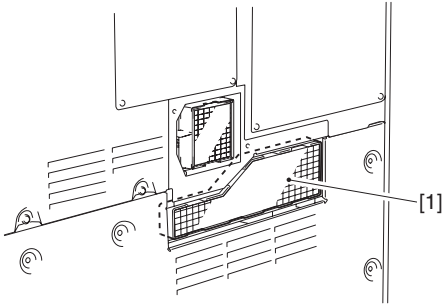
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the rear fan cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-10-168

2) Remove the ozone filter (rear lower) [1].



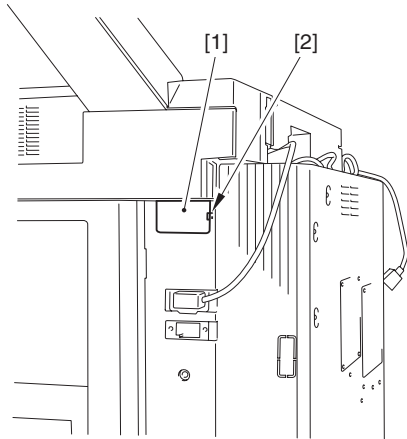
F-10-169

10.5.28 Toner Filter (Right)

10.5.28.1 Removing the Toner Filter (Right)

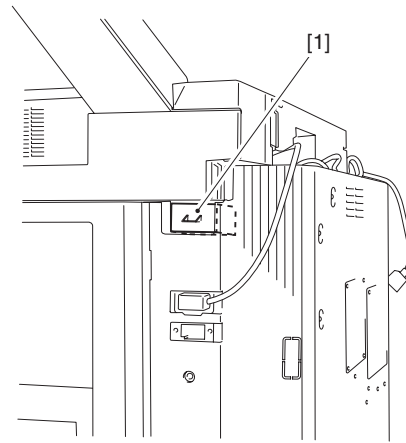
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the filter blanking plate [1].
- 1 claw [2]



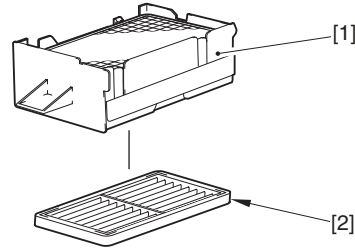
F-10-170

2) Remove the filter case [1].



F-10-171

3) Remove the toner filter (right) [2] from the filter case [1].



F-10-172

10.5.29 Toner Filter (Left)

10.5.29.1 Preparation for Removing the Toner Filter (Left)

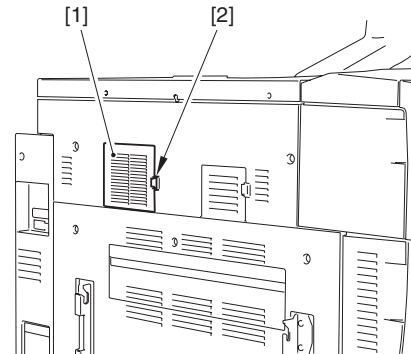
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the decurler.

10.5.29.2 Removing the Toner Filter (Left)

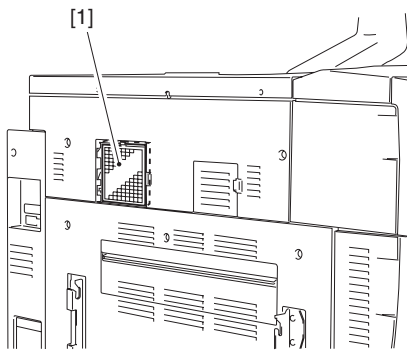
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the filter cover [1].
- 1 claw [2]



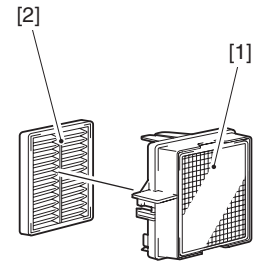
F-10-173

2) Remove the filter case [1].

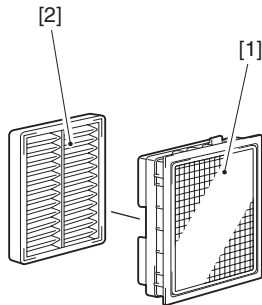


F-10-174

3) Remove the toner filter (left) [2] from the filter case [1].



F-10-178



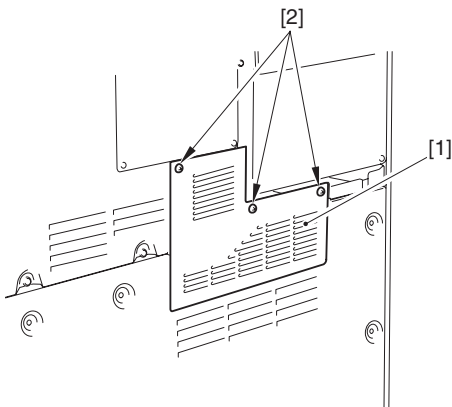
F-10-175

10.5.30 Toner Filter (Rear)

10.5.30.1 Removing the Toner Filter (Rear)

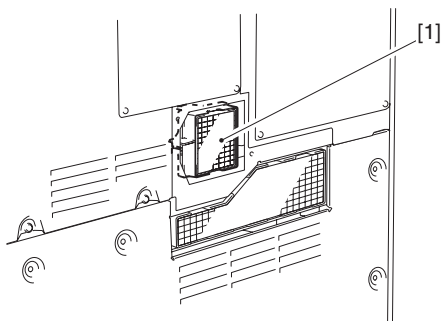
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Remove the rear fan cover [1].
- 3 screws [2]



F-10-176

2) Remove the filter case [1].



F-10-177

3) Remove the toner filter (rear) [2] from the filter case [1].

Chapter 11 MEAP

Contents

11.1 MEAP.....	11-1
11.1.1 Changes.....	11-1
11.1.2 Checking the Operating Environment.....	11-1
11.1.3 Setting Up the Network.....	11-4
11.1.4 Login to SMS.....	11-6
11.1.5 Setting the method to login to SMS.....	11-7
11.1.6 Checking Application List.....	11-11
11.1.7 Starting and Stopping a MEAP Application.....	11-12
11.1.8 Checking the Platform Information.....	11-13
11.1.9 MEAP Specifications.....	11-14
11.1.10 MFID.....	11-16
11.1.11 Checking the System Information of a MEAP Application with SMS.....	11-18
11.1.12 Printing the System Information of a MEAP Application.....	11-19
11.1.13 Reference (Application System Information).....	11-20
11.1.14 Installing an Application.....	11-21
11.1.15 MEAP Enterprise Service Manager.....	11-23
11.1.16 Adding a License File.....	11-24
11.1.17 Disabling a License File (suspending a license).....	11-26
11.1.18 Downloading/Removing an Invalidated License File.....	11-27
11.1.19 Reusable license.....	11-29
11.1.20 License for forwarding.....	11-29
11.1.21 Uninstalling an Application.....	11-32
11.1.22 Login Service.....	11-33
11.1.23 Changing Login Services.....	11-38
11.1.24 Initializing the Password.....	11-39
11.1.25 Creating a Backup for MEAP Application Area, Formatting the Hard Disk, Restoring the MEAP Application Area with the Backup, Using the SST (Service Support Tool).....	11-39
11.1.26 Replacing the Hard Disk Drive.....	11-40
11.1.27 MEAP Safe Mode.....	11-40
11.1.28 Setting HTTP port for MEAP application (level 2).....	11-41
11.1.29 USB keyboard support (iR3245 series only).....	11-44
11.1.30 USB memory related functions(iR3245 series only).....	11-44
11.1.31 Reference material.....	11-46
11.1.32 Option for exclusive individual measure.....	11-48

11.1 MEAP

11.1.1 Changes

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

■ Changes to configuration of login application

Changes have been made to the configuration of the login application since the iR3245 series. Details of the changes are as follows.

- The Simple Device Login (SDL) and earlier Single Sign On (SSO) features have been merged into the Single Sign On-H (SSO-H) feature.
- Security Agent, which was required at the time of domain authorization, is no longer required.
- Pre-installed login applications for the iR device are now Default Authentication (DA) and SSO-H only.
- SDL has been discontinued. (The same login service as SDL can be operated by SSO and SSO-H local device authentication.)

In accordance with the changes described above, the pre-install applications and those provided on the accessory CD are as follows

T-11-1

	Other than iR3245series / imagePRESS C1+	iR3245series / imagePRESS C1+
Pre-install	Default Authentication (default) Simple Device Login Single Sign On	Default Authentication (default) Single Sign On-H
Accessory CD	Default Authentication Simple Device Login Single Sign On and Security Agent	Default Authentication Single Sign On-H Single Sign On and Security Agent

■ USB device support (iR3245 series only)

USB device keyboard support

When a USB keyboard is connected, characters can be entered from the displayed software keyboard window. For details of specifications and supported devices, etc., refer to 'USB keyboard support' in this manual.

USB memory support

USB memory functionality is now supported, where scanned data can be converted into an image file (PDF, TIFF, JPEG) and stored on USB memory and printed out from USB memory, etc. For details, refer to 'USB Memory related functions' in this manual.

■ MFID support (iR3245 series only)

In previous devices, in order to judge whether a MEAP application could be run, it was necessary to declare the Device Specification ID (DID) on the MEAP application side. This meant that, when a new model was released, even in cases where the MEAP application did not require any revision, until the MEAP application could support the new model's DID it could not be installed into that device. In order to address this problem, Mandatory Function ID (MFID) is now supported. MFID is not device dependent and declares the functions required by the MEAP application on a function by function basis. This means that, even for devices that have just newly been released, as long as the MFID declared by the MEAP application are supported, existing MEAP applications can be installed into the device without any alterations made to them. For details, refer to 'MFID' in this manual.

11.1.2 Checking the Operating Environment.

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This section lists the requirements on the operating environment for the maintenance.

MEMO:

- Cookies must be enabled for each session.
- Java Script must be enabled in all environments.
- The required web server functions for each server are built into the MEAP device, so there is no need to configure them separately.



For the following operations in the combined environment of Windows XP and Internet Explorer6, Java2 Runtime Environment Standard Edition 1.3.1 or later is required.

- User registration / edit in SSO/SSO-H local device
- Use of SSO remote login in SSO/SSO-H

■ SMS

The following system environments are required in order to enable SMS access.

T-11-2

Operating System	Supported browser
Windows 2000 Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Windows XP Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 7
Windows Server 2003 Windows Server 2003 R2	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1 Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2 Microsoft Internet Explorer 7
Windows Vista	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7
Mac OS X 10.3	Safari 1.3.2
Mac OS X 10.4	Safari 2.0.4

■ Domain authentication management

In order to use domain authentication in SSO-H, the following system environments are required.

- The following Windows servers are installed under Active Directory, and DNS server for name resolution.
 - Microsoft Windows 2000 Server SP4
 - Microsoft Windows Server 2003 SP1
 - Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2
- Windows 2000/2003 Domain Name System (DNS) access privileges
- Domain controller access privileges

T-11-3

System environments for administrator and ordinary user

Operating System	Supported browser	Java Runtime Environment
Windows 2000 Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6: Sun Java Runtime Environment 1.3or later
Windows XP Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7: Sun Java Runtime Environment 1.3or later
Windows Server 2003 Windows Server 2003 R2	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	
Windows Vista	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	
Mac OS X v10.3	Safari 1.3.2	Sun Java Runtime Environment 5.0
Mac OS X v10.4	Safari 2.0.4	

T-11-4

System environments for administrator and ordinary user (when using IPv6 communication)

Operating System	Supported browser	Java Runtime Environment
Windows XP Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6: Sun Java Runtime Environment 1.3or later Microsoft Internet Explorer 7: Sun Java Runtime Environment 1.3or later
Windows Server 2003 Windows Server 2003 R2	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	
Windows Vista	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	

T-11-5

Network ports used

Port No.	Application
53	Communication with DNS server (fixed)
88	Kerberos authentication with KDC (Key Distribution Center)
389	Communication with directory service using LDAP (default is 389, may be changed to any port on LDAP service side)

T-11-6

Table for version of device and SSO-H

Product Name	SSO-H Version		Remark
	Version of SSO-H	Preinstalled version	
Model before from iR3245 series	1.3.0 or later	Not preinstalled	-
iR3245 series	1.3.0 or later	1.3.0	1.3.0
imagePRESS C7000VP series	1.3.0 or later	1.3.0	System(MN-CONT)Ver50.80 later MEAPCONT Ver50.80 later

■ Local Device Authentication Management

For user registration / edit in SSO-H(with Local Authentication), following system requirements must be satisfied.

T-11-7

System environments for administrator and ordinary user

Operating System	Supported browser	Java Runtime Environment
Windows 2000 Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6: Sun Java Runtime Environment 1.3or later
Windows XP Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7: Sun Java Runtime Environment 1.3or later
Windows Server 2003 Windows Server 2003 R2	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	
Windows Vista	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	
Mac OS X v10.3	Safari 1.3.2	Sun Java Runtime Environment 5.0
Mac OS X v10.4	Safari 2.0.4	

T-11-8

System environments for administrator and ordinary user (when using IPv6 communication)

Operating System	Supported browser	Java Runtime Environment
Windows XP Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6: Sun Java Runtime Environment 1.3or later Microsoft Internet Explorer 7: Sun Java Runtime Environment 1.3or later
Windows Server 2003 Windows Server 2003 R2	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	
Windows Vista	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7	

MEMO:

- When using a computer with the following OS installed as the client computer, Java Runtime Environment needs to be installed separately.
 - Windows 2000 Professional (Service Pack 4)
 - Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 1a or later)
 - Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 R2
- Refer to the Sun Microsystems homepage for details on how to acquire Java Runtime Environment.

SSO domain authentication environment

When carrying out domain authentication with the conventional SSO (configured using Security Agent), the Windows server that installs Security Agent (SA) is assured for operation with the following system environments.

T-11-9

Hardware	Memory	256MB or more
	Hard disk	Empty capacity of 15MB or more
	CPU	Processor more than Intel Celeron 800 MHz corresponding
Software	OS	Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional SP4 Microsoft Windows 2000 Server SP4 Microsoft Windows XP Professional SP2 Microsoft Windows XP Professional SP2 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 SP1 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2
		Corresponding Active Directory

* Construction of SSO domain environment by using Active Directory of Microsoft Windows Server 2003 needs SA of version 2.0.1 or newer, SSO Login application of version 3.0.0 or newer.

Combination list of the versions of SSO Login application of MEAP device and SA

T-11-10

Product Name of MEAP Device			Version of SSO Login Application	Version of SA	V1.1.0	V1.2.0	V1.3.0	V1.3.1	V2.0.0	V2.0.1	V3.0.1	V3.1.0	V3.1.1
US	EU	AO											
iR5020/ iR5020i/ iR6020/ iR6020i	iR5020N/ iR5020i/ iR6020N/ iR6020i	iR5020i/ iR6020i	V1.1.0	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
iR2220i/ iR2220N/ iR3320i/ iR3320N	iR2220i/ iR2220N/ iR3320i/ iR3320N	iR2220i/ iR3320i	V1.1.0	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
iR C3220/ iR C2620	iR C3220/ iR C2620	iR C3220/ iR C2620	V1.1.1	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
iR 2270/ iR 2870/ iR 3035/ iR 3045	iR 2270 / iR 2870/ iR 3035/ iR 3045	iR 2270 /2870/3035/3045	V1.1.2	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
			V2.2.7	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B	B	
iR85+/ iR8070/ iR105+/ iR9070	iR85+/ iR8070/ iR105+/ iR9070	iR85+/ iR8070/ iR105+/ iR9070	V1.1.3	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
			V2.2.7	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B	B	
iR 5570/ iR 6570	iR 5570 / 6570	iR 5570 / 6570	V2.0.0, V2.2.9	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B	B	B
iR C3170U/ iR C3170i	iR 3170C/ iR 3170Ci/ iR C2570/ iR C2570i	iR C3170/ iR C3170i/ iR C2570/ iR C2570i	V2.2.6	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B	B	B
iR C5870U/ iR C6870U	iR 5870C/ iR 5870Ci/ iR 6870C/ iR 6870Ci	iR C5870/ iR C5870i/ iR C6870/ iR C6870i	V2.4.0	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B	B	B
iR7086/ iR7095/ iR7095 Printer/ iR7105	iR7086/ iR7095/ iR7095 P/ iR7105	iR7086/ iR7095/ iR7095P/ iR7105	V2.5.0	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B	B	B
			V3.9.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	C
iR C5180i/ iR C4580i/ iR C4080i	iR C4080/ iR C4080N/ iR C4580/ iR C4580N/ iR C5180/ iR C5180N	iR C4080/ iR C4080N/ iR C4580/ iR C4580N/ iR C5180/ iR C5180N	V3.0.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	C
			V3.10.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	C

Product Name of MEAP Device			Version of SSO Login Application	Version of SA									
US	EU	AO			V1.1.0	V1.2.0	V1.3.0	V1.3.1	V2.0.0	V2.0.1	V3.0.1	V3.1.0	V3.1.1
imagePRESS C1	imagePRESS C1	imagePRESS C1	V3.1.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	
			V3.9.1	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	
iR C2880/ iR C3380	iR C2880 / C3380	iR C2880 / C3380	V3.2.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	
iR3025/ iR3030/ iR3035/ iR3045	iR3025/ iR3030/ iR3035/ iR3045	iR3025/ iR3030/ iR3035/ iR3045	V3.4.1	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	
iR 5055/ iR 5065/ iR 5075	iR 5055/ iR 5065/ iR 5075	iR 5055/ iR 5065/ iR 5075	V3.5.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	
iR C5185	iR C5185	iR C5185	V3.6.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	
			V3.10.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	
imagePRESS C6000/ C6000VP/ C7000VP	imagePRESS C6000/ C7000VP	imagePRESS C6000/ C7000VP	V3.8.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	
			V3.13.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	
-	iR 3180C/ iR3180Ci	iR C3180i / iR C2580i	V3.9.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	
iR 5050	-	-	V3.9.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	
iR C5058/ C5068/ C6880i	iR C5880/ C5880i/ C6880/ C6880i	iR C5880/ C6880/ C6880i	V3.9.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	
-	CLC5151/ CLC4040	-	V3.10.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	
iR C3480/ C3080/ C2550	iR C3580/ C3080/ C2380	iR C3580/ C3080/ C2550	V3.10.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	
iR 3225/ iR 3230/ iR 3235/ iR 3245	iR 3225/ iR 3235/ iR 3245	iR 3225/ iR 3230/ iR 3235/ iR 3245	V3.10.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	
imagePRESS C1+	imagePRESS C1+	imagePRESS C1+	V3.10.0	A	A	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	

A = SSO basic function support

B = SSO basic function + Multi domain function + LLS cache function support

C = SSO basic function + Multi domain function + LLS cache function support + Server 2003 Active Directory support

MEMO:

- It must improve in the version of SSO Login application and version of SA when you want to use the function B or C.
- The right of access to the domain controller and the right of access to the Windows 2003 DNS are necessary, when the domain authentication is used with SSO.



Important information when using conventional SSO

- The device using SSO authentication and the Windows server on which Security Agent is installed must exist in the same domain.
- In the case that Security Agent has been installed in Windows XP Professional SP2, Windows Server 2003 SP1/Server 2003 R2 and Windows Firewall is set enabled, Security Agent (SA.exe) needs to be added as an exceptional program of Windows Firewall. If not being designated a directory of installation, SA.exe is stored in the following directory. C:\Program Files\Canon\SSOPackage\SecurityAgent
- In the case that Active Directory has been constructed in Windows Server 2003 SP1/Server 2003 R2 and Windows Firewall is set enabled, TCP port '5678' used by Security Agent needs to be added in Windows Firewall.

Browser

The following combinations of operations are guaranteed for the access from Web browser to MEAP device.


T-11-11

OS	Supported Browser
Microsoft Windows 98SE Microsoft Windows NT Workstation 4.0 SP6a	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.01 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Microsoft Windows ME	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1
Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional SP3	Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.01 SP3, Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1,
Microsoft Windows XP Professional	Microsoft Internet Explorer 6 SP1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 7
Microsoft Windows Vista	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7

11.1.3 Setting Up the Network

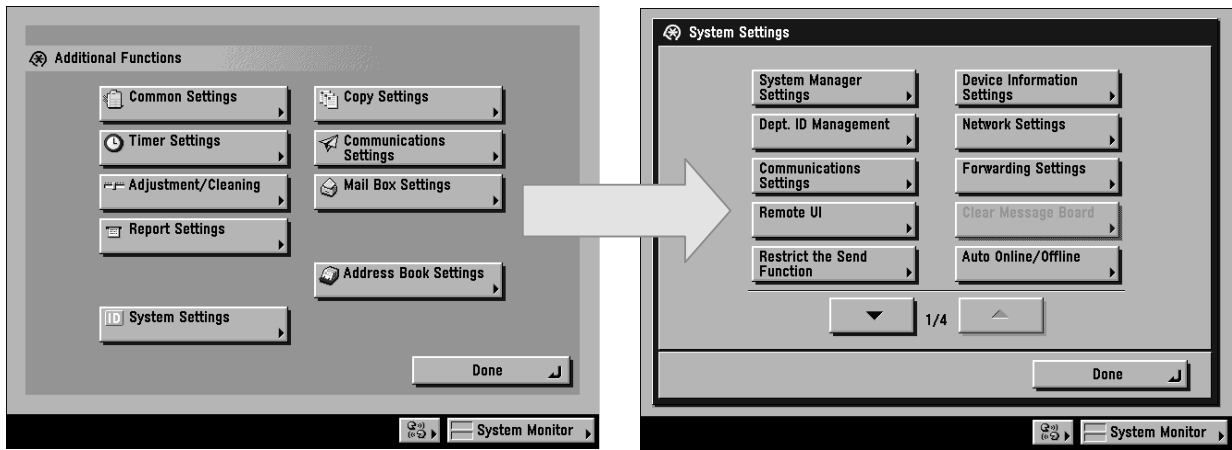
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

To allow a MEAP device to accept accesses through the network, for example you operate a device with SMS, the On option must be selected on Use HTTP screen. The option is selected by default. The setting can be changed on the control panel of the MEAP device.

1) Make the following selections: [Additional Functions] button > [System Settings] button >  (Down-arrow) button.

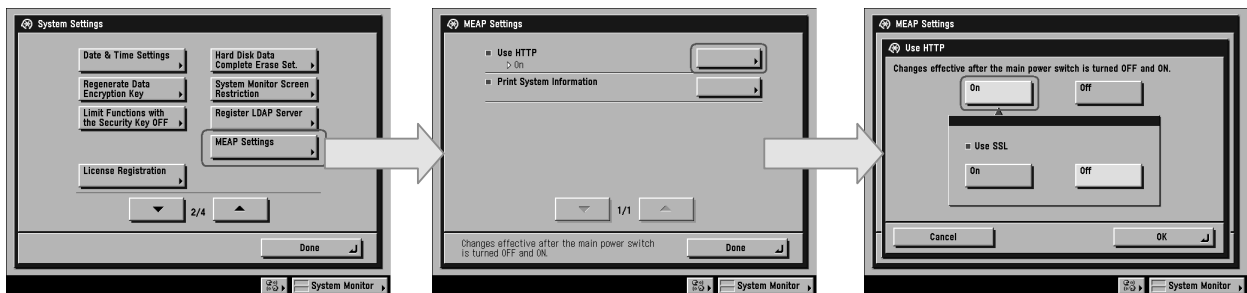
MEMO:

If the System manager ID and system password have already been assigned, ID Entry dialog appears after System Settings button is pressed. Enter the system manager ID and the password, and click ID key to go into System Management Mode.



F-11-1

2) Make the following selections: [MEAP Settings] button > [Use HTTP] button > [On] button > [OK] button .



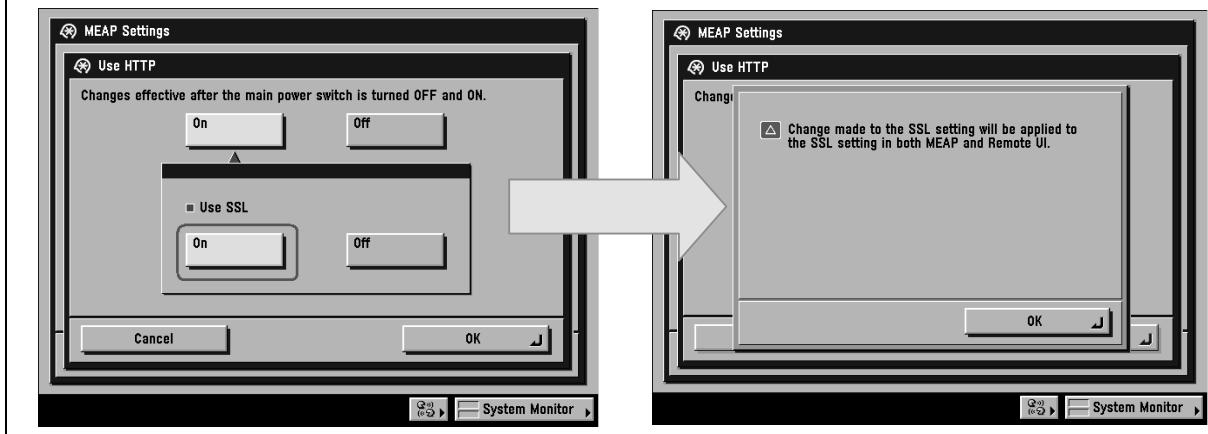
F-11-2

MEMO:

When using SSL, set [Use SSL] ON.

(This setting is also applied to the SSL setting of RUI. Same is true in the case of setting SSL ON on the side of RUI.)

Setting [Use SSL] ON displays the message dialogue 'Changes effective after the main power switch is turned OFF and ON' . Press [OK].



3) Press Done button as many times as necessary until the Basic screen appears.

4) Turn off the device's main power; wait for 10 sec, and then turn the power back on.



- The setting [Use HTTP] is not actually enabled/disabled until you have turned off and then on the device's main power switch.

- You cannot make a connection through a proxy server. If a proxy server is in use, enter the IP address of the MEAP device in the Exceptions field for the browser. Open Internet Options dialog of Internet Explorer and select Connections tab, LAN Settings button, Use a proxy server option, and Advanced button of Proxy server group. Proxy Settings dialog will open. The Exceptions field is in the dialog. As network settings vary among environments, consult the network administrator.

- If Cookie and JavaScript are not enabled in the Web browser, you will not be able to use SMS.

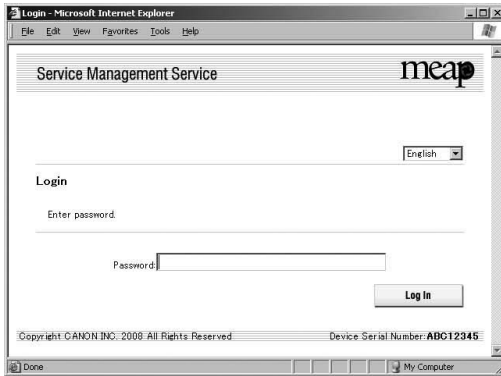
- To type text using the Web browser, use the characters compatible with the MEAP device's touch panel display. The MEAP device may not properly recognize some characters.

- When [se SSL] is made available, it is necessary to set the key and the certificate necessary for the SSL communication. Set the key and the certificate by SSL with [Certificate Settings] that exists in [System Settings] > [Network Settings] > [TCP/IP Settings] on the iR device.

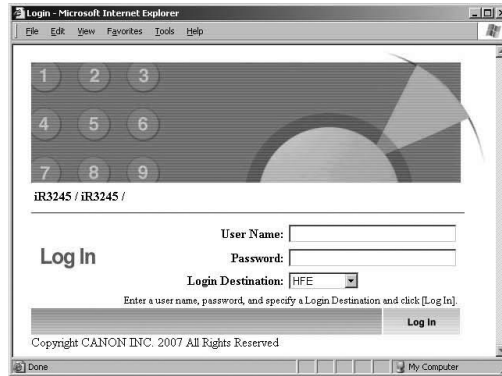
11.1.4 Login to SMS

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

SMS login may be done by entering a password for authentication, or by authentication via the Remote Login Service (RLS) login window (RLS authentication). Settings can be changed to allow either only one of these methods or both of them.



SMS login window (password authentication)



RLS login window (user name/ password authentication)

T-11-12

Login method	Authentication method	Authentication service name	Users who may log in
Password authentication	Password authentication	SMS Installer Service (Password Authentication)	Users who know the SMS login password
RLS login	SSO-H/SSO (SDL also possible)	SMS Installer Service (Remote Login Service Authentication)	Users registered as administrators with SSO-H/ SSO

MEMO:

If Default Authentication is selected as the device authentication method, 'RLS Authentication' is not selectable as SMS Login method. Also, if 'RLS Authentication' is selected, the device authentication method (Default Authentication, SDL, SSO) cannot be changed.

Login by Password Authentication

In the SMS login window, enter the password for authentication. Only one password can be registered with SMS. The login procedures are as follows.

1) Access SMS from the browser of a PC on the same network as the MEAP device. The URL is as follows.

URL: <http://<MEAP Device IP address>:8000/sms/>
 Ex.) <http://172.16.188.240:8000/sms/>

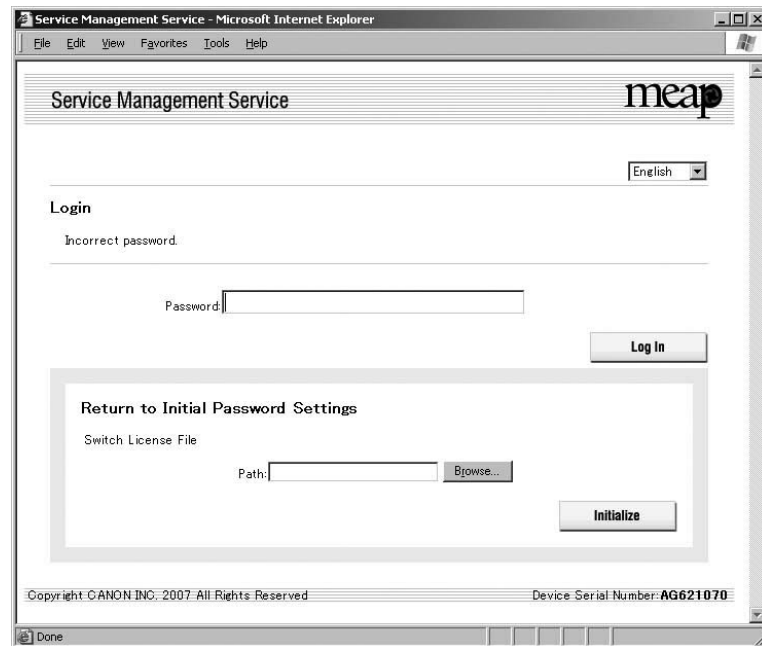
MEMO:

- The default password is "MeapSmsLogin." (The password is case-sensitive.)
- When you want to change the display original language, change in the box in the right of the screen. This setting is not affect by the setting of the language of the device.



F-11-4

- 2) If the wrong password is entered, the following window is displayed. The user's system administrator may have changed the password, so confirm the password with the system administrator. Note that there is no special password for service.



F-11-5

■ Login by RLS Authentication

Login without using the SMS login window but by entering the user ID and password for authentication in the RLS (Remote Login Service) window. The user information (user name and password) used is the information for domain authentication or local device authentication. The login procedures are as follows.

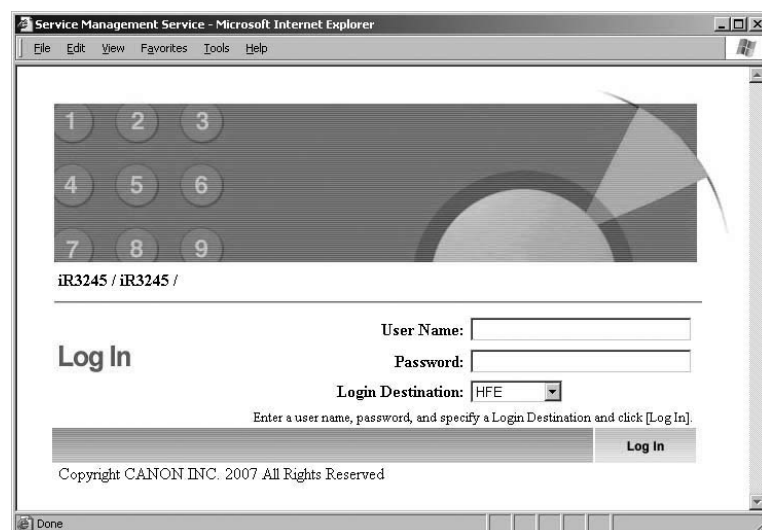
- 1) Access SMS by RLS Authentication from the PC browser on the same network as the MEAP device.

URL: <http://<IP address of MEAP device>:8000/sms/rls/>
Ex.) <http://172.16.188.240:8000/sms/rls>

MEMO:

- When the device authentication method used is domain authentication, enter the user name, password and login destination registered with Active Directory and then click 'Log In'.
- If the authentication method used is local device authentication, enter the user name, password and login destination registered in the device and click 'Log In'.
- When using SDL as the login service, enter the user information registered in the device, as per local device authentication.
- Only the following users may use SMS via RLS.
 - In the case of domain authentication, users belonging to the Canon Peripheral Admins Group.
 - In the case of local device authentication, users registered with Administrator privileges.

In the case the device authentication method is SSO



F-11-6

11.1.5 Setting the method to login to SMS

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The SMS login method settings are done by setting the login Start/ Stop via the other login method. In other words, the password authentication Start/ Stop setting is done by first logging in with RLD authentication, and the RLS authentication Start/ Stop setting is done by first logging in with password authentication. The Start/ Stop combinations of the two login methods are as follows.

T-11-13

	Start RLS Authentication	Stop RLS Authentication
Start Password Authentication	Login available with either method	Login available only with
Stop Password Authentication	Login available only with RLS Authentication	Setting unavailable



If only login via RLS is programmed, login may be disabled for the following reasons.

- authentication server is down
- network problem, no communication with authentication server

In the event of either of these cases, try the following.

1. If local device authentication is active, try logging in with local device authentication.
2. If only domain authentication is active, launch in MEAP safe mode from the device service mode.

After launching in MEAP safe mode, the Default Authentication will become active, and you will be able to login to SMS with password authentication.

After logging into SMS, set the password authentication login to ON (active) and restore the device from MEAP safe mode to normal mode. Until the problem blocking authentication is resolved, log into SMS with password authentication.

■ Setting for login by Password Authentication

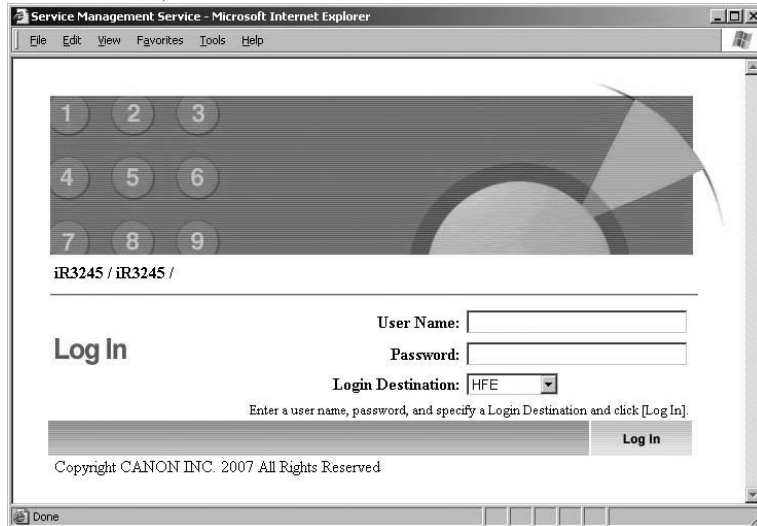
The procedures for changing the password authentication Start/ stop settings are as follows.

1) Access SMS by RLS Authentication from the PC browser on the same network as the MEAP device.

URL: <http://<IP address of MEAP device>:8000/sms/rls/>

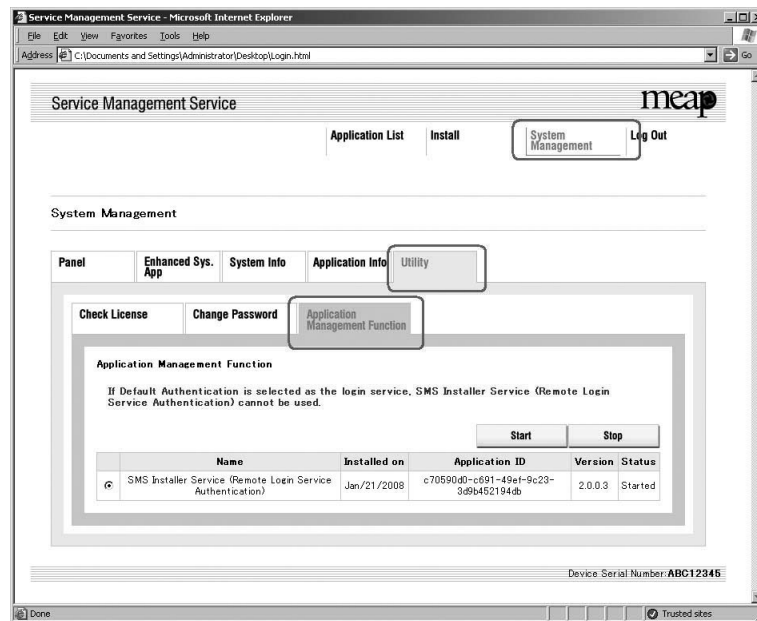
Ex.) <http://172.16.188.240:8000/sms/rls>

Login screen (In case authentication method is SSO-H)



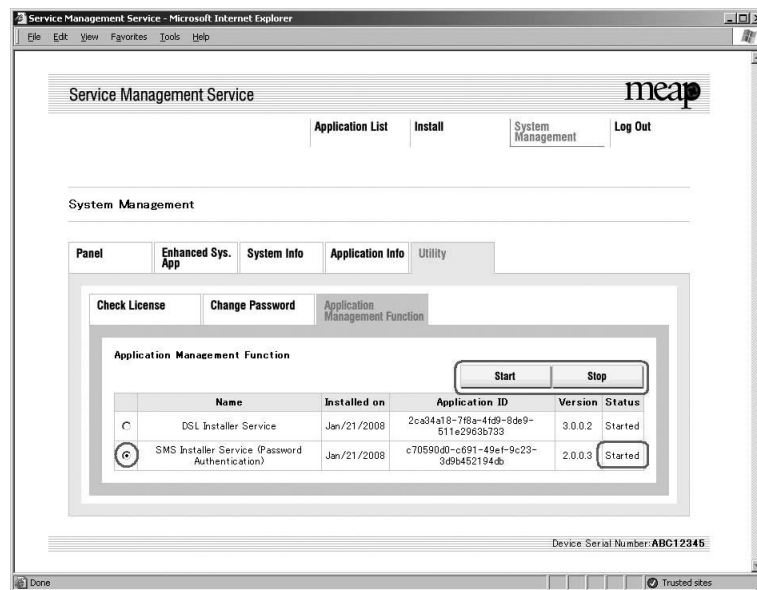
F-11-7

2) Select [System Management] tab > [Utility] tab > [Application Management Function] tab.



F-11-8

3) Enter a check mark against the SMS Installer Service (Password Authentication) radio button and click on either Start or Stop. Check that the status has changed accordingly.

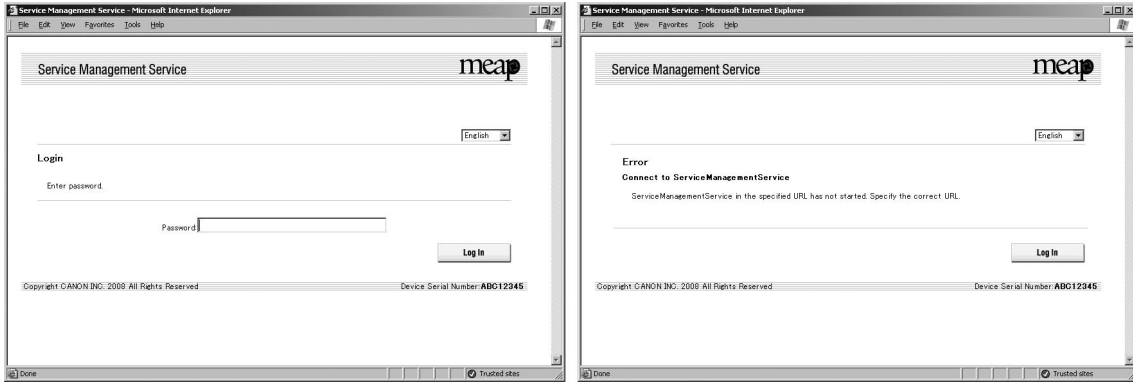


F-11-9

4) Logout once and login again to check to see that the setting is applied properly.

When password authentication has been set to Start, the password entry window will now be displayed. If password authentication has been set to Stop, when an attempt is made to log in, the error message shown below will be displayed and login will not be possible.

Login error screen



Password authentication started

F-11-10

Password authentication stopped

Setting for login by RLS Authentication

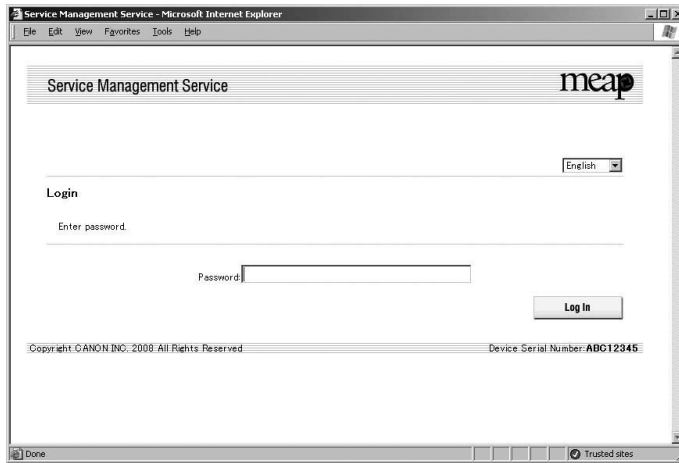
The procedures for changing the RLS authentication Start/ Stop settings are as follows.

1) In order to make a setting for Login by RLS Authentication, you need to Login by Password Authentication.

URL: <http://<IP address of MEAP device>:8000/sms/rls/>

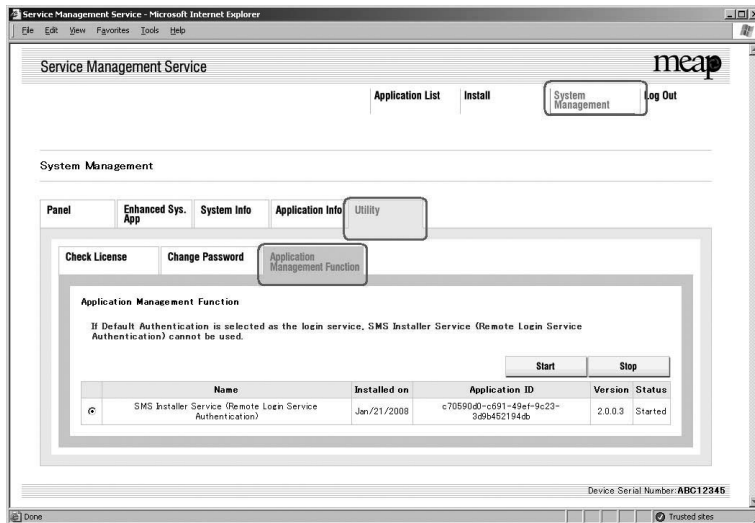
Ex.) <http://172.16.188.240:8000/sms/rls/>

Login screen by Password Authentication



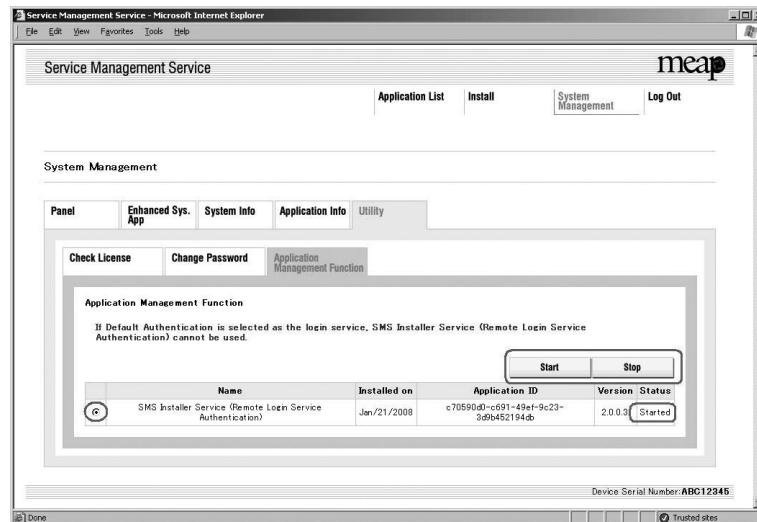
F-11-11

2) Select [System Management] tab > [Utility] tab > [Application Management Function] tab.



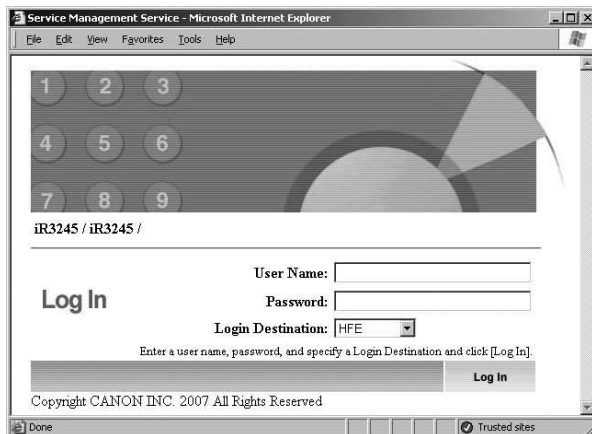
F-11-12

- 3) Enter a check mark against the SMS Installer Service (Remote Login Service Authentication) radio button and click on either Start or Stop. Check that the status has changed accordingly.

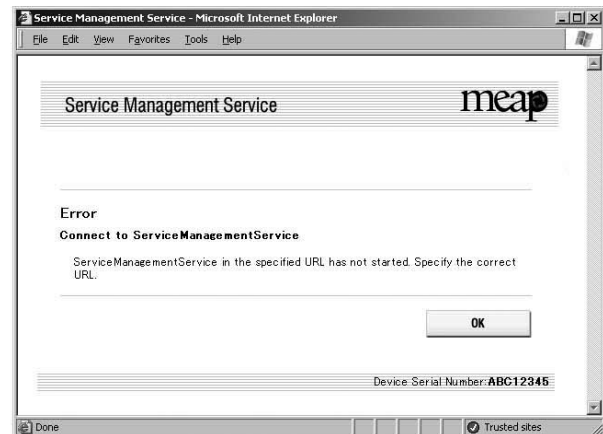


F-11-13

- 4) Log out and then log in again and access via the RLS authentication login window. When RLS authentication has been set to Start, the RLS entry window will now be displayed. If RLS authentication has been set to Stop, when an attempt is made to log in, the error message shown below will be displayed and login will not be possible.



RLS authentication started



RLS authentication stopped

F-11-14

11.1.6 Checking Application List

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The page of **Application List** is designed to show resources arranged according to applications. The page gives you a good idea of how much of the device's memory is being used by the applications (both in absolute and relative terms) as well as how much memory still remains. Check this page before adding an application.

The information is collected from the manifest (headers) - in other words, the size of a resource represents the size as it is declared by the application in question, not necessarily the size of resources actually used by the application. The items of information include the following:

- hard disk
- memory
- thread
- socket
- file descriptor

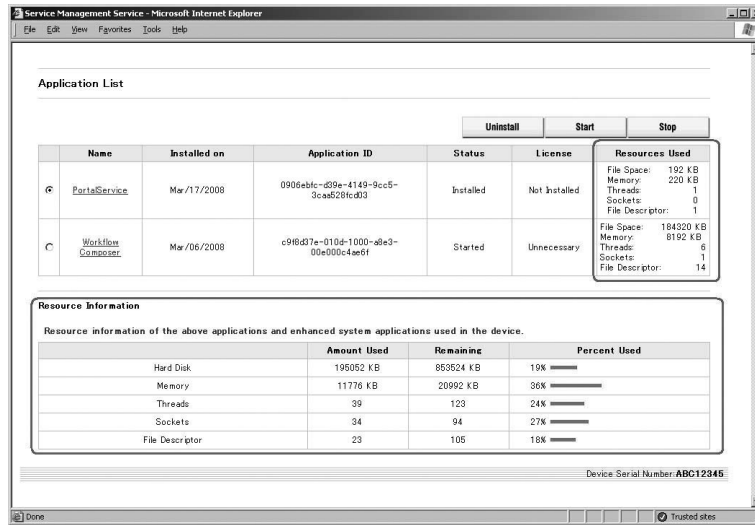
You will not be able to install an application if the size of the remaining memory falls short of the size declared by the application. Moreover, the specifications have been designed so that an application will not be able to start up if there is a shortage of memory for any of the foregoing items (i.e., memory, thread, socket, file descriptor). To find out if there is enough memory, go through the following steps:

- 1) Log in to SMS.
- 2) Click Application List tab.
- 3) Check the displayed information:
 - a. Information on Applications
 - Name (of the application)
 - Installation (date)
 - Application ID
 - Status
 - License

- Resources Used

b. Resource Information

- Amount Used
- Remaining
- Percent Used

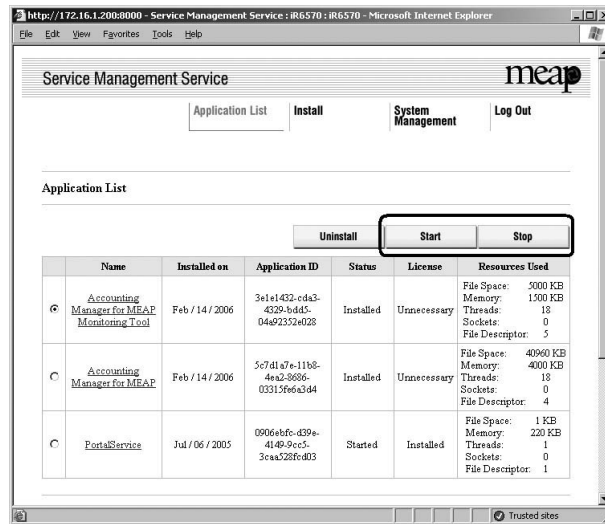


F-11-15

11.1.7 Starting and Stopping a MEAP Application

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Log in to the SMS. (Refer to 'Login to SMS' in this manual.)
- 2) Click [Application List]. (If the Application List is already being displayed, this operation is not necessary.)
- 3) Click the radio button of the MEAP application in question, and click [Start] or [Stop].



F-11-16

4) Check to see that the status of the MEAP application in question is either "Started" or "Stopped."

Name	Installed on	Application ID	Status	License	Resources Used
Accounting Manager for MEAP Monitoring Tool	Feb / 14 / 2006	3e1e1432-0d43-4329-bd45-	Stopped	Unnecessary	File Space: 5000 KB Memory: 1500 KB Threads: 18
Accounting Manager for MEAP	Feb / 14 / 2006	3e1e1432-0d43-4329-bd45-04e023324028	Started	Unnecessary	File Space: 5000 KB Memory: 1500 KB Threads: 18 Sockets: 0 File Descriptor: 5
Accounting Manager for MEAP	Feb / 14 / 2006	5c7d147e-11b8-4e42-8686-02315f6a3d44	Installed	Unnecessary	File Space: 40960 KB Memory: 4000 KB Threads: 18 Sockets: 0 File Descriptor: 4
PortsService	Jul / 06 / 2005	090664bf-439e-4149-9ac5-3ca528fc4003	Started	Installed	File Space: 1 KB Memory: 220 KB Threads: 1 Sockets: 0 File Descriptor: 1

F-11-17

11.1.8 Checking the Platform Information

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

You can check the versions of MEAP Contents, MEAP Specifications, and Java Virtual Machine of the device.



Some applications may not be installed to some MEAP devices of specific specifications. (See 'MEAP Specifications').

- 1) Log in to SMS.
- 2) Click [System Management] > [System Info] tab.

Name	Version
MEAP Function ID	MB1_UM1_L01_UM1_PRI_SC1_DEV1_USB1_FAX1_SD1
MEAP Specifications	8.6.7.9.10.11.12.13.14.15.17.18.19
MEAP Contents	01.30
Java Virtual Machine	04.03.2

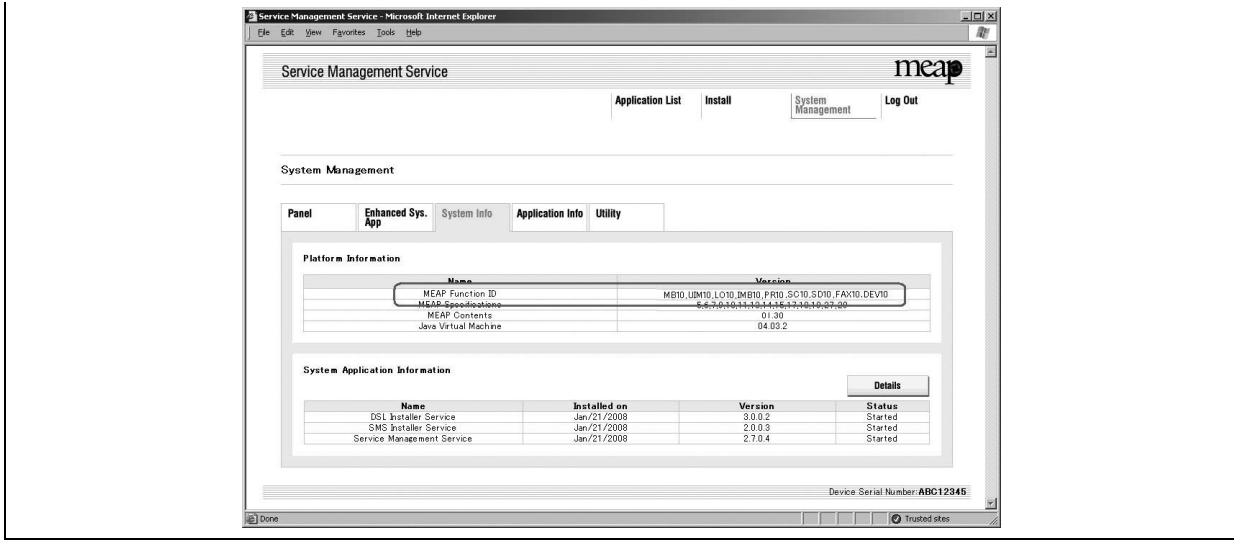
Name	Installed on	Version	Status
DSL Installer Service	Jan/21/2008	3.0.0.2	Started
SMS Installer Service	Jan/21/2008	2.0.0.3	Started
Service Management Service	Jan/21/2008	2.7.0.4	Started

Device Serial Number: ABG12345

F-11-18

MEMO:

iR3245 was made MFID enabled, so MFID information was added to the platform information. (For details, see 'MFID' in this manual.)



11.1.9 MEAP Specifications

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

What is MEAP Specifications (MEAP Spec Version)?

MEAP Specifications is one of the information required to judge whether MEAP applications can be operated or not. With MEAP Specifications, you can prevent an application that uses a specific function of device from being installed onto the device that does not have the function.

About Name

MEAP Specification is shown as 'MEAP Specifications' in the screen to check the version on the side of device that supports MEAP (counter confirmation button) and MEAP platform (SMS). On the other hand, in the manifest file of MEAP application, it is shown as 'MeapSpecVersion' (described in the same way in the SDK document)

(Note) 'MEAP Specifications' hereafter in this document.

Mechanism

MEAP platform judges whether MEAP applications can be operated on it using on the 2 information below:

- Device Specification ID
- MEAP Specifications

Device Specification ID shows information such as the original functions of MFP (including print, scan, and copy), and one that differs by model such as maximum copy number, thus each model has a different ID. (It is easy to determine the IDs for this reason.) MEAP application declares 1 or more Device Specification ID required for its execution. Declaration of multiple Device Specification IDs means that the application is operable in all the models declared. Upon installation of MEAP application in (using) SMS or MEAP Enterprise Service Manager, matching of Device Specification ID is executed on the side of MEAP platform machine. The machine which doesn't support the ID declared by the application rejects installation of such an application.

Meanwhile, MEAP Specifications shows other information than defined by Device Specification ID above, including network and security. Thus each model does not always have the same version.

MEAP application declares 1 or more MEAP Specifications required for its execution. Declaration of multiple Device Specification IDs means that the application is operable in all the environments declared. Upon installation of MEAP application in SMS or MEAP Enterprise Service Manager, matching of MEAP Specifications is executed on the side of MEAP platform machine. The machine which doesn't support the version declared by the application rejects installation of such an application.

MEAP Spec Version for each model

T-11-14

Product Name	USA	EUR	OCE	SPL	KOR	CCNT W	Initial MEAPSpecVer	MEAPSpecVer after Firmware Upgrade
iR 6020	Y	Y	Y	Y	-		1	1. 2 (System v54.xx later)
iR 5020	Y	Y	Y	Y	-			
iR 3320	Y	Y	Y	Y	-		1	1. 2 (System v33.xx later)
iR 2220	Y	Y	Y	Y	-			
iR C3220	Y	Y	Y	Y	-		1, 2, 3	
iR C2620	Y	Y	Y	Y	-			
iR 2870	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		5	5, 6, 7 (System v30.xx later)
iR 4570	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
iR 2270	Y	Y	Y	Y	-			
iR 3570	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
iR85+	Y	Y	-	-	-		5	5, 6, 7 (System v10.xx later)
iR 8070	Y	Y	Y	-	-			5, 6, 7, 17(System v15.XX later)
iR 105+	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
iR 9070	Y	Y	Y	Y	-			

Product Name	USA	EUR	OCE	SPL	KOR	CCNT W	Initial MEAPSpecVer	MEAPSpecVer after Firmware Upgrade
iR 6570	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		5, 6	5, 6, 7, 9 (System v20.xx later)
iR 5570	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			5, 6, 7, 9, 17(System v38.XX later)
iR 5070	Y	-	-	-	-			
iR C3170	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		5, 6, 7	
iR C2570	-	Y	Y	Y	Y			
iR 7105	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		5, 6, 7	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18(System v51.xx later)
iR 7095	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
iR 7086	Y	Y	Y	-	-			
iR 7095P	Y	Y	Y	-	-			
iR C6870	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		5, 6, 7	
iR C5870	Y	Y	Y	Y	-			
iR C5180	Y	-	Y	Y	Y		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15 (System v52.xx later)
CLC5151	-	Y	-	-	-			
iR C4580	Y	-	Y	Y	Y			
CLC4040	-	Y	-	-	-			
iR C4080	Y	Y	Y	-	-			
imagePRESS C1	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11	
imagePRESS C1(Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17,18	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17,18(System v40.xx later)
imagePRESS C1+	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 29	
iR C3380	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 18(System v50.xx later)
iR C2880	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR 3025	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	
iR 3045	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR 3035	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR 3030	Y	-	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR 5075	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18(System v20.xx later)
iR 5065	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR 5055	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR C5185	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15	
iR C5180	Y	-	Y	Y	Y	Y		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15 (System v50.xx later)
CLC5151	-	Y	-	-	-			
iR C4580 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
CLC4040 (Ver.up)	-	Y	-	-	-			
iR C4080 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	-			
iR C3380 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 18	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 18(System v50.xx later)
iR C2880 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
imagePRESS C7000 VP	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13	
imagePRESS C6000	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
imagePRESS C6000 VP	Y	-	-	-	-			
iR 5075 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18(System v20.xx later)
iR5065 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y		
iR5055 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y		
iR5050	Y	-	-	-	-		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18	
iR 7105 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18(System v51.xx later)
iR 7095 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR 7086 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	-	-			
iR 7095P (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	-	-			
iR C3180	-	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18	
iR C2580	-	-	-	-	Y			
iR C6880	-	Y	Y	Y	Y		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17, 18	
iR C5068	Y	-	-	-	-			
iR C5880	-	Y	Y	-	-			
iR C5058	Y	-	-	-	-			
iR C5185(Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17,18,19	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17,18,19(System v75.xx later)
iR C5180(Ver.up)	Y	-	Y	Y	Y	Y		
CLC5151(Ver.up)	-	Y	-	-	-			
iR C4580 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
CLC4040 (Ver.up)	-	Y	-	-	-			
iR C4080 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	-			

Product Name	USA	EUR	OCE	SPL	KOR	CCNT W	Initial MEAPSpecVer	MEAPSpecVer after Firmware Upgrade
iR C3380 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17,18,19	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15,17,18,19(System v76.xx later)
iR C2880 (Ver.up)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR C3580	-	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR C3480	Y	-	-	-	-	-		
iR C3080	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR C2550	Y	-	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR C2380	-	Y	-	-	-	-		
iR3245	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19	
iR3235	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		
iR3230	Y	-	Y	-	Y	Y		
iR3225	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y		

* Due to the change in I/F specifications, these models support '5' only.

T-11-15

MEAP Spec Version

MEAP Spec Version	Description
1	MEAP basic function
2	MEAP Spec Version 1 function and SSL/TSL + Proxy
3	[Reserved]
5	MEAP Spec Version 1 function and CPCA V2 + ERS (Error Recovery Service) + New SSL/TSL
6	[Reserved]
7	MEAP Spec Version 5 function and Compact PDF + OCR PDF(Text Searchable) + USB-Host(Buffering of Interrupt Transfer)
9	[Reserved]
10	MEAP Spec Version 5 function and USB-Host(Exception + ClearFeature + SetFeature + HotPlug) + WINS address acquisition using MIBAgent + TimerService + SSL client authentication
11	MEAP Spec Version 5 function and AMS
13	MEAP Spec Version 5 function and J2ME1.1 Support + Encrypted PDF + Trace and smooth PDF + CTK2.0
14	Device signature PDF
15	IMI + ERS (API addition for IMI)
17	Acquiring images of JBIG format
18	Parsing XML documents (XML parser)
19	Enhancement of IMI function (IMI Version 1.2 series)
27	Symbols that can be used with MibAgent added. (symbols for IPv6 address acquisition)
29	IMI API added (IMI version 1.2.1 enabled)

11.1.10 MFID

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

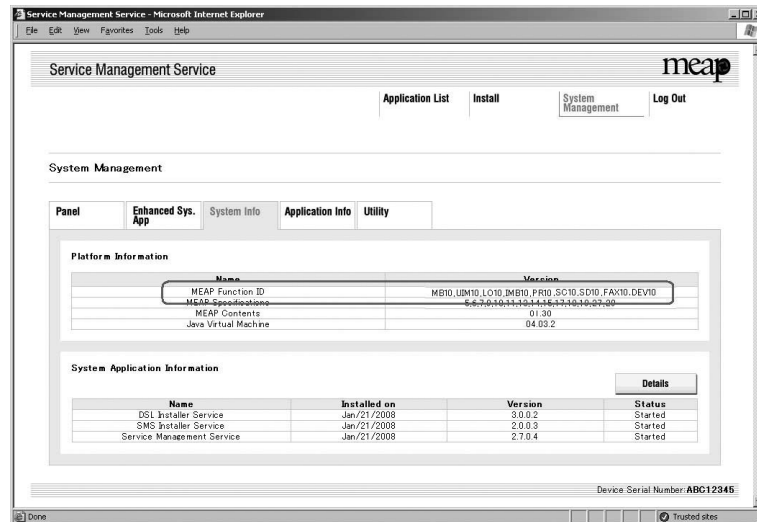
What is MFID?

In earlier MEAP applications, operation was clearly limited to those models whose Device Specification ID (DID) had been declared. However, this method means that, when a new model is launched, MEAP applications cannot be installed until the DID declaration described above is added.

In order to address this problem, the platforms (MEAP) are classified according to the functions provided by the MEAP applications and MEAP Function ID (MFID) allocated to the functions.

The device declares the MFID that correspond to the functions that are mounted in it, and the MEAP application declares the platform functions that it needs in order to operate to the MEAP application manifest file, in an MFID Boolean expression (OC: Operation Condition).

This means that existing MEAP applications can now be installed into new models without being altered.
MFID display sample



F-11-19

T-11-16

MFID definitions

MFID	Overview	Correspondence situation of iR3245 series
MB10	MEAP basic functions (Java VM, OSGi, etc.)	A
UIM10	UI functions (VGA size)	A
LO10	Login function	A
IMB10	Imaging functions (BW printer)	A
PR10	IMI (printer functions)	A
SC10	IMI (scanner functions)	A
SD10	IMI (Send functions)	A
FAX10	IMI (FAX functions)	A
DEV10	IMI (basic functions)	A

A:Available N/A:Not available

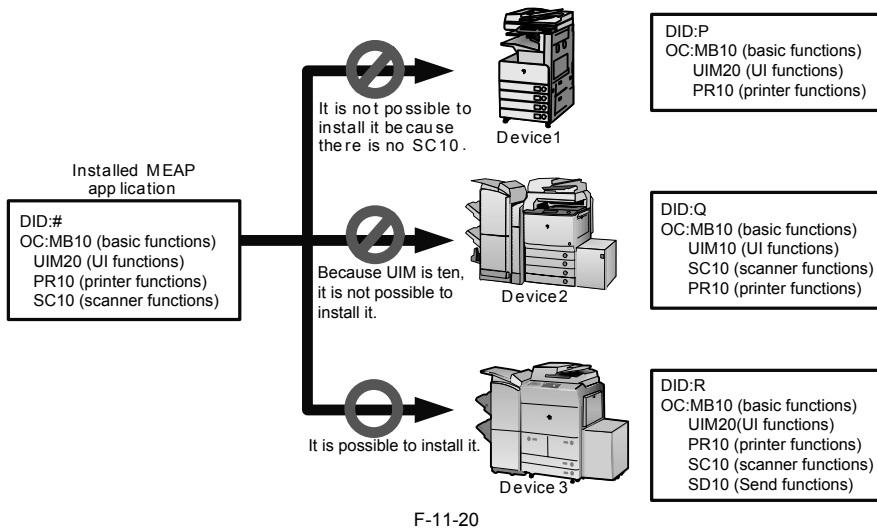
MEMO:
Applications using API other than those defined cannot use MFID.

Supported devices

Devices supported by MFID are as follows.

- 1) Colour devices
None
- 2) BW devices
iR3245 series

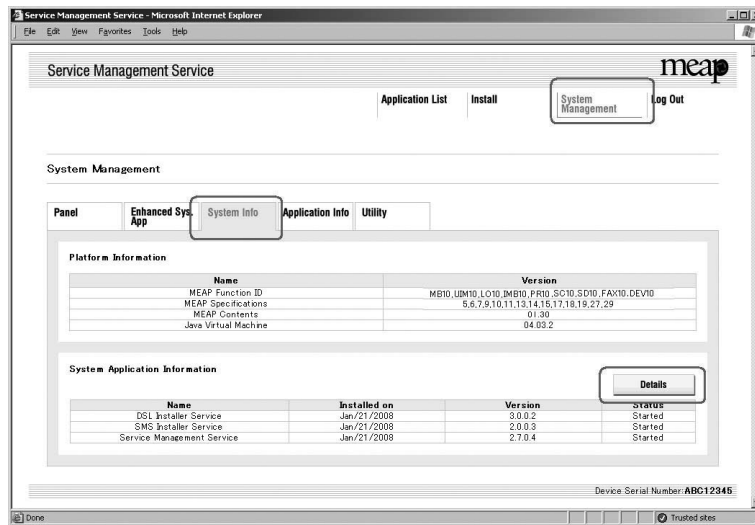
Operation image



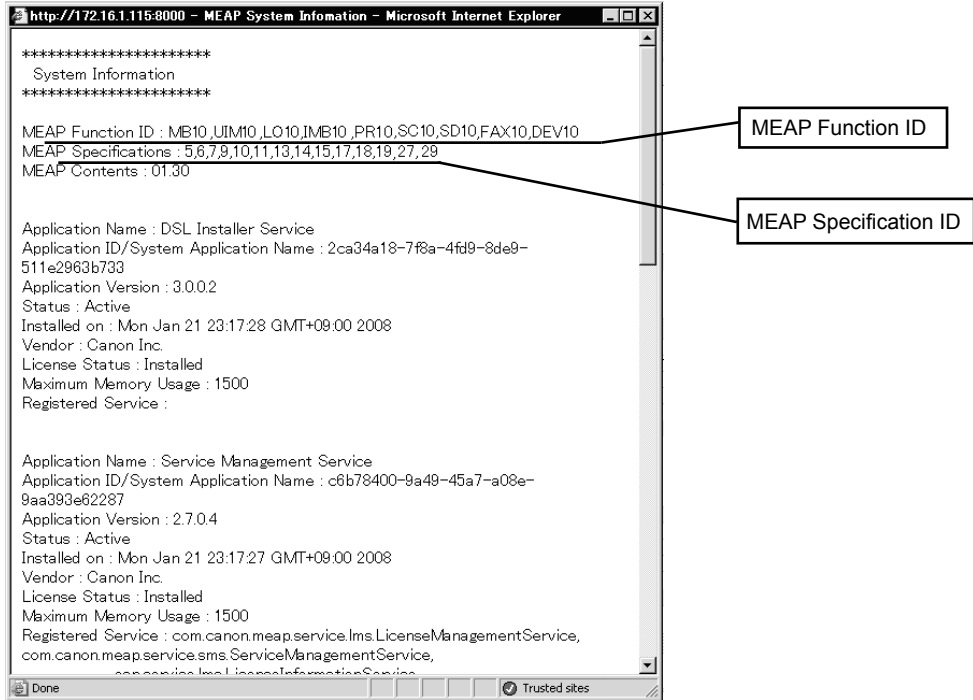
11.1.11 Checking the System Information of a MEAP Application with SMS

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Log in to SMS.
- 2) Click [System Management] tab.
- 3) On System Management screen, click [System Info] tab.
- 4) Click [Details] button.



5) When the following status information of MEAP applications (including the system application) appears in a different window, copy and paste all information to create an attachment (text information) for preparing a problem report. You can also use this function whenever you want to check the status of any particular application.



F-11-22

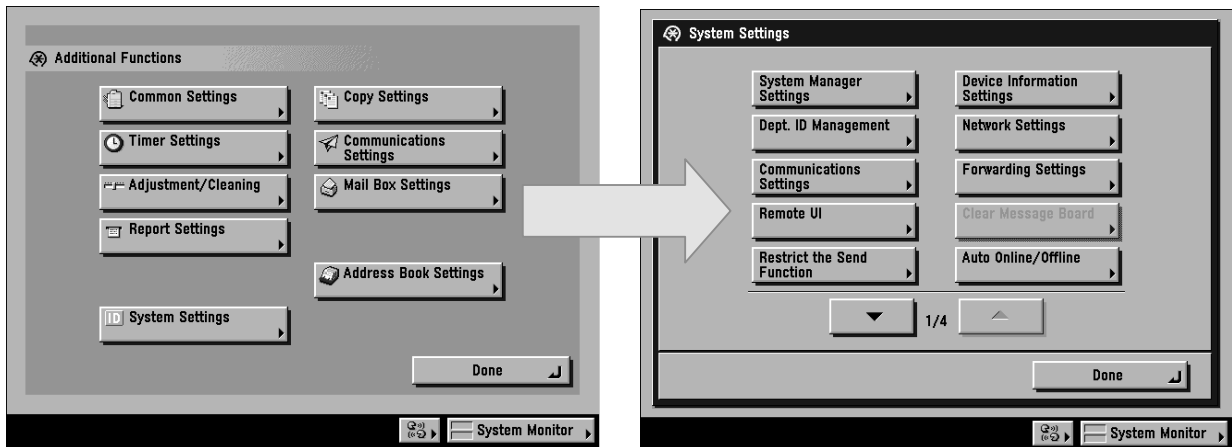
11.1.12 Printing the System Information of a MEAP Application

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Make the following selections: [Additional Functions] button > [System Settings] button > the **down-arrow** button.

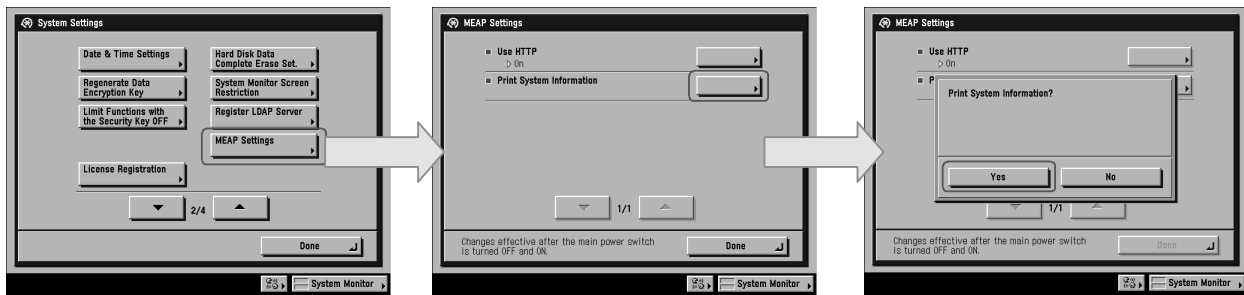
MEMO:

If the System manager ID and system password have already been assigned, ID Entry dialog appears after System Settings button is pressed. Enter the system manager ID and the password, and click ID key.



F-11-23

2) Make the following selections: [MEAP Settings] button > [Print System Information] button > [Yes] button.



F-11-24

- 3) Press [Done] button as many times as necessary until the Basic screen appears.
 4) Turn off the MEAP device's main power; wait for 10 sec, and then turn the power back on.



The previous version of printing function for MEAP application status information (system information) was depended on PDL. However, current version of function is not dependent on PDL. So even device for which PDL is not available can print it. (Since iRC3220)

11.1.13 Reference (Application System Information)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

You can check all applications installed to the device at a glance with the MEAP application status information and, thus, it is important for you to provide it when you are reporting a problem.

The following items of information will be indicated or printed for individual applications:

MEMO:

The system information shown on the screen and the system information printed in the MEAP device's user mode are exactly the same.

T-11-17

Application System Information

```
Application Name: C-Cabinet Gateway for MEAP
Application ID/System Application Name: 03a46668-63e4-4636-9cbb-492b6cef05d5
Application Version: 1.0.0
Status: Resolved
Installed on: Tue Oct 21 14:00:11 GMT+09:00 2003
Vendor : Canon Inc.
License Status : Installed
Maximum Memory Usage : 1024
Registered Service :
```

Application Name

It is the name (bundle-name) declared in a statement within the application program. It may not necessarily be identical to the name of the program.

Application ID/System Application Name

In the case of a system application, it will be the file name. If a general application, it is the application ID (application-ID) declared in a statement within the application program. Within the device, the applications are set apart by means of their application IDs.

Application Version

It is the version of the application (bundle-version) declared in a statement within the application program.

Status

It indicates the status of the application in question; specifically,

Installed: the application has been installed.

Active: the application is being in use.

Resolved: the application is at rest.

Installed On

It indicates the date on which the application was installed.

Vendor

It is the name of the vendor that developed the application, and is the name (bundle-vendor) declared in a statement within the application program.

License Status

It indicates the status of the license; specifically,

None: no license is needed.

Not Installed: no license has been installed.

Installed: the appropriate license has been installed.

Invalid: the license has been invalidated.

Overlimit: the license has been used beyond its permitted limit.

License Expires After

It indicates the date after which the license expires. If the status of the license is 'none', this item will not be printed.

License Upper Limit

It indicates the limit imposed on individual counter readings. If the status of the license is 'none', this item will not be printed.

Counter Value

It is the current counter reading of a specific counter. If the status of the license is 'none', this item will not be printed.

Maximum Memory Usage

It indicates the maximum amount of memory that the application uses. It is the amount (maximum memory usage) declared in a statement within the application program, and is expressed in kilobytes.

Registered Service

It is a list of services that have been registered by the application with the MEAP framework. Some services may not have printable data.

11.1.14 Installing an Application

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



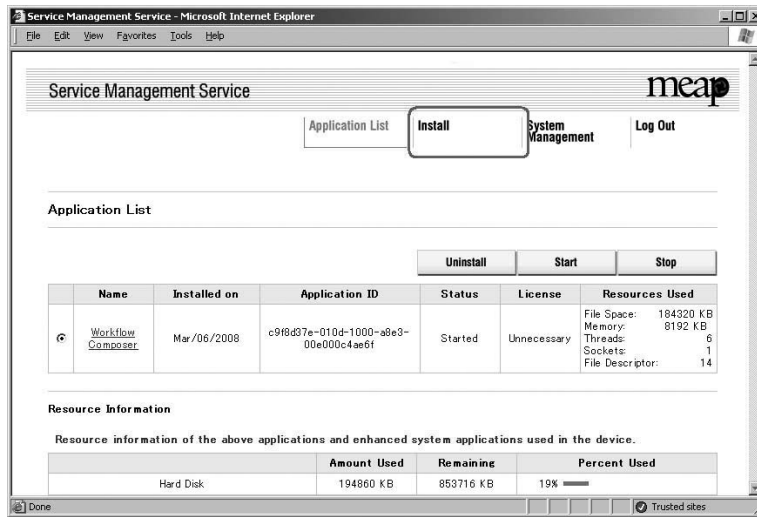
- To install an application, the user needs to use the following URL when accessing the license control system to obtain a license file. In doing so, he/she needs to register the license access number of the application and the serial number of the device.
<http://www.canon.com/meap/>
 -Maximum 20 applications can be installed (In iR5160/iR6060/iR2250/iR2850/iR3350, one is the portal service already installed at the time of shipment from the factory)
 -The following are the resource amounts assured for each device in the operation of one MEAP application. These values are for reference purpose only, therefore the unused resource of SMS needs to be checked at the time of installation of MEAP application.
 The displayed values of SMS resource may be larger than the followings since the actual values vary according to the log-in service (authentication function) selected by users and the configuration (future models).

T-11-18

Product Name	HDD	Memory	Thread	Socket	File Description	
iR5160/iR6060/iR2250/iR2850/iR3350	300MB	20MB	128	48	42	
iRC2620/iRC3220	400MB	20MB	128	48	42	
iR2270/iR2870/iR3570/iR4570/iR8570/iR7270/iR6570/iR5570	400MB	20MB	128	48	42	
iRC3170/iRC2570	400MB	20MB	128	48	42	
iR 3180C/3180Ci, iR C3180i, iR C2580i	1024MB	30MB	128	128	128	
iR7086/iR7095/iR7095P/iR7095Printer/iR7105	Initial MEAP Spec Ver	400MB	20MB	128	48	42
	Change Information	1024MB	30MB	128	128	128
iRC4080/iRC4580/iRC5180	Initial MEAP Spec Ver	1024MB	20MB	128	48	42
	Change Information	1024MB	30MB	128	128	128
imagePRESS C1	Initial MEAP Spec Ver	1024MB	20MB	128	48	42
	Change Information	1024MB	30MB	128	128	128
iRC2880/iRC3380	1024MB	20MB	128	48	42	
iR3025/iR3035/iR3045	400MB	20/30MB*1	128	48	42	
iR 5050	1024MB	30MB	128	128	128	
iR5055/iR5065/iR5075	1024MB	20MB	128	48	42	
iR C5185	1024MB	30MB	128	128	128	
imagePRESS C6000/ C6000VP/ C7000VP	1024MB	20MB	128	48	42	
iR C5058/ iR C5068/ iR C5880/ iR C5880i/ iR C6880/ iR C6880i	1024MB	30MB	128	128	128	
CLC5151/ CLC4040	1024MB	30MB	128	128	128	
iR C2380/ iR C2550/ iR C3080/ iR C3480/ iR C3580	1024MB	30MB	128	128	128	
iR3245 /iR3235 /iR3230 /iR3225	1024MB	32/64MB*2	128	128	128	
imagePRESS C1+	1024MB	30MB	128	128	128	
*1 20MB for 512MB model, 30MB for 768MB model.						
*2 Memory is normally 32MB, increasing to 64MB with memory extension.						
- As for memory, check the available resource when starting up the application. For other resources other than memory, check them when installing.						
- Some applications call for a specific set of conditions for installation. For details, see the User's Guide that comes with the individual applications.						

1) Long on to SMS.

2) Click [Install] tab.

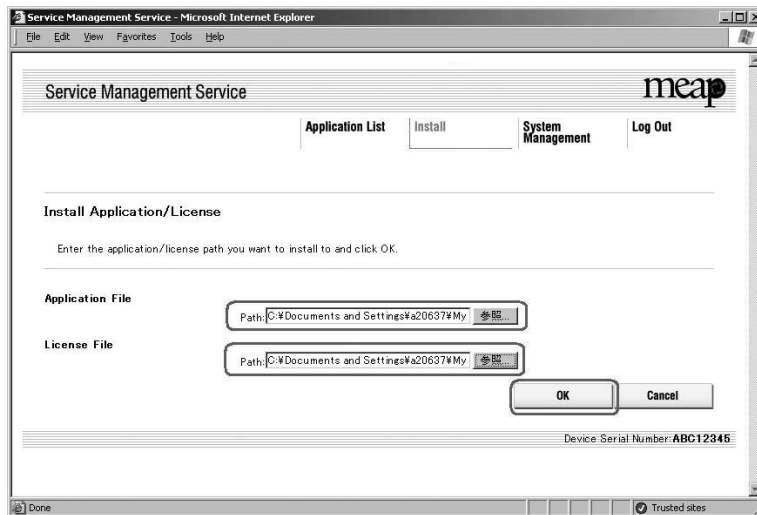


F-11-25

3) Check that **Install Application/License** page appears.

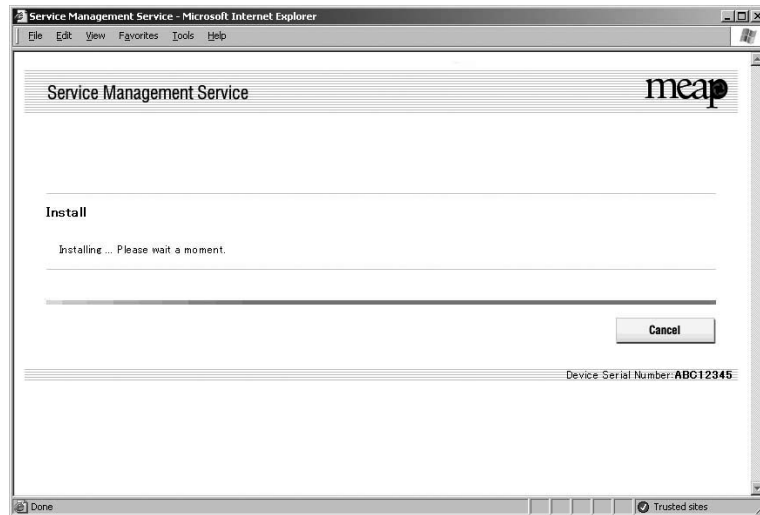
4) Click [Browse] button, and select the application file and the license file of the application; then, click [OK] button.

MEMO:
 Application File: identified by the extension "jar".
 License File: identified by the extension "lic".



F-11-26

5) See the message "Installing...Please wait a moment."

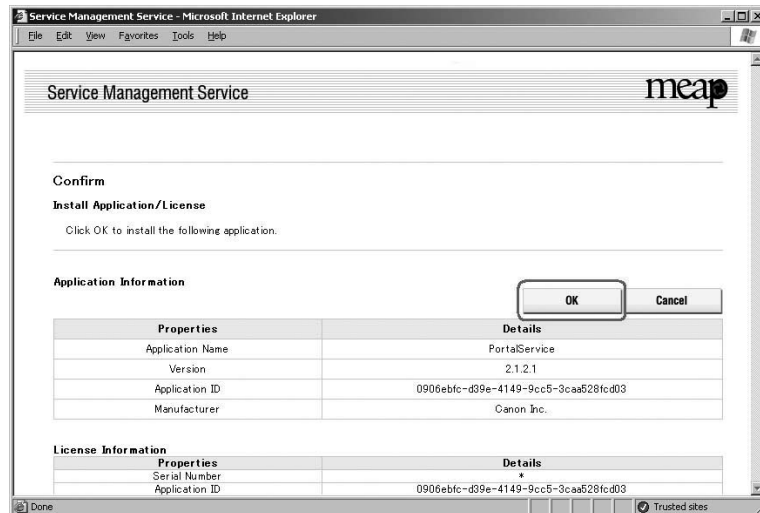


F-11-27



- You cannot install only the license.
- You will not be able to install the application without using the appropriate license. Be sure to select its license file.
- If you are adding a license to an existing application, see 1.3.10 Adding a License File.
- If you are updating an existing application, stop the application; then, install the new application or its license file. You will not be able to update an application while it is running.

6) Check the contents of the **Confirm** page; then, click [OK] button.



F-11-28

7) Some applications show a screen to indicate the terms of agreement. Read the terms, and click [OK].

8) Check the message "Installing...Please wait a moment." appears, beginning the installation.

9) Check **Application List** page appears when the installation is completed.



To use the application that you have just installed, you must make sure that the application status is Started.

11.1.15 MEAP Enterprise Service Manager

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Outline

MEAP Enterprise Service Manager is the PC application utility to perform batch installation, unistallation and management of MEAP application and license files required for installation of applications, on several MEAP-available devices on network.

The main targets are system administrators in big companies and CANON service engineers (end users of devices do not use). It is used when customized applications delivered to a certain company needs to be managed collectively.

Previous SMS can manage only one device at a time. This utility reduces the management cost of devices and TCO.

Major functions

Discovery of devices available for MEAP
 Discovery of devices available for MEAP on network
 Storage of the serial number list of discovered device
 Installation of application and license file
 Management of application (starting / stopping)
 Uninstallation of application
 Others

System configuration

MEAP Enterprise Service Manager (MEAP ESM) functions in combination with DIS (DSL Installer Service) installed on the MEAP platform side of the device. This system can be used only for MEAP-available device with appropriate DIS installed.

(*) When using this system on the firmware for version upgrading on October 2003 or older, version upgrading of the system software on the field device is necessary.

The versions available for ESM are as follows:
 iR5160 / iR6020: System v54.02 or newer, MEAP Contents v53.07 or newer
 iR2220 / iR3320: System v33.01 or newer, MEAP Contents v33.02 or newer
 Other products: Available from the initial version



When installing MEAP Enterprise Service Manager (MEAP ESM) of master CD on PC, Microsoft '.NET Framework' v1.0 or v1.1 is necessary. The user should download it from the Web site of Microsoft.

11.1.16 Adding a License File

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

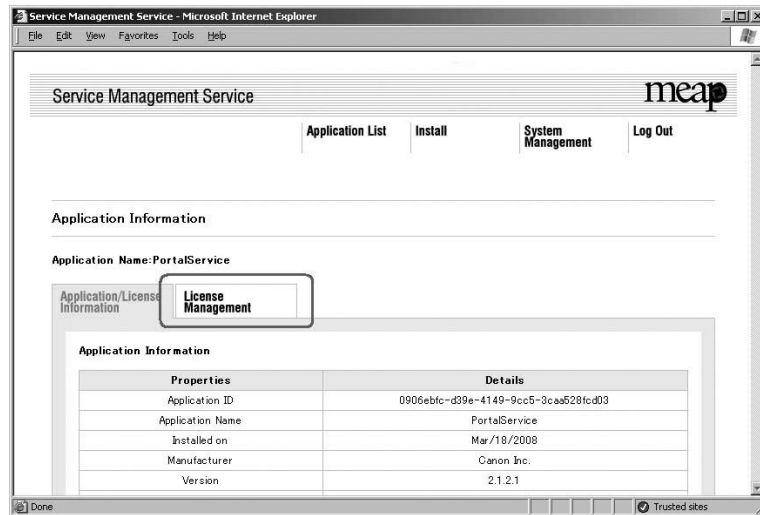
- 1) Log on to SMS.
- 2) On **Application List**, click the name of the application to which you want to add a license file.

Name	Installed on	Application ID	Status	License	Resources Used
PortaService	Mar/18/2008	0906ebfc-d39e-4149-9cc5-3ca828fcd03	Installed	Not Installed	File Space: 192 KB Memory: 220 KB Threads: 1 Sockets: 0 File Descriptor: 1
Workflow Composer	Mar/06/2008	c9f8d37e-0104-1000-a9e3-00e000c4ae6f	Started	Unnecessary	File Space: 184320 KB Memory: 8192 KB Threads: 6 Sockets: 1 File Descriptor: 14

F-11-29

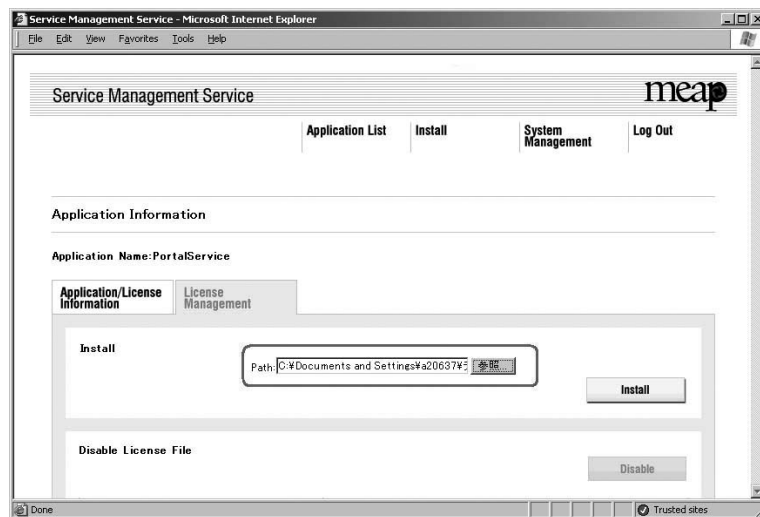
- 3) Check **Application Information** appears.

4) On Application Information page, click [License Management] button.



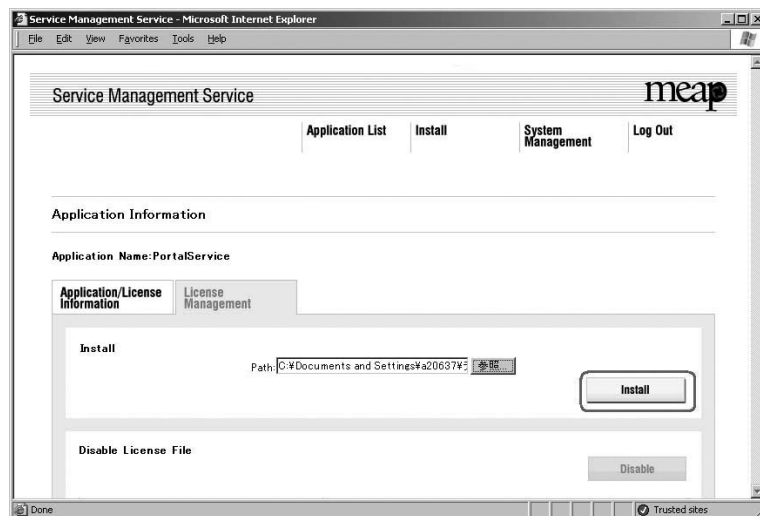
F-11-30

5) Click [Browse] button, and select the license file you want to install.



F-11-31

6) Click [Install] button.



F-11-32

7) Check the content of the confirmation page, and click [OK] button.

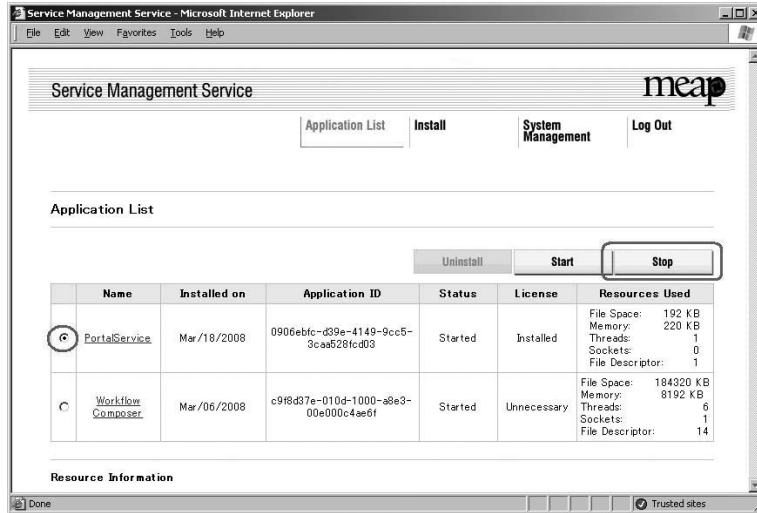
11.1.17 Disabling a License File (suspending a license)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



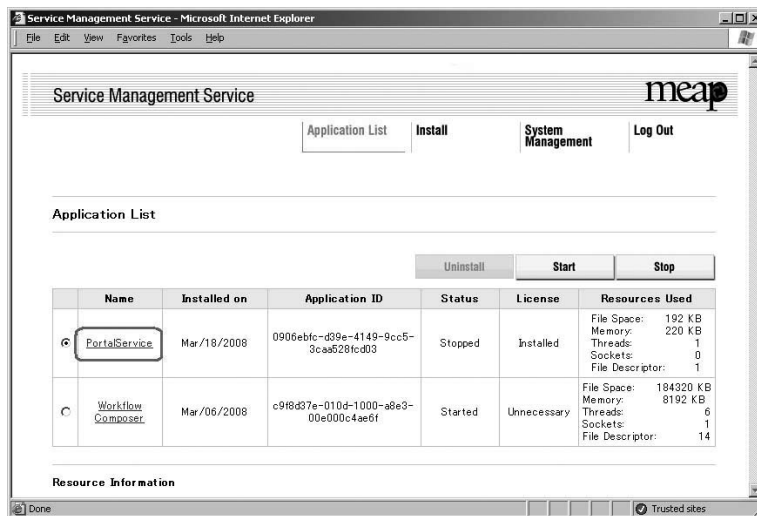
- To invalidate (or suspend) a license, you must first stop the application in question.
- Once suspended, the status of the license will be 'Not Installed', and its application will no longer be available for use.
- You can later restore a suspended license file as long as you are doing so on the same iR, the device with the same device serial number.
- When replacing the device due to lease up or trouble, use the license for forwarding (See 'License for forwarding').

1) Stop the application you want to uninstall on **Application List** page.



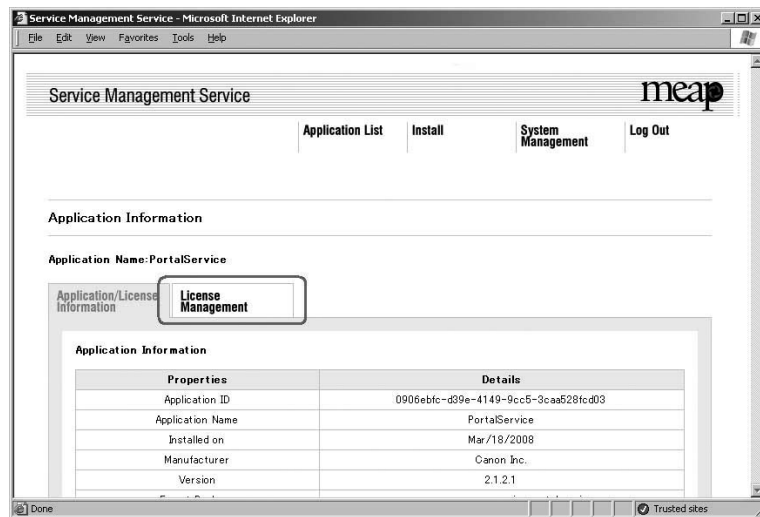
F-11-33

2) Click the name of the application that you want to disable.



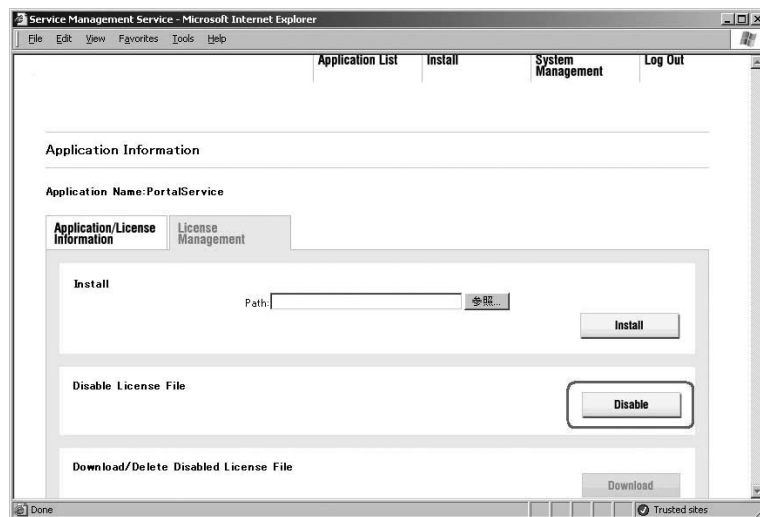
F-11-34

3) **Application Information** page appears. On **Application Information** page, click [License Management] button.



F-11-35

4) Click [Disable] button.



F-11-36

5) Click [OK].

11.1.18 Downloading/Removing an Invalidated License File

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

You must remove the invalidated license file before uninstalling an application. If re-installation is a possibility, you may download the license file to a PC for storage. To download or delete a license file, first disable it.

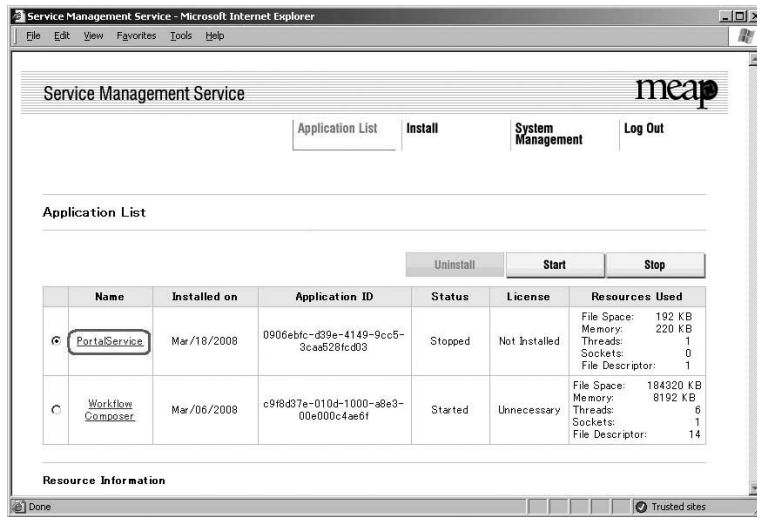


- Once you have removed an invalidated license file, you will no longer be able to download it from the MEAP device.

1) Login to SMS.

2) **Application List** page appears.

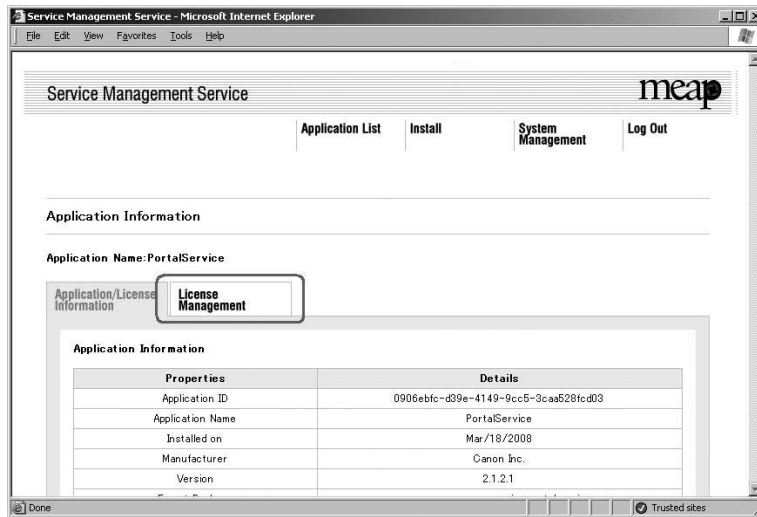
3) On **Application List** page, click the name of the application you want.



F-11-37

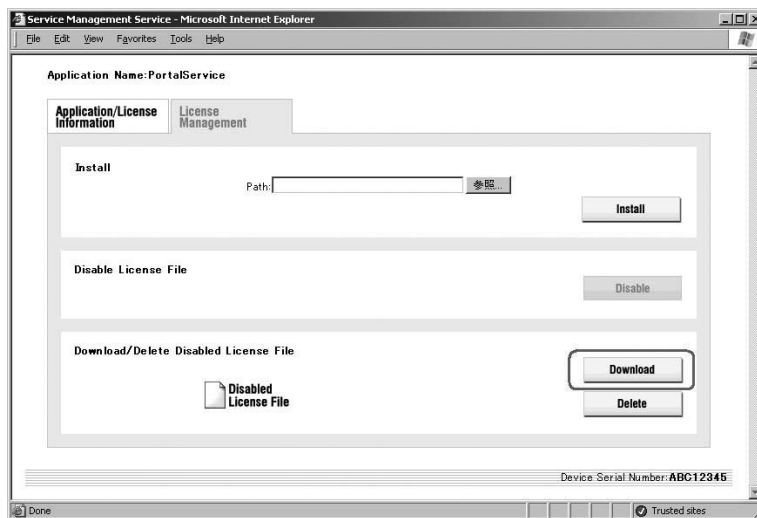
4) Check Application Information page appears.

5) On **Application Information** page, click [License Management] tab.



F-11-38

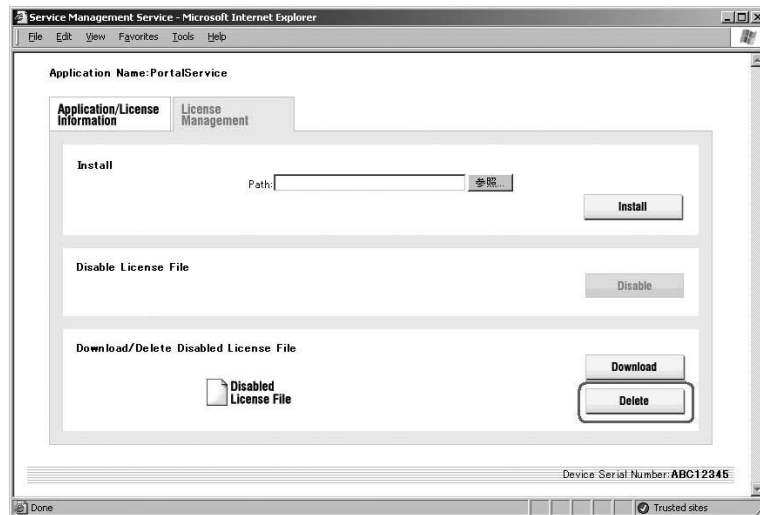
6) **License Management** page appears. To download, click [Download] button.



F-11-39

7) When you have selected [Download] button, specify where you want to store the file by following the instructions on the screen.

8) To delete, click [Delete] button.



F-11-40

9) Check the **confirm** page appears.

10) Click [OK] button.



- Without the license file, an application cannot be reinstalled even to the MEAP device that the application had been installed last time. Download and save the license file before deleting the application.

11.1.19 Reusable license

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Reinstallation was not able to perform for all license files. When reinstalling, Disable License file should be downloaded (see 'Disabling a License File' and 'Downloading / Removing an Invalidated License File' in this manual) or a license for reinstallation should be obtained from LMS, before reinstallation. This specification aims to prevent misuse of applications.

To increase convenience of users, only application with unlimited validity date and application counter (e.g. Portal Service, SDL, SSO) has been made to be able to install as many times as needed by the same license file. This kind of license is called 'Reusable license'.

MEMO:

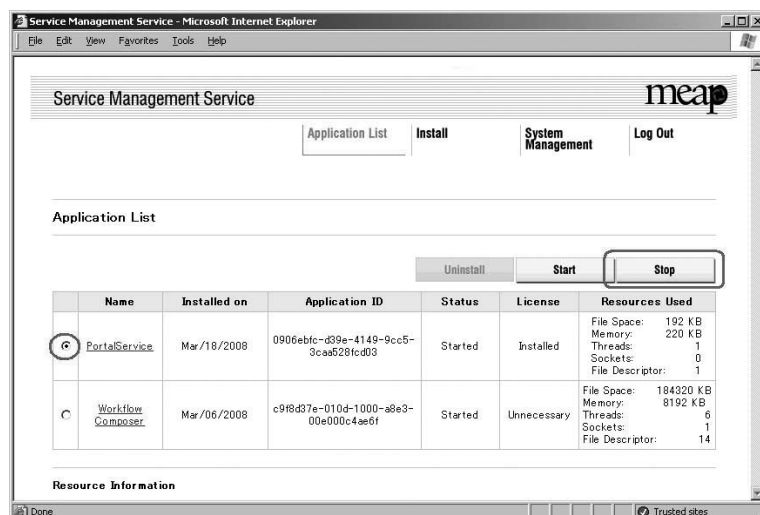
For devices for System version of 33.01, 54.02 (iR 2220 series / iR5020 series) or older, version upgrading is required. It is already installed in the model with iR C3220 or newer.

11.1.20 License for forwarding

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

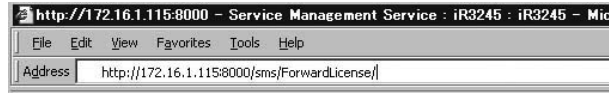
When the device is replaced due to lease up or trouble, it is possible to continue using the current license information of MEAP application by forwarding it to a new device. The license is forwarded by CE because the hidden page of SMS is used.

1) Log in to SMS, stop the application to be forwarded (see 'Starting and Stopping a MEAP Application' in this manual).



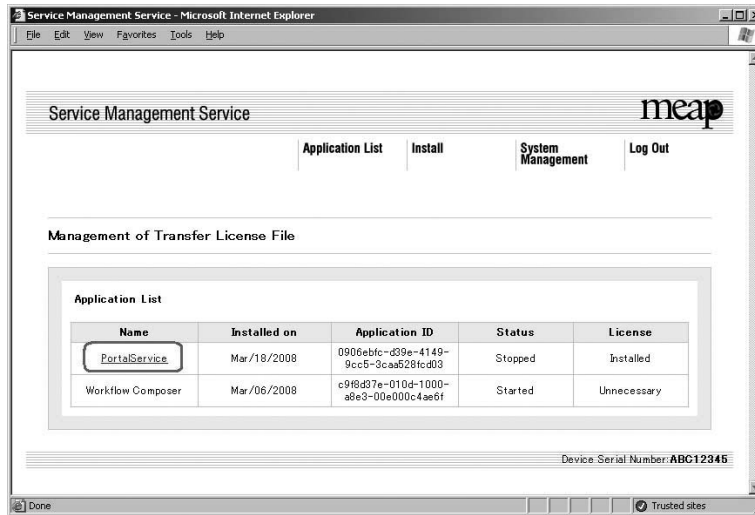
F-11-41

2) Move to the download page of license forwarded for the device as sender (http:// IP address of device: 8000/sms/ForwardLicense).



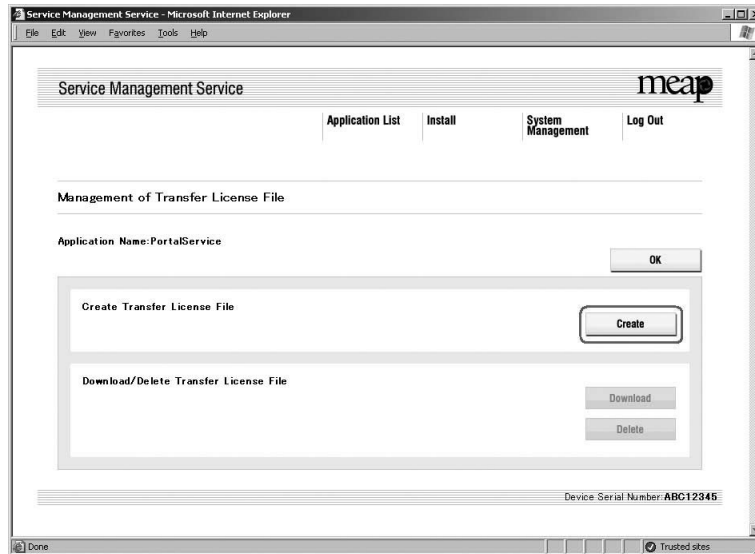
F-11-42

3) Specify the application to be forwarded.



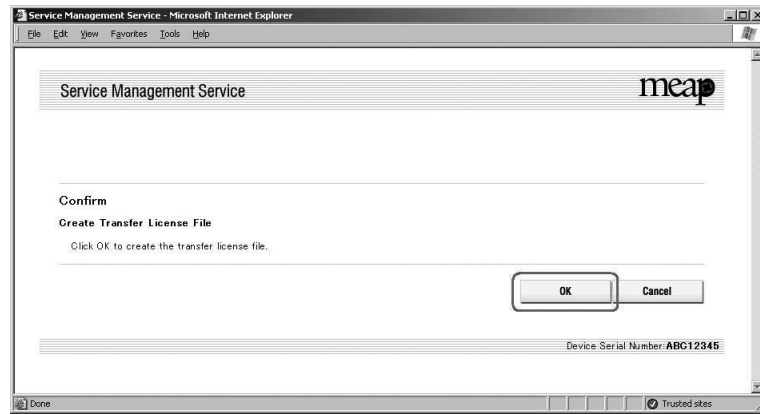
F-11-43

4) Click [Create] at Create Transfer License File.



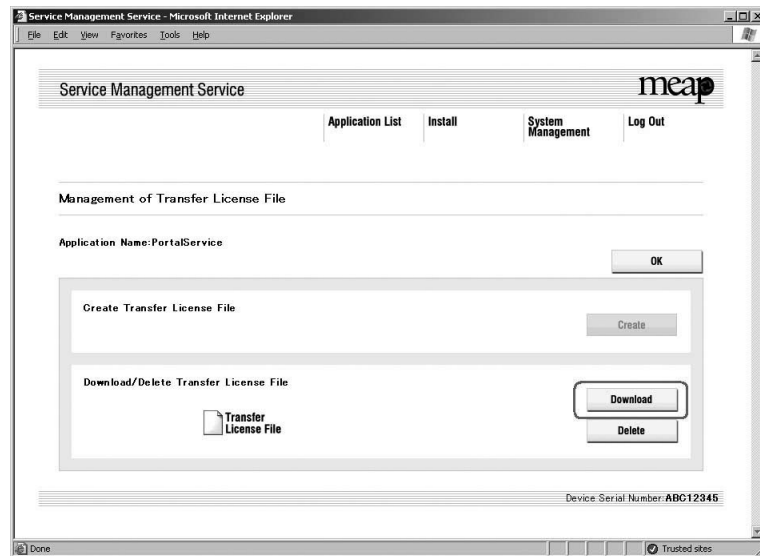
F-11-44

5) The window to confirm whether to create a transfer licence will be displayed. Click [OK].



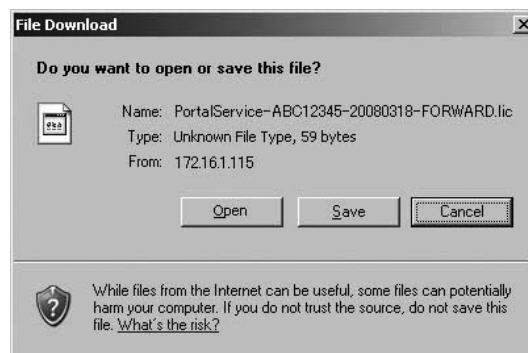
F-11-45

6) Icon of license file for forwarding is displayed in the box of license file downloading. Click [Download].



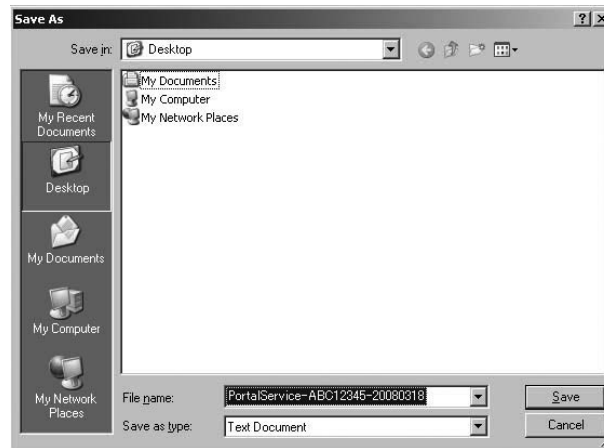
F-11-46

7) The dialogue [Open] is displayed. Click [Save].



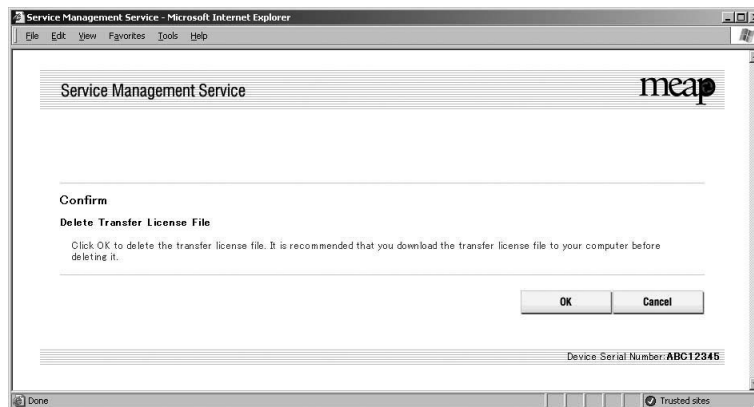
F-11-47

8) Specify the download destination, click [Save].



F-11-48

9) After downloading the license file for forwarding, click [Delete] to display the confirmation screen and click [OK] to delete the file (in consideration of breakage of license for forwarding, deleting disabled license can be executed after all steps have been completed).



F-11-49

10) Log out of SMS.

11) Ask the sales company to issue a license for forwarding.

MEMO:

When requesting issuance of license for forwarding, inform the sales company of the name of product name and serial No. of the device as sender, and of the name of product name and serial No. of the forwarding destination.

12) Install application using the license for forwarding issued by the sales company.

11.1.21 Uninstalling an Application

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

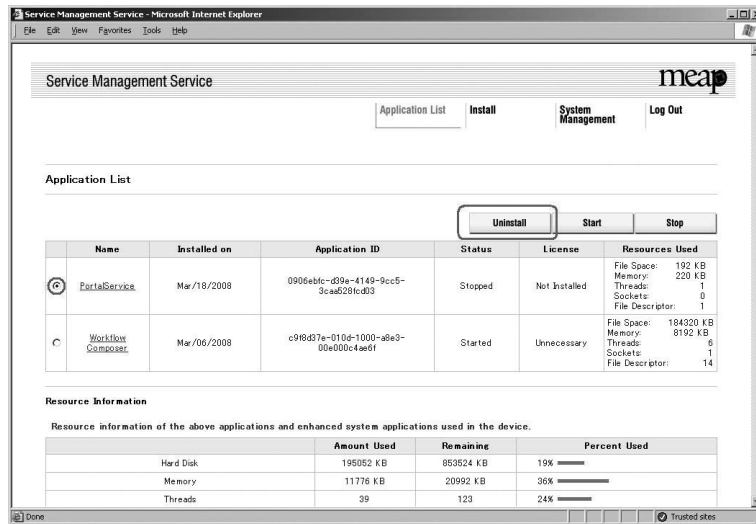


- The status of the license must be 'Not Installed' or 'Unnecessary' for its application to be uninstalled. As necessary, go to License File Management page, and disable the license file before starting to remove it.
- Dimmed [Uninstall] button shows that the selected application cannot be removed.
- A license file may be invalidated only when its application is not active.
- If the application you are uninstalling is associated with another application, a message will appear to indicate that the package exported by the application will no longer be available. Uninstalling such an application may also disable its associated applications.

1) Log on to SMS, and click [Application List] tab.

2) Check [Application List] page appears.

3) On the application list, select the radio button of the application you want to uninstall, and click [Uninstall] button.



F-11-50

4) Check the screen to make sure that what is shown is the application you want to uninstall; then, click [OK] button. In response, the system runs an uninstall sessions.

11.1.22 Login Service

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The login service is used to authenticate the user when a MEAP device is booted up. Login service changes and install/ uninstall are carried out from the 'System Management' page. The pre-install applications and those provided on the accessory CD are as follows. Default Authentication is used as the default at the time of shipment from the factory.

T-11-19

	Other than iR3245 series / imagePRESS C1+	iR3245 series / imagePRESS C1+
Pre-install	Default Authentication(default) Simple Device Login Single Sign On	Default Authentication (default) Single Sign On-H
Accessory CD	Default Authentication Simple Device Login Single Sign On and Security Agent	Default Authentication Single Sign On-H Single Sign On and Security Agent



- When the login service is set to SSO-H, Department ID management needs to be [OFF] before changes can be made. To use SSO-H local device authentication and Department ID management at the same time, after allocation of the department ID to the Administrator, switch the authentication method to local device authentication and then turn Department ID management ON.
- To use Department ID management in domain authentication, the option imageWARE accounting manager is required.
- When the setting is SSO-H, the card reader for the option controller card cannot be used.
- When using SSO-H, the clock settings of the server managing the Active Directory and the MEAP device (and the PC used to log in), must be matched. If there is a time difference of greater than five minutes in the clock settings, an error will be generated when login is attempted.
- When the setting is SSO-H, start up takes a little longer when compared to Default Authentication (because of the time required for object initialization).
- To use the SEND function when the setting is for SSO-H, when sending email, mail addresses need to be programmed against each user. If they are not, email cannot be sent. Note, however, that when sending i-Fax, the mail addresses set in the device are used.



Important information when using conventional SSO and SDL

- When the login method setting is for SDL, the information registered in SDL must match the Department ID management user information (department ID and password).
- When the login method setting is for SDL and SSO, Department ID management needs to be [OFF] before making any changes. To use SDL and Department ID management together, switch the login service to SDL and then turn the Department ID management ON.
- To run Department ID management when the setting is for SSO, the options Net Spot Accountant / imageWARE Accounting Manager are required.
- When the setting is SSO, the option card reader cannot be used.
- When using SSO, the clock settings of the server managing the Active Directory and the MEAP device (and the PC used to log in), must be matched. If there is a time difference of greater than 30 minutes in the clock settings, an error will be generated when login is attempted with SSO.
- When the setting is for SDL or SSO, startup may take a little longer.
- ...To use the SEND function when the setting is for SDL and SSO, when sending email, mail addresses need to be programmed against each user. If they are not, email cannot be sent. Note, however, that when sending i-Fax, the mail addresses set in the device are used.

Default Authentication overview

Default Authentication is the login service that is selected when Department ID management is being used, or when no authentication function has been set. When Department ID management has been set [ON] in the MEAP device user mode, by entering a seven digit department ID for each department, and a password number for each department ID, access to the MEAP device can be restricted to those users who enter the code numbers. The department ID and password number can be

entered using the MEAP device touch panel display and Remote UI.

■ SSO-H (Single Sign-On-H) overview

This is a merger of the existing SDL and SSO login services and has the following features.

- Both the domain authentication and local device authentication login services can be used.
- There is no need to have a separate SA server.
- Login is not via SA, so SSO-H refers directly to DNS for authentication.
- Kerberos and NTLM protocols are supported.
- The following three authentication methods may be selected from.
 - Domain authentication
 - Local device authentication
 - Domain authentication + local authentication



- The system configuration is different from previous SSO, so individual management is required.
 - If MEAP is supported, installation into devices prior to SSO-H release is possible.
 - Data porting of user information that was being used with the earlier SSO local device authentication and SDL can be done by exporting/ importing. However, application settings information cannot be ported.

■ SSO overview

This is a login service that can be operated on the Active Directory environment network domain and on iR devices. The following user authentication methods can be selected from.

- Domain authentication
- Local device authentication
- Domain authentication + local device authentication



SSO was pre-installed in earlier released devices, but from iR3245 onward it will only be provided with the Administrator's CD.

■ Authentication methods

Both SSO-H and SSO can use multiple authentication methods, and the user can toggle between them from a Web browser. (Refer to the MEAP Authentication System Settings Guide 'User Authentication Method Settings'.)



The factory shipment setting is 'Domain authentication + local device authentication'. In order to provide increased security, as soon as SSO is used, it is recommended that the administrator's user name and password in local device authentication be changed from the factory shipment settings as soon as possible.

Domain authentication

This is a form of user authentication which operates in collaboration with the domain controller on the Active Directory environment network and, as soon as the iR device is logged into, carries out authentication of the domain on the network. In addition to users belonging to the domain that includes the iR device, users belonging to domains that have a reliable relationship with the domain (multi-domain) can also be authenticated. The domain name of the login destination can be selected by the users themselves upon login.

The function makes use of options Net Spot Accountant/ iW Accounting Manager/ iW EMC Accounting Management Plug-in to enable analysis and management of the iR device usage status.

Depending on the login service, different protocols are used.

- SSO-H
 - Kerberos:LLS/RLS/ILS
 - NTLMV2:WLS(Web Service Login Service. WLS can only be used in collaboration with iW AMS Ver2 AMS printer driver add-in and iWEMC user management plug-in.)
- SSO
 - NMTLM only

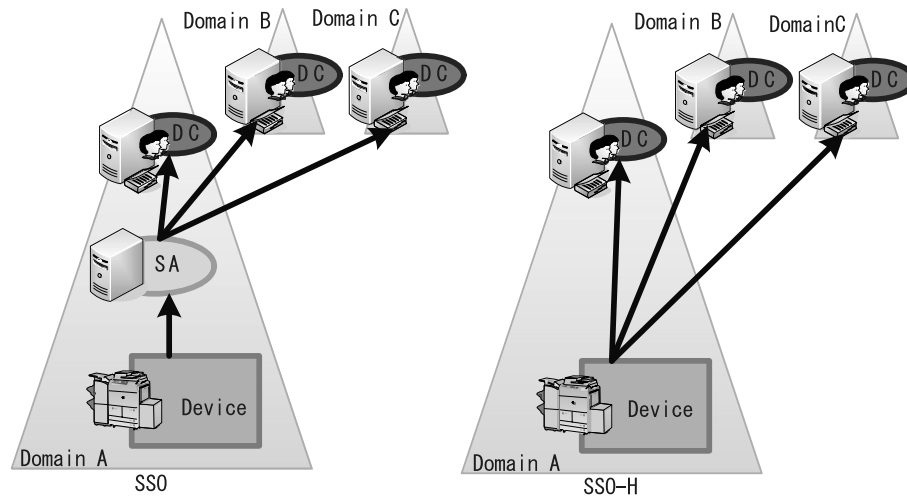
User information acquisition is done by LDAP, so the Active Directory LDAP port needs to be made accessible.

If LDAP connection fails, the authentication will end in error.

No. of supported domains: 200 (unchanged from SSO)

Site access supported.

Differences from conventional SSO



F-11-51

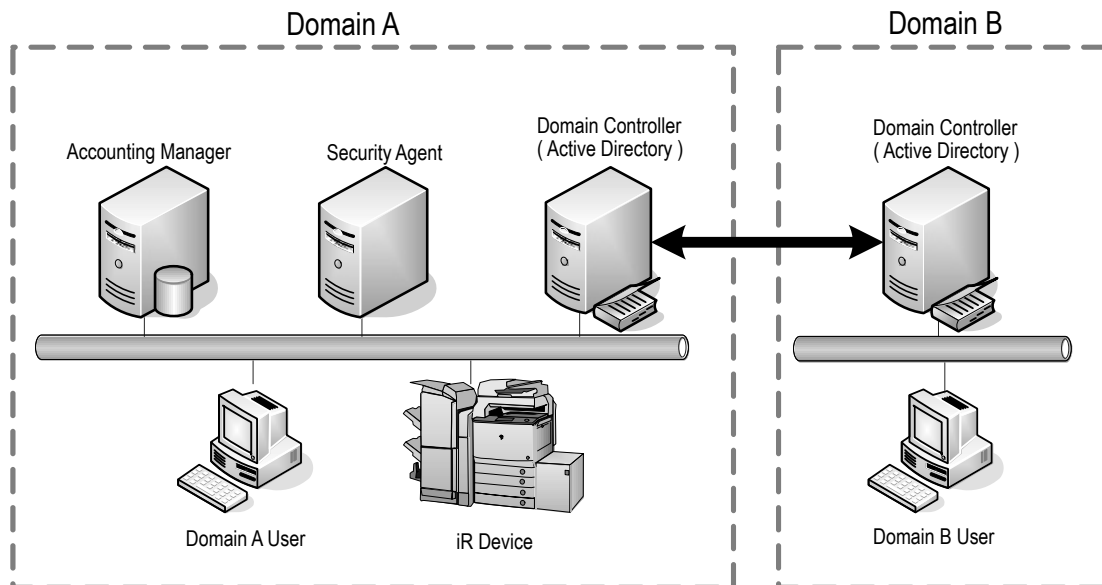
Local device authentication

This is an authentication method that is used for single iR devices. The authenticating users are registered in the iR device's database. User management is performed on the Web application provided by the device, or from the imageWARE Enterprise Management Console/ iW Management Console. The login destination is 'This device'.

Domain authentication + local device authentication

This is a user authentication method that provides both domain authentication and local device authentication functionalities. Principally, domain users who are registered/ managed by the Active Directory are authenticated by domain authentication, and local device authentication can be used when it is necessary to authenticate a temporary user that cannot be added to the Active Directory. Also, should there be any kind of a problem with the domain controller or Security Agent (SSO only), local device authentication can be used in emergency situations, while waiting for normal status to be restored.

In the figure shown below, users belonging to Domain A, which includes the iR device, and users belonging to Domain B, which has a reliable relationship with Domain A, can be authenticated, and users registered with the iR device itself can also be registered. The login destination (domain name or [This device]) is selected by the user upon login.



F-11-52



- To run domain authentication and Department ID management at the same time, the options Net Spot Accountant, iW Accounting Manager or iW EMC Accounting Management Plug-in are required. If domain authentication is selected as the authentication method without linkage to these systems, login will be disabled and Department ID management will not come ON. If Department ID management cannot be turned ON when using domain authentication and login is disabled, switch the login service to Default Authentication and turn Department ID management OFF.

- When SSO is linked to Net Spot Accountant, iW Accounting Manager or iW EMC Accounting Management Plug-in, and is to be used with Department ID management turned ON, users belonging to the Domain Admin group need to be allocated to the Security Agent service account.

- In order to link local device authentication and Department ID management and manage print pages and scan pages per department ID, Department ID management must be set ON.

To run local device authentication and Department ID management at the same time, the information registered in local device authentication must match the Department ID management user information (department ID and password).

- User information registered in SDL and that registered in local device authentication are managed separately in the iR device. User information registered in one is not reflected in the other.

- In local device authentication the card reader for the option control card cannot be used. To use the card reader for the option control card, set SDL.

- Security Agent is only required when using the conventional SSO.

- To use the conventional SSO and Security Agent, they must be installed in the computer belonging to the domain that includes the iR device.

- The Security Agent installer is included in the MEAP Administrator CD-ROM.

SSO-H has collaborative linkage with imageWARE access management, imageWARE Accounting Manager and Net Spot Accounting. Only when used with 'Local device authentication', can department ID/ passwords be allocated to users. In the event that these are allocated, authentication can be performed even when the main unit's department management is ON. Department ID and department passwords are not allocated to domain users. When the main unit's department management function is ON, domain users cannot be authenticated.

MEMO:
With SSO, linkage with iWAM/ iWAM account summary manager was assumed and department management linkage was enabled even in domain authentication, but with SSO-H, this is now unsupported.


System administrator linkage (automatic allocation of ID to administrator)
[Restriction] With SSO, there was a function where ID programmed on SA would be allocated to domain authentication administrators (Canon Peripheral Admins Group users) on SA, and system administrators automatically authenticated, but with SSO-H this is now unsupported.

■ Site internal access mode

With SSO-H, access to Active Directory within site can be prioritized or restricted, so there is a setting called 'Site internal access mode'. Sites programmed in Active Directory comprise multiple subnets. In this mode, SSO-H uses site information to access the same site as the device, or the subnet Active Directory.
- The SSO-H default setting is with the site internal access mode OFF.
- Access Active Directory within same site only.
- If there is no Active Directory within the same site, or if connection fails, there will be an authentication error.
- Access another site if Active Directory within the same site cannot be located.
- If there is no Active Directory within the same site, or if connection fails, an Active Directory external to the site will be accessed.
- If all attempts to access Active Directory fail, there will be an authentication error.

The operating specifications of the site internal access mode are as described below.
When first logging in to the login service after booting iR, the domain controller (DC) is obtained from the site list. However, upon the first login, even if the site functionality is active, connection to DC is random. (This is because, if connection to DC should fail, the site to which the device belongs cannot be ascertained.)
If the device IP address or the domain name are changed, the site settings are acquired once more.

In this mode, at the first login (first authentication of domain to which the device belongs) LDAP-Bind is performed directly to DC and site information acquired by LDAP from DC. From the acquired site list, the site to which the device subnet belongs is extracted and this becomes the site to which device belongs. Active Directory address is acquired (retrieved from DNS)

 The Active Directory subnet is assumed to be the same subnet as the device subnet. In the Active Directory addresses, the Active Directories of the same site are listed. Active Directories of the same subnet as the device are listed first. If there is no Active Directory with the same subnet as the device, Active Directories belonging to different subnets than the device are listed. The Active Directories within the same site are accessed in order. Note, however, that where there are multiple Active Directories within the same site, access to those Active Directories will be in the order in which the address list was obtained. If there is no Active Directory within the same site, if access outside of the site is programmed, Active Directories outside of the site will be accessed in the order in which the address list was obtained.

Settings for site internal access mode
Switching between site internal access mode/ non site internal access mode, as well as detailed mode settings, are done via DMS or iWEMC.
Site internal access mode settings window (DMS)
Site list acquisition
After booting up, upon the first login by LLS or ILS/ RLS, the site list is obtained from the Active Directory. In order to obtain the site list from the Active Directory, Active Directory needs to be accessed in LDAP, so SASL-Kerberos-Bind is used by the login user account. If authentication by Active Directory should fail, an authentication error will be generated and the site list will be acquired again from Active Directory upon the next login.

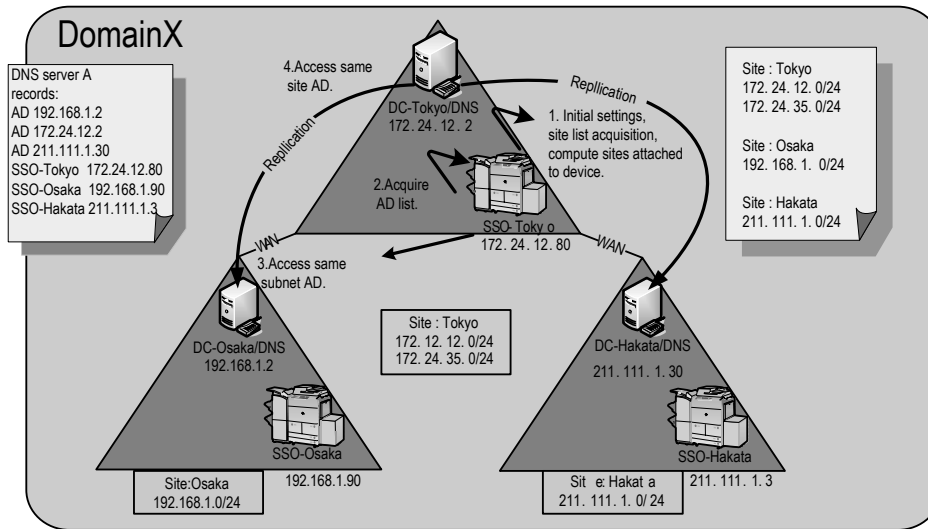
In SSO-H, the Active Directory to be accessed when acquiring the site list cannot be specified. In other words, if there is no site list, which site's Active Directory is accessed depends upon the order of the Active Directory addresses returned by DNS. Therefore, when acquiring the site list, LDAP may access the Active Directory of a different site. Therefore, in such cases, it is sometimes necessary to access across sites or subnets, which means that LDAP protocol needs to have continuity across sites (subnets) (normally, LDAP is port No. 389). Further, if connection with Active Directory fails when acquiring site information, another Active Directory will be accessed. Site information, once it has been acquired, is cached within the device. The life settings of the cache can be set so that site information in the cache is updated upon the first login after the device boots up, or so that the cache is not updated once acquired.

Settings for site internal access mode
Switching between site internal access mode/ non site internal access mode, as well as detailed mode settings, are done via DMS or iWEMC.
Site internal access mode settings window (DMS)
Site internal access mode settings window (DMS)



F-11-53

Site internal access mode process diagram



F-11-54

1) SSO-Tokyo acquires site lists from Active Directories.

Note, however, that the Active Directories accessed in order to acquire site lists are in the order in which they were returned by DNS, so there is no guarantee that the same Active Directory will be accessed as in the initial settings (upon device settings or changes to NW settings, etc.).

[Site subnet list]

Site : Tokyo: = 172.24.12.0/24, 172.24.35.0/24

Site : Osaka: = 192.168.1.0/24

Site : Hakata: = 211.111.1.0/24

As a result, since SSO-Tokyo is 172.24.12.80, the subnet is 172.24.12.0/24, and is judged as belonging to site Tokyo.

2) The DNS server obtains its Active Directory list from the primary or secondary DNS, as set in the device.

[Active Directory]

172.24.12.2, 172.24.35.2, 192.168.1.2, 211.111.1.30

3) Of the Active Directories in 2), above, the ones that belong to the same site (Tokyo) are 172.24.12.2 and 172.24.35.2.

Of these, the Active Directory that is the same subnet as SS-Tokyo is 172.24.12.2. Therefore, this one will be accessed.

4) If access fails at step 3), above, the other Active Directory of the same site, 172.24.35.2, will be accessed.

5) If access fails at step 4), above, also, SSO-Osaka and SSO-Hakata will be accessed (the order will depend on the order of the Active Directories in DNS). Note, however, that this is an optional operation.

Logging into other domains at multi-domain

At multi-domain, if another domain is logged into, based on the site/ subnet information retrieved in the home domain, the Active Directories of the login destination domain/ KDC address list are computed. In the event that the domain controller IP addresses of other domains are outside of the site access range, and only the domain controller within the site is programmed for access, an error message will be displayed to the effect that the site information is incorrect.

■ Environment confirmation

Refer to 'Environment confirmation' in this manual for details on the system requirements when using login services.

T-11-20

Login service	SSO-H	SSO-K*1	SSOV3		SDL*1
Local device users upper limit	5000	1000	1000		1000
No. of domains	200	10	200		-
Operating devices	Up till latest model	Till before iR 3245series	Up till latest model		Till before iR 3245series
IPv6	Available, but authentication not performed in IPv6	N/A	Available		N/A
Memory (KB)/ threads	3584/33	2800/33	2800/33		2300/33
Supported AD	Windows 2000 Server/ Windows Server 2003	Windows 2000 Server/ Windows Server 2003	Windows 2000 Server/ Windows Server 2003		-
Authentication method	NTLM Kerberos Local Device Authentication	Kerberos	NTLM	Local	-
Server	AD/KDC	(included in AD)	SA/AD		-
Key	DES		-		-
Department ID management linkage	Local authentication only available		However, domain requires NSA.		-
Site access	Available		Available		-

*1: Not supported, since merged with SSO-H in devices from iR3245 series onward.

SSO/SDL handling

SSO Ver3.x

Excluded from pre-installation, but included in Administrator's CD (SA also included).

SSO included in the Administrator's CD from iR3245 onward has AMS functionality deleted and is provided as a non AMS enabled login application.

SDL

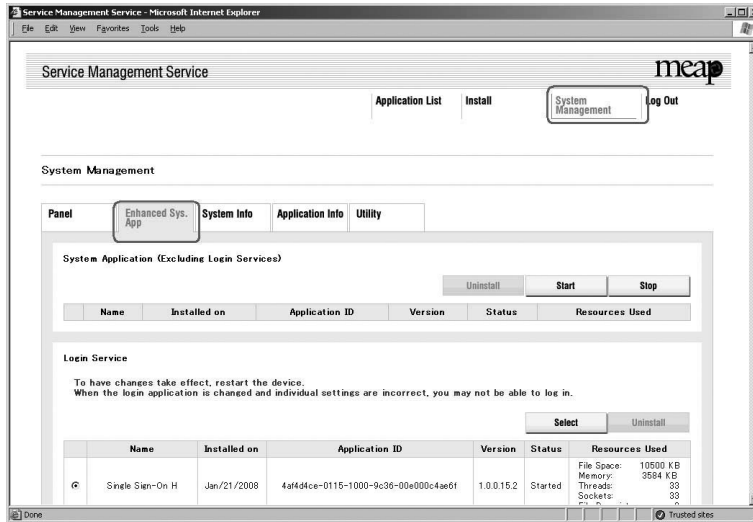
Not included in Administrator's CD.
 Post iR3245 series devices not supported.
 Functionality merged with SSO-H, so will not be released stand alone in future.

11.1.23 Changing Login Services

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

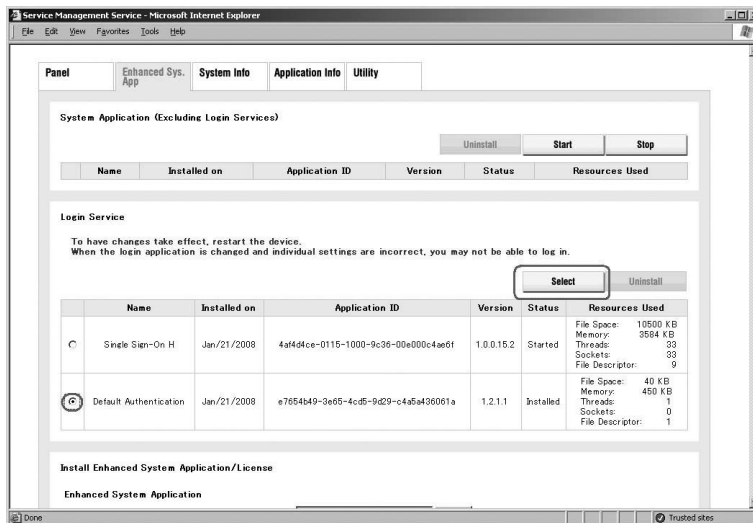
Steps to Change Login Services

1) Make the following selections: [System Management] > [Enhanced Sys. App].



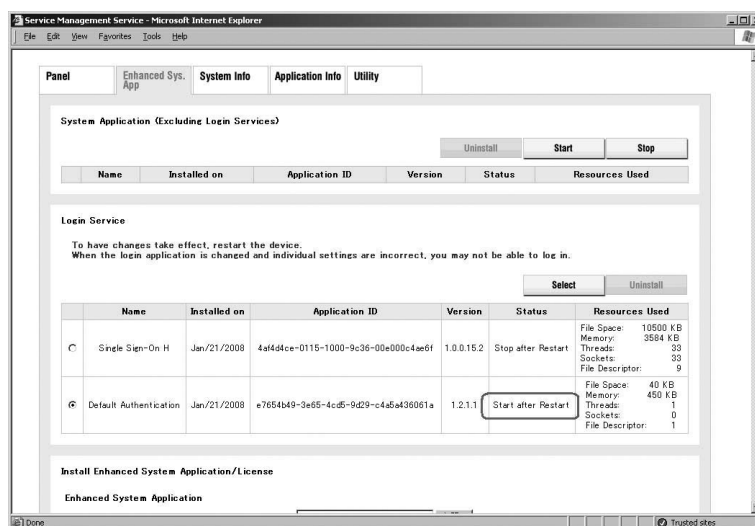
F-11-55

2) A page will appear showing the various selections you can make for the login service. Select the radio button of the login service mode you want to use; then, click [Select] button.



F-11-56

- 3) When login service application you have selected turns to **Start after Restart**, turn off the device's main power, and turn it back on after 10 seconds.

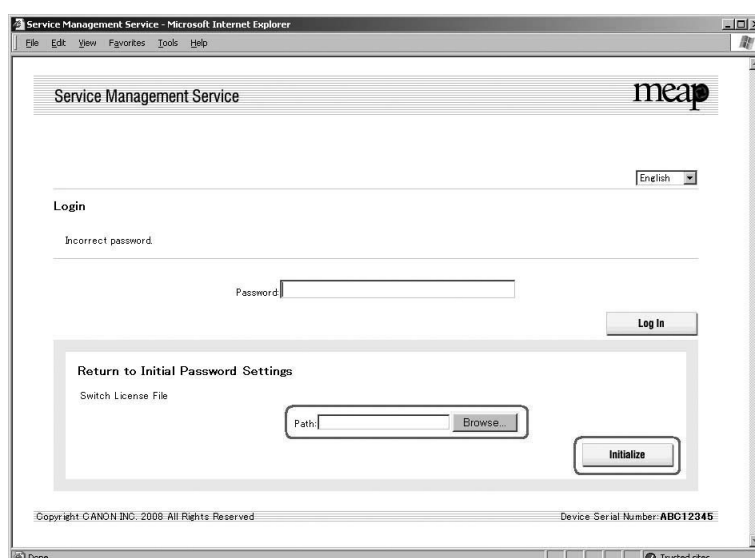


F-11-57

11.1.24 Initializing the Password

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Get the switch license for initializing the password.
Request the support of the regional headquarters of the Canon for switch license for initializing the password presenting the device serial number.
- 2) Click [Login] button leaving **Password** field blank or entering incorrect password. The Return to install Password Settings area appears. Click [Browse..] button and select the switch license file prepared in advance.



F-11-58

- 3) When you click [Initialize] button, the confirmation message appears. Click [OK] button. Then Login page opens. Enter the default password 'MeapSmsLogin' to log in. The password is case-sensitive.

If you click [Cancel] button, the Login page opens without initializing the password.

11.1.25 Creating a Backup for MEAP Application Area, Formatting the Hard Disk, Restoring the MEAP Application Area with the Backup, Using the SST (Service Support Tool)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

With previous devices, the area of HDD where MEAP application resides can be backed up to PC when formatting HDD.

However, HDD format with SST cannot be performed with this device due to specification reasons. Backup operation of MEAP application area with SST can be done but cannot be used for the foregoing purpose.



If restoring the backup data without formatting HDD, the data such as setting information may not be consistent. Thus, do not backup the MEAP application area.

11.1.26 Replacing the Hard Disk Drive

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

If you must replace the hard disk drive because of a fault, all MEAP application files stored on it will also be lost, requiring you to re-install the applications and their license files in addition to performing the normal work associated with the replacement of the hard disk.

Like other counter information, MEAP counter information will remain after replacement. Reinstallation of MEAP applications calls for special license files designed to continue with the current counter readings, thus enabling the use of the applications until the date of their expiration. These special licenses are service tools, and are not offered to general users.

If you cannot make a backup of the license files as hard disk suffers a fault, contact the support staff of the regional headquarters of Canon telling the device serial number and the names of MEAP applications installed to the device to obtain the necessary special license files.

In the support departments of regional headquarters of Canon, all license files of the applications that have been issued are filed according to device serial numbers, enabling you to obtain a series of license files through a single screen as long as you can identify the serial number of the device in question.

The following shows the steps to follow after you have obtained a special license from the support staff of the regional headquarters of Canon.

<iR3245 series>

- 1) Copy a set of obtained special license files to a laptop for service operation.
Register a set of System files of a target product to SST (System Support Tool). (Make sure the compatibility of the each file version.)
- 2) Prepare the required service parts of the HDD unit and replace the HDD unit on user's site.
The service part HDD is equipped with the minimum required firmware to start the system; thus, turn the power on to make sure that it starts properly (restart may be required during a service operation).
While pressing [2] and [8] numerical keys simultaneously on the control panel, turn on the main power so that the machine restarts in safe mode. (IP address "172.16.1.100" will be automatically specified, thus it is recommended to download via high-speed network.)
- 3) Using SST, install a set of System files in the version that was used before HDD failure.
- 4) When the device has started normally, obtain the jar files of the MEAP applications from the user, and install them using the license files of the applications in the same way as you would when installing them for the first time.
- 5) As necessary, make login service selections and import user information.

<Other than iR3245 series/LBP4500 series>

- 1) Copy a set of obtained special license files to a laptop for service operation.
Register a set of System files, Language files, Remote UI files, HDD format files, MeapContents files of a target product to SST (System Support Tool). (Make sure the compatibility of the each file version.)
- 2) Prepare the required service parts of the HDD unit and replace the HDD unit on user's site.
While pressing [2] and [8] numerical keys simultaneously on the control panel, turn on the main power so that the machine starts in Download mode. (IP address "172.16.1.100" will be automatically specified, thus it is recommended to download via high-speed network.)
- 3) Using SST, format HDD and install each file of System, MeapContents, Language and RemoteUI.
- 4) When the device has started normally, obtain the jar files of the MEAP applications from the user, and install them using the license files for reinstallation.
Installation method is the same as normal installation.
- 5) As necessary, make login service selections and import user information.

MEMO:

When you replace the HDD without uninstalling MEAP applications, make sure to reinstall the previously installed applications. Unless reinstalling them, MEAP counter will not be released and the message "The number of applications that can be installed has exceeded the limit. Try to install this application after uninstalling other applications." is displayed so that the installation of new applications may not be accepted.
If you want to install new applications in this case, once reinstall the applications installed before formatting and uninstall unnecessary applications.

11.1.27 MEAP Safe Mode

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Use safe mode if you need to start up the system without worrying about extra applications. It will start up only those system software files (including SMS) that normally start up as default files while preventing MEAP applications and the like from starting up.

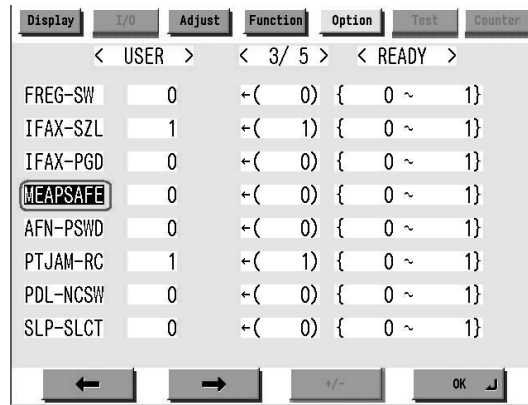
When you have made changes and turned off and then on the device, the control panel will indicate 'MPSF' in its lower right corner. The MEAP applications that may have been active before you shut down the equipment will not start up on their own. Make use of safe mode when restoring the system software as when MEAP applications or services cause a fault as the result of a conflict or wrong sequence of registration/use. You can access to SMS in this condition so that you can take necessary measures, for example, you can stop application that may cause the trouble.

If default authentication has been selected, the mode of authentication remains valid; otherwise, the message "The login service must be set again with SMS" appears. Change the login service as necessary.

Starting in Safe Mode

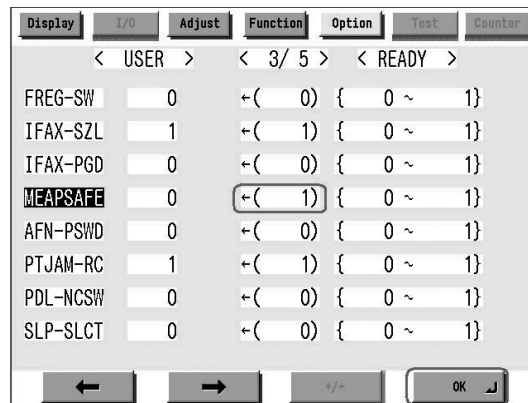
- 1) Start the device in service mode: click [Ad Func] key, press 2 and 8 buttons at the same time, and then click [Ad Func] key once again so that the service mode screen appears.
- 2) Press [COPIER] button.
- 3) Press [OPTION] button.
- 4) Press [USER].
- 5) Press the right-arrow button.

6) Press [MEAPSAFE].



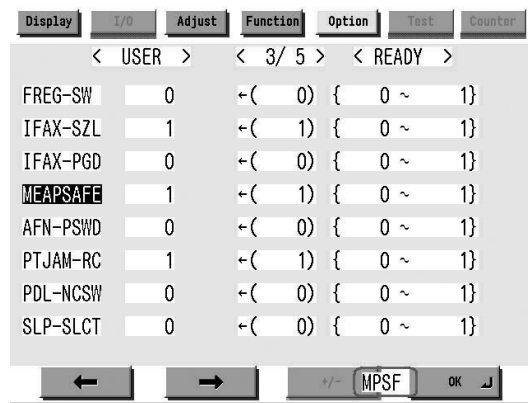
F-11-59

7) Press the 1 key on the control panel keypad to change the setting to '1'; then, click [OK] button.



F-11-60

8) Check that the notation 'MPSF' has appeared in the lower right corner of the screen; then, turn off and then on the main power.



F-11-61

If you want to end safe mode, repeat the steps but change '1' to '0' in step -7 and turn off and then on the main power.

11.1.28 Setting HTTP port for MEAP application (level 2)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

For the ports in which the MEAP application uses, the default is 8000 for the port on HTTP server, and 8443 for the port on HTTPS server. In the case that these ports have already used by the customer who is to introduce this application, the MEAP application cannot use the HTTP (or HTTPS) server(s). By changing the following ports to use, however, the MEAP application can be used as well as the existing system.

HTTP server

Setting value is 0 through 65535 [the value at factory shipment/after clearing RAM: 8000]

MEMO:

-Do not use port number "8080" when PS print server unit is connected.

-If the port is used, you can not see the page for RUI of the device with MEAP authentication application.
(port "8080" is reserved for redirecting from PS print server unit to device.)

HTTPS server

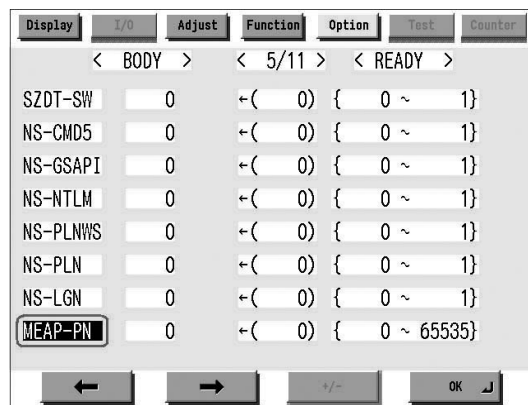
Setting value is 0 through 65535 [the value at factory shipment/after clearing RAM: 8443]

MEMO:

-As for port on HTTPS server, it only applies to the device that supports SSL function.
 -Make sure not to use 1 through 1023 other than 80 (HTTP) as a port for MEAP. Because the ports in this range are used by general servers, there is a possibility that the ports in this range will be duplicated in the future.

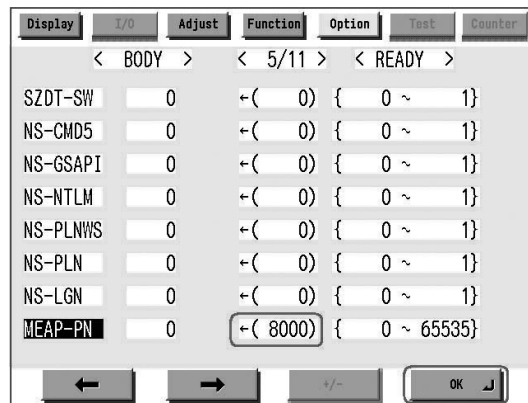
<Setting Procedure of Port on HTTP server>

- 1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] (After pressing [USER MODE] button of MEAP device, press [2] button and [8] button at the same time on control panel. Then by pressing [USER MODE] button again, [SERVICE MODE] screen is displayed).
- 2) Startup level 2 of [SERVICE MODE] (After starting up [SERVICE MODE] in step 1, press [USER MODE] button again. Then, by pressing [2] button on control panel, the screen is displayed).
- 3) Press [COPIER] button.
- 4) Press [Option] button.
- 5) Press [BODY] button.
- 6) Press or button.
- 7) Press [MEAP-PN] button.



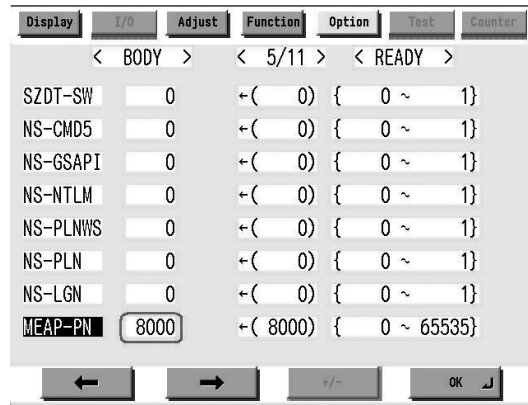
F-11-62

- 8) Press the port number to specify on the control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.



F-11-63

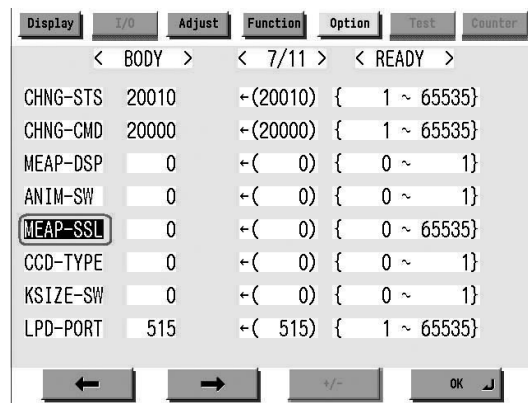
9) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and turn off the main power, and then, turn on the main power.



F-11-64

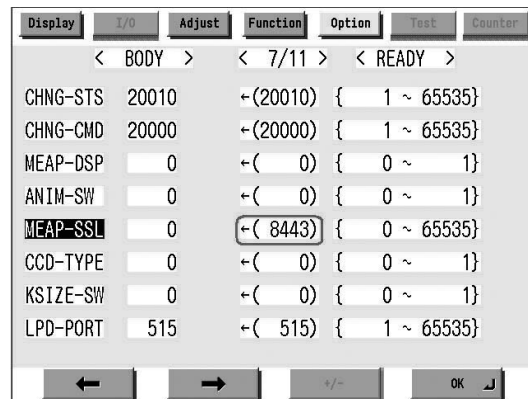
<Setting Procedure of port on HTTPS server>

- 1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] (After pressing [USER MODE] button of MEAP device, press [2] button and [8] button at the same time on control panel. Then by pressing [USER MODE] button again, [SERVICE MODE] screen is displayed).
- 2) Startup level 2 of [SERVICE MODE] (After starting up [SERVICE MODE] in step 1, press [USER MODE] button again. Then, by pressing [2] button on control panel, the screen is displayed).
- 3) Press [COPIER] button.
- 4) Press [Option] button.
- 5) Press [BODY] button.
- 6) Press **←** or **→** button.
- 7) Press [MEAP-SSL] button.



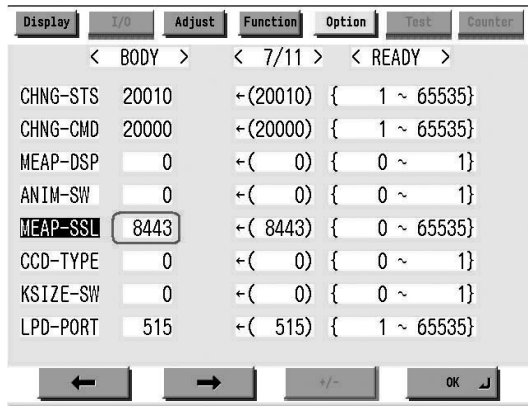
F-11-65

8) Press the port number to specify on the control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.



F-11-66

9) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and turn off the main power, and then, turn on the main power.



F-11-67

11.1.29 USB keyboard support (iR3245 series only)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Overview

Characters that could be entered on the software keyboard displayed on the conventional control panel can be entered using a USB connected keyboard.

- When the software keyboard window is displayed, characters can be entered from the USB keyboard (in-line entry not possible).
 - When the software keyboard window is not displayed, entered characters will not be remembered.
 - Only characters that can be displayed on the software keyboard will be accepted from the USB keyboard (entries that cannot be displayed on the software keyboard, such as Function key input, etc., will be ignored).
 - Even if characters are entered from the USB keyboard, the software keyboard window will not change (the corresponding key does not invert or change colour).
 - Input from the USB keyboard can be accepted at the same time as input from the software keyboard or numeric keys.
 - The USB keyboard can be plugged in or unplugged at any time (plug and play).
 - In some localities, extant USB keyboards being used by MEAP applications cannot be used at the same time as newly supported native (main unit functionality) USB keyboards. In the system administration settings, it is necessary to select either the MEAP application keyboard or the native keyboard.
 - When using a USB keyboard with native functionality, it is necessary to make changes to the operating mode settings in user mode. In such cases, MEAP applications that use the conventional MEAP USB drivers described above cannot use USB keyboards.
 - As regards MEAP applications that can use MEAP standard software keyboards, the USB keyboard can be used along with native functionality.
- * The SSO, SSO-K and SDL Login applications provided by Canon Inc. use software keyboards, so they are able to use USB keyboards.

MEMO:

The factory shipment default prioritizes compatibility with devices in the field, so the setting is to enable the use of MEAP application keyboards. Therefore, in order to use native (main unit functionality) USB keyboards, [Use MEAP driver for USB input device] under [System management settings (initial settings/ registration)] needs to be set to OFF (factory shipment setting is ON).
 Operations change as described below in accordance with ON/ OFF settings.
 ON: when using MEAP application keyboard (factory shipment default)
 OFF: when using native (main unit functionality) keyboard

USB keyboard

T-11-21

Operating mode settings [Use MEAP driver as USB input device]	Conventional USB keyboard enabled MEAP application	Software keyboard application (Native/ MEAP)	Class driver
ON (*default) MEAP driver mode (conventional compatibility mode)	Can use USB keyboard. Only works with applications that support the conventional MEAP drivers.	Cannot use USB keyboards. (Device cannot be detected.)	Loads conventional MEAP drivers.
OFF * Native driver mode	Cannot use USB keyboards. (Device cannot be detected.)	Can use USB keyboards. Via software keyboards only.	Loads native KBD drivers.

MEMO:

As the driver loaded for the USB device does not toggle dynamically, when any settings changes are made, power must be turned OFF/ ON.
 *NB: In the iR3245 models for Europe and Japan, these settings are not displayed. (The display of these settings can be turned on and off in service mode.)

Supported devices

The device that supports the USB keyboard is as follows.

- 1) Colour devices
None
- 2) BW devices
iR3245 series

11.1.30 USB memory related functions(iR3245 series only)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Common spec.

- The file formats supported by the USB memory linkage function are PDF, TIFF and JPEG.. (Saving in XPS format is not supported.)

- When saving an image to USB memory, time stamps and user signatures cannot be added.
- Operation from remote UI and image preview are not supported.
- The only supported USB memory is that which conforms to USB compliance tests.
- USB memory with security settings (passwords, etc.) are not supported.
- USB memory connected via extension cables or USB hubs are not supported.
- While USB memory is connected, the device cannot enter deep sleep.
- While the device is in deep sleep, USB memory cannot be connected.
- The maximum number of files (including folders) that can be displayed in a USB memory is 1,000.
- Non USB memory devices are not supported.
- The default setting permits the use of USB memory.

Supported devices

The device that supports USB memory related function is as follows.

- 1) Colour devices
None
- 2) BW devices
iR3245 series



- If a USB memory device is connected while the device is in deep sleep, the unit will not be able to detect the USB memory, so the USB removal button will not be displayed (it will be grayed out). Therefore, the USB memory should be removed, then, after touching the control panel and activating the display, reconnect the USB memory.

- When a MEAP application, etc., is being used, the settings are sometimes not changed. In that case, the following statuses (factory settings) need to be changed in user mode.

[User mode]>[System administrator settings]>[USB settings]>[Use USB host]: ON

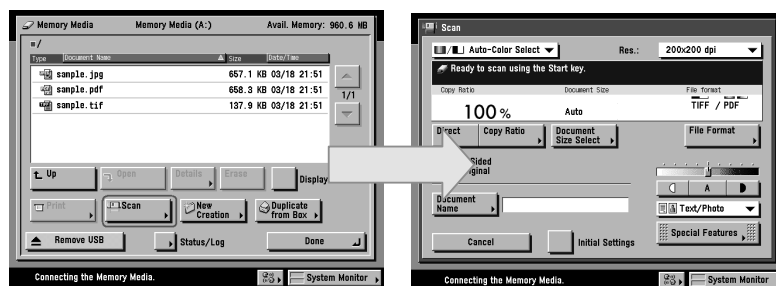
(factory shipment default: ON)

[User mode]>[System administrator settings]>[USB settings]>[Use MEAP driver as USB external memory device]:[OFF]

(factory shipment default: OFF)

Scan to USB memory (supported outside of Japan and Europe)

Scanned documents can be saved directly to USB.



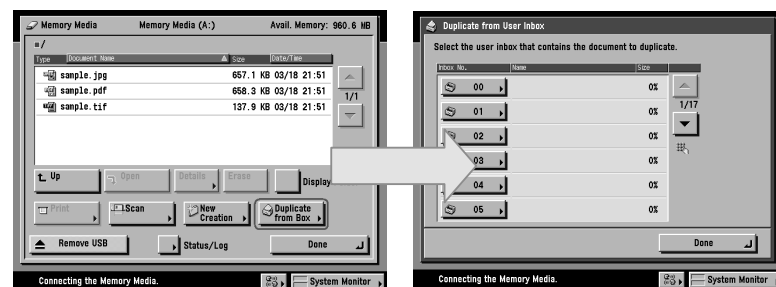
F-11-68



Until a scan job has been completely written into the USB memory, the next scan operation cannot be carried out. In particular, even if a document has been scanned in, it takes time to write in searchable PDF, etc., so subsequent scanning operations cannot start till the current job has been completely written in.

Box To USB memory (supported outside of Japan and Europe)

Image data stored in box saved to USB memory.



F-11-69

USB memory To Print: Print PDF/TIFF/JPEG. (supported outside of Japan and Europe)

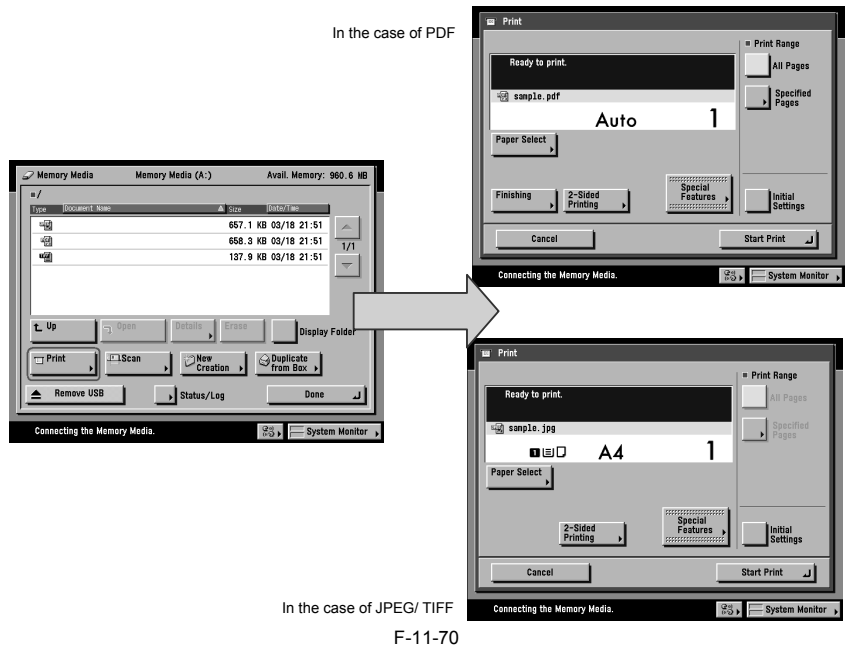
Links with PDF direct print option to print out image data stored in USB memory.

- Maximum printable size is 2GB.
- Settings for enlarged/ reduced printing and N-up printing available.

The following functions and settings cannot be used.

- Multiple document printing, split binding and cover insert functions
- Editing functions such as coupled printing and page deletion, etc.
- Preview
- Free size paper printing

Further, to use these functions, PDF Direct Print or PS Print Kit need to be installed in the main unit.



Sort function: Sort file lists into USB

The file lists displayed on the control panel can be sorted and displayed by file names and dates.

USB memory support and operating mode settings

T-11-22

Operating mode settings: [Use MEAP driver as USB storage device]	Conventional USB memory enabled MEAP application	Native USB memory function	Class driver
ON * MEAP driver mode (conventionally compatible mode)	USB memory can be used. Can be used only via conventional MEAP USB driver.	USB memory cannot be used. (Device cannot be detected.)	Loads conventional MEAP USB class driver.
OFF (*default) Native driver mode	USB memory cannot be used. (Device cannot be detected.)	USB memory can be used.	Loads mass storage class driver.

MEMO:
 - The driver loaded for the USB device does not toggle dynamically, so once any settings have been changed, the power needs to be switched OFF/ ON.
 *NB: In the Japan and Europe models of iR3245, the default value is ON, so this setting is not displayed. (The display of this setting can be switched ON/ OFF in service mode.)

11.1.31 Reference material

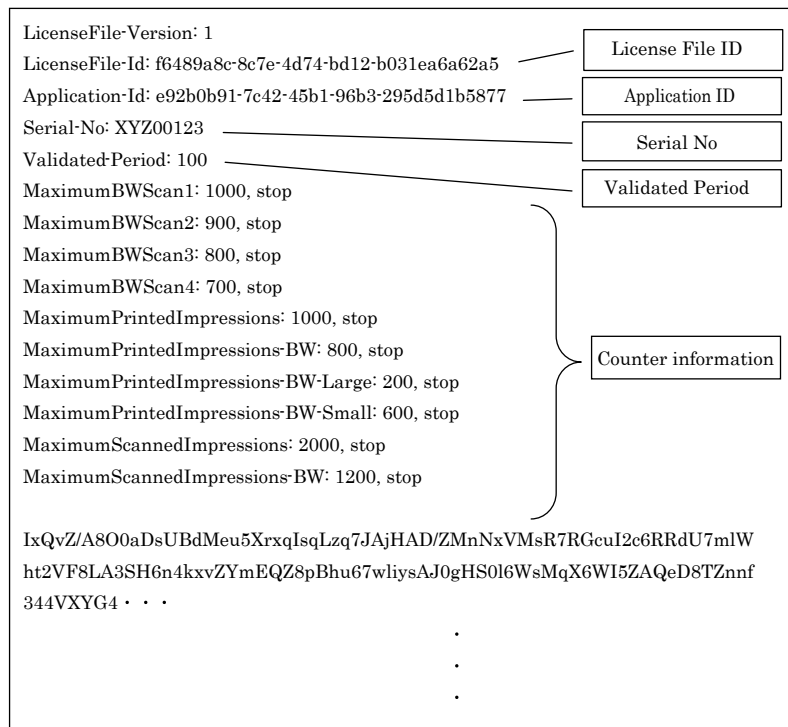
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Glossary

T-11-23

Terms & Acronyms	Definitions and Explanations
Applet	Applet Type Application. A Type of MEAP application that is designed to display user interface on device control panel.
Application	A software unit that provides a solution to users.
Application ID	A unique identifier assigned to each application. Used for indicating memory usage of the application in the MEAP system.
ASP	Application Service Provider. A business to provide the application service on Internet.
AVS	Applet Viewer Service. One of the MEAP system services that shows the user interface of the current applet type service on the console.
Code Sign	To attach Digital Signature to software code. MEAP has the mechanism to reject MEAP application without Code Sign for security reason.
CPCA	Common Peripheral Controlling Architecture. CPCA defines an object model of peripheral devices. A client can control a device by creating or modifying objects in the device.
CPCA Java CL	CPCA Java Class Library. A Java class library, which is used to control a device.
Default Authentication - Department ID Management	The login service used when the department ID control is used but other authentication controls are not used. When the Department ID control is turned on, the login dialog prompts the users to enter the department ID and password. The dialog appears the initial screen of both the control panel on the MEAP device and Remote UI
Device Specification ID	ID assigned for each device model. It shows the usage of functions that are equipped by MFP, as well as CPCA API specification and version numbers that is necessary for acquiring the values such as maximum number of copies, etc.
DIS	Dynamic Service Loading Installer Service. Receives data from the DSL on the MEAP platform. Enables an application to install to two or more devices.
DSL	Dynamic Service Loading. While the SMS installs a license file and application to one device, the DSL can install them to two or more devices. It consists of MEAP ESM and the DIS.
Esplet	Esplet Type Application. A type of MEAP application that does not have a user interface on the device console or on the web browser. The term of "Esplet" is a coinage by Canon inspired from Applet, Servlet, and "Espresso".
File descriptor	With a file descriptor, an OS identifies the files that a program accesses. The file descriptor includes information such as file name and size as well as the identifier. An OS determines files to operate with the identifier.
iR Native Application	The functionalities that existing imageRUNNER has such as Copy, Universal Send and Mailbox.
ISV	Independent Software Vender. Software manufacturer who develops and/or sells applications and tools but does not entire computer systems. Refers application developer in this document.
J2ME	Java 2 Platform Micro Edition. One of Java Platforms licensed by Sun Microsystems, Inc. It is applied for MEAP. Other devices such as cellular phones and PDA.
Java	A programming language developed by Sun Microsystems, in the U. S. A. Low dependent on models and OSES and runs on various platforms. Taking advantage of this feature, many applications that runs on web servers uses Java. The MEAP platform uses J2ME - a type of Java.
Java Script	A script language developed by Netscape Communications, in the U.S. A., runs on web browsers such as Netscape Navigator and Internet Explorer. Allows web designers to create interactive pages with HTML files such as animated buttons and display of timetables.
Java VM	JAVA Virtual Machine. The Java byte code interpreter. The Virtual Machine acts as an interpreter for processing the byte code using the native instruction set.
License Access Number	A number issued for accessing license file. The Licensing server requires entries of application ID, expiration date/times information, and the number of access numbers, to issue license access numbers.
License File	A software manufacture of a MEAP application provides the users with the license files. Specifies the terms of agreement that a user concludes with the manufacturer. Required for installing a MEAP application.
Login Service	Manages user information of MEAP device. Authenticates users with user names and passwords. Three login services are available for MEAP device - Default Authentication, which provides department ID control, SDL (Simple Device Login) and SSO (Single Sign-On).
MEAP	Multifunctional Embedded Application Platform. Provides an environment for executing application programs on a peripheral device. Uses the Java platform (J2ME - Java 2 platform Micro Edition) to run Java application for MEAP.
MEAP AMS	MEAP Application Management System. The license issuing server that issues "License File" necessary for MEAP applications to be installed onto MEAP device. Also used for issuing the "License Access Number".
MEAP Application	Runs on MEAP platform. Consists of application files (*.jar) and the license file (*.lic).
MEAP Contents	Required to install an MEAP application to a MEAP device.
MEAP ESM	MEAP Enterprise Service Manager. One of software programs composing the DSL, to be installed on a PC in a Windows environment. Works as the interface with the DSL.
MEAP Specifications	MEAP Spec Version, the term used for the SDK. The version number that shows the APIs of the MEAP platform other than CPCA, such as network and security. The version number is not assigned for each device model.
MEAP device	imageRUNNER (iR) device that has MEAP Platform incorporated.
MFP	Multi Function Peripheral. Peripheral device that supports more than one function, such as digital copier, printer, scanner, and fax.
OSGi	Open Service Gateway Initiative. See " http://www.osgi.org/ ".
Portal Service	The service displayed on a Web browser by inputting the address " <a href="http://<device IP address>:8000/">http://<device IP address>:8000/ " or " <a href="http://<device IP address>/">http://<device IP address>/ " A portal to access a MEAP device from a Web browser.
Proxy Server	Provides functions to store data fetched from remote servers. When a user request to display a web page that has been displayed and stored in the proxy, the proxy server read the stored data but does not access the remote server where the original page is present, for efficient access services. When a proxy server receives a URL from a PC, it searches the file in the cache and sends it to the PC if the requested file is found. If the requested file is not stored in the cache, it accesses the remote server of the URL to acquire the file and, at the same time, stores the acquired file in the cache so that the proxy server can quickly send the file at the next request.

Detail of License File



F-11-71

11.1.32 Option for exclusive individual measure

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

-Display Setting of Copy Tab

Make a setting as to whether to display/hide the copy screen (copy tab) on the control panel. This is the specification for users who want to customize hiding it on control panel.



Default value

1: display

Setting range, item

0: hide 1: display

Setting Procedure

- 1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] (After pressing [USER MODE] button of MEAP device, press [2] button and [8] button at the same time on control panel. Then by pressing [USER MODE] button again, [SERVICE MODE] screen is displayed).
- 2) Press [COPIER] button.
- 3) Press [Option] button.
- 4) Press [BODY] button.
- 5) Press  or  (arrow) button.
- 6) Press [UI-COPY] button.
- 7) Press either 0 (hide) or 1 (display) on control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.
- 8) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and turn off the main power, and then, turn on the main power.

-Error at starting up the MEAP application/Setting to hide JAM screen (level 2)

In the case that operation is restricted by MEAP application, hide the warning screen of error/JAM (such as JAM screen, door opening, no-toner). In the case that these errors occur, there will be a display indicating 'call the service personnel' etc.

MEMO:

Part of the warning screens is displayed if shifting to the device screen.

- As for the screens for jam and no-toner, the warning screen (animation) can be displayed by pressing the followings: [Device Screen] > [Recovery Procedure]

- As for the screen for door opening, the warning screen cannot be displayed because there is no display for [[Device Screen] > [Recovery Procedure]



Default value

1: No activation of warning display

Setting range, item

0: display warning screen 1: hide warning screen

Setting Procedure

- 1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] (After pressing [USER MODE] button of MEAP device, press [2] button and [8] button at the same time on control panel. Then by pressing [USER MODE] button again, [SERVICE MODE] screen is displayed).
- 2) Startup level 2 of [SERVICE MODE] (After starting up [SERVICE MODE] in step 1, press [USER MODE] button again. Then, by pressing [2] button on control panel, the screen is displayed.
- 3) Press [COPIER] button.
- 4) Press [Option] button.
- 5) Press [BODY] button.
- 6) Press  or  button.
- 7) Press [ANIM-SW] button.
- 8) Press either 0 (display warning screen) or 1 (hide warning screen) on control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.
- 9) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and turn off the main power, and then, turn on the main power.

-Setting of Screen Transition from MEAP Screen to the Standard Screen

In the case that the operation is restricted by MEAP application, make a setting to hide Native applications such as Copy/Send/Box. With this setting, disable screen transition with => key.


Default value

0: OFF (transit to Native screen)

Setting range, item

0: OFF (transit to Native screen) 1: ON (No-transition to Native screen)

Setting Procedure

- 1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] (After pressing [USER MODE] button of MEAP device, press [2] button and [8] button at the same time on control panel. Then, by pressing [USER MODE] button again, [SERVICE MODE] screen is displayed).
- 2) Startup level 2 of [SERVICE MODE] (After starting up [SERVICE MODE] in step 1, press [USER MODE] button again. Then, by pressing [2] button on control panel, the screen is displayed.
- 3) Press [COPIER] button.
- 4) Press [Option] button.
- 5) Press [BODY] button.
- 6) Press  (arrow) button.
- 7) Press [ANIM-DSP] button.
- 8) Press either 0 (transit to Native screen) or 1 (no-transition to Native screen) on control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.
- 9) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and turn off the main power, and then, turn on the main power.

Chapter 12 Maintenance and Inspection

Contents

12.1 Periodically Replaced Parts	12-1
12.1.1 Overview	12-1
12.1.2 Reader Unit	12-1
12.1.3 Printer Unit	12-1
12.2 Durables and Consumables	12-4
12.2.1 Overview	12-4
12.2.2 Reader Unit	12-4
12.2.3 Printer Unit	12-4
12.3 Scheduled Servicing Basic Procedure.....	12-8
12.3.1 General Procedure for Scheduled Servicing	12-8
12.3.2 Scheduled Servicing List Reader Unit	12-8
12.3.3 Scheduled Servicing List Printer Unit	12-9
12.4 Cleaning	12-14
12.4.1 Cleaning for secondary transfer rear guide	12-14
12.4.2 Cleaning of registration roller, registration guide and transparency sensor	12-15
12.4.3 Cleaning for buffer decurler.....	12-16

12.1 Periodically Replaced Parts

12.1.1 Overview

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Some parts of the machine must be replaced on a periodical basis to maintain a specific level of machine performance. (They could significantly affect the performance once they fail, regardless of external change or damage.)

Whenever possible, plan the replacement to coincide with a scheduled visit.



The indicated intervals of replacement are estimates only and are subject to change.

1. Checking the Timing of Replacement

Use the following service mode item to check the timing of replacement:

Å@COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1

12.1.2 Reader Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The reader unit does not have parts that must be replaced on a periodically basis.

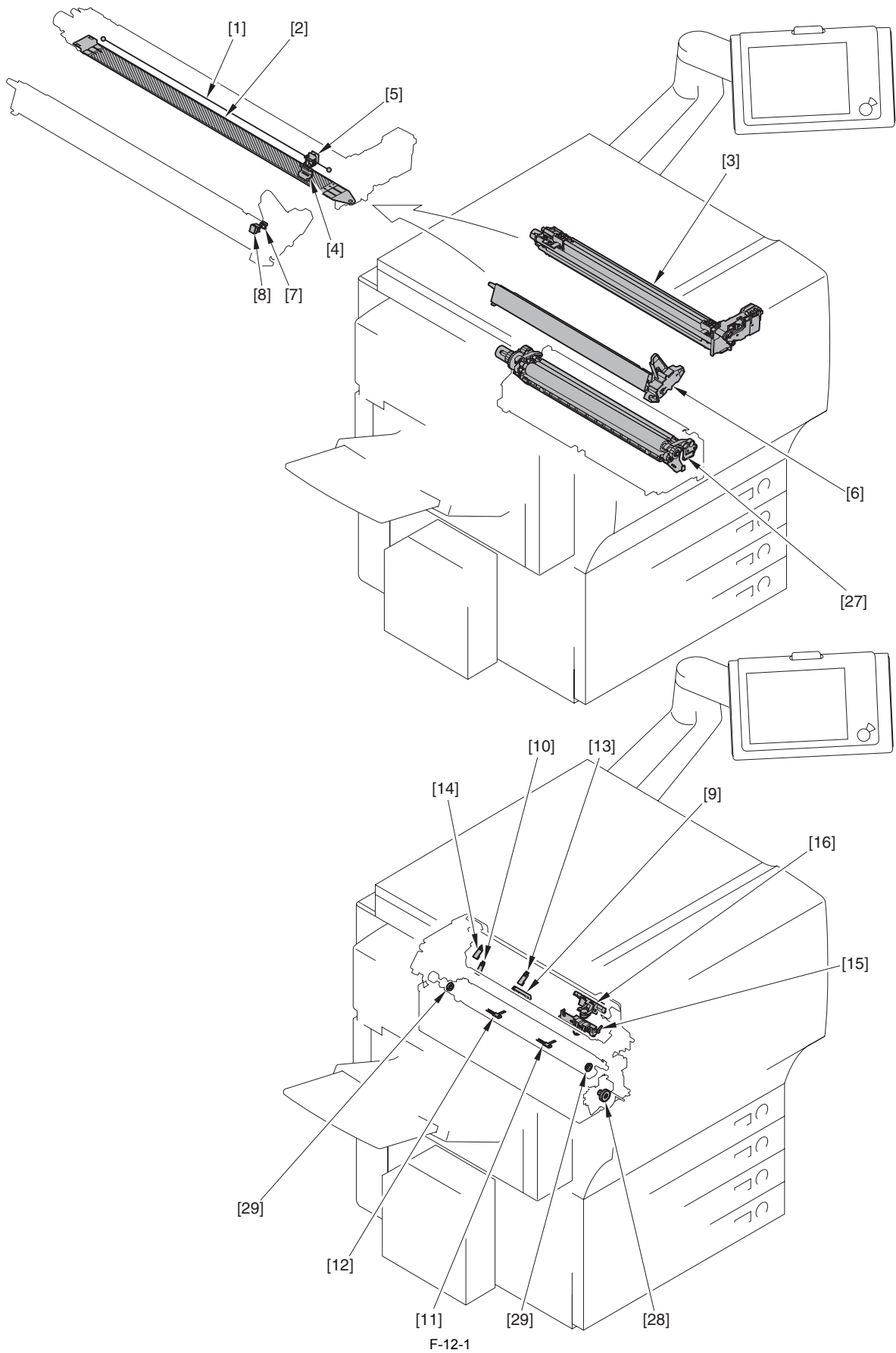
12.1.3 Printer Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

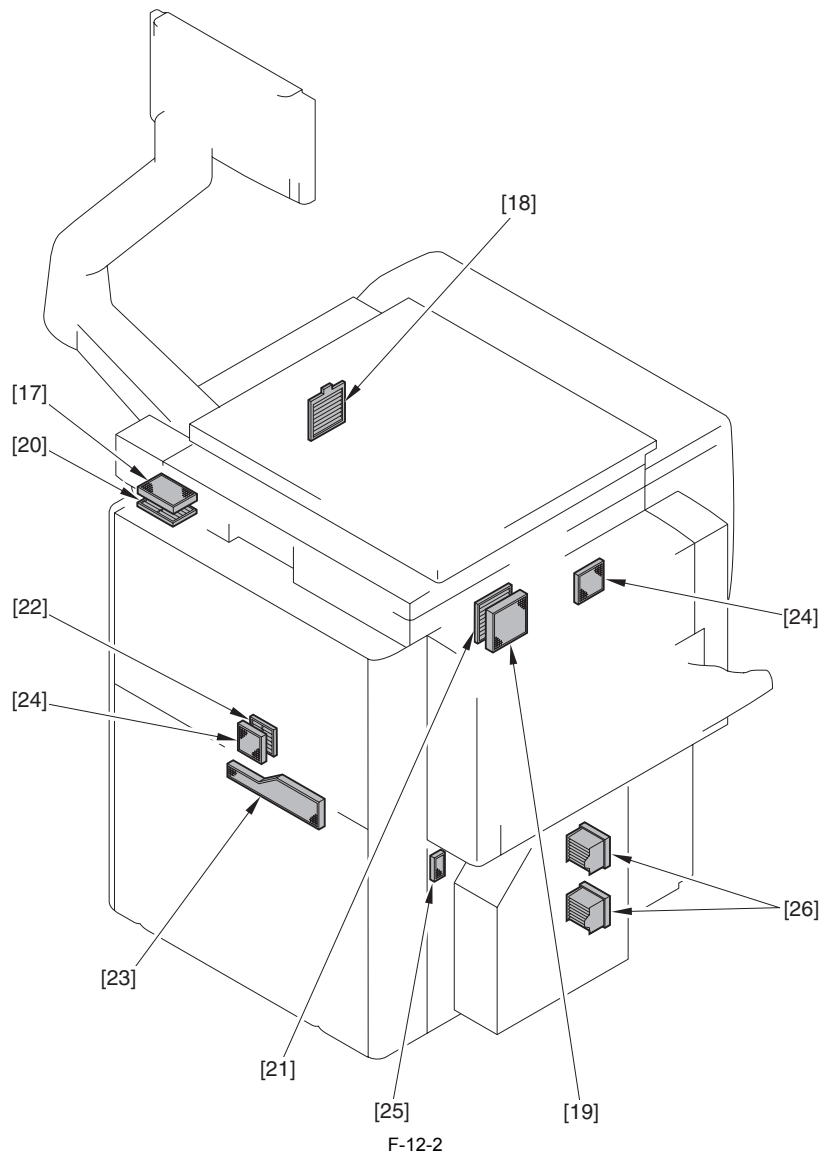
T-12-1

as of September 2008					
Ref.	Parts name	Parts No.	Q'ty	Life	Remarks
[1]	Primary/pre-transfer charging wire	FB4-3687-000	AR	25,000 sheets	See *1
[2]	Primary grid plate	FC6-1056-000	1	25,000 sheets	
[3]	Primary charging assembly	FM2-2496-000	1	250,000 sheets	
[4]	Pad holder (primary)	FL2-2720-000	1	25,000 sheets	
[5]	Slider (primary)	FL2-0462-000	1	25,000 sheets	
[6]	Pre-transfer charging assembly	FM2-2495-000	1	250,000 sheets	
[7]	Pad holder (pre-transfer)	FL2-2720-000	1	25,000 sheets	
[8]	Slider (pre-transfer)	FL2-0462-000	1	25,000 sheets	
[9]	Fixing main thermistor	FK2-0608-000	1	500,000 sheets	
[10]	Fixing sub thermistor	FK2-0609-000	1	500,000 sheets	
[11]	Inlet main thermistor	FK2-0610-000	1	500,000 sheets	
[12]	Inlet sub thermistor	FK2-0611-000	1	500,000 sheets	
[13]	Outside heater main thermistor	FK2-0612-000	1	500,000 sheets	
[14]	Outside heater sub thermistor	FK2-0613-000	1	500,000 sheets	
[15]	Fixing thermal switch	FM2-2700-000	1	1,000,000 sheets	
[16]	Outside heater thermal switch	FM2-2706-000	1	1,000,000 sheets	
[17]	Ozone filter (right)	FC7-0957-000	1	250,000 sheets	imagePRESS C1 + the number of parts, FC8-8814.
[18]	Air filter	FL2-0439-000	1	250,000 sheets	
[19]	Ozone filter (left)	FC6-1392-000	1	250,000 sheets	imagePRESS C1 + the number of parts, FC8-8815.
[20]	Toner filter (right)	FC7-0958-000	1	250,000 sheets	
[21]	Toner filter (left)	FC6-9817-000	1	250,000 sheets	
[22]	Toner filter (rear)	FC6-9829-000	1	250,000 sheets	
[23]	Air Filter 1	FC6-9831-000	1	250,000 sheets	imagePRESS C1 + the number of parts, FC8-8816.
[24]	Air Filter 2	FC6-9832-000	2	250,000 sheets	imagePRESS C1 + the number of parts, FC8-8817.
[25]	Air Filter 3	FC6-9833-000	1	250,000 sheets	imagePRESS C1 + the number of parts, FC8-8818.
[26]	Air Filter 4	FC6-3482-000	2	250,000 sheets	
[27]	Secondary Transfer Cleaner Unit	FM2-8070-000	1	100,000 sheets	
[28]	Two-Gear Fixing Drive	FU6-0258-000	1	200,000 sheets	
[29]	Fixing Separation Roller Ball Bearing	XG9-0365-000	2	200,000 sheets	

*1: Can endure 18,000 sheets in a high temperature and high humidity environment.



F-12-1



12.2 Durables and Consumables

12.2.1 Overview

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Some parts of the machine may require replacement once or more over the period of product warranty because of deterioration or damage. Replace them as necessary by referring to the following guide:

1. Checking the Timing of Replacement

Use the following service mode item to check the timing of replacement:

- Machine Main
COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1
- Accessory
COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-2

12.2.2 Reader Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The reader unit does not have items that are classified as durables.

12.2.3 Printer Unit

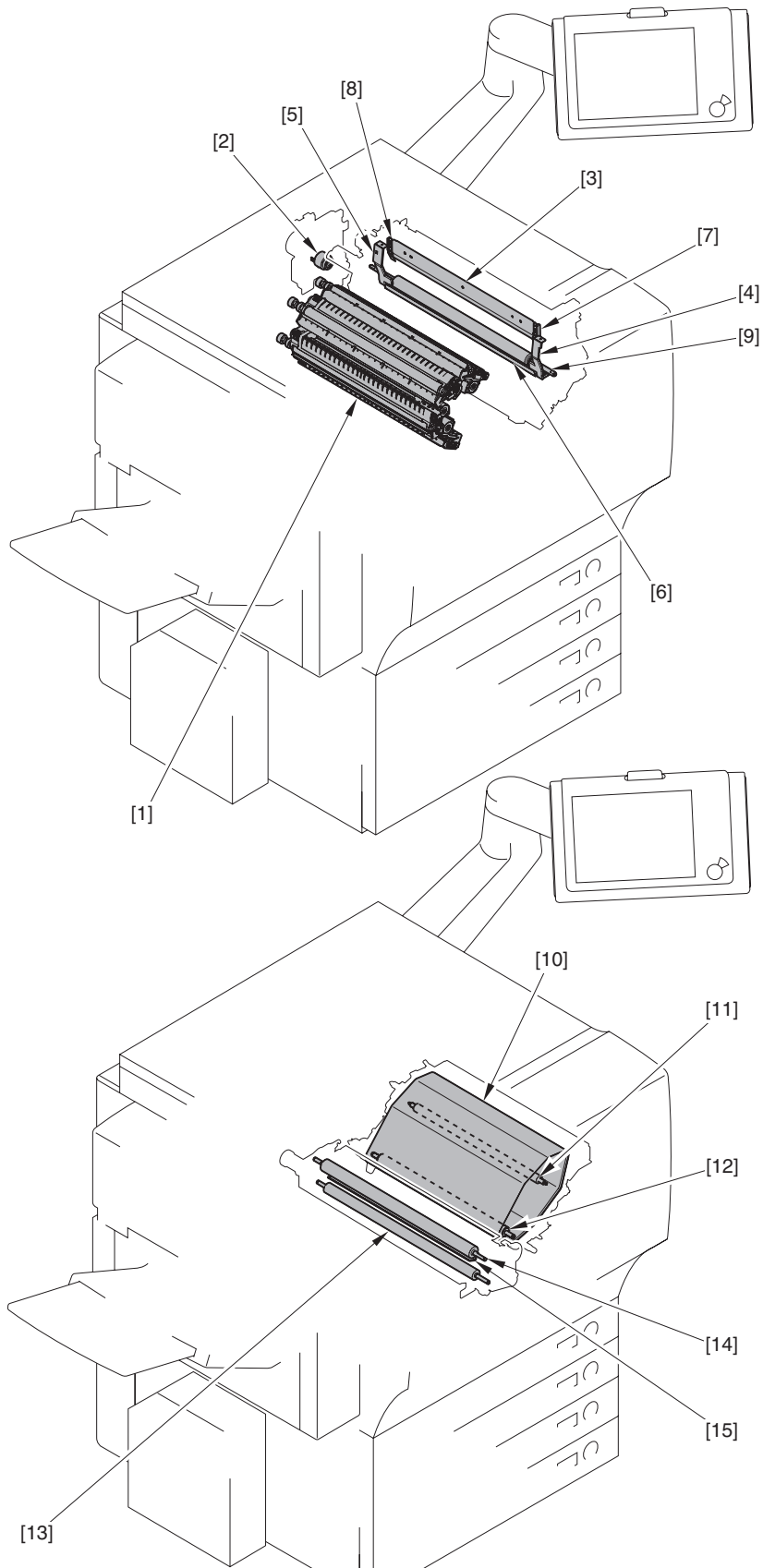
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-12-2

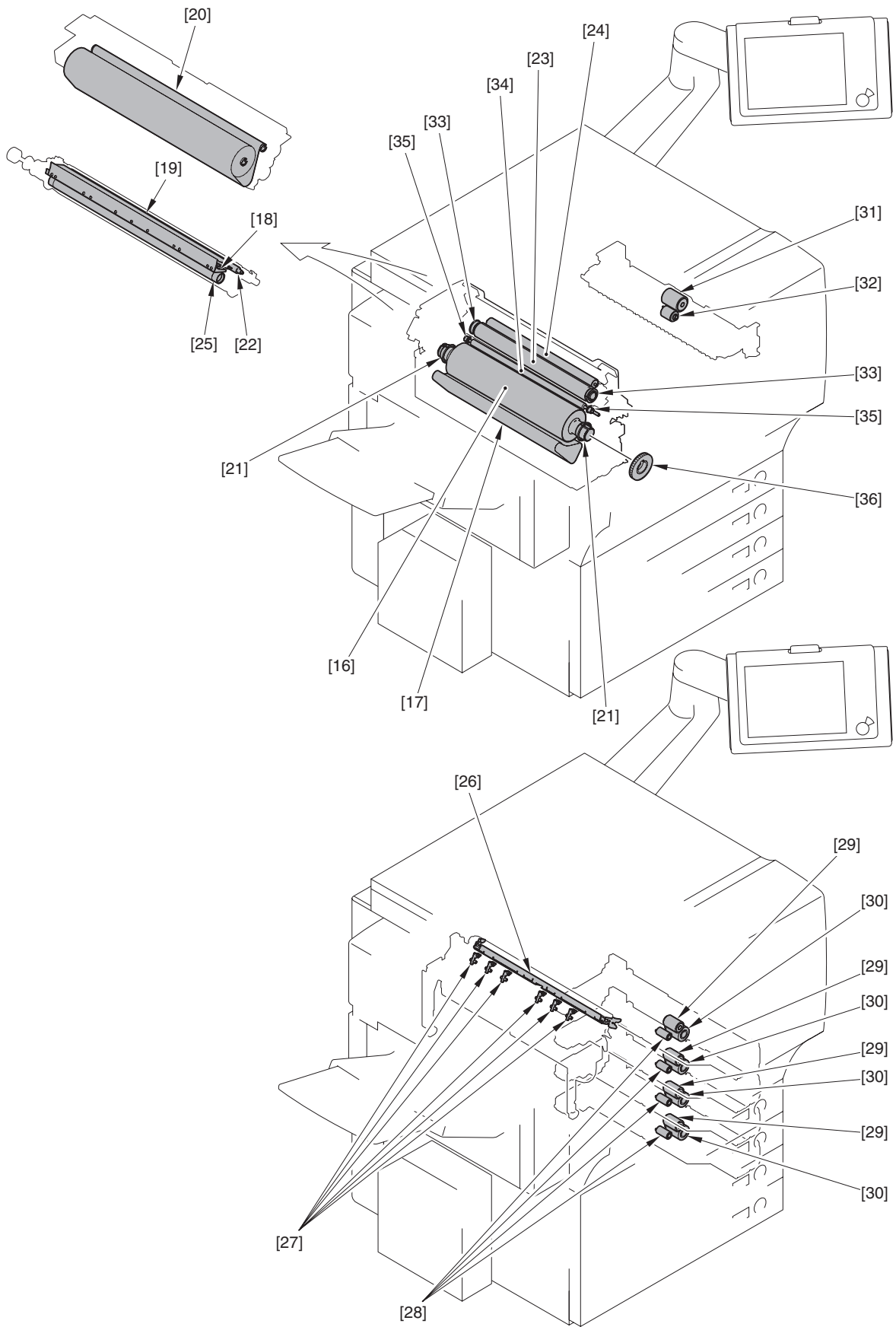
As of September, 2006					
Number	The name of part	The Number of part	Number of pieces	The target of durability	Remarks
[1]	Developing assembly (Y)	FM3-1211-000	1	500 thousand sheets	starter is included.
	Developing assembly (M)	FM3-1212-000	1	500 thousand sheets	starter is included.
	Developing assembly (C)	FM3-1213-000	1	500 thousand sheets	starter is included.
	Developing assembly (Bk)	FM3-1214-000	1	500 thousand sheets	starter is included.
	Developing assembly (L)*	FM3-8360-000	1	500 thousand sheets	starter is included.
[2]	Developing clutch	FK2-0033-000	1	500 thousand sheets	
[3]	Cleaning blade	FC5-8829-000	1	100 thousand sheets	
[4]	Seal support plate (front)	FL2-2707-000	1	100 thousand sheets	
[5]	Seal support plate (rear)	FL2-2708-000	1	100 thousand sheets	
[6]	Scoop-up sheet support plate	FL2-2709-000	1	100 thousand sheets	
[7]	End seal (front)	FL2-2713-000	1	100 thousand sheets	
[8]	End seal (rear)	FL2-2714-000	1	100 thousand sheets	
[9]	Drum cleaning brush	FC5-8837-000	1	100 thousand sheets	
[10]	Transfer belt (ITB)	FL2-2584-000	1	75 thousand sheets	
[11]	Primary transfer roller	FC6-1545-000	1	75 thousand sheets	
[12]	Secondary transfer inside roller	FC5-1661-000	1	300 thousand sheets	
[13]	ITB cleaning brush (21mm dia.)	FC6-1547-000	1	150 thousand sheets	
[14]	ITB cleaning brush (18mm dia.)	FC6-1546-000	1	150 thousand sheets	
[15]	Bias roller cleaning blade	FC6-4910-000	2	150 thousand sheets	
[16]	Fixing Roller	FL2-6945-000	1	200 thousand sheets	imagePRESS C1 + the number of parts, FL3-0893.
[17]	Fixing belt	FL2-6530-000		100 thousand sheets	At exchange is Silicon oil spreading on pressurizing pad cover At exchange is Silicon oil spreading on pressurizing pad cover
[18]	Pressure pad	FL2-2649-000	1	100 thousand sheets	
[19]	Pad cover	FL2-2788-000	1	100 thousand sheets	
[20]	Fixing cleaning belt	FC5-9778-000	1	100 thousand sheets	
[21]	Insulating bush	FB4-3689-000	2	500 thousand sheets	
[22]	Oil-coating roller	FL2-5453-000	1	100 thousand sheets	
[23]	External heating roller	FC7-0932-000	1	250 thousand sheets	
[24]	External heating roller cleaner	FC5-9777-000	1	100 thousand sheets	
[25]	Steering roller	FC5-9766-000	1	100 thousand sheets	
[26]	Delivery upper separation plate	FM3-0045-000	1	500 thousand sheets	
[27]	Delivery lower separation claw	FM2-2644-000	6	500 thousand sheets	At exchange is Silicon oil spreading on separation claw
[28]	Cassette pick-up roller	FC5-2524-000	4	250 thousand sheets	Actual No. of sheets (Use one piece for each cassette)
[29]	Cassette feeding roller	FC7-0154-000	4	12.5 thousand sheets	Actual No. of sheets (Use one piece for each cassette)

As of September, 2006					
Number	The name of part	The Number of part	Number of pieces	The target of durability	Remarks
[30]	Cassette separation roller	FC7-0155-000	4	12.5 thousand sheets	Actual No. of sheets (Use one piece for each cassette)
[31]	Manual feed roller	FB1-8581-000	1	120 thousand sheets	Actual No. of sheets
[32]	Manual separation roller	FB5-0873-000	1	120 thousand sheets	Actual No. of sheets
[33]	External heating insulating bush	FC5-2582-000	2	500 thousand sheets	
[34]	Refresh roller	FL2-6048-000	1	100 thousand sheets	
[35]	Refresh Heat Insulating Bushing	FC7-0175-000	2	100 thousand sheets	
[36]	73T Gear	FU6-0609-000	1	200 thousand sheets	

* For imagePRESS C1+ only



F-12-3



F-12-4

MEMO:

- For the target of replacement, the center value of evaluation result data is written. The number of part may be changed due to design change, etc.

12.3 Scheduled Servicing Basic Procedure

12.3.1 General Procedure for Scheduled Servicing

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



- The scheduled servicing should be basically implemented per 25,000 sheets.
- Check the service book when going for the scheduled servicing. Bring it when the parts replacement may be necessary.
- Connecting the power plug for a long time at the place filled with the dust, moisture and oily smoke may cause a fire (The dust accumulated around there absorbs the moisture and may cause the poor insulation). The power plug should be regularly unconnected, the dust or dirt accumulated around it/the consent should be cleaned with a dry cloth.

1. Operation Procedure

- 1) Greetings to the person in charge: The status confirmation
- 2) The counter record: Check the misprint
- 3) Check the following items, clean/adjust each area.

Check items			
Test copy	Image density standards		
	Soiled background		
	Character definition		
	Margin		
	Fixing	Faulty registration, soiled back	
	Margin specification (one-sided print)	Leading edge: 4.0+1.5/-1.0mm	
		Left edge: 2.5+/-1.5mm	
	(two-sided print)	Leading edge: 4.0+1.5/-1.0mm	
Left edge: 2.5+/-2.0mm			
Feeding system	Registration upper lower roller		
	Paper powder at the front of the registration assembly		

- 4) Checking the Waste Toner Receptacle
When the waste toner accumulates above the level of half of the receptacle, collect the waste toner in a vinyl bag, etc. Or replace the waste toner receptacle



- When disposing the waste toner, obey the disposal standards of each local government.
- Do not throw the waste toner into the fire (It may explode, very dangerous!)

- 5) Clean the copyboard glass and reading glass
- 6) Implement the test copy.
 - 7) Implement the sample copy.
 - 8) Operation check for the leakage breaker
Press the test switch of the leakage breaker at the status of power switch (ON), and check if the leakage breaker normally works (The breaker switch tilts on the side of OFF to shut the power).
If the leakage breaker does not normally work, replace the leakage breaker and check it again.

2. Recovery Procedure

After checking the operation, turn OFF/ON the main power switch.

- 1) Organize the sample copies, clean and clear up the surroundings of the machine.
- 2) Record the last counter. Record also the service counter for COUNTER>DRBL-1 'FX-UP-RL'.
- 3) Write them in the service book, report them to the person in charge. Write the history of the leakage breaker operation check in the service book.

12.3.2 Scheduled Servicing List Reader Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



Do not use the solvent/oil other than the specified one.

MEMO:

The meanings of marks used in the subsequent chart are as follows.

A: Cleaning B: Replacement C: Lubrication D: Adjustment E: Maintenance

T-12-3

Unit	Parts	Implementation Item	Implementation Interval	Notes
Original exposure system	Copyboard glass face/back sides	A	Timely	
	Standard white plate	A	Timely	
	Scanner rail	A/C	Timely	
	Scanner mirror (mirror 1 to mirror 3)	A	Timely	
	Reflector	A	Timely	
	Dustproofing filter	A	Timely	

MEMO:

The previously described value is an estimated value, and may change due to experimental data.

12.3.3 Scheduled Servicing List Printer Unit

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



Do not use the solvent/oil other than the specified one.

MEMO:

The meanings of marks used in the subsequent chart are as follows.

A: Cleaning B: Replacement C: Lubrication D: Adjustment E: Maintenance

(1) Scheduled maintenance

T-12-4

Name of unit	Item	Implementation items	Number of sheets	Position to install / area to clean
External control	Ozone filter (right)	B	250,000 sheets	[1]
	Ozone filter (left)	B	250,000 sheets	[2]
	Toner filter (right)	B	250,000 sheets	[3]
	Toner filter (left)	B	250,000 sheets	[4]
	Toner filter (rear)	B	250,000 sheets	[5]
	Dust-Proofing Filter	B	250,000 sheets	[6]
	Air filter (1)	B	250,000 sheets	[7]
	Air filter (2)	B	250,000 sheets	[8][9]
	Air filter (3)	B	250,000 sheets	[10]
	Air filter (4)	B	250,000 sheets	[11][12] imagePRESS C1 only
Laser Exposure system	Dustproof glass	A	25,000 sheets	
Charging system	Primary charging assembly	B	250,000 sheets	
	Primary charging wire	A_ At installation B_ 25,000 sheets		
	Primary grid	B	25,000 sheets	See *1.
	Pad holder	B	25,000 sheets	
	Slider	B	25,000 sheets	
	Primary charging assembly shield plate	A_ At installation A_ 25,000 sheets		
	Pre-transfer charging assembly	B	250,000 sheets	
	Pre-transfer charging wire	A_ At installation B_ 25,000 sheets		
	Pad holder (pre-transfer)	B	25,000 sheets	
	Slider (pre-transfer)	B	25,000 sheets	
	Pre-transfer charging assembly shield plate	A_ At installation B_ 25,000 sheets		
	Potential guide plate A (outside)	A	75,000 sheets	[13]
	Potential guide plate A (inside)	A	75,000 sheets	[14]
	Patch image reading sensor window	A	75,000 sheets	
	Pre-Transfer Charging Duct Rail	A	75,000 sheets	[15]
	Drum thermal sensor	A	75,000 sheets	
Potential guide plate B	A	75,000 sheets	[16]	

Name of unit	Item	Implementation items	Number of sheets	Position to install / area to clean
Developing assembly	Developing cylinder	E At installation		
	ATR sensor window	A	75,000 sheets*5	[22]
	Developing cylinder cover	A	75,000 sheets*5	[23]
Transfer system	Potential guide plate C	A	75,000 sheets*5	[17]
	Pre-Transfer Charging Duct Seal	A	25,000 sheets	[18]See *2
	Secondary transfer downstream guide	A	25,000 sheets	[19]See *3
	Secondary Transfer Outer Roller Waste Toner Case	A	50,000 sheets	[20]See *4
	Secondary transfer front upper guide	A	75,000 sheets	[21]
Feeder assembly	Feeder belt	A	150,000 sheets	
	Transparency sensor	A	250,000 sheets	
	Registration roller	A	250,000 sheets	
	Registration roller guide (upper / lower)	A	250,000 sheets	
	Buffer decurler feed roller upper/lower	A	25,000 sheets	
	Buffer decurler sponge roller	A	25,000 sheets	



Perform basically dry-wipe with lint-free paper.

*1: 18,000-sheets at H/H condition (High temperature/High Humidity condition).

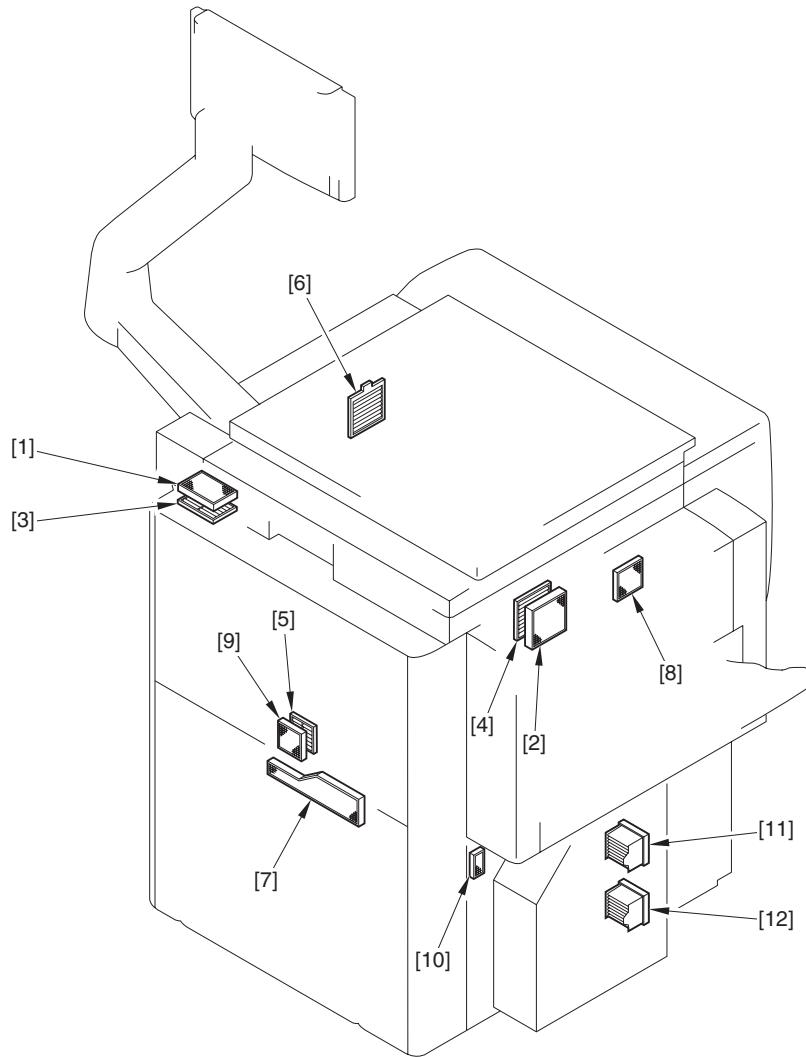
*2: The pre-transfer charging duct seal indicates the seal attached at the side of the pre-transfer charging assembly.

*3: Make sure to clean the secondary transfer downstream guide with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol. Also, in order to prevent soil to the secondary transfer outer roller, the guide should be cleaned after removing it from the secondary transfer outer roller unit.

*4: For cleaning the collecting area of the secondary transfer outer roller, make sure to dispose the toner at the collecting area.

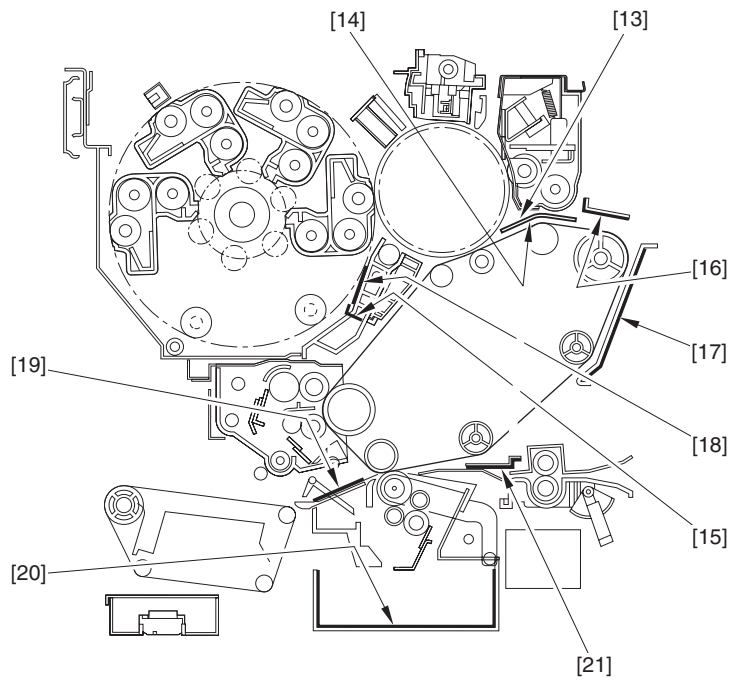
*5: 50K for imagePRESS C1+

Places to attach filters



F-12-5

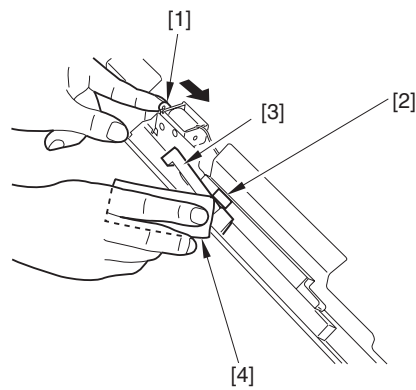
Places to attach the parts in image formation system that require cleaning



F-12-6

- Cleaning method of ATR sensor window ([22] at the figure above)

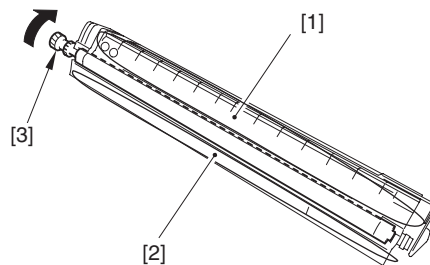
- 1) Remove the ATR sensor from the host machine.
- 2) Press the plunger [1] of the ATR sensor solenoid in the direction of the arrow.
- 3) Clean the ATR sensor window [2] and the sensor shutter [3] with lint-free paper.



F-12-7

-Cleaning method of developing cylinder cover ([23] at the figure above)

- 1) Clean the developing cylinder cover [1] and the toner blocking high voltage plate [2] with lint-free paper.
- 2) Turn the developing cylinder gear [3] 5 to 6 times in the direction of the arrow to even out the developer.



F-12-8



- Do not touch the developing cylinder.
- After cleaning, make copies (2 to 3 sheets) using the test chart (CA-1) to check if there is no image fault.

(2) Periodic Maintenance

T-12-5

Unit Name	Item	Implementat ion items	Description
Hopper	Toner receiving/supplying mouth	A	250,000-sheets
Fixing Unit	Fixing web	E	Checking at installation
	Fixing main thermistor	Cleaning prohibition B_Replace at 500,000-sheets	
	Fixing sub thermistor	B	Replace at 500,000-print
	Inlet main thermistor	A_100,000-sheets B_500,000-sheets	
	Inlet sub thermistor	A_100,000-sheets B_500,000-sheets	
	External heat main thermistor	A_100,000-sheets B_500,000-sheets	
	External heat sub thermistor	A_100,000-sheets B_500,000-sheets	
	Fixing thermal switch	A_300,000-sheets B_1,000,000-sheets	
	External heat thermal switch	A 300,000-sheets B_1,000,000-sheets	
	Inlet guide	A	50,000-sheets
Delivery Unit	Delivery upper separation plate	A	50,000-sheets
	Delivery lower separation claw	A	25,000-sheets
	Waste toner box	A	50,000-sheets See *1
Buffer decurler Unit	sponge roller	A	25,000-sheets
	feed roller (upper)	A	25,000-sheets
	feed roller (lower)	A	25,000-sheets

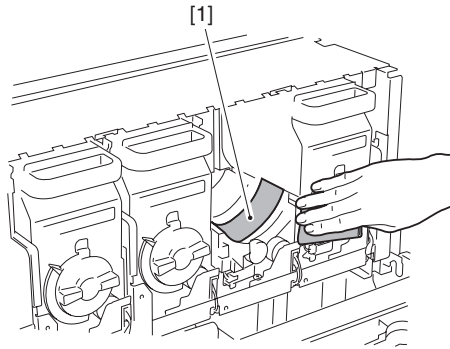
*1: Estimated life for replacement in the case of 100% of color ratio and 10% of image ratio. It may vary according to the color ratio and the image ratio.



The value noted in the foregoing is the estimated value and it may be changed according to experience data.

<Toner Receptacle>

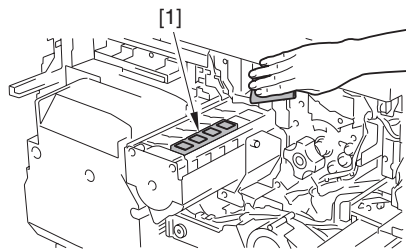
- Clean the toner receptacle [1] on the hopper unit with a lint-free paper.
- Be sure to keep the toner receptacle away from any foreign particle at this time.



F-12-9

<Supply Mouth>

- Clean the supply mouth [1] with a lint-free paper.
- Be sure to keep the supply mouth away from any foreign particle at this time.



F-12-10

12.4 Cleaning

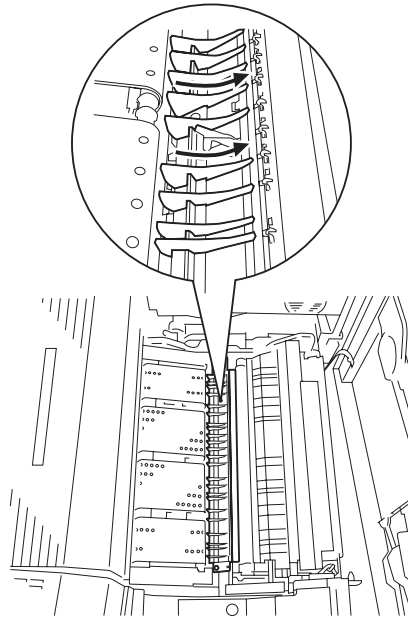
12.4.1 Cleaning for secondary transfer rear guide

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Open the front cover.
- 2) Pull out the fixing feeder assembly.
- 3) Clean ribs one by one, from left to right by lint-free paper soaked with alcohol solution, as the arrow in the following chart.



- Do not implement dry wiping because rib may take charge.
- The rib of the secondary transfer rear guide is close to the static charge eliminator [3]. Do not wipe in adverse direction because the static charge eliminator may be hit and bent.

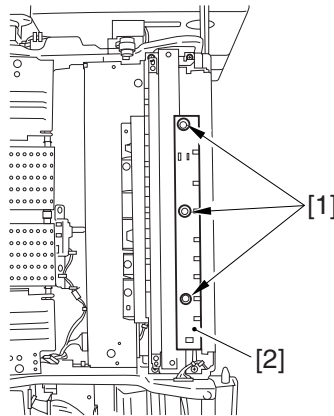


F-12-11

12.4.2 Cleaning of registration roller, registration guide and transparency sensor

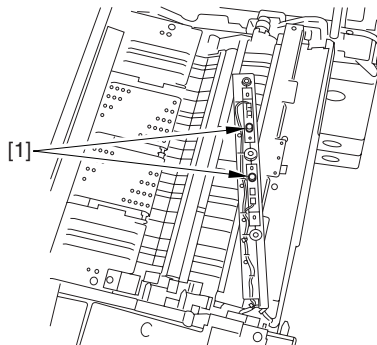
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Pull out the fixing feeder assembly.
- 2) Push the leaf springs of both ends, pull out more the fixing feeder assembly.
- 3) Remove three screws [1], turn over the transparency upper sensor unit [2].



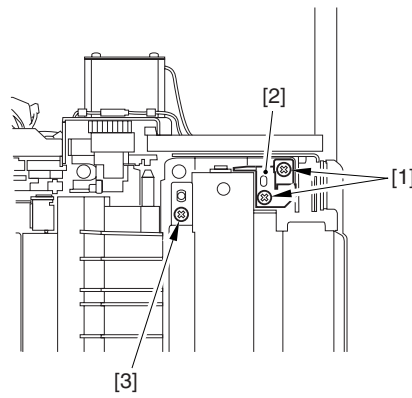
F-12-12

- 4) Remove paper dust\$ attached on the transparency sensor [1] by blower brush.



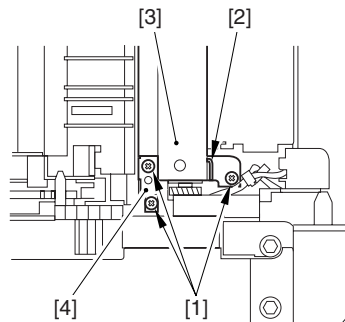
F-12-13

- 5) Remove two screws [1], and remove the grounding spring [2].
- 6) Remove screw [3].



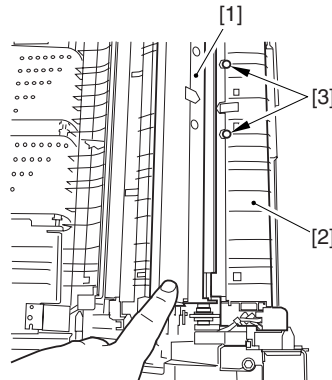
F-12-14

7) Remove three screws [1], and remove the registration roller upper stay [3] with the grounding spring [4] while removing the hook of the spring [2].



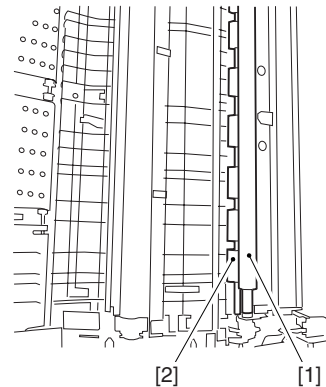
F-12-15

8) Open the registration upper guide [1], and clean the back side of the upper guide [1] and lower guide [2] by lint-free paper soaked with alcohol solvent.
9) Remove paper dust attached on the transparency sensor [3] by blower brush.



F-12-16

10) While rotating the registration roller upper [1] and the registration roller lower [2], clean by lint-free paper soaked with alcohol solvent.

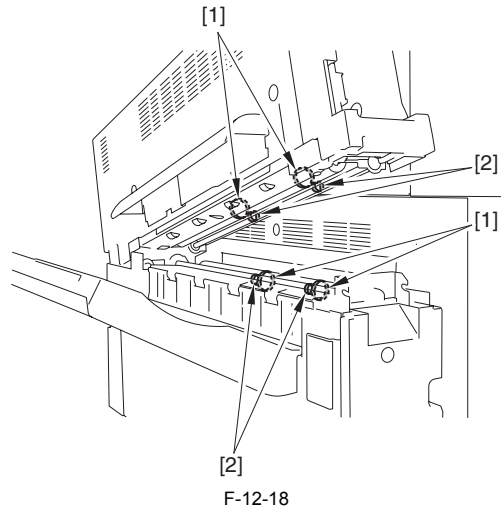


F-12-17

12.4.3 Cleaning for buffer decurler

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Open the buffer decurler. Then, clean 2 sponge rollers [1], 1 feed roller (upper) [2] and 1 feed roller (lower) [3] using lint-free paper moistened with alcohol solution.



Chapter 13 Standards and Adjustments

Contents

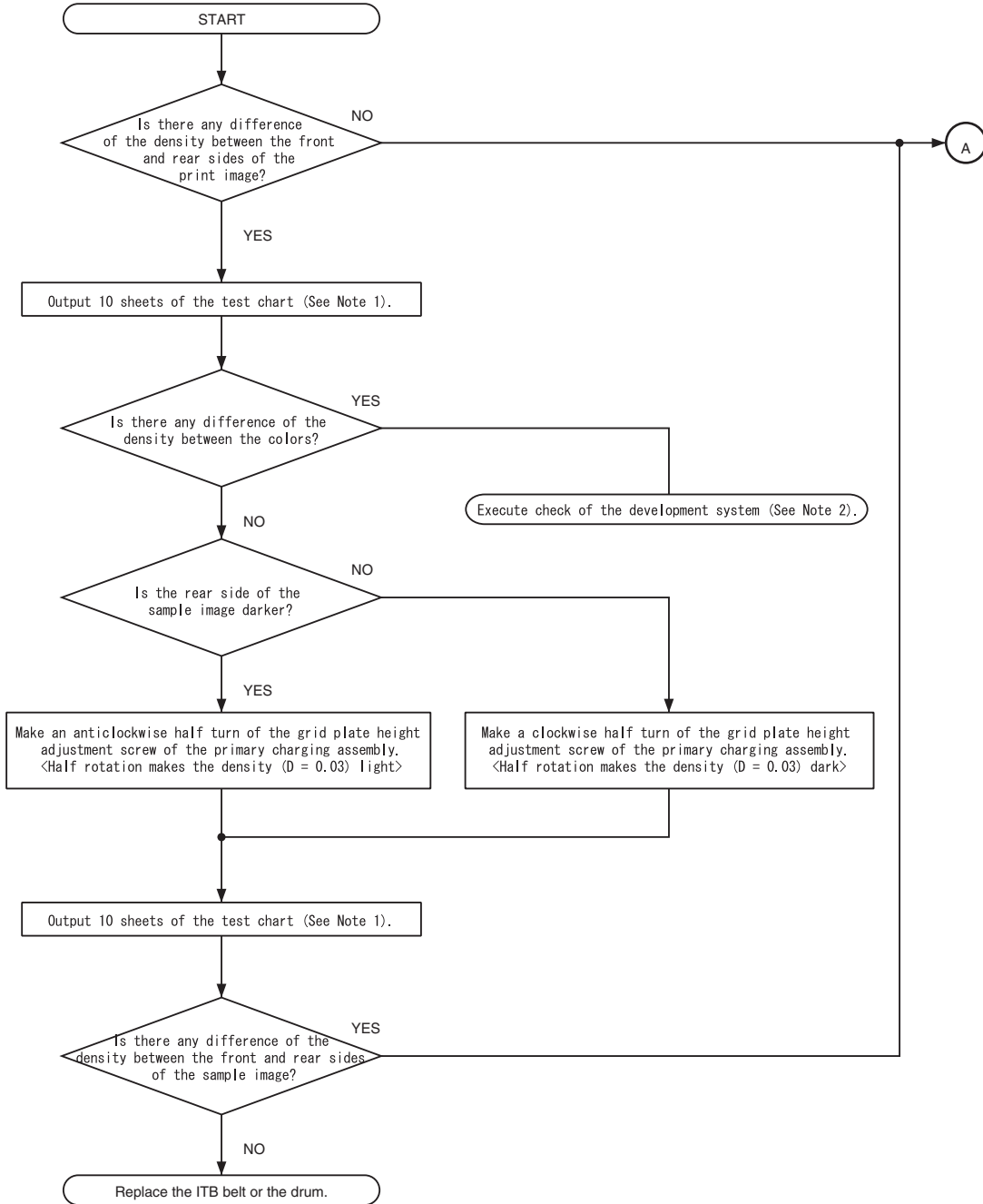
13.1 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure	13-1
13.1.1 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure 1	13-1
13.1.2 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure 2	13-1
13.1.3 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure 3	13-2
13.1.4 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure 4	13-3
13.2 Scanning System	13-5
13.2.1 After Replacing the CCD Unit	13-5
13.2.2 After Replacing the Copyboard Glass	13-5
13.2.3 After Replacing the Reader Control PCB and Clearing the RAM	13-5
13.3 Image Formation System	13-5
13.3.1 After Replacing the Primary Charging Wire	13-5
13.3.2 After Replacing the Primary Charging Assembly	13-5
13.3.3 Replacing the Potential Sensor	13-6
13.3.4 After Replacing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly	13-7
13.3.5 After Replacing the Waste Toner Box	13-7
13.3.6 After Replacing the Secondary Transfer Roller Waste Toner Case	13-7
13.3.7 After Replacing the Photosensitive Drum	13-7
13.3.8 Replacing the Waste Toner Sensor	13-7
13.3.9 After Replacing the ATR Sensor	13-7
13.3.10 After Replacing the Patch Image Reading Sensor	13-7
13.4 Fixing System	13-7
13.4.1 Checking the Nip Width	13-7
13.4.2 After Replacing the Fixing Roller	13-8
13.4.3 After Replacing the Fixing Belt	13-8
13.4.4 After Replacing the Fixing Cleaning Belt	13-8
13.4.5 After Replacing the Fixing Belt / Pressure Pad Cover	13-8
13.4.6 When replacing pressure belt	13-8
13.4.7 When Replacing Pressure Belt Unit-Related Durable Parts	13-9
13.5 Electrical Components	13-10
13.5.1 Replacing the DC controller PCB	13-10
13.5.2 After Replacing the Main Control PCB (main)	13-10
13.5.3 After Replacing the SRAM PCB	13-10
13.5.4 After Replacing the HDD	13-11
13.5.5 Replacing the HV2, HV4, HV6-1 and HV6-2	13-11
13.5.6 Inputting the Rank Value at Replacing the Paper Thickness Sensor	13-11
13.6 Pickup/Feeding System	13-11
13.6.1 Vertical Registration Adjustment at Cassette Pickup	13-11
13.6.2 Vertical Registration Adjustment at Manual Pickup	13-11
13.6.3 Registering Paper Width Standard Value at Manual Feeder Tray	13-12

13.1 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure

13.1.1 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure 1

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The basic procedure of image adjustment is written to below.



F-13-1

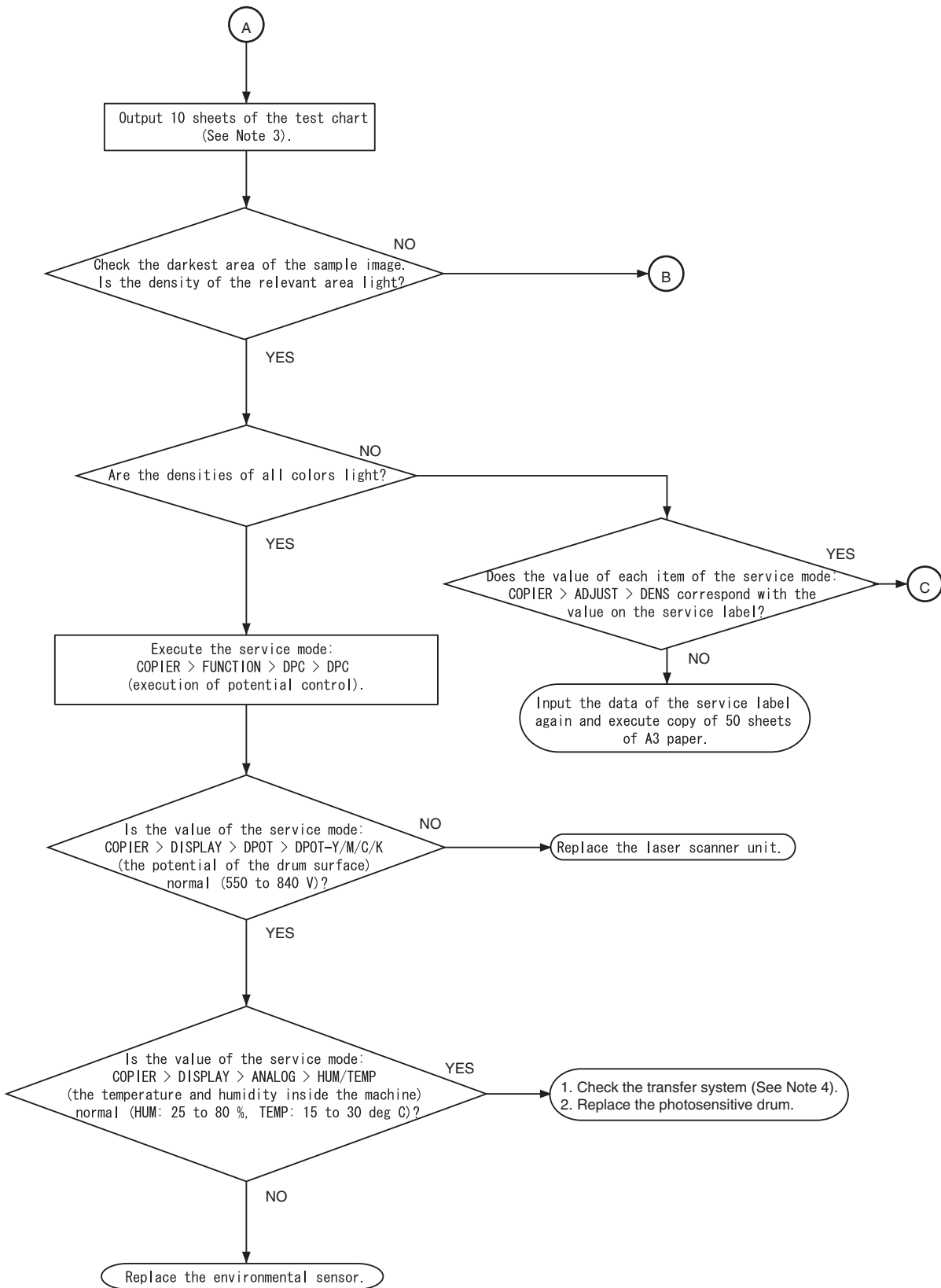
Note 1: Execute the service mode: Full-page halftone (COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE=5).

Note 2: Execute the following items.

- Check to see that the developing assembly has been correctly fit to the developing rotary assembly.
- Replace the HVT (generating developing bias).
- Replace the relevant developing assembly.

13.1.2 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure 2

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



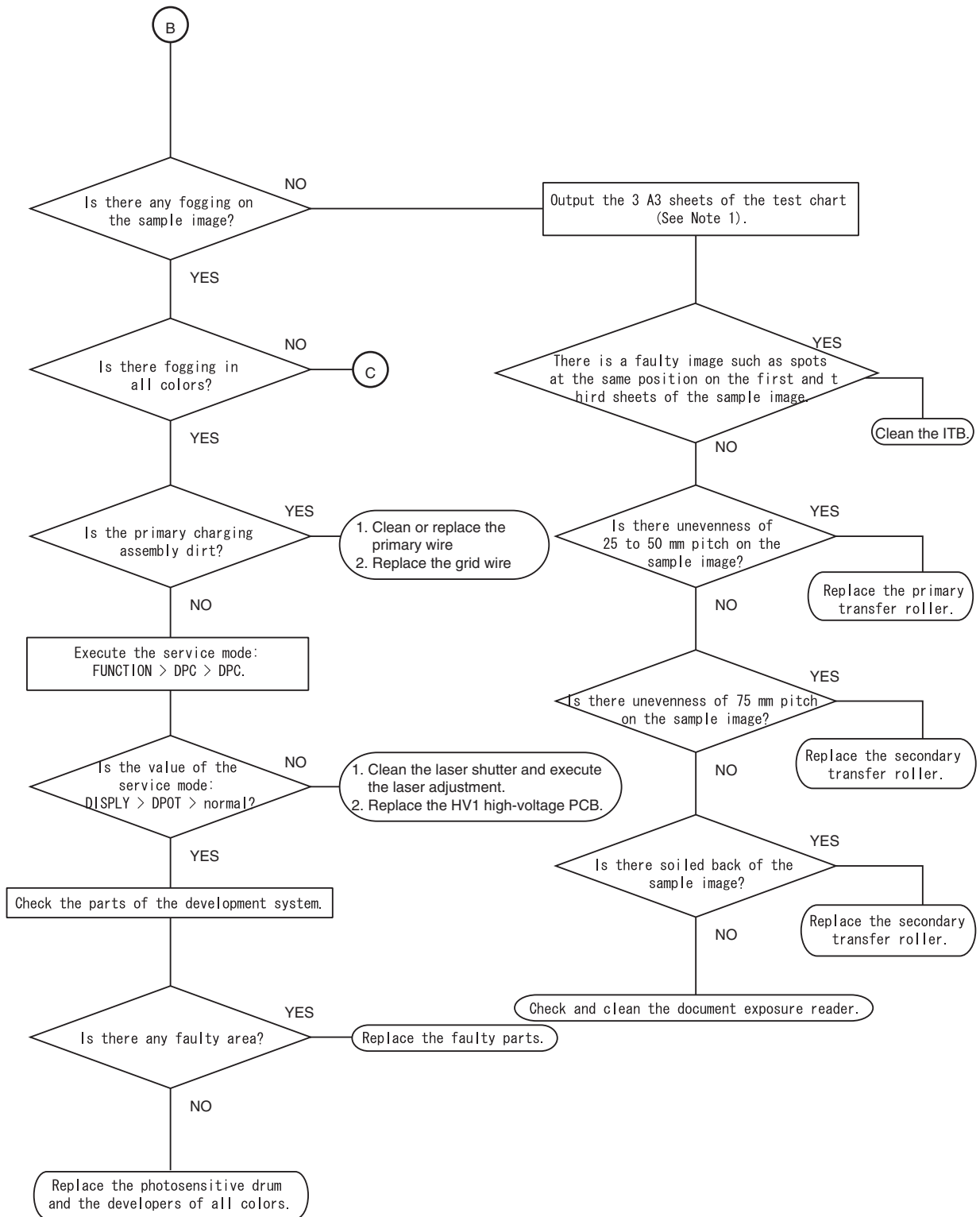
F-13-2

Note 3: Execute the service mode: 16-gradation test print (COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE=4).

Note 4: Replacing the transfer system roller (primary transfer roller, secondary transfer roller) Replacing the HVT (HVT 2 to 4, 8 to 9)

13.1.3 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure 3

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

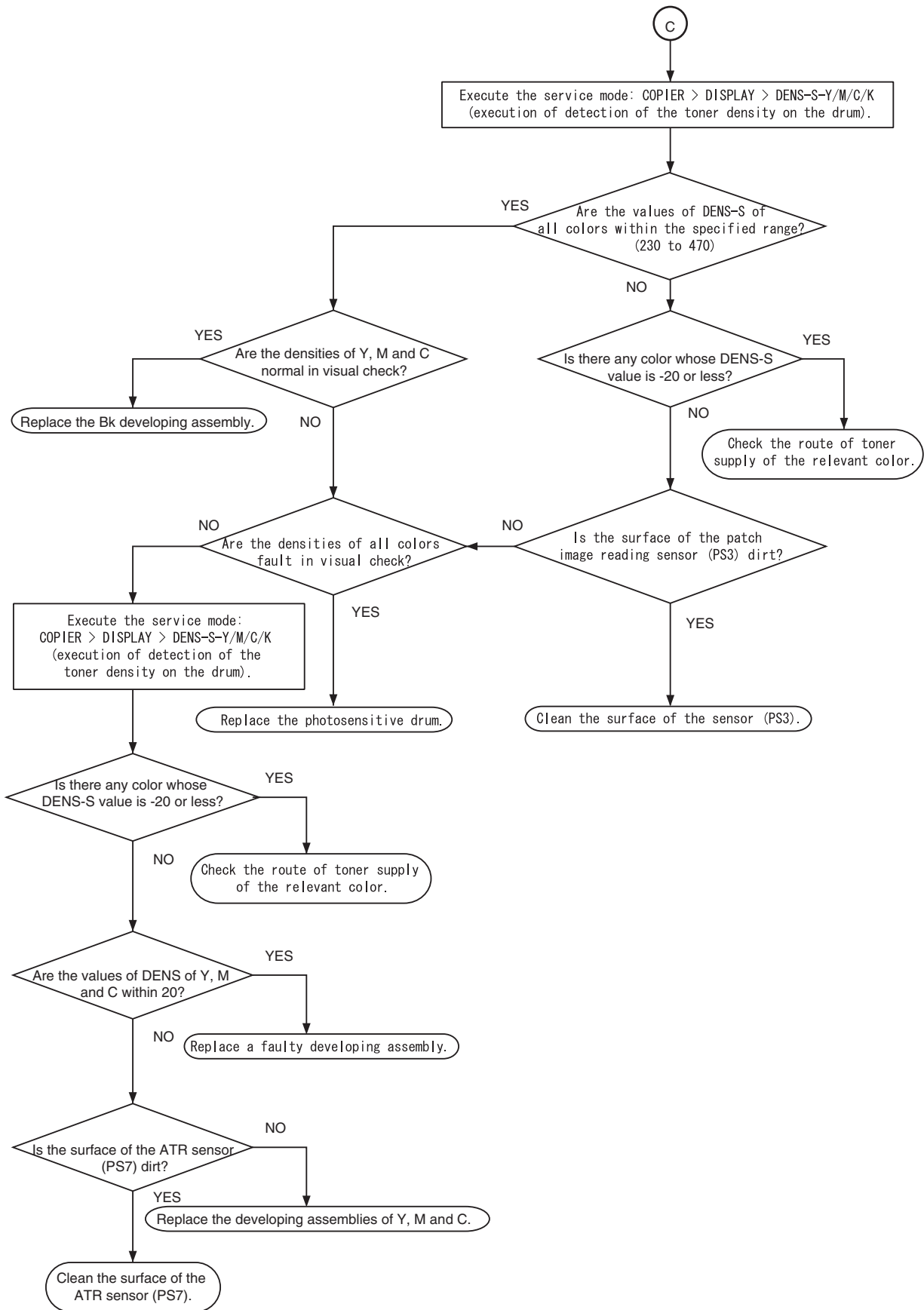


F-13-3

Note 1: Execute the service mode: Full-page halftone (COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE=5).

13.1.4 Image Adjustment Basic Procedure 4

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



F-13-4

13.2 Scanning System

13.2.1 After Replacing the CCD Unit

imagePRESS C1

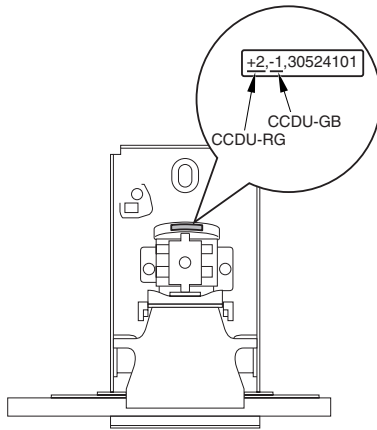
Enter values printed on the label attached to the CCD unit in the Service Mode following the below diagrams.

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > CCDU-RG

(Color shift (sub-scanning direction) correction value between RG, ascribable to the CCD)

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > CCDU-GB

(Color shift (sub-scanning direction) correction value between GB, ascribable to the CCD)



F-13-5

Replace the values printed on the service label inside the reader front cover with values on the CCD unit.

13.2.2 After Replacing the Copyboard Glass

imagePRESS C1

Enter values printed on the correction label that comes with the copyboard glass in the following Service Mode.

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > EC-B

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > EC-G

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > EC-R

(Color correction of the copyboard glass)

13.2.3 After Replacing the Reader Control PCB and Clearing the RAM

imagePRESS C1



- Put the latest update of P-PRINT into print before replacing the reader control PCB.
- In case the reader control RAM should be cleared without replacing the PCB, upload the R-CON backup data by using SST and download the data after clearing the RAM. In this fashion, the following procedure is not necessary.

1. Adjustment of the Reader Unit

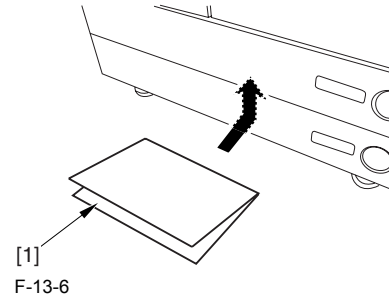
- 1) Download the updated system software (R-CON) by using SST.
- 2) In the Service Mode: select COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > R-CON, and then press Enter key. This will clear the RAM.
- 3) Turn of the main power and then put it back on.
- 4) Enter the values below in the Service Mode following the diagrams.
 - (1) Copyboard glass color correction data
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > EC-B, EC-G, EC-R
 - (2) Printed values on the service label (inside the reader front cover)
 - (a) Adjustment of image scanning starting position (X direction) (applicable in fixed readings)
COPY > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-X
 - (b) Adjustment of image scanning starting position (Y direction) (applicable in fixed reading)
COPY > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y
 - (c) Adjustment of feeder mode main scanning position
COPY > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y-DF
 - (d) Color shift (sub-scanning direction) correction value between RG and between GB, ascribable to the CCD.
COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > CCDU-RG/GB
 - (e) Factory default color shift (sub-scanning direction) correction value between RG and between GB, ascribable to the CCD.

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > FCCDU-RG/GB

(f) Target value of automatic tone correction

COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL > OFST-P-Y, M, C, K

After carrying on each adjustment described above, put the P-PRINT [1] in the service book holder and dispose the previous P-PRINT.



F-13-6

13.3 Image Formation System

13.3.1 After Replacing the Primary Charging Wire

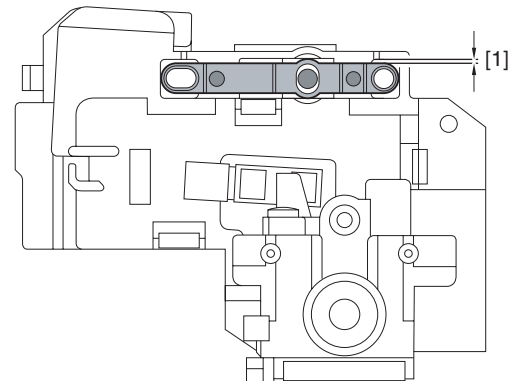
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

- 1) Execute the primary charging wire cleaning from service mode.
(primary charging wire cleaning: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-CLN)

13.3.2 After Replacing the Primary Charging Assembly

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

When replacing the primary charging wire, measure the grid height of the charging assembly before replacing to check to see that the value is the same.



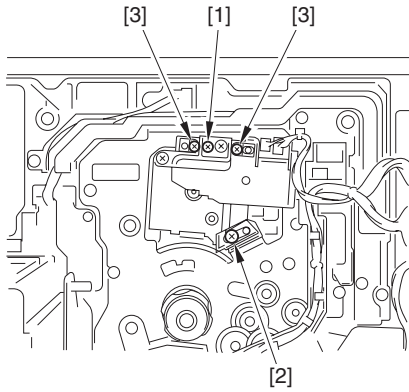
F-13-7

[1] Places to check (reference value: 1.0mm)

- In case the measurement value is different, adjust the primary charging assembly grid following the procedures below:
- 1) Loosen the screw [2] and release the stop.
 - 2) Loosen the 2 fixing screws [3] and then turn the adjusting screw [3] to adjust.

Reference:

- When moving the front side down, turn the adjusting screw clockwise.
- When moving the front side up, turn the adjusting screw counterclockwise.
- 1 turn of the adjusting screw changes the grid height by 0.35mm.



F-13-8

- 3) Execute the primary charging assembly cleaning from service mode.
(primary charging wire cleaning: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-CLN)
- 4) Select the service mode (execution of potential control: COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > DPC) and then press [OK].
- 5) Turn OFF/ON the main power.

13.3.3 Replacing the Potential Sensor

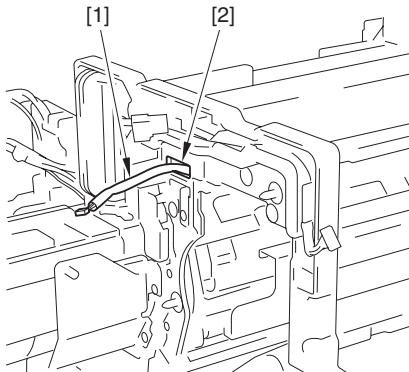
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

When replacing the potential sensor, go through the following procedure.



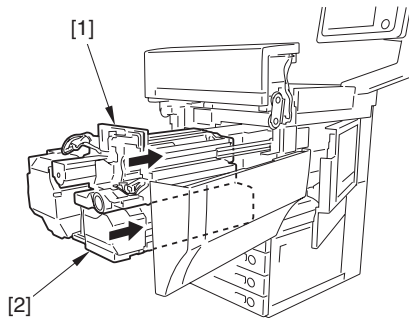
The potential sensor and the potential control PCB are adjusted in pairs. Replacement of them must be performed at the same time.

- 1) Pull out the potential sensor cable [1] from the processing unit hole [2].



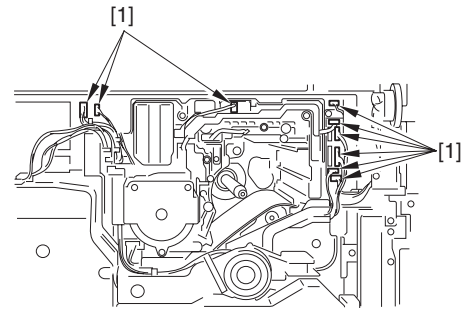
F-13-9

- 2) Return the processing unit [1] and the fixing/feeding unit [2].



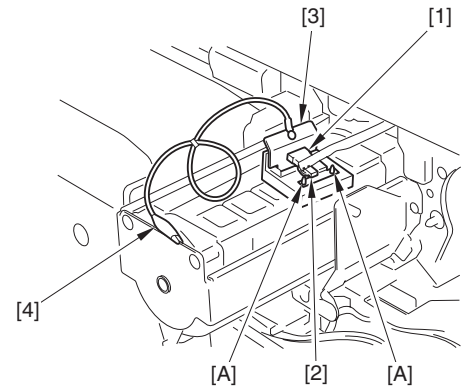
F-13-10

- 3) Connect the cable [1].



F-13-11

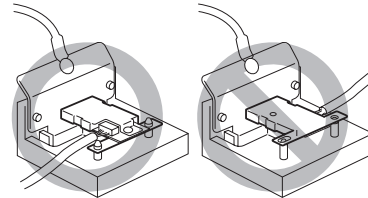
- 4) Connect the cable to the connector [2] of the potential sensor [1].
- 5) Attach the potential sensor [1] by reference to the boss [A] of the electrode for checking potential (FY9-xxxx) [3].
- 6) Connect the clip [4] for checking the potential sensor to the main body frame (GND).



F-13-12

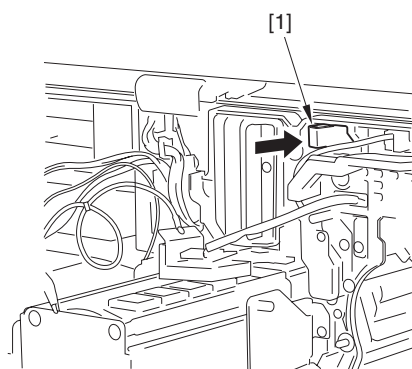


Check to see that potential sensor is attached in an appropriate direction to the electrode for checking the potential sensor.



F-13-13

- 7) After turning ON the main power, set the service mode COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > AINR-OFF as '1'.
- 8) Monitor the fixing upper roller temperature by the service mode COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > FIX-UC and go through the following operations depending on conditions:
 - In case the temperature indicated as 50 deg C or less, place hand on the shutter assembly [1] when the temperature reaches 145 deg C. Release hand from the shutter assembly when the drum rotation stops (approx. 20sec).
 - In case the temperature indicated as 50 deg C or more, place hand on the shutter assembly [1] when the temperature reaches 158 deg C. Release hand from the shutter assembly when the drum rotation stops (approx. 20 sec).



F-13-14

- 9) Execute the service mode COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC > OFST.
- 10) Return the value of the service mode COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > AINR-OFF as '0'.
- 11) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 12) Attach the potential sensor onto the main body.

13.3.4 After Replacing the Pre-transfer Charging Assembly

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

Execute the service mode (pre-transfer charging wire cleaning: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > WIRE-CLN).

13.3.5 After Replacing the Waste Toner Box

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

- 1) Attach the new waste toner box onto the main body.
- 2) Execute the service mode (waste toner counter clear: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > WST-TN-CLR) and set the waste toner counter value as '0'.

13.3.6 After Replacing the Secondary Transfer Roller Waste Toner Case

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Attach the new waste toner case or the empty waste toner case of which waste toner is disposed onto the main body.
- 2) Execute the service mode (waste toner counter clear: COPIER > COUNTER > MISC > 2TC-BOX) and set the waste toner counter value as '0'.

13.3.7 After Replacing the Photosensitive Drum

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Follow the procedure below to replace the photosensitive drum.

- 1) Turn on the main power switch.
- 2) Select the following items in the Service Mode and then hit OK.
- 3) Run the service mode for drum replacement mode enforcement execution (COPIER > FUNCTION > DCP > DRM-RSET).
- 4) Run automatic gradation correction (full correction).

13.3.8 Replacing the Waste Toner Sensor

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Execute the service mode (high-voltage offset adjustment: COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > HV-ADOF5).

Waste toner sensor offset adjustment service mode is not an independent service mode. Instead, waste toner sensor offset adjustment is performed by this adjustment (high-voltage offset adjustment). Therefore, when replacing the waste toner sensor, execute this adjustment service mode. If toner is left inside the waste toner bottle here, toner adjustment cannot be carried out properly, resulting in an error code in some cases (E0013-0006: waste toner sensor adjustment error). Be sure to execute this service mode after removing the waste toner bottle from the main body.

13.3.9 After Replacing the ATR Sensor

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Follow the procedure below to replace the ATR sensor.

- 1) Replace the color developing assembly (Y, M, C).
- 2) Turn on the main power switch.
- 3) Run automatic gradation correction (full correction).

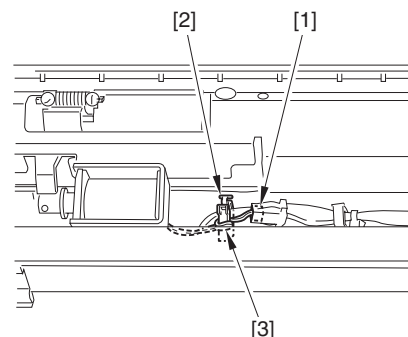


When Installing the ATR Sensor

* Be careful not to touch the developing cylinder, which can cause image fault.

Upon installation of the ATR sensor, make sure to move the developing cylinder away from the mounting location of the sensor by rotating the developing rotary clockwise.

* When plugging in the connector [1], wrap the harness [3] around the wire saddle [2] once.



F-13-15

13.3.10 After Replacing the Patch Image Reading Sensor

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Run the following items in the Service Mode after replacing the patch image scan sensor.

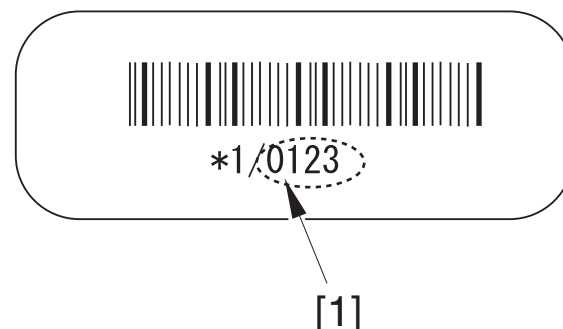
Service Mode (Patch Detection Sensor Default Correction) :

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > ALF-F <for patch image scan sensor (front)>

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > ALF-C <for patch image scan sensor (center)>

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > ALF-R <for patch image scan sensor (rear)>

This sensor unit comes with the following correction value labels (3 in total). The labels contain correction values for each sensor (front, center and rear). Enter the label values (4 digits) [1] using the above service mode. After entering the values, put the labels onto the new sensor unit.



F-13-16

13.4 Fixing System

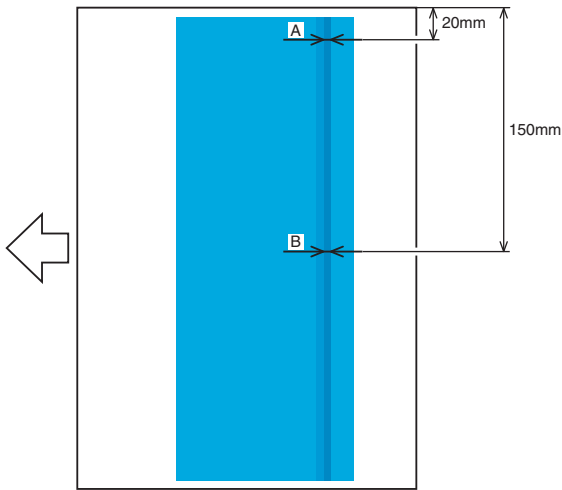
13.4.1 Checking the Nip Width

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The nip width cannot be adjusted at the field.

When replacing the fixing belt/fixing roller, or a fixing failure occurs, check that there is no problem with the output result of the nip width (COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING > NIP-CHK).

1. Set a duplexing coated paper (equivalent to 120 to 128 g) in the manual feed tray.
2. Execute the foregoing service mode.
3. Measure the nip width of the output paper (cyan solid image).
4. Check that the nip width(A,B) is within the range of reference values (4.5 mm +/-1).



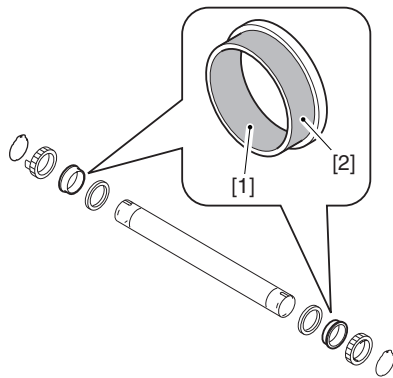
F-13-17

13.4.2 After Replacing the Fixing Roller

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

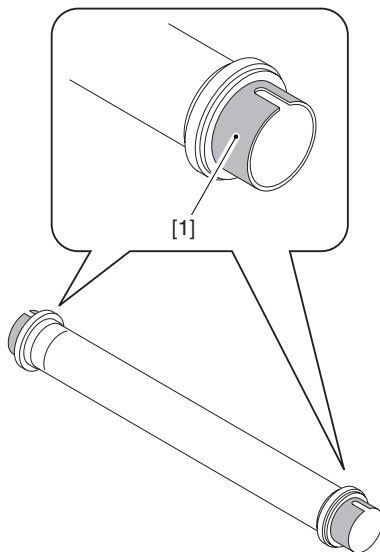
- Apply approx. 20 mg of grease (Molykote HP-300; CK-8012) to the bushing inner periphery [1] and external periphery [2] so as to make white coating on all the area.

Purpose: Prevent noise (rasping sound).



F-13-18

- The grease is attached on the end of the fixing roller [1] when fixing the greased bushing with the fixing roller, so wipe it off.



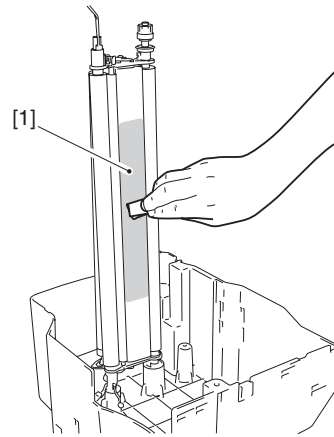
F-13-19

13.4.3 After Replacing the Fixing Belt

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Before installing a new belt, apply silicon oil (S-20; FY9-6011) to the marked area of the pressure pad cover (within the radius of about 200 mm from the center).

Apply silicon oil to the pressure pad cover, after soaking lint-free paper into the oil to the extent that the oil does not drip from the paper.



F-13-20

[1] pressure pad cover

13.4.4 After Replacing the Fixing Cleaning Belt

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Set the value clear '0' for the following service counters.

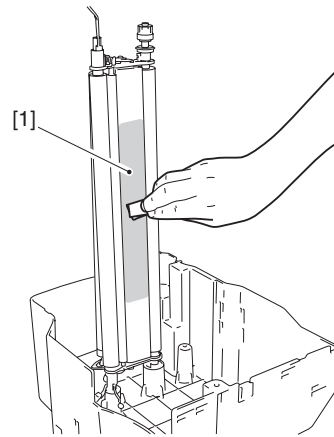
- COPIER> COUNTER> DRBL-1> FX-WEB

13.4.5 After Replacing the Fixing Belt / Pressure Pad Cover

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Before installing a belt, apply silicon oil (S-20; FY9-6011) to the marked area of the pressure pad cover (within the radius of about 200 mm from the center).

Apply silicon oil to the pressure pad cover, after soaking lint-free paper into the oil to the extent that the oil does not drip from the paper.



F-13-21

[1] pressure pad cover

13.4.6 When replacing pressure belt

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1) Apply silicone oil to the following areas:

- Surface of oil coating roller: 0.1ml
- Surface of inlet roller: 0.1ml

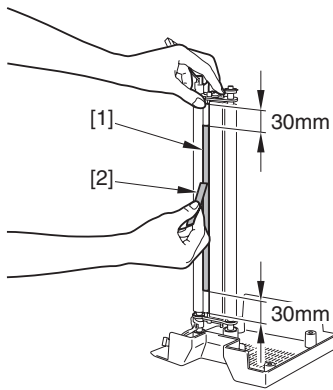
[Tools to be used]

- Silicone oil (Parts Number: FY9-6011)
- Dropper

1-1) Make a paper slip to be used for applying the oil. Cut A4 paper into 1/8 (approx.), and then fold the piece into three.

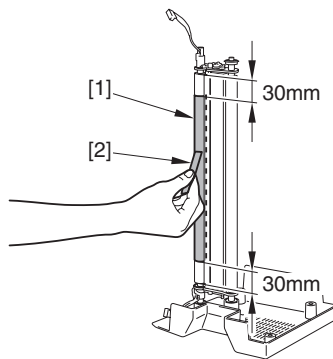
1-2) While turning the oil coating roller, apply 0.1ml of silicone oil at the center [1] (30mm inside from the both ends) on the surface of the roller

and spread it out evenly using the paper slip [2].



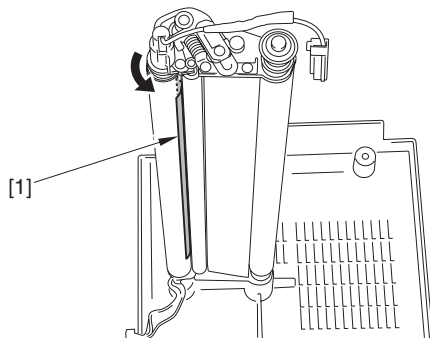
F-13-22

- 1-3) Apply 0.1ml of silicone oil at the center (30mm inside from the both ends) on the surface of the inlet roller and spread it out evenly using a paper slip. Be sure to apply the oil to cover approx. 1/4-turn of the roller.



F-13-23

- 1-4) Turn the inlet roller so that the oil-coated surface is hiding inside the unit. This is to prevent the coated oil to be scraped by the belt when attaching the pressure belt.



F-13-24

- 2) Clean the fixing roller and the pressure belt (use alcohol solution + lint-free paper)
3) Check the nip width (COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING > FX1-NIP1)

13.4.7 When Replacing Pressure Belt Unit-Related Durable Parts

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Here shows the service task when replacing the following parts at the same time.

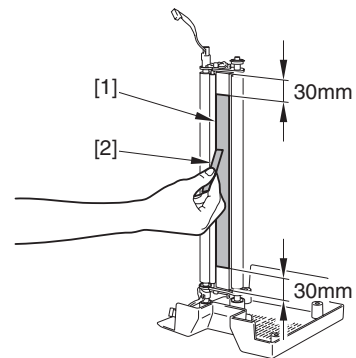
- Pressure belt
- Pressure pad
- Pad cover
- Oil coating roller

- 1) Apply silicone oil at the areas described below:
- Center on the surface of pressure pad: 0.4ml
 - Surface of oil coating roller: 0.2ml
 - Surface of inlet roller: 0.1ml
 - Pad cover surface between separation roller and pad cover: 0.1ml

[Tools to be used]

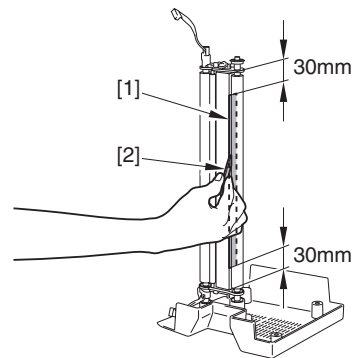
- Silicone oil (Parts Number: FY9-6011)
- Dropper

- 1-1) Make a paper slip to be used for applying the oil. Cut A4 paper into 1/8 (approx.) and fold the piece into three.
1-2) Apply 0.4ml of silicone oil at the center [1] (30mm inside from the both ends) on the surface of pad cover and spread it out evenly using the paper slip [2].



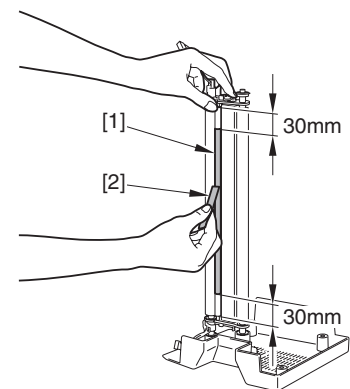
F-13-25

- 1-3) Apply 0.1ml of silicone oil at the center (30mm inside from the both ends) on the surface of pad cover (that is facing the separation roller) and spread it out evenly using the paper slip [2].



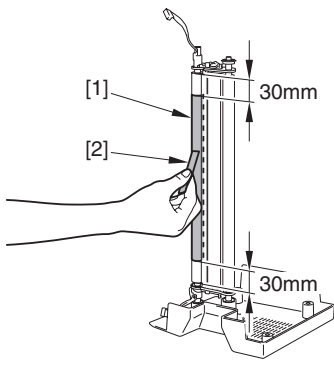
F-13-26

- 1-4) While turning the oil coating roller, apply 0.2ml of silicone oil at the center [1] (30mm inside from the both ends) on the surface of the roller and spread it out evenly using the paper slip [2].



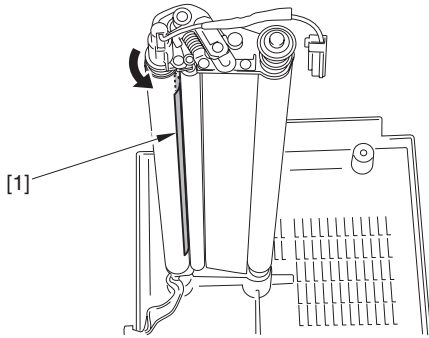
F-13-27

- 1-5) Apply 0.1ml of silicone oil at the center (30mm inside from the both ends) on the surface of the inlet roller and spread it out evenly using the paper slip. Be sure so apply the oil to cover approx. 1/4-turn of the roller.



F-13-28

- 1-6) Turn the inlet roller so that the oil-coated surface is hiding inside the unit. This is to prevent the coated oil to be scraped by the belt when the pressure belt is attached.



F-13-29

- 2) Clean the fixing roller and the pressure belt (use alcohol solution + lint-free paper)
- 3) Check the nip width (COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING > FX1-NIP1)

13.5 Electrical Components

13.5.1 Replacing the DC controller PCB

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Upload the 'SramDCON.bin' from 'upload the backup data' using SST and save it.

MEMO:

For detailed uploading procedures, see the chapter of upgrading in the manual.

- 2) After replacing the DC controller PCB, download the latest system software using SST.
- 3) Execute RAM clear of the DC controller PCB by the service mode below. COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > DC-CON
- 4) Select the uploaded file from 'download the backup data' and download it using SST.

MEMO:

For detailed downloading procedures, see the chapter of upgrading in the manual.

- 5) Select the uploaded file from 'download the backup data' and download it using SST.
- 6) Remove the waste toner in the waste toner receptacle (waste toner bottle, secondary transfer outside roller waste toner receptacle), and then clear the 2 types of waste toner counter (see Note 1).
- 7) Execute the service mode (high-voltage offset adjustment: COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > HV-ADOF5) (see Note 2).
- 8) Execute the service mode (compulsory initial rotation: COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P-INTR-FX).
- 9) Execute the full correction of the automatic gradation correction (image characteristics correction control).



Note 1:

You cannot re-enter the waste toner counter (waste toner bottle, secondary transfer roller waste toner receptacle) in the service mode. Therefore, in order to replace the DC controller PCB or clear the RAM, clear the 2 types of the waste toner counter using the following service modes:

- Waste toner bottle counter clear: COPIER > COUNTER > MISC > WST-TNR

- Secondary transfer outside roller waste toner receptacle counter clear: COPIER > COUNTER > MISC > 2TC-BOX

Note2:

On execution of this service mode, the waste toner sensor offset adjustment is executed.

If toner is left inside the waste toner bottle here, toner adjustment cannot be carried out properly, resulting in an error code in some cases (E0013-0006: waste toner sensor adjustment error).

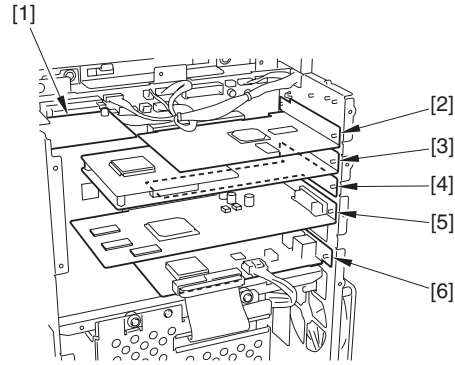
Be sure to execute this service mode after removing the waste toner bottle from the main body.

13.5.2 After Replacing the Main Control PCB (main)

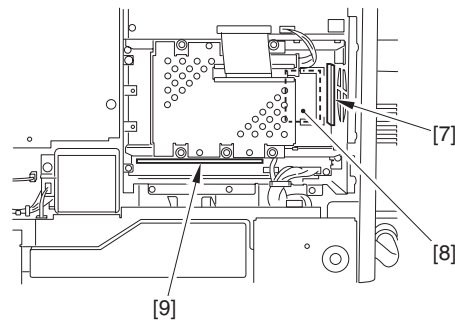
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

After replacing the main control PCB (main), restore the PCBs removed prior to the replacement.

- TFT converter PCB[1]
- Main control PCB (sub-RA)[2]
- Main control PCB (sub-PF-A, sub-DE-A)[3]
- Relay PCB (GU-SHORT)[4]
- Main control PCB (sun-S-B, sub-ZJ-A)[5]
- Main control PCB (sub-LANBAR-A)[6]
- SRAM PCB[7]
- BOOTROM PCB[8]
- Memory PCB[9]



F-13-30



F-13-31

13.5.3 After Replacing the SRAM PCB

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



- (1) Before replacing the SRAM PCB, inform the customer that replacing this PCB will erase the entire image data in the BOX. Continue on the procedure if the customer accepts it.
- (2) Replaced SRAM PCB must be brand-new. Placing a used SRAM PCB in other equipments will cause malfunction.

- 1) Replace the SRAM PCB with a new PCB, and turn on the main power. At this point, the system will be automatically initialized.
- 2) On start-up, a message will be displayed in the panel: "Turn off the power on the right side of the equipment." Following this instruction, turn off the power and then restart the equipment.
- 3) Select the items shown in the diagram in the Service Mode, and then press Enter. This will clear the RAM. COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > MN-CON

13.5.4 After Replacing the HDD

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. If NSA (Net Spot Account) is not used:

- 1) Formatting the HDD
 - Start the equipment to the SafeMode (turn on the main power pressing 2+8 key).
 - Using the HD formatting function of the SST, format all the partitions. (See the chapter on version upgrade for more details.)
- 2) Downloading the system software
 - Use SST to download system / Language / RUI. It can take about 5 minutes to restart after downloading.

2. If NSA (Net Spot Account) along with card reader is used:

A card ID for NSA is downloaded on the HDD. When replacing the HDD, card data must be downloaded from the NSA again so that counting management is possible in the NSA.

[Just as is in the case where NSA is not used (1.), after formatting the HDD and downloading the system software different procedure must be followed.

- 1) HDD Formatting
 - Start the equipment to the SafeMode (turn on the main power pressing 2+8 key).
 - Using the HD formatting function of the SST, format all the partitions. (See the chapter on version upgrade for more details.)
- 2) Downloading the System Software
 - Use SST to download system / Language / RUI. It can take about 5 minutes to restart after downloading.
- 3) In the Service Mode
 - Select: COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD.
- 4) Entering the Card Number
 - Enter the number of the first card of the cards used in divisional management, and then press Enter. (E.g. If using cards numbered 1 to 1000 for divisional management, enter the first card's number, "1".)
- 5) Turn off the main power and then turn it back on.
- 6) Confirming the Count Management
 - In the User Mode, select "System Management Setup > Group ID Management > Count Management" and confirm ID's numbered from ID00000001 to ID00001000 have been created.
- 7) Setting Up Addresses
 - In the User Mode, select "System Management Setup > Net Work Settings > TCP IP Setup > IP address" and set up IP address, gateway address, and subnet mask.
- 8) Entering ID's
 - In "System Administrator Information Setup" in the User Mode, register "System Management Group ID" and "System Management ID."
- 9) Turn off the main power and then turn it back on.



If the "System Management Group ID" and "System Management ID" is not registered, "Card Registration to the Device" cannot be done when setting Net Spot Account.

- 10) Downloading Card ID
 - While putting the equipment on stand-by, download card ID from the NSA to be used for the repaired equipment.
- 11) Confirmation of Count Management
 - In the User System select: System Management Setup > Group ID Setup > Count Management." Confirm that only ID's that have been downloaded are displayed.
- 12) Confirmation of Performance
 - Try photocopying a document using the User Card registered at the NSA, and confirm the card is counted in the counting device of the NSA.

13.5.5 Replacing the HV2, HV4, HV6-1 and HV6-2

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Execute the service mode (high-voltage offset adjustment: COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > HV-ADOF5).

On execution of this service mode, the waste toner sensor offset adjustment is executed. If toner is left inside the waste toner bottle here, toner adjustment cannot be carried out properly, resulting in an error code in some cases (E0013-0006: waste toner sensor adjustment error). Be sure to execute this service mode after removing the waste toner bottle from the main body.

13.5.6 Inputting the Rank Value at Replacing the Paper Thickness Sensor

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Input the values corresponding to the characters on the label attached to the new paper thickness sensor in the following service mode items.

- COPIER > ADJUST > MISC > DF-S-NK (Inputting the rank values for the paper thickness sensor.)

Character on the label	DF-S-NK input value
A	1
B	2
C	3
D	4
E	5

13.6 Pickup/Feeding System

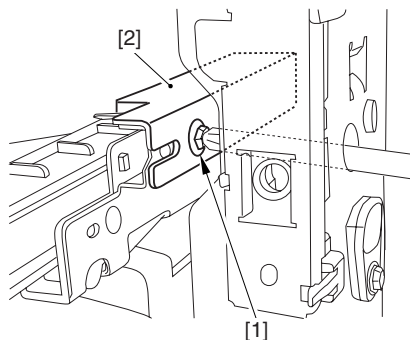
13.6.1 Vertical Registration Adjustment at Cassette Pickup

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Copy from each cassette, check if the left/right image margin are within the standards.

When the value is not within the standard value, adjust it by the following procedures.

- 1) Press the set release button, pull the cassette forward.
- 2) Open the right upper cover and right lower cover.
- 3) Insert the driver from the hole of the right front crossmember, loosen the screw [1] and adjust the location of the adjusting plate [2].



F-13-32

Move the adjusting plate to the rear side: The left margin decreases.
Move the adjusting plate to the front side: The left margin increases.

- 4) Hold the screw.
- 5) Close the right cover (upper) and right cover (lower).
- 6) Mount the cassette.

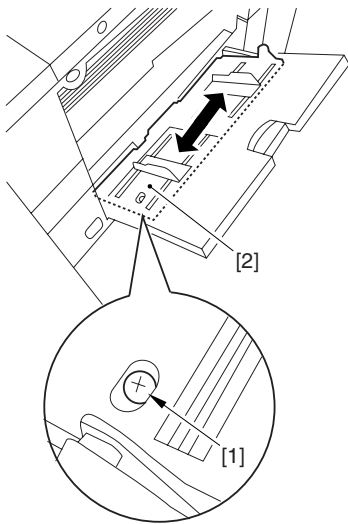
13.6.2 Vertical Registration Adjustment at Manual Pickup

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Copy from the manual tray, check if the left/right image margin are within the standards.

When the value is not within the standard value, adjust it by the following procedures.

- 1) Loosen one screw [1], move the fixing location of the slide guide [2] to adjust the vertical registration.



F-13-33

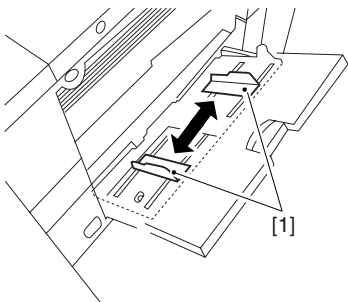
- 2) Check if the left/right margin of the image copied from the manual tray are within the standards.
- 3) Tighten the screw.

13.6.3 Registering Paper Width Standard Value at Manual Feeder Tray

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Execute registering paper width standard value for each paper size (A4R/A4/A6R).

- 1) Slide the manual feeder tray width guide [1] to fit for A4R.



F-13-34

- 2) Select the following service mode items:
 - COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > MF-A4R
- 3) Press OK key.
- 4) Write down the standard value for A4R (that was indicated on the control panel) on the service label.
- 5) Also, make the following selections to register the paper width standard value for A4 and A6R:
 - COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > MF-A4
 - COPIER > FUNCTION > CST > MF-A6R

Chapter 14 Correcting Faulty Images

Contents

14.1 Making Initial Checks	14-1
14.1.1 Installation Environment	14-1
14.1.2 Checking of Paper	14-1
14.1.3 Checking of Paper Setting	14-1
14.1.4 Checking of the Durable Parts	14-1
14.1.5 Checking of the Periodically Replaced Parts	14-1
14.1.6 Checking of Each Unit/Checking Item of Each Function System	14-1
14.1.7 Others	14-2
14.2 Test Print	14-2
14.2.1 Overview	14-2
14.2.2 Test Print TYPE	14-2
14.2.3 Selecting the Test Print TYPE	14-3
14.2.4 16-Gradation (TYPE=4)	14-3
14.2.5 Full Area Half Tone (TYPE=5)	14-3
14.2.6 Grid (TYPE=6)	14-4
14.2.7 MCYBk Horizontal Line (TYPE=10)	14-4
14.2.8 64-Gradation (TYPE=12)	14-5
14.2.9 Full Color 16-gradation (TYPE=14)	14-5
14.3 Troubleshooting	14-6
14.3.1 Image Faults	14-6
14.3.1.1 Light Image / Weak Density	14-6
14.3.1.1.1 When printing on CLC extra heavy paper (209g), light image occurs at solid black areas of output image	14-6
14.3.1.1.2 Uneven density/light image: Developing high-voltage cable has poor contact	14-6
14.3.1.2 Uneven Density	14-7
14.3.1.2.1 When copying thin gray lines in Text/Printed Img. mode, moire-like image appears	14-7
14.3.1.2.2 Uneven density (uneven gross) occurs when copying/printing high-density image with thick coated paper in use	14-7
14.3.1.2.3 Uneven density appears at 4mm intervals in main scanning direction	14-7
14.3.1.3 Image Displacement/Out of Focus	14-8
14.3.1.3.1 Smearing image/hue variation (variation of drum potential) occurs in humidity environment	14-8
14.3.1.3.2 Yellow displaced at trail edge of image upon installation: Screw on ITB connecting shaft is loosened	14-8
14.3.1.3.3 When duplex printing, position of image on both 1st and 2nd sides is displaced in sub scanning direction	14-9
14.3.1.4 Partially Blank/Streaked	14-9
14.3.1.4.1 Void occurs in main scanning direction on halftone area/oval-shaped patterns/E060-0000: J423 connector (11-pin CT connector) on main body side of pre-conditioning unit has poor contact	14-9
14.3.1.4.2 Void occurs in sub scanning direction upon installation: ATR shutter solenoid cable comes into contact with developing cylinder. 14-10	
14.3.1.4.3 Measure against scratches made on Fixing Roller in circumferential direction: Lines appear in sub scanning direction	14-11
14.3.1.4.4 Lines (smearing image): Mylar comes off post duct in P-kit assembly	14-12
14.3.1.4.5 In low temperature environment, void occurs at border between halftone area and solid image area	14-13
14.3.1.4.6 Fingerprint	14-13
14.3.1.5 Smudged/Streaked	14-14
14.3.1.5.1 Yellow vertical stripes on copy images/blank image on PG test chart printouts: PF-A board is faulty	14-14
14.3.1.5.2 Soiled back: Transfer roller B3 in Secondary transfer mount assembly is soiled	14-14
14.3.1.5.3 Soiled back (patch mark) appears: HV8 PCB is faulty	14-14
14.3.1.5.4 Soiled back: A failure in cleaning the secondary transfer roller is caused	14-15
14.3.1.5.5 Dark spots appear on output image	14-15
14.3.1.5.6 The poor picture by the attachment mistake of seal support plate (front, rear)	14-15
14.3.1.6 Ghost / Memory	14-17
14.3.1.6.1 Fixing Gloss Ghost	14-17
14.3.1.7 Faulty Color Reproduction	14-18
14.3.1.7.1 At scanner reading upon installation, faulty image occurs: S-B Board PCB has poor contact	14-18
14.3.1.7.2 Hue variation occurs: OFST value (target value) for PASCAL is changed	14-19
14.3.1.7.3 Faulty gradation occurs with machine equipped with DADF-R1 after auto gradation adjustment (full adjustment)	14-19

14.3.1.7.4 Hue variation occurs in continuous copy job performed right after replacement of photosensitive drum.....	14-20
14.3.1.7.5 Faulty hue (yellowish) image is output when copying pinkish original.....	14-20
14.3.1.7.6 Faulty hue image is output after executing quick auto gradation adjustment (printer PASCAL).....	14-20
14.3.1.7.7 Gradation changes after shading correction.....	14-21
14.3.2 Faulty Feeding.....	14-21
14.3.2.1 Skew Feed.....	14-21
14.3.2.1.1 Misalignment of output paper/jam occurs after replacement of swing guide assembly (Finisher-AA1/AA2).....	14-21
14.3.2.1.2 Paper misalignment occurs when stapling: Return Guide Sheet of Finisher-AA1/AA2 has ridden on Operation Tray Bin.....	14-22
14.3.2.1.3 In booklet printing, paper misalignment/unstapled sheet problem occurs with 2nd page and later: Stack delivery rollers of Finisher-AA1/AA2 lack pressure.....	14-23
14.3.2.1.4 Procedure to Improve the Accuracy of Skew Adjustment.....	14-23
14.3.2.2 Wrinkle.....	14-25
14.3.2.2.1 Wrinkles appear on output paper: Pad cover wears out.....	14-25
14.3.2.3 Ripple/Curl.....	14-25
14.3.2.3.1 Irregular size heavy paper curls up.....	14-25
14.3.3 Malfunction.....	14-26
14.3.3.1 No Power.....	14-26
14.3.3.1.1 No power/E805-0014: Cable of DC Controller PCB causes wire-pinching.....	14-26
14.3.3.2 Control Panel-Related.....	14-26
14.3.3.2.1 When standard language is changed from Japanese to English, button names under Scan Settings are gabled in Send screen.....	14-26
14.3.3.2.2 On initial copy screen, "Black" cannot be set as standard setting for Auto-Color Select mode: Forced Secure Watermark Mode is set to ON.....	14-27
14.3.3.3 Malfunction/Faulty Detection.....	14-27
14.3.3.3.1 Message "Adjusting gradation. Please wait a moment." persists on machine with DC Controller software Ver. 7.08.....	14-27
14.3.3.3.2 Machine with image PRESS Service-T1 locks when progress bar runs one-third of whole length after power-on upon installation 14-27	27
14.3.3.3.3 When Saddle Finisher-AA2 saddle-stitches 12x18 size papers, paper folding position does not align with paper stapling position . 14-28	28
14.3.3.3.4 During copying, paper jam suddenly occurs and E748-4901 follows power-off/on operation.....	14-28
14.3.3.3.5 Waste Toner Full Error (E013-0001) Displayed After Toner is Emptied from the Waste Toner Bottle.....	14-28
14.3.3.3.6 ATR Error (E020-XXXX) Display due to Dirt on ATR Sensor Window.....	14-29
14.3.3.3.7 Power Supply Voltage Connector Error (E009-0000) Indication at Replacement of the DC Controller PCB.....	14-29
14.3.3.3.8 ATR Error (E020-XXXX) Display at the time of Drum Replacement.....	14-30
14.3.3.4 User Warning Message.....	14-30
14.3.3.4.1 When connecting RUI (using same PC and IP address) upon replacement of machine, message "(!) A error has occurred" is displayed in IE browser.....	14-30
14.3.3.4.2 Paper lifting place of Cassette 2 does not ascend/message "Load paper." does not disappear: Cassette 2 lifter motor (M23) malfunctions 14-30	30
14.3.3.4.3 Message "Waste toner container full. Call service representative." does not disappear: Part counter is not cleared.....	14-31
14.3.3.5 Other Defect.....	14-31
14.3.3.5.1 Paper skew/misalignment/failure to staple 1st copy set occurs at delivery unit of Finisher-AA1/AA2.....	14-31
14.3.3.5.2 Hard disc (HDD) cannot be formatted: Version of selected Format file is not suitable for HDD.....	14-31
14.3.3.6 Part Breakage/Detachment.....	14-32
14.3.3.6.1 Hopper assembly of copyboard cover-type machine does not move smoothly: 40T gear is broken.....	14-32
14.3.4 Network.....	14-32
14.3.4.1 Ping Failure.....	14-32
14.3.4.1.1 Ping Failure: When executing Ping command, message "No response from the host" appears due to WINS configuration error, 14-32	32
14.3.4.1.2 Ping Failure: When executing Ping command, message "No response from the host" appears due to Ethernet driver configuration error 14-33	33
14.3.5 Jam (Main Unit).....	14-33
14.3.5.1 010A Jam Code occurs when using B5-size paper: Paper feed roller of right door assembly lacks pressure.....	14-33
14.3.5.2 011B Jam Code occurs at delivery assembly only when using small size paper (smaller than A4/LTR): Backside Driver PCB is faulty. 14-34	34
14.3.5.3 021B Jam Code/abnormal noise/open lever is hard to shift: Longer screw is used to fix decurler.....	14-34
14.3.6 Jam (FIN).....	14-35
14.3.6.1 179F Jam Code occurs when running saddle jobs with double-face glossy (coated) heavy paper and Saddle Finisher-AA2 in use.....	14-35
14.3.6.2 179F Jam Code: J9 connector on Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB of Saddle Finisher-AA2 has poor contact.....	14-35
14.3.7 Error Code.....	14-35
14.3.7.1 E006-0002 occurs during standby: Fixing drawer connector has poor contact.....	14-35
14.3.7.2 E007/010E Jam Code/abnormal noise: Fixing upper unit mount is attached improperly.....	14-35
14.3.7.3 E014-0003: Load is applied to fixing roller drive assembly.....	14-36
14.3.7.4 E014-0003 : Due to ball bearing breakage in fixing belt drive assembly.....	14-37

14.3.7.5 E020-01A9: ATR shutter malfunctions	14-38
14.3.7.6 E021-0001 appears on machine without Power Supply Unit-S1: Connector or jumper connector is discontinued	14-38
14.3.7.7 E025-0102: J301D connector of hopper motor has poor contact	14-39
14.3.7.8 E025-0004 occurs when replacing drum.....	14-39
14.3.7.9 E025-0102: Connector of Yellow toner supply screw HP sensor (PS68) has poor contact	14-40
14.3.7.10 E061-0001/E061-0015/E061-0009: Potential Sensor PCB is faulty	14-40
14.3.7.11 E061: How to perform '0' level adjustment after replacing potential sensor PCB.....	14-40
14.3.7.12 E077-0001/E077-0101/E077-1001: Gear in Sec. Transfer Cam Drive Assembly is broken	14-40
14.3.7.13 E198-1000: J3502 connector on Color Sensor Driver PCB has poor contact	14-41
14.3.7.14 E202-0001/E202-0002/ Document exposure lamp's failure to light up occurs when mounting DADF-R1	14-41
14.3.7.15 E225-0001 occurs with machine in which R-CON software Ver. 1.27 is installed.....	14-41
14.3.7.16 E604-1536 is displayed when connecting Secure Watermark-A1: This machine does not have sufficient image memory	14-41
14.3.7.17 E677-0080: Communication error occurs between this machine and imagePRESS Server- Q1	14-41
14.3.7.18 E733-0001 sometimes occurs during printing	14-42
14.3.7.19 E747-3901 is indicated depending on timing of copy operation: SDRAM has poor contact.....	14-42
14.3.7.20 E747-0219 occurs in a certain mode (i.e., when selecting Image Repeat > Area Designation (or Flaming) > Copy Ratio)	14-42
14.3.7.21 E748-4311 is indicated after installing LIPS LX Printer & Scanner Kit-P1: RB-A board is mounted incorrectly (Japanese field)	14-42
14.3.7.22 E000/E004: Drawer connector pin of Fixing Heater Cable Unit moves back (JP Model).....	14-43
14.3.7.23 E820-0003 is indicated: Primary corona assembly is mounted incorrectly	14-45
14.3.7.24 E842-0009 occurs at last rotation performed during a continuous black-and-white job	14-45
14.3.8 Specifications-Related FAQ	14-46
14.3.8.1 FAQ on Main Unit Specifications.....	14-46
14.3.8.1.1 Auto paper select function does not work after setting thin paper as type of paper for cassette	14-46
14.3.8.1.2 Target fixing control temperature for energy saver mode and low power mode.....	14-46
14.3.8.1.3 Face-up delivery is not possible when printing.....	14-46
14.3.8.1.4 For machine with system software Ver. 22.04, toner volume setting cannot be switched in service mode.....	14-46
14.3.8.1.5 How to check value of sensor (PS63) on the waste toner box	14-47
14.3.8.2 FAQ on LIPS Specifications	14-47
14.3.8.2.1 How to transfer License Option (LMS)	14-47
14.4 Outline of Electrical Components	14-47
14.4.1 Clutch/Solenoid.....	14-47
14.4.1.1 List of clutch / solenoid.....	14-47
14.4.1.2 List of clutch / solenoid.....	14-48
14.4.1.3 List of Clutch / Solenoid	14-48
14.4.2 Motor.....	14-49
14.4.2.1 List of motor	14-49
14.4.2.2 List of motor	14-53
14.4.2.3 List of Motor	14-54
14.4.3 Fan.....	14-57
14.4.3.1 List of fan	14-57
14.4.3.2 List of Fan	14-60
14.4.4 Sensor	14-62
14.4.4.1 List of sensor	14-62
14.4.4.2 List of sensor	14-68
14.4.4.3 List of Sensor	14-69
14.4.5 Switch	14-74
14.4.5.1 List of switch.....	14-74
14.4.5.2 List of switch.....	14-76
14.4.5.3 List of Switch	14-76
14.4.6 Lamps, Heaters, and Others	14-78
14.4.6.1 List of lamp / heater/ others	14-78
14.4.6.2 List of lamp / heater/ others	14-80
14.4.6.3 List of Lamp / Heater/ Others	14-81
14.4.7 PCBs	14-82
14.4.7.1 List of PCB.....	14-82
14.4.7.2 List of PCB.....	14-85
14.4.7.3 List of PCB.....	14-86
14.4.8 Connectors	14-88
14.4.8.1 List of connector	14-88
14.4.8.2 List of Connector.....	14-107

14.1 Making Initial Checks

14.1.1 Installation Environment

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

- Be sure to check that the value of power supply voltage is maintained $\pm 10\%$ of the specified voltage (do not disconnect the plug even during the nighttime).
- Be sure to avoid areas that are: high temperature/humidity (around water tap, water heater, and humidifying device), cool temperature, near the fire, or dusty.
- Be sure to avoid areas subject to evaporation of ammonia gas.
- Be sure to avoid areas subject to exposure to direct sunlight. Instruct to attach curtains if there is no choice.
- Be sure to check the machine is installed in a place subject to sufficient ventilation, and also the machine can maintain its level.
- Be sure to check that the machine's power plug is connected to the outlet.

14.1.2 Checking of Paper

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- Check if Canon-recommended paper is used.
- Check if the paper is moistened. Try to make prints by setting paper taken out from a new package.

14.1.3 Checking of Paper Setting

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- Check if the specified volume of paper is set properly in the cassette and the manual feeder tray.
- In case that the transparency is used, check if the transparency is set with the correct orientation in manual feeder tray.

14.1.4 Checking of the Durable Parts

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Check the list of expected life of durable parts, and replace parts that reach the stated life.

14.1.5 Checking of the Periodically Replaced Parts

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

According to the list for periodically service/the table of periodically replaced parts, replace parts that reach the stated life counts.

14.1.6 Checking of Each Unit/Checking Item of Each Function System

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Reader

- Check if there is no scar, soil or foreign particle in the scanning system (mirror/ white plate/ copyboard glass/ reflector).
- Check if the mirror mount moves smoothly/there is no soil on the rail.
- Check if there is no flickering of scanning lamp.
- Check if the scanning system wire is set properly.
- Check if there is no condensation in the scanning system.

2. Process

- Check if there is toner in the toner container.
- Check if the drum unit is reliably attached.
- Check if there is no scar or soil on the photosensitive drum.
- Check if the window of the patch image read sensor is not soiled.

3. Transfer

- Check if there is no foreign particle on the secondary transfer unit.
- Check if there is no wear, scar, soil and deformation on the ITB/secondary transfer roller.
- Check if there is no break, flip, and deformation of the blade or spray of toner of the ITB cleaning unit.

4. Fixing

- Check if there is no wear, scar, soil and deformation of the fixing belt/pressure roller.
- Check if the fixing heater (main/sub) activates after turning on the power.
- Check if the fixing thermistor is not open circuit.
- Check if the thermal switch is conductive.

5. Paper Feeding

- Check if no foreign particle (such as scrap of paper) is remained.
- Check if there is no paper lint accumulating on the pickup/feed/separation roller. Also if there is no wear, scar, soil or deformation of the pickup/feed/separation roller.
- Check if there is no wear, scar, soil and deformation of pre-registration roller/registration roller (upper/lower)/ paper path roller.
- Check if there is no wear, scar, soil or deformation of the feeder guide.
- Check if there is any fault of fold-down of leading edge/curl/ruffling/moisture absorption of paper.
- Check if the performance improves when using Canon-recommended paper/transparency.

6. Machine

- Check if the load of the drive system is not heavy.
- Check if there is no wear or chip of the gear.

7. Cassette

- Check if: the cassette is attached properly; the paper size is set correctly; the same symptom does not occur when replacing the cassette that performs normal operation.
- Check if: the move of the cassette middle plate is smooth; there is no deformation.
- Check if the side guide plate/rear guide plate of the cassette is attached properly.
- Check if the switch of the cassette heater is ON (in case the cassette heater is attached).

8. Service Mode

- Check if each of the CCD's adjustment value is the same as those indicated on the service label.
(COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > ALL ITEMS)
- Check if the registration adjustment is performed.
(COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REGIST / ADJ-REFE)
- Are the detected printer temperature / humidity appropriate?
(COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > TEMP / ABS-HUM)
- Is the adjustment of the image reading position performed correctly?
(COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-X / ADJ-Y / ADJ-Z)
- Are the values of the paper standard value data normal?
(COPIER > FUNCTION > CST-ADJ)
- Are the ADJUSTMENT / OPTION values the same as the ones on the service label?
- Has error clear been performed?
(COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR)

9. General

- Are both of the 2 power plugs plugged in completely?
- Is the specified AC voltage supplied to the power outlet?
- Are the sensors / clutches / motors / solenoids working properly? Is there any contact failure of connectors?
(Confirm power supplies and signal routes on the synthetic circuit diagram)
- Is the electric leakage breaker / circuit breaker working?
- Are there any pinched wires / loose screws?
- Are all external covers attached?
- Are the main power switch / control panel power switch ON?
- Are the power cable / signal cable wirings to each accessory correct?
- Is the cover switch operation normal?
- Is there any fuse blowout on the PCB assemblies?
- Are there any incorrect or misunderstood operations on the user side?

14.1.7 Others

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

It can cause various problems to suddenly move a machine that has been standing in a location such as a freezing warehouse to a warm room as it leads to internal dew formation.

- (1) E110 caused by dew formation in the BD sensor
- (2) Low image density in the vertical scanning direction caused by dew formation in the LDE lens
- (3) Low image density caused by dew formation in the reader mirrors and copyboard glass
- (4) Paper feed malfunction caused by dew formation in the pickup and feed guides.

Use the following Service Mode item when either symptom of (1) - (3) occurs.

Service Mode:

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > DRY-RT
Performance of dew formation resolution at installation

When the symptom (4) occurs wipe the pickup and feed units with a dry cloth.

Toner containers and drum units stored in a cold room unopened are also vulnerable to dew formation when they are taken to a warmer room and opened up soon after. In order to prevent dew formation, instruct users to open the toner containers and drum units after leaving them for a sufficient period of time (1 to 2 hours) to let them expose to the room temperature.

Use the following Service Mode item if the environmental condition after installation requires.

Service Mode:

COPIER > OPTION > BODY > SLPOFF01 to SLPOFF12
Sleep mode inactivation

14.2 Test Print**14.2.1 Overview**

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This machine has 6 test print types as indicated below, and each test print can detect image fault.

In the case that there is no fault appeared on the test print by normal output, it may be caused by PDL input side, or/and the reader side.

14.2.2 Test Print TYPE

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-14-1

TYPE NO.	description
0	normal copy/print
1-3	- (for R&D)
4	16-gradation

TYPE NO.	description
5	full area half tone
6	grid
7-9	- (for R&D)
10	MCYBk horizontal stripes (sub scanning direction)
11	- (for R&D)
12	64-gradation
13	- (for R&D)
14	full color 16-gradation
15-100	- (for R&D)

14.2.3 Selecting the Test Print TYPE

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Set number of prints and paper size.
- 2) Select the followings in service mode:
COPIER > TEST > PG
- 3) Make the following selections:
COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE
- 4) Enter TYPE number by the numeric keypad, and then press OK key.
- 5) Select the color in question (output by '1') in COLOR-Y/M/C/K.
- 6) Set density in DENS-Y/M/C/K (effective only for TYPE=5).
- 7) Press start key.

14.2.4 16-Gradation (TYPE=4)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This test print can mainly check gradation performance, image fogging, white line, and density unevenness at the rear/front.

(1) Gradation

If there is no 16-step density gradation, it may be caused by fault of drum unit or laser scanning system.

(2) Foggy image

If there is foggy image only at the white area as shown in the figure below, it may be caused by fault of drum unit or laser scanning system.

(3) Vertical white/black line

If there is white line in the image, it may be caused by fault of developing system.

(4) Density unevenness at the rear/front

If there is density unevenness at the rear/front, it may be caused by fault of drum unit, laser scanning system or transfer unit.



F-14-1

14.2.5 Full Area Half Tone (TYPE=5)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This test print can mainly check transfer failure, black line, white line, and pitch unevenness.

MEMO:

(1) Output by every developing color is available by specifying the developing color COLOR-Y/M/C/K in the following service mode: COPIER>TEST>PG

(2) In the case of changing density of the test print, execute followings in service mode for density setting: TEST>PG>DENS-Y/M/C/K

(1) Transfer failure

If there is transfer failure, it may be caused by fault of transfer (intermediate transfer/secondary transfer) unit.

(2) Horizontal unevenness

If there is horizontal unevenness, it may be caused by fault of photosensitive drum drive unit, drum ITB motor, or drum unit.

(3) Vertical unevenness

If there is vertical unevenness, it may be caused by soiled LDE lens, fault of drum unit, or deterioration of intermediate transfer belt.



COLOR-M=1, COLOR-Y/C/K=0
F-14-2

14.2.6 Grid (TYPE=6)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

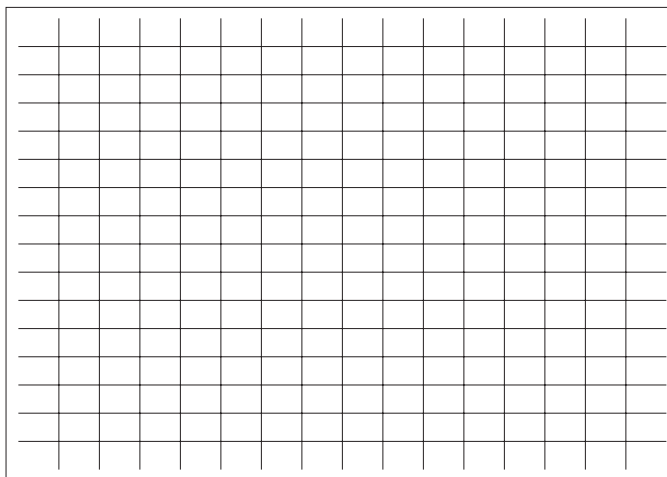
This test print can mainly check color displacement, right angle accuracy and linearity.

(1) Color displacement

If there is color displacement, it may be caused by fault of each laser scanning system, transfer (intermediate transfer/secondary transfer) unit or photosensitive drum drive unit.

(2) Right angle accuracy and linearity

If there is fault of right angle accuracy or linearity, it may be caused by fault of laser scanning system, or defective shape of registration (upper/lower) roller or the secondary transfer outer roller.



F-14-3

14.2.7 MCYBk Horizontal Line (TYPE=10)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

This test print can mainly check the dark area density of each color, balance among each color and white line by developing.

(1) Solid density of each color and balance among each color.

(a) Density is not extremely light.

(b) In the case of light density with a certain color, it may be caused by the developer of the color in question, or fault of primary transfer roller, laser scanning system or high voltage system.

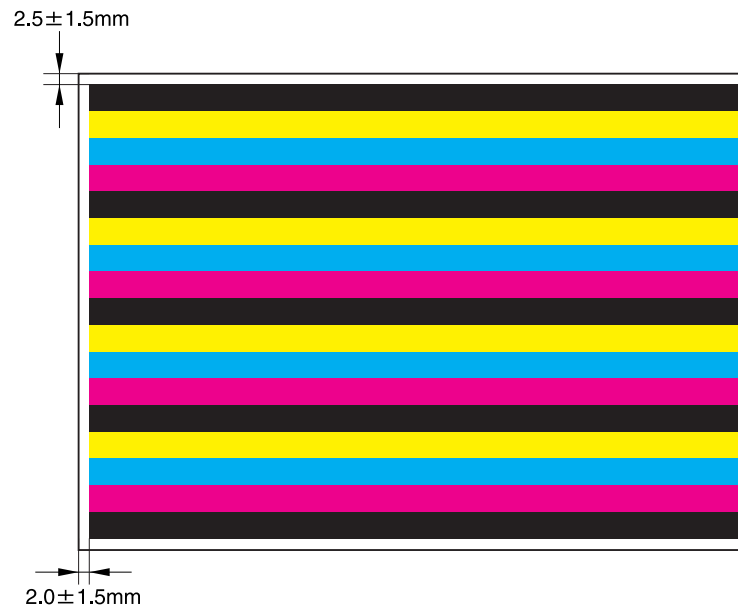
(2) White/black line

If there is white/black line with a certain color, it may be caused by fault of the drum unit of the color in question, or soiled laser light path.

(3) Density unevenness at the rear/front

If there is density unevenness with a certain color, it may be caused by fault of drum unit, laser scanning system or transfer (intermediate transfer/secondary transfer) unit.

If there is density unevenness with all colors, it may be caused by deterioration of intermediate transfer unit.



F-14-4

14.2.8 64-Gradation (TYPE=12)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

YMCBk64 gradation test print can mainly check gradation performance of each color (YMCBk) at one time.



F-14-5

14.2.9 Full Color 16-gradation (TYPE=14)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Full color 16-gradation test print can mainly check gray balance, gradation performance of each color (YMCBk) and foggy image.

(1) Gray balance

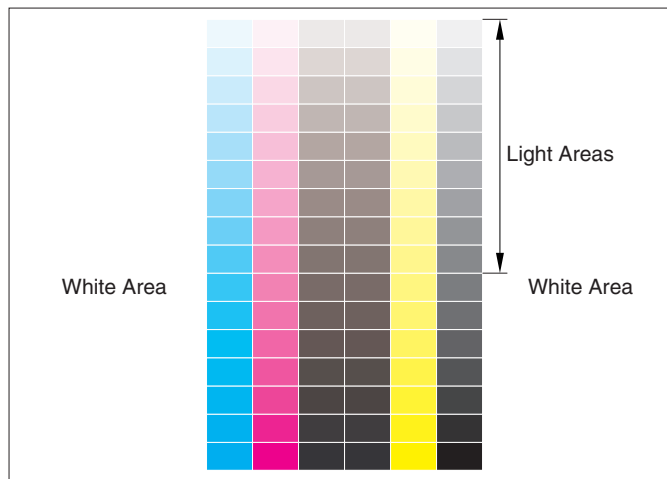
Check to see if the output comes with even density of each color at gray scale area.

(2) Gradation performance

Check gradation performance and density difference of each color (YMCBk)

(3) Foggy image

If there is foggy image at the white area, it may be caused by fault of developing system or photosensitive drum, or correction fault of laser scanning system.



F-14-6

14.3 Troubleshooting

14.3.1 Image Faults

14.3.1.1 Light Image / Weak Density

14.3.1.1.1 When printing on CLC extra heavy paper (209g), light image occurs at solid black areas of output image

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

When printing on CLC extra heavy paper (209g), light image or uneven density occurred at solid black areas on the output image. In order to improve the symptom, the secondary transfer voltage was adjusted under user mode.

Reference: The secondary transfer voltage is a voltage used to transfer toner image to paper. It is adjusted when output images become light or are distorted compared to the images on the standard paper.

Field Remedy

When the symptoms mentioned above occur, adjust the secondary transfer voltage in the procedure below.

1. In service mode > COPIER > Option > BODY > IMG-C-ADJ, change the setting from '0' (default) to '1'.

Reference: IMG-C-ADJ is used to switch the display mode of the image adjustment items used by the system administrator. Setting this to '1' will display the following items: curl correction level adjustment, paper separation fan level adjustment, image location adjustment, secondary transfer voltage adjustment, and gloss adjustment.

2. In user mode > System Settings > Paper Type Management Settings, select a type of paper that has the most similar characteristics as the paper causing the symptom, press Duplicate, and input a name for the paper type; then press OK.

3. Select the type of paper registered in Step2 above, and make the selections like Details/Edit > Secondary Transfer Voltage > Change; then adjust the secondary transfer voltage using "+" or "-" and press OK.

As for the adjustment direction ([+] or [-]), please refer to the attached PDF file. The adjustable range is between '-10' and '+10'.

T-14-2

	Adjustment in [-] Direction is Recommended	Adjustment in [+] Direction is Recommended
Paper Weight	Light (thin paper)	Heavy (thick paper)
Surface Texture	Smooth	Rough
Friction	Low (smooth)	High (rough)
Density	Areas of low toner density are light.	Areas of high toner density are light.
Poor Images	Tiny white spots appear on areas of high density.	Outline blurring due to excessive amount of toner.
	Text and fine line smear.	
	White spots appear on areas of high density.	

Note: Please explain to the user that they have to minimize the use of the foregoing image adjustment items by persons other than the system administrator as possible as they can even though IMG-C-ADJ has switched the display mode of such items.

14.3.1.1.2 Uneven density/light image: Developing high-voltage cable has poor contact

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

Since uneven density/light image occurred, the developing high-voltage cable above the primary corona assembly behind the hopper was re-connected for solution. In this field case, there was no quality problem with test print images generated during the auto gradation adjustment.

Field Remedy

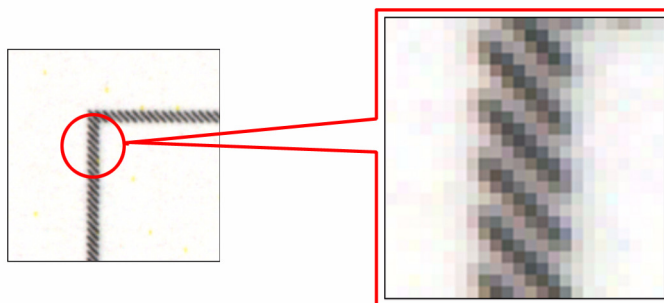
When the symptom mentioned above occurs, re-fit the developing high-voltage cable above the primary corona assembly behind the hopper.

14.3.1.2 Uneven Density**14.3.1.2.1 When copying thin gray lines in Text/Printed Img. mode, moire-like image appears**

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]**Description**

When copying an image including thin gray lines, a moire-like image appeared; however, this faulty image was improved when changing the original mode from "Text/Printed Image" to "Text."



F-14-7

Cause

Since the gray lines in the original were too thin, the machine failed the black text judgment.

Field Remedy

- a. Set the original mode to any of the following: "Text", "Photo", or "Printed Image", and then make a copy.
- b. Set the priority level of "Text/Printed Img." mode to "Text Priority" or "Photo/Image Priority", and then make a copy.

14.3.1.2.2 Uneven density (uneven gross) occurs when copying/printing high-density image with thick coated paper in use

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]**Description**

When copying or printing a high-density image with thick coated paper in use, uneven gross occurred. When the same symptom occurs, perform the following field remedy while checking images output in each step and improve the degree of uneven gross.

Field Remedy

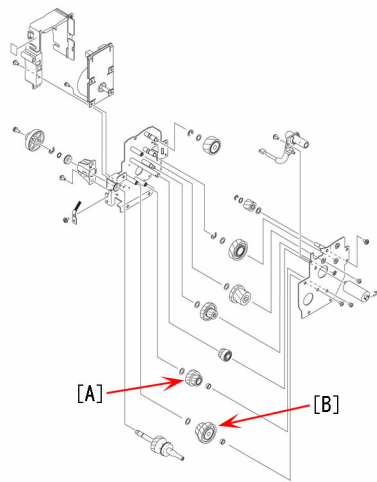
1. Using A3-size plain paper, perform a double-side job in Black mode and output 5 solid white images (blank images) continuously.
2. Make copies using thick coated papers, and check to see if uneven gross is solved; if solved, finish this field remedy. If not, go to Step 3.
3. Using A3-size plain paper, perform a double-side job in single color mode and output 10 solid red images continuously.
4. Using A3-size plain paper, perform a double-side job in single color mode and output 10 solid green images continuously.
5. Using A3-size plain paper, perform a double-side job in single color mode and output 10 solid blue images continuously.
6. Using A3-size plain paper, perform a double-side job in black mode and output 2 solid black images (while keeping the copyboard cover open) continuously.
7. Using A3-size plain paper, perform a double-side job in black mode and output 10 solid white images (blank images) continuously.
8. Make copies using thick coated papers, and check to see if uneven gross is solved; if solved, finish this remedy. If not, perform Step 3 through Step 7 again.
9. Make copies using thick coated papers, and check to see if uneven gross is solved; if solved, finish this remedy. If not, go to Step 10.
10. In service mode > COPIER > Option > BODY, change the setting for TEMP-TBL from '0' (default) to '1.'
- Note: The new setting value takes effect after powering OFF/ON.
11. Make copies using thick coated papers, and check to see if uneven gross is solved; if solved, finish this remedy. If not, increase the setting value for TEMP-TBL up to '4' in increment of '1' while checking the output image with each setting.

14.3.1.2.3 Uneven density appears at 4mm intervals in main scanning direction

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]**Description**

Since uneven density occurred at 4mm intervals in the main scanning direction, the 23T/45T gear [A] and the 35T/46T gear [B], which are found in the drum I.T.B drive assembly, were replaced with new ones at the same time for solution.



F-14-8

Field Remedy

When the same symptom occurs, replace the 23T/45T gear and the 35T/46T gear with new ones at the same time, or replace the whole drum I.T.B. drive assembly with a new one.

FU6-0545 23T/45T Gear

FU6-0546 35T/46T Gear

FM2-2550 Drum I.T.B. Drive Assembly

14.3.1.3 Image Displacement/Out of Focus**14.3.1.3.1 Smearred image/hue variation (variation of drum potential) occurs in humidity environment**

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]**Description**

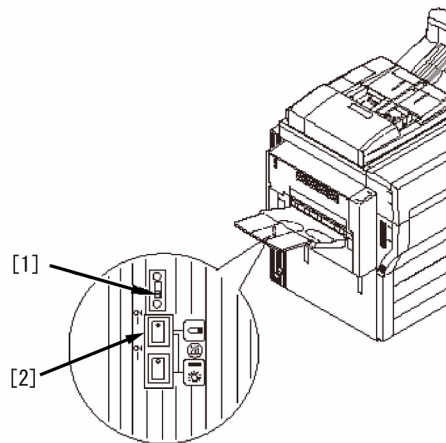
Since a machine installed in a humidity environment caused smearred image or hue variation, the drum temperature switch (SW16) was set to "H" to solve it.

Field Remedy

1. Make the following selections in sequence to check the value for [ABS-HUN] (moisture content); if the value is 10g or greater, go through Step 2 and 3: [Service mode > COPIER > Display > ANALOG].

2. Check to make sure that the environment switch (SW13) [1] is set to ON.

3. Set the drum temperature switch (SW16) [2] to "H" (lower side).



F-14-9

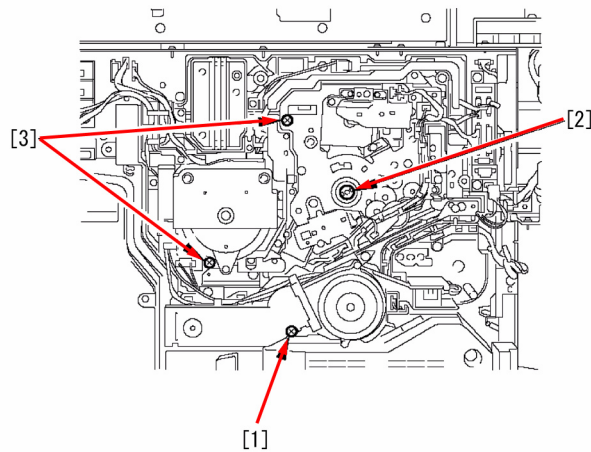
Reference: The drum heater control is performed in disregard of the main power switch setting when the environmental switch in the rear left side of the machine is turned ON.

14.3.1.3.2 Yellow displaced at trail edge of image upon installation: Screw on ITB connecting shaft is loosened

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]**Description**

Since the ITB connecting shaft was not tightened after the process unit to which a weight and the developing assembly were mounted was set into the main body upon installation, yellow was displaced in both copying and printing. The degree of displacement worsen toward the trail edge.



F-14-10

[1]: ITB connecting shaft, [2]: Drum fixing member, [3]: Process unit connecting shaft

Field Remedy

When the symptom occurs at test printing after re-mounting the process unit during installation or servicing, check to see if the ITB connecting shaft is loosened; if so, tighten it again and then perform a copy/print job.

Note: When tightening the ITB connecting shaft [1], hold the drum fixing member [2] to prevent the idle rotation of the shaft.

14.3.1.3.3 When duplex printing, position of image on both 1st and 2nd sides is displaced in sub scanning direction

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

Since the position of image on both the 1st and 2nd sides was displaced in the sub scanning direction in duplex printing, the registration adjustment was executed in service mode.

Field Remedy

In service mode > COPIER > Adjust > FEED-ADJ > REGIST, change the setting value. The adjustment range is '-50' to '50' (unit: 0.1mm).

14.3.1.4 Partially Blank/Streaked

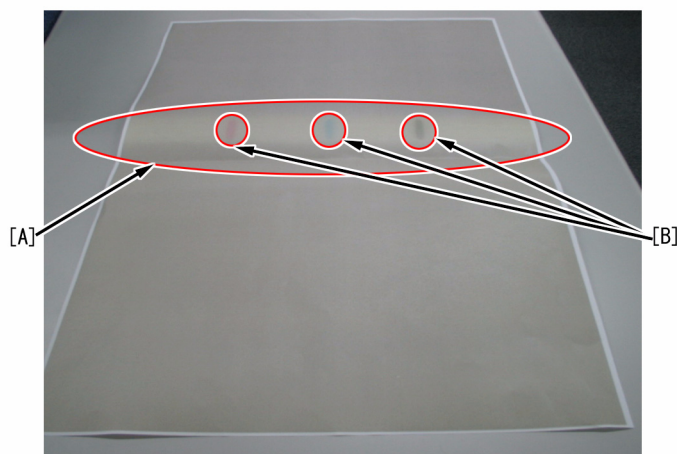
14.3.1.4.1 Void occurs in main scanning direction on halftone area/oval-shaped patterns/E060-0000: J423 connector (11-pin CT connector) on main body side of pre-conditioning unit has poor contact

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

Void [A] and oval-shaped patterns [B] occurred in the main scanning direction about 16.5mm away from the leading edge of a TEST mode image (halftone). When these symptoms occur, perform the following field remedies.

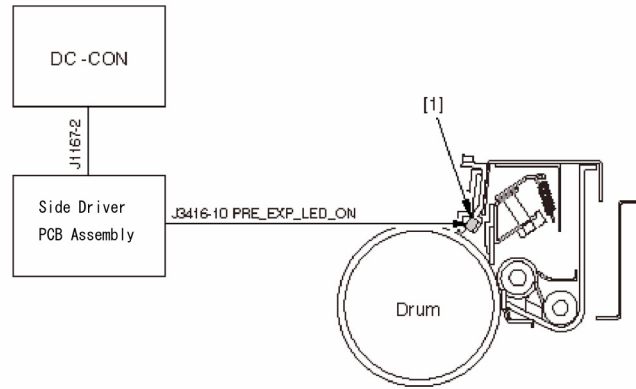


F-14-11

- E060-0000 can be displayed when HP sensor is activated (ON) at the timing that the wire cleaner is fully shifted to the opposite direction of HP.

Cause

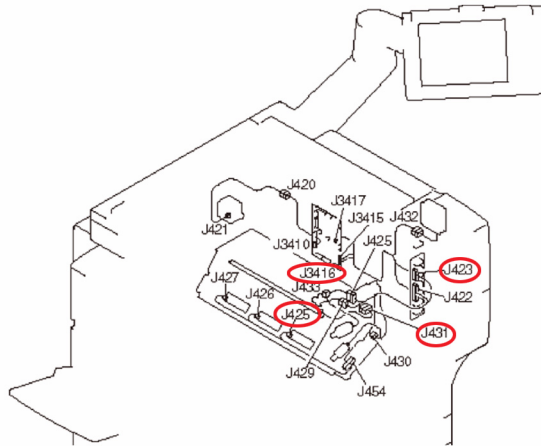
Since 11-pin CT connector of the P-kit has poor contact, the pre-exposure LED [1] failed to come on.



F-14-12

Field Remedy

1. Check the front and under sides of J423 connector (11 pins), which connect when the fixing feeder assembly is set into the main body, for poor contact. If pins are deformed, modify them and then connect the connector.



F-14-13

2. Check J3416 connector on the side driver PCB and J3419 connector that extends from the same PCB to the DC controller PCB for poor connection. If pins are deformed, modify them and connect the connectors again.
3. If the pre-exposure LED did not come on because of poor contact of the connectors, the drum potential may not be controlled normally. Modify the connectors and turn the main power switch OFF and then ON to make the machine perform an initial rotation.
4. If no problem was found with the connectors in Step 1 and 2, check J431 connector in the LED side (pre-exposure LED) and J425 connector (photosensitive drum cleaning pre-exposure LED) for poor contact. If pins are deformed, modify them, and then re-fit the connectors.
5. Perform Step 3 again.
6. If the symptom still occurs, check J1167 connector on the DC Controller PCB. If pins are deformed, modify them, and then refit the connector.

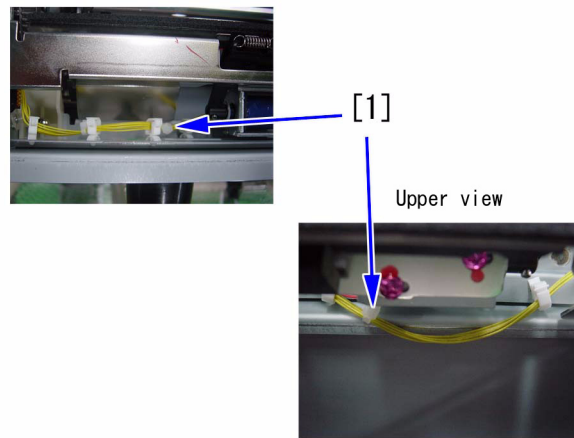
14.3.1.4.2 Void occurs in sub scanning direction upon installation: ATR shutter solenoid cable comes into contact with developing cylinder

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

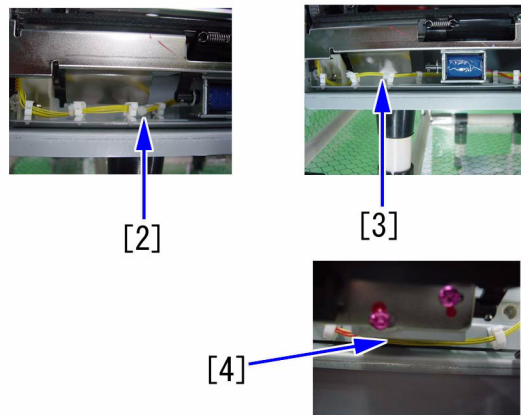
[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

Since the tie-wrap [1] binding the ATR shutter solenoid cable was fitted in the wrong position, the cable went slack and came into contact with the developing cylinder, causing void in the sub scanning direction.

**Field Remedy**

1. Check to see if the ATR shutter solenoid cable goes slack.
2. If the cable goes slack, fit the tie-wrap [2] so that it can sit on the left of the wire-saddle as shown in [3], and correct loosening of the cable.



F-14-14

3. Make a copy and check if the symptom is solved.

14.3.1.4.3 Measure against scratches made on Fixing Roller in circumferential direction: Lines appear in sub scanning direction

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

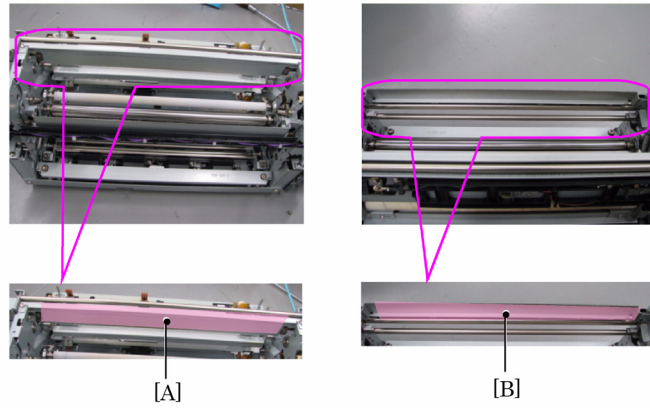
[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

When lines appear because of scratches made on the fixing roller in the circumferential direction, suspect dirty stays and shafts around the roller. When replacing the fixing roller with a new one to prevent this symptom, refer to the following field remedy.

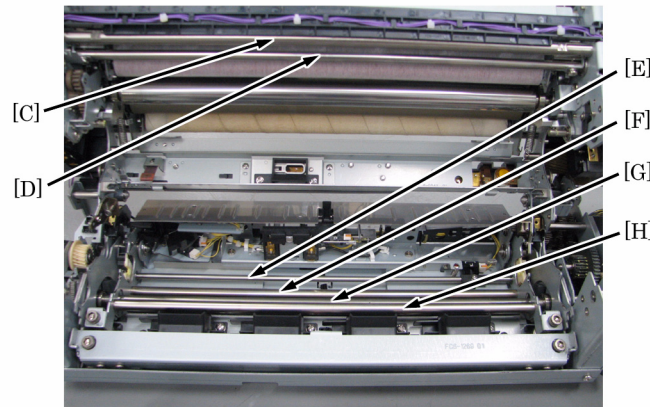
Field Remedy

1. Prepare brand-new fixing roller, collecting roller, and heating roller.
 2. Remove the fixing roller, collecting roller, and heating roller from the fixing assembly.
 3. Remove the fixing belt assembly.
 4. Clean the stay [A] and [B] with lint-free paper impregnated with alcohol.
- Note: When cleaning, take care not to get injury from the sharp edge of the stays or legs of screws.



F-14-15

5. Clean the shafts [C] through [H] with lint-free paper impregnated with alcohol.
 Note: When cleaning, take care not to get injury from the sharp edge of the stays or legs of screws.



F-14-16

6. Wipe the brand-new fixing roller, collecting roller, and heating roller with lint-free paper that comes with the fixing roller in order to prevent dust from being left on the rollers.
 7. Mount the brand-new fixing roller, collecting roller, and heating roller, and the fixing belt assembly onto this machine.
 Note: When securing the fixing upper unit after mounting all the rollers above, be sure to insert the pin on the fixing plate into the shaft hole, and then tighten the screw to secure the fixing plate. If the screw is tightened incompletely, the jam code "010E", the error code "E007" or abnormal noise may occur.
 FL2-6945 Fixing Roller
 FC7-0169 Roller
 FC7-0932 Heating Roller

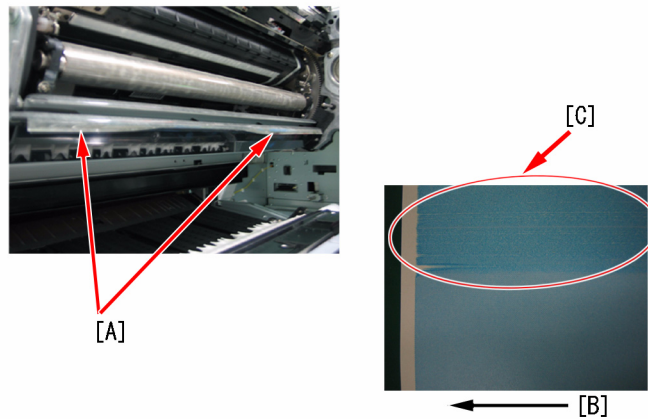
14.3.1.4.4 Lines (smear image): Mylar comes off post duct in P-kit assembly

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

Since the end portion(s) (rear/front) of the mylar came off [A] the post duct in the P-kit assembly, lines (smear image) [C] occurred in the main scanning direction (the paper-feeding direction [B]).



F-14-17

Cause

The detached portion(s) of the mylar contacted to the ITB belt, causing the symptom.

Field Remedy

As the remedy against the symptom, the adhesion of bonding material that is applied to the post duct was improved. When the same symptom occurred, replace the post duct with a new one.
FL2-2675 Post Dust

14.3.1.4.5 In low temperature environment, void occurs at border between halftone area and solid image area

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]**Description**

In the field, when an image having a halftone area on the upper side of a solid image area was output under a low temperature environment, void appeared along the border between those areas (in the halftone image side).

Field Remedy

1. In Service Mode > COPIER > Option > BODY > IMGC-ADJ, change the setting to '1'. (default: '0')

Reference: IMGC-ADJ is used to add/remove the image adjustment items, which are used by the system administrator, to/from the Additional Functions Mode screen.

2. In Additional Functions Mode > System Settings > Device Management Settings > White Gap Correction, change the setting to '1' or '2', and then press OK.

3. In order to prevent a poor color balance that may be caused as a negative effect from Step.2, perform Auto Gradation Correction (Full Adjustment).

Reference: As a risk to output images, coarse image may occur.

14.3.1.4.6 Fingerprint

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Symptom

In case of manual feeding for making a copy of half-tone image/solid color image, fingerprint symptom tends to occur.

Cause

Fingerprint left on the media at manual feeding appears in its image as a transfer failure after secondary transfer.

Remedy

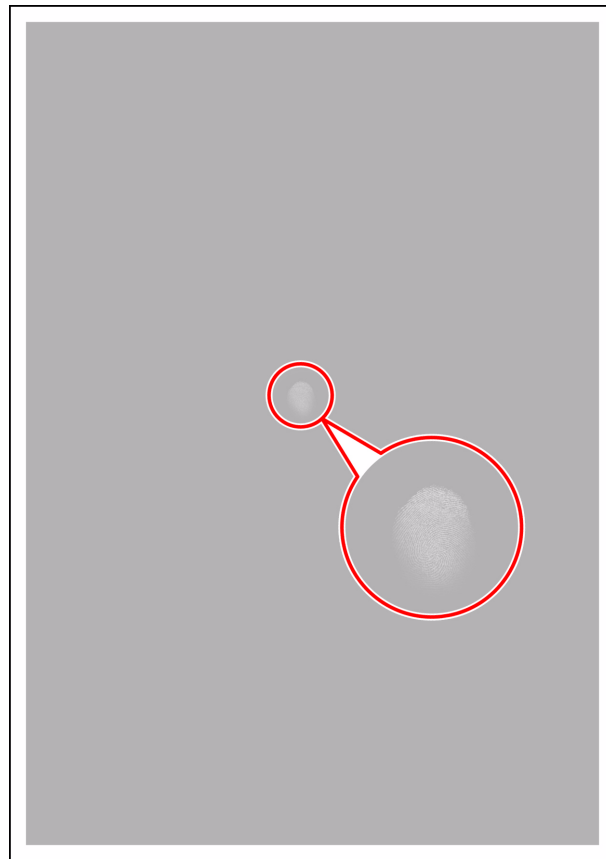
Set the Service Mode (Delete fingerprint: COPIER > OPTION > USER > FINGM-SW) setting value as "1" and execute it.

Executing this Service Mode prevents the occurrence of fingerprint by performing fusing operation and normal print before printing image.



This service mode executes fusing operation twice, thus it takes longer time to make a copy than usual.

Image sample



F-14-18

14.3.1.5 Smudged/Streaked

14.3.1.5.1 Yellow vertical stripes on copy images/blank image on PG test chart printouts: PF-A board is faulty

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

Since the PF-A PCB mounted with the Main Controller PCB was faulty, yellow vertical stripes appeared in copying and blank image occurred when outputting GP test charts in service mode.

- The PF-A board is used to process printer output images.

Field Remedy

1. Disconnect the PF-A board from the Main Controller PCB and clean the terminal of the board with lint-free paper impregnated with alcohol; then re-fit the board to the PCB.

When re-fitting, follow the steps below to prevent faulty connection of the connector.

1-1. After re-fitting the PF-A board, put the edge of a ruler on the edges of boards while holding the PF-A board and check if the PF-A board is prominent from the other boards; if so, push it to the main board again so that it can fit firmly.

1-2. While holding the PF-A board, tighten the screw in the opposite side of the terminal.

1-3. While holding the PF-A board, tighten the screw in the terminal side.

1-4. Put the edge of the ruler again on the edges of the boards, and check if the PF-A board is prominent from the other boards; if so, go back to Step 1-1.

1-5. When fixing the controller box cover, firstly tighten the screw that is at the upper right of the box when viewed from the rear side of the machine. Secondly tighten a screw to the long circler screw hole at the bottom right, and then tighten all the other screws.

2. If the symptom still occurs, replace the PF-A board with a new one (by referring to the procedure described in Step 1).

FM2-7353 PF-A Board

14.3.1.5.2 Soiled back: Transfer roller B3 in Secondary transfer mount assembly is soiled

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

Since soiled back occurred, the secondary transfer mount assembly was replaced with a new one for solution.

Field Remedy

Check to see if the transfer roller B3 found in the secondary transfer mount assembly is soiled; if so, replace the secondary transfer mount assembly with a new one.

Note: Basically, the transfer roller B3 has to be replaced as the whole secondary transfer mount assembly. When only the transfer roller B3 is replaced with a new one, replace the 2 cleaning brushes with new ones at the same time. If the cleaning brushes are not replaced, a soiling on the brushes transfer to the new transfer roller B3, causing the symptom again.

FM2-2485 Secondary Transfer Mount Assembly

FC6-1644 Transfer Roller B3

FC6-1645 Cleaning Brush

14.3.1.5.3 Soiled back (patch mark) appears: HV8 PCB is faulty

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]**Description**

Since a soiling, which seemed to be from a patch on the drum surface, appeared on the backside of paper, the HV8 PCB was replaced with a new one for solution.

Field Remedy

1. Re-fit all the connectors of the HV8 PCB.
2. If the symptom still occurs, replace the PCB with a new one.
FM2-7193 HV8 PCB Assembly

14.3.1.5.4 Soiled back: A failure in cleaning the secondary transfer roller is caused

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]**Description**

Since soiled back occurred, the DC controller software was upgraded for solution.

Cause

Since the length of time during which the secondary transfer roller performed idle rotation with power being supplied was increased, a failure in cleaning the roller occurred, ultimately causing the symptom.

Field Remedy

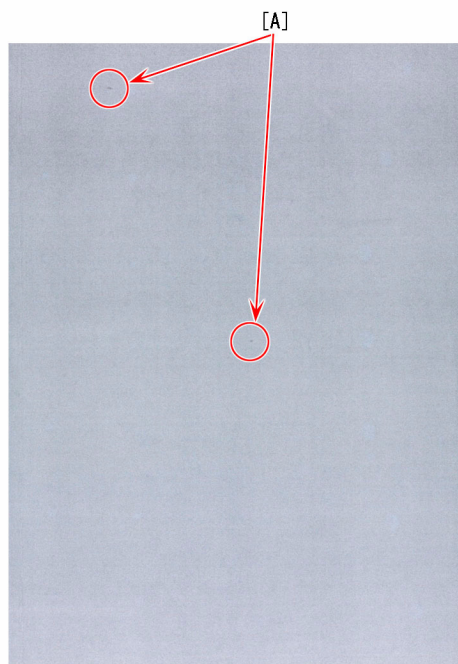
Check the version of the DC controller software; if it is earlier than Ver. 11.03, upgrade the software to Ver. 11.03 or later.

14.3.1.5.5 Dark spots appear on output image

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]**Description**

Since a few dark spots [A] appeared on output images, the developing assembly was replaced and the toner discharge amount was increased by means of service mode.



F-14-19

When the same symptom occurs, follow the procedure below.

Field Remedy

1. Replace the developing assembly of color corresponding to the dark spots.
2. In service mode (level 2) > COPIER > Option > BODY > DEVL-VHT, change the setting from '2' to '5' (the setting range is '1' to '5', the default is '2').
FM3-1211 Developing Assembly (Yellow)
FM3-1212 Developing Assembly (Magenta)
FM3-1213 Developing Assembly (Cyan)
FM3-1214 Developing Assembly (Black)

14.3.1.5.6 The poor picture by the attachment mistake of seal support plate (front, rear)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Symptom

In the case of mistakenly attaching the seal support plate (front, rear) and printing solid color image in large quantity at one time, the soil of the waste toner may occur at the both edges of image.

This symptom occurs only when using the A3 size paper or bigger.

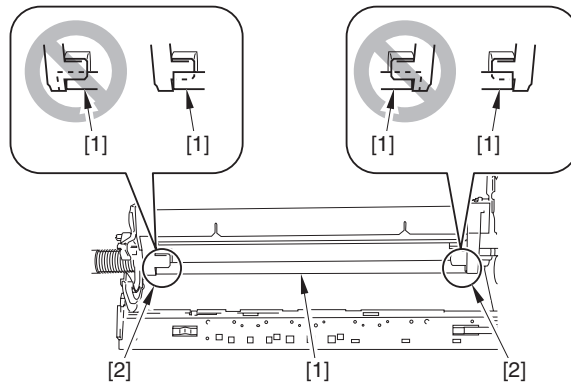
Cause

In the case of mistakenly attaching the seal support plate (front, rear) and printing solid color image in large quantity at one time, there may be a space occurring between the seal support plate and the scoop-up sheet. As a result, there is a case that the soil of the waste toner occurs on the print image due to the drop of waste toner on the ITB.

Remedy in the field

Do the following steps to remedy the above symptom:

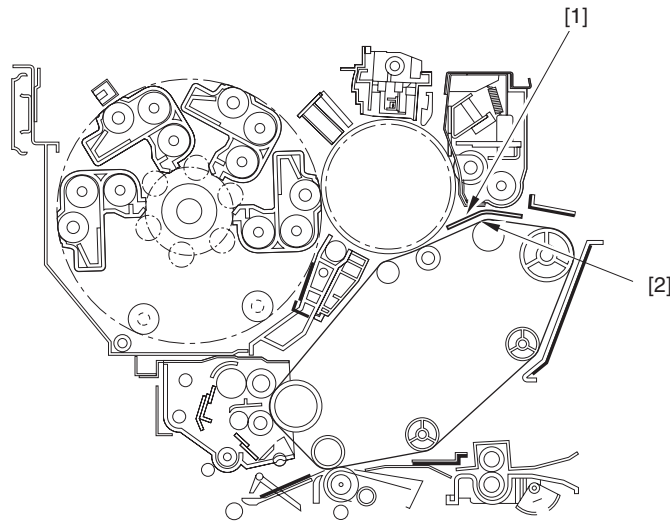
1. Check to see if there is any mistake of attaching the seal support plate (front, rear).
Check if the seal support plate [2] is below the scoop-up sheet [1], and make a correction if it is not.
In the case of mistakenly attaching, perform operation to attach after replacing the new scoop-up sheet.



F-14-20

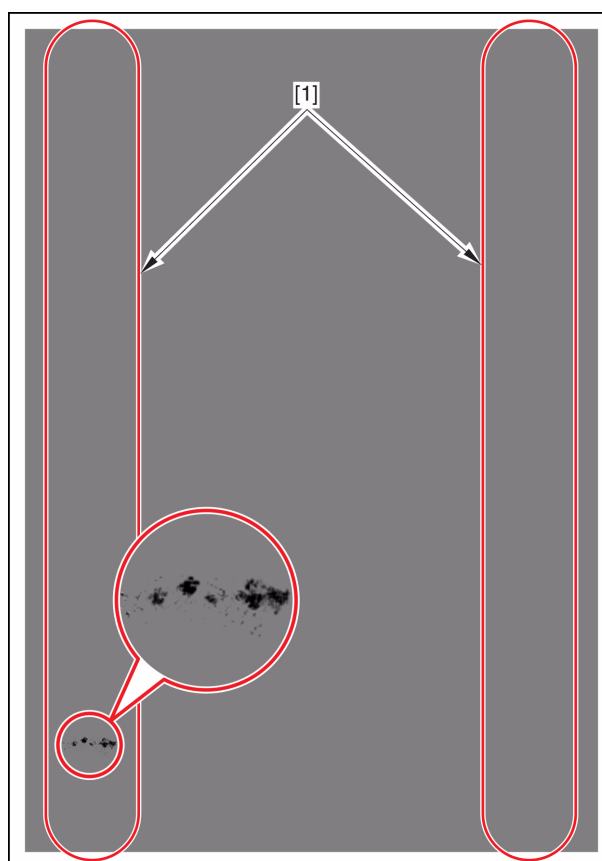
2. Clean the potential control plate (A).

Using lint-free paper, remove the waste toner found at the both sides of potential guide plate.



F-14-21

image sample



F-14-22

14.3.1.6 Ghost / Memory

14.3.1.6.1 Fixing Gloss Ghost

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Symptom

When making a copy of solid color image, a ghost image may occur.

Cause

When making a copy of solid color image, wax included in toner may be exuded and attached onto the fixing assembly. As a result, a part of the image may be attached onto the fixing roller, possibly resulting in the ghost image. This symptom tends to occur more frequently when the fixing assembly is replaced to new one.

Remedy in the Field



This service mode can be executed in user administrator mode as well. (For detail, see the user mode list shown in the product specifications of the introduction edition)

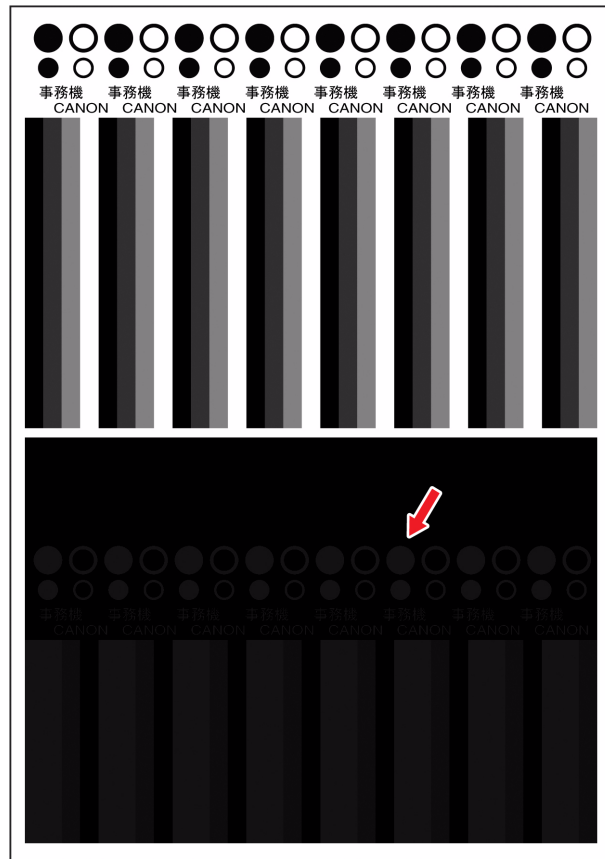
Go through the following procedure:

1. Execute aging (print a image: 50 copies/total) using the following image.
 - 10 sheets of A3 (2-sided) solid color (Green) image in full color mode
 - 10 sheets of A3 (2-sided) solid color (Blue) image in full color mode
 - 10 sheets of A3 (2-sided) solid color (Red) image in full color mode
 - 10 sheets of A3 (2-sided) solid color (Black) image in monochrome mode
 - 10 sheets of A3 (2-sided) solid color (white) image in monochrome mode
2. Execute the service mode (refresh of the fixing roller).
COPIER > OPTION > CLEANING > FX-CLN-E (Level12)
3. If the remedy above is ineffective, decrease the control temperature by the following service mode (fixing control temperature adjustment).
In COPIER > OPTION > BODY > TEMP-TBL, select "3" as a setting value and execute. (When selecting "3", control temperature decreases by 15 deg C)



By executing this service mode (fixing control temperature adjustment), there will be an improvement in this symptom, however, gloss will decrease.

Image Sample



F-14-23

14.3.1.7 Faulty Color Reproduction

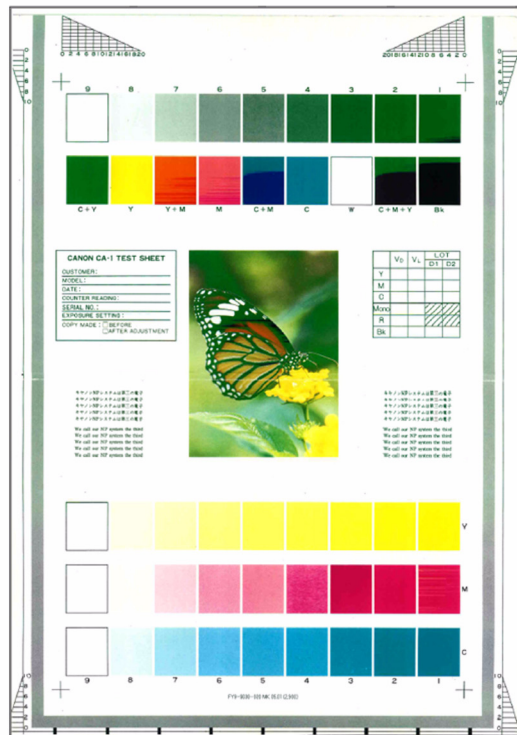
14.3.1.7.1 At scanner reading upon installation, faulty image occurs: S-B Board PCB has poor contact

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

When placing an original on the copyboard glass and then making a copy to check the image quality upon installation, a faulty image occurred; however, this image was corrected by re-fitting the S-B Board PCB. Even when this symptom was occurring, PG test print printouts were generated without any image problem



F-14-24

Reference: The S-B Board PCB processes scanner image (i.e., performs resolution conversion, image rotation, and compression/ decompression).

Cause

Because of poor connection between the S-B Board PCB and the Main Controller PCB, this machine failed to process images red by the scanner normally, causing the faulty image.

Field Remedy

1. Re-fit the DDI-S serial cable.
2. Re-fit the S-B Board PCB mounted on the Main Controller PCB.
3. If the symptom still occurs, wipe the terminal of the S-B Board PCB with lint-free paper impregnated with alcohol.

FM2-7362 S-B Board PCB Assembly

14.3.1.7.2 Hue variation occurs: OFST value (target value) for PASCAL is changed

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

During servicing, the value for the service mode [OFST] under [PASCAL] was changed to adjust the density of each color, and then auto gradation correction was performed. However, this caused hue variation.

Cause

Changing the value for [OFST] also changed the target value for the auto gradation correction, causing a failure in adjusting the density of each color properly. This made tones including half tone deviate, causing hue variation.

Note: The factory changes the adjustment (OFST) value of discrete machines to improve the density detection accuracy of the Reader. When this value is changed, the density measurement will not be performed properly. Therefore, be sure not to change this value. This is true of not only this model but also all the other color models.

Field Remedy

1. If the value for [OFST] was changed in service mode, reset it by referring to the value (value at time of factory shipment) in the service label on the backside of the front cover of the Reader.
2. Perform the auto gradation correction.
3. When changing the density of each color, make adjustments in the following service mode: [Service mode > COPIER > Adjust > COLOR].

Reference: After replacing the Reader Controller PCB or clearing the RAM, be sure to input the value for [OFST] under [PASCAL] as well as the other relevant values.

14.3.1.7.3 Faulty gradation occurs with machine equipped with DADF-R1 after auto gradation adjustment (full adjustment)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

In a machine equipped with a DADF unit, when placing a printout for calibration generated at time of executing the auto gradation adjustment on the copyboard glass, and then closing the DADF unit, the printout was scanned in a state in which it had a gap with the copyboard glass, causing faulty gradation.

Cause

The feed belt of the DADF unit failed to hold the printout firmly on the copyboard glass. As for the quick adjustment (one of the auto gradation adjustment modes with neither generating a test print printout nor scanning the printout), the difference in the gradation adjustment method prevents the same symptom from occurring.

Field Remedy

1. User mode > Adjustment/Cleaning > Auto Gradation Adjustment > Full Adjust > select the Test Print Paper > Test Print 1 > OK.
2. Place a printout generated in Step 1 on the copyboard glass and put about 20 sheets of identical type of paper on it to prevent it from moving when the DADF is closed; then scan it.
Reference: The Auto Gradation Adjustment function is also available by making the following selections in user mode: [System Settings > Device Management Settings > Auto Gradation Adjustment]. In case of making the selections above, be sure to take the action mentioned in Step 2.
3. In the same manner as Step 2, generate printouts of Test Print 2 and 3.
Reference: In case that Full Adjustment is performed with another color model adopting the same belt type feeder, be sure to follow the procedure above.

14.3.1.7.4 Hue variation occurs in continuous copy job performed right after replacement of photosensitive drum

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]**Description**

Although there was no problem with images when performing the auto gradation adjustment (full adjustment) right after replacement of the photosensitive drum, hue variation was confirmed between the 1st and 100th copies in making 100 copies continuously.

Cause

Since the machine was cooled completely and its photosensitive drum was fresh, the drum temperature was not setted, and thereby making variation of drum potential large.

Field Remedy

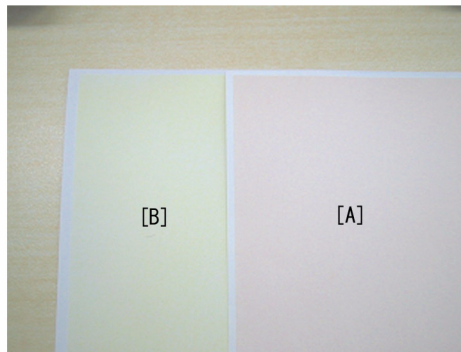
Although depending on the outer environment and the temperature control of the drum heater before mounting a new photosensitive drum, this machine, in some cases, needs 20 to 30 minutes to settle the temperature control of the drum heater in case it has been completely cooled in a low temperature environment. When the same symptom occurs, perform the auto gradation adjustment in a state in which this machine is as much stable as possible and then make copies.

14.3.1.7.5 Faulty hue (yellowish) image is output when copying pinkish original

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]**Description**

When copying (pinkish) original that was output from this machine, the output image took on a tinge of yellow. When performing a test printing with a PG test chart (type=5, Y=35, M=35, and C=10) in use and use the output image [A] for a copy job to confirm the aforementioned symptom, the similar kind of faulty hue image [B] was output.



F-14-25

Field Remedy

(Workaround as of Nov. 29, 2006)

1. Change the original mode from "Test/Printed Img". to "Color Copy Original", and then make a copy again.
2. If the symptom is not improved fully in Step 1, adjust the lighter density in Special Features > Image Adjustment > Color Balance > Density Fine Adjustment. In the field case above, hue was improved by setting the lighter density of magenta to '+3'.

14.3.1.7.6 Faulty hue image is output after executing quick auto gradation adjustment (printer PASCAL)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]**Description**

An image with faulty hue was output after executing quick adjustment (printer PASCAL) in Additional Functions > Adjustment/Cleaning > Auto Gradation Adjustment; however, this symptom did not occur after executing the full adjustment (reader PASCAL).

Cause

In Printer PASCAL, this machine scans a patch formed in the specified distance away from the trail edge of paper. In the above-mentioned inspection case, however, wider blank area in the trail edge prevented this machine from scanning the patch, resulting in a failure of updating the gradation correction value.

Field Remedy

1. In Service mode > COPIER > TEST > PG, set TYPE to '5' (halftone), and specify the cassette (paper) that is used for Printer PASCAL with PG-PICK; then enter '5' for PG-QTY and perform a test copying.
2. Take measures of the width of blank area in the trail edge of each output image (5 images in total) and calculate the mean value.
3. In Service mode > COPIER > Adjust > FEED-ADJ > RESIST, adjust the trail edge blank area so that the mean value will be within 2.5mm to 3.0mm. (adjustment range: -50 to +50, unit = 0.1mm, default='0')

Note:

- When the horizontal registration or squareness is adjusted or changed in the field, the lead edge/trail edge registration can be changed. If such is the case, perform the field remedy mentioned above.
- If the blank area at the trail edge is small, paper might be wound around a roller in 2nd page printing/copying. If such is the case, perform an adjustment so that the trail edge blank area becomes a right value.

14.3.1.7.7 Gradation changes after shading correction

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Phenomenon:

After shading correction, gradation may get disordered.

Cause:

In the case that the degree of shading for correction is large, gradation may be disordered because of shading correction.

Action to take in the field:

In the case that the gradation is disordered, users are likely execute auto gradation correction.

In the case of receiving a call from users, ask them to execute auto gradation correction (full correction).

We recommend executing auto gradation correction (full correction) before and after performing shading correction due to the following reasons:

- To improve the accuracy of shading correction
- To ensure gradation performance after shading correction

Flow of corrective operation

- 1) Execute auto gradation correction (full correction).



[Initial Setup/Save Key] > [System Control Settings] > [Device Management Settings] > [Auto Gradation Correction]

- 2) Execute shading correction.



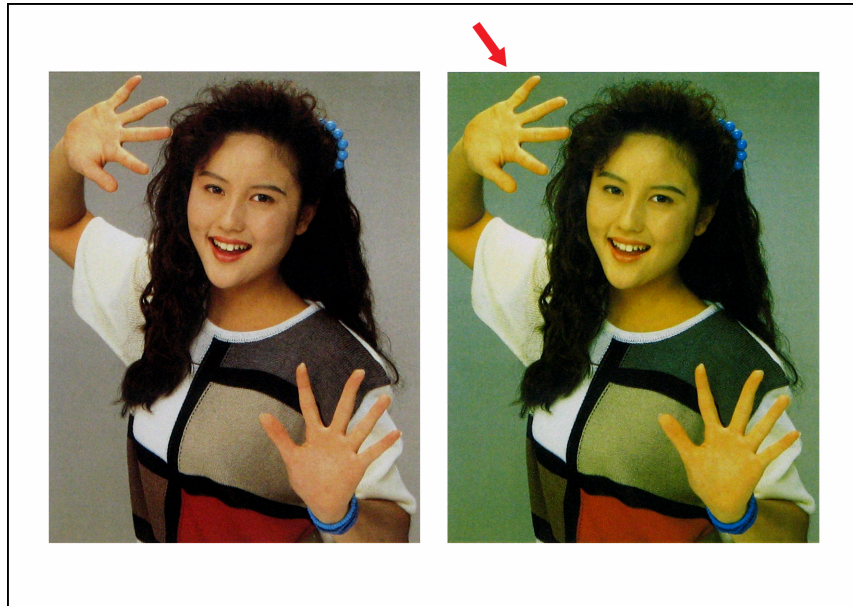
[Initial Setup/Save Key] > [System Control Settings] > [Device Management Settings] > [Shading Correction]

- 3) Execute auto gradation correction (full correction).



[Initial Setup/Save Key] > [System Control Settings] > [Device Management Settings] > [Auto Gradation Correction]

Image sample



F-14-26

14.3.2 Faulty Feeding

14.3.2.1 Skew Feed

14.3.2.1.1 Misalignment of output paper/jam occurs after replacement of swing guide assembly (Finisher-AA1/AA2)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

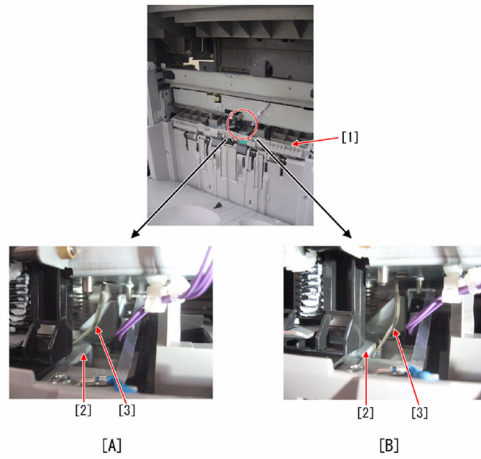
[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

In the field, paper misalignment or a paper jam occurred after replacement of the swing guide assembly (4G3-1541).

Cause

When replacing the swing guide assembly [1], it was mounted in a state in which the grounding spring [3] contacting the lateral side of the swing press plate [2] rode on the plate. This reduced the movable range of the swing guide assembly, causing paper misalignment or a paper jam.



F-14-27

[A]: View of the grounding spring that rides on the swing press plate
 [B]: View of the grounding spring that is attached correctly

Field Remedy

1. When the same symptom occurs after replacement of the swing guide assembly, check to see if the grounding spring rides on the swing press plate.
2. If the grounding spring is on the swing press plate, attach the spring again while letting the plate get away.
3. Check to make sure that the grounding spring contacts the lateral side of the swing press plate.

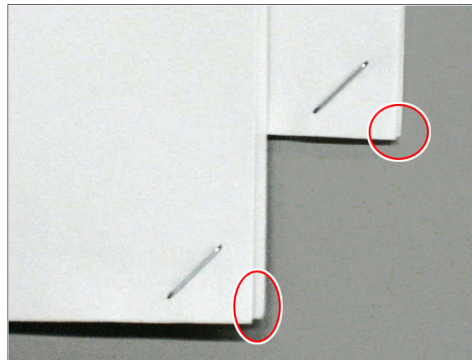
14.3.2.1.2 Paper misalignment occurs when stapling: Return Guide Sheet of Finisher-AA1/AA2 has ridden on Operation Tray Bin

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

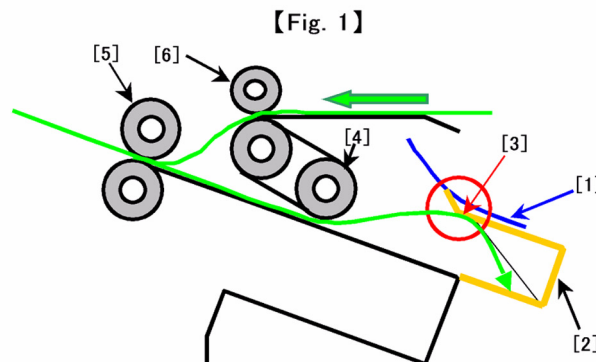
In the field, when using staple mode, the trail edge of paper was skewed a little at the operation tray, causing paper misalignment.



F-14-28

Cause

Since the return guide sheet [1] (FC5-5549) had ridden on the operation tray bin [2] (FL2-0805), the trail edge of paper hit the tip of the bin [3] when it was fed to the operation tray bin, causing paper misalignment.



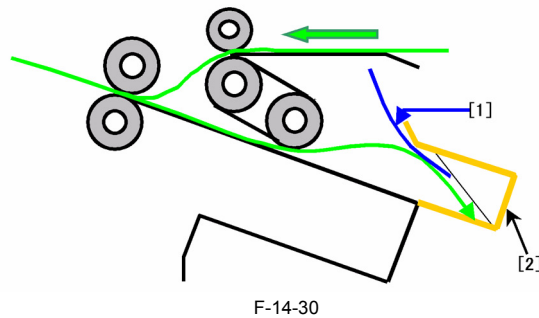
F-14-29

- [4]: Return roller
- [5]: Stack ejection roller
- [6]: 1st delivery roller

Field Remedy

1. Check if the return guide sheet has ridden on the operation tray bin.
2. If the return guide sheet has ridden on the operation tray bin, correct the position of return guide sheet so that it will be under the operation tray bin and then perform a booklet job.

【Fig. 2】



14.3.2.1.3 In booklet printing, paper misalignment/unstapled sheet problem occurs with 2nd page and later: Stack delivery rollers of Finisher-AA1/AA2 lack pressure

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

During a booklet-printing job, a Finisher unit failed to pull the 2nd sheet of paper back to the process tray correctly, consequently causing the sheet to misalign within the stack. Worse yet, a misaligned sheet of paper was not stapled in case the staple mode was set.

Cause

Since the upper and lower stack delivery rollers lacked pressure, the 2nd sheet and later sheets were not pulled back to the process tray correctly. In order to adjust the pressure applied to the upper and lower rollers in handling the 2nd sheet and later sheets, and thereby prevent the above symptom, the Finisher Controller Software was changed from Ver. 4.01 to Ver. 5.01.

Field Remedy

1. Check the version of the Finisher Controller Software; if it is earlier than Ver. 5.01, upgrade the software to Ver. 5.01.
2. Referring to "Procedure for Adjusting Height of Swing Roller in Swing Unit", perform the height adjustment and then run a booklet copying. Reference: For the 1st sheet of paper, the swing guide goes down under its own weight and applies pressure to the upper and lower stack delivery rollers, and thus the sheet is pulled back to the process tray. For the 2nd sheets and later sheets of paper, however, the swing guide is lowered by the motor pulse control.

14.3.2.1.4 Procedure to Improve the Accuracy of Skew Adjustment

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+


Explanation

The procedure to improve the accuracy of paper skew adjustment is explained below.

Procedure in the field

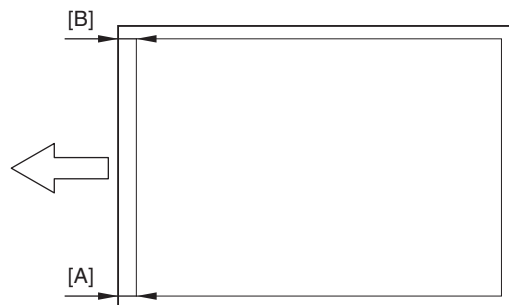
Improve the accuracy of skew adjustment following the procedure explained below.

- 1) Output the monochrome halftone test pattern using the service mode.

(Refer to  for the setting procedure.)

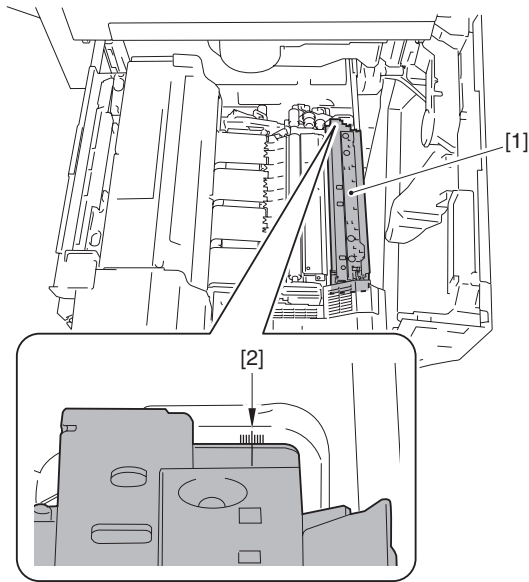
- 2) Check the skew amount in the output paper.

To check the skew amount, measure the margin [A] on the front side of the leading edge and the margin [B] on the backside of the leading edge, and check the skew amount (A - B).



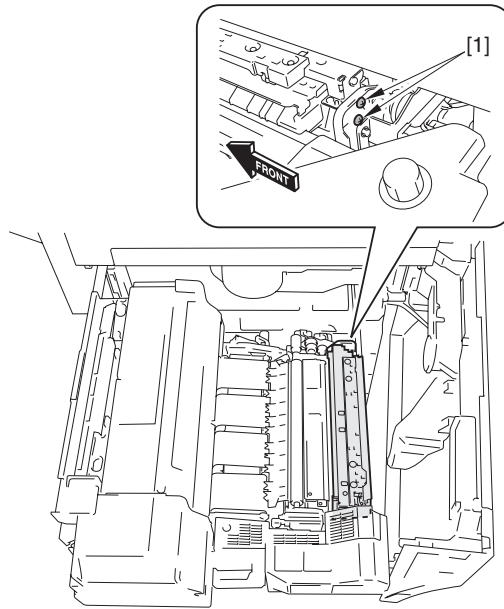
- 3) Open the front cover and pull out the fixing feed assembly.

- 4) Memorize the position [2] where the skew adjustment scale located on the backside of the registration unit [1] is placed.



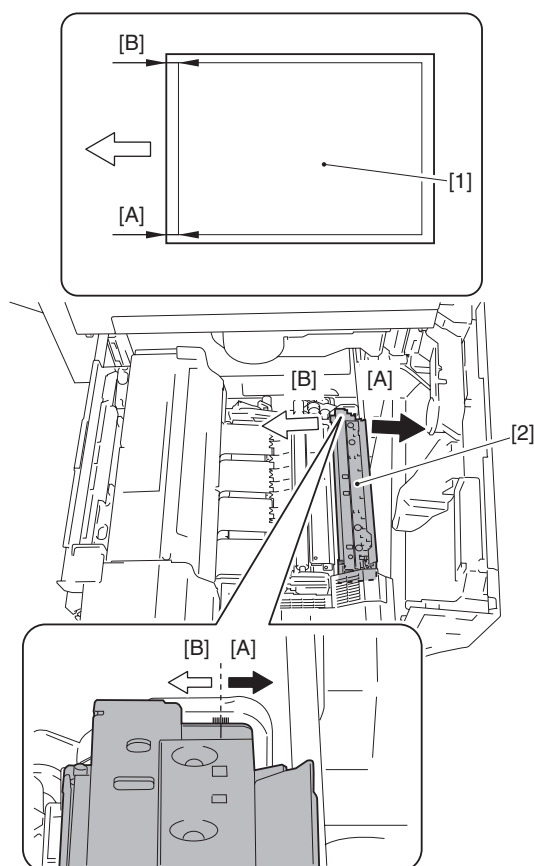
F-14-32

5) Loosen the 2 fixing screws [1] of the registration unit.



F-14-33

6) Move the registration unit based on the skew amount measured in Step 2).
The skew amount is changed by 0.2 to 0.3mm every time the registration unit is moved by one scale.
*When the skew amount of the paper at the position [A] is large, move the registration unit in the direction [B].
*When the skew amount of the paper at the position [B] is large, move the registration unit in the direction [A].



F-14-34

[1] Paper

[2] Registration unit

7) After tightening the 2 fixing screws loosened in Step 5), close the fixing feed assembly and front cover.

8) Following the Steps 1) and 2), output the monochrome halftone test pattern and check the skew amount in the output paper.

When the skew amount is large, adjust the amount by repeating Step 3) through Step 8).



To output the monochrome halftone test pattern, make a setting in the following service mode.

Set the items under COPIER>TEST>PG.

When the following setting is made, 10 sheets of the above-mentioned pattern are output from Cassette 1.

In this case, set A3-size paper in Cassette 1.

TYPE=5

COLOR-Y=0

COLOR-M=0

COLOR-C=0

COLOR-K=1

PG-QTY=10

PG-PICK=1

<For Reference>

A3-size paper is used in this example.

In an actual case, it is recommended to make an adjustment using the paper (paper type, paper size) which is actually used by the user.

14.3.2.2 Wrinkle

14.3.2.2.1 Wrinkles appear on output paper: Pad cover wears out

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

Since wrinkles appeared on printed paper, the pressure pad and pad cover of the fixing belt assembly were replaced with a new one for solution.
- The pressure pad is used to form the appropriate fixing nip.

Field Remedy

When wrinkles appear on printed paper, replace the pressure pad and pad cover of the fixing belt assembly with new ones.

Reference: After replacing the pressure pad cover, apply silicon oil S-20 to the cover in the width of approx. 200mm from the center of the cover. When applying the silicon oil, make lint-free paper absorb the amount of oil that does not drip off.

FL2-5457 Pressure pad

FL2-2788 Pad cover

FY9-6011 LUBE S-20 SILICON OIL (50cc)

14.3.2.3 Ripple/Curl

14.3.2.3.1 Irregular size heavy paper curls up

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]**Description**

In the field, there was a case where the degree of curling of an irregular size paper was not corrected even though the curl correction level was adjusted at the same time as the paper was registered in Additional Functions > System Settings > Paper Type Management Settings. In this field case, in order to improving the degree of curling, the system (MN-CONT) software and the DC controller software were upgraded to Ver. 24.04 and Ver. 11.03, respectively, followed by changing the setting value of Curl Correction for Each Paper Source in Additional Functions mode.

Reference: System (MN-CONT) software of version 24.04 or later, and DC controller software of version 11.03 or later provide "Curl Correction for Each Paper Source" mode as a new Additional Functions mode.

Field Remedy

1. When the same symptom occurs, check the versions of System (MN-CONT) software and DCON software.
2. If System (MN-CONT) software is earlier than Ver. 24.04, and DCON software is earlier than Ver. 11.03, upgrade these pieces of software to later than those versions.
3. In Additional Functions > Adjustment/Cleaning > Curl Correction for Each Paper Source, select the paper source where the irregular size paper is loaded, and set any curl correction value; then make copies again.

Reference: The degree of approach of decurler roller varies depending on the type of used paper as well as selected job mode (face-up/face-down).

14.3.3 Malfunction**14.3.3.1 No Power****14.3.3.1.1 No power/E805-0014: Cable of DC Controller PCB causes wire-pinching**

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]**Description**

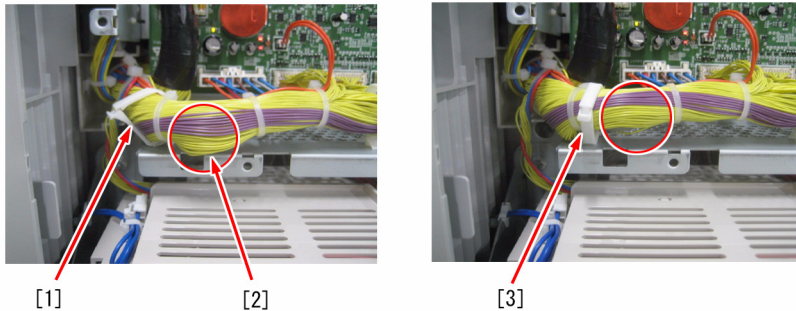
Since the cable at the bottom side of the DC Controller PCB was caught by the cover, no power was supplied. In this field case, this machine indicated the error code "E805-0014" even when power was supplied once in a while. When the same symptom occurs, perform the following field remedy.
- E805-0014 can be displayed when the lower rear fan of the fixing assembly is unlocked. (Left exhaust fan error)

Cause

Since the wire saddle controlling the position of the cable was off to the side, the cable was loosened to the downside, causing wire-pinching.

Field Remedy

1. Check to see if the cable is caught by (the downside of) the DC Controller cover.
2. If the cable is caught, detach the cover and check to see if the wire saddle fixing the cable position is off to the side shown as in [1] and the cable is loosed as shown in [2].



F-14-35

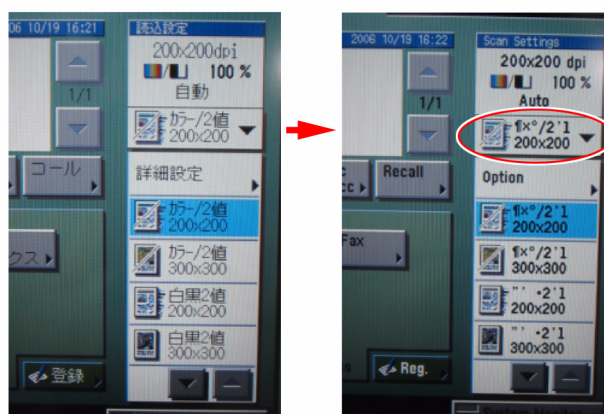
3. If the cable is loosened, reposition the wire saddle as shown in [3] and re-fix the wire saddle so that the cable is not loosened; then close the cover.

14.3.3.2 Control Panel-Related**14.3.3.2.1 When standard language is changed from Japanese to English, button names under Scan Settings are garbled in Send screen**

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]**Description**

When the standard language was changed from Japanese to English by making the following selections in sequence, the button names such as "Clr/Gray" and "Clr/B&W" displayed under Scan Settings in the SEND screen were garbled: [User mode > Common Settings > Language Switch].



F-14-36

Cause

The button names mentioned above are editable items, and were registered in Japanese (i.e., 2-byte characters). The same symptom will occur with the address buttons registered with Japanese characters.

Field Remedy

1. Make the following selections in sequence, then, the standard language will be changed to English: [Service mode (Level 2) > COPIER > Function > CLEAR > SND-STUP > OK].

Reference: Once the above service mode is set, the button names under Scan Settings remain in English even when the standard language is reset to Japanese with the Language Switch. To change the button names to Japanese, clear the setting for [SND-STUP] in service mode.

2. Turn the control panel switch OFF > turn the main power switch OFF/ON.

Note: The language of the address book data cannot be changed with [SND-STUP]. When using this machine by changing the standard language, register the data using the same language as the standard one.

14.3.3.2.2 On initial copy screen, "Black" cannot be set as standard setting for Auto-Color Select mode: Forced Secure Watermark Mode is set to ON

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1

[Case in the field]**Description**

After activating "Forced Secure Watermark Mode" in User Mode > System Settings, "Black" could not be set as standard setting for the Auto-Color Select mode on the initial copy screen. To solve this, system software was upgraded to Ver. 21.01.

Field Remedy

Check to see the version of system software; if it is earlier than Ver. 21.01, upgrade the software to Ver. 21.01 or later, and then set the standard Auto-Color Select mode again.

14.3.3.3 Malfunction/Faulty Detection

14.3.3.3.1 Message "Adjusting gradation. Please wait a moment." persists on machine with DC Controller software Ver. 7.08

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]**Description**

A machine of which system software was of version earlier than 7.08 and the service mode [TEMP-TBL] (mode for the fixing temperature control) was set to '4' sometimes kept displaying the message "Adjusting gradation. Please wait a moment."

Cause

Since [TEMP-TBL] was set to '4' (-20 deg. C control), the machine might not reach the target temperature at standby after auto calibration. (Since the temperature at completion of calibration varies depending on the temperature of fixing roller and belt, this symptom does not always occur.)

Field Remedy

When the symptom above occurs, perform the following procedure a., a. and b., or c.

a. In case the DC Controller software is of version earlier than 7.08.

a-1. Service mode > COPIER > Option > BODY > TEMP-TBL > set the value to '3' (-15 deg. C control).

b. In case the procedure a. affects curl correction for postcard

Reference: Refer to the Reference Guide [System Manager Settings > Storing/Editing Irregular Paper Types].

b-1. In Additional Function > System Settings > Paper Type Management Settings, create a paper type corresponding to the postcard, and then change the setting for [Curl Correction Level] to "Concave."

b-2. In the screen for setting the size of paper for the stack bypass, set a irregular size that is equivalent to the postcard (in Japanese case, X=148mm, Y=100mm), and select the paper created in Step b-1. for the type of used paper.

c. In case [TEMP-TBL] has to be set to '4' (-20 deg. C)

Upgrade the DC Controller Software to Ver. 9.01 or later. The software of Ver. 9.01 or later has the modified fixing temperature control.

14.3.3.3.2 Machine with image PRESS Service-T1 locks when progress bar runs one-third of whole length after power-on upon installation

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]**Description**

When the main power switch of this machine was turned ON after connecting the imagePRESS Service-T1 (PS-T1), this machine locked around the same

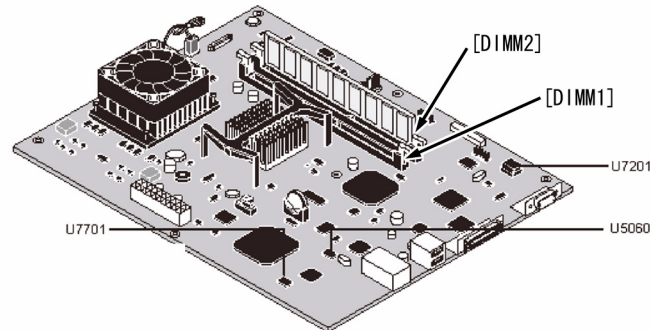
time as the progress bar on the LCD reached the point of about one-third of the whole length.

Cause

The 256MB option memory kit that should be connected to PS-T1 was mistakenly connected to the Main Controller PCB of this machine.

Field Remedy

When connecting a memory to PS-T1, connect it to DIMM1 socket (an inner socket) on the motherboard of PS-T1. On DIMM2 socket (an outer socket), a standard 256MB memory is connected.



F-14-37

Reference: When connecting only the imagePRESS server-T1, there is no need to mount an expansion memory to this machine.

14.3.3.3.3 When Saddle Finisher-AA2 saddle-stitches 12x18 size papers, paper folding position does not align with paper stapling position

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

When saddle-stitching 7 sheets of 12x18 size paper, the paper folding position did not align with the paper stapling position. In this inspection case, neither the position displacement of printed image nor the same symptom with such size papers as 11x17, LGL, and LTR-R could be seen.

Cause

For 12x18-size paper, there was a fault in controlling the position of the paper positioning plate.

Field Remedy

If the version of the Saddle Controller PCB, SDL-STCH software is earlier than Ver. 4.01, update the software to Ver. 4.01 or later, and perform the same job again. The SDL-STCH software Ver. 4.01 and later has modifications to the fault that the paper folding position shifts by about 0.25mm every time the finisher unit performs the saddle-stitch operation.

14.3.3.3.4 During copying, paper jam suddenly occurs and E748-4901 follows power-off/on operation

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

During copying, a paper jam suddenly occurred, and the error code "E748-4901" followed the power-off/on operation that was performed for solution to the jam; then, this machine was shut down in the shutdown mode, and the main power switch was turned ON again. However, this machine failed to started up. In this field case, the main power indicator on the control panel came on. When the same symptom occurs, go through the field remedy below.
- E748-4901 can be displayed when a drop in 3.3V (for emergency use) has been detected in the course of operation.

Cause

Since the red and blue lead wires extending from the drawer connector in the rear side of the fixing feeder assembly had been pinched, the safety circuit worked.

Field Remedy

1. Slide out the fixing feeder assembly, and then turn on the main power switch.
2. If this machine is powered on normally, check if the lead wires from the drawer connector in the rear side of the fixing feeder assembly are pinched; if the degree of pinching is too severe to be modified, replace the drawer connector.

Note: When attaching the drawer connector after modification of lead wires or replacement of drawer connector, be careful not to render the lead wires pinched.

3. If it is found that the lead wires are not pinched in Step2, refer to the troubleshooting for E748-4901 in the service manual and replace the power supply PCB and the DC controller PCB in this order.

FM2-2622 Drawer Cable 2
FM2-2623 Drawer Cable 1

14.3.3.3.5 Waste Toner Full Error (E013-0001) Displayed After Toner is Emptied from the Waste Toner Bottle

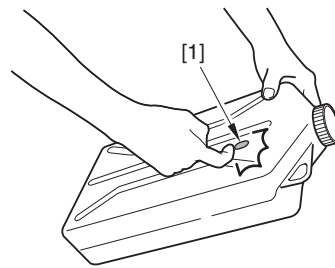
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Cause

When emptying toner in the waste toner bottle, it is possible that the residue toner adheres to the waste toner detection window inside the toner bottle. As a result, the toner can be mistakenly detected to be full causing waste toner full error (E013-0001).

2. Remedy

Tighten the cap to the waste toner bottle. Tilt the bottle as shown in the picture below, and tap the detection window 4 to 5 times lightly with your fingers (See Note). Attach the waste toner bottle onto the main body.



F-14-38

[1] Waste toner detection window



The detection method employed in the waste toner detection sensor is the magnetic detection method, instead of the often-used transmission detection system. Employing the magnetic detection method enables the sensor to detect correctly, even if a small amount of toner is left on the waste detection window. When tapping the window to remove the toner, do not tap it too hard.

14.3.3.3.6 ATR Error (E020-XXXX) Display due to Dirt on ATR Sensor Window

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Cause

The waste toner may adhere on the ATR sensor window or the sensor shutter. As a result of that, it may be faultily detected as ATR sensor fault and trigger the ATR sensor error (E020-XXXX).

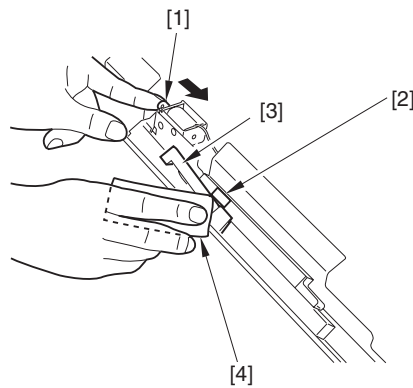


The detail codes (xxxx) are as follow: XXA0, XXA2, XXA8, XXA9, XXC0, XX10, XX11, XXDA.

Filed Measure

Clean the ATR sensor window and the ATR sensor shutter with the following procedure.

- 1) Remove the ATR sensor from the main body.
- 2) Press the plunger [1] of the ATR sensor lever solenoid in the direction of the arrow.
- 3) Clean the ATR sensor window [2] and the ATR sensor shutter [3] with lint-free paper [4].



F-14-39

14.3.3.3.7 Power Supply Voltage Connector Error (E009-0000) Indication at Replacement of the DC Controller PCB

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Cause

At replacement of the DC controller PCB, the voltage cannot be recognized unless the jumper connector (J1152) is disconnected from the old PCB and connected to the new one, resulting in power supply destination connector error (E009-0000).

Remedy in the Field

After replacing the DC controller PCB, be sure to disconnect the jumper connector (J1152) from the old PCB and connect it to the new one.



The destination and connectors specification are indicated below.

Voltage	jumper specifications	cable color
100V	connect the 1 and 2 pins	white
120V	connect the 2 and 3 pins	red
230V	connect the 2 and 4 pins	blue

14.3.3.3.8 ATR Error (E020-XXXX) Display at the time of Drum Replacement

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Cause

The ATR control is activated at the time of power on after the drum replacement.

At this time, the potential control for the patch detection becomes active and it adjusts the laser beam amount in accordance with the new drum in order to improve the accuracy of the patch detection.

However, if the difference of drum sensitivity is large between the old drum and the new drum depending on the degree of deterioration of the old drum, the protective function intervenes in the adjustment of laser beam amount, and the laser beam amount may not be optimized.

As a result of that, it may be faultily detected as patch detection fault and trigger the ATR sensor error (E020-XXXX).



The detail codes (xxxx) are as follow: XX85, XX90, XX93.

Filed Measure

Set the laser beam amount appropriate to the new drum with the following procedure.

- 1) Turn the main power OFF/ON.
- 2) Execute the service mode (drum reset: FUNCTION > DCP > DRM-RESET).
- 3) In case the error occurs although turning the main power OFF/ON once again, execute the step 1 and 2 up to 5 times.

If the error still occurs, it is caused by other factors.



Environmental changes rarely cause E061-0015 (potential control error) after replacement of the drum.

When this happens, turn OFF the power and then put it back ON and then perform the above procedure.

14.3.3.4 User Warning Message

14.3.3.4.1 When connecting RUI (using same PC and IP address) upon replacement of machine, message "(!) A error has occurred" is displayed in IE browser

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

When trying to connect the Remote UI with the same IP address in use after replacing this machine, the message "(!) A error has occurred" was displayed and the connection ended in failure.

Field Remedy

Perform the following procedure (cache clear) in the IE browser: [Tools > Internet Options > General > Temporary Internet Files > Delete files].

Cause

When a file is stored in cache, the browser uses the file for obtaining the connection instead of sending a request to this machine. In case of a model change, the content of the file may have been changed even though the name of the file is same as the one for the previous model. However, the machine neither notice this content change nor receive expected parameters, consequently causing the message.

14.3.3.4.2 Paper lifting place of Cassette 2 does not ascend/message "Load paper." does not disappear: Cassette 2 lifter motor (M23) malfunctions

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

Since the paper lifting plate did not operate although paper was loaded on Cassette 2, the message "Load paper" did not disappear. When the symptom occurs, perform the following field remedy.

Field Remedy

1. Interchange the lifter motor for Cassette 2 and that for another cassette.
2. If the symptom is solved, replace the lifter motor with a new one.
3. Re-fit the connector connecting the paper pick-up assembly of Cassette 2 and this machine.
4. Interchange the paper pick-up assembly for Cassette 2 and that for another cassette.

5. If the symptom is solved, replace the paper pick-up assembly with a new one.
 FK2-0016 DC Motor
 FM2-8068 Paper Pick-up Assembly

14.3.3.4.3 Message "Waste toner container full. Call service representative." does not disappear: Part counter is not cleared

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Manual-related]

Description

The message "Waste toner container full. Call service representative." appears probably in the following 2 cases: the waste toner bottle in the rear right of this machine is full, or the waste toner box mounted on the secondary transfer mount assembly (FM2-2485) is full.

Field Remedy

a. In case MN-CONT is Ver. 20.05 and DC-CON is Ver. 10.06 or later

a-1. In order to identify which waste toner container causes the message, check to see the values for the following service mode items: [Service Mode > COPIER > Display > MISC > WTN-V] and [Service Mode > COPIER > Counter > MISC > 2TC-BOX]. For [WTN-V], if the value in the left side (current value) is higher than that in the right side (threshold value), perform Step a-2. and a-3. If the value for [2TC-BOX] exceeds the target value (50,000), perform Step a-4. and a-5.

a-2. Empty the waste toner bottle in the rear right of this machine, and then clean it.

a-3. Execute the service mode COPIER > Function > CLEAR > W-TN-CLR.

a-4. Empty the waste toner box mounted on the secondary transfer mount assembly, and then clean it.

b. In case MN-CONT is earlier than Ver. 20.05 and DC-CON is earlier than Ver. 10.06

In order to identify which waste toner container causes the message, check to see the value in Service Mode > COPIER > Counter > MISC > 2TC-BOX. If the value exceeds the target value, perform Step a-4. and a-5. If the value does not exceed the target value, suspect that the waste toner bottle in the rear right of this machine is full, and perform Step a-2. and a-3.

Reference: Description on the waste toner detection

- Detection of the waste toner level inside the waste toner bottle

1. The magnetic sensor detects the waste toner level collected into the waste toner bottle.

2. Based on the image data sent from the Main Controller, the level of waste toner collected into the waste toner bottle is calculated. If the level reaches 80% or more, the calculation result is sent to the DC Controller to display a warning. If the level reaches 100%, the waste toner full is communicated to the Main Controller to stop this machine and indicate the error code "E013-0001."

- Detection of the waste toner level inside the waste toner box on the secondary transfer mount assembly

Based on the image data sent from the Main Controller, the level of waste toner inside the waste toner box on the secondary transfer mount assembly (FM2-2485) is calculated and the calculated value is stored as a soft counter value in the DC Controller. If this value reaches 50,000, this machine displays the message. If the value reaches 60,000, the DC Controller notices the waste toner full to the Main Controller and stops the machine's operation to display the error code "E013-0005."

FL2-2853 Waste Toner Bottle

FL2-5418 Waste Toner Box (on the secondary transfer mount assembly)

14.3.3.5 Other Defect

14.3.3.5.1 Paper skew/misalignment/failure to staple 1st copy set occurs at delivery unit of Finisher-AA1/AA2

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

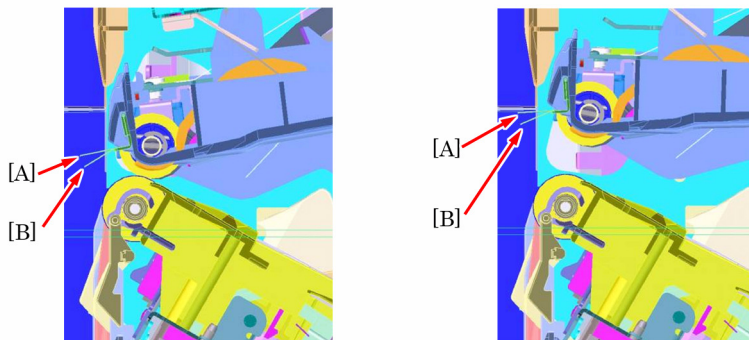
[Case in the field]

Description

In staple mode, paper skew started occurring from the 2nd copy of the 1st copy set at the processing tray, and then stapling failure occurred.

Cause

The tip of the static-charge eliminators mounted to the paper exit (swing guide assembly) of the Finisher was deformed as shown in [B] relative to [A], consequently preventing paper from being delivered normally.



F-14-40

Field Remedy

When the same symptom occurs, check the tip of the static-charge eliminators mounted on the swing guide assembly; if it has been deformed, replace the eliminators with new ones.

FC5-3667 Static-charge Eliminator

FC5-5571 Swing Guide Assembly

14.3.3.5.2 Hard disc (HDD) cannot be formatted: Version of selected Format file is not suitable for HDD

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

When installing a new hard disc drive and then formatting its hard disc with SST, an error occurred (in the SST side) and formatting ended in failure.

Cause

The version of selected Format file was not suitable for that hard disc drive.

Format File	HDD
Ver.0007	WD800JB-22JJC0
Ver.0006	HDS721680PLA380
Ver.0005	WD800BB-22JHC0
	HDS721680PLAT80
	WD800BB-22JHC0
	ST3802110A
	HDS722540VLAT20
	HDS728080PLAT20
	SAMSUNG SP0802N

Field Remedy

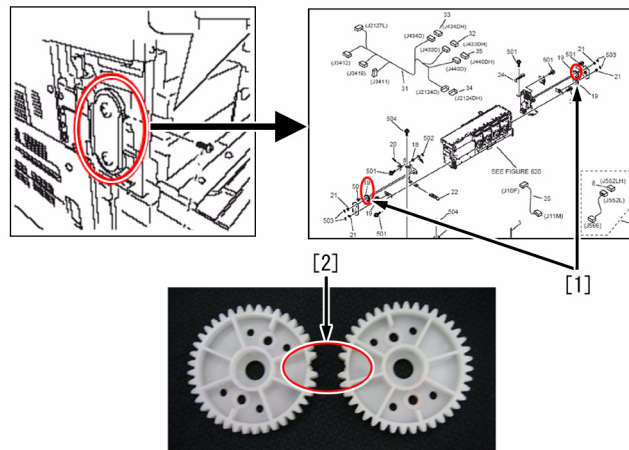
1. Check the version number of the Format file that has been loaded in SST; if it is earlier than Ver. 0007, load a Format file of Ver. 0007 or later.
Reference: This Format file is shared with iRC3100 series, iRC5180/4580/3880 series, iRC3380/2880 series, iRC6800 series, and imagePRESS-C7000 series.
2. Using SST, format the hard disc drive again.

14.3.3.6 Part Breakage/Detachment**14.3.3.6.1 Hopper assembly of copyboard cover-type machine does not move smoothly: 40T gear is broken**

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]**Description**

Since the hopper assembly was moved up and down without opening the copyboard cover, the rear left side of the assembly hit against the copyboard cover, and its lock arms failed to hook into the shafts. When the assembly was pushed with a greater force to let its arms fit onto the shafts, the assembly tilted and, while being moved repeatedly in such a situation, causing the breakage [2] of the 40T gears [1] (on both sides of the assembly).

**Cause**

When the hopper assembly was lifted, it hit against the copyboard cover, inclined, and applied a high load to the 40T gears, causing the symptom.

Field Remedy

1. In case that the hopper assembly does not move up and down smoothly, check to see if the 40T gears are broken.
 2. If the gears are broken, replace it by a new one.
- Note: Points to note when moving the hopper assembly up and down
- When moving the hopper assembly of a copyboard cover-type machine, be sure to open the copyboard cover before lifting the assembly.
 - As for a machine with a feeder unit, the same symptom does not occur because the hopper assembly does not hit on the feeder unit even when it is lifted. However, when bringing the hopper assembly up and down, be sure to keep both sides of the assembly on the level to prevent the breakage of the gears.
- FU6-0587 40T Gear

14.3.4 Network**14.3.4.1 Ping Failure****14.3.4.1.1 Ping Failure: When executing Ping command, message "No response from the host" appears due to WINS configuration error,**

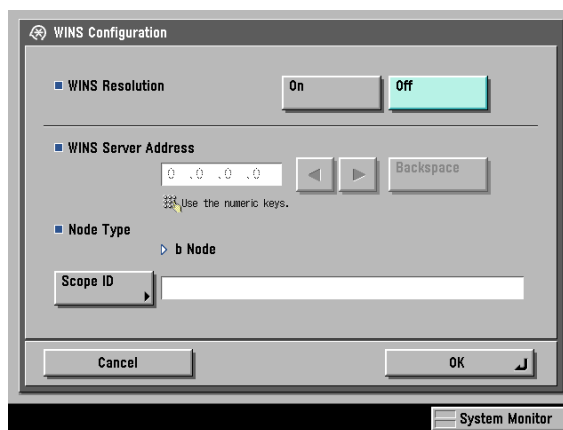
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]**Description**

Since the scope ID had been set under Additional Functions > System Settings > Network Settings > TCP/IP Settings > WINS Configuration, Ping failure occurred. In the typical network setting, the scope ID is not entered. If it is entered, communication between nodes with the same ID alone is available.

Field Remedy

1. In Additional Functions > System Settings > Network Settings > TCP/IP Settings > WINS Configuration, press [Scope ID]. When the keypad appears, delete the scope ID with the backspace key, and press [OK].



2. When the WINS Configuration screen reappears, make sure that the Scope ID field is empty, and then press [OK].
3. Turn the main power switch OFF and then ON to restart this machine.
4. Execute the Ping command 60 sec after power-on to check if the host responds it.

14.3.4.1.2 Ping Failure: When executing Ping command, message "No response from the host" appears due to Ethernet driver configuration error

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

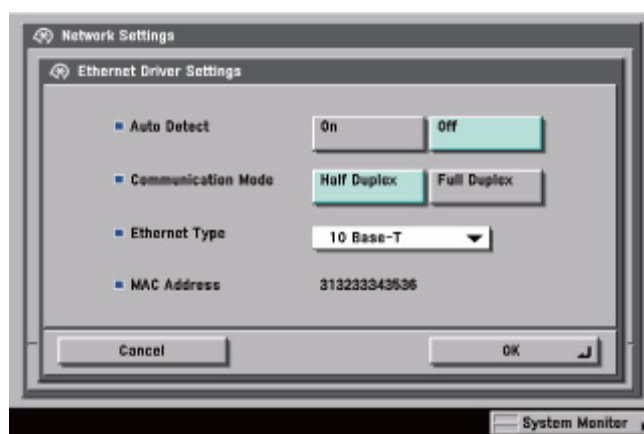
[Case in the field]

Description

In the field, there was a case where this machine failed to detect the Ethernet driver automatically, and therefore, did not execute the Ping command.

Field Remedy

1. Obtain the following 2 pieces of information from a system manager of the user.
 - Communication Mode: full duplex/half duplex
 - Ethernet Type: 10 BASE-T/100BASE-TX
2. Additional Functions > System Settings > Network Settings > Ethernet Driver Settings > Auto Detect > OFF > make a selection to "Communication Mode" and "Ethernet Type" > OK.
3. Turn the main power switch OFF/ON to restart this machine.
4. Execute the Ping command 60 sec after power-on to check if the host responds it.



14.3.5 Jam (Main Unit)

14.3.5.1 010A Jam Code occurs when using B5-size paper: Paper feed roller of right door assembly lacks pressure

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

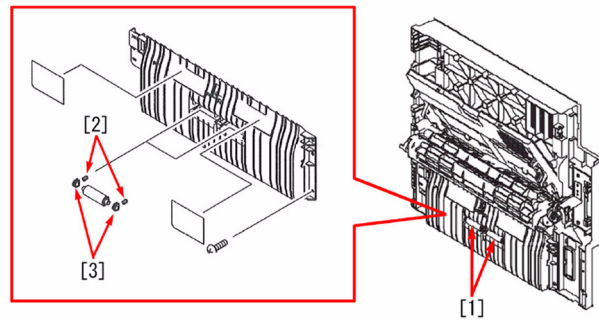
Description

Since the right door assembly warped slightly, the paper feed roller mounted on the assembly lacked pressure, causing a paper feeding problem when performing a copy job with B5-size paper in use. This resulted in the jam code "010A."

- 010A Jam Code: Delay jam at the registration sensor.

Field Remedy

In order to improve the paper feeding capability by increasing the pressure of the paper feed roller [1], the vertical roller bushing [3] and the compression spring [2] were changed from the machines with the following serial numbers.



F-14-41

When a machine with earlier than the following serial numbers causes a symptom like the above, replace the vertical roller bushing and compression spring of the feed roller with new ones at the same time.

FC7-7209Å@Vertical Roller Bushing

FC6-4881 Compression Spring

Serial number information

120V: TKW00001 and later

230V EUR: TKX00001 and later

230V A/B: TKY00001 and later

230V AU: TKZ00001 and later

14.3.5.2 011B Jam Code occurs at delivery assembly only when using small size paper (smaller than A4/LTR): Backside Driver PCB is faulty

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

Since "001B" Jam occurred at the delivery assembly only when using a small size paper (smaller than A4/LTR), the backside driver PCB was replaced with a new one for solution.

- 011B Jam Code can be displayed when a delay jam occurred at the decurler inlet sensor.

Cause

Since the backside driver PCB was faulty, the delivery roller failed to rotate when printing a small size paper, causing 011B jam.

Field Remedy

1. Re-fit J3806/J3811 connector of the backside driver PCB.
2. Re-fit J4025/J4204 connector of the decurler PCB.
3. If the symptom still occurs, replace the backside driver PCB with a new one.

FM2-7732 Rear Driver PCB Assembly

14.3.5.3 021B Jam Code/abnormal noise/open lever is hard to shift: Longer screw is used to fix decurler

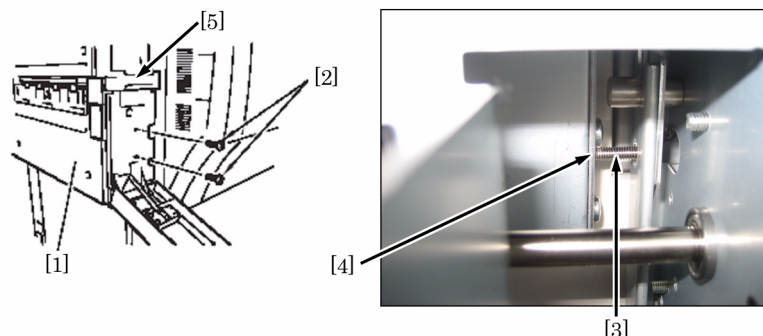
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

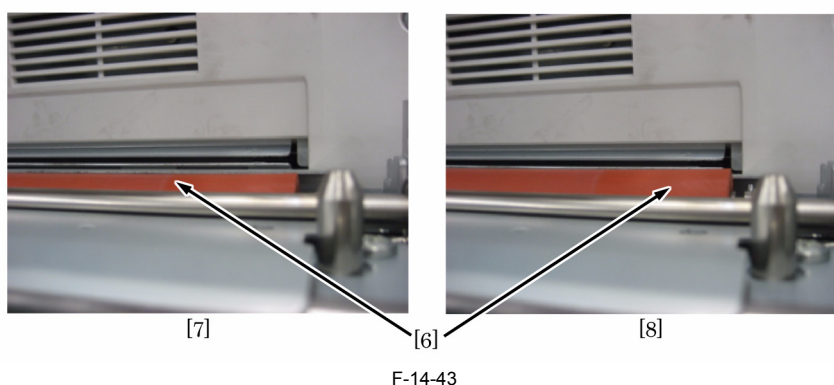
Since a 15mm-long screw [3] was used to mount the decurler unit instead of a 8mm-long binding screw (M4 x 8) [2], the tip of the screw contacted to the pressure plate and prevented the swing movement of the plate. This caused a paper jam or abnormal noise at the inlet of decurler. In an inspection case, the open lever [5] was hard to shift because the pressure plate was mounted in the wrong position when screwing the decurler unit.

- 021B: Stationary jam at the decurler inlet sensor (PS76)



F-14-42

In case the screw is contacting to the pressure plate, it is confirmed that the decurler roller [6] is lifted to a position higher than the regular position [7] (see Photo [8]) when the open lever is shifted.

**Field Remedy**

When the same symptom occurs, check to see if the tip of the screw fixing the decurler unit comes in contact with the pressure plate. The correct screw is a binding screw (M4 x 8mm).

14.3.6 Jam (FIN)**14.3.6.1 179F Jam Code occurs when running saddle jobs with double-face glossy (coated) heavy paper and Saddle Finisher-AA2 in use**

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]**Description**

Since a saddle job was performed using out-of-specification double-face glossy heavy paper, paper feed timing was delayed, and therefore the jam code "179F" was displayed.

- 179F Jam Code can be displayed when the saddle assembly does not notice normal paper reception within approx. 10 sec after the stacker assembly has noticed paper delivery to the saddle unit.

Cause

Since out-of-specification paper (double-face glossy heavy paper) was used, the stacker assembly failed to feed paper to the saddle assembly normally, causing a delay of paper feed timing. This resulted in the jam.

Field Remedy

Check the type of used paper; if glossy heavy paper is used, replace it by in-specification plain paper (64 to 105g/square meters), and then make copies again. Reference: Saddle control

In saddle jobs, the following steps are performed on every paper.

- Step1: The stacker assembly gives a paper transfer notice to the saddle assembly (using a signal).
- Step2: Paper is transferred from the stacker assembly to the saddle assembly.
- Step3: The saddle assembly gives a paper reception notice to the saddle assembly (using a signal).

14.3.6.2 179F Jam Code: J9 connector on Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB of Saddle Finisher-AA2 has poor contact

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]**Description**

When the jam code "179F" occurs during a saddle job, perform the following field remedy.

- 179F Jam can be displayed when the saddle assembly does not notice normal delivery of paper within about 10 sec after the stacker assembly notices paper transportation to the saddle assembly.

Field Remedy

1. Re-fit J9 connector of the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB.
2. Check to see if the crescent roller phase sensor (PI12) comes off; if so, re-fit it. If it is mounted correctly, re-fit J126 connector.
3. Suspect that the crescent roller phase sensor fails to get in position because of rotation failure of the feed motor (M1), and re-fit J115 connector of the motor; if the symptom is not solved, replace the motor.
WG8-5593 Photo-interrupter
4H3-0369 Stepping Motor

14.3.7 Error Code**14.3.7.1 E006-0002 occurs during standby: Fixing drawer connector has poor contact**

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]**Description**

In the field, the error code "E006-0002" was displayed. The cause of this error code seemed to be poor contact of the fixing drawer connector (the fixing heater cable unit).

- E006-0002 can be displayed when the disconnection state of the fixing unit is detected for 0.6msec with the front cover closed.

Field Remedy

1. Check to see if the set lever of the fixing/feeder assembly is set correctly.
2. Re-fit all the connectors on the DC controller PCB.
3. If the symptom still occurs, check if the fixing drawer connector is soiled or deformed; if so, clean or modify it. Or replace it with a new one.
FM2-2620 Fixing Heater Cable Unit

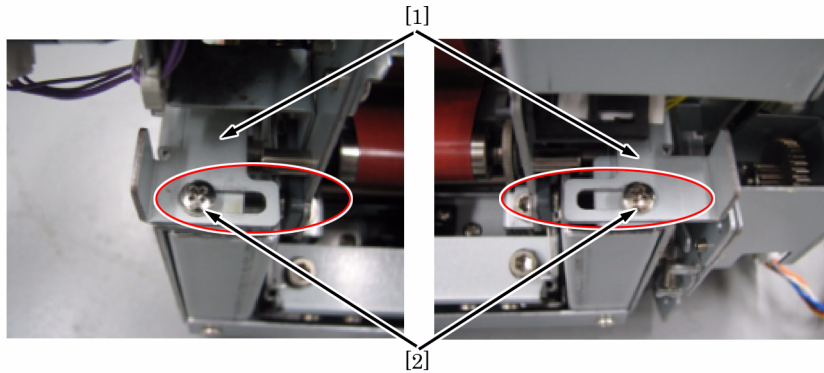
14.3.7.2 E007/010E Jam Code/abnormal noise: Fixing upper unit mount is attached improperly

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

Since the screw [2] fixing the fixing upper unit mount [1] was loosened (coming-off of the fixing pin), pressure was not applied to the fixing roller and the lower belt unit, causing the error code "E007", the jam code "010E", or abnormal noise.

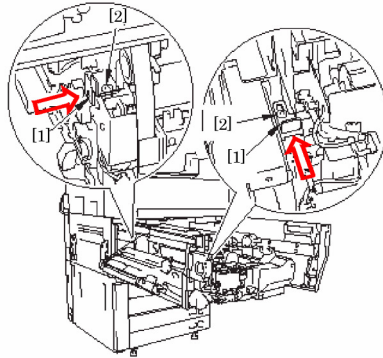


F-14-44

- E007 can be displayed when a belt displacement error occurs.
- 010E: Delay jam at the reverse inlet sensor (PS17)

Field Remedy

When the same symptom occurs, check to see if the screws fixing the fixing upper unit mount are loosened; if so, check to make sure that the fixing pins are inserted into the appropriate shaft holes, and then tighten the screws. As a preventive measure for this symptom, tighten these screws during service work.



F-14-45

- When checking the rear screw, pull out the fixing feeder assembly in 2 steps, and open the external delivery assembly and the inner paper delivery assembly; then view the rear side of the fixing assembly from the above.
- When checking the front screw, remove the front cover of the fixing assembly.

14.3.7.3 E014-0003: Load is applied to fixing roller drive assembly

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]**Description**

Since machines having a serial number earlier than the following did not have an appropriate space between the flange of the one-way gear (FU6-0646) in the rear side of the fixing assembly and the push-on area of the rear fixing gear (FU6-0651), torque was increased, ultimately causing the error code "E014-0003."

- Serial Number:

120V machine: TKW00039

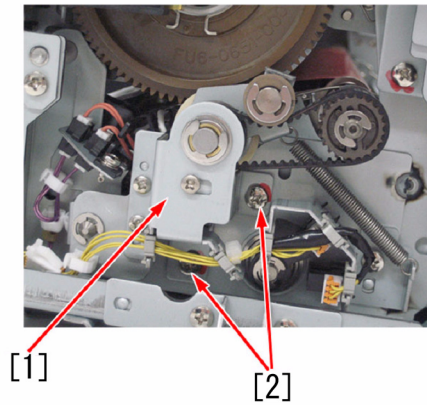
230V machine: TKY00006

- E014-0003 can be displayed when unlock of motor lock is detected for 1sec or more after the belt drive motor starts rotating stably.

Field Remedy

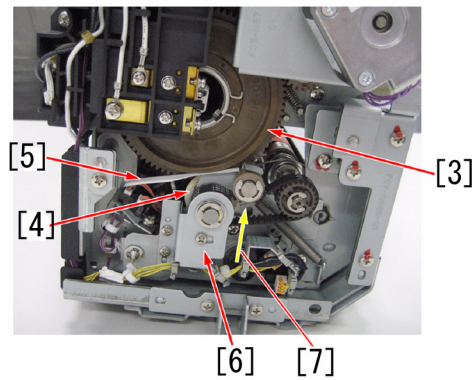
1. Let the fixing belt into release state (i.e., turn the power switch OFF or open the front door).
2. Slide out the fixing assembly from the machine.
3. Loosen the 2 binding screws (M4) [2] of the separation drive mount assembly [1].

Note: The 2 screws mentioned above are locked with bonding material to prevent them from being loosened. Therefore, do not loosen or remove them except when the same symptom occurs.



F-14-46

4. Fold a sheet of paper (50mm x 20mm/ 64g to 80g plain paper from SK) into two > insert it between [3] and [4] as shown [5] in the photo > lift the separation drive mount assembly [6] in the direction of the arrow [7] > tighten the 2 binding screws (M4) that was loosened in Step 3 to fix the separation drive mount assembly in place.



F-14-47

5. Remove the paper inserted in Step 4, and open it; then inset it between the flange of the one-way gear and the push-on area of the rear fixing gear to check to make sure that it can make its way without any resistance.

14.3.7.4 E014-0003 : Due to ball bearing breakage in fixing belt drive assembly

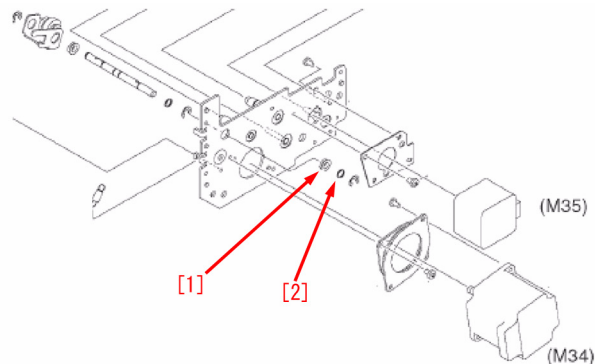
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

Ball bearing [1] equipped to the fixing belt drive shaft was broken, resulting heavy load on the belt drive motor and E014-0003 occurrence.

FIGURE 850



- E014-0003: Detects unlock of motor lock for 1 sec or more after the belt drive motor performs stabilized rotation.

Cause

Fixing belt drive shaft and ball bearing core were dislocated, so the ball bearing was broken. In order to solve this problem, the sheet metal shape of the fixing belt drive assembly and ball bearing [1] (XG9-0407 to XG9-0628) were changed from the machine serial number shown below. In addition, due to this change, washer [2] (FS5-6488) was removed.

- Machine serial number:
230A/B: CUL00082 and later

EUR: CUH00634 and later
 AU: CUM00093 and later
 CHN: CUN00020 and later

Field Remedy

If the machine prior to the foregoing serial number has the same symptom, and ball bearing is broken, replace the fixing belt drive assembly.
 Note: In the fixing belt drive assembly, two other ball bearings (XG9-0407) are used, but no change was made on these two bearings.
 FM2-2478 Fixing Belt Drive Assembly

14.3.7.5 E020-01A9: ATR shutter malfunctions

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

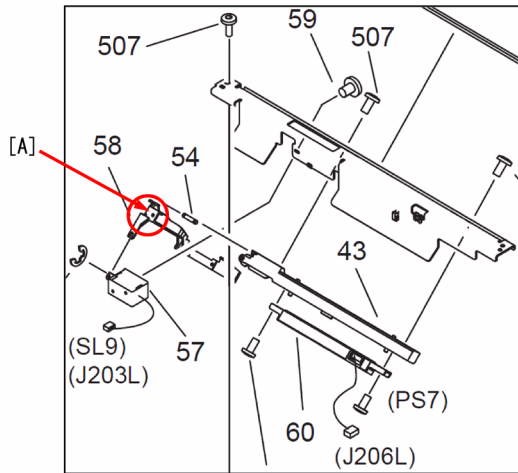
[Case in the field]

Description

Since the ATR shutter malfunctioned, the error code "E020-01A9" was indicated.
 - E020-01A9 can be displayed when the T/D ratio identified at ATR control has underperformed the lower limit (3%) 3 times continuously. (The first 2 digits of the detail code indicates color: 01 = Y, 02 = M, 03 = C, and 04 = K.)

Cause

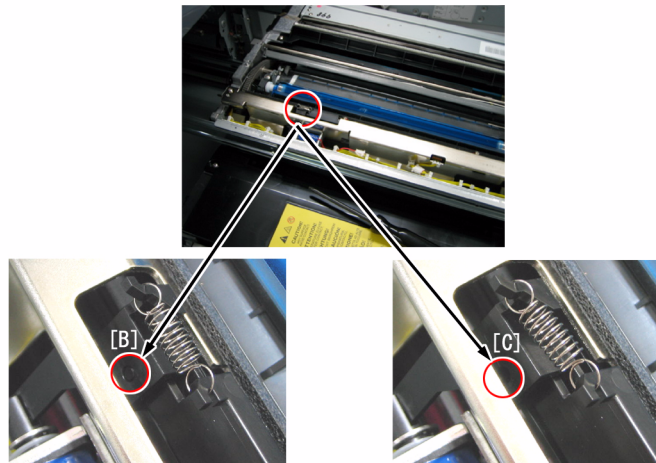
Since the boss [A] of the ATR shutter link came off the boss hole, the shutter did not move when the solenoid (SL9) was turned ON.



F-14-48

Field Remedy

1. Turn the main power switch OFF and then ON.
2. If Step 1 does not work on the symptom, check to see if the boss on the ATR shutter link is fit to the boss hole like [B].
3. If the boss comes off the hole like [C], re-fit it like [B].



F-14-49

Note: When detaching and then attaching the developing assembly during installation or service work, be sure not to slam the assembly into the shutter to prevent the boss in question from coming off the hole.

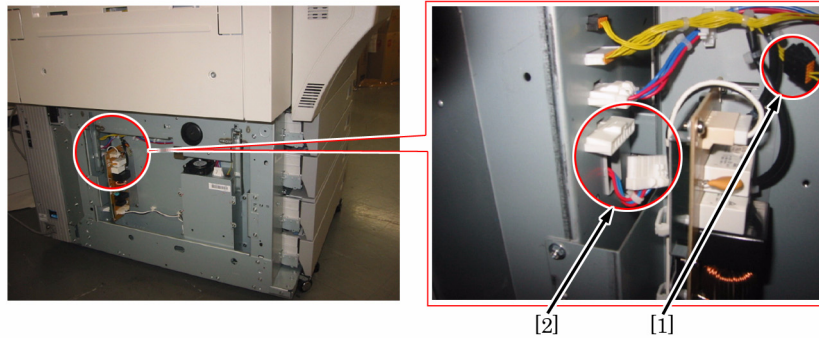
14.3.7.6 E021-0001 appears on machine without Power Supply Unit-S1: Connector or jumper connector is discontinued

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

A machine that was not equipped with the Power Supply Unit-S1 for the DADF indicated the error code "E021-0001." This was because a jumper connector [1] or a connector in the main body side [2] that was found when removing the lower left cover was disconnected.
 Reference: The connectors [1] and [2] are disconnected when the Power Supply Unit is mounted.



F-14-50

- E021-0001 can be displayed when the developing rotary HP cannot be detected because of the rotary HP sensor error, incorrect wiring of the DC controller PCB, or lack of torque due to excess load to the developing assembly.

Cause

Electrical power was not supplied to the Backside Driver PCB.

Field Remedy

When the symptom occurs after performing a work by removing the lower left cover, check to see if the jumper connector or the connector in the main body side is disconnected; if so, re-connect the disconnected connector.

Reference: In the Service Manual, the following 4 faults are listed as conceivable causes.

1. A soiling on the rotary HP sensor (PS21) found in the rear side of the P-Kit and poor contact of J208 connector.
2. A fault in the rotary HP sensor (PS21).
3. Poor contact of J3802 or J3810 connector of the Backside Driver PCB.
4. Poor contact of J1198 connector of the DC Controller PCB.

14.3.7.7 E025-0102: J301D connector of hopper motor has poor contact

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

Since J301D connector of the yellow hopper motor (M39) had poor contact, the error code "E025-0102" was displayed.

- E025-0102 can be displayed when an error in timeout of a supplying motor occurs. (The first 2 digits of sub code means the problem color as follows: 01=Y; 02=M; 03=C; 04=K)

Field Remedy

Check the sub code for a problem color, and then check to see the connection of the applicable hopper motor before replacing the toner feedscrew and others.
Reference: Y=M39/J301D; M=M40/J303D; C=M41/J305D; Bk=M42/J307D

14.3.7.8 E025-0004 occurs when replacing drum

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

Since the error code "E025-0004" was indicated after replacement of the drum, the drum was pull out and then re-inserted for solution.

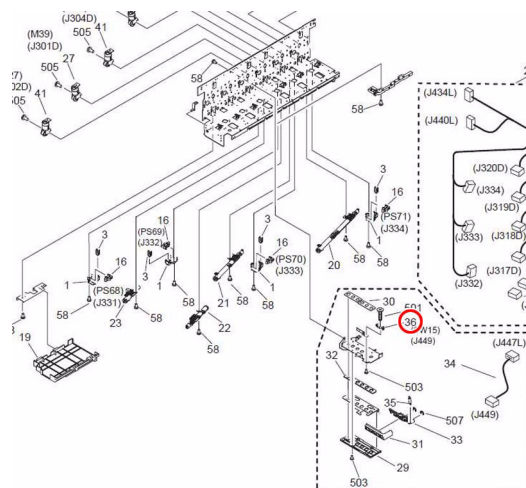
- E025-0004 can be displayed when toner is supplied with the hopper shutter closed.

Cause

When closing the hopper, it was not closed completely.

Field Remedy

1. Open the hopper assembly, and then close it slowly so that either sides of the assembly fit simultaneously.
2. If the symptom still occurs, pull out the drum and then insert it again.
3. If the symptom still occurs, re-fit the connector of the hopper shutter switch (SW15).
4. If the symptom still occurs, replace the hopper shutter switch (SW15) with a new one.



F-14-51

WC4-5262 Microswitch

14.3.7.9 E025-0102: Connector of Yellow toner supply screw HP sensor (PS68) has poor contact

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

Since the yellow toner supply screw HP sensor (PS68) had poor contact, the error code "E025-0102" was displayed.

- E025-0102 can be displayed when the supply motor timeout error occurs. (The first 2 digits of detail code means as follows: 01 is yellow; 02 is magenta; 03 is cyan; and 04 is black.)

Field Remedy

The instruction in the service manual requires replacement of the toner supply screw of trouble color. However, before doing so, perform the following procedure.

1. Check to know the hopper that caused a trouble from the detail code.

2. Refit the connector of cartridge motor of the trouble color with reference to the following.

- Y: M39/J301D

- M: M40/J303D

- C: M41/J305D

- K: M42/J307D

3. If the symptom still occurs, refit the connector of corresponding sensor with reference to the following:

- Y: PS68/J331

- M: PS69/J332

- C: PS70/J333

- K: PS71/J334

14.3.7.10 E061-0001/E061-0015/E061-0009: Potential Sensor PCB is faulty

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

Since E061-0001/E061-0015/E061-0009 was recorded as an error history, the Potential Sensor PCB was replaced by a new one for solution.

- E061-0001 can be displayed when the potential is 20V or less during initial rotation at image formation.

- E061-0009 can be displayed when at potential control, VL potential indicates the specified value or more.

- E061-0015 can be displayed when the laser power adjustment is not completed.

Field Remedy

1. Check the connection of the Potential Sensor PCB.

2. If the symptom still occurs, replace the Potential Sensor PCB with a new one.

FM2-2642 Potential Sensor PCB Assem

14.3.7.11 E061: How to perform '0' level adjustment after replacing potential sensor PCB

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Manual-related]

Description

After replacement of the potential sensor PCB, using the electrode for checking potential (FY9-3057), perform the '0' level adjustment of the potential sensor, and then mount the sensor. If the sensor is mounted without performing this adjustment, the error code "E061" may be displayed although the image density may not vary widely.

- E061 can be displayed when the specified level of potential is missing or the limiter goes on at time of potential control.

Reference: The electrode for checking potential is used to check '0' level of the surface potential sensor.

FM2-2642 Potential Sensor PCB Assembly

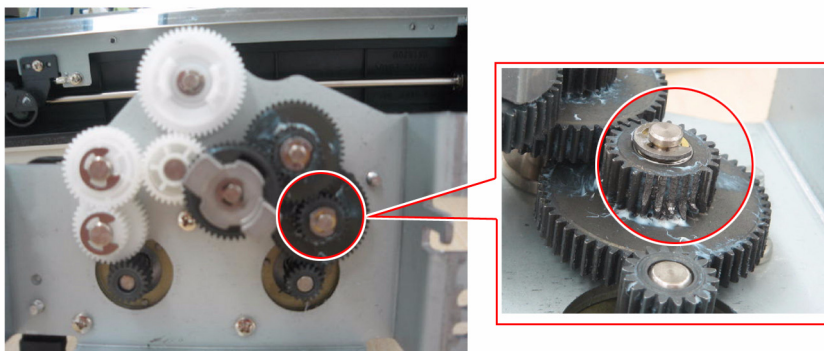
14.3.7.12 E077-0001/E077-0101/E077-1001: Gear in Sec. Transfer Cam Drive Assembly is broken

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

Since the 25T/45T gear of the secondary transfer cam drive assembly was broken, the error code "E077-0001/E077-0101/E077-1001" was displayed.



F-14-52

- E077-0001 can be displayed when the HP sensor cannot detect the home position of the secondary transfer roller within 5 sec after start of detection.

- E077-0101 can be displayed when the detachment/attachment sensor cannot detect the position of the secondary transfer roller at completion of the transfer operation.

- E077-1001 can be displayed when the theory of the sensor has changed between the HoldOn signal and the MtrOn signal (50msec).

Field Remedy

1. Check to see if the 25T/54T gear in the secondary transfer cam drive assembly is broken.

2. If the gear has been broken, replace it or the secondary transfer cam drive assembly by a new one. At the same time, check to see if the 23T/50T gear in the secondary transfer mount assembly that engages with the 25T/54T gear has been damaged.

3. If the 23T/50T gear has also been damaged, replace it or the secondary transfer mount assembly by a new one.

FU7-0382 25T/54T Gear

FM2-2490 Sec. Transfer Cam Drive Assembly

FU7-0381 23T/50T Gear
FM2-2485 Secondary Transfer Mount Assembly

14.3.7.13 E198-1000: J3502 connector on Color Sensor Driver PCB has poor contact

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

Since Pin7 of J3502 connector on the Color Sensor Driver PCB became loose, the connector had poor contact, ultimately causing the error code "E198-1000."
- E198-1000 can be displayed when a communication error occurs between the Color Sensor Driver PCB and the DC Controller PCB.
- The Color Sensor Driver PCB is used to detect the density of patch on image.

Field Remedy

1. Gently pull each wire of J3502 connector cable on the Color Sensor Driver PCB to check if there is a pin that becomes loose; if any, go to Step 2. If not, go to Step 3.
2. Bring up the claw of the loosen pin slightly, and insert it to the connector; then check to make sure that the pin does not come off the connector.
3. Gently pull each wire of J1182 connector cable on the DC Controller PCB to check if there is a pin that becomes loose; if any, go to Step 4. If not, go to Step 5.
4. Bring up the claw of the loosen pin slightly, and insert it to the connector; then check to make sure that the pin does not come off the connector.
5. If the symptom still occurs after Step 1 or Step 3, check the drawer connector cable of the fixing feeder assembly in the same manner as described above. If a fault is found, modify it.

FM2-7733 Color Sensor Driver PCB Assembly

14.3.7.14 E202-0001/E202-0002/ Document exposure lamp's failure to light up occurs when mounting DADF-R1

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

After mounting the DADF-R1, either of the following symptoms occurred: document exposure lamp's failure in lighting up, E202-0001, or E202-0002.
- E202-0001 can be displayed when an error is found during the forward trip of the HP search. The possible cause of this error is a fault in the scanner motor or the reader controller PCB.
- E202-0002 can be displayed when an error is found during the return trip of the HP search. The possible cause of this error is a fault in the scanner HP sensor, scanner motor, or reader controller PCB.

Cause

Since the fan harness was pinched when mounting the cooling fan, the fuse on the interface PCB had an open-circuit.

Field Remedy

1. When the same symptom occurred after mounting the DADF-R1, check if the harness of the cooling fan is pinched.
 2. If the cooling fan harness is pinched, suspect removal of harness covering and replace the fan and interface PCB with new ones (because the fuse may have had an open-circuit).
- FL2-3427 Front Fan
FL2-3426 Rear Fan
FM2-4662 Interface PCB Assembly

14.3.7.15 E225-0001 occurs with machine in which R-CON software Ver. 1.27 is installed

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

A machine in which R-CON software Ver. 1.27 was installed sometimes caused the error code "E225-0001."
- E225-0001 can be displayed when the shading level is lower than the specified due to blowout of the lamp.

Cause

There was a difference in timing between the CCD output and detection.

Field Remedy

1. Check the version of the R-CON software; if it is earlier than Ver.4.02, upgrade the software to ver. 4.02 or later.
 2. If the version of the software is earlier than Ver. 4.02, refit the flexible cable connecting the Reader Controller PCB to the Inverter PCB. Or clean the terminals of the cable with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol, and then refit the terminals. Also, check the connection of the scanner lamp (Xenon lamp) connector.
 3. If the symptom still occurs, replace the CCD with a new one.
- FM2-3920 CCD Unit

14.3.7.16 E604-1536 is displayed when connecting Secure Watermark-A1: This machine does not have sufficient image memory

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

Since the error code "E604-1536" was displayed upon installation due to insufficient image memory, an image memory (option) was connected for solution.
- E604-1536 can be displayed when the image memory is faulty or lacking.

Field Remedy

When connecting the Secure Watermark-A1, Security Expansion Board-E1, and imageRUNNER Security Kit-A2, a memory of 512MB is required. When connecting these items, connect an option memory (512MB DDR-SDRAM) to the connector at J1001 on the Main Controller PCB.
Note: If the Security Expansion Board-E1 or the imageRUNNER Security Kit-A2 is used together with the Color UFR1I/PCL/PS Printer Kit-P1, it is not necessary to connect the option memory. This is because it comes standard with the Color UFR1I/PCL/PS Printer Kit-P1.
0529B002 imageRUNNER512MB Expansion RAM-C1 (Product)

14.3.7.17 E677-0080: Communication error occurs between this machine and imagePRESS Server- Q1

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

Since the error code "E677-0080" was indicated, the Reset key on the front side of the imagePRESS Server-Q1 was pressed to correct the error. In case that the same symptom occurs, perform the following field remedy before pressing this Reset key.
- E677-0080 can be displayed when there is an error in the communication with the printer after the external controller has started up normally.

Field Remedy

1. Make the following selections in sequence and check to make sure that the setting value of the service mode item is '3': [Service mode > COPIER > Option > INT-FACE > IMG-CONT].
 2. Turn the main power OFF > re-fit the connection cable > turn the main power switch ON.
 3. Execute [Restart] in the imagePRESS Server-Q1 side.
 - 3-1. Make the selections as follows, and then check to make sure that the indication displayed at the upper left of the LCD is "idle": [Print Server tab (=>) > Printer Status/Settings].
- Note: In case the message "Printing" or "Processing" appears on the LCD, the PS unit is in operation. In this case, wait until the message is changed to "idle." In case that "idle" has just appeared, wait more than 5 sec before performing the shutdown operation.
- 3-2. Press the menu button on the display of the PS unit, and then select "Restart" in the next screen. If the symptom is not solved, execute the following in the following order: [System Reboot > Shut Down].
- Reference: About "Restart", "Reboot", and "Shut Down"
- Restart (software reset)
- The system software of the PS unit is reset; however, the whole system is not rebooted. On the other hand, the network connection is temporarily lost and all the running jobs are stopped and deleted.
- Shut Down
- All the system of the PS unit is brought to an end and the main power switch of the unit is also turned OFF. In order to turn the main power of the PS unit, use this function.
- Reboot (hardware reset)
- All the appropriate operations of the PS unit is shut down, and rebooted
4. If Step 1 through 3 do not work on the symptom, re-install controller system.

14.3.7.18 E733-0001 sometimes occurs during printing

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]**Description**

During a continuous printing job, this machine suddenly stopped printing, frozen up the LCD, and then indicated the error code "E733-0001" approx. 1 min later. In other case, the machine displayed the jam code "0A05" or "0A08" after solving the error code.

When it is found that this machine has a record of "E733-0001" as the error history, perform the following field remedy.

- E733-0001 can be displayed when a printer communication cable error occurs.

Field Remedy

(The workaround as of Nov. 28, 2006)

1. Additional Functions > System Settings > Device Management Settings > Dither Pattern Settings > check if "Gradation", "Resolution", and "Rep. Scan Image" are set to "High Definition" or "Compatible"; if so, select another setting > OK.
2. When the dither pattern settings are changed, color balance will be lost. To modify color balance, execute the Auto Gradation Adjustment (full adjust), and then run several print jobs.
3. If it is confirmed that a setting other than "High Definition" and "Compatible" has been selected in Step1, turn OFF the main power switch, and check the connection of the connectors on the DC Controller PCB and the Main Controller PCB; then turn the main power switch ON again, and run several print jobs.

14.3.7.19 E747-3901 is indicated depending on timing of copy operation: SDRAM has poor contact

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]**Description**

After power-on, this machine started normally and displayed the message "Ready to copy", but then it indicated the error code "E747-3901" when it performed a copying operation. Therefore, SDRAM was re-fitted for solution.

Field Remedy

1. Remove SDRAM from the Main Controller PCB.
 2. Wipe the terminal of SDRAM with lint-free paper impregnated with alcohol, and then re-fit the SDRAM.
- WA7-3617 SD-RAM (DIMM)

14.3.7.20 E747-0219 occurs in a certain mode (i.e., when selecting Image Repeat > Area Designation (or Flaming) > Copy Ratio)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]**Description**

Since the error code "E747-0219" was displayed when making copies in the job mode set up by making the selections below, system software was upgraded to Ver. 51.01 for solution.

[Special Features > Image Creation > Image Repeat > Area Designation (or Framing) > Copy Ratio]

- E747-0219 can be displayed when an error occurs in the Main Controller PCB (main).

Cause

An error occurred in controlling the image repeat operation.

Field Remedy

When the same symptom occurs, check the version of system software; if it is earlier than Ver. 51.01, upgrade the software to Ver. 51.01 or later and then make copies.

14.3.7.21 E748-4311 is indicated after installing LIPS LX Printer & Scanner Kit-P1: RB-A board is mounted incorrectly (Japanese field)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]**Description**

After installing the LIPS LX Printer & Scanner Kit-P1, the error code "E748-4311" was indicated.

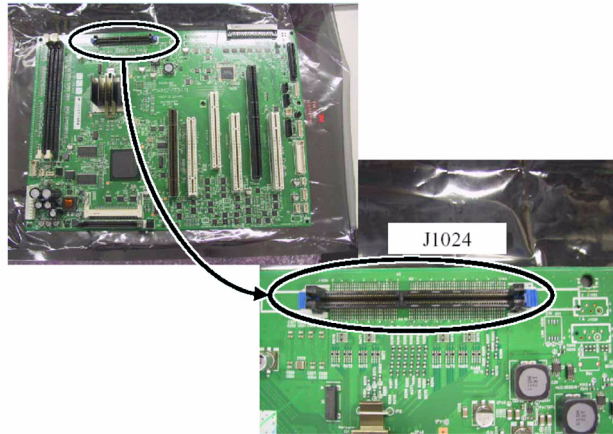
- E748-4311 can be displayed when the RB-A board (PCB for LIPS-LX printer & scanner kit- P1) cannot be detected.

Cause

After installing the LIPSLX Printer & Scanner Kit-P1, the license was released without installing the RB-A board that came with the Kit.

Field Remedy

1. Check to see if the RB-A board that came with the LIPS LX Printer & Scanner Kit-P1 is connected to J1024 connector on the lower left of the Main Controller.



F-14-53

2. If the RB-A board is connected correctly, wipe its terminal with lint-free paper impregnated with alcohol, and then refit the board.

14.3.7.22 E000/E004: Drawer connector pin of Fixing Heater Cable Unit moves back (JP Model)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

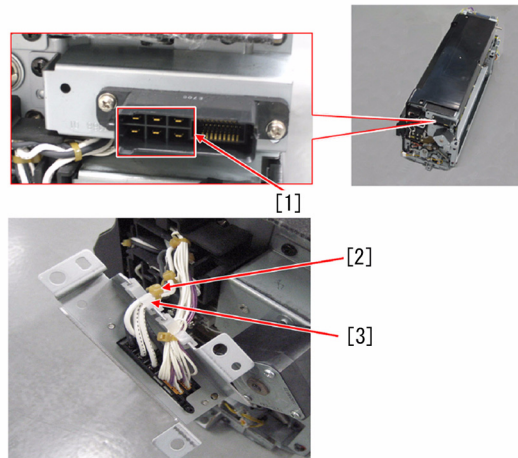
Description

Since the AC terminal of the fixing drawer connector (in the fixing assembly side) moved back, the connector failed to have secure contact with the connector in the main body side, causing the error code "E000" or "E004."

- E000 can be displayed when the rise in temperature of the fixing assembly is not high enough at power-on.
- E004 can be displayed when an error occurs in the protection circuit of the fixing assembly.

Cause

The tie-wrap [2] binding the cable of the fixing heater cable unit in the fixing assembly side came in contact with the edge saddle [3], and received excessive stress. This might make the drawer connector pin [1] in the fixing assembly side tilt. Since the fixing assembly was set in this condition, the connector hit against the connector in the main body side, and made the pin [1] in the main body side move back, causing poor contact of the connectors.



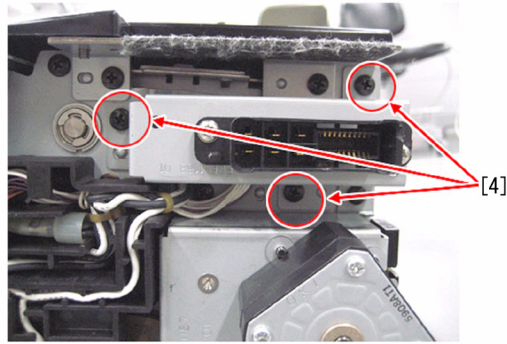
F-14-54

To prevent this, the tie-wrap [2] applying stress to the fixing heater cable was eliminated from the machines below:
- imagePRESS-C1: TUK00349 and later

Field Remedy

When the machines without the above-mentioned serial numbers cause the symptom, or at time of service work, perform the following procedure.

1. Take out the fixing assembly from the main body.
2. Remove the 3 screws [4] and detach the fixing heater cable unit together with its mounting plate.

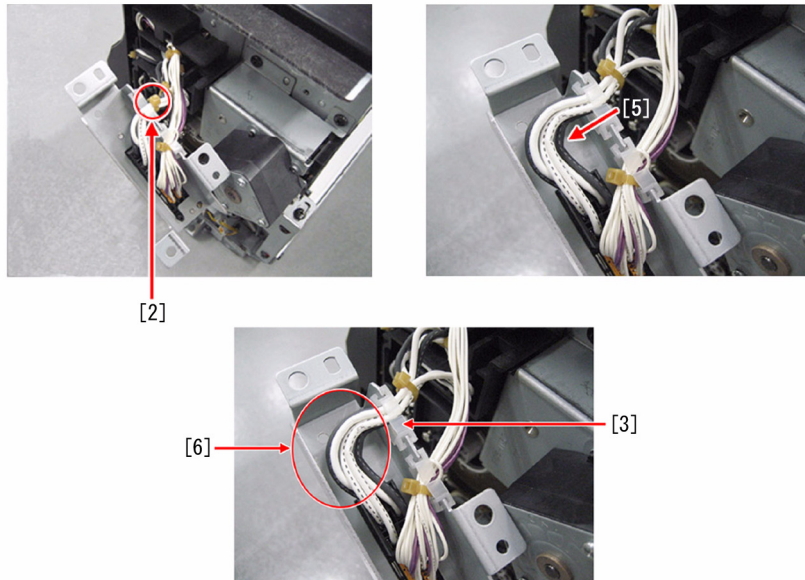


F-14-55

3. Cut the tie-wrap [2] binding the fixing heater cable.

Note: When cutting the tie-wrap, cut only the head of the tie-wrap with a nipper while paying attention not to damage the cable.

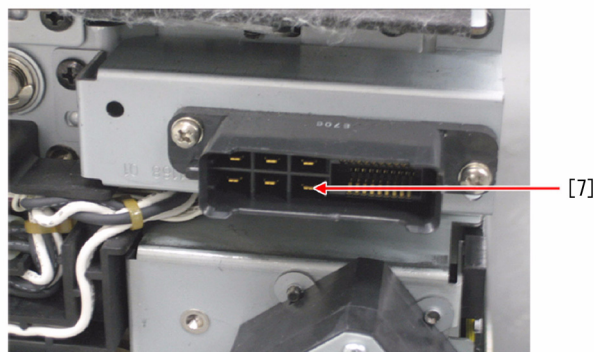
4. After cutting the tie-wrap [2], pull the cable toward the metal plate (in the direction of the arrow) [5] by approx. 10mm, and then sleeve the part [6] of the cable to release stress. After sleeving, check to make sure that the cable does not escape from the saddle edge [3].



F-14-56

5. Push the connector pin from the backside of the fixing drawer connector by the finger, and then check to see from the front side of the connector if the connector pin [7] is still set back far from the connector frame edge. Or replace the fixing heater cable unit by a new one.

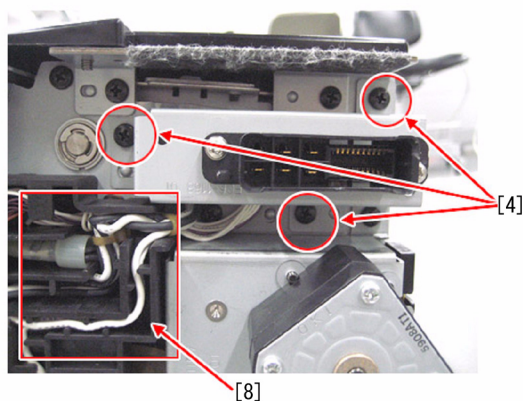
Reference: The fixing heater cable unit that is offered as a service part does not have the tie-wrap [2].



F-14-57

6. Mount the fixing heater cable unit to the fixing assembly with the 3 screws [4].

Note: After mounting the unit, be sure to make sure that the cable is not out of the guide [8].



F-14-58

7. Mount the fixing assembly to the main body.

8. If the error code "E000" appears, make the following selections in sequence to clear the code: [Service mode > COPIER > Function > CLEAR > ERR > OK].

FM2-2620 Fixing Heater Cable Unit

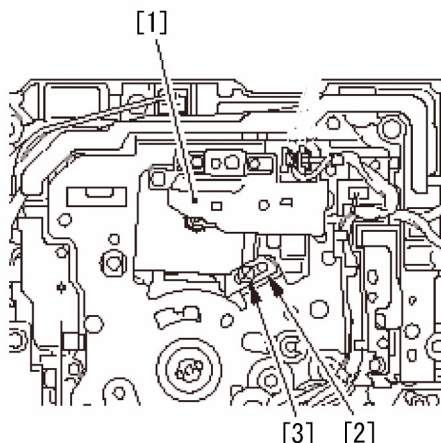
14.3.7.23 E820-0003 is indicated: Primary corona assembly is mounted incorrectly

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

The error code "E820-0003" (fan error) was indicated when the primary corona assembly [1] was mounted. This was because the fixture [2] of the assembly was not fixed (with the screw [3]) at the bottom-left within its movable range.



F-14-59

Cause

Because of the ill-positioned fixture, the primary corona assembly failed to go as far as it could and had poor contact, causing noise. This noise caused the error code.

Field Remedy

When the error code "E820-0003" was indicated after mounting the primary corona assembly during service work, following the procedure below and check to see if the fixture of the assembly is installed correctly.

1. Push the primary corona assembly with fingers. If the assembly moves with click (i.e., if there is play), suspect that the assembly is not mounted correctly.
2. Using a screw, fix the fixture [2] at the bottom-left within its movable range.

14.3.7.24 E842-0009 occurs at last rotation performed during a continuous black-and-white job

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Inspected by Canon Inc.]

Description

When running a copy job to print a black-and-white image on 60 sheets of 13x19-size plain paper, the message "Adjusting gradation. Please wait a moment." and then the error code E842-0009" was indicated after all the 60 copies had been output.

- E842-0009 can be displayed when the external heat roller is detected as being in contact with the dormant fixing roller for 300msec continuously (an error in pressing the external heat roller).

Cause

During last rotation performed for the time of a continuous black-and-white job, the fixing roller stopped earlier than the specified timing, letting this machine falsely detect E842-0009.

Field Remedy

For the purpose of preventing false detection of E842-0009, the DC controller software was upgraded to Ver. 12.03. When the same symptom occurs, check the version of the DC controller software; if it is earlier than Ver. 12.03, upgrade the software to Ver. 12.03 or later, and then make copiers.

14.3.8 Specifications-Related FAQ

14.3.8.1 FAQ on Main Unit Specifications

14.3.8.1.1 Auto paper select function does not work after setting thin paper as type of paper for cassette

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Manual-related]

Description

When performing the following procedure [User mode > Common Settings > Register Paper Type > select a paper source to specify the paper time (in this field case, A4-size cassette was selected) > register the paper type as "thin paper"], and register the paper source as one of the options for auto paper selection functions; then make a copy of A4-size original from the copyboard glass, the registered paper source was not selected in the auto paper selection.

Cause

Thin paper (about 94g to 79g/square meter) is out of specification for the auto paper selection function (as of June 9, 2006).

Taking consistency with other models into consideration, a software modification will be considered so that thin paper can be available for the auto paper selection function (scheduled in the beginning 2007).

14.3.8.1.2 Target fixing control temperature for energy saver mode and low power mode

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Manual-related]

Description

In the case of power save mode (power save mode/low power save mode/sleep mode), target temperature is controlled lower than in standby mode to save energy.

T-14-5

Item	Target Temp. Control			Heater Lit Condition				
	Fixing Roller	Out Pressure Roller	Fixing A@Belt	Fixing Main Heater(H1)	Fixing Sub Heater(H2)	Out Pressure Roller Heater(H3)	Inlet Roller Heater(H4)	
Standby Mode	165 deg C	200 deg C	95 deg C	OFF	ON	H3 and H4 Heater lit alternately		
Energy Saver Mode	-10%	160deg C	190 deg C	-	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
	-25%	140deg C	150 deg C	-	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
	-50%	100deg C	-	-	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
Low-Power Mode	100deg C	-	-	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	
Sleep Mode	-	-	-	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	

- Standby mode: Let the machine in action or ready for operation while remaining supplied with all powers.

- Energy save mode: According to the energy saving ratio, decrease the fixing control temperature for standby to reduce the power consumption of the machine.

The energy saving ratio can be changed in User mode > Common Settings > Energy Saver Mode. (Default: 10%)

- Low-power mode: Keeps the fixing temperature low to reduce the power consumption by the Reader and the printer.

The low-power mode time can be set in user mode > Timer Settings > Low-power Mode Time (default: 15 min).

14.3.8.1.3 Face-up delivery is not possible when printing

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Manual-related]

Description

Although the face-up delivery is possible in copying, it cannot be selected when printing in the current specifications. (As of April, 2007)

This is for your information, but the face-up delivery is possible in the following cases only:

- when making a copy of a one-page original.
- when making some copies of a one-page original. (In case a finisher unit is connected, the face-down delivery is performed.)
- when selecting irregular size paper at multifeed tray pick-up
- when selecting OHT, label paper, or postcard.

14.3.8.1.4 For machine with system software Ver. 22.04, toner volume setting cannot be switched in service mode

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Manual-related]

Description

For the mode for adjusting toner volume (i.e., "Toner Volume Adjustment" mode), a new service mode was added to system software Ver. 22.04 so as to make it selectable in user mode. To display this mode in the Additional Functions screen, perform the following field remedy.

Field Remedy

1. In service mode (Level 2) > BOARD > Option > TR-DISP, set the value to '1'. This will display "Toner Volume Adjustment" mode in user mode.

- '0' (default): Not display

- '1': Display

2. In user mode > Printer Settings > Settings > Print Quality > Toner Volume Adjustment, select the desired setting:

-Normal: Text/line color value 85%, Graphics/image color value 240%

-Gradation: All color values 240%

-Text: All color values 185%

Reference: "Toner Volume Adjustment" mode

- This mode is used to change the limitation on the color values per object according to the mode.

- The appearance and disappearance of this mode in the Additional Functions screen can be controlled in service mode.

- For EFI controllers, this mode can be set from the printer driver.

14.3.8.1.5 How to check value of sensor (PS63) on the waste toner box

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Manual-related]

Description

Along with the release of system software Ver. 22.04, a new service mode was added to display the voltage and threshold values of the sensor on the waste toner box. These values can be checked simply by making the following selections in sequence: service mode > COPIER > Display > MISC > WTN-V.

- Default values: voltage = 20, threshold = 25
- Display: current voltage = left, threshold = right

The operation of the sensor on the waste toner box cannot be checked in the I/O mode screen. To check it, see the voltage displayed in service mode "WTN-V."

14.3.8.2 FAQ on LIPS Specifications

14.3.8.2.1 How to transfer License Option (LMS)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1 / imagePRESS C1 (CUSTOM) / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Case in the field]

Description

In order to use license options such as SEND, Print and others in a new machine after because of replacement of the original machine, licenses of such options have to be transferred to the new machine.

Field Remedy

1. Invalidate the license of an option that are used with the original machine and obtain an invalidation certificate key.
2. Obtain a new license key for the new machine.
3. Install the new license key in the new machine.

For more details, refer to the attached "How to Invalidate and Transfer A License."

14.4 Outline of Electrical Components

14.4.1 Clutch/Solenoid

14.4.1.1 List of clutch / solenoid

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

1. Reader unit

The reader unit has no clutch and solenoid.

2. Printer unit

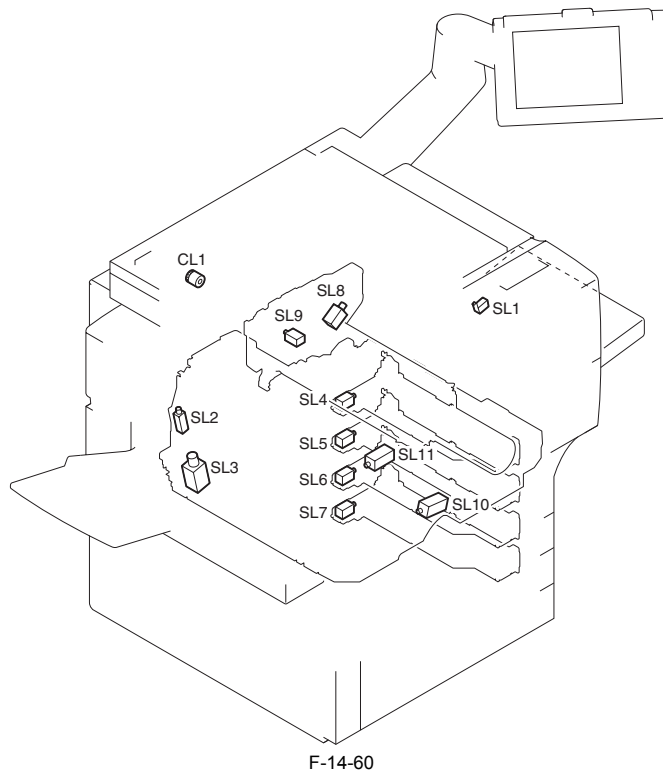
T-14-6

Number	Parts	Parts No.	PART-CHK
CL1	Developing clutch	FK2-0033	CL>1
SL1	Manual feeder holding plate solenoid	FK2-0115	SL>1
SL2	Reverse roller gap solenoid	FK2-0034	SL>2
SL3	Delivery flapper solenoid	FK2-0835	SL>3
SL4	Cassette 1 pickup solenoid	FK2-0116	SL>4
SL5	Cassette 2 pickup solenoid	FK2-0116	SL>5
SL6	Cassette 3 pickup solenoid	FK2-0116	SL>6
SL7	Cassette 4 pickup solenoid	FK2-0116	SL>7
SL8	Patch detection shutter solenoid	FH7-5845	SL>8
SL9	ATR shutter solenoid	FK2-0100	SL>9
SL10	Color sensor shutter solenoid	FH7-5838	SL>10
SL11	Web solenoid	FK2-0127	SL>11

T-14-7

Number	Connector No.					
	Side driver PCB	Feeding driver PCB	Back driver PCB	Pickup driver PCB	Fixing driver PCB	DC controller PCB
CL1		J3807/J3810				J1198

Number	Connector No.					
	Side driver PCB	Feeding driver PCB	Back driver PCB	Pickup driver PCB	Fixing driver PCB	DC controller PCB
SL1	J3421/J3401					J1193
SL2		J1301/J1314				J1184
SL3		J1301/J1314				J1184
SL4				J1404/J1412		J1177
SL5				J1404/J1412		J1177
SL6				J1405/J1412		J1177
SL7				J1405/J1412		J1177
SL8			J3802/J3810			J1198
SL9			J3802/J3810			J1198
SL10		J1301/J1314				J1184
SL11					J3304/J3312	J1181



14.4.1.2 List of clutch / solenoid

Color Image Reader-H1

1. Reader unit

The reader unit has no clutch and solenoid.

14.4.1.3 List of Clutch / Solenoid

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Reader unit

The reader unit has no clutch and solenoid.

2. Printer unit

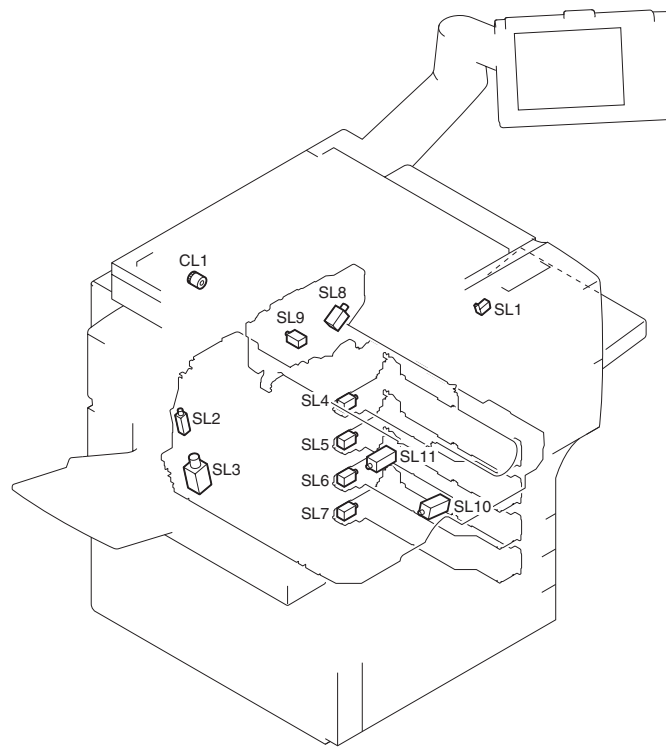
T-14-8

Number	Parts	Parts No.	PART-CHK
CL1	Developing clutch	FK2-0033	CL>1
SL1	Manual feeder holding plate solenoid	FK2-0115	SL>1
SL2	Reverse roller gap solenoid	FK2-0034	SL>2
SL3	Delivery flapper solenoid	FK2-0835	SL>3

Number	Parts	Parts No.	PART-CHK
SL4	Cassette 1 pickup solenoid	FK2-0116	SL>4
SL5	Cassette 2 pickup solenoid	FK2-0116	SL>5
SL6	Cassette 3 pickup solenoid	FK2-0116	SL>6
SL7	Cassette 4 pickup solenoid	FK2-0116	SL>7
SL8	Patch detection shutter solenoid	FH7-5845	SL>8
SL9	ATR shutter solenoid	FK2-0100	SL>9
SL10	Color sensor shutter solenoid	FH7-5838	SL>10
SL11	Web solenoid	FK2-0127	SL>11

T-14-9

Number	Connector No.					
	Side driver PCB	Feeding driver PCB	Back driver PCB	Pickup driver PCB	Fixing driver PCB	DC controller PCB
CL1			J3807/J3810			J1198
SL1	J3421/J3401					J1193
SL2		J1301/J1314				J1184
SL3		J1301/J1314				J1184
SL4				J1404/J1412		J1177
SL5				J1404/J1412		J1177
SL6				J1405/J1412		J1177
SL7				J1405/J1412		J1177
SL8			J3802/J3810			J1198
SL9			J3802/J3810			J1198
SL10		J1301/J1314				J1184
SL11					J3304/J3312	J1181



F-14-61

14.4.2 Motor

14.4.2.1 List of motor

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

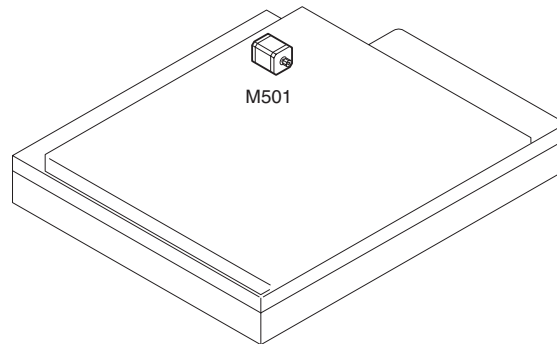
1. Reader unit

T-14-10

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	E code
M501	Scanning motor	Activation of No. 1, No. 2 mirror base	FK2-1182	E202

T-14-11

Number	Connector No.	
	I/F PCB	Reader controller PCB
M501	J306/307	J203



F-14-62

2. Printer unit

T-14-12

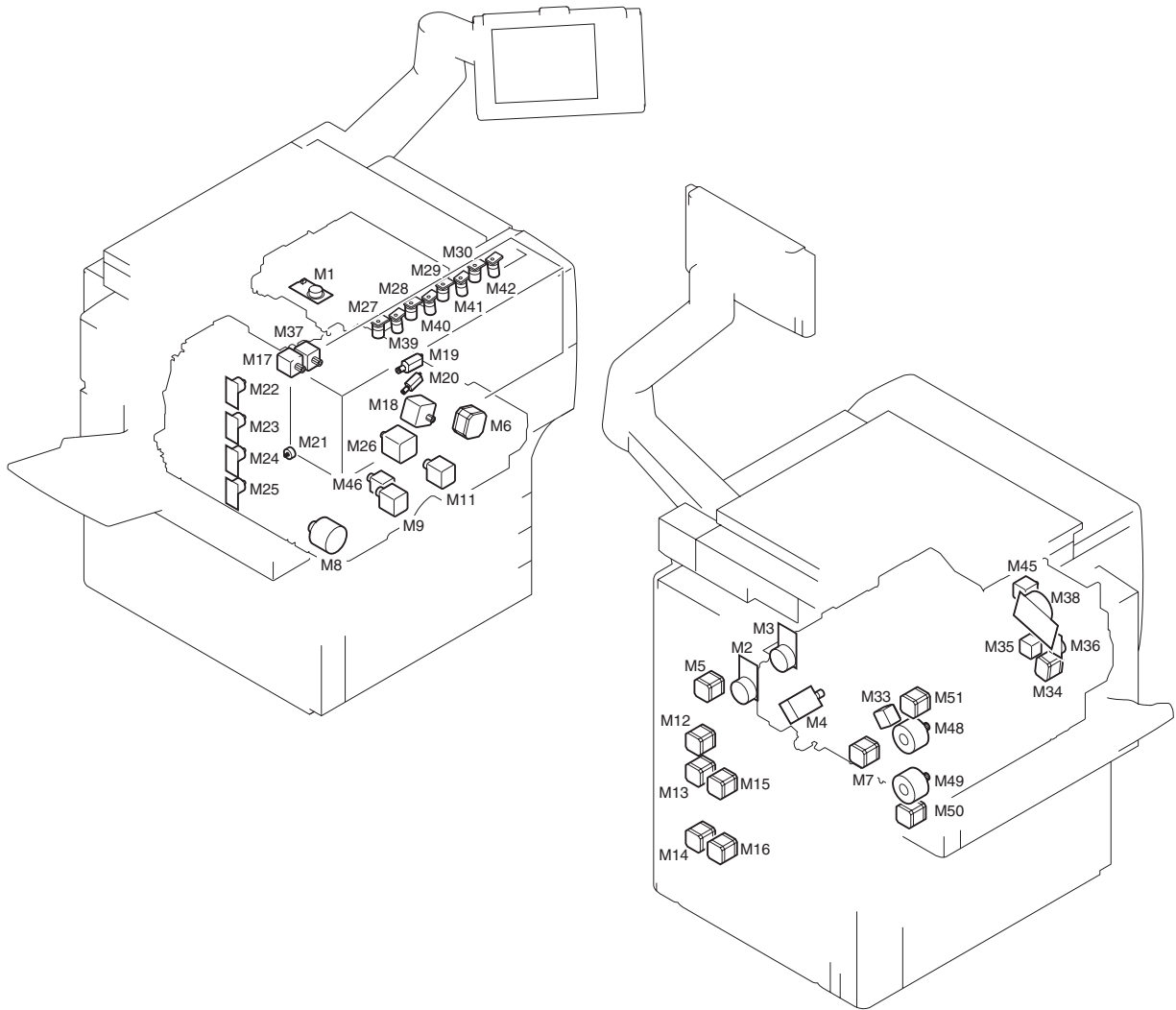
Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E code
M1	Polygon motor	Activation of laser scanner	FK2-0018	MTR>1	E110
M2	Drum / ITB motor	Activation of photosensitive drum, photosensitive drum cleaner, intermediate transfer unit	FK2-0564	MTR>2	E012
M3	Developing motor	Toner supply, activation of developing assembly	FK2-0566	MTR>3	E023
M4	Rotary motor	Activation of developing rotary	FK2-0569	MTR>4	E021
M5	Manual feed pre-registration drive motor	Activation of manual feed pickup assembly, pre-registration roller	FK2-0028	MTR>5	
M6	Registration drive motor	Activation of registration roller	FK2-0030	MTR>6	
M7	Outer delivery motor	Activation of outer delivery roller and curl-reducing roller	FK2-0139	MTR>7	
M8	Duplexing reverse motor	Activation of reverse 1, 2 rollers, duplexing inlet roller	FK2-0570	MTR>8	
M9	Duplexing left motor	Activation of duplexing left roller	FK2-0571	MTR>9	
M11	Duplexing right motor	Activation of duplexing confluence roller	FK2-0572	MTR>11	
M12	Vertical path 1 motor	Activation of vertical path 1 roller	FK2-0028	MTR>12	
M13	Vertical path 2 motor	Activation of vertical path 2 roller	FK2-0028	MTR>13	
M14	Vertical path 3 / 4 motor	Activation of vertical path 3 and 4 rollers	FK2-0028	MTR>14	
M15	Cassette 1 / 2 pickup motor	Cassette 1 and 2 pickup activation	FK2-0028	MTR>15	
M16	Pickup 3 / 4 motor	Activation of pickup assemblies 3 and 4	FK2-0028	MTR>16	
M17	Secondary transfer roller detachment / attachment motor	Detaching / attaching secondary transfer outer roller	FK2-0573	MTR>17	E077
M18	ITB cleaning brush roller detachment / attachment motor	Detaching / attaching ITB cleaning brush roller	FK2-0574	MTR>18	E078
M19	Primary charging wire cleaning motor	Activation of wire cleaner	FH6-1038	MTR>19	
M20	Pre-transfer charging wire motor	Activation of wire cleaner	FH6-1038	MTR>20	
M21	Vertical registration motor	Activation of vertical registration sensor	FK2-0163	MTR>21	E051
M22	Cassette 1 lifter motor	Activation of cassette 1 lifter	FK2-0016	MTR>22	

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E code
M23	Cassette 2 lifter motor	Activation of cassette 2 lifter	FK2-0016	MTR>23	
M24	Cassette 3 lifter motor	Activation of cassette 3 lifter	FK2-0016	MTR>24	
M25	Cassette 4 lifter motor	Activation of cassette 4 lifter	FK2-0016	MTR>25	
M26	ITB cleaning brush roller drive motor	Activation of ITB cleaning brush roller	FK2-0575	MTR>26	
M27	Y toner retainer motor	Stirring inside Y toner retainer	FK2-0583	MTR>27	E025
M28	M toner retainer motor	Stirring inside M toner retainer	FK2-0583	MTR>28	E025
M29	C toner retainer motor	Stirring inside C toner retainer	FK2-0583	MTR>29	E025
M30	Bk toner retainer motor	Stirring inside Bk toner retainer	FK2-0583	MTR>30	E025
M33	Fixing web detachment / attachment motor	Detaching / attaching fixing web	FK2-0584	MTR>33	
M34	Fixing belt detachment / attachment motor	Detaching / attaching fixing belt	FK2-0576	MTR>34	E078
M35	Fixing belt displacement control motor	Correction of displacement of fixing belt	FK2-0577	MTR>35	
M36	Fixing belt drive motor	Activation of fixing belt during standby temperature control	FK2-0567	MTR>36	
M37	Secondary transfer roller drive motor	Activation of secondary transfer roller	FK2-0578	MTR>37	
M38	Fixing motor	Activation of fixing roller / fixing belt	FK2-0568	MTR>38	E014
M39	Y hopper motor	Supply from hopper assembly to developing assembly	FK2-0583	MTR>39	
M40	M hopper motor	Supply from hopper assembly to developing assembly	FK2-0583	MTR>40	
M41	C hopper motor	Supply from hopper assembly to developing assembly	FK2-0583	MTR>41	
M42	Bk hopper motor	Supply from hopper assembly to developing assembly	FK2-0583	MTR>42	
M45	Outside heating detachment / attachment motor	Detachment / attachment of outside heating roller	FK2-0579	MTR>45	
M46	Feeder motor	Activation of feed roller	FK2-0580	MTR>46	
M48	Decurler feeder 1 motor	Activation of decurler feed roller	FK2-0581	MTR>48	
M49	Decurler feeder 2 motor	Activation of decurler feed roller	FK2-0582	MTR>49	
M50	Decurler entering level adjusting 1 motor	Adjustment of decurler entering level	FK2-0582	MTR>50	
M51	Decurler entering level adjusting 2 motor	Adjustment of decurler entering level	FK2-0582	MTR>51	

T-14-13

Number	Connector No.						
	Side driver PCB	Feeding driver PCB	Back driver PCB	Pickup driver PCB	Fixing driver PCB	Decurler PCB	DC controller PCB
M1							J1120
M2							J1173
M3							J1173
M4			J3805/J3811				J1197
M5	J3410/J3401						J1193
M6		J1304/J1312					J1183
M7			J3806/J3811				J1197
M8		J1309/J1312					J1183
M9		J1310/J1312					J1183
M11		J1311/J1312					J1183
M12				J1410/J1411			J1128

Number	Connector No.						
	Side driver PCB	Feeding driver PCB	Back driver PCB	Pickup driver PCB	Fixing driver PCB	Decurler PCB	DC controller PCB
M13				J1408/J1411			J1128
M14				J1409/J1411			J1128
M15				J1410/J1411			J1128
M16				J1409/J1411			J1128
M17		J1308/J1312					J1183
M18	J3405/J3401						J1193
M19	J3416/J3419						J1167
M20	J3416/J3419						J1167
M21		J1307/J1312					J1183
M22				J1402/J1403			J1178
M23				J1402/J1403			J1178
M24				J1419/J1403			J1178
M25				J1419/J1403			J1178
M26	J3405/J3401						J1193
M27	J3411/J3402						J1195
M28	J3411/J3402						J1195
M29	J3411/J3402						J1195
M30	J3411/J3402						J1195
M33					J3307/J3312		J1181
M34					J3310/J3312		J1181
M35					J3314/J3312		J1181
M36					J3316/J3312		J1181
M37		J1308/J1312					J1183
M38					J3308/J3312		J1181
M39	J3411/J3420						J1166
M40	J3411/J3420						J1166
M41	J3411/J3420						J1166
M42	J3411/J3420						J1166
M45					J3305/J3312		J1181
M46		J1310/J1312					J1183
M48					J4208/J4201		J1199
M49					J4208/J4201		J1199
M50					J4207/J4201		J1199
M51					J4207/J4201		J1199



F-14-63

14.4.2.2 List of motor

Color Image Reader-H1

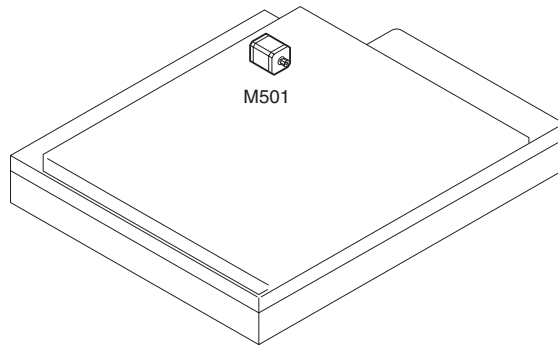
1. Reader unit

T-14-14

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	E code
M501	Scanning motor	Activation of No. 1, No. 2 mirror base	FK2-1182	E202

T-14-15

Number	Connector No.	
	I/F PCB	Reader controller PCB
M501	J306/307	J203



F-14-64

14.4.2.3 List of Motor

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

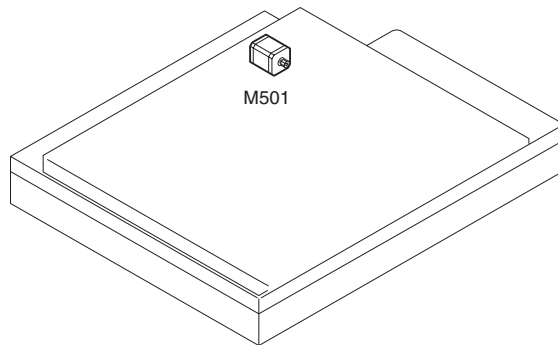
1. Reader unit

T-14-16

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	E code
M501	Scanning motor	Activation of No. 1, No. 2 mirror base	FK2-1182	E202

T-14-17

Number	Connector No.	
	I/F PCB	Reader controller PCB
M501	J306/307	J203



F-14-65

2. Printer unit

T-14-18

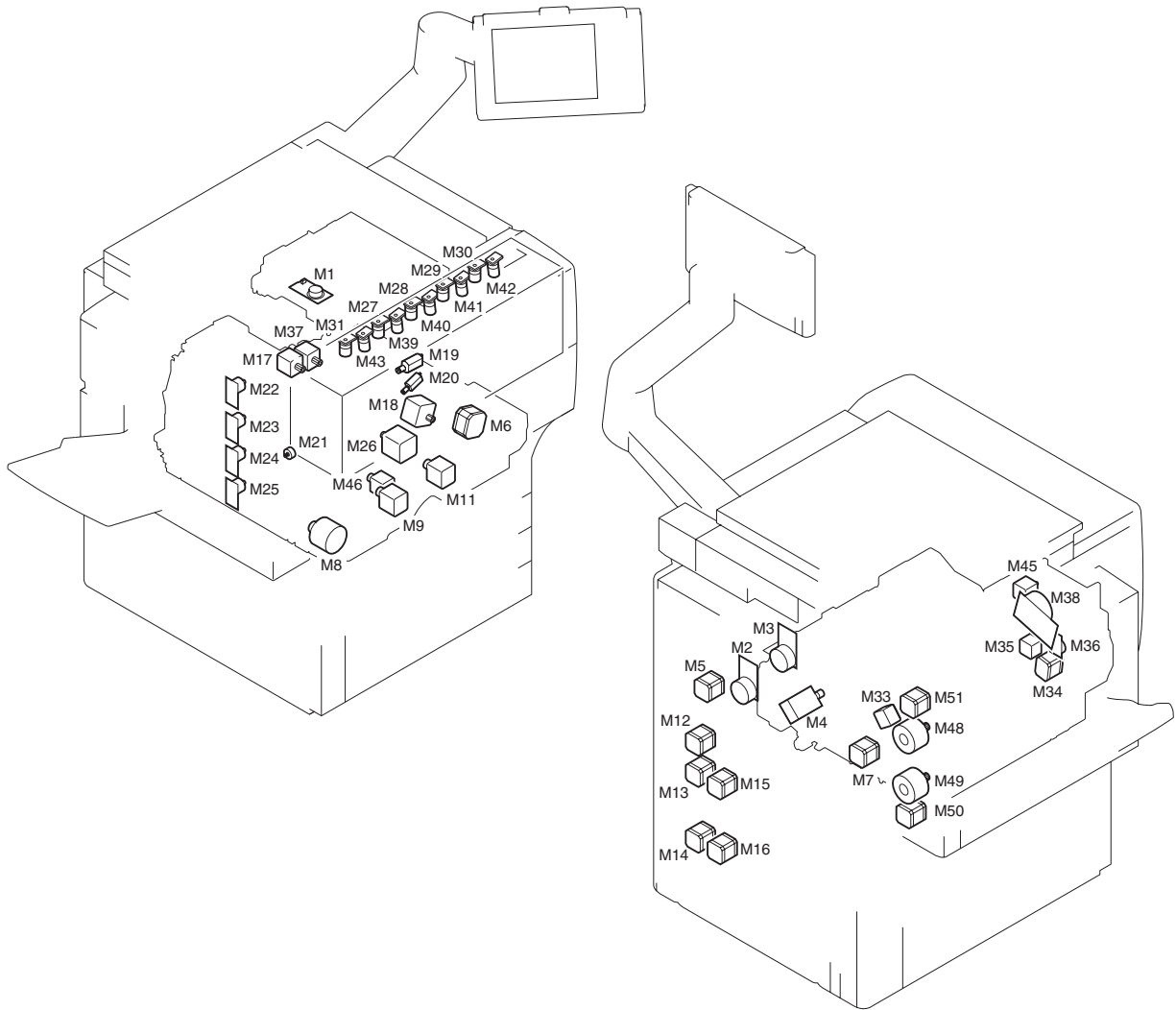
Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E code
M1	Polygon motor	Activation of laser scanner	FK2-0018	MTR>1	E110
M2	Drum / ITB motor	Activation of photosensitive drum, photosensitive drum cleaner, intermediate transfer unit	FK2-0564	MTR>2	E012
M3	Developing motor	Toner supply, activation of developing assembly	FK2-0566	MTR>3	E023
M4	Rotary motor	Activation of developing rotary	FK2-0569	MTR>4	E021
M5	Manual feed pre-registration drive motor	Activation of manual feed pickup assembly, pre-registration roller	FK2-0028	MTR>5	
M6	Registration drive motor	Activation of registration roller	FK2-0030	MTR>6	
M7	Outer delivery motor	Activation of outer delivery roller and curl-reducing roller	FK2-0139	MTR>7	
M8	Duplexing reverse motor	Activation of reverse 1, 2 rollers, duplexing inlet roller	FK2-0570	MTR>8	
M9	Duplexing left motor	Activation of duplexing left roller	FK2-0571	MTR>9	
M11	Duplexing right motor	Activation of duplexing confluence roller	FK2-0572	MTR>11	
M12	Vertical path 1 motor	Activation of vertical path 1 roller	FK2-0028	MTR>12	
M13	Vertical path 2 motor	Activation of vertical path 2 roller	FK2-0028	MTR>13	
M14	Vertical path 3 / 4 motor	Activation of vertical path 3 and 4 rollers	FK2-0028	MTR>14	
M15	Cassette 1 / 2 pickup motor	Cassette 1 and 2 pickup activation	FK2-0028	MTR>15	

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E code
M16	Pickup 3 / 4 motor	Activation of pickup assemblies 3 and 4	FK2-0028	MTR>16	
M17	Secondary transfer roller detachment / attachment motor	Detaching / attaching secondary transfer outer roller	FK2-0573	MTR>17	E077
M18	ITB cleaning brush roller detachment / attachment motor	Detaching / attaching ITB cleaning brush roller	FK2-0574	MTR>18	E078
M19	Primary charging wire cleaning motor	Activation of wire cleaner	FH6-1038	MTR>19	
M20	Pre-transfer charging wire motor	Activation of wire cleaner	FH6-1038	MTR>20	
M21	Vertical registration motor	Activation of vertical registration sensor	FK2-0163	MTR>21	E051
M22	Cassette 1 lifter motor	Activation of cassette 1 lifter	FK2-0016	MTR>22	
M23	Cassette 2 lifter motor	Activation of cassette 2 lifter	FK2-0016	MTR>23	
M24	Cassette 3 lifter motor	Activation of cassette 3 lifter	FK2-0016	MTR>24	
M25	Cassette 4 lifter motor	Activation of cassette 4 lifter	FK2-0016	MTR>25	
M26	ITB cleaning brush roller drive motor	Activation of ITB cleaning brush roller	FK2-0575	MTR>26	
M27	Y toner retainer motor	Stirring inside Y toner retainer	FK2-0583	MTR>27	E025
M28	M toner retainer motor	Stirring inside M toner retainer	FK2-0583	MTR>28	E025
M29	C toner retainer motor	Stirring inside C toner retainer	FK2-0583	MTR>29	E025
M30	Bk toner retainer motor	Stirring inside Bk toner retainer	FK2-0583	MTR>30	E025
M31	L toner retainer motor	Stirring inside L toner retainer	FK2-0583	MTR>31	E025
M33	Fixing web detachment / attachment motor	Detaching / attaching fixing web	FK2-0584	MTR>33	
M34	Fixing belt detachment / attachment motor	Detaching / attaching fixing belt	FK2-0576	MTR>34	E078
M35	Fixing belt displacement control motor	Correction of displacement of fixing belt	FK2-0577	MTR>35	
M36	Fixing belt drive motor	Activation of fixing belt during standby temperature control	FK2-0567	MTR>36	
M37	Secondary transfer roller drive motor	Activation of secondary transfer roller	FK2-0578	MTR>37	
M38	Fixing motor	Activation of fixing roller / fixing belt	FK2-0568	MTR>38	E014
M39	Y hopper motor	Supply from hopper assembly to developing assembly	FK2-0583	MTR>39	
M40	M hopper motor	Supply from hopper assembly to developing assembly	FK2-0583	MTR>40	
M41	C hopper motor	Supply from hopper assembly to developing assembly	FK2-0583	MTR>41	
M42	Bk hopper motor	Supply from hopper assembly to developing assembly	FK2-0583	MTR>42	
M43	L hopper motor	Supply from hopper assembly to developing assembly	FK2-0583	MTR>43	
M45	Outside heating detachment / attachment motor	Detachment / attachment of outside heating roller	FK2-0579	MTR>45	
M46	Feeder motor	Activation of feed roller	FK2-0580	MTR>46	
M48	Decurler feeder 1 motor	Activation of decurler feed roller	FK2-0581	MTR>48	
M49	Decurler feeder 2 motor	Activation of decurler feed roller	FK2-0582	MTR>49	
M50	Decurler entering level adjusting 1 motor	Adjustment of decurler entering level	FK2-0582	MTR>50	
M51	Decurler entering level adjusting 2 motor	Adjustment of decurler entering level	FK2-0582	MTR>51	

T-14-19

Number	Connector No.						
	Side driver PCB	Feeding driver PCB	Back driver PCB	Pickup driver PCB	Fixing driver PCB	Decurler PCB	DC controller PCB
M1							J1120
M2							J1173
M3							J1173
M4			J3805/J3811				J1197
M5	J3410/J3401						J1193
M6		J1304/J1312					J1183
M7			J3806/J3811				J1197
M8		J1309/J1312					J1183
M9		J1310/J1312					J1183
M11		J1311/J1312					J1183
M12				J1410/J1411			J1128
M13				J1408/J1411			J1128
M14				J1409/J1411			J1128
M15				J1410/J1411			J1128
M16				J1409/J1411			J1128

Number	Connector No.						
	Side driver PCB	Feeding driver PCB	Back driver PCB	Pickup driver PCB	Fixing driver PCB	Decurler PCB	DC controller PCB
M17		J1308/J1312					J1183
M18	J3405/J3401						J1193
M19	J3416/J3419						J1167
M20	J3416/J3419						J1167
M21		J1307/J1312					J1183
M22				J1402/J1403			J1178
M23				J1402/J1403			J1178
M24				J1419/J1403			J1178
M25				J1419/J1403			J1178
M26	J3405/J3401						J1193
M27	J3411/J3402						J1195
M28	J3411/J3402						J1195
M29	J3411/J3402						J1195
M30	J3411/J3402						J1195
M31	J3409/J3406						J1196
M33					J3307/J3312		J1181
M34					J3310/J3312		J1181
M35					J3314/J3312		J1181
M36					J3316/J3312		J1181
M37		J1308/J1312					J1183
M38					J3308/J3312		J1181
M39	J3411/J3420						J1166
M40	J3411/J3420						J1166
M41	J3411/J3420						J1166
M42	J3411/J3420						J1166
M43	J3409/J3406						J1196
M45					J3305/J3312		J1181
M46		J1310/J1312					J1183
M48					J4208/J4201		J1199
M49					J4208/J4201		J1199
M50					J4207/J4201		J1199
M51					J4207/J4201		J1199



F-14-66

14.4.3 Fan

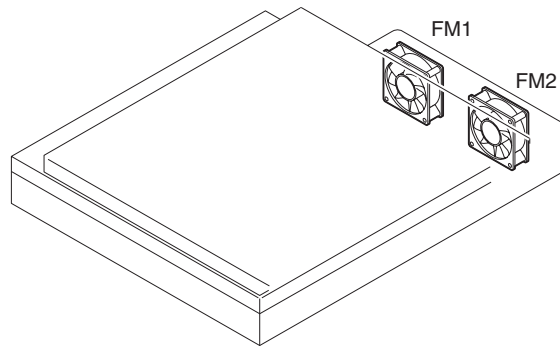
14.4.3.1 List of fan

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / Color Image Reader-H1

1. Reader unit

T-14-20

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	Connector No.
				Interface PCB
FM1	Reader cooling fan 2	Cooling of reader assembly	FK2-1188	J323
FM2	Reader cooling fan 1	Cooling of reader assembly	FK2-1189	J323



F-14-67

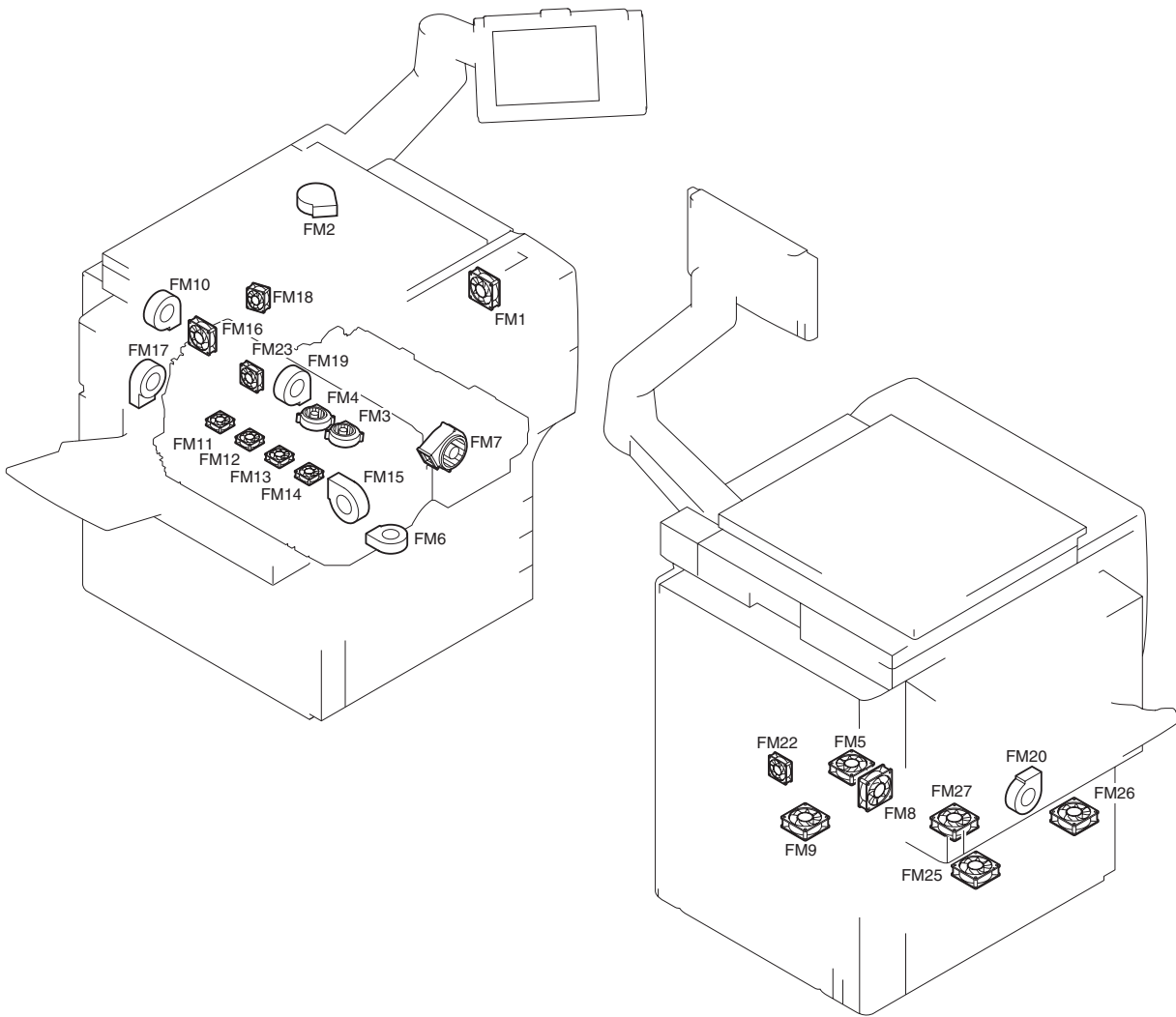
2. Printer unit

T-14-21

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E code / Alarm code
FM1	Primary charging suction fan	Suction from outside of machine to primary charging assembly	FK2-0103	FAN-ON>1	E824-0000
FM2	Primary exhaust fan	Discharging from primary charging assembly	FK2-0537	FAN-ON>2	E824-0001
FM3	Feeding fan 1	Absorption of paper to feeder belt	FK2-0538	FAN-ON>3	33-0014
FM4	Feeding fan 2	Absorption of paper to feeder belt	FK2-0538	FAN-ON>4	33-0015
FM5	Fixing heat discharge fan	Discharging heat generated from fixing assembly to outside machine	FK2-0540	FAN-ON>5	E805-0004
FM6	Fixing lower front fan	Cooling of fixing assembly	FK2-0123	FAN-ON>6	E805-000A
FM7	ITB cleaning cooling fan	Cooling of delivered paper	FK2-0123	FAN-ON>7	E820-0003
FM8	Controller fan	Cooling inside controller box	FH5-1111	FAN-ON>8	
FM9	Power source fan	Discharging heat of power source unit	FK2-0103	FAN-ON>9	E804-000B
FM10	Delivery cooling fan 1	Cooling of delivery assembly	FK2-0124	FAN-ON>10	E805-000C
FM11	Fixing belt cooling fan 1	Cooling of fixing belt	FK2-0539	FAN-ON>11	E805-000E
FM12	Fixing belt cooling fan 2	Cooling of fixing belt	FK2-0539	FAN-ON>12	E805-000F
FM13	Fixing belt cooling fan 3	Cooling of fixing belt	FK2-0539	FAN-ON>13	E805-0010
FM14	Fixing belt cooling fan 4	Cooling of fixing belt	FK2-0539	FAN-ON>14	E805-0011
FM15	Reverse cooling fan	Cooling of reversing assembly	FK2-0124	FAN-ON>15	E805-0012
FM16	Left exhaust fan		FK2-0103	FAN-ON>16	E805-0015
FM17	Fixing lower rear fan	Cooling of fixing assembly	FK2-0124	FAN-ON>17	E805-0014
FM18	Primary exhaust assist fan		FK2-0009	FAN-ON>18	E824-0002
FM19	Delivery cooling fan 2	Cooling of delivery assembly	FK2-0124	FAN-ON>19	E805-000D
FM20	Reverse cooling fan 2	Cooling of reversing assembly	FK2-0124	FAN-ON>20	E805-0013
FM22	Machine rear fan		FK2-0009	FAN-ON>22	E805-0006
FM23	Fixing upper exhaust fan	Cooling of fixing assembly	FK2-1189	FAN-ON>23	E805-0007
FM25	Accessory power source fan	Cooling of accessory power source	FK2-0541	FAN-ON>25	E804-0016
FM26	Sub DC power source fan	Cooling of sub DC power source	FK2-0541	FAN-ON>26	E804-0017
FM27	Decurler cooling fan	Cooling of decurler assembly	FK2-0636	FAN-ON>27	
FM28	VOC air intake fan 1	air cleaning of external area of the machine	FK2-0103		
FM29	VOC air intake fan 2	air cleaning of external area of the machine	FK2-0103		

T-14-22

Number	Connector No.								
	Side driver PCB	Feeding driver PCB	Back driver PCB	Pickup driver PDB	Fixing driver PCB	Relay PCB	Decurler PCB	Main controller PCB	DC controller PCB
FM1	J3417/J3419								J1167
FM2			J3807/J3810						J1198
FM3		J1302/J1314							J1184
FM4		J1302/J1314							J1184
FM5			J3811						J1197
FM6		J1301/J1314							J1184
FM7	J3404/J3401								J1193
FM8								J1007	J301
FM9						J4023/J4004			J1138
FM10			J3803/J3810						J1198
FM11			J3301/J3312						J1181
FM12			J3301/J3312						J1181
FM13			J3301/J3312						J1181
FM14			J3301/J3312						J1181
FM15		J1301/J1314							J1184
FM16			J3803/J3810						J1198
FM17			J3804/J3811						J1197
FM18			J3803/J3810						J1198
FM19			J3803/J3810						J1198
FM20			J3809/3811						J1197
FM22			J3804/J3811						J1197
FM23			J3803/J3811						J1197
FM25						J4005/J4004			J1138
FM26						J4005/J4004			J1138
FM27							J4206/J4204/ J4201		J1164/J1199



F-14-68

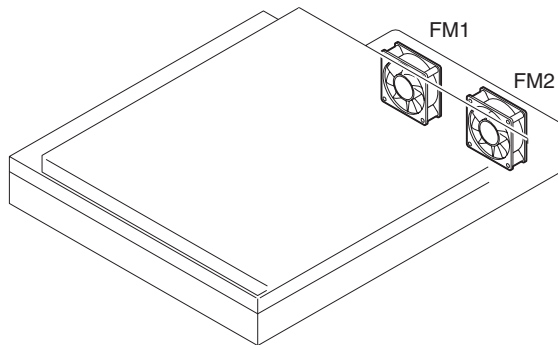
14.4.3.2 List of Fan

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Reader unit

T-14-23

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	Connector No.
				Interface PCB
FM1	Reader cooling fan 2	Cooling of reader assembly	FK2-1188	J323
FM2	Reader cooling fan 1	Cooling of reader assembly	FK2-1189	J323



F-14-69

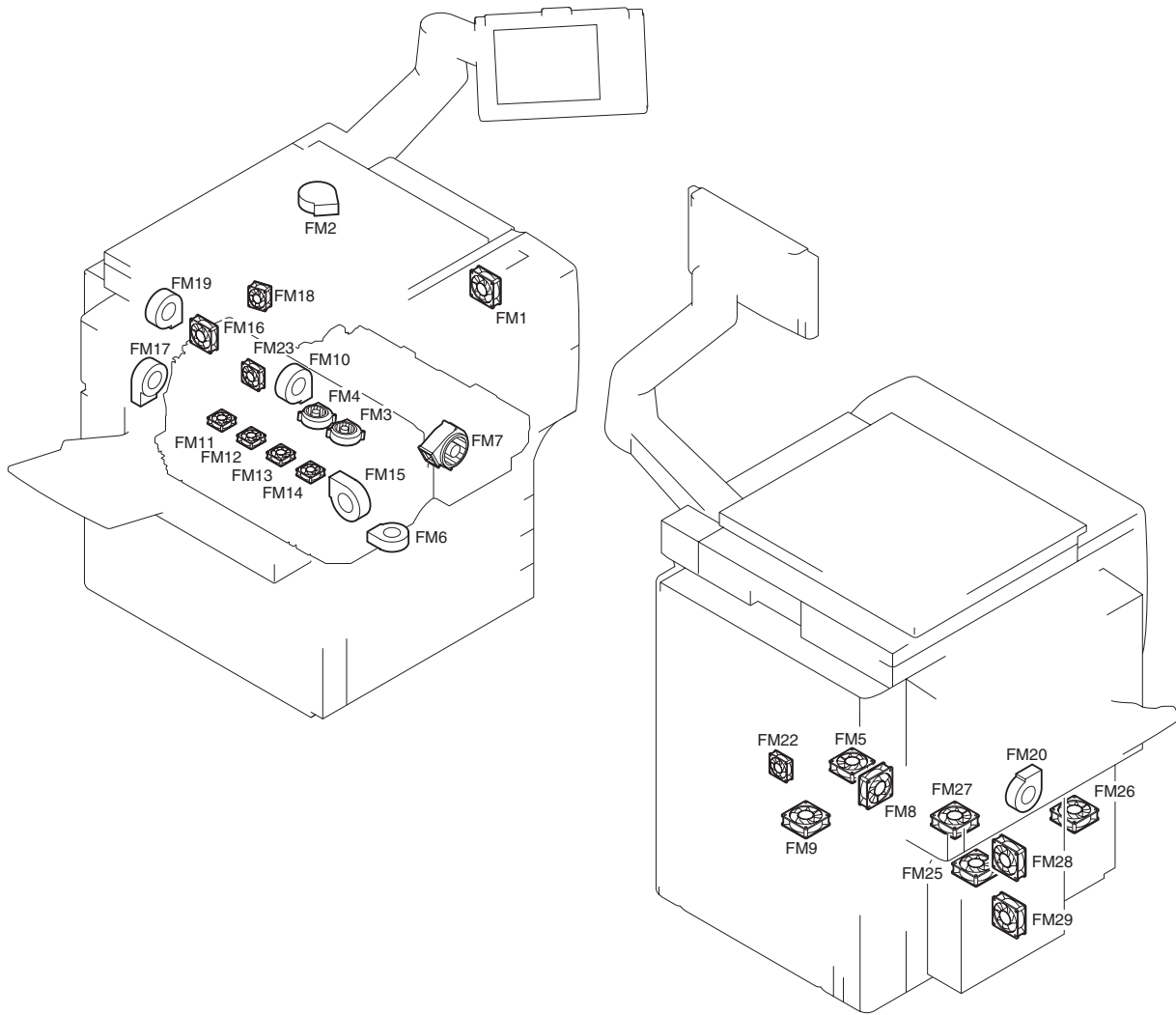
2. Printer unit

T-14-24

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E code / Alarm code
FM1	Primary charging suction fan	Suction from outside of machine to primary charging assembly	FK2-0103	FAN-ON>1	E824-0000
FM2	Primary exhaust fan	Discharging from primary charging assembly	FK2-0537	FAN-ON>2	E824-0001
FM3	Feeding fan 1	Absorption of paper to feeder belt	FK2-0538	FAN-ON>3	33-0014
FM4	Feeding fan 2	Absorption of paper to feeder belt	FK2-0538	FAN-ON>4	33-0015
FM5	Fixing heat discharge fan	Discharging heat generated from fixing assembly to outside machine	FK2-0540	FAN-ON>5	E805-0004
FM6	Fixing lower front fan	Cooling of fixing assembly	FK2-0123	FAN-ON>6	E805-000A
FM7	ITB cleaning cooling fan	Cooling of delivered paper	FK2-0123	FAN-ON>7	E820-0003
FM8	Controller fan	Cooling inside controller box	FH5-1111	FAN-ON>8	
FM9	Power source fan	Discharging heat of power source unit	FK2-0103	FAN-ON>9	E804-000B
FM10	Delivery cooling fan 1	Cooling of delivery assembly	FK2-0124	FAN-ON>10	E805-000C
FM11	Fixing belt cooling fan 1	Cooling of fixing belt	FK2-0539	FAN-ON>11	E805-000E
FM12	Fixing belt cooling fan 2	Cooling of fixing belt	FK2-0539	FAN-ON>12	E805-000F
FM13	Fixing belt cooling fan 3	Cooling of fixing belt	FK2-0539	FAN-ON>13	E805-0010
FM14	Fixing belt cooling fan 4	Cooling of fixing belt	FK2-0539	FAN-ON>14	E805-0011
FM15	Reverse cooling fan	Cooling of reversing assembly	FK2-0124	FAN-ON>15	E805-0012
FM16	Left exhaust fan		FK2-0103	FAN-ON>16	E805-0015
FM17	Fixing lower rear fan	Cooling of fixing assembly	FK2-0124	FAN-ON>17	E805-0014
FM18	Primary exhaust assist fan		FK2-0009	FAN-ON>18	E824-0002
FM19	Delivery cooling fan 2	Cooling of delivery assembly	FK2-0124	FAN-ON>19	E805-000D
FM20	Reverse cooling fan 2	Cooling of reversing assembly	FK2-0124	FAN-ON>20	E805-0013
FM22	Machine rear fan		FK2-0009	FAN-ON>22	E805-0006
FM23	Fixing upper exhaust fan	Cooling of fixing assembly	FK2-1189	FAN-ON>23	E805-0007
FM25	Accessory power source fan	Cooling of accessory power source	FK2-0541	FAN-ON>25	E804-0016
FM26	Sub DC power source fan	Cooling of sub DC power source	FK2-0541	FAN-ON>26	E804-0017
FM27	Decurler cooling fan	Cooling of decurler assembly	FK2-0636	FAN-ON>27	

T-14-25

Number	Connector No.								
	Side driver PCB	Feeding driver PCB	Back driver PCB	Pickup driver PDB	Fixing driver PCB	Relay PCB	Decurler PCB	Main controller PCB	DC controller PCB
FM1	J3417/J3419								J1167
FM2			J3807/J3810						J1198
FM3		J1302/J1314							J1184
FM4		J1302/J1314							J1184
FM5			J3811/J3811						J1197
FM6		J1301/J1314							J1184
FM7	J3404/J3401								J1193
FM8								J1007	J301
FM9						J4023/J4004			J1138
FM10			J3803/J3810						J1198
FM11			J3301/J3312						J1181
FM12			J3301/J3312						J1181
FM13			J3301/J3312						J1181
FM14			J3301/J3312						J1181
FM15		J1301/J1314							J1184
FM16			J3803/J3810						J1198
FM17			J3804/J3811						J1197
FM18			J3803/J3810						J1198
FM19			J3803/J3810						J1198
FM20			J3809/J3811						J1197
FM22			J3804/J3811						J1197
FM23			J3803/J3811						J1197
FM25						J4005/J4004			J1138
FM26						J4005/J4004			J1138
FM27							J4206/J4204/ J4201		J1164/J1199



F-14-70

14.4.4 Sensor

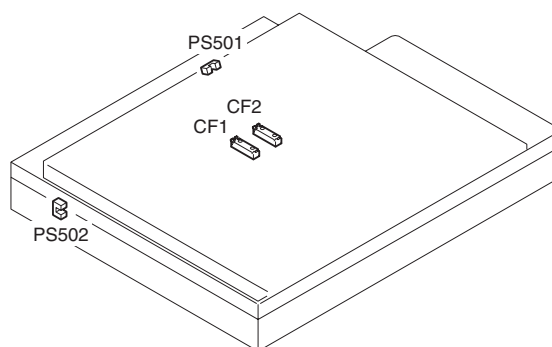
14.4.4.1 List of sensor

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

1. Reader unit

T-14-26

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	I/O (RCON)		Connector No.	
						Interface PCB	Reader controller PCB
PS501	ADF open / closed sensor	Detection of ADF open / closed	FK2-0149	P006-7	0:Close	J322/308	J202
PS502	Scanner HP sensor	Detection of scanner home position	FK2-0149	P006-5	0:HP	J321/308	J202
CF1	Original size sensor (AB configuration)	Detection of original size (A / B vertical scanning direction)	FK2-0238				J207
CF2	Original size sensor (INCH configuration)	Detection of original size (INCH vertical scanning direction)	FK2-0238				J208



F-14-71

2. Printer unit

T-14-27

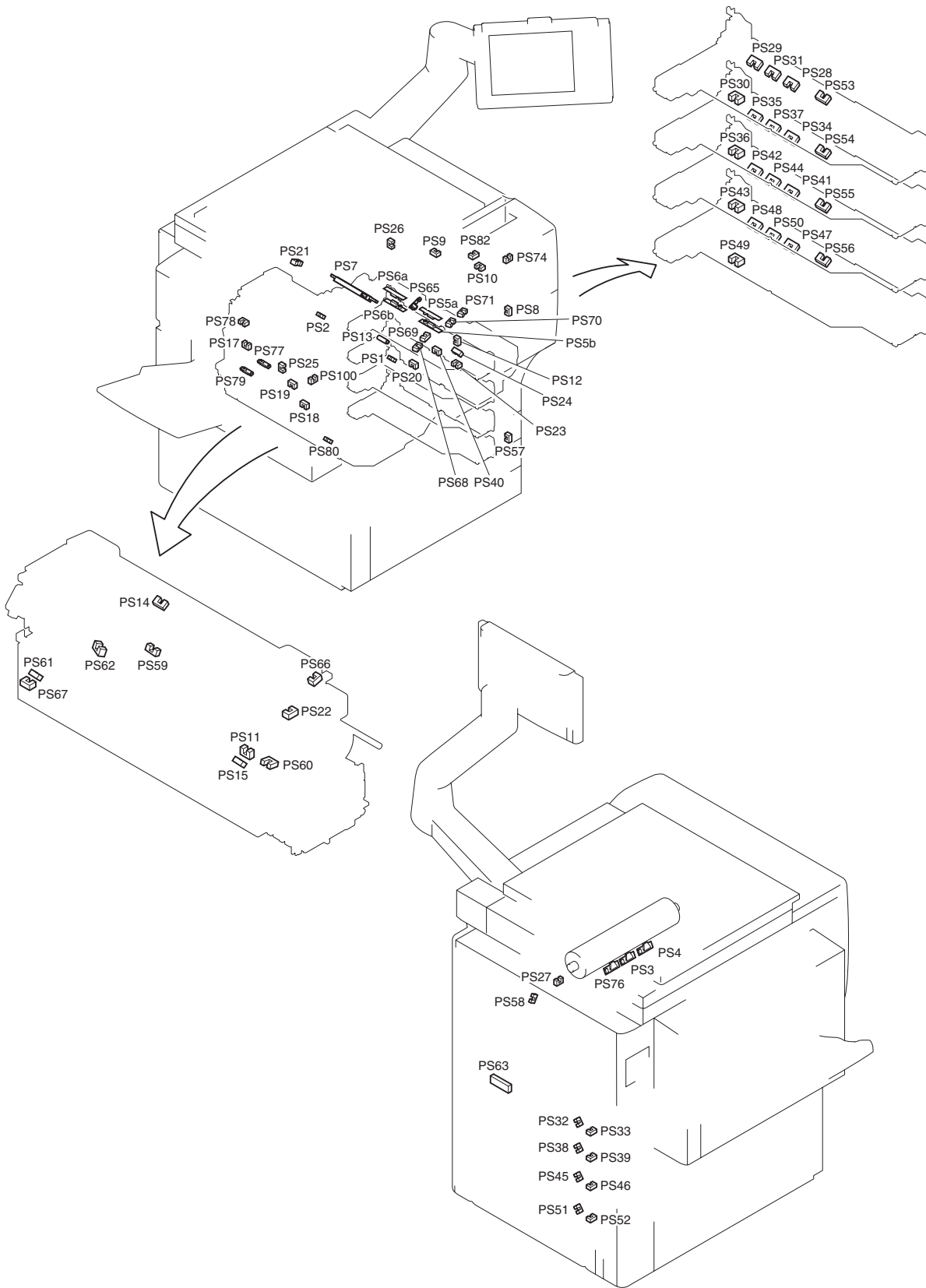
Number	Parts	Function	Part No.	I/O		E code	JAM code
PS1	ITOP-A sensor	ITB home position detection A	FK2-0161	P002-10	0 : HP	E070	
PS2	ITOP-B sensor	ITB home position detection B	FK2-0161	P002-09	0 : HP	E070	
PS3	Patch detection sensor		FK2-0588				
PS4	Patch detection sensor		FK2-0588				
PS5a	OHT light-emitting sensor _ front		FM2-0850				xx0A, 0D92, 0D93
PS5b	OHT light-receiving sensor _ front		FM2-0851				xx0A, 0D92, 0D93
PS6a	OHT light-emitting sensor _ rear		FM2-0850				xx0A, 0D92, 0D93
PS6b	OHT light-receiving sensor _ rear		FM2-0851				xx0A, 0D92, 0D93
PS7	ATR sensor	Detection of toner density on developing cylinder	FM2-0852	P020-03	1 : On	E020	
PS8	Right door sensor	Detection of right door	FK2-0149	P002-11	0 : Open		
PS9	Manual feeder paper detecting sensor	Detection of absence / presence of manual fed paper	FK2-0149	P005-00	1 : Paper present		
PS10	Manual feeder last sheet detecting sensor	Detection of last manual-fed paper	FK2-0149	P005-01	1 : Paper present		
PS11	Fixing web detachment / attachment HP sensor		FK2-0149			E005	
PS12	Pre-registration sensor	Registration paper detection	FK2-0149				xx0A, E10A, 0D91
PS13	Secondary transfer rear sensor	Detection after secondary transfer	WG8-5749				xx0B
PS14	Fixing inlet sensor	Detection of fixing inlet	FK2-0149				xx0C
PS15	Inner delivery sensor	Detection of inner delivery	FK2-0149				xx0D
PS17	Reversing sensor	Detection of reversing paper	FK2-0149				xx0E
PS18	Reverse vertical path sensor	Detection of reversing vertical path paper	FK2-0149				xx10
PS19	Duplexing left sensor	Detection of duplexing left paper	FK2-0149				xx12
PS20	Duplexing middle sensor	Duplexing confluence paper detection	FK2-0149				xx13
PS21	Rotary HP sensor	Detection of rotary home position	FK2-0149	P002-08	1 : HP / flag passed	E021	
PS22	Fixing web level sensor	Detection of fixing cleaning web level	FK2-0149			E005	

Number	Parts	Function	Part No.	I/O		E code	JAM code
PS23	Secondary transfer detachment / attachment HP sensor	Secondary transfer detachment / attachment HP detection	FK2-0149				
PS24	ITB cleaning brush roller HP sensor	Detection of ITB cleaner home position	FK2-0149	P002-07	1 : HP / flag passed		
PS25	Horizontal registration sensor	Detection of horizontal registration paper	FH7-7196			E051	
PS26	Vertical path sensor	Detection of pickup vertical path paper	FK2-0149	P005-02 P015-05	1 : On 1 : Paper present		xx11
PS27	Confluence sensor	Vertical path confluence paper detection	FK2-0149	P015-13	1 : Paper present		xx09
PS28	Cassette 1 pickup sensor	Detection of cassette 1 pickup	FK2-0149	P015-00	1 : Paper present		xx01
PS29	Cassette 1 limit sensor	Detection of cassette 1 limit	FK2-0149	P011-00	1 : At limit		
PS30	Cassette 1 paper detecting sensor	Detection of cassette 1 paper absence / presence	FK2-0149	P011-08	1 : Paper present		
PS31	Cassette 1 paper height sensor	Detection of cassette 1 paper height	FK2-0149	P011-01	0 : Pickup position		
PS32	Cassette 1 paper level sensor 1	Cassette 1 paper level detection 1	FK2-0149	P011-02	1 : Paper present		
PS33	Cassette 1 paper level sensor 2	Cassette 1 paper level detection 2	FK2-0149	P011-03	1 : Paper present		
PS34	Cassette 2 pickup sensor	Detection of cassette 2 pickup	FK2-0149	P015-01	1 : Paper present		xx02
PS35	Cassette 2 limit sensor	Detection of cassette 2 limit	FK2-0149	P011-04	1 : At limit		
PS36	Cassette 2 paper detecting sensor	Detection of cassette 2 paper absence / presence	FK2-0149	P011-09	1 : Paper present		
PS37	Cassette 2 paper height sensor	Detection of cassette 2 paper height	FK2-0149	P011-05	0 : Pickup position		
PS38	Cassette 2 paper level sensor 1	Cassette 2 paper level detection 1	FK2-0149	P011-06	1 : Paper present		
PS39	Cassette 2 paper level sensor 2	Cassette 2 paper level detection 2	FK2-0149	P011-07	1 : Paper present		
PS40	Duplexing right sensor	Duplexing right detection	FK2-0149				xx14
PS41	Cassette 3 pickup sensor	Detection of cassette 3 pickup	FK2-0149	P015-02	1 : Paper present		xx03
PS42	Cassette 3 limit sensor	Detection of cassette 3 limit	FK2-0149	P012-08	1 : At limit		
PS43	Cassette 3 paper detecting sensor	Detection of cassette 3 paper absence / presence	FK2-0149	P011-10	1 : Paper present		
PS44	Cassette 3 paper height sensor	Detection of cassette 3 paper height	FK2-0149	P012-09	0 : Pickup position		
PS45	Cassette 3 paper level sensor 1	Cassette 3 paper level detection 1	FK2-0149	P012-10	1 : Paper present		
PS46	Cassette 3 paper level sensor 2	Cassette 3 paper level detection 2	FK2-0149	P012-11	1 : Paper present		
PS47	Cassette 4 pickup sensor	Detection of cassette 4 pickup	FK2-0149	P015-03	1 : Paper present		xx04
PS48	Cassette 4 limit sensor	Detection of cassette 4 limit	FK2-0149	P012-12	1 : At limit		
PS49	Cassette 4 paper detecting sensor	Detection of cassette 4 paper absence / presence	FK2-0149	P011-11	1 : Paper present		
PS50	Cassette 4 paper height sensor	Detection of cassette 4 paper height	FK2-0149	P012-13	0 : Pickup position		
PS51	Cassette 4 paper level sensor 1	Cassette 4 paper level detection 1	FK2-0149	P012-14	1 : Paper present		
PS52	Cassette 4 paper level sensor 2	Cassette 4 paper level detection 2	FK2-0149	P012-15	1 : Paper present		
PS53	Vertical path 1 sensor	Detection of pickup vertical path 1	FK2-0149	P015-06	1 : Paper present		xx08

Number	Parts	Function	Part No.	I/O		E code	JAM code
PS54	Vertical path 2 sensor	Detection of pickup vertical path 2	FK2-0149	P015-07	1 : Paper present		xx07
PS55	Vertical path 3 sensor	Detection of pickup vertical path 3	FK2-0149	P015-08	1 : Paper present		xx06
PS56	Vertical path 4 sensor	Detection of pickup vertical path 4	FK2-0149	P015-09	1 : Paper present		xx05
PS57	Lower right door open / closed sensor	Detection of lower right door open / closed	FK2-0149	P013-14	0 : Open		
PS58	Drum HP sensor	Detection of home position of photosensitive drum	FK2-0149	P014-05	1 : Detected		
PS59	Fixing belt displacement control sensor 1	Fixing belt displacement control detection	FK2-0149				
PS60	Fixing belt displacement HP sensor	Detection of fixing belt displacement HP	FK2-0149				
PS61	Fixing belt detachment / attachment HP sensor	Fixing belt detachment / attachment HP detection	FK2-0149				
PS62	Fixing belt displacement control sensor 2	Fixing belt displacement control detection	FK2-0149				
PS63	Waste toner full level detection	Detection of waste toner full level	FK2-0591				
PS65	Paper thickness sensor	Detection of paper thickness	FK2-0589				E20A
PS66	Outside heating HP sensor	Detection of outside heating HP	FK2-0149			E842	
PS67	Fixing belt attachment sensor	Detection of fixing belt attachment	FK2-0149			E842	
PS68	Y toner supply screw HP sensor	Detection of Y toner supply screw HP	FK2-0149	P002-00	1 : HP / flag passed		
PS69	M toner supply screw HP sensor	Detection of M toner supply screw HP	FK2-0149	P002-01	1 : HP / flag passed		
PS70	C toner supply screw HP sensor	Detection of C toner supply screw HP	FK2-0149	P002-02	1 : HP / flag passed		
PS71	Bk toner supply screw HP sensor	Detection of Bk toner supply screw HP	FK2-0149	P002-03	1 : HP / flag passed		
PS74	Hopper door open / closed sensor	Detection of hopper assembly open / closed	FK2-0149	P001-10	0 : Open		
PS75	Fixing belt displacement sensor	Detection of fixing belt displacement	FK2-0149				
PS76	Patch detection sensor		FK2-0588				
PS77	Decurler inlet sensor	Detection of decurler inlet	WG8-5749	P014-01	1 : Paper present		xx1B
PS78	Decurler entering level adjustment HP 2 sensor	Detection of decurler entering level adjustment HP 2	FK2-0149	P15-14	1 : HP	E015	
PS79	Decurler outlet sensor	Detection of decurler outlet	WG8-5749	P014-03	1 : Paper present		xx1C
PS80	Decurler entering level adjustment HP 1 sensor	Detection of decurler entering level adjustment HP 1	FK2-0149	P014-13	1 : Paper present	E015	
PS82	Primary charging wire HP sensor	Detection of primary charging wire HP	FK2-0149	P002-13	1 : HP / flag passed		
PS100	Decurler door sensor	Detection of decurler door	FK2-0149	P015-10	0 : Open		

Number	Connector No.						
	Side driver PCB	Feeding driver PCB	Back driver PCB	Pickup driver PCB	Fixing driver PCB	Decurler PCB	DC controller PCB
PS1	J3403/J3401						J1193
PS2	J3403/J3401						J1193
PS3	J3415/J3414						J1192
PS4	J3415/J3414						J1192
PS5a		J1305/J1314					J1184
PS5b		J1305/J1314					J1184
PS6a		J1305/J1314					J1184
PS6b		J1305/J1314					J1184
PS7			J3802/J3810				J1198
PS8			J1406/J1412				J1177
PS9	J3421/J3401						J1193
PS10	J3421/J3401						J1193
PS11					J3306/J3312		J1181
PS12		J1305/J1314					J1184
PS13		J1302/J1314					J1184
PS14					J3301/3312		J1181
PS15					J3306/J3312		J1181
PS17		J1302/J1314					J1184
PS18		J1302/J1314					J1184
PS19		J1302/J1314					J1184
PS20		J1302/J1314					J1184
PS21			J3802/J3810				J1198
PS22					J3306/J3312		J1181
PS23		J1302/J1314					J1184
PS24	J3404/J3401						J1193
PS25		J1301/J1314					J1184
PS26	J3421/J3401						J1193
PS27							J1179
PS28				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS29				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS30				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS31				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS32				J1401/J1403			J1178
PS33				J1401/J1403			J1178
PS34				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS35				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS36				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS37				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS38				J1401/J1403			J1178
PS39				J1401/J1403			J1178
PS40		J1303/J1314					J1184
PS41				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS42				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS43				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS44				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS45				J1418/J1403			J1178

Number	Connector No.						
	Side driver PCB	Feeding driver PCB	Back driver PCB	Pickup driver PCB	Fixing driver PCB	Decurler PCB	DC controller PCB
PS46				J1418/J1403			J1178
PS47				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS48				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS49				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS50				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS51				J1418/J1403			J1178
PS52				J1418/J1403			J1178
PS53				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS54				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS55				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS56				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS57				J1406/J1412			J1177
PS58							J1173
PS59					J3301/J3312		J1181
PS60					J3301/J3312		J1181
PS61					J3302/J3312		J1181
PS62					J3301/J3312		J1181
PS63							J1172
PS65		J1306/J1312					J1183
PS66					J3303/J3312		J1181
PS67					J3302/J3312		J1181
PS68	J3418/J3420						J1166
PS69	J3418/J3420						J1166
PS70	J3418/J3420						J1166
PS71	J3418/J3420						J1166
PS74	J3418/J3420						J1166
PS75					J3301/J3312		J1181
PS76	J3415/J3414						J1192
PS77						J4205/J4204	J1164
PS78						J4205/J4204	J1164
PS79						J4205/J4204	J1164
PS80						J4205/J4204	J1164
PS82	J3416/J3419						J1167
PS100						J4205/J4204	J1164



F-14-72

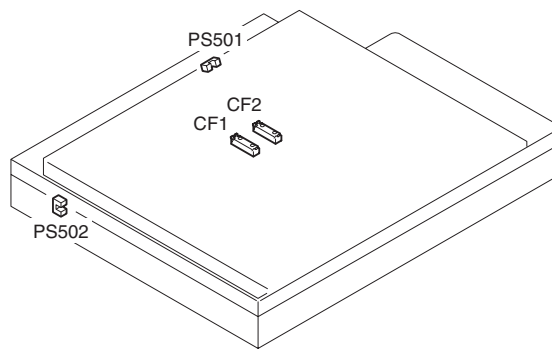
14.4.4.2 List of sensor

Color Image Reader-H1

1. Reader unit

T-14-29

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	I/O (RCON)		Connector No.	
						Interface PCB	Reader controller PCB
PS501	ADF open / closed sensor	Detection of ADF open / closed	FK2-0149	P006-7	0:Close	J322/308	J202
PS502	Scanner HP sensor	Detection of scanner home position	FK2-0149	P006-5	0:HP	J321/308	J202
CF1	Original size sensor (AB configuration)	Detection of original size (A / B vertical scanning direction)	FK2-0238				J207
CF2	Original size sensor (INCH configuration)	Detection of original size (INCH vertical scanning direction)	FK2-0238				J208



F-14-73

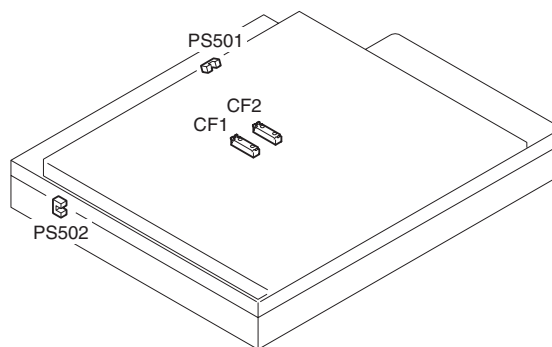
14.4.4.3 List of Sensor

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Reader unit

T-14-30

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	I/O (RCON)		Connector No.	
						Interface PCB	Reader controller PCB
PS501	ADF open / closed sensor	Detection of ADF open / closed	FK2-0149	P006-7	0:Close	J322/308	J202
PS502	Scanner HP sensor	Detection of scanner home position	FK2-0149	P006-5	0:HP	J321/308	J202
CF1	Original size sensor (AB configuration)	Detection of original size (A / B vertical scanning direction)	FK2-0238				J207
CF2	Original size sensor (INCH configuration)	Detection of original size (INCH vertical scanning direction)	FK2-0238				J208



F-14-74

2. Printer unit

Number	Parts	Function	Part No.	I/O		E code	JAM code
PS1	ITOP-A sensor	ITB home position detection A	FK2-0161	P002-10	0 : HP	E070	
PS2	ITOP-B sensor	ITB home position detection B	FK2-0161	P002-09	0 : HP	E070	
PS3	Patch detection sensor		FK2-0588				
PS4	Patch detection sensor		FK2-0588				
PS5a	OHT light-emitting sensor _ front		FM2-0850				xx0A, 0D92, 0D93
PS5b	OHT light-receiving sensor _ front		FM2-0851				xx0A, 0D92, 0D93
PS6a	OHT light-emitting sensor _ rear		FM2-0850				xx0A, 0D92, 0D93
PS6b	OHT light-receiving sensor _ rear		FM2-0851				xx0A, 0D92, 0D93
PS7	ATR sensor	Detection of toner density on developing cylinder	FM2-0852	P020-03	1 : On	E020	
PS8	Right door sensor	Detection of right door	FK2-0149	P002-11	0 : Open		
PS9	Manual feeder paper detecting sensor	Detection of absence / presence of manual fed paper	FK2-0149	P005-00	1 : Paper present		
PS10	Manual feeder last sheet detecting sensor	Detection of last manual-fed paper	FK2-0149	P005-01	1 : Paper present		
PS11	Fixing web detachment / attachment HP sensor		FK2-0149			E005	
PS12	Pre-registration sensor	Registration paper detection	FK2-0149				xx0A, E10A, 0D91
PS13	Secondary transfer rear sensor	Detection after secondary transfer	WG8-5749				xx0B
PS14	Fixing inlet sensor	Detection of fixing inlet	FK2-0149				xx0C
PS15	Inner delivery sensor	Detection of inner delivery	FK2-0149				xx0D
PS17	Reversing sensor	Detection of reversing paper	FK2-0149				xx0E
PS18	Reverse vertical path sensor	Detection of reversing vertical path paper	FK2-0149				xx10
PS19	Duplexing left sensor	Detection of duplexing left paper	FK2-0149				xx12
PS20	Duplexing middle sensor	Duplexing confluence paper detection	FK2-0149				xx13
PS21	Rotary HP sensor	Detection of rotary home position	FK2-0149	P002-08	1 : HP / flag passed	E021	
PS22	Fixing web level sensor	Detection of fixing cleaning web level	FK2-0149			E005	
PS23	Secondary transfer detachment / attachment HP sensor	Secondary transfer detachment / attachment HP detection	FK2-0149				
PS24	ITB cleaning brush roller HP sensor	Detection of ITB cleaner home position	FK2-0149	P002-07	1 : HP / flag passed		
PS25	Horizontal registration sensor	Detection of horizontal registration paper	FH7-7196			E051	
PS26	Vertical path sensor	Detection of pickup vertical path paper	FK2-0149	P005-02 P015-05	1 : On 1 : Paper present		xx11
PS27	Confluence sensor	Vertical path confluence paper detection	FK2-0149	P015-13	1 : Paper present		xx09
PS28	Cassette 1 pickup sensor	Detection of cassette 1 pickup	FK2-0149	P015-00	1 : Paper present		xx01
PS29	Cassette 1 limit sensor	Detection of cassette 1 limit	FK2-0149	P011-00	1 : At limit		
PS30	Cassette 1 paper detecting sensor	Detection of cassette 1 paper absence / presence	FK2-0149	P011-08	1 : Paper present		
PS31	Cassette 1 paper height sensor	Detection of cassette 1 paper height	FK2-0149	P011-01	0 : Pickup position		
PS32	Cassette 1 paper level sensor 1	Cassette 1 paper level detection 1	FK2-0149	P011-02	1 : Paper present		
PS33	Cassette 1 paper level sensor 2	Cassette 1 paper level detection 2	FK2-0149	P011-03	1 : Paper present		
PS34	Cassette 2 pickup sensor	Detection of cassette 2 pickup	FK2-0149	P015-01	1 : Paper present		xx02
PS35	Cassette 2 limit sensor	Detection of cassette 2 limit	FK2-0149	P011-04	1 : At limit		
PS36	Cassette 2 paper detecting sensor	Detection of cassette 2 paper absence / presence	FK2-0149	P011-09	1 : Paper present		
PS37	Cassette 2 paper height sensor	Detection of cassette 2 paper height	FK2-0149	P011-05	0 : Pickup position		
PS38	Cassette 2 paper level sensor 1	Cassette 2 paper level detection 1	FK2-0149	P011-06	1 : Paper present		
PS39	Cassette 2 paper level sensor 2	Cassette 2 paper level detection 2	FK2-0149	P011-07	1 : Paper present		
PS40	Duplexing right sensor	Duplexing right detection	FK2-0149				xx14
PS41	Cassette 3 pickup sensor	Detection of cassette 3 pickup	FK2-0149	P015-02	1 : Paper present		xx03
PS42	Cassette 3 limit sensor	Detection of cassette 3 limit	FK2-0149	P012-08	1 : At limit		
PS43	Cassette 3 paper detecting sensor	Detection of cassette 3 paper absence / presence	FK2-0149	P011-10	1 : Paper present		
PS44	Cassette 3 paper height sensor	Detection of cassette 3 paper height	FK2-0149	P012-09	0 : Pickup position		
PS45	Cassette 3 paper level sensor 1	Cassette 3 paper level detection 1	FK2-0149	P012-10	1 : Paper present		
PS46	Cassette 3 paper level sensor 2	Cassette 3 paper level detection 2	FK2-0149	P012-11	1 : Paper present		

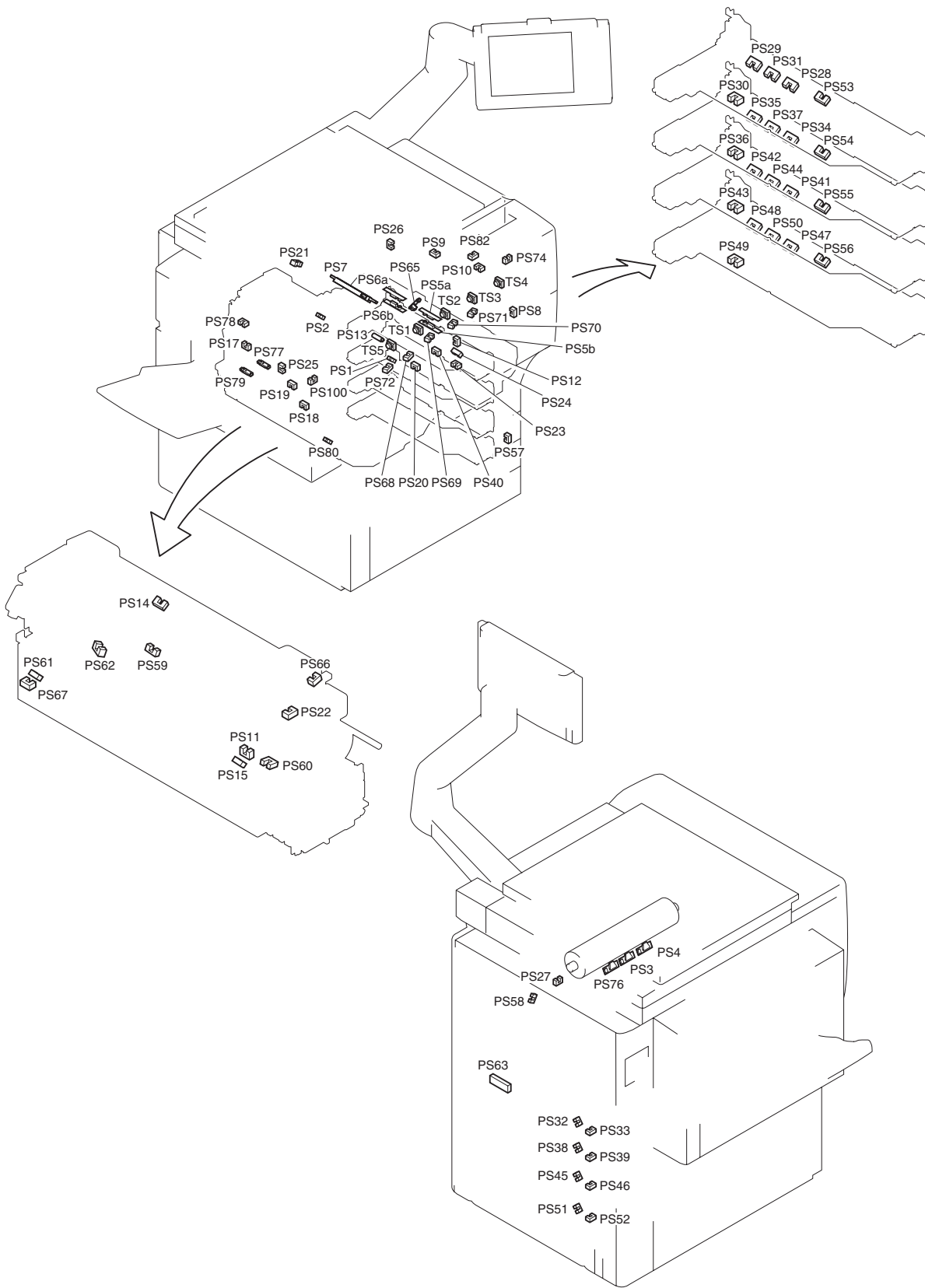
Number	Parts	Function	Part No.	I/O	E code	JAM code
PS47	Cassette 4 pickup sensor	Detection of cassette 4 pickup	FK2-0149	P015-03	1 : Paper present	xx04
PS48	Cassette 4 limit sensor	Detection of cassette 4 limit	FK2-0149	P012-12	1 : At limit	
PS49	Cassette 4 paper detecting sensor	Detection of cassette 4 paper absence / presence	FK2-0149	P011-11	1 : Paper present	
PS50	Cassette 4 paper height sensor	Detection of cassette 4 paper height	FK2-0149	P012-13	0 : Pickup position	
PS51	Cassette 4 paper level sensor 1	Cassette 4 paper level detection 1	FK2-0149	P012-14	1 : Paper present	
PS52	Cassette 4 paper level sensor 2	Cassette 4 paper level detection 2	FK2-0149	P012-15	1 : Paper present	
PS53	Vertical path 1 sensor	Detection of pickup vertical path 1	FK2-0149	P015-06	1 : Paper present	xx08
PS54	Vertical path 2 sensor	Detection of pickup vertical path 2	FK2-0149	P015-07	1 : Paper present	xx07
PS55	Vertical path 3 sensor	Detection of pickup vertical path 3	FK2-0149	P015-08	1 : Paper present	xx06
PS56	Vertical path 4 sensor	Detection of pickup vertical path 4	FK2-0149	P015-09	1 : Paper present	xx05
PS57	Lower right door open / closed sensor	Detection of lower right door open / closed	FK2-0149	P013-14	0 : Open	
PS58	Drum HP sensor	Detection of home position of photosensitive drum	FK2-0149	P014-05	1 : Detected	
PS59	Fixing belt displacement control sensor 1	Fixing belt displacement control detection	FK2-0149			
PS60	Fixing belt displacement HP sensor	Detection of fixing belt displacement HP	FK2-0149			
PS61	Fixing belt detachment / attachment HP sensor	Fixing belt detachment / attachment HP detection	FK2-0149			
PS62	Fixing belt displacement control sensor 2	Fixing belt displacement control detection	FK2-0149			
PS63	Waste toner full level detection	Detection of waste toner full level	FK2-0591			
PS65	Paper thickness sensor	Detection of paper thickness	FK2-0589			E20A
PS66	Outside heating HP sensor	Detection of outside heating HP	FK2-0149		E842	
PS67	Fixing belt attachment sensor	Detection of fixing belt attachment	FK2-0149		E842	
PS68	Y toner supply screw HP sensor	Detection of Y toner supply screw HP	FK2-0149	P002-00	1 : HP / flag passed	
PS69	M toner supply screw HP sensor	Detection of M toner supply screw HP	FK2-0149	P002-01	1 : HP / flag passed	
PS70	C toner supply screw HP sensor	Detection of C toner supply screw HP	FK2-0149	P002-02	1 : HP / flag passed	
PS71	Bk toner supply screw HP sensor	Detection of Bk toner supply screw HP	FK2-0149	P002-03	1 : HP / flag passed	
PS72	L toner supply screw HP sensor	Detection of L toner supply screw HP	FK2-0149	P002-04	1 : HP / flag passed	
PS74	Hopper door open / closed sensor	Detection of hopper assembly open / closed	FK2-0149	P001-10	0 : Open	
PS75	Fixing belt displacement sensor	Detection of fixing belt displacement	FK2-0149			
PS76	Patch detection sensor		FK2-0588			
PS77	Decurler inlet sensor	Detection of decurler inlet	WG8-5749	P014-01	1 : Paper present	xx1B
PS78	Decurler entering level adjustment HP 2 sensor	Detection of decurler entering level adjustment HP 2	FK2-0149	P15-14	1 : HP	E015
PS79	Decurler outlet sensor	Detection of decurler outlet	WG8-5749	P014-03	1 : Paper present	xx1C
PS80	Decurler entering level adjustment HP 1 sensor	Detection of decurler entering level adjustment HP 1	FK2-0149	P014-13	1 : Paper present	E015
PS82	Primary charging wire HP sensor	Detection of primary charging wire HP	FK2-0149	P002-13	1 : HP / flag passed	
PS100	Decurler door sensor	Detection of decurler door	FK2-0149	P015-10	0 : Open	

T-14-32

Number	Connector No.						
	Side driver PCB	Feeding driver PCB	Back driver PCB	Pickup driver PCB	Fixing driver PCB	Decurler PCB	DC controller PCB
PS1	J3403/J3401						J1193
PS2	J3403/J3401						J1193
PS3	J3415/J3414						J1192
PS4	J3415/J3414						J1192
PS5a		J1305/J1314					J1184
PS5b		J1305/J1314					J1184
PS6a		J1305/J1314					J1184
PS6b		J1305/J1314					J1184
PS7			J3802/J3810				J1198
PS8				J1406/J1412			J1177
PS9	J3421/J3401						J1193
PS10	J3421/J3401						J1193

Number	Connector No.						
	Side driver PCB	Feeding driver PCB	Back driver PCB	Pickup driver PCB	Fixing driver PCB	Decurler PCB	DC controller PCB
PS11					J3306/J3312		J1181
PS12		J1305/J1314					J1184
PS13		J1302/J1314					J1184
PS14					J3301/3312		J1181
PS15					J3306/J3312		J1181
PS17		J1302/J1314					J1184
PS18		J1302/J1314					J1184
PS19		J1302/J1314					J1184
PS20		J1302/J1314					J1184
PS21			J3802/J3810				J1198
PS22					J3306/J3312		J1181
PS23		J1302/J1314					J1184
PS24	J3404/J3401						J1193
PS25		J1301/J1314					J1184
PS26	J3421/J3401						J1193
PS27							J1179
PS28				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS29				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS30				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS31				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS32				J1401/J1403			J1178
PS33				J1401/J1403			J1178
PS34				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS35				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS36				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS37				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS38				J1401/J1403			J1178
PS39				J1401/J1403			J1178
PS40		J1303/J1314					J1184
PS41				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS42				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS43				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS44				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS45				J1418/J1403			J1178
PS46				J1418/J1403			J1178
PS47				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS48				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS49				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS50				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS51				J1418/J1403			J1178
PS52				J1418/J1403			J1178
PS53				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS54				J1404/J1412			J1177
PS55				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS56				J1405/J1412			J1177
PS57				J1406/J1412			J1177
PS58							J1173
PS59					J3301/J3312		J1181
PS60					J3301/J3312		J1181
PS61					J3302/J3312		J1181
PS62					J3301/J3312		J1181
PS63							J1172
PS65		J1306/J1312					J1183
PS66					J3303/J3312		J1181
PS67					J3302/J3312		J1181
PS68	J3418/J3420						J1166
PS69	J3418/J3420						J1166
PS70	J3418/J3420						J1166
PS71	J3418/J3420						J1166
PS72	J3408/J3406						J1196
PS74	J3418/J3420						J1166
PS75					J3301/J3312		J1181
PS76	J3415/J3414						J1192
PS77						J4205/J4204	J1164

Number	Connector No.						
	Side driver PCB	Feeding driver PCB	Back driver PCB	Pickup driver PCB	Fixing driver PCB	Decurler PCB	DC controller PCB
PS78						J4205/J4204	J1164
PS79						J4205/J4204	J1164
PS80						J4205/J4204	J1164
PS82	J3416/J3419						J1167
PS100						J4205/J4204	J1164



F-14-75

14.4.5 Switch

14.4.5.1 List of switch

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

1. Reader unit

The reader unit has no switch.

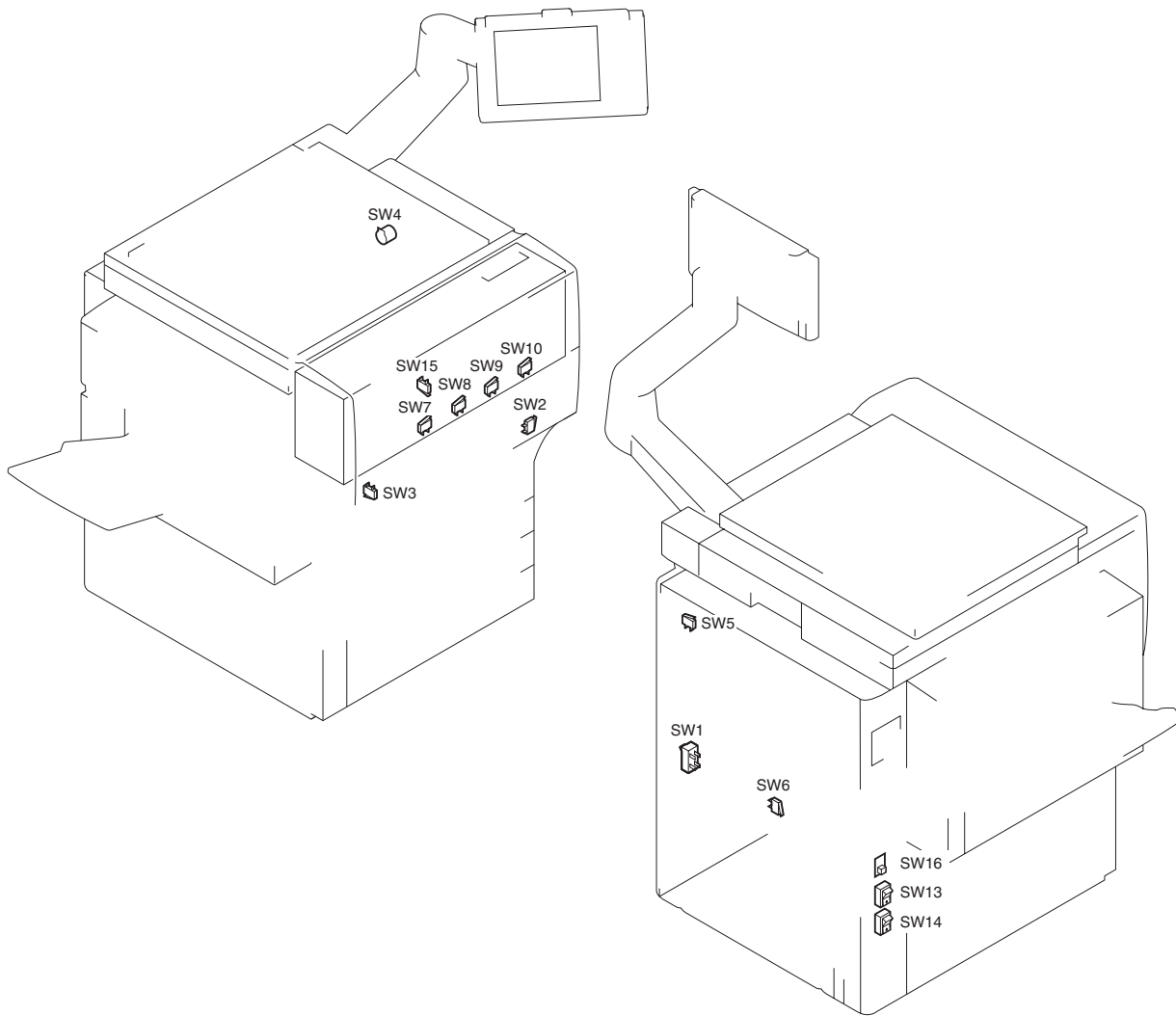
2. Printer unit

T-14-33

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	I/O		COPIER> FUNCTION	E code
SW1	Main switch	Main power ON / OFF	FK2-2509				
SW2	Manual feed door open / closed switch	Detection of manual feed tray open / closed	WC4-5231				
SW3	Front door switch	Detection of front cover open / closed	WC4-5125	P013-15	1 : Open		
SW4	Management key switch unit	Management key	FH7-6392				
SW5	Waste toner lock switch	Detection of lock of waste toner screw	WC4-5270	P014-07	0 : Toner clogged		E013-0002
SW6	Fixing feeding lock switch	Detection of lock / release of fixing feeding unit release lever	WC4-5231	P012-05	1 : Lock		
SW7	Y toner retainer detection switch	Detection of absence / presence of Y toner retainer	WC4-5263	P006-00	1 : Set		
SW8	M toner retainer detection switch	Detection of absence / presence of M toner retainer	WC4-5263	P006-01	1 : Set		
SW9	C toner retainer detection switch	Detection of absence / presence of C toner retainer	WC4-5263	P006-02	1 : Set		
SW10	Bk toner retainer detection switch	Detection of absence / presence of Bk toner retainer	WC4-5263	P006-03	1 : Set		
SW13	Environment switch	Drum heater, reader heater, cassette heater, deck heater ON / OFF	WC1-5179				
SW14	Cassette heater switch	Cassette heater, deck heater ON / OFF	WC1-5179				
SW15	Hopper shutter switch	Detection of hopper shutter open / closed	WC4-5262	P001-11	1 : Open		
SW16	Drum temperature switch	Switching temperature of drum heater	FM2-7737				

T-14-34

Number	Connector No.					
	AC driver PCB	DC power supply relay PCB	DC controller PCB	Main controller PCB	Side driver PCB	Drum heater driver PCB
SW1	J1802					
SW2		J4002				
SW3		J4002	J1180			
SW4				J1020		
SW5			J1179			
SW6			J1169			
SW7			J1195		J3412/J3402	
SW8			J1195		J3412/J3402	
SW9			J1195		J3412/J3402	
SW10			J1195		J3412/J3402	
SW13	PIN2/PIN3					
SW14	PIN4/PIN5					
SW15			J1193		J3418/J3401	
SW16						J2



F-14-76

14.4.5.2 List of switch

Color Image Reader-H1

1. Reader unit

The reader unit has no switch.

14.4.5.3 List of Switch

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Reader unit

The reader unit has no switch.

2. Printer unit

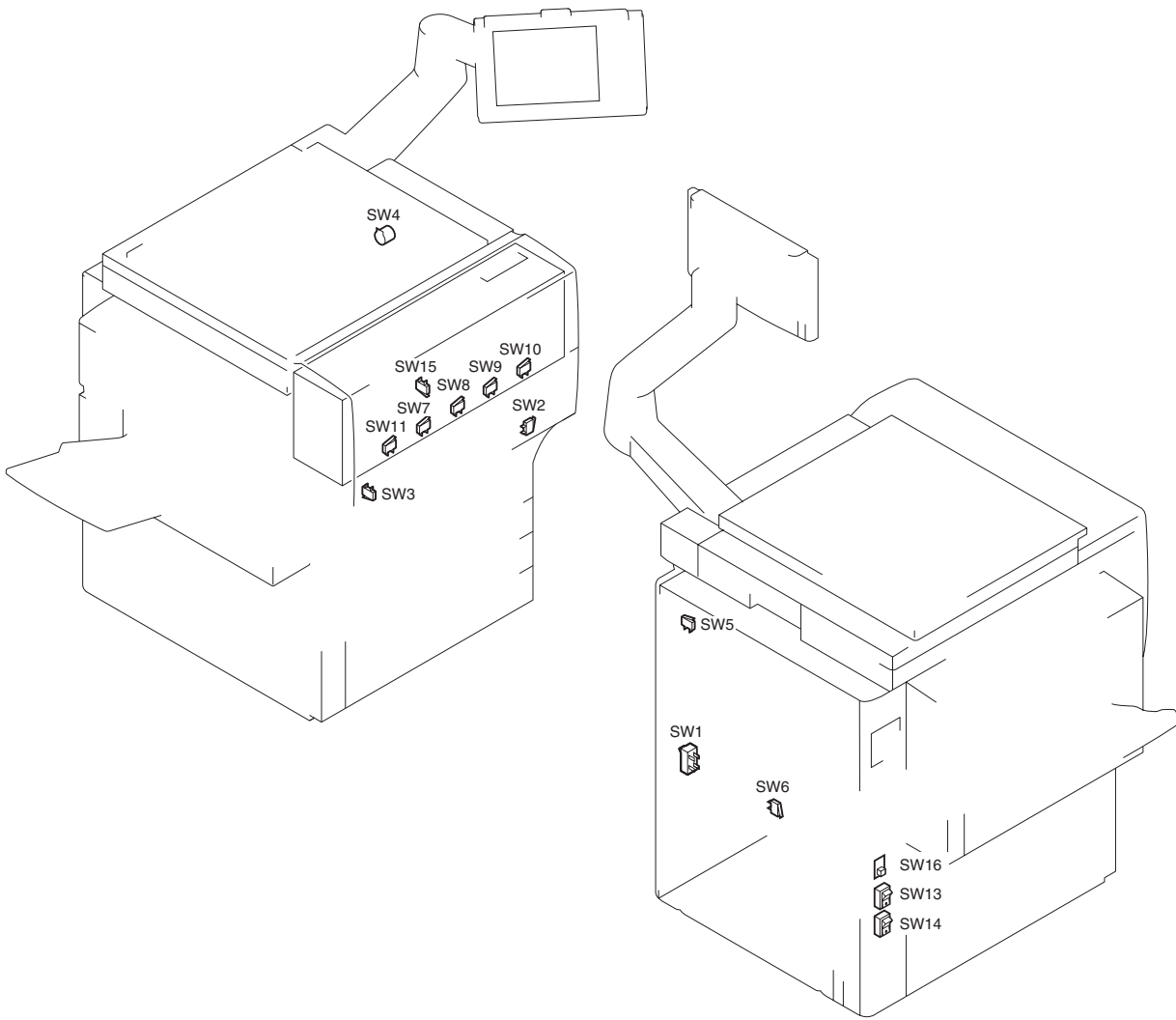
T-14-35

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	I/O		COPIER > FUNCTION	E code
SW1	Main switch	Main power ON / OFF	FK2-2509				
SW2	Manual feed door open / closed switch	Detection of manual feed tray open / closed	WC4-5231				
SW3	Front door switch	Detection of front cover open / closed	WC4-5125	P013-15	1 : Open		
SW4	Management key switch unit	Management key	FH7-6392				
SW5	Waste toner lock switch	Detection of lock of waste toner screw	WC4-5270	P014-07	0 : Toner clogged		E013-0002
SW6	Fixing feeding lock switch	Detection of lock / release of fixing feeding unit release lever	WC4-5231	P012-05	1 : Lock		
SW7	Y toner retainer detection switch	Detection of absence / presence of Y toner retainer	WC4-5263	P006-00	1 : Set		
SW8	M toner retainer detection switch	Detection of absence / presence of M toner retainer	WC4-5263	P006-01	1 : Set		
SW9	C toner retainer detection switch	Detection of absence / presence of C toner retainer	WC4-5263	P006-02	1 : Set		

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	I/O		COPIER > FUNCTION	E code
SW10	Bk toner retainer detection switch	Detection of absence / presence of Bk toner retainer	WC4-5263	P006-03	1 : Set		
SW11	L toner retainer detection switch	Detection of absence / presence of Bk toner retainer	WC4-5263	P006-04	1 : Set		
SW13	Environment switch	Drum heater, reader heater, cassette heater, deck heater ON / OFF	WC1-5179				
SW14	Cassette heater switch	Cassette heater, deck heater ON / OFF	WC1-5179				
SW15	Hopper shutter switch	Detection of hopper shutter open / closed	WC4-5262	P001-11	1 : Open		
SW16	Drum temperature switch	Switching temperature of drum heater	FM2-7737				

T-14-36

Number	Connector No.					
	AC driver PCB	DC power supply relay PCB	DC controller PCB	Main controller PCB	Side driver PCB	Drum heater driver PCB
SW1	J1802					
SW2		J4002				
SW3		J4002				
SW4				J1020		
SW5			J1179			
SW6			J1169			
SW7			J1195		J3412/J3402	
SW8			J1195		J3412/J3402	
SW9			J1195		J3412/J3402	
SW10			J1195		J3412/J3402	
SW11			J1196		J3407/J3406	
SW13	PIN2/PIN3					
SW14	PIN4/PIN5					
SW15			J1166		J3418/J3420	
SW16						J2



F-14-77

14.4.6 Lamps, Heaters, and Others

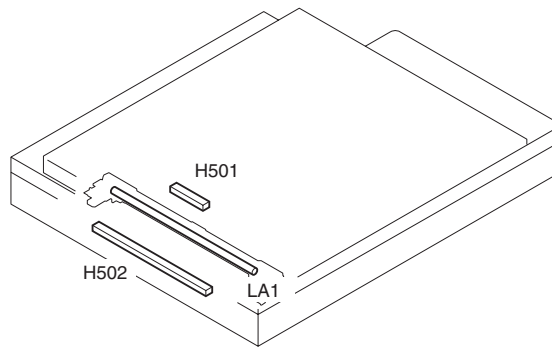
14.4.6.1 List of lamp / heater/ others

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

1. Reader unit

T-14-37

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E code
H501	Lens heater	Anti-condensation for lens	FK2-0226(100V)		
			FK2-0228(230V)		
H502	Mirror heater	Anti-condensation for mirror	FK2-0227(100V)		
			FK2-0229(230V)		
LA1	Scanning lamp	Exposure of original	FK2-0224	MISC-R>SCANLAMP	E225



F-14-78

2. Printer unit

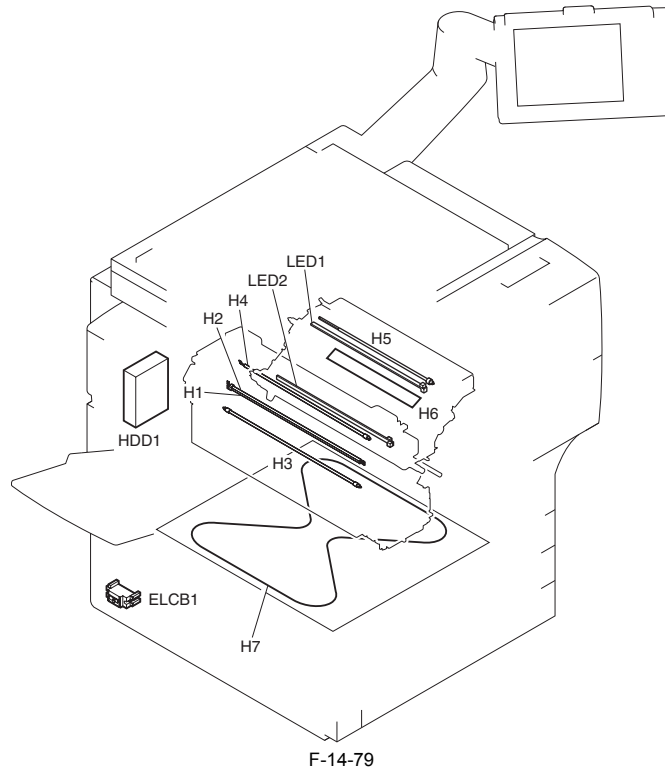
T-14-38

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E code
H1/H2	Fixing main heater / Fixing sub heater	Temperature control of fixing roller (main) / Temperature control of fixing roller	FK2-0551 (100V)		E000, E001, E002, E003, E004
			FK2-0552 (120V)		
			FK2-0553 (230V)		
H3	Fixing belt heater	Temperature control of fixing belt	FK2-0557(00V)		E000, E001, E002, E003
			FK2-0558 (120V)		
			FK2-0559 (230V)		
H4	Outside heating heater	Supplementary heat retention of fixing roller	FK2-0554 (100V)		E000, E001, E002, E003, E004
			FK2-0555 (120V)		
			FK2-0556 (230V)		
H5	Drum heater	Anti-condensation for drum	FK2-0547-000 (100V / 120V)		
			FH7-4725 (230V)		
H6	ITB heater	Anti-condensation for ITB	FK2-0548-000 (100V / 120V)		
			FK2-0549-000 (230V)		
H7	Cassette heater	Moisture absorption prevention for paper inside cassette	FH7-4740 (100V)		
			FH7-4742 (230V)		
LED1	Pre-exposure LED	Removing residual charge on photosensitive drum	FK2-0621		
LED2	Photosensitive drum cleaning pre-exposure LED	Prevention of drum memory generated during primary transfer	FK2-0621		
ELCB1	Leakage breaker		FH7-7626 (100V)		
			FK2-0014 (120V)		
			FH7-7625 (230V)		
HDD1	Hard disk	Storage of program and image	FM2-7359		E602, E610

T-14-39

Number	Connector No.			
	Main controller PCB	AC driver PCB	DC controller PCB	Side driver PCB
H1		J1803/J1810	J1113	
H2		J1803/J1810	J1113	
H3		J1804/J1810	J1113	
H4		J1804/J1810	J1113	
H5		J1805/J1810	J1113	
H6		J1805/J1810	J1113	
H7		J1806/J1810	J1113	

Number	Connector No.			
	Main controller PCB	AC driver PCB	DC controller PCB	Side driver PCB
LED1			J1167	J3416/J3419
LED2			J1167	J3416/J3419
ELCB1		J1801		
HDD1	J1013/J1014		J301	



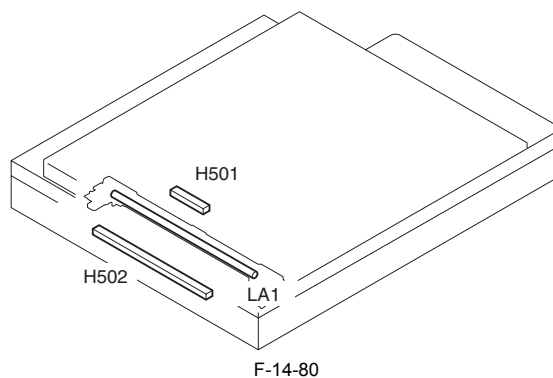
14.4.6.2 List of lamp / heater/ others

Color Image Reader-H1

1. Reader unit

T-14-40

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E code
H501	Lens heater	Anti-condensation for lens	FK2-0226(100V)		
			FK2-0228(230V)		
H502	Mirror heater	Anti-condensation for mirror	FK2-0227(100V)		
			FK2-0229(230V)		
LA1	Scanning lamp	Exposure of original	FK2-0224	MISC-R>SCANLAMP	E225



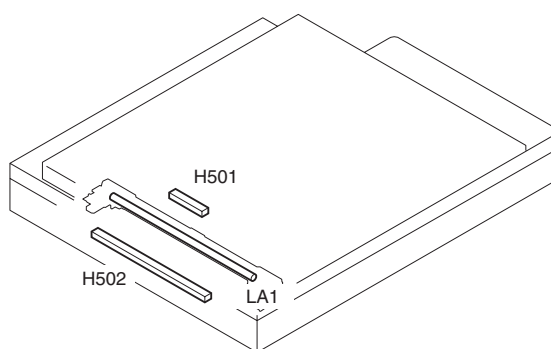
14.4.6.3 List of Lamp / Heater/ Others

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Reader unit

T-14-41

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E code	Connector No.	
						Interface PCB	Reader controller PCB
H501	Lens heater	Anti-condensation for lens	FK2-0226(100V)				
			FK2-0228(230V)				
H502	Mirror heater	Anti-condensation for mirror	FK2-0227(100V)				
			FK2-0229(230V)				
LA1	Scanning lamp	Exposure of original	FK2-0224	MISC-R>SCANLAMP	E225	J602/J2	J206



F-14-81

2. Printer unit

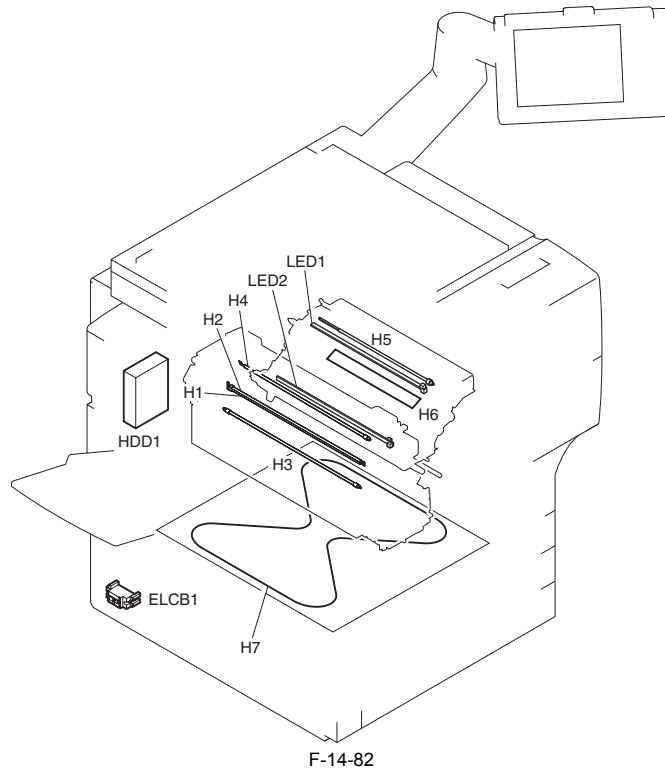
T-14-42

Number	Parts	Function	Parts No.	PART-CHK	E code
H1/H2	Fixing main heater / Fixing sub heater	Temperature control of fixing roller (main) / Temperature control of fixing roller	FK2-0551 (100V)		E000, E001, E002, E003, E004
			FK2-0552 (120V)		
			FK2-0553 (230V)		
H3	Fixing belt heater	Temperature control of fixing belt	FK2-0557(00V)		E000, E001, E002, E003
			FK2-0558 (120V)		
			FK2-0559 (230V)		
H4	Outside heating heater	Supplementary heat retention of fixing roller	FK2-0554 (100V)		E000, E001, E002, E003, E004
			FK2-0555 (120V)		
			FK2-0556 (230V)		
H5	Drum heater	Anti-condensation for drum	FK2-0547-000 (100V / 120V)		
			FH7-4725 (230V)		
H6	ITB heater	Anti-condensation for ITB	FK2-0548-000 (100V / 120V)		
			FK2-0549-000 (230V)		
H7	Cassette heater	Moisture absorption prevention for paper inside cassette	FH7-4740 (100V)		
			FH7-4742 (230V)		
LED1	Pre-exposure LED	Removing residual charge on photosensitive drum	FK2-0621		
LED2	Photosensitive drum cleaning pre-exposure LED	Prevention of drum memory generated during primary transfer	FK2-0621		
ELCB1	Leakage breaker		FH7-7626 (100V)		
			FK2-0014 (120V)		
			FH7-7625 (230V)		
HDD1	Hard disk	Storage of program and image	FM2-7359		E602, E610

T-14-43

Number	Connector No.			
	Main controller PCB	AC driver PCB	DC controller PCB	Side driver PCB
H1		J1803/J1810	J1113	
H2		J1803/J1810	J1113	

Number	Connector No.			
	Main controller PCB	AC driver PCB	DC controller PCB	Side driver PCB
H3		J1804/J1810	J1113	
H4		J1804/J1810	J1113	
H5		J1805/J1810	J1113	
H6		J1805/J1810	J1113	
H7		J1806/J1810	J1113	
LED1			J1167	J3416/J3419
LED2			J1167	J3416/J3419
ELCB1		J1801		
HDD1	J1013/J1014		J301	



14.4.7 PCBs

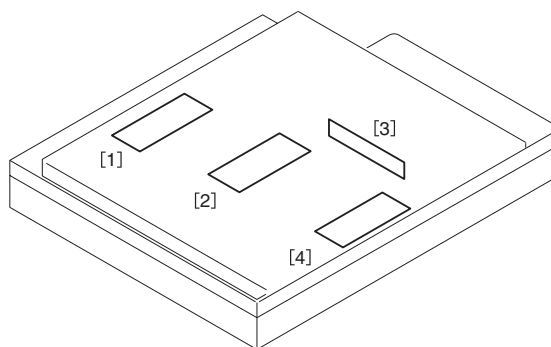
14.4.7.1 List of PCB

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

1. Reader unit

T-14-44

Number	Parts	Parts No.	Function
[1]	Interface PCB	FM2-4662	Interface between printer and ADF
[2]	Reader controller PCB	FM2-3932	Controlling reader assembly
[3]	CCD / AP PCB	FM2-3920 (CCD unit)	Analogue image processing
[4]	Inverter PCB	FK2-1187	Activation of scanning lamp



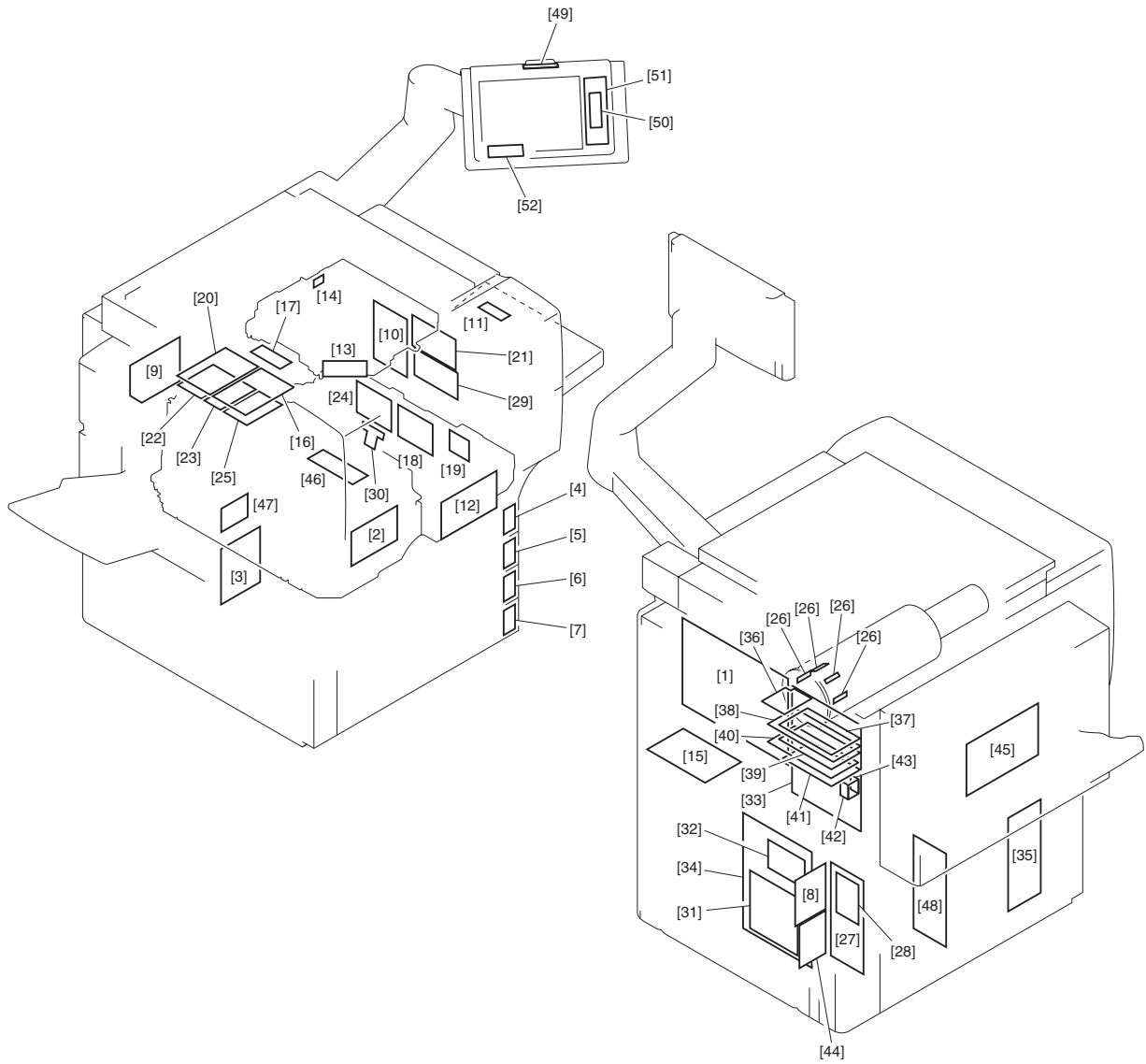
F-14-83

2. Printer unit

T-14-45

Number	Parts	Parts No.	Function
[1]	DC controller PCB	FM2-8161	Controlling printer assembly / accessory
[2]	Fixing driver PCB	FM2-7729	Controlling sensor, motor, fan, solenoid of fixing assembly
[3]	Pickup driver PCB	FM2-7726	Controlling motor of pickup assembly
[4]	Cassette 1 size sensor	FM2-0849	Detection of paper size of cassette 1
[5]	Cassette 2 size sensor	FM2-0849	Detection of paper size of cassette 2
[6]	Cassette 3 size sensor	FM2-0849	Detection of paper size of cassette 3
[7]	Cassette 4 size sensor	FM2-0849	Detection of paper size of cassette 4
[8]	Drum heater driver PCB	FM2-7735 (100V / 120V) FM2-7736 (230V)	Controlling drum heater
[9]	Back driver PCB	FM2-7732	
[10]	Side driver PCB	FM2-7730	
[11]	Manual feed paper width sensor PCB	FH7-7600	Detection of manual feed paper width
[12]	Feeding driver PCB	FM2-7728	Controlling sensor, motor, fan, solenoid of feeding assembly
[13]	Laser driver PCB	FM2-6066	Drive control for laser scanner unit
[14]	BD PCB		Generation of BD signal
[15]	HV1 PCB	FM2-2633	Controlling primary charging, gird, pre-transfer charging bias
[16]	HV2 PCB	FM2-7188	Control of primary transfer bias
[17]	HV2 SUB PCB	FM2-7197	Controlling primary transfer, secondary transfer, tension roller, ITB cleaning bias
[18]	HV3 PCB	FM2-7189	Secondary transfer static eliminator bias control
[19]	HV3 SUB PCB	FM2-7198	Secondary transfer static eliminator, secondary transfer outer roller cleaning bias control
[20]	HV4 PCB	FM2-7190	Secondary transfer bias control
[21]	HV5 PCB	FM2-7191	Developing bias control
[22]	HV6-1 PCB	FM2-7202	ITB cleaning bias control
[23]	HV6-2 PCB	FM2-7192	ITB cleaning bias control
[24]	HV8 PCB	FM2-7193	Secondary transfer outer roller cleaning bias control
[25]	HV9 PCB	FM2-7194	Tension roller bias control
[26]	HV10 PCB	FM2-7195	
[27]	AC driver PCB	FM2-7743 (100V / 120V) FM2-7744 (230V)	AC drive
[28]	AC driver sub PCB		AC drive (sub)

Number	Parts	Parts No.	Function
[29]	Potential control PCB	FM2-2642	Conversion of output of potential sensor
[30]	Potential sensor PCB		Measurement of potential on the surface of photosensitive drum
[31]	DC power supply relay PCB	FM2-7739	Controlling ON / OFF of DC power, protection of overvoltage / overcurrent
[32]	DC / DC PCB	FM2-6049	Conversion of DC power supply
[33]	Main controller PCB	FM2-7349	Processing of image data output to printer unit
[34]	DC power supply PCB	FM2-0829 (100V / 120V)	Generation of DC power supply (main)
		FM2-0835 (230V)	
[35]	Sub DC power supply PCB	FK2-2660 (100V / 120V)	Generation of DC power supply (sub)
		FK2-2661 (230V)	
[36]	TFT conversion PCB	FM2-8075	Controlling control panel
[37]	Main controller PCB (Sub R-A)	FK2-5901	Conversion of color space, rotation for electronic sorting, binarization for fax, resolution conversion for fax
[38]	Main controller PCB (sub PF-A)	FM2-7353	Image processing for printer output (color space compression, under cover removal, LOG conversion, direct mapping, color balance, zoom fine tuning, gradation conversion, screen processing, trimming, add-on)
[39]	Relay PCB (GU-SHORT)	FM2-5919	Bus connection
[40]	Main controller PCB (sub S-B)	FM2-7362	Scanner interface, scanner image processing (resolution conversion, image rotation, compression and expansion)
	Main controller PCB (sub ZJ-A)	FM2-7352	
[41]	Main controller PCB (sub LANBAR-A)	FM2-5898	LAN connection, HDD controller, HDD power supply
[42]	BOOTROM PCB		Activation of system
[43]	SRAM PCB	FM2-6040	Storage of service mode setting value / HDD control information
[44]	All-night power supply PCB	FK2-0101 (100V / 120V)	Generation of all-night power supply
		FK2-0111 (230V)	
[45]	Buffer decurler PCB	FM2-7740	Control of buffer decurler
[46]	Color sensor PCB	FM2-7733	Detection of image density on papers
[47]	RD-DC / DC PCB	FM2-6300	Generation of fixing motor power (38V)
[48]	Accessory filter PCB	FM2-7199 (100V / 120V)	Noise filter of accessory power supply
		FM2-7200 (230V)	
[49]	Control panel LED PCB	FM2-5463	LED emission control
[50]	Control panel CPU PCB	FM2-5461	Controlling control panel
[51]	Control panel key PCB	FM2-5462	Input on the numerical pad of the control panel, LED display
[52]	Control panel inverter PCB	FK2-1646	Lightening control of liquid crystal panel



F-14-84

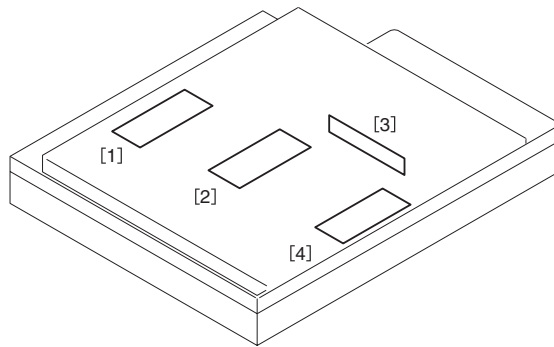
14.4.7.2 List of PCB

Color Image Reader-H1

Reader unit

T-14-46

Number	Parts	Parts No.	Function
[1]	Interface PCB	FM2-4662	Interface between printer and ADF
[2]	Reader controller PCB	FM2-3932	Controlling reader assembly
[3]	CCD / AP PCB	FM2-3920 (CCD unit)	Analogue image processing
[4]	Inverter PCB	FK2-1187	Activation of scanning lamp



F-14-85

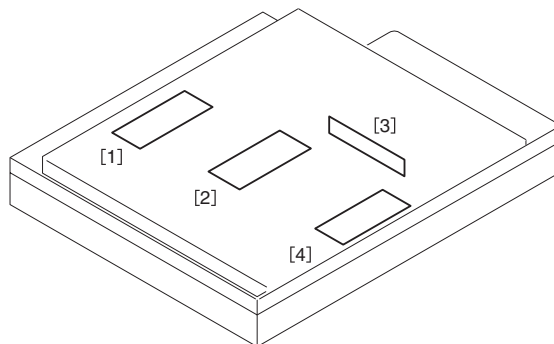
14.4.7.3 List of PCB

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Reader unit

T-14-47

Number	Parts	Parts No.	Function
[1]	Interface PCB	FM2-4662	Interface between printer and ADF
[2]	Reader controller PCB	FM2-3932	Controlling reader assembly
[3]	CCD / AP PCB	FM2-3920 (CCD unit)	Analogue image processing
[4]	Inverter PCB	FK2-1187	Activation of scanning lamp



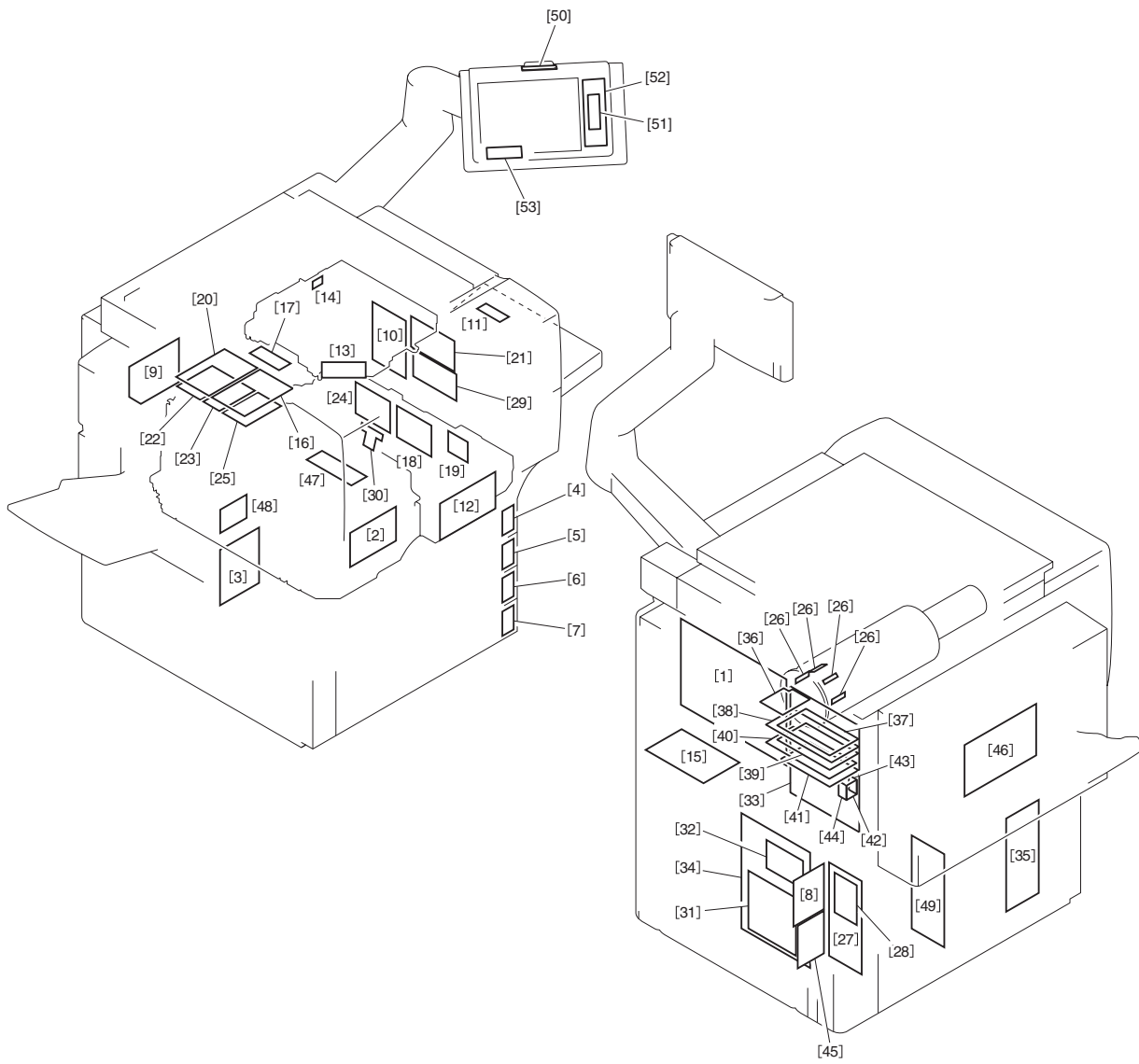
F-14-86

2. Printer unit

T-14-48

Number	Parts	Parts No.	Function
[1]	DC controller PCB	FM2-8161	Controlling printer assembly / accessory
[2]	Fixing driver PCB	FM2-7729	Controlling sensor, motor, fan, solenoid of fixing assembly
[3]	Pickup driver PCB	FM2-7726	Controlling motor of pickup assembly
[4]	Cassette 1 size sensor	FM2-0849	Detection of paper size of cassette 1
[5]	Cassette 2 size sensor	FM2-0849	Detection of paper size of cassette 2
[6]	Cassette 3 size sensor	FM2-0849	Detection of paper size of cassette 3
[7]	Cassette 4 size sensor	FM2-0849	Detection of paper size of cassette 4
[8]	Drum heater driver PCB	FM2-7735 (100V / 120V) FM2-7736 (230V)	Controlling drum heater
[9]	Back driver PCB	FM2-7732	
[10]	Side driver PCB	FM2-7730	
[11]	Manual feed paper width sensor PCB	FH7-7600	Detection of manual feed paper width
[12]	Feeding driver PCB	FM2-7728	Controlling sensor, motor, fan, solenoid of feeding assembly
[13]	Laser driver PCB	FM2-6066	Drive control for laser scanner unit
[14]	BD PCB		Generation of BD signal
[15]	HV1 PCB	FM2-2633	Controlling primary charging, gird, pre-transfer charging bias
[16]	HV2 PCB	FM2-7188	Control of primary transfer bias
[17]	HV2 SUB PCB	FM2-7197	Controlling primary transfer, secondary transfer, tension roller, ITB cleaning bias
[18]	HV3 PCB	FM2-7189	Secondary transfer static eliminator bias control
[19]	HV3 SUB PCB	FM2-7198	Secondary transfer static eliminator, secondary transfer outer roller cleaning bias control
[20]	HV4 PCB	FM2-7190	Secondary transfer bias control
[21]	HV5 PCB	FM2-7191	Developing bias control

Number	Parts	Parts No.	Function
[22]	HV6-1 PCB	FM2-7202	ITB cleaning bias control
[23]	HV6-2 PCB	FM2-7192	ITB cleaning bias control
[24]	HV8 PCB	FM2-7193	Secondary transfer outer roller cleaning bias control
[25]	HV9 PCB	FM2-7194	Tension roller bias control
[26]	HV10 PCB	FM2-7195	
[27]	AC driver PCB	FM2-7743 (100V / 120V)	AC drive
		FM2-7744 (230V)	
[28]	AC driver sub PCB		AC drive (sub)
[29]	Potential control PCB	FM2-2642	Conversion of output of potential sensor
[30]	Potential sensor PCB		Measurement of potential on the surface of photosensitive drum
[31]	DC power supply relay PCB	FM2-7739	Controlling ON / OFF of DC power, protection of overvoltage / overcurrent
[32]	DC / DC PCB	FM2-6049	Conversion of DC power supply
[33]	Main controller PCB	FM2-7349	Processing of image data output to printer unit
[34]	DC power supply PCB	FM2-0829 (100V / 120V)	Generation of DC power supply (main)
		FM2-0835 (230V)	
[35]	Sub DC power supply PCB	FK2-2660 (100V / 120V)	Generation of DC power supply (sub)
		FK2-2661 (230V)	
[36]	TFT conversion PCB	FM2-8075	Controlling control panel
[37]	Main controller PCB (Sub R-A)	FK2-5901	Conversion of color space, rotation for electronic sorting, binarization for fax, resolution conversion for fax
[38]	Main controller PCB (sub PF-A)	FM2-7353	Image processing for printer output (color space compression, under cover removal, LOG conversion, direct mapping, color balance, zoom fine tuning, gradation conversion, screen processing, trimming, add-on)
[39]	Relay PCB (GU-SHORT)	FM2-5919	Bus connection
[40]	Main controller PCB (sub S-B)	FM2-7362	Scanner interface, scanner image processing (resolution conversion, image rotation, compression and expansion)
	Main controller PCB (sub ZJ-A)	FM2-7352	
[41]	Main controller PCB (sub LANBAR-A)	FM2-5898	LAN connection, HDD controller, HDD power supply
[42]	BOOTROM PCB		Activation of system
[43]	SRAM PCB	FM2-6040	Storage of service mode setting value / HDD control information
[44]	All-night power supply PCB	FK2-0101 (100V / 120V)	Generation of all-night power supply
		FK2-0111 (230V)	
[45]	Buffer decurler PCB	FM2-7740	Control of buffer decurler
[46]	Color sensor PCB	FM2-7733	Detection of image density on papers
[47]	RD-DC / DC PCB	FM2-6300	Generation of fixing motor power (38V)
[48]	Accessory filter PCB	FM2-7199 (100V / 120V)	Noise filter of accessory power supply
		FM2-7200 (230V)	
[49]	Control panel LED PCB	FM2-5463	LED emission control
[50]	Control panel CPU PCB	FM2-5461	Controlling control panel
[51]	Control panel key PCB	FM2-5462	Input on the numerical pad of the control panel, LED display
[52]	Control panel inverter PCB	FK2-1646	Lightening control of liquid crystal panel



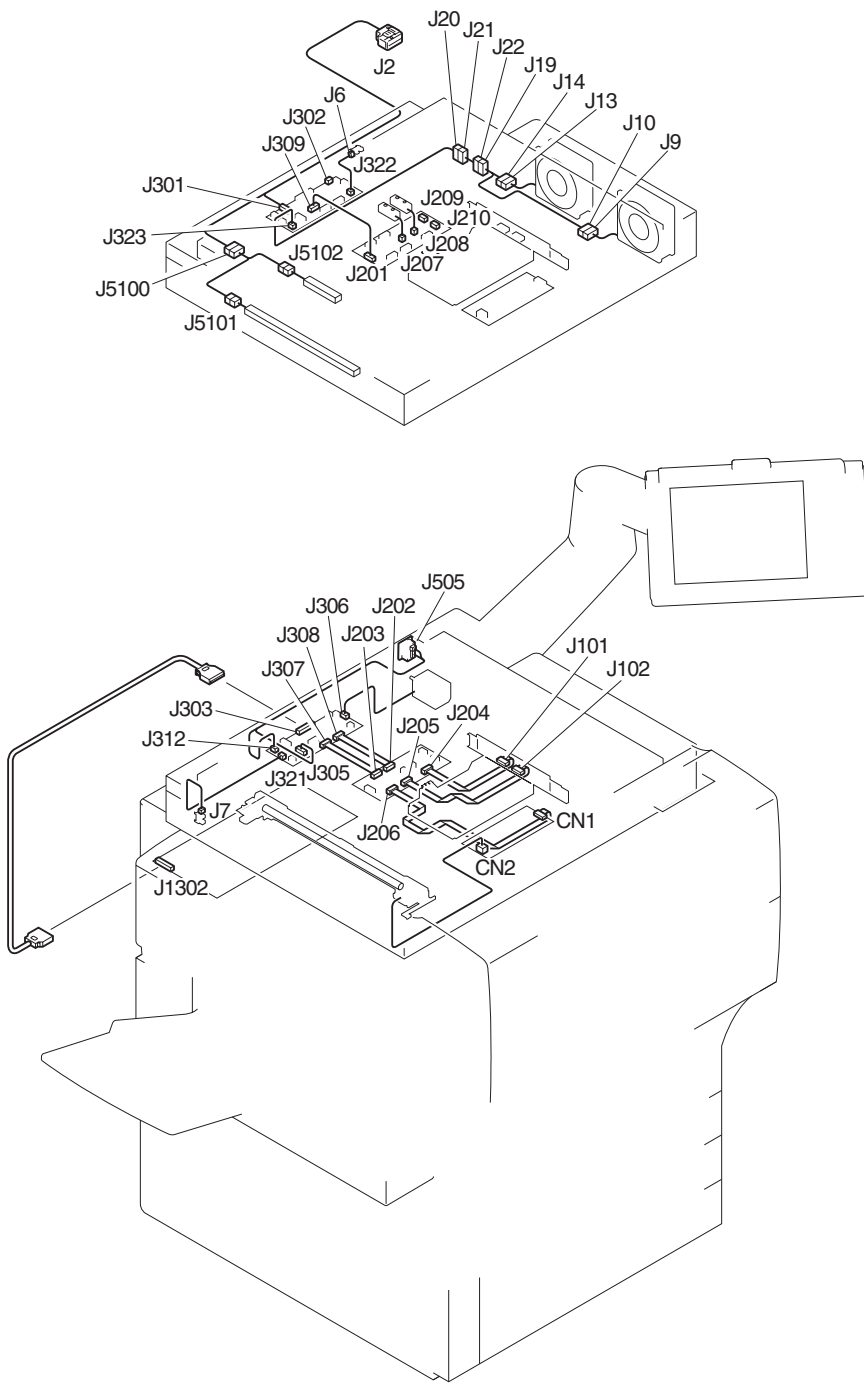
F-14-87

14.4.8 Connectors

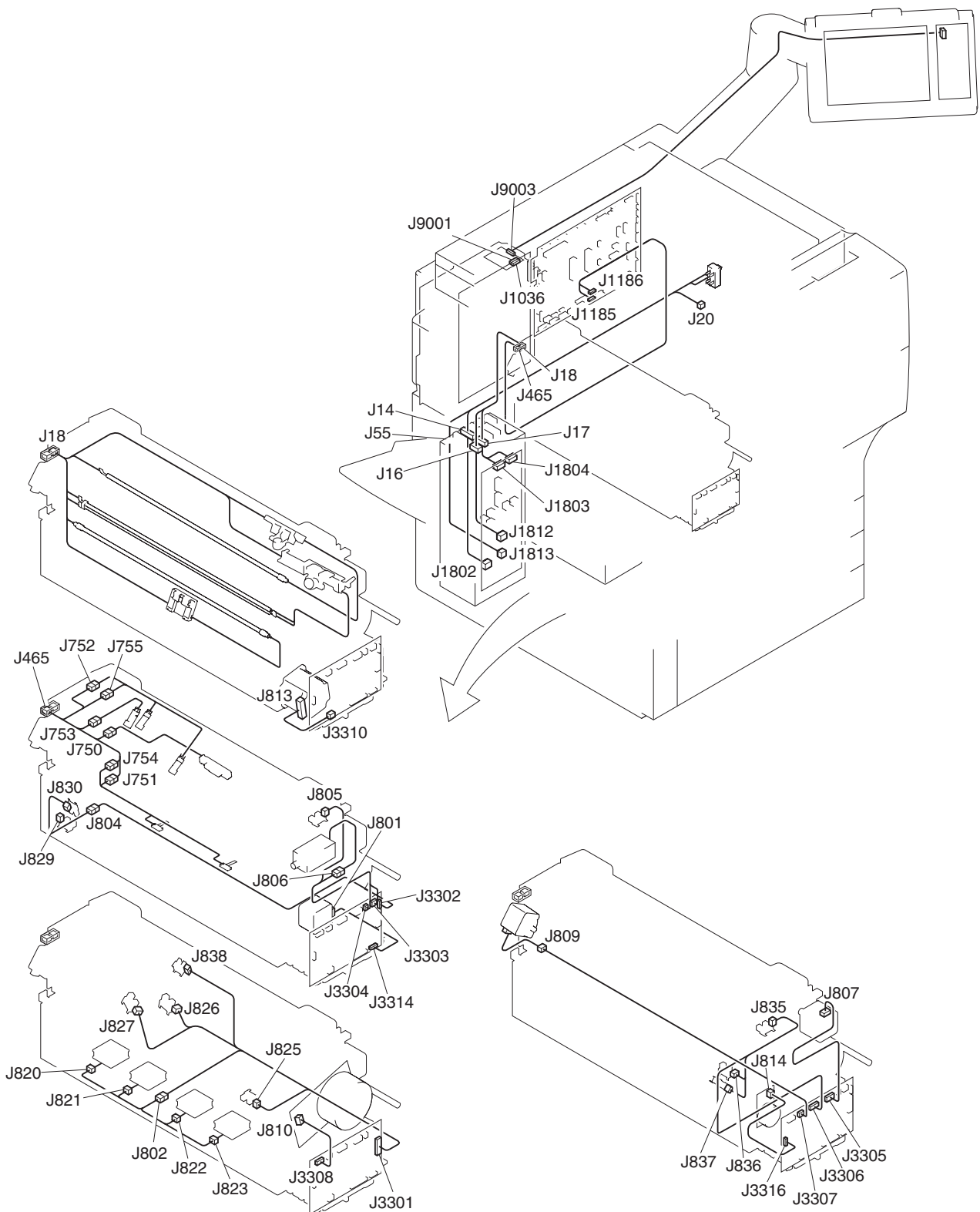
14.4.8.1 List of connector

imagePRESS C1

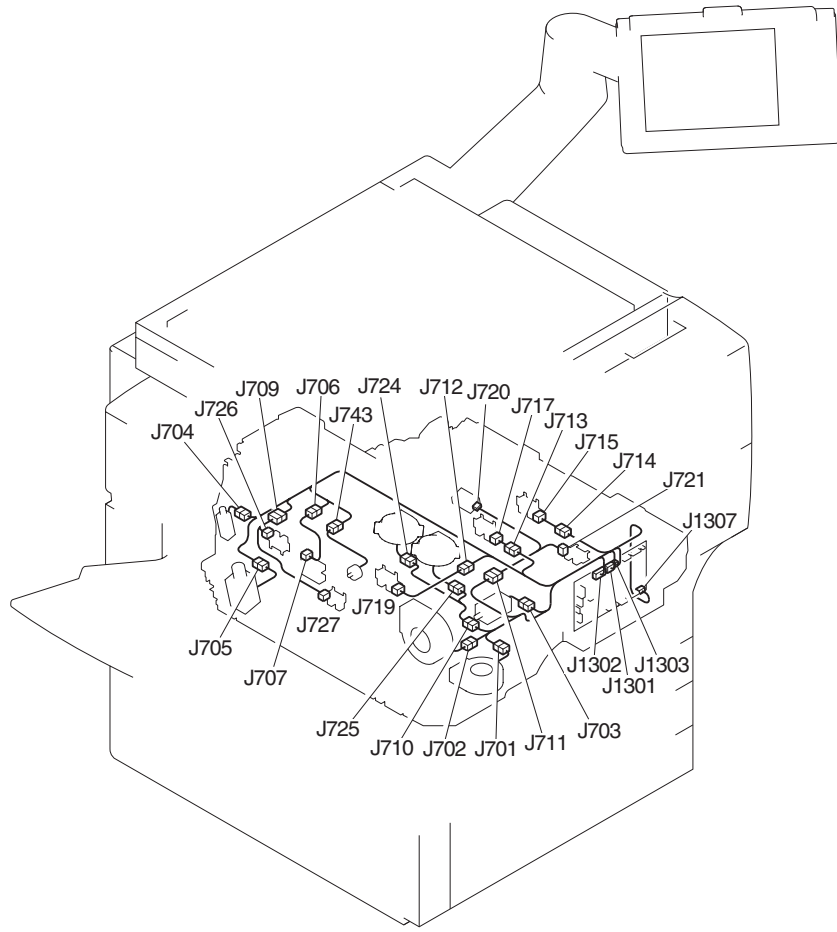
Reader



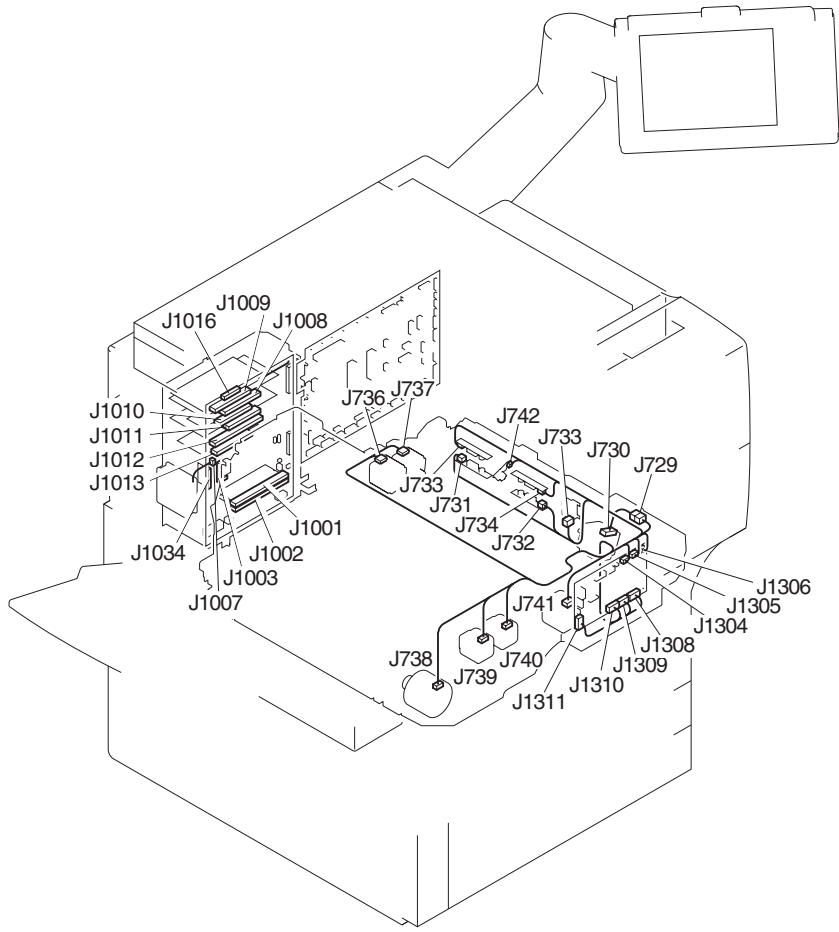
F-14-88



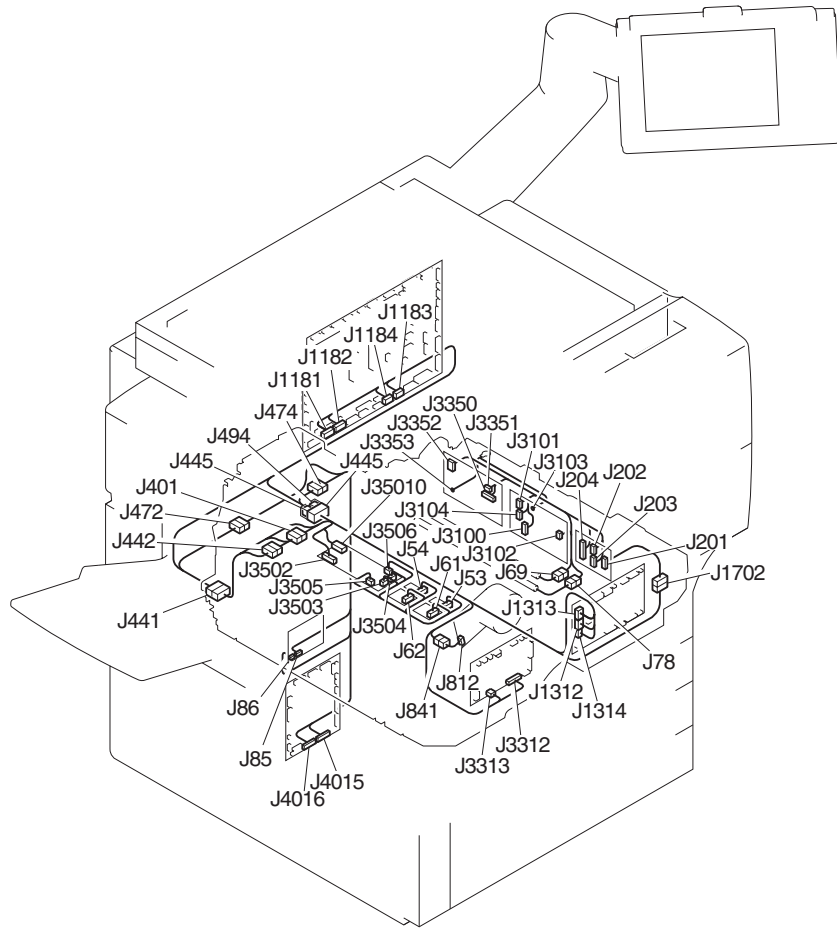
F-14-89



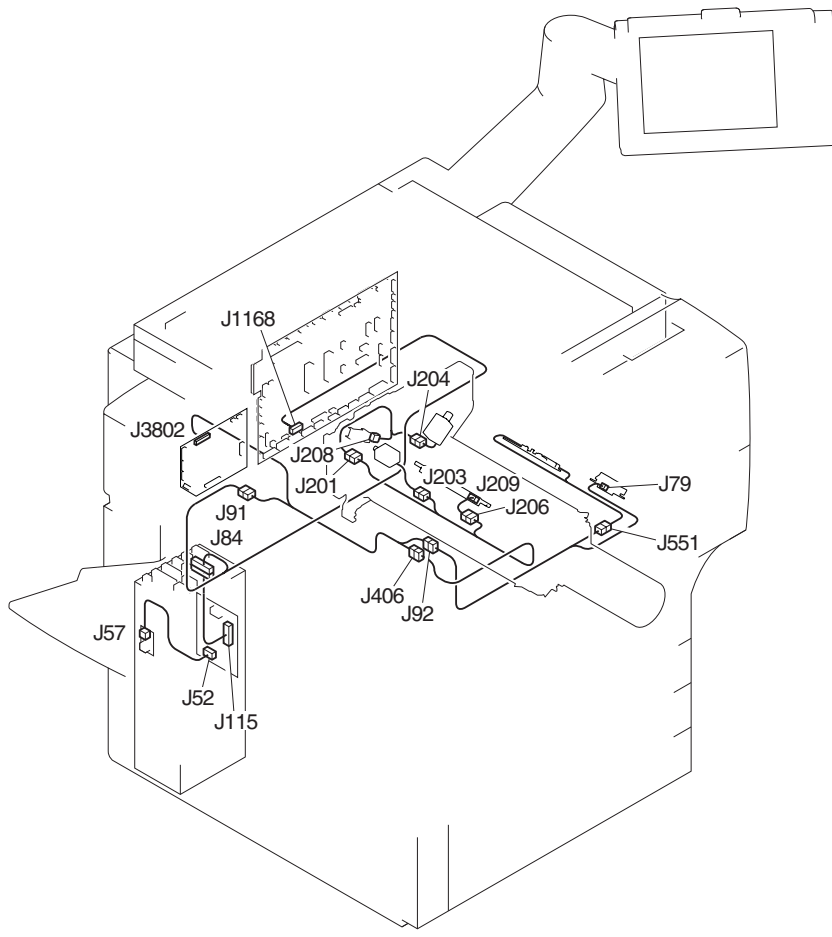
F-14-90



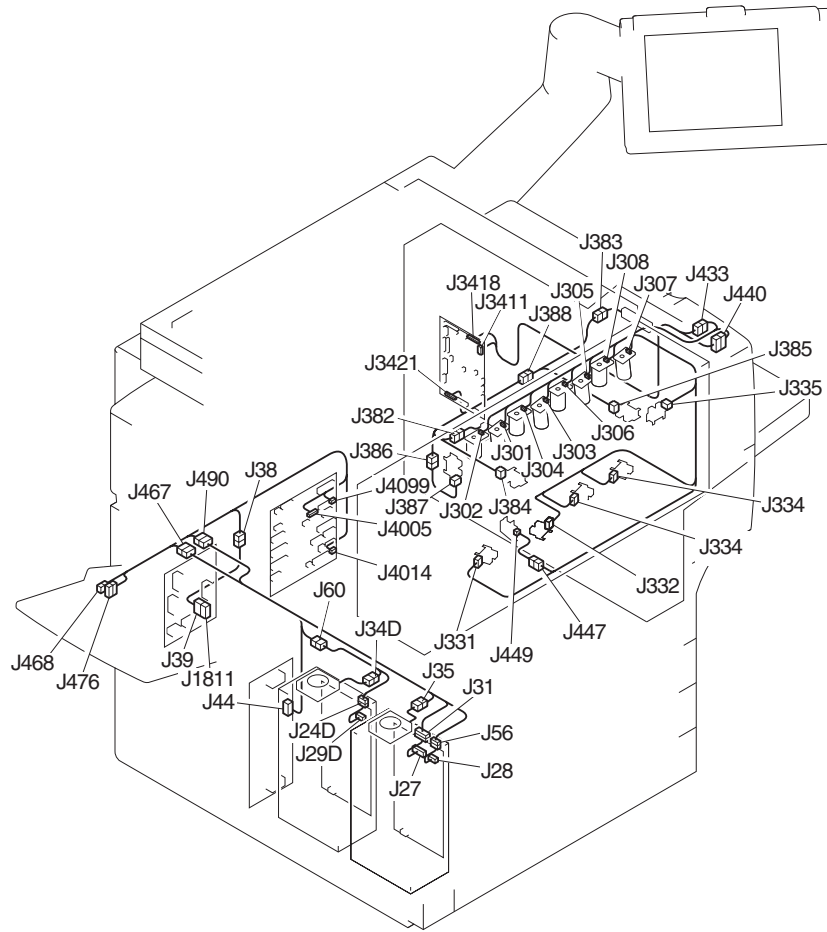
F-14-91



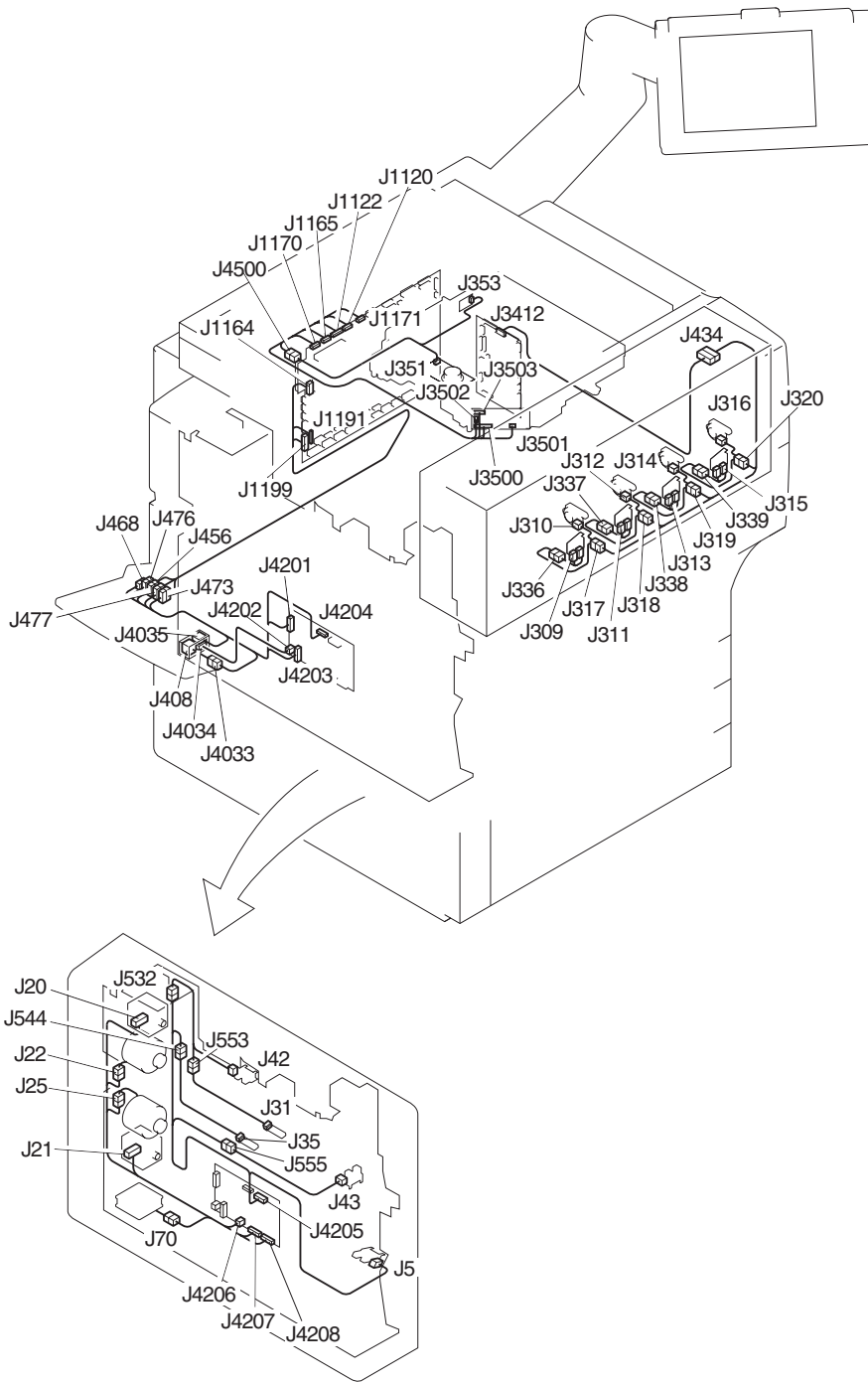
F-14-92



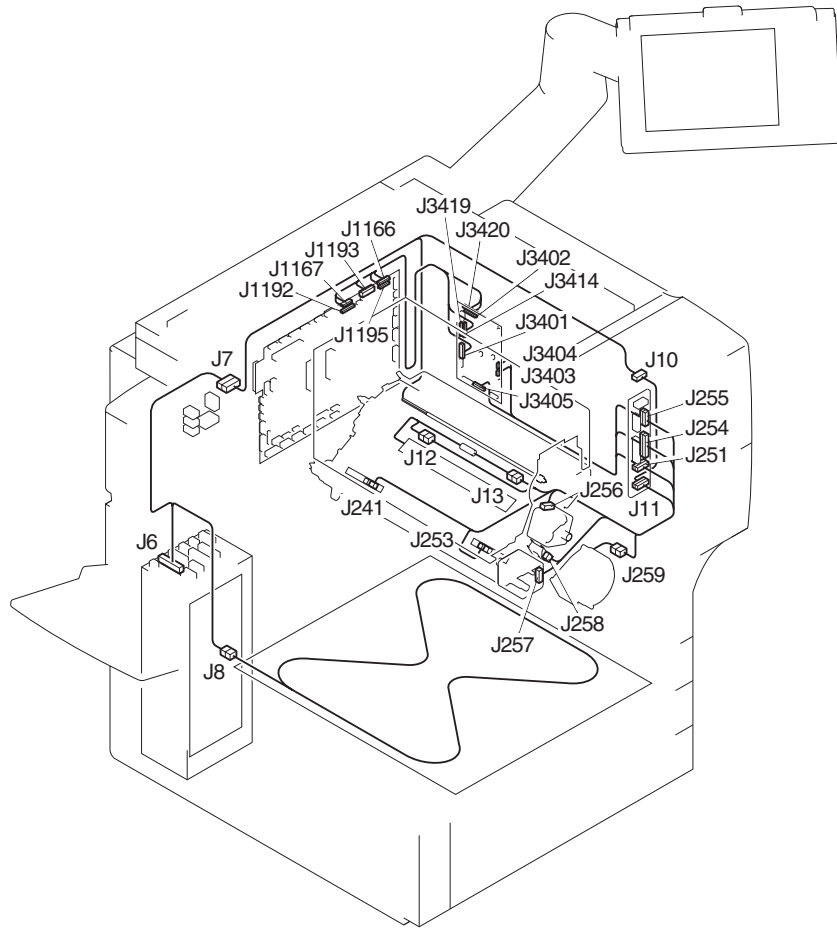
F-14-93



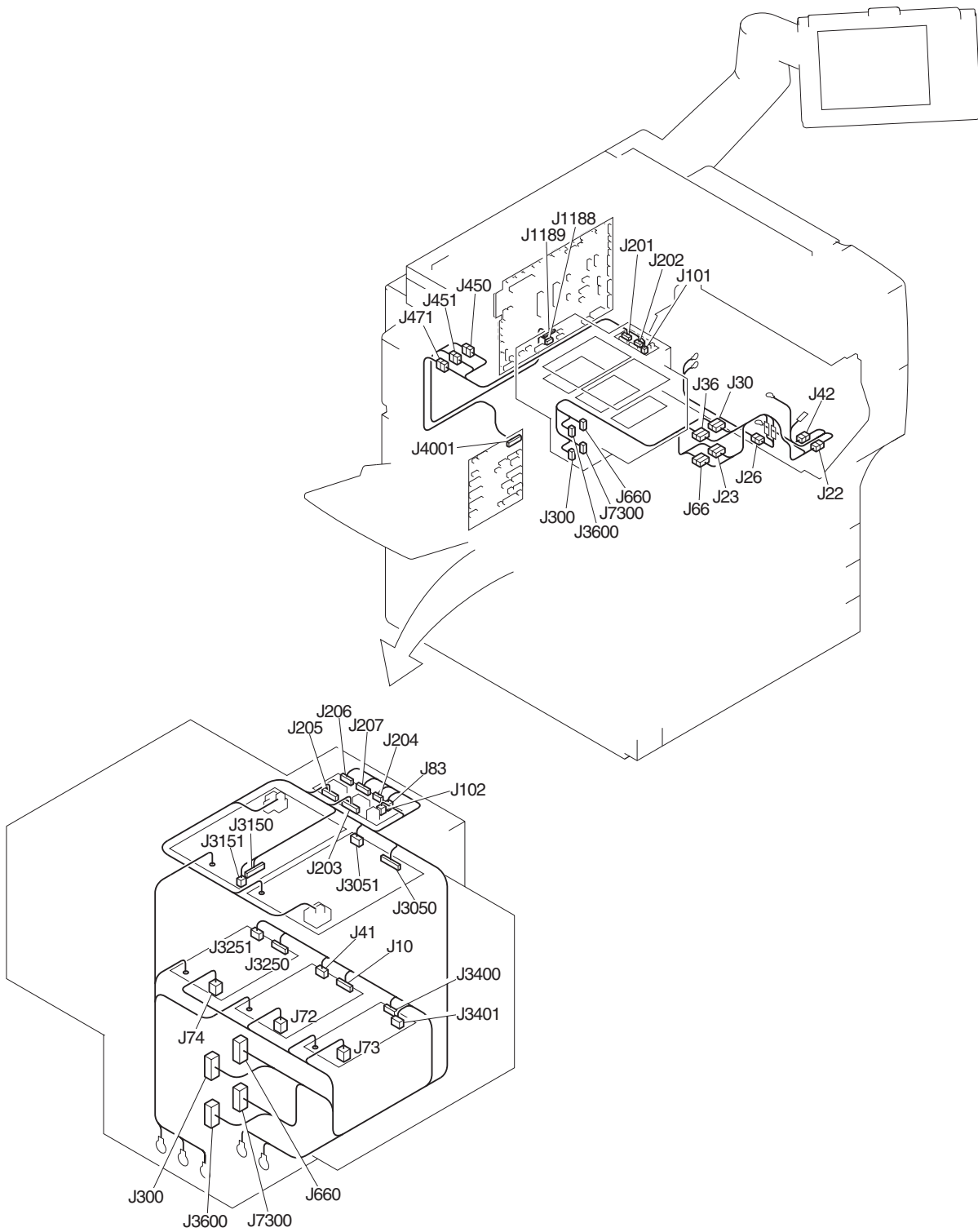
F-14-94



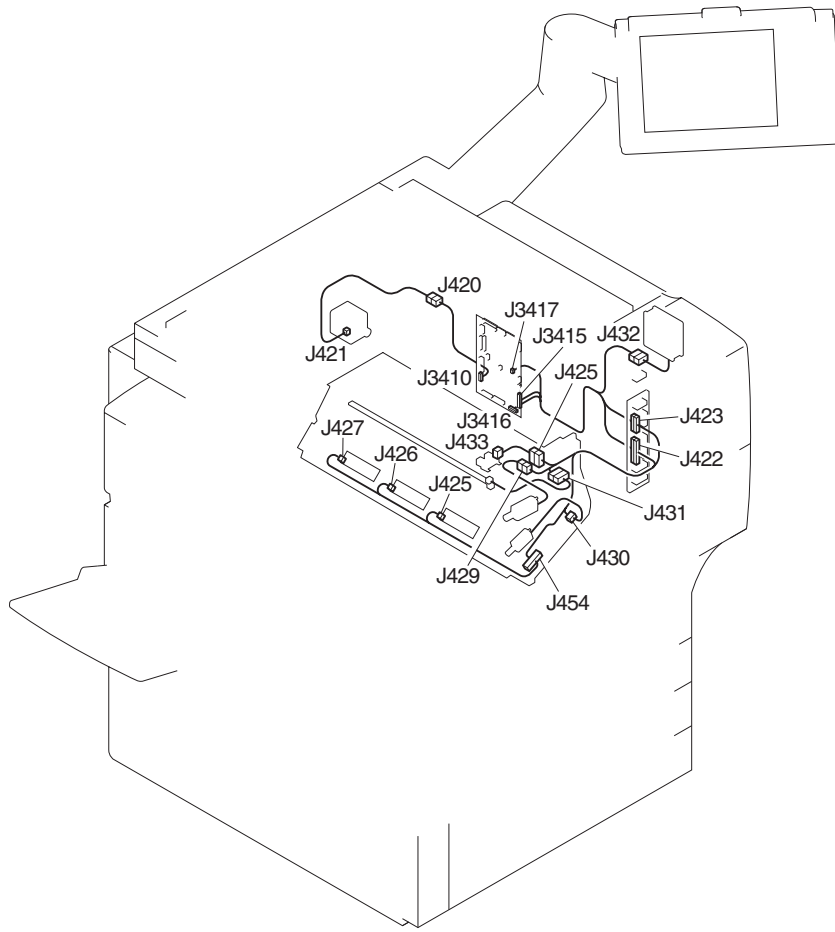
F-14-95



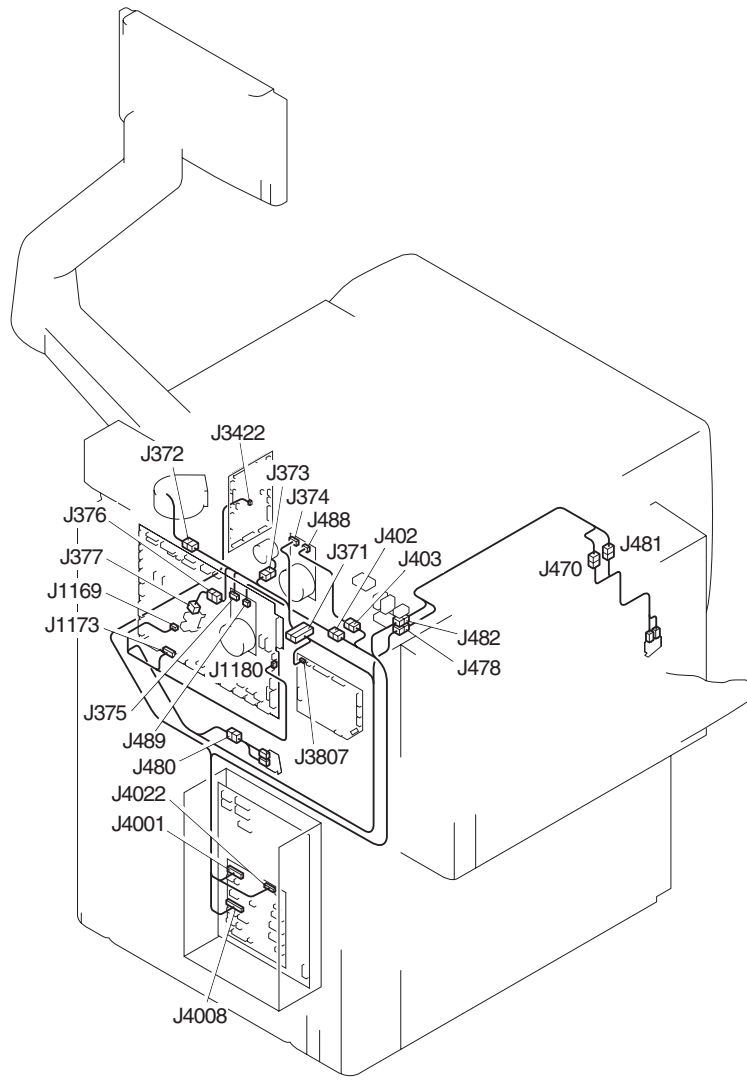
F-14-96



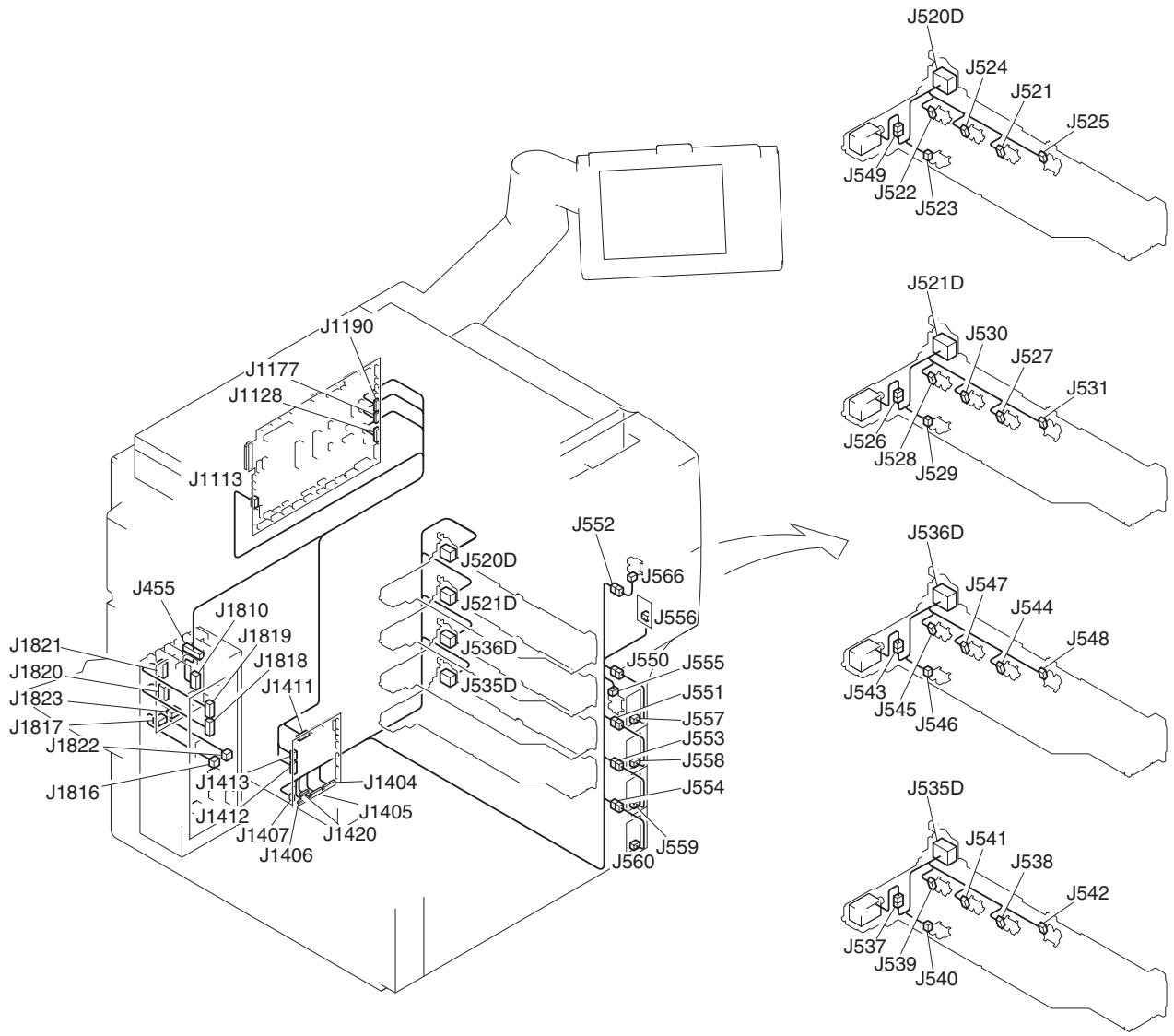
F-14-97



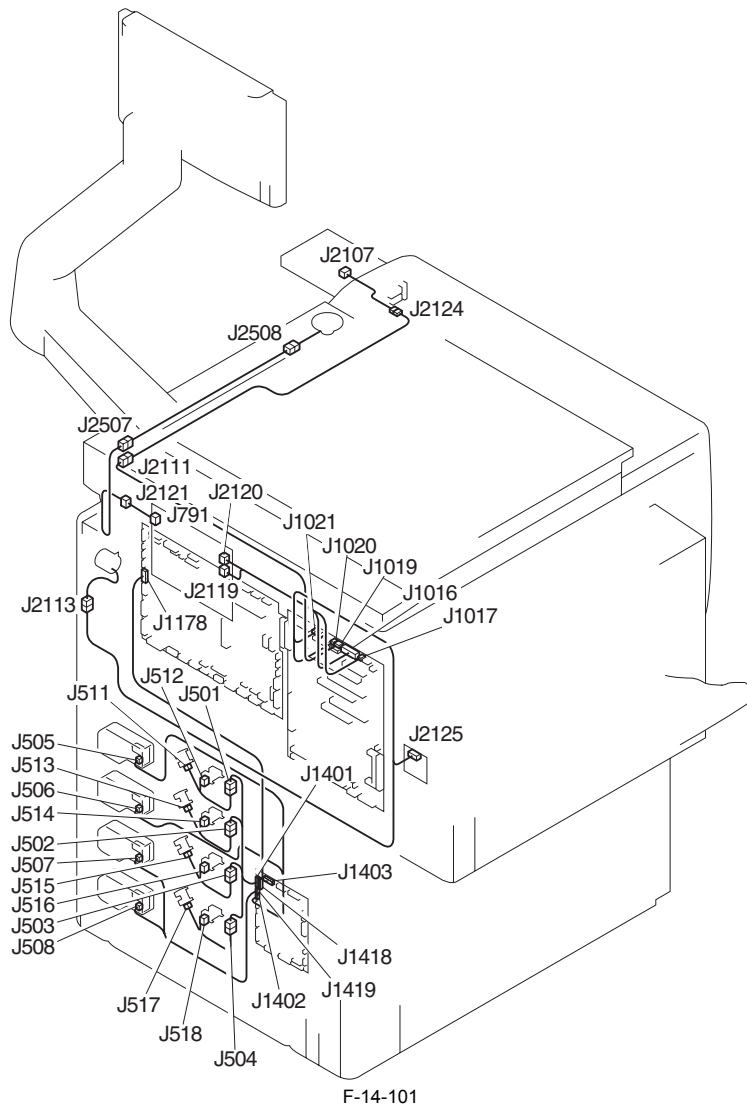
F-14-98

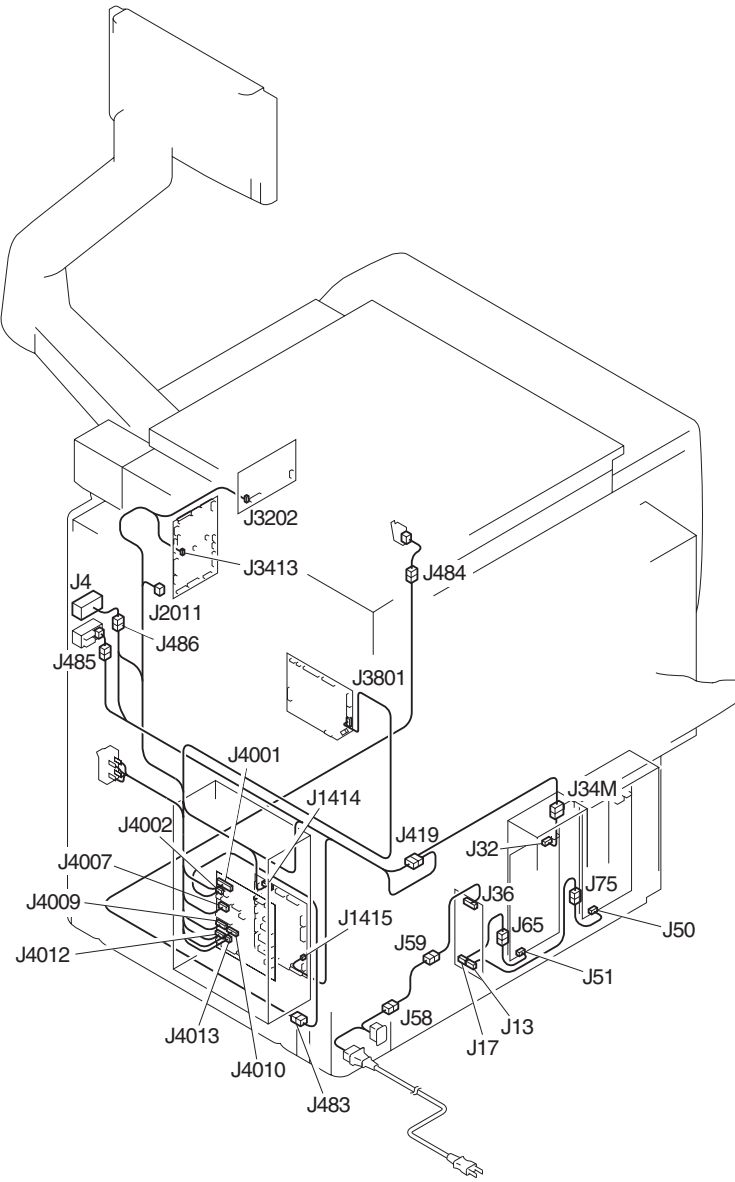


F-14-99

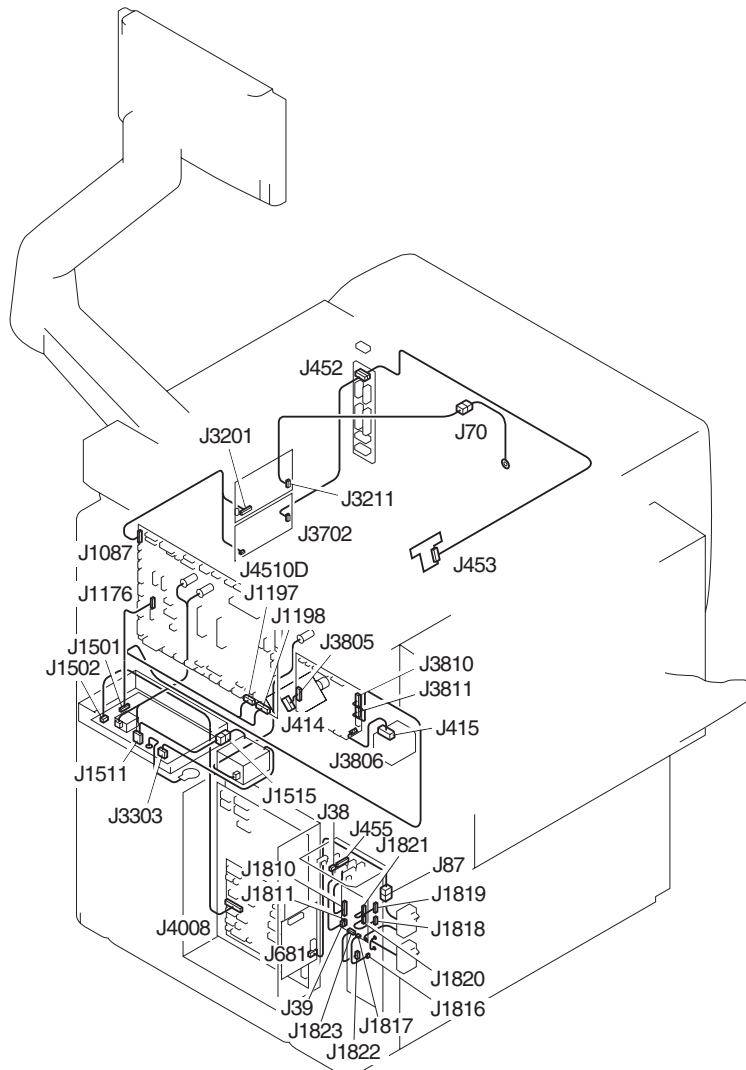


F-14-100

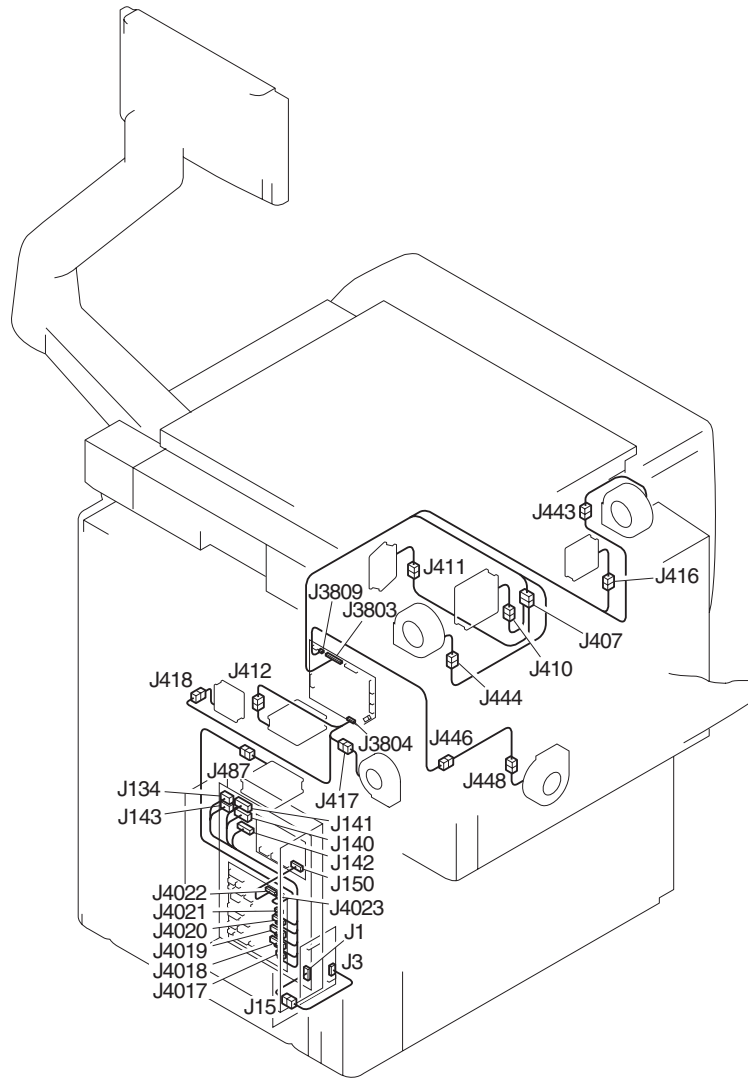




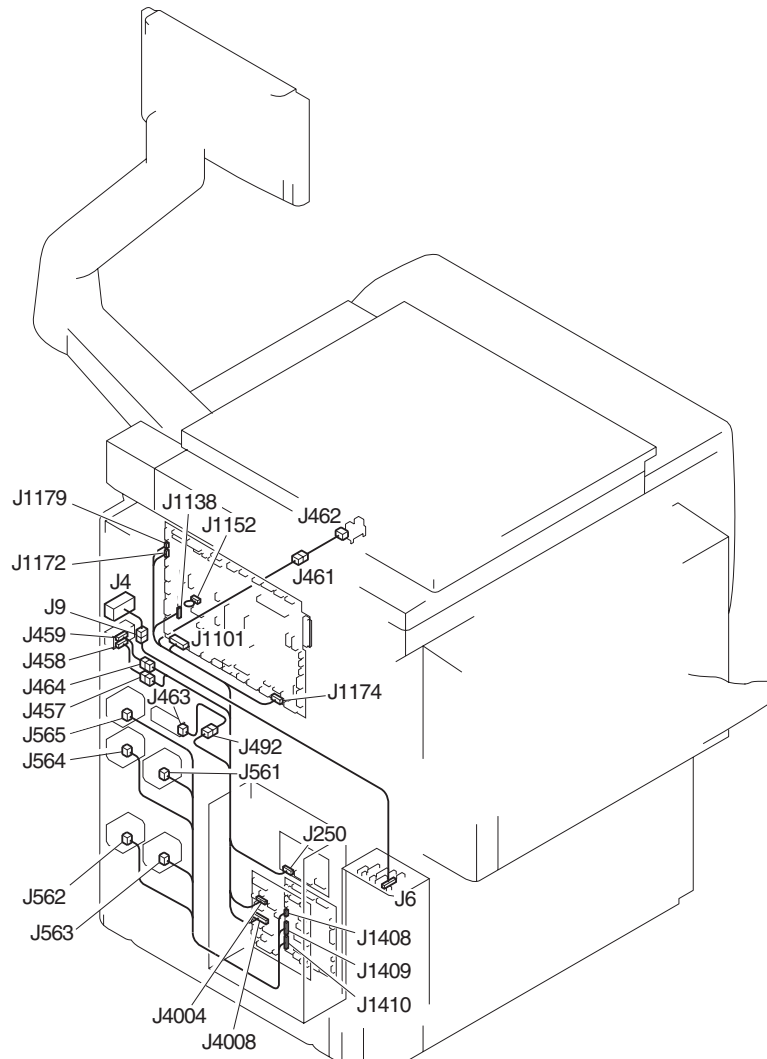
F-14-102



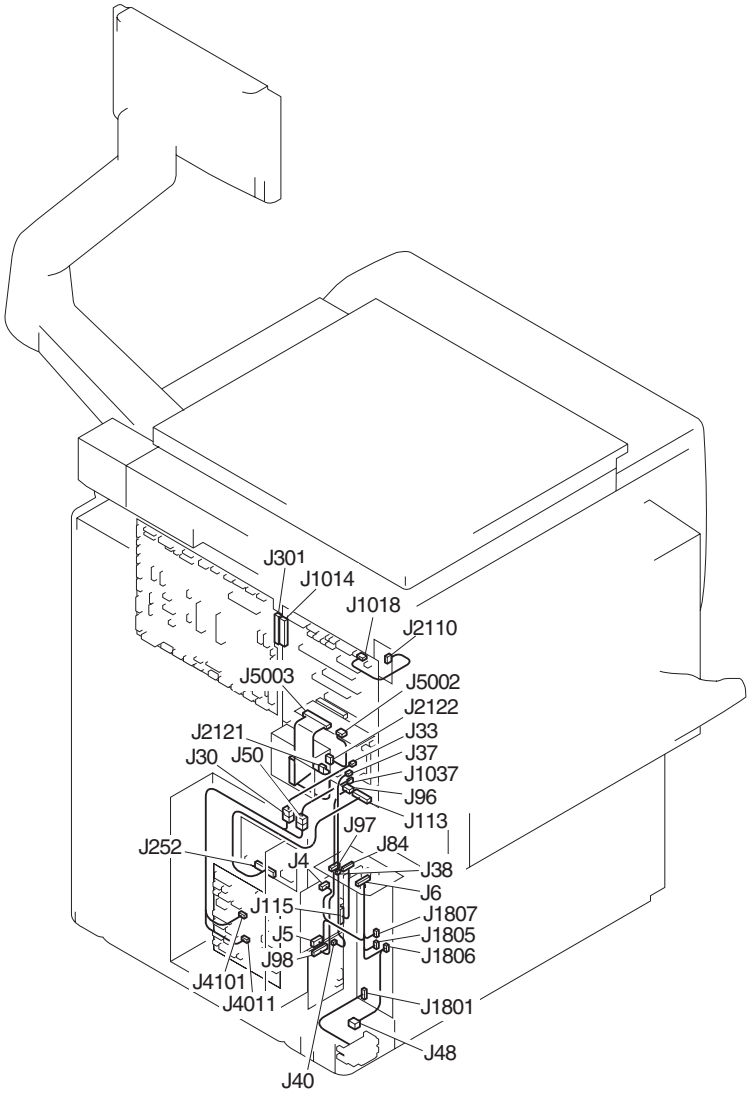
F-14-103



F-14-104



F-14-105

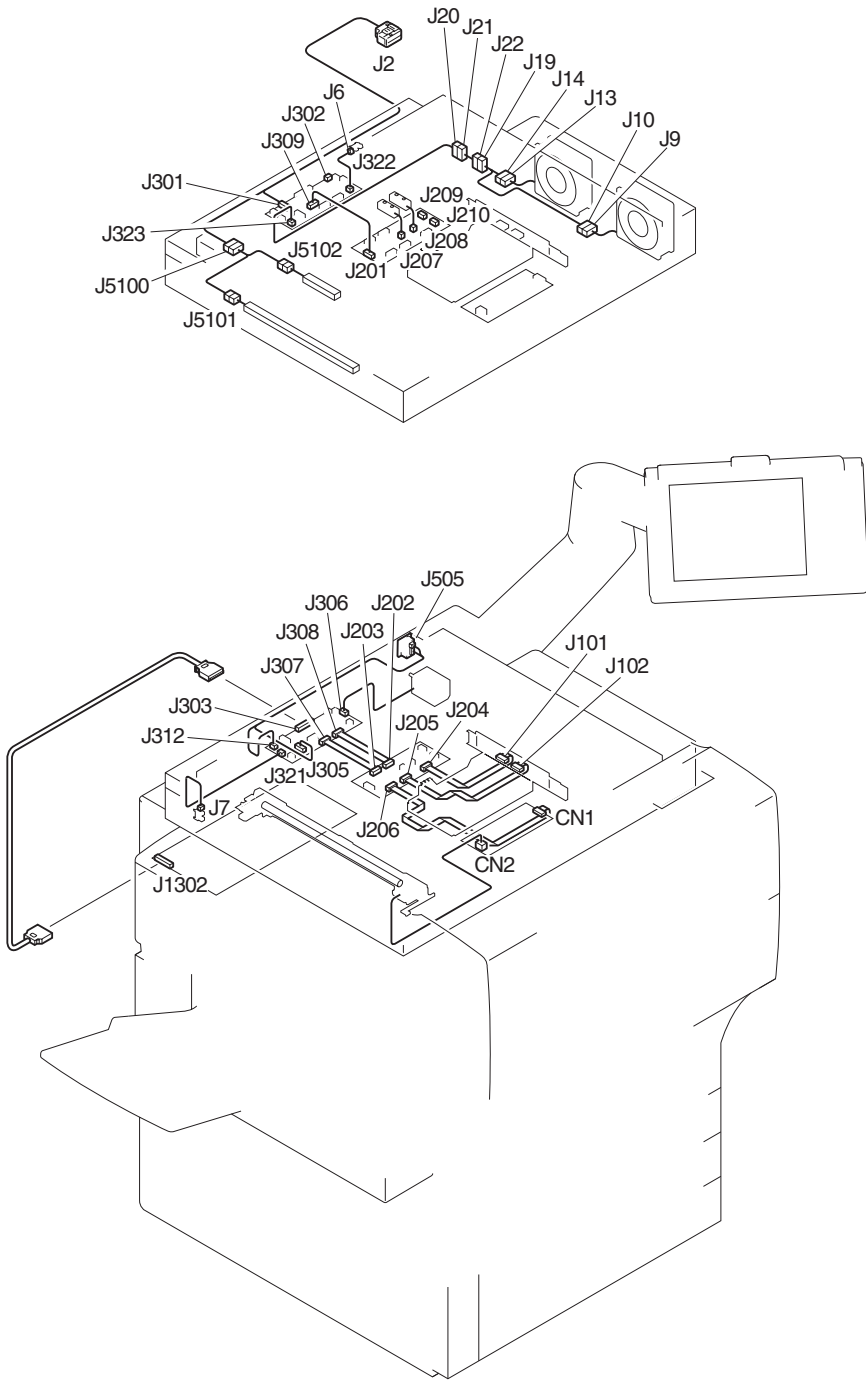


F-14-106

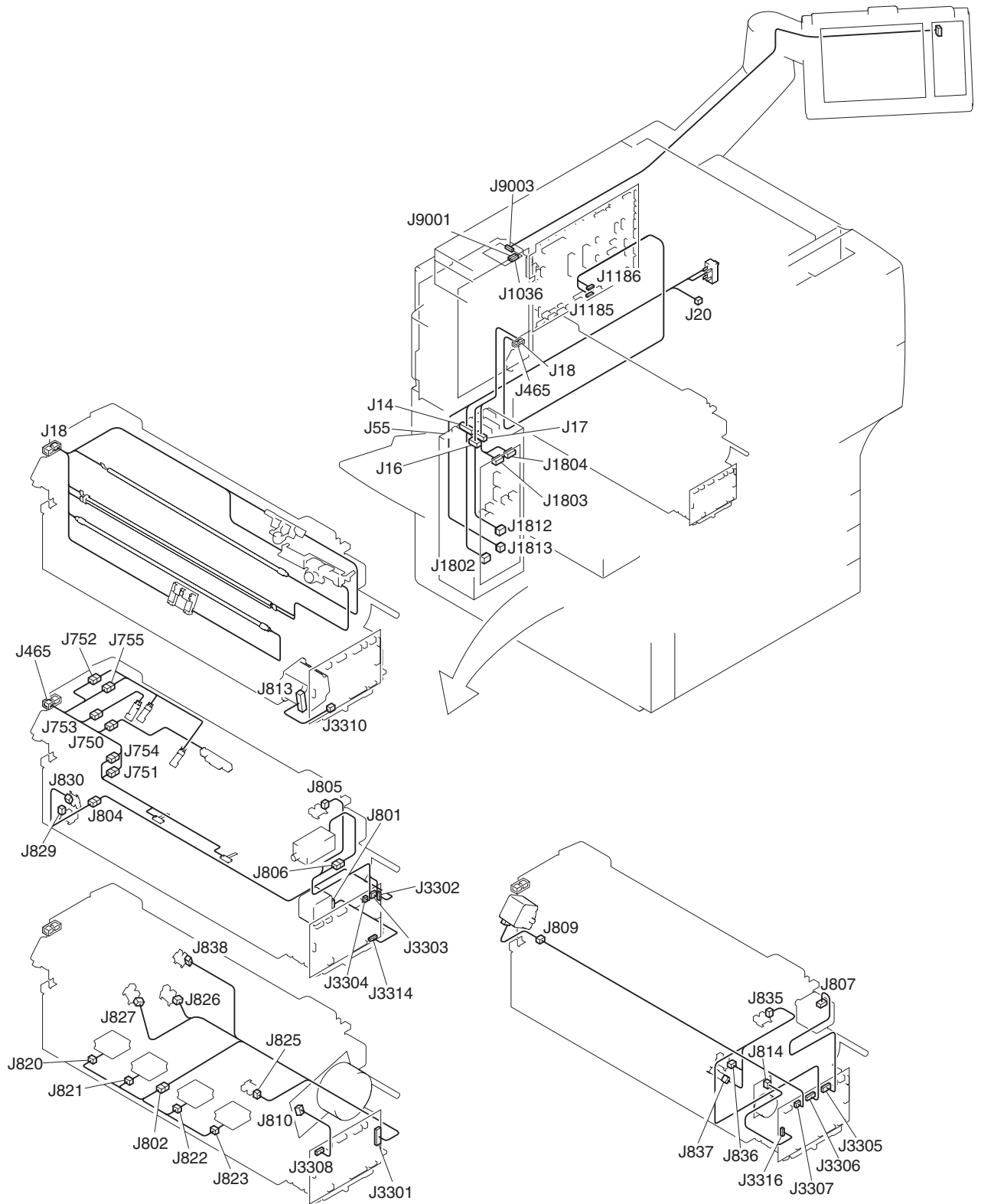
14.4.8.2 List of Connector

imagePRESS C1+

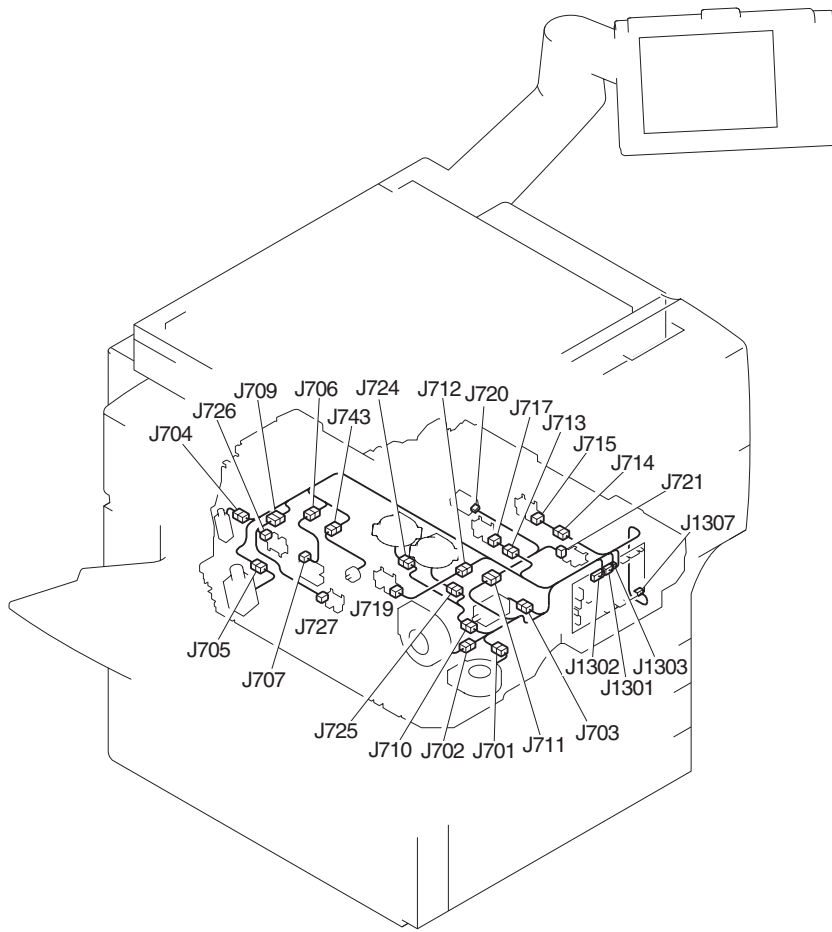
Reader

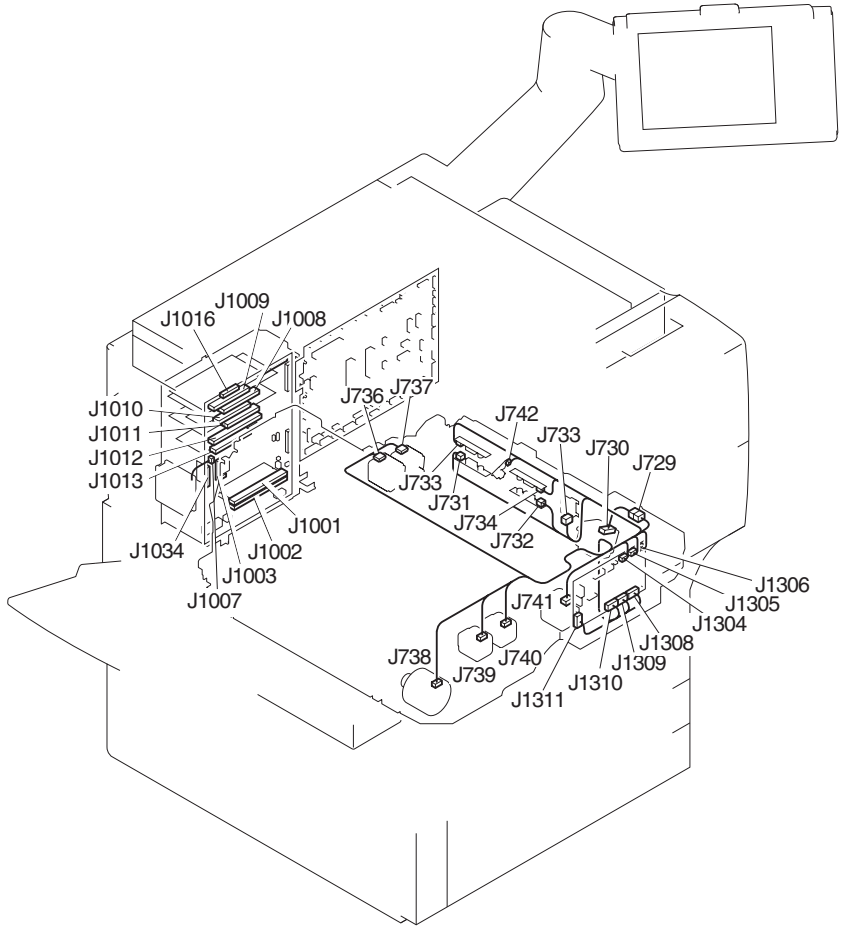


F-14-107

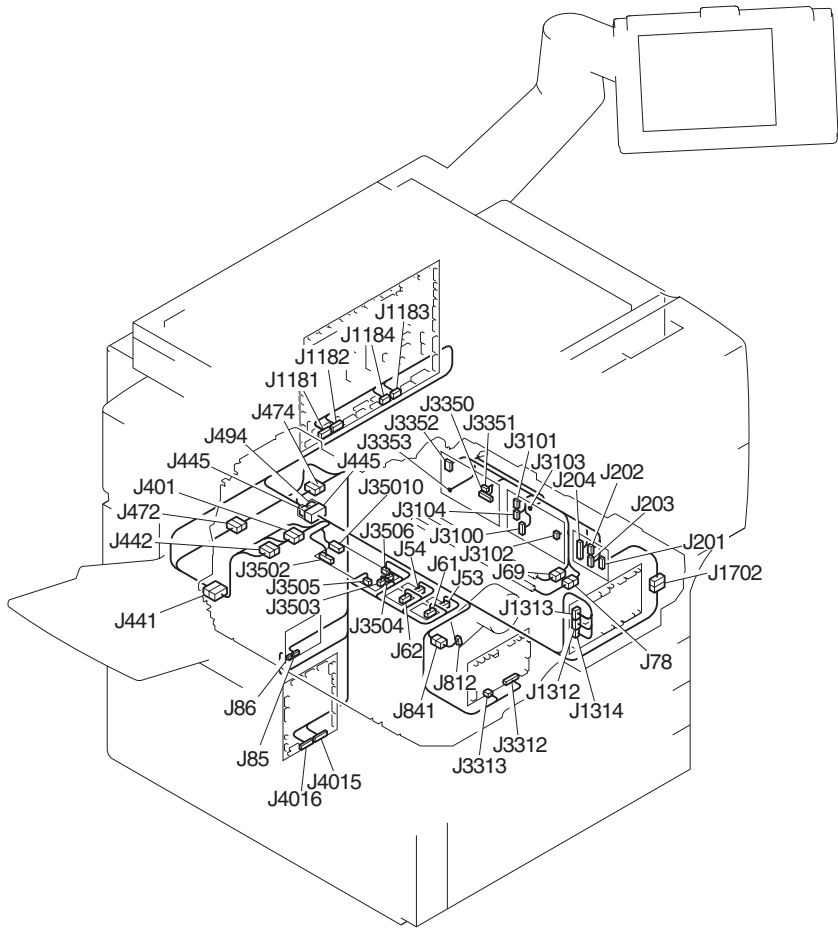


F-14-108

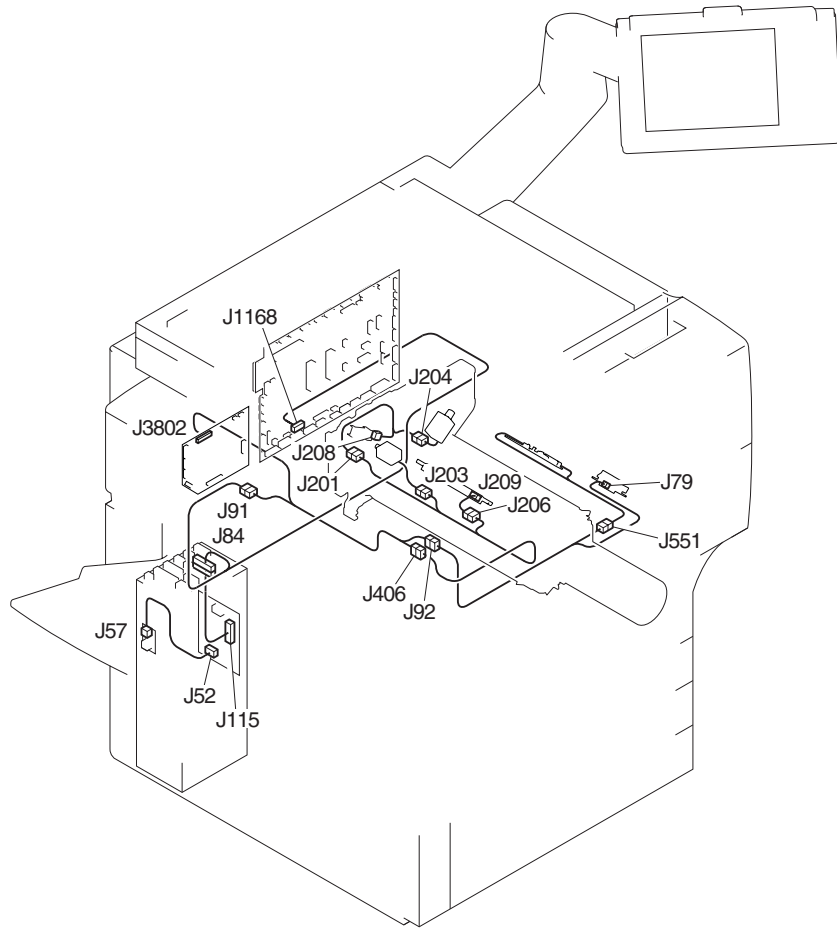




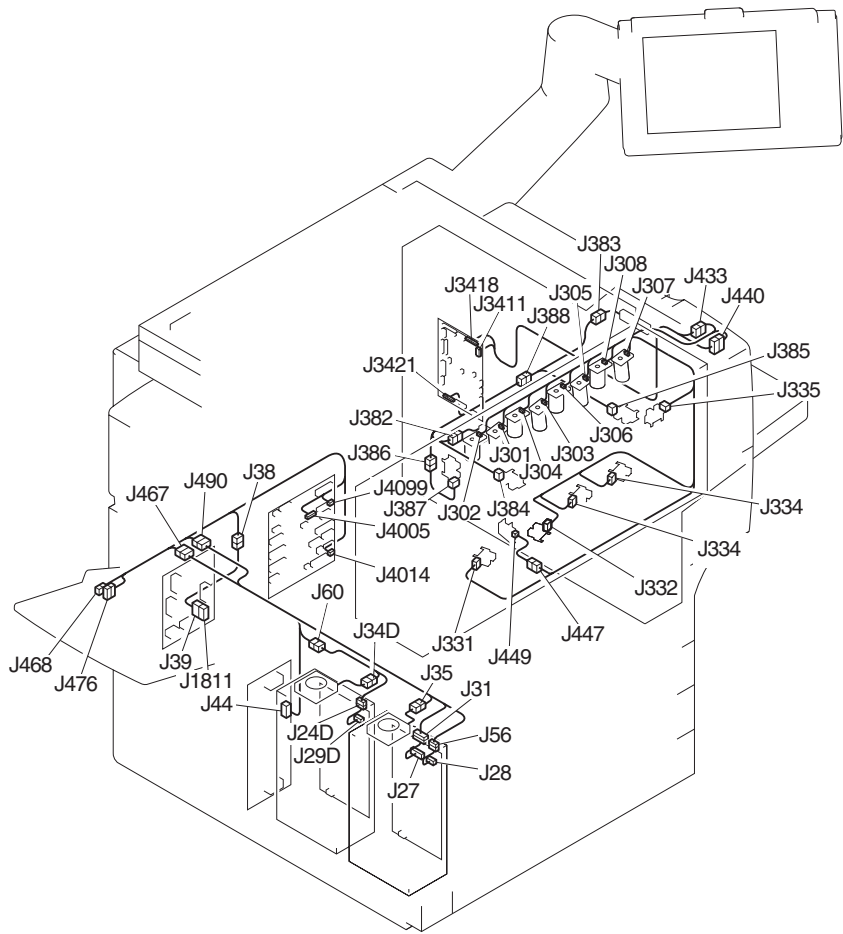
F-14-110



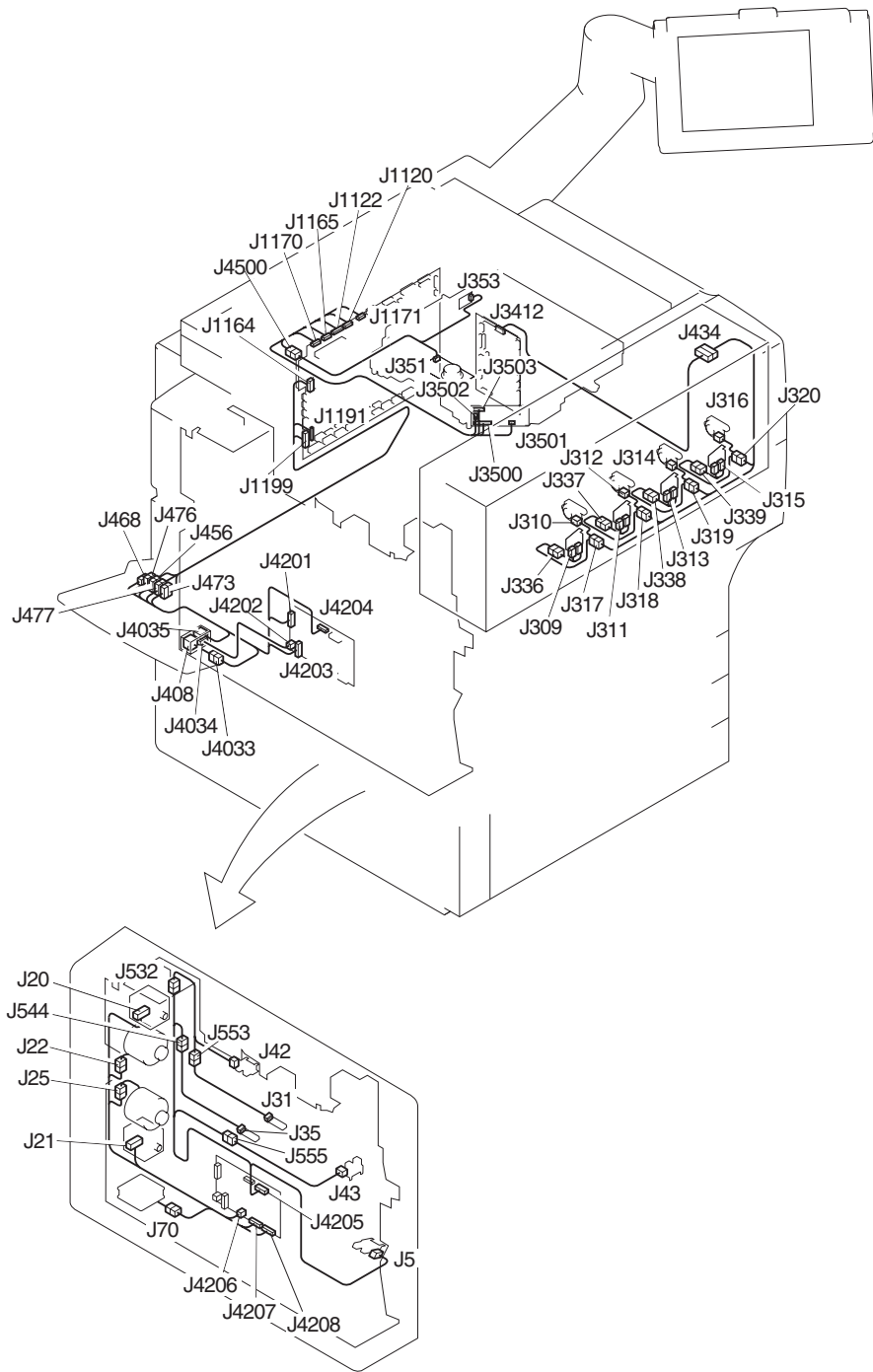
F-14-111



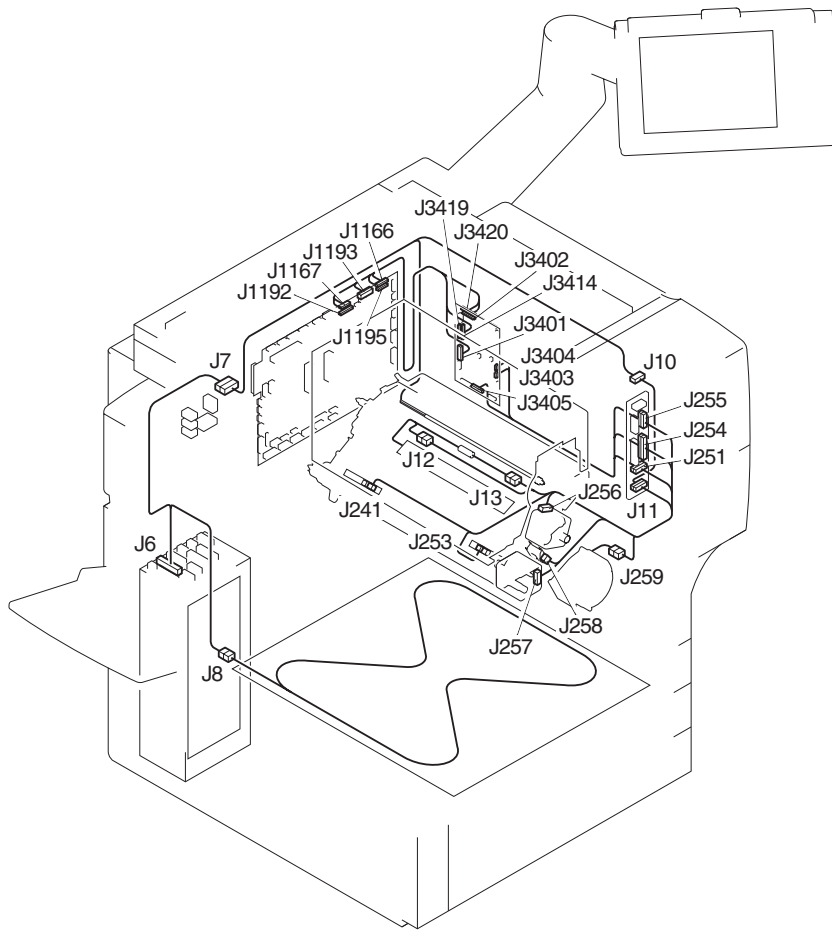
F-14-112



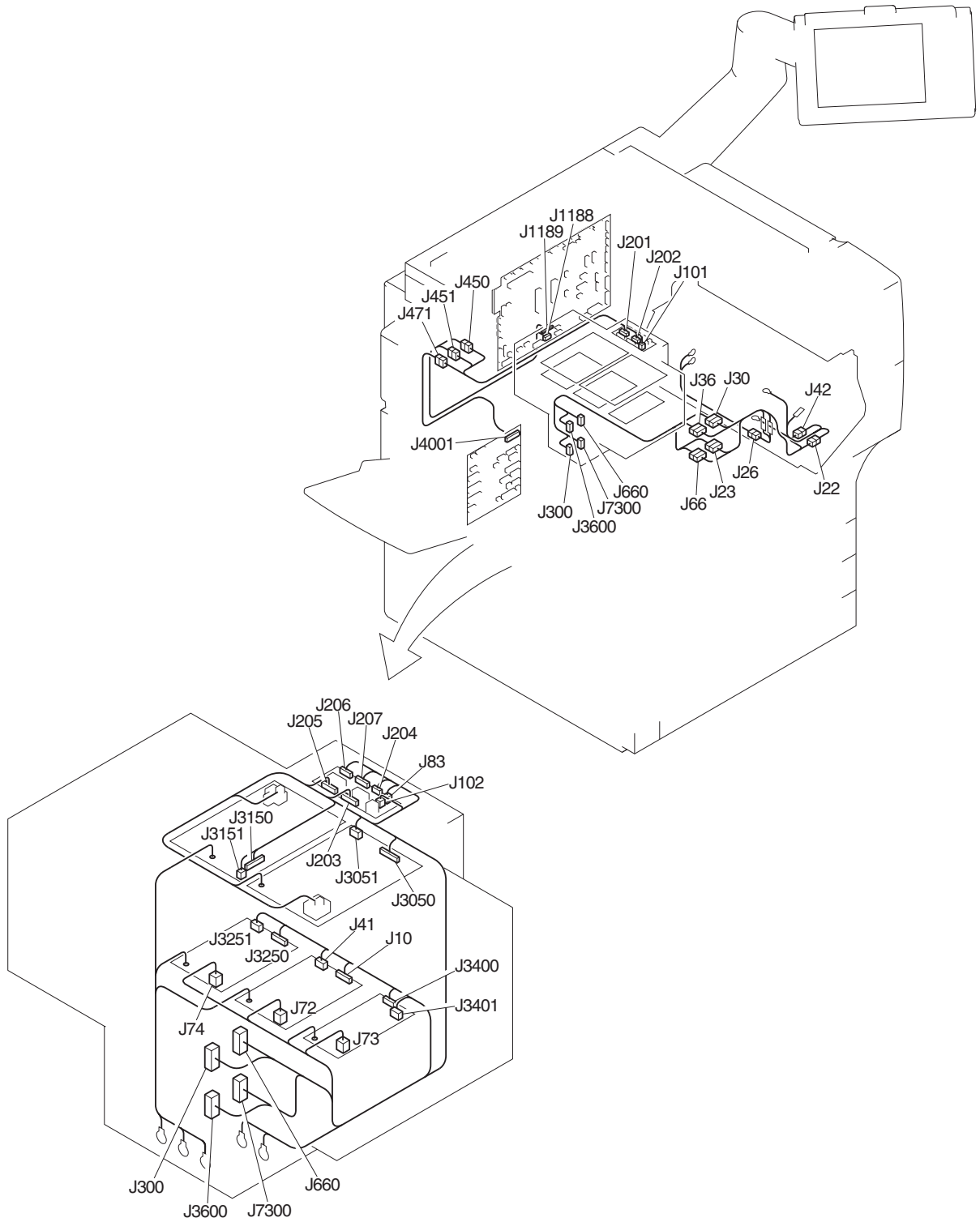
F-14-113



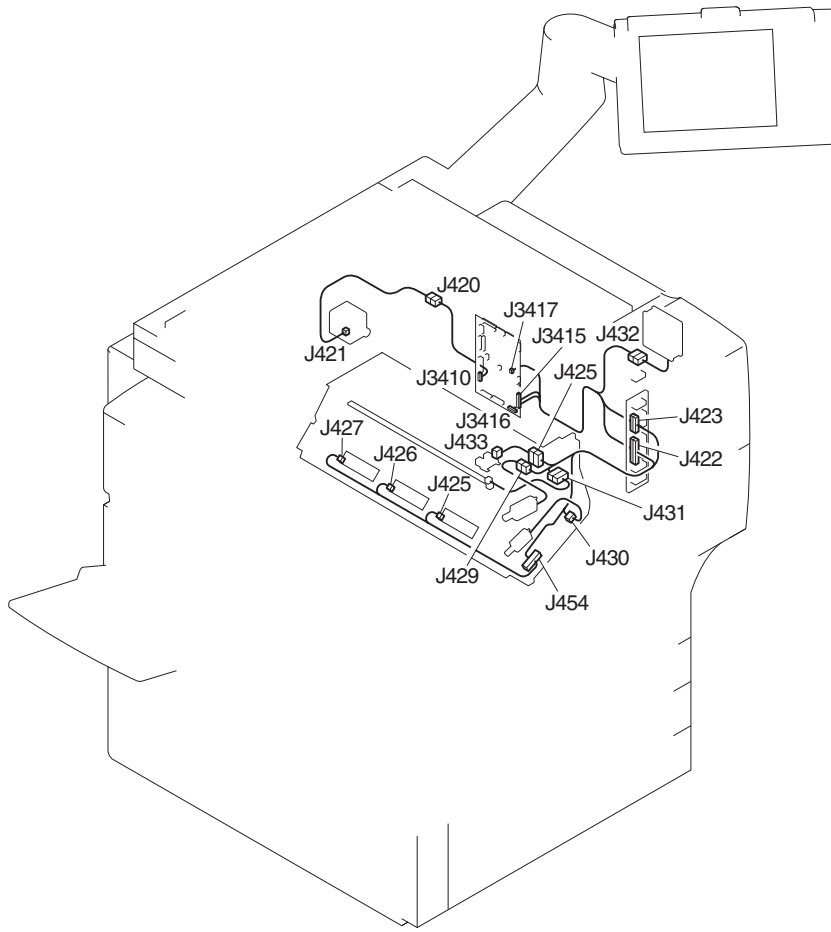
F-14-114



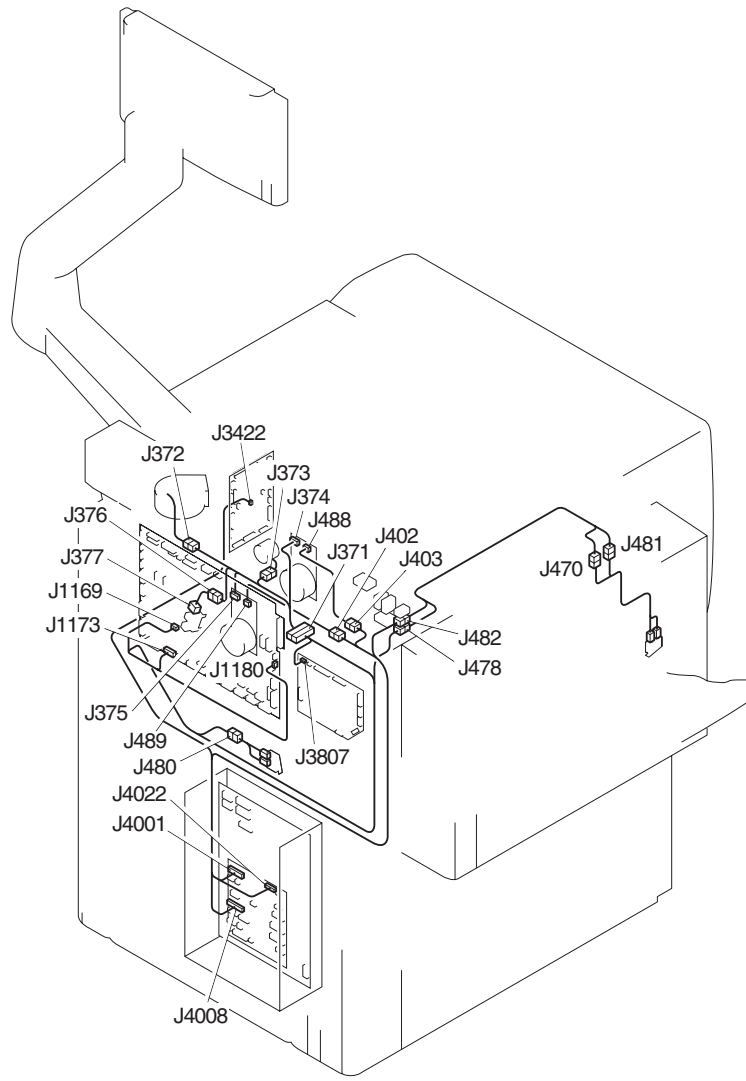
F-14-115



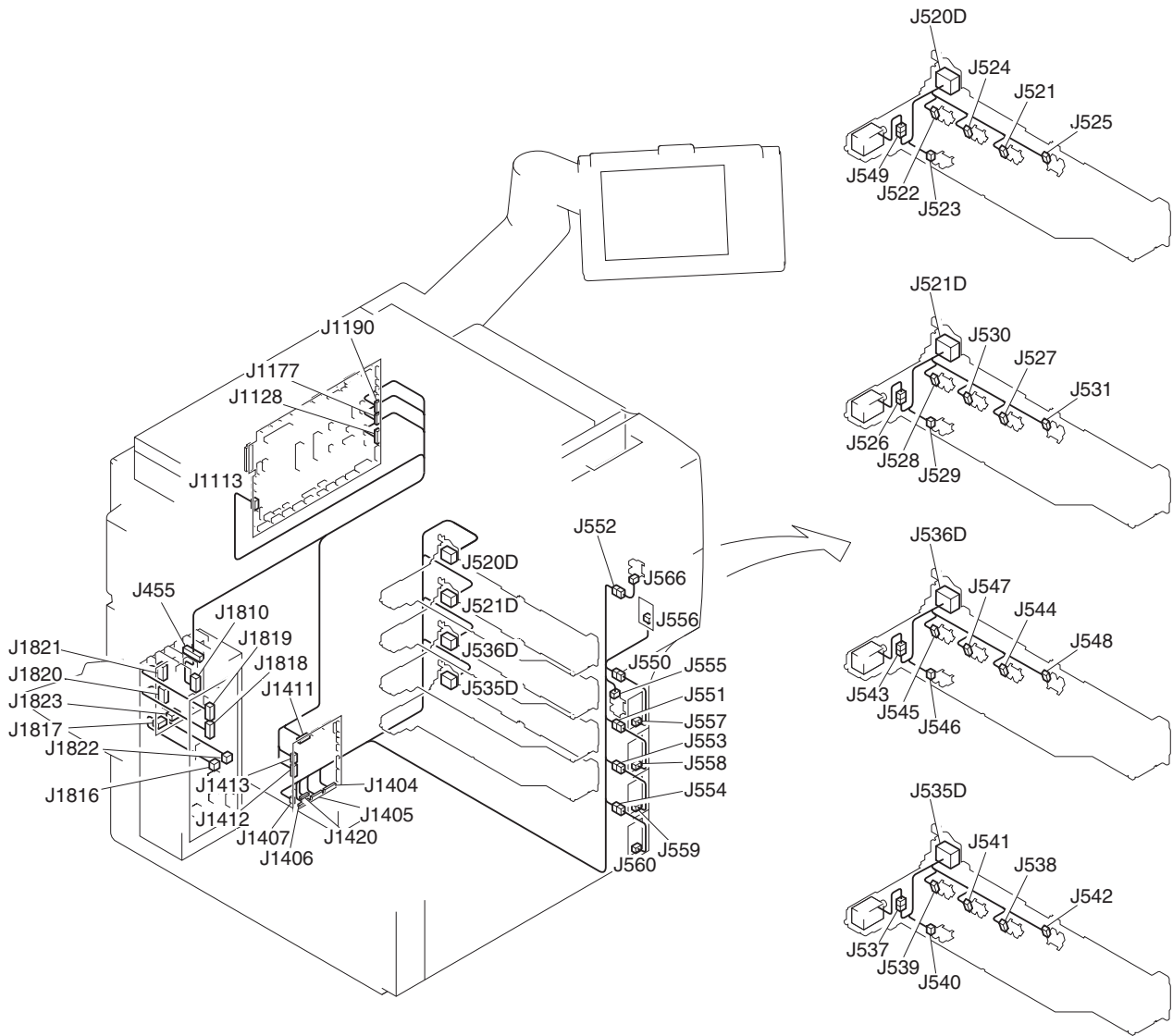
F-14-116



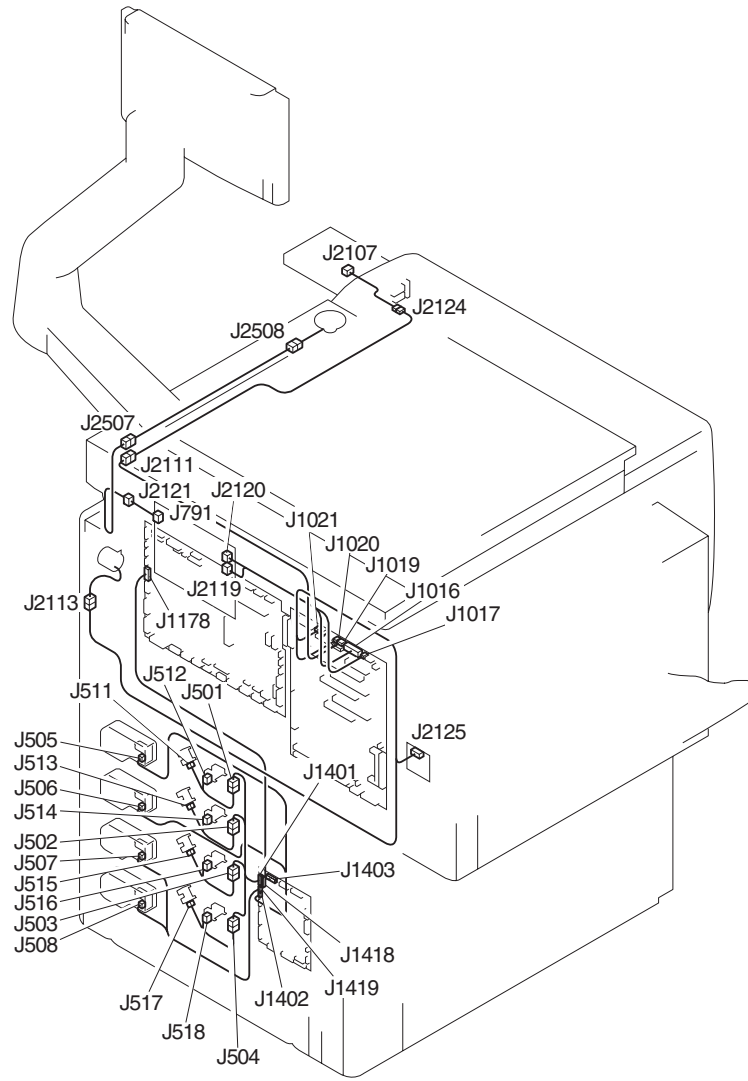
F-14-117



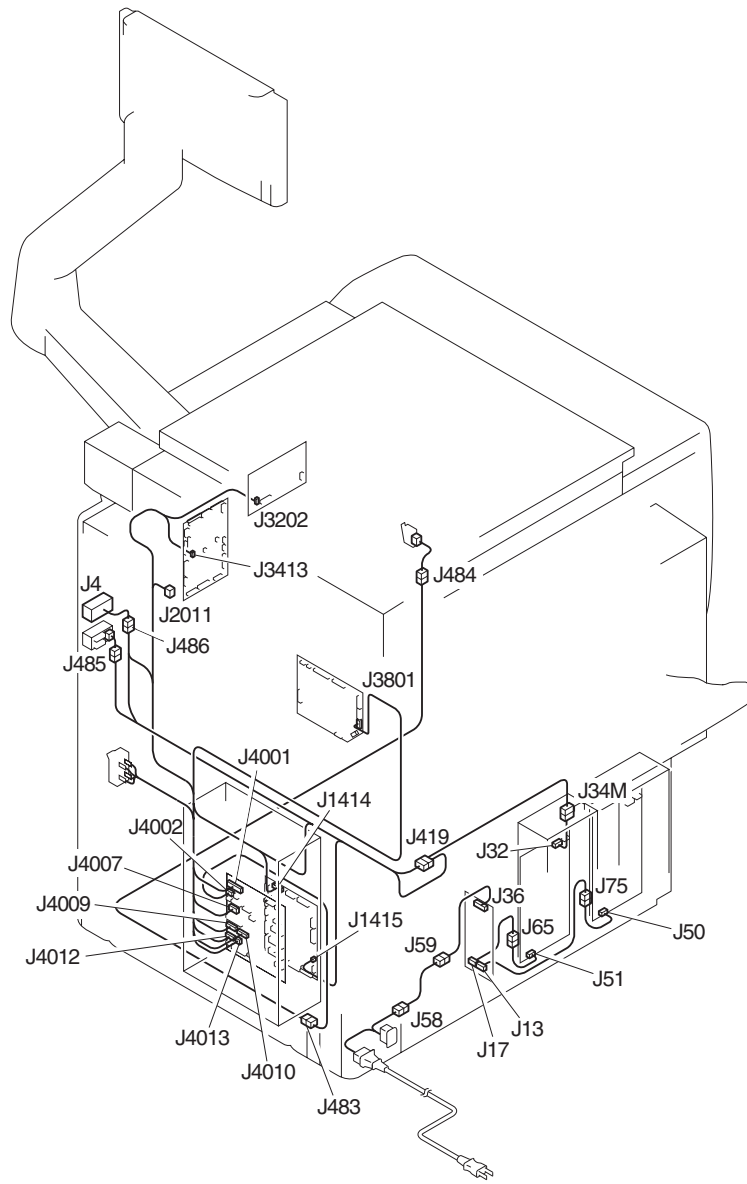
F-14-118



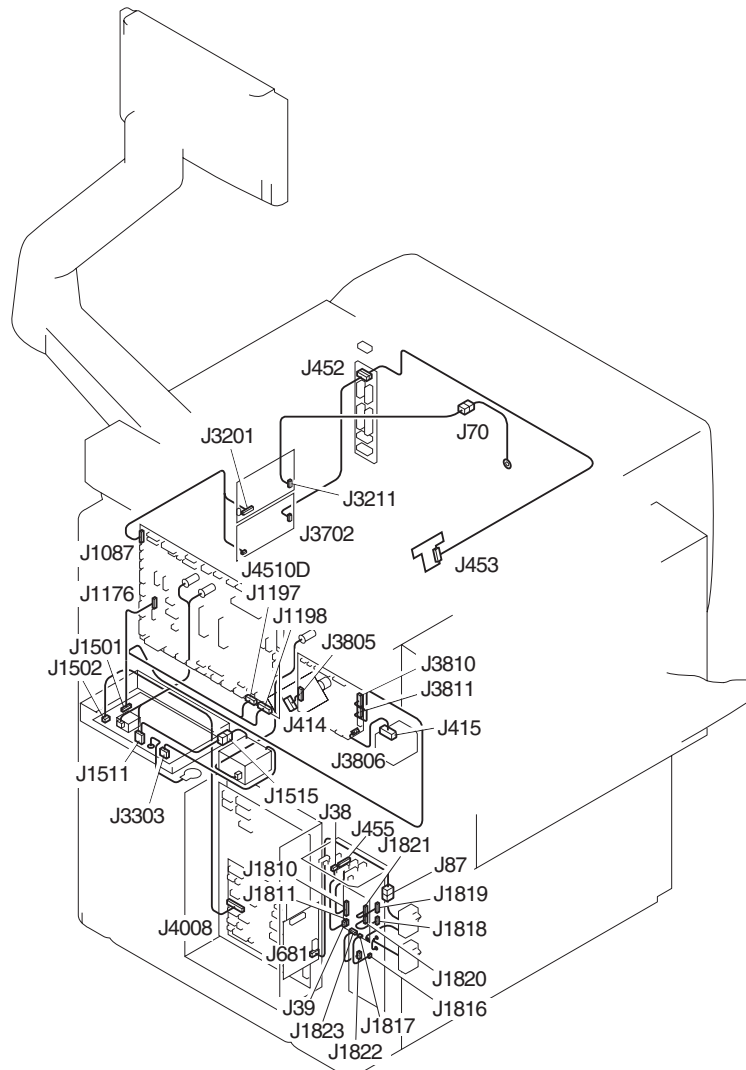
F-14-119



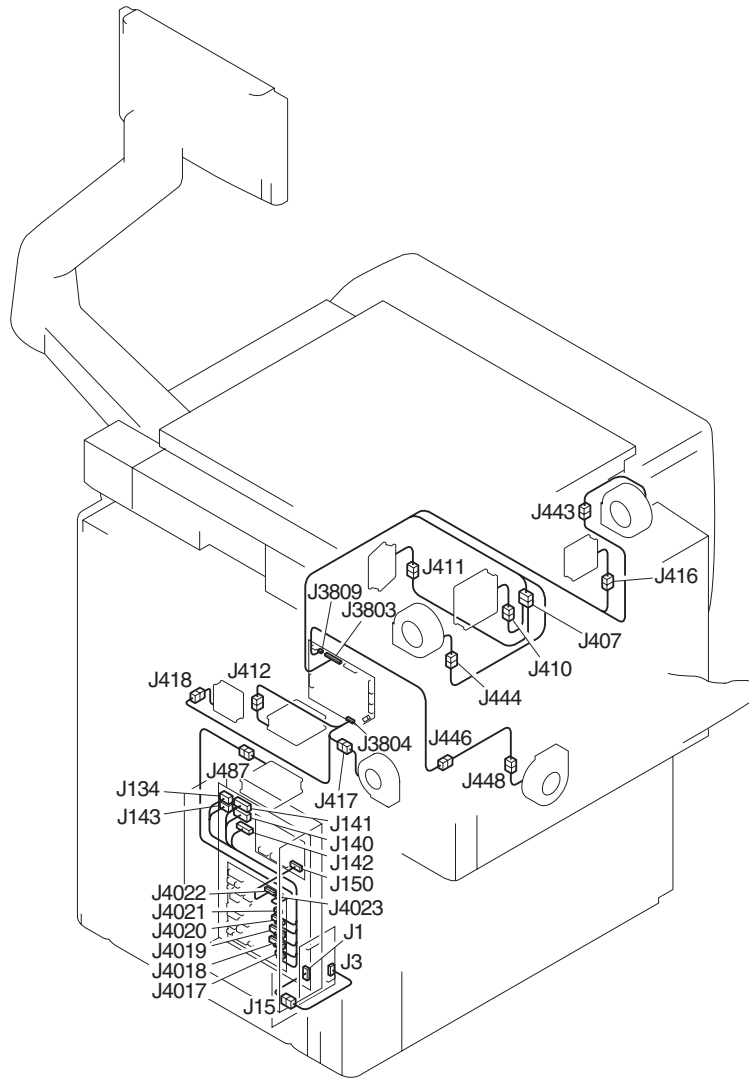
F-14-120



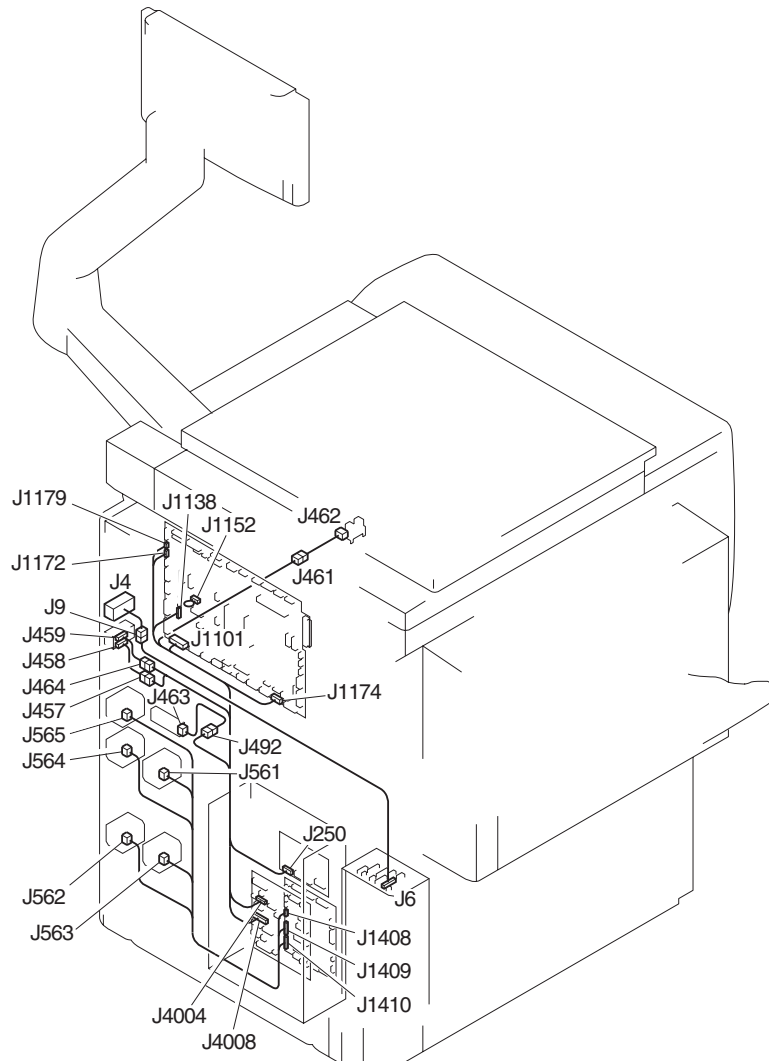
F-14-121



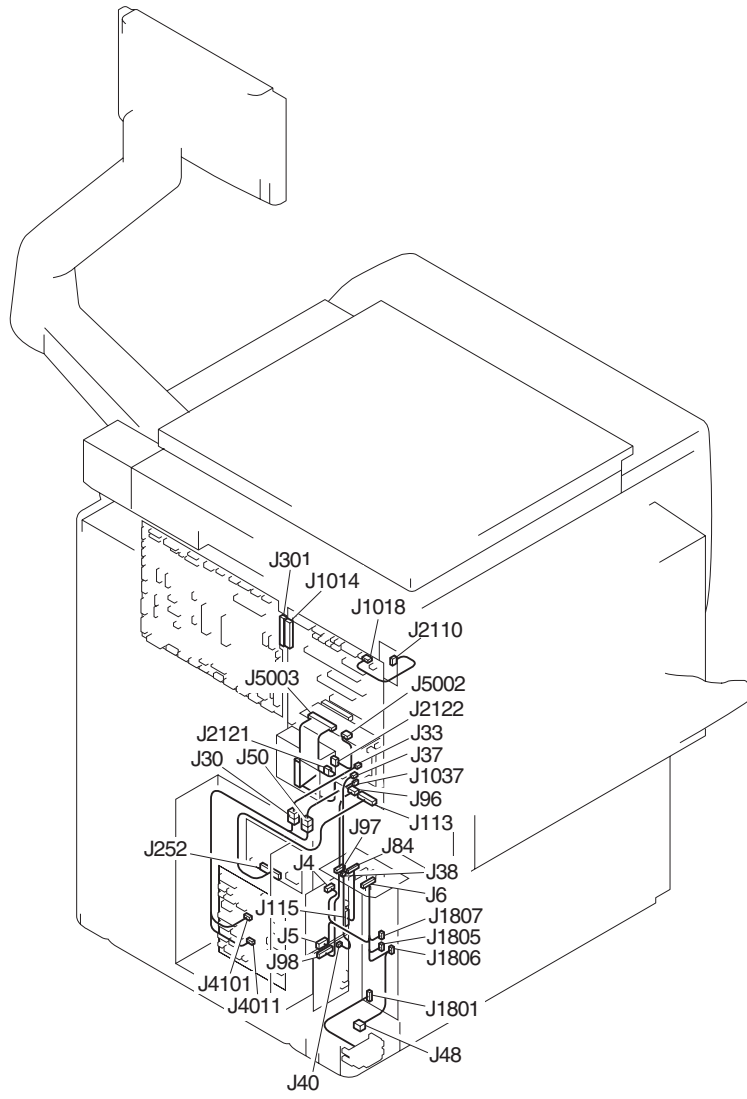
F-14-122



F-14-123



F-14-124



F-14-125

Chapter 15 Self Diagnosis

Contents

15.1 Error Code Table.....	15-1
15.1.1 Error Code Table.....	15-1
15.2 Error Code Details	15-3
15.2.1 List of Error Codes.....	15-3
15.2.2 E602 (HDD/Encryption board error) detail.....	15-19
15.3 Error Codes (SEND).....	15-23
15.3.1 End Code Items.....	15-23
15.4 Jam Codes	15-24
15.4.1 Jam Code (Printer Unit).....	15-24
15.4.2 Jam Code (Finisher-Related)	15-25
15.4.3 Jam Code (ADF-Related)	15-26
15.5 Alarm Codes	15-29
15.5.1 Alarm Code.....	15-29

15.1 Error Code Table

15.1.1 Error Code Table

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The machine is equipped with a self diagnostic mechanism which runs a check on the machine (particularly, on sensor output) at such times as programmed in advance, indicating the nature of any error it may have come across on control panel.

The following is a compilation of error codes, with descriptions of how they are identified and possible causes.

The 4-digit code is indicated to offer descriptions, and may be checked in service mode (COPIER>DISPLAY>ERR).

T-15-1

Code	Error Name/Description
E000	Error in rising temperature lacking of fixing assembly at power on
E001	Error in abnormally high temperature of fixing assembly
E002	Error in rising temperature lacking of fixing assembly
E003	Error in abnormally temperature drop of fixing assembly at standby
E004	Error in protection circuit of fixing assembly
E005	Error in web take-up
E006	Error in connection of fixing assembly
E007	Error in belt displacement
E008	Error in life of fixing roller
E009	Error in relation with power supply
E012	Error in drum/ITB motor
E013	Error in clogging by waste toner
E014	Error in fixing motor/belt drive motor
E015	Error in HP detection of decurler
E020	Error in ATR
E021	Error in rotation of developing assembly
E023	Error in developing motor
E025	Error in supplying system
E051	Error in horizontal registration motor
E060	Error in detecting primary wire HP
E061	Error in electric potential control
E070	Error in detecting ITB HP sensor
E073	Error in connection with transfer drawer
E077	Error in detecting HP of secondary transfer roller
E078	Error in detecting HP of ITB cleaner
E100	Error in failure of BD detection
E102	Error in laser EEPROM
E110	Error in scanner motor
E193	Error in gate array
E196	Error in color sensor EEPROM
E197	Error in expansion serial communication/fixing driver PCB communication
E198	Error in color sensor
E202	Error in HP
E225	Error in lamp blowout
E227	Error in power supply (24V)
E240	Error in printer communication cable
E248	Error in EEPROM
E315	Error in codex
E351	Error in main controller PCB (sub)
E503	Error in communication within finisher (finisher/saddle finisher)
E505	Error in backup memory of finisher (finisher/saddle finisher)
E514	Error in trailing edge assist motor (finisher/saddle finisher)
E519	Error in gear change motor (finisher/saddle finisher)
E530	Error in front alignment (finisher/saddle finisher)
E531	Error in stapling (finisher/saddle finisher)
E532	Error in movement of stapler (finisher/saddle finisher)
E535	Error in swing of stapler (finisher/saddle finisher)
E537	Error in rear alignment (finisher/saddle finisher)
E540	Error in up/down movement of upper tray (finisher/saddle finisher)
E542	Error in up/down movement of lower tray (finisher/saddle finisher)
E584	Error in shutter unit (finisher/saddle finisher)
E590	Error in punch motor (puncher unit)
E591	Error in punch dust sensor (puncher unit)
E592	Error in punch horizontal registration sensor (puncher unit)
E593	Error in punch shit motor (puncher unit)
E5F0	Error in saddle paper positioning (saddle finisher)
E5F1	Error in saddle paper folding (saddle finisher)

Code	Error Name/Description
E5F2	Error in saddle guide (saddle finisher)
E5F3	Error in saddle alignment (saddle finisher)
E5F4	Error in saddle rear stapling (saddle finisher)
E5F5	Error in saddle front stapling (saddle finisher)
E5F6	Error in saddle butting (saddle finisher)
E5F8	Error in saddle connector (saddle finisher)
E5F9	Error in saddle switching (saddle finisher)
E602	Error in hard disk
E604	Error in shortage of image memory (SDRAM)
E610	Error in HDD encryption key
E677	Error in external controller
E711	Error in IPC communication
E730	Error in PDL
E731	Error in rendering PCB
E732	Error in reader communication
E733	Error in printer communication
E740	Error in Ethernet board
E744	Error in language file/bootROM
E747	Error in ASIC for image processing or memory control/communication control
E748	Error in CL2 board-dependent or board
E749	Error in reboot command due to change in PDL configuration
E800	Error in detecting fixing/feeding knob
E804	Error in fan
E805	Error in detecting stop of fixing exhaust fan stop or fan fault
E820	Error in cleaning cooling fan of transfer unit
E824	Error in primary charging suction/exhaust fan
E842	Error in unlocking of external heat roller Error in locking of external heat roller Error in locking of fixing belt Error in locking of web
E905	Error in air assist fan of paper deck
E906	Error in heater of paper deck

15.2 Error Code Details

15.2.1 List of Error Codes

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-15-2

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy
E000	At power on, the rise in the temperature of the fixing assembly is not high enough. There is an open circuit or poor contact in the following: main thermistor (THM1, THM3, THM5), sub thermistor (TP1, TP2, TP3), or heater (H1, H2, H3, H4). The AC driver PCB or DC controller is faulty.	
	0001 During warm-up, the temperature does not rise after the specified period of time (300 sec)	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
	0002 During warm-up, the temperature does not rise after the specified period of time (after reaching warm-up 1, 360 sec)	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
	0003 During warm-up, the temperature does not rise after the specified period of time (after reaching warm-up 2, 300 sec)	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
	0004 During warm-up, the temperature does not rise after the specified period of time (after reaching warm-up 3, 360 sec)	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
	0005 During warm-up after the fixing assembly jam, the temperature does not rise after the specified period of time (600 sec)	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
E001	The rise in temperature of the fixing assembly is excessive. There is an open circuit or poor contact in the following: main thermistor (THM1, THM3, THM5), sub thermistor (THM4, THM5, THM6), or heater (H1, H2, H3, H4). The AC driver PCB or the DC controller PCB is faulty.	
	0001 The rise in the temperature of the fixing roller is excessive (hardware detection)	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
	0002 The rise in the temperature of the external heat roller is excessive (hardware detection)	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
	0003 The rise in temperature of the inlet roller is excessive (hardware detection)	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
	0004 The rise in temperature of the edge of the external heat roller is excessive (hardware detection)	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
	0005 The rise in temperature of the edge of the inlet roller is excessive (hardware detection)	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
E002	There is an open circuit or poor contact in the following: main thermistor (THM1, THM3, THM5), thermal switch (TP1, TP2, TP3), or heater (H1, H2, H3, H4). The AC driver PCB or DC controller is faulty.	
	0010 The temperature of the fixing roller reaches 80 deg C, but drops 50 deg C or less for 1 sec..	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
	0020 The temperature of the external heat roller reaches 80 deg C, but drops 50 deg C or less for 1 sec.	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
	0030 The temperature of the inlet roller reaches 80 deg C, but drops 50 deg C or less for 1 sec.	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
E003	After standby, the drop in temperature of the fixing assembly is excessive. There is an open circuit or poor contact in the following: main thermistor (THM1, THM3, THM5), thermal switch (TP1, TP2, TP3), or heater (H1, H2, H3, H4). The AC driver PCB or DC controller is faulty.	
	0041 During standby, the drop in the temperature of the fixing roller is excessive: (detecting temperature of the main thermistor or the sub thermistor) During standby, the temperature of the fixing roller is 130 deg C or less for 1 sec	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
	0042 During standby, the drop in the temperature of the external heat roller is excessive: (detecting temperature of the main thermistor or the sub thermistor) During standby, the temperature of the external heat roller is 160 deg C or less for 1 sec	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
	0043 During standby, the drop in the temperature of the inlet roller is excessive: (detecting temperature of the main thermistor or the sub thermistor) During standby, the temperature of the inlet roller is 60 deg C or less for 1 sec	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
	0051 During black/white printing, the drop in the temperature of the fixing roller is excessive: (detecting temperature of the main thermistor or the sub thermistor) During black/white printing, the temperature of the fixing roller is 100 deg C or less for 1 sec	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
	0052 During black/white printing, the drop in the temperature of the external heat roller is excessive: (detecting temperature of the main thermistor or the sub thermistor) During black/white printing, the temperature of the external heat roller is 150 deg C or less for 1 sec	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
	0053 During black/white printing, the drop in the temperature of the inlet roller is excessive: (detecting temperature of the main thermistor or the sub thermistor) During black/white printing, the temperature of the inlet roller is 60 deg C or less for 1 sec	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy
E004	Error in protection circuit of fixing assembly Open circuit/poor contact of main thermistor (THM1, THM3, THM5) or sub thermistor (THM4, THM5, THM6), fault of AC driver PCB or DC controller, open circuit/poor contact of heater.	
	0101 Detecting open circuit of the film side of the fixing main thermistor	Turn off and then on the main power
	0102 Detecting short circuit of the film side of the fixing main thermistor	Turn off and then on the main power
	0103 Detecting open circuit of the case side of the fixing main thermistor	Turn off and then on the main power
	0104 Detecting short circuit of the case side of the fixing main thermistor	Turn off and then on the main power
	0010 Open circuit of the fixing roller thermistor The difference of the detecting temperature between the main thermistor and the sub thermistor of the fixing roller is 50 deg C or more, and this state continues for 500 msec	Turn off and then on the main power
	0020 Open circuit of the external heat thermistor The difference of the detecting temperature between the main thermistor and the sub thermistor of the external heat roller is 50 deg C or more, and this state continues for 500 msec	Turn off and then on the main power
	0030 Open circuit of the inlet thermistor:	Turn off and then on the main power
	0040 An error to find foreign matter in the fixing main thermistor: During standby, the difference in detecting temperature between the main thermistor and the sub thermistor of the fixing roller is 25 deg C or more, and this state continues for 500 msec	Turn off and then on the main power
0000 to 000F There is an open circuit in heater (triac short-circuit error) The hardware detects the error for 200 msec continuously. bit 0: external heater SSR error bit 1: fixing sub heater SSE error bit 2: fixing main heater SSR error bit 3: inlet heater SSR error	Turn off and then on the main power	
E005	There is an error in the take-up mechanism of the web	
	0000 Error in absence of the fixing web: after the fixing web level sensor has detected the absence of the web, the count exceeded 3000.	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR If you have replaced the web, reset the reading in the followings, and turn off and then on the power: and COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX_WEB
	0001 Open circuit error of the fixing web drive solenoid	Reset in service mode: COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>ERR
E006	Error in connection of fixing unit	
	0000 Fixing drawer connect error (hardware detection) With the front door closed, fixing unit uninstalled status is detected.	1 Check the connection of fixing assembly.
	0001 Error in connection of fixing unit (software detection) At sleep or energy saving mode, unmounted fixing unit was detected for continuous 500 msec or more with the front cover closed.	1. Check to see that the lever of the fixing/feed assembly has been correctly set. 2. Check the connection of the fixing driver PCB 3. Check the connection of the DC controller
0002 Error in connection of fixing unit (hardware detection) At normal copy, unmounted fixing unit was detected for one moment (0.6 msec) with the front cover closed.	1. Check to see that the lever of the fixing/feed assembly has been correctly set. 2. Check the connection of the DC controller.	
E007	Belt displacement error	
	0001 Front side belt displacement error	After placing the fixing belt position to the center, turn off and then on the power
	0002 Rear side belt displacement error	After placing the fixing belt position to the center, turn off and then on the power.
	0003 Fixing belt displacement error The belt is fully displaced at power-ON/The belt cannot recover from the belt displacement.	Measurement setting for when E007 error occurs in service mode. Specify "1" in (COPIER>OPTION>BODY>F-BLT-RT) and turn OFF/ON the power.
	0007 Detection of displacement error by the double error detection	After placing the fixing belt position to the center, turn off and then on the power.
	0010 After turning on the steering motor, HP detection fails within 1sec.	After placing the fixing belt position to the center, turn off and then on the power.
	0100 HP detection error 1 at initialization	After placing the fixing belt position to the center, turn off and then on the power.
	0200 HP detection error 2 at initialization	After placing the fixing belt position to the center, turn off and then on the power.
E008	There is an error in relation to the life of the fixing assembly	
	0001 In the case that the print count of the fixing roller exceeds specified count (this error becomes effective when modifying service settings), the specified count is determined by the following service mode: -Alert service mode (FXWRNLVL) 0:180k/1:150k/2:120k [default 0] -Error service mode (FXERRVL) 0:+20k/1:+40k/2:+60/3: disable error [default 3] -ON/OFF (FXMSG-SW) of alert display 0: nondisplay/1: display [default 0]	When you have replaced the fixing roller, reset in service mode, and turn off and then on the main power: COPIER>COUNTER>DRBL-1>FX-UP-RL
E009	Error in relation with power supply	
	0000 Error in power supply of the location	Check the power supply of the location with the DC controller, and then, insert the connector.
	0001 Error in detecting 24V connection of decurler	Check the sub power supply code and the decurler's power supply

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy
E012	There is an error in the drum ITB motor	
	0001 After motor start-up, a lock state is not identified for 1 sec or more.	Check the photosensitive drum, the ITB area and drum/ITB motor; and then, turn off and then on the main power.
E013	There is clogging by waste toner	
	0001 Full level error of waste toner After detecting full level of waste toner, software counter reaches 10,000.	Check the amount of waste toner; then, turn off and then on the main power. If you have replaced the waste toner, reset the reading in the following (in service mode): COPIER/FUNCTION/CLEAR/W_TN_CLR
	0002 The waste toner full level sensor activates for 200ms.	After cleaning the waste toner pipe, execute the followings in service mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > W-TN-CLR
	0005 Error in secondary transfer waste toner full level. Reaching of 60,000 prints	After cleaning the waste toner retainer of secondary transfer unit, reset in service mode by selecting the followings: COPIER > COUNTER > MISC > 2TC-BOX
	0006 Error in offset adjustment of waste toner full-level sensor	After disposing the waste toner, reset the reading of the waste toner counter value by executing the followings in service mode: COPIER > COUNTER > MISC > WST-TNR
E014	Error in fixing motor	
	0002 After stabilized rotation of the motor, a lock state is not identified for 1 sec or more.	Check the fixing motor (fixing feed assembly); then, turn off and then on the main power.
	Error in belt drive motor	
0003 Detects unlock of motor lock for 1 sec or more after the belt drive motor performs stabilized rotation.	Check the connector of the belt drive motor, or replace the motor.	
E015	There is an error in detecting decurler home position	
	0001 Error that the decurler entering level HP1 sensor cannot detect within two seconds	After checking the connection of decurler, turn off and then on the main power
	0002 Error that the decurler entering level HP2 sensor cannot detect within two seconds	After checking the connection of decurler, turn off and then on the main power

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy	
E020	Error in ATR The last 2-digit of the detailed code indicates color. xx=01:Y, xx=02:M, xx=03: C, xx=04:K, xx=05: L (imagePRESS C1+ only)		
	xx81	The detected value of the patch image read sensor's base (drum surface) is less than the lower limit value (255).	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch image read sensor. Replace patch-detecting shutter
	xx82	The detected value of the patch image read sensor is 30 or less.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch image read sensor. Replace patch-detecting shutter
	xx83	The detected value of the patch image read sensor is 90 or more.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch image read sensor
	xx84	The difference between the detected value of the base (drum surface) of the patch image read sensor and the reference value of the patch image read sensor is 30 or less.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch-detecting shutter.
	xx85	At patch detection, the difference between the detected value of the patch image read sensor and the reference value of the patch image read sensor is 30 or less.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch image read sensor.
	xx86	At patch detection, the difference between the detected value of the patch image read sensor and the reference value of the base (drum surface) of the patch image sensor is 30 or less.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch image read sensor. Replace patch-detecting shutter.
	xx87	The detected value of the patch image read sensor is 930 or more.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch image read sensor.
	xx88	At patch detection, the difference between the detected value of the patch image read sensor (front side sensor) and the reference value of the patch image read sensor is 30 or less.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch image read sensor. Replace patch-detecting shutter.
	xx89	At patch detection, the difference between the detected value of the patch image read sensor (rear side sensor) and the reference value of the patch image read sensor is 30 or less.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch image read sensor. Replace patch-detecting shutter.
	xx8A	At patch detection, the difference between the detected value of the patch image read sensor (front sensor) and the reference value of the patch image read sensor is 90 or more.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch image read sensor.
	xx8B	At patch detection, the difference between the detected value of the patch image read sensor (rear side sensor) and the reference value of the patch image read sensor is 90 or more.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch image read sensor.
	xx90	At patch detection, the computation result (Sig D) according to patch reading is less than 16.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch image read sensor. Replace patch-detecting shutter.
	xx91	At patch detection, the computation result (Sig D) according to patch reading is 880 or more.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch image read sensor. Replace patch-detecting shutter.
	xx92	At patch detection, the value (delta D) obtained from the computation result (Sig D) of patch reading is -5.0% or less 3 times continuously	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch image read sensor. Replace patch-detecting shutter.
	xx93	At patch detection, the value (delta D) obtained from the computation result (Sig D) of patch reading is +5.0% or more 3 times continuously.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch image read sensor. Replace patch-detecting shutter.
	xxC2	The variation in Sig value (average data) is 400 or more.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch sensor. Replace patch-detecting shutter.
	xxA0	The Sig value is less than 62 at ATR control.	Turn off and then on the main power.
	xxA1	The Ref value is less than 62 at ATR control.	Turn off and then on the main power.
	xxA2	The Sig value is 960 or more at ATR control.	Turn off and then on the main power.
	xxA3	The Ref value is 960 or more at ATR control.	Turn off and then on the main power.
	xxA8	The T/D ratio identified at ATR control has exceeded the upper limit (14%) 3 times continuously.	Turn off and then on the main power.
	xxA9	The T/D ratio identified at ATR control has underperformed the lower limit (3%) 3 times continuously	Turn off and then on the main power.
	xxC0	The variation in light Sig value is 100 or more in ATR control.	Turn off and then on the main power.
	xxC1	The variation in light Sig value is 100 or more in ATR control.	Turn off and then on the main power.
	xx10	The variation of Sig (initial data) is less than 62 at patch detection.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch sensor. Replace patch-detecting shutter.
	xx11	The variation of Sig (initial data) is 960 or more at patch detection.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch sensor. Replace patch-detecting shutter.
	xx12	The variation of Ref (initial data) is less than 62 at patch detection.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch sensor. Replace patch-detecting shutter.
	xx13	The variation of Ref (initial data) is 960 or more at patch detection.	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace patch sensor. Replace patch-detecting shutter.
	xxDA	The variation of Sig (initial data) is 100 or more at patch detection.	Turn off and then on the main power.
xxDB	The variation of Ref (initial data) is 100 or more at patch detection.	Turn off and then on the main power.	
E021	There is an error in the rotation of the developing assembly		
	0001	The developing rotary HP failed to be detected. There is a fault in the developing rotary HP sensor or the wiring of the DC controller PCB. Or the motor rotates out of sync because of poor torque by excess load on the developing assembly.	Clean the HP sensor. After replacing, turn off and then on the main power.
	0002	Error on developing rotary driver sequence (operation command during rotary motor drive)	Turn off and then on the main power
E023	Error in developing motor		
	0001	Detects unlock of motor lock for 1 sec or more after the motor performs stabilized rotation.	Turn off, and then, on the main power

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy
E025	Error in motor of supplying system xx=01:Y, xx=02:M, xx=03: C, xx=04:K, xx=05: L (imagePRESS C1+ only)	
	xx01 Error in cartridge motor xx=01:Y, xx=02:M, xx=03: C, xx=04:K	After shaking the corresponding toner retainer well, attach to the host machine.
	xx02 Error in timeout of supplying motor xx=01:Y, xx=02:M, xx=03: C, xx=04:K	Replace supplying screw. Check the connection of cartridge motor.
	xx03 Error in detecting connection xx=01:Y, xx=02:M, xx=03: C, xx=04:K	Replace supplying screw. Check the connection of cartridge motor.
	0004 Error in hopper shutter The shutter sensor is off at supplying	Check the connection of the shutter sensor. Replace the shutter sensor.
E051	The horizontal registration home position is not detected within a specific period of time. The horizontal registration position is faulty.	
	0001 The horizontal registration home position is not detected within a specific period of time.	Turn off and then on the main power
	0002 The ON edge of the SUS plate is not detected during a search for home position.	Turn off and then on the main power
	0003 The logical motor position differs between before and after the detecting operation.	Turn off and then on the main power
E060	Error in detecting HP of primary wire	
	0000 HP sensor is activated (ON) at the timing that the wire cleaner is fully shifted to the opposite direction of HP.	Check the connection of HP sensor of the primary wire. Replace the primary charging unit.
	0001 HP sensor is deactivated (OFF) at the timing that the wire cleaner is fully shifted to the direction of HP (fully returning toward HP)	Check the connection of HP sensor of the primary wire. Replace the primary charging unit.
E061	At time of potential control, a specific level of potential is missing. Or the limiter goes on.	
	0001 The potential is 20V or less during initial rotation when forming an image.	Turn off and then on the main power
	0007 During adjustment of EPC offset, the potential that is read is outside the +/-30 V range.	Turn off and then on the main power
	0008 During dark area potential adjustment, the sampling value is too low.	Turn off and then on the main power
	0009 At potential control, VL potential indicates the specified value or more	Turn off and then on the main power
	0010 The sampling of the bright area potential is faulty.	Turn off and then on the main power
	0011 At the time of executing potential control, the Vdc of the computation result is 700 V or more.	Turn off and then on the main power
	0012 At the time of executing potential control, the Vcont of the computation result is 100 or less, and 500 V or more	Turn off and then on the main power
	0015 Laser power adjustment is not completed (no convergence within effective range)	
	0050 Patch potential control error The laser power value reaches the vicinity of the upper limit (F0 or more) and also the patch contrast potential (30 - 40V) required cannot be achieved.	Clean the dustproof glass. Replace the photosensitive drum. (Applies to DC controller Ver07.02 or later.)
E070	There is an error of the detection of the ITB home position. xx=01: ITB home position sensor B, xx=02: ITB home position sensor A; only at ITB 1/1 speed; XX=00: no distinction	
	00xx Error on ITB HP sensor Fails to detect HP of ITB despite the passage of specified period of time	Turn off the main power, and check the DC controller PCB and the ITB HP sensor; then, turn on the main power.
	01xx The period of time between when the home position of the ITB is detected and the next home position is detected is shorter than specified (-5% of standard duration). (884 msec or less)	Turn off the main power, check the drive of ITB, and then, turn on the main power.
	02xx The period of time between when the home position of the ITB is detected and the next home position is detected is longer than specified (+5% of standard duration). (939 msec or more)	Turn off the main power, and check to see if there is any scratch on the surface of the ITB; then, turn on the main power.
	03xx The same HP is detected in despite of alternative detection of ITB HP sensor A and B.	Turn off the main power, check the DC controller PCB and the connectors of ITB HP sensor A & B, and then, turn on the main power.
E073	Error in transfer drawer connection	
	0001 With the front door closed, the transfer drawer connector or the transfer frame drawer connector is not connected.	Turn off and then on the main power.
E077	Error in failure of detecting HP of the secondary transfer roller (pressure)	
	0001 Within 5 sec of starting HP detection, HP sensor failed to detect HP.	Check the connector of the shift motor of the secondary transfer outer roller. Check the connector of HP sensor of the secondary transfer outer roller.
	0011 At the time of executing the operation, HP sensor is displaced logically.	Check the connector of the shift motor of the secondary transfer outer roller. Check the connector of HP sensor of the secondary transfer outer roller.
	0101 At the time of finishing the operation, the detached/attached sensor cannot detect the position	Check the connector of the shift motor of the secondary transfer outer roller. Check the connector of HP sensor of the secondary transfer outer roller.
	1001 Error when the theory of sensor has changed between HoldOn at starting operation and MtrOn (50msec).	Check the connector of the shift motor of the secondary transfer outer roller. Check the connector of HP sensor of the secondary transfer outer roller.

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy
E078	Error in failure of detecting HP (pressure) of cleaner unit of transfer belt	
	0001 The HP sensor does not go on within 5 sec after the start of a HP search.	Check the shift motor of the brush roller. Check the HP of the brush roller.
	0101 At the time of finishing the operation, the detached/attached sensor detects whether it is positioned in a specified position (in the case of positioning abnormally, it detects an error).	Check the shift motor of the brush roller. Check the HP of the brush roller.
	0011 At the time of executing the operation, HP sensor is displaced logically (in the case of positioning abnormally, it detects an error).	Check the shift motor of the brush roller. Check the HP of the brush roller.
1001 Error when the theory of sensor has changed between HoldOn at starting operation and MtrOn (50msec).	Check the shift motor of the brush roller. Check the HP of the brush roller.	
E100	The BD is not detected.	
	0001 The BD signal is not detected when the polygon scanner has been driven for a specific period of time.	Turn off the main power, and check the connection of the laser scanner unit and the wiring of the DC controller PCB.
	0002 The BD signal is not detected when the polygon scanner is rotating stably.	Turn off the main power, and check the connection of the laser scanner unit and the wiring of the DC controller PCB.
E102	Laser EEPROM error	
	0001 The EEPROM checksum of the laser driver is mismatched.	Replace the laser scanner unit
E110	There is a scanner motor error	
	0001 The FG signal is not detected within a specific period of time after the polygon scanner has been driven.	Turn off the main power, and check the wiring of DC controller PCB
	0002 The FG signal is not detected while the polygon scanner is rotating stably.	Turn off the main power, and check the wiring of DC controller PCB
	0003 The FG signal is not detected while the polygon scanner is rotating stably.	Turn off the main power, and check the wiring of DC controller PCB
E193	Gate array fault	
	0001 ADN setting sequence of IMG1 completes abnormally	Replace DC controller PCB
E196	There is an error in color sensor EEPROM	
	0001 At the time of EEPROM reading of the color sensor A, the checksum is mismatched.	Replace the color sensor unit
	0002 At the time of EEPROM reading of the color sensor B, the checksum is mismatched.	Replace the color sensor unit
E197	Error in expansion serial communication	
	0000 Initialization time-out of expansion serial. DC controller PCB is faulty.	Replace DC controller PCB.
	0001-0004 When a communication error occurs between the fixing feed PCB (fixing driver PCB, feed driver PCB) and the DC controller PCB.	Replace DC controller PCB.
	0X00 0 communication error of front side driver continued for 5 sec or more.	Replace DC controller PCB.
	2X00 1 communication error of the front side driver continued for 5 sec or more.	Replace DC controller PCB.
	X is an identification code for design investigation and this information is not necessary for field service. Thus, explanation is omitted.	
E198	Error in color sensor	
	1000 Error in communication between the color sensor driver and the DC Controller	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace color sensor.
	2000 Error in detecting color solenoid connection	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace color sensor.
	3000 Error in sensor reading at LED_OFF (Bk)	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace color sensor.
	4000 Error in white patch reading	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace color sensor.
	0x50 Error in color patch reading of color sensor A (** indicates patch number)	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace color sensor.
	0x51 Error in color patch reading of color sensor B (** indicates patch number)	Turn off and then on the main power. Replace color sensor.
	X is an identification code for design investigation and this information is not necessary for field service. Thus, explanation is omitted.	
E202	There is an HP error.	
	0001 An error is found during the forward trip of the HP search. The scanner HP sensor is faulty. The scanner motor is faulty. The reader controller PCB is faulty.	Check the harness connector for connection Replace the faulty part.
	0002 An error is found during the return trip of the HP search. The scanner HP sensor is faulty. The scanner motor is faulty. The reader controller PCB is faulty.	Check the harness connector for connection Replace the faulty part.
E225	The lamp has blown.	
	0001 The level of shading is lower than specified.	Check the harness connector for connection. Check the scanning lamp (xenon), inverter PCB, and reader controller PCB.

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy
E227	There is a power supply (24 V) error.	
	0001	At power-on, the 24 V port is off. Check the power supply harness connector for connection Replace the power supply.
	0002	At the start of a job, the 24 V port is off. Check the power supply harness connector for connection Replace the power supply.
	0003	At the end of a job, the 24 V port is off. Check the power supply harness connector for connection Replace the power supply.
E240	Error in printer communication cable	
	0000	Error in printer communication cable (communication fault between master and slave 0) Turn off the main power, check the wiring of DC controller PCB, check the fusing of 24V system, and then, turn on the main power.
E248	There is an error in the RRPRM	
	0001	There is a power-on error. Replace the reader controller PCB.
	0002	There is a write error. Replace the reader controller PCB.
E315	Codex error	
	000E	Error in code of software Turn off, and then, on the main power
E351	There is an error in the main controller PCB (sub).	
	0000	At start-up, there is an error in the communication between the main controller PCB (sub) and the main controller PCB (main). Turn off the main power, and replace the main controller PCB (sub), and then turn on the main power. If the result is not good, replace the main controller PCB (main), and turn on the main power.
E503	There is an error in the communication within the finisher (finisher/saddle finisher)	
	0002	There is a communication error between the finisher and the saddle unit. Check the connection between the saddle stitcher controller PCB and the finisher controller PCB.
	0003	There is a communication error between the finisher and the punch unit. Check the connection between the saddle stitcher controller PCB and the finisher controller PCB.
E505	There is an error in the backup memory of the finisher (finisher/saddle finisher)	
	0001	There is an error in the data stored in the backup memory. Turn off the main power, and check the wiring of the DC controller PCB and the finisher PCB, and 24 V system fuse; then, turn on the main power.
	0002	There is a data error in the punch assembly EEPROM. Turn off the main power, and check the wiring of the DC controller PCB and the puncher controller PCB, and 24 V system fuse; then, turn on the main power.
E514	There is an error in the rear edge assist motor (finisher/saddle finisher)	
	8001	The home position sensor does not go off when the rear edge assist motor has been rotated for a specific period of time. 1) Check the rear edge assist home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2) Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the rear edge assist motor. Is the wiring normal? 3) Check the rear edge assist mechanism. Is there a fault? 4) Try replacing the rear edge assist motor. Is the problem corrected?
	8002	The home position sensor does not go on when the rear edge assist motor has been rotated for a specific period of time. 1) Check the rear edge assist home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2) Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the rear edge assist motor. Is the wiring normal? 3) Check the rear edge assist mechanism. Is there a fault? 4) Try replacing the rear edge assist motor. Is the problem corrected?
E519	There is an error in the gear change motor (finisher/saddle finisher)	
	8001	The home position sensor does not go off within a specific period of time after the gear change motor has started to rotate. 1) Check the gear change home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2) Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the gear change motor. Is the wiring normal? 3) Check the gear change mechanism. Is there a fault? 4) Try replacing the gear change motor. Is the problem corrected?
	0002	The home position sensor does not go on within a specific period of time after the gear change motor has started to rotate. 1) Check the gear change home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2) Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the gear change motor. Is the wiring normal? 3) Check the gear change mechanism. Is there a fault? 4) Try replacing the gear change motor. Is the problem corrected?
E530	There is an error in front alignment (finisher/saddle finisher).	
	8001	The home position sensor does not go off within a specific period of time after the front alignment motor has started to rotate. 1) Check the pre-aligning plate home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2) Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the pre-aligning plate motor. Is the wiring normal? 3) Check the path of the aligning plate. Is there a mechanical obstacle? 4) Try replacing the pre-aligning plate motor. Is the problem corrected?
	8002	The home position sensor does not go on within a specific period of time after the front alignment motor has started to rotate. 1) Check the pre-aligning plate home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2) Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the pre-aligning plate motor. Is the wiring normal? 3) Check the path of the aligning plate. Is there a mechanical obstacle? 4) Try replacing the pre-aligning plate motor. Is the problem corrected?

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy
E531	There is an error in stapling (finisher/saddle finisher)	
	0001	The home position sensor does not go off within a specific period of time after the stapler motor has started to rotate. 1) Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the stapler. Is the wiring normal? 2) Try replacing the stapler. Is the problem corrected?
	0002	The home position sensor does not go on within a specific period of time after the stapler motor has started to rotate. 1) Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the stapler. Is the wiring normal? 2) Try replacing the stapler. Is the problem corrected?
E532	There is an error in the shift mechanism of the stapler (finisher/saddle finisher).	
	8001	The home position sensor does not go off within a specific period of time after the stapler shift motor has started to rotate. 1) Check the stapler shift home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2) Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the stapler shift motor. Is the wiring normal? 3) Check the path of the stapler shift base. Is there a mechanical obstacle? 4) Try replacing the stapler shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
	8002	The home position sensor does not go on within a specific period of time after the stapler shift motor has started to rotate. 1) Check the stapler shift home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2) Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the stapler shift motor. Is the wiring normal? 3) Check the path of the stapler shift base. Is there a mechanical obstacle? 4) Try replacing the stapler shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
E535	There is an error in the staple swing mechanism (finisher/saddle finisher).	
	8001	The home position sensor does not go off even when the swing motor has rotated for a specific period of time. 1) Check the swing home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2) Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the swing motor. Is the wiring normal? 3) Check the swing mechanism. Is there a fault? 4) Try replacing the swing motor. Is the problem corrected?
	8002	The home position sensor does not go on even when the swing motor has rotated for a specific period of time. 1) Check the swing home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2) Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the swing motor. Is the wiring normal? 3) Check the swing mechanism. Is there a fault? 4) Try replacing the swing motor. Is the problem corrected?
E537	There is an error in rear alignment (finisher/saddle finisher).	
	8001	The home position sensor does not go off within a specific period of time after the swing motor has started to rotate. 1) Check the post-aligning plate home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2) Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the post-aligning plate motor. Is the wiring normal? 3) Check the path of the aligning plate. Is there a mechanical obstacle? 4) Try replacing the post-aligning plate motor. Is the problem corrected?
	8002	The home position sensor does not go on within a specific period of time after the swing motor has started to rotate. 1) Check the post-aligning plate home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2) Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the post-aligning plate motor. Is the wiring normal? 3) Check the path of the aligning plate. Is there a mechanical obstacle? 4) Try replacing the post-aligning plate motor. Is the problem corrected?

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy
E540	There is an error in up and down movement of the upper tray (finisher/saddle finisher).	
8001	There is a clock error in up/down motor of the upper tray.	1)Check the No. 1 tray area sensors 1 through 3. Are the sensors normal? 2)Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the No. 1 tray shift motor. Is the wiring normal? 3)Is there a fault in the up/down mechanism of the tray/ 4)Try replacing the No. 1 shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
8002	Area error	1) Check the No. 1 tray area sensors 1 through 3. Are the sensors normal? 2)Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the No. 1 tray shift motor. Is the wiring normal? 3)Is there a fault in the up/down mechanism of the tray/ 4)Try replacing the No. 1 shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
8003	Safety switch activation	1) Check the No. 1 tray area sensors 1 through 3. Are the sensors normal? 2)Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the No. 1 tray shift motor. Is the wiring normal? 3)Is there a fault in the up/down mechanism of the tray/ 4)Try replacing the No. 1 shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
0004	In the case of detecting fault in clock	1) Check the No. 1 tray area sensors 1 through 3. Are the sensors normal? 2)Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the No. 1 tray shift motor. Is the wiring normal? 3)Is there a fault in the up/down mechanism of the tray/ 4)Try replacing the No. 1 shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
0005	In the case of detecting fault in speed	1) Check the No. 1 tray area sensors 1 through 3. Are the sensors normal? 2)Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the No. 1 tray shift motor. Is the wiring normal? 3)Is there a fault in the up/down mechanism of the tray/ 4)Try replacing the No. 1 shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
0006	In the case of detecting fault in accelerating time	1) Check the No. 1 tray area sensors 1 through 3. Are the sensors normal? 2)Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the No. 1 tray shift motor. Is the wiring normal? 3)Is there a fault in the up/down mechanism of the tray/ 4)Try replacing the No. 1 shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
0007	In the case of detecting Lock Detect signal	1) Check the No. 1 tray area sensors 1 through 3. Are the sensors normal? 2)Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the No. 1 tray shift motor. Is the wiring normal? 3)Is there a fault in the up/down mechanism of the tray/ 4)Try replacing the No. 1 shift motor. Is the problem corrected?

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy	
E542	There is an error in up and down movement of the lower tray (finisher/saddle finisher).		
	8001	There is a clock error in up/down motor of the lower tray.	1)Check the No. 2 tray area sensors 1 through 3. Are the sensors normal? 2)Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the No. 2 tray shift motor. Is the wiring normal? 3)Is there a fault in the up/down mechanism of the tray/ 4)Try replacing the No. 2 shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
	8002	Area error	1)Check the No. 2 tray area sensors 1 through 3. Are the sensors normal? 2)Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the No. 2 tray shift motor. Is the wiring normal? 3)Is there a fault in the up/down mechanism of the tray/ 4)Try replacing the No. 2 shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
	0003	Safety switch activation	1)Check the No. 2 tray area sensors 1 through 3. Are the sensors normal? 2)Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the No. 2 tray shift motor. Is the wiring normal? 3)Is there a fault in the up/down mechanism of the tray/ 4)Try replacing the No. 2 shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
	0004	In the case of detecting fault in clock	1)Check the No. 2 tray area sensors 1 through 3. Are the sensors normal? 2)Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the No. 2 tray shift motor. Is the wiring normal? 3)Is there a fault in the up/down mechanism of the tray/ 4)Try replacing the No. 2 shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
	0005	In the case of detecting fault in speed	1)Check the No. 2 tray area sensors 1 through 3. Are the sensors normal? 2)Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the No. 2 tray shift motor. Is the wiring normal? 3)Is there a fault in the up/down mechanism of the tray/ 4)Try replacing the No. 2 shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
	0006	In the case of detecting fault in accelerating time	1)Check the No. 2 tray area sensors 1 through 3. Are the sensors normal? 2)Check the wiring between the finisher controller PCB and the No. 2 tray shift motor. Is the wiring normal? 3)Is there a fault in the up/down mechanism of the tray/ 4)Try replacing the No. 2 shift motor. Is the problem corrected?
E584	There is an error in the shutter unit (finisher/saddle finisher).		
	8001	The shutter open sensor does not go off (i.e., the shutter is not closed).	1)Check the shutter home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2)Check the wirings between the finisher controller PCB and the stack edging motor, and between the finisher controller PCB and the shutter open/closed clutch. 3)Is there a fault in the shutter mechanism? 4)Try replacing the stack edging motor or the shutter open/closed clutch. Is the problem corrected?
	0002	The shutter open sensor does not go on (i.e., the shutter does not open).	1)Check the shutter home position sensor. Is the sensor normal? 2)Check the wirings between the finisher controller PCB and the stack edging motor, and between the finisher controller PCB and the shutter open/closed clutch. 3)Is there a fault in the shutter mechanism? 4)Try replacing the stack edging motor or the shutter open/closed clutch. Is the problem corrected?
E590	There is an error in the punch motor (punch unit).		
	8001	The punching home position sensor is not detected when the punch motor has been driven for 200 msec.	Check the punch home position sensor, the horizontal registration motor, and the punch driver PCB; then, turn on the main power.
	8002	The puncher does not detect the punching home position after the motor has stopped (initial operation).	Check the punch home position sensor, the horizontal registration motor, and the punch driver PCB; then, turn on the main power.
E591	There is an error in the punch dust sensor (punch unit).		
	8001	There is an error in the light-receiving voltage with emission of light	Turn off and then on the main power.
	8002	There is an error in the light-receiving voltage without emission of light.	Turn off and then on the main power.

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy
E592	There is an error in the punch horizontal registration sensor (punch unit).	
	8001 There is an error in the light-receiving voltage at time of light emission (rear edge sensor).	Turn off and then on the main power.
	8002 There is an error in the light-receiving voltage without emission of light (rear edge sensor).	Turn off and then on the main power.
	8003 There is an error in the light-receiving voltage with emission of light (horizontal registration sensor 1).	Turn off and then on the main power.
	8004 There is an error in the light-receiving voltage without emission of light (horizontal registration sensor 1).	Turn off and then on the main power.
	8005 There is an error in the light-receiving voltage with emission of light (horizontal registration sensor 2).	Turn off and then on the main power.
	8006 There is an error in the light-receiving voltage without emission of light (horizontal registration sensor 2).	Turn off and then on the main power.
	8007 There is an error in the light-receiving voltage with emission of light (horizontal registration sensor 3).	Turn off and then on the main power.
	8008 There is an error in the light-receiving voltage without emission of light (horizontal registration sensor 3).	Turn off and then on the main power.
	8009 There is an error in the light-receiving voltage with emission of light (horizontal registration sensor 4).	Turn off and then on the main power.
800A There is an error in the light-receiving voltage without emission of light (horizontal registration sensor 4).	Turn off and then on the main power.	
E593	There is an error in the punch shift motor (punch unit).	
	8001 The light-receiving voltage HP sensor does not go off at time of light emission.	Turn off and then on the main power.
	8002 The light-receiving voltage HP sensor does not go on at time of no-light emission	Turn off and then on the main power.
E5F0	There is an error in saddle paper positioning (saddle finisher).	
	0001 The paper positioning plate home position sensor does not turn on when the paper positioning plate motor has been driven for 1.33 sec. The paper poisoning plate motor (M4S)/the paper positioning plate home position sensor (PI7S).	Check the paper positioning plate motor (M4S)/paper positioning plate home position sensor (PI7S).
	0002 The paper positioning plate home position sensor does not turn off when the paper positioning plate motor has been driven for 1 sec. The paper poisoning plate motor (M4S)/the paper positioning plate home position sensor (PI7S)	Check the paper positioning plate motor (M4S)/paper positioning plate home position sensor (PI7S).
E5F1	There is an error in saddle paper folding (saddle finisher).	
	0001 The number of detection pulses of the paper folding motor clock sensor is lower than specified. The paper folding motor (M2S)/the paper folding motor clock sensor (PI4S)	Check the paper folding motor (M2S)/paper folding motor clock sensor (PI4S)
	0002 The state of the paper folding home position sensor does not change when the paper folding motor has been driven for 3 sec. The paper folding motor (M2S)/the paper folding motor clock sensor (PI4S)	Check the paper folding motor (M2S)/paper folding motor clock sensor (PI4S)
E5F2	There is an error in the saddle guide (saddle finisher).	
	0001 The guide home position sensor does not turn on when the guide motor has been driven for 0.455 sec. The guide motor (M3S)/the guide home position sensor (PI13S)	Check the guide motor (M3S)/guide home position sensor (PI13S)
	0002 The guide home position sensor does not turn off when the guide motor has been driven for 1 sec. The guide motor (M3S)/the guide home position sensor (PI13S)	Check the guide motor (M3S)/guide home position sensor (PI13S)
E5F3	There is an error in saddle alignment (saddle finisher).	
	0001 The aligning plate home position sensor does not turn on when the alignment motor has been driven for 0.5 sec. The alignment motor (M5S)/the aligning plate home position sensor (PI5S)	Check the alignment motor (M5S)/aligning plate home position sensor (PI5S)
	0002 The aligning plate home position sensor does not turn off when the alignment motor has been driven for 1 sec. The alignment motor (M5S)/the aligning plate home position sensor (PI5S)	Check the alignment motor (M5S)/aligning plate home position sensor (PI5S)
E5F4	There is an error in saddle rear stapling (saddle finisher).	
	0001 The stitching home position sensor does not turn on when the stitch motor (rear) is rotated in reverse for 0.5 sec or more. The stitch motor (rear, M6S)/stitching home position sensor (rear, MS5S)	Check the stitching motor (rear, M6S)/stitching home position sensor (rear, MS5S)
	0002 The stitching home position sensor does not turn off when the stitch motor (rear) is rotated for 0.5 sec or more. The stitch motor (rear, M6S)/stitching home position sensor (rear, MS5S)	Check the stitching motor (rear, M6S)/stitching home position sensor (rear, MS5S)
E5F5	There is an error in saddle front stapling (saddle finisher).	
	0001 The stitching home position sensor does not turn on when the stitch motor (front) is rotated in reverse for 0.5 sec or more. The stitch motor (front, M7S)/stitching home position sensor (front, MS7S)	Check the stitching motor (front, M7S)/stitching home position sensor (front, MS7S)
	0002 The stitching home position sensor does not turn off when the stitch motor (front) is rotated for 0.5 sec or more. The stitch motor (front, M7S)/stitching home position sensor (front, MS7S)	Check the stitching motor (front, M7S)/stitching home position sensor (front, MS7S)

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy
E5F6	There is an error in saddle butting (saddle finisher).	
	8001 The paper pushing plate home position sensor does not turn on when the paper pushing plate motor has been driven for 0.3 sec or more. Paper pushing plate motor (M8S)/the paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14S)	Check the paper pushing plate motor (M8S)/the paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14S).
	8002 The paper pushing plate home position sensor does not turn off when paper pushing plate motor has been driven for 80 msec or more. Paper pushing plate motor (M8S)/the paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14S)	Check the paper pushing plate motor (M8S)/the paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14S).
	8003 The number of detection pulses of the paper pushing plate motor clock sensor drops below a specific number. Paper pushing plate motor (M8S)/the paper pushing plate motor clock sensor (PI1S)	Check the paper pushing plate motor (M8S)/the paper pushing plate motor clock sensor (PI1S)
	8004 The paper pushing plate sensor does not turn off when the paper pushing plate motor has been driven for 80 msec or more. Paper pushing plate motor (M8S)/the paper pushing plate leading edge position sensor (PI15S)	Check the paper pushing plate motor (M8S)/the paper pushing plate leading edge position sensor (PI15S)
	8005 The paper pushing plate leading edge position sensor does not turn on when the paper pushing plate motor has been driven for 0.3 sec or more. Paper pushing plate motor (M8S)/the paper pushing plate leading edge position sensor (PI15S)	Check the paper pushing plate motor (M8S)/the paper pushing plate leading edge position sensor (PI15S)
E5F8	There is an error in the saddle connector (saddle finisher).	
	0001 The connector of the guide home position sensor is identified as being disconnected. The connector of the guide home position sensor (PI13S)	Check the connectors of the guide home position sensor (PI13S).
	0002 The connector of the paper pushing plate home position sensor is identified as being disconnected. The connector of the paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14S)	Check the connectors of the paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14S).
0003 The connector of the paper pushing plate leading edge position sensor is identified as being disconnected. The connector of the paper pushing plate leading edge sensor (PI15S)	Check the connectors of the paper pushing plate leading edge sensor (PI15S).	
E5F9	There is an error in the saddle switch (saddle finisher).	
	0001 With any of the following sensor is identifying its respective cover a being closed, the inlet cover switch is identified as being open for 1 sec or more after the start of the initial rotation of the machine or the start of printing: -inlet cover sensor (PI9S) -front cover open/closed sensor (PI2S) -delivery cover sensor (PI3S) Or, the front cover switch (MS2S) or the delivery cover switch (MS3S) is open. The inlet cover switch (MS2S)/front cover switch (MS2S)/delivery cover switch (MS3S9)	Check the inlet cover switch (MS1S)/front cover switch (MS2S)/delivery cover switch (MS3S).
	0002 With any of the following sensor is identifying its respective cover a being closed, the front cover switch is identified as being open for 1 sec or more after the start of the initial rotation of the machine or the start of printing: -inlet cover sensor (PI9S) -front cover open/closed sensor (PI2S) -delivery cover sensor (PI3S) -front cover switch (MS2S)/delivery cover switch (MS3S)	Check the front cover switch (MS2S)/delivery cover switch (MS3S).
0003 With any of the following sensor is identifying its respective cover a being closed, the delivery cover switch is identified as being open for 1 sec or more after the start of the initial rotation of the machine or the start of printing: -inlet cover sensor (PI9S) -front cover open/closed sensor (PI2S) -delivery cover sensor (PI3S) -delivery cover switch (MS3S)	Check the delivery cover switch (MS3S).	
E602	There is a hard disk error There is a fault in hard disc. (See 'HDD Error Remedy' of the main controller)	
E604	There is a shortage of image memory (SDRAM).	
	0000 The amount of memory required by the model in question is not recognized.	Set it to the size of memory suited to the model in question.
	0001 The shortage of memory for MEAP application. MEAP application is installed despite of the Base model	-Modify the configuration to make MEAP as Full model. After executing uninstallation of the application (i.e., downloading of the license), set it as MEAP Base. -Modify the configuration to make MEAP as Full model.
	0002 Overload of the image memory.	Remove the expanded main memory. Turn off and then on the main power.
1024/1536	Fault/lacking in image memory	Set it to the size of memory suited to the model in question. Turn off and then on the main power.

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy	
E610	HDD encryption key fault		
	0001	A fault exists in the HDD encryption key (hardware configuration error). The encryption board is missing.	Ask the user to check the configuration of the hardware.
	0002	A fault exists in the HDD encryption key (hardware configuration error). The requirements for the memory configuration (to execute coding) are not fully met.	Ask the user to check the configuration of the hardware.
	0101	A fault exists in the HDD encryption key (initialization error). An attempt to initialize the key storage area has failed.	Turn off and then on the main power. If the remedy fails, it causes by the hardware.
	0102	A fault exists in the HDD encryption key (initialization error). An attempt to initialize the encryption processing area has failed.	Turn off and then on the main power. If the remedy fails, it causes by the hardware.
	0201	A fault exists in the HDD encryption key. An error exists in the encryption processing area has failed.	Turn off and then on the main power. If the remedy fails, it causes by the hardware.
	0202	A fault exists in the HDD encryption key. An error exists in the encryption processing area.	Turn off and then on the main power. If the remedy fails, it causes by the hardware.
	0301	A fault exists in the HDD encryption key (encryption key error). An attempt to create an encryption key has failed.	Turn off and then on the main power. If the remedy fails, it causes by the hardware.
	0302	A fault exists in the HDD encryption key (encryption key error). A fault has been detected in the encryption key.	Turn off and then on the main power. If the remedy fails, it causes by the hardware (SRAM). The error resets the data on the HDD.
	0303	A fault exists in the HDD encryption key (encryption key error). A fault has been detected in the encryption key.	Turn off and then on the main power. If the remedy fails, it causes by the hardware (SRAM). The error resets the data on the HDD.
	0401	A fault exists in the HDD encryption key (encryption processing error). An error has been detected in the course of coding.	Turn off and then on the main power. If the remedy fails, it causes by the hardware (encryption board).
	0402	A fault exists in the HDD encryption key (encryption processing error). An error has been detected in the course of decoding	Turn off and then on the main power. If the remedy fails, it causes by the hardware (encryption board).
E677	There is an external controller error.		
	0003	An error has been detected by a check on the configuration when the external controller is being started up.	Turn off the main power, and check the cable; then, turn on the main power. If the machine fails to reset, re-install the system software of the external controller.
	0010	A controller for a non-Canon machine is connected.	Turn off the main power, and check the controller is an appropriate type, and check the cable; then turn on the main power. If the machine fails to reset, re-install the system software of the external controller.
0080	There is an error in the communication with the printer after the external controller has started up normally.	Turn off the main power, and check the cable; then, turn on the main power. If the machine fails to start up, re-install the system software of the external controller.	
E711	Error in IPC communication		
	0002	After losing communication between the finisher and the copier, 4 or more errors are detected within 1.5 sec.	Check the connection between the DC controller PCB and the finisher. Replace the DC controller PCB.
E730	There is a PDL error.		
	1001	At the start of a job, an initialization error has occurred. There is a fault in the PDL software.	Perform PDL resetting, or turn off and then on the main power.
	100A	A system error (e.g., failed initialization) has occurred during job processing. The PDL software has a fault.	Perform PDL resetting, or turn off and then on the main power.
	100B	At start-up, a mismatch occurs between the version number indicated in the Master font management file of /BOOTDEV and the bootable version. There is no Master font management file in /BOOTDEV There is an error in the PDL master-font	Perform PDL resetting, or turn off and then on the main power. If the machine fails to reset, re-install the Kanji font file or fully format and re-install the system software.
	9004	There is an error in the PAI communication with the external controller. There is an OPEN/IF communication error.	Turn off the main power, and check the main controller PCB (sub O-B) and the cable connection; then, turn on the main power. If the machine fails to reset, replace the external controller, the open I/F PCB, or the main controller PCB.
	9005	There is an error in the connection of the video cable connected to the external controller.	Turn off the main power, and check the main controller PCB (sub O-B) and the cable connection; then, turn on the main power. If the machine fails to reset, replace the external controller, the open I/F PCB, or the main controller PCB.
	A006	PDL does not respond, subbootable is out of order or does not exist. There is a PDL communication error.	Perform PDL resetting. Or turn off the main power and check the connection of the rendering PCB, and then, turn on the main power. If the machine fails to reset, re-install the firmware or replace the main controller PCB.
	A007	At time of start-up, a mismatch occurs between the version of the machine control software and the version of the PDL control software. The PDL version is wrong.	Perform PDL resetting, or turn off and then on the main power. If the machine fails to reset, fully format and re-install the system software.
	B013	Indicates that font data are damaged at startup Indicates the PDL embedded font failure	Turn off and then on the main power. If the machine fails to reset, fully format and re-install the system software.

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy
E731	There is a rendering PCB error	
	3001 At start-up, initialization of rendering PCB fails.	Turn off the main power, and check the connection of the UFR board; then, turn on the main power. If the machine fails to reset, replace the UFR board or the main controller PCB.
	3015 While a job is being processed, there is no video data in the chip of the main controller PCB (main) although the software is operating without a problem.	Turn off the main power, check the connector of the rendering PCB or main controller PCB and the power supply of the printer, and then, turn on the main power.
E732	There is an error in reader communication.	
	0001 There is an error in reader communication.	Turn off the main power, and check the connectors to the reader, and check the power supply of the reader; then, turn on the main power.
	9999 Although a printer model, the machine is identified as a reader unit at start-up (A copier model is started up as a printer model when the RAM is initialized).	Turn off and then on the main power.
E733	There is a printer communication error.	
	0000 There is a printer communication error. At start-up, the printer is not detected.	Turn off the main power, and check the connectors to the DC controller PCB and the main controller PCB, and check the power supply of the printer; then, turn on the main power.
	0001 There is a printer communication cable error	Turn off the main power, and check the connectors to the DC controller PCB and the main controller PCB, and check the power supply of the printer; then, turn on the main power.
E740	There is an Ethernet board error	
	0002 At time of start-up, the MAC address is found to be illegal. A non-Canon Mac address is detected.	Turn off the main power, and replace the Main Controller PCB(SUB LANBAR-A); then turn on the main power.
	0003 At time of start-up, PHY ID is found to be illegal.	Turn off the main power, and replace the Main Controller PCB(SUB LANBAR-A); then turn on the main power.
E744	There is a language file/Boot ROM error.	
	0001 The version of the language file on the HDD is different from the version of bootable.	Download the appropriate language files of the correct version using the Service Support Tool.
	0002 The size of the language file on the HDD is too large.	Download the appropriate language files of the correct version using the Service Support Tool.
	0003 There is no language to use in Config.txt on the HDD. None of the languages on the HDD is appropriate for use.	Download the appropriate language files of the correct version using the Service Support Tool.
	A switchover cannot be made to a language file on the HDD.	Download the appropriate language files of the correct version using the Service Support Tool.
	0004 A switchover cannot be made to a language file on the HDD.	Download the appropriate language files of the correct version using the Service Support Tool.
	1000 There is a Boot ROM project error. The installed Boot ROM is of the wrong type.	Turn off the main power, and replace the Boot ROM with one of the correct type; then turn on the main power.
2000 There is an engine ID error in Soft ID. The engine ID, described in Soft ID, is found to be illegal.	Turn off the main power, and replace the Soft ID PCB with one of the correct type; then, turn on the main power.	
E747	There is an error in the ASIC for image processing or in the ASIC for memory control/communication control.	
	--- There is an error in IC1015 (ASIC for image processing) or in IC1012 (for memory control/communication control) on the main controller PCB (e.g., image data transfer error).	After replacing the main controller PCB and each sub board, check the PCB and then, turn on the main power.

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy	
E748	CL2 board-dependent, board error		
	4000	A packet timeout condition has occurred in the G-Chip loopback.	1. Disconnect and then connect 4 to 5 G-chip boards several times. 2. Replace the G-chip board. 3. Replace the main controller PCB.
	4020	An abnormal board has been detected (TBD).	Remove the invalid PCI board.
	4021	The /ERROR signal of PCI has been detected.	Disconnect and then connect the PCI board. If the fault persists, replace the PCI board or the main controller PCB.
	4030	An error has occurred as a result of a check on access to BARSAC.	Replace the main controller PCB.
	4031	BARSAC is identified as being locked.	Replace the main controller PCB. Replace the LAN-BAR board.
	4040	An error has occurred in the course of I2C write check.	
	4041	An error has occurred during access to FRAM.	1. Disconnect and connect the counter board. 2. Replace the counter board. 3. Replace the main controller PCB.
	4042	A DDR-SDRAM size error has occurred.	The size is not in the range of the following: 512 MB or more/1.5 GB or less. 1. Disconnect and then connect DDR. 2. Replace DDR. 3. Replace the main board.
	4043	A MAC address read error had occurred.	1. Replace the LAN board. 2. Replace the main controller PCB.
	4044	An ECOROM access error has occurred.	1. Disconnect and then connect ECOROM. 2. Replace ECOROM. 3. Replace the main controller PCB.
	4045	An RTC access error has occurred.	1. Disconnect and then connect SRAM/RTC board. 2. Replace the SRAM/RTC board. 3. Replace the main controller PCB.
	4050	An error has occurred during a check on access to the LANC board.	1. Replace the LAN board. 2. Replace the main controller PCB.
	4150	The battery has been identified as being exhausted (condition resets after error output).	RTCSRAM board has a short circuit, or the battery is exhausted. 1. If the error occurs only once in the course of disconnection and connection, leave it unattached. 2. If it occurs multiple times, replace the SRAM/RTC board.
	4160	An access error has occurred.	Replace the main controller PCB.
	4170	An access error has occurred.	1. Main Controller PCB(SUB LANBAR-A) 2. Replace the main controller PCB.
	4180	An access error has occurred.	1. Main Controller PCB(SUB LANBAR-A) 2. Replace the main controller PCB.
	4190	An access error has occurred.	Replace the main controller PCB.
	4220	The nature of SPD of the RAM (slot-0) is illegal, or cannot be read.	1. Disconnect and connect DDR-SDRAM of the slot in question. 2. Replace DDR-SDRAM of the slot in question.
	4221	The nature of SPD of the RAM (slot-1) is illegal, or cannot be read.	1. Disconnect and connect DDR-SDRAM of the slot in question. 2. Replace DDR-SDRAM of the slot in question.
	4230	An access error has occurred.	Replace the main controller PCB.
	4260	A write error has occurred in the course of upgrading the Boot ROM.	The Boot ROM is damaged. Replace it with a service part.
	4310	A board that is older than the main4 board has been detected.	Use a board more recent than the main4 board, or provide retrofit work.
	4311	RB-A board (PCB for LIPS-LX printer & scanner kit P1) cannot be detected.	1. Check to see if the RB-A board is connected. 2. Disconnect/connect the RB-A board. 3. Replace the RB-A board.
	4901	A drop in 3.3 V (for emergency use) has been detected in the course of operation.	Replace the power supply, and then replace the main controller PCB.
	4910	A board not compatible with the machine has been detected.	Replace the main controller PCB.
	E749	Reboot instruction initiated by change in PDL configuration	
0001		A change has occurred that calls for turning off and then on the power.	Turn off and then on the main power.
E800	Error in fixing/feeding knob detection		
	0001	With the door closed, the fixing/feeding knob detection error signal remains off for 500ms continuously.	Turn off the main power, and check the wiring of DC controller PCB.
E804	Error in fan		
	0004	Detects faults in cooling fan of controller	Turn off and then on the main power.
	0011	Main power supply fan is unlocked	Check the connector of the main power supply fan. Replace the fan. Replace the relay board.
	0016	Sub power supply fan is unlocked	Check the connector of the sub power supply fan. Replace the fan. Replace the relay board.
	0017	Optional power supply fan is unlocked	Check the connector of the optional power supply fan. Replace the fan. Replace the relay board.

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy	
E805	Error in cooling fan of fixing belt		
	000E	The edge/rear side cooling fan of fixing belt is unlocked	Turn off the main power, check power supply to the fan/replace fan, and then, turn on the main power.
	000F	The center/rear side cooling fan of fixing belt is unlocked	Turn off the main power, check power supply to the fan/replace fan, and then, turn on the main power.
	0010	The center/front side cooling fan of fixing belt is unlocked	Turn off the main power, check power supply to the fan/replace fan, and then, turn on the main power.
	0011	The edge/front side cooling fan of fixing belt is unlocked	Turn off the main power, check power supply to the fan/replace fan, and then, turn on the main power.
	Error in heat discharge fan of fixing assembly		
	0004	The heat discharge fan of fixing assembly is unlocked	Turn off the main power, check power supply to the fan/replace fan, and then, turn on the main power.
	Error in cooling fan of decurler		
	0005	The cooling fan of decurler is unlocked	Turn off the main power, check power supply to the fan/replace fan, and then, turn on the main power.
	Error in rear exhaust fan of the main body		
	0006	The rear fan of fixing assembly is unlocked.	Turn off the main power, check power supply to the fan/replace fan, and then, turn on the main power.
	Error in upper exhaust fan of fixing assembly		
	0007	The upper fan of fixing assembly is unlocked	Turn off the main power, check power supply to the fan/replace fan, and then turn on the main power.
	Error in lower rear fan of fixing assembly		
	0014	The lower rear fan of fixing assembly is unlocked	Turn off the main power, check power supply to the fan/replace fan, and then, turn on the main power.
	Error in left exhaust fan		
	0015	The left exhaust fan of fixing assembly is unlocked	Turn off the main power, check power supply to the fan/replace fan, and then, turn on the main power.
	Error in lower front fan of fixing assembly		
	000A	The lower front fan of fixing assembly is unlocked	Turn off the main power, check power supply to the fan/replace fan, and then, turn on the main power.
	Cooling fan 1 of delivery unit		
000C	The cooling fan 1 of delivery unit is unlocked	Turn off the main power, check power supply to the fan/replace fan, and then, turn on the main power.	
Cooling fan 2 of delivery unit			
000D	The cooling fan 2 of delivery unit is unlocked.	Turn off the main power, check power supply to the fan/replace fan, and then, turn on the main power.	
Lower cooling fan			
0012	The cooling fan of reversing unit is unlocked	Turn off the main power, check power supply to the fan/replace fan, and then, turn on the main power.	
Cooling fan of reversing unit			
0013	The cooling fan of reversing unit is unlocked.	Turn off the main power, check power supply to the fan/replace fan, and then, turn on the main power.	
E820	Error in cleaning cooling fan of transfer unit		
	0002	Detects a fault of process unit fan	Turn off the main power, check the wiring of DC controller PCB, check the fusing of 24V system, and then, turn on the main power.
	0003	When ITB cleaning fan error is detected.	Turn off the main power, check the wiring of DC controller PCB, check the fusing of 24V system, and then, turn on the main power.
E824	Error in detecting fault of primary charging suction/exhaust fan		
	0000	Detects fault of primary charging suction	Turn off the main power switch, check the wiring of DC controller PCB, check the fusing of 24V system, and then, turn on the main power switch
	0001	Detects fault of primary charging exhaust fan	Turn off the main power switch, check the wiring of DC controller PCB, check the fusing of 24V system, and then, turn on the main power switch
	0002	Primary exhaust assist fan is unlocked	Turn off the main power switch, check the wiring of DC controller PCB, check the fusing of 24V system, and then, turn on the main power switch

Code	Cause (Detection Description)	Remedy	
E842	Error in unlocking of external heat roller		
	0009	With the fixing roller in stop state, hardware has detected that the external heat roller had remained in contact with the fixing roller for 300 msec or more continuously.	Check the detached/attached motor of the external heat roller. Check the HP sensor of the external heat roller.
	Error in locking of external heat roller		
	0001	The HP sensor does not go on within 5 sec after the start of a HP search.	Check the detached/attached motor of the external heat roller. Check the HP sensor of the external heat roller.
	0011	The HP sensor is logically displaced at the time of executing operation.	Check the detached/attached motor of the external heat roller. Check the HP sensor of the external heat roller.
	0101	At the time of finishing the operation, it is not positioned in a specified position.	Check the detached/attached motor of the external heat roller. Check the HP sensor of the external heat roller.
	1001	Between HoldOn at starting operation and MtrOn (50msec), the theory of sensor has changed	Check the detached/attached motor of the external heat roller. Check the HP sensor of the external heat roller.
	Error in locking of fixing belt		
	0002	The belt HP sensor does not go on within 5 sec after the start of a HP search.	Check the detached/attached motor of the fixing belt. Check the HP sensor of the fixing belt. Check the attached sensor of the fixing belt.
	0012	The HP sensor is logically displaced at the time of executing operation.	Check the detached/attached motor of the fixing belt. Check the HP sensor of the fixing belt. Check the attached sensor of the fixing belt.
	0102	At the time of finishing the operation, it is not positioned in a specified position.	Check the detached/attached motor of the fixing belt. Check the HP sensor of the fixing belt. Check the attached sensor of the fixing belt.
	1002	Between HoldOn at starting operation and MtrOn (50msec), the theory of sensor has changed	Check the detached/attached motor of the fixing belt. Check the HP sensor of the fixing belt. Check the attached sensor of the fixing belt.
	Error in locking of web		
	0003	The web HP sensor does not go on within 5 sec after the start of a HP search.	Check the detached/attached motor of the cleaning web.
	0013	The HP sensor is logically displaced at the time of executing operation.	Check the detached/attached motor of the cleaning web.
	0103	At the time of finishing the operation, it is not positioned in a specified position.	Check the detached/attached motor of the cleaning web.
	1003	Between HoldOn at starting operation and MtrOn (50msec), the theory of sensor has changed	Check the detached/attached motor of the cleaning web.
	E905	Error in air assist fan of paper deck	
		0001	The swing of the air assist fan does not return after 5 sec (During the swing operation with the fan rotating, positioning sensor logically does not change for 5 sec or more).
E906	Error in heater of paper deck		
	0001	<High temperature error> Detects 120 deg C or more for 1 sec continuously (hard port monitoring)	Replace the heater of the paper deck. Replace the deck driver.
	0002	<Low temperature error> after heater is turned on, the heater is not ready. With the heater for air-assist (separation by air) is activated, the temperature is not high enough for controlled temperature despite the passage of the specified time (hard port monitoring)	Check the power supply of the paper deck. Check the supplying path. Replace the heater of the paper deck. Replace the deck driver.

15.2.2 E602 (HDD/Encryption board error) detail

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

<E602-XXYY>

In case of XX=[00]

XX	YY	Description	Measures
00	01	If cannot recognize HDD If cannot find the start partition (BOOTDEV) at start-up	1. Turn OFF the power and check the connection of HDD cable. After that, turn ON the power. 2. When turning ON the power, put an ear onto HDD or touch HDD to check whether the inner disk is rotating or not. 3. Replace HDD (after replacement, system needs to be reinstalled). 4. Replace the main controller PCB (MAIN-M)
	02	If the system for main CPU does not exist	1. Start in safe mode and execute all format and reinstallation of system via SST, and then, turn OFF/ON the power. 2. Replace HDD (after replacement, system needs to be reinstalled).
	03	If the operation is interrupted when writing into BootDevice	Measures differ depending on an error display. <If an error code screen is displayed in B&W> 1. After turning OFF the power, turn ON the power while pressing 1 and 9 keys. This operation starts the repair processing of writing interrupted sector automatically (at this time, screen display will be solid black). During the repair processing of writing interrupted sector, progress status is displayed on a screen and it will be completed when the screen display will be blanc. After the completion, turn OFF/ON the power. 2. Start in safe mode and execute all format and reinstallation of system via SST, and then, turn OFF/ON the power. 3. Replace HDD (after replacement, system needs to be reinstalled). <In case of normal error code display (spanner mark>) 1. Specify CHK-TYPE=0 and execute HD-CHECK. After completion, turn OFF/ON the power. 2. Start in safe mode and execute all format and reinstallation of system via SST, and then, turn OFF/ON the power. 3. Replace HDD (after replacement, system needs to be reinstalled).
	06	If system for sub-CPU does not exist	1. Start in safe mode and execute all format and reinstallation of system via SST, and then, turn OFF/ON the power. 2. Replace HDD (after replacement, system needs to be reinstalled).
	07	If ICC profile (color resource file) does not exist	1. Start in safe mode and execute all format and reinstallation of system via SST, and then, turn OFF/ON the power. 2. Replace HDD (after replacement, system needs to be reinstalled).
	12	If the files on HDD to be reviewed by WEB browser are broken or deleted	1. Reinstall WEB browser contents. 2. Replace HDD (after replacement, system needs to be reinstalled).
	13	Patch data for main scanning shading does not exist	1. Reinstall the patch data for main scanning shading via SST. 2. Replace HDD (after replacement, system needs to be reinstalled).
	14	If cannot recognize HDD If cannot find the start partition (BOOTDEV) at start-up	1. Turn OFF the power and check the connection of HDD cable. After that, turn ON the power. 2. When turning ON the power, put an ear onto HDD or touch HDD to check whether the inner disk is rotating or not. 3. Replace HDD (after replacement, system needs to be reinstalled). 4. Replace the main controller PCB (MAIN-M)

<E602-XXYY>

In case of XX=[01-13,FF]

XX				YY					
XX	CHK-TYPE	Corresponding partition	Description	Occurrence at start-up		At normal operation			
				3	5	00,01,02,04	11,21	13,25	10,12,14,22,23,24
				Measures		Measures			
1	1	FSTDEV	Compressed image data (BOX etc.)	*1	*5	*9	*10	*11	*12
2		IMG_MNG	Document management table, profile						
3		FSTCDEV	Job archiving (chasing)						
4		THUMDEV	Thumbnail						
5	2	APL_GEN	Universal data	*3	*8	*9	*10	*11	*12
6		TMP_GEN	Universal data (temporary files)						
7		TMP_FAX	Not used						
8		TMP_PSS	For PDL spooling (temporary files)						
9	3	PDLDEV	PDL related files (front, registration form, color correction information file for PDL function)	*3	*8	*9	*10	*11	*12
10	4	BOOTDEV	Firmware (System/MEAP/key/license/PDF dictionary/RUI contents/voice dictionary)						
11	5	APL_MEAP	MEAP application						
12	6	APL_SEND	Address book, filter						
13	7	APL_KEEP	MEAP save data	*3	*8	*9	*10	*11	*12
14	8	APL_LOG	System logs	*1	*5				
FF	0	can not be specified	HDD full failure sector check and recovery	*4	*7				

	YY	Description	Measures
*1	3	Writing interruption (at start-up)	1. Specify the corresponding partition number to CHK-TYPE and after executing HD-CHECK, turn OFF/ON the power. 2. Specify the corresponding partition number to CHK-TYPE and after executing HD-CLEAR, turn OFF/ON the power.
*2			1. Ask user to download the address book data via remote UI. 2. Specify the corresponding partition number to CHK-TYPE and after executing HD-CLEAR, turn OFF/ON the power. 3. Enter the download mode and execute the all format and system reinstallation via SST, and then turn OFF/ON the power.
*3			Recovery operation by Boot partition is only available by using SST in safe mode. 1. Specify CHK-TYPE=0 and execute HD-CHECK. After completion, turn OFF/ON the power. 2. Enter the download mode and execute the all format and system reinstallation via SST, and then turn OFF/ON the power.
*4			1. Specify CHK-TYPE=0 and execute HD-CHECK. After completion, turn OFF/ON the power. 2. Execute HD-CLEAR by CHK-TYPE=1,2,3,5 and turn OFF/ON the power.
*5	5	File system error	1. Specify the corresponding partition number to CHK-TYPE and after executing HD-CLEAR, turn OFF/ON the power. 2. After replacing HDD, reinstall the system.
*6			HD-CLEAR in service mode is not available (reason: to prevent to accidentally delete the information of this partition (address book, filter information etc.)). 1. Ask user to download the address book data on remote UI. 2. Enter the download mode from service mode and execute the all format and system reinstallation via SST, and then turn OFF/ON the power.
*7			1. Execute HD-CLEAR by CHK-TYPE=1,2,3,5 and turn OFF/ON the power. 2. After replacing HDD, reinstall the system.
*8			Recovery operation by Boot partition is only available by using SST on safe mode. 1. Start in safe mode and execute all format and reinstallation of system via SST, and then, turn OFF/ON the power. 2. After replacing HDD, reinstall the system.
*9	00 01 02 04	HDD contact failure or system error	1. Check the connection of communication cable and power cable of HDD 2. Start in safe mode and execute all format and reinstallation of system via SST, and then, turn OFF/ON the power. 3. After replacing HDD, reinstall the system.
*10	11 21	HDD connection failure	1. Check the connection of communication cable and power cable of HDD 2. After replacing HDD, reinstall the system.
*11	13 25	Writing interruption	It is highly possible that the document data on HDD such as BOX etc. is broken. 1. Specify the corresponding partition number to CHK-TYPE and after executing HD-CHECK, turn OFF/ON the power. 2. Specify the corresponding partition number to CHK-TYPE and after executing HD-CLEAR, turn OFF/ON the power. (In case of BOOTDEV or APL_SENF, execute reformat and reinstallation of system via SST) 3. After replacing HDD, reinstall the system.
*12	10 12 14 22 23 24	System error or packet data error	1. Start in safe mode and execute all format and reinstallation of system via SST, and then, turn OFF/ON the power. 2. After replacing HDD, reinstall the system

<E602-XXYY>

In case of XX=[20]

T-15-6

XX	YY	Description	Measures
20	00	Authentication error between the host machine and the encryption board	1. Remove/insert the encryption board and turn OFF/ON the power. 2. After clearing the encryption key (*), execute HDD format and reinstallation of system via SST.
	01	If cannot recognize the encryption board	1. After clearing the encryption key (*), execute HDD format and reinstallation of system via SST.
	02	Encryption board/HDD failure	1. Remove/insert the encryption board and turn OFF/ON the power. 2. After clearing the encryption key (*), execute HDD format and reinstallation of system via SST. 3. After replacing the encryption board, execute HDD format and reinstallation of system via SST. 4. After replacing HDD, execute HDD format and reinstallation of system via SST. 5. Replace LAN-bar-B PCB. 6. Replace the main controller PCB (MAIN-M).

*: To clear the encryption key, go through the following in service mode (level 2): COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>KEY-CLR. This operation makes HDD unformatted status and if starting with that status, E602-0001 will be displayed. Thus, HDD format and system reinstallation via SST is required.

15.3 Error Codes (SEND)

15.3.1 End Code Items

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

T-15-7

Cause	Remedy
# 001	
Indicates that different sizes of originals were scanned while media size is not set as mix mode switch.	Check the original and the settings, and then repeat the operation.
Indicates that different sizes of originals were scanned by duplexing mode while media size is not set as mix mode switch.	Check the original and the settings, and then repeat the operation.
# 009	
Indicates paper-out.	Supply media.
Indicates that the cassette is not set properly.	Set the cassette properly.
# 037	
Indicates that reception failed due to low available memory.	Delete the error or unnecessary documents to increase available memory.
# 099	
Indicates that copy/print was interrupted.	Repeat the copy/print job.
# 701	
Indicates that Department ID registered at introduction of the job does not exist or password is changed.	Enter the correct department ID or password from numerical keypad and then send the job again.
Indicates that Department ID or password is changed during execution of the job or non-regular ID print job reception setting is deactivated.	Contact the system administrator.
# 703	
Writing is not possible because the image area of memory is full.	1) Wait a while. Try again after another transmission job has ended. 2) Delete the files from the box. If the symptom still appears, turn off and then on the machine's main power.
# 711	
Indicates that the Box memory is full.	Delete the documents within the Box.
# 712	
Indicates that the Box document is full.	Delete the documents within the Box.
# 749	
Indicates the failure of job execution as service call is displayed.	Turn OFF the main power switch, wait for 10 sec or more, and then turn ON the main power switch. If the machine still does not operate properly, turn OFF the main power and plug off the power cord. Then contact the Service.
# 759	
Indicates that an error occurred when sending the URL of the Box in which document is stored.	Contact the system administrator.
# 816	
Indicates that the print job failed as it exceeded the value to restrict the printable side set in the departmental ID administration.	Contact the system administrator.
# 849	
Indicates that the machine failed to deliver the device information as the external phone (destination device) is under other job operation.	Deliver the device information again after job by the external phone (destination)
# 850	
Indicates that the machine failed to deliver the device information as the display related to the transmitted information in the external phone (destination device) is under operation.	Check the device information that was not delivered, and then deliver it again.
# 851	
Indicates that there is insufficient memory.	Check the memory level of the machine and delete unnecessary documents in the box.

Cause	Remedy
Indicates that memory image area is full.	Delete the error documents or unnecessary documents to increase available memory.
Indicates that machine failed to save the document as the document number within the specified Box exceeds 1500.	Delete the document in the specified Box.
# 852	
Indicates that an error occurred as the main power switch was turned OFF during job execution.	Check if the main power switch is ON, and then if required, repeat the job.
# 853	
Indicates that the machine failed to execute jobs including printing huge amount of pages by printer due to insufficient resources.	Decrease the volume of document to print or execute the job again when there is no other booked print job.
Indicates that the machine failed to execute job during transmission of print data from PC to the machine due to cancellation from the printer driver.	Repeat the job again.
Indicates that not all the reception data from the host were spooled due to insufficient reception data spool area when the spool function is activated.	Deactivate the spool function and then transmit the job again.
Indicates that the reception data volume exceeded the upper limit reception data processing.	Repeat the print after all the job is completed. If that is not effective, check the transmission data.
Indicates that secure jobs of which amount is more than available at one time were introduced.	Execute or delete the secure job accumulated in the Host machine and then execute the job again.
#854	
Indicates that the machine failed to deliver the device information from devices other than same model group as the setting in 'System Administration Settings (Initial Setup/Registration) > Device Information Delivery Settings > Reception Limit by Delivery Group' is enabled.	Deactivate the 'reception limit of the delivery group' and then repeat the device information transmission.
#855	
Indicates that the machine failed to deliver the device information as it included a language not available in the external phone (destination)	Contact the Service.
#856	
Indicates that the job was cancelled due to insufficient hard disk area for temporarily stored data.	Contact the system administrator.
# 995	
Indicates that the job was cancelled due to security error.	Contact the system administrator.

15.4 Jam Codes

15.4.1 Jam Code (Printer Unit)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. Type of Jam

T-15-8

Code	Type of Jam
01xx	Delay jam
02xx	Stationary jam
0Axx	Residual jam
0B00	Door open jam

2. Jam Code (Printer Unit)

T-15-9

Code	Type of Sensor	Sensor No.	Remarks
xx01	Cassette 1 pickup sensor	PS28	
xx02	Cassette 2 pickup sensor	PS34	
xx03	Cassette 3 pickup sensor	PS41	

Code	Type of Sensor	Sensor No.	Remarks
xx04	Cassette 4 pickup sensor	PS47	
xx05	Vertical path 4 sensor	PS56	
xx06	Vertical path 3 sensor	PS55	
xx07	Vertical path 2 sensor	PS54	
xx08	Vertical path 1 sensor	PS53	
xx09	Vertical path joint sensor	PS27	
xx10	Reverse vertical path sensor	PS18	
xx0A	Registration sensor	PS5,PS6,PS12	
xx0B	Post secondary transfer sensor	PS13	Not detect stationary jam.
xx0C	Fixing inlet sensor	PS14	Detect residual jam only.
xx0D	Inner delivery sensor	PS15	Not detect stationary jam.
xx0E	Reverse inlet sensor	PS17	
xx11	Vertical path 0 sensor	PS26	
xx12	Duplex left sensor	PS19	
xx13	Duplex center sensor	PS20	Power ON jam only
xx14	Duplex right sensor	PS40	
xx18	Registration sensor	PS12	Power ON jam only
xx19	Deck pickup sensor	PS101	Common to side paper decks
xx1A	Deck pullout sensor	PS106	Common to side paper decks
xx1B	decurler inlet sensor	PS76	
xx1C	Buffer decurler outlet sensor	PS78	
E10A	Registration ON delay jam	PS12	
E20A	Thick paper detection jam	PS65	
0D91	Wrong size specification (plain paper with smaller size than the specified one is fed)	PS12	In the modes other than OHP mode
0D92	Wrong material specification (plain paper is fed in the OHP sheet setting)	PS5, PS6	
0D93	Wrong material specification (OHP sheet is fed in the plain paper setting)	PS5, PS6	

15.4.2 Jam Code (Finisher-Related)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-15-10

Code	Type of Jam	Sensor No.	Details
1011	Inlet path sensor, Feed delay jam	PI103	
1101	Inlet path sensor, Feed delay jam	PI103	A sheet fails to come out of the inlet path sensor even if it is fed for a certain length of time (distance) after the inlet path sensor detects it.
1001	Inlet path sensor, Feed delay jam	PI103	When the Punch unit is not connected, the inlet path sensor fails to detect a sheet even if a specified length of time passes after the delivery signal is received. The inlet path sensor fails to detect a sheet even in the case of interval (distance) feeding.
1002	Punch path sensor (punch registration sensor), Feed delay jam		The punch path sensor fails to detect a sheet even if a specified length of time passes after the delivery signal is received.

Code	Type of Jam	Sensor No.	Details
1004	Delivery path sensor, Feed delay jam	PI104	The stacker delivery path sensor fails to detect a sheet even if a specified length of time passes after the inlet path sensor detects it.
1102	Punch path sensor (punch registration sensor), Feed delay jam		The punch path sensor fails to detect a sheet even if a specified length of time passes after the delivery signal is received.
1104	Delivery path sensor, Feed delay jam	PI104	A sheet fails to come out of the stacker path sensor even if it is fed for a certain length of time (distance) after the stacker path sensor detects it.
1106	Process tray sensor, Feed stationary jam		A sheet fails to come out of the process tray sensor even if it is fed for a certain length of time (distance) after the process tray starts paper delivery.
1200	Early arrival jam	PI103	When a sheet is detected before the Finisher becomes able to receive it.
1500	Staple jam	P150	Staple jam
1300	Power on jam	PI103,PI104,PI118	When a sheet is detected by any of the inlet path sensor or the delivery sensor of the Stacker unit when power is turned on.
1400	Door open jam	PI102,MSW101	When the front door is opened while the machine is in operation.
1644	Punch power on jam	PI63	When a punch jam occurs.
1645	Punch power on jam	LED5,PTR5	When a sheet is detected by the punch registration sensor when the power is turned on.
1791	Saddle feed sensor, feed delay jam		When the Finisher inlet sensor fails to detect a sheet even if a specified length of time passes after a Saddle delivery request is received from the Finisher.
1792	Saddle feed sensor, feed delay jam		When the Saddle delivery sensor fails to detect a sheet even if the folding roller feeds a stack of sheets by a specified amount after the thrust operation using the thrust plate is finished.
17A1	Saddle feed sensor, feed stationary jam		When a sheet fails to come out of the Saddle inlet sensor even if the Saddle feed motor feeds it by a specified amount after the Saddle inlet sensor detects the leading edge of the sheet.
17A2	Saddle feed sensor, feed stationary jam		When a sheet fails to come out of the Saddle delivery sensor even if the folding motor feeds a stack of sheets by a specified amount after the Saddle delivery sensor detects the leading edge of the sheet.
1786	Saddle stapler staple jam		When a staple jam occurs in the stapler in the Saddle unit.
1787	Saddle power on jam		When any of the Saddle inlet sensor, Saddle process tray sensor, or Saddle delivery sensor detects a sheet when the power is turned on.
1788	Saddle door open jam	PI102	When opening of the front door is detected while the Saddle unit is in operation.

15.4.3 Jam Code (ADF-Related)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-15-11

Code	Type of Jam	Sensor No.	Details
0001	Separation delay	S4	When the separation sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (221 mm) after the startup of the separation motor during the separation operation.
0002	Pickup delay	S4,S2	When the registration roller front sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (93mm) after the separation sensor detects the leading edge of the sheet during the separation operation.
0003	Pickup stationary 1	S3	When the registration roller rear sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (40mm) after the startup of the reverse motor during the pickup operation.
0004	Pickup stationary 2	S2	When the registration roller front sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (small: 330mm/ large: 660mm) after the startup of the reverse motor during the pickup operation.
0005	Reverse delay	S1	When the reverse sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (104mm) from the platen roller during the reverse operation.
0006	Reverse stationary	S1	When the reverse sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (length of document x 1.5mm) after the loop formation is completed during the reverse operation.

Code	Type of Jam	Sensor No.	Details
0007	Delivery delay	PI13	When the delivery sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (631mm - length of document) after the startup of the belt motor during the delivery operation.
0008	Delivery stationary 1	PI13,S9	When the multifeed registration roller sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (length of document + 100mm) after the delivery sensor is turned ON during the delivery operation.
0009	Delivery stationary 2	PI13,S9	When the delivery sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (100mm) after the multifeed registration roller sensor is turned OFF during the delivery operation.
0010	Pre-reverse delay 1	S3	When the registration rear roller sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (50mm) after the startup of the reverse motor during the pre-reverse operation.
0011	Pre-reverse delay 2	S1,S3	When the reverse sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (100mm) after the registration roller rear sensor is turned ON during the pre-reverse operation.
0012	Pre-reverse delay 3	PI4	When the pre-reverse sensor fails to detect a document when the reverse motor is stopped during the pre-reverse operation.
0013	Pre-reverse stationary 1	S1,S4	When the separation sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (169mm) after the reverse sensor is turned ON during the pre-reverse operation.
0014	Pre-reverse stationary 2	S2,S4	When the registration roller front sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (120mm) after the trailing edge of the sheet comes out of the separation pullout roller during the pre-reverse operation.
0015	Pre-reverse stationary 3	S2,S3	When the registration roller rear sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (50mm) after the trailing edge of the sheet comes out of the registration roller front sensor during the pre-reverse operation.
0016	Pre-reverse stationary 4	S1,S3	When the reverse sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (100mm) after the trailing edge of the sheet comes out of the registration roller rear sensor during the pre-reverse operation.
0017	Pre-reverse pickup delay	S1	When the reverse sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (100mm) after the startup of the reverse motor during the pre-reverse pickup operation.
0018	Pre-reverse pickup stationary 1	S1,PI4	When the pre-reverse sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount after the reverse sensor detects the leading edge of the sheet during the pre-reverse pickup operation.
0019	Pre-reverse pickup stationary 2	S1,PI4	When the reverse sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount after the pre-reverse sensor detects the trailing edge of the sheet during the pre-reverse pickup operation.
0020	Reverse pickup delay	S2	When the registration roller front sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (197mm) after the loop formation is completed during the reverse operation.
0021	Reverse pickup stationary	S2	When the registration roller front sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (length of document x 1.5mm) after the registration roller front sensor is turned ON during the reverse operation.
0022	Pickup leading edge skew	S4,S5	When a difference in the leading edge detection timing between the separation sensor and the skew sensor is 10mm or more during the separation operation.
0023	Pickup trailing edge skew	S4,S5	When a difference in the trailing edge detection timing between the separation sensor and the skew sensor is 10mm or more during the pickup operation.
0024	Pickup NG 1	S1	When the reverse sensor detects a document before it comes out of the registration roller front sensor during the pickup operation.
0025	Pickup NG 2	S3,S2	When the registration roller rear sensor detects a document before the reverse motor is started during the pickup operation. When the registration roller front sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a certain amount during the pickup operation. When the registration roller rear sensor detects a document before the reverse motor is started during the pre-reverse operation. When the registration roller front sensor fails to detect a document when the trailing edge of the document passes through the reverse sensor during the reverse operation.
0026	Reverse pickup trailing edge skew	S4,S5	When a difference in the trailing edge detection timing between the separation sensor and the skew sensor is 10mm or more during the pre-reverse operation.
0027	Reverse pickup NG 1	PI4	When the pre-reverse sensor detects a document while the machine is waiting for the registration roller front sensor to be turned ON during the reverse operation.
0030	Multifeeder registration delay	S9	When the multifeed registration roller sensor fails to detect a document after a specified period of time (1 sec) passes after the startup of the delivery motor during the multifeed loop formation.
0031	Multifeeder registration stationary	S1	When the reverse sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (638mm) after the startup of belt motor during the multifeed pickup operation.
0032	Multifeeder reverse stationary	S1	When the reverse sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (50mm) after the startup of the belt motor during the multifeed (platen roller) pickup operation.
0033	Multifeeder delivery delay	PI13	When the delivery sensor fails to detect a document after it is fed by a specified amount (621mm - length of document) during the multifeed delivery operation.
0034	Multifeeder delivery stationary	PI13	When the delivery sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (length of document x 1.5mm) after the delivery sensor is turned ON during the multifeed delivery operation.
0043	1st sheet pickup stationary 1	S3	When pickup stationary 1 (0003) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0044	1st sheet pickup stationary 2	S2	When pickup stationary 2 (0004) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0045	1st sheet reverse delay	S1	When reverse delay (0005) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0046	1st sheet reverse stationary	S1	When reverse stationary (0006) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0047	1st sheet delivery delay	PI13	When delivery delay (0007) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0048	1st sheet delivery stationary 1	PI13,S9	When delivery stationary 1 (0008) occurs on the 1st sheet.

Code	Type of Jam	Sensor No.	Details
0049	1st sheet delivery stationary 2	PI13,S9	When delivery stationary 2 (0009) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0050	1st sheet pre-reverse delay 1	S3	When pre-reverse delay 1 (0010) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0051	1st sheet pre-reverse delay 2	S1,S3	When pre-reverse delay 2 (0011) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0052	1st sheet pre-reverse delay 3	PI4	When pre-reverse delay 3 (0012) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0053	1st sheet pre-reverse stationary 1	S1,S4	When pre-reverse stationary 1 (0013) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0054	1st sheet pre-reverse stationary 2	S2,S4	When pre-reverse stationary 2 (0014) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0055	1st sheet pre-reverse stationary 3	S2,S3	When pre-reverse stationary 3 (0015) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0056	1st sheet pre-reverse stationary 4	S1,S3	When pre-reverse stationary 4 (0016) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0057	1st sheet pre-reverse pickup delay	S1	When pre-reverse pickup delay (0017) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0058	1st sheet pre-reverse pickup stationary 1	S1,PI4	When pre-reverse pickup stationary 1 (0018) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0059	1st sheet pre-reverse pickup stationary 2	S1,PI4	When pre-reverse pickup stationary 2 (0019) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0060	1st sheet reverse pickup delay	S2	When reverse pickup delay (0020) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0061	1st sheet reverse pickup stationary	S2	When reverse pickup stationary (0021) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0062	1st sheet pickup leading edge skew	S4,S5	When pickup leading edge skew (0022) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0063	1st sheet pickup trailing edge skew	S4,S5	When pickup trailing edge skew (0023) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0064	1st sheet pickup NG 1	S1	When pickup NG 1 (0024) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0065	1st sheet pickup NG 2	S3,S2	When pickup NG 2 (0025) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0066	1st sheet reverse pickup trailing edge skew	S4,S5	When reverse pickup trailing edge skew (0026) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0067	1st sheet reverse pickup NG 1	PI4	When reverse pickup NG 1 (0027) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0071	Timing error 1	-	Beyond control of software
0072	Timing error 2	-	When a previous document has yet to be delivered while a scanned document is moved to the right side of the platen roller during the fixed reading.
0073	Illegal size	S3	When the registration roller rear sensor detects a document after it is fed by a specified amount (30mm) from the waiting position during the LDR stream reading.
0074	Manual feed document size error	S9,S1	When the reverse sensor detects a document while the multifeed registration roller sensor is detecting it during the multifeed pickup operation.
0075	Image start position error	S7	When the reading position is not changed in response to a reading position change request during the stream reading.
0076	1st sheet image start position error	S7	When image start position error (0075) occurs on the 1st sheet.
0077	Belt speed setting error	PI1	When the specified speed of the belt motor is less than the minimum speed (100 mm/s) or more than the maximum speed (700 mm/s).
0078	Belt speed switch error	PI1	When the belt motor is not in the normal speed when the belt motor speed is switched.
0079	Belt status error	PI1	When the belt motor status is not any of acceleration, normal, or deceleration when it is switched.
0080	Image start position output timing error	S2,S3,SW301	When the image start position signal is output during acceleration while a document is fed from the waiting position to the image start position during the stream reading.
0081	Reverse speed setting error	PI5	When the specified speed of the reverse motor is less than the minimum speed (100 mm/s) or more than the maximum speed (700 mm/s).
0082	Reverse speed switch error	PI5	When the reverse motor is not in the normal speed when the reverse motor speed is switched.
0083	Reverse status error	PI5	When the reverse motor status is not any of acceleration, normal, or deceleration when it is switched.
0084	Last document error	PI1	A belt motor error occurs while a last document is being delivered or moved from the platen roller.
0085	Error	PI1,PI2,PI11	When a motor error other than IPC communication/ pickup error occurs. (less than three times)
0090	ADF open	PI10	When opening of the ADF is detected.
0091	User ADF open	PI10	When opening of the ADF is detected while the machine is in operation.
0092	Cover open	PI3,PI6	When opening of a cover (front or rear) is detected.

Code	Type of Jam	Sensor No.	Details
0093	User cover open	PI3,PI6	When opening of a cover (front or rear) is detected while the machine is in operation.
0094	Initial stationary	PI4,PI12,PI13,S1,S2,S3,S4,S5,S9	When a sensor in the delivery path detects a document when the operation is started.
0095	Cycle NG	S6	When a pickup signal is received for a specified period of time (2 sec) in the no document detection state.
0096	Remaining document	S1	When the reverse sensor detects a document while the belt motor is driven by a specified amount before a left pickup job is started.
0097	Manual feed document stationary	S1,S9	When the reverse sensor detects a document while the multifeed registration roller sensor is detecting it during the multifeed pickup operation.
0098	Power down	-	When supply voltage from the main unit is lowered while the machine is in operation.

15.5 Alarm Codes

15.5.1 Alarm Code

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-15-12

Block Code	Detailed Code	
01 main body (general)	0000	Indicates the presence of 11 pixel or larger dust (Red)
	0001	Indicates the presence of 11 pixel or larger dust (Green)
	0002	Indicates the presence of 11 pixel or larger dust (Blue)
02 scanning system	0000	Indicates the presence of dust on all the lines of sub scanner (at the end of job)
	0001	Indicates the presence of dust on all the lines of sub scanner (at the beginning of job)
04 pickup / feeding system	0000	Indicates that the fan lock signal does not change to LOW even 2 sec after fan starts driving
	0008	Indicates the accessory deck lifter error
	0011	Indicates the cassette 1 retry pickup error
	0012	Indicates the cassette 2 retry pickup error
	0013	Indicates the cassette 3 retry pickup error
	0014	Indicates the cassette 4 retry pickup error
	0017	Indicates the MPtray retry pickup error
	0018	Indicates the otion deck retry pickup error
	0031	Indicates the cassette 1 lifter motor overcurrent
	0032	Indicates the cassette 2 lifter motor overcurrent
	0033	Indicates the cassette 3 lifter motor overcurrent
	0034	Indicates the cassette 4 lifter motor overcurrent
06 fixing system	0002	Indicates that the fixing upper roller life is over
	0003	Indicates the no fixing web
10 Developing System, Copier	0001	Toner low (Bk)(This alarm code issued by RDS.)
	0002	Toner low (C)(This alarm code issued by RDS.)
	0003	Toner low (M)(This alarm code issued by RDS.)
	0004	Toner low (Y)(This alarm code issued by RDS.)
	0005 *	Toner low (L)(This alarm code issued by RDS.)
11 waste toner collecting system	0001	Indicates that the waste toner is full
33 fan	0014	Indicates the feeding fan 1 alarm
	0015	Indicates the feeding fan 2 alarm
61 finisher	0001	Indicates the absence of staple
62 saddle stitcher	0001	Indicates the absence of stitch
65 puncher	0001	Indicates that the punch chips are full
72 Surf	0001	Indicates the faulty access to the register
	0002	Indicates the faulty data transmission to the memory (includes timeout)
	0003	Indicates the rendering error (ECI module)
	0004	Indicates the rendering error (EM module)
	0005	Indicates the rendering error (IE module)
	0006	Indicates the rendering error (IDM module)
	0007	Indicates the rendering error (LAM module)
	0008	Indicates the rendering error (MI module)
	0009	Indicates the rendering error (PCM module)
	0010	Indicates the rendering error (PGM module)
	0011	Indicates the rendering error (VII module)
	0012	Indicates the rendering error (VOI module)
	0014	Indicates the rendering error (rendering timeout)
	0015	Indicates the rendering error (MRA module)
	0016	Indicates the rendering error (POC module)

Block Code	Detailed Code		
73 LIPS	0004	Indicates the overflow of the work memory for translation	
	0006	Indicates the configuration acquisition / management error	
	0007	Indicates the memory management error (Inside LIPS)	
	0008	Indicates the file management error (Inside LIPS)	
	0009	Indicates the reception data management error	
	0010	Indicates the page control error	
	0011	Indicates the macro management error	
	0012	Indicates the color management error	
	0013	Indicates the layout control error	
	0014	Indicates the font management error	
	0015	Indicates the character drawing error	
	0016	Indicates the figure drawing error	
	0017	Indicates the image drawing error	
	0018	Indicates the LCD display error	
	0019	Indicates the text mode command layer error	
	0020	Indicates the vector mode command layer error	
	0021	Indicates the utility execution control error	
	0022	Indicates the database management error (inside LIPS)	
	0023	Indicates the menu control error (inside LIPS)	
	0024	Indicates the boot error (inside LIPS)	
	0025	GL Unable to allocate memory.	
	0026	Indicates the image mode data format error	
	74 GDI-UFR	0001	Indicates that the Job Wrapper Format version is invalid
		0002	Indicates that the command sequence is invalid
	75 EFI	0001	Indicates the occurrence of error in EFI
		0002	Indicates the invalid SVG analysis from EFI
78 GL	0001	None	
	0002	Indicates the confirmation of CTM* CTM: Current Transfer Matrics logical coordinate to physical coordinate)	
	0004	Indicates the absence of the current point	
80 BDL	0001	Indicates the error at translator boot	
	0002	Indicates the memory management error	
	0003	Indicates the data input/output error	
	0004	Indicates the system-dependent information setting error	
	0005	Indicates an error during the syntax analysis	
	0006	Indicates an error during the command analysis	
	0007	Indicates the drawing resource registration error	
	0008	Indicates the drawing properties processing error	
	0009	Indicates the volatile drawing resource registration error	
	0010	Indicates the figure-drawing processing error	
	0011	Indicates the character-drawing processing error	
	0012	Indicates the image-drawing processing error	
	0013	Indicates the clip processing error	
	0014	Indicates the failure to layout the page due to insufficient memory	
	0015	Indicates the machine is not capable of processing the printed data using this version	
	0016	Indicates the overflow of work memory for translator	
	0017	Indicates the download overflow	
	0018	Indicates the invalid syntax in the BDL data that machine cannot continue processing	
	0019	Indicates the occurrence of Decimate in the BDL custom mode	

* For imagePRESS C1+ only

Chapter 16 Service Mode

Contents

16.1 Outline.....	16-1
16.1.1 Construction of Service Mode	16-1
16.1.2 Entering or selecting service modes	16-2
16.1.3 Exiting service modes	16-2
16.1.4 Back-Up	16-2
16.1.5 Initial screen.....	16-3
16.1.6 Main/intermediate Item Screen.....	16-3
16.1.7 Sub- Item Screen.....	16-4
16.2 DISPLAY (Status Display Mode).....	16-5
16.2.1 COPIER	16-5
16.2.1.1 COPIER List	16-5
16.2.1.2 COPIER List	16-19
16.2.1.3 COPIER List	16-33
16.2.2 FEEDER	16-48
16.2.2.1 FEEDER List	16-48
16.3 I/O (I/O Display Mode).....	16-48
16.3.1 Overview	16-48
16.3.2 <DC-CON>	16-49
16.3.3 <R-CON>	16-60
16.3.4 <FEEDER>	16-61
16.3.5 <SORTER>	16-63
16.3.6 <MN-CONT>	16-68
16.4 ADJUST (Adjustment Mode).....	16-71
16.4.1 COPIER	16-71
16.4.1.1 COPIER List	16-71
16.4.1.2 COPIER List	16-90
16.4.1.3 COPIER List	16-101
16.4.2 FEEDER	16-115
16.4.2.1 FEEDER List	16-115
16.4.3 SORTER	16-117
16.4.3.1 SORTER List	16-117
16.5 FUNCTION (Operation/Inspection Mode).....	16-117
16.5.1 COPIER	16-117
16.5.1.1 COPIER List	16-117
16.5.1.2 COPIER List	16-131
16.5.1.3 COPIER List	16-145
16.5.2 FEEDER	16-156
16.5.2.1 FEEDER List	16-156
16.6 OPTION (Machine Settings Mode).....	16-156
16.6.1 COPIER	16-156
16.6.1.1 COPIER List (BODY)	16-156
16.6.1.2 COPIER List (subheadings under USER).....	16-176
16.6.1.3 COPIER List P (BODY).....	16-204
16.6.1.4 COPIER List P (subheadings under USER)	16-223
16.6.1.5 COPIER List (BODY)	16-251
16.6.1.6 COPIER List (subheadings under USER).....	16-266
16.6.2 FEEDER	16-289
16.6.2.1 FEEDER List	16-289
16.6.3 SORTER	16-290
16.6.3.1 SORTER List	16-290
16.6.4 BOARD.....	16-290
16.6.4.1 BOARD List.....	16-290

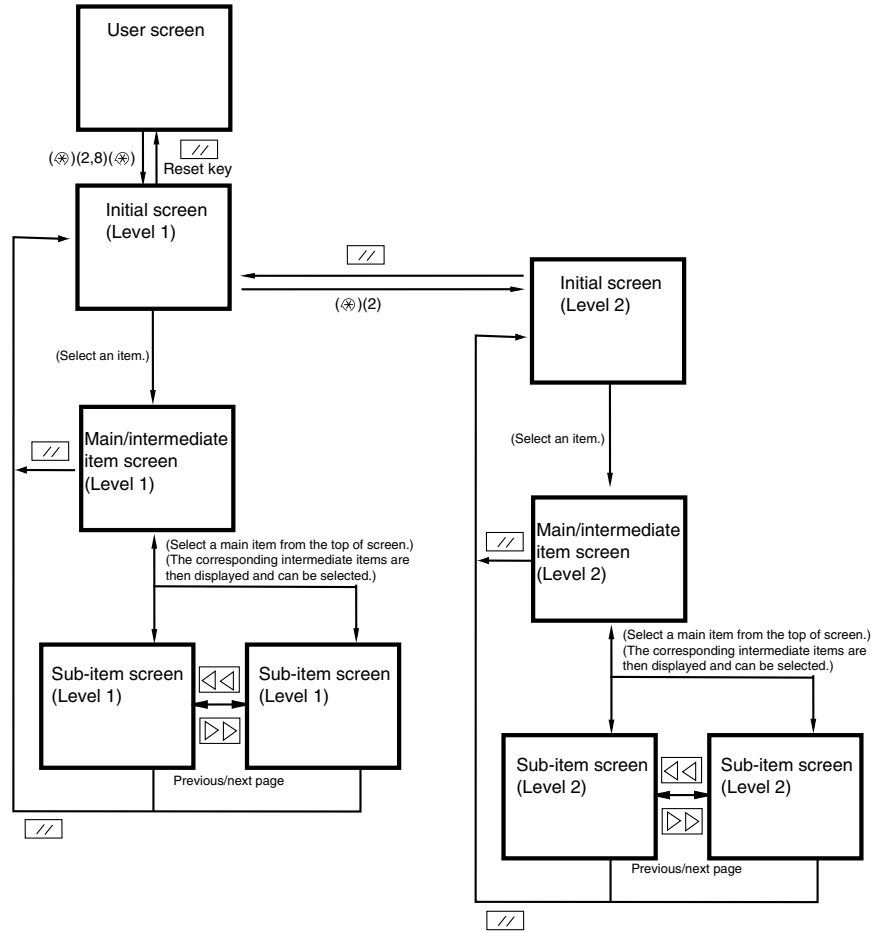
16.7 TEST (Test Print Mode).....	16-291
16.7.1 COPIER	16-291
16.7.1.1 COPIER List.....	16-291
16.7.1.2 COPIER List.....	16-293
16.8 COUNTER (Counter Mode)	16-295
16.8.1 COPIER	16-295
16.8.1.1 COPIER List.....	16-295
16.8.1.2 COPIER List.....	16-305
16.8.1.3 COPIER List.....	16-314

16.1 Outline

16.1.1 Construction of Service Mode

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The Service Mode screen is divided into three layers; initial screen, large/middle items, and small items, as shown below. Each screen provides a mode used for regular maintenance (Level 1 mode) and a mode used for troubleshooting (Level 2 mode).

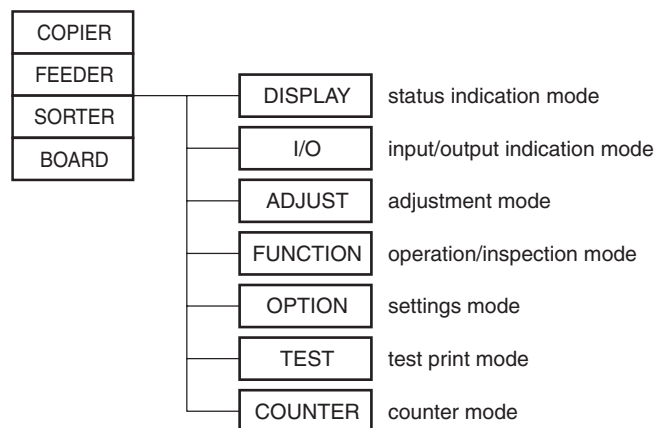


F-16-1

The initial screen of this machine displays the function names shown below.

- (1) COPIER: Service mode for the main unit
- (2) FEEDER: Service mode for the document feeder
- (3) SORTER: Service mode for the finisher
- (4) FAX: Service mode for the fax
- (5) BOARD: Service mode for the optional board

Each of COPIER, FEEDER, SORTER, and BOARD has seven large items as shown below.



F-16-2

FAX has 10 large items as shown below. For details of each item, refer to the Service Manual for a fax machine.

- (1) Ssw: Service soft switch group
- (2) Menu: Menu group
- (3) Num: Numeric group
- (4) Ncu: NCU parameter group
- (5) Type: Type group
- (6) ISDN: ISDN group
- (7) Print: Print group
- (8) Clear: Clear group
- (9) Test: Test mode group
- (10) Report: Service report group

16.1.2 Entering or selecting service modes

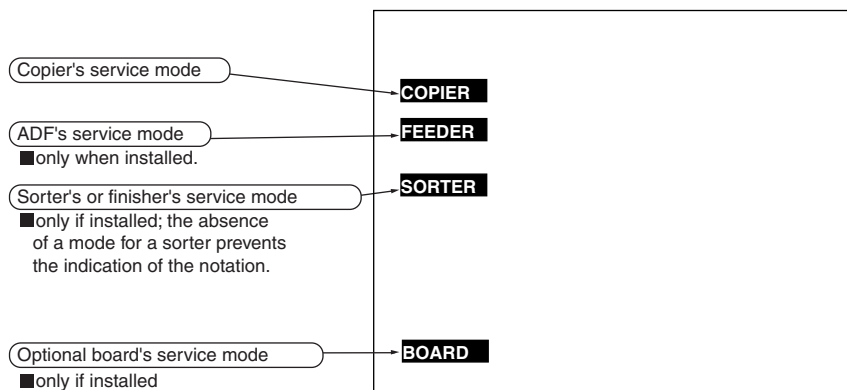
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



When you make the machine operate via the Service Mode, be sure to remove a cable from an external controller or a network cable before the machine enters the Service Mode. If a print job enters the machine operating in the FUNCTION mode (operation/inspection mode), it may cause a malfunction and damage the main unit.

- 1) Press the asterisk key "*" on the control panel.
- 2) Press the 2 and 8 keys of the keypad at the same time.
- 3) Press the asterisk key "*" on the control panel.

This operation displays the initial screen (as shown below).



F-16-3

16.1.3 Exiting service modes

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Press the Reset key once. The screen returns to the initial screen of Service Mode.
- 2) Press the Reset key twice. The Service Mode is cancelled and the screen returns to the User screen (standard screen).



When you have used the Service Mode (ADJUST, FUNCTION, or OPTION), be sure to turn OFF/ON the main power switch after canceling the Service Mode.

16.1.4 Back-Up

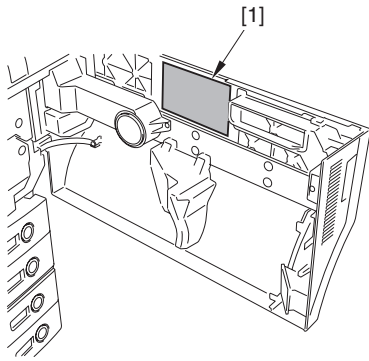
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

In factory setting, adjustments are made for each machine, and adjustment values are written in the service label.

When you replaced the reader controller PCB or DC controller PCB, or executed the RAM clear function, adjustment values for ADJUST or OPTION return to default. Therefore, when you made adjustments and changed values of the Service Mode in the field, be sure to write down the changed values in the service label. When there is no relevant field in the service label, write down the values in a blank field.

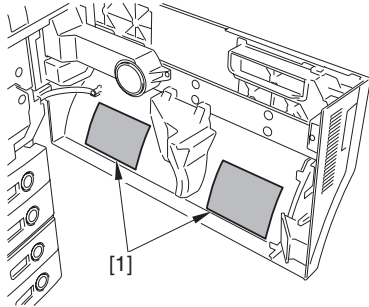
- Service label [1] for the main controller PCB / DC controller PCB: Inside of the printer unit front cover (Refer to the figure below.)

Printer model



F-16-4

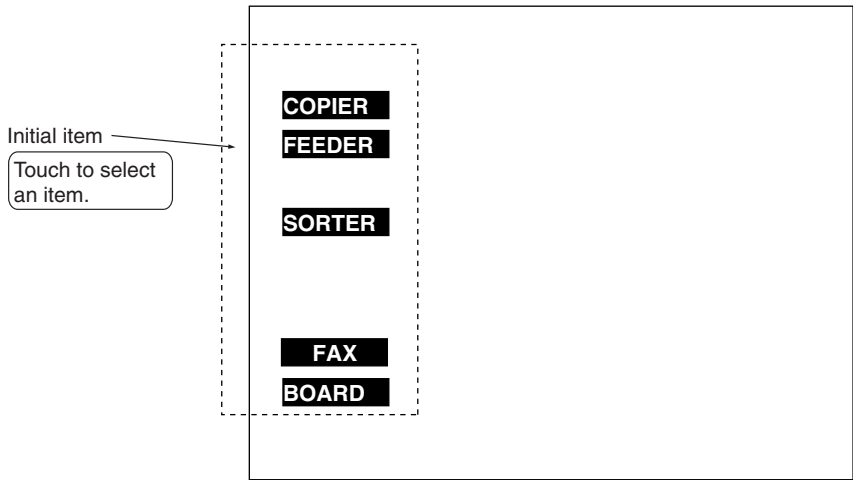
Copier model



F-16-5

16.1.5 Initial screen

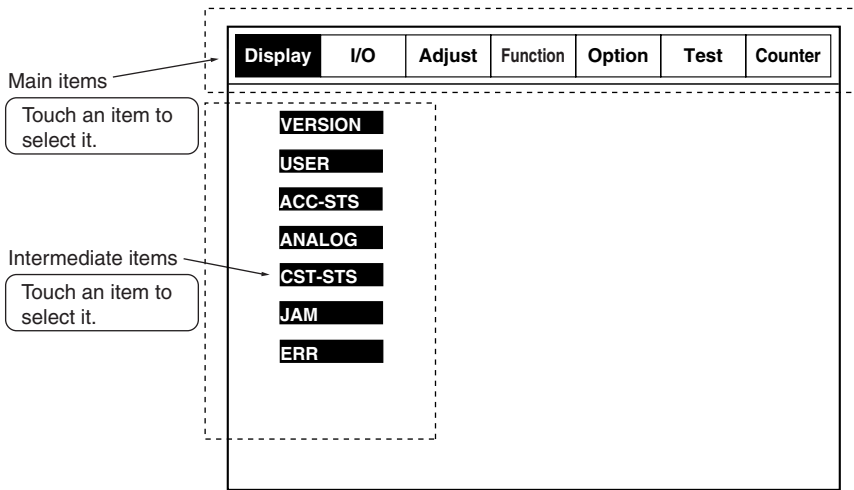
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



F-16-6

16.1.6 Main/intermediate Item Screen

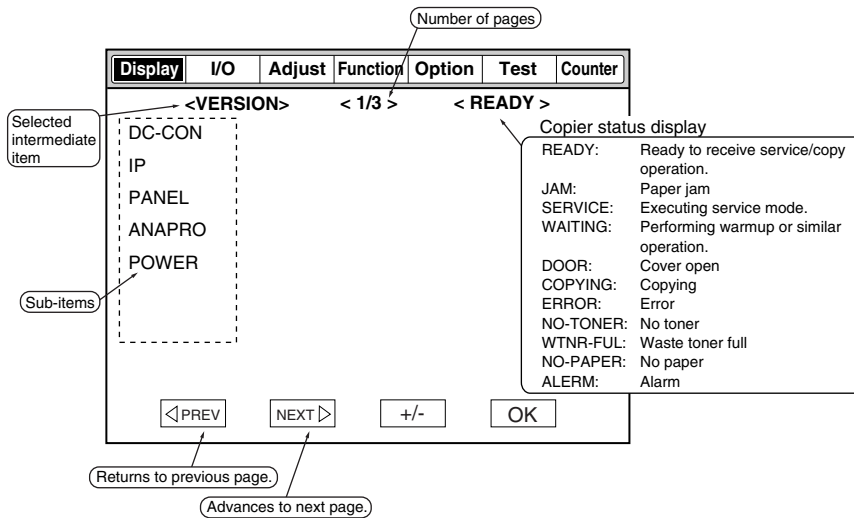
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



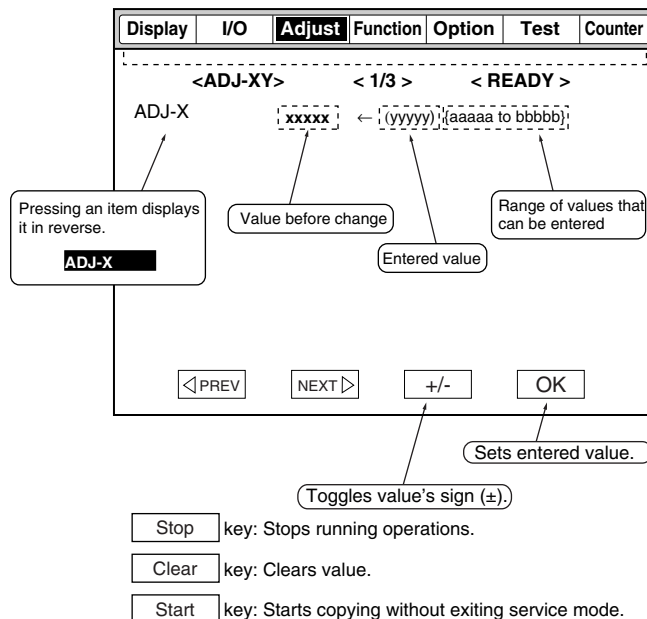
F-16-7

16.1.7 Sub- Item Screen

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



F-16-8



F-16-9

16.2 DISPLAY (Status Display Mode)

16.2.1 COPIER

16.2.1.1 COPIER List

imagePRESS C1

1.VERSION

T-16-1

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION		
Subheading	Contents	Level
Use it to indicate the ROM version of various PCBs (copier, accessories). - The format of display is as follows: if R-CON XX.YY>, XX: version; YY: R&D control number. - If no PCB is installed, the display will be as follows: <-:->.		
DC-CON	ROM version of the DC controller PCB	1
R-CON	ROM version of the reader controller PCB	1
PANEL	ROM version of the control panel controller PCB	1
ECO	ROM version of the ECO PCB	1
FEEDER	ROM version of the DADF controller PCB	1
SORTER	ROM version of the finisher controller PCB	1
FAX	ROM version of the fax board	1
NIB	ROM version of the network interface PCB	1
SDL-STCH	ROM version of the saddle stitcher controller PCB	1
OP-CONT	ROM version of the optional controller PCB	1
MN-CONT	ROM version of the main controller PCB	1
RUI	Version of the remote UI	1
PUNCH	Version of the punch unit	1
LANG-EN	Version of the English language file	1
LANG-FR	Version of the French language file	1
LANG-DE	Version of the German language file	1
LANG-IT	Version of the Italian language file	1
LANG-JP	Version of the Japanese language file	1
MEAP	Version of the MEAP contents	1
OCR-CN	OCR version of the simplified Chinese language	1
OCR-JP	OCR version of the Japanese language	1
OCR-KR	OCR version of the Korean language	1
OCR-TW	OCR version of the traditional Chinese language	1
BOOTROM	Version of the BOOT ROM	1
TTS-JA	Version of the Japanese voice dictionary	1
TTS-EN	Version of the English voice dictionary	1
WEB-BRWS	Version of the Web browser	1
HELP	Version of the simple navigation	1

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION		
Subheading	Contents	Level
WEBDAV	Version of the "WebDAV" file	1
TIMESTMP	Version of the "Time Stamp" file	1
LANG-CS	Version of the Czechoslovakian language file	2
LANG-DA	Version of the Danish language file	2
LANG-EL	Version of the Greek language file	2
LANG-ES	Version of the Spanish language file	2
LANG-ET	Version of the Estonian language file	2
LANG-FI	Version of the Finnish language file	2
LANG-HU	Version of the Hungarian language file	2
LANG-KO	Version of the Korean language file	2
LANG-NL	Version of the Dutch language file	2
LANG-NO	Version of the Norwegian language file	2
LANG-PL	Version of the Polish language file	2
LANG-PT	Version of the Portuguese language file	2
LANG-RU	Version of the Russian language file	2
LANG-SL	Version of the Slovenian language file	2
LANG-SV	Version of the Swedish language file	2
LANG-TW	Version of the traditional Chinese language file	2
LANG-ZH	Version of the simplified Chinese language file	2
ECO-ID	Display of the ECO-ID number	2
LANG-BU	Version of the Bulgarian language file	2
LANG-CR	Version of the Croatian language file	2
LANG-RM	Version of the Romanian language file	2
LANG-SK	Version of the Slovakian language file	2
LANG-TK	Version of the Turkish language file	2
LANG-CA	Version of the Catalan language file	2
MEDIA-JA	Version of the Japanese paper brand information	2
MEDIA-EN	Version of the English paper brand information	2
MEDIA-DE	Version of the German paper brand information	2
MEDIA-IT	Version of the Italian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-FR	Version of the French paper brand information	2
MEDIA-ZH	Version of the simplified Chinese paper brand information	2
MEDIA-SK	Version of the Slovakian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-TK	Version of the Turkish paper brand information	2
MEDIA-CS	Version of the Czechoslovakian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-EL	Version of the Greek paper brand information	2
MEDIA-ES	Version of the Spanish paper brand information	2
MEDIA-ET	Version of the Estonian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-FI	Version of the Finnish paper brand information	2
MEDIA-HU	Version of the Hungarian paper brand information	2

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MEDIA-KO	Version of the Korean paper brand information	2
MEDIA-NL	Version of the Dutch paper brand information	2
MEDIA-NO	Version of the Norwegian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-PL	Version of the Polish paper brand information	2
MEDIA-PT	Version of the Portuguese paper brand information	2
MEDIA-RU	Version of the Russian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-SL	Version of the Slovenian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-SV	Version of the Swedish paper brand information	2
MEDIA-TW	Version of the traditional Chinese paper brand information	2
MEDIA-BU	Version of the Bulgarian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-CR	Version of the Croatian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-RM	Version of the Romanian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-CA	Version of the Catalan paper brand information	2

2.ACC-STS

T-16-2

COPIER>DISPLAY>ACC-STS		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FEEDER	Display the connection status of the DADF. 0: Not connected 1: Connected	1
SORTER	Display the connection status of the finisher and punch unit. X: Connection status of the finisher Y: Connection status of the punch unit X: 0: Not connected, 1: Finisher, 2: Saddle finisher, 3: Saddle finisher + inserter, 4: Saddle finisher + paper folding unit, 5: Saddle finisher + inserter + paper folding unit, 6: 3K stacker, 7: Inner finisher, 8: External small finisher Y: 0: Not connected, 1: 2 holes, 2: 2/3 holes, 3: 4 holes (FRN), 4: 4 holes (SWDN)	1
DECK	Display the connection status of the paper deck. 0: Not connected 1: Connected (small) 2: POD deck light (with multi tray)	1
CARD	Display the connection status of the card reader. 0: A card reader is connected, but a card is not inserted. 1: A card reader is not connected. Or, a card reader is connected, and a card is inserted. ("1" is displayed when copy operation can be performed. "0" is displayed when copy operation cannot be performed.)	1
RAM	Display the amount of memory installed in the main controller PCB. RAM:XX[MB]	1
COINROBO	Display the connection status of the coin vender. 0: Not connected 1: Connected	1
NIB	Display the connection status of the network board. 0: Not connected 1: Ethernet Board is connected. 2: Token Ring Board is connected. 3: Ethernet Board and Token Ring Board are connected.	1
NETWARE	Display the installation status of the NetWare firmware. 0: Not installed 1: Installed	1
SEND	Attachment status of the SEND function 0: SEND function not attached 1: SEND function attached	1

COPIER>DISPLAY>ACC-ST5		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PDL-FNC1	Display the available PDL. (1) b31: BDL b30: PS b29: PCL b28: PDL b27: LIPS b26: N201 b25: I5577 b24: ESC/P b23: HPGL b22: HPGL2 b21: IMAGING b20: KS b19 - 16: Reserve (This is going to be used when a PDL is newly added.)	1
PDL-FNC2	Display the available PDL. (2) b15 - 0: Reserve (This is going to be used when a PDL is newly added.)	1
HDD	Display the model name of the HDD. 30 characters or less	1
PCII	Display the name of the board connected to PCII. 30 characters or less "- " (hyphen) is displayed when the board is not connected. - Voice board: - Encryption board: - GIGA Ethernet board:	1
USBH-SPD	Display the connection speed of the USB device. Display the connection speed of the eight USB devices connected to the USB-Host chip. - OFF - LOW - FLL - HGH	2

3.ANALOG

T-16-3

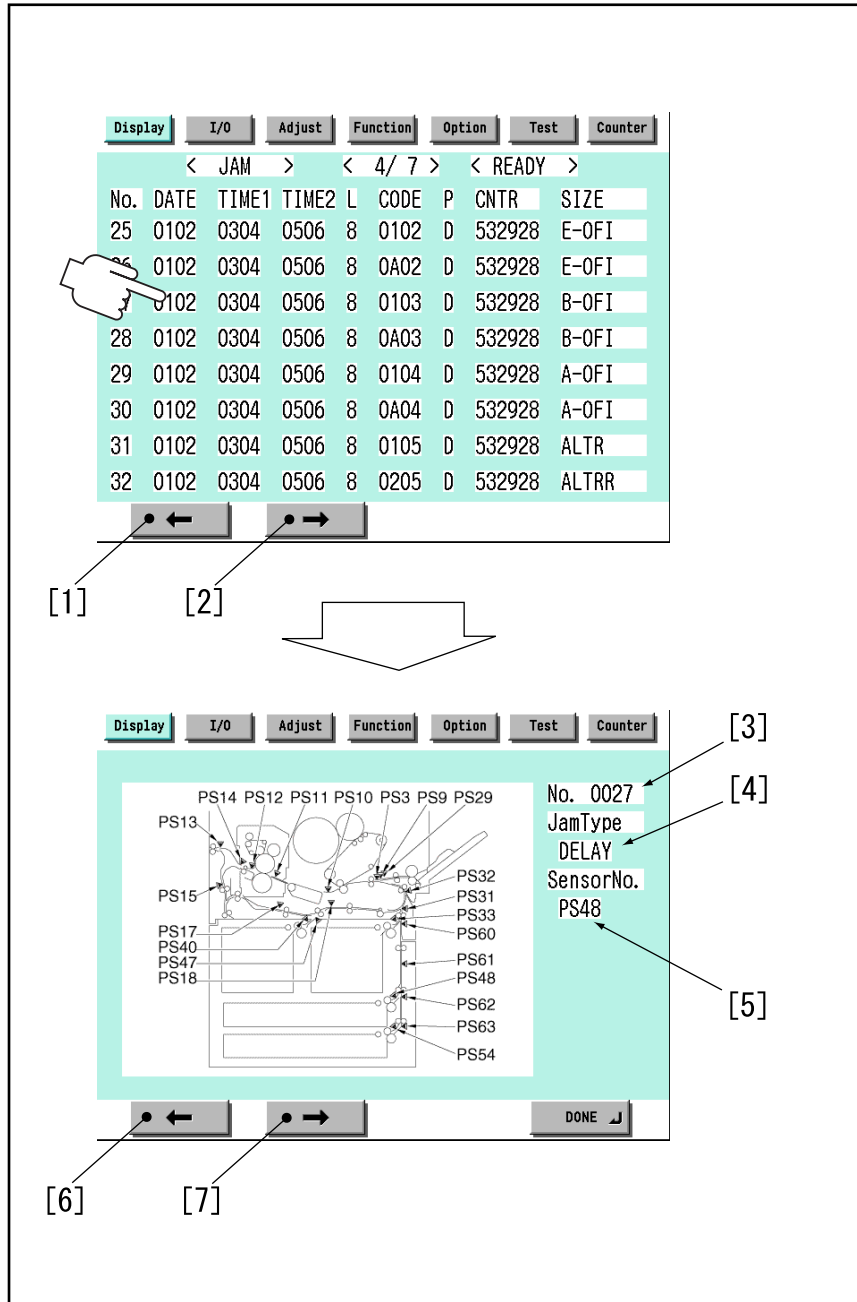
COPIER>DISPLAY>ANALOG		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TEMP	Use it to check the machine inside temperature (environment sensor; in deg C).	1
HUM	Use it to check the machine inside humidity (environment sensor; in %RH).	1
ABS-HUM	Use it to check moisture content (environment sensor; in g).	1
DR-TEMP	Temperature around the photosensitive drum Display the drum surface temperature detected by the drum thermistor. Unit: deg C Setting range: 0 to 60 deg C	1
FIX-UC	Use it to check the surface temperature of the middle of the fixing upper roller (as detected by the main thermistor; in deg C)	1
FIX-UE	Use it to check the surface temperature at the edge of the fixing upper roller (as detected by the sub thermistor; in deg C)	1
FIX-LC	Use it to indicate the temperature of the center of the fixing lower roller. unit: deg C	1
FIX-LE	Use it to indicate the temperature of the edge of the fixing lower roller. unit: deg C	1
FIX-EXC	Use it to indicate the temperature of the center of the outside heating roller. unit: deg C	1
FIX-EXE	Use it to indicate the temperature of the edge of the outside heating roller unit: deg C	1
DR-TEMPL	Temperature of the drum thermopile Display the drum surface temperature detected by the thermopile. Unit: deg C Setting range: 0 to 60 deg C	1

4.CST-ST5

T-16-4

COPIER>DISPLAY>CST-ST5		
Subheading	Contents	Level
WIDTH-MF	Use it to check the width of paper in the manual feed tray (in mm).	2

5.JAM



F-16-10

Touch any Jam Indication screen to go to the detailed screen of that particular type of jam.

- [1] press to go to the previous page.
- [2] press to go to the next page.
- [3] indicates the order of occurrence of the jam in question.
- [4] indicates the type of jam.
- [5] Sensor in question
- [6] press to go to the previous Jam Indication screen.
- [7] press it to go to the next Jam Indication screen.

(a) Jam Screen Indication Items

- <No.> Indicates the order of occurrence of the jam in question.1 through 50 (the higher the number, the older the jam)
- <DATE>Indicates the date of the jam in question.
- <TIME1> Indicates the time of the jam in question.
- <TIME2> Indicates the jam recovery time.
- <L> Use it to indicate the location of jams.

T-16-5

Cord	Location/classification
0	copier (Printer unit)

Cord	Location/classification
1	feeder
2	finisher

- <CODE> Use it to indicate jam codes (Refer to Jam code list described later).
- <P> Use it to indicate the source of paper.

T-16-6

Code	Description
0	unable to specify
1	cassette 1
2	cassette 2
3	cassette 3
4	cassette 4
5	not used
6	not used
7	side paper deck
8	manual feed tray (Multi-feeder)
9	duplexing unit

- <CNTR> Indicates the reading of the soft counter for the source of paper.
- <SIZE> Indicates the size of paper.

(b) Jam code list (jam type)

T-16-7

Code	Type of jam
01xx	delay jam
02xx	stationary jam
0Axx	residual jam
0B00	door open jam
0B01	door open jam (detection by software)
0D91	size mismatch (paper shorter than specified size)
0D92	medium mismatch (paper instead of transparency)
0D93	medium mismatch (transparency instead of paper)

(c) Jam code list (printer unit)

T-16-8

Code	Sensor type	Sensor number	Remarks
xx01	right deck pickup sensor	PS33	does not detect a stationary jam
xx02	left deck pickup sensor	PS40	does not detect a stationary jam
xx03	cassette 3 pickup sensor	PS48	does not detect a stationary jam
xx04	cassette 4 pickup sensor	PS54	does not detect a stationary jam
xx05	vertical path 4 sensor	PS63	
xx06	vertical path 3 sensor	PS62	
xx07	vertical path 2 sensor	PS61	
xx08	vertical path 1 sensor	PS60	
xx09	vertical path confluence sensor	PS32	when the source of paper is NOT the right deck
xx0A	transparency sensor (front, rear)	PS3, PS29	when the mode is not transparency mode
xx0A	registration sensor	PS9	when the mode is transparency mode
xx0B	post-transfer sensor	PS10	does not detect a stationary jam
xx0C	inside delivery sensor	PS12	does not detect a stationary jam
xx0D	reversal sensor	PS14	when in face-down delivery mode
xx0E	outside delivery sensor	PS13	
xx0F	reversal vertical path sensor	PS15	
xx10	vertical path 0 sensor	PS31	when the source of paper is the right deck
xx11	duplex left sensor	PS17	
xx12	duplex confluence sensor	PS18	
xx13	side paper deck pickup sensor	PS101	does not detect a stationary jam

Code	Sensor type	Sensor number	Remarks
xx14	side paper deck feed sensor	PS106	
xx15	fixing inlet sensor	PS11	detects a residual jam only
xx16	left deck stationary sensor	PS47	detects a residual jam only
0D90	transparency sensor (front, rear)	PS3, PS29	when the mode is transparency mode
0D91	transparency sensor (front, rear)	PS3, PS29	when the mode is not transparency mode
0D91	registration sensor	PS9	when the mode is transparency mode
0D92	transparency sensor (front, rear)	PS3, PS29	
0D93	transparency sensor (front, rear)	PS3, PS29	

(d) Jam code list (finisher-related)

T-16-9

Code	Sensor type	Sensor notation
1001	inlet path sensor feed delay jam	PI33
1002	punch path sensor (punch registration sensor) feed delay jam	LED5/PTR5
1004	delivery path sensor feed delay jam	PI34
1101	inlet path sensor feed stationary jam	PI33
1102	inlet path sensor feed stationary jam punch path sensor (Punch registration sensor) feed stationary jam	LED5/PTR5
1104	delivery path sensor feed stationary jam	PI34
1200	timing jam	PI33
1500	stapler staple jam	STP
1300	power-on jam	PI33,PI34
1400	door open jam	DOOR
1644	punch jam	LED5/PTR5
1645	punch power-on jam	LED5/PTR5
1791	saddle feed sensor feed delay jam	PI18,PI19,PI20
1792	saddle delivery sensor feed delay jam	PI11
1793	saddle inlet sensor feed delay jam	PI22
17A1	saddle feed sensor feed stationary jam	PI18,PI19,PI20
17A2	saddle delivery sensor feed stationary jam	PI11,PI17
17A3	saddle inlet sensor feed stationary jam	PI22
1786	saddle stapler staple jam	S STP
1787	saddle power-on jam	PI11,PI18,PI19,PI20,PI22
1788	saddle door open jam	DOOR

(e) Jam code list (Feeder-specific)

T-16-10

Code	Sensor type	Sensor notation	Description
0001	post-separation sensor	PI7	the post-separation sensor does not detect paper when a feed of 452 mm has been made after the start of separation.
0002	post-separation sensor	PI7	- the separation sensor detects paper after a feed of "500 mm (if extra length, +200 mm) - 45.5 mm" has been made. - the sensor goes on within a feed of 12 mm after detection of the trailing edge (holed paper); the post-separation sensor detects paper when a feed of 50 mm has been made after the separation sensor goes on.
0003	registration sensor	PI1	the registration sensor does not detect paper when a feed of 134.8 mm has been made after the post-separation sensor goes on.
0004	registration sensor	PI1	the read sensor goes off before the registration sensor goes off.
0005	feed sensor	PI8	- read sensor does not detect paper when a feed of 364.2 mm (182.1 x 2) has been made from the point of registration. - the read sensor does not detect paper when a feed of 157.4 mm (78.7 x 2) has been made from the point of No. 2 registration.
0006	feed sensor	PI8	- the read sensor detects paper when a feed of 500 mm (if extra-length, +200 mm) has been made from the start of feed after a temporary stop at point of reading. - the read sensor detects paper when a feed of 514 mm has been made after the start of feed from the standby point in mix mode (LTRR/LGL identified).
0007	delivery reversal sensor	PI9	- if not in high-speed duplex mode, the delivery sensor does not detect when a feed of 132.1 mm has been made after paper has reached the leading edge downstream roller with respect to the activation of the read sensor. - the delivery sensor does not detect paper when a feed of 50 mm has been made after the start of feed during a switch-back operation.
0008	delivery reversal sensor	PI9	the delivery sensor detects paper when a feed of 161.9 mm has been made from the end of reading the trailing edge.

Code	Sensor type	Sensor notation	Description
0042	post-separation sensor	PI7	1st; stationary jam at the post-separation sensor
0043	registration sensor	PI1	1st; not reaching the registration sensor
0044	registration sensor	PI1	1st; stationary at the registration sensor
0045	feed sensor	PI8	1st; not reaching the read sensor
0046	feed sensor	PI8	1st; stationary at the read sensor
0047	delivery reversal sensor	PI9	1st; not reaching heat delivery sensor
0048	delivery reversal sensor	PI9	1st; stationary sensor at the delivery sensor
0071	wrong timing	-	error software timing
0073	wrong timing	-	the shift motor is faulty
0090	ADF open/closed sensor 1	PS502	the ADF is opened during operation
0091	ADF open/closed sensor 1	PS502	the ADF is opened during operation (while paper is in wait)
0092	DF cover open/closed sensor	PI6	A cover is opened during operation (while a drive mechanism is in operation).
0093	DF cover pen/closed sensor	PI6	A cover is opened during operation (in wait for paper).
0094	registration sensor, separation sensor, feed sensor, delivery reversal sensor	PI1,PI7,PI8,PI9	Paper is detected in the path while the 1st sheet is being picked up.
0095	original placement sensor, DF cover open/closed sensor, ADF open/closed sensor 1	PI5,PI6,PS502	A signal arrives indicating the start of pickup in the absence of an original in the tray or while the machine is in an OPEN state.

6.ERR

No.	DATE	TIME1	TIME2	CODE	DTL	L	P
01	----	----	----	----	----	-	--
02	0102	0304	0506	E0708	090A	C	OD
03	0102	0304	0506	E0708	090A	C	OD
04	0102	0304	0506	E0708	090A	C	OD
05	0102	0304	0506	E0708	090A	C	OD
06	0102	0304	0506	E0708	090A	C	OD
07	0102	0304	0506	E0708	090A	C	OD
08	0102	0304	0506	E0708	090A	C	OD

F-16-11

- <No.> Error occurrence order number
1 to 50 (The larger the number is, the older the error is.)
- <Date> Error occurrence date
- <TIME1> Error occurrence time
- <TIME2> Error recovery time
- <CODE> Error code
- <DTL> Detailed code (When there is no detailed code, "0000" is displayed.)
- <L> Occurrence category

T-16-11

	Location Classification
0	main controller
1	Feeder
2	finisher
3	not used
4	reader unit
5	printer unit
6	PDL board (any of)
7	fax board

- <P> Not used

7.HV-ST

T-16-12

COPIER>DISPLAY>HV-ST		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRI-GRID	Grid voltage of the primary charging assembly (Unit: V)	1

COPIER>DISPLAY>HV-STS		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRE-TR	Current level of the pre-transfer charging assembly (Unit: μ A)	1
BIAS	DC value of each color developing bias (Unit: V)	1
1TR-CMOF	Offset for adjustment of the primary transfer DC current monitor Setting range: -999 to 999(mv)	1
1TR-VMOF	Offset for adjustment of the primary transfer DC voltage monitor Setting range:-999 to 999(mv)	1
2TR-CMOF	Offset for adjustment of the secondary transfer DC current monitor Setting range:-999 to 999(mv)	1
2TR-VMOF	Offset for adjustment of the secondary transfer DC voltage monitor Setting range:-999 to 999(mv)	1
BCL1CMOF	Offset for adjustment of the ITB cleaner upstream current monitor Setting range:-999 to 999(mv)	1
BCL2CMOF	Offset for adjustment of the ITB cleaner downstream current monitor Setting range:-999 to 999(mv)	1
1ATVC-Y/M/C	Target current level at primary transfer ATVC (Y/M/C color) [Unit: μ A]	2
1ATVC-K4	Target current level for primary transfer ATVC (K color in full color mode) [Unit: μ A]	2
1ATVC-K1	Target current level for primary transfer ATVC (K color in monochrome mode) [Unit: μ A]	2
1EL	Monitor value for the ITB tension roller bias Display range: -4000 to 0 Standard value: -4000 (Unit: V)	2
2EL	Monitor value for the secondary transfer static eliminator bias Display range: -4000 to 0 Standard value: 0 (Unit: 0V)	2

8.CCD

T-16-13

COPIER>DISPLAY>CCD		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TARGET-B	Shading target value for BLUE color	2
TARGET-G	Shading target value for GREEN color	2
TARGET-R	Shading target value for RED color	2
GAIN-OB	Adjustment value for the gain level of the odd bit for CCD BLUE color (for color)	2
GAIN-OG	Adjustment value for the gain level of the odd bit for CCD GREEN color (for color)	2
GAIN-OR	Adjustment value for the gain level of the odd bit for CCD RED color (for color)	2
GAIN-EB	Adjustment value for the gain level of the even bit for CCD BLUE color (for color)	2
GAIN-EG	Adjustment value for the gain level of the even bit for CCD GREEN color (for color)	2
GAIN-ER	Adjustment value for the gain level of the even bit for CCD RED color (for color)	2

9.DPOT

T-16-14

COPIER>DISPLAY>DPOT		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DPOT-K	Electric potential on the surface of the photosensitive drum (Unit: V)	1

COPIER>DISPLAY>DPOT		
Subheading	Contents	Level
VCONT-Y/M/C/K	Current value of the electric potential for the target contrast (Y/M/C/K color) (Unit: V)	2
VBACK-Y/M/C/K	Current value of the electric potential for eliminating fogging (Y/M/C/K color) (Unit: V)	2
2TR-PPR	Last output value of the paper voltage for the secondary transfer DC voltage	2
2TR-BASE	Last output value of the standard voltage for the secondary transfer DC voltage	2
1TR-DC-Y/M/C/K	Last output value of the primary transfer DC voltage (Y/M/C/K color)	2
LPWR-Y/M/C/K	Laser power value of Y/M/C/K color which is a VL target electric potential (result of electric potential control) Display the laser power value of each color which is a VL target electric potential. Setting range: 00 to FF (hex)	2
PVCONT-Y/M/C/K	Current value of the target patch contrast electric potential (Y/M/C/K color) 0 to 255V (Unit: V only)	2
P-LPW-Y/M/C/K	Laser power value of Y/M/C/K color which is a target patch contrast electric potential 0 to FF (Unit: hex only)	2

10.DENS

T-16-15

COPIER>DISPLAY>DENS		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DENS-Y/M/C	Calculated value of the developer density (Y/M/C) (The difference to the target value is displayed in %.) Reference The value is updated at the point when toner supply is performed after the main power switch was turned on. Correct value: -2.0 to 4.0%	1
REF-Y/M/C	Standard of the developer density on the developing cylinder (Y/M/C) The value is updated at the point when toner supply is performed after the main power switch was turned on. Correct value: 464 to 560	1
SGNL-Y/M/C	Measurement value of the developer density (Y/M/C) Measurement is performed every time when a job is entered. Reference The value is updated at the point when toner supply is performed after the main power switch was turned on. Correct value: 250 to 760	1
DENS-S-Y/M/C/K	Detected density value of the sample image created in ATR control (Y/M/C/Bk) Correct value: 250 to 450	2
D-Y/M/C -TRGT	Target value of the developer density (Y/M/C)	2
P-SENS-P	Detected value of the light volume on the base (drum) in patch detection ATR control	2
DEV-DC-Y/M/C/K	Output value of the target developing DC voltage (Y/M/C/Bk) (Current value)	2
D-CRNT-P/S	Measurement value of the dark current in patch detection ATR control (P wave / S wave)	2
P-SENS-S	Detected value of the light volume on the base (drum) in patch detection ATR control (S wave)	2
DENS-Y/M/C-H	History of the light ATR sensor measurement values (Y/M/C, last 8 values)	2
DS-S-Y/M/C/K-H	History of the patch image detection results (Y/M/C/K, last 8 values)	2
P-LED-DA	D/A setting value of LED for the patch image detection sensor	2
SPL-LG-Y/M/C	Supply history of Y/M/C color Display the last 8 supplies. Display range: 00 to 50 (0 to 800g)	2

11.MISC

T-16-16

COPIER>DISPLAY>MISC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ENV-TR	Environmental area Display the environmental area for transfer control based on the environment (temperature, humidity) in the printer. Setting value 1: Low humidity (5.8g or less) 2: Normal humidity (5.9g to 17.3g) 3: High humidity (17.4g or more)	1
PP-S-REF	REF value of the paper thickness detection sensor Display the REF value of the paper thickness detection sensor at idling condition. Automatically measure and display the distance to the registration roller before the standby status after the power is turned on, and before the standby status after the job is completed. Setting range: 0 to 1023 (100 to 900 in a normal condition)	1
PP-S-DAT	Paper thickness of the paper thickness detection sensor Display the thickness of the paper which last passed. (Unit: μm) Display range: 0 to 999	1
LPOWER	Real-time display of the laser volume Setting range: 00 to FF (hex)	2

12.ALARM-1

T-16-17

COPIER>DISPLAY>ALARM-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
IMG-DT-Y/M/C/K	Average value of the image ratio created in Y/M/C/K color	1
LST-DY-Y/M/C/K	Image Duty Y/M/C/K color last output Display the image duty of the image last output. Display range: 0 to 100%	2

13.ALARM-2

No.	DATE	TIME1	TIME2	CODE	DTL	CNTR
01	---	---	---	---	---	---
02	---	---	---	---	---	---
03	---	---	---	---	---	---
04	---	---	---	---	---	---
05	---	---	---	---	---	---
06	---	---	---	---	---	---
07	---	---	---	---	---	---
08	---	---	---	---	---	---

F-16-12

T-16-18

Item	Description
No.	Indicates the order of occurrence of alarms (1 to 50; the highest number indicating the oldest)
DATE	Indicates the date of occurrence of alarms
TIME1	Indicates the time of occurrence of alarms
TIME2	Indicates the time of occurrence of alarms
CODE	Indicates the location of occurrence of alarms
DTL	Indicates alarm codes.
CNTR	Indicates the reading of the total counter at time of alarm.

Location code	Alarm code	
02 scanner	0002	indicates the presence of dirt on the glass for stream reading.
	0020	line correction alarm (upon detection of dust on the stream reading glass between originals)
04 pickup/feed	0001 0002 0003 0004 0008	cassette 1 lifter error cassette 2 lifter error cassette 3 lifter error cassette 4 lifter error optional deck lifter error
33 fan	0011	fixing heat discharge fan
50 ADF	0010	indicates that the original separation alarm condition has occurred 3 times in sequence (i.e., faulty pickup of the 1st original).
61 finisher	0001	staple absent
62 saddle stitcher	0001	stitch staple absent
65 puncher	0001	punch waste case full

14.ENVRNT

Use it to indicate the environment log.

The machine shows a log of changes taking place as indicated by the readings of the environment sensor and the output of the fixing thermistor: machine inside temperature in deg C, humidity in %, fixing roller surface temperature (center) in deg C.

Remarks:

The intervals at which data is collected may be changed in the following service mode item: COPIER>OPTION>BODY>ENVP-IN.

Display	I/O	Adjust	Function	Option	Test	Counter
< ENVRNT > < 1/13 > < READY >						
No.	DATE	TIME	D+deg C	E+%	F+deg C	
001	0101	0000	0000	E000	F000	
002	0201	0000	0000	E000	F000	
003	0301	0000	0000	E000	F000	
004	0401	0000	0000	E000	F000	
005	0501	0000	0000	E000	F000	
006	0601	0000	0000	E000	F000	
007	0701	0000	0000	E000	F000	
008	0801	0000	0000	E000	F000	

F-16-13

T-16-20

Item	Description
No.	order of data collection (highest number indicating oldest data)
DATE	date of data collection
TIME	time of data collection
D+deg C	machine inside temperature
E+%	machine inside Humidity
F+deg C	fixing roller surface (center) temperature

15.HT-C



In case the hue variation occurs, check the value of this item.

Appropriate range: 100 to 600

In case the value is out of the range:

1. Execute the automatic gradation correction (either full correction or quick correction.)
2. If the value is still out of the appropriate range, replace the patch sensor.

T-16-21

COPIER<DISPLAY<HT-C		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TGT-A-Y	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-A-M	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-A-C	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-A-K	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-B-Y	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-B-M	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-B-C	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-B-K	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-C-Y	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-C-M	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-C-C	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-C-K	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-A-Y	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-A-M	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-A-C	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

COPIER<DISPLAY<HT-C		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SUM-A-K	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-B-Y	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-B-M	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-B-C	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-B-K	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-C-Y	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-C-M	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-C-C	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-C-K	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-A-Y	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-A-M	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-A-C	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-A-K	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-B-Y	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-B-M	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-B-C	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-B-K	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

COPIER<DISPLAY<HT-C		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SGNL-C-Y	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-C-M	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-C-K	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-C-C	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-A-Y	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-A-M	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-A-C	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-A-K	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-B-Y	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-B-M	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-B-C	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-B-K	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-C-Y	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-C-M	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-C-C	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-C-K	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

16.2.1.2 COPIER List

imagePRESS C1 P

1.VERSION

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION		
Subheading	Contents	Level
Use it to indicate the ROM version of various PCBs (copier, accessories). - The format of display is as follows: if R-CON XX.YY>, XX: version; YY: R&D control number. - If no PCB is installed, the display will be as follows: <-:->.		
DC-CON	ROM version of the DC controller PCB	1
PANEL	ROM version of the control panel controller PCB	1
ECO	ROM version of the ECO PCB	1
SORTER	ROM version of the finisher controller PCB	1
FAX	ROM version of the fax board	1
NIB	ROM version of the network interface PCB	1
SDL-STCH	ROM version of the saddle stitcher controller PCB	1
OP-CONT	ROM version of the optional controller PCB	1
MN-CONT	ROM version of the main controller PCB	1
RUI	Version of the remote UI	1
PUNCH	Version of the punch unit	1
LANG-EN	Version of the English language file	1
LANG-FR	Version of the French language file	1
LANG-DE	Version of the German language file	1
LANG-IT	Version of the Italian language file	1
LANG-JP	Version of the Japanese language file	1
MEAP	Version of the MEAP contents	1
OCR-CN	OCR version of the simplified Chinese language	1
OCR-JP	OCR version of the Japanese language	1
OCR-KR	OCR version of the Korean language	1
OCR-TW	OCR version of the traditional Chinese language	1
BOOTROM	Version of the BOOT ROM	1
TTS-JA	Version of the Japanese voice dictionary	1
TTS-EN	Version of the English voice dictionary	1
WEB-BRWS	Version of the Web browser	1
HELP	Version of the simple navigation	1
LANG-CS	Version of the Czechoslovakian language file	2
LANG-DA	Version of the Danish language file	2
LANG-EL	Version of the Greek language file	2
LANG-ES	Version of the Spanish language file	2
LANG-ET	Version of the Estonian language file	2
LANG-FI	Version of the Finnish language file	2
LANG-HU	Version of the Hungarian language file	2
LANG-KO	Version of the Korean language file	2
LANG-NL	Version of the Dutch language file	2
LANG-NO	Version of the Norwegian language file	2
LANG-PL	Version of the Polish language file	2
LANG-PT	Version of the Portuguese language file	2
LANG-RU	Version of the Russian language file	2
LANG-SL	Version of the Slovenian language file	2
LANG-SV	Version of the Swedish language file	2
LANG-TW	Version of the traditional Chinese language file	2
LANG-ZH	Version of the simplified Chinese language file	2
ECO-ID	Display of the ECO-ID number	2
LANG-BU	Version of the Bulgarian language file	2
LANG-CR	Version of the Croatian language file	2
LANG-RM	Version of the Romanian language file	2
LANG-SK	Version of the Slovakian language file	2
LANG-TK	Version of the Turkish language file	2
LANG-CA	Version of the Catalan language file	2
MEDIA-JA	Version of the Japanese paper brand information	2
MEDIA-EN	Version of the English paper brand information	2
MEDIA-DE	Version of the German paper brand information	2
MEDIA-IT	Version of the Italian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-FR	Version of the French paper brand information	2

COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MEDIA-ZH	Version of the simplified Chinese paper brand information	2
MEDIA-SK	Version of the Slovakian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-TK	Version of the Turkish paper brand information	2
MEDIA-CS	Version of the Czechoslovakian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-EL	Version of the Greek paper brand information	2
MEDIA-ES	Version of the Spanish paper brand information	2
MEDIA-ET	Version of the Esthonian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-FI	Version of the Finnish paper brand information	2
MEDIA-HU	Version of the Hungarian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-KO	Version of the Korean paper brand information	2
MEDIA-NL	Version of the Dutch paper brand information	2
MEDIA-NO	Version of the Norwegian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-PL	Version of the Polish paper brand information	2
MEDIA-PT	Version of the Portuguese paper brand information	2
MEDIA-RU	Version of the Russian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-SL	Version of the Slovenian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-SV	Version of the Swedish paper brand information	2
MEDIA-TW	Version of the traditional Chinese paper brand information	2
MEDIA-BU	Version of the Bulgarian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-CR	Version of the Croatian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-RM	Version of the Romanian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-CA	Version of the Catalan paper brand information	2

2.ACC-STs

T-16-23

COPIER>DISPLAY>ACC-STs		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SORTER	<p>Display the connection status of the finisher and punch unit.</p> <p>X: Connection status of the finisher Y: Connection status of the punch unit</p> <p>X: 0: Not connected, 1: Finisher, 2: Saddle finisher, 3: Saddle finisher + inserter, 4: Saddle finisher + paper folding unit, 5: Saddle finisher + inserter + paper folding unit, 6: 3K stacker, 7: Inner finisher, 8: External small finisher</p> <p>Y: 0: Not connected, 1: 2 holes, 2: 2/3 holes, 3: 4 holes (FRN), 4: 4 holes (SWDN)</p>	1
DECK	<p>Display the connection status of the paper deck.</p> <p>0: Not connected 1: Connected (small) 2: POD deck light (with multi tray)</p>	1
CARD	<p>Display the connection status of the card reader.</p> <p>0: A card reader is connected, but a card is not inserted. 1: A card reader is not connected. Or, a card reader is connected, and a card is inserted. ("1" is displayed when copy operation can be performed. "0" is displayed when copy operation cannot be performed.)</p>	1
RAM	<p>Display the amount of memory installed in the main controller PCB.RAM:XX[MB]</p>	1
COINROBO	<p>Display the connection status of the coin vender.</p> <p>0: Not connected 1: Connected</p>	1
NIB	<p>Display the connection status of the network board.</p> <p>0: Not connected 1: Ethernet Board is connected. 2: Token Ring Board is connected. 3: Ethernet Board and Token Ring Board are connected.</p>	1

COPIER>DISPLAY>ACC-STS		
Subheading	Contents	Level
NETWARE	Display the installation status of the NetWare firmware. 0: Not installed 1: Installed	1
SEND	Attachment status of the SEND function 0: SEND function not attached 1: SEND function attached	1
PDL-FNC1	Display the available PDL. (1)b31: BDL b30: PS b29: PCL b28: PDL b27: LIPS b26: N201 b25: 15577 b24: ESC/P b23: HPGL b22: HPGL2 b21: IMAGING b20: KS b19 to 16: Reserve (This is going to be used when a PDL is newly added.)	1
PDL-FNC2	Display the available PDL. (2) b15 to 0: Reserve (This is going to be used when a PDL is newly added.)	1
HDD	Display the model name of the HDD. 30 characters or less	1
PCII	Display the name of the board connected to PCII. 30 characters or less "-" (hyphen) is displayed when the board is not connected. - Voice board: - Encryption board: - GIGA Ethernet board:	1
USBH-SPD	Display the connection speed of the USB device. Display the connection speed of the eight USB devices connected to the USB-Host chip. - OFF - LOW - FLL - HGH	2

3.ANALOG

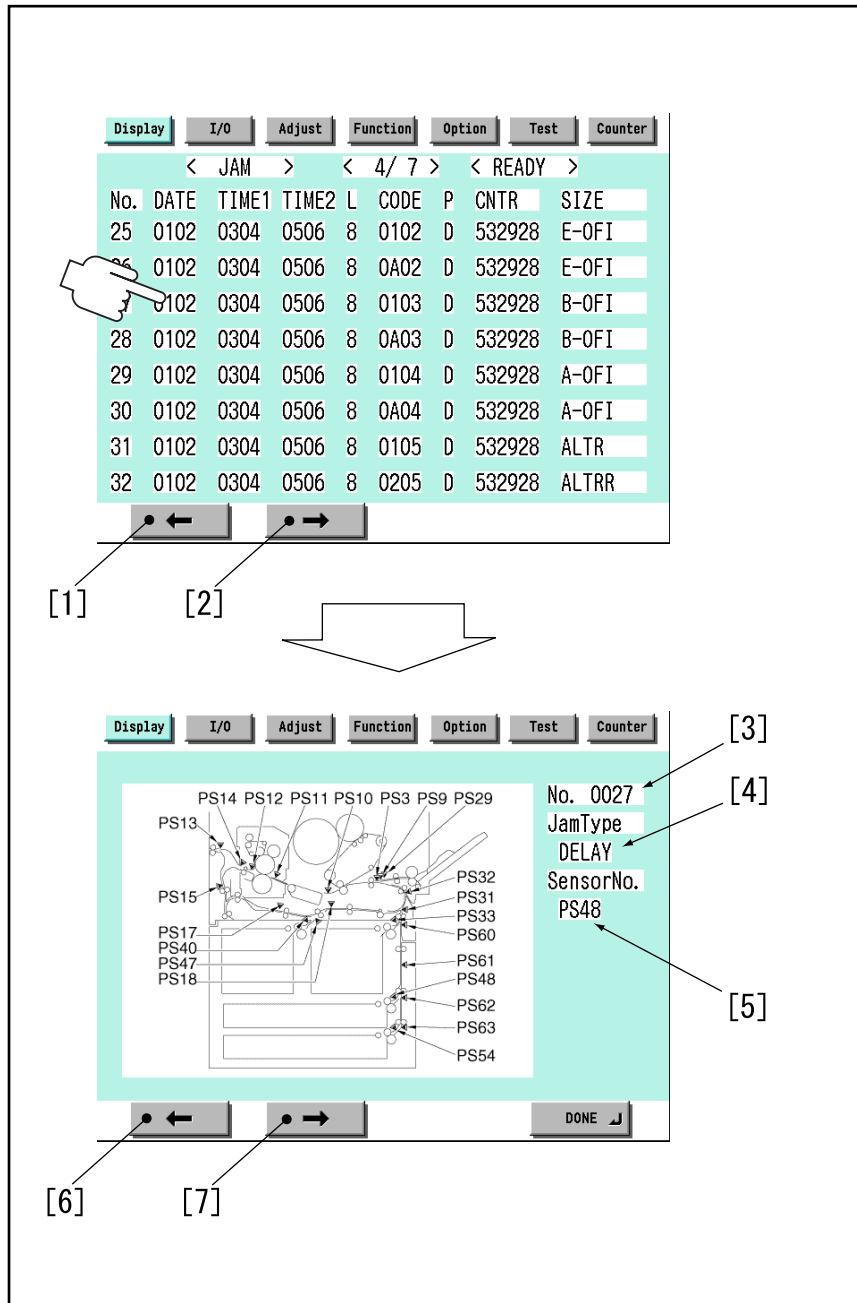
T-16-24

COPIER>DISPLAY>ANALOG		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TEMP	Use it to check the machine inside temperature (environment sensor; in deg C).	1
HUM	Use it to check the machine inside humidity (environment sensor; in %RH).	1
ABS-HUM	Use it to check moisture content (environment sensor; in g).	1
DR-TEMP	Temperature around the photosensitive drum Display the drum surface temperature detected by the drum thermistor. Unit: deg C Setting range: 0 to 60 deg C	1
FIX-UC	Use it to check the surface temperature of the middle of the fixing upper roller (as detected by the main thermistor; in deg C)	1
FIX-UE	Use it to check the surface temperature at the edge of the fixing upper roller (as detected by the sub thermistor; in deg C)	1
FIX-LC	Use it to indicate the temperature of the center of the fixing lower roller. unit: deg C	1
FIX-LE	Use it to indicate the temperature of the edge of the fixing lower roller. unit: deg C	1
FIX-EXC	Use it to indicate the temperature of the center of the outside heating roller. unit: deg C	1
FIX-EXE	Use it to indicate the temperature of the edge of the outside heating roller unit: deg C	1
DR-TEMPL	Temperature of the drum thermopile Display the drum surface temperature detected by the thermopile. Unit: deg C Setting range: 0 to 60 deg C	1

4.CST-STS

COPIER>DISPLAY>CST-STS		
Subheading	Contents	Level
WIDTH-MF	Use it to check the width of paper in the manual feed tray (in mm).	2

5.JAM



F-16-14

Touch any Jam Indication screen to go to the detailed screen of that particular type of jam.

- [1] press to go to the previous page.
- [2] press to go to the next page.
- [3] indicates the order of occurrence of the jam in question.
- [4] indicates the type of jam.
- [5] Sensor in question
- [6] press to go to the previous Jam Indication screen.
- [7] press it to go to the next Jam Indication screen.

(a) Jam Screen Indication Items

- <No.> Indicates the order of occurrence of the jam in question. 1 through 50 (the higher the number, the older the jam)
- <DATE> Indicates the date of the jam in question.

- <TIME1> Indicates the time of the jam in question.
- <TIME2> Indicates the jam recovery time.
- <L> Use it to indicate the location of jams.

T-16-26

Cord	Location/classification
0	copier (Printer unit)
1	feeder
2	finisher

- <CODE> Use it to indicate jam codes (Refer to Jam code list described later).
- <P> Use it to indicate the source of paper.

T-16-27

Code	Description
0	unable to specify
1	cassette 1
2	cassette 2
3	cassette 3
4	cassette 4
5	not used
6	not used
7	side paper deck
8	manual feed tray (Multi-feeder)
9	duplexing unit

- <CNTR> Indicates the reading of the soft counter for the source of paper.
- <SIZE> Indicates the size of paper.

(b) Jam code list (jam type)

T-16-28

Code	Type of jam
01xx	delay jam
02xx	stationary jam
0Axx	residual jam
0B00	door open jam
0B01	door open jam (detection by software)
0D91	size mismatch (paper shorter than specified size)
0D92	medium mismatch (paper instead of transparency)
0D93	medium mismatch (transparency instead of paper)

(c) Jam code list (printer unit)

T-16-29

Code	Sensor type	Sensor number	Remarks
xx01	right deck pickup sensor	PS33	does not detect a stationary jam
xx02	left deck pickup sensor	PS40	does not detect a stationary jam
xx03	cassette 3 pickup sensor	PS48	does not detect a stationary jam
xx04	cassette 4 pickup sensor	PS54	does not detect a stationary jam
xx05	vertical path 4 sensor	PS63	
xx06	vertical path 3 sensor	PS62	
xx07	vertical path 2 sensor	PS61	
xx08	vertical path 1 sensor	PS60	
xx09	vertical path confluence sensor	PS32	when the source of paper is NOT the right deck
xx0A	transparency sensor (front, rear)	PS3, PS29	when the mode is not transparency mode
xx0A	registration sensor	PS9	when the mode is transparency mode
xx0B	post-transfer sensor	PS10	does not detect a stationary jam
xx0C	inside delivery sensor	PS12	does not detect a stationary jam

Code	Sensor type	Sensor number	Remarks
xx0D	reversal sensor	PS14	when in face-down delivery mode
xx0E	outside delivery sensor	PS13	
xx0F	reversal vertical path sensor	PS15	
xx10	vertical path 0 sensor	PS31	when the source of paper is the right deck
xx11	duplex left sensor	PS17	
xx12	duplex confluence sensor	PS18	
xx13	side paper deck pickup sensor	PS101	does not detect a stationary jam
xx14	side paper deck feed sensor	PS106	
xx15	fixing inlet sensor	PS11	detects a residual jam only
xx16	left deck stationary sensor	PS47	detects a residual jam only
0D90	transparency sensor (front, rear)	PS3, PS29	when the mode is transparency mode
0D91	transparency sensor (front, rear)	PS3, PS29	when the mode is not transparency mode
0D91	registration sensor	PS9	when the mode is transparency mode
0D92	transparency sensor (front, rear)	PS3, PS29	
0D93	transparency sensor (front, rear)	PS3, PS29	

(d) Jam code list (finisher-related)

T-16-30

Code	Sensor type	Sensor notation
1001	inlet path sensor feed delay jam	PI33
1002	punch path sensor (punch registration sensor) feed delay jam	LED5/PTR5
1004	delivery path sensor feed delay jam	PI34
1101	inlet path sensor feed stationary jam	PI33
1102	inlet path sensor feed stationary jam punch path sensor (Punch registration sensor) feed stationary jam	LED5/PTR5
1104	delivery path sensor feed stationary jam	PI34
1200	timing jam	PI33
1500	stapler staple jam	STP
1300	power-on jam	PI33,PI34
1400	door open jam	DOOR
1644	punch jam	LED5/PTR5
1645	punch power-on jam	LED5/PTR5
1791	saddle feed sensor feed delay jam	PI18,PI19,PI20
1792	saddle delivery sensor feed delay jam	PI11
1793	saddle inlet sensor feed delay jam	PI22
17A1	saddle feed sensor feed stationary jam	PI18,PI19,PI20
17A2	saddle delivery sensor feed stationary jam	PI11,PI17
17A3	saddle inlet sensor feed stationary jam	PI22
1786	saddle stapler staple jam	S STP
1787	saddle power-on jam	PI11,PI18,PI19,PI20,PI22
1788	saddle door open jam	DOOR

(e) Jam code list (Feeder-specific)

T-16-31

Code	Sensor type	Sensor notation	Description
0001	post-separation sensor	PI7	the post-separation sensor does not detect paper when a feed of 452 mm has been made after the start of separation.
0002	post-separation sensor	PI7	- the separation sensor detects paper after a feed of "500 mm (if extra length, +200 mm) - 45.5 mm" has been made. - the sensor goes on within a feed of 12 mm after detection of the trailing edge (holed paper); the post-separation sensor detects paper when a feed of 50 m has been made after the separation sensor goes on.
0003	registration sensor	PI1	the registration sensor does not detect paper when a feed of 134.8 mm has been made after the post-separation sensor goes on.
0004	registration sensor	PI1	the read sensor goes off before the registration sensor goes off.
0005	feed sensor	PI8	- read sensor does not detect paper when a feed of 364.2 mm (182.1 x 2) has been made from the point of registration. - the read sensor does not detect paper when a feed of 157.4 mm (78.7 x 2) has been made from the point of No. 2 registration.
0006	feed sensor	PI8	- the read sensor detects paper when a feed of 500 mm (if extra-length, +200 mm) has been made from the start of feed after a temporary stop at point of reading. - the read sensor detects paper when a feed of 514 mm has been made after the start of feed from the standby point in mix mode (LTRR/LGL identified).

Code	Sensor type	Sensor notation	Description
0007	delivery reversal sensor	PI9	- if not in high-speed duplex mode, the delivery sensor does not detect when a feed of 132.1 mm has been made after paper has reached the leading edge downstream roller with respect to the activation of the read sensor. - the delivery sensor does not detect paper when a feed of 50 mm has been made after the start of feed during a switch-back operation.
0008	delivery reversal sensor	PI9	the delivery sensor detects paper when a feed of 161.9 mm has been made from the end of reading the trailing edge.
0042	post-separation sensor	PI7	1st; stationary jam at the post-separation sensor
0043	registration sensor	PI1	1st; not reaching the registration sensor
0044	registration sensor	PI1	1st; stationary at the registration sensor
0045	feed sensor	PI8	1st; not reaching the read sensor
0046	feed sensor	PI8	1st; stationary at the read sensor
0047	delivery reversal sensor	PI9	1st; not reaching heat delivery sensor
0048	delivery reversal sensor	PI9	1st; stationary sensor at the delivery sensor
0071	wrong timing	-	error software timing
0073	wrong timing	-	the shift motor is faulty
0090	ADF open/closed sensor 1	PS502	the ADF is opened during operation
0091	ADF open/closed sensor 1	PS502	the ADF is opened during operation (while paper is in wait)
0092	DF cover open/closed sensor	PI6	A cover is opened during operation (while a drive mechanism is in operation).
0093	DF cover pen/closed sensor	PI6	A cover is opened during operation (in wait for paper).
0094	registration sensor, separation sensor, feed sensor, delivery reversal sensor	PI1,PI7,PI8,PI9	Paper is detected in the path while the 1st sheet is being picked up.
0095	original placement sensor, DF cover open/closed sensor, ADF open/closed sensor 1	PI5,PI6,PS502	A signal arrives indicating the start of pickup in the absence of an original in the tray or while the machine is in an OPEN state.

6.ERR



F-16-15

- <No.> Error occurrence order number
1 to 50 (The larger the number is, the older the error is.)
- <Date> Error occurrence date
- <TIME1> Error occurrence time
- <TIME2> Error recovery time
- <CODE> Error code
- <DTL> Detailed code (When there is no detailed code, "0000" is displayed.)
- <L> Occurrence category

T-16-32

Location Classification	
0	main controller
1	Feeder
2	finisher
3	not used
4	reader unit
5	printer unit
6	PDL board (any of)
7	fax board

- <P> Not used

7.HV-ST5

T-16-33

COPIER>DISPLAY>HV-ST5		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRI-GRID	Grid voltage of the primary charging assembly (Unit: V)	1
PRE-TR	Current level of the pre-transfer charging assembly (Unit: μA)	1
BIAS	DC value of each color developing bias (Unit: V)	1
1TR-CMOF	Offset for adjustment of the primary transfer DC current monitor Setting range: -999 to 999(mv)	1
1TR-VMOF	Offset for adjustment of the primary transfer DC voltage monitor Setting range:-999 to 999(mv)	1
2TR-CMOF	Offset for adjustment of the secondary transfer DC current monitor Setting range:-999 to 999(mv)	1
2TR-VMOF	Offset for adjustment of the secondary transfer DC voltage monitor Setting range:-999 to 999(mv)	1
BCL1CMOF	Offset for adjustment of the ITB cleaner upstream current monitor Setting range:-999 to 999(mv)	1
BCL2CMOF	Offset for adjustment of the ITB cleaner downstream current monitor Setting range:-999 to 999(mv)	1
1ATVC-Y/M/C	Target current level at primary transfer ATVC (Y/M/C color) [Unit: μA]	2
1ATVC-K4	Target current level for primary transfer ATVC (K color in full color mode) [Unit: μA]	2
1ATVC-K1	Target current level for primary transfer ATVC (K color in monochrome mode) [Unit: μA]	2
1EL	Monitor value for the ITB tension roller bias Display range: -4000 to 0 Standard value: -4000 (Unit: V)	2
2EL	Monitor value for the secondary transfer static eliminator bias Display range: -4000 to 0 Standard value: 0 (Unit: 0V)	2

8.DPOT

T-16-34

COPIER>DISPLAY>DPOT		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DPOT-K	Electric potential on the surface of the photosensitive drum (Unit: V)	1
VCONT-Y/M/C/K	Current value of the electric potential for the target contrast (Y/M/C/K color) (Unit: V)	2
VBACK-Y/M/C/K	Current value of the electric potential for eliminating fogging (Y/M/C/K color) (Unit: V)	2
2TR-PPR	Last output value of the paper voltage for the secondary transfer DC voltage	2
2TR-BASE	Last output value of the standard voltage for the secondary transfer DC voltage	2
1TR-DC-Y/M/C/K	Last output value of the primary transfer DC voltage (Y/M/C/K color)	2
LPWR-Y/M/C/K	Laser power value of Y/M/C/K color which is a VL target electric potential (result of electric potential control) Display the laser power value of each color which is a VL target electric potential. Setting range: 00 to FF (hex)	2
PVCONT-Y/M/C/K	Current value of the target patch contrast electric potential (Y/M/C/K color) 0 to 255V (Unit: V only)	2

COPIER>DISPLAY>DPOT		
Subheading	Contents	Level
P-LPW-Y/M/C/K	Laser power value of Y/M/C/K color which is a target patch contrast electric potential 0 to FF (Unit: hex only)	2

9.DENS

T-16-35

COPIER>DISPLAY>DENS		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DENS-Y/M/C	Calculated value of the developer density (Y/M/C) (The difference to the target value is displayed in %.) Reference The value is updated at the point when toner supply is performed after the main power switch was turned on. Correct value: -2.0 to 4.0%	1
REF-Y/M/C	Standard of the developer density on the developing cylinder (Y/M/C) The value is updated at the point when toner supply is performed after the main power switch was turned on. Correct value: 464 to 560	1
SGNL-Y/M/C	Measurement value of the developer density (Y/M/C) Measurement is performed every time when a job is entered. Reference The value is updated at the point when toner supply is performed after the main power switch was turned on. Correct value: 250 to 760	1
DENS-S-Y/M/C/K	Detected density value of the sample image created in ATR control (Y/M/C/Bk) Correct value: 250 to 450	2
D-Y/M/C -TRGT	Target value of the developer density (Y/M/C)	2
P-SENS-P	Detected value of the light volume on the base (drum) in patch detection ATR control	2
DEV-DC-Y/M/C/K	Output value of the target developing DC voltage (Y/M/C/Bk) (Current value)	2
D-CRNT-P/S	Measurement value of the dark current in patch detection ATR control (P wave / S wave)	2
P-SENS-S	Detected value of the light volume on the base (drum) in patch detection ATR control (S wave)	2
DENS-Y/M/C-H	History of the light ATR sensor measurement values (Y/M/C, last 8 values)	2
DS-S-Y/M/C/K-H	History of the patch image detection results (Y/M/C/K, last 8 values)	2
P-LED-DA	D/A setting value of LED for the patch image detection sensor	2
SPL-LG-Y/M/C	Supply history of Y/M/C color Display the last 8 supplies. Display range: 00 to 50 (0 to 800g)	2

10.MISC

T-16-36

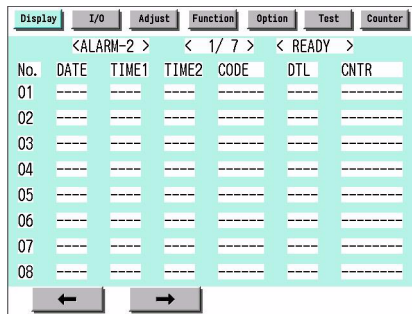
COPIER>DISPLAY>MISC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ENV-TR	Environmental area Display the environmental area for transfer control based on the environment (temperature, humidity) in the printer. Setting value 1: Low humidity (5.8g or less) 2: Normal humidity (5.9g to 17.3g) 3: High humidity (17.4g or more)	1
PP-S-REF	REF value of the paper thickness detection sensor Display the REF value of the paper thickness detection sensor at idling condition. Automatically measure and display the distance to the registration roller before the standby status after the power is turned on, and before the standby status after the job is completed. Setting range: 0 to 1023 (100 to 900 in a normal condition)	1
PP-S-DAT	Paper thickness of the paper thickness detection sensor Display the thickness of the paper which last passed. (Unit: μm) Display range: 0 to 999	1
LPOWER	Real-time display of the laser volume Setting range: 00 to FF (hex)	2

11.ALARM-1

T-16-37

COPIER>DISPLAY>ALARM-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
IMG-DT-Y/M/C/K	Average value of the image ratio created in Y/M/C/K color	1
LST-DY-Y/M/C/K	Image Duty Y/M/C/K color last output Display the image duty of the image last output. Display range: 0 to 100%	2

12.ALARM-2



F-16-16
T-16-38

Item	Description
No.	Indicates the order of occurrence of alarms (1 to 50; the highest number indicating the oldest)
DATE	Indicates the date of occurrence of alarms
TIME1	Indicates the time of occurrence of alarms
TIME2	Indicates the time of occurrence of alarms
CODE	Indicates the location of occurrence of alarms
DTL	Indicates alarm codes.
CNTR	Indicates the reading of the total counter at time of alarm.

Location code	Alarm code	
02 scanner	0002	indicates the presence of dirt on the glass for stream reading.
	0020	line correction alarm (upon detection of dust on the stream reading glass between originals)
04 pickup/feed	0001 0002 0003 0004 0008	cassette 1 lifter error cassette 2 lifter error cassette 3 lifter error cassette 4 lifter error optional deck lifter error
33 fan	0011	fixing heat discharge fan
50 ADF	0010	indicates that the original separation alarm condition has occurred 3 times in sequence (i.e., faulty pickup of the 1st original).
61 finisher	0001	staple absent
62 saddle stitcher	0001	stitch staple absent
65 puncher	0001	punch waste case full

13.ENVRNT

Use it to indicate the environment log.

The machine shows a log of changes taking place as indicated by the readings of the environment sensor and the output of the fixing thermistor: machine inside temperature in deg C, humidity in %, fixing roller surface temperature (center) in deg C.

Remarks:

The intervals at which data is collected may be changed in the following service mode item: COPIER>OPTION>BODY>ENVP-IN.

Display	I/O	Adjust	Function	Option	Test	Counter
< ENVRNT > < 1/13 > < READY >						
No.	DATE	TIME	D+deg C	E+%	F+deg C	
001	0101	0000	0000	E000	F000	
002	0201	0000	0000	E000	F000	
003	0301	0000	0000	E000	F000	
004	0401	0000	0000	E000	F000	
005	0501	0000	0000	E000	F000	
006	0601	0000	0000	E000	F000	
007	0701	0000	0000	E000	F000	
008	0801	0000	0000	E000	F000	

F-16-17

T-16-40

Item	Description
No.	order of data collection (highest number indicating oldest data)
DATE	date of data collection
TIME	time of data collection
D+deg C	machine inside temperature
E+%	machine inside Humidity
F+deg C	fixing roller surface (center) temperature

15.HT-C



In case the hue variation occurs, check the value of this item.

Appropriate range: 100 to 600

In case the value is out of the range:

1. Execute the automatic gradation correction (either full correction or quick correction.)
2. If the value is still out of the appropriate range, replace the patch sensor.

T-16-41

COPIER<DISPLAY<HT-C		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TGT-A-Y	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-A-M	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-A-C	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-A-K	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-B-Y	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-B-M	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-B-C	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-B-K	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-C-Y	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-C-M	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-C-C	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-C-K	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-A-Y	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-A-M	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-A-C	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

COPIER<DISPLAY<HT-C		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SUM-A-K	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-B-Y	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-B-M	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-B-C	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-B-K	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-C-Y	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-C-M	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-C-C	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-C-K	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-A-Y	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-A-M	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-A-C	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-A-K	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-B-Y	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-B-M	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-B-C	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-B-K	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

COPIER<DISPLAY<HT-C		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SGNL-C-Y	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-C-M	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-C-K	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-C-C	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-A-Y	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-A-M	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-A-C	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-A-K	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-B-Y	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-B-M	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-B-C	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-B-K	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-C-Y	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-C-M	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-C-C	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-C-K	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

16.2.1.3 COPIER List

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
Subheading	Contents	Level
Use it to indicate the ROM version of various PCBs (copier, accessories).		
- The format of display is as follows: if R-CON XX.YY>, XX: version; YY: R&D control number.		
- If no PCB is installed, the display will be as follows: <-:->.		
DC-CON	ROM version of the DC controller PCB	1
R-CON	ROM version of the reader controller PCB	1
PANEL	ROM version of the control panel controller PCB	1
ECO	ROM version of the ECO PCB	1
FEEDER	ROM version of the DADF controller PCB	1
SORTER	ROM version of the finisher controller PCB	1
FAX	ROM version of the fax board	1
NIB	ROM version of the network interface PCB	1
SDL-STCH	ROM version of the saddle stitcher controller PCB	1
OP-CONT	ROM version of the optional controller PCB	1
MN-CONT	ROM version of the main controller PCB	1
RUI	Version of the remote UI	1
PUNCH	Version of the punch unit	1
LANG-EN	Version of the English language file	1
LANG-FR	Version of the French language file	1
LANG-DE	Version of the German language file	1
LANG-IT	Version of the Italian language file	1
LANG-JP	Version of the Japanese language file	1
MEAP	Version of the MEAP contents	1
OCR-CN	OCR version of the simplified Chinese language	1
OCR-JP	OCR version of the Japanese language	1
OCR-KR	OCR version of the Korean language	1
OCR-TW	OCR version of the traditional Chinese language	1
BOOTROM	Version of the BOOT ROM	1
TTS-JA	Version of the Japanese voice dictionary	1
TTS-EN	Version of the English voice dictionary	1
WEB-BRWS	Version of the Web browser	1
HELP	Version of the simple navigation	1
WEBDAV	Version of the "WebDAV" file	1
TIMESTMP	Version of the "Time Stamp" file	1
LANG-CS	Version of the Czechoslovakian language file	2
LANG-DA	Version of the Danish language file	2
LANG-EL	Version of the Greek language file	2
LANG-ES	Version of the Spanish language file	2
LANG-ET	Version of the Estonian language file	2
LANG-FI	Version of the Finnish language file	2
LANG-HU	Version of the Hungarian language file	2
LANG-KO	Version of the Korean language file	2
LANG-NL	Version of the Dutch language file	2
LANG-NO	Version of the Norwegian language file	2
LANG-PL	Version of the Polish language file	2
LANG-PT	Version of the Portuguese language file	2
LANG-RU	Version of the Russian language file	2
LANG-SL	Version of the Slovenian language file	2
LANG-SV	Version of the Swedish language file	2
LANG-TW	Version of the traditional Chinese language file	2
LANG-ZH	Version of the simplified Chinese language file	2
ECO-ID	Display of the ECO-ID number	2
LANG-BU	Version of the Bulgarian language file	2
LANG-CR	Version of the Croatian language file	2
LANG-RM	Version of the Romanian language file	2
LANG-SK	Version of the Slovakian language file	2
LANG-TK	Version of the Turkish language file	2
LANG-CA	Version of the Catalan language file	2
MEDIA-JA	Version of the Japanese paper brand information	2
MEDIA-EN	Version of the English paper brand information	2
MEDIA-DE	Version of the German paper brand information	2
MEDIA-IT	Version of the Italian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-FR	Version of the French paper brand information	2
MEDIA-ZH	Version of the simplified Chinese paper brand information	2
MEDIA-SK	Version of the Slovakian paper brand information	2

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MEDIA-TK	Version of the Turkish paper brand information	2
MEDIA-CS	Version of the Czechoslovakian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-EL	Version of the Greek paper brand information	2
MEDIA-ES	Version of the Spanish paper brand information	2
MEDIA-ET	Version of the Estonian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-FI	Version of the Finnish paper brand information	2
MEDIA-HU	Version of the Hungarian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-KO	Version of the Korean paper brand information	2
MEDIA-NL	Version of the Dutch paper brand information	2
MEDIA-NO	Version of the Norwegian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-PL	Version of the Polish paper brand information	2
MEDIA-PT	Version of the Portuguese paper brand information	2
MEDIA-RU	Version of the Russian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-SL	Version of the Slovenian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-SV	Version of the Swedish paper brand information	2
MEDIA-TW	Version of the traditional Chinese paper brand information	2
MEDIA-BU	Version of the Bulgarian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-CR	Version of the Croatian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-RM	Version of the Romanian paper brand information	2
MEDIA-CA	Version of the Catalan paper brand information	2

2.ACC-STs

T-16-43

COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STs		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FEEDER	Display the connection status of the DADF. 0: Not connected 1: Connected	1
SORTER	Display the connection status of the finisher and punch unit. X: Connection status of the finisher Y: Connection status of the punch unit X: 0: Not connected, 1: Finisher, 2: Saddle finisher, 3: Saddle finisher + inserter, 4: Saddle finisher + paper folding unit, 5: Saddle finisher + inserter + paper folding unit, 6: 3K stacker, 7: Inner finisher, 8: External small finisher Y: 0: Not connected, 1: 2 holes, 2: 2/3 holes, 3: 4 holes (FRN), 4: 4 holes (SWDN)	1
DECK	Display the connection status of the paper deck. 0: Not connected 1: Connected (small) 2: POD deck light (with multi tray)	1
CARD	Display the connection status of the card reader. 0: A card reader is connected, but a card is not inserted. 1: A card reader is not connected. Or, a card reader is connected, and a card is inserted. ("1" is displayed when copy operation can be performed. "0" is displayed when copy operation cannot be performed.)	1
RAM	Display the amount of memory installed in the main controller PCB. RAM:XX[MB]	1
COINROBO	Display the connection status of the coin vender. 0: Not connected 1: Connected	1
NIB	Display the connection status of the network board. 0: Not connected 1: Ethernet Board is connected. 2: Token Ring Board is connected. 3: Ethernet Board and Token Ring Board are connected.	1
NETWARE	Display the installation status of the NetWare firmware. 0: Not installed 1: Installed	1
SEND	Attachment status of the SEND function 0: SEND function not attached 1: SEND function attached	1
PDL-FNC1	Display the available PDL. (1) b31: BDL b30: PS b29: PCL b28: PDL b27: LIPS b26: N201 b25: I5577 b24: ESC/P b23: HPGL b22: HPGL2 b21: IMAGING b20: KS b19 - 16: Reserve (This is going to be used when a PDL is newly added.)	1
PDL-FNC2	Display the available PDL. (2) b15 - 0: Reserve (This is going to be used when a PDL is newly added.)	1
HDD	Display the model name of the HDD. 30 characters or less	1

COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-ST5		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PCII	Display the name of the board connected to PCII. 30 characters or less "- " (hyphen) is displayed when the board is not connected. - Voice board: - Encryption board: - GIGA Ethernet board:	1
USBH-SPD	Display the connection speed of the USB device. Display the connection speed of the eight USB devices connected to the USB-Host chip. - OFF - LOW - FLL - HGH	2

3.ANALOG

T-16-44

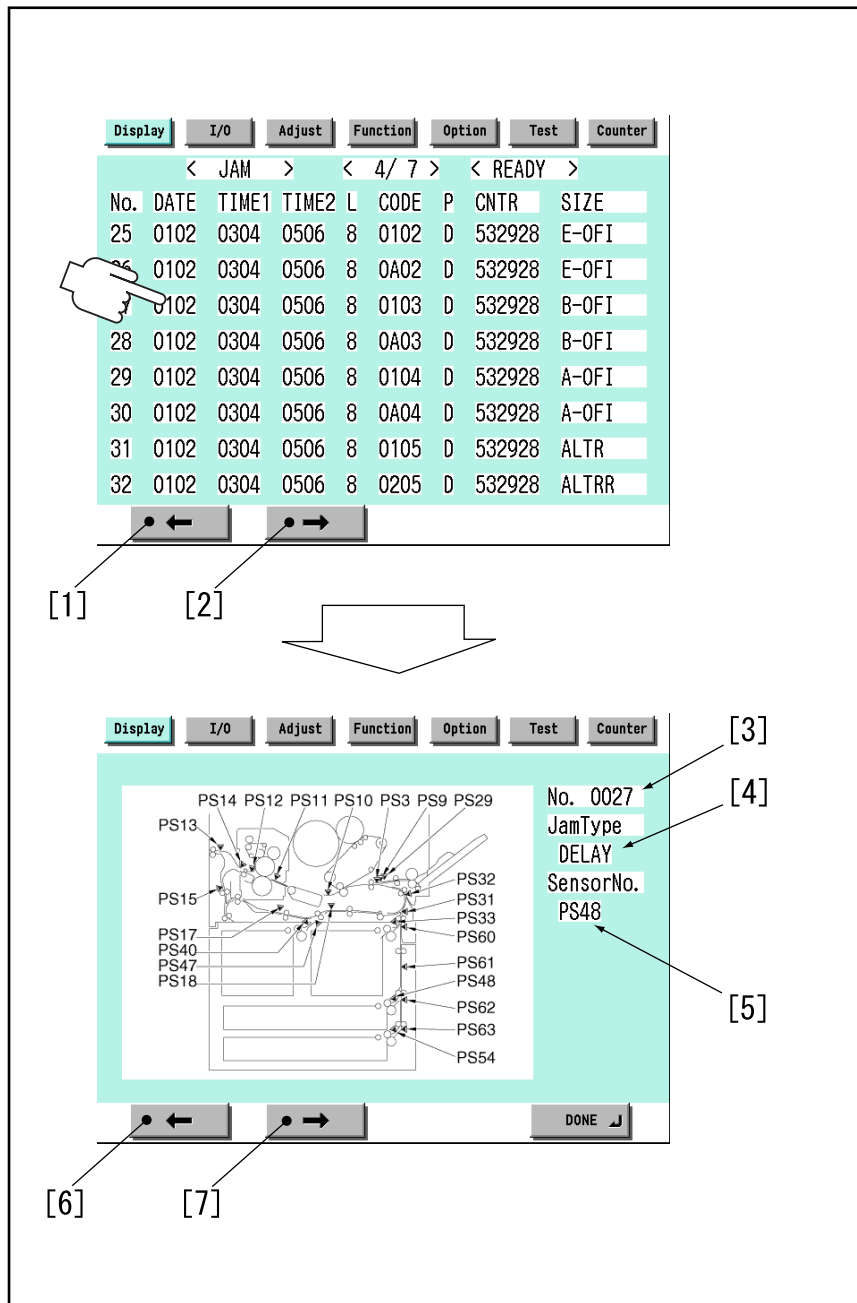
COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TEMP	Use it to check the machine inside temperature (environment sensor; in deg C).	1
HUM	Use it to check the machine inside humidity (environment sensor; in %RH).	1
ABS-HUM	Use it to check moisture content (environment sensor; in g).	1
DR-TEMP	Temperature around the photosensitive drum Display the drum surface temperature detected by the drum thermistor. Unit: deg C Setting range: 0 to 60 deg C	1
FIX-UC	Use it to check the surface temperature of the middle of the fixing upper roller (as detected by the main thermistor; in deg C)	1
FIX-UE	Use it to check the surface temperature at the edge of the fixing upper roller (as detected by the sub thermistor; in deg C)	1
FIX-LC	Use it to indicate the temperature of the center of the fixing lower roller. unit: deg C	1
FIX-LE	Use it to indicate the temperature of the edge of the fixing lower roller. unit: deg C	1
FIX-EXC	Use it to indicate the temperature of the center of the outside heating roller. unit: deg C	1
FIX-EXE	Use it to indicate the temperature of the edge of the outside heating roller unit: deg C	1
DR-TEMPL	Temperature of the drum thermopile Display the drum surface temperature detected by the thermopile. Unit: deg C Setting range: 0 to 60 deg C	1

4.CST-ST5

T-16-45

COPIER > DISPLAY > CST-ST5		
Subheading	Contents	Level
WIDTH-MF	Use it to check the width of paper in the manual feed tray (in mm).	2

5.JAM



F-16-18

Touch any Jam Indication screen to go to the detailed screen of that particular type of jam.

- [1] press to go to the previous page.
- [2] press to go to the next page.
- [3] indicates the order of occurrence of the jam in question.
- [4] indicates the type of jam.
- [5] Sensor in question
- [6] press to go to the previous Jam Indication screen.
- [7] press it to go to the next Jam Indication screen.

(a) Jam Screen Indication Items

- <No.> Indicates the order of occurrence of the jam in question.1 through 50 (the higher the number, the older the jam)
- <DATE>Indicates the date of the jam in question.
- <TIME1> Indicates the time of the jam in question.
- <TIME2> Indicates the jam recovery time.
- <L> Use it to indicate the location of jams.

T-16-46

Cord	Location/classification
0	copier (Printer unit)
1	feeder
2	finisher

- <CODE> Use it to indicate jam codes (Refer to Jam code list described later).
- <P> Use it to indicate the source of paper.

T-16-47

Code	Description
0	unable to specify
1	cassette 1
2	cassette 2
3	cassette 3
4	cassette 4
5	not used
6	not used
7	side paper deck
8	manual feed tray (Multi-feeder)
9	duplexing unit

- <CNTR> Indicates the reading of the soft counter for the source of paper.
- <SIZE> Indicates the size of paper.

(b) Jam code list (jam type)

T-16-48

Code	Type of jam
01xx	delay jam
02xx	stationary jam
0Axx	residual jam
0B00	door open jam
0B01	door open jam (detection by software)
0D91	size mismatch (paper shorter than specified size)
0D92	medium mismatch (paper instead of transparency)
0D93	medium mismatch (transparency instead of paper)

(c) Jam code list (printer unit)

T-16-49

Code	Sensor type	Sensor number	Remarks
xx01	right deck pickup sensor	PS33	does not detect a stationary jam
xx02	left deck pickup sensor	PS40	does not detect a stationary jam
xx03	cassette 3 pickup sensor	PS48	does not detect a stationary jam
xx04	cassette 4 pickup sensor	PS54	does not detect a stationary jam
xx05	vertical path 4 sensor	PS63	
xx06	vertical path 3 sensor	PS62	
xx07	vertical path 2 sensor	PS61	
xx08	vertical path 1 sensor	PS60	
xx09	vertical path confluence sensor	PS32	when the source of paper is NOT the right deck
xx0A	transparency sensor (front, rear)	PS3, PS29	when the mode is not transparency mode
xx0A	registration sensor	PS9	when the mode is transparency mode
xx0B	post-transfer sensor	PS10	does not detect a stationary jam
xx0C	inside delivery sensor	PS12	does not detect a stationary jam
xx0D	reversal sensor	PS14	when in face-down delivery mode
xx0E	outside delivery sensor	PS13	
xx0F	reversal vertical path sensor	PS15	
xx10	vertical path 0 sensor	PS31	when the source of paper is the right deck
xx11	duplex left sensor	PS17	
xx12	duplex confluence sensor	PS18	
xx13	side paper deck pickup sensor	PS101	does not detect a stationary jam
xx14	side paper deck feed sensor	PS106	
xx15	fixing inlet sensor	PS11	detects a residual jam only
xx16	left deck stationary sensor	PS47	detects a residual jam only

Code	Sensor type	Sensor number	Remarks
0D90	transparency sensor (front, rear)	PS3, PS29	when the mode is transparency mode
0D91	transparency sensor (front, rear)	PS3, PS29	when the mode is not transparency mode
0D91	registration sensor	PS9	when the mode is transparency mode
0D92	transparency sensor (front, rear)	PS3, PS29	
0D93	transparency sensor (front, rear)	PS3, PS29	

(d) Jam code list (finisher-related)

T-16-50

Code	Sensor type	Sensor notation
1001	inlet path sensor feed delay jam	PI33
1002	punch path sensor (punch registration sensor) feed delay jam	LED5/PTR5
1004	delivery path sensor feed delay jam	PI34
1101	inlet path sensor feed stationary jam	PI33
1102	inlet path sensor feed stationary jam punch path sensor (Punch registration sensor) feed stationary jam	LED5/PTR5
1104	delivery path sensor feed stationary jam	PI34
1200	timing jam	PI33
1500	stapler staple jam	STP
1300	power-on jam	PI33,PI34
1400	door open jam	DOOR
1644	punch jam	LED5/PTR5
1645	punch power-on jam	LED5/PTR5
1791	saddle feed sensor feed delay jam	PI18,PI19,PI20
1792	saddle delivery sensor feed delay jam	PI11
1793	saddle inlet sensor feed delay jam	PI22
17A1	saddle feed sensor feed stationary jam	PI18,PI19,PI20
17A2	saddle delivery sensor feed stationary jam	PI11,PI17
17A3	saddle inlet sensor feed stationary jam	PI22
1786	saddle stapler staple jam	S STP
1787	saddle power-on jam	PI11,PI18,PI19,PI20,PI22
1788	saddle door open jam	DOOR

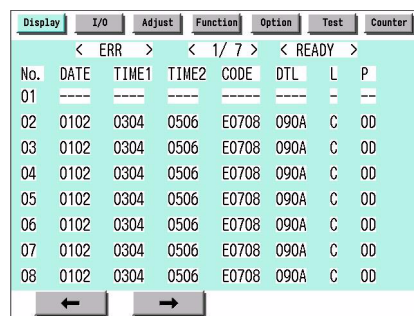
(e) Jam code list (Feeder-specific)

T-16-51

Code	Sensor type	Sensor notation	Description
0001	post-separation sensor	PI7	the post-separation sensor does not detect paper when a feed of 452 mm has been made after the start of separation.
0002	post-separation sensor	PI7	- the separation sensor detects paper after a feed of "500 mm (if extra length, +200 mm) - 45.5 mm" has been made. - the sensor goes on within a feed of 12 mm after detection of the trailing edge (holed paper); the post-separation sensor detects paper when a feed of 50 mm has been made after the separation sensor goes on.
0003	registration sensor	PI1	the registration sensor does not detect paper when a feed of 134.8 mm has been made after the post-separation sensor goes on.
0004	registration sensor	PI1	the read sensor goes off before the registration sensor goes off.
0005	feed sensor	PI8	- read sensor does not detect paper when a feed of 364.2 mm (182.1 x 2) has been made from the point of registration. - the read sensor does not detect paper when a feed of 157.4 mm (78.7 x 2) has been made from the point of No. 2 registration.
0006	feed sensor	PI8	- the read sensor detects paper when a feed of 500 mm (if extra-length, +200 mm) has been made from the start of feed after a temporary stop at point of reading. - the read sensor detects paper when a feed of 514 mm has been made after the start of feed from the standby point in mix mode (LTRR/LGL identified).
0007	delivery reversal sensor	PI9	- if not in high-speed duplex mode, the delivery sensor does not detect when a feed of 132.1 mm has been made after paper has reached the leading edge downstream roller with respect to the activation of the read sensor. - the delivery sensor does not detect paper when a feed of 50 mm has been made after the start of feed during a switch-back operation.
0008	delivery reversal sensor	PI9	the delivery sensor detects paper when a feed of 161.9 mm has been made from the end of reading the trailing edge.
0042	post-separation sensor	PI7	1st; stationary jam at the post-separation sensor
0043	registration sensor	PI1	1st; not reaching the registration sensor
0044	registration sensor	PI1	1st; stationary at the registration sensor

Code	Sensor type	Sensor notation	Description
0045	feed sensor	PI8	1st; not reaching the read sensor
0046	feed sensor	PI8	1st; stationary at the read sensor
0047	delivery reversal sensor	PI9	1st; not reaching heat delivery sensor
0048	delivery reversal sensor	PI9	1st; stationary sensor at the delivery sensor
0071	wrong timing	-	error software timing
0073	wrong timing	-	the shift motor is faulty
0090	ADF open/closed sensor 1	PS502	the ADF is opened during operation
0091	ADF open/closed sensor 1	PS502	the ADF is opened during operation (while paper is in wait)
0092	DF cover open/closed sensor	PI6	A cover is opened during operation (while a drive mechanism is in operation).
0093	DF cover pen/closed sensor	PI6	A cover is opened during operation (in wait for paper).
0094	registration sensor, separation sensor, feed sensor, delivery reversal sensor	PI1,PI7,PI8,PI9	Paper is detected in the path while the 1st sheet is being picked up.
0095	original placement sensor, DF cover open/closed sensor, ADF open/closed sensor 1	PI5,PI6,PS502	A signal arrives indicating the start of pickup in the absence of an original in the tray or while the machine is in an OPEN state.

6.ERR



F-16-19

- <No.> Error occurrence order number
1 to 50 (The larger the number is, the older the error is.)
- <Date> Error occurrence date
- <TIME1> Error occurrence time
- <TIME2> Error recovery time
- <CODE> Error code
- <DTL> Detailed code (When there is no detailed code, "0000" is displayed.)
- <L> Occurrence category

T-16-52

	Location Classification
0	main controller
1	Feeder
2	finisher
3	not used
4	reader unit
5	printer unit
6	PDL board (any of)
7	fax board

- <P> Not used

7.HV-ST

T-16-53

COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRI-GRID	Grid voltage of the primary charging assembly (Unit: V)	1
PRE-TR	Current level of the pre-transfer charging assembly (Unit: μA)	1
BIAS	DC value of each color developing bias (Unit: V)	1
ITR-CMOF	Offset for adjustment of the primary transfer DC current monitor Setting range: -999 to 999(mv)	1

COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-ST5		
Subheading	Contents	Level
1TR-VMOF	Offset for adjustment of the primary transfer DC voltage monitor Setting range:-999 to 999(mv)	1
2TR-CMOF	Offset for adjustment of the secondary transfer DC current monitor Setting range:-999 to 999(mv)	1
2TR-VMOF	Offset for adjustment of the secondary transfer DC voltage monitor Setting range:-999 to 999(mv)	1
BCL1CMOF	Offset for adjustment of the ITB cleaner upstream current monitor Setting range:-999 to 999(mv)	1
BCL2CMOF	Offset for adjustment of the ITB cleaner downstream current monitor Setting range:-999 to 999(mv)	1
1ATVC-Y/M/C	Target current level at primary transfer ATVC (Y/M/C color) [Unit: μ A]	2
1ATVC-K4	Target current level for primary transfer ATVC (K color in full color mode) [Unit: μ A]	2
1ATVC-K1	Target current level for primary transfer ATVC (K color in monochrome mode) [Unit: μ A]	2
1EL	Monitor value for the ITB tension roller bias Display range: -4000 to 0 Standard value: -4000 (Unit: V)	2
2EL	Monitor value for the secondary transfer static eliminator bias Display range: -4000 to 0 Standard value: 0 (Unit: 0V)	2

8.CCD

T-16-54

COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TARGET-B	Shading target value for BLUE color	2
TARGET-G	Shading target value for GREEN color	2
TARGET-R	Shading target value for RED color	2
GAIN-OB	Adjustment value for the gain level of the odd bit for CCD BLUE color (for color)	2
GAIN-OG	Adjustment value for the gain level of the odd bit for CCD GREEN color (for color)	2
GAIN-OR	Adjustment value for the gain level of the odd bit for CCD RED color (for color)	2
GAIN-EB	Adjustment value for the gain level of the even bit for CCD BLUE color (for color)	2
GAIN-EG	Adjustment value for the gain level of the even bit for CCD GREEN color (for color)	2
GAIN-ER	Adjustment value for the gain level of the even bit for CCD RED color (for color)	2

9.DPOT

T-16-55

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DPOT-K	Surface potential of photosensitive drum (unit: V) [Checking point] Optical value: 400 to 950 (note that this value applies during image formation) If the value is out of optical range, replace the charging assembly and potential sensor.	1
VRATE-L/Y/M/C/K	Display of the control value (Vcont-L/Y/M/C/K) for clear color to determine the contrast electric potential Display the monitor value of Vcont value (L/Y/M/C/K color) determined by image stabilization control (Dmax, PASCAL, etc.)	1
VCONT-Y/M/C/K	Current value of target contrast potential (Y/M/C/K color) (unit: V) [Checking point] Optical value: 100 to 420 If the value is out of optical range, replace the charging assembly and potential sensor.	2
VBACK-Y/M/C/K	Current value of potential to remove the fogging (Y/M/C/K color) (unit: V) [Checking point] Optical value: 95 to 230 If the value is out of optical range, replace the charging assembly and potential sensor.	2
2TR-PPR	Last output value of the paper voltage for the secondary transfer DC voltage	2
2TR-BASE	Last output value of the standard voltage for the secondary transfer DC voltage	2
1TR-DC-Y/M/C/K	Last output value of the primary transfer DC voltage (Y/M/C/K color)	2
LPWR-Y/M/C/K	To display the laser power value of Y/M/C/K color (result of potential control) to get the VL target potential. To display the laser power value of each color for VL target value at potential control. Setting range: 00 to FF (hexadecimal display) [Checking point] Optical value: 40 to FF If the value is out of optical range, replace the laser scanner and DC controller.	2

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PVCONT-Y/M/C/K	Current value of the target patch contrast potential (Y/M/C/K color) 0 to 255V (unit: V display only) [Checking point] Optical value: 30 to 40 If the value is out of optical range, replace the potential sensor and laser scanner.	2
P-LPW-Y/M/C/K	To display the laser power value of Y/M/C/K color for target patch contrast potential 00 to FF (unit: Hex display only) [Chekcing point] Optical value: 40 to FF If the value is out of optical range, replace the laser scanner and DC controller.	2
VCONT-L	Current value of the electric potential for the target contrast (L color) (Unit: V)	2
VBACK-L	Current value of the electric potential for eliminating fogging (L color) (Unit: V)	2
ITR-DC-L	Last output value of the primary transfer DC voltage (L color)	2
LPWR-L	Laser power value of L color which is a VL target electric potential (result of electric potential control) Display the laser power value of each color which is a VL target electric potential. Setting range: 00 to FF (hex)	2
PVCONT-L	Current value of the target patch contrast electric potential (L color) 0 to 255V (Unit: V only)	2
P-LPW-L	Laser power value of L color which is a target patch contrast electric potential 0 to FF (Unit: hex only)	2

10.DENS

T-16-56

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DENS-Y/M/C	Calculated value of developer density (Y/M/C) (% to represent the difference from the target value) Reference: value will be updated when the toner supply operation is executed after the power-ON. Optical value: -3.0 to 4.0% - If the value exceeds the upper limit (4.0% or more), copy 10 sheets of solid image. - If the value exceeds the lower limit (-3.0% or less), copy 10 sheets of blank image.	1
REF-Y/M/C	Developer density standard on the developing cylinder (Y/M/C) Reference: value will be updated when the toner supply operation is executed after the power-ON. Optical value: 462 to 562 Replace the ATR sensor.	1
SGNL-Y/M/C	Measured value (Y/M/C) of developer density: the value will be measured per every job. Reference: value will be updated when the toner supply operation is executed after the power-ON. Optical value: 250 to 760 - If the value exceeds the upper limit (760 or more): copy 10 sheets of solid image. - If the value exceeds the lower limit (250 or less): copy 10 sheets of blank image.	1
DENS-L	Calculated value of the developer density (L) (The difference to the target value is displayed in %.) Reference The value is updated at the point when toner supply is performed after the main power switch was turned on. Correct value: -2.0 to 4.0%	1
REF-L	Standard of the developer density on the developing cylinder (L) The value is updated at the point when toner supply is performed after the main power switch was turned on. Correct value: 464 to 560	1
SGNL-L	Measurement value of the developer density (L) Measurement is performed every time when a job is entered. Reference The value is updated at the point when toner supply is performed after the main power switch was turned on. Correct value: 250 to 760	1
DENS-S-Y/M/C/K	Detected density value of sample image that is created at ATR control (Y/M/C/Bk) Optical value: 250 to 450 - If the value exceeds the upper limit (450 or more), copy 10 sheets of solid image. - If the value exceeds the lower limit (250 or less), copy 10 sheets of blank image.	2
D-Y/M/C-TRGT	Target value of developer density (Y/M/C) [Checking point] Optical value: 250 to 760 Input the value described on the service label on the back of host machine front cover. COPIER > ADJUST > DENS > SGNL-Y/M/C	2
P-SENS-P	Detected light intensity for basis value (drum) at patch detection ATR control [Checking point] Optical value: 250 to 700 - If the value exceeds the upper limit (700 or more), this means the patch sensor breakdown and it needs to be replaced. - If the value exceeds the lower limit (250 or less), this means the patch detection sensor window has dirt and it needs cleaning.	2

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DEV-DC-Y/M/C/K	Output value (current value) of target developing DC voltage (Y/M/C/K) [Checking point] Optical value: 250 to 700 If the value is out of optical range, replace the charging assembly and potential sejsot	2
D-CRNT-P/S	Measured value of dark current at patch detection ATR control (P wave/S wave) [Checking point] Optical value: P30 to 90/S100 to 250) If the value is out of optical range, replace the patch sensor	2
P-SENS-S	Detected value of light intensity for basis value (drum) at patch detection ATR control (S wave) [Checking point] Optical value: 200 to 600 If the value is out of optical range, replace the patch sensor.	2
DENS-Y/M/C-H	To display the history of measured value of light ATR sensor (Y/M/C color, last 8 cases) [Checking point] Optical value: 01F4 to FED4 - If the value exceeds the upper limit (FED4 or more), copy 10 sheets of solid image. - If the value exceeds the lower limit (01F4 or less), copy 10 sheets of blank image.	2
DS-S-Y/M/C/K-H	To display the result history of patch image detection (Y/M/C/K color, last 8 cases) [Checking point] Optical value: 00C8 to 01C2 - If the value exceeds the upper limit (01C2 or more), copy 10 sheets of solid image. - If the value exceeds the lower limit (00C8 or less), copy 10 sheets of blank image.	2
P-LED-DA	To display the D/A setting value of patch image sensor LED [Checking point] Optical value: 80 to 255 If the value is out of optical range, replace the patch sensor.	2
SPL-LG-Y/M/C	Supply history Y/M/C color To display the supply history of last 8 cases Display range: 00 to 50 (0 to 800g) [Checking point] Optical value: 0 to 5 Since it is fixed from 0 to 5 on engine control, other values will not appear.	2
DENS-S-L	Detected density value of the sample image created in ATR control (L) Correct value: 250 to 450	2
D-L-TRGT	Target value of the developer density (L)	2
DEV-DC-L	Output value of the target developing DC voltage (L) (Current value)	2
DENS-L-H	History of the light ATR sensor measurement values (L, last 8 values)	2
SPL-LG-L	Supply history of L color Display the last 8 supplies. Display range: 00 to 50 (0 to 800g)	2
DS-S-L-H	History of the patch image detection results (L, last 8 values)	2
DCRNT-RP	Measured value of dark current at rear patch detection ATR control (P wave) Optical value 30 to 90	2
DCRNT-RS	Measured value of dark current at rear patch detection ATR control (S wave) Optical value 100 to 200	2
PSENS-RP	Detected light intensity for basis value (drum) at rear patch detection ATR control (P wave) Optical value 250 to 700	2
PSENS-RS	Detected light intensity for basis value (drum) at rear patch detection ATR control (S wave) Optical value 200 to 500	2
DCRNT-RP	Measured value of dark current at rear patch detection ATR control (P wave) Optical value 30 to 90	2
PSENS-RP	Detected light intensity for basis value (drum) at rear patch detection ATR control (P wave) Optical value 250 to 700	2
DCRNT-RS	Measured value of dark current at rear patch detection ATR control (S wave) Optical value 100 to 200	2
PSENS-RS	Detected light intensity for basis value (drum) at rear patch detection ATR control (S wave) Optical value 200 to 500	2

T-16-57

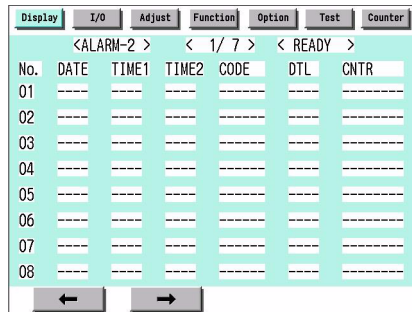
COPIER > DISPLAY > MISC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ENV-TR	Environmental area Display the environmental area for transfer control based on the environment (temperature, humidity) in the printer. Setting value 1: Low humidity (5.8g or less) 2: Normal humidity (5.9g to 17.3g) 3: High humidity (17.4g or more)	1
PP-S-REF	REF value of the paper thickness detection sensor Display the REF value of the paper thickness detection sensor at idling condition. Automatically measure and display the distance to the registration roller before the standby status after the power is turned on, and before the standby status after the job is completed. Setting range: 0 to 1023 (100 to 900 in a normal condition)	1
PP-S-DAT	Paper thickness of the paper thickness detection sensor Display the thickness of the paper which last passed. (Unit: μm) Display range: 0 to 999	1
LPOWER	Real-time display of the laser volume Setting range: 00 to FF (hex)	2

12.ALARM-1

T-16-58

COPIER > DISPLAY > ALARM-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SUC-Y/M/C/K	Average value of the image ratio created in Y/M/C/K color is displayed.	1
SUC-L	Average value of the image ratio created in L color is displayed.	1
SUA-Y/M/C/K	Last output image duty (Y/M/C/K color) is displayed. Display range: 0 to 100%	2
SUA-L	Last output image duty (L color) is displayed. Display range: 0 to 100%	2

13.ALARM-2



F-16-20
T-16-59

Item	Description
No.	Indicates the order of occurrence of alarms (1 to 50; the highest number indicating the oldest)
DATE	Indicates the date of occurrence of alarms
TIME1	Indicates the time of occurrence of alarms
TIME2	Indicates the time of occurrence of alarms
CODE	Indicates the location of occurrence of alarms
DTL	Indicates alarm codes.
CNTR	Indicates the reading of the total counter at time of alarm.

T-16-60

Location code	Alarm code	Description
02 scanner	0002	indicates the presence of dirt on the glass for stream reading.
	0020	line correction alarm (upon detection of dust on the stream reading glass between originals)
04 pickup/feed	0001	cassette 1 lifter error
	0002	cassette 2 lifter error
	0003	cassette 3 lifter error
	0004	cassette 4 lifter error
	0008	optional deck lifter error

Location code	Alarm code	
33 fan	0011	fixing heat discharge fan
50 ADF	0010	indicates that the original separation alarm condition has occurred 3 times in sequence (i.e., faulty pickup of the 1st original).
61 finisher	0001	staple absent
62 saddle stitcher	0001	stitch staple absent
65 puncher	0001	punch waste case full

14.ENVRNT

Use it to indicate the environment log.

The machine shows a log of changes taking place as indicated by the readings of the environment sensor and the output of the fixing thermistor: machine inside temperature in deg C, humidity in %, fixing roller surface temperature (center) in deg C.

Remarks:

The intervals at which data is collected may be changed in the following service mode item: COPIER>OPTION>BODY>ENVP-IN.

No.	DATE	TIME	D+deg C	E+%	F+deg C
001	0101	0000	D000	E000	F000
002	0201	0000	D000	E000	F000
003	0301	0000	D000	E000	F000
004	0401	0000	D000	E000	F000
005	0501	0000	D000	E000	F000
006	0601	0000	D000	E000	F000
007	0701	0000	D000	E000	F000
008	0801	0000	D000	E000	F000

F-16-21
T-16-61

Item	Description
No.	order of data collection (highest number indicating oldest data)
DATE	date of data collection
TIME	time of data collection
D+deg C	machine inside temperature
E+%	machine inside Humidity
F+deg C	fixing roller surface (center) temperature

15.HT-C



In case the hue variation occurs, check the value of this item.

Appropriate range: 100 to 600

In case the value is out of the range:

1. Execute the automatic gradation correction (either full correction or quick correction.)
2. If the value is still out of the appropriate range, replace the patch sensor.

T-16-62

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TGT-A-Y	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-A-M	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-A-C	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-A-K	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TGT-B-Y	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-B-M	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-B-C	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-B-K	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-C-Y	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-C-M	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-C-C	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-C-K	Target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-A-Y	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-A-M	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-A-C	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-A-K	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-B-Y	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-B-M	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-B-C	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-B-K	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-C-Y	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-C-M	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-C-C	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-C-K	Total control volume in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-A-Y	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-A-M	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-A-C	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SGNL-A-K	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-B-Y	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-B-M	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-B-C	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-B-K	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-C-Y	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-C-M	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-C-K	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-C-C	Latest patch result in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-A-Y	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-A-M	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-A-C	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-A-K	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen A)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-B-Y	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-B-M	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-B-C	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-B-K	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen B)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-C-Y	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (Y in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-C-M	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (M in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-C-C	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (C in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DLTA-C-K	Difference between the latest patch result and the target value in each pattern of ARCDAT (K in Screen C)	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
TGT-D-L	Display of the target value (L color of Screen D) at each pattern of ARCDAT control	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SUM-D-L	Display of the total control volume (L color of Screen D) at each pattern of ARCDAT control	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
SGNL-D-L	Display of the latest patch result (L color of Screen D) at each pattern of ARCDAT control	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
DLTA-D-L	Display of the difference between the latest patch result and the target value (L color of Screen D) at each pattern of ARCDAT control	2
	Setting range: -1023 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

16.2.2 FEEDER

16.2.2.1 FEEDER List

imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+

T-16-63

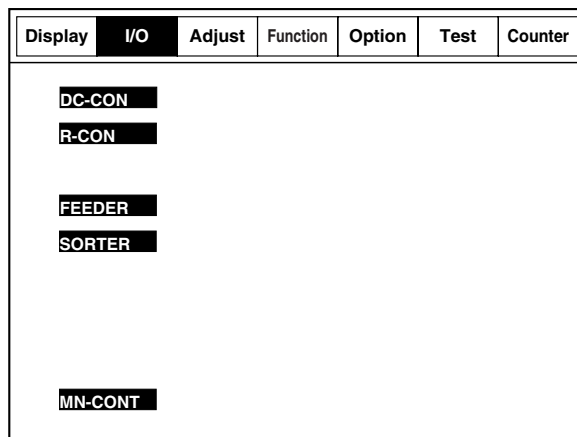
FEEDER > DISPLAY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FEEDSIZE	Use it to check the size of the original detected by the ADF.	1
	Indicates the detection in terms of paper size (e.g., A4, LTR).	

16.3 I/O (I/O Display Mode)

16.3.1 Overview

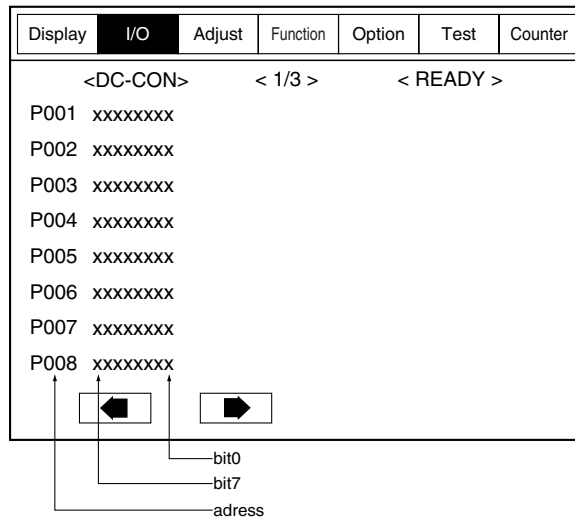
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The COPIER > I/O screen and items (only items required for services in the field) are shown below.



F-16-22

1. How to view the screen



F-16-23

16.3.2 <DC-CON>

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-16-64

Address	bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P001	15	-	-	-
	14	-	-	-
	13	Detection of 24V at side driver	-	Detection of 24V
	12	-	-	-
	11	Hopper shutter switch		H: Shutter opened
	10	Detection of open/close at hopper door	PS74	L: Open
	9	Buffer type judgment signal	-	L: Belt drive type
	8	-	-	-
	7	-	-	-
	6	-	-	-
	5	Toner presence/absence sensor(LC)	TS6	H: Toner is present.
	4	Toner presence/absence sensor(LM)	TS5	H: Toner is present.
	3	Toner presence/absence sensor(K)	TS4	H: Toner is present.
2	Toner presence/absence sensor(C)	TS3	H: Toner is present.	
1	Toner presence/absence sensor(M)	TS2	H: Toner is present.	
0	Toner presence/absence sensor(Y)	TS1	H: Toner is present.	
P002	15	ITOP signal A (output from IMG1)	-	L: Detected
	14	ITOP signal B (output from IMG1)	-	L: Detected
	13	Primary wire HP sensor	PS82	0: HP
	12	Detection of locking of the backside driver reserve FAN	-	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	11	Detection of open/close of the multi tray (movement)	PS8	L: Open
	10	ITOP sensor	PS1	L: ITOP mark detected
	9	ITOP sensor	PS2	L: ITOP mark detected
	8	Rotary HP sensor	PS21	O:HP
	7	ITB cleaner HP sensor	PS24	H: HP / Flag is set (protected against light)
	6	-	-	-
	5	Screw HP sensor (LC)	PS73	H: HP / Flag is set (protected against light)
	4	Screw HP sensor (LM)	PS72	H: HP / Flag is set (protected against light)
	3	Screw HP sensor (K)	PS71	H: HP / Flag is set (protected against light)
	2	Screw HP sensor (C)	PS70	H: HP / Flag is set (protected against light)
	1	Screw HP sensor (M)	PS69	H: HP / Flag is set (protected against light)
0	Screw HP sensor (Y)	PS68	H: HP / Flag is set (protected against light)	

Address	bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P003	15	-	-	-
	14	Side driver 5V remote	-	H: Sensor 5V on
	13	-	-	-
	12	-	-	-
	11	Pre-transfer wire cleaner motor 2	M47	(bit10:bit11) (0:0)(1:1)=Stopped (0:1)=CW (outward), (1:0)=CCW (homeward)
	10	Transfer wire cleaner motor 1	M47	
	9	Primary wire cleaner motor 2	M19	(bit8:bit9) (0:0)(1:1)=Stopped (0:1)=CW (outward), (1:0)=CCW (homeward)
	8	Primary wire cleaner motor 1	M19	
	7	-	-	-
	6	Primary expiration FAN half	FM1	H: Half speed on (Full speed at port5=H)
	5	Primary expiration FAN full	FM1	H: Full speed
	4	ATR shutter SL	SL9	H: On
	3	Patch detection shutter SL back	SL8	(port3:port2) (0:0)=Off (Maintain a high condition in terms of hardware.) (1:0)= back, (0:1)=Pull
	2	Patch detection shutter SL pull	SL8	
	1	Transfer drum cleaner cooling FAN half	FM7	H: Half speed on (Full speed at port0=H)
0	Transfer drum cleaner cooling FAN full	FM7	H: Full speed	
P004	15	-	-	-
	14	-	-	-
	13	Cartridge motor (LC)	M32	H: On
	12	Cartridge motor (LM)	M31	H: On
	11	Cartridge motor (K)	M30	H: On
	10	Cartridge motor (C)	M29	H: On
	9	Cartridge motor (M)	M28	H: On
	8	Cartridge motor (Y)	M27	H: On
	7	-	-	-
	6	Side board remote	-	H: Remote on
	5	Hopper motor LC	M44	H: On
	4	Hopper motor LM	M43	H: On
	3	Hopper motor K	M42	H: On
	2	Hopper motor C	M41	H: On
	1	Hopper motor LCM	M40	H: On
0	Hopper motor Y	M39	H: On	
P005	15	-	-	-
	14	-	-	-
	13	Detection of cartridge motor connection LC	M32	L: Connected
	12	Detection of cartridge motor connection LM	M31	L: Connected
	11	Detection of cartridge motor connection K	M30	L: Connected
	10	Detection of cartridge motor connection C	M29	L: Connected
	9	Detection of cartridge motor connection M	M28	L: Connected
	8	Detection of cartridge motor connection Y	M27	L: Connected
	7	Detection of locking of the post-fixing lower FAN	FM17	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	6	Cartridge motor thermal shut-off LC	-	H: Error
	5	Cartridge motor thermal shut-off LM	-	H: Error
	4	Detection of locking of the reverse cooling FAN	FM20	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	3	4-color/6-color model judgment signal	-	H: 4-color
	2	Vertical path 0 sensor	PS26	H: On
	1	Multi last paper sensor	PS10	H: Paper is present
0	Multi paper presence/absence sensor	PS9	H: Paper is present	

Address	bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P006	15	Detection of locking of the primary expiration FAN	FM1	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	14	Detection of locking of the transfer drum cleaner cooling FAN	FM7	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	13	Cartridge motor error LC	M32	L: Error
	12	Cartridge motor error LM	M31	L: Error
	11	Cartridge motor error K	M30	L: Error
	10	Cartridge motor error C	M29	L: Error
	9	Cartridge motor error M	M28	L: Error
	8	Cartridge motor error Y	M27	L: Error
	7	-	-	-
	6	-	-	-
	5	Cartridge micro SW (LC)	SW12	H: Set
	4	Cartridge micro SW (LM)	SW11	H: Set
	3	Cartridge micro SW (K)	SW10	H: Set
	2	Cartridge micro SW (C)	SW9	H: Set
	1	Cartridge micro SW (M)	SW8	H: Set
0	Cartridge micro SW (Y)	SW7	H: Set	
P007	15	Reverse cooling FAN half	FM20	H: Half speed on (Full speed at port6=H)
	14	Reverse cooling FAN full	FM20	H: Full speed
	13	Patch detection (REAR) LED on		H: On
	12	-	-	-
	11	ITOP remote	-	H: On
	10	Patch detection (CENTER) LED on	PS3	H: On
	9	Patch detection (FRONT) LED on	PS4	H: On
	8	Pre-exposure LED on	LED1	H: On
	7	-	-	-
	6	-	-	-
	5	-	-	-
	4	ITB cleaning brush roller drive motor 11	M26	(port2:port3) (0:0)=Setting 0 (Excitation off)
	3	ITB cleaning brush roller drive motor 10	M26	(0:1)=Setting 1, (1:0)=Setting 2, (1:1)=Setting 3
	2	ITB cleaning brush roller CW	M26	-
	1	ITB cleaning brush roller MODE	M26	0: Full step (2-phase excitation) 1: Half step (1'-2-phase excitation)
0	ITB cleaning brush roller CLK	M26	Phase is switched at the edge at start-up.	
P008	15	-	-	-
	14	-	-	-
	13	-	-	-
	12	-	-	-
	11	ITB cleaning brush roller detachment/attachment motor 11	M18	(port2:port3) (0:0)=Setting 0 (Excitation off)
	10	ITB cleaning brush roller detachment/attachment motor 10	M18	(0:1)=Setting 1, (1:0)=Setting 2, (1:1)=Setting 3
	9	ITB cleaning brush roller detachment/attachment MODE	M18	0: Full step (2-phase excitation) 1: Half step (1'-2-phase excitation)
	8	ITB cleaning brush roller detachment/attachment CLK	M18	Phase is switched at the edge at start-up.
	7	-	-	-
	6	-	-	-
	5	-	-	-
	4	-	-	-
	3	-	-	-
	2	-	-	-
	1	Post-fixing lower FAN half	FM17	H: Half speed on (Full speed at port0=H)
0	Post-fixing lower FAN full	FM17	H: Full speed	

Address	bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P009	15	-	-	-
	14	-	-	-
	13	DDI PPOWER	-	L: POWER ON
	12	DDI versatile input	-	-
	11	DDI versatile input	-	-
	10	Reset via DDI	-	L: RESET
	9	-	-	-
	8	Signal of the use of the high-pressure board for MT	-	L: High-pressure board for MT is used.
	7	-	-	-
	6	Developing motor maker judgment bit	M3	L: Matsushita
	5	Detection of the switching of temperature control of the drum heater (new)	-	H: 32.5 deg C control, L: 42.5 deg C control
	4	Thermistor system hard latch signal	-	H: Error
	3	Detection of 24V power supply	-	L: 24V is detected.
	2	Factory mode switching bit 2	-	L
1	Factory mode switching bit 1	-	L	
0	Factory mode switching bit 0	-	L	
P010	15	Detection of locking of the delivery cooling fan 2 (new)	FM19	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	14	Detection of locking of the primary assist fan (new)	FM18	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	13	Detection of locking of the delivery cooling fan 1	FM10	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	12	Detection of locking of the power supply fan	FM9	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	11	Detection of locking of the fixing exhaust fan	FM5	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	10	Detection of locking of the primary exhaust fan	FM2	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	9	Detection of locking of the power supply fan OP1 (new)	FM25	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	8	Detection of locking of the left exhaust fan	FM16	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	7	Excessive heating at the edge of the fixing belt thermistor	THM4	L: Error
	6	Excessive heating at the edge of the external heating thermistor	THM6	L: Error
	5	Excessive heating of the fixing belt thermistor	THM3	L: Error
	4	Excessive heating of the external heating thermistor	THM5	L: Error
	3	Excessive heating at the edge of the fixing roller thermistor	THM2	L: Error
	2	Detection of locking of the power supply fan OP2 (new)	FM26	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	1	Detection of locking of the developing motor	M3	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	0	Detection of locking of the drum motor	M2	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	P011	15	-	-
14		-	-	-
13		-	-	-
12		-	-	-
11		Paper presence/absence sensor for cassette 4	PS49	H: Paper is present.
10		Paper presence/absence sensor for cassette 3	PS43	H: Paper is present.
9		Paper presence/absence sensor for cassette 2	PS36	H: Paper is present.
8		Paper presence/absence sensor for cassette 1	PS30	H: Paper is present.
7		Paper supply detection 1 for cassette 2	PS39	H: Paper is present.
6		Paper supply detection 0 for cassette 2	PS38	H: Paper is present.
5		Paper height sensor for cassette 2	PS37	L: Paper feeding position
4		Limit sensor for cassette 2	PS35	H: Limit status
3		Paper supply detection 1 for cassette 1	PS33	H: Paper is present.
2		Paper supply detection 0 for cassette 1	PS32	H: Paper is present.
1	Paper height sensor for cassette 1	PS31	L: Paper feeding position	
0	Limit sensor for cassette 1	PS29	H: Limit status	

Address	bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P012	15	Paper supply detection 1 for cassette 4	PS52	H: Paper is present.
	14	Paper supply detection 0 for cassette 4	PS51	H: Paper is present.
	13	Paper height sensor for cassette 4	PS50	L: Paper feeding position
	12	Limit sensor for cassette 4	PS48	H: Limit status
	11	Paper supply detection 1 for cassette 3	PS46	H: Paper is present.
	10	Paper supply detection 0 for cassette 3	PS45	H: Paper is present.
	9	Paper height sensor for cassette 3	PS44	L: Paper feeding position
	8	Limit sensor for cassette 3	PS42	H: Limit status
	7	Feed unit detection	-	L: Connected
	6	-	-	-
	5	Fixing feed lever detection	SW6	H: Entered
	4	Detection of the cassette 1 size 4	UN9	L: Active
	3	Detection of the cassette 1 size 3	UN9	L: Active
	2	Detection of the cassette 1 size 2	UN9	L: Active
	1	Detection of the cassette 1 size 1	UN9	L: Active
	0	Detection of the cassette 1 size 0	UN9	L: Active
P013	15	Front door open/close SW	SW3	H: Open
	14	Lower right door open/close sensor	PS57	L: Open
	13	Detection of locking of the rear fan in the main unit	FM22	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	12	Detection of the cassette 2 size 4	UN10	L: Active
	11	Detection of the cassette 2 size 3	UN10	L: Active
	10	Detection of the cassette 2 size 2	UN10	L: Active
	9	Detection of the cassette 2 size 1	UN10	L: Active
	8	Detection of the cassette 2 size 0	UN10	L: Active
	7	Detection of connection of the color sensor board	UN14/UN15	L: Connected
	6	Fixing board detection	UN4	L: Connected
	5	Detection of locking of the fixing upper exhaust fan	FM23	L: Locked (synchronous rotation)
	4	Detection of the cassette 3 size 4	UN11	L: Active
	3	Detection of the cassette 3 size 3	UN11	L: Active
	2	Detection of the cassette 3 size 2	UN11	L: Active
	1	Detection of the cassette 3 size 1	UN11	L: Active
	0	Detection of the cassette 3 size 0	UN11	L: Active
P014	15	Detection of 30 deg C at the drum heater thermopile	-	H: Detection of temperature
	14	Detection of 50 deg C limiter at the drum heater thermistor	-	H: Error
	13	Incoming volume adjustment 1 HP (upstream)	PS80	H: Paper is present.
	12	Detection of the cassette 4 size 4	UN12	L: Active
	11	Detection of the cassette 4 size 3	UN12	L: Active
	10	Detection of the cassette 4 size 2	UN12	L: Active
	9	Detection of the cassette 4 size 1	UN12	L: Active
	8	Detection of the cassette 4 size 0	UN12	L: Active
	7	Detection of waste toner error	SW5	L: Clogged with toner
	6	-	-	-
	5	Drum HP sensor	PS58	H: Detected
	4	Lifter motor thermal shut-off (new)	-	H: Error
	3	Outlet sensor	PS78	H: Paper is present.
	2	-	-	-
	1	Inlet sensor	PS76	H: Paper is present.
	0	Detection of connection of the TR1CONT board	-	L: Connected
P015	15	-	-	-
	14	Incoming volume adjustment 2HP (downstream)	PS81	H: HP
	13	Confluence sensor	PS27	H: Paper is present.
	12	-	-	-
	11	Multi tray paper presence/absence sensor	PS9	H: Paper is present.
	10	Buffer door sensor	PS100	L: Opened
	9	Sensor for the vertical path 4	PS56	H: Paper is present.
	8	Sensor for the vertical path 3	PS55	H: Paper is present.
	7	Sensor for the vertical path 2	PS54	H: Paper is present.
	6	Sensor for the vertical path 1	PS53	H: Paper is present.
	5	Sensor for the vertical path 0	PS26	H: Paper is present.
	4	Detection of 24V at the buffer driver board	-	L: On
	3	Paper feed sensor for cassette 4	PS47	H: Paper is present.
	2	Paper feed sensor for cassette 3	PS41	H: Paper is present.
	1	Paper feed sensor for cassette 2	PS34	H: Paper is present.
	0	Paper feed sensor for cassette 1	PS28	H: Paper is present.

Address	bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P016	15	DCON version recognition bit 2	-	H
	14	DCON version recognition bit 1	-	H
	13	DCON version recognition bit 0	-	H
	12	6-color recognition 1	-	H
	11	6-color recognition 0	-	H
	10	Voltage recognition bit 2	-	L:100V
	9	Voltage recognition bit 1	-	L:120V
	8	Voltage recognition bit 0	-	L:230V
	7	Output port for checking 7	-	H: On
	6	Output port for checking 6	-	H: On
	5	Output port for checking 5	-	H: On
	4	Output port for checking 4	-	H: On
	3	Output port for checking 3	-	H: On
	2	Output port for checking 2	-	H: On
	1	Output port for checking 1	-	H: On
	0	Output port for checking 0	-	H: On
P017	15	-	-	-
	14	Fixing DR power supply remote	-	L: On
	13	Feeder unit power supply remote	-	L: On
	12	-	-	-
	11	DCP power supply fan	FM9	H: On
	10	DCP remote reserve (new)	-	L: On
	9	DCP fixing feed remote (new)	-	L: On
	8	DCP24V remote	-	L: On
	7	Paper feed unit power supply remote	-	L: On
	6	Delivery upper cooling fan: half speed ON	FM10	H: On
	5	Delivery upper cooling fan: full speed ON	FM10	H: On
	4	Buffer board remote	-	L: On
	3	DCP fan OP2 (new)	FM26	L: On
	2	DCP fan OP1 (new)	FM25	L: On
1	Left exhaust: half speed ON	FM16	H: On	
0	Left exhaust: full speed ON	FM16	H: On	
P018	15	-	-	-
	14	-	-	-
	13	-	-	-
	12	-	-	-
	11	Fixing exhaust fan: half speed ON	FM5	H: On
	10	Fixing exhaust fan: full speed ON	FM5	H: On
	9	Primary exhaust & assist fan: half speed ON	FM2 &FM18	H: On
	8	Primary exhaust & assist fan: full speed ON	FM2 &FM18	H: On
	7	Paper thickness checking signal	-	-
	6	-	-	-
	5	DDI versatile output	-	H: On
	4	DDI versatile output (memory tool switching 2)	-	H: On
	3	DDI versatile output	-	H: On
	2	DDI versatile output	-	H: On
1	DDI versatile output (memory tool switching 1)	-	H: On	
0	DDI versatile output (memory tool switching 0)	-	H: On	
P019	15	-	-	-
	14	-	-	-
	13	Color developing unit CL	CL1	H: On
	12	Multi lifting plate SL	SL1	H: On
	11	-	-	-
	10	-	-	-
	9	Error detection signal	-	H: Error
	8	Jam detection signal	-	H: Jam
	7	-	-	-
	6	Rotary current 1 (reserve)	-	-
	5	Rotary current 0 (reserve)	-	-
	4	Switching of the developing motor speed range	M3	L: Normal speed only
	3	Switching of the drum motor speed range	M2	L: Normal speed
	2	Developing motor ON	M3	L: On
	1	Drum motor brake	M2	H: Brake
	0	Drum motor ON	M2	L: On

Address	bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P020	15	VDSEL_B1(Moved from IMG1)	-	-
	14	VDSEL_B0(Moved from IMG1)	-	-
	13	VDSEL_A1(Moved from IMG1)	-	-
	12	VDSEL_A0(Moved from IMG1)	-	-
	11	-	-	-
	10	-	-	-
	9	Cassette heater ON	H7	L: On
	8	-	-	-
	7	Hard counter 1	CNT2	H: On
	6	Hard counter 0	CNT1	H: On
	5	TR1CONT reset signal	-	L: Reset
	4	Electric potential sensor ON	UN31	H: Charging
	3	ATR sensor LED ON	PS7	H: On
	2	TR1CNT remote signal	-	H: TR1CONT board 3.3V ON
	1	Color sensor power supply remote	UN13	L: On
	0	-	-	-
P021	15	-	-	-
	14	-	-	-
	13	-	-	-
	12	-	-	-
	11	-	-	-
	10	-	-	-
	9	-	-	-
	8	Detection of 24V ON		1:ON
	7	-	-	-
	6	-	-	-
	5	-	-	-
	4	-	-	-
	3	-	-	-
	2	-	-	-
	1	-	-	-
	0	-	-	-
P022	15	-	-	-
	14	-	-	-
	13	-	-	-
	12	-	-	-
	11	-	-	-
	10	-	-	-
	9	-	-	-
	8	-	-	-
	7	Displacement correction roller HP 0:** 1:HP		1:HP
	6	Displacement correction sensor (front), 1: Displacement at front, 0: Normal		1: Displacement at front, 0: Normal
	5	Displacement correction sensor (rear), 1: Displacement at rear, 0: Normal		1: Displacement at rear, 0: Normal
	4	Belt detachment/attachment sensor 0:** 1:HP		1:HP
	3	Web length sensor		0: web is present, 1: web is absent
	2	Detection of connection of the web clutch (Valid only when the motor stops)		0: Normal, 1: Abnormal
	1	Detection of fixing motor rotation		0: Normal, 1: Abnormal
	0	Fixing belt displacement sensor		1:ON

Address	bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P023	15	Detection of locking of the belt cooling fan 4 0: Normal, 1: Abnormal		0: Normal, 1: Abnormal
	14	Detection of locking of the belt cooling fan 3 0: Normal, 1: Abnormal		0: Normal, 1: Abnormal
	13	Detection of locking of the belt cooling fan 2 0: Normal, 1: Abnormal		0: Normal, 1: Abnormal
	12	Detection of locking of the belt cooling fan 1 0: Normal, 1: Abnormal		0: Normal, 1: Abnormal
	11	-		-
	10	-		-
	9	-		-
	8	-		-
	7	-		-
	6	Fixing belt detachment/attachment sensor 0: Attached, 1: Detached		-
	5	External heating detachment/attachment sensor 0: Detached, 1: Attached		-
	4	Detection of locking of the fixing belt 0: Normal, 1: Abnormal		-
	3	Web detachment/attachment HP sensor 1: Attached, 0: Detached		-
	2	Inner delivery sensor 0: Paper is absent, 1: Paper is present		-
1	Fixing inlet sensor		1: Paper is present, 2: Paper is absent	
0	-		-	
P024	15	Not used		-
	14	Not used		-
	13	Not used		-
	12	Not used		-
	11	Not used		-
	10	Not used		-
	9	Not used		-
	8	Not used		-
	7	Not used		-
	6	Not used		-
	5	Not used		-
	4	Not used		-
	3	Not used		-
	2	Not used		-
	1	Not used		-
	0	Not used		-
P025	15	-		-
	14	-		-
	13	-		-
	12	-		-
	11	-		-
	10	-		-
	9	-		-
	8	Detection of 24V ON		1:ON
	7	-		-
	6	-		-
	5	-		-
	4	-		-
	3	Detection of solenoid at CL_SENS (rapid progress)		0: Normal, 1: Abnormal
	2	Detection of solenoid at CL_SENS (recovery)		0: Normal, 1: Abnormal
1	-		-	
0	-		-	

Address	bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P026	15	Two-sided right sensor 0: Paper is absent, 1: Paper is present		<--
	14	-		<--
	13	Secondary transfer HP sensor 0: **, 1: HP		<--
	12	Post-transfer sensor 0: Paper is absent, 1: Paper is present	PS19	<--
	11	Two-sided feeder sensor 0: Paper is absent, 1: Paper is present		<--
	10	Reverse sensor 0: Paper is absent, 1: Paper is present		<--
	9	Reverse vertical path sensor 0: Paper is absent, 1: Paper is present		<--
	8	Horizontal registration sensor 0: --, 1: Detected		<--
	7	Pre-registration sensor 0: Paper is absent, 1: Paper is present		<--
	6	Pick-up sensor 0: Paper is absent, 1: Paper is present		<--
	5	OHP sensor 0 0: Paper is absent, 1: Paper is present		<--
	4	OHP sensor 1 0: Paper is absent, 1: Paper is present		<--
	3	Detection of rotation of the feeder fan 2 0: Normal, 1: Abnormal		<--
	2	Detection of rotation of the feeder fan 1 0: Normal, 1: Abnormal		<--
1	Reverse cooling fan 0: Normal, 1: Abnormal		<--	
0	-		-	
P027	15	Not used		-
	14	Not used		-
	13	Not used		-
	12	Not used		-
	11	Not used		-
	10	Not used		-
	9	Not used		-
	8	Not used		-
	7	Not used		-
	6	Not used		-
	5	Not used		-
	4	Not used		-
	3	Not used		-
	2	Not used		-
	1	Not used		-
	0	Not used		-

Address	bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P028	15	Belt cooling fan (center) Half 1:on 0:off		1:ON 0:OFF
	14	Belt cooling fan (center) Full 1:on 0:off		1:ON 0:OFF
	13	Belt cooling fan (edge) Half 1:on 0:off		1:ON 0:OFF
	12	Belt cooling fan (edge) Full 1:on 0:off		1:ON 0:OFF
	11	-		-
	10	All sensors ON		0:OFF 1:ON
	9	-		-
	8	-		-
	7	-		-
	6	-		-
	5	-		-
	4	-		-
	3	-		-
	2	-		-
	1	-		-
	0	-		-
P029	15	-		-
	14	-		-
	13	-		-
	12	-		-
	11	-		-
	10	-		-
	9	-		-
	8	-		-
	7	Fixing motor ON/OFF		1:ON 0:OFF
	6	Fixing motor brake 0: ON, 1: OFF		0:ON 1:OFF
	5	Fixing motor gain		
	4	Belt drive motor ON/OFF		1:ON 0:OFF
	3	-		-
	2	Belt drive synchronization motor ON/OFF		1:ON 0:OFF
1	JKISHI operation check		1:LedOn	
0	Fixing web solenoid ON/OFF		1:ON 0:OFF	
P030	15	-		-
	14	-		-
	13	Delivery cooling fan (full speed)		1:ON 0:OFF
	12	Color sensor SL recovery		1:ON 0:OFF
	11	Color sensor SL suction		1:ON 0:OFF
	10	All sensors ON		0:ON 1:OFF
	9	OHP sensor 1 LED ON		1:ON 0:OFF
	8	OHP sensor 0 LED ON		1:ON 0:OFF
	7	Feeder fan (half speed)		1:ON 0:OFF
	6	Feeder fan (full speed)		1:ON 0:OFF
	5	-		-
	4	Pre-fixing lower fan (half speed)		1:ON 0:OFF
	3	Horizontal registration 24V		1:ON 0:OFF
	2	Delivery flapper SL (SL intermittent function)	SL3	1:ON 0:OFF
	1	Reverse gap SL (SL intermittent function)	SL2	1:ON 0:OFF
	0	JKISHI operation check		1:LedOn
	P031	7	-	
6		-		-
5		-		-
4		-		-
3		Two-sided reverse motor: current switching 0		-
2		Two-sided reverse motor: current switching 1		-
1		Two-sided reverse motor: switching of 2-phase / 1-2 phase		-
0		Two-sided reverse motor: direction switching		-

Address	bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P032	7	WAKE order from DDI	PLIVE_WAKE*	
	6	Two-sided reverse motor drive pulse	-	
	5		PBD	
	4	Used as a mode switching signal for function checking	For factory checking	
	3	Horizontal registration motor drive pulse	SIDE_REGI_A	
	2	Horizontal registration motor drive pulse	SIDE_REGI_A*	
	1	Horizontal registration motor drive pulse	SIDE_REGI_B	
	0	Horizontal registration motor drive pulse	SIDE_REGI_B*	
P033	7	NC	WDCLK	
	6	Interruption to DDI	PSCNST	
	5	Rotary current switching 0	ROTARY_I0	
	4	Rotary current switching 1	ROTARY_I1	
	3	Buffer unit connection signal	BUF_CNCT	L: Connected
	2	2-cassette/4-cassette detection signal (Specifications are indicated later.)	CST_ID2	
	1	2-cassette/4-cassette detection signal (Specifications are indicated later.)	CST_ID1	
	0	Rotary motor drive pulse B* (CLK from here at step μ)	ROTARY_CK	
	7			
	6			
P034	5	DDI serial	PRTS	
	4	DDI serial	PCTS	
	3	-	-	
	2	DDI serial reception data	DDI_RXD	
	1	-	-	
	0	DDI serial transmission data	DDI_TXD	
P035	7	A/D input (Refer to an attached sheet.)	AN7	
	6	A/D input (Refer to an attached sheet.)	AN6	
	5	A/D input (Refer to an attached sheet.)	AN5	
	4	A/D input (Refer to an attached sheet.)	AN4	
	3	A/D input (Refer to an attached sheet.)	AN3	
	2	A/D input (Refer to an attached sheet.)	AN2	
	1	A/D input (Refer to an attached sheet.)	AN1	
	0	A/D input (Refer to an attached sheet.)	AN0	
P036	7			
	6			
	5			
	4			
	3	Control of communication flow with PC	CTS	
	2	Control of communication flow with PC	RTS	
	1	Reception data in communication with PC	PC_RXD	
	0	Transmission data in communication with PC	PC_TXD	
P037	7	Interruption of rotary home position	ROTARY_HP_SNS	
	6	IMG1	CS6*	
	5	Interruption of registration ON	REG_SNSX	
	4	For both ITOP_A and ITOP_B (Register judges which ITOP is used.)	ITOPX	
	3	DDI ready	PPRDY	
	2	DDI ready	PCPRDY	
	1	CS is divided into two at ASIC.	CS5*	
	0	FlashROM(When downloading)	CS4*	
P038	7	Image end signal (for rotary rotation standard) CPU_PVREQ standard	CPU_IMENDX	
	6	Interruption of PVREQ for CPU (Always interrupted. This is different from PVREQ.)	CPU_PVREQX	
	5	DDI interruption	PPRTST	
	4			
	3			
	2			
	1			
	0			

Address	bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P039	7	Clock output(18.432MHz)	CLK20	
	6	Reserve		
	5	Read	RD*	
	4	High write	HWR*	
	3	Low write	LWR*	
	2	Switching the finisher microcomputer	FIN_MODE	
	1		FIN_DOWNLO AD	
	0		FIN_RESET	
P040	7			
	6			
	5			
	4	Build-in ROM (when downloading) FlashROM (in normal operation)	CS0*	
	3	Used for an address for FlashROM 2M bite or more	CS1*	
	2	RAM	CS2*	
	1	GOHOME	CS3*	
	0	LED	LED_ON	

16.3.3 <R-CON>

imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+

T-16-65

Indication	bit	Item	Remarks
P001	7	SCTS of DDIS	
	6	SPRDY of DDIS	
	5	SRTS of DDIS	
	4	---	
	3	ON signal of FAN2	This is usually 0.
	2	Detection of locking of FAN2	This is usually 1.
	1	ON signal of FAN1	This is usually 0.
	0	Detection of locking of FAN1	This is usually 1.
P002	7	Size detection input port	Indefinite
	6	Size detection input port	Indefinite
	5	Size detection input port	Indefinite
	4	---	
	3	Optical motor clock signal	Indefinite value
	2	13V detection port	This is usually 0.
	1	24V detection port	This is usually 0.
	0	Lamp ON signal	Indefinite
P003	7	---	
	6	---	
	5	SP10 of DDIS	Indefinite value
	4	LED flash signal for the RCON board	Indefinite value
	3	---	
	2	---	
	1	---	
	0	---	
P004	7	---	
	6	---	
	5	---	
	4	---	
	3	---	
	2	SLIVEWAKE signal of DDIS	This is usually 0.
	1	SP01 of DDIS	Indefinite value
	0	SCPRDY of DDIS	Indefinite value
P005	7	---	
	6	---	
	5	---	
	4	---	
	3	SP11 of DDIS	Indefinite value
	2	SP12 of DDIS	Indefinite value
	1	---	
	0	---	
P006	7	Platen open/close detection sensor	1 when the platen is closed
	6	---	

Indication	bit	Item	Remarks
	5	Optical system home position sensor	1 when it is placed at HP
	4	---	
	3	---	
	2	LED for size detection	Indefinite
	1	Board checking port	This is usually 0.
	0	---	
P007	7	---	
	6	ADF download mode (not used)	
	5	ADF reset signal (not used)	
	4	ADF download signal (not used)	
	3	---	
	2	---	
	1	---	
	0	---	
P008	7	---	
	6	---	
	5	---	
	4	---	
	3	---	
	2	---	
	1	ON signal of CCD	1 when CCD is ON
	0	---	
P009	7	---	
	6	---	
	5	---	
	4	---	
	3	---	
	2	---	
	1	---	
	0	---	

16.3.4 <FEEDER>

imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+

T-16-66

Indication	bit	Item	Remarks
P001	7	Not used	
	6	Delivery motor PWM	
	5	Delivery clock	0 or 1
	4	Not used	
	3	Not used	
	2	OSC	Indefinite value
	1	Pre-registration sensor	Indefinite value
	0	Lead edge signal	This is usually 0.
P002	7	Reverse motor phase B	Indefinite value
	6	Separation standard REF	Indefinite value
	5	Reverse motor phase A	Indefinite value
	4	Separation motor PWM	Indefinite value
	3	Belt motor phase B*	Indefinite value
	2	Belt motor phase A*	Indefinite value
	1	Belt motor phase B	Indefinite value
	0	Belt motor phase A	Indefinite value
P003	7	Not used	
	6	Not used	
	5	EEPROM CS	Indefinite value
	4	SCK0	Indefinite value
	3	Not used	
	2	RxD0	Indefinite value
	1	Not used	
	0	TxD0	Indefinite value
P004	7	Manual feed registration sensor	0 when paper is absent
	6	13VL down detection	This is usually 1.
	5	24VL down detection	This is usually 1.

Indication	bit	Item	Remarks
	4	24VP down detection	This is usually 1.
	3	Trail edge detection sensor	0 when paper is absent
	2	Document detection sensor	0 when paper is absent
	1	Not used	
	0	Not used	
P005	7	Not used	
	6	Not used	
	5	Not used	
	4	Not used	
	3	ADTRIG	Indefinite value
	2	Not used	
	1	Not used	
	0	Not used	
P006	7	Post-registration sensor	Indefinite value
	6	Belt clock	Indefinite value
	5	Paper interval clock	Indefinite value
	4	Separation sensor	Indefinite value
	3	PICKSTBY	Indefinite value
	2	PICK0	Indefinite value
	1	PICK1	Indefinite value
	0	DA road signal	Indefinite value
P007	7	Reverse slave clock	0 or 1
	6	Reverse sensor	0 when paper is absent
	5	Separation clock	Indefinite value
	4	Skew detection sensor	0 when paper is absent
	3	FAN locking signal (not used)	
	2	Cover rear sensor	1 when DF is closed
	1	Pre-reverse sensor	0 when paper is absent
	0	DF open/close detection	1 when DF is closed
P008	7	Manual feed document detection sensor	0 when paper is absent
	6	Delivery sensor	0 when paper is absent
	5	Not used	
	4	Not used	
	3	Cover front sensor	1 when DF is closed
	2	Pickup paper detection sensor 2	0 or 1
	1	Pickup paper detection sensor 1	0 or 1
	0	Pickup HP sensor	This is usually 1.
P009	7	Solenoid timer	Indefinite value
	6	Separation clutch	Indefinite value
	5	Pre-reverse flapper solenoid	This is usually 1.
	4	FAN ON signal	This is usually 0.
	3	Shutter solenoid 2	Indefinite value
	2	Shutter solenoid 1	Indefinite value
	1	Reverse flapper solenoid	This is usually 0.
	0	Tray LED	1 when paper is present.
P010	7	Not used	
	6	Not used	
	5	Not used	
	4	Not used	
	3	Pickup phase B*	Indefinite value
	2	Pickup phase A*	Indefinite value
	1	Pickup phase B	Indefinite value
	0	Pickup phase A	Indefinite value
P011	7	Not used	
	6	Not used	
	5	Not used	
	4	Not used	
	3	Sensor power ON/OFF	Indefinite value
	2	Not used	
	1	Delivery flapper SL2	Indefinite value

Indication	bit	Item	Remarks
	0	Delivery flapper SL1	Indefinite value
P012	7	DIPSW8	1 when the switch is turned on
	6	DIPSW7	1 when the switch is turned on
	5	DIPSW6	1 when the switch is turned on
	4	DIPSW5	1 when the switch is turned on
	3	DIPSW4	1 when the switch is turned on
	2	DIPSW3	1 when the switch is turned on
	1	DIPSW2	1 when the switch is turned on
	0	DIPSW1	1 when the switch is turned on
P013	7	Not used	
	6	7-segment LED A	Indefinite value
	5	7-segment LED F	Indefinite value
	4	7-segment LED B	Indefinite value
	3	7-segment LED G	Indefinite value
	2	7-segment LED C	Indefinite value
	1	7-segment LED E	Indefinite value
	0	7-segment LED D	Indefinite value
P014	7	PUSHSW4	1 when the switch is pressed
	6	PUSHSW3	1 when the switch is pressed
	5	PUSHSW2	1 when the switch is pressed
	4	Tray width detection sensor 5	0 or 1
	3	Tray width detection sensor 4	0 or 1
	2	Tray width detection sensor 3	0 or 1
	1	Tray width detection sensor 2	0 or 1
	0	Tray width detection sensor 1	0 or 1
P015		Separation clock F/V	Indefinite value
P016		Delivery clock F/V	Indefinite value
P017		Document detection sensor AD	Indefinite value
P018		Document detection sensor AD	Indefinite value
P019		Reverse motor current adjustment	Indefinite value
P020		Belt motor current adjustment	Indefinite value
P021		Document detection sensor adjustment	Indefinite value
P022		Trail edge detection sensor adjustment	Indefinite value
P023		Separation sensor adjustment	Indefinite value
P024		Skew detection sensor adjustment	Indefinite value
P025		Pre-registration sensor adjustment	Indefinite value
P026		Post-registration sensor adjustment	Indefinite value
P027		Reverse sensor adjustment	Indefinite value
P028		Manual feed registration sensor adjustment	Indefinite value
P029		Sensor REF voltage adjustment	Indefinite value
P030		Separation motor current limit adjustment	Indefinite value

16.3.5 <SORTER>

imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+

T-16-67

Address	Controller	Bit	Description	Remarks
P001	STACKER	0	Inlet feed motor phase A signal	
		1	Inlet feed motor phase B signal	
		2	Inlet feed motor phase A* signal	
		3	Inlet feed motor B* signal	
		4	Escape feed motor phase A signal	
		5	Escape feed motor phase B signal	
		6	Escape feed motor phase A* signal	
		7	Escape feed motor phase B* signal	

Address	Controller	Bit	Description	Remarks
P002	STACKER	0	Punch feed motor phase A signal	
		1	Punch feed motor phase B signal	
		2	Punch feed motor phase A* signal	
		3	Punch feed motor phase B* signal	
		4	Tray motor CLK signal	
		5	Swing locking motor current switch IO	0: ON
		6	Swing locking motor phase A signal	
		7	Swing locking motor phase B signal	
P003	STACKER	0	TxD for external source	
		1	TxD for write	
		2	RxD for external	
		3	RxD for write	
		4	Punch connection detection	0: connected
		5	OUT for punch communication	0: ON
		6-7	Not used	
P004	STACKER	0	Escape feed motor CLK(IRQ0*)	
		1	Trailing edge detection sensor (This mode is used at the time of the punch unit installation.)	
		2	Saddle connection detection	0: connected
		3	Upper tray FG(IRQ3*)	
		4	Swing lock HP sensor	1: HP
		5	Swing height detection sensor	1: HP
		6	Front cover open/close sensor	0: open
		7	Gear change HP sensor	
P005	STACKER	0	TxD for punch communication	
		1	RxD for punch communication	
		2	IN for punch communication (IRQ2*)	0: ON
		3-7	Not used	
P006	STACKER	0	Not used	
		1	Lower tray motor LOCK	0: locked
		2	Not used	
		3	Lower tray motor ON	0: ON
		4	Not used	
		5	Motor standby signal	0: ON
		6-7	Not used	
P007	STACKER	0-7	Not used	
P008	STACKER	0	Lower tray area sensor 1	0: detected
		1	Lower tray area sensor 2	0: detected
		2	Lower tray area sensor 3	0: detected
		3	Not used	
		4	Punch feed motor CLK (IRQ4*)	
		5	Lower tray FG (IRQ5*)	
		6	Inlet feed motor lock input (IRQ6*)	
		7	Stack edging motor clock input (IRQ7*)	
P009	STACKER	0	Not used	
		1	Lower tray paper surface sensor	0: paper present
		2	1700-sheet paper surface sensor	0: paper present
		3	Upper tray interlock	1: error
		4	Upper tray area sensor 1	0: detected
		5	Upper tray area sensor 2	0: detected
		6	Upper tray area sensor 3	0: detected
		7	Not used	
P010	STACKER	0	Inlet feed motor current switch I1	0: ON
		1	Inlet feed motor current switch I0	0: ON
		2	Punch feed motor current switch I1	0: ON
		3	Punch feed motor current switch I0	0: ON
		4	Punch feed motor standby	0: ON
		5	Escape feed motor I0	0: ON
		6	Escape feed motor I1	0: ON
		7	Escape feed motor standby	0: ON

Address	Controller	Bit	Description	Remarks
P011	STACKER	0	Upper tray motor CW/CCW	1: CCW, 0: CW
		1	Upper tray motor ON	0: ON
		2	Upper tray motor LOCK	0: locked
		3	Solenoid ON signal	0: ON
		4-5	Not used	
		6	lower tray motor CW/CCW	1: CCW, 0: CW
		7	Delivery path sensor	1: paper present
P012	STACKER	0	Inlet roller shift solenoid	1: ON
		1	Buffer roller shift solenoid	1: ON
		2	Expansion IO chip select signal (CS2*)	
		3	IPC chip select (CS3*)	
		4-7	Not used	
P013	STACKER	0	Gear change motor phase A signal	
		1	Gear change motor phase B signal	
		2	Gear change motor current switch I0	0: ON
		3	Gear change motor current switch I1	0: ON
		4	Escape flapper solenoid ON signal	1: ON
		5	EEPROM output signal	
		6	EEPROM enable signal	
		7	EEPROM CLK	
P014	STACKER	0	EEPROM input signal	
		1	Aligning plate FHP sensor	1: HP
		2	Aligning plate RHP sensor	1: HP
		3	Handling tray paper sensor	1: paper present
		4	Trailing edge assist HP sensor	1: HP
		5	For machine download	
		3-7	Not used	
P015	STACKER	0	Aligning plate R motor phase A signal	
		1	Aligning plate R motor phase B signal	
		2	Aligning plate R motor current switch IO	0: ON
		3/7	Not used	

T-16-68

Address	Controller	Bit	Description	Remarks
P016	STACKER	0	Aligning plate F motor phase signal A	
		1	Aligning plate F motor phase signal B	
		2	Aligning plate F motor current switch I0	0: ON
		5-7	Not used	
P017	STACKER	0	Trailing edge assist motor phase A signal	
		1	Trailing edge assist motor phase B signal	
		2	Trailing edge assist motor current switch I0	0: ON
		3	Trailing edge assist motor current switch I1	0: ON
		4	Trailing edge assist motor standby signal	0: ON
		6-7	Not used	
P018	STACKER	0	Stapler shift motor standby signal	0: ON
		1	Staple motor direction switch CCW	1: ON
		2	Staple motor direction switch CW	1: ON
		3	Not used	
		4	Staple shift motor phase A signal	
		5	Staple shift motor phase B signal	
		6-7	Not used	
P019	STACKER	0	Escape tray path sensor	1: paper present
		1	Escape tray full sensor	1: full
		2	Stapler HP detection	1: HP
		3	Stapler READY	1: READY
		4	Stapler LS	1: staple present
		5	Escape feed upper cover sensor	1: close
		6	Staple shift HP sensor	1: HP
		7	Stapler alignment interference sensor	1: interference

Address	Controller	Bit	Description	Remarks
P020	STACKER	0	Stapler shift motor current switch I0	0: ON
		1	Stapler shift motor current switch I1	0: ON
		2	No. 1 delivery motor shift solenoid	1: ON
		3	Buffer trailing edge retaining solenoid	1: ON
		4	Stack edging lower roller clutch	1: ON
		5	Shutter open/close clutch	1: ON
		6	Stack edging motor current switch I1	0: ON
		7	Stack edging motor current switch I0	0: ON
P021	STACKER	0	Stack feeding motor phase A signal	
		1	Stack feeding motor phase B signal	
		2	Stack feeding motor phase A* signal	
		3	Stack feeding motor phase B* signal	
		4	Upper tray paper surface sensor	1: paper present
		5	Stapler interlock	1: OPEN
		6	Shutter HP sensor (PI113)	1: HP
		7	Swing guide interlock	1: OPEN
P022	STACKER	0	DIPSW_8	0: ON
		1	DIPSW_7	0: ON
		2	DIPSW_6	0: ON
		3	DIPSW_5	0: ON
		4	DIPSW_4	0: ON
		5	DIPSW_3	0: ON
		6	DIPSW_2	0: ON
		7	DIPSW_1	0: ON
P023	STACKER	0	PUSHSW 1	0: ON
		1	PUSHSW 2	0: ON
		2	PUSHSW	0: ON
		3	Upper tray paper sensor	0: paper present
		4	Lower tray paper sensor	0: paper present
		5	24V detection	0: detected
		6	Front cover interlock	1: OPEN
		7	Fan error detection	0: detected
P024	SADDLE	0	Fan ON signal	1: ON
		1	LED1	0: ON
		2	LED2	0: ON
		3	LED3	0: ON
		4	X4-POWER-ON signal	0: ON
		5-7	Not used	
P025	SADDLE	0	Saddle guide motor phase A signal	
		1	Saddle guide motor phase B signal	
		2	Saddle guide motor current switch I0	0: ON
		3	Saddle feed motor current switch I0	0: ON
		4	Saddle feed motor phase A signal	
		5	Saddle feed motor phase B signal	
		6	Saddle feed motor phase A* signal	
		7	Saddle feed motor phase B* signal	
P026	SADDLE	0	Saddle alignment motor phase A signal	
		1	Saddle alignment motor phase B signal	
		2	Saddle alignment motor current switch I0	0: ON
		3	Saddle paper positioning motor current switch I0	0: ON
		4	Saddle paper positioning motor phase A signal	
		5	Saddle paper positioning motor phase B signal	
		6	Solenoid PWM	
		7	Saddle folding motor PWM	
P027	SADDLE	0	Trimmer CPU-TxD	
		1	TxD for write	
		2	Trimmer CPU-RxD	
		3	RxD for write	
		4	Trimmer OUT	0: ON
		5	Trimmer connection detection	0: detected
		6-7	Not used	

Address	Controller	Bit	Description	Remarks
P028	SADDLE	0	Saddle front stapling current detection	1: detected
		1	Saddle rear stapling current detection	1: detected
		2	Saddle delivery door connection detection	1: detected
		3-5	Not used	
		6	Saddle stapler unit connection detection	1: detected
		7	Not used	
P029	SADDLE	0	Saddle rear staple detecting switch	0: detected
		1	Saddle front staple detecting switch	0: detected
		2	Saddle front stapler CCW	0: ON
		3	Stapler feed motor standby	0: ON
		4-7	Not used	
P030	SADDLE	0-1	Not used	
		2	Saddle folding motor FWD (CW)	1: ON
		3	Saddle folding motor RV (CCW)	1: ON
		4	Saddle folding CLK sensor (IRQ0*)	
		5	Saddle butting CLK sensor (IRQ1*)	
		6	Saddle rear stapler HP sensor (IRQ2*)	1: HP
		7	Saddle front stapler HP sensor (IRQ3*)	1: HP

T-16-69

Address	Controller	Bit	Description	Remarks
P031	SADDLE	0	Saddle position HP sensor	0: HP
		1	Saddle guide HP sensor	1: HP
		2	Inlet cover sensor	1: detected
		3	Saddle stapler unit sensor	0: detected
		4	Saddle butting HP sensor (IRQ4*)	1: HP
		5	Saddle butting TOP sensor (IRQ5*)	1: butting position
		6	Trimmer IN (IRQ6*)	0: HP
		7	Saddle feed motor CLK (IRQ7*)	
P032	SADDLE	0	Saddle tray paper sensor	0: paper present
		1	Positioning plate paper sensor	0: paper present
		2	Saddle crescent roller sensor	0: HP
		3	Saddle delivery sensor	0: paper present
		4	Saddle trailing edge sensor 1	1: detected
		5	Saddle trailing edge sensor 2	1: detected
		6	Saddle trailing edge sensor 3	1: detected
7	Saddle path sensor	1: detected		
P033	SADDLE	0	Saddle butting motor EN	1: ON
		1	Saddle butting motor FWD (CW)	1: ON
		2	Saddle butting motor RV (CCW)	1: ON
		3	Saddle folding HP sensor	0: HP
		4-5	Not used	
		6	Saddle aligning plate HP sensor	0: HP
		7	Not used	
P034	SADDLE	0	Saddle inlet solenoid	1: ON
		1	Saddle No. 1 flapper solenoid	1: ON
		2	Saddle No. 2 flapper solenoid	1: ON
		3	Saddle pickup solenoid	1: ON
		4-6	Not used	
		7	Saddle inlet sensor	1: detected
P035	SADDLE	0	Saddle rear stapler CW (CW)	0: ON
		1	Saddle rear stapler CCW (CCW)	0: ON
		2	Saddle front stapler CW (CW)	0: ON
		3	Chip select (CS1*)	
		4-7	Not used	
P036	SADDLE	0	DIPSW_1	0: ON
		1	DIPSW_2	0: ON
		2	DIPSW_3	0: ON
		3	DIPSW_4	0: ON
		4	DIPSW_5	0: ON
		5	DIPSW_6	0: ON
		6	DIPSW_7	0: ON
		7	DIPSW_8	0: ON

Address	Controller	Bit	Description	Remarks
P037	SADDLE	0	Not used	
		1	PUSHSW1	0: ON
		2	5V detection signal	0: detected
		3	24V detection signal	0: detected
		4	For revision control	
		5	For revision control	
		6	For revision control	
		7	For revision control	
P038	PUNCHER	0	Download ON signal	1: ON
		1-3	Not used	
		4	LED 3	0: ON
		5	LED 2	0: ON
		6	LED 1	0: ON
		7	Power-on signal	0: ON
		P039	PUNCHER	0
1	DIPSW2			0: ON
2	DIPSW3			0: ON
3	Not used			
4	PCH-OUT			
5	Trailing edge sensor			1: ON
6	Punch encoder lock			
7	Punch HP sensor			0: detected
P040	PUNCHER	0	PCH-IN	
		1	RxD	
		2	TxD	
		3-7	Not used	
P041	PUNCHER	0	EEPROM-IN	
		1	EEPROM-OUT	
		2	EEPROM-CLK	
		3	EEPROM-CS	
		4	Horizontal registration HP sensor	1: ON
		5	Horizontal registration motor STB	0: ON
		6	Punch motor CCW	0: ON
		7	Punch motor CW	0: ON
P042	PUNCHER	0-3	Not used	
		4	DIPSW4	0: ON
		5	Horizontal registration motor CUR	0: ON
		6	PWM	
		7	Not used	
		P043	PUNCHER	0
1	Horizontal registration motor INA			
2	Horizontal registration motor INB			
3	LED 2			0: ON
4	Front cover sensor			0: close
5	BOOTMODE			
6	PUSHSW2			0: ON
7	PUSHSW1			0: ON
P044	PUNCHER	0-4	Not used	
		5	Upper cover sensor	1: open
		6-7	Not used	
P045	PUNCHER	ADDRA	Not used	
P046	PUNCHER	ADDRB	Not used	
P047	PUNCHER	AD0	Trailing edge sensor	
P048	PUNCHER	AD1	B5R sensor	
P049	PUNCHER	AD2	A4R sensor	
P050	PUNCHER	AD3	B4 sensor	
P051	PUNCHER	AD6	DUST sensor	
P052	PUNCHER	AD7	A3 sensor	

16.3.6 <MN-CONT>

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-16-70

Address	bit	Item	Remarks
P001	0	Versatile input/output port (board O)	
	1	Versatile input/output port (board S)	
	2	Versatile input/output port (board R)	
	3	Versatile input/output port (board P)	
	4	Test packet issue request to image processing ASIC	
	5	DDI-P POWER signal	0: ON
	6	Delivery count (control card, coin robo)	1: Delivery
	7	Paper feed count (control card, coin robo)	1: Paper feeding
P002	0	CPU reset cancel signal	
	1	Image processing ASIC reset signal	
	2	DDI-P CTS signal (printer --> controller)	
	3	DDI-P RTS signal (controller --> printer)	
	4	DDI-P Power Ready signal (controller --> printer)	
	5	DDI-P Power Ready signal (printer --> controller)	
	6	Copy permission signal (control card)	
	7	Copy permission signal (coin robo)	
P003	0	Controller cooling fan ON signal	1:ON 0:OFF
	1	USB host power (5V) control signal	1:ON 0:OFF
	2	PCI Serror interruption clear	
	3	FAX reset signal	
	4	For R&D	
	5	For R&D	
	6	For R&D	
	7	For R&D	
P004	0	For R&D	
	1	Detection of connection of the FAX board	0: Not connected, 1: Connected
	2	Not used	
	3	Not used	
	4	TFT-UI connection check	0: Not connected, 1: Connected
	5	DIMM judgment	
	6	DIMM judgment	
	7	DIMM judgment	

Address	bit	Item	Remarks
P005	0	Power Ready signal of OPEN interface	
	1	Watch Dog function	
	2	Watch Dog interruption clear	
	3	DDI-S Livewake signal	
	4	DDI-S Download signal	
	5	DDI-P Likewake signal	
	6	DDI-P Download signal	
	7	For R&D	
P006	0	Version of the main controller PCB	
	1	Version of the main controller PCB	
	2	Version of the main controller PCB	
	3	Version of the main controller PCB	
	4	Power Ready signal of the coin robo controller	
	5	Coin robo Power Ready signal	
	6	Coin robo communication Ready signal	
	7	For R&D	
P007	0	Not used	
	1	Not used	
	2	Electric power control signal	
	3-6	Not used	
	7	Modem board detection signal	0: Connected, 1: Not connected
P008	0	FRAM CLK	
	1	FRAM DATA	
	2	FRAM WP	
	3-7	Not used	
P009	0	SPD CLK	
	1	SPD DT	
	2-4	Not used	
	5	Emergency night power (13V) ON signal	0:OFF 1:ON
	6	Emergency night power switching signal	0: High-efficiency, 1: Normal
	7	Emergency night power (24V) ON signal	0:OFF 1:ON
P010	0	LCD back light lighting control signal	0:ON 1:OFF
	1	USB Vbus power detection	0:OFF 1:ON
	2	SDRAM configuration detection	
	3	SDRAM configuration detection	
	4	Watch Dog timer CLK	
	5	Emergency night power reset signal	
	6,7	Not used	
P011	0-7	Not used	
P012	0-7	Not used	

Address	bit	Item	Remarks
P013	0-7	Not used	
P014	0-7	Not used	
P015	0-7	Not used	
P016	0-7	Not used	

16.4 ADJUST (Adjustment Mode)

16.4.1 COPIER

16.4.1.1 COPIER List

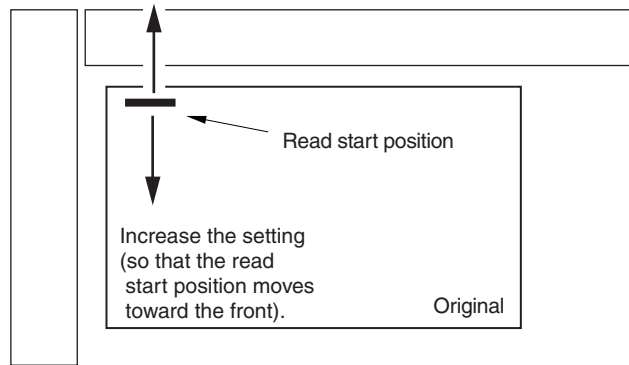
imagePRESS C1

1. ADJ-XY

T-16-71

COPIER>ADJUST>ADJ-XY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ADJ-X	<p>Adjust the position of the lead edge of the optical system image (the starting position to read the image in the sub scanning direction).</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When the non-image width is larger than the standard value, decrease the setting value. - When the area outside of the document is copied, increase the setting value. - When you increase the setting value by 1, the starting position to read the image moves to the trail edge by 0.1mm. (The range of reading moves to the trail edge.) - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. <p>1 to 211 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 20]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
ADJ-Y	<p>Adjust the CCD reading starting cell position (the starting position to read the image in the main scanning direction).</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When the non-image width is larger than the standard value, decrease the setting value. - When the area outside of the document is copied, increase the setting value. - When you increase the setting value by 1, the starting position to read the image moves to the front by 0.1mm. (The range of reading moves to the front.) - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. <p>1 to 211 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 79]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1

Decrease the setting
(so that the read start
position moves toward the rear).



F-16-24
T-16-72

COPIER>ADJUST>ADJ-XY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ADJ-Y-DF	Adjust the main scanning position for DF stream reading. Adjustment method - When you increase the setting value by 1, the starting position to read the image moves to the front by 0.1mm. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	1 to 211 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 109] When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.	
ADJ-Y-FX	Adjust the main scanning position for DF fixed reading. Adjustment method - When you increase the setting value by 1, the starting position to read the image moves to the front by 0.1mm. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	1 to 211 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 103] When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.	

COPIER>ADJUST>ADJ-XY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ADJ-X-MG	<p>Make a fine adjustment of sub scanning magnification for reader copyboard reading.</p> <p>Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <p>Adjustment range -50 to +50 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1

2. CCD

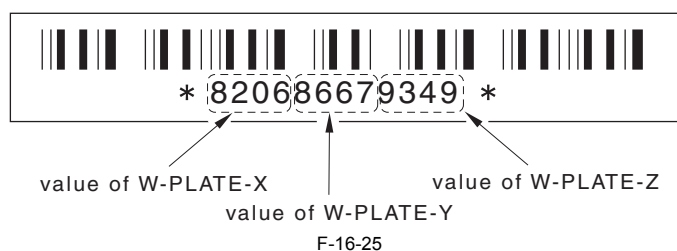
T-16-73

COPIER>ADJUST>CCD		
Subheading	Contents	Level
W-PLT-X/Y/Z	<p>Enter the white level data for the white plate.</p> <p>Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. - When you replaced the copyboard glass, enter the numeric value indicated on the copyboard glass.</p> <p>Adjustment range: 1 to 9999 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: W-PLT-X=8271 : W-PLT-Y=8735 : W-PLT-Z=9418]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
EC-B/G/R	<p>Display the correction value (Blue/Green/Red) after EC coat correction was performed, and enter a value.</p> <p>Adjustment range: 10000 to 15000 Standard value: 10000</p>	1

COPIER>ADJUST>CCD		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CCDU-RG	<p>Correction value of color registration between Red and Green in the sub scanning direction, which is dependent on the CCD unit</p> <p>Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <hr/> <p>Adjustment range: -9 to 9 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
CCDU-GB	<p>Correction value of color registration between Green and Blue in the sub scanning direction, which is dependent on the CCD unit</p> <p>Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <hr/> <p>Adjustment range: -9 to 9 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p>	1
FCCDU-RG	<p>Correction value of color registration between Red and Gree in the sub scanning direction, which is dependent on the CCD unit at factory setting</p> <p>Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <hr/> <p>Adjustment range: -9 to 9 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
FCCDU-GB	<p>Correction value of color registration between Gree and Blue in the sub scanning direction, which is dependent on the CCD unit at factory setting</p> <p>Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <hr/> <p>Adjustment range: -9 to 9 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1

COPIER>ADJUST>CCD		
Subheading	Contents	Level
50-RG	Display an offset value of color registration (R-G) at BOOK mode / 50% reading. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Setting range: -256 to 256 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.	
50-GB	Display an offset value of color registration (G-B) at BOOK mode / 50% reading. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Setting range: -256 to 256 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.	
100-RG	Display an offset value of color registration (R-G) at BOOK mode / 100% reading. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Setting range: -256 to 256 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.	
100-GB	Display an offset value of color registration (G-B) at BOOK mode / 100% reading. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Setting range: -256 to 256 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.	
50DF-RG	Display an offset value of color registration (R-G) at ADF mode / 50% reading. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Setting range: -256 to 256 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.	
50DF-GB	Display an offset value of color registration (G-B) at ADF mode / 50% reading. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Setting range: -256 to 256 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.	

COPIER>ADJUST>CCD		
Subheading	Contents	Level
100DF-RG	<p>Display an offset value of color registration (R-G) at ADF mode / 100% reading.</p> <p>Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <p>Setting range: -256 to 256 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
100DF-GB	<p>Display an offset value of color registration (G-B) at ADF mode / 100% reading.</p> <p>Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <p>Setting range: -256 to 256 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
DFTAR-R	<p>Enter a shading target value (RED color) when DF is used (normal document reading position).</p> <p>Adjustment method - When an error occurred to an image (caused by dirt on the chart, etc.) after executing COPIER>FUNCTION>CCD>DF-WLVL1/DF-WLVL2, enter a factory measurement value using this mode. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <p>Adjustment range: 1 to 2047 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 1159]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
DFTAR-G	<p>Enter a shading target value (GREEN color) when DF is used (normal document reading position).</p> <p>Adjustment method - When an error occurred to an image (caused by dirt on the chart, etc.) after executing COPIER>FUNCTION>CCD>DF-WLVL1/DF-WLVL2, enter a factory measurement value using this mode. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <p>Adjustment range: 1 to 2047 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 1189]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
DFTAR-B	<p>Enter a shading target value (BLUE color) when DF is used (normal document reading position).</p> <p>Adjustment method - When an error occurred to an image (caused by dirt on the chart, etc.) after executing COPIER>FUNCTION>CCD>DF-WLVL1/DF-WLVL2, enter a factory measurement value using this mode. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <p>Adjustment range: 1 to 2047 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 1209]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1



3. LASER



It is an adjustment item at the time of shipment; thus, it is not adjusted at the filed service.

T-16-74

COPIER>ADJUST>LASER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PVE-OFST	Offset from the center of laser (laser exposure position)	1
	Setting range: -600 to 600 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
POWER	Set the laser power when electric potential control is turned off. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 255 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 160]	

4. IMG-REG

T-16-75

COPIER>ADJUST>IMG-REG		
Subheading	Contents	Level
REG-V-Y/K	Make a coarse adjustment of the Y/K color writing position in the sub scanning direction. Adjustment method - When you increase the value by 1, the pattern moves to the trail edge. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 1 pixel) [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Reference: This mode is used to enter a factory adjustment value. Do not make an adjustment in the field.	
REG2-V-Y/K	Make a coarse adjustment of the Y/K color writing position in the sub scanning direction. (the second image of the two images aligned on ITB) Adjustment method - When you increase the value by 1, the pattern moves to the trail edge. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 1 pixel) [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Reference: This mode is used to enter a factory adjustment value. Do not make an adjustment in the field.	
REG-V-M	Make a coarse adjustment of the M color writing position in the sub scanning direction. Adjustment method - When you increase the value by 1, the pattern moves to the trail edge. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 1 pixel) [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Reference: This mode is used to enter a factory adjustment value. Do not make an adjustment in the field.	

COPIER>ADJUST>IMG-REG		
Subheading	Contents	Level
REG2-V-M	Make a coarse adjustment of the M color writing position in the sub scanning direction. (the second image of the two images aligned on ITB) Adjustment method - When you increase the value by 1, the pattern moves to the trail edge. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 1 pixel) [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Reference: This mode is used to enter a factory adjustment value. Do not make an adjustment in the field.	

5. DENS

T-16-76

COPIER>ADJUST>DENS		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SGNL-Y/M/C	Initial value of toner density signal (Y/M/C color) Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 200 to 800 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 512]	
REF-Y/M/C	Standard value of toner density signal (Y/M/C color) Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 462 to 562 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 512]	
P-SGNL-Y/M/C/K	Signal value of Y/M/C/K color toner density on the photosensitive drum when INIT is performed Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Setting range: 150 to 800 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 350]	
ALF-F/C/R	Display/enter an alpha value of the patch detection sensor. (Front/Center/Rear) Function to adjust variations in a single patch detection sensor. (Front/Center/Rear)	1
	Setting range: 200 to 2000 Standard value: 1000	
P-TG-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the offset of the target value for the patch detection ATR control (Y/M/C/K color). Adjustment method When the patch detection ATR control is performed, set an offset value of the target value for the Y/M/C/K color patch image density.	2
	Setting range: -108 to 108 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

6. BLANK

T-16-77

COPIER>ADJUST>BLANK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
BLANK-T	Enter an adjustment value for non-image width (lead edge). Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 1000 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 94]	
BLANK-L	Enter an adjustment value for non-image width (left edge). Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 1000 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 59]	
BLANK-R	Enter an adjustment value for non-image width (right edge). Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 1000 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 59]	
BLANK-B	Enter an adjustment value for non-image width (trail edge). Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 1000 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 47]	
BLANK-C1	Set a lead edge margin for Cassette 1. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -35 to +35 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
BLANK-C2	Set a lead edge margin for Cassette 2. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -35 to +35 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
BLANK-C3	Set a lead edge margin for Cassette 3. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -35 to +35 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

COPIER>ADJUST>BLANK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
BLANK-C4	Set a lead edge margin for Cassette 4. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -35 to +35 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
BLANK-PD	Set a lead edge margin for the side paper deck Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -35 to +35 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

7. V-CONT

T-16-78

COPIER>ADJUST>V-CONT		
Subheading	Contents	Level
EPOTOEST	Electric potential offset value Adjustment range: -100 to 100 (Unit: 1V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	1
VCONT-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the target contrast electric potential (Y/M/C/K color). Adjustment method - The larger the setting value is, the darker the density is. Adjustment range: -30 to 30 (Unit: 1V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	2
	Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	
VBACK-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the electric potential (Y/M/C/K color) to eliminate fogging. Adjustment method - The larger the setting value is, the more fogging can be eliminated. Adjustment range: -30 to 30 (Unit: 1V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	2
	Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	

8. PASCAL

T-16-79

COPIER>ADJUST>PASCAL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
OFST-P-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the offset for the test print reading signal (Y/M/C/K color) at PASCAL control for automatic gradation correction (full correction). Adjustment method - When you set a larger value, the image density after automatic gradation correction (full correction) becomes darker.	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0	

COPIER>ADJUST>PASCAL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
OFSTPLM	Not used	1
OFSTPLC	Not used	1
OFSTP2Y	Adjust the density at test print reading Keep the Y density adjustment value when test print reading was performed (Media 2)	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0 When replacing the reader controller, input the value written on the service label once again.	
OFSTP2M	Adjust the density at test print reading Keep the M density adjustment value when test print reading was performed (Media 2)	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0 When replacing the reader controller, input the value written on the service label once again.	
OFSTP2C	Adjust the density at test print reading Keep the C density adjustment value when test print reading was performed (Media 2)	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0 When replacing the reader controller, input the value written on the service label once again.	
OFSTP2K	Adjust the density at test print reading Keep the K density adjustment value when test print reading was performed (Media 2)	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0 When replacing the reader controller, input the value written on the service label once again.	
OFSTP2LM	Not used	1
OFSTP2LC	Not used	1
OFSTP3Y	Adjust the density at test print reading Keep the Y density adjustment value when test print reading was performed (Media 3)	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0 When replacing the reader controller, input the value written on the service label once again.	
OFSTP3M	Adjust the density at test print reading Keep the M density adjustment value when test print reading was performed (Media 3)	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0 When replacing the reader controller, input the value written on the service label once again.	

COPIER>ADJUST>PASCAL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
OFSTP3C	Adjust the density at test print reading Keep the C density adjustment value when test print reading was performed (Media 3)	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0 When replacing the reader controller, input the value written on the service label once again.	
OFSTP3K	Adjust the density at test print reading Keep the K density adjustment value when test print reading was performed (Media 3)	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0 When replacing the reader controller, input the value written on the service label once again.	
OFSTP3LM	Not used	1
OFSTP3LC	Not used	1

9. COLOR

T-16-80

COPIER>ADJUST>COLOR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ADJ-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the color balance for users. (Y/M/C/K color) Adjustment method - When you set a larger value, the image density becomes darker. - When you set a smaller value, the image density becomes lighter.	1
	Adjustment range -8 to +8 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
OFST-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the density and color balance of a bright section. (Y/M/C/K color) Adjustment method - When you set a smaller value, fogging is reduced.	1
	Adjustment range -32 to +32 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
LD-OFS-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the color balance of low-density area. (Y/M/C/K color)	2
	Adjustment range -8 to +8 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	
MD-OFS-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the color balance of middle-density area. (Y/M/C/K color)	2
	Adjustment range -8 to +8 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	

COPIER>ADJUST>COLOR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
HD-OFS-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the color balance of high-density area. (Y/M/C/K color)	2
	Adjustment range -8 to +8 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	

10. HV-PRI

T-16-81

COPIER>ADJUST>HV-PRI		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRIMARY	Adjust the current of the primary charging assembly.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 1200 (Unit: μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1000]	
GRID	Adjust the grid bias of the primary charging assembly.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1000 (Unit: 1V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 464]	
HVRATE-3	Adjust the parameter setting ratio of the primary charging bias / laser power. (Feeding speed: 1/3 speed) Adjustment method Adjust the parameter setting ratio of the primary charging bias / laser power at the feeding speed of 1/3 speed.	2
	Setting range: 0 to 100 (This can be set in the unit of 1.) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 100]	

11. HV-TR

T-16-82

COPIER>ADJUST>HV-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRE-TR	Set a current value of the pre-transfer charging assembly. (common to Y/M/C/K)	1
	Adjustment range: -120 to 0 (Unit: 5.0 μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
2TR-TGT1 to 8	Set an offset value for the target current value of the secondary transfer ATVC. Adjustment method When the product's operation mode matches the setting of TR-ENV, TR-PPR, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP, the target current value of the secondary transfer ATVC is offset according to the setting value of this mode.	2
	Adjustment value: -10 to 10 (Unit: 2 μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Reference: 6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set.	

COPIER>ADJUST>HV-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
2TR-SHR1 to 8	Set an offset value for the paper allocation voltage of the secondary transfer ATVC. Adjustment method When the product's operation mode matches the setting of TR-ENV, TR-PPR, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP, the paper allocation voltage of the secondary transfer ATVC is offset according to the setting value of this mode.	2
	Adjustment value: -10 to +10 (Unit: 150V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Reference: 6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set.	
TR-PPR1 to 8	Paper type setting items for the secondary transfer ATVC setting	2
	Paper type setting items for the secondary transfer ATVC setting value, which was set to handle complaints from customers in the field Setting range: 0 to 13 0: Not used 1: Plain paper: 64 to 105g 2: Recycle paper: 64 to 105g 3: Not used 4: Punched paper 5: Basis weight: 106 to 209g 6: Basis weight: 209 to 256g 7: Not used 8: OHP 9: Not used 10: Not used 11: Not used 12: Postcard 13: Label [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1] Reference: 6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set.	
TR-ENV1 to 8	Environmental setting items for the secondary transfer ATVC setting	2
	Setting range: 0 to 3 0: Not used, 1: Low humidity, 2: Normal humidity, 3: High humidity (*) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 2] Reference: 6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set. *: Enter value of COPIER > DISPLAY > MISC > ENV-TR.	
TR-CLR1 to 8	Color mode setting items for the secondary transfer ATVC setting	2
	1: Bk mode, 2: C mode [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1] Reference: 6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set.	
TR-DUP1 to 8	Single or double-sided paper mode setting items for the secondary transfer ATVC setting	2
	Setting range: 1 to 4 1: Single sided, 2: Automatic double sided, 3: Manual feed double sided, 4: POD deck [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1] Reference: 6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set.	

COPIER>ADJUST>HV-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ITR-TGY/M/C	Adjust the target current offset for the primary transfer ATVC. (Y/M/C)	2
	Adjustment range: -10 - 10 (Unit: 1.0 μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
ITR-TGK1	Adjust the target current offset for the primary transfer ATVC. (Bk: single color)	2
	Adjustment range: -10 - 10 (Unit: 1.0 μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
ITR-TGK4	Adjust the target current offset for the primary transfer ATVC. (Bk: 4C)	2
	Adjustment range: -10 - 10 (Unit: 1.0 μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
TR-INTVL	Adjust the primary transfer bias between color/paper interval.	2
	Adjustment range -16 to 16 (Unit: 5%) Standard value 0	
1EL	Set a ITB tension roller bias value. After monitoring is performed to the bias value by DISPLAY<HV-ST5<1EL, set a bias value using this mode.	2
	Setting range: -2000 to 0 (Unit: V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: -1899]	
2EL	Set a bias value of the secondary transfer static eliminator. Adjustment method After monitoring is performed to the bias value by DISPLAY<HV-ST5<2EL, set a bias value using this mode.	2
	Setting range: -4000 to 0 (Unit: V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
ITR-ST51	Offset value of the target current for the primary transfer paper interval (at constant speed)	2
	Setting range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 5.0 μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
ITR-ST53	Offset value of the target current for the primary transfer paper interval (at 1/3 speed)	2
	Setting range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 5.0 μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
PRE-TR-Y/M/C	Adjust the current of the pre-transfer charging assembly. (Y/M/C) Set the current offset value (Y/M/C) of the pre-transfer charging assembly.	2
	This is not used for this machine.	
POSTSW-Y/M/C/K	ON/OFF switch for the Y/M/C/K pre-transfer charging assembly	2
	Set validity or invalidity of Y/M/C/K color for the pre-transfer charging assembly. Setting value 0: Invalid, 1: Valid [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: Y/M/C:0, K:1]	

12. FEED-ADJ

T-16-83

COPIER>ADJUST>FEED-ADJ		
Subheading	Contents	Level
REGIST	Adjust the timing of turning ON the registration roller clutch. Adjustment method - When you increase the value by 1, the image moves toward the lead edge of the paper by 0.1mm. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the DC controller PCB or replaced the DC controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -50 to 50 (Unit: 0.1mm) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

COPIER>ADJUST>FEED-ADJ		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ADJ-REFE	Adjust the horizontal registration for double sided copy. (for factory use) Adjustment method When you increase the value, the second side image moves to the rear side. (When you increase the value by 1, the image moves by 0.1mm.)	1
	Adjustment range: -100 to 100 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
BLK-SML2	Adjust the right and left margins on the second side of a small-size sheet. When you increase the value, the left and right margins on the second side become longer. (When you increase the value by 1, the margins increase by 0.1mm.)	1
	Adjustment range: -50 to 50 (Unit: 0.1mm) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: -15]	
RVS-FD1	Adjust the reverse point.	2
	Adjustment range: -10 to +10 (Unit: 1mm) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
RVS-DUP	Adjust the reverse point for double sided copy.	2
	Adjustment range: -10 to 10 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
LOOP-T2	Adjust the registration loop volume when feeding thick paper. Adjustment method When you decrease the setting value (loop volume of the registration roller), a noise is reduced. However, when you decrease the loop volume excessively, the margin size may change or it may cause a skew.	2
	Adjustment range -10 to +10 (mm) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
REG-SPD	Make a fine adjustment of the registration motor speed at constant speed. Change the registration speed at constant speed in the range of + or - 10 scales against the default value.	2
	Setting range -10 to 10 Standard value 0	
REG-SPD2	Make a fine adjustment of the registration motor speed at 1/3 speed. Change the registration speed at 1/3 speed in the range of + or - 10 scales against the default value.	2
	Setting range -10 to 10 Standard value 0	

13. CST-ADJ

T-16-84

COPIER>ADJUST>CST-ADJ		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MF-A4R	Enter the basic value of the paper width for the manual feed tray. (A4R) Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the DC controller PCB or replaced the DC controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. - When you replace the paper width detection VR or newly register a value, execute FUNCTION>CST in the Service Mode.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 255 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 125]	
MF-A6R	Enter the basic value of the paper width for the manual feed tray. (A6R) Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the DC controller PCB or replaced the DC controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. - When you replace the paper width detection VR or newly register a value, execute FUNCTION>CST in the Service Mode.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 255 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 193]	

COPIER>ADJUST>CST-ADJ		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MF-A4	Enter the basic value of the paper width for the manual feed tray. (A4) Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the DC controller PCB or replaced the DC controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. - When you replace the paper width detection VR or newly register a value, execute FUNCTION>CST in the Service Mode.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 255 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 42]	

14. MISC

T-16-85

COPIER>ADJUST>MISC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SEG-ADJ	Adjust the separation level for characters and photos at the character/photo/map mode. Adjustment method - To make it easier to recognize a photo document, increase the setting value. - To make it easier to recognize a character document, decrease the setting value.	1
	Adjustment range: -4 to 4 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
K-ADJ	Adjust the black recognition level for black character processing. Adjustment method To make it easier to recognize black color, increase the setting value.	1
	Adjustment range: -3 to 3 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
DF-S-RK	Set a characteristic value of the paper thickness sensor which was set at a factory. Since the sensor detection level varies among paper thickness detection sensors, set the sensor rank information when replacing the sensor or executing DconRAM clear.	1
	Setting range: 1 to 5	
ACS-ADJ	Adjust the color recognition level at ACS mode. Adjustment method - To make it easier to recognize a black and white document, increase the setting value. - To make it easier to recognize a color document, decrease the setting value.	1
	Adjustment range: -3 to 3 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
WT-ER-LV	Set the threshold value to display the waste toner FULL error. When the number of sheets specified by WT-ER-LV is exceeded, an error (E013) is displayed.	1
	This mode is not used for this machine.	
WT-FL-LM	Set the threshold value to display the waste toner FULL warning. Set the threshold value for the detection of a waste toner box error.	1
	This mode is not used for this machine.	
ACS-EN	Adjust the ASC judgment area. Setting range -2 to +2 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1]	2
ACS-CNT	Set the chromatic color count area for ASC. Adjustment range -2 to +2 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	2
ACS-EN2	Adjust the ACS judgment area. (at DF stream reading) Adjustment method When you increase the setting value, the judgment area becomes wider.	2
	Adjustment range -2 to +2 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1]	

COPIER>ADJUST>MISC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ACS-CNT2	Adjust the count area of the chromatic color judgment pixels for ACS. Adjustment method When you increase the setting value, the judgment area becomes wider.	2
	Adjustment range -2 to +2 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
REOS-PG	Select a coefficient of Reos processing at 1200 dpi. Print a PG of which PG type is set at 55 (55 is set for COPIER>TEST>PG>TYPE). Set an area number which is likely to realize an optimum character proportion or line width at PDL 1200dpi setting in the Reos processing module based on this PG. (A PG of which PG type is set at 55 has four areas, where each image is printed.)	2
	Adjustment range 0 to 4 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

15. EXP-LED

T-16-86

COPIER>ADJUST>EXP-LED		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CLN-EXP	Set a cleaner pre-exposure current. (image area) Set the light volume of cleaner pre-exposure for an image area at printing.	1
	Setting range 5 to 10 (Unit: 10mA) Standard value 8	
CLN-EXP2	Set the cleaner pre-exposure current. (color/paper internal) Set the light volume of cleaner pre-exposure for color/paper interval.	1
	Setting range 5 to 10 (Unit: 10mA) Standard value 8	
PR-EXP	Set a current of the pre-exposure LED when electric potential control is turned off. (Feeding speed: 1/1 speed)	2
	Setting range 5 to 10 (Unit: 10mA) Standard value 8	

16.P-PASCAL



Use it if the gradation fault is occurred after executing the printer PASCAL.

T-16-87

COPIER>ADJUST>P-PASCAL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CS10FWMY	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white actual measurement brightness value Y for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

COPIER>ADJUST>P-PASCAL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CS10FWIM	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white ideal brightness value M for Color Sensor	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS10FDMM	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid actual measurement brightness value M for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS10FDMY	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid actual measurement brightness value Y for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS10FDIM	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid ideal brightness value M for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS10FDIY	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid ideal brightness value Y for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS10FHMM	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT actual measurement brightness value M for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS10FHMY	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT actual measurement brightness value Y for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS10FHIM	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT ideal brightness value M for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS10FHIY	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT ideal brightness value Y for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS20FDMK	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid actual measurement brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS20FDMC	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid actual measurement brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS20FDIK	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid ideal brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS20FDIC	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid ideal brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS20FHMK	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT actual measurement brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS20FHMC	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT actual measurement brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS20FHIK	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT ideal brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS20FHIC	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT ideal brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

COPIER>ADJUST>P-PASCAL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CS2OFWMK	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white actual measurement brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFWMC	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white actual measurement brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFWIK	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white ideal brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFWIC	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white ideal brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS1OFWMM	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white actual measurement brightness value M for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS1OFWIY	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white ideal brightness value Y for Color Sensor	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

16.4.1.2 COPIER List

imagePRESS C1 P

1. LASER



It is an adjustment item at the time of shipment; thus, it is not adjusted at the filed service.

T-16-88

COPIER>ADJUST>LASER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PVE-OFST	Offset from the center of laser (laser exposure position)	1
	Setting range: -600 to 600 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
POWER	Set the laser power when electric potential control is turned off. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 255 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 160]	

2. IMG-REG

T-16-89

COPIER>ADJUST>IMG-REG		
Subheading	Contents	Level
REG-V-Y/K	<p>Make a coarse adjustment of the Y/K color writing position in the sub scanning direction.</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When you increase the value by 1, the pattern moves to the trail edge. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. 	1
	<p>Adjustment range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 1 pixel)</p> <p>[Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>Reference:</p> <p>This mode is used to enter a factory adjustment value. Do not make an adjustment in the field.</p>	
REG2-V-Y/K	<p>Make a coarse adjustment of the Y/K color writing position in the sub scanning direction. (the second image of the two images aligned on ITB)</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When you increase the value by 1, the pattern moves to the trail edge. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. 	1
	<p>Adjustment range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 1 pixel)</p> <p>[Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>Reference:</p> <p>This mode is used to enter a factory adjustment value. Do not make an adjustment in the field.</p>	
REG-V-M	<p>Make a coarse adjustment of the M color writing position in the sub scanning direction.</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When you increase the value by 1, the pattern moves to the trail edge. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. 	1
	<p>Adjustment range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 1 pixel)</p> <p>[Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>Reference:</p> <p>This mode is used to enter a factory adjustment value. Do not make an adjustment in the field.</p>	
REG2-V-M	<p>Make a coarse adjustment of the M color writing position in the sub scanning direction. (the second image of the two images aligned on ITB)</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When you increase the value by 1, the pattern moves to the trail edge. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. 	1
	<p>Adjustment range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 1 pixel)</p> <p>[Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>Reference:</p> <p>This mode is used to enter a factory adjustment value. Do not make an adjustment in the field.</p>	

3. DENS

T-16-90

COPIER>ADJUST>DENS		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SGNL-Y/M/C	<p>Initial value of toner density signal (Y/M/C color)</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. 	1
	<p>Adjustment range: 200 to 800</p> <p>[Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 512]</p>	

COPIER>ADJUST>DENS		
Subheading	Contents	Level
REF-Y/M/C	Standard value of toner density signal (Y/M/C color) Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 462 to 562 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 512]	
P-SGNL-Y/M/C/K	Signal value of Y/M/C/K color toner density on the photosensitive drum when INIT is performed Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Setting range: 150 to 800 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 350]	
ALF-F/C/R	Display/enter an alpha value of the patch detection sensor. (Front/Center/Rear) Function to adjust variations in a single patch detection sensor. (Front/Center/Rear)	1
	Setting range: 200 to 2000 Standard value: 1000	
P-TG-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the offset of the target value for the patch detection ATR control (Y/M/C/K color). Adjustment method When the patch detection ATR control is performed, set an offset value of the target value for the Y/M/C/K color patch image density.	2
	Setting range: -108 to 108 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

4. BLANK

T-16-91

COPIER>ADJUST>BLANK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
BLANK-T	Enter an adjustment value for non-image width (lead edge). Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 1000 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 94]	
BLANK-L	Enter an adjustment value for non-image width (left edge). Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 1000 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 59]	
BLANK-R	Enter an adjustment value for non-image width (right edge). Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 1000 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 59]	
BLANK-B	Enter an adjustment value for non-image width (trail edge). Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 1000 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 47]	

COPIER>ADJUST>BLANK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
BLANK-C1	Set a lead edge margin for Cassette 1. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -35 to +35 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
BLANK-C2	Set a lead edge margin for Cassette 2. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -35 to +35 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
BLANK-C3	Set a lead edge margin for Cassette 3. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -35 to +35 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
BLANK-C4	Set a lead edge margin for Cassette 4. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -35 to +35 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
BLANK-PD	Set a lead edge margin for the side paper deck Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -35 to +35 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

5. V-CONT

T-16-92

COPIER>ADJUST>V-CONT		
Subheading	Contents	Level
EPOTOEST	Electric potential offset value	1
	Adjustment range: -100 to 100 (Unit: 1V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

COPIER>ADJUST>V-CONT		
Subheading	Contents	Level
VCONT-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the target contrast electric potential (Y/M/C/K color). Adjustment method - The larger the setting value is, the darker the density is.	2
	Adjustment range: -30 to 30 (Unit: 1V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	
VBACK-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the electric potential (Y/M/C/K color) to eliminate fogging. Adjustment method - The larger the setting value is, the more fogging can be eliminated.	2
	Adjustment range: -30 to 30 (Unit: 1V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	

6. PASCAL

T-16-93

COPIER>ADJUST>PASCAL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
OFST-P-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the offset for the test print reading signal (Y/M/C/K color) at PASCAL control for automatic gradation correction (full correction). Adjustment method - When you set a larger value, the image density after automatic gradation correction (full correction) becomes darker.	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0	

7. COLOR

T-16-94

COPIER>ADJUST>COLOR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ADJ-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the color balance for users. (Y/M/C/K color) Adjustment method - When you set a larger value, the image density becomes darker. - When you set a smaller value, the image density becomes lighter.	1
	Adjustment range -8 to +8 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
OFST-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the density and color balance of a bright section. (Y/M/C/K color) Adjustment method - When you set a smaller value, fogging is reduced.	1
	Adjustment range -32 to +32 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

COPIER>ADJUST>COLOR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
LD-OFS-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the color balance of low-density area. (Y/M/C/K color)	2
	Adjustment range -8 to +8 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	
MD-OFS-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the color balance of middle-density area. (Y/M/C/K color)	2
	Adjustment range -8 to +8 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	
HD-OFS-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the color balance of high-density area. (Y/M/C/K color)	2
	Adjustment range -8 to +8 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	

8. HV-PRI

T-16-95

COPIER>ADJUST>HV-PRI		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRIMARY	Adjust the current of the primary charging assembly.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 1200 (Unit: μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1000]	
GRID	Adjust the grid bias of the primary charging assembly.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1000 (Unit: 1V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 464]	
HVRATE-3	Adjust the parameter setting ratio of the primary charging bias / laser power. (Feeding speed: 1/3 speed)	2
	Adjustment method Adjust the parameter setting ratio of the primary charging bias / laser power at the feeding speed of 1/3 speed. Setting range: 0 to 100 (This can be set in the unit of 1.) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 100]	

9. HV-TR

COPIER>ADJUST>HV-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRE-TR	Set a current value of the pre-transfer charging assembly. (common to Y/M/C/K)	1
	Adjustment range: -120 to 0 (Unit: 5.0 uA) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
2TR-TGT1 to 8	Set an offset value for the target current value of the secondary transfer ATVC. Adjustment method When the product's operation mode matches the setting of TR-ENV, TR-PPR, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP, the target current value of the secondary transfer ATVC is offset according to the setting value of this mode.	2
	Adjustment value: -10 to 10 (Unit: 2uA) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Reference: 6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set.	
2TR-SHR1 to 8	Set an offset value for the paper allocation voltage of the secondary transfer ATVC. Adjustment method When the product's operation mode matches the setting of TR-ENV, TR-PPR, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP, the paper allocation voltage of the secondary transfer ATVC is offset according to the setting value of this mode.	2
	Adjustment value: -10 to +10 (Unit: 150V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Reference: 6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set.	
TR-PPR1 to 8	Paper type setting items for the secondary transfer ATVC setting Paper type setting items for the secondary transfer ATVC setting value, which was set to handle complaints from customers in the field Setting range: 0 to 13 0: Not used 1: Plain paper: 64 to 105g 2: Recycle paper: 64 to 105g 3: Not used 4: Punched paper 5: Basis weight: 106 to 209g 6: Basis weight: 209 to 256g 7: Not used 8: OHP 9: Not used 10: Not used 11: Not used 12: Postcard 13: Label [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1] Reference: 6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set.	2
TR-ENV1 to 8	Environmental setting items for the secondary transfer ATVC setting Setting range: 0 to 3 0: Not used, 1: Low humidity, 2: Normal humidity, 3: High humidity (*) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 2] Reference: 6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set. *: Enter value of COPIER > DISPLAY > MISC > ENV-TR.	2

COPIER>ADJUST>HV-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TR-CLR1 to 8	Color mode setting items for the secondary transfer ATVC setting	2
	1: Bk mode, 2: C mode [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1] Reference: 6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set.	
TR-DUP1 to 8	Single or double-sided paper mode setting items for the secondary transfer ATVC setting	2
	Setting range: 1 to 4 1: Single sided, 2: Automatic double sided, 3: Manual feed double sided, 4: POD deck [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1] Reference: 6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set.	
ITR-TGY/M/C	Adjust the target current offset for the primary transfer ATVC. (Y/M/C)	2
	Adjustment range: -10 - 10 (Unit: 1.0 μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
ITR-TGK1	Adjust the target current offset for the primary transfer ATVC. (Bk: single color)	2
	Adjustment range: -10 - 10 (Unit: 1.0 μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
ITR-TGK4	Adjust the target current offset for the primary transfer ATVC. (Bk: 4C)	2
	Adjustment range: -10 - 10 (Unit: 1.0 μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
TR-INTVL	Adjust the primary transfer bias between color/paper interval.	2
	Adjustment range -16 to 16 (Unit: 5%) Standard value 0	
1EL	Set a ITB tension roller bias value. After monitoring is performed to the bias value by DISPLAY<HV-ST<1EL, set a bias value using this mode.	2
	Setting range: -2000 to 0 (Unit: V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: -1899]	
2EL	Set a bias value of the secondary transfer static eliminator. Adjustment method After monitoring is performed to the bias value by DISPLAY<HV-ST<2EL, set a bias value using this mode.	2
	Setting range: -4000 to 0 (Unit: V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
ITR-STSI	Offset value of the target current for the primary transfer paper interval (at constant speed)	2
	Setting range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 5.0 μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
ITR-STSI3	Offset value of the target current for the primary transfer paper interval (at 1/3 speed)	2
	Setting range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 5.0 μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
PRE-TR-Y/M/C	Adjust the current of the pre-transfer charging assembly. (Y/M/C) Set the current offset value (Y/M/C) of the pre-transfer charging assembly.	2
	This is not used for this machine.	
POSTSW-Y/M/C/K	ON/OFF switch for the Y/M/C/K pre-transfer charging assembly	2
	Set validity or invalidity of Y/M/C/K color for the pre-transfer charging assembly. Setting value 0: Invalid, 1: Valid [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: Y/M/C:0, K:1]	

10. FEED-ADJ

T-16-97

COPIER>ADJUST>FEED-ADJ		
Subheading	Contents	Level
REGIST	Adjust the timing of turning ON the registration roller clutch. Adjustment method - When you increase the value by 1, the image moves toward the lead edge of the paper by 0.1mm. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the DC controller PCB or replaced the DC controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -50 to 50 (Unit: 0.1mm) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
ADJ-REFE	Adjust the horizontal registration for double sided copy. (for factory use) Adjustment method When you increase the value, the second side image moves to the rear side. (When you increase the value by 1, the image moves by 0.1mm.)	1
	Adjustment range: -100 to 100 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
REG-SPD	Make a fine adjustment of the registration motor speed at constant speed. Change the registration speed at constant speed in the range of + or - 10 scales against the default value.	2
	Setting range -10 to 10 Standard value 0	
REG-SPD2	Make a fine adjustment of the registration motor speed at 1/3 speed. Change the registration speed at 1/3 speed in the range of + or - 10 scales against the default value.	2
	Setting range -10 to 10 Standard value 0	

11. CST-ADJ

T-16-98

COPIER>ADJUST>CST-ADJ		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MF-A4R	Enter the basic value of the paper width for the manual feed tray. (A4R) Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the DC controller PCB or replaced the DC controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. - When you replace the paper width detection VR or newly register a value, execute FUNCTION>CST in the Service Mode.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 255 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 125]	
MF-A6R	Enter the basic value of the paper width for the manual feed tray. (A6R) Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the DC controller PCB or replaced the DC controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. - When you replace the paper width detection VR or newly register a value, execute FUNCTION>CST in the Service Mode.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 255 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 193]	
MF-A4	Enter the basic value of the paper width for the manual feed tray. (A4) Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the DC controller PCB or replaced the DC controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. - When you replace the paper width detection VR or newly register a value, execute FUNCTION>CST in the Service Mode.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 255 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 42]	

12. MISC

T-16-99

COPIER>ADJUST>MISC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SEG-ADJ	Adjust the separation level for characters and photos at the character/photo/map mode. Adjustment method - To make it easier to recognize a photo document, increase the setting value. - To make it easier to recognize a character document, decrease the setting value.	1
	Adjustment range: -4 to 4 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
K-ADJ	Adjust the black recognition level for black character processing. Adjustment method To make it easier to recognize black color, increase the setting value.	1
	Adjustment range: -3 to 3 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
DF-S-RK	Set a characteristic value of the paper thickness sensor which was set at a factory. Since the sensor detection level varies among paper thickness detection sensors, set the sensor rank information when replacing the sensor or executing DconRAM clear.	1
	Setting range: 1 to 5	
ACS-ADJ	Adjust the color recognition level at ACS mode. Adjustment method - To make it easier to recognize a black and white document, increase the setting value. - To make it easier to recognize a color document, decrease the setting value.	1
	Adjustment range: -3 to 3 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
ACS-EN	Adjust the ASC judgment area.	2
	Setting range -2 to +2 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1]	
ACS-CNT	Set the chromatic color count area for ASC.	2
	Adjustment range -2 to +2 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
ACS-EN2	Adjust the ACS judgment area. (at DF stream reading) Adjustment method When you increase the setting value, the judgment area becomes wider.	2
	Adjustment range -2 to +2 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1]	
ACS-CNT2	Adjust the count area of the chromatic color judgment pixels for ACS. Adjustment method When you increase the setting value, the judgment area becomes wider.	2
	Adjustment range -2 to +2 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
REOS-PG	Select a coefficient of Reos processing at 1200 dpi.	2
	Print a PG of which PG type is set at 55 (55 is set for COPIER>TEST>PG>TYPE). Set an area number which is likely to realize an optimum character proportion or line width at PDL 1200dpi setting in the Reos processing module based on this PG. (A PG of which PG type is set at 55 has four areas, where each image is printed.)	
	Adjustment range 0 to 4 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

COPIER>ADJUST>EXP-LED		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CLN-EXP	Set a cleaner pre-exposure current. (image area) Set the light volume of cleaner pre-exposure for an image area at printing.	1
	Setting range 5 to 10 (Unit: 10mA) Standard value 8	
CLN-EXP2	Set the cleaner pre-exposure current. (color/paper interval) Set the light volume of cleaner pre-exposure for color/paper interval.	1
	Setting range 5 to 10 (Unit: 10mA) Standard value 8	

14.P-PASCAL



Use it if the gradation fault is occurred after executing the printer PASCAL.

COPIER>ADJUST>P-PASCAL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CS10FWMY	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white actual measurement brightness value Y for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS10FWIM	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white ideal brightness value M for Color Sensor	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS10FDMM	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid actual measurement brightness value M for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS10FDMY	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid actual measurement brightness value Y for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS10FDIM	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid ideal brightness value M for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS10FDIY	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid ideal brightness value Y for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS10FHMM	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT actual measurement brightness value M for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS10FHMY	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT actual measurement brightness value Y for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS10FHIM	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT ideal brightness value M for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

COPIER>ADJUST>P-PASCAL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CS1OFHIY	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT ideal brightness value Y for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFDMK	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid actual measurement brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFDMC	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid actual measurement brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFDIK	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid ideal brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFDIC	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid ideal brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFHMK	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT actual measurement brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFHMC	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT actual measurement brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFHIK	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT ideal brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFHIC	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT ideal brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFWMK	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white actual measurement brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFWMC	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white actual measurement brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFWIK	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white ideal brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFWIC	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white ideal brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS1OFWMM	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white actual measurement brightness value M for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS1OFWIY	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white ideal brightness value Y for Color Sensor	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

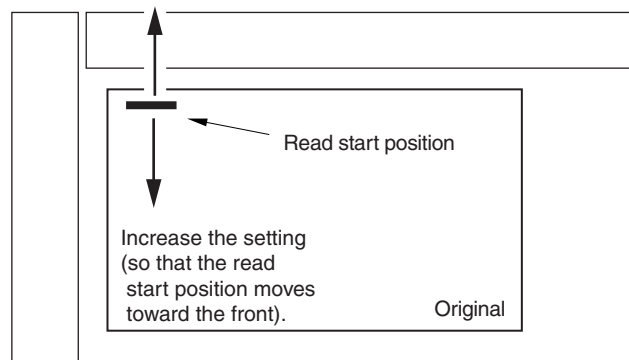
16.4.1.3 COPIER List

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. ADJ-XY

COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ADJ-X	<p>Adjust the position of the lead edge of the optical system image (the starting position to read the image in the sub scanning direction).</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When the non-image width is larger than the standard value, decrease the setting value. - When the area outside of the document is copied, increase the setting value. - When you increase the setting value by 1, the starting position to read the image moves to the trail edge by 0.1mm. (The range of reading moves to the trail edge.) - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. <p>1 to 211 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 20]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
ADJ-Y	<p>Adjust the CCD reading starting cell position (the starting position to read the image in the main scanning direction).</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When the non-image width is larger than the standard value, decrease the setting value. - When the area outside of the document is copied, increase the setting value. - When you increase the setting value by 1, the starting position to read the image moves to the front by 0.1mm. (The range of reading moves to the front.) - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. <p>1 to 211 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 79]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1

Decrease the setting
(so that the read start
position moves toward the rear).



F-16-26
T-16-103

COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ADJ-Y-DF	<p>Adjust the main scanning position for DF stream reading.</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When you increase the setting value by 1, the starting position to read the image moves to the front by 0.1mm. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. <p>1 to 211 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 109]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
ADJ-Y-FX	<p>Adjust the main scanning position for DF fixed reading.</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When you increase the setting value by 1, the starting position to read the image moves to the front by 0.1mm. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. <p>1 to 211 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 103]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1

COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ADJ-X-MG	Make a fine adjustment of sub scanning magnification for reader copyboard reading.	1
	Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. Adjustment range -50 to +50 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.	

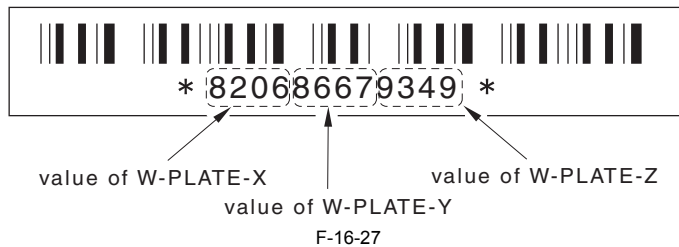
2. CCD

T-16-104

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD		
Subheading	Contents	Level
W-PLT-X/Y/Z	Enter the white level data for the white plate.	1
	Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. - When you replaced the copyboard glass, enter the numeric value indicated on the copyboard glass. Adjustment range: 1 to 9999 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: W-PLT-X=8271 : W-PLT-Y=8735 : W-PLT-Z=9418] When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.	
EC-B/G/R	Display the correction value (Blue/Green/Red) after EC coat correction was performed, and enter a value.	1
	Adjustment range: 10000 to 15000 Standard value: 10000	
CCDU-RG	Correction value of color registration between Red and Green in the sub scanning direction, which is dependent on the CCD unit	1
	Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. Adjustment range: -9 to 9 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.	
CCDU-GB	Correction value of color registration between Green and Blue in the sub scanning direction, which is dependent on the CCD unit	1
	Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. Adjustment range: -9 to 9 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
FCCDU-RG	Correction value of color registration between Red and Gree in the sub scanning direction, which is dependent on the CCD unit at factory setting	1
	Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. Adjustment range: -9 to 9 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.	
FCCDU-GB	Correction value of color registration between Gree and Blue in the sub scanning direction, which is dependent on the CCD unit at factory setting	1
	Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. Adjustment range: -9 to 9 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.	

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD		
Subheading	Contents	Level
50-RG	<p>Display an offset value of color registration (R-G) at BOOK mode / 50% reading.</p> <p>Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <p>Setting range: -256 to 256 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
50-GB	<p>Display an offset value of color registration (G-B) at BOOK mode / 50% reading.</p> <p>Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <p>Setting range: -256 to 256 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
100-RG	<p>Display an offset value of color registration (R-G) at BOOK mode / 100% reading.</p> <p>Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <p>Setting range: -256 to 256 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
100-GB	<p>Display an offset value of color registration (G-B) at BOOK mode / 100% reading.</p> <p>Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <p>Setting range: -256 to 256 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
50DF-RG	<p>Display an offset value of color registration (R-G) at ADF mode / 50% reading.</p> <p>Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <p>Setting range: -256 to 256 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
50DF-GB	<p>Display an offset value of color registration (G-B) at ADF mode / 50% reading.</p> <p>Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <p>Setting range: -256 to 256 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
100DF-RG	<p>Display an offset value of color registration (R-G) at ADF mode / 100% reading.</p> <p>Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <p>Setting range: -256 to 256 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
100DF-GB	<p>Display an offset value of color registration (G-B) at ADF mode / 100% reading.</p> <p>Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.</p> <p>Setting range: -256 to 256 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DFTAR-R	<p>Enter a shading target value (RED color) when DF is used (normal document reading position).</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When an error occurred to an image (caused by dirt on the chart, etc.) after executing COPIER>FUNCTION>CCD>DF-WLVL1/DF-WLVL2, enter a factory measurement value using this mode. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. <p>Adjustment range: 1 to 2047 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 1159]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
DFTAR-G	<p>Enter a shading target value (GREEN color) when DF is used (normal document reading position).</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When an error occurred to an image (caused by dirt on the chart, etc.) after executing COPIER>FUNCTION>CCD>DF-WLVL1/DF-WLVL2, enter a factory measurement value using this mode. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. <p>Adjustment range: 1 to 2047 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 1189]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1
DFTAR-B	<p>Enter a shading target value (BLUE color) when DF is used (normal document reading position).</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When an error occurred to an image (caused by dirt on the chart, etc.) after executing COPIER>FUNCTION>CCD>DF-WLVL1/DF-WLVL2, enter a factory measurement value using this mode. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. <p>Adjustment range: 1 to 2047 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 1209]</p> <p>When you changed the setting value for this item, write down the changed value in the service label.</p>	1



3. LASER



It is an adjustment item at the time of shipment; thus, it is not adjusted at the filed service.

T-16-105

COPIER > ADJUST > LASER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PVE-OFST	<p>Offset from the center of laser (laser exposure position)</p> <p>Setting range: -600 to 600 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p>	1
POWER	<p>Set the laser power when electric potential control is turned off.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. <p>Setting range: 0 to 255 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 160]</p>	1

4. IMG-REG

COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG		
Subheading	Contents	Level
REG-V-Y/K	<p>Make a coarse adjustment of the Y/K color writing position in the sub scanning direction.</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When you increase the value by 1, the pattern moves to the trail edge. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. <p>Adjustment range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 1 pixel) [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Reference: This mode is used to enter a factory adjustment value. Do not make an adjustment in the field.</p>	1
REG2-V-Y/K	<p>Make a coarse adjustment of the Y/K color writing position in the sub scanning direction. (the second image of the two images aligned on ITB)</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When you increase the value by 1, the pattern moves to the trail edge. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. <p>Adjustment range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 1 pixel) [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Reference: This mode is used to enter a factory adjustment value. Do not make an adjustment in the field.</p>	1
REG-V-M	<p>Make a coarse adjustment of the M color writing position in the sub scanning direction.</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When you increase the value by 1, the pattern moves to the trail edge. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. <p>Adjustment range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 1 pixel) [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Reference: This mode is used to enter a factory adjustment value. Do not make an adjustment in the field.</p>	1
REG2-V-M	<p>Make a coarse adjustment of the M color writing position in the sub scanning direction. (the second image of the two images aligned on ITB)</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When you increase the value by 1, the pattern moves to the trail edge. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the reader controller PCB or replaced the reader controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. <p>Adjustment range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 1 pixel) [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Reference: This mode is used to enter a factory adjustment value. Do not make an adjustment in the field.</p>	1

5. DENS

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SGNL-Y/M/C	<p>Toner density signal initial value (Y/M/C color)</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <p>If the RAM on the DC controller PCB is cleared or DC controller PCB is replaced, input the value on the service label.</p> <p>Adjustment range: 200 to 800 [Factory setting/value after RAM clear: 512]</p>	1
REF-Y/M/C	<p>Standard value of toner density signal (Y/M/C color)</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <p>If the RAM on the DC controller PCB is cleared or DC controller PCB is replaced, input the value on the service label.</p> <p>Adjustment range: 462 to 562 [Factory setting/value after RAM clear: 512]</p>	1
P-SGNL-Y/M/C/K	<p>Toner density signal value of Y/M/C/K color on photosensitive drum at INI execution.</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <p>If the RAM on the DC controller PCB is cleared or DC controller PCB is replaced, input the value on the service label.</p> <p>Setting range: 150 to 800 [Factory setting/value after RAM clear: 350]</p>	1
ALF-F/C/R	<p>To display/input the a value of patch sensor (Front/Center/Rear). Function to adjust the variation of patch sensor unit (front/center/rear)</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <p>If the RAM on the DC controller PCB is cleared or DC controller PCB is replaced, input the value on the service label.</p> <p>Setting range: 200 to 2000 Factory setting (service label value)/value after RAM clear: 1000</p>	1

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SGNL-L	Adjustment of toner density signal (L color) Initial value Adjustment method - When you execute 'RAM clear' for the DC controller PCB or replace the DC controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 200 to 800 [Factory setting value / Value after the execution of RAM Clear: 512]	
REF-L	Adjustment of toner density signal (L color) standard value Adjustment method - When you execute 'RAM clear' for the DC controller PCB or replace the DC controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 462 to 562 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 512]	
P-SGNL-L	Adjustment of L color toner density signal value Adjustment method - When you execute 'RAM clear' for the DC controller PCB or replace the DC controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Setting range: 150 to 800 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 350]	
P-TG-Y/M/C/K	Offset adjustment of patch detection ATR control target value (Y/M/C/K color) Adjustment method To set the offset value against the target value of patch image density for Y/M/C/K color at patch detection ATR control.	2
	Setting range: -108 to 108 [Factory setting/value after RAM clear: 0]	
P-TG-L	Adjust the offset of the target value for the patch detection ATR control (L color). Adjustment method When the patch detection ATR control is performed, set an offset value of the target value for the L color patch image density.	2
	Setting range: -108 to 108 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

6. BLANK

T-16-108

COPIER > ADJUST > BLANK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
BLANK-T	Enter an adjustment value for non-image width (lead edge). Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 1000 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 94]	
BLANK-L	Enter an adjustment value for non-image width (left edge). Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 1000 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 59]	
BLANK-R	Enter an adjustment value for non-image width (right edge). Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 1000 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 59]	
BLANK-B	Enter an adjustment value for non-image width (trail edge). Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 1000 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 47]	
BLANK-C1	Set a lead edge margin for Cassette 1. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -35 to +35 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
BLANK-C2	Set a lead edge margin for Cassette 2. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -35 to +35 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

COPIER > ADJUST > BLANK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
BLANK-C3	Set a lead edge margin for Cassette 3. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -35 to +35 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
BLANK-C4	Set a lead edge margin for Cassette 4. Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -35 to +35 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
BLANK-PD	Set a lead edge margin for the side paper deck Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the main controller PCB or replaced the SRAM PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label.	1
	Adjustment range: -35 to +35 [Factory setting value: Factory adjustment value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

7. V-CONT

T-16-109

COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT		
Subheading	Contents	Level
EPOTOEST	Electric potential offset value	1
	Adjustment range: -100 to 100 (Unit: 1V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
VRT-F-OFF	Adjustment of the L toner deposit Adjustment range: -2, -1, 0, 1, 2	1
VCONT-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the target contrast electric potential (Y/M/C/K color). Adjustment method - The larger the setting value is, the darker the density is.	2
	Adjustment range: -30 to 30 (Unit: 1V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	
VBACK-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the electric potential (Y/M/C/K color) to eliminate fogging. Adjustment method - The larger the setting value is, the more fogging can be eliminated.	2
	Adjustment range: -30 to 30 (Unit: 1V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	
VCONT-L	Adjust the target contrast electric potential (L color). Adjustment method - The larger the setting value is, the darker the density is.	2
	Adjustment range: -30 to 30 (Unit: 1V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	
VBACK-L	Adjust the electric potential (L color) to eliminate fogging. Adjustment method - The larger the setting value is, the more fogging can be eliminated.	2
	Adjustment range: -30 to 30 (Unit: 1V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	

8. PASCAL

COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
OFST-P-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the offset for the test print reading signal (Y/M/C/K color) at PASCAL control for automatic gradation correction (full correction).	1
	Adjustment method - When you set a larger value, the image density after automatic gradation correction (full correction) becomes darker.	
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0	
OFSTPLM	Not used	1
OFSTPLC	Not used	1
OFSTP2Y	Adjust the density at test print reading Keep the Y density adjustment value when test print reading was performed (Media 2)	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0	
	When replacing the reader controller, input the value written on the service label once again.	
OFSTP2M	Adjust the density at test print reading Keep the M density adjustment value when test print reading was performed (Media 2)	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0	
	When replacing the reader controller, input the value written on the service label once again.	
OFSTP2C	Adjust the density at test print reading Keep the C density adjustment value when test print reading was performed (Media 2)	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0	
	When replacing the reader controller, input the value written on the service label once again.	
OFSTP2K	Adjust the density at test print reading Keep the K density adjustment value when test print reading was performed (Media 2)	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0	
	When replacing the reader controller, input the value written on the service label once again.	
OFSTP2LM	Not used	1
OFSTP2LC	Not used	1
OFSTP3Y	Adjust the density at test print reading Keep the Y density adjustment value when test print reading was performed (Media 3)	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0	
	When replacing the reader controller, input the value written on the service label once again.	
OFSTP3M	Adjust the density at test print reading Keep the M density adjustment value when test print reading was performed (Media 3)	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0	
	When replacing the reader controller, input the value written on the service label once again.	
OFSTP3C	Adjust the density at test print reading Keep the C density adjustment value when test print reading was performed (Media 3)	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0	
	When replacing the reader controller, input the value written on the service label once again.	
OFSTP3K	Adjust the density at test print reading Keep the K density adjustment value when test print reading was performed (Media 3)	1
	Adjustment range: -128 to +128 Standard value: 0	
	When replacing the reader controller, input the value written on the service label once again.	
OFSTP3LM	Not used	1
OFSTP3LC	Not used	1

9. COLOR


COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ADJ-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the color balance for users. (Y/M/C/K color) Adjustment method - When you set a larger value, the image density becomes darker. - When you set a smaller value, the image density becomes lighter.	1
	Adjustment range: -8 to +8 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
OFST-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the density and color balance of a bright section. (Y/M/C/K color) Adjustment method - When you set a smaller value, fogging is reduced.	1
	Adjustment range: -32 to +32 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
LD-OFS-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the color balance of low-density area. (Y/M/C/K color)	2
	Adjustment range: -8 to +8 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	
MD-OFS-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the color balance of middle-density area. (Y/M/C/K color)	2
	Adjustment range: -8 to +8 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	
HD-OFS-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the color balance of high-density area. (Y/M/C/K color)	2
	Adjustment range: -8 to +8 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	

10. HV-PRI

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRIMARY	Adjust the current of the primary charging assembly.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 1200 (Unit: μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1000]	
GRID	Adjust the grid bias of the primary charging assembly.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1000 (Unit: 1V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 464]	
HVRATE-3	Adjust the parameter setting ratio of the primary charging bias / laser power. (Feeding speed: 1/3 speed)	2
	Adjustment method Adjust the parameter setting ratio of the primary charging bias / laser power at the feeding speed of 1/3 speed.	
	Setting range: 0 to 100 (This can be set in the unit of 1.) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 100]	

11. HV-TR

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRE-TR	Set a current value of the pre-transfer charging assembly. (common to Y/M/C/K)	1
	Adjustment range: -120 to 0 (Unit: 5.0 μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
2TR-TGT1 to 8	Set an offset value for the target current value of the secondary transfer ATVC. Adjustment method When the product's operation mode matches the setting of TR-ENV, TR-PPR, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP, the target current value of the secondary transfer ATVC is offset according to the setting value of this mode.	2
	Adjustment value: -10 to 10 (Unit: 2 μ A) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Reference: 6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set.	

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
2TR-SHR1 to 8	<p>Set an offset value for the paper allocation voltage of the secondary transfer ATVC.</p> <p>Adjustment method</p> <p>When the product's operation mode matches the setting of TR-ENV, TR-PPR, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP, the paper allocation voltage of the secondary transfer ATVC is offset according to the setting value of this mode.</p> <p>Adjustment value: -10 to +10 (Unit: 150V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p> <p>Reference:</p> <p>6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set.</p>	2
TR-PPR1 to 8	<p>Paper type setting items for the secondary transfer ATVC setting</p> <p>Paper type setting items for the secondary transfer ATVC setting value, which was set to handle complaints from customers in the field</p> <p>Setting range: 0 to 13</p> <p>0: Not used</p> <p>1: Plain paper: 64 to 105g</p> <p>2: Recycle paper: 64 to 105g</p> <p>3: Not used</p> <p>4: Punched paper</p> <p>5: Basis weight: 106 to 209g</p> <p>6: Basis weight: 209 to 256g</p> <p>7: Not used</p> <p>8: OHP</p> <p>9: Not used</p> <p>10: Not used</p> <p>11: Not used</p> <p>12: Postcard</p> <p>13: Label</p> <p>[Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1]</p> <p>Reference:</p> <p>6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set.</p>	2
TR-ENV1 to 8	<p>Environmental setting items for the secondary transfer ATVC setting</p> <p>Setting range: 0 to 3</p> <p>0: Not used, 1: Low humidity, 2: Normal humidity, 3: High humidity (*)</p> <p>[Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 2]</p> <p>Reference:</p> <p>6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set.</p> <p>*: Enter value of COPIER > DISPLAY > MISC > ENV-TR.</p>	2
TR-CLR1 to 8	<p>Color mode setting items for the secondary transfer ATVC setting</p> <p>1: Bk mode, 2: C mode</p> <p>[Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1]</p> <p>Reference:</p> <p>6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set.</p>	2
TR-DUP1 to 8	<p>Single or double-sided paper mode setting items for the secondary transfer ATVC setting</p> <p>Setting range: 1 to 4</p> <p>1: Single sided, 2: Automatic double sided, 3: Manual feed double sided, 4: POD deck</p> <p>[Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1]</p> <p>Reference:</p> <p>6 items of 2TR-TGT, 2TR-SHR, TR-PPR, TR-ENV, TR-CLR, and TR-DUP are treated as one set.</p>	2
1TR-TGY/M/C	<p>Adjust the target current offset for the primary transfer ATVC. (Y/M/C)</p> <p>Adjustment range: -10 - 10 (Unit: 1.0μA)</p> <p>[Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p>	2
1TR-TGK1	<p>Adjust the target current offset for the primary transfer ATVC. (Bk: single color)</p> <p>Adjustment range: -10 - 10 (Unit: 1.0μA)</p> <p>[Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p>	2
1TR-TGK4	<p>Adjust the target current offset for the primary transfer ATVC. (Bk: 4C)</p> <p>Adjustment range: -10 - 10 (Unit: 1.0μA)</p> <p>[Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p>	2
TR-INTVL	<p>Adjust the primary transfer bias between color/paper interval.</p> <p>Adjustment range: -16 to 16 (Unit: 5%)</p> <p>Standard value: 0</p>	2
1EL	<p>Set a ITB tension roller bias value.</p> <p>After monitoring is performed to the bias value by DISPLAY<HV-ST>1EL, set a bias value using this mode.</p> <p>Setting range: -2000 to 0 (Unit: V)</p> <p>[Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: -1899]</p>	2
1EL (Products whose DC cont version is Ver.15.01 or later)	<p>Execution of the secondary transfer external roller cleaning mode</p> <p>Setting range: -2000 to 0 (Unit: V)</p> <p>[Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: -1899]</p> <p>Operation method:</p> <p>(1) Replace the secondary transfer cleaning unit (FM2-8070).</p> <p>(2) Change the setting value of this service mode to "-1".</p> <p>(3) Make a test copy.</p> <p></p> <p>Initially, the cleaning operation is executed after the test copy (for approx. 40 seconds). After that, this cleaning operation is automatically executed in every 400 images.</p>	2

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
2EL	Set a bias value of the secondary transfer static eliminator.	2
	Adjustment method After monitoring is performed to the bias value by DISPLAY<HV-STS<2EL., set a bias value using this mode. Setting range: -4000 to 0 (Unit: V) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
ITR-STSI	Offset value of the target current for the primary transfer paper interval (at constant speed)	2
	Setting range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 5.0μA) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
ITR-STSI3	Offset value of the target current for the primary transfer paper interval (at 1/3 speed)	2
	Setting range: -10 to 10 (Unit: 5.0μA) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
PRE-TR-Y/M/C	Adjust the current of the pre-transfer charging assembly. (Y/M/C)	2
	Set the current offset value (Y/M/C) of the pre-transfer charging assembly. This is not used for this machine.	
POSTSW-Y/M/C/K	ON/OFF switch for the Y/M/C/K pre-transfer charging assembly	2
	Set validity or invalidity of Y/M/C/K color for the pre-transfer charging assembly. Setting value 0: Invalid, 1: Valid [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: Y/M/C:0, K:1]	
ITR-TGL1	Offset adjustment of the target electric current at the primary transfer ATVC (single L color)	2
	Setting range: -10 to 10 Unit: μA [Factory setting value / Value after the execution of RAM Clear: 0]	
ITR-TGL5	Offset adjustment of the target electric current at the primary transfer ATVC (clear color when using 5 colors)	2
	Adjustment range: -10 to 10 Unit: 1.0μA [Factory setting value / Value after the execution of RAM Clear: 0]	

12. FEED-ADJ

T-16-114

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ		
Subheading	Contents	Level
REGIST	Adjust the timing of turning ON the registration roller clutch.	1
	Adjustment method - When you increase the value by 1, the image moves toward the lead edge of the paper by 0.1mm. - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the DC controller PCB or replaced the DC controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. Adjustment range: -50 to 50 (Unit: 0.1mm) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
ADJ-REFE	Adjust the horizontal registration for double sided copy. (for factory use)	1
	Adjustment method When you increase the value, the second side image moves to the rear side. (When you increase the value by 1, the image moves by 0.1mm.) Adjustment range: -100 to 100 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
BLK-SML2	Adjust the right and left margins on the second side of a small-size sheet.	1
	When you increase the value, the left and right margins on the second side become longer. (When you increase the value by 1, the margins increase by 0.1mm.) Adjustment range: -50 to 50 (Unit: 0.1mm) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: -15]	
RVS-FDI	Adjust the reverse point.	2
	Adjustment range: -10 to +10 (Unit: 1mm) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
RVS-DUP	Adjust the reverse point for double sided copy.	2
	Adjustment range: -10 to 10 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
LOOP-T2	Adjust the registration loop volume when feeding thick paper.	2
	Adjustment method When you decrease the setting value (loop volume of the registration roller), a noise is reduced. However, when you decrease the loop volume excessively, the margin size may change or it may cause a skew. Adjustment range: -10 to +10 (mm) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
REG-SPD	Make a fine adjustment of the registration motor speed at constant speed.	2
	Change the registration speed at constant speed in the range of + or - 10 scales against the default value. Setting range: -10 to 10 Standard value: 0	
REG-SPD2	Make a fine adjustment of the registration motor speed at 1/3 speed.	2
	Change the registration speed at 1/3 speed in the range of + or - 10 scales against the default value. Setting range: -10 to 10 Standard value: 0	

13. CST-ADJ

T-16-115

COPIER > ADJUST > CST-ADJ		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MF-A4R	Enter the basic value of the paper width for the manual feed tray. (A4R) Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the DC controller PCB or replaced the DC controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. - When you replace the paper width detection VR or newly register a value, execute FUNCTION>CST in the Service Mode.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 255 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 125]	
MF-A6R	Enter the basic value of the paper width for the manual feed tray. (A6R) Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the DC controller PCB or replaced the DC controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. - When you replace the paper width detection VR or newly register a value, execute FUNCTION>CST in the Service Mode.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 255 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 193]	
MF-A4	Enter the basic value of the paper width for the manual feed tray. (A4) Adjustment method - When you executed 'RAM clear' for the DC controller PCB or replaced the DC controller PCB, enter the value indicated in the service label. - When you replace the paper width detection VR or newly register a value, execute FUNCTION>CST in the Service Mode.	1
	Adjustment range: 0 to 255 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 42]	

14. MISC

T-16-116

COPIER > ADJUST > MISC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SEG-ADJ	Adjust the separation level for characters and photos at the character/photo/map mode. Adjustment method - To make it easier to recognize a photo document, increase the setting value. - To make it easier to recognize a character document, decrease the setting value.	1
	Adjustment range: -4 to 4 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
K-ADJ	Adjust the black recognition level for black character processing. Adjustment method To make it easier to recognize black color, increase the setting value.	1
	Adjustment range: -3 to 3 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
DF-S-RK	Set a characteristic value of the paper thickness sensor which was set at a factory. Since the sensor detection level varies among paper thickness detection sensors, set the sensor rank information when replacing the sensor or executing DconRAM clear.	1
	Setting range: 1 to 5	
ACS-ADJ	Adjust the color recognition level at ACS mode. Adjustment method - To make it easier to recognize a black and white document, increase the setting value. - To make it easier to recognize a color document, decrease the setting value.	1
	Adjustment range: -3 to 3 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
WT-ER-LV	Set the threshold value to display the waste toner FULL error. When the number of sheets specified by WT-ER-LV is exceeded, an error (E013) is displayed.	1
	This mode is not used for this machine.	
WT-FL-LM	Set the threshold value to display the waste toner FULL warning. Set the threshold value for the detection of a waste toner box error.	1
	This mode is not used for this machine.	
ACS-EN	Adjust the ASC judgment area.	2
	Setting range: -2 to +2 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1]	
ACS-CNT	Set the chromatic color count area for ASC.	2
	Adjustment range: -2 to +2 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
ACS-EN2	Adjust the ACS judgment area. (at DF stream reading) Adjustment method When you increase the setting value, the judgment area becomes wider.	2
	Adjustment range: -2 to +2 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1]	

COPIER > ADJUST > MISC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ACS-CNT2	Adjust the count area of the chromatic color judgment pixels for ACS. Adjustment method When you increase the setting value, the judgment area becomes wider.	2
	Adjustment range: -2 to +2 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
REOS-PG	Select a coefficient of Reos processing at 1200 dpi.	2
	Print a PG of which PG type is set at 55 (55 is set for COPIER>TEST>PG>TYPE). Set an area number which is likely to realize an optimum character proportion or line width at PDL 1200dpi setting in the Reos processing module based on this PG. (A PG of which PG type is set at 55 has four areas, where each image is printed.) Adjustment range: 0 to 4 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

15. EXP-LED

T-16-117

COPIER > ADJUST > EXP-LED		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CLN-EXP	Set a cleaner pre-exposure current. (image area) Set the light volume of cleaner pre-exposure for an image area at printing.	1
	Setting range: 5 to 10 (Unit: 10mA) Standard value: 8	
CLN-EXP2	Set the cleaner pre-exposure current. (color/paper interval) Set the light volume of cleaner pre-exposure for color/paper interval.	1
	Setting range: 5 to 10 (Unit: 10mA) Standard value: 8	
PR-EXP	Set a current of the pre-exposure LED when electric potential control is turned off. (Feeding speed: 1/1 speed)	2
	Setting range: 5 to 10 (Unit: 10mA) Standard value: 8	

16.P-PASCAL



Use it if the gradation fault is occurred after executing the printer PASCAL.

T-16-118

COPIER > ADJUST > P-PASCAL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CSIOFWMY	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white actual measurement brightness value Y for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CSIOFWIM	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white ideal brightness value M for Color Sensor	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CSIOFDM	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid actual measurement brightness value M for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CSIOFDY	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid actual measurement brightness value Y for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CSIOFDIM	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid ideal brightness value M for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CSIOFDIY	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid ideal brightness value Y for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CSIOFHMM	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT actual measurement brightness value M for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CSIOFHMY	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT actual measurement brightness value Y for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CSIOFHIM	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT ideal brightness value M for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

COPIER > ADJUST > P-PASCAL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CS1OFHIY	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT ideal brightness value Y for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFDMK	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid actual measurement brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFDMC	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid actual measurement brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFDIK	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid ideal brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFDIC	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid ideal brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFHMK	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT actual measurement brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFHMC	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT actual measurement brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFHIK	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT ideal brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFHIC	Adjust the main unit offset of the HT ideal brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFWMK	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white actual measurement brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFWMC	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white actual measurement brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFWIK	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white ideal brightness value K for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS2OFWIC	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white ideal brightness value C for Color Sensor 2.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS1OFWMM	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white actual measurement brightness value M for Color Sensor 1.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	
CS1OFWIY	Adjust the main unit offset of the solid white ideal brightness value Y for Color Sensor	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1023 Standard value: 0	

16.4.2 FEEDER

16.4.2.1 FEEDER List

imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+

T-16-119

FEEDER>ADJSUT		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DOCST	Adjust the position of the lead edge of a document image. Adjustment method When you increase the setting value, the lead edge timing becomes slow.	1
	Adjustment range -7 to +7 (Unit: 0.5mm)	

FEEDER>ADJSUT		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DOCST-M	<p>Adjust the document stop position when a feeder is used. (for manual feeding)</p> <hr/> <p>Setting range -7 to +7 (Unit: 0.5mm)</p> <p>Remarks The procedure to adjust positions is shown below. When each item is executed, the machine feeds the paper set on the feeder document tray and stops it on the copyboard glass. Visually check this status, and make an adjustment so that the document stops at a correct position.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Press each item to highlight it. 2) Place a sheet of A3-size paper on the document tray. 3) Enter numeric values using numeric keys. <p>- When you increase the value, the paper moves toward the trail edge. - When you decrease the value, the paper moves toward the lead edge.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4) Press the OK key. The paper placed on the document tray is fed and stops on the copyboard glass. 5) Open the feeder slowly, and check the position where the paper stopped. After checking it, close the feeder slowly without removing the paper. 6) Press the OK key. The paper on the copyboard glass is delivered to the document tray of the feeder. 	1
LA-SPEED	<p>Adjust the document feeding speed for feeder stream reading. When you increase the setting value, the speed becomes slow. (The image is shortened.)</p> <hr/> <p>Adjustment range: -30 to 30 (Unit: 0.1%)</p>	1
STRD-S	<p>Adjust the optical system stop position at stream reading mode for small size document.</p> <hr/> <p>Setting range -7 to +7 (Unit: 0.5mm)</p> <p>Remark: The position of printed image is changed. By setting the value larger, the image shifts toward the front. By setting the value smaller, the image shifts toward the rear.</p>	1
STRD-L	<p>Adjust the optical system stop position at stream reading mode for large size document.</p> <hr/> <p>Setting range -7 to +7 (Unit: 0.5mm)</p> <p>Remark: The position of printed image is changed. By setting the value larger, the image shifts toward the front. By setting the value smaller, the image shifts toward the rear.</p>	1
RVM-SPD	<p>Make a fine adjustment of the feeding speed of the reverse motor which drives the registration roller.</p> <p>When you perform synchronous feeding with the belt and registration at stream reading DF, it is necessary to set a constant speed for the belt and registration.</p> <hr/> <p>Usage Make this adjustment when there is a difference in speed between the belt and registration caused by roller friction, etc., and a jam occurs. Setting range: -30 to 30 (Unit: 0.1%)</p>	2

16.4.3 SORTER

16.4.3.1 SORTER List

imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+

T-16-120

SORTER>ADJUDT		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PNCH-HLE	Adjust the length between the paper edge and the position of a punched hole.	1
	Setting range -4 to 2 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

16.5 FUNCTION (Operation/Inspection Mode)

16.5.1 COPIER

16.5.1.1 COPIER List

imagePRESS C1

1. INSTALL

T-16-121

COPIER>FUNCTION>INSTALL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
STIR-Y/M/C/K	Stir developer in the developing unit (Y/M/C/K). Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts.	1
STIR-4	Stir four-color developer in order. Operation method Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts.	1
SPLY-H-Y/M/C/K	Perform initial supply from the toner container (Y/M/C/K) to the toner buffer. Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts.	1
SPLY-H-4	Perform initial supply from the four-color toner cartridge to the toner buffer. Operation method Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts.	1
CARD	Make a setting for installation of the card reader. 1 to 2001 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Enter the card number and press the OK key. (Numbers for the number of cards specified by COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CARD-RNG in Level 2 starting from the entered number are available.) The card control information (a section ID and password) is initialized.	1
KEY	Recognize the control key function. 0: Do not recognize the control key function. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] 1: Recognize the control key function. 1) Select COPIER>INSTALL>KEY and enter "1". 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. (The control key function is recognized.)	1

COPIER>FUNCTION>INSTALL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
INISSET-Y/M/C	<p>Initial installation of the Y/M/C color developer</p> <p>Simultaneously execute a series of operation required for initial installation of the Y/M/C color developer.</p> <p>Operation method</p> <p>1) Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Start the operation. - Execute countdown. <p>2) After the operation completes, OK is displayed.</p> <p>The settings executed by this mode are shown below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Electric potential control - Primary transfer ATVC - Development idling (adjustment of the charging volume of the developer) - Correction of the optical volume of the patch detection sensor (adjustment of the optical volume of the patch detection sensor) - Transfer cleaning ACVC (determination of high pressure of the transfer cleaning upstream/downstream brush) - Optical ATR initial setting (initial setting of noncontact optical ATR) - Initial setting of patch electric potential control (initial setting of patch electric potential) - Initial setting of patch detection (initial setting of patch detection ATR) 	1
AINR-OFF	<p>Make a setting to invalidate the initial multiple rotations for initial installation.</p> <p>This is a mode to make a setting to invalidate the initial multiple rotations for initial installation. This mode is executed so that the image formation sequence does not operate by a patch or Dmax/Dhalf in the initial multiple rotation sequence before initial installation is performed and does not damage and wear the inside of the machine. When the initial setting for color toner (FUNCTION>INSTALL>INISSET-4) is normally completed, the invalidation of initial multiple rotations is automatically released. (This prevents a failure to turn the switch back to the original position.) When the initial setting is not completed, the invalidation is not released.</p> <p>Setting range</p> <p>0: Initial multiple rotations are valid.</p> <p>1: Initial multiple rotations are invalid.</p> <p>This is an item to control Dcon.</p> <p>[Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p>	1
E-RDS	<p>Make a setting for switching the use of E-RDS.</p> <p>Set if using E-RDS (Embedded-RDS) to send device information of a device counter, failure, or consumables to a sales company's server via SOAP protocol, or not.</p> <p>Setting value</p> <p>0: Do not use E-RDS.</p> <p>1: Use E-RDS.</p> <p>[Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]</p>	1
RGW-PORT	<p>Specify a port number for a sales company's server used for E-RDS.</p> <p>Setting range</p> <p>1 to 65535</p> <p>[Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 443]</p>	1
COM-TEST	<p>Check the connection to a sales company's server used for E-RDS.</p> <p>Try to connect to the sales company's server. A judgment is made whether the connection has succeeded or not, and the result is displayed as OK or NG.</p> <p>Result</p> <p>OK: Connection is possible.</p> <p>NG: Connection is not possible.</p>	1
COM-LOG	<p>Display the details of the communication test result with a sales company's server used for E-RDS.</p> <p>The screen is switched to the one displaying information of the error that has occurred in connection to a sales company's server. The error occurrence date, time, error code, and error information are displayed.</p> <p>The maximum number of logs: 30</p> <p>Error information: 128 characters max. (NULL is not included.)</p>	1

COPIER>FUNCTION>INSTALL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
RGW-ADR	Specify a URL for a sales company's server used for E-RDS. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010]	1
INISSET-4	<p>Automatic initial setting mode for installation of the main unit</p> <p>Simultaneously execute a series of operation required for initial installation of each color developer. Since there are many working items required for initial installation of a color developer, this mode is provided to minimize a mistake by a serviceman or improve his/her work efficiency.</p> <p>The settings executed by this mode are shown below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Electric potential control - Primary transfer ATVC - Development idling (adjustment of the charging volume of the developer) - Correction of the optical volume of the patch detection sensor (adjustment of the optical volume of the patch detection sensor) - Transfer cleaning ACVC (determination of high pressure of the transfer cleaning upstream/downstream brush) - Optical ATR initial setting (initial setting of noncontact optical ATR) - Initial setting of patch electric potential control (initial setting of patch electric potential) - Initial setting of patch detection (initial setting of patch detection ATR) <p>Operation method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Start the operation. - Execute countdown. 2) After the operation completes, OK is displayed. <p>Remark</p> <p>Use at initial installation of the machine unit. Set '0' at AINR-OFF: Turn ON the initial multiple rotation execute SW</p>	1
INISSET-K	<p>Initial installation of the k-color developer</p> <p>Simultaneously execute a series of operation required for initial installation of the k-color developer.</p> <p>Operation method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Start the operation. - Execute countdown. 2) After the operation completes, OK is displayed. 	1
INIT-Y/M/C	Read the initial value of the toner density signal (SGNL, REF) for Y/M/C color. Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts.	2
INIT-3	Read the initial value of the toner density signal (SGNL, REF) for 3 colors (Y/M/C). Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts.	2
CLV-SET	Make a setting for the color guarantee mode (Not function at this machine.)	2
CLV-SEND	Send color guarantee information. (Not function at this machine.)	2

2. LASER

T-16-122

COPIER>FUNCTION>LASER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
POWER	Turn on the laser output for laser power adjustment. Pressing an item highlights it. Pressing the OK key starts the operation. Press the Stop key to turn it off.	1

3. DPC

T-16-123

COPIER>FUNCTION>DPC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DPC	Control the electric potential measurement of the photosensitive drum. Pressing an item highlights it. Pressing the OK key executes the operation. The operation stops automatically.	1
OFST	Adjust the offset for the electric potential measurement circuit of the photosensitive drum. Pressing an item highlights it. Pressing the OK key executes the operation. The operation stops automatically.	1
DRM-RSET	Forcibly execute the drum replacement mode. When replacing a drum, forcibly reset the laser power offset value which has been changed according to the drum durability and execute initial multiple rotations.	1

4. CST

T-16-124

COPIER>FUNCTION>CST		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MF-A4R, MF-A6R, MF-A4	Register a basic value of the paper width for the manual feeder (DADF). Width for A4R: 210mm, Width for A6R: 105mm, Width for A4: 297mm - To make a fine adjustment after a basic value is registered, execute COPIER>ADJUST>CST-ADJ>MF-A4, RMF-A6R, MF-A4. Operation method 1) Set A4R-size paper in the manual feeder, and set the size guide to A4R width. 2) Select "MF-A4R" in this service mode to highlight it and press the OK key. The value is registered after automatic adjustment is performed. 3) Register basic values for A6R and A4 sizes in the same manner as mentioned in 1) and 2).	1

5. CLEANING

T-16-125

COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEANING		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TBLT-CLN	Clean the intermediate transfer belt. Improve the faulty image by removing foreign matters (oil in fingerprints, etc., paper dust, etc.) attached to the intermediate transfer belt. Operation method 1) Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts. Cleaning continues for approximately 30 seconds and completes automatically.	1
WIRE-CLN	Clean all charging wires at the same time. (five round trip) Operation method 1) Select an item and press the OK key. - The displayed message is changed to ACTIVE and cleaning of wires starts. 2) After the operation completes, OK is displayed and cleaning stops automatically.	1
TB-INSD	Clean the inside of the ITB. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. The operation starts. The item flashes while cleaning is performed, and cleaning completes after approximately 15 minutes.	1

COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEANING		
Subheading	Contents	Level
WIRE-EX	Clean the primary charging wire / pre-transfer charging wire. (one round trip) Regular cleaning of the charging wire is performed for five round trips (cleaning period: approx. 2 minutes). In this mode, cleaning of the charging wire is performed for one round trip (cleaning period: approx. 20 seconds). Operation method 1) Select an item and press the OK key. - The displayed message is changed to ACTIVE and cleaning of wires starts. 2) After the operation completes, OK is displayed and cleaning stops automatically.	1
2TR-CLN	Clean the secondary transfer roller. Operation method Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key to start operation. Cleaning stops automatically.	1
FX-CLN-E	Refresh the fixing roller. Details of control When you copy or print more than 100 sheets of narrow paper and then copy or print wide paper, a thin glossy line sometimes appears in parallel with the feeding direction with the same width as the paper used previously. (For example, when you use A3 paper after using A4R paper) (For US, when you use 12x18 size paper after using 11x17 size paper) In this case, you may be able to minimize the glossy line by refreshing the fixing roller. Operation method Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key to start operation. The operation stops automatically.	2

6. FIXING

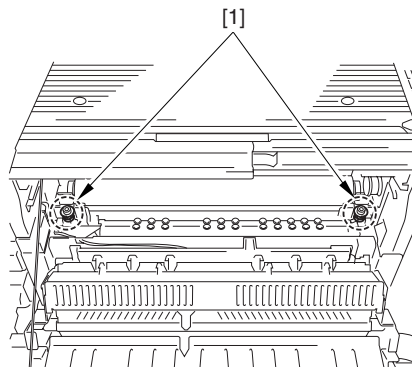
T-16-126

COPIER>FUNCTION>FIXING		
Subheading	Contents	Level
NIP-CHK	Perform output for automatic measurement of the fixing nip width. Operation method 1) Set a double sided A4 (LTR) size coated paper with the basis weight of 106 to 128gsm in the manual feed tray. 2) Register the paper type for the manual feed tray as "double sided coated paper with the basis weight of 106 to 128gsm". (This is displayed when paper is set in the manual feed tray.) 3) Select a service mode and press the OK key. (The paper set in the manual feed tray is fed.) 4) The paper fed stops while being caught by fixing rollers, and is delivered after approximately 10 seconds. 5) After the operation completes, perform test print. (COPIER/TEST/PG/TYPE(6))	1



NIP-CHK is a service mode to check the fixing nip width.

High accuracy adjustment is performed to the pressure of the pressure roller of this machine at factory setting, and no adjustment can be performed in the field. Do not turn the two hexagonal bolts [1] on the delivery side of the fixing assembly. If you turn them by mistake, turn them back to the original position.



F-16-28

7. PANEL

T-16-127

COPIER>FUNCTION>PANEL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
LCD-CHK	Check the blank dot area in the LCD display. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key to start operation. The front side of the touch panel lights in white - black - red - green - blue colors in order repeatedly. (Make sure this condition.) 2) Press the Stop key to stop the operation. (Press the Clear key for a printer mode.)	1
LED-CHK	Check the LED light in the control panel. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key to start operation. The LEDs light up in order. 2) Press LED-OFF to stop the operation.	1
LED-OFF	Check the LED light in the control panel. Operation method 1) Select this item to stop the LED-CHK operation.	1
KEY-CHK	Check the input of keys. Operation method 1) Select "KEY-CHK" to display a number/name of the entered key. 2) Press a key to be checked. If there is no problem, the relevant character is displayed in the touch panel. (Refer to an attached table.) 3) Select "KEY-CHK" again. The checking stops.	1
TOUCHCHK	Adjust the coordinate position of the analog touch panel. Operation method - Adjust the pressing position in the touch panel to the LCD coordinate position - When you replaced the LCD, execute this service mode. 1) Select "TOUCHCHK" to highlight it, and press the OK key. 2) Press the nine "+"s displayed in the touch panel in order. Adjustment is completed.	1

- Numbers and names of input keys

T-16-128

Key	Indication on the screen
0 to 9, #, *	0 to 9, #, *
Reset	RESET
Stop	STOP
User mode	USER
Start	START
Power save	STAND BY
Clear	CLEAR
ID	ID
Help	?
Counter Check	BILL

8. PART-CHK

T-16-129

COPIER>FUNCTION>PART-CHK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CL	Specify a clutch to be checked. (Range: 1 to 10) Operation method 1) Select an item. 2) Enter the code of a clutch using numeric keys. 1: Development clutch (CL1) 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press CL-ON and check the operation.	1

COPIER>FUNCTION>PART-CHK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CL-ON	<p>Start checking the operation of a clutch.</p> <p>Operation method</p> <p>1) Select an item and press the OK key. ON/OFF operation is repeated in the following pattern. ON for 0.5 seconds --> OFF for 5 seconds --> ON for 0.5 seconds --> OFF for 5 seconds --> OFF</p>	1
FAN	<p>Specify a fan to be checked. (Range: 1 to 30)</p> <p>1) Select an item. 2) Enter the code of a fan using numeric keys.</p> <p>1. FM1: Primary charging intake fan 2. FM2: Primary charging exhaust fan 3. FM3: Feeding fan (front) 4. FM4: Feeding fan (rear) 5. FM5: Fixing exhaust fan 6. FM6: Fixing lower front fan 7. FM7: ITB cleaning brush roller cooling fan 9. FM9: Power supply fan 10. FM10: Delivery upper cooling fan 1 11. FM11: Fixing belt cooling fan 1 12. FM12: Fixing belt cooling fan 2 13. FM13: Fixing belt cooling fan 3 14. FM14: Fixing belt cooling fan 4 15. FM15: Delivery lower cooling fan 16. FM16: Left exhaust fan 17. FM17: Post-fixing lower fan 18. FM18: Primary exhaust assist fan 19. FM19: Delivery cooling fan 2 20. FM20: Reverse cooling fan 21. FM21: Buffer cooling fan 22. FM22: Main unit rear fan 23. FM23: Fixing upper exhaust fan 24. FM25: OP power supply 1 fan 25. FM26: OP power supply 2 fan</p> <p>3) Press the OK key. 4) Press FAN-ON and check the operation.</p>	1
FAN-ON	<p>Start the fan operation.</p> <p>Operation method</p> <p>1) Select this item and press the OK key to start the following operation. ON in full speed for 10 seconds --> End</p>	1

COPIER>FUNCTION>PART-CHK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MTR	<p>Specify a motor to be checked. (Range: 1 to 55) Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Enter the code of a motor using numeric keys.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. M1: Polygon motor 2. M2: Drum / ITB motor 3. M3: Developing motor 4. M4: Rotation developer drive motor 5. M5: Multi pre-registration drive motor 6. M6: Registration drive motor 7. M7: External delivery motor 8. M8: Reverse motor for double sided copy 9. M9: Left motor for double sided copy 10. M11: Right motor for double sided copy 11. M12: Vertical path 1 motor 12. M13: Vertical path 2 motor 13. M14: Vertical path 3 & 4 motor 14. M15: Cassette 1 & 2 pickup motor 15. M16: Pickup 3 & 4 motor 16. M17: Secondary transfer roller detachment/attachment motor 17. M18: ITB cleaning brush roller detachment/attachment motor 18. M19: Primary wire cleaning motor 19. M20: Drum/post cleaning motor 20. M21: Horizontal registration motor 21. M22: Cassette 1 lifter motor 22. M23: Cassette 2 lifter motor 23. M24: Cassette 3 lifter motor 24. M25: Cassette 4 lifter motor 25. M26: ITB cleaning brush roller drive motor 26. M27: Cartridge motor Y 27. M28: Cartridge motor M 28. M29: Cartridge motor C 29. M30: Cartridge motor K 30. M31: Cartridge motor LM 31. M32: Cartridge motor LC 32. M33: Cleaning web detachment/attachment motor 33. M34: Fixing belt detachment/attachment motor 34. M35: Fixing belt displacement control motor 35. M36: Fixing belt drive motor (detachment) 36. M37: Secondary transfer roller drive motor 37. M38: Fixing motor 38. M39: Hopper motor Y 39. M40: Hopper motor M 40. M41: Hopper motor C 41. M42: Hopper motor K 42. M43: Hopper motor LM 43. M44: Hopper motor LC 44. M45: External heating detachment/attachment motor 45. M46: Feeding motor 46. M48: Decurler feeding 1 motor 47. M49: Decurler feeding 2 motor 48. M50: Decurler input volume adjustment 1 motor 49. M51: Decurler input volume adjustment 2 motor <p>3) Press the OK key. 4) Press MTR-ON and check the operation.</p>	1
MTR-ON	<p>Start the motor operation. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. ON for 5 seconds --> End</p>	1
SL	<p>Specify a solenoid to be checked. (Range: 1 to 15) Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Enter the code of a solenoid using numeric keys.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. SL1: Multi lifting plate SL 2. SL2: Reverse roller gap SL 3. SL3: Delivery flapper SL 4. SL4: Cassette 1 pickup SL 5. SL5: Cassette 2 pickup SL 6. SL6: Cassette 3 pickup SL 7. SL7: Cassette 4 pickup SL 8. SL8: Patch detection shutter SL 9. SL9: Optical ATR shutter SL 10. SL10: Color sensor SL 11. SL11: Web SL <p>3) Press the OK key. 4) Press SL-ON and check the operation.</p>	1

COPIER>FUNCTION>PART-CHK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SL-ON	Start the solenoid operation. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. ON/OFF operation is repeated in the following pattern. ON for 0.5 seconds --> OFF for 5 seconds --> ON for 0.5 seconds --> OFF for 5 seconds --> OFF	1

9. CLEAR

T-16-130


COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ERR	(Target error codes: E000/E001/E002/E003/E005) Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power.	1
DC-CON	RAM clear for the DC controller PCB The RAM data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. Operation method 1) Print out the service mode data by COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>P-PRINT. 2) Select this item and press the OK key. 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power. 4) Enter the data printed by P-PRINT if necessary.	1
R-CON	RAM clear for the reader controller PCB The setting value is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. Operation method 1) Print out the service mode data by COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>P-PRINT. 2) Select this item and press the OK key. 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power. 4) Enter the data printed by P-PRINT if necessary.	1
JAM-HIST	Clear the jam history. The jam history is cleared after the OK key is pressed. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
ERR-HIST	Clear the error code history. The error code history is cleared after the OK key is pressed. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
PWD-CLR	Clear the password of the "system administrator" specified in the user mode. The password is cleared after the OK key is pressed. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
ADRS-BK	Clear the address book data. The address book data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. 1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power.	1
CNT-MCON	Clear the service counter executed for the main controller PCB (main). (Refer to the section of COUNTER mode for the target counters.) The counter value is cleared after the OK key is pressed. 1) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
CNT-DCON	Clear the following service counter executed for the DC controller PCB.(Refer to the section of COUNTER mode for the target counters.) The counter value is cleared after the OK key is pressed. 1) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
OPTION	Set the setting value of a service mode (OPTION) back to a default value (a value after RAM clear is executed). The setting value is cleared after the OK key is pressed. The data of the main controller, DC controller, and reader controller is cleared. Operation method 1) Print out the service mode data by COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT. 2) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
MMI	Clear the following user mode setting values. - Backup data for the copy control panel (user setting value) - Backup data for common settings (user setting value) - Various backup data excluding FAX (user setting value) The setting value is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power.	1

COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MN-CON	<p>RAM clear for the SRAM board of the main controller PCB</p> <p>Operation method</p> <p>1) Select this item and press the OK key.</p> <p>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power.</p> <p>- The RAM data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.</p> <p>- When this mode is executed, all the data in the SRAM board is initialized.</p> <p>The file control information for a hard disk is also initialized, and image data in the hard disk cannot be read. Before you execute this mode, be sure to inform a user that all images in the box are going to be initialized and receive prior approval from him/her.</p> <p>1) Print out the service mode data by COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT.</p> <p>2) Select this item and press the OK key. The machine is automatically activated and displays a message indicating "please turn on the main power again".</p> <p>3) Turn OFF/ON the main power.</p>	1
CARD	<p>Clear the data related to the card ID (section).</p> <p>The data related to the card ID is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.</p> <p>Operation method</p> <p>1) Select this item and press the OK key.</p> <p>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power.</p>	1
W-TN-CLR	<p>Clear the warning and error indicating waste toner box full.</p> <p>After replacing the waste toner box, clear the warning/error and the counter detecting waste toner box full.</p> <p>Method of Operation</p> <p>Select the item to highlight, and press the OK key to start operation.</p>	1
LANG-ERR	<p>Clear the language-related error.</p> <p>When a language-related error has occurred after switching a default language to a different one, use this mode to eliminate the error and set the language to a default language.</p>	1
ERDS-DAT	<p>Clear the SRAM data of E-RDS.</p> <p>Set the SCM value stored in the SRAM of E-RDS back to the factory setting value.</p> <p>The SRAM data is cleared after the OK key is pressed.</p> <p>Operation method</p> <p>1) Select this item and press the OK key.</p> <p>2) When the data is cleared normally, OK is displayed.</p> <p>Reference:</p> <p>- Always use this mode to execute the bootable version-up in the environment where E-RDS is used. The usage of SRAM in E-RDS differs depending on the version. Data mismatch occurs if SRAM data is not cleared.</p> <p>- The items related to E-RDS stored in the SRAM are ON/OFF of E-RDS, port number of a server, SOAP URL of a server, and schedule of communication with a server (how often is the data obtained?), etc.</p> <p>The following setting values are cleared.</p> <p>- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS</p> <p>- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RGW-PORT</p> <p>- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RGW-ADR</p> <p>- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > COM-LOG</p>	1
SND-STUP	<p>Perform initialization of the transmission reading setting. (Execute this mode when switching a language setting.)</p>	2

COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CA-KEY	<p>Perform batch deletion of the CA certificate and key pair. When a serviceman replaces or disposes of a device, he/she must perform batch deletion of the CA certificate and key pair. The CA certificate is used by MEAP application which uses E-RDS, and SSL client connection. The key pair is used by IPP, RUI, and MEAP SSL function.</p> <p>- If this operation is not performed when a device is replaced or disposed of, the CA certificate and key pair additionally registered by a user remains in the HDD, which causes a security problem. Therefore, a serviceman must perform this operation. - Be sure to make sure that OK is displayed after the operation is performed. When NG is displayed, the CA certificate and key pair may have not been normally deleted. Therefore, it is necessary to surely delete them by initializing the HDD, etc. - When this operation is performed, the SSL server certificate and key pair additionally registered by a user are also deleted. Therefore, do not perform this operation carelessly. If you have deleted the data by mistake, you need to ask the user to reinstall the SSL server certificate. If no certificate is additionally installed by a user, the setting values are initialized to be the same as the factory setting, and there is no impact to the user.</p> <p>Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) When the data is cleared normally, OK is displayed. 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power.</p> <p>Reference: When the power is turned OFF/ON, the CA certificate and key pair are extracted from the archive (/BOOTDEV/KCMNG) and become available for the function mentioned above (E-RDS/SSL function).</p>	2
KEY-CLR	<p>Clear the encryption key in the HDD encryption board.</p> <p>Clear the key in order to replace the encryption key for the HDD encryption board (security kit). Select KEY-CLR and press the OK key to clear the encryption key. When this operation is performed and the main power is turned OFF/ON, the processing for installation of the encryption board is activated, and new encryption key is created.</p> <p>When this operation is performed, all the data in the HDD cannot be used. Therefore, when the main power is turned OFF/ON, it is necessary to perform procedures starting from HDD formatting.</p>	2

COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-R		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SCANLAMP	Perform lighting operation of the scanning lamp. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. The scanning lamp lights up for three seconds.	1

11. MISC-P

COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P		
Subheading	Contents	Level
P-PRINT	Print out the service mode setting value. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to perform printing. It takes approximately 15 seconds before printing starts.	1
P-PRINT	Print out the service mode standard value Execute the print out of the service mode standard value. Left/right margin adjustment value (COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > BLK-SML2) for the second side on small size is added as an output item. When executing P-PRINT with a printer model, an item for second-side left/right margin adjustment value on small size was missing. Thus, this item is added in this change.	1
	 This item applies to the upgraded device or later (DCON Ver11.03 or later, Cont Ver24.04 or later).	
KEY-HIST	Print out the control panel key input history. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to perform printing.	1
HIST-PRT	Print out the jam history and error history. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to perform printing.	1
TRS-DATA	Transfer the data received in memory to the box. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to perform printing.	1
USER-PRT	Print out the user mode list. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to perform printing. It takes approximately three seconds before printing is performed.	1
LBL-PRNT	Print out the service label. Operation method 1) Set the A4/LTR paper in Cassette 1. 2) Select this item. 3) Press the OK key to perform printing. It takes approximately 15 seconds before printing is performed.	1
PRE-EXP	Check the lighting operation of the post-exposure lamp (LED). Operation method 1) Press an item to highlight it. 2) Press the OK key. Each operation is performed for a few seconds and stops automatically. 3) Press the OK key to perform printing. Reference When a failure occurs to the photosensitive drum caused by the lighting operation of the post-exposure lamp, rotate the drum.	1

COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P		
Subheading	Contents	Level
D-PRINT	Print out the service mode (DISPLAY). This is a mode to print out only the items displayed in the DISPLAY service mode (excluding items output by P-PRINT/LBL-PRINT/HIST-PRINT and ALARM). Operation method 1) When selecting the item to highlight and pressing OK key, the operation is started.	1
IATVC-EX	Forcibly execute the primary ATVC. Execute this mode when replacing the ITB or ITB unit. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to start operation. The operation completes after approximately one minute.	1
ENV-PRT	Print out the log of changes in temperature/humidity in the machine and fixing temperature. Print out the changes in temperature/humidity in the machine and fixing temperature (center) as log data based on the monitor output from the environmental sensor and noncontact thermistor.	1
I-BD-OFF	Separate the ITB cleaning brush roller. Separate the ITB cleaning brush roller from ITB.	1
PJH-P-1	Print out the print job history with detailed information. (for 100 jobs) Print out the history of 100 jobs stored in the copier main unit with detailed information. [Operation] Press the item to highlight it, and press the OK key to perform printing. [Remarks] The print job history is printed out with detailed information which is not displayed/output in the job history screen displayed by "system condition > print > job history > printer" and in the print job history report. The history of the latest 100 jobs are printed out. When the number of recorded print jobs is less than 100, all the recorded jobs are printed out. The difference to PJH-P2 is the number of jobs printed out.	1
PJH-P-2	Print out the print job history with detailed information. (for all jobs) Print out the history of all jobs stored in the copier main unit with detailed information. [Operation] Press the item to highlight it, and press the OK key to perform printing. [Remarks] The print job history is printed out with detailed information which is not displayed/output in the job history screen displayed by "system condition > print > job history > printer" and in the print job history report. The history of all the recorded jobs (up to 5000 jobs in the BW3/CL2 or later machine) are printed out. The difference to PJH-P1 is the number of jobs printed out.	1
PT-LPADJ	Adjust the initial reflector light volume for the patch detection sensor. Adjust the initial reflector light volume for the patch detection sensor to a specified value.	1
HV-ADOFS	Adjust the high pressure AD offset. Adjust the high pressure AD offset for the primary transfer / secondary transfer / ITB cleaner. After this mode is executed, the value displayed in the specified item under DISPLAY should be within + or - 300. Target items are the following six items under DISPLAY/HV-SYS/ ITR-CMOF/ITR-VMOF/2TR-CMOF/2TR-VMOF/BCL2CMOF/BCL1CMOF	1
ITB-ACVC	Forcibly execute the ITB cleaning ACVC. Forcibly execute ACVC control when the ITB cleaning ACVC is not operating normally.	1
MAIN-DRV	Drive the intermediate transfer unit and photosensitive drum for a specified period of time. Press the item to highlight it. Press the OK key and turn the power OFF/ON to execute the operation. The operation completes after a specified period of time.	2

COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ITB-ROT	Execute the ITB idling. Execute the ITB idling to prevent incorrect rolling of ITB when keeping the machine in the storage for a long time. 1) When selecting the item to highlight and pressing OK key, the operation is started.	2
ATR-EX	Forcibly execute the ATR control. Forcibly execute the ATR control when the correction value for the ATR control is lost after the E020 error occurs or the DC controller is replaced in the field maintenance service. 1) When selecting the item to highlight and pressing OK key, the operation is started.	2
INTR-EX	Forcibly execute the initial rotation as first power-on. Forcibly execute the image stabilization control which is executed at the initial rotation as first power-on. This mode executes the following image stabilization control. Electric potential control Primary transfer ATVC Developer idling Patch electric potential control This operation is executed for approximately one minute. 1) When selecting the item to highlight and pressing OK key, the operation is started.	2

12. SYSTEM

T-16-133

COPIER>FUNCTION>SYSTEM		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DOWNLOAD	Switch the mode to the download mode. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. The machine enters the download mode and waits for a command (waits for connection). (In this status, STAND-BY (or STNDBY) is displayed next to the small item of DOWNLOAD.) 3) Perform download using the service support tool. (CONNECTED is displayed during communication with a PC.) 4) When communication ends, HOLD is displayed. (While HOLD is displayed, the power can be turned off.)	1

COPIER>FUNCTION>SYSTEM		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CHK-TYPE	<p>Specify a partition number to execute HD-CHECK.</p> <p>Setting range (0 to 65535) 0: Sector checking and recovery of the entire HDD 1: Image storage area 2: Versatile file saving area 3: PDL file saving area 4: Program file saving area 5: MEAP application 6: Address book / Transfer settings 7: MEAP save data 8: System log storage area</p> <p>Versatile file is data control information such as user setting data, various log data, PDL spool data, and image data.</p> <p>Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Select a partition number using numeric keys. 3) Press the OK key.</p>	1
HD-CHECK	<p>Execute the partition check and recovery specified by CHK-TYPE.</p> <p>Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. 3) The result (1: OK, 2: NG (hardware), 3: NG (software), recovered sector / substitute sector) is displayed.</p>	1
HD-CLEAR	<p>Initialize the partition specified by CHK-TYPE.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When 0 or 4 is specified, this mode is invalid. - When 1 is specified, the image control data saved in the SRAM area or versatile file saving area is also initialized. <p>Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key.</p> <p>When 1 or 3 is selected in CHK-TYPE and <HD-CLEAR> is executed, initialization is performed after the power is turned OFF/ON. It takes approximately five minutes for initialization. During the initialization, the progress bar advances slowly. Do not turn off the power during initialization.</p>	1
DEBUG-1	<p>Use it to set the type of log to store/timing of storage to the HDD. settings 0 to 3 (default: 0)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Do not use for servicing (For the analysis of the cause of trouble) - Obey the instruction by the quality support section for usage. 	2
DEBUG-2	<p>Use it to print out logs stored on the HDD. <Procedure> 1) Select the item. 2) Press the OK key. 3) See that the log is printed. (about 2 sheets of A4)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Do not use for servicing (For the analysis of the cause of trouble) - Obey the instruction by the quality support section for usage. 	2

16.5.1.2 COPIER List

imagePRESS C1 P

1. INSTALL

COPIER>FUNCTION>INSTALL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
STIR-Y/M/C/K	Stir developer in the developing unit (Y/M/C/K). Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts.	1
STIR-4	Stir four-color developer in order. Operation method Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts.	1
SPLY-H-Y/M/C/K	Perform initial supply from the toner container (Y/M/C/K) to the toner buffer. Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts.	1
SPLY-H-4	Perform initial supply from the four-color toner cartridge to the toner buffer. Operation method Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts.	1
CARD	Make a setting for installation of the card reader. 1 to 2001 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] Enter the card number and press the OK key. (Numbers for the number of cards specified by COPIER>OPTION>BODY>CARD-RNG in Level 2 starting from the entered number are available.) The card control information (a section ID and password) is initialized.	1
KEY	Recognize the control key function. 0: Do not recognize the control key function. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0] 1: Recognize the control key function. 1) Select COPIER>INSTALL>KEY and enter "1". 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. (The control key function is recognized.)	1
INISSET-Y/M/C	Initial installation of the Y/M/C color developer Simultaneously execute a series of operation required for initial installation of the Y/M/C color developer. Operation method 1) Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. - Start the operation. - Execute countdown. 2) After the operation completes, OK is displayed. The settings executed by this mode are shown below. - Electric potential control - Primary transfer ATVC - Development idling (adjustment of the charging volume of the developer) - Correction of the optical volume of the patch detection sensor (adjustment of the optical volume of the patch detection sensor) - Transfer cleaning ACVC (determination of high pressure of the transfer cleaning upstream/downstream brush) - Optical ATR initial setting (initial setting of noncontact optical ATR) - Initial setting of patch electric potential control (initial setting of patch electric potential) - Initial setting of patch detection (initial setting of patch detection ATR)	1
AINR-OFF	Make a setting to invalidate the initial multiple rotations for initial installation. This is a mode to make a setting to invalidate the initial multiple rotations for initial installation. This mode is executed so that the image formation sequence does not operate by a patch or Dmax/Dhalf in the initial multiple rotation sequence before initial installation is performed and does not damage and wear the inside of the machine. When the initial setting for color toner (FUNCTION>INSTALL>INISSET-4) is normally completed, the invalidation of initial multiple rotations is automatically released. (This prevents a failure to turn the switch back to the original position.) When the initial setting is not completed, the invalidation is not released. Setting range 0: Initial multiple rotations are valid. 1: Initial multiple rotations are invalid. This is an item to control Dcon. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	1
E-RDS	Make a setting for switching the use of E-RDS. Set if using E-RDS (Embedded-RDS) to send device information of a device counter, failure, or consumables to a sales company's server via SOAP protocol, or not. Setting value 0: Do not use E-RDS. 1: Use E-RDS. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	1

COPIER>FUNCTION>INSTALL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
RGW-PORT	Specify a port number for a sales company's server used for E-RDS.	1
	Setting range 1 to 65535 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 443]	
COM-TEST	Check the connection to a sales company's server used for E-RDS. Try to connect to the sales company's server. A judgment is made whether the connection has succeeded or not, and the result is displayed as OK or NG.	1
	Result OK: Connection is possible. NG: Connection is not possible.	
COM-LOG	Display the details of the communication test result with a sales company's server used for E-RDS. The screen is switched to the one displaying information of the error that has occurred in connection to a sales company's server. The error occurrence date, time, error code, and error information are displayed.	1
	The maximum number of logs: 30 Error information: 128 characters max. (NULL is not included.)	
RGW-ADR	Specify a URL for a sales company's server used for E-RDS. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010]	1
INSET-4	<p>Automatic initial setting mode for installation of the main unit</p> <p>Simultaneously execute a series of operation required for initial installation of each color developer. Since there are many working items required for initial installation of a color developer, this mode is provided to minimize a mistake by a serviceman or improve his/her work efficiency.</p> <p>The settings executed by this mode are shown below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Electric potential control - Primary transfer ATVC - Development idling (adjustment of the charging volume of the developer) - Correction of the optical volume of the patch detection sensor (adjustment of the optical volume of the patch detection sensor) - Transfer cleaning ACVC (determination of high pressure of the transfer cleaning upstream/downstream brush) - Optical ATR initial setting (initial setting of noncontact optical ATR) - Initial setting of patch electric potential control (initial setting of patch electric potential) - Initial setting of patch detection (initial setting of patch detection ATR) <p>Operation method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Start the operation. - Execute countdown. 2) After the operation completes, OK is displayed. <p>Remark</p> <p>Use at initial installation of the machine unit. Set '0' at AINR-OFF: Turn ON the initial multiple rotation execute SW</p>	1
INSET-K	<p>Initial installation of the k-color developer</p> <p>Simultaneously execute a series of operation required for initial installation of the k-color developer.</p> <p>Operation method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Start the operation. - Execute countdown. 2) After the operation completes, OK is displayed. 	1
INIT-Y/M/C	Read the initial value of the toner density signal (SGNL, REF) for Y/M/C color. Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts.	2

COPIER>FUNCTION>INSTALL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
INIT-3	Read the initial value of the toner density signal (SGNL, REF) for 3 colors (Y/M/C). Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts.	2
CLV-SET	Make a setting for the color guarantee mode (Not function at this machine.)	2
CLV-SEND	Send color guarantee information. (Not function at this machine.)	2

2. LASER

T-16-135

COPIER>FUNCTION>LASER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
POWER	Turn on the laser output for laser power adjustment. Pressing an item highlights it. Pressing the OK key starts the operation. Press the Stop key to turn it off.	1

3. DPC

T-16-136

COPIER>FUNCTION>DPC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DPC	Control the electric potential measurement of the photosensitive drum. Pressing an item highlights it. Pressing the OK key executes the operation. The operation stops automatically.	1
OFST	Adjust the offset for the electric potential measurement circuit of the photosensitive drum. Pressing an item highlights it. Pressing the OK key executes the operation. The operation stops automatically.	1
DRM-RSET	Forcibly execute the drum replacement mode. When replacing a drum, forcibly reset the laser power offset value which has been changed according to the drum durability and execute initial multiple rotations.	1

4. CST

T-16-137

COPIER>FUNCTION>CST		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MF-A4R, MF-A6R, MF-A4	Register a basic value of the paper width for the manual feeder (DADF). Width for A4R: 210mm, Width for A6R: 105mm, Width for A4: 297mm - To make a fine adjustment after a basic value is registered, execute COPIER>ADJUST>CST-ADJ>MF-A4, RMF-A6R, MF-A4. Operation method 1) Set A4R-size paper in the manual feeder, and set the size guide to A4R width. 2) Select "MF-A4R" in this service mode to highlight it and press the OK key. The value is registered after automatic adjustment is performed. 3) Register basic values for A6R and A4 sizes in the same manner as mentioned in 1) and 2).	1

5. CLEANING

T-16-138

COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEANING		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TBLT-CLN	Clean the intermediate transfer belt. Improve the faulty image by removing foreign matters (oil in fingerprints, etc., paper dust, etc.) attached to the intermediate transfer belt. Operation method 1) Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts. Cleaning continues for approximately 30 seconds and completes automatically.	1

COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEANING		
Subheading	Contents	Level
WIRE-CLN	Clean all charging wires at the same time. (five round trip) Operation method 1) Select an item and press the OK key. - The displayed message is changed to ACTIVE and cleaning of wires starts. 2) After the operation completes, OK is displayed and cleaning stops automatically.	1
TB-INSD	Clean the inside of the ITB. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. The operation starts. The item flashes while cleaning is performed, and cleaning completes after approximately 15 minutes.	1
WIRE-EX	Clean the primary charging wire / pre-transfer charging wire. (one round trip) Regular cleaning of the charging wire is performed for five round trips (cleaning period: approx. 2 minutes). In this mode, cleaning of the charging wire is performed for one round trip (cleaning period: approx. 20 seconds). Operation method 1) Select an item and press the OK key. - The displayed message is changed to ACTIVE and cleaning of wires starts. 2) After the operation completes, OK is displayed and cleaning stops automatically.	1
2TR-CLN	Clean the secondary transfer roller. Operation method Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key to start operation. Cleaning stops automatically.	1
FX-CLN-E	Refresh the fixing roller. Details of control When you copy or print more than 100 sheets of narrow paper and then copy or print wide paper, a thin glossy line sometimes appears in parallel with the feeding direction with the same width as the paper used previously. (For example, when you use A3 paper after using A4R paper) (For US, when you use 12x18 size paper after using 11x17 size paper) In this case, you may be able to minimize the glossy line by refreshing the fixing roller. Operation method Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key to start operation. The operation stops automatically.	2

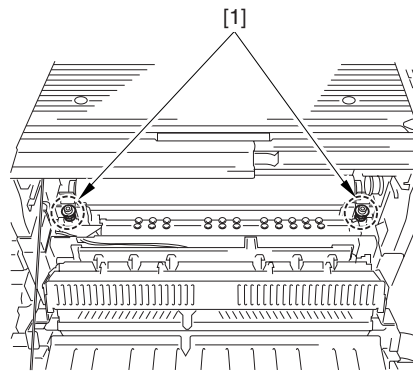
6. FIXING

T-16-139

COPIER>FUNCTION>FIXING		
Subheading	Contents	Level
NIP-CHK	Perform output for automatic measurement of the fixing nip width. Operation method 1) Set a double sided A4 (LTR) size coated paper with the basis weight of 106 to 128gsm in the manual feed tray. 2) Register the paper type for the manual feed tray as "double sided coated paper with the basis weight of 106 to 128gsm". (This is displayed when paper is set in the manual feed tray.) 3) Select a service mode and press the OK key. (The paper set in the manual feed tray is fed.) 4) The paper fed stops while being caught by fixing rollers, and is delivered after approximately 10 seconds. 5) After the operation completes, perform test print. (COPIER/TEST/PG/TYPE(6))	1



NIP-CHK is a service mode to check the fixing nip width.
High accuracy adjustment is performed to the pressure of the pressure roller of this machine at factory setting, and no adjustment can be performed in the field. Do not turn the two hexagonal bolts [1] on the delivery side of the fixing assembly. If you turn them by mistake, turn them back to the original position.



F-16-29

7. PANEL

T-16-140

COPIER>FUNCTION>PANEL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
LCD-CHK	Check the blank dot area in the LCD display. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key to start operation. The front side of the touch panel lights in white - black - red - green - blue colors in order repeatedly. (Make sure this condition.) 2) Press the Stop key to stop the operation. (Press the Clear key for a printer mode.)	1
LED-CHK	Check the LED light in the control panel. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key to start operation. The LEDs light up in order. 2) Press LED-OFF to stop the operation.	1
LED-OFF	Check the LED light in the control panel. Operation method 1) Select this item to stop the LED-CHK operation.	1
KEY-CHK	Check the input of keys. Operation method 1) Select "KEY-CHK" to display a number/name of the entered key. 2) Press a key to be checked. If there is no problem, the relevant character is displayed in the touch panel. (Refer to an attached table.) 3) Select "KEY-CHK" again. The checking stops.	1
TOUCHCHK	Adjust the coordinate position of the analog touch panel. Operation method - Adjust the pressing position in the touch panel to the LCD coordinate position - When you replaced the LCD, execute this service mode. 1) Select "TOUCHCHK" to highlight it, and press the OK key. 2) Press the nine "+"s displayed in the touch panel in order. Adjustment is completed.	1

- Numbers and names of input keys

T-16-141

Key	Indication on the screen
0 to 9, #, *	0 to 9, #, *
Reset	RESET
Stop	STOP
User mode	USER
Start	START
Power save	STAND BY
Clear	CLEAR
ID	ID
Help	?
Counter Check	BILL

8. PART-CHK

T-16-142

COPIER>FUNCTION>PART-CHK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CL	Specify a clutch to be checked. (Range: 1 to 10) Operation method 1) Select an item. 2) Enter the code of a clutch using numeric keys. 1: Development clutch (CL1) 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press CL-ON and check the operation.	1
CL-ON	Start checking the operation of a clutch. Operation method 1) Select an item and press the OK key. ON/OFF operation is repeated in the following pattern. ON for 0.5 seconds --> OFF for 5 seconds --> ON for 0.5 seconds --> OFF for 5 seconds --> OFF	1
FAN	Specify a fan to be checked. (Range: 1 to 30) 1) Select an item. 2) Enter the code of a fan using numeric keys. 1. FM1: Primary charging intake fan 2. FM2: Primary charging exhaust fan 3. FM3: Feeding fan (front) 4. FM4: Feeding fan (rear) 5. FM5: Fixing exhaust fan 6. FM6: Fixing lower front fan 7. FM7: ITB cleaning brush roller cooling fan 9. FM9: Power supply fan 10. FM10: Delivery upper cooling fan 1 11. FM11: Fixing belt cooling fan 1 12. FM12: Fixing belt cooling fan 2 13. FM13: Fixing belt cooling fan 3 14. FM14: Fixing belt cooling fan 4 15. FM15: Delivery lower cooling fan 16. FM16: Left exhaust fan 17. FM17: Post-fixing lower fan 18. FM18: Primary exhaust assist fan 19. FM19: Delivery cooling fan 2 20. FM20: Reverse cooling fan 21. FM21: Buffer cooling fan 22. FM22: Main unit rear fan 23. FM23: Fixing upper exhaust fan 24. FM25: OP power supply 1 fan 25. FM26: OP power supply 2 fan 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press FAN-ON and check the operation.	1
FAN-ON	Start the fan operation. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key to start the following operation. ON in full speed for 10 seconds --> End	1

COPIER>FUNCTION>PART-CHK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MTR	<p>Specify a motor to be checked. (Range: 1 to 55) Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Enter the code of a motor using numeric keys.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. M1: Polygon motor 2. M2: Drum / ITB motor 3. M3: Developing motor 4. M4: Rotation developer drive motor 5. M5: Multi pre-registration drive motor 6. M6: Registration drive motor 7. M7: External delivery motor 8. M8: Reverse motor for double sided copy 9. M9: Left motor for double sided copy 10. M11: Right motor for double sided copy 11. M12: Vertical path 1 motor 12. M13: Vertical path 2 motor 13. M14: Vertical path 3 & 4 motor 14. M15: Cassette 1 & 2 pickup motor 15. M16: Pickup 3 & 4 motor 16. M17: Secondary transfer roller detachment/attachment motor 17. M18: ITB cleaning brush roller detachment/attachment motor 18. M19: Primary wire cleaning motor 19. M20: Drum/post cleaning motor 20. M21: Horizontal registration motor 21. M22: Cassette 1 lifter motor 22. M23: Cassette 2 lifter motor 23. M24: Cassette 3 lifter motor 24. M25: Cassette 4 lifter motor 25. M26: ITB cleaning brush roller drive motor 26. M27: Cartridge motor Y 27. M28: Cartridge motor M 28. M29: Cartridge motor C 29. M30: Cartridge motor K 30. M31: Cartridge motor LM 31. M32: Cartridge motor LC 32. M33: Cleaning web detachment/attachment motor 33. M34: Fixing belt detachment/attachment motor 34. M35: Fixing belt displacement control motor 35. M36: Fixing belt drive motor (detachment) 36. M37: Secondary transfer roller drive motor 37. M38: Fixing motor 38. M39: Hopper motor Y 39. M40: Hopper motor M 40. M41: Hopper motor C 41. M42: Hopper motor K 42. M43: Hopper motor LM 43. M44: Hopper motor LC 44. M45: External heating detachment/attachment motor 45. M46: Feeding motor 46. M48: Decurler feeding 1 motor 47. M49: Decurler feeding 2 motor 48. M50: Decurler input volume adjustment 1 motor 49. M51: Decurler input volume adjustment 2 motor <p>3) Press the OK key. 4) Press MTR-ON and check the operation.</p>	1
MTR-ON	<p>Start the motor operation. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. ON for 5 seconds --> End</p>	1
SL	<p>Specify a solenoid to be checked. (Range: 1 to 15) Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Enter the code of a solenoid using numeric keys.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. SL1: Multi lifting plate SL 2. SL2: Reverse roller gap SL 3. SL3: Delivery flapper SL 4. SL4: Cassette 1 pickup SL 5. SL5: Cassette 2 pickup SL 6. SL6: Cassette 3 pickup SL 7. SL7: Cassette 4 pickup SL 8. SL8: Patch detection shutter SL 9. SL9: Optical ATR shutter SL 10. SL10: Color sensor SL 11. SL11: Web SL <p>3) Press the OK key. 4) Press SL-ON and check the operation.</p>	1

COPIER>FUNCTION>PART-CHK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SL-ON	Start the solenoid operation. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. ON/OFF operation is repeated in the following pattern. ON for 0.5 seconds --> OFF for 5 seconds --> ON for 0.5 seconds --> OFF for 5 seconds --> OFF	1


9. CLEAR

T-16-143

COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ERR	(Target error codes: E000/E001/E002/E003/E005) Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power.	1
DC-CON	RAM clear for the DC controller PCB The RAM data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. Operation method 1) Print out the service mode data by COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>P-PRINT. 2) Select this item and press the OK key. 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power. 4) Enter the data printed by P-PRINT if necessary.	1
JAM-HIST	Clear the jam history. The jam history is cleared after the OK key is pressed. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
ERR-HIST	Clear the error code history. The error code history is cleared after the OK key is pressed. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
PWD-CLR	Clear the password of the "system administrator" specified in the user mode. The password is cleared after the OK key is pressed. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
ADRS-BK	Clear the address book data. The address book data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. 1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power.	1
CNT-MCON	Clear the service counter executed for the main controller PCB (main). (Refer to the section of COUNTER mode for the target counters.) The counter value is cleared after the OK key is pressed. 1) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
CNT-DCON	Clear the following service counter executed for the DC controller PCB.(Refer to the section of COUNTER mode for the target counters.) The counter value is cleared after the OK key is pressed. 1) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
OPTION	Set the setting value of a service mode (OPTION) back to a default value (a value after RAM clear is executed). The setting value is cleared after the OK key is pressed. The data of the main controller, DC controller, and reader controller is cleared. Operation method 1) Print out the service mode data by COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT. 2) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
MMI	Clear the following user mode setting values. - Backup data for the copy control panel (user setting value) - Backup data for common settings (user setting value) - Various backup data excluding FAX (user setting value) The setting value is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power.	1

COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MN-CON	<p>RAM clear for the SRAM board of the main controller PCB</p> <p>Operation method</p> <p>1) Select this item and press the OK key.</p> <p>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power.</p> <p>- The RAM data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.</p> <p>- When this mode is executed, all the data in the SRAM board is initialized.</p> <p>The file control information for a hard disk is also initialized, and image data in the hard disk cannot be read. Before you execute this mode, be sure to inform a user that all images in the box are going to be initialized and receive prior approval from him/her.</p> <p>1) Print out the service mode data by COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT.</p> <p>2) Select this item and press the OK key. The machine is automatically activated and displays a message indicating "please turn on the main power again".</p> <p>3) Turn OFF/ON the main power.</p>	1
CARD	<p>Clear the data related to the card ID (section).</p> <p>The data related to the card ID is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.</p> <p>Operation method</p> <p>1) Select this item and press the OK key.</p> <p>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power.</p>	1
W-TN-CLR	<p>Clear the warning and error indicating waste toner box full.</p> <p>After replacing the waste toner box, clear the warning/error and the counter detecting waste toner box full.</p> <p>Method of Operation</p> <p>Select the item to highlight, and press the OK key to start operation.</p>	1
LANG-ERR	<p>Clear the language-related error.</p> <p>When a language-related error has occurred after switching a default language to a different one, use this mode to eliminate the error and set the language to a default language.</p>	1
ERDS-DAT	<p>Clear the SRAM data of E-RDS.</p> <p>Set the SCM value stored in the SRAM of E-RDS back to the factory setting value.</p> <p>The SRAM data is cleared after the OK key is pressed.</p> <p>Operation method</p> <p>1) Select this item and press the OK key.</p> <p>2) When the data is cleared normally, OK is displayed.</p> <p>Reference:</p> <p>- Always use this mode to execute the bootable version-up in the environment where E-RDS is used. The usage of SRAM in E-RDS differs depending on the version. Data mismatch occurs if SRAM data is not cleared.</p> <p>- The items related to E-RDS stored in the SRAM are ON/OFF of E-RDS, port number of a server, SOAP URL of a server, and schedule of communication with a server (how often is the data obtained?), etc.</p> <p>The following setting values are cleared.</p> <p>- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS</p> <p>- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RGW-PORT</p> <p>- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RGW-ADR</p> <p>- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > COM-LOG</p>	1
SND-STUP	<p>Perform initialization of the transmission reading setting. (Execute this mode when switching a language setting.)</p>	2

COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CA-KEY	<p>Perform batch deletion of the CA certificate and key pair.</p> <p>When a serviceman replaces or disposes of a device, he/she must perform batch deletion of the CA certificate and key pair. The CA certificate is used by MEAP application which uses E-RDS, and SSL client connection. The key pair is used by IPP, RUI, and MEAP SSL function.</p> <p>- If this operation is not performed when a device is replaced or disposed of, the CA certificate and key pair additionally registered by a user remains in the HDD, which causes a security problem. Therefore, a serviceman must perform this operation.</p> <p>- Be sure to make sure that OK is displayed after the operation is performed. When NG is displayed, the CA certificate and key pair may have not been normally deleted. Therefore, it is necessary to surely delete them by initializing the HDD, etc.</p> <p>- When this operation is performed, the SSL server certificate and key pair additionally registered by a user are also deleted. Therefore, do not perform this operation carelessly. If you have deleted the data by mistake, you need to ask the user to reinstall the SSL server certificate. If no certificate is additionally installed by a user, the setting values are initialized to be the same as the factory setting, and there is no impact to the user.</p> <p>Operation method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) When the data is cleared normally, OK is displayed. 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power. <p>Reference:</p> <p>When the power is turned OFF/ON, the CA certificate and key pair are extracted from the archive (/BOOTDEV/KCMNG) and become available for the function mentioned above (E-RDS/SSL function).</p>	2
KEY-CLR	<p>Clear the encryption key in the HDD encryption board.</p> <p>Clear the key in order to replace the encryption key for the HDD encryption board (security kit). Select KEY-CLR and press the OK key to clear the encryption key.</p> <p>When this operation is performed and the main power is turned OFF/ON, the processing for installation of the encryption board is activated, and new encryption key is created.</p> <p>When this operation is performed, all the data in the HDD cannot be used. Therefore, when the main power is turned OFF/ON, it is necessary to perform procedures starting from HDD formatting.</p>	2

COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P		
Subheading	Contents	Level
P-PRINT	Print out the service mode setting value. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to perform printing. It takes approximately 15 seconds before printing starts.	1
P-PRINT	Print out the service mode standard value Execute the print out of the service mode standard value. Left/right margin adjustment value (COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > BLK-SML2) for the second side on small size is added as an output item. When executing P-PRINT with a printer model, an item for second-side left/right margin adjustment value on small size was missing. Thus, this item is added in this change.  This item applies to the upgraded device or later (DCON Ver11.03 or later, Cont Ver24.04 or later).	1
KEY-HIST	Print out the control panel key input history. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to perform printing.	1
HIST-PRT	Print out the jam history and error history. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to perform printing.	1
TRS-DATA	Transfer the data received in memory to the box. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to perform printing.	1
USER-PRT	Print out the user mode list. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to perform printing. It takes approximately three seconds before printing is performed.	1
LBL-PRNT	Print out the service label. Operation method 1) Set the A4/LTR paper in Cassette 1. 2) Select this item. 3) Press the OK key to perform printing. It takes approximately 15 seconds before printing is performed.	1
PRE-EXP	Check the lighting operation of the post-exposure lamp (LED). Operation method 1) Press an item to highlight it. 2) Press the OK key. Each operation is performed for a few seconds and stops automatically. 3) Press the OK key to perform printing. Reference When a failure occurs to the photosensitive drum caused by the lighting operation of the post-exposure lamp, rotate the drum.	1
D-PRINT	Print out the service mode (DISPLAY). This is a mode to print out only the items displayed in the DISPLAY service mode (excluding items output by P-PRINT/LBL-PRINT/HIST-PRINT and ALARM). Operation method 1) When selecting the item to highlight and pressing OK key, the operation is started.	1
IATVC-EX	Forcibly execute the primary ATVC. Execute this mode when replacing the ITB or ITB unit. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to start operation. The operation completes after approximately one minute.	1

COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ENV-PRT	Print out the log of changes in temperature/humidity in the machine and fixing temperature. Print out the changes in temperature/humidity in the machine and fixing temperature (center) as log data based on the monitor output from the environmental sensor and noncontact thermistor.	1
I-BD-OFF	Separate the ITB cleaning brush roller. Separate the ITB cleaning brush roller from ITB.	1
PJH-P-1	Print out the print job history with detailed information. (for 100 jobs) Print out the history of 100 jobs stored in the copier main unit with detailed information. [Operation] Press the item to highlight it, and press the OK key to perform printing. [Remarks] The print job history is printed out with detailed information which is not displayed/output in the job history screen displayed by "system condition > print > job history > printer" and in the print job history report. The history of the latest 100 jobs are printed out. When the number of recorded print jobs is less than 100, all the recorded jobs are printed out. The difference to PJH-P2 is the number of jobs printed out.	1
PJH-P-2	Print out the print job history with detailed information. (for all jobs) Print out the history of all jobs stored in the copier main unit with detailed information. [Operation] Press the item to highlight it, and press the OK key to perform printing. [Remarks] The print job history is printed out with detailed information which is not displayed/output in the job history screen displayed by "system condition > print > job history > printer" and in the print job history report. The history of all the recorded jobs (up to 5000 jobs in the BW3/CL2 or later machine) are printed out. The difference to PJH-P1 is the number of jobs printed out.	1
PT-LPADJ	Adjust the initial reflector light volume for the patch detection sensor. Adjust the initial reflector light volume for the patch detection sensor to a specified value.	1
HV-ADOFS	Adjust the high pressure AD offset. Adjust the high pressure AD offset for the primary transfer / secondary transfer / ITB cleaner. After this mode is executed, the value displayed in the specified item under DISPLAY should be within + or - 300. Target items are the following six items under DISPLAY/HV-SYS/ ITR-CMOF/ITR-VMOF/2TR-CMOF/2TR-VMOF/BCL2CMOF/BCL1CMOF	1
ITB-ACVC	Forcibly execute the ITB cleaning ACVC. Forcibly execute ACVC control when the ITB cleaning ACVC is not operating normally.	1
MAIN-DRV	Drive the intermediate transfer unit and photosensitive drum for a specified period of time. Press the item to highlight it. Press the OK key and turn the power OFF/ON to execute the operation. The operation completes after a specified period of time.	2
ITB-ROT	Execute the ITB idling. Execute the ITB idling to prevent incorrect rolling of ITB when keeping the machine in the storage for a long time. 1) When selecting the item to highlight and pressing OK key, the operation is started.	2

COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ATR-EX	<p>Forcibly execute the ATR control. Forcibly execute the ATR control when the correction value for the ATR control is lost after the E020 error occurs or the DC controller is replaced in the field maintenance service. 1) When selecting the item to highlight and pressing OK key, the operation is started.</p>	2
INTR-EX	<p>Forcibly execute the initial rotation as first power-on. Forcibly execute the image stabilization control which is executed at the initial rotation as first power-on. This mode executes the following image stabilization control. Electric potential control Primary transfer ATVC Developer idling Patch electric potential control This operation is executed for approximately one minute. 1) When selecting the item to highlight and pressing OK key, the operation is started.</p>	2

11. SYSTEM

T-16-145

COPIER>FUNCTION>SYSTEM		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DOWNLOAD	<p>Switch the mode to the download mode. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. The machine enters the download mode and waits for a command (waits for connection). (In this status, STAND-BY (or STNDBY) is displayed next to the small item of DOWNLOAD.) 3) Perform download using the service support tool. (CONNECTED is displayed during communication with a PC.) 4) When communication ends, HOLD is displayed. (While HOLD is displayed, the power can be turned off.)</p>	1
CHK-TYPE	<p>Specify a partition number to execute HD-CHECK.</p> <p>Setting range (0 to 65535) 0: Sector checking and recovery of the entire HDD 1: Image storage area 2: Versatile file saving area 3: PDL file saving area 4: Program file saving area 5: MEAP application 6: Address book / Transfer settings 7: MEAP save data 8: System log storage area</p> <p>Versatile file is data control information such as user setting data, various log data, PDL spool data, and image data.</p> <p>Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Select a partition number using numeric keys. 3) Press the OK key.</p>	1

COPIER>FUNCTION>SYSTEM		
Subheading	Contents	Level
HD-CHECK	Execute the partition check and recovery specified by CHK-TYPE. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. 3) The result (1: OK, 2: NG (hardware), 3: NG (software), recovered sector / substitute sector) is displayed.	1
HD-CLEAR	Initialize the partition specified by CHK-TYPE. - When 0 or 4 is specified, this mode is invalid. - When 1 is specified, the image control data saved in the SRAM area or versatile file saving area is also initialized. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. When 1 or 3 is selected in CHK-TYPE and <HD-CLEAR> is executed, initialization is performed after the power is turned OFF/ON. It takes approximately five minutes for initialization. During the initialization, the progress bar advances slowly. Do not turn off the power during initialization.	1
DEBUG-1	Use it to set the type of log to store/timing of storage to the HDD. settings 0 to 3 (default: 0) - Do not use for servicing (For the analysis of the cause of trouble) - Obey the instruction by the quality support section for usage.	2
DEBUG-2	Use it to print out logs stored on the HDD. <Procedure> 1) Select the item. 2) Press the OK key. 3) See that the log is printed. (about 2 sheets of A4) - Do not use for servicing (For the analysis of the cause of trouble) - Obey the instruction by the quality support section for usage.	2

16.5.1.3 COPIER List

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. INSTALL

T-16-146

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
STIR-Y/M/C/K	Stir developer in the developing unit (Y/M/C/K). Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts.	1
STIR-4	Stir four-color developer in order. Operation method Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts.	1
SPLY-H-Y/M/C/K	Perform initial supply from the toner container (Y/M/C/K) to the toner buffer. Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts.	1
SPLY-H-4	Perform initial supply from the four-color toner cartridge to the toner buffer. Operation method Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts.	1
CARD	Make a setting for installation of the card reader. 1 to 2001 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM L: 0] Enter the card number and press the OK key. (Numbers for the number of cards specified by COPIER > OPTION > BODY > CARD-RNG in Level 2 starting from the entered number are available.) The card control information (a section ID and password) is initialized.	1

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
KEY	Recognize the control key function. 0: Do not recognize the control key function. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM L: 0] 1: Recognize the control key function. 1) Select COPIER > INSTAL L> KEY and enter "1". 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. (The control key function is recognized.)	1
INISSET-Y/M/C	Initial installation of the Y/M/C color developer Simultaneously execute a series of operation required for initial installation of the Y/M/C color developer. The settings executed by this mode are shown below. - Electric potential control - Primary transfer ATVC - Development idling (adjustment of the charging volume of the developer) - Correction of the optical volume of the patch detection sensor (adjustment of the optical volume of the patch detection sensor) - Transfer cleaning ACVC (determination of high pressure of the transfer cleaning upstream/downstream brush) - Optical ATR initial setting (initial setting of noncontact optical ATR) - Initial setting of patch electric potential control (initial setting of patch electric potential) - Initial setting of patch detection (initial setting of patch detection ATR)	1
AINR-OFF	Make a setting to invalidate the initial multiple rotations for initial installation. This is a mode to make a setting to invalidate the initial multiple rotations for initial installation. This mode is executed so that the image formation sequence does not operate by a patch or Dmax/Dhalf in the initial multiple rotation sequence before initial installation is performed and does not damage and wear the inside of the machine. When the initial setting for color toner (FUNCTION>INSTALL>INISSET-4) is normally completed, the invalidation of initial multiple rotations is automatically released. (This prevents a failure to turn the switch back to the original position.) When the initial setting is not completed, the invalidation is not released. Setting range 0: Initial multiple rotations are valid. 1: Initial multiple rotations are invalid. This is an item to control Deon. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM L: 0]	1
E-RDS	Make a setting for switching the use of E-RDS. Set if using E-RDS (Embedded-RDS) to send device information of a device counter, failure, or consumables to a sales company's server via SOAP protocol, or not. Setting value 0: Do not use E-RDS. 1: Use E-RDS. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM L: 0]	1
RGW-PORT	Specify a port number for a sales company's server used for E-RDS. Setting range: 1 to 65535 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM L: 443]	1
COM-TEST	Check the connection to a sales company's server used for E-RDS. Try to connect to the sales company's server. A judgment is made whether the connection has succeeded or not, and the result is displayed as OK or NG. Result OK: Connection is possible. NG: Connection is not possible.	1
COM-LOG	Display the details of the communication test result with a sales company's server used for E-RDS. The screen is switched to the one displaying information of the error that has occurred in connection to a sales company's server. The error occurrence date, time, error code, and error information are displayed. The maximum number of logs: 30 Error information: 128 characters max. (NULL is not included.)	1
RGW-ADR	Specify a URL for a sales company's server used for E-RDS. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM L: https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010]	1
INISSET-4	Automatic initial setting mode for installation of the main unit Simultaneously execute a series of operation required for initial installation of each color developer. Since there are many working items required for initial installation of a color developer, this mode is provided to minimize a mistake by a serviceman or improve his/her work efficiency. The settings executed by this mode are shown below. - Electric potential control - Primary transfer ATVC - Development idling (adjustment of the charging volume of the developer) - Correction of the optical volume of the patch detection sensor (adjustment of the optical volume of the patch detection sensor) - Transfer cleaning ACVC (determination of high pressure of the transfer cleaning upstream/downstream brush) - Optical ATR initial setting (initial setting of noncontact optical ATR) - Initial setting of patch electric potential control (initial setting of patch electric potential) - Initial setting of patch detection (initial setting of patch detection ATR)	1
INISSET-K	Initial installation of the k-color developer Simultaneously execute a series of operation required for initial installation of the k-color developer. Operation method 1) Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. - Start the operation. - Execute countdown. 2) After the operation completes, OK is displayed.	1
STIR-L	Execution of stirring of the developer in the developing unit (L color)	1
STIR-5	Execution of stirring of the developer in the developing unit (5 colors)	1

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SPLY-H-L	Execution of initial supply from the toner container (L color) to the toner buffer assembly	1
SPLY-H-5	Execution of initial supply from the toner container (5 colors) to the toner buffer assembly	1
INISSET-L	Initial installation of the Y/M/C color developer Simultaneously execute a series of operation required for initial installation of the Y/M/C color developer. The settings executed by this mode are shown below. - Electric potential control - Primary transfer ATVC - Development idling (adjustment of the charging volume of the developer) - Correction of the optical volume of the patch detection sensor (adjustment of the optical volume of the patch detection sensor) - Transfer cleaning ACVC (determination of high pressure of the transfer cleaning upstream/downstream brush) - Optical ATR initial setting (initial setting of noncontact optical ATR) - Initial setting of patch electric potential control (initial setting of patch electric potential) - Initial setting of patch detection (initial setting of patch detection ATR)	1
INISSET-5	Automatic initial installation mode for 5-color developing assembly (L/Y/M/C/K) This item is provided to simultaneously perform a series of works required for initial installation of the 5-color developing assembly (L/Y/M/C/K). This item is provided for the purpose of preventing mistakes in works and increasing work efficiency of service technicians because there are many works to be performed for initial installation of the developing assembly. The following works are executed by this item. - Control of electric potential - Primary transfer ATVC - Development idling (Adjustment of the developer charging amount) - Correction of the patch detection light intensity volume (Adjustment of the patch detection sensor light intensity volume) - Transfer cleaning ACVC (Determination of high voltage for upstream/downstream brush for transfer cleaning) - Initial setting of optical ATR (Initial setting of noncontact optical ATR) - Initial setting of control of patch electric potential (Initial setting of patch electric	1
INIT-L	Execution of reading of the initial value of the L color toner density signal (SGNL, REF)	1
INIT-Y/M/C	Read the initial value of the toner density signal (SGNL, REF) for Y/M/C color.	2
INIT-3	Read the initial value of the toner density signal (SGNL, REF) for 3 colors (Y/M/C).	2
CLV-SET	Make a setting for the color guarantee mode (Not function at this machine.)	2
CLV-SEND	Send color guarantee information. (Not function at this machine.)	2
INIT-4	Read the initial values of toner density signals (SGNL, REF) for 4 colors (L/Y/M/C) in turn. Note that 4 colors in this mode are "L/Y/M/C" and are not "Y/M/C/K". (Control by the toner density signal (SGNL, REF) is not executed for K.)	2

2. LASER

T-16-147

COPIER > FUNCTION > LASER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
POWER	Turn on the laser output for laser power adjustment. Pressing an item highlights it. Pressing the OK key starts the operation. Press the Stop key to turn it off.	1

3. DPC

T-16-148

COPIER > FUNCTION > DPC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DPC	Control the electric potential measurement of the photosensitive drum. Pressing an item highlights it. Pressing the OK key executes the operation. The operation stops automatically.	1
OFST	Adjust the offset for the electric potential measurement circuit of the photosensitive drum. Pressing an item highlights it. Pressing the OK key executes the operation. The operation stops automatically.	1
DRM-RSET	Forcibly execute the drum replacement mode. When replacing a drum, forcibly reset the laser power offset value which has been changed according to the drum durability and execute initial multiple rotations.	1

4. CST

T-16-149

COPIER > FUNCTION > CST		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MF-A4R, MF-A6R, MF-A4	<p>Register a basic value of the paper width for the manual feeder (DADF). Width for A4R: 210mm, Width for A6R: 105mm, Width for A4: 297mm</p> <p>- To make a fine adjustment after a basic value is registered, execute COPIER>ADJUST>CST-ADJ>MF-A4, RMF-A6R, MF-A4.</p> <p>Operation method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Set A4R-size paper in the manual feeder, and set the size guide to A4R width. 2) Select "MF-A4R" in this service mode to highlight it and press the OK key. The value is registered after automatic adjustment is performed. 3) Register basic values for A6R and A4 sizes in the same manner as mentioned in 1) and 2). 	1

5. CLEANING

T-16-150

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TBLT-CLN	<p>Clean the intermediate transfer belt.</p> <p>Improve the faulty image by removing foreign matters (oil in fingerprints, etc., paper dust, etc.) attached to the intermediate transfer belt.</p> <p>Operation method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key. The operation starts. <p>Cleaning continues for approximately 30 seconds and completes automatically.</p>	1
WIRE-CLN	<p>Clean all charging wires at the same time. (five round trip)</p> <p>Operation method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Select an item and press the OK key. <p>- The displayed message is changed to ACTIVE and cleaning of wires starts.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2) After the operation completes, OK is displayed and cleaning stops automatically. 	1
TB-INSD	<p>Clean the inside of the ITB.</p> <p>Operation method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. The operation starts. <p>The item flashes while cleaning is performed, and cleaning completes after approximately 15 minutes.</p>	1
WIRE-EX	<p>Clean the primary charging wire / pre-transfer charging wire. (one round trip)</p> <p>Regular cleaning of the charging wire is performed for five round trips (cleaning period: approx. 2 minutes). In this mode, cleaning of the charging wire is performed for one round trip (cleaning period: approx. 20 seconds).</p> <p>Operation method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Select an item and press the OK key. <p>- The displayed message is changed to ACTIVE and cleaning of wires starts.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2) After the operation completes, OK is displayed and cleaning stops automatically. 	1
2TR-CLN	<p>Clean the secondary transfer roller.</p> <p>Operation method</p> <p>Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key to start operation. Cleaning stops automatically.</p>	1
FX-CLN-E	<p>Refresh the fixing roller.</p> <p>Details of control</p> <p>When you copy or print more than 100 sheets of narrow paper and then copy or print wide paper, a thin glossy line sometimes appears in parallel with the feeding direction with the same width as the paper used previously. (For example, when you use A3 paper after using A4R paper) (For US, when you use 12x18 size paper after using 11x17 size paper)</p> <p>In this case, you may be able to minimize the glossy line by refreshing the fixing roller.</p> <p>Operation method</p> <p>Select an item to highlight it and press the OK key to start operation. The operation stops automatically.</p>	2
CL-RCVR	<p>Set the return mode for Clear Developing Assembly if the color mix.</p> <p>The toner of inner Clear Developing Assembly pours to inner machine's cleaner, and new toner will be supplied to Developing Assembly, and the remain toner in the inner Clear Developing Assembly will get into new toner.</p> <p>After set the Service Mode to 1, by switching the main power supply OFF/ON, this movement will be activated. (the movement period is approx. 5 minutes).</p>	1

6. FIXING

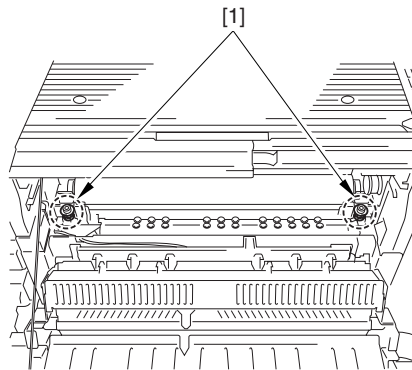
T-16-151

COPIER > FUNCTION > FIXING		
Subheading	Contents	Level
NIP-CHK	<p>Perform output for automatic measurement of the fixing nip width.</p> <p>Operation method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Set a double sided A4 (LTR) size coated paper with the basis weight of 106 to 128gsm in the manual feed tray. 2) Register the paper type for the manual feed tray as "double sided coated paper with the basis weight of 106 to 128gsm". (This is displayed when paper is set in the manual feed tray.) 3) Select a service mode and press the OK key. (The paper set in the manual feed tray is fed.) 4) The paper fed stops while being caught by fixing rollers, and is delivered after approximately 10 seconds. 5) After the operation completes, perform test print. (COPIER/TEST/PG/TYPE(6)) 	1



NIP-CHK is a service mode to check the fixing nip width.

High accuracy adjustment is performed to the pressure of the pressure roller of this machine at factory setting, and no adjustment can be performed in the field. Do not turn the two hexagonal bolts [1] on the delivery side of the fixing assembly. If you turn them by mistake, turn them back to the original position.



F-16-30

7. PANEL

T-16-152

COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
LCD-CHK	Check the blank dot area in the LCD display. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key to start operation. The front side of the touch panel lights in white - black - red - green - blue colors in order repeatedly. (Make sure this condition.) 2) Press the Stop key to stop the operation. (Press the Clear key for a printer mode.)	1
LED-CHK	Check the LED light in the control panel. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key to start operation. The LEDs light up in order. 2) Press LED-OFF to stop the operation.	1
LED-OFF	Check the LED light in the control panel. Operation method 1) Select this item to stop the LED-CHK operation.	1
KEY-CHK	Check the input of keys. Operation method 1) Select "KEY-CHK" to display a number/name of the entered key. 2) Press a key to be checked. If there is no problem, the relevant character is displayed in the touch panel. (Refer to an attached table.) 3) Select "KEY-CHK" again. The checking stops.	1
TOUCHCHK	Adjust the coordinate position of the analog touch panel. Operation method - Adjust the pressing position in the touch panel to the LCD coordinate position - When you replaced the LCD, execute this service mode. 1) Select "TOUCHCHK" to highlight it, and press the OK key. 2) Press the nine "+"s displayed in the touch panel in order. Adjustment is completed.	1

- Numbers and names of input keys

T-16-153

Key	Indication on the screen
0 to 9, #, *	0 to 9, #, *
Reset	RESET
Stop	STOP
User mode	USER
Start	START
Power save	STAND BY
Clear	CLEAR
ID	ID
Help	?
Counter Check	BILL

8. PART-CHK

T-16-154

COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CL	Specify a clutch to be checked. (Range: 1 to 10) Operation method 1) Select an item. 2) Enter the code of a clutch using numeric keys. 1: Development clutch (CL1) 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press CL-ON and check the operation.	1
CL-ON	Start checking the operation of a clutch. Operation method 1) Select an item and press the OK key. ON/OFF operation is repeated in the following pattern. ON for 0.5 seconds --> OFF for 5 seconds --> ON for 0.5 seconds --> OFF for 5 seconds --> OFF	1
FAN	Specify a fan to be checked. (Range: 1 to 30) 1) Select an item. 2) Enter the code of a fan using numeric keys. 1. FM1: Primary charging intake fan 2. FM2: Primary charging exhaust fan 3. FM3: Feeding fan (front) 4. FM4: Feeding fan (rear) 5. FM5: Fixing exhaust fan 6. FM6: Fixing lower front fan 7. FM7: ITB cleaning brush roller cooling fan 9. FM9: Power supply fan 10. FM10: Delivery upper cooling fan 1 11. FM11: Fixing belt cooling fan 1 12. FM12: Fixing belt cooling fan 2 13. FM13: Fixing belt cooling fan 3 14. FM14: Fixing belt cooling fan 4 15. FM15: Delivery lower cooling fan 16. FM16: Left exhaust fan 17. FM17: Post-fixing lower fan 18. FM18: Primary exhaust assist fan 19. FM19: Delivery cooling fan 2 20. FM20: Reverse cooling fan 21. FM21: Buffer cooling fan 22. FM22: Main unit rear fan 23. FM23: Fixing upper exhaust fan 24. FM25: OP power supply 1 fan 25. FM26: OP power supply 2 fan 3) Press the OK key. 4) Press FAN-ON and check the operation.	1
FAN-ON	Start the fan operation. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key to start the following operation. ON in full speed for 10 seconds --> End	1

COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MTR	<p>Specify a motor to be checked. (Range: 1 to 55) Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Enter the code of a motor using numeric keys.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. M1: Polygon motor 2. M2: Drum / ITB motor 3. M3: Developing motor 4. M4: Rotation developer drive motor 5. M5: Multi pre-registration drive motor 6. M6: Registration drive motor 7. M7: External delivery motor 8. M8: Reverse motor for double sided copy 9. M9: Left motor for double sided copy 10. M11: Right motor for double sided copy 11. M12: Vertical path 1 motor 12. M13: Vertical path 2 motor 13. M14: Vertical path 3 & 4 motor 14. M15: Cassette 1 & 2 pickup motor 15. M16: Pickup 3 & 4 motor 16. M17: Secondary transfer roller detachment/attachment motor 17. M18: ITB cleaning brush roller detachment/attachment motor 18. M19: Primary wire cleaning motor 19. M20: Drum/post cleaning motor 20. M21: Horizontal registration motor 21. M22: Cassette 1 lifter motor 22. M23: Cassette 2 lifter motor 23. M24: Cassette 3 lifter motor 24. M25: Cassette 4 lifter motor 25. M26: ITB cleaning brush roller drive motor 26. M27: Cartridge motor Y 27. M28: Cartridge motor M 28. M29: Cartridge motor C 29. M30: Cartridge motor K 30. M31: Cartridge motor LM 31. M32: Cartridge motor LC 32. M33: Cleaning web detachment/attachment motor 33. M34: Fixing belt detachment/attachment motor 34. M35: Fixing belt displacement control motor 35. M36: Fixing belt drive motor (detachment) 36. M37: Secondary transfer roller drive motor 37. M38: Fixing motor 38. M39: Hopper motor Y 39. M40: Hopper motor M 40. M41: Hopper motor C 41. M42: Hopper motor K 42. M43: Hopper motor LM 43. M44: Hopper motor LC 44. M45: External heating detachment/attachment motor 45. M46: Feeding motor 46. M48: Decurler feeding 1 motor 47. M49: Decurler feeding 2 motor 48. M50: Decurler input volume adjustment 1 motor 49. M51: Decurler input volume adjustment 2 motor <p>3) Press the OK key. 4) Press MTR-ON and check the operation.</p>	1
MTR-ON	<p>Start the motor operation. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. ON for 5 seconds --> End</p>	1
SL	<p>Specify a solenoid to be checked. (Range: 1 to 15) Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Enter the code of a solenoid using numeric keys.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. SL1: Multi lifting plate SL 2. SL2: Reverse roller gap SL 3. SL3: Delivery flapper SL 4. SL4: Cassette 1 pickup SL 5. SL5: Cassette 2 pickup SL 6. SL6: Cassette 3 pickup SL 7. SL7: Cassette 4 pickup SL 8. SL8: Patch detection shutter SL 9. SL9: Optical ATR shutter SL 10. SL10: Color sensor SL 11. SL11: Web SL <p>3) Press the OK key. 4) Press SL-ON and check the operation.</p>	1
SL-ON	<p>Start the solenoid operation. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. ON/OFF operation is repeated in the following pattern. ON for 0.5 seconds --> OFF for 5 seconds --> ON for 0.5 seconds --> OFF for 5 seconds --> OFF</p>	1

9. CLEAR

T-16-155

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ERR	(Target error codes: E000/E001/E002/E003/E005) Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power.	1
DC-CON	RAM clear for the DC controller PCB The RAM data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. Operation method 1) Print out the service mode data by COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>P-PRINT. 2) Select this item and press the OK key. 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power. 4) Enter the data printed by P-PRINT if necessary.	1
R-CON	RAM clear for the reader controller PCB The setting value is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. Operation method 1) Print out the service mode data by COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>P-PRINT. 2) Select this item and press the OK key. 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power. 4) Enter the data printed by P-PRINT if necessary.	1
JAM-HIST	Clear the jam history. The jam history is cleared after the OK key is pressed. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
ERR-HIST	Clear the error code history. The error code history is cleared after the OK key is pressed. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
PWD-CLR	Clear the password of the "system administrator" specified in the user mode. The password is cleared after the OK key is pressed. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
ADRS-BK	Clear the address book data. The address book data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. 1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power.	1
CNT-MCON	Clear the service counter executed for the main controller PCB (main). (Refer to the section of COUNTER mode for the target counters.) The counter value is cleared after the OK key is pressed. 1) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
CNT-DCON	Clear the following service counter executed for the DC controller PCB.(Refer to the section of COUNTER mode for the target counters.) The counter value is cleared after the OK key is pressed. 1) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
OPTION	Set the setting value of a service mode (OPTION) back to a default value (a value after RAM clear is executed). The setting value is cleared after the OK key is pressed. The data of the main controller, DC controller, and reader controller is cleared. Operation method 1) Print out the service mode data by COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT. 2) Select this item and press the OK key.	1
MMI	Clear the following user mode setting values. - Backup data for the copy control panel (user setting value) - Backup data for common settings (user setting value) - Various backup data excluding FAX (user setting value) The setting value is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power.	1
MN-CON	RAM clear for the SRAM board of the main controller PCB Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power. - The RAM data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. - When this mode is executed, all the data in the SRAM board is initialized. The file control information for a hard disk is also initialized, and image data in the hard disk cannot be read. Before you execute this mode, be sure to inform a user that all images in the box are going to be initialized and receive prior approval from him/her. 1) Print out the service mode data by COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT. 2) Select this item and press the OK key. The machine is automatically activated and displays a message indicating "please turn on the main power again". 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power.	1
CARD	Clear the data related to the card ID (section). The data related to the card ID is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power.	1
W-TN-CLR	Clear the warning and error indicating waste toner box full. After replacing the waste toner box, clear the warning/error and the counter detecting waste toner box full. Method of Operation Select the item to highlight, and press the OK key to start operation.	1


COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
LANG-ERR	Clear the language-related error. When a language-related error has occurred after switching a default language to a different one, use this mode to eliminate the error and set the language to a default language.	1
ERDS-DAT	Clear the SRAM data of E-RDS. Set the SCM value stored in the SRAM of E-RDS back to the factory setting value. The SRAM data is cleared after the OK key is pressed. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) When the data is cleared normally, OK is displayed. Reference: - Always use this mode to execute the bootable version-up in the environment where E-RDS is used. The usage of SRAM in E-RDS differs depending on the version. Data mismatch occurs if SRAM data is not cleared. - The items related to E-RDS stored in the SRAM are ON/OFF of E-RDS, port number of a server, SOAP URL of a server, and schedule of communication with a server (how often is the data obtained?), etc. The following setting values are cleared. - COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > E-RDS - COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RGW-PORT - COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RGW-ADR - COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > COM-LOG	1
SND-STUP	Perform initialization of the transmission reading setting. (Execute this mode when switching a language setting.)	2
CA-KEY	Perform batch deletion of the CA certificate and key pair. When a serviceman replaces or disposes of a device, he/she must perform batch deletion of the CA certificate and key pair. The CA certificate is used by MEAP application which uses E-RDS, and SSL client connection. The key pair is used by IPP, RUI, and MEAP SSL function. - If this operation is not performed when a device is replaced or disposed of, the CA certificate and key pair additionally registered by a user remains in the HDD, which causes a security problem. Therefore, a serviceman must perform this operation. - Be sure to make sure that OK is displayed after the operation is performed. When NG is displayed, the CA certificate and key pair may have not been normally deleted. Therefore, it is necessary to surely delete them by initializing the HDD, etc. - When this operation is performed, the SSL server certificate and key pair additionally registered by a user are also deleted. Therefore, do not perform this operation carelessly. If you have deleted the data by mistake, you need to ask the user to reinstall the SSL server certificate. If no certificate is additionally installed by a user, the setting values are initialized to be the same as the factory setting, and there is no impact to the user. Operation method 1) Select this item and press the OK key. 2) When the data is cleared normally, OK is displayed. 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power. Reference: When the power is turned OFF/ON, the CA certificate and key pair are extracted from the archive (/BOOTDEV/KCMNG) and become available for the function mentioned above (E-RDS/SSL function).	2
KEY-CLR	Clear the encryption key in the HDD encryption board. Clear the key in order to replace the encryption key for the HDD encryption board (security kit). Select KEY-CLR and press the OK key to clear the encryption key. When this operation is performed and the main power is turned OFF/ON, the processing for installation of the encryption board is activated, and new encryption key is created. When this operation is performed, all the data in the HDD cannot be used. Therefore, when the main power is turned OFF/ON, it is necessary to perform procedures starting from HDD formatting.	2

10. MISC-R

T-16-156

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SCANLAMP	Perform lighting operation of the scanning lamp. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. The scanning lamp lights up for three seconds.	1

11. MISC-P

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P		
Subheading	Contents	Level
P-PRINT	Print out the service mode setting value. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to perform printing. It takes approximately 15 seconds before printing starts.	1
P-PRINT	Print out the service mode standard value Execute the print out of the service mode standard value. Left/right margin adjustment value (COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > BLK-SML2) for the second side on small size is added as an output item. When executing P-PRINT with a printer model, an item for second-side left/right margin adjustment value on small size was missing. Thus, this item is added in this change.  This item applies to the upgraded device or later (DCON Ver11.03 or later, Cont Ver24.04 or later).	1
KEY-HIST	Print out the control panel key input history. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to perform printing.	1
HIST-PRT	Print out the jam history and error history. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to perform printing.	1
TRS-DATA	Transfer the data received in memory to the box. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to perform printing.	1
USER-PRT	Print out the user mode list. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to perform printing. It takes approximately three seconds before printing is performed.	1
LBL-PRNT	Print out the service label. Operation method 1) Set the A4/LTR paper in Cassette 1. 2) Select this item. 3) Press the OK key to perform printing. It takes approximately 15 seconds before printing is performed.	1
PRE-EXP	Check the lighting operation of the post-exposure lamp (LED). Operation method 1) Press an item to highlight it. 2) Press the OK key. Each operation is performed for a few seconds and stops automatically. 3) Press the OK key to perform printing. Reference When a failure occurs to the photosensitive drum caused by the lighting operation of the post-exposure lamp, rotate the drum.	1
D-PRINT	Print out the service mode (DISPLAY). This is a mode to print out only the items displayed in the DISPLAY service mode (excluding items output by P-PRINT/LBL-PRNT/HIST-PRINT and ALARM). Operation method 1) When selecting the item to highlight and pressing OK key, the operation is started.	1
IATVC-EX	Forcibly execute the primary ATVC. Execute this mode when replacing the ITB or ITB unit. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key to start operation. The operation completes after approximately one minute.	1
ENV-PRT	Print out the log of changes in temperature/humidity in the machine and fixing temperature. Print out the changes in temperature/humidity in the machine and fixing temperature (center) as log data based on the monitor output from the environmental sensor and noncontact thermistor.	1
I-BD-OFF	Separate the ITB cleaning brush roller. Separate the ITB cleaning brush roller from ITB.	1
PJH-P-1	Print out the print job history with detailed information. (for 100 jobs) Print out the history of 100 jobs stored in the copier main unit with detailed information. [Operation] Press the item to highlight it, and press the OK key to perform printing. [Remarks] The print job history is printed out with detailed information which is not displayed/output in the job history screen displayed by "system condition > print > job history > printer" and in the print job history report. The history of the latest 100 jobs are printed out. When the number of recorded print jobs is less than 100, all the recorded jobs are printed out. The difference to PJH-P2 is the number of jobs printed out.	1

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PJH-P-2	Print out the print job history with detailed information. (for all jobs) Print out the history of all jobs stored in the copier main unit with detailed information. [Operation] Press the item to highlight it, and press the OK key to perform printing. [Remarks] The print job history is printed out with detailed information which is not displayed/output in the job history screen displayed by "system condition > print > job history > printer" and in the print job history report. The history of all the recorded jobs (up to 5000 jobs in the BW3/CL2 or later machine) are printed out. The difference to PJH-P1 is the number of jobs printed out.	1
PT-LPADJ	Adjust the initial reflector light volume for the patch detection sensor. Adjust the initial reflector light volume for the patch detection sensor to a specified value.	1
HV-ADOFS	Adjust the high pressure AD offset. Adjust the high pressure AD offset for the primary transfer / secondary transfer / ITB cleaner. After this mode is executed, the value displayed in the specified item under DISPLAY should be within + or - 300. Target items are the following six items under DISPLAY/HV-SYS/ ITR-CMOF/ITR-VMOF/2TR-CMOF/2TR-VMOF/BCL2CMOF/BCL1CMOF	1
ITB-ACVC	Forcibly execute the ITB cleaning ACVC. Forcibly execute ACVC control when the ITB cleaning ACVC is not operating normally.	1
MAIN-DRV	Drive the intermediate transfer unit and photosensitive drum for a specified period of time. Press the item to highlight it. Press the OK key and turn the power OFF/ON to execute the operation. The operation completes after a specified period of time.	2
ITB-ROT	Execute the ITB idling. Execute the ITB idling to prevent incorrect rolling of ITB when keeping the machine in the storage for a long time. 1) When selecting the item to highlight and pressing OK key, the operation is started.	2
ATR-EX	Forcibly execute the ATR control. Forcibly execute the ATR control when the correction value for the ATR control is lost after the E020 error occurs or the DC controller is replaced in the field maintenance service. 1) When selecting the item to highlight and pressing OK key, the operation is started.	2
INTR-EX	Forcibly execute the initial rotation as first power-on. Forcibly execute the image stabilization control which is executed at the initial rotation as first power-on. This mode executes the following image stabilization control. Electric potential control Primary transfer ATVC Developer idling Patch electric potential control This operation is executed for approximately one minute. 1) When selecting the item to highlight and pressing OK key, the operation is started.	2

12. SYSTEM

T-16-158

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DOWNLOAD	Switch the mode to the download mode. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. The machine enters the download mode and waits for a command (waits for connection). (In this status, STAND-BY (or STNDBY) is displayed next to the small item of DOWNLOAD.) 3) Perform download using the service support tool. (CONNECTED is displayed during communication with a PC.) 4) When communication ends, HOLD is displayed. (While HOLD is displayed, the power can be turned off.)	1
CHK-TYPE	Specify a partition number to execute HD-CHECK. Setting range (0 to 65535) 0: Sector checking and recovery of the entire HDD 1: Image storage area 2: Versatile file saving area 3: PDL file saving area 4: Program file saving area 5: MEAP application 6: Address book / Transfer settings 7: MEAP save data 8: System log storage area Versatile file is data control information such as user setting data, various log data, PDL spool data, and image data. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Select a partition number using numeric keys. 3) Press the OK key.	1

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM		
Subheading	Contents	Level
HD-CHECK	Execute the partition check and recovery specified by CHK-TYPE. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. 3) The result (1: OK, 2: NG (hardware), 3: NG (software), recovered sector / substitute sector) is displayed.	1
HD-CLEAR	Initialize the partition specified by CHK-TYPE. - When 0 or 4 is specified, this mode is invalid. - When 1 is specified, the image control data saved in the SRAM area or versatile file saving area is also initialized. Operation method 1) Select this item. 2) Press the OK key. When 1 or 3 is selected in CHK-TYPE and <HD-CLEAR> is executed, initialization is performed after the power is turned OFF/ON. It takes approximately five minutes for initialization. During the initialization, the progress bar advances slowly. Do not turn off the power during initialization.	1
DEBUG-1	Use it to set the type of log to store/timing of storage to the HDD. settings: 0 to 3 (default: 0) - Do not use for servicing (For the analysis of the cause of trouble) - Obey the instruction by the quality support section for usage.	2
DEBUG-2	Use it to print out logs stored on the HDD. <Procedure> 1) Select the item. 2) Press the OK key. 3) See that the log is printed. (about 2 sheets of A4) - Do not use for servicing (For the analysis of the cause of trouble) - Obey the instruction by the quality support section for usage.	2

16.5.2 FEEDER

16.5.2.1 FEEDER List

imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+

T-16-159

FEEDER>FUNCTION		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SENS-INT	Select a sensitivity adjustment item of each feeder sensor, and press the OK key. Initialization of the feeder sensor starts and the display in the screen changes to ACT. Initialization is completed automatically, and the display changes to OK.	1
BLT-CLN	Provide an instruction to clean the feeder separation belt. Press the item to highlight it, and press the OK key to execute each operation. After adjustment is completed, the operation stops automatically.	1
REG-CLN	Clean the registration roller by rotating the roller only and inserting white paper in the nip area. When the registration roller has too much dirt, the "feeder cleaning" in the user mode is not enough to clean it. It is more effective to insert paper through the nip area to clean it in the same manner as separation cleaning. Reference The rotation of the roller stops when closing the pickup unit cover or opening the reverse delivery unit cover or ADF main unit during operation.	1

16.6 OPTION (Machine Settings Mode)

16.6.1 COPIER

16.6.1.1 COPIER List (BODY)

imagePRESS C1


1. BODY

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PO-CNT	Set ON/OFF of the electric potential control function.	1
	Setting range 0: OFF 1: ON Standard value 1	
MODEL-SZ	Switch the fixed and variable display and ADF document size detection.	1
	Setting range 0: AB (6R5E) 1: INCH (5R4E) 2: A (3R3E) 3: AB/INCH (6R5E) Standard value 0: AB(6R5E) For Japan 1: INCH(5R4E) For North, Central and South America 2: A(3R3E) For Europe 3: AB/INCH(6R5E) For Asia, Oceania and South America	
FIX-TEMP	Switch the plain paper down sequence table.	1
	Setting range 0: Default 1: Fixing is prioritized 2: Productivity is prioritized Standard value 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. Usage: Select '0' when giving preference to the image quality (fixing), '2' when giving preference to the speed (productivity).	
PASCAL	Set if using the contrast electric potential and gradation correction data obtained by automatic gradation correction (full correction) control, or not.	1
	Setting range 0: Use the data. 1: Do not use the data. 2: Reserve (same operation as 1) 3: Reserve (same operation as 0) Standard value 1 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. For printer model, be sure to make the setting value 0 at installation.	
CONFIG	Select several system software stored in the hard disk, change the nation/area, paper size.	1
	Procedure: 1) Select <CONFIG>. 2) Select the item to change. 3) Press the +/- key. (Each press changes the setting.) 4) Display the contents to be needed, press OK key. 5) Turn off and then back on the main power switch. XXYYZZAA XX: country (e.g., JP=Japan) YY (*): language (e.g., ja=Japanese) ZZ: (*) destination (e.g., 00=Canon) AA: paper size series (00=AB; 01=inch; 02=A; 03=inch/AB) *: Cannot change the setting.	


COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TEMP-TBL	<p>Fixing assembly temperature control Temperature settings become effective after the main power is switched OFF / ON . Fixing assembly temperature control Upon activation of this mode, Temperature of the following increase by 5 deg C: stand-by temperature (both of the 2 types), copying temperature, stand-by last rotation temperature, sheet-to-sheet temperature control for long sheets. Temperature of the following does not increase by 5 deg C: job last rotation temperature, power save mode temperature, error detection temperature. Make adjustments to the setting in the temperature control table. The setting in the fixing assembly temperature control table is modified when certain properties of paper used in the field cause blistering of paper or low temperature offset. Change the setting to "0" when low temperature offset occurs. Change the setting to "1" when blistering of paper occurs.</p>	1
	<p>Setting range 0: OFF (default) 1: - 5 deg C 2: - 10 deg C 3: - 15 deg C 4: - 20 deg C Standard value 0</p>	
W/SCNR	<p>Set the presence/absence of the reader for the copy model.</p>	1
	<p>Setting range 0: Printer model (without a scanner) 1: Model with a scanner Standard value 0</p> <p>The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.</p>	
RUI-DSP	<p>Set the options for the copy function in the RUI screen.</p>	1
	<p>Setting range 0: Do not display the copy screen in RUI. 1: Display the copy screen in RUI. Standard value 0</p>	
INTROT-1	<p>Set the image adjustment control implementation interval at last rotation.</p>	1
	<p>Setting range: 0 to 500 Standard value: 60</p> <p>The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.</p>	
INTROT-2	<p>Process auto-adjustment implemented for every specific number of sheet. Set the interval (sheets) against the process auto-adjustment.</p>	1
	<p>Setting range: 50 to 10000 (small image) Standard value: 2000 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.</p>	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
INTROT-T	Set the interval time of auto-adjustment control (simple control)	1
	Setting range 50 to 10000 (small image) Standard value 400 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
AUTO-DH	Set the permission/prohibition to automatically start the automatic gradation control which is executed when the machine is left for a specified period time or the environment changes in the ON/OFF standby condition for automatic gradation correction control. The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	1
	Setting range 0: Prohibited 1: Permitted (default) Standard value 1	
DFDST-L1	Adjust the dust detection level for DF (between-sheet correction) Increase the setting value to increase the dust detection level. (It becomes easier to detect dust which causes a thin line.)	1
	Setting range 0 to 255 Standard value 93	
DFDST-L2	Adjust the dust detection level for DF (detection after job) Increase the setting value to increase the dust detection level. (It becomes easier to detect dust which causes a thin line.)	1
	Setting range 0 to 255 Standard value 80	
ENVP-INT	Set the log acquisition interval for temperature/humidity in the machine and fixing temperature. Set the log acquisition interval for COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>ENV-PRT and COPIER>DISPLAY>ENVRNT.	1
	Setting range 0 to 480 (minute) Standard value 60 Reference Log acquisition not implemented at 0 minute.	
T1-TEMP	Switch the down sequence table for thick paper 1.	1
	Setting range 0: Default 1: Fixing is prioritized. 2: Productivity is prioritized. Standard value 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
T2-TEMP	Switch the down sequence table for thick paper 2.	1
	Setting range 0: Default 1: Fixing is prioritized. 2: Productivity is prioritized. Standard value 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
CD-IDL-T	Adjust the time to execute idling at first power-on for the IDL-T color developer (YMC). Set the time to execute idling at first power-on for the color developer (YMC), which is sometimes executed by initial multiple rotations under high-humidity environment. When you decrease the setting value, downtime of initial multiple rotations can be reduced, but density change from the first power-on is somewhat worsened. When you increase the setting value, density change from the first power-on is improved, but downtime of initial multiple rotations increases.	1
	Setting range -3 to +6 (1 level: 5 second) Standard value 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CNTR-DSP	Select the screen display according to the external controller. Setting range 0: Display the external controller icon in the control panel of the copier main unit. (setting when the color image server is connected) 1: Do not display the control panel of the copier main unit. (setting when the external controller with an control panel is connected) Standard value 0	1
BASE-SW	Make a setting to switch the setting from the MEAP-full model to the Base model. Make a setting to switch the device which operated as a full model back to the base model. Use it when trouble attributable to MEAP application occurs. By setting to '0', the operation of MEAP application can be controlled. settings 0: off (base model); 1: on (full model) [Default] MEMO: The change only from '1' to '0' is possible.	1
SC-L-CNT	Use it to set the threshold for identifying large size paper for the scan counter. Settings 0: Count the paper larger than B4 as large size. (A paper that is B4 or smaller is considered as small size.) [Default] 1: Count the paper larger than LTR as large size. (A paper that is LTR or smaller is considered as small size.) The scan counter threshold at copy is determined as follow depending on the combination with the setting value of B4-L-CNT (COPIER > OPTION > USER > B4-L-CNT): <In case SC-L-CNT, B4-L-CNT=(0, 0)> Count the paper larger than B4 as large size. (A paper that is B4 or smaller is considered as small size.) <In case SC-L-CNT, B4-L-CNT=(0, 1)> Count the paper that is B4 or larger as large size. (A paper smaller than B4 is considered as small size.) <In case SC-L-CNT, B4-L-CNT=(1, 0) or (1, 1)> Count the paper larger than LTR as large size. (A paper that is LTR or smaller is considered as small size.)	1
REPORT-Z	Make a setting to switch the attribute flag attached when printing a report. Setting range 0: For PDL character mode 1: For PDL photo mode 2: For SCAN character mode 3: For SCAN photo mode Standard value 0	1
IFXEML-Z	Make a setting to switch the attribute flag attached to the color iFAX and reception mail printing. Setting range 0: For PDL character mode 1: For PDL photo mode 2: For SCAN character mode 3: For SCAN photo mode Standard value 0	1

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
BMLNKS-Z	Make a setting to switch the attribute flag attached to the reception BMLinkS printing.	1
	Setting range 0: For SCAN photo mode 1: For PDL photo mode 2: For SCAN character mode 3: For PDL character mode Standard value 0 Reference 0: For SCAN photo mode A black character is printed in a black color which consists of four colors. An image is printed by error diffusion. The color tone is brighter than 2. 1: For PDL photo mode A black character is printed in a black color which consists of four colors. An image is printed by screen processing. 2: For SCAN character mode A black character is printed in a single black color. The color tone in the photo area is different from the tone printed by 0. (It may be difficult for an amateur to recognize the difference.) An image is printed by error diffusion. 3: For PDL character mode A black character is printed in a single black color. An image is printed by screen processing.	
IMGC-ADJ	Switch the "hide" or "not hide" of the image adjustment items. Switch the "hide" or "not hide" of the image adjustment items executed by a system administrator. When "not hide" is selected, the following four items are displayed in the system administrator setting. - Curl correction volume - Adjustment of the air volume for the paper separation fan - Adjustment of the image position - Adjustment of the secondary transfer voltage	1
	Setting range 0: Hide 1: Do not hide Standard value 0: Hide	
ARCDT-SW	ON/OFF of ARCDAT Select whether or not to perform ARCDAT control. ON [0]: Reflect the ARCDAT result to LUT. OFF [1]: Do not reflect the ARCDAT result to LUT.	1
	Setting range 0 to 1 0: Control ON 1: Control OFF Standard value 0: Control ON	
TR-CON	Switch-over of toner reduction value	1
	Setting range 0 to 2 0: Normal object (for normal object), text line (for text line) 1: Normal object (for normal object), text line (for normal object) 2: Normal object (for text line), text line (for text line) Standard value 0	
F-BLT-RT	Measure at E007 (fixing belt displacement error) occurrence Specify the host machine operation at E007 occurrence.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1 0: Automatic restore does not take effect at power OFF/ON. 1: Automatic restore takes effect at power OFF/ON. Standard value 0	
	 This item applies to the upgraded device (DCON Ver11.03 or later and Cont Ver24.04 or later).	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
W-CLN-P	Set the interval (number of copies) to perform automatic cleaning of the primary charging wire in the normal environment. The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	2
	Setting range 50 to 10000 (copies) Standard value 2000	
W-CLN-T	Set the interval (number of copies) to perform automatic cleaning of the charging wire of the pre-transfer charging assembly.	2
	Setting range 50 to 10000 (copies)	
PRI-FAN	Select the primary fan drive mode. Prevent the half tone unevenness due to the soiled primary charging assembly grid.	2
	Setting range 0: Half speed in the high temperature/humidity environment 1: Full speed mainly in the low temperature / low humidity environment. Standard value 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
SCANSLCT	Set ON/OFF of the function to calculate the scan area based on the paper size.	2
	Setting range 0: OFF (Determine the scan area by document detection.) 1: ON (Determine the scan area by paper size.) Standard value 0 When setting as '1', if the media size is larger than the original size, productivity decreases due to a larger scanning area.	
DH-SW	Perform Dhalf correction.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not perform Dhalf control. 1: Perform Dhalf control. Standard value 1 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
SENS-CNF	Set the display of the document detection sensor.	2
	Setting range 0: AB system 1: Inch system Standard value 0 Due to the reader controller PCB RAM clear, the value is set as '0'. Re-define the value as '1' for inch-configuration destination machines (North America etc..)	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DM-SW	Switching-over of the enabling / disabling of the image density correction control or image gradation correction control.	2
	<p> Not used in this machine</p> <p>Setting range 0: No implemented 1: Always implemented 2: Always implemented 3: Always implemented 4: Always implemented</p> <p>Change the interval (Default: 200 copies) using COPIER/OPTION/BODY/(INTROT-1/INTROT-2/INTROT-T). Standard value 3</p> <p>The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF / ON.</p>	
RAW-DATA	Make a setting to print out the received data as it is. When there is a problem in the received image, this mode is used to determine whether the problem is caused by the data contents or image processing.	2
	<p>Setting range 0: Normal operation 1: Print out the received data as it is.</p> <p>Standard value 0</p>	
FDW-DLV	Select the 'face up' or 'face down' delivery when specifying multiple copies. When multiple copies are specified, 'face up' delivery is usually performed. However, this mode is provided to perform 'face down' delivery to guarantee stacking condition. (However, this mode is invalid when a finisher is installed.)	2
	<p>Setting range 0: 'Face up' for all setting for one sheet of document 1: 'Face up' when specifying one copy, and 'face down' when specifying multiple copies for one sheet of document</p> <p>Standard value 0</p> <p>The setting mode becomes valid after the power switch is turned OFF/ON.</p>	
RMT-LANG	Switch the remote UI language used on Web. Setting method Select the language code using the +/- key.	2
IFAX-LIM	Restrict the number of lines output when receiving large volume of data by iFAX	2
	<p>Setting range 0: No restriction 0 to 999</p> <p>Standard value 500</p>	
SMTPXP	Change the port number for SMTP transmission.	2
	<p>Setting range 0 to 65535 (incremented by 1)</p> <p>Standard value 25</p>	
SMTPRXP	Change the port number of SMTP reception.	2
	<p>Setting range 0 to 65535 (incremented by 1)</p> <p>Standard value 25</p>	
POP3PN	Change the port number of POP reception.	2
	<p>Setting range 0 to 65535 (incremented by 1)</p> <p>Standard value 110</p>	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ORG-LGL	Set the special paper size which cannot be recognized by DF. Setting range 0: LEGAL-R 1: Bolivia OFFICIO-R 2: Argentina OFFICIO-R 3: Argentina LEGAL-R 4: Mexico OFFICIO-R Standard value 0	2
ORG-LTR	Set the special paper size which cannot be recognized by DF. Setting range 0: LETTER [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear] 1: EXECUTIVE 2: Korean government office paper 3: Argentina LETTER 4: Government LETTER Standard value 0	2
UI-COPY	Make a setting to switch the display in the copy screen in the control panel. Setting range 0: Hide the copy screen. 1: Do not hide the copy screen. Standard value 1	2
UI-BOX	Restrict the box screen display in the control panel. Setting range 0: BOX function unavailable (Unavailable for PDLtoBox) 1: BOX function available 2: BOX function available with restriction (Unavailable for LUI and RUI, but available for PDLtoBOX) Standard value 1	2
UI-SEND	Select 'hide' or 'not hide' of the transmission screen in the control panel. Setting range 0: Hide 1: Do not hide Standard value 1	2
UI-FAX	Select 'hide' or 'not hide' of the FAX screen in the control panel. Setting range 0: Hide 1: Do not hide. Standard value 1	2
TMC-SLCT	Switch the coefficient used for error diffusion. Use this mode to increase dot stability and granularity so that pitch unevenness or course image that occurred on an image can be made invisible. Setting range 0: Normal 1: Low granularity / low stability 2: High granularity / high stability Standard value 0	2
DEVL-VTH	Set the threshold value of image density to make a decision to perform the discharging sequence for continuous printing of a low density image, which is performed as measures for a spot or course image. Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally. Setting range 1 to 5 (Unit: %) Standard value 2 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	2
FTPTXPN	Specify a port number (FTP) of the SEND destination. Setting range 0 to 65535 (16 bit) Standard value 21	2

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRN-FLG	Select the image area flag. (for PDL image) When a PDL image was not compressed to a specified compression ratio on the controller side, image processing is performed based on the image area flag specified by this mode.	2
	Setting range 0: High line number screen, gray offset LUT 1: Error diffusion, gray offset LUT 2: High line number screen, normal LUT Standard value 0	
SCN-FLG	Select the image area flag. (for copy image) When a scan image was not compressed to a specified compression ratio on the controller side, image processing is performed based on the image area flag specified by this mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Character 1: Dot photo image 2: Film photo Standard value 0	
T-LW-LVL	Switch the timing to display the warning for toner level. Switch the threshold (%) of toner level to display the message "Toner almost empty" in the control panel. However, when you delay the timing to display the warning message, toner may suddenly become empty before the warning is displayed.	2
	Setting range 5 to 100 (Unit: %) Standard value 10 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
NWERR-SW	Switch the network-related error message display. This mode is used to inhibit the display of a network-related error message when network connection is not actually performed in the model which includes a network board as standard equipment. This mode is provided for a machine which is not connected to network, such as Lawson, while a NADA machine is connected to network as a default setting.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the message. 1: Display the message. Standard value 1	
FX-SPD	Make a fine adjustment of the fixing roller speed. Make a fine adjustment of the fixing speed because the trail edge of paper contacts the ITB and it sometimes causes a fading image when the loop between the secondary transfer roller and the fixing roller is too large. When a fine adjustment is made to the fixing speed, the same adjustment is made to the speed of delivery vertical path. When you increase the setting value, the speed becomes faster.	2
	Setting range -3 to 3 Standard value 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
STS-PORT	Use it to turn on/off the T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) async type status communication port.	2
	Turns on/off the inquiry/response (sync) type status communication port for TUF over TCP/IP. settings 0: off (default); 1: on For service NAVI, set the value as '1' when connecting the PC and main body by crossing cable. MEMO: T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) Communication protocol between embedded application presentation (UI) and applications within the device including COPY/SEND/BOX etc., (Canon original protocol)	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CMD-PORT	Use it to turn off/on the T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) sync type command communication port.	2
	Turns on/off the inquiry/response (sync) type command communication port for TUIF over TCP/IP. settings 0: off (default); 1: on For service NAVI, set the value as '1' when connecting the PC and main body by crossing cable. MEMO: T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) Communication protocol between embedded application presentation (UI) and applications within the device including COPY/SEND/BOX etc., (Canon original protocol)	
MODELSZ2	Provide global measures for plate document size detection. When 1 is set for this mode, INCH/AB (global) mode is provided regardless of the MODEL-SZ setting, which is a flag to switch INCH or AB.	2
	Settings 0: normal (Detection size for each destination) (default) ; 1: Inch/AB mix detection - This is for individual user, not used normally. - For different-sized originals detection (Inch/AB-configuration), original size sensor is required.	
SZDT-SW	Switch the mode from the CCD size detection to the photo size detection for plate document size detection.	2
	settings 0: Size detection by CCD (Default) ; 1: Size detection by photo sensor - This is for individual user (glare protection), not used normally. - When the value is set as '1', original size detection at open/close of the pressure plate is not performed. For detection of the original size (without lightning the scanning lamp), original size sensor (photo sensor) is required.	
UISW-DSP	Set 'hide' or 'not hide' of the SW to switch the display to the user screen. Set 'hide' or 'not hide' of the SW to determine which of the normal screen or the simple screen (Lawson type) is used. The following types of screen are available. - Screen that has the function similar to a standard machine - Screen that has limited function like the screen used at Lawson A user (a store manager) specifies 'hide' or 'not hide' of the SW to switch these screens.	2
	Setting range 0: Hide 1: Do not hide Standard value 0	
NS-CMD5	Restrict the use of CRAM-MD5 authentication in SMTP authentication. (NoSasl-Challenge response authentication mechanism; MD5 message digest algorithm) Make this setting when restricting the use of CRAM-MD5 authentication in SMTP authentication.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value 0	
NS-GSAPI	Restrict the use of GSSAPI authentication in SMTP authentication. (NoSasl-Generic Security Service Application Program Interface) Make this setting when restricting the use of GSSAPI authentication in SMTP authentication.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
NS-NTLM	NTLM authentication in SMTP authentication (NoSasl-windows NTLAN Manager) Make this setting when restricting the use of NTLM authentication in SMTP authentication.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value 0	
NS-PLNWS	Restrict the use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication (plain text authentication) in SMTP authentication in the environment where encryption of the NS-PLNWS communication packet is performed. Make this setting to restrict the use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication (plain text authentication) in SMTP authentication in the environment where encryption of the NS-PLNWS communication packet is performed.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value 0	
NS-PLN	Restrict the use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication (plain text authentication) in SMTP authentication. Make this setting to restrict the use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication (plain text authentication) in SMTP authentication in the environment where encryption of communication packet is not performed.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value 0	
NS-LGN	Restrict the use of LOGIN authentication in SMTP authentication. Make this setting to restrict the use of LOGIN authentication in SMTP authentication.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value 0	
MEAP-PN	Set a port number for the HTTP server used by MEAP application.	2
	Setting range 0 to 65535 Standard value 8000 For the use as MEAP port, do not use No. 1 to 1023 except No. 80 (HTTP). It is because the standard server uses this range.	
TNR-DWN	Make a setting to reduce toner volume. Reduce the toner volume compared to the normal volume. Reduce the problem such as toner scattering or wrapping around the fixing roller, etc., by decreasing toner volume.	2
	Setting range 0: Standard toner volume (default) 1: Low toner volume for both single sided and double sided mode 2: Standard toner volume for single sided mode, Low toner volume for both the 1st and 2nd side of double sided mode (reserve) Standard value 0 2 is not available because assumed operation is not sometimes performed in PDL or copy operation. (2 is available as a service mode, but, when 2 is selected, the machine operates in the same manner as 0.)	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SPECK-SW	Use it to switch between the timing of white plate dust detection.	2
	This is used at the occurrence of image line due to floating dust. Settings 0: normal timing (default) ; 1: for each job When setting the value as '1', first copy time (FCOT) gets longer.	
SVMD-ENT	Switch the method of entering the service mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Press the [User Mode] key. --> Press [2] and [8] at the same time. --> Press the [User Mode] key. 1: Press the [User Mode: key. --> Press [4] and [9] at the same time. --> Press the [User Mode] key. Standard value 0	
W-CLN-PH	Set the interval of automatic cleaning of the primary charging wire and pre-transfer charging wire. This mode is used to change the interval of automatic cleaning of the primary charging wire and pre-transfer charging wire when a poor image (vertical line, etc.) occurs in the high temperature/humidity environment. Use "W-CLN-P" mode to set the interval of automatic cleaning of the primary charging wire in normal environment.	2
	Setting range 100 to 10000 (can be set in the unit of 1) Standard value 1000	
SSH-SW	Set whether or not to activate the SSH server. Make this setting to specify whether or not to activate the SSH server when activating the main unit.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not activate the SSH server when activating the main unit. 1: Activate the SSH server when activating the main unit. Standard value 0 SSH server does not start by changing the setting value to 1(ON) while activating the main unit. The setting value becomes available after turning the power switch OFF/ON. Reference SSH is the abbreviation of 'Secure Shell'. The communication between digital accessory (DA) and iR device is encrypted to avoid being read from the outside.	
RMT-LGIN	Set whether or not to permit remote login to the SSH server. Make this setting to specify whether or not to permit remote login from the remote host (SSH client: digital accessory) to the SSH server debug console.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not permit remote login to the SSH server. 1: Permit remote login to the SSH server. Standard value 0 This item becomes available only when the setting value of <SSH-SW> is '1(ON)'.	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
RE-PKEY	<p>Set whether or not to recreate the SSH server pair keys. Make this setting to specify whether or not to recreate the SSH server pair keys when activating the main unit.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Do not recreate the SSH server pair keys when activating the main unit. 1: Recreate the SSH server pair keys when activating the main unit. Standard value 0</p> <p>This item becomes available only when the setting value of <SSH-SW> is '1(ON)'.</p> <p>Reference In the case that the main item is set to '1(recreate)', SSH server host recreates the pair keys (confidential/disclosure key) during task activation (power OFF/ON), and implements the output to key file and storage into HDD. Encryption algorithm (DSA) and the length of key (512bit) are fixed. It may take about three to four minutes more than usual to start the copier body due to this procedure.</p>	2
U-NAME	<p>Set a user name that can be connected to the SSH server. Specify a user name required to connect to the SSH server. Only one user is allowed to login.</p> <p>Setting range 8 characters maximum (one-byte alphanumeric character) Standard value gN3Fp2A</p> <p>This item is for future expansion. Do not change it. This item becomes available only when the setting value of <SSH-SW> is '1(ON)'.</p>	2
U-PASWD	<p>Set a password of a user who can be connected to the SSH server. Specify a password of a login user required to connect to the SSH server.</p> <p>Setting range 8 characters maximum (one-byte alphanumeric character) Standard value Vs8DuwJ</p> <p>This item is for future expansion. Do not change it. This item becomes available only when the setting value of <SSH-SW> is '1(ON)'. Passwords are masked on the screen.</p>	2
CDEV-IDL	<p>Set ON/OFF of the first power-on development idling for the color developer (YMC). Adjust the ATR patch interval of the 1st limit. When you increase the limit, downtime interval increases, but the density changes. When you decrease the limit, downtime interval decreases, but the density becomes stabilized. Trigger to start the patch detection: (1) count by the number of copies which is reset when the patch detection is performed (2) count by the reset video count</p> <p>Timing 1. When the 1st limit (20 copies) has been exceeded, perform the patch detection by the last rotation of that job. 2. At the point when the 2nd limit has been exceeded, discontinue the job and forcibly perform the patch detection. 3. At the point when the reset VC has exceeded 300% (in A4 equivalent), forcibly perform the patch detection. 1 copy = 3 images. Only YMC is counted. Image count: 1 count for small, 2 counts for large</p> <p>Setting range 0: OFF 1: ON Standard value 1 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.</p>	2

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FXWRNLVL	Change the warning level of the fixing upper roller. Change the warning level of the fixing counter value. The life of the fixing roller differs depending on the environment and usage. Set this value to match the optimum life when replacing the fixing unit.	2
	Setting range 0: 180,000 1: 150,000 2: 120,000 Standard value 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
FXERRLVL	Change an error level of the fixing roller. Specify an error level of the fixing counter value. Specify a counter value from when a warning is displayed to when an error is displayed.	2
	This mode is not used for this machine.	
DA-PORT	Set a port for communication with DA.	2
	Setting range 1: Open 0: Close Standard value 0 When 1 is set to COPIER>OPTION>BODY>DA-CNCT, the following items are set to ON. COPIER > OPTION > BODY > STS-PORT > CMD-PORT > SSH-SW > DA-PORT	
DA-CNCT	Use it to set WPGW(Workplace Gateway) connection.	2
	settings 0: off (default); 1: on MEMO: This is used only inside Japan, not outside Japan.	
ITR-ATVC	Set ON/OFF of the primary transfer ATVC retries for initial multiple rotations. Turn ON the primary transfer ATVC retries for initial multiple rotations in all environments.	2
	This mode is not used for this machine.	
CHNG-STTS	Use it to set the T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) status connection port number.	2
	Changes the port number for status connection in a TUIF over TCP/IP environment. This is used for changing the port No. in service NAVI. settings 1 to 65535 (default: 20010) MEMO: T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) Communication protocol between embedded application presentation (UI) and applications within the device including COPY/SEND/BOX etc., (Canon original protocol)	
CHNG-CMD	Use it to set the T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) command connection port number.	2
	Use it to set the port number for the command connection in an TUIF over TCP/IP environment. This is used for changing the port No. in service NAVI. settings 1 to 65535 (default: 20000) MEMO: T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) Communication protocol between embedded application presentation (UI) and applications within the device including COPY/SEND/BOX etc., (Canon original protocol)	
MEAP-DSP	Use it to prohibit a switch-over from the MEAP screen to the standard screen (COPY/SEND/BOX screen etc.,).	2
	settings 0: off (shift to standard screen; default); 1: on (do not shift to a standard screen) MEMO: Although setting the value as '1' in COPIER > OPTION > BODY > MEAP-DSP, at the occurrence of error/jam/alarm, the display transits to the standard screen for showing a warning.	


COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ANIM-SW	Set whether or not to use the full-screen display for jam/alarm in MEAP application operation.	2
	Although setting the value as '1' in COPIER > OPTION > BODY > MEAP-DSP, at the occurrence of error/jam/alarm, the display transits to the standard screen for showing a warning. When setting this value as '1', at the occurrence of error/jam/alarm, - Display transition to the standard screen is prohibited. - Warning is displayed on the MEAP screen to urge the user to contact servicing. settings 0: off (display warning screen; default); 1: on (do not display warning screen)	
HDD-TMP	Set a temperature for judgment of an abnormal status with low temperature in SAMSUNG HDD.	2
	Setting range 0 to 30 (deg C) Standard value 2 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
HDD-TIM	Set the grace time until it is judged as an abnormal status with low temperature in SAMSUNG HDD.	2
	Setting range 0 to 200 (minute) Standard value 10 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
HDD-SW	Set whether or not to display the E code for an abnormal status with low temperature in SAMSUNG HDD.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the code. 1: Display the code. Standard value 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
MEAP-SSL	Set an HTTP port for MEAP. Set a port for the HTTP server when using SSL in the HTTP of MEAP.	2
	Setting range 1 to 65535 Standard value 8443	
MIX-FLG	Switch the image area flag (for image compositing). Switch the image processing method when an image for image compositing could not be compressed to a specified compression ratio on the main controller side.	2
	Setting range 0: Image processing equivalent to the PDL character mode 1: Image processing equivalent to the PDL photo mode 2: Image processing equivalent to the SCAN character mode 3: Image processing equivalent to the SCAN photo mode Standard value 0	
KSIZE-SW	Switch the setting for the paper used in China. Switch the setting to support the detection and display of K-size paper for the iR series scanner and controller. The following K-size paper is available. 8k: 270mm x 390mm / 16k: 270mm x 195mm When this mode is set to 1 (ON) for the destination specified in MODEL-SZ= (AB group), the K-size paper mentioned above can be detected in the document detection and recognized in the display of the paper selection screen, etc.	2
	Setting range 0: OFF: Do not support K-size paper. 1: ON: Support K-size paper. Standard value 0: OFF	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
LPD-PORT	<p>Set a LPD port number.</p> <p>Setting range 1 to 65535 Standard value 515</p> <p>Reference LDP port is the network port for TCP/IP communication at printing via network.</p>	2
ORG-A4R	<p>Use it to set a special paper size not recognized when the ADF is in use.</p> <p>With machines for INCH/AB configuration, image formation is executed correctly by setting the size of the special paper that fails to be recognized at original pickup from the ADF. Settings 0: A4R (default) 1: FOLIO-R When detecting the A4R original in the ADF, it converts to the original size that was set in this item to execute image formation using the original size after conversion.</p>	2
ORG-FLSC	<p>Use it to set a specific paper size not recognized when the ADF is in use.</p> <p>With machines for INCH/AB configuration, image formation is executed correctly by setting the size of the special paper that fails to be recognized at original pickup from the ADF. settings 0: Foolscap-R (default); 1: Officio-R; 2: Folio-R; 3: Australian Foolscap-R; 4: Ecuadorian Officio-R; 5: Argentine Officio-R; 6: Argentine Legal-R; 7: Government Legal-R; 8: Mexican Officio-R When detecting the FOOLSCAP size in the ADF, it converts to the original size that was set in this item to execute image formation using the original size after conversion</p>	2
PDF-RDCT	<p>Set whether or not to reduce and send the image for reception transfer (transmission in the PDF format).</p> <p>Reduce and send the image when converting the image received by FAX or iFAX into the PDF format and performing transmission by e-mail or file. Setting range 0: Convert the image into the PDF format, but do not reduce it for reception transfer. 1: Convert the image into the PDF format, and reduce it for reception transfer. Standard value 0</p>	2
REDU-CNT	<p>Control the switching of the density adjustment method. Control whether or not to perform density adjustment considering toner volume restriction.</p> <p>Setting range 0 to 1 Standard value 1</p>	2
REBOOTSW	<p>Set whether or not to perform reboot when the E240 error occurs.</p> <p>In the current specifications, reboot is performed when the E240 error occurs. (Reasons: Continuous rotation deteriorates the durability performance of the engine. It cannot be also denied that it may cause an error to the engine.) However, when reboot is performed automatically, jobs in the PDL disappear, which has been causing complaints in the field. Therefore, this mode is used to set whether or not to automatically perform reboot when the E240 error occurs.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Perform reboot automatically when the E240 error occurs. 1: Do not perform reboot automatically when the E240 error occurs. Standard value 0</p>	2

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
VP-ART	Change the line art processing. Change the outline processing for line art in the scalable PDF.	2
	Setting range 0 to 99 Standard value 1	
VP-TXT	Change the vector processing for characters. Change the vector processing for characters in the scalable PDF.	2
	Setting range 0 to 99 Standard value 1	
UI-PRINT	Set whether or not to display the print job screen in the control panel. This is a switch to set whether or not to display the print job screen in the control panel. This is a specification for a user who does not desire to display the screen in the control panel.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the print job screen. 1: Display the print job screen. Standard value 1	
WUEV-SW	Set whether or not to provide a notice of the sleep mode operation. Set whether or not to provide a notice of the sleep mode operation to the DS application on network when the copier main unit entered the sleep mode or recovered from the sleep mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Provide a notice. 1: Do not provide a notice. Standard value 0	
WUEV-INT	Set the interval to provide a notice of the sleep mode operation.	2
	Setting range 0 to 65535 Standard value 600	
WUEV-POT	Set a port number for the destination to provide a notice of the sleep mode operation.	2
	Setting range 1 to 65535 Standard value 11427	
WUEV-RTR	Set a range to provide a notice of the sleep mode operation. Set the number of routers that can be used for a notice of the sleep mode operation.	2
	Setting range 0 to 254 Standard value 3	
SJB-UNW	Switch the number of reserved jobs for secure print jobs. Switch the number of reserved jobs for secure print jobs to 50 or 90.	2
	Setting range 0: 50 1: 90 Standard value 0	
UI-RSCAN	Set whether or not to display the remote scan screen in the control panel. This mode is used to set whether or not to display the remote scan screen in the control panel. This is a specification for a user who does not desire to display the screen in the control panel.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the screen. 1: Display the screen. Standard value 1	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
UI-EPRNT	Set whether or not to display the expansion printing screen in the control panel. This mode is used to set whether or not to display the expansion printing screen (EFI print screen) in the control panel. This is a specification for a user who does not desire to display the screen in the control panel.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the screen. 1: Display the screen. Standard value 1	
UI-WEB	Set whether or not to display the Web browser screen in the control panel. This mode is used to set whether or not to display the Web browser screen in the control panel. This is a specification for a user who does not desire to display the screen in the control panel.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the screen. 1: Display the screen. Standard value 1	
WEBV-SW	Set whether or not to prohibit the use of the WEBDAV function. When this mode is set to 1(ON), the WEBDAV function becomes unavailable. (The WEBDAV items are deleted from the following mode. - User mode --> destination table specification setting --> registration of destinations --> file --> "WEBDAV" in the protocol - User mode --> "use the chunk divided transmission for WEBDAV transmission" in the transmission specification setting items	2
	Setting range 0: Use the WEBDAV function. 1: Do not use the WEBDAV function. Standard value 0 [Reference] Although the WEBDAV function is included in the main unit as a standard function, there are cases when this function is not used in order to reduce the memory usage.	
PASCL-TY	Set the paper type used for the automatic gradation correction (PASCAL). This mode is used when executing PASCAL for the paper which is not recommended for the destination.	2
	Setting range 1: CLC-SK 80g paper (Countries other than USA/EU. Mainly Japan) 2: Hammermill 105g paper (for USA) 3: Neusiedler 100g paper (for EU) Do not change the setting in a normal condition.	
CARD-RNG	Set the number of cards available. Set the number of cards available when using a card reader.	2
	Setting range 1 to 1000 Standard value 1000 [Reference] In the current condition, the starting number of the card is specified by COPIER>FUNCTION>INSTALL>CARD, and the fixed number of cards is specified starting from that number. (ex. fixed at 1000 cards)	
WUEN-LIV	Set the activation interval after a sleep notice was provided from network. Set the interval from when sleep activation was performed to the copier main unit from network without sending a job to when the machine enters the sleep mode next.	2
	Setting range 10 to 600 Standard value 15 (Unit: second) *10 seconds to 10 minutes	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
COMP-PRT	When performing printing for "printing of a page number / printing of the number of copies / printing of a date / bookbinding / printing of a tint block (hereinafter called 'combined printing') with the copying number of 2 or more, printing is prioritized in memory allocation for image processing for a certain memory model (option) or document size. This causes a lack of memory for image processing of scanning, SEND transmission (excluding FAX), and PDL input operation, and such operation cannot be performed until printing is completed. This mode is used to perform equal memory allocation to all jobs so that operation such as scanning, SEND transmission (excluding FAX), and PDL input can be performed before printing is completed (so that such operation is performed little by little).	2
	Setting range 0: Prioritize printing. 1: Perform equal memory allocation. Standard value 0	
SHT-DCSW	Skip the DCON termination processing when executing shutdown.	2
	Setting range 0: Execute shutdown after the DCON fan control is terminated. 1: Execute shutdown before the DCON fan control is terminated. Standard value 0	
ADJ-VPP	Adjust the developing bias Vpp. Function to adjust Vpp for the developing AC bias.	2
	Setting range -4 to 2 Standard value 0	
AST-SEL	Change the range of the advanced smoothing. AST-SEL (AST level SElect)	2
	Setting range 0 to 3 Standard value 2	
REGM-SEL	Change the range of the thin line density correction. REGM-SEL (REos GaMma SElect)	2
	Setting range 0 to 4 Standard value 2	
ADJ-BLNK	Adjust the length of the developing bias blank. Function to adjust the blank length of the developing bank pulse bias	2
	Setting range 1 to 4 Standard value 3	
2TR-RVON	Set ON/OFF of the weak bias of the trail edge of paper. Set this mode to ON when scattering occurred to the trail edge of the image on the 2nd side in 1/ 3 speed.	2
	Setting range 0: OFF 1: ON Standard value 0	
USB-RCNT	Auto-connection setting at disconnection of USB device (USB RECONNECT)	2
	Setting range 0 to 1 0: Non auto-connect 1: Auto-connect Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FAN-TM1	Operation time change of fans for primary charging series Change the operation time of fans for primary charging series at last rotation.	2
	Setting range: 0 to 55 (1 scale: 1 min) Standard value: 55 Supplement: This service mode applies to the following three fans. - Primary exhaust fan (FM2) - Left exhaust fan (FM16) - Primary exhaust assist fan (FM18) Make sure to set the setting value to 15 min or more.	
	 This item applies to the upgraded device (DCON Ver11.03 or later, Cont Ver24.04 or later)	

16.6.1.2 COPIER List (subheadings under USER)

imagePRESS C1

2. USER

T-16-160

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
COPY-LIM	Change the upper limit value of the number of copies.	1
	Setting range 1 to 9999 copies Standard value 9999	
SLEEP	Set ON/OFF of the sleep function.	1
	Setting range 0: OFF 1: ON Standard value 1 The sleep function is set by the timer setting in the user mode.	
WEB-DISP	Set whether or not to display the message "web is almost empty" in the user screen.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not display the message. 1: Display the message. Standard value 1: Display the message. [Remarks] A) Message on the UI Display a warning message. (default) Whether or not to display the warning message can be set by this mode. B) Display in the service mode The message is always displayed regardless of the value specified for this mode.	
COUNTER 1	Use it to set soft counter 1 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	101: Total 1 Fixed to 1, which is a factory setting value / a value after RAM clear is executed. This value cannot be changed.	
COUNTER 2	Use it to set soft counter 2 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	Setting range 0 to 999 Standard value 108	
COUNTER 3	Use it to set soft counter 3 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	Setting range 0 to 999 Standard value 232	
COUNTER 4	Use it to set soft counter 4 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	Setting range 0 to 999 Standard value 324	

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
COUNTER 5	Use it to set soft counter 5 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	Setting range 0 to 999 Standard value 0	
COUNTER 6	Use it to set soft counter 6 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	Setting range 0 to 999 Standard value 0	

Soft counter specifications

000 to 099: Remote copy
 100 to 199: Total
 200 to 299: Copy
 300 to 399: Print
 400 to 499: Copy and print
 500 to 599: Scan
 600 to 699: Box
 700 to 799: Reception print
 800 to 899: Report print
 900 to 999: Transmission

- Explanation of symbols shown in the table -

- yes: Valid counter for this machine
- 4C: Full color
- Mono: Mono color (Y, M, C / R, G, B / retro monochrome)
- Bk: Single black color
- L: Large size (larger than B4 size)
- S: Small size (smaller than B4 size)
- Numbers 1, 2 indicated under "Counter Details": Number of counts for large size paper
 It can be changed by the service mode (COPIER > OPTION > USER > B4_L_CNT) so that the paper larger than B4 size can be counted as large size paper.
- Copy: Local copy + remote copy
- Copy A: Local copy + remote copy + box print
- Print: PDL print + report print + box print
- Print A: PDL print + report print
- Scan: Black and white scan + color scan

T-16-161

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	002	Remote copy (full color 1)
yes	003	Remote copy (full color 2)
yes	004	Remote copy (mono color 1)
yes	005	Remote copy (mono color 2)
yes	006	Remote copy (black and white 1)
yes	007	Remote copy (black and white 2)
yes	008	Remote copy (full color / large)
yes	009	Remote copy (full color / small)
yes	010	Remote copy (mono color / large)
yes	011	Remote copy (mono color / small)
yes	012	Remote copy (black and white / large)
yes	013	Remote copy (black and white / small)
yes	014	Remote copy (full color + mono color / large)
yes	015	Remote copy (full color + mono color / small)
yes	016	Remote copy (full color + mono color 2)
yes	017	Remote copy (full color + mono color 1)
yes	018	Remote copy (full color / large / double sided)
yes	019	Remote copy (full color / small / double sided)
yes	020	Remote copy (mono color / large / double sided)
yes	021	Remote copy (mono color / small / double sided)
yes	022	Remote copy (black and white / large / double sided)
yes	023	Remote copy (black and white / small / double sided)

T-16-162

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	101	Total 1
yes	102	Total 2
yes	103	Total (large)
yes	104	Total (small)
yes	105	Total (full color 1)
yes	106	Total (full color 2)
yes	108	Total (black and white 1)
yes	109	Total (black and white 2)
yes	110	Total (mono color /large)
yes	111	Total (mono color /small)
yes	112	Total (black and white /large)
yes	113	Total (black and white /small)
yes	114	Total 1(double sided)
yes	115	Total 2(double sided)
yes	116	large (double sided)
yes	117	small (double sided)
yes	118	Total (mono color 1)
yes	119	Total (mono color 2)
yes	120	Total (full color /large)
yes	121	Total (full color /small)
yes	122	Total (full color +mono color /large)
yes	123	Total (full color +mono color /small)
yes	124	Total (full color +mono color 2)
yes	125	Total (full color +mono color 1)
yes	126	Total A1
yes	127	Total A2
yes	128	Total A (large)
yes	129	Total A (small)
yes	130	Total A (full color 1)
yes	131	Total A (full color 2)
yes	132	Total A (black and white 1)
yes	133	Total A (black and white 2)
yes	134	Total A (mono color /large)
yes	135	Total A (mono color /small)
yes	136	Total A (black and white /large)
yes	137	Total A (black and white /small)
yes	138	Total A 1(double sided)
yes	139	Total A 2(double sided)
yes	140	large A (double sided)
yes	141	small A (double sided)
yes	142	Total A (mono color 1)
yes	143	Total A (mono color 2)
yes	144	Total A (full color /large)
yes	145	Total A (full color /small)
yes	146	Total A (full color +mono color /large)
yes	147	Total A (full color +mono color /small)
yes	148	Total A (full color +mono color 2)
yes	149	Total A (full color +mono color 1)
yes	150	Total B1
yes	151	Total B2
yes	152	Total B (large)
yes	153	Total B (small)
yes	154	Total B (full color 1)
yes	155	Total B (full color 2)
yes	156	Total B (black and white 1)
yes	157	Total B (black and white 2)
yes	158	Total B (mono color /large)
yes	159	Total B (mono color /small)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	160	Total B (black and white /large)
yes	161	Total B (black and white /small)
yes	162	Total B1 (double sided)
yes	163	Total B2 (double sided)
yes	164	largeB (double sided)
yes	165	smallB (double sided)
yes	166	Total B (mono color 1)
yes	167	Total B (mono color 2)
yes	168	Total B (full color /large)
yes	169	Total B (full color /small)
yes	170	Total B (full color +mono color /large)
yes	171	Total B (full color +mono color /small)
yes	172	Total B (full color +mono color 2)
yes	173	Total B (full color +mono color 1)
no	191	Toner replacement / yellow
no	192	Toner replacement / magenta
no	193	Toner replacement / cyan
no	194	Toner replacement / black
no	195	Toner replacement / expansion 1
no	196	Toner replacement / expansion 2

T-16-163

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	201	Copy (Total 1)
yes	202	Copy (Total 2)
yes	203	Copy (large)
yes	204	Copy (small)
yes	205	Copy A (Total 1)
yes	206	Copy A (Total 2)
yes	207	Copy A (large)
yes	208	Copy A (small)
yes	209	Local copy (Total 1)
yes	210	Local copy (Total 2)
yes	211	Local copy (large)
yes	212	Local copy (small)
yes	213	Remote copy (Total 1)
yes	214	Remote copy (Total 2)
yes	215	Remote copy (large)
yes	216	Remote copy (small)
yes	217	Copy (full color 1)
yes	218	Copy (full color 2)
yes	219	Copy (mono color 1)
yes	220	Copy (mono color 2)
yes	221	Copy (black and white 1)
yes	222	Copy (black and white 2)
yes	223	Copy (full color /large)
yes	224	Copy (full color /small)
yes	225	Copy (mono color /large)
yes	226	Copy (mono color /small)
yes	227	Copy (black and white /large)
yes	228	Copy (black and white /small)
yes	229	Copy (full color +mono color /large)
yes	230	Copy (full color +mono color /small)
yes	231	Copy (full color +mono color /2)
yes	232	Copy (full color +mono color /1)
yes	233	Copy (full color /large/double sided)
yes	234	Copy (full color /small/double sided)
yes	235	Copy (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	236	Copy (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	237	Copy (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	238	Copy (black and white /small/double sided)
yes	245	Copy A (full color 1)
yes	246	Copy A (full color 2)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	247	Copy A (mono color 1)
yes	248	Copy A (mono color 2)
yes	249	Copy A (black and white 1)
yes	250	Copy A (black and white 2)
yes	251	Copy A (full color /large)
yes	252	Copy A (full color /small)
yes	253	Copy A (mono color /large)
yes	254	Copy A (mono color /small)
yes	255	Copy A (black and white /large)
yes	256	Copy A (black and white /small)
yes	257	Copy A (full color +mono color /large)
yes	258	Copy A (full color +mono color /small)
yes	259	Copy A (full color +mono color 2)
yes	260	Copy A (full color +mono color 1)
yes	261	Copy A (full color /large/double sided)
yes	262	Copy A (full color /small/double sided)
yes	263	Copy A (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	264	Copy A (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	265	Copy A (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	266	Copy A (black and white /small/double sided)
yes	273	Local copy (full color 1)
yes	274	Local copy (full color 2)
yes	275	Local copy (mono color 1)
yes	276	Local copy (mono color 2)
yes	277	Local copy (black and white 1)
yes	278	Local copy (black and white 2)
yes	279	Local copy (full color /large)
yes	280	Local copy (full color /small)
yes	281	Local copy (mono color /large)
yes	282	Local copy (mono color /small)
yes	283	Local copy (black and white /large)
yes	284	Local copy (black and white /small)
yes	285	Local copy (full color +mono color /large)
yes	286	Local copy (full color +mono color /small)
yes	287	Local copy (full color +mono color 2)
yes	288	Local copy (full color +mono color 1)
yes	289	Local copy (full color /large/double sided)
yes	290	Local copy (full color /small/double sided)
yes	291	Local copy (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	292	Local copy (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	293	Local copy (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	294	Local copy (black and white /small/double sided)

T-16-164

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	301	Print (Total 1)
yes	302	Print (Total 2)
yes	303	Print (large)
yes	304	Print (small)
yes	305	Print A(Total 1)
yes	306	Print A(Total 2)
yes	307	Print A(large)
yes	308	Print A(small)
yes	309	Print (full color 1)
yes	310	Print (full color 2)
yes	311	Print (mono color 1)
yes	312	Print (mono color 2)
yes	313	Print (black and white 1)
yes	314	Print (black and white 2)
yes	315	Print (full color /large)
yes	316	Print (full color /small)
yes	317	Print (mono color /large)
yes	318	Print (mono color /small)
yes	319	Print (black and white /large)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	320	Print (black and white /small)
yes	321	Print (full color +mono color /large)
yes	322	Print (full color +mono color /small)
yes	323	Print (full color +mono color /2)
yes	324	Print (full color +mono color /1)
yes	325	Print (full color /large /double sided)
yes	326	Print (full color /small/double sided)
yes	327	Print (mono color /large /double sided)
yes	328	Print (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	329	Print (black and white /large /double sided)
yes	330	Print (black and white /small/double sided)
yes	331	PDLPrint (Total 1)
yes	332	PDLPrint (Total 2)
yes	333	PDLPrint (large)
yes	334	PDLPrint (small)
yes	335	PDLPrint (full color 1)
yes	336	PDLPrint (full color 2)
yes	339	PDLPrint (black and white 1)
yes	340	PDLPrint (black and white 2)
yes	341	PDLPrint (full color /large)
yes	342	PDLPrint (full color /small)
yes	345	PDLPrint (black and white /large)
yes	346	PDLPrint (black and white /small)
yes	351	PDLPrint (full color /large /double sided)
yes	352	PDLPrint (full color /small/double sided)
yes	355	PDLPrint (black and white /large /double sided)
yes	356	PDLPrint (black and white /small/double sided)

T-16-165

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	401	Copy + print (full color /large)
yes	402	Copy + print (full color /small)
yes	403	Copy + print (black and white/large)
yes	404	Copy + print (black and white/small)
yes	405	Copy + print (black and white2)
yes	406	Copy + print (black and white1)
yes	407	Copy + print (full color +mono color /large)
yes	408	Copy + print (full color +mono color /small)
yes	409	Copy + print (full color +mono color /2)
yes	410	Copy + print (full color +mono color /1)
yes	411	Copy + print (large)
yes	412	Copy + print (small)
yes	413	Copy + print (2)
yes	414	Copy + print (1)
yes	415	Copy + print (mono color /large)
yes	416	Copy + print (mono color /small)
yes	417	Copy + print (full color /large/double sided)
yes	418	Copy + print (full color /small/double sided)
yes	419	Copy + print (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	420	Copy + print (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	421	Copy + print (black and white/large/double sided)
yes	422	Copy + print (black and white/small/double sided)

T-16-166

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	501	Scan (Total 1)
yes	502	Scan (Total 2)
yes	503	Scan (large)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	504	Scan (small)
yes	505	Black and white Scan (Total 1)
yes	506	Black and white Scan (Total 2)
yes	507	Black and white Scan (large)
yes	508	Black and white Scan (small)
yes	509	Color scan (Total 1)
yes	510	Color scan (Total 2)
yes	511	Color scan (large)
yes	512	Color scan (small)

T-16-167

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	601	Box print (Total 1)
yes	602	Box print (Total 2)
yes	603	Box print (large)
yes	604	Box print (small)
yes	605	Box print (full color 1)
yes	606	Box print (full color 2)
yes	607	Box print (mono color 1)
yes	608	Box print (mono color 2)
yes	609	Box print (black and white 1)
yes	610	Box print (black and white 2)
yes	611	Box print (full color /large)
yes	612	Box print (full color /small)
yes	613	Box print (mono color /large)
yes	614	Box print (mono color /small)
yes	615	Box print (black and white /large)
yes	616	Box print (black and white /small)
yes	617	Box print (full color +mono color /large)
yes	618	Box print (full color +mono color /small)
yes	619	Box print (full color +mono color 2)
yes	620	Box print (full color +mono color 1)
yes	621	Box print (full color /large/double sided)
yes	622	Box print (full color /small/double sided)
yes	623	Box print (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	624	Box print (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	625	Box print (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	626	Box print (black and white /small/double sided)

T-16-168

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	701	Reception print (Total 1)
yes	702	Reception print (Total 2)
yes	703	Reception print (large)
yes	704	Reception print (small)
yes	705	Reception print (full color 1)
yes	706	Reception print (full color 2)
no	707	Reception print (Gray scale 1)
no	708	Reception print (Gray scale 2)
yes	709	Reception print (black and white 1)
yes	710	Reception print (black and white 2)
yes	711	Reception print (full color /large)
yes	712	Reception print (full color /small)
no	713	Reception print (Gray scale /large)
no	714	Reception print (Gray scale /small)
yes	715	Reception print (black and white /large)
yes	716	Reception print (black and white /small)
no	717	Reception print (full color +Gray scale /large)
no	718	Reception print (full color +Gray scale /small)
no	719	Reception print (full color +Gray scale 2)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
no	720	Reception print (full color +Gray scale 1)
yes	721	Reception print (full color /large/double sided)
yes	722	Reception print (full color /small/double sided)
no	723	Reception print (Gray scale /large/double sided)
no	724	Reception print (Gray scale /small/double sided)
yes	725	Reception print (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	726	Reception print (black and white /small/double sided)

T-16-169

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	801	Report print (Total 1)
yes	802	Report print (Total 2)
yes	803	Report print (large)
yes	804	Report print (small)
yes	805	Report print (full color 1)
yes	806	Report print (full color 2)
no	807	Report print (Gray scale 1)
no	808	Report print (Gray scale 2)
yes	809	Report print (black and white 1)
yes	810	Report print (black and white 2)
yes	811	Report print (full color /large)
yes	812	Report print (full color /small)
no	813	Report print (Gray scale /large)
no	814	Report print (Gray scale /small)
yes	815	Report print (black and white /large)
yes	816	Report print (black and white /small)
no	817	Report print (full color +Gray scale /large)
no	818	Report print (full color +Gray scale /small)
no	819	Report print (full color +Gray scale 2)
no	820	Report print (full color +Gray scale 1)
yes	821	Report print (full color /large /double sided)
yes	822	Report print (full color /small /double sided)
no	823	Report print (Gray scale /large /double sided)
no	824	Report print (Gray scale /small /double sided)
yes	825	Report print (black and white /large /double sided)
yes	826	Report print (black and white /small /double sided)

T-16-170

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
no	901	Copy scan total 1(color)
no	902	Copy scan total 1(black and white)
no	903	Copy scan total 2(color)
no	904	Copy scan total 2(black and white)
no	905	Copy scan total 3(color)
no	906	Copy scan total 3(black and white)
no	907	Copy scan total 4(color)
no	908	Copy scan total 4(black and white)
no	909	Local copy scan (color)
no	910	Local copy scan (black and white)
no	911	Remote copy scan (color)
no	912	Remote copy scan (black and white)
no	913	Transmission scan total 1(color)
no	914	Transmission scan total 1(black and white)
yes	915	Transmission scan total 2(color)
yes	916	Transmission scan total 2(black and white)
yes	917	Transmission scan total 3(color)
yes	918	Transmission scan total 3(black and white)
no	919	Transmission scan total 4(color)
no	920	Transmission scan total 4(black and white)
yes	921	Transmission scan total 5(color)
yes	922	Transmission scan total 5(black and white)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	929	Transmission scan total 6(color)
yes	930	Transmission scan total 6(black and white)
no	931	Transmission scan total 7(color)
no	932	Transmission scan total 7(black and white)
no	933	Transmission scan total 8(color)
no	934	Transmission scan total 8(black and white)
no	935	Universal transmission scan total (color)
no	936	Universal transmission scan total (black and white)
yes	937	Box scan (color)
yes	938	Box scan (black and white)
yes	939	Remote scan (color)
yes	940	Remote scan (black and white)
no	941	Transmission scan / Fax (color)
no	942	Transmission scan / Fax (black and white)
no	943	Transmission scan / I Fax (color)
no	944	Transmission scan / I Fax (black and white)
yes	945	Transmission scan / E-mail (color)
yes	946	Transmission scan / E-mail (black and white)
no	947	Transmission scan /FTP(color)
no	948	Transmission scan /FTP(black and white)
no	949	Transmission scan /SMB(color)
no	950	Transmission scan /SMB(black and white)
no	951	Transmission scan /IPX(color)
no	952	Transmission scan /IPX(black and white)
no	953	Transmission scan / Database (color)
no	954	Transmission scan / Database (black and white)
no	955	Transmission scan / Local print (color)
no	956	Transmission scan / Local print (black and white)
no	957	Transmission scan / Box (color)
no	958	Transmission scan / Box (black and white)


T-16-171

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CONTROL	enables/disables the charging mechanism (PDL job) When connecting with the account-managing device (e.g., coin vendor, non-Canon control card), it switches over the count pulse (on/off) in the account-managing device. settings 0: do not restrict (default); 1: restrict When charging against PDL prints, set '1'.	1
B4-L-CNT	Set whether to count the B4-size paper as large size or small size in soft counters 1 to 6. Setting range 0: Small size 1: Large size Standard value 0	1
COPY-JOB	Set whether or not to prohibit the copy job reservation when using the card reader and coin vendor. This mode is used when it is necessary to prohibit simultaneous entry of multiple jobs for CCX or coin robo. Setting range 0: Copy job reservation is not prohibited. 1: Copy job reservation is prohibited. Standard value 0	1
TAB-ROT	Set whether or not to perform 180 degree rotation for the landscape image of PDL tab paper. Setting range 0: Do not perform rotation. 1: Perform rotation. Standard value 0	1

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PR-PSESW	Set whether or not to display the print pause function switch. This mode is used to set whether or not to display the print pause function switch in the user screen.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the print pause function. (Do not display the print pause function switch in the user screen.) 1: Provide the print pause function. (Display the print pause function switch in the user screen.) Standard value 0	
IDPRN-SW	Switch the type of the count-up job for the section control counter.	1
	Setting range 0: Count up BoxPrint, ReporPrint, SendLocalPrint, and PDLPrint to the PRINT category. 1: Count up ReporPrint, SendLocalPrint, and PDLPrint to the PRINT category. Standard value 0	
CPRT-DSP	Set whether or not to display the count print button in the sales counter confirmation screen.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not display the button. 1: Display the button. Standard value 0	
CNT-SW	Set the type of a counter for the counter display item.	1
	Setting range 0: Counter 1 - Total 1: 101 Counter 2 - Total (black and white 1): 108 Counter 3 - Copy (full color + mono color / 1): 232 Counter 4 - Print (full color + mono color / 1): 324 1: Counter 1 - Total 2: 102 Counter 2 - Copy (full color + mono color / 2): 231 Counter 3 - Total A (full color + mono color / 2): 148 Counter 4 - Copy (black and white 2): 222 Counter 5 - Total A (black and white 2): 133 2: (The setting value '0' with mono color) Counter 1 - Total 1: 101 Counter 2 - Total (black and white 1): 108 Counter 3 - Copy (full color + mono color / 1): 232 Counter 4 - Print (full color + mono color / 1): 324 Counter 5 - Total (mono color 1): 118 3: Counter 1 - Total 1: 101 Counter 2 - Total (full color + mono color / small): 123 Counter 3 - Total (full color + mono color / large): 122 Counter 4 - Total (black and white / small): 113 Counter 5 - Total (black and white / large): 112 Counter 6 - Scan (Total 1): 501 4: (The setting value '3' with mono color) Counter 1 - Total 1: 101 Counter 2 - Total (full color + mono color / small): 123 Counter 3 - Total (full color + mono color / large): 122 Counter 4 - Total (black and white / small): 113 Counter 5 - Total (black and white / large): 112 Counter 6 - Total (mono color / small): 111 Counter 7 - Total (mono color / large): 110 Counter 8 - Scan (Total 1): 501 Standard value 0	
TAB-ACC	Set whether or not to perform ACC for tab paper (index paper).	1
	Setting range 0: Do not perform ACC for tab paper. 1: Perform ACC for tab paper. Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
BCNT-AST	Set whether to count a BOX print job as a PDL job or a COPY job.	1
	Setting range 0: Count a BOX print job as a PDL job. 1: Count a BOX print job as a COPY job. Standard value 0	
DFLT-CPY	Set the default color mode for COPY.	1
	Setting range 0: ACS 1: Full color 2: Black and white JPN [Standard value: 0] UL [Standard value: 0] EUR [Standard value: 0] Other destinations [Standard value: 0]	
DFLT-BOX	Set the default color mode for BOX.	1
	Setting range 0: ACS 1: Full color 2: Black and white JPN [Standard value: 0] UL [Standard value: 0] EUR [Standard value: 0] Other destinations [Standard value: 0]	
COUNTER7	Select the counter type to be displayed for Counter 7 in the user mode. Set a value for the 7th counter to be displayed in the user mode.	1
	Setting range 1 to 26, 39, 41 to 45 Standard value 0 (Not displayed)	
COUNTER8	Select the counter type to be displayed for Counter 8 in the user mode. Set a value for the 8th counter to be displayed in the user mode.	1
	Setting range 1 to 26, 39, 41 to 45 Standard value 0 (Not displayed)	
LDAP-SW	Set the switching of the searching condition for LDAP search. Set a matching condition to search e-mail addresses or FAX numbers from the LDAP server.	1
	Setting range 0: "Include the specified keyword." 1: "Do not include the specified keyword." 2: "Equal to the specified keyword." 3: "Not equal to the specified keyword." 4: "Start with the specified keyword." 5: "End with the specified keyword." Standard value 4 Remarks By registering the LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) server, e-mail addresses and Fax numbers can be searched from the LADP server. The e-mail addresses and Fax numbers obtained from the search can be registered to the address book.	
FROM-OF	Set whether or not to delete the 'from' address for mail transmission.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not delete the 'from' address. 1: Delete the 'from' address. Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SPEAKER	Set whether or not to display the "speaker/head set switching" button in the voice reading setting (user mode).	1
	Setting range 0: Do not display the button. 1: Display the button. Standard value 0	
FILE-OF	Set whether or not to prohibit transmission to a file address. This mode is used to prohibit transmission to a file address by prohibiting input of a file address from an address book.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not prohibit transmission to a file address. 1: Prohibit transmission to a file address. Standard value 0 Remarks - In case of changing the setting from 0 to 1 while FILE addresses have been registered, it is desirable to delete the FILE addresses manually. (Without deleting them, they can be used.) - In case the setting is 1, the import (registration) of the FILE address from RUI and machine information delivery is not accepted. Thus, if there are many FILE addresses, set 1 for this mode and make the files exported with RUI and machine information delivery to 'Overwrite import (register the imported addresses after deleting the current data)'. By doing so, they can be deleted at once.	
MAIL-OF	Set whether or not to prohibit transmission to an e-mail address. This mode is used to prohibit transmission to an e-mail address by prohibiting input of an e-mail address from an address book.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not prohibit transmission to an e-mail address. 1: Prohibit transmission to an e-mail address. Standard value 0 Remarks - In case of changing the setting from 0 to 1 while the e-mail addresses are registered, it is desirable to delete the e-mail addresses manually. (Without deleting them, they can be used.) - In case the setting is 1, the import (registration) of the e-mail addresses from RUI and machine information delivery is not accepted. Thus, if there are many e-mail addresses, set 1 for this mode to enable 'Overwrite import (register the imported addresses after deleting the current data)' by RUI and machine information delivery. By doing so, they can be deleted at once.	
IFAX-OF	Set whether or not to prohibit transmission to an i-FAX address. This mode is used to prohibit transmission to an i-FAX address by prohibiting input of an i-FAX address from an address book.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not prohibit transmission to an i-FAX address. 1: Prohibit transmission to an i-FAX address. Standard value 0 Remarks - In case of changing the setting from 0 to 1 while the iFAX addresses have been registered, it is desirable to delete the iFAX addresses manually. (Without deleting them, they can be used.) - In case the setting is 1, the import (registration) of the iFAX addresses from RUI and machine information delivery is not accepted. Thus, if there are many iFAX addresses, set 1 for this mode to enable 'Overwrite import (register the imported addresses after deleting the current data)' by RUI and machine information delivery. By doing so, they can be deleted at once.	

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
LDAP-DEF	Switch the default setting of the LDAP searching condition. Change the default setting of a searching attribute condition specified for LDAP searching.	1
	Setting range 0 to 6 0: "Name" 1: "E-mail" 2: "FAX" 3: "Organization" 4: "Unit of organization" 5: User setting 1 6: User setting 2 Standard value 0 Refer to COPIER > OPTION> USER > LDAP-SW for the details of LDAP.	
DK3-ASST	Switch the air heater control for the pickup deck with air-assist function. (Setting for PDO deck Lite) Switch the condition to turn on the air heater for air-assist function according to the media and environment.	1
	Setting range 0: Control the air heater based on the media and environment condition. 1: Turn on the air heater based on the environment condition only. (Not dependent on the media) 2: Turn on the air heater constantly. (Not dependent on the environment and media) Standard value 0 Remarks When switching the media setting from non-coated paper to coated paper for the pickup deck with air-assist function, wait-time occurs before the temperature of the air heater is controlled. (For coated paper, pickup cannot be performed until the air heater is turned on and warm air blows.) Furthermore, when the machine is used in the environment near the ON/OFF switching condition, it is assumed that the ON/OFF switching of the air heater is frequently performed and it increases the wait-time. When you receive a claim from a user that the wait-time is too long, perform the following measures; - For the former case (switching of the media setting from non-coated paper to coated paper), explain that transfer performance of no	
FX-BC-SW	Set ON/OFF of the wait-mode control for cooling of the fixing assembly.	1
	Setting range OFF [0] / ON [1] Standard value 0	
CARD-DIR	4-pane postcard feeding direction setting Set the feeding direction of 4-pane postcard.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1 0: Short edge feed only 1: Available to switch Long edge feed/Short edge feed. Standard value 0	
	 This item applies to the upgraded device or later (DCON Ver11.03 or later, Cont Ver24.04 or later)	
SIZE-DET	Set ON/OFF of the document size detection function.	2
	Setting range 0: OFF (This eliminates glare because the optical system does not light up when the copyboard is opened/closed.) 1: ON Standard value 1	

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DATE-DSP	Switch the date display.	2
	Setting range: 0: YYMM/DD 1: DD/MM'YY 2: MM/DD/YY	
MB-CCV	Restrict the use of the control card for mailbox.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not restrict the use. 1: Restrict the use. Standard value 0	
TRY-STP	Set a mode not to perform printing when the tray is full.	2
	Setting range 0: Normal mode (Stop printing when the finisher tray is full.) 1: Stop printing only by detecting the height. Standard value 0	
MF-LG-ST	Set a key for the long length paper mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Normal 1: Display the long length key in the corresponding mode screen. Standard value 0	
CNT-DISP	Set whether or not to display a serial number when pressing the counter check key.	2
	Setting range 0: Display a serial number. 1: Do not display a serial number. Standard value 0	
OP-SZ-DT	Set ON/OFF of the document size detection function while the copyboard is open.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not perform the document size detection while the copyboard is open. - The document size must be manually entered in the control panel. 1: Perform the document size detection while the copyboard is open. - Use this mode when you need to perform the document size detection automatically even when you cannot close the copyboard to make copies of a thick book, etc. - Detection is performed when the start key is pressed. Standard value 0 Remarks When SIZE-DET is set to 0, the document size detection is not performed even when OP-SZ-DT is set to 1.	
NW-SCAN	Set whether or not to permit the network scan function.	2
	0: Do not permit the network scan function. 1: Permit the network scan function. Standard value 0	
HDCR-DSP	Switch the display/operation of HDD clear mode in the user mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not perform clear. 1: Perform clear once with "0". 2: Perform clear once with random data. 3: Perform clear three times with random data. Standard value 1 MEMO: function for HDD initialization This is the function to clear the data on HDD completely by overwriting the 0 (null) data and random data to file data area at the moment of deleting files logically (timing for deleting the administrative information data) in HDD.	

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
JOB-INVL	Set the job interval for interruption.	2
	Setting range 0: Normal setting (When an interruption copy occurs, print the next job continuously.) 1: After the last sheet of an interruption copy is delivered, start printing the next job. 2: After the last sheet of all jobs, start printing the next job. Standard value 0	
LGSW-DSP	Use it to enable/disable display of 'enable/disable log indication' for Additional Functions Mode.	2
	settings 0: do not display (default); 1: display	
PCL-COPY	Binder control mode for COPIES command of PCL.	2
	This is the mode to unite the operations because the way to control the COPIES command of PCL is different between the Canon PCL and the non-Canon PCL. settings 0: [default] to control by page according to the value of COPIES command specified at each page. 1: It regards the value of COPIES command specified at page-1 as the number of bind, and invalid the value of COPIES command of the following page and after (only at sort mode. in the case of non-sort mode, it will be the same control as at '0' setting). 2 through 65535: backup '0' is for control method with Canon. By setting '1', it will be the same control method with non-Canon PCL.	
PRJOB-CP	Set the CCV count pulse when performing reception and report printing.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide a count pulse. 1: Provide a count pulse. Standard value 0 When using account-managing device (e.g., coin vendor, non-Canon control card), it switches over (on/off) the count pulse notice for every page at receipt print/report print.	
DPT-ID-7	Make a setting for registration of a section ID and entry of 7 digits for authentication.	2
	Setting range 0: Same as a conventional method 1: 7 digits entry Standard value 0	
RUI-RJT	Disconnect the HTTP port when unauthorized authentication was performed from RUI three times.	2
	Setting range 0: Invalid 1: Valid Standard value 0	
SND-RATE	SND-RATE (Set a compression ratio when the "high" compression ratio is selected for the Send function.)	2
	Setting range 0: Compression ratio: 1/16 1: Compression ratio: 1/20 2: Compression ratio: 1/24 When you increase a compression ratio, an image is deteriorated. Standard value 0	
CTM-S06	Use it to enable/disable deletion of the password from an export file with a file transmission address.	2
	settings 0: do no delete (default); 1: delete When setting '1', in the case of exporting the address book data from remote UI, the password of file server is hidden from the exported file (to avoid leakage of information).	

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FREG-SW	<p>Switching over of display/nondisplay for free register area of MEAP counter (for SEND)</p> <p>settings 0: do not display (default); 1: display MEMO: - This is not used at normal servicing because it is for trouble analysis. - Obey the instruction by the quality support section for usage.</p>	2
IFAX-SZL	<p>Set validity/invalidity of the transmission size restriction for iFAX transmission. (only when transmission is not performed via a server)</p> <p>settings 0: set restrictions; 1: do not set restrictions (only if not through server; default) In the case of setting '0', - as for upper limit value, set it in transmission data size by selecting the following: additional functions mode>System Settings>Communications Settings>E-mail/I-Fax Settings>Maximum Data Size For Setting - if sending data that the size exceeds the upper limit value, it will be #830 error.</p>	2
IFAX-PGD	<p>Set whether or not to permit a split transmission by page. (only when the upper limit of the transmission data size is exceeded) This mode is used to switch "permission/non-permission" of a split transmission by page when the upper limit of the transmission data size is exceeded in the iFAX Simple mode.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Do not permit a split transmission by page. 1: Permit a split transmission by page. Standard value 0</p> <p>The split transmission by page does not assure the order of pages at the receiver. In addition, it may be possible that any other reception job steps between the pages. When setting this mode, explain the foregoing possibility to the user and gain the consent beforehand.</p>	2
MEAPSAFE	<p>Make a setting to switch to the MEAP safe mode.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Normal mode 1: Safe mode Standard value 0</p> <p>Safe mode works to stop the added MEAP application, and to startup the only system application that was activated at initial state to start up the system safely. Set '1' to startup in safe mode in the case of system recovery processing when MEAP platform does not startup normally because of resource competition among MEAP applications, or the order to register/use the service. "MPSE" is indicated in the control panel screen when in safe mode.</p>	2
FXEX-CNT	<p>Set a temperature control hysteresis width for the external heating roller. The external heating roller of this machine has small heat capacity and the heater is frequently turned on and off, which causes a flickering. This mode is provided as a measure to minimize such flickering. Evaluation method Make sure that the temperature of the external heating roller is controlled within the setting range using COPIER>DISPLAY>ANALOG>FIX-EXC.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Hysteresis width = ± 1 deg C (200 deg C ± 1 deg C) 1: Hysteresis width = ± 2 deg C (200 deg C ± 2 deg C) 2: Hysteresis width = ± 3.5 deg C (200 deg C ± 3.5 deg C) 3: Hysteresis width = ± 4.5 deg C (200 deg C ± 4.5 deg C) Standard value 0</p>	2

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRNT-POS	Set whether or not to perform a simultaneous pause for the subsequent print job when canceling a job after an error occurs. Perform a simultaneous pause for a print job when a job cancellation (#037, etc.) occurs caused by an internal error, other than a service call error, in PDL printing.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not perform a simultaneous pause. 1: Perform a simultaneous pause. Standard value 0	
AFN-PSWD	Use it to set restrictions on access in additional functions mode.	2
	settings 0: off (shift to user mode scan without requiring password; default) 1: on (shift to user mode scan after password match)	
PTJAM-RC	Set whether or not to perform recovery of a PDL jam. This mode is used to set whether or not to perform recovery printing when a jam occurs in a PDL job.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not perform recovery. 1: Perform recovery. Standard value 1 This mode suits for operators who do not want recovery printing (e.g., receipt and payment slip) with jam recovery without being noticed by them.	
SLP-SLCT	Use it to set the switch designed to switch between existing network-based applications.	2
	A certain packet needs to be received as a condition for the machine to recover from sleep mode via network. Because the existing network system applications (e.g., Net Spot Accountant, image WARE) do not send such packet, the machine fails to recover via network if it's shifted to sleep mode 3. When setting '1', the machine able to recover from sleep mode via network because it does not shift to sleep mode 3 (1wsleep), resulting the trade-off with the increase of consuming electricity. settings 0: do not use (default); 1: use MEMO: This is not used at normal servicing.	
PS-MODE	Selecting compatibility mode when using PS (image processing, print specification)	2
	This is the mode to simulate REPLACE to hold compatibility for image processing and print specification. settings 0: no use of PS compatibility mode (default) 1: image processing equivalent of iR2220/2800/3300 series (compatibility with existing machines) 2: image processing equivalent of iR105 (compatibility with existing machine) 3: backup 4: landscape image and portrait image can be duplexed printing using Canon controller. This is the compatible mode with non-Canon controller. 5 through 65535: backup When the setting value is '1', the output will be equivalent to that of iR2200 / 2800 / 3300 series. Whereas when the setting value is '2', the output will be equivalent to that of iR105 series.	

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CNCT-RLZ	<p>Set whether or not to use the Connection Serialize Function.</p> <p>Function: Switch the use of the Connection Serialize Function. [Remarks]</p> <p>- Connection Serialize Function This function is provided to guarantee the job grouping function of imageWARE Output Manager Select Edition V1.0. Since an iR-series MFP machine provides multiple connections, you can make a setting to prohibit reception of multiple connections at a device so that the job grouping function is guaranteed. In other words, when you make a setting to prohibit reception of multiple connections at a device, the device does not receive job data from a connection until reception of job data from another connection is completed. (--> This prevents jobs to queue in different order.)</p> <p>- "Connection" refers to the connection established among multiple hosts (PCs) via network.</p> <p>- Job Grouping Function This is one of the functions provided by imageWARE Output Manager Select Edition V1.0. This prohibits job interruption from other PC by performing group job transmission (by sending multiple jobs in one session).</p> <p>Setting range 0: OFF (Connection Serialize Function is OFF) 1: ON (Connection Serialize Function is ON) Standard value 0</p>	2
2C-CT-SW	<p>Switch a setting for the color counter (only for the two-color mode). Set whether to use full-color counter or mono-color counter for the two-color mode count-up.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Perform count-up to mono-color counter. 1: Perform count-up to full-color counter. Standard value 1</p> <p>Remarks 2-Color Print: 1 color from R, G, B, C, M, Y + Bk Mono-color: 1 color only</p>	2
DOM-ADD	<p>Switch a setting of domain complement for email transmission. Set whether or not to complement the domain information (ex.: @canon.co.jp) specified in the user mode.</p> <p><In Case a User Sends a Mail to xxx@canon.co.jp> By setting 'canon@co.jp' to the domain in the user mode and set 1 for this mode, the address is complemented to 'xxx@canon.co.jp' when performing the email transmission by just entering 'xxx'.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Do not complement the domain information for the destination address. 1: Complement the domain information for the destination address. Standard value 0</p>	2
N-MAILOF	<p>Set whether or not to prohibit a new address for email. Prohibit a new address for email. (Prohibit selection of a new address.)</p> <p>Setting range 0: Do not prohibit a new address selection. 1: Prohibit a new address selection. Standard value 1</p>	2
N-FAXOF	<p>Set whether or not to prohibit a new address for FAX. Prohibit a new address for FAX. (Prohibit selection of a new address.)</p> <p>Setting range 0: Do not prohibit a new address selection. 1: Prohibit a new address selection. Standard value 1</p>	2

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
N-IFAXOF	Set whether or not to prohibit a new address for iFAX. Prohibit a new address for iFAX. (Prohibit selection of a new address.)	2
	Setting range 0: Do not prohibit a new address selection. 1: Prohibit a new address selection. Standard value 1	
N-FILEOF	Set whether or not to prohibit a new address for FILE. Prohibit a new address for FILE. (Prohibit selection of a new address.)	2
	Setting range 0: Do not prohibit a new address selection. 1: Prohibit a new address selection. Standard value 1	
FINGM-SW	Set whether or not to display the fingerprint prevention button. Set whether or not to display the button for fingerprint prevention function, in which fixing operation is performed before an image is printed and then normal operation is performed in order to prevent fingerprints in manual feeding.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the button. 1: Display the button. Standard value 0 Remarks Pressing the button increases fixing operation, and it extremely decreases printing performance.	
CLR-TIM	Select the timing to perform a complete removal processing in the security kit. When a complete removal processing is performed, job processing performance sometimes decreases for certain data. This is because the page data which has been already processed is being removed during job processing and it slows down the accessing process to CPU and HDD. If the execution of this process is delayed so that the process is performed after the job is completed, the job processing capability can be improved.	2
	Setting range 0: Remove data during job processing. 1: Remove data after a job is completed. Standard value 0	
FX-CLNLV	Change the level of the fixing roller cleaning which is controlled automatically.	2
	Setting range -5 to 5 Standard value 0	

3. CST

COPIER>OPTION>CST		
Subheading	Contents	Level
U1-NAME to U4-NAME	<p>Set ON/OFF of the paper name display when the paper size group (U1 to U4) is detected.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Display "U1, U2, U3, U4" in the touch panel. (default) 1: Display the paper name specified in "CST-UI, U2, U3, U4" in the service mode. Standard value 0</p> <p>In terms of specifying the universal size, generally, 'U1' to 'U4' is displayed on the touch panel when U1/U2/U3/U4-NAME is '0'. However, as an exception, if 'CST-U4' is registered as '18:LTR', 'LTR' is displayed on the touch panel although 'U4-NAME' is '0'.</p> <p>In other word,</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. U4-NAME: 0 / CST-U4: 29 size is indicated as 'U4' / paper size is Argentine LTR. 2. U4-NAME: 1 / CST-U4: 29 size is indicated as 'LTR' / paper size is Argentine LTR. 3. U4-NAME: 0 / CST-U4: 18 size is indicated as 'LTR' / paper size is LTR. 4. U4-NAME: 1 / CST-U4: 18 size is indicated as 'LTR' / paper size is LTR. 	2
CST-U1/U2/U3/U4	<p>Specify a name of the paper used for the paper size group. When the following special size paper is specified for U1, U2, U3, and U4, the paper size of U1, U2, U3, and U4 can be handled as special size paper.</p> <p>Setting range: 24 to 40 24: FOOLSCAP (CST-U2: Default) 25: Australian FOOLSCAP 26: OFFICIO 27: Ecuador OFFICIO 28: Bolivia OFFICIO 29: Argentina LETTER (U4: Default) 30: Argentina LETTER-R 31: Government LETTER (U1: Default) 32: Government LETTER-R 34: Government LEGAL (U3: Default) 35: FOLIO 36: Argentina OFFICIO 37: Mexico OFFICIO 38: EXECUTIVE 39: 16K 40: 8K</p>	2

COPIER>OPTION>ACC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
COIN	Switch a coin vendor. Set whether or not to enter an administrator's mode of a coin vendor.	1
	Setting range 0: Coin vendor unavailable (Control card is available. No charging) 1: Coin vendor (with charging) 2: Distant-place counter (with charging) Standard value 0	
DK-P	Set a paper size to be used for the paper deck (option).	1
	Setting range 0 to 2 0: A4, 1: B5, 2: LTR Standard value 0	
CARD-SW	Switch the UI screen for a coin vendor.	1
	Setting range 0: Coin 1: Card 2: Coin and card Standard value 0	
SC-TYPE	Switching-over of the type of the Self Copier type machine (coin vender-capable machine) Available only when the Soft ID for the machine is set as a specific user. This service mode is used to switch over the machine type to a specific user type machine or generic Self Copier type machine. Generic Self Copier has more functions than the specific user type machine.	2
	Setting range 0: Specific user type machine 1: Generic Self Copier type machine Standard value 0	
CC-SPSW	Switch the I/F support level of the control card (CCIV/CCV).	2
	Setting range 0: Do not support the card. 1: Support the card. (Prioritize the speed.) 2: Support the card. (Prioritize the upper limit number of copies.) Standard value 0 - When this mode is set to 1, the maintenance of engine performance is prioritized, and the operation cannot be stopped accurately based on the upper limit number of copies. - When this mode is set to 2, the operation can be stopped accurately based on the upper limit number of copies, but engine performance may be decreased for a certain cassette.	

5. INT-FACE

COPIER>OPTION>INT-FACE		
Subheading	Contents	Level
IMG-CONT	Connecting Setting of External PDL Controller	1
	Setting range 0: Normal operation 1: Not used 2: Not used 3: EFI controller 4: Not used 5: Not used Standard value 0	

When the value is set to 1, the values of the following user mode items return to the standard values of EFI.

- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > IP address
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Subnet mask
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Gateway address
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Ethernet driver setting > Communication method
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Ethernet driver setting > Ethernet type
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Activation time

The following user mode settings are set to OFF.

- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Use of DHCP
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Use of RARP
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Use of BOOTP
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Ethernet driver setting > Automatic detection
- System administration setting > Network setting > Use of spool function

When the value is set to 3 or 4, the following settings are set to OFF in addition to the items mentioned above.

- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > RAW setting
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > LPD setting
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IPP printing
- System administration setting > Network setting > SMB setting
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > FTP print setting > Use of FTP print.
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > BMLinkS setting > Use of BMLinkS.
- System administration setting > Network setting > NetWare setting > Use of NetWare.

Since the items mentioned above do not recover even when you set the value back to "0 (Normal mode)", make the setting again whenever necessary.

T-16-175

COPIER>OPTION>INT-FACE		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CNT-TYPE	Switch the EFI controller connection.	1
	Switching the EFI controller type.	
	Setting range 0: External Tower-Type Controller 1: Back Mounting-Type Controller	
AP-OPT	Set whether or not to permit printing from the "PrintMe" application installed in the PS print server unit.	2
	Setting range 0: Permit printing by the specified account. 1: Permit printing for any account. 2: Prohibit printing. (Permit printing by the specified section ID.) Standard value 0	
AP-ACCNT	Set a (CPCA) section ID for printing (job) from the "PrintMe" application installed in the PS print server unit.	2
	Setting range 0 to 9999999 Standard value 0	
AP-CODE	Set a (CPCA) path for printing (job) from the "PrintMe" application installed in the PS print server unit.	2
	Setting range 0 to 9999999 Standard value 0	
NWCT-TM	Set the time of timeout for network connection maintenance. (Keep Alive setting) Set the time during which network connection is kept between the application in the PC and the iR main unit (Keep Alive).	2
	Setting range 1 to 5 (Unit: minute) Standard value 5 Remark When the setting time is timed out, the network connection is disconnected. Therefore, when the network connection is disabled due to any reason, it shortens the down time of the machine.	

6. LCNS-TR

T-16-176

COPIER>OPTION>LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ST-SEND	Display the installation status of the SEND function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide SEND function. (not installed) 1: Provide SENC function. (installed) Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TR-SEND	Obtain a transfer license key for the SEND function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the SEND function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-ENPDF	Display the installation status of the SEND encryption PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the SEND encryption PDF transmission function. (not installed) 1: Provide the SEND encryption PDF transmission function. (installed) Standard value 0 This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed.	
TR-ENPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the SEND encryption PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the SEND encryption PDF transmission function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed.	
ST-SPDF	Display the installation status of the SEND searchable PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the SEND searchable PDF transmission function. (not installed) 1: Provide the SEND searchable PDF transmission function. (installed) Standard value 0 This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed.	
TR-SPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the SEND searchable PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the SEND searchable PDF transmission function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed.	
ST-EXPPDF	Display the installation status of the PDF expansion kit (encryption PDF + searchable PDF) in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the PDF expansion kit. (not installed) 1: Provide the PDF expansion kit. (installed) Standard value 0 - This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed. - Only available for JP.	

COPIER>OPTION>LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TR-EXPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the PDF expansion kit (encryption PDF + searchable PDF) in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the PDF expansion kit (encryption PDF + searchable PDF) by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits - This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed. - Only available for JP.	
ST-PDFDR	Display the installation status of the PDF direct in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the PDF direct. (not installed) 1: Provide the PDF direct. (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-PDFDR	Obtain a transfer license key of the PDF direct in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the PDF direct by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-SCR	Display the installation status of the encryption secure printing in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the encryption secure printing. (not installed) 1: Provide the encryption secure printing. (installed) Standard value 0 - This mode is available only when the 3DES+USH-H board is mounted.	
TR-SCR	Obtain a transfer license key of the encryption secure printing in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the encryption secure printing by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits - This mode is available only when the 3DES+USH-H board is mounted.	
ST-HDCLR	Display the installation status of the HDD encryption / complete removal function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the HDD encryption / complete removal function. (not installed) 1: Provide the HDD encryption / complete removal function. (installed) Standard value 0 - This mode is available only when the 3DES+USH-H board is mounted.	
TR-HDCLR	Obtain a transfer license key of the HDD encryption / complete removal function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the HDD encryption / complete removal function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits - This mode is available only when the 3DES+USH-H board is mounted.	

COPIER>OPTION>LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ST-BRDIM	Display the installation status of BarDIMM in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide BarDIMM. (not installed) 1: Provide BarDIMM. (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-BRDIM	Obtain a transfer license key of BarDIMM in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use BarDIMM by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-VNC	Display the installation status of VNC in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide VNC. (not installed) 1: Provide VNC. (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-VNC	Obtain a transfer license key of VNC in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use VNC by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-WEB	Display the installation status of the Web browser in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the Web browser. (not installed) 1: Provide the Web browser. (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-WEB	Obtain a transfer license key of the Web browser in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the Web browser by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-HRPDF	Display the installation status of the highly-compressed PDF in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the highly-compressed PDF. (not installed) 1: Provide the highly-compressed PDF. (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-HRPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the highly-compressed PDF in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the highly-compressed PDF by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-TRSND	Display the installation status of the trial SEND function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the trial SEND function. (not installed) 1: Provide the trial SEND function. (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-TRSND	Obtain a transfer license key of the trial SEND function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the trial SEND function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-WTMRK	Display the installation status of the main unit tint block function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-WTMRK	Obtain a transfer license key of the main unit tint block function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the main unit tint block function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	

COPIER>OPTION>LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ST-TSPDF	Display the installation status of the PDF transmission function with a time stamp in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0 Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
TR-TSPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the PDF transmission function with a time stamp in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the PDF transmission function with a time stamp by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
ST-USPDF	Display the installation status of the PDF transmission function with a user signature in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0 Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
TR-USPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the PDF transmission function with a user signature in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the PDF transmission function with a user signature by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
ST-DVPDF	Display the installation status of the PDF transmission function with a device signature in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0 Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
TR-DVPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the PDF transmission function with a device signature in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the PDF transmission function with a device signature by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
ST-SCPDF	Display the installation status of the scalable PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0 Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
TR-SCPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the scalable PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the scalable PDF transmission function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	

COPIER>OPTION>LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ST-AMS	Display the installation status of ACQ in transfer invalidation. Display the installation status of AMS (Access Management System).	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-AMS	Obtain a transfer license key of ACQ in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use AMS (Access Management System) by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-ERDS	Display the installation status of the third party expansion function for ERDS in transfer invalidation. Display the installation status of the third party expansion function (the function which sends a charging counter to a third party's charging server) for ERDS.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-ERDS	Obtain a transfer license key of the third party expansion function for ERDS in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the third party expansion function (the function which sends a charging counter to a third party's charging server) by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-PS	Display the installation status of PS in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-PS	Obtain a transfer license key of PS in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use PS by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-PCL	Display the installation status of PCL in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-PCL	Obtain a transfer license key of PCL in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use PCL by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-PSLI5	Display the installation status of PS, LIPS4, and LIPS LX in transfer invalidation. Display the installation status of the combined options of PS, LIPS4, and LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas).	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-PSLI5	Obtain a transfer license key of PS, LIPS4, and LIPS LX in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of PS, LIPS4, and LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	

COPIER>OPTION>LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ST-LIPS5	Display the installation status of LIPS LX and LIPS4 in transfer invalidation. Display the installation status of the combined options of LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) and LIPS4.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-LIPS5	Obtain a transfer license key of LIPS LX and LIPS4 in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) and LIPS4 by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-LIPS4	Display the installation status of LIPS4 in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-LIPS4	Obtain a transfer license key of LIPS4 in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use LIPS4 by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-PSPCL	Display the installation status of PS and PCL in transfer invalidation. Display the combined options of PS and PCL.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-PSPCL	Obtain a transfer license key of PS and PCL in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of PS and PCL by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-PCLUF	Display the installation status of PCL and UFR in transfer invalidation. Display the combined options of PCL and UFR.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-PCLUF	Obtain a transfer license key of PCL and UFR in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of PCL and UFR by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-PSLIP	Display the installation status of PS and LIPS in transfer invalidation. Display the combined options of PS and LIPS.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-PSLIP	Obtain a transfer license key of PS and LIPS in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of PS and LIPS by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	

COPIER>OPTION>LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ST-PSPCU	Display the installation status of PS, PCL, and UFR in transfer invalidation. Display the combined options of PS, PCL, and UFR.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-PSPCU	Obtain a transfer license key of PS, PCL, and UFR in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of PS, PCL, and UFR by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-LXUFR	Display the installation status of LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-LXUFR	Obtain a transfer license key of LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	

16.6.1.3 COPIER List P (BODY)

imagePRESS C1 P

1. BODY

T-16-177


COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PO-CNT	Set ON/OFF of the electric potential control function.	1
	Setting range 0: OFF 1: ON Standard value 1	
MODEL-SZ	Switch the fixed and variable display and ADF document size detection.	1
	Setting range 0: AB (6R5E) 1: INCH (5R4E) 2: A (3R3E) 3: AB/INCH (6R5E) Standard value 0: AB(6R5E) For Japan 1: INCH(5R4E) For North, Central and South America 2: A(3R3E) For Europe 3: AB/INCH(6R5E) For Asia, Oceania and South America	
FIX-TEMP	Switch the plain paper down sequence table.	1
	Setting range 0: Default 1: Fixing is prioritized 2: Productivity is prioritized Standard value 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. Usage: Select '0' when giving preference to the image quality (fixing), '2' when giving preference to the speed (productivity).	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PASCAL	Set if using the contrast electric potential and gradation correction data obtained by automatic gradation correction (full correction) control, or not.	1
	Setting range 0: Use the data. 1: Do not use the data. 2: Reserve (same operation as 1) 3: Reserve (same operation as 0) Standard value 1 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. For printer model, be sure to make the setting value 0 at installation.	
CONFIG	Select several system software stored in the hard disk, change the nation/area, paper size.	1
	Procedure: 1) Select <CONFIG>. 2) Select the item to change. 3) Press the +/- key. (Each press changes the setting.) 4) Display the contents to be needed, press OK key. 5) Turn off and then back on the main power switch. XXXYYZZAA XX: country (e.g., JP=Japan) YY (*): language (e.g., ja=Japanese) ZZ: (*) destination (e.g., 00=Canon) AA: paper size series (00=AB; 01=inch; 02=A; 03=inch/AB) *: Cannot change the setting.	
TEMP-TBL	Fixing assembly temperature control Temperature settings become effective after the main power is switched OFF / ON . Fixing assembly temperature control Upon activation of this mode, Temperature of the following increase by 5 deg C: stand-by temperature (both of the 2 types), copying temperature, stand-by last rotation temperature, sheet-to-sheet temperature control for long sheets. Temperature of the following does not increase by 5 deg C: job last rotation temperature, power save mode temperature, error detection temperature. Make adjustments to the setting in the temperature control table. The setting in the fixing assembly temperature control table is modified when certain properties of paper used in the field cause blistering of paper or low temperature offset. Change the setting to "0" when low temperature offset occurs. Change the setting to "1" when blistering of paper occurs.	1
	Setting range 0: OFF (default) 1: - 5 deg C 2: - 10 deg C 3: - 15 deg C 4: - 20 deg C Standard value 0	
W/SCNR	Set the presence/absence of the reader for the copy model.	1
	Setting range 0: Printer model (without a scanner) 1: Model with a scanner Standard value 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
RUI-DSP	Set the options for the copy function in the RUI screen.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not display the copy screen in RUI. 1: Display the copy screen in RUI. Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
INTROT-1	Set the image adjustment control implementation interval at last rotation.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 500 Standard value: 60 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
INTROT-2	Process auto-adjustment implemented for every specific number of sheet. Set the interval (sheets) against the process auto-adjustment.	1
	Setting range: 50 to 10000 (small image) Standard value: 2000 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
INTROT-T	Set the interval time of auto-adjustment control (simple control)	1
	Setting range 50 to 10000 (small image) Standard value 400 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
AUTO-DH	Set the permission/prohibition to automatically start the automatic gradation control which is executed when the machine is left for a specified period time or the environment changes in the ON/OFF standby condition for automatic gradation correction control. The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	1
	Setting range 0: Prohibited 1: Permitted (default) Standard value 1	
ENVP-INT	Set the log acquisition interval for temperature/humidity in the machine and fixing temperature. Set the log acquisition interval for COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC-P>ENV-PRT and COPIER>DISPLAY>ENVRNT.	1
	Setting range 0 to 480 (minute) Standard value 60 Reference Log acquisition not implemented at 0 minute.	
T1-TEMP	Switch the down sequence table for thick paper 1.	1
	Setting range 0: Default 1: Fixing is prioritized. 2: Productivity is prioritized. Standard value 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
T2-TEMP	Switch the down sequence table for thick paper 2.	1
	Setting range 0: Default 1: Fixing is prioritized. 2: Productivity is prioritized. Standard value 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CD-IDL-T	Adjust the time to execute idling at first power-on for the IDL-T color developer (YMC). Set the time to execute idling at first power-on for the color developer (YMC), which is sometimes executed by initial multiple rotations under high-humidity environment. When you decrease the setting value, downtime of initial multiple rotations can be reduced, but density change from the first power-on is somewhat worsened. When you increase the setting value, density change from the first power-on is improved, but downtime of initial multiple rotations increases.	1
	Setting range -3 to +6 (1 level: 5 second) Standard value 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
CNTR-DSP	Select the screen display according to the external controller.	1
	Setting range 0: Display the external controller icon in the control panel of the copier main unit. (setting when the color image server is connected) 1: Do not display the control panel of the copier main unit. (setting when the external controller with an control panel is connected) Standard value 0	
BASE-SW	Make a setting to switch the setting from the MEAP-full model to the Base model. Make a setting to switch the device which operated as a full model back to the base model.	1
	Use it when trouble attributable to MEAP application occurs. By setting to '0', the operation of MEAP application can be controlled. settings 0: off (base model); 1: on (full model) [Default] MEMO: The change only from '1' to '0' is possible.	
SC-L-CNT	Use it to set the threshold for identifying large size paper for the scan counter.	1
	Settings 0: Count the paper larger than B4 as large size. (A paper that is B4 or smaller is considered as small size.) [Default] 1: Count the paper larger than LTR as large size. (A paper that is LTR or smaller is considered as small size.) The scan counter threshold at copy is determined as follow depending on the combination with the setting value of B4-L-CNT (COPIER > OPTION > USER > B4-L-CNT): <In case SC-L-CNT, B4-L-CNT=(0, 0)> Count the paper larger than B4 as large size. (A paper that is B4 or smaller is considered as small size.) <In case SC-L-CNT, B4-L-CNT=(0, 1)> Count the paper that is B4 or larger as large size. (A paper smaller than B4 is considered as small size.) <In case SC-L-CNT, B4-L-CNT=(1, 0) or (1, 1)> Count the paper larger than LTR as large size. (A paper that is LTR or smaller is considered as small size.)	
REPORT-Z	Make a setting to switch the attribute flag attached when printing a report.	1
	Setting range 0: For PDL character mode 1: For PDL photo mode 2: For SCAN character mode 3: For SCAN photo mode Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
IFXEML-Z	Make a setting to switch the attribute flag attached to the color iFAX and reception mail printing.	1
	Setting range 0: For PDL character mode 1: For PDL photo mode 2: For SCAN character mode 3: For SCAN photo mode Standard value 0	
BMLNKS-Z	Make a setting to switch the attribute flag attached to the reception BMLinkS printing.	1
	Setting range 0: For SCAN photo mode 1: For PDL photo mode 2: For SCAN character mode 3: For PDL character mode Standard value 0	
	Reference 0: For SCAN photo mode A black character is printed in a black color which consists of four colors. An image is printed by error diffusion. The color tone is brighter than 2. 1: For PDL photo mode A black character is printed in a black color which consists of four colors. An image is printed by screen processing. 2: For SCAN character mode A black character is printed in a single black color. The color tone in the photo area is different from the tone printed by 0. (It may be difficult for an amateur to recognize the difference.) An image is printed by error diffusion. 3: For PDL character mode A black character is printed in a single black color. An image is printed by screen processing.	
IMGC-ADJ	Switch the "hide" or "not hide" of the image adjustment items. Switch the "hide" or "not hide" of the image adjustment items executed by a system administrator. When "not hide" is selected, the following four items are displayed in the system administrator setting. - Curl correction volume - Adjustment of the air volume for the paper separation fan - Adjustment of the image position - Adjustment of the secondary transfer voltage	1
	Setting range 0: Hide 1: Do not hide Standard value 0: Hide	
ARCDT-SW	ON/OFF of ARCDAT	1
	Select whether or not to perform ARCDAT control. ON [0]: Reflect the ARCDAT result to LUT. OFF [1]: Do not reflect the ARCDAT result to LUT. Setting range 0 to 1 0: Control ON 1: Control OFF Standard value 0: Control ON	
TR-CON	Switch-over of toner reduction value	1
	Setting range 0 to 2 0: Normal object (for normal object), text line (for text line) 1: Normal object (for normal object), text line (for normal object) 2: Normal object (for text line), text line (for text line) Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
F-BLT-RT	Measure at E007 (fixing belt displacement error) occurrence Specify the host machine operation at E007 occurrence.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1 0: Automatic restore does not take effect at power OFF/ON. 1: Automatic restore takes effect at power OFF/ON. Standard value 0	
	 This item applies to the upgraded device (DCON Ver1.03 or later and Cont Ver24.04 or later).	
W-CLN-P	Set the interval (number of copies) to perform automatic cleaning of the primary charging wire in the normal environment. The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	2
	Setting range 50 to 10000 (copies) Standard value 2000	
W-CLN-T	Set the interval (number of copies) to perform automatic cleaning of the charging wire of the pre-transfer charging assembly.	2
	Setting range 50 to 10000 (copies)	
PRI-FAN	Select the primary fan drive mode. Prevent the half tone unevenness due to the soiled primary charging assembly grid.	2
	Setting range 0: Half speed in the high temperature/humidity environment 1: Full speed mainly in the low temperature / low humidity environment. Standard value 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
DH-SW	Perform Dhalf correction.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not perform Dhalf control. 1: Perform Dhalf control. Standard value 1 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
RAW-DATA	Make a setting to print out the received data as it is. When there is a problem in the received image, this mode is used to determine whether the problem is caused by the data contents or image processing.	2
	Setting range 0: Normal operation 1: Print out the received data as it is. Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FDW-DLV	Select the 'face up' or 'face down' delivery when specifying multiple copies. When multiple copies are specified, 'face up' delivery is usually performed. However, this mode is provided to perform 'face down' delivery to guarantee stacking condition. (However, this mode is invalid when a finisher is installed.)	2
	Setting range 0: 'Face up' for all setting for one sheet of document 1: 'Face up' when specifying one copy, and 'face down' when specifying multiple copies for one sheet of document Standard value 0 The setting mode becomes valid after the power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
RMT-LANG	Switch the remote UI language used on Web. Setting method Select the language code using the +/- key.	2
IFAX-LIM	Restrict the number of lines output when receiving large volume of data by iFAX	2
	Setting range 0: No restriction 0 to 999 Standard value 500	
SMTPXPN	Change the port number for SMTP transmission.	2
	Setting range 0 to 65535 (incremented by 1) Standard value 25	
SMTPRXPN	Change the port number of SMTP reception.	2
	Setting range 0 to 65535 (incremented by 1) Standard value 25	
POP3PN	Change the port number of POP reception.	2
	Setting range 0 to 65535 (incremented by 1) Standard value 110	
UI-BOX	Restrict the box screen display in the control panel.	2
	Setting range 0: BOX function unavailable (Unavailable for PDLtoBox) 1: BOX function available 2: BOX function available with restriction (Unavailable for LUI and RUI, but available for PDLtoBOX) Standard value 1	
TMC-SLCT	Switch the coefficient used for error diffusion. Use this mode to increase dot stability and granularity so that pitch unevenness or coarse image that occurred on an image can be made invisible.	2
	Setting range 0: Normal 1: Low granularity / low stability 2: High granularity / high stability Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DEVL-VTH	Set the threshold value of image density to make a decision to perform the discharging sequence for continuous printing of a low density image, which is performed as measures for a spot or course image. Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally.	2
	Setting range 1 to 5 (Unit: %) Standard value 2 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
FTPTXPN	Specify a port number (FTP) of the SEND destination.	2
	Setting range 0 to 65535 (16 bit) Standard value 21	
PRN-FLG	Select the image area flag. (for PDL image) When a PDL image was not compressed to a specified compression ratio on the controller side, image processing is performed based on the image area flag specified by this mode.	2
	Setting range 0: High line number screen, gray offset LUT 1: Error diffusion, gray offset LUT 2: High line number screen, normal LUT Standard value 0	
SCN-FLG	Select the image area flag. (for copy image) When a scan image was not compressed to a specified compression ratio on the controller side, image processing is performed based on the image area flag specified by this mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Character 1: Dot photo image 2: Film photo Standard value 0	
T-LW-LVL	Switch the timing to display the warning for toner level. Switch the threshold (%) of toner level to display the message "Toner almost empty" in the control panel. However, when you delay the timing to display the warning message, toner may suddenly become empty before the warning is displayed.	2
	Setting range 5 to 100 (Unit: %) Standard value 10 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
NWERR-SW	Switch the network-related error message display. This mode is used to inhibit the display of a network-related error message when network connection is not actually performed in the model which includes a network board as standard equipment. This mode is provided for a machine which is not connected to network, such as Lawson, while a NADA machine is connected to network as a default setting.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the message. 1: Display the message. Standard value 1	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FX-SPD	Make a fine adjustment of the fixing roller speed. Make a fine adjustment of the fixing speed because the trail edge of paper contacts the ITB and it sometimes causes a fading image when the loop between the secondary transfer roller and the fixing roller is too large. When a fine adjustment is made to the fixing speed, the same adjustment is made to the speed of delivery vertical path. When you increase the setting value, the speed becomes faster.	2
	Setting range -3 to 3 Standard value 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
STS-PORT	Use it to turn on/off the T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) async type status communication port. Turns on/off the inquiry/response (sync) type status communication port for TUF over TCP/IP. settings 0: off (default); 1: on For service NAVI, set the value as '1' when connecting the PC and main body by crossing cable. MEMO: T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) Communication protocol between embedded application presentation (UI) and applications within the device including COPY/SEND/BOX etc., (Canon original protocol)	2
CMD-PORT	Use it to turn off/on the T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) sync type command communication port. Turns on/off the inquiry/response (sync) type command communication port for TUIF over TCP/IP. settings 0: off (default); 1: on For service NAVI, set the value as '1' when connecting the PC and main body by crossing cable. MEMO: T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) Communication protocol between embedded application presentation (UI) and applications within the device including COPY/SEND/BOX etc., (Canon original protocol)	2
UISW-DSP	Set 'hide' or 'not hide' of the SW to switch the display to the user screen. Set 'hide' or 'not hide' of the SW to determine which of the normal screen or the simple screen (Lawson type) is used. The following types of screen are available. - Screen that has the function similar to a standard machine - Screen that has limited function like the screen used at Lawson A user (a store manager) specifies 'hide' or 'not hide' of the SW to switch these screens.	2
	Setting range 0: Hide 1: Do not hide Standard value 0	
NS-CMD5	Restrict the use of CRAM-MD5 authentication in SMTP authentication. (NoSasl-Challenge response authentication mechanism; MD5 message digest algorithm) Make this setting when restricting the use of CRAM-MD5 authentication in SMTP authentication.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value 0	
NS-GSAPI	Restrict the use of GSSAPI authentication in SMTP authentication. (NoSasl-Generic Security Service Application Program Interface) Make this setting when restricting the use of GSSAPI authentication in SMTP authentication.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
NS-NTLM	NTLM authentication in SMTP authentication (NoSasl-windows NTLAN Manager) Make this setting when restricting the use of NTLM authentication in SMTP authentication.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value 0	
NS-PLNWS	Restrict the use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication (plain text authentication) in SMTP authentication in the environment where encryption of the NS-PLNWS communication packet is performed. Make this setting to restrict the use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication (plain text authentication) in SMTP authentication in the environment where encryption of the NS-PLNWS communication packet is performed.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value 0	
NS-PLN	Restrict the use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication (plain text authentication) in SMTP authentication. Make this setting to restrict the use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication (plain text authentication) in SMTP authentication in the environment where encryption of communication packet is not performed.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value 0	
NS-LGN	Restrict the use of LOGIN authentication in SMTP authentication. Make this setting to restrict the use of LOGIN authentication in SMTP authentication.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value 0	
MEAP-PN	Set a port number for the HTTP server used by MEAP application.	2
	Setting range 0 to 65535 Standard value 8000 For the use as MEAP port, do not use No. 1 to 1023 except No. 80 (HTTP). It is because the standard server uses this range.	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TNR-DWN	Make a setting to reduce toner volume. Reduce the toner volume compared to the normal volume. Reduce the problem such as toner scattering or wrapping around the fixing roller, etc., by decreasing toner volume.	2
	Setting range 0: Standard toner volume (default) 1: Low toner volume for both single sided and double sided mode 2: Standard toner volume for single sided mode, Low toner volume for both the 1st and 2nd side of double sided mode (reserve) Standard value 0 2 is not available because assumed operation is not sometimes performed in PDL or copy operation. (2 is available as a service mode, but, when 2 is selected, the machine operates in the same manner as 0.)	
SPECK-SW	Use it to switch between the timing of white plate dust detection.	2
	This is used at the occurrence of image line due to floating dust. Settings 0: normal timing (default) ; 1: for each job When setting the value as '1', first copy time (FCOT) gets longer.	
SVMD-ENT	Switch the method of entering the service mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Press the [User Mode] key. --> Press [2] and [8] at the same time. --> Press the [User Mode] key. 1: Press the [User Mode] key. --> Press [4] and [9] at the same time. --> Press the [User Mode] key. Standard value 0	
W-CLN-PH	Set the interval of automatic cleaning of the primary charging wire and pre-transfer charging wire. This mode is used to change the interval of automatic cleaning of the primary charging wire and pre-transfer charging wire when a poor image (vertical line, etc.) occurs in the high temperature/humidity environment. Use "W-CLN-P" mode to set the interval of automatic cleaning of the primary charging wire in normal environment.	2
	Setting range 100 to 10000 (can be set in the unit of 1) Standard value 1000	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SSH-SW	Set whether or not to activate the SSH server. Make this setting to specify whether or not to activate the SSH server when activating the main unit.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not activate the SSH server when activating the main unit. 1: Activate the SSH server when activating the main unit. Standard value 0 SSH server does not start by changing the setting value to 1(ON) while activating the main unit. The setting value becomes available after turning the power switch OFF/ON. Reference SSH is the abbreviation of 'Secure Shell'. The communication between digital accessory (DA) and iR device is encrypted to avoid being read from the outside.	
RMT-LGIN	Set whether or not to permit remote login to the SSH server. Make this setting to specify whether or not to permit remote login from the remote host (SSH client: digital accessory) to the SSH server debug console.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not permit remote login to the SSH server. 1: Permit remote login to the SSH server. Standard value 0 This item becomes available only when the setting value of <SSH-SW> is '1(ON)'.	
RE-PKEY	Set whether or not to recreate the SSH server pair keys. Make this setting to specify whether or not to recreate the SSH server pair keys when activating the main unit.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not recreate the SSH server pair keys when activating the main unit. 1: Recreate the SSH server pair keys when activating the main unit. Standard value 0 This item becomes available only when the setting value of <SSH-SW> is '1(ON)'. Reference In the case that the main item is set to '1(recreate)', SSH server host recreates the pair keys (confidential/disclosure key) during task activation (power OFF/ON), and implements the output to key file and storage into HDD. Encryption algorithm (DSA) and the length of key (512bit) are fixed. It may take about three to four minutes more than usual to start the copier body due to this procedure.	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
U-NAME	Set a user name that can be connected to the SSH server. Specify a user name required to connect to the SSH server. Only one user is allowed to login.	2
	Setting range 8 characters maximum (one-byte alphanumeric character) Standard value gN3Fp2A This item is for future expansion. Do not change it. This item becomes available only when the setting value of <SSH-SW> is '1(ON)'.	
U-PASWD	Set a password of a user who can be connected to the SSH server. Specify a password of a login user required to connect to the SSH server.	2
	Setting range 8 characters maximum (one-byte alphanumeric character) Standard value Vs8DwJ This item is for future expansion. Do not change it. This item becomes available only when the setting value of <SSH-SW> is '1(ON)'. Passwords are masked on the screen.	
CDEV-IDL	Set ON/OFF of the first power-on development idling for the color developer (YMC). Adjust the ATR patch interval of the 1st limit. When you increase the limit, downtime interval increases, but the density changes. When you decrease the limit, downtime interval decreases, but the density becomes stabilized. Trigger to start the patch detection: (1) count by the number of copies which is reset when the patch detection is performed (2) count by the reset video count Timing 1. When the 1st limit (20 copies) has been exceeded, perform the patch detection by the last rotation of that job. 2. At the point when the 2nd limit has been exceeded, discontinue the job and forcibly perform the patch detection. 3. At the point when the reset VC has exceeded 300% (in A4 equivalent), forcibly perform the patch detection. 1 copy = 3 images. Only YMC is counted. Image count: 1 count for small, 2 counts for large	2
	Setting range 0: OFF 1: ON Standard value 1 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FXWRNLVL	Change the warning level of the fixing upper roller. Change the warning level of the fixing counter value. The life of the fixing roller differs depending on the environment and usage. Set this value to match the optimum life when replacing the fixing unit.	2
	Setting range 0: 180,000 1: 150,000 2: 120,000 Standard value 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
FXERRLVL	Change an error level of the fixing roller. Specify an error level of the fixing counter value. Specify a counter value from when a warning is displayed to when an error is displayed.	2
	This mode is not used for this machine.	
DA-PORT	Set a port for communication with DA. Setting range 1: Open 0: Close Standard value 0 When 1 is set to COPIER>OPTION>BODY>DA-CNCT, the following items are set to ON. COPIER > OPTION > BODY > STS-PORT > CMD-PORT > SSH-SW > DA-PORT	2
DA-CNCT	Use it to set WPGW(Workplace Gateway) connection.	2
	settings 0: off (default); 1: on MEMO: This is used only inside Japan, not outside Japan.	
ITR-ATVC	Set ON/OFF of the primary transfer ATVC retries for initial multiple rotations. Turn ON the primary transfer ATVC retries for initial multiple rotations in all environments.	2
	This mode is not used for this machine.	
CHNG-ST5	Use it to set the T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) status connection port number.	2
	Changes the port number for status connection in a TUIF over TCP/IP environment. This is used for changing the port No. in service NAVI. settings 1 to 65535 (default: 20010) MEMO: T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) Communication protocol between embedded application presentation (UI) and applications within the device including COPY/SEND/BOX etc., (Canon original protocol)	


COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CHNG-CMD	<p>Use it to set the T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) command connection port number.</p> <p>Use it to set the port number for the command connection in an TUIF over TCP/IP environment. This is used for changing the port No. in service NAVI settings 1 to 65535 (default: 20000) MEMO: T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) Communication protocol between embedded application presentation (UI) and applications within the device including COPY/SEND/BOX etc., (Canon original protocol)</p>	2
MEAP-DSP	<p>Use it to prohibit a switch-over from the MEAP screen to the standard screen (COPY/SEND/BOX screen etc.).</p> <p>Although setting the value as '1' in COPIER > OPTION > BODY > MEAP-DSP, at the occurrence of error/jam/alarm, the display transits to the standard screen for showing a warning. When setting this value as '1', at the occurrence of error/jam/alarm, - Display transition to the standard screen is prohibited. - Warning is displayed on the MEAP screen to urge the user to contact servicing. settings 0: off (display warning screen; default); 1: on (do not display warning screen)</p>	2
ANIM-SW	<p>Set whether or not to use the full-screen display for jam/alarm in MEAP application operation.</p> <p>Although setting the value as '1' in COPIER > OPTION > BODY > MEAP-DSP, at the occurrence of error/jam/alarm, the display transits to the standard screen for showing a warning. When setting this value as '1', at the occurrence of error/jam/alarm, - Display transition to the standard screen is prohibited. - Warning is displayed on the MEAP screen to urge the user to contact servicing. settings 0: off (display warning screen; default); 1: on (do not display warning screen)</p>	2
HDD-TMP	<p>Set a temperature for judgment of an abnormal status with low temperature in SAMSUNG HDD.</p> <p>Setting range 0 to 30 (deg C) Standard value 2</p> <p>The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.</p>	2
HDD-TIM	<p>Set the grace time until it is judged as an abnormal status with low temperature in SAMSUNG HDD.</p> <p>Setting range 0 to 200 (minute) Standard value 10</p> <p>The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.</p>	2
HDD-SW	<p>Set whether or not to display the E code for an abnormal status with low temperature in SAMSUNG HDD.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Do not display the code. 1: Display the code. Standard value 0</p> <p>The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.</p>	2

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MEAP-SSL	Set an HTTP port for MEAP. Set a port for the HTTP server when using SSL in the HTTP of MEAP.	2
	Setting range 1 to 65535 Standard value 8443	
MIX-FLG	Switch the image area flag (for image compositing). Switch the image processing method when an image for image compositing could not be compressed to a specified compression ratio on the main controller side.	2
	Setting range 0: Image processing equivalent to the PDL character mode 1: Image processing equivalent to the PDL photo mode 2: Image processing equivalent to the SCAN character mode 3: Image processing equivalent to the SCAN photo mode Standard value 0	
LPD-PORT	Set a LPD port number.	2
	Setting range 1 to 65535 Standard value 515 Reference LDP port is the network port for TCP/IP communication at printing via network.	
PDF-RDCT	Set whether or not to reduce and send the image for reception transfer (transmission in the PDF format).	2
	Reduce and send the image when converting the image received by FAX or iFAX into the PDF format and performing transmission by e-mail or file. Setting range 0: Convert the image into the PDF format, but do not reduce it for reception transfer. 1: Convert the image into the PDF format, and reduce it for reception transfer. Standard value 0	
REDU-CNT	Control the switching of the density adjustment method. Control whether or not to perform density adjustment considering toner volume restriction.	2
	Setting range 0 to 1 Standard value 1	
REBOOTSW	Set whether or not to perform reboot when the E240 error occurs. In the current specifications, reboot is performed when the E240 error occurs. (Reasons: Continuous rotation deteriorates the durability performance of the engine. It cannot be also denied that it may cause an error to the engine.) However, when reboot is performed automatically, jobs in the PDL disappear, which has been causing complaints in the field. Therefore, this mode is used to set whether or not to automatically perform reboot when the E240 error occurs.	2
	Setting range 0: Perform reboot automatically when the E240 error occurs. 1: Do not perform reboot automatically when the E240 error occurs. Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
VP-ART	Change the line art processing. Change the outline processing for line art in the scalable PDF.	2
	Setting range 0 to 99 Standard value 1	
VP-TXT	Change the vector processing for characters. Change the vector processing for characters in the scalable PDF.	2
	Setting range 0 to 99 Standard value 1	
UI-PRINT	Set whether or not to display the print job screen in the control panel. This is a switch to set whether or not to display the print job screen in the control panel. This is a specification for a user who does not desire to display the screen in the control panel.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the print job screen. 1: Display the print job screen. Standard value 1	
WUEV-SW	Set whether or not to provide a notice of the sleep mode operation. Set whether or not to provide a notice of the sleep mode operation to the DS application on network when the copier main unit entered the sleep mode or recovered from the sleep mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Provide a notice. 1: Do not provide a notice. Standard value 0	
WUEV-INT	Set the interval to provide a notice of the sleep mode operation.	2
	Setting range 0 to 65535 Standard value 600	
WUEV-POT	Set a port number for the destination to provide a notice of the sleep mode operation.	2
	Setting range 1 to 65535 Standard value 11427	
WUEV-RTR	Set a range to provide a notice of the sleep mode operation. Set the number of routers that can be used for a notice of the sleep mode operation.	2
	Setting range 0 to 254 Standard value 3	
SJB-UNW	Switch the number of reserved jobs for secure print jobs. Switch the number of reserved jobs for secure print jobs to 50 or 90.	2
	Setting range 0: 50 1: 90 Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
UI-EPRNT	Set whether or not to display the expansion printing screen in the control panel. This mode is used to set whether or not to display the expansion printing screen (EFI print screen) in the control panel. This is a specification for a user who does not desire to display the screen in the control panel.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the screen. 1: Display the screen. Standard value 1	
UI-WEB	Set whether or not to display the Web browser screen in the control panel. This mode is used to set whether or not to display the Web browser screen in the control panel. This is a specification for a user who does not desire to display the screen in the control panel.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the screen. 1: Display the screen. Standard value 1	
PASCL-TY	Set the paper type used for the automatic gradation correction (PASCAL). This mode is used when executing PASCAL for the paper which is not recommended for the destination.	2
	Setting range 1: CLC-SK 80g paper (Countries other than USA/EU. Mainly Japan) 2: Hammermill 105g paper (for USA) 3: Neusiedler 100g paper (for EU) Do not change the setting in a normal condition.	
CARD-RNG	Set the number of cards available. Set the number of cards available when using a card reader.	2
	Setting range 1 to 1000 Standard value 1000 [Reference] In the current condition, the starting number of the card is specified by COPIER>FUNCTION>INSTALL>CARD, and the fixed number of cards is specified starting from that number. (ex. fixed at 1000 cards)	
WUEN-LIV	Set the activation interval after a sleep notice was provided from network. Set the interval from when sleep activation was performed to the copier main unit from network without sending a job to when the machine enters the sleep mode next.	2
	Setting range 10 to 600 Standard value 15 (Unit: second) *10 seconds to 10 minutes	
COMP-PRT	When performing printing for "printing of a page number / printing of the number of copies / printing of a date / bookbinding / printing of a tint block (hereinafter called 'combined printing') with the copying number of 2 or more, printing is prioritized in memory allocation for image processing for a certain memory model (option) or document size. This causes a lack of memory for image processing of scanning, SEND transmission (excluding FAX), and PDL input operation, and such operation cannot be performed until printing is completed. This mode is used to perform equal memory allocation to all jobs so that operation such as scanning, SEND transmission (excluding FAX), and PDL input can be performed before printing is completed (so that such operation is performed little by little).	2
	Setting range 0: Prioritize printing. 1: Perform equal memory allocation. Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SHT-DCSW	Skip the DCON termination processing when executing shutdown.	2
	Setting range 0: Execute shutdown after the DCON fan control is terminated. 1: Execute shutdown before the DCON fan control is terminated. Standard value 0	
ADJ-VPP	Adjust the developing bias Vpp. Function to adjust Vpp for the developing AC bias.	2
	Setting range -4 to 2 Standard value 0	
AST-SEL	Change the range of the advanced smoothing. AST-SEL (AST level SElect)	2
	Setting range 0 to 3 Standard value 2	
REGM-SEL	Change the range of the thin line density correction. REGM-SEL (REos GaMma SElect)	2
	Setting range 0 to 4 Standard value 2	
ADJ-BLNK	Adjust the length of the developing bias blank. Function to adjust the blank length of the developing bank pulse bias	2
	Setting range 1 to 4 Standard value 3	
2TR-RVON	Set ON/OFF of the weak bias of the trail edge of paper. Set this mode to ON when scattering occurred to the trail edge of the image on the 2nd side in 1/ 3 speed.	2
	Setting range 0: OFF 1: ON Standard value 0	
USB-RCNT	Auto-connection setting at disconnection of USB device (USB RECONNECT)	2
	Setting range 0 to 1 0: Non auto-connect 1: Auto-connect Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FAN-TM1	Operation time change of fans for primary charging series Change the operation time of fans for primary charging series at last rotation.	2
	Setting range: 0 to 55 (1 scale: 1 min) Standard value: 55 Supplement: This service mode applies to the following three fans. - Primary exhaust fan (FM2) - Left exhaust fan (FM16) - Primary exhaust assist fan (FM18) Make sure to set the setting value to 15 min or more.	
	 This item applies to the upgraded device (DCON Ver11.03 or later, Cont Ver24.04 or later)	

16.6.1.4 COPIER List P (subheadings under USER)

imagePRESS C1 P

2. USER

T-16-178

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
COPY-LIM	Change the upper limit value of the number of copies.	1
	Setting range 1 to 9999 copies Standard value 9999	
SLEEP	Set ON/OFF of the sleep function.	1
	Setting range 0: OFF 1: ON Standard value 1 The sleep function is set by the timer setting in the user mode.	
WEB-DISP	Set whether or not to display the message "web is almost empty" in the user screen.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not display the message. 1: Display the message. Standard value 1: Display the message. [Remarks] A) Message on the UI Display a warning message. (default) Whether or not to display the warning message can be set by this mode. B) Display in the service mode The message is always displayed regardless of the value specified for this mode.	
COUNTER 1	Use it to set soft counter 1 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	101: Total 1 Fixed to 1, which is a factory setting value / a value after RAM clear is executed. This value cannot be changed.	
COUNTER 2	Use it to set soft counter 2 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	Setting range 0 to 999 Standard value 108	
COUNTER 3	Use it to set soft counter 3 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	Setting range 0 to 999 Standard value 232	
COUNTER 4	Use it to set soft counter 4 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	Setting range 0 to 999 Standard value 324	

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
COUNTER 5	Use it to set soft counter 5 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	Setting range 0 to 999 Standard value 0	
COUNTER 6	Change the type display of the soft counter 6 in the control panel to meet a request from a user and dealer. The counter contents can be changed to meet a request from a user and dealer.	1
	Setting range 0 to 999 Standard value 0	

Soft counter specifications

- 000 to 099: Remote copy
- 100 to 199: Total
- 200 to 299: Copy
- 300 to 399: Print
- 400 to 499: Copy and print
- 500 to 599: Scan
- 600 to 699: Box
- 700 to 799: Reception print
- 800 to 899: Report print
- 900 to 999: Transmission

- Explanation of symbols shown in the table -

- yes: Valid counter for this machine
- 4C: Full color
- Mono: Mono color (Y, M, C / R, G, B / retro monochrome)
- Bk: Single black color
- L: Large size (larger than B4 size)
- S: Small size (smaller than B4 size)
- Numbers 1, 2 indicated under "Counter Details": Number of counts for large size paper
It can be changed by the service mode (COPIER > OPTION > USER > B4_L_CNT) so that the paper larger than B4 size can be counted as large size paper.
- Copy: Local copy + remote copy
- Copy A: Local copy + remote copy + box print
- Print: PDL print + report print + box print
- Print A: PDL print + report print
- Scan: Black and white scan + color scan

T-16-179

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	002	Remote copy (full color 1)
yes	003	Remote copy (full color 2)
yes	004	Remote copy (mono color 1)
yes	005	Remote copy (mono color 2)
yes	006	Remote copy (black and white 1)
yes	007	Remote copy (black and white 2)
yes	008	Remote copy (full color / large)
yes	009	Remote copy (full color / small)
yes	010	Remote copy (mono color / large)
yes	011	Remote copy (mono color / small)
yes	012	Remote copy (black and white / large)
yes	013	Remote copy (black and white / small)
yes	014	Remote copy (full color + mono color / large)
yes	015	Remote copy (full color + mono color / small)
yes	016	Remote copy (full color + mono color 2)
yes	017	Remote copy (full color + mono color 1)
yes	018	Remote copy (full color / large / double sided)
yes	019	Remote copy (full color / small / double sided)
yes	020	Remote copy (mono color / large / double sided)
yes	021	Remote copy (mono color / small / double sided)
yes	022	Remote copy (black and white / large / double sided)
yes	023	Remote copy (black and white / small / double sided)

T-16-180

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	101	Total 1
yes	102	Total 2
yes	103	Total (large)
yes	104	Total (small)
yes	105	Total (full color 1)
yes	106	Total (full color 2)
yes	108	Total (black and white 1)
yes	109	Total (black and white 2)
yes	110	Total (mono color /large)
yes	111	Total (mono color /small)
yes	112	Total (black and white /large)
yes	113	Total (black and white /small)
yes	114	Total 1(double sided)
yes	115	Total 2(double sided)
yes	116	large (double sided)
yes	117	small (double sided)
yes	118	Total (mono color 1)
yes	119	Total (mono color 2)
yes	120	Total (full color /large)
yes	121	Total (full color /small)
yes	122	Total (full color +mono color /large)
yes	123	Total (full color +mono color /small)
yes	124	Total (full color +mono color 2)
yes	125	Total (full color +mono color 1)
yes	126	Total A1
yes	127	Total A2
yes	128	Total A (large)
yes	129	Total A (small)
yes	130	Total A (full color 1)
yes	131	Total A (full color 2)
yes	132	Total A (black and white 1)
yes	133	Total A (black and white 2)
yes	134	Total A (mono color /large)
yes	135	Total A (mono color /small)
yes	136	Total A (black and white /large)
yes	137	Total A (black and white /small)
yes	138	Total A 1(double sided)
yes	139	Total A 2(double sided)
yes	140	large A (double sided)
yes	141	small A (double sided)
yes	142	Total A (mono color 1)
yes	143	Total A (mono color 2)
yes	144	Total A (full color /large)
yes	145	Total A (full color /small)
yes	146	Total A (full color +mono color /large)
yes	147	Total A (full color +mono color /small)
yes	148	Total A (full color +mono color 2)
yes	149	Total A (full color +mono color 1)
yes	150	Total B1
yes	151	Total B2
yes	152	Total B (large)
yes	153	Total B (small)
yes	154	Total B (full color 1)
yes	155	Total B (full color 2)
yes	156	Total B (black and white 1)
yes	157	Total B (black and white 2)
yes	158	Total B (mono color /large)
yes	159	Total B (mono color /small)
yes	160	Total B (black and white /large)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	161	Total B (black and white /small)
yes	162	Total B1 (double sided)
yes	163	Total B2 (double sided)
yes	164	largeB (double sided)
yes	165	smallB (double sided)
yes	166	Total B (mono color 1)
yes	167	Total B (mono color 2)
yes	168	Total B (full color /large)
yes	169	Total B (full color /small)
yes	170	Total B (full color +mono color /large)
yes	171	Total B (full color +mono color /small)
yes	172	Total B (full color +mono color 2)
yes	173	Total B (full color +mono color 1)
no	191	Toner replacement / yellow
no	192	Toner replacement / magenta
no	193	Toner replacement / cyan
no	194	Toner replacement / black
no	195	Toner replacement / expansion 1
no	196	Toner replacement / expansion 2

T-16-181

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	201	Copy (Total 1)
yes	202	Copy (Total 2)
yes	203	Copy (large)
yes	204	Copy (small)
yes	205	Copy A (Total 1)
yes	206	Copy A (Total 2)
yes	207	Copy A (large)
yes	208	Copy A (small)
yes	209	Local copy (Total 1)
yes	210	Local copy (Total 2)
yes	211	Local copy (large)
yes	212	Local copy (small)
yes	213	Remote copy (Total 1)
yes	214	Remote copy (Total 2)
yes	215	Remote copy (large)
yes	216	Remote copy (small)
yes	217	Copy (full color 1)
yes	218	Copy (full color 2)
yes	219	Copy (mono color 1)
yes	220	Copy (mono color 2)
yes	221	Copy (black and white 1)
yes	222	Copy (black and white 2)
yes	223	Copy (full color /large)
yes	224	Copy (full color /small)
yes	225	Copy (mono color /large)
yes	226	Copy (mono color /small)
yes	227	Copy (black and white /large)
yes	228	Copy (black and white /small)
yes	229	Copy (full color +mono color /large)
yes	230	Copy (full color +mono color /small)
yes	231	Copy (full color +mono color /2)
yes	232	Copy (full color +mono color /1)
yes	233	Copy (full color /large/double sided)
yes	234	Copy (full color /small/double sided)
yes	235	Copy (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	236	Copy (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	237	Copy (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	238	Copy (black and white /small/double sided)
yes	245	Copy A (full color 1)
yes	246	Copy A (full color 2)
yes	247	Copy A (mono color 1)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	248	Copy A (mono color 2)
yes	249	Copy A (black and white 1)
yes	250	Copy A (black and white 2)
yes	251	Copy A (full color /large)
yes	252	Copy A (full color /small)
yes	253	Copy A (mono color /large)
yes	254	Copy A (mono color /small)
yes	255	Copy A (black and white /large)
yes	256	Copy A (black and white /small)
yes	257	Copy A (full color +mono color /large)
yes	258	Copy A (full color +mono color /small)
yes	259	Copy A (full color +mono color 2)
yes	260	Copy A (full color +mono color 1)
yes	261	Copy A (full color /large/double sided)
yes	262	Copy A (full color /small/double sided)
yes	263	Copy A (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	264	Copy A (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	265	Copy A (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	266	Copy A (black and white /small/double sided)
yes	273	Local copy (full color 1)
yes	274	Local copy (full color 2)
yes	275	Local copy (mono color 1)
yes	276	Local copy (mono color 2)
yes	277	Local copy (black and white 1)
yes	278	Local copy (black and white 2)
yes	279	Local copy (full color /large)
yes	280	Local copy (full color /small)
yes	281	Local copy (mono color /large)
yes	282	Local copy (mono color /small)
yes	283	Local copy (black and white /large)
yes	284	Local copy (black and white /small)
yes	285	Local copy (full color +mono color /large)
yes	286	Local copy (full color +mono color /small)
yes	287	Local copy (full color +mono color 2)
yes	288	Local copy (full color +mono color 1)
yes	289	Local copy (full color /large/double sided)
yes	290	Local copy (full color /small/double sided)
yes	291	Local copy (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	292	Local copy (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	293	Local copy (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	294	Local copy (black and white /small/double sided)

T-16-182

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	301	Print (Total 1)
yes	302	Print (Total 2)
yes	303	Print (large)
yes	304	Print (small)
yes	305	Print A(Total 1)
yes	306	Print A(Total 2)
yes	307	Print A(large)
yes	308	Print A(small)
yes	309	Print (full color 1)
yes	310	Print (full color 2)
yes	311	Print (mono color 1)
yes	312	Print (mono color 2)
yes	313	Print (black and white 1)
yes	314	Print (black and white 2)
yes	315	Print (full color /large)
yes	316	Print (full color /small)
yes	317	Print (mono color /large)
yes	318	Print (mono color /small)
yes	319	Print (black and white /large)
yes	320	Print (black and white /small)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	321	Print (full color +mono color /large)
yes	322	Print (full color +mono color /small)
yes	323	Print (full color +mono color /2)
yes	324	Print (full color +mono color /1)
yes	325	Print (full color /large /double sided)
yes	326	Print (full color /small/double sided)
yes	327	Print (mono color /large /double sided)
yes	328	Print (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	329	Print (black and white /large /double sided)
yes	330	Print (black and white /small/double sided)
yes	331	PDLPrint (Total 1)
yes	332	PDLPrint (Total 2)
yes	333	PDLPrint (large)
yes	334	PDLPrint (small)
yes	335	PDLPrint (full color 1)
yes	336	PDLPrint (full color 2)
yes	339	PDLPrint (black and white 1)
yes	340	PDLPrint (black and white 2)
yes	341	PDLPrint (full color /large)
yes	342	PDLPrint (full color /small)
yes	345	PDLPrint (black and white /large)
yes	346	PDLPrint (black and white /small)
yes	351	PDLPrint (full color /large /double sided)
yes	352	PDLPrint (full color /small/double sided)
yes	355	PDLPrint (black and white /large /double sided)
yes	356	PDLPrint (black and white /small/double sided)

T-16-183

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	401	Copy + print (full color /large)
yes	402	Copy + print (full color /small)
yes	403	Copy + print (black and white/large)
yes	404	Copy + print (black and white/small)
yes	405	Copy + print (black and white2)
yes	406	Copy + print (black and white1)
yes	407	Copy + print (full color +mono color /large)
yes	408	Copy + print (full color +mono color /small)
yes	409	Copy + print (full color +mono color /2)
yes	410	Copy + print (full color +mono color /1)
yes	411	Copy + print (large)
yes	412	Copy + print (small)
yes	413	Copy + print (2)
yes	414	Copy + print (1)
yes	415	Copy + print (mono color /large)
yes	416	Copy + print (mono color /small)
yes	417	Copy + print (full color /large/double sided)
yes	418	Copy + print (full color /small/double sided)
yes	419	Copy + print (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	420	Copy + print (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	421	Copy + print (black and white/large/double sided)
yes	422	Copy + print (black and white/small/double sided)

T-16-184

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	501	Scan (Total 1)
yes	502	Scan (Total 2)
yes	503	Scan (large)
yes	504	Scan (small)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	505	Black and white Scan (Total 1)
yes	506	Black and white Scan (Total 2)
yes	507	Black and white Scan (large)
yes	508	Black and white Scan (small)
yes	509	Color scan (Total 1)
yes	510	Color scan (Total 2)
yes	511	Color scan (large)
yes	512	Color scan (small)

T-16-185

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	601	Box print (Total 1)
yes	602	Box print (Total 2)
yes	603	Box print (large)
yes	604	Box print (small)
yes	605	Box print (full color 1)
yes	606	Box print (full color 2)
yes	607	Box print (mono color 1)
yes	608	Box print (mono color 2)
yes	609	Box print (black and white 1)
yes	610	Box print (black and white 2)
yes	611	Box print (full color /large)
yes	612	Box print (full color /small)
yes	613	Box print (mono color /large)
yes	614	Box print (mono color /small)
yes	615	Box print (black and white /large)
yes	616	Box print (black and white /small)
yes	617	Box print (full color +mono color /large)
yes	618	Box print (full color +mono color /small)
yes	619	Box print (full color +mono color 2)
yes	620	Box print (full color +mono color 1)
yes	621	Box print (full color /large/double sided)
yes	622	Box print (full color /small/double sided)
yes	623	Box print (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	624	Box print (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	625	Box print (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	626	Box print (black and white /small/double sided)

T-16-186

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	701	Reception print (Total 1)
yes	702	Reception print (Total 2)
yes	703	Reception print (large)
yes	704	Reception print (small)
yes	705	Reception print (full color 1)
yes	706	Reception print (full color 2)
no	707	Reception print (Gray scale 1)
no	708	Reception print (Gray scale 2)
yes	709	Reception print (black and white 1)
yes	710	Reception print (black and white 2)
yes	711	Reception print (full color /large)
yes	712	Reception print (full color /small)
no	713	Reception print (Gray scale /large)
no	714	Reception print (Gray scale /small)
yes	715	Reception print (black and white /large)
yes	716	Reception print (black and white /small)
no	717	Reception print (full color +Gray scale /large)
no	718	Reception print (full color +Gray scale /small)
no	719	Reception print (full color +Gray scale 2)
no	720	Reception print (full color +Gray scale 1)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	721	Reception print (full color /large/double sided)
yes	722	Reception print (full color /small/double sided)
no	723	Reception print (Gray scale /large/double sided)
no	724	Reception print (Gray scale /small/double sided)
yes	725	Reception print (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	726	Reception print (black and white /small/double sided)

T-16-187

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	801	Report print (Total 1)
yes	802	Report print (Total 2)
yes	803	Report print (large)
yes	804	Report print (small)
yes	805	Report print (full color 1)
yes	806	Report print (full color 2)
no	807	Report print (Gray scale 1)
no	808	Report print (Gray scale 2)
yes	809	Report print (black and white 1)
yes	810	Report print (black and white 2)
yes	811	Report print (full color /large)
yes	812	Report print (full color /small)
no	813	Report print (Gray scale /large)
no	814	Report print (Gray scale /small)
yes	815	Report print (black and white /large)
yes	816	Report print (black and white /small)
no	817	Report print (full color +Gray scale /large)
no	818	Report print (full color +Gray scale /small)
no	819	Report print (full color +Gray scale 2)
no	820	Report print (full color +Gray scale 1)
yes	821	Report print (full color /large /double sided)
yes	822	Report print (full color /small /double sided)
no	823	Report print (Gray scale /large /double sided)
no	824	Report print (Gray scale /small /double sided)
yes	825	Report print (black and white /large /double sided)
yes	826	Report print (black and white /small /double sided)

T-16-188

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
no	901	Copy scan total 1(color)
no	902	Copy scan total 1(black and white)
no	903	Copy scan total 2(color)
no	904	Copy scan total 2(black and white)
no	905	Copy scan total 3(color)
no	906	Copy scan total 3(black and white)
no	907	Copy scan total 4(color)
no	908	Copy scan total 4(black and white)
no	909	Local copy scan (color)
no	910	Local copy scan (black and white)
no	911	Remote copy scan (color)
no	912	Remote copy scan (black and white)
no	913	Transmission scan total 1(color)
no	914	Transmission scan total 1(black and white)
yes	915	Transmission scan total 2(color)
yes	916	Transmission scan total 2(black and white)
yes	917	Transmission scan total 3(color)
yes	918	Transmission scan total 3(black and white)
no	919	Transmission scan total 4(color)
no	920	Transmission scan total 4(black and white)
yes	921	Transmission scan total 5(color)
yes	922	Transmission scan total 5(black and white)
yes	929	Transmission scan total 6(color)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	930	Transmission scan total 6(black and white)
no	931	Transmission scan total 7(color)
no	932	Transmission scan total 7(black and white)
no	933	Transmission scan total 8(color)
no	934	Transmission scan total 8(black and white)
no	935	Universal transmission scan total (color)
no	936	Universal transmission scan total (black and white)
yes	937	Box scan (color)
yes	938	Box scan (black and white)
yes	939	Remote scan (color)
yes	940	Remote scan (black and white)
no	941	Transmission scan / Fax (color)
no	942	Transmission scan / Fax (black and white)
no	943	Transmission scan / I Fax (color)
no	944	Transmission scan / I Fax (black and white)
yes	945	Transmission scan / E-mail (color)
yes	946	Transmission scan / E-mail (black and white)
no	947	Transmission scan /FTP(color)
no	948	Transmission scan /FTP(black and white)
no	949	Transmission scan /SMB(color)
no	950	Transmission scan /SMB(black and white)
no	951	Transmission scan /IPX(color)
no	952	Transmission scan /IPX(black and white)
no	953	Transmission scan / Database (color)
no	954	Transmission scan / Database (black and white)
no	955	Transmission scan / Local print (color)
no	956	Transmission scan / Local print (black and white)
no	957	Transmission scan / Box (color)
no	958	Transmission scan / Box (black and white)


T-16-189

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CONTROL	enables/disables the charging mechanism (PDL job)	1
	When connecting with the account-managing device (e.g., coin vendor, non-Canon control card), it switches over the count pulse (on/off) in the account-managing device. settings 0: do not restrict (default); 1: restrict When charging against PDL prints, set '1'.	
B4-L-CNT	Set whether to count the B4-size paper as large size or small size in soft counters 1 to 6.	1
	Setting range 0: Small size 1: Large size Standard value 0	
COPY-JOB	Set whether or not to prohibit the copy job reservation when using the card reader and coin vendor. This mode is used when it is necessary to prohibit simultaneous entry of multiple jobs for CCX or coin robo.	1
	Setting range 0: Copy job reservation is not prohibited. 1: Copy job reservation is prohibited. Standard value 0	
TAB-ROT	Set whether or not to perform 180 degree rotation for the landscape image of PDL tab paper.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not perform rotation. 1: Perform rotation. Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PR-PSESW	Set whether or not to display the print pause function switch. This mode is used to set whether or not to display the print pause function switch in the user screen.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the print pause function. (Do not display the print pause function switch in the user screen.) 1: Provide the print pause function. (Display the print pause function switch in the user screen.) Standard value 0	
CPRT-DSP	Set whether or not to display the count print button in the sales counter confirmation screen.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not display the button. 1: Display the button. Standard value 0	
CNT-SW	Set the type of a counter for the counter display item.	1
	Setting range 0: Counter 1 - Total 1: 101 Counter 2 - Total (black and white 1): 108 Counter 3 - Copy (full color + mono color / 1): 232 Counter 4 - Print (full color + mono color / 1): 324 1: Counter 1 - Total 2: 102 Counter 2 - Copy (full color + mono color / 2): 231 Counter 3 - Total A (full color + mono color / 2): 148 Counter 4 - Copy (black and white 2): 222 Counter 5 - Total A (black and white 2): 133 2: (The setting value '0' with mono color) Counter 1 - Total 1: 101 Counter 2 - Total (black and white 1): 108 Counter 3 - Copy (full color + mono color / 1): 232 Counter 4 - Print (full color + mono color / 1): 324 Counter 5 - Total (mono color 1): 118 3: Counter 1 - Total 1: 101 Counter 2 - Total (full color + mono color / small): 123 Counter 3 - Total (full color + mono color / large): 122 Counter 4 - Total (black and white / small): 113 Counter 5 - Total (black and white / large): 112 Counter 6 - Scan (Total 1): 501 4: (The setting value '3' with mono color) Counter 1 - Total 1: 101 Counter 2 - Total (full color + mono color / small): 123 Counter 3 - Total (full color + mono color / large): 122 Counter 4 - Total (black and white / small): 113 Counter 5 - Total (black and white / large): 112 Counter 6 - Total (mono color / small): 111 Counter 7 - Total (mono color / large): 110 Counter 8 - Scan (Total 1): 501 Standard value 0	
TAB-ACC	Set whether or not to perform ACC for tab paper (index paper).	1
	Setting range 0: Do not perform ACC for tab paper. 1: Perform ACC for tab paper. Standard value 0	
BCNT-AST	Set whether to count a BOX print job as a PDL job or a COPY job.	1
	Setting range 0: Count a BOX print job as a PDL job. 1: Count a BOX print job as a COPY job. Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DFLT-BOX	Set the default color mode for BOX.	1
	Setting range 0: ACS 1: Full color 2: Black and white JPN [Standard value: 0] UL [Standard value: 0] EUR [Standard value: 0] Other destinations [Standard value: 0]	
COUNTER7	Select the counter type to be displayed for Counter 7 in the user mode. Set a value for the 7th counter to be displayed in the user mode.	1
	Setting range 1 to 26, 39, 41 to 45 Standard value 0 (Not displayed)	
COUNTER8	Select the counter type to be displayed for Counter 8 in the user mode. Set a value for the 8th counter to be displayed in the user mode.	1
	Setting range 1 to 26, 39, 41 to 45 Standard value 0 (Not displayed)	
LDAP-SW	Set the switching of the searching condition for LDAP search. Set a matching condition to search e-mail addresses or FAX numbers from the LDAP server.	1
	Setting range 0: "Include the specified keyword." 1: "Do not include the specified keyword." 2: "Equal to the specified keyword." 3: "Not equal to the specified keyword." 4: "Start with the specified keyword." 5: "End with the specified keyword." Standard value 4	
FROM-OF	Set whether or not to delete the 'from' address for mail transmission.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not delete the 'from' address. 1: Delete the 'from' address. Standard value 0	
SPEAKER	Set whether or not to display the "speaker/head set switching" button in the voice reading setting (user mode).	1
	Setting range 0: Do not display the button. 1: Display the button. Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FILE-OF	<p>Set whether or not to prohibit transmission to a file address. This mode is used to prohibit transmission to a file address by prohibiting input of a file address from an address book.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Do not prohibit transmission to a file address. 1: Prohibit transmission to a file address. Standard value 0</p> <p>Remarks - In case of changing the setting from 0 to 1 while FILE addresses have been registered, it is desirable to delete the FILE addresses manually. (Without deleting them, they can be used.) - In case the setting is 1, the import (registration) of the FILE address from RUI and machine information delivery is not accepted. Thus, if there are many FILE addresses, set 1 for this mode and make the files exported with RUI and machine information delivery to 'Overwrite import (register the imported addresses after deleting the current data)'. By doing so, they can be deleted at once.</p>	1
MAIL-OF	<p>Set whether or not to prohibit transmission to an e-mail address. This mode is used to prohibit transmission to an e-mail address by prohibiting input of an e-mail address from an address book.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Do not prohibit transmission to an e-mail address. 1: Prohibit transmission to an e-mail address. Standard value 0</p> <p>Remarks - In case of changing the setting from 0 to 1 while the e-mail addresses are registered, it is desirable to delete the e-mail addresses manually. (Without deleting them, they can be used.) - In case the setting is 1, the import (registration) of the e-mail addresses from RUI and machine information delivery is not accepted. Thus, if there are many e-mail addresses, set 1 for this mode to enable 'Overwrite import (register the imported addresses after deleting the current data)' by RUI and machine information delivery. By doing so, they can be deleted at once.</p>	1
IFAX-OF	<p>Set whether or not to prohibit transmission to an i-FAX address. This mode is used to prohibit transmission to an i-FAX address by prohibiting input of an i-FAX address from an address book.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Do not prohibit transmission to an i-FAX address. 1: Prohibit transmission to an i-FAX address. Standard value 0</p> <p>Remarks - In case of changing the setting from 0 to 1 while the iFAX addresses have been registered, it is desirable to delete the iFAX addresses manually. (Without deleting them, they can be used.) - In case the setting is 1, the import (registration) of the iFAX addresses from RUI and machine information delivery is not accepted. Thus, if there are many iFAX addresses, set 1 for this mode to enable 'Overwrite import (register the imported addresses after deleting the current data)' by RUI and machine information delivery. By doing so, they can be deleted at once.</p>	1

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
LDAP-DEF	Switch the default setting of the LDAP searching condition. Change the default setting of a searching attribute condition specified for LDAP searching.	1
	Setting range 0 to 6 0: "Name" 1: "E-mail" 2: "FAX" 3: "Organization" 4: "Unit of organization" 5: User setting 1 6: User setting 2 Standard value 0 Refer to COPIER > OPTION> USER > LDAP-SW for the details of LDAP.	
DK3-ASST	Switch the air heater control for the pickup deck with air-assist function. (Setting for PDO deck Lite) Switch the condition to turn on the air heater for air-assist function according to the media and environment.	1
	Setting range 0: Control the air heater based on the media and environment condition. 1: Turn on the air heater based on the environment condition only. (Not dependent on the media) 2: Turn on the air heater constantly. (Not dependent on the environment and media) Standard value 0 Remarks When switching the media setting from non-coated paper to coated paper for the pickup deck with air-assist function, wait-time occurs before the temperature of the air heater is controlled. (For coated paper, pickup cannot be performed until the air heater is turned on and warm air blows.) Furthermore, when the machine is used in the environment near the ON/OFF switching condition, it is assumed that the ON/OFF switching of the air heater is frequently performed and it increases the wait-time. When you receive a claim from a user that the wait-time is too long, perform the following measures; - For the former case (switching of the media setting from non-coated paper to coated paper), explain that transfer performance of no	
FX-BC-SW	Set ON/OFF of the wait-mode control for cooling of the fixing assembly.	1
	Setting range OFF [0] / ON [1] Standard value 0	
CARD-DIR	4-pane postcard feeding direction setting Set the feeding direction of 4-pane postcard.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1 0: Short edge feed only 1: Available to switch Long edge feed/Short edge feed. Standard value 0  This item applies to the upgraded device or later (DCON Ver11.03 or later, Cont Ver24.04 or later)	
DATE-DSP	Switch the date display.	2
	Setting range: 0: YYMM/DD 1: DD/MM'YY 2: MM/DD/YY	

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MB-CCV	Restrict the use of the control card for mailbox.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not restrict the use. 1: Restrict the use. Standard value 0	
TRY-STP	Set a mode not to perform printing when the tray is full.	2
	Setting range 0: Normal mode (Stop printing when the finisher tray is full.) 1: Stop printing only by detecting the height. Standard value 0	
MF-LG-ST	Set a key for the long length paper mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Normal 1: Display the long length key in the corresponding mode screen. Standard value 0	
CNT-DISP	Set whether or not to display a serial number when pressing the counter check key.	2
	Setting range 0: Display a serial number. 1: Do not display a serial number. Standard value 0	
OP-SZ-DT	Set ON/OFF of the document size detection function while the copyboard is open.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not perform the document size detection while the copyboard is open. - The document size must be manually entered in the control panel. 1: Perform the document size detection while the copyboard is open. - Use this mode when you need to perform the document size detection automatically even when you cannot close the copyboard to make copies of a thick book, etc. - Detection is performed when the start key is pressed. Standard value 0 Remarks When SIZE-DET is set to 0, the document size detection is not performed even when OP-SZ-DT is set to 1.	
NW-SCAN	Set whether or not to permit the network scan function.	2
	0: Do not permit the network scan function. 1: Permit the network scan function. Standard value 0	
HDCR-DSP	Switch the display/operation of HDD clear mode in the user mode.	2
	Setting range 1: Perform clear once with "0". 2: Perform clear once with random data. 3: Perform clear three times with random data. Standard value 1 MEMO: function for HDD initialization This is the function to clear the data on HDD completely by overwriting the 0 (null) data and random data to file data area at the moment of deleting files logically (timing for deleting the administrative information data) in HDD.	

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
JOB-INVL	<p>Set the job interval for interruption.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Normal setting (When an interruption copy occurs, print the next job continuously.) 1: After the last sheet of an interruption copy is delivered, start printing the next job. 2: After the last sheet of all jobs, start printing the next job. Standard value 0</p>	2
LGSW-DSP	<p>Use it to enable/disable display of 'enable/disable log indication' for Additional Functions Mode.</p> <p>settings 0: do not display (default); 1: display</p>	2
PCL-COPY	<p>Binder control mode for COPIES command of PCL</p> <p>This is the mode to unite the operations because the way to control the COPIES command of PCL is different between the Canon PCL and the non-Canon PCL.</p> <p>settings 0: [default] to control by page according to the value of COPIES command specified at each page. 1: It regards the value of COPIES command specified at page-1 as the number of bind, and invalid the value of COPIES command of the following page and after (only at sort mode. in the case of non-sort mode, it will be the same control as at '0' setting). 2 through 65535: backup '0' is for control method with Canon. By setting '1', it will be the same control method with non-Canon PCL.</p>	2
PRJOB-CP	<p>Set the CCV count pulse when performing reception and report printing.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Do not provide a count pulse. 1: Provide a count pulse. Standard value 0</p> <p>When using account-managing device (e.g., coin vendor, non-Canon control card), it switches over (on/off) the count pulse notice for every page at receipt print/report print.</p>	2
DPT-ID-7	<p>Make a setting for registration of a section ID and entry of 7 digits for authentication.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Same as a conventional method 1: 7 digits entry Standard value 0</p>	2
RUI-RJT	<p>Disconnect the HTTP port when unauthorized authentication was performed from RUI three times.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Invalid 1: Valid Standard value 0</p>	2
CTM-S06	<p>Use it to enable/disable deletion of the password from an export file with a file transmission address.</p> <p>settings 0: do not delete (default); 1: delete When setting '1', in the case of exporting the address book data from remote UI, the password of file server is hidden from the exported file (to avoid leakage of information).</p>	2
FREG-SW	<p>Switching over of display/nondisplay for free register area of MEAP counter (for SEND)</p> <p>settings 0: do not display (default); 1: display MEMO: - This is not used at normal servicing because it is for trouble analysis. - Obey the instruction by the quality support section for usage.</p>	2

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
IFAX-SZL	Set validity/invalidity of the transmission size restriction for iFAX transmission. (only when transmission is not performed via a server)	2
	settings 0: set restrictions; 1: do not set restrictions (only if not through server; default) In the case of setting '0', - as for upper limit value, set it in transmission data size by selecting the following: additional functions mode>System Settings>Communications Settings>E-mail/I-Fax Settings>Maximum Data Size For Setting - if sending data that the size exceeds the upper limit value, it will be #830 error.	
IFAX-PGD	Set whether or not to permit a split transmission by page. (only when the upper limit of the transmission data size is exceeded) This mode is used to switch "permission/non-permission" of a split transmission by page when the upper limit of the transmission data size is exceeded in the iFAX Simple mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not permit a split transmission by page. 1: Permit a split transmission by page. Standard value 0 The split transmission by page does not assure the order of pages at the receiver. In addition, it may be possible that any other reception job steps between the pages. When setting this mode, explain the foregoing possibility to the user and gain the consent beforehand.	
MEAPSAFE	Make a setting to switch to the MEAP safe mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Normal mode 1: Safe mode Standard value 0 Safe mode works to stop the added MEAP application, and to startup the only system application that was activated at initial state to start up the system safely. Set '1' to startup in safe mode in the case of system recovery processing when MEAP platform does not startup normally because of resource competition among MEAP applications, or the order to register/use the service. "MPSF" is indicated in the control panel screen when in safe mode.	
FXEX-CNT	Set a temperature control hysteresis width for the external heating roller. The external heating roller of this machine has small heat capacity and the heater is frequently turned on and off, which causes a flickering. This mode is provided as a measure to minimize such flickering. Evaluation method Make sure that the temperature of the external heating roller is controlled within the setting range using COPIER>DISPLAY>ANALOG>FIX-EXC.	2
	Setting range 0: Hysteresis width = ± 1 deg (200 deg ± 1 deg) 1: Hysteresis width = ± 2 deg (200 deg ± 2 deg) 2: Hysteresis width = ± 3.5 deg (200 deg ± 3.5 deg) 3: Hysteresis width = ± 4.5 deg (200 deg ± 4.5 deg) Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRNT-POS	<p>Set whether or not to perform a simultaneous pause for the subsequent print job when canceling a job after an error occurs.</p> <p>Perform a simultaneous pause for a print job when a job cancellation (#037, etc.) occurs caused by an internal error, other than a</p> <p>Setting range 0: Do not perform a simultaneous pause. 1: Perform a simultaneous pause. Standard value 0</p>	2
AFN-PSWD	<p>Use it to set restrictions on access in additional functions mode.</p> <p>settings 0: off (shift to user mode scan without requiring password; default) 1: on (shift to user mode scan after password match)</p>	2
PTJAM-RC	<p>Set whether or not to perform recovery of a PDL jam. This mode is used to set whether or not to perform recovery printing when a jam occurs in a PDL job.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Do not perform recovery. 1: Perform recovery. Standard value 1</p> <p>This mode suits for operators who do not want recovery printing (e.g., receipt and payment slip) with jam recovery without being noticed by them.</p>	2
SLP-SLCT	<p>Use it to set the switch designed to switch between existing network-based applications.</p> <p>A certain packet needs to be received as a condition for the machine to recover from sleep mode via network. Because the existing network system applications (e.g., Net Spot Accountant, image WARE) do not send such packet, the machine fails to recover via network if it's shifted to sleep mode 3. When setting '1', the machine able to recover from sleep mode via network because it does not shift to sleep mode 3 (1wsleep), resulting the trade-off with the increase of consuming electricity.</p> <p>settings 0: do not use (default); 1: use MEMO: This is not used at normal servicing.</p>	2
PS-MODE	<p>Selecting compatibility mode when using PS (image processing, print specification)</p> <p>This is the mode to simulate REPLACE to hold compatibility for image processing and print specification.</p> <p>settings 0: no use of PS compatibility mode (default) 1: image processing equivalent of iR2220/2800/3300 series (compatibility with existing machines) 2: image processing equivalent of iR105 (compatibility with existing machine) 3: backup 4: landscape image and portrait image can be duplexed printing using Canon controller. This is the compatible mode with non-Canon controller. 5 through 65535: backup When the setting value is '1', the output will be equivalent to that of iR2200 / 2800 / 3300 series. Whereas when the setting value is '2', the output will be equivalent to that of iR105 series.</p>	2

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CNCT-RLZ	<p>Set whether or not to use the Connection Serialize Function.</p> <hr/> <p>Function: Switch the use of the Connection Serialize Function. [Remarks] - Connection Serialize Function This function is provided to guarantee the job grouping function of imageWARE Output Manager Select Edition V1.0. Since an iR-series MFP machine provides multiple connections, you can make a setting to prohibit reception of multiple connections at a device so that the job grouping function is guaranteed. In other words, when you make a setting to prohibit reception of multiple connections at a device, the device does not receive job data from a connection until reception of job data from another connection is completed. (--> This prevents jobs to queue in different order.)</p> <p>- "Connection" refers to the connection established among multiple hosts (PCs) via network.</p> <p>- Job Grouping Function This is one of the functions provided by imageWARE Output Manager Select Edition V1.0. This prohibits job interruption from other PC by performing group job transmission (by sending multiple jobs in one session).</p> <p>Setting range 0: OFF (Connection Serialize Function is OFF) 1: ON (Connection Serialize Function is ON) Standard value 0</p>	2
2C-CT-SW	<p>Switch a setting for the color counter (only for the two-color mode). Set whether to use full-color counter or mono-color counter for the two-color mode count-up.</p> <hr/> <p>Setting range 0: Perform count-up to mono-color counter. 1: Perform count-up to full-color counter. Standard value 1</p> <p>Remarks 2-Color Print: 1 color from R, G, B, C, M, Y + Bk Mono-color: 1 color only</p>	2
FINGM-SW	<p>Set whether or not to display the fingerprint prevention button. Set whether or not to display the button for fingerprint prevention function, in which fixing operation is performed before an image is printed and then normal operation is performed in order to prevent fingerprints in manual feeding.</p> <hr/> <p>Setting range 0: Do not display the button. 1: Display the button. Standard value 0</p> <p>Remarks Pressing the button increases fixing operation, and it extremely decreases printing performance.</p>	2

COPIER>OPTION>USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CLR-TIM	Select the timing to perform a complete removal processing in the security kit. When a complete removal processing is performed, job processing performance sometimes decreases for certain data. This is because the page data which has been already processed is being removed during job processing and it slows down the accessing process to CPU and HDD. If the execution of this process is delayed so that the process is performed after the job is completed, the job processing capability can be improved.	2
	Setting range 0: Remove data during job processing. 1: Remove data after a job is completed. Standard value 0	
FX-CLNLV	Change the level of the fixing roller cleaning which is controlled automatically.	2
	Setting range -5 to 5 Standard value 0	

3. CST

COPIER>OPTION>CST		
Subheading	Contents	Level
U1-NAME to U4-NAME	<p>Set ON/OFF of the paper name display when the paper size group (U1 to U4) is detected.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Display "U1, U2, U3, U4" in the touch panel. (default) 1: Display the paper name specified in "CST-U1, U2, U3, U4" in the service mode. Standard value 0</p> <p>In terms of specifying the universal size, generally, 'U1' to 'U4' is displayed on the touch panel when U1/U2/U3/U4-NAME is '0'. However, as an exception, if 'CST-U4' is registered as '18:LTR', 'LTR' is displayed on the touch panel although 'U4-NAME' is '0'.</p> <p>In other word,</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. U4-NAME: 0 / CST-U4: 29 size is indicated as 'U4' / paper size is Argentine LTR. 2. U4-NAME: 1 / CST-U4: 29 size is indicated as 'LTR' / paper size is Argentine LTR. 3. U4-NAME: 0 / CST-U4: 18 size is indicated as 'LTR' / paper size is LTR. 4. U4-NAME: 1 / CST-U4: 18 size is indicated as 'LTR' / paper size is LTR. 	2
CST-U1/U2/U3/U4	<p>Specify a name of the paper used for the paper size group. When the following special size paper is specified for U1, U2, U3, and U4, the paper size of U1, U2, U3, and U4 can be handled as special size paper.</p> <p>Setting range: 24 to 40 24: FOOLSCAP (CST-U2: Default) 25: Australian FOOLSCAP 26: OFFICIO 27: Ecuador OFFICIO 28: Bolivia OFFICIO 29: Argentina LETTER (U4: Default) 30: Argentina LETTER-R 31: Government LETTER (U1: Default) 32: Government LETTER-R 34: Government LEGAL (U3: Default) 35: FOLIO 36: Argentina OFFICIO 37: Mexico OFFICIO 38: EXECUTIVE 39: 16K 40: 8K</p>	2

T-16-191

COPIER>OPTION>ACC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
COIN	Switch a coin vendor. Set whether or not to enter an administrator's mode of a coin vendor.	1
	Setting range 0: Coin vendor unavailable (Control card is available. No charging) 1: Coin vendor (with charging) 2: Distant-place counter (with charging) Standard value 0	
DK-P	Set a paper size to be used for the paper deck (option).	1
	Setting range 0 to 2 0: A4, 1: B5, 2: LTR Standard value 0	
CARD-SW	Switch the UI screen for a coin vendor.	1
	Setting range 0: Coin 1: Card 2: Coin and card Standard value 0	
SC-TYPE	Switching-over of the type of the Self Copier type machine (coin vender-capable machine) Available only when the Soft ID for the machine is set as a specific user. This service mode is used to switch over the machine type to a specific user type machine or generic Self Copier type machine. Generic Self Copier has more functions than the specific user type machine.	2
	Setting range 0: Specific user type machine 1: Generic Self Copier type machine Standard value 0	
CC-SPSW	Switch the I/F support level of the control card (CCIV/CCV).	2
	Setting range 0: Do not support the card. 1: Support the card. (Prioritize the speed.) 2: Support the card. (Prioritize the upper limit number of copies.) Standard value 0 - When this mode is set to 1, the maintenance of engine performance is prioritized, and the operation cannot be stopped accurately based on the upper limit number of copies. - When this mode is set to 2, the operation can be stopped accurately based on the upper limit number of copies, but engine performance may be decreased for a certain cassette.	

5. INT-FACE

T-16-192

COPIER>OPTION>INT-FACE		
Subheading	Contents	Level
IMG-CONT	Connecting Setting of External PDL Controller	1
	Setting range 0: Normal operation 1: Not used 2: Not used 3: EFI controller 4: Not used 5: Not used Standard value 0	

When the value is set to 1, the values of the following user mode items return to the standard values of EFI.

- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > IP address
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Subnet mask
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Gateway address
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Ethernet driver setting > Communication method
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Ethernet driver setting > Ethernet type
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Activation time

The following user mode settings are set to OFF.

- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Use of DHCP
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Use of RARP
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Use of BOOTP
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Ethernet driver setting > Automatic detection
- System administration setting > Network setting > Use of spool function

When the value is set to 3 or 4, the following settings are set to OFF in addition to the items mentioned above.

- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > RAW setting
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > LPD setting
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IPP printing
- System administration setting > Network setting > SMB setting
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > FTP print setting > Use of FTP print.
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > BMLinkS setting > Use of BMLinkS.
- System administration setting > Network setting > NetWare setting > Use of NetWare.

Since the items mentioned above do not recover even when you set the value back to "0 (Normal mode)", make the setting again whenever necessary.

T-16-193

COPIER>OPTION>INT-FACE		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CNT-TYPE	Switch the EFI controller connection.	1
	Switching the EFI controller type.	
	Setting range 0: External Tower-Type Controller 1: Back Mounting-Type Controller	
AP-OPT	Set whether or not to permit printing from the "PrintMe" application installed in the PS print server unit.	2
	Setting range 0: Permit printing by the specified account. 1: Permit printing for any account. 2: Prohibit printing. (Permit printing by the specified section ID.) Standard value 0	
AP-ACCNT	Set a (CPCA) section ID for printing (job) from the "PrintMe" application installed in the PS print server unit.	2
	Setting range 0 to 9999999 Standard value 0	
AP-CODE	Set a (CPCA) path for printing (job) from the "PrintMe" application installed in the PS print server unit.	2
	Setting range 0 to 9999999 Standard value 0	
NWCT-TM	Set the time of timeout for network connection maintenance. (Keep Alive setting) Set the time during which network connection is kept between the application in the PC and the iR main unit (Keep Alive).	2
	Setting range 1 to 5 (Unit: minute) Standard value 5 Remark When the setting time is timed out, the network connection is disconnected. Therefore, when the network connection is disabled due to any reason, it shortens the down time of the machine.	

6. LCNS-TR

T-16-194

COPIER>OPTION>LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ST-SEND	Display the installation status of the SEND function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide SEND function. (not installed) 1: Provide SENC function. (installed) Standard value 0	

COPIER>OPTION>LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TR-SEND	Obtain a transfer license key for the SEND function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the SEND function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-ENPDF	Display the installation status of the SEND encryption PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the SEND encryption PDF transmission function. (not installed) 1: Provide the SEND encryption PDF transmission function. (installed) Standard value 0 This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed.	
TR-ENPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the SEND encryption PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the SEND encryption PDF transmission function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed.	
ST-SPDF	Display the installation status of the SEND searchable PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the SEND searchable PDF transmission function. (not installed) 1: Provide the SEND searchable PDF transmission function. (installed) Standard value 0 This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed.	
TR-SPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the SEND searchable PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the SEND searchable PDF transmission function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed.	

COPIER>OPTION>LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ST-EXPDF	Display the installation status of the PDF expansion kit (encryption PDF + searchable PDF) in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the PDF expansion kit. (not installed) 1: Provide the PDF expansion kit. (installed) Standard value 0 - This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed. - Only available for JP.	
TR-EXPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the PDF expansion kit (encryption PDF + searchable PDF) in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the PDF expansion kit (encryption PDF + searchable PDF) by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits - This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed. - Only available for JP.	
ST-PDFDR	Display the installation status of the PDF direct in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the PDF direct. (not installed) 1: Provide the PDF direct. (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-PDFDR	Obtain a transfer license key of the PDF direct in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the PDF direct by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-SCR	Display the installation status of the encryption secure printing in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the encryption secure printing. (not installed) 1: Provide the encryption secure printing. (installed) Standard value 0 - This mode is available only when the 3DES+USH-H board is mounted.	
TR-SCR	Obtain a transfer license key of the encryption secure printing in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the encryption secure printing by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits - This mode is available only when the 3DES+USH-H board is mounted.	
ST-HDCLR	Display the installation status of the HDD encryption / complete removal function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the HDD encryption / complete removal function. (not installed) 1: Provide the HDD encryption / complete removal function. (installed) Standard value 0 - This mode is available only when the 3DES+USH-H board is mounted.	

COPIER>OPTION>LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TR-HDCLR	Obtain a transfer license key of the HDD encryption / complete removal function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the HDD encryption / complete removal function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits - This mode is available only when the 3DES+USH-H board is mounted.	
ST-BRDIM	Display the installation status of BarDIMM in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide BarDIMM. (not installed) 1: Provide BarDIMM. (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-BRDIM	Obtain a transfer license key of BarDIMM in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use BarDIMM by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-VNC	Display the installation status of VNC in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide VNC. (not installed) 1: Provide VNC. (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-VNC	Obtain a transfer license key of VNC in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use VNC by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-WEB	Display the installation status of the Web browser in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the Web browser. (not installed) 1: Provide the Web browser. (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-WEB	Obtain a transfer license key of the Web browser in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the Web browser by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-HRPDF	Display the installation status of the highly-compressed PDF in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the highly-compressed PDF. (not installed) 1: Provide the highly-compressed PDF. (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-HRPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the highly-compressed PDF in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the highly-compressed PDF by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-TRSND	Display the installation status of the trial SEND function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the trial SEND function. (not installed) 1: Provide the trial SEND function. (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-TRSND	Obtain a transfer license key of the trial SEND function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the trial SEND function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	

COPIER>OPTION>LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ST-WTMRK	Display the installation status of the main unit tint block function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-WTMRK	Obtain a transfer license key of the main unit tint block function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the main unit tint block function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-TSPDF	Display the installation status of the PDF transmission function with a time stamp in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0 Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
TR-TSPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the PDF transmission function with a time stamp in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the PDF transmission function with a time stamp by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
ST-USPDF	Display the installation status of the PDF transmission function with a user signature in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0 Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
TR-USPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the PDF transmission function with a user signature in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the PDF transmission function with a user signature by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
ST-DVPDF	Display the installation status of the PDF transmission function with a device signature in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0 Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
TR-DVPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the PDF transmission function with a device signature in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the PDF transmission function with a device signature by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	

COPIER>OPTION>LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ST-SCPDF	Display the installation status of the scalable PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation. Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0 Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	2
TR-SCPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the scalable PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the scalable PDF transmission function by other MFP machine. Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	2
ST-AMS	Display the installation status of ACQ in transfer invalidation. Display the installation status of AMS (Access Management System). Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	2
TR-AMS	Obtain a transfer license key of ACQ in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use AMS (Access Management System) by other MFP machine. Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	2
ST-ERDS	Display the installation status of the third party expansion function for ERDS in transfer invalidation. Display the installation status of the third party expansion function (the function which sends a charging counter to a third party's charging server) for ERDS. Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	2
TR-ERDS	Obtain a transfer license key of the third party expansion function for ERDS in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the third party expansion function (the function which sends a charging counter to a third party's charging server) by other MFP machine. Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	2
ST-PS	Display the installation status of PS in transfer invalidation. Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	2
TR-PS	Obtain a transfer license key of PS in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use PS by other MFP machine. Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	2
ST-PCL	Display the installation status of PCL in transfer invalidation. Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	2
TR-PCL	Obtain a transfer license key of PCL in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use PCL by other MFP machine. Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	2

COPIER>OPTION>LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ST-PSL15	Display the installation status of PS, LIPS4, and LIPS LX in transfer invalidation. Display the installation status of the combined options of PS, LIPS4, and LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas).	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-PSL15	Obtain a transfer license key of PS, LIPS4, and LIPS LX in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of PS, LIPS4, and LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-LIPS5	Display the installation status of LIPS LX and LIPS4 in transfer invalidation. Display the installation status of the combined options of LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) and LIPS4.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-LIPS5	Obtain a transfer license key of LIPS LX and LIPS4 in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) and LIPS4 by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-LIPS4	Display the installation status of LIPS4 in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-LIPS4	Obtain a transfer license key of LIPS4 in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use LIPS4 by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-PSPCL	Display the installation status of PS and PCL in transfer invalidation. Display the combined options of PS and PCL.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-PSPCL	Obtain a transfer license key of PS and PCL in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of PS and PCL by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-PCLUF	Display the installation status of PCL and UFR in transfer invalidation. Display the combined options of PCL and UFR.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-PCLUF	Obtain a transfer license key of PCL and UFR in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of PCL and UFR by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	

COPIER>OPTION>LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ST-PSLIP	Display the installation status of PS and LIPS in transfer invalidation. Display the combined options of PS and LIPS.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-PSLIP	Obtain a transfer license key of PS and LIPS in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of PS and LIPS by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-PSPCU	Display the installation status of PS, PCL, and UFR in transfer invalidation. Display the combined options of PS, PCL, and UFR.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-PSPCU	Obtain a transfer license key of PS, PCL, and UFR in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of PS, PCL, and UFR by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-LXUFR	Display the installation status of LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value 0	
TR-LXUFR	Obtain a transfer license key of LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	

16.6.1.5 COPIER List (BODY)

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. BODY

T-16-195

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PO-CNT	Set ON/OFF of the electric potential control function.	1
	Setting range 0: OFF 1: ON Standard value: 1	
MODEL-SZ	Switch the fixed and variable display and ADF document size detection.	1
	Setting range 0: AB (6R5E) 1: INCH (5R4E) 2: A (3R3E) 3: AB/INCH (6R5E) Standard value 0: AB(6R5E) For Japan 1: INCH(5R4E) For North, Central and South America 2: A(3R3E) For Europe 3: AB/INCH(6R5E) For Asia, Oceania and South America	

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FIX-TEMP	Switch the plain paper down sequence table.	1
	Setting range 0: Default 1: Fixing is prioritized 2: Productivity is prioritized Standard value: 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. Usage: Select '0' when giving preference to the image quality (fixing), '2' when giving preference to the speed (productivity).	
PASCAL	Set if using the contrast electric potential and gradation correction data obtained by automatic gradation correction (full correction) control, or not.	1
	Setting range 0: Use the data. 1: Do not use the data. 2: Reserve (same operation as 1) 3: Reserve (same operation as 0) Standard value: 1 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. For printer model, be sure to make the setting value 0 at installation.	
CONFIG	Select several system software stored in the hard disk, change the nation/area, paper size.	1
	Procedure: 1) Select <CONFIG>. 2) Select the item to change. 3) Press the +/- key. (Each press changes the setting.) 4) Display the contents to be needed, press OK key. 5) Turn off and then back on the main power switch. XXYYZZAA XX: country (e.g., JP=Japan) YY (*): language (e.g., ja=Japanese) ZZ: (*) destination (e.g., 00=Canon) AA: paper size series (00=AB; 01=inch; 02=A; 03=inch/AB) *: Cannot change the setting.	
TEMP-TBL	Fixing assembly temperature control Temperature settings become effective after the main power is switched OFF / ON . Fixing assembly temperature control Upon activation of this mode, Temperature of the following increase by 5 deg C: stand-by temperature (both of the 2 types), copying temperature, stand-by last rotation temperature, sheet-to-sheet temperature control for long sheets. Temperature of the following does not increase by 5 deg C: job last rotation temperature, power save mode temperature, error detection temperature. Make adjustments to the setting in the temperature control table. The setting in the fixing assembly temperature control table is modified when certain properties of paper used in the field cause blistering of paper or low temperature offset. Change the setting to "0" when low temperature offset occurs. Change the setting to "1" when blistering of paper occurs.	1
	Setting range 0: OFF (default) 1: - 5 deg C 2: - 10 deg C 3: - 15 deg C 4: - 20 deg C Standard value: 0	
W/SCNR	Set the presence/absence of the reader for the copy model.	1
	Setting range 0: Printer model (without a scanner) 1: Model with a scanner Standard value: 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
RUI-DSP	Set the options for the copy function in the RUI screen.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not display the copy screen in RUI. 1: Display the copy screen in RUI. Standard value: 0	
INTROT-1	Set the image adjustment control implementation interval at last rotation.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 500 Standard value: 60 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
INTROT-2	Process auto-adjustment implemented for every specific number of sheet. Set the interval (sheets) against the process auto-adjustment.	1
	Setting range: 50 to 10000 (small image) Standard value: 2000 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
INTROT-T	Set the interval time of auto-adjustment control (simple control)	1
	Setting range: 50 to 10000 (small image) Standard value: 400 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
AUTO-DH	Set the permission/prohibition to automatically start the automatic gradation control which is executed when the machine is left for a specified period time or the environment changes in the ON/OFF standby condition for automatic gradation correction control. The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	1
	Setting range 0: Prohibited 1: Permitted (default) Standard value: 1	
DFDST-L1	Adjust the dust detection level for DF (between-sheet correction) Increase the setting value to increase the dust detection level. (It becomes easier to detect dust which causes a thin line.)	1
	Setting range: 0 to 255 Standard value: 93	
DFDST-L2	Adjust the dust detection level for DF (detection after job) Increase the setting value to increase the dust detection level. (It becomes easier to detect dust which causes a thin line.)	1
	Setting range: 0 to 255 Standard value: 80	
ENVP-INT	Set the log acquisition interval for temperature/humidity in the machine and fixing temperature. Set the log acquisition interval for COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > ENV-PRT and COPIER > DISPLAY > ENVRNT.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 480 (minute) Standard value: 60 Reference Log acquisition not implemented at 0 minute.	
T1-TEMP	Switch the down sequence table for thick paper 1.	1
	Setting range 0: Default 1: Fixing is prioritized. 2: Productivity is prioritized. Standard value: 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
T2-TEMP	Switch the down sequence table for thick paper 2.	1
	Setting range 0: Default 1: Fixing is prioritized. 2: Productivity is prioritized. Standard value: 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
CD-IDL-T	Adjust the time to execute idling at first power-on for the IDL-T color developer (YMC). Set the time to execute idling at first power-on for the color developer (YMC), which is sometimes executed by initial multiple rotations under high-humidity environment. When you decrease the setting value, downtime of initial multiple rotations can be reduced, but density change from the first power-on is somewhat worsened. When you increase the setting value, density change from the first power-on is improved, but downtime of initial multiple rotations increases.	1
	Setting range: -3 to +6 (1 level: 5 second) Standard value: 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
CNTR-DSP	Select the screen display according to the external controller.	1
	Setting range 0: Display the external controller icon in the control panel of the copier main unit. (setting when the color image server is connected) 1: Do not display the control panel of the copier main unit. (setting when the external controller with an control panel is connected) Standard value: 0	
BASE-SW	Make a setting to switch the setting from the MEAP-full model to the Base model. Make a setting to switch the device which operated as a full model back to the base model.	1
	Use it when trouble attributable to MEAP application occurs. By setting to '0', the operation of MEAP application can be controlled. settings 0: off (base model); 1: on (full model) [Default] MEMO: The change only from '1' to '0' is possible.	

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SC-L-CNT	<p>Use it to set the threshold for identifying large size paper for the scan counter.</p> <p>Settings 0: Count the paper larger than B4 as large size. (A paper that is B4 or smaller is considered as small size.) [Default] 1: Count the paper larger than LTR as large size. (A paper that is LTR or smaller is considered as small size.)</p> <p>The scan counter threshold at copy is determined as follow depending on the combination with the setting value of B4-L-CNT (COPIER > OPTION > USER > B4-L-CNT):</p> <p><In case SC-L-CNT, B4-L-CNT=(0, 0)> Count the paper larger than B4 as large size. (A paper that is B4 or smaller is considered as small size.) <In case SC-L-CNT, B4-L-CNT=(0, 1)> Count the paper that is B4 or larger as large size. (A paper smaller than B4 is considered as small size.) <In case SC-L-CNT, B4-L-CNT=(1, 0) or (1, 1)> Count the paper larger than LTR as large size. (A paper that is LTR or smaller is considered as small size.)</p>	1
REPORT-Z	<p>Make a setting to switch the attribute flag attached when printing a report.</p> <p>Setting range 0: For PDL character mode 1: For PDL photo mode 2: For SCAN character mode 3: For SCAN photo mode Standard value: 0</p>	1
IFXEML-Z	<p>Make a setting to switch the attribute flag attached to the color iFAX and reception mail printing.</p> <p>Setting range 0: For PDL character mode 1: For PDL photo mode 2: For SCAN character mode 3: For SCAN photo mode Standard value: 0</p>	1
BMLNKS-Z	<p>Make a setting to switch the attribute flag attached to the reception BMLinkS printing.</p> <p>Setting range 0: For SCAN photo mode 1: For PDL photo mode 2: For SCAN character mode 3: For PDL character mode Standard value: 0</p> <p>Reference 0: For SCAN photo mode A black character is printed in a black color which consists of four colors. An image is printed by error diffusion. The color tone is brighter than 2. 1: For PDL photo mode A black character is printed in a black color which consists of four colors. An image is printed by screen processing. 2: For SCAN character mode A black character is printed in a single black color. The color tone in the photo area is different from the tone printed by 0. (It may be difficult for an amateur to recognize the difference.) An image is printed by error diffusion. 3: For PDL character mode A black character is printed in a single black color. An image is printed by screen processing.</p>	1
IMGC-ADJ	<p>Switch the "hide" or "not hide" of the image adjustment items. Switch the "hide" or "not hide" of the image adjustment items executed by a system administrator. When "not hide" is selected, the following four items are displayed in the system administrator setting.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Curl correction volume - Adjustment of the air volume for the paper separation fan - Adjustment of the image position - Adjustment of the secondary transfer voltage <p>Setting range 0: Hide 1: Do not hide Standard value: 0: Hide</p>	1
ARCDT-SW	<p>ON/OFF of ARCDAT Select whether or not to perform ARCDAT control. ON [0]: Reflect the ARCDAT result to LUT. OFF [1]: Do not reflect the ARCDAT result to LUT.</p> <p>Setting range: 0 to 1 0: Control ON 1: Control OFF Standard value: 0: Control ON</p>	1
TR-CON	<p>Switch-over of toner reduction value</p> <p>Setting range: 0 to 2 0: Normal object (for normal object), text line (for text line) 1: Normal object (for normal object), text line (for normal object) 2: Normal object (for text line), text line (for text line) Standard value: 0</p>	1

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
F-BLT-RT	Measure at E007 (fixing belt displacement error) occurrence Specify the host machine operation at E007 occurrence.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 1 0: Automatic restore does not take effect at power OFF/ON. 1: Automatic restore takes effect at power OFF/ON. Standard value: 0	
	This item applies to the upgraded device (DCON Ver11.03 or later and Cont Ver24.04 or later).	
W-CLN-P	Set the interval (number of copies) to perform automatic cleaning of the primary charging wire in the normal environment. The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	2
	Setting range: 50 to 10000 (copies) Standard value: 2000	
W-CLN-T	Set the interval (number of copies) to perform automatic cleaning of the charging wire of the pre-transfer charging assembly.	2
	Setting range: 50 to 10000 (copies)	
PRI-FAN	Select the primary fan drive mode. Prevent the half tone unevenness due to the soiled primary charging assembly grid.	2
	Setting range 0: Half speed in the high temperature/humidity environment 1: Full speed mainly in the low temperature / low humidity environment. Standard value: 0	
	The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
SCANSLCT	Set ON/OFF of the function to calculate the scan area based on the paper size.	2
	Setting range 0: OFF (Determine the scan area by document detection.) 1: ON (Determine the scan area by paper size.) Standard value: 0	
	When setting as '1', if the media size is larger than the original size, productivity decreases due to a larger scanning area.	
DH-SW	Perform Dhalf correction.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not perform Dhalf control. 1: Perform Dhalf control. Standard value: 1	
	The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
SENS-CNF	Set the display of the document detection sensor.	2
	Setting range 0: AB system 1: Inch system Standard value: 0	
	Due to the reader controller PCB RAM clear, the value is set as '0'. Re-define the value as '1' for inch-configuration destination machines (North America etc.)	
DM-SW	Switching-over of the enabling / disabling of the image density correction control or image gradation correction control.	2
	Not used in this machine Setting range 0: No implemented 1: Always implemented 2: Always implemented 3: Always implemented 4: Always implemented	
	Change the interval (Default: 200 copies) using COPIER/OPTION/BODY/(INTROT-1/INTROT-2/INTROT-T). Standard value: 3 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF / ON.	
RAW-DATA	Make a setting to print out the received data as it is. When there is a problem in the received image, this mode is used to determine whether the problem is caused by the data contents or image processing.	2
	Setting range 0: Normal operation 1: Print out the received data as it is. Standard value: 0	
FDW-DLV	Select the 'face up' or 'face down' delivery when specifying multiple copies. When multiple copies are specified, 'face up' delivery is usually performed. However, this mode is provided to perform 'face down' delivery to guarantee stacking condition. (However, this mode is invalid when a finisher is installed.)	2
	Setting range 0: 'Face up' for all setting for one sheet of document 1: 'Face up' when specifying one copy, and 'face down' when specifying multiple copies for one sheet of document Standard value: 0	
	The setting mode becomes valid after the power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
RMT-LANG	Switch the remote UI language used on Web.	2
	Setting method Select the language code using the +/- key.	
IFAX-LIM	Restrict the number of lines output when receiving large volume of data by iFAX	2
	Setting range 0: No restriction 0 to 999	
	Standard value: 500	

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SMTPXPXN	Change the port number for SMTP transmission. Setting range: 0 to 65535 (incremented by 1) Standard value: 25	2
SMTPRXPXN	Change the port number of SMTP reception. Setting range: 0 to 65535 (incremented by 1) Standard value: 25	2
POP3PN	Change the port number of POP reception. Setting range: 0 to 65535 (incremented by 1) Standard value: 110	2
ORG-LGL	Set the special paper size which cannot be recognized by DF. Setting range 0: LEGAL-R 1: Bolivia OFFICIO-R 2: Argentina OFFICIO-R 3: Argentina LEGAL-R 4: Mexico OFFICIO-R Standard value: 0	2
ORG-LTR	Set the special paper size which cannot be recognized by DF. Setting range 0: LETTER [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear] 1: EXECUTIVE 2: Korean government office paper 3: Argentina LETTER 4: Government LETTER Standard value: 0	2
UI-COPY	Make a setting to switch the display in the copy screen in the control panel. Setting range 0: Hide the copy screen. 1: Do not hide the copy screen. Standard value: 1	2
UI-BOX	Restrict the box screen display in the control panel. Setting range 0: BOX function unavailable (Unavailable for PDLtoBox) 1: BOX function available 2: BOX function available with restriction (Unavailable for LUI and RUI, but available for PDLtoBOX) Standard value: 1	2
UI-SEND	Select 'hide' or 'not hide' of the transmission screen in the control panel. Setting range 0: Hide 1: Do not hide Standard value: 1	2
UI-FAX	Select 'hide' or 'not hide' of the FAX screen in the control panel. Setting range 0: Hide 1: Do not hide. Standard value: 1	2
TMC-SLCT	Switch the coefficient used for error diffusion. Use this mode to increase dot stability and granularity so that pitch unevenness or coarse image that occurred on an image can be made invisible. Setting range 0: Normal 1: Low granularity / low stability 2: High granularity / high stability Standard value: 0	2
DEVL-VTH	Set the threshold value of image density to make a decision to perform the discharging sequence for continuous printing of a low density image, which is performed as measures for a spot or course image. Use of this mode must be avoided as much as possible when the machine has been operating normally. Setting range: 1 to 5 (Unit: %) Standard value: 2 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	2
FTPTXPXN	Specify a port number (FTP) of the SEND destination. Setting range: 0 to 65535 (16 bit) Standard value: 21	2
PRN-FLG	Select the image area flag. (for PDL image) When a PDL image was not compressed to a specified compression ratio on the controller side, image processing is performed based on the image area flag specified by this mode. Setting range 0: High line number screen, gray offset LUT 1: Error diffusion, gray offset LUT 2: High line number screen, normal LUT Standard value: 0	2

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SCN-FLG	Select the image area flag. (for copy image) When a scan image was not compressed to a specified compression ratio on the controller side, image processing is performed based on the image area flag specified by this mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Character 1: Dot photo image 2: Film photo Standard value: 0	
T-LW-LVL	Switch the timing to display the warning for toner level. Switch the threshold (%) of toner level to display the message "Toner almost empty" in the control panel. However, when you delay the timing to display the warning message, toner may suddenly become empty before the warning is displayed.	2
	Setting range: 5 to 100 (Unit: %) Standard value: 10 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
NWERR-SW	Switch the network-related error message display. This mode is used to inhibit the display of a network-related error message when network connection is not actually performed in the model which includes a network board as standard equipment. This mode is provided for a machine which is not connected to network, such as Lawson, while a NADA machine is connected to network as a default setting.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the message. 1: Display the message. Standard value: 1	
FX-SPD	Make a fine adjustment of the fixing roller speed. Make a fine adjustment of the fixing speed because the trail edge of paper contacts the ITB and it sometimes causes a fading image when the loop between the secondary transfer roller and the fixing roller is too large. When a fine adjustment is made to the fixing speed, the same adjustment is made to the speed of delivery vertical path. When you increase the setting value, the speed becomes faster.	2
	Setting range: -3 to 3 Standard value: 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
STS-PORT	Use it to turn on/off the T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) async type status communication port.	2
	Turns on/off the inquiry/response (sync) type status communication port for TUF over TCP/IP. settings 0: off (default); 1: on For service NAVI, set the value as '1' when connecting the PC and main body by crossing cable. MEMO: T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) Communication protocol between embedded application presentation (UI) and applications within the device including COPY/SEND/BOX etc., (Canon original protocol)	
CMD-PORT	Use it to turn off/on the T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) sync type command communication port.	2
	Turns on/off the inquiry/response (sync) type command communication port for TUIF over TCP/IP. settings 0: off (default); 1: on For service NAVI, set the value as '1' when connecting the PC and main body by crossing cable. MEMO: T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) Communication protocol between embedded application presentation (UI) and applications within the device including COPY/SEND/BOX etc., (Canon original protocol)	
MODELSZ2	Provide global measures for plate document size detection. When 1 is set for this mode, INCH/AB (global) mode is provided regardless of the MODEL-SZ setting, which is a flag to switch INCH or AB.	2
	Settings 0: normal (Detection size for each destination) (default) ; 1: Inch/AB mix detection - This is for individual user, not used normally. - For different-sized originals detection (Inch/AB-configuration), original size sensor is required.	
SZDT-SW	Switch the mode from the CCD size detection to the photo size detection for plate document size detection.	2
	settings 0: Size detection by CCD (Default) ; 1: Size detection by photo sensor - This is for individual user (glare protection), not used normally. - When the value is set as '1', original size detection at open/close of the pressure plate is not performed. For detection of the original size (without lightning the scanning lamp), original size sensor (photo sensor) is required.	
UISW-DSP	Set 'hide' or 'not hide' of the SW to switch the display to the user screen. Set 'hide' or 'not hide' of the SW to determine which of the normal screen or the simple screen (Lawson type) is used. The following types of screen are available. - Screen that has the function similar to a standard machine - Screen that has limited function like the screen used at Lawson A user (a store manager) specifies 'hide' or 'not hide' of the SW to switch these screens.	2
	Setting range 0: Hide 1: Do not hide Standard value: 0	

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
NS-CMD5	Restrict the use of CRAM-MD5 authentication in SMTP authentication. (NoSasl-Challenge response authentication mechanism; MD5 message digest algorithm) Make this setting when restricting the use of CRAM-MD5 authentication in SMTP authentication.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value: 0	
NS-GSAPI	Restrict the use of GSSAPI authentication in SMTP authentication. (NoSasl-Generic Security Service Application Program Interface) Make this setting when restricting the use of GSSAPI authentication in SMTP authentication.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value: 0	
NS-NTLM	NTLM authentication in SMTP authentication (NoSasl-windows NTLAN Manager) Make this setting when restricting the use of NTLM authentication in SMTP authentication.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value: 0	
NS-PLNWS	Restrict the use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication (plain text authentication) in SMTP authentication in the environment where encryption of the NS-PLNWS communication packet is performed. Make this setting to restrict the use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication (plain text authentication) in SMTP authentication in the environment where encryption of the NS-PLNWS communication packet is performed.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value: 0	
NS-PLN	Restrict the use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication (plain text authentication) in SMTP authentication. Make this setting to restrict the use of PLAIN, LOGIN authentication (plain text authentication) in SMTP authentication in the environment where encryption of communication packet is not performed.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value: 0	
NS-LGN	Restrict the use of LOGIN authentication in SMTP authentication. Make this setting to restrict the use of LOGIN authentication in SMTP authentication.	2
	Setting range 0: Dependent on SMTP 1: Do not use the authentication. Standard value: 0	
MEAP-PN	Set a port number for the HTTP server used by MEAP application.	2
	Setting range: 0 to 65535 Standard value: 8000 For the use as MEAP port, do not use No. 1 to 1023 except No. 80 (HTTP). It is because the standard server uses this range.	
TNR-DWN	Make a setting to reduce toner volume. Reduce the toner volume compared to the normal volume. Reduce the problem such as toner scattering or wrapping around the fixing roller, etc., by decreasing toner volume.	2
	Setting range 0: Standard toner volume (default) 1: Low toner volume for both single sided and double sided mode 2: Standard toner volume for single sided mode, Low toner volume for both the 1st and 2nd side of double sided mode (reserve) Standard value: 0 2 is not available because assumed operation is not sometimes performed in PDL or copy operation. (2 is available as a service mode, but, when 2 is selected, the machine operates in the same manner as 0.)	
SPECK-SW	Use it to switch between the timing of white plate dust detection.	2
	This is used at the occurrence of image line due to floating dust. Settings 0: normal timing (default) ; 1: for each job When setting the value as '1', first copy time (FCOT) gets longer.	
SVMD-ENT	Switch the method of entering the service mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Press the [User Mode] key. --> Press [2] and [8] at the same time. --> Press the [User Mode] key. 1: Press the [User Mode] key. --> Press [4] and [9] at the same time. --> Press the [User Mode] key. Standard value: 0	

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
W-CLN-PH	Set the interval of automatic cleaning of the primary charging wire and pre-transfer charging wire. This mode is used to change the interval of automatic cleaning of the primary charging wire and pre-transfer charging wire when a poor image (vertical line, etc.) occurs in the high temperature/humidity environment. Use "W-CLN-P" mode to set the interval of automatic cleaning of the primary charging wire in normal environment.	2
	Setting range: 100 to 10000 (can be set in the unit of 1) Standard value: 1000	
SSH-SW	Set whether or not to activate the SSH server. Make this setting to specify whether or not to activate the SSH server when activating the main unit.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not activate the SSH server when activating the main unit. 1: Activate the SSH server when activating the main unit. Standard value: 0 SSH server does not start by changing the setting value to 1(ON) while activating the main unit. The setting value becomes available after turning the power switch OFF/ON. Reference SSH is the abbreviation of 'Secure Shell'. The communication between digital accessory (DA) and iR device is encrypted to avoid being read from the outside.	
RMT-LGIN	Set whether or not to permit remote login to the SSH server. Make this setting to specify whether or not to permit remote login from the remote host (SSH client: digital accessory) to the SSH server debug console.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not permit remote login to the SSH server. 1: Permit remote login to the SSH server. Standard value: 0 This item becomes available only when the setting value of <SSH-SW> is '1(ON)'.	
RE-PKEY	Set whether or not to recreate the SSH server pair keys. Make this setting to specify whether or not to recreate the SSH server pair keys when activating the main unit.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not recreate the SSH server pair keys when activating the main unit. 1: Recreate the SSH server pair keys when activating the main unit. Standard value: 0 This item becomes available only when the setting value of <SSH-SW> is '1(ON)'. Reference In the case that the main item is set to '1(recreate)', SSH server host recreates the pair keys (confidential/disclosure key) during task activation (power OFF/ON), and implements the output to key file and storage into HDD. Encryption algorithm (DSA) and the length of key (512bit) are fixed. It may take about three to four minutes more than usual to start the copier body due to this procedure.	
U-NAME	Set a user name that can be connected to the SSH server. Specify a user name required to connect to the SSH server. Only one user is allowed to login.	2
	Setting range 8 characters maximum (one-byte alphanumeric character) Standard value: gN3Fp2A This item is for future expansion. Do not change it. This item becomes available only when the setting value of <SSH-SW> is '1(ON)'.	
U-PASWD	Set a password of a user who can be connected to the SSH server. Specify a password of a login user required to connect to the SSH server.	2
	Setting range 8 characters maximum (one-byte alphanumeric character) Standard value: Vs\$DwJ This item is for future expansion. Do not change it. This item becomes available only when the setting value of <SSH-SW> is '1(ON)'. Passwords are masked on the screen.	
CDEV-IDL	Set ON/OFF of the first power-on development idling for the color developer (YMC). Adjust the ATR patch interval of the 1st limit. When you increase the limit, downtime interval increases, but the density changes. When you decrease the limit, downtime interval decreases, but the density becomes stabilized. Trigger to start the patch detection: (1) count by the number of copies which is reset when the patch detection is performed (2) count by the reset video count	2
	Timing 1. When the 1st limit (20 copies) has been exceeded, perform the patch detection by the last rotation of that job. 2. At the point when the 2nd limit has been exceeded, discontinue the job and forcibly perform the patch detection. 3. At the point when the reset VC has exceeded 300% (in A4 equivalent), forcibly perform the patch detection. 1 copy = 3 images. Only YMC is counted. Image count: 1 count for small, 2 counts for large Setting range 0: OFF 1: ON Standard value: 1 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FXWRNLVL	Change the warning level of the fixing upper roller. Change the warning level of the fixing counter value. The life of the fixing roller differs depending on the environment and usage. Set this value to match the optimum life when replacing the fixing unit.	2
	Setting range 0: 180,000 1: 150,000 2: 120,000 Standard value: 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
FXERRLVL	Change an error level of the fixing roller. Specify an error level of the fixing counter value. Specify a counter value from when a warning is displayed to when an error is displayed.	2
	This mode is not used for this machine.	
DA-PORT	Set a port for communication with DA.	2
	Setting range 1: Open 0: Close Standard value: 0 When 1 is set to COPIER > OPTION > BODY > DA-CNCT, the following items are set to ON. COPIER > OPTION > BODY > STS-PORT > CMD-PORT > SSH-SW > DA-PORT	
DA-CNCT	Use it to set WPGW(Workplace Gateway) connection.	2
	settings 0: off (default); 1: on MEMO: This is used only inside Japan, not outside Japan.	
ITR-ATVC	Set ON/OFF of the primary transfer ATVC retries for initial multiple rotations. Turn ON the primary transfer ATVC retries for initial multiple rotations in all environments.	2
	This mode is not used for this machine.	
CHNG-STC	Use it to set the T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) status connection port number.	2
	Changes the port number for status connection in a TUIF over TCP/IP environment. This is used for changing the port No. in service NAVI. settings: 1 to 65535 (default: 20010) MEMO: T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) Communication protocol between embedded application presentation (UI) and applications within the device including COPY/SEND/BOX etc., (Canon original protocol)	
CHNG-CMD	Use it to set the T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) command connection port number.	2
	Use it to set the port number for the command connection in an TUIF over TCP/IP environment. This is used for changing the port No. in service NAVI. settings: 1 to 65535 (default: 20000) MEMO: T.O.T (TUIF over TCP/IP) Communication protocol between embedded application presentation (UI) and applications within the device including COPY/SEND/BOX etc., (Canon original protocol)	
MEAP-DSP	Use it to prohibit a switch-over from the MEAP screen to the standard screen (COPY/SEND/BOX screen etc.,).	2
	settings 0: off (shift to standard screen; default); 1: on (do not shift to standard screen) MEMO: Although setting the value as '1' in COPIER > OPTION > BODY > MEAP-DSP, at the occurrence of error/jam/alarm, the display transits to the standard screen for showing a warning.	
ANIM-SW	Set whether or not to use the full-screen display for jam/alarm in MEAP application operation.	2
	Although setting the value as '1' in COPIER > OPTION > BODY > MEAP-DSP, at the occurrence of error/jam/alarm, the display transits to the standard screen for showing a warning. When setting this value as '1', at the occurrence of error/jam/alarm, - Display transition to the standard screen is prohibited. - Warning is displayed on the MEAP screen to urge the user to contact servicing. settings 0: off (display warning screen; default); 1: on (do not display warning screen)	
HDD-TMP	Set a temperature for judgment of an abnormal status with low temperature in SAMSUNG HDD.	2
	Setting range: 0 to 30 (deg C) Standard value: 2 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
HDD-TIM	Set the grace time until it is judged as an abnormal status with low temperature in SAMSUNG HDD.	2
	Setting range: 0 to 200 (minute) Standard value: 10 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
HDD-SW	Set whether or not to display the E code for an abnormal status with low temperature in SAMSUNG HDD.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the code. 1: Display the code. Standard value: 0 The setting value becomes valid after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MEAP-SSL	Set an HTTP port for MEAP. Set a port for the HTTP server when using SSL in the HTTP of MEAP.	2
	Setting range: 1 to 65535 Standard value: 8443	
MIX-FLG	Switch the image area flag (for image compositing). Switch the image processing method when an image for image compositing could not be compressed to a specified compression ratio on the main controller side.	2
	Setting range 0: Image processing equivalent to the PDL character mode 1: Image processing equivalent to the PDL photo mode 2: Image processing equivalent to the SCAN character mode 3: Image processing equivalent to the SCAN photo mode Standard value: 0	
KSIZE-SW	Switch the setting for the paper used in China. Switch the setting to support the detection and display of K-size paper for the iR series scanner and controller. The following K-size paper is available. 8k: 270mm x 390mm / 16k: 270mm x 195mm When this mode is set to 1 (ON) for the destination specified in MODEL-SZ= (AB group), the K-size paper mentioned above can be detected in the document detection and recognized in the display of the paper selection screen, etc.	2
	Setting range 0: OFF: Do not support K-size paper. 1: ON: Support K-size paper. Standard value: 0: OFF	
LPD-PORT	Set a LPD port number.	2
	Setting range: 1 to 65535 Standard value: 515 Reference LDP port is the network port for TCP/IP communication at printing via network.	
ORG-A4R	Use it to set a special paper size not recognized when the ADF is in use.	2
	With machines for INCH/AB configuration, image formation is executed correctly by setting the size of the special paper that fails to be recognized at original pickup from the ADF. Settings 0: A4R (default) 1: FOLIO-R When detecting the A4R original in the ADF, it converts to the original size that was set in this item to execute image formation using the original size after conversion.	
ORG-FLSC	Use it to set a specific paper size not recognized when the ADF is in use.	2
	With machines for INCH/AB configuration, image formation is executed correctly by setting the size of the special paper that fails to be recognized at original pickup from the ADF. settings 0: Foolscap-R (default); 1: Officio-R; 2: Folio-R; 3: Australian Foolscap-R; 4: Ecuadorian Officio-R; 5: Argentine Officio-R; 6: Argentine Legal-R; 7: Government Legal-R; 8: Mexican Officio-R When detecting the FOOLSCAP size in the ADF, it converts to the original size that was set in this item to execute image formation using the original size after conversion	
PDF-RDCT	Set whether or not to reduce and send the image for reception transfer (transmission in the PDF format).	2
	Reduce and send the image when converting the image received by FAX or iFAX into the PDF format and performing transmission by e-mail or file. Setting range 0: Convert the image into the PDF format, but do not reduce it for reception transfer. 1: Convert the image into the PDF format, and reduce it for reception transfer. Standard value: 0	
REDU-CNT	Control the switching of the density adjustment method. Control whether or not to perform density adjustment considering toner volume restriction.	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1 Standard value: 1	
REBOOTSW	Set whether or not to perform reboot when the E240 error occurs. In the current specifications, reboot is performed when the E240 error occurs. (Reasons: Continuous rotation deteriorates the durability performance of the engine. It cannot be also denied that it may cause an error to the engine.) However, when reboot is performed automatically, jobs in the PDL disappear, which has been causing complaints in the field. Therefore, this mode is used to set whether or not to automatically perform reboot when the E240 error occurs.	2
	Setting range 0: Perform reboot automatically when the E240 error occurs. 1: Do not perform reboot automatically when the E240 error occurs. Standard value: 0	
VP-ART	Change the line art processing. Change the outline processing for line art in the scalable PDF.	2
	Setting range: 0 to 99 Standard value: 1	

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
VP-TXT	Change the vector processing for characters. Change the vector processing for characters in the scalable PDF.	2
	Setting range: 0 to 99 Standard value: 1	
UI-PRINT	Set whether or not to display the print job screen in the control panel. This is a switch to set whether or not to display the print job screen in the control panel. This is a specification for a user who does not desire to display the screen in the control panel.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the print job screen. 1: Display the print job screen. Standard value: 1	
WUEV-SW	Set whether or not to provide a notice of the sleep mode operation. Set whether or not to provide a notice of the sleep mode operation to the DS application on network when the copier main unit entered the sleep mode or recovered from the sleep mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Provide a notice. 1: Do not provide a notice. Standard value: 0	
WUEV-INT	Set the interval to provide a notice of the sleep mode operation.	2
	Setting range: 0 to 65535 Standard value: 600	
WUEV-POT	Set a port number for the destination to provide a notice of the sleep mode operation.	2
	Setting range: 1 to 65535 Standard value: 11427	
WUEV-RTR	Set a range to provide a notice of the sleep mode operation. Set the number of routers that can be used for a notice of the sleep mode operation.	2
	Setting range: 0 to 254 Standard value: 3	
SJB-UNW	Switch the number of reserved jobs for secure print jobs. Switch the number of reserved jobs for secure print jobs to 50 or 90.	2
	Setting range 0: 50 1: 90 Standard value: 0	
UI-RSCAN	Set whether or not to display the remote scan screen in the control panel. This mode is used to set whether or not to display the remote scan screen in the control panel. This is a specification for a user who does not desire to display the screen in the control panel.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the screen. 1: Display the screen. Standard value: 1	
UI-EPRNT	Set whether or not to display the expansion printing screen in the control panel. This mode is used to set whether or not to display the expansion printing screen (EFI print screen) in the control panel. This is a specification for a user who does not desire to display the screen in the control panel.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the screen. 1: Display the screen. Standard value: 1	
UI-WEB	Set whether or not to display the Web browser screen in the control panel. This mode is used to set whether or not to display the Web browser screen in the control panel. This is a specification for a user who does not desire to display the screen in the control panel.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the screen. 1: Display the screen. Standard value: 1	
WEBV-SW	Set whether or not to prohibit the use of the WEBDAV function. When this mode is set to 1(ON), the WEBDAV function becomes unavailable. (The WEBDAV items are deleted from the following mode. - User mode --> destination table specification setting --> registration of destinations --> file --> "WEBDAV" in the protocol - User mode --> "use the chunk divided transmission for WEBDAV transmission" in the transmission specification setting items	2
	Setting range 0: Use the WEBDAV function. 1: Do not use the WEBDAV function. Standard value: 0 [Reference] Although the WEBDAV function is included in the main unit as a standard function, there are cases when this function is not used in order to reduce the memory usage.	
PASCL-TY	Set the paper type used for the automatic gradation correction (PASCAL). This mode is used when executing PASCAL for the paper which is not recommended for the destination.	2
	Setting range 1: CLC-SK 80g paper (Countries other than USA/EU. Mainly Japan) 2: Hammermill 105g paper (for USA) 3: Neusiedler 100g paper (for EU) Do not change the setting in a normal condition.	

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CARD-RNG	Set the number of cards available. Set the number of cards available when using a card reader.	2
	Setting range: 1 to 1000 Standard value: 1000 [Reference] In the current condition, the starting number of the card is specified by COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD, and the fixed number of cards is specified starting from that number. (ex. fixed at 1000 cards)	
WUEN-LIV	Set the activation interval after a sleep notice was provided from network. Set the interval from when sleep activation was performed to the copier main unit from network without sending a job to when the machine enters the sleep mode next.	2
	Setting range: 10 to 600 Standard value: 15 (Unit: second) *10 seconds to 10 minutes	
COMP-PRT	When performing printing for "printing of a page number / printing of the number of copies / printing of a date / bookbinding / printing of a tint block (hereinafter called 'combined printing') with the copying number of 2 or more, printing is prioritized in memory allocation for image processing for a certain memory model (option) or document size. This causes a lack of memory for image processing of scanning, SEND transmission (excluding FAX), and PDL input operation, and such operation cannot be performed until printing is completed. This mode is used to perform equal memory allocation to all jobs so that operation such as scanning, SEND transmission (excluding FAX), and PDL input can be performed before printing is completed (so that such operation is performed little by little).	2
	Setting range 0: Prioritize printing. 1: Perform equal memory allocation. Standard value: 0	
SHT-DCSW	Skip the DCON termination processing when executing shutdown.	2
	Setting range 0: Execute shutdown after the DCON fan control is terminated. 1: Execute shutdown before the DCON fan control is terminated. Standard value: 0	
ADJ-VPP	Adjust the developing bias Vpp. Function to adjust Vpp for the developing AC bias.	2
	Setting range: -4 to 2 Standard value: 0	
AST-SEL	Change the range of the advanced smoothing. AST-SEL (AST level SElect)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 3 Standard value: 2	
REGM-SEL	Change the range of the thin line density correction. REGM-SEL (REos GaMma SElect)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 4 Standard value: 2	
ADJ-BLNK	Adjust the length of the developing bias blank. Function to adjust the blank length of the developing bank pulse bias	2
	Setting range: 1 to 4 Standard value: 3	
2TR-RVON	Set ON/OFF of the weak bias of the trail edge of paper. Set this mode to ON when scattering occurred to the trail edge of the image on the 2nd side in 1/3 speed.	2
	Setting range 0: OFF 1: ON Standard value: 0	
USB-RCNT	Auto-connection setting at disconnection of USB device (USB RECONNECT)	2
	Setting range: 0 to 1 0: Non auto-connect 1: Auto-connect Standard value: 0	
FAN-TM1	Operation time change of fans for primary charging series Change the operation time of fans for primary charging series at last rotation.	2
	Setting range: 0 to 55 (1 scale: 1 min) Standard value: 55 Supplement: This service mode applies to the following three fans. - Primary exhaust fan (FM2) - Left exhaust fan (FM16) - Primary exhaust assist fan (FM18) Make sure to set the setting value to 15 min or more.	
	This item applies to the upgraded device (DCON Ver11.03 or later, Cont Ver24.04 or later)	
DMX-OF-Y/M/C/K	Change of the Dmax setting (Y/M/C/K)	2
	Setting range: -3 to +3 Amount of the change for 1 increment: 0.07% When the density is low, increase the value, and then execute automatic gradation correction.	
ACR-LV-K	Setting of the timing of ACR (Auto Carrier Refresh) in single black mode	2
	Setting range: -4 to +2 Standard value: 0	

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ACR-LV-L	Setting of the timing of ACR (Auto Carrier Refresh) in single clear mode	2
	Setting range: -4 to +2 Standard value: 0	
CL4CMDL	Setting for switching of "clear model / 4-color model" The condition where L toner is absent is not considered as an error, and operation is performed as a 4-color toner model.	1
	Setting range: 0, 1 0: Clear toner is present (5C model) 1: Clear toner is absent (4C model, degenerate mode)	
CLCONFIG	Switching of 5-color/4-color configuration Change the 5-color/4-color configuration of the engine. 0: 5-color mode, 1: 4-color mode	1
	* Data is retained in both MN-CON and DCON. Setting range: 0-1 Factory setting value: 0	
L-MX-SET	Adjustment of the L toner deposit (Supporting 100% deposit) When this item is set to ON, 100% deposit is specified.	1
	Setting range: OFF/ON Factory setting value: OFF	
MAG-V-1	Correction of the main scanning magnification for 2nd side printing (64 to 105g) Enable correction of the main scanning magnification for 2nd side printing of large paper (1-sheet paper).	2
	Setting range: -50 to 50 Factory setting value: 0 Amount of the change for 1 increment: 0.01%	
MAG-H-1	Correction of the sub scanning magnification for 2nd side printing (64 to 105g) Enable correction of the sub scanning magnification for 2nd side printing of large paper (1-sheet paper).	2
	Setting range: -50 to 50 Factory setting value: 0 Amount of the change for 1 increment: 0.01%	
MAG-M-1	Specifying a material for correction of magnification for 2nd side printing (64 to 105g) Specify a material for correction of magnification for 2nd side printing of large paper (1-sheet paper)	2
	0: No setting 1: High quality paper 2: Single-sided coated paper 3: Double-sided coated paper 4: Recycled paper 5: Emboss paper 6: Film 7: Label 8: Postcard 9: Vellum 10: Cotton Setting range: 0 to 10 Factory setting value: 0	
MAG-V-2	Correction of the main scanning magnification for 2nd side printing (106 to 150g) Enable correction of the main scanning magnification for 2nd side printing of large paper (1-sheet paper).	2
	Setting range: -50 to 50 (Factory setting value: 0) The value is incremented by 0.01%	
MAG-H-2	Correction of the sub scanning magnification for 2nd side printing (106 to 150g) Enable correction of the sub scanning magnification for 2nd side printing of large paper (1-sheet paper).	2
	The value is incremented by 0.01%. Setting range: -50 to 50 (Factory setting value: 0) The value is incremented by 0.01%.	
MAG-M-2	Specifying a material for correction of magnification for 2nd side printing (106 to 150g) Specify a material for correction of magnification for 2nd side printing of large paper (1-sheet paper)	2
	0: No setting 1: High quality paper 2: Single-sided coated paper 3: Double-sided coated paper 4: Recycled paper 5: Emboss paper 6: Film 7: Label 8: Postcard 9: Vellum 10: Cotton Setting range: 0 to 10 Factory setting value: 0	

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MAG-V-3	Correction of the main scanning magnification for 2nd side printing (151 to 209g) Enable correction of the main scanning magnification for 2nd side printing of large paper (1-sheet paper).	2
	Setting range: -50 to 50 Factory setting value: 0 The value is incremented by 0.01%.	
MAG-H-3	Correction of the sub scanning magnification for 2nd side printing (151 to 209g) Enable correction of the sub scanning magnification for 2nd side printing of large paper (1-sheet paper).	2
	Setting range: -50 to 50 Factory setting value: 0 The value is incremented by 0.01%.	
MAG-M-3	Specifying a material for correction of magnification for 2nd side printing (151 to 209g) Specify a material for correction of magnification for 2nd side printing of large paper (1-sheet paper) 0: No setting 1: High quality paper 2: Single-sided coated paper 3: Double-sided coated paper 4: Recycled paper 5: Emboss paper 6: Film 7: Label 8: Postcard 9: Vellum 10: Cotton	2
	Setting range: 0 to 10 Factory setting value: 0	
MAG-V-4	Correction of the main scanning magnification for 2nd side printing (210 to 256g) Enable correction of the main scanning magnification for 2nd side printing of large paper (1-sheet paper).	2
	Setting range: -50 to 50 Factory setting value: 0 The value is incremented by 0.01%.	
MAG-H-4	Correction of the sub scanning magnification for 2nd side printing (210 to 256g) Enable correction of the sub scanning magnification for 2nd side printing of large paper (1-sheet paper).	2
	Setting range: -50 to 50 Factory setting value: 0 The value is incremented by 0.01%.	
MAG-M-4	Specifying a material for correction of magnification for 2nd side printing (210 to 256g) Specify a material for correction of magnification for 2nd side printing of large paper (1-sheet paper) 0: No setting 1: High quality paper 2: Single-sided coated paper 3: Double-sided coated paper 4: Recycled paper 5: Emboss paper 6: Film 7: Label 8: Postcard 9: Vellum 10: Cotton	2
	Setting range: 0 to 10 Factory setting value: 0	
DEV-VT-L	Set the condition for Clear Toner Consumption Enforcement Sequence movement. Then set the video count value and threshold value. As a case example, refer to the 2 following items: - In the condition of Clear Mono Color Mode, Low Beauty Image, High CV, High Temperature: if poor Clear Developer Coat, Clear Developer flood appears, set the value higher 3-5. - If the users indicate the amount of consumable toner, after set the value lower to 1, change the set value for Related Service Mode, (COPIER > OPTION > BODY > ACR-LV-L) from 0 to 4. In this case, the productivity will decline.	2
	Setting range: 1 to 5 Factory setting value: 2	
TOP-H-1	Write start position adjustment on 2nd side in main scanning direction (64 to 105g) To activate the write start position adjustment on 2nd side of large paper (single sheet image) in main scanning direction	2
	Setting range: -10 to +10 Factory setting value: 0 (0.1mm unit)	
TOP-V-1	Write start position adjustment on 2nd side in sub scanning direction (64 to 105g) To activate the write start position adjustment on 2nd side of large paper (single sheet image) in sub scanning direction	2
	Setting range: -10 to +10 Factory setting value: 0 (0.1mm unit)	
TOP-V-2	Write start position adjustment on 2nd side in sub scanning direction (106 to 150g) To activate the write start position adjustment on 2nd side of large paper (single sheet image) in sub scanning direction	2
	Setting range: -10 to +10 Factory setting value: 0 (0.1mm unit)	

COPIER > OPTION > BODY		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TOP-H-2	Write start position adjustment on 2nd side in main scanning direction (106 to 150g) To activate the write start position adjustment on 2nd side of large paper (single sheet image) in main scanning direction	2
	Setting range: -10 to +10 Factory setting value: 0 (0.1mm unit)	
TOP-V-3	Write start position adjustment on 2nd side in sub scanning direction (151 to 209g) To activate the write start position adjustment on 2nd side of large paper (single sheet image) in sub scanning direction	2
	Setting range: -10 to +10 Factory setting value: 0 (0.1mm unit)	
TOP-V-4	Write start position adjustment on 2nd side variable magnification in sub scanning direction (210 to 256g) To activate the write start position adjustment on 2nd side of large paper (single sheet image) in sub scanning direction	2
	Setting range: -10 to +10 Factory setting value: 0 (0.1mm unit)	
TOP-H-4	Write start position adjustment on 2nd side in main scanning direction (210 to 256g) To activate the write start position adjustment on 2nd side of large paper (single sheet image) in main scanning direction	2
	Setting range: -10 to +10 Factory setting value: 0 (0.1mm unit)	
TOP-H-3	Write start position adjustment on 2nd side in main scanning direction (151 to 209g) To activate the write start position adjustment on 2nd side of large paper (single sheet image) in main scanning direction	2
	Setting range: -10 to +10 Factory setting value: 0 (0.1mm unit)	

16.6.1.6 COPIER List (subheadings under USER)

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

2. USER

T-16-196

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
COPY-LIM	Change the upper limit value of the number of copies.	1
	Setting range: 1 to 9999 copies Standard value: 9999	
SLEEP	Set ON/OFF of the sleep function.	1
	Setting range 0: OFF 1: ON Standard value: 1 The sleep function is set by the timer setting in the user mode.	
WEB-DISP	Set whether or not to display the message "web is almost empty" in the user screen.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not display the message. 1: Display the message. Standard value 1: Display the message. [Remarks] A) Message on the UI Display a warning message. (default) Whether or not to display the warning message can be set by this mode. B) Display in the service mode The message is always displayed regardless of the value specified for this mode.	
COUNTER 1	Use it to set soft counter 1 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	101: Total 1 Fixed to 1, which is a factory setting value / a value after RAM clear is executed. This value cannot be changed.	
COUNTER 2	Use it to set soft counter 2 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 999 Standard value: 108	
COUNTER 3	Use it to set soft counter 3 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 999 Standard value: 232	
COUNTER 4	Use it to set soft counter 4 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 999 Standard value: 324	
COUNTER 5	Use it to set soft counter 5 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 999 Standard value: 0	
COUNTER 6	Use it to set soft counter 6 for the counter status verification screen.	1
	Setting range: 0 to 999 Standard value: 0	

Soft counter specifications

000 to 099: Remote copy
 100 to 199: Total
 200 to 299: Copy
 300 to 399: Print
 400 to 499: Copy and print
 500 to 599: Scan
 600 to 699: Box
 700 to 799: Reception print
 800 to 899: Report print
 900 to 999: Transmission

- Explanation of symbols shown in the table -

- yes: Valid counter for this machine
 - 4C: Full color
 - Mono: Mono color (Y, M, C / R, G, B / retro monochrome)
 - Bk: Single black color
 - L: Large size (larger than B4 size)
 - S: Small size (smaller than B4 size)
 - Numbers 1, 2 indicated under "Counter Details": Number of counts for large size paper
- It can be changed by the service mode (COPIER > OPTION > USER > B4_L_CNT) so that the paper larger than B4 size can be counted as large size paper.
- Copy: Local copy + remote copy
 - Copy A: Local copy + remote copy + box print
 - Print: PDL print + report print + box print
 - Print A: PDL print + report print
 - Scan: Black and white scan + color scan

T-16-197

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	002	Remote copy (full color 1)
yes	003	Remote copy (full color 2)
yes	004	Remote copy (mono color 1)
yes	005	Remote copy (mono color 2)
yes	006	Remote copy (black and white 1)
yes	007	Remote copy (black and white 2)
yes	008	Remote copy (full color / large)
yes	009	Remote copy (full color / small)
yes	010	Remote copy (mono color / large)
yes	011	Remote copy (mono color / small)
yes	012	Remote copy (black and white / large)
yes	013	Remote copy (black and white / small)
yes	014	Remote copy (full color + mono color / large)
yes	015	Remote copy (full color + mono color / small)
yes	016	Remote copy (full color + mono color 2)
yes	017	Remote copy (full color + mono color 1)
yes	018	Remote copy (full color / large / double sided)
yes	019	Remote copy (full color / small / double sided)
yes	020	Remote copy (mono color / large / double sided)
yes	021	Remote copy (mono color / small / double sided)
yes	022	Remote copy (black and white / large / double sided)
yes	023	Remote copy (black and white / small / double sided)
yes	071	Toner bottle black
yes	072	Toner bottle yellow
yes	073	Toner bottle magenta
yes	074	Toner bottle cyan
yes	075	Toner bottle clear
yes	091	1/10 Toner bottle black
yes	092	1/10 Toner bottle yellow
yes	093	1/10 Toner bottle magenta
yes	094	1/10 Toner bottle cyan
yes	095	1/10 Toner bottle clear

T-16-198

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	101	Total 1
yes	102	Total 2
yes	103	Total (large)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	104	Total (small)
yes	105	Total (full color 1)
yes	106	Total (full color 2)
yes	108	Total (black and white 1)
yes	109	Total (black and white 2)
yes	110	Total (mono color /large)
yes	111	Total (mono color /small)
yes	112	Total (black and white /large)
yes	113	Total (black and white /small)
yes	114	Total 1(double sided)
yes	115	Total 2(double sided)
yes	116	large (double sided)
yes	117	small (double sided)
yes	118	Total (mono color 1)
yes	119	Total (mono color 2)
yes	120	Total (full color /large)
yes	121	Total (full color /small)
yes	122	Total (full color +mono color /large)
yes	123	Total (full color +mono color /small)
yes	124	Total (full color +mono color 2)
yes	125	Total (full color +mono color 1)
yes	126	Total A1
yes	127	Total A2
yes	128	Total A (large)
yes	129	Total A (small)
yes	130	Total A (full color 1)
yes	131	Total A (full color 2)
yes	132	Total A (black and white 1)
yes	133	Total A (black and white 2)
yes	134	Total A (mono color /large)
yes	135	Total A (mono color /small)
yes	136	Total A (black and white /large)
yes	137	Total A (black and white /small)
yes	138	Total A 1(double sided)
yes	139	Total A 2(double sided)
yes	140	large A (double sided)
yes	141	small A (double sided)
yes	142	Total A (mono color 1)
yes	143	Total A (mono color 2)
yes	144	Total A (full color /large)
yes	145	Total A (full color /small)
yes	146	Total A (full color +mono color /large)
yes	147	Total A (full color +mono color /small)
yes	148	Total A (full color +mono color 2)
yes	149	Total A (full color +mono color 1)
yes	150	Total B1
yes	151	Total B2
yes	152	Total B (large)
yes	153	Total B (small)
yes	154	Total B (full color 1)
yes	155	Total B (full color 2)
yes	156	Total B (black and white 1)
yes	157	Total B (black and white 2)
yes	158	Total B (mono color /large)
yes	159	Total B (mono color /small)
yes	160	Total B (black and white /large)
yes	161	Total B (black and white /small)
yes	162	Total B1 (double sided)
yes	163	Total B2 (double sided)
yes	164	largeB (double sided)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	165	smallB (double sided)
yes	166	Total B (mono color 1)
yes	167	Total B (mono color 2)
yes	168	Total B (full color /large)
yes	169	Total B (full color /small)
yes	170	Total B (full color +mono color /large)
yes	171	Total B (full color +mono color /small)
yes	172	Total B (full color +mono color 2)
yes	173	Total B (full color +mono color 1)
no	191	Toner replacement / yellow
no	192	Toner replacement / magenta
no	193	Toner replacement / cyan
no	194	Toner replacement / black
no	195	Toner replacement / expansion 1
no	196	Toner replacement / expansion 2

T-16-199

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	201	Copy (Total 1)
yes	202	Copy (Total 2)
yes	203	Copy (large)
yes	204	Copy (small)
yes	205	Copy A (Total 1)
yes	206	Copy A (Total 2)
yes	207	Copy A (large)
yes	208	Copy A (small)
yes	209	Local copy (Total 1)
yes	210	Local copy (Total 2)
yes	211	Local copy (large)
yes	212	Local copy (small)
yes	213	Remote copy (Total 1)
yes	214	Remote copy (Total 2)
yes	215	Remote copy (large)
yes	216	Remote copy (small)
yes	217	Copy (full color 1)
yes	218	Copy (full color 2)
yes	219	Copy (mono color 1)
yes	220	Copy (mono color 2)
yes	221	Copy (black and white 1)
yes	222	Copy (black and white 2)
yes	223	Copy (full color /large)
yes	224	Copy (full color /small)
yes	225	Copy (mono color /large)
yes	226	Copy (mono color /small)
yes	227	Copy (black and white /large)
yes	228	Copy (black and white /small)
yes	229	Copy (full color +mono color /large)
yes	230	Copy (full color +mono color /small)
yes	231	Copy (full color +mono color /2)
yes	232	Copy (full color +mono color /1)
yes	233	Copy (full color /large/double sided)
yes	234	Copy (full color /small/double sided)
yes	235	Copy (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	236	Copy (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	237	Copy (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	238	Copy (black and white /small/double sided)
yes	245	Copy A (full color 1)
yes	246	Copy A (full color 2)
yes	247	Copy A (mono color 1)
yes	248	Copy A (mono color 2)
yes	249	Copy A (black and white 1)
yes	250	Copy A (black and white 2)
yes	251	Copy A (full color /large)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	252	Copy A (full color /small)
yes	253	Copy A (mono color /large)
yes	254	Copy A (mono color /small)
yes	255	Copy A (black and white /large)
yes	256	Copy A (black and white /small)
yes	257	Copy A (full color +mono color /large)
yes	258	Copy A (full color +mono color /small)
yes	259	Copy A (full color +mono color 2)
yes	260	Copy A (full color +mono color 1)
yes	261	Copy A (full color /large/double sided)
yes	262	Copy A (full color /small/double sided)
yes	263	Copy A (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	264	Copy A (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	265	Copy A (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	266	Copy A (black and white /small/double sided)
yes	273	Local copy (full color 1)
yes	274	Local copy (full color 2)
yes	275	Local copy (mono color 1)
yes	276	Local copy (mono color 2)
yes	277	Local copy (black and white 1)
yes	278	Local copy (black and white 2)
yes	279	Local copy (full color /large)
yes	280	Local copy (full color /small)
yes	281	Local copy (mono color /large)
yes	282	Local copy (mono color /small)
yes	283	Local copy (black and white /large)
yes	284	Local copy (black and white /small)
yes	285	Local copy (full color +mono color /large)
yes	286	Local copy (full color +mono color /small)
yes	287	Local copy (full color +mono color 2)
yes	288	Local copy (full color +mono color 1)
yes	289	Local copy (full color /large/double sided)
yes	290	Local copy (full color /small/double sided)
yes	291	Local copy (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	292	Local copy (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	293	Local copy (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	294	Local copy (black and white /small/double sided)

T-16-200

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	301	Print (Total 1)
yes	302	Print (Total 2)
yes	303	Print (large)
yes	304	Print (small)
yes	305	Print A(Total 1)
yes	306	Print A(Total 2)
yes	307	Print A(large)
yes	308	Print A(small)
yes	309	Print (full color 1)
yes	310	Print (full color 2)
yes	311	Print (mono color 1)
yes	312	Print (mono color 2)
yes	313	Print (black and white 1)
yes	314	Print (black and white 2)
yes	315	Print (full color /large)
yes	316	Print (full color /small)
yes	317	Print (mono color /large)
yes	318	Print (mono color /small)
yes	319	Print (black and white /large)
yes	320	Print (black and white /small)
yes	321	Print (full color +mono color /large)
yes	322	Print (full color +mono color /small)
yes	323	Print (full color +mono color /2)
yes	324	Print (full color +mono color /1)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	325	Print (full color /large /double sided)
yes	326	Print (full color /small/double sided)
yes	327	Print (mono color /large /double sided)
yes	328	Print (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	329	Print (black and white /large /double sided)
yes	330	Print (black and white /small/double sided)
yes	331	PDLPrint (Total 1)
yes	332	PDLPrint (Total 2)
yes	333	PDLPrint (large)
yes	334	PDLPrint (small)
yes	335	PDLPrint (full color 1)
yes	336	PDLPrint (full color 2)
yes	339	PDLPrint (black and white 1)
yes	340	PDLPrint (black and white 2)
yes	341	PDLPrint (full color /large)
yes	342	PDLPrint (full color /small)
yes	345	PDLPrint (black and white /large)
yes	346	PDLPrint (black and white /small)
yes	351	PDLPrint (full color /large /double sided)
yes	352	PDLPrint (full color /small/double sided)
yes	355	PDLPrint (black and white /large /double sided)
yes	356	PDLPrint (black and white /small/double sided)

T-16-201

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	401	Copy + print (full color /large)
yes	402	Copy + print (full color /small)
yes	403	Copy + print (black and white/large)
yes	404	Copy + print (black and white/small)
yes	405	Copy + print (black and white2)
yes	406	Copy + print (black and white1)
yes	407	Copy + print (full color +mono color /large)
yes	408	Copy + print (full color +mono color /small)
yes	409	Copy + print (full color +mono color /2)
yes	410	Copy + print (full color +mono color /1)
yes	411	Copy + print (large)
yes	412	Copy + print (small)
yes	413	Copy + print (2)
yes	414	Copy + print (1)
yes	415	Copy + print (mono color /large)
yes	416	Copy + print (mono color /small)
yes	417	Copy + print (full color /large/double sided)
yes	418	Copy + print (full color /small/double sided)
yes	419	Copy + print (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	420	Copy + print (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	421	Copy + print (black and white/large/double sided)
yes	422	Copy + print (black and white/small/double sided)
yes	431	Clear mixed + mono-clear (total 1)
yes	432	Clear mixed + mono-clear (total 2)
yes	433	Clear mixed + mono-clear (full-page 1)
yes	434	Clear mixed + mono-clear (full-page 2)
yes	435	Clear mixed + mono-clear (partial 1)
yes	436	Clear mixed + mono-clear (partial 2)
yes	437	Clear mixed + mono-clear (full-page/large)
yes	438	Clear mixed + mono-clear (full-page/small)
yes	439	Clear mixed + mono-clear (partial/large)
yes	440	Clear mixed + mono-clear (partial/small)
yes	441	Clear mixed (total 1)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	442	Clear mixed (total 2)
yes	443	Clear mixed (full-page 1)
yes	444	Clear mixed (full-page 2)
yes	445	Clear mixed (partial 1)
yes	446	Clear mixed (partial 2)
yes	447	Clear mixed (full-page/large)
yes	448	Clear mixed (full-page/small)
yes	449	Clear mixed (partial/large)
yes	450	Clear mixed (partial/small)
yes	451	Mono-clear (total 1)
yes	452	Mono-clear (total 2)
yes	453	Mono-clear (full-page 1)
yes	454	Mono-clear (full-page 2)
yes	455	Mono-clear (partial 1)
yes	456	Mono-clear (partial 2)
yes	457	Mono-clear (full-page/large)
yes	458	Mono-clear (full-page/small)
yes	459	Mono-clear (partial/large)
yes	460	Mono-clear (partial/small)

T-16-202

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	501	Scan (Total 1)
yes	502	Scan (Total 2)
yes	503	Scan (large)
yes	504	Scan (small)
yes	505	Black and white Scan (Total 1)
yes	506	Black and white Scan (Total 2)
yes	507	Black and white Scan (large)
yes	508	Black and white Scan (small)
yes	509	Color scan (Total 1)
yes	510	Color scan (Total 2)
yes	511	Color scan (large)
yes	512	Color scan (small)

T-16-203

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	601	Box print (Total 1)
yes	602	Box print (Total 2)
yes	603	Box print (large)
yes	604	Box print (small)
yes	605	Box print (full color 1)
yes	606	Box print (full color 2)
yes	607	Box print (mono color 1)
yes	608	Box print (mono color 2)
yes	609	Box print (black and white 1)
yes	610	Box print (black and white 2)
yes	611	Box print (full color /large)
yes	612	Box print (full color /small)
yes	613	Box print (mono color /large)
yes	614	Box print (mono color /small)
yes	615	Box print (black and white /large)
yes	616	Box print (black and white /small)
yes	617	Box print (full color +mono color /large)
yes	618	Box print (full color +mono color /small)
yes	619	Box print (full color +mono color 2)
yes	620	Box print (full color +mono color 1)
yes	621	Box print (full color /large/double sided)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	622	Box print (full color /small/double sided)
yes	623	Box print (mono color /large/double sided)
yes	624	Box print (mono color /small/double sided)
yes	625	Box print (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	626	Box print (black and white /small/double sided)

T-16-204

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	701	Reception print (Total 1)
yes	702	Reception print (Total 2)
yes	703	Reception print (large)
yes	704	Reception print (small)
yes	705	Reception print (full color 1)
yes	706	Reception print (full color 2)
no	707	Reception print (Gray scale 1)
no	708	Reception print (Gray scale 2)
yes	709	Reception print (black and white 1)
yes	710	Reception print (black and white 2)
yes	711	Reception print (full color /large)
yes	712	Reception print (full color /small)
no	713	Reception print (Gray scale /large)
no	714	Reception print (Gray scale /small)
yes	715	Reception print (black and white /large)
yes	716	Reception print (black and white /small)
no	717	Reception print (full color +Gray scale /large)
no	718	Reception print (full color +Gray scale /small)
no	719	Reception print (full color +Gray scale 2)
no	720	Reception print (full color +Gray scale 1)
yes	721	Reception print (full color /large/double sided)
yes	722	Reception print (full color /small/double sided)
no	723	Reception print (Gray scale /large/double sided)
no	724	Reception print (Gray scale /small/double sided)
yes	725	Reception print (black and white /large/double sided)
yes	726	Reception print (black and white /small/double sided)

T-16-205

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
yes	801	Report print (Total 1)
yes	802	Report print (Total 2)
yes	803	Report print (large)
yes	804	Report print (small)
yes	805	Report print (full color 1)
yes	806	Report print (full color 2)
no	807	Report print (Gray scale 1)
no	808	Report print (Gray scale 2)
yes	809	Report print (black and white 1)
yes	810	Report print (black and white 2)
yes	811	Report print (full color /large)
yes	812	Report print (full color /small)
no	813	Report print (Gray scale /large)
no	814	Report print (Gray scale /small)
yes	815	Report print (black and white /large)
yes	816	Report print (black and white /small)
no	817	Report print (full color +Gray scale /large)
no	818	Report print (full color +Gray scale /small)
no	819	Report print (full color +Gray scale 2)
no	820	Report print (full color +Gray scale 1)
yes	821	Report print (full color /large /double sided)
yes	822	Report print (full color /small /double sided)
no	823	Report print (Gray scale /large /double sided)

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
no	824	Report print (Gray scale /small /double sided)
yes	825	Report print (black and white /large /double sided)
yes	826	Report print (black and white /small /double sided)


T-16-206

Valid or invalid	Number	Counter Details
no	901	Copy scan total 1(color)
no	902	Copy scan total 1(black and white)
no	903	Copy scan total 2(color)
no	904	Copy scan total 2(black and white)
no	905	Copy scan total 3(color)
no	906	Copy scan total 3(black and white)
no	907	Copy scan total 4(color)
no	908	Copy scan total 4(black and white)
no	909	Local copy scan (color)
no	910	Local copy scan (black and white)
no	911	Remote copy scan (color)
no	912	Remote copy scan (black and white)
no	913	Transmission scan total 1(color)
no	914	Transmission scan total 1(black and white)
yes	915	Transmission scan total 2(color)
yes	916	Transmission scan total 2(black and white)
yes	917	Transmission scan total 3(color)
yes	918	Transmission scan total 3(black and white)
no	919	Transmission scan total 4(color)
no	920	Transmission scan total 4(black and white)
yes	921	Transmission scan total 5(color)
yes	922	Transmission scan total 5(black and white)
yes	929	Transmission scan total 6(color)
yes	930	Transmission scan total 6(black and white)
no	931	Transmission scan total 7(color)
no	932	Transmission scan total 7(black and white)
no	933	Transmission scan total 8(color)
no	934	Transmission scan total 8(black and white)
no	935	Universal transmission scan total (color)
no	936	Universal transmission scan total (black and white)
yes	937	Box scan (color)
yes	938	Box scan (black and white)
yes	939	Remote scan (color)
yes	940	Remote scan (black and white)
no	941	Transmission scan / Fax (color)
no	942	Transmission scan / Fax (black and white)
no	943	Transmission scan / I Fax (color)
no	944	Transmission scan / I Fax (black and white)
yes	945	Transmission scan / E-mail (color)
yes	946	Transmission scan / E-mail (black and white)
no	947	Transmission scan /FTP(color)
no	948	Transmission scan /FTP(black and white)
no	949	Transmission scan /SMB(color)
no	950	Transmission scan /SMB(black and white)
no	951	Transmission scan /IPX(color)
no	952	Transmission scan /IPX(black and white)
no	953	Transmission scan / Database (color)
no	954	Transmission scan / Database (black and white)
no	955	Transmission scan / Local print (color)
no	956	Transmission scan / Local print (black and white)
no	957	Transmission scan / Box (color)
no	958	Transmission scan / Box (black and white)

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CONTROL	enables/disables the charging mechanism (PDL job)	1
	When connecting with the account-managing device (e.g., coin vendor, non-Canon control card), it switches over the count pulse (on/off) in the account-managing device. settings 0: do not restrict (default); 1: restrict When charging against PDL prints, set '1'.	
B4-L-CNT	Set whether to count the B4-size paper as large size or small size in soft counters 1 to 6.	1
	Setting range 0: Small size 1: Large size Standard value: 0	
COPY-JOB	Set whether or not to prohibit the copy job reservation when using the card reader and coin vendor. This mode is used when it is necessary to prohibit simultaneous entry of multiple jobs for CCX or coin robo.	1
	Setting range 0: Copy job reservation is not prohibited. 1: Copy job reservation is prohibited. Standard value: 0	
TAB-ROT	Set whether or not to perform 180 degree rotation for the landscape image of PDL tab paper.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not perform rotation. 1: Perform rotation. Standard value: 0	
PR-PSESW	Set whether or not to display the print pause function switch. This mode is used to set whether or not to display the print pause function switch in the user screen.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the print pause function. (Do not display the print pause function switch in the user screen.) 1: Provide the print pause function. (Display the print pause function switch in the user screen.) Standard value: 0	
IDPRN-SW	Switch the type of the count-up job for the section control counter.	1
	Setting range 0: Count up BoxPrint, ReporPrint, SendLocalPrint, and PDLPrint to the PRINT category. 1: Count up ReporPrint, SendLocalPrint, and PDLPrint to the PRINT category. Standard value: 0	
CPRT-DSP	Set whether or not to display the count print button in the sales counter confirmation screen.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not display the button. 1: Display the button. Standard value: 0	
CNT-SW	Set the type of a counter for the counter display item.	1
	Setting range 0: Counter 1 - Total 1: 101 Counter 2 - Total (black and white 1): 108 Counter 3 - Copy (full color + mono color / 1): 232 Counter 4 - Print (full color + mono color / 1): 324 1: Counter 1 - Total 2: 102 Counter 2 - Copy (full color + mono color / 2): 231 Counter 3 - Total A (full color + mono color / 2): 148 Counter 4 - Copy (black and white 2): 222 Counter 5 - Total A (black and white 2): 133 2: (The setting value '0' with mono color) Counter 1 - Total 1: 101 Counter 2 - Total (black and white 1): 108 Counter 3 - Copy (full color + mono color / 1): 232 Counter 4 - Print (full color + mono color / 1): 324 Counter 5 - Total (mono color 1): 118 3: Counter 1 - Total 1: 101 Counter 2 - Total (full color + mono color / small): 123 Counter 3 - Total (full color + mono color / large): 122 Counter 4 - Total (black and white / small): 113 Counter 5 - Total (black and white / large): 112 Counter 6 - Scan (Total 1): 501 4: (The setting value '3' with mono color) Counter 1 - Total 1: 101 Counter 2 - Total (full color + mono color / small): 123 Counter 3 - Total (full color + mono color / large): 122 Counter 4 - Total (black and white / small): 113 Counter 5 - Total (black and white / large): 112 Counter 6 - Total (mono color / small): 111 Counter 7 - Total (mono color / large): 110 Counter 8 - Scan (Total 1): 501 Standard value: 0	

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TAB-ACC	Set whether or not to perform ACC for tab paper (index paper).	1
	Setting range 0: Do not perform ACC for tab paper. 1: Perform ACC for tab paper. Standard value: 0	
BCNT-AST	Set whether to count a BOX print job as a PDL job or a COPY job.	1
	Setting range 0: Count a BOX print job as a PDL job. 1: Count a BOX print job as a COPY job. Standard value: 0	
DFLT-CPY	Set the default color mode for COPY.	1
	Setting range 0: ACS 1: Full color 2: Black and white JPN [Standard value: 0] UL [Standard value: 0] EUR [Standard value: 0] Other destinations [Standard value: 0]	
DFLT-BOX	Set the default color mode for BOX.	1
	Setting range 0: ACS 1: Full color 2: Black and white JPN [Standard value: 0] UL [Standard value: 0] EUR [Standard value: 0] Other destinations [Standard value: 0]	
COUNTER7	Select the counter type to be displayed for Counter 7 in the user mode. Set a value for the 7th counter to be displayed in the user mode.	1
	Setting range: 1 to 26, 39, 41 to 45 Standard value: 0 (Not displayed)	
COUNTER8	Select the counter type to be displayed for Counter 8 in the user mode. Set a value for the 8th counter to be displayed in the user mode.	1
	Setting range: 1 to 26, 39, 41 to 45 Standard value: 0 (Not displayed)	
LDAP-SW	Set the switching of the searching condition for LDAP search. Set a matching condition to search e-mail addresses or FAX numbers from the LDAP server.	1
	Setting range 0: "Include the specified keyword." 1: "Do not include the specified keyword." 2: "Equal to the specified keyword." 3: "Not equal to the specified keyword." 4: "Start with the specified keyword." 5: "End with the specified keyword." Standard value: 4 Remarks By registering the LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) server, e-mail addresses and Fax numbers can be searched from the LADP server. The e-mail addresses and Fax numbers obtained from the search can be registered to the address book.	
FROM-OF	Set whether or not to delete the 'from' address for mail transmission.	1
	Setting range 0: Do not delete the 'from' address. 1: Delete the 'from' address. Standard value: 0	
SPEAKER	Set whether or not to display the "speaker/head set switching" button in the voice reading setting (user mode).	1
	Setting range 0: Do not display the button. 1: Display the button. Standard value: 0	

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FILE-OF	<p>Set whether or not to prohibit transmission to a file address. This mode is used to prohibit transmission to a file address by prohibiting input of a file address from an address book.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Do not prohibit transmission to a file address. 1: Prohibit transmission to a file address. Standard value: 0</p> <p>Remarks - In case of changing the setting from 0 to 1 while FILE addresses have been registered, it is desirable to delete the FILE addresses manually. (Without deleting them, they can be used.) - In case the setting is 1, the import (registration) of the FILE address from RUI and machine information delivery is not accepted. Thus, if there are many FILE addresses, set 1 for this mode and make the files exported with RUI and machine information delivery to 'Overwrite import (register the imported addresses after deleting the current data)'. By doing so, they can be deleted at once.</p>	1
MAIL-OF	<p>Set whether or not to prohibit transmission to an e-mail address. This mode is used to prohibit transmission to an e-mail address by prohibiting input of an e-mail address from an address book.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Do not prohibit transmission to an e-mail address. 1: Prohibit transmission to an e-mail address. Standard value: 0</p> <p>Remarks - In case of changing the setting from 0 to 1 while the e-mail addresses are registered, it is desirable to delete the e-mail addresses manually. (Without deleting them, they can be used.) - In case the setting is 1, the import (registration) of the e-mail addresses from RUI and machine information delivery is not accepted. Thus, if there are many e-mail addresses, set 1 for this mode to enable 'Overwrite import (register the imported addresses after deleting the current data)' by RUI and machine information delivery. By doing so, they can be deleted at once.</p>	1
IFAX-OF	<p>Set whether or not to prohibit transmission to an i-FAX address. This mode is used to prohibit transmission to an i-FAX address by prohibiting input of an i-FAX address from an address book.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Do not prohibit transmission to an i-FAX address. 1: Prohibit transmission to an i-FAX address. Standard value: 0</p> <p>Remarks - In case of changing the setting from 0 to 1 while the iFAX addresses have been registered, it is desirable to delete the iFAX addresses manually. (Without deleting them, they can be used.) - In case the setting is 1, the import (registration) of the iFAX addresses from RUI and machine information delivery is not accepted. Thus, if there are many iFAX addresses, set 1 for this mode to enable 'Overwrite import (register the imported addresses after deleting the current data)' by RUI and machine information delivery. By doing so, they can be deleted at once.</p>	1
LDAP-DEF	<p>Switch the default setting of the LDAP searching condition. Change the default setting of a searching attribute condition specified for LDAP searching.</p> <p>Setting range 0 to 6 0: "Name" 1: "E-mail" 2: "FAX" 3: "Organization" 4: "Unit of organization" 5: User setting 1 6: User setting 2 Standard value: 0</p> <p>Refer to COPIER > OPTION > USER > LDAP-SW for the details of LDAP.</p>	1

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DK3-ASST	<p>Switch the air heater control for the pickup deck with air-assist function. (Setting for PDO deck Lite)</p> <p>Switch the condition to turn on the air heater for air-assist function according to the media and environment.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Control the air heater based on the media and environment condition. 1: Turn on the air heater based on the environment condition only. (Not dependent on the media) 2: Turn on the air heater constantly. (Not dependent on the environment and media) Standard value: 0</p> <p>Remarks When switching the media setting from non-coated paper to coated paper for the pickup deck with air-assist function, wait-time occurs before the temperature of the air heater is controlled. (For coated paper, pickup cannot be performed until the air heater is turned on and warm air blows.) Furthermore, when the machine is used in the environment near the ON/OFF switching condition, it is assumed that the ON/OFF switching of the air heater is frequently performed and it increases the wait-time. When you receive a claim from a user that the wait-time is too long, perform the following measures; - For the former case (switching from the non-coated paper to coat paper), explain that there is some worry that the transformation of non-coat paper will deteriorate, switch to 1, even for the non-coat paper, depending on the environment condition, the Air Heat can switch to On. - The later case, (if the machine is used in the environment near ON/OFF switching), when the temperature gets lower, explain that there is some worry that the transformation of non-coat paper will deteriorate, switch to 2, regardless to media and environment, the Air Heat can always switch to On. Steps of Operation : 0. Check, depends on the media and environment, the Air Heater is switched to ON. 1. Check, only by the environment condition that the Air Heater is switched to ON. 2. Check, that the Air Heater is always switched to ON.</p>	1
FX-BC-SW	<p>Set ON/OFF of the wait-mode control for cooling of the fixing assembly.</p> <p>Setting range: OFF [0] / ON [1] Standard value: 0</p>	1
CARD-DIR	<p>4-pane postcard feeding direction setting Set the feeding direction of 4-pane postcard.</p> <p>Setting range: 0 to 1 0: Short edge feed only 1: Available to switch Long edge feed/Short edge feed. Standard value: 0</p> <p> This item applies to the upgraded device or later (DCON Ver11.03 or later, Cont Ver24.04 or later)</p>	1
SIZE-DET	<p>Set ON/OFF of the document size detection function.</p> <p>Setting range 0: OFF (This eliminates glare because the optical system does not light up when the copyboard is opened/closed.) 1: ON Standard value: 1</p>	2
DATE-DSP	<p>Switch the date display.</p> <p>Setting range: 0: YYMM/DD 1: DD/MM'YY 2: MM/DD/YY</p>	2
MB-CCV	<p>Restrict the use of the control card for mailbox.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Do not restrict the use. 1: Restrict the use. Standard value: 0</p>	2
TRY-STP	<p>Set a mode not to perform printing when the tray is full.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Normal mode (Stop printing when the finisher tray is full.) 1: Stop printing only by detecting the height. Standard value: 0</p>	2
MF-LG-ST	<p>Set a key for the long length paper mode.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Normal 1: Display the long length key in the corresponding mode screen. Standard value: 0</p>	2
CNT-DISP	<p>Set whether or not to display a serial number when pressing the counter check key.</p> <p>Setting range 0: Display a serial number. 1: Do not display a serial number. Standard value: 0</p>	2

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
OP-SZ-DT	Set ON/OFF of the document size detection function while the copyboard is open.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not perform the document size detection while the copyboard is open. - The document size must be manually entered in the control panel. 1: Perform the document size detection while the copyboard is open. - Use this mode when you need to perform the document size detection automatically even when you cannot close the copyboard to make copies of a thick book, etc. - Detection is performed when the start key is pressed. Standard value: 0 Remarks When SIZE-DET is set to 0, the document size detection is not performed even when OP-SZ-DT is set to 1.	
NW-SCAN	Set whether or not to permit the network scan function.	2
	0: Do not permit the network scan function. 1: Permit the network scan function. Standard value: 0	
HDCR-DSP	Switch the display/operation of HDD clear mode in the user mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not perform clear. 1: Perform clear once with "0". 2: Perform clear once with random data. 3: Perform clear three times with random data. Standard value: 1 MEMO: function for HDD initialization This is the function to clear the data on HDD completely by overwriting the 0 (null) data and random data to file data area at the moment of deleting files logically (timing for deleting the administrative information data) in HDD.	
JOB-INVL	Set the job interval for interruption.	2
	Setting range 0: Normal setting (When an interruption copy occurs, print the next job continuously.) 1: After the last sheet of an interruption copy is delivered, start printing the next job. 2: After the last sheet of all jobs, start printing the next job. Standard value: 0	
LGSW-DSP	Use it to enable/disable display of 'enable/disable log indication' for Additional Functions Mode.	2
	settings 0: do not display (default); 1: display	
PCL-COPY	Binder control mode for COPIES command of PCL.	2
	This is the mode to unite the operations because the way to control the COPIES command of PCL is different between the Canon PCL and the non-Canon PCL. settings 0: [default] to control by page according to the value of COPIES command specified at each page. 1: It regards the value of COPIES command specified at page-1 as the number of bind, and invalid the value of COPIES command of the following page and after (only at sort mode. in the case of non-sort mode, it will be the same control as at '0' setting). 2 through 65535: backup '0' is for control method with Canon. By setting '1', it will be the same control method with non-Canon PCL.	
PRJOB-CP	Set the CCV count pulse when performing reception and report printing.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide a count pulse. 1: Provide a count pulse. Standard value: 0 When using account-managing device (e.g., coin vendor, non-Canon control card), it switches over (on/off) the count pulse notice for every page at receipt print/report print.	
DPT-ID-7	Make a setting for registration of a section ID and entry of 7 digits for authentication.	2
	Setting range 0: Same as a conventional method 1: 7 digits entry Standard value 0	
RUI-RJT	Disconnect the HTTP port when unauthorized authentication was performed from RUI three times.	2
	Setting range 0: Invalid 1: Valid Standard value: 0	
SND-RATE	SND-RATE (Set a compression ratio when the "high" compression ratio is selected for the Send function.)	2
	Setting range 0: Compression ratio: 1/16 1: Compression ratio: 1/20 2: Compression ratio: 1/24 When you increase a compression ratio, an image is deteriorated. Standard value: 0	
CTM-S06	Use it to enable/disable deletion of the password from an export file with a file transmission address.	2
	settings 0: do no delete (default); 1: delete When setting '1', in the case of exporting the address book data from remote UI, the password of file server is hidden from the exported file (to avoid leakage of information).	

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FREG-SW	Switching over of display/nondisplay for free register area of MEAP counter (for SEND)	2
	settings 0: do not display (default); 1: display MEMO: - This is not used at normal servicing because it is for trouble analysis. - Obey the instruction by the quality support section for usage.	
IFAX-SZL	Set validity/invalidity of the transmission size restriction for iFAX transmission. (only when transmission is not performed via a server)	2
	settings 0: set restrictions; 1: do not set restrictions (only if not through server; default) In the case of setting '0', - as for upper limit value, set it in transmission data size by selecting the following: additional functions mode>System Settings>Communications Settings>E-mail/I-Fax Settings>Maximum Data Size For Setting - if sending data that the size exceeds the upper limit value, it will be #830 error.	
IFAX-PGD	Set whether or not to permit a split transmission by page. (only when the upper limit of the transmission data size is exceeded) This mode is used to switch "permission/non-permission" of a split transmission by page when the upper limit of the transmission data size is exceeded in the iFAX Simple mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not permit a split transmission by page. 1: Permit a split transmission by page. Standard value: 0 The split transmission by page does not assure the order of pages at the receiver. In addition, it may be possible that any other reception job steps between the pages. When setting this mode, explain the foregoing possibility to the user and gain the consent beforehand.	
MEAPSAFE	Make a setting to switch to the MEAP safe mode.	2
	Setting range 0: Normal mode 1: Safe mode Standard value: 0 Safe mode works to stop the added MEAP application, and to startup the only system application that was activated at initial state to start up the system safely. Set '1' to startup in safe mode in the case of system recovery processing when MEAP platform does not startup normally because of resource competition among MEAP applications, or the order to register/use the service. "MPSF" is indicated in the control panel screen when in safe mode.	
FXEX-CNT	Set a temperature control hysteresis width for the external heating roller. The external heating roller of this machine has small heat capacity and the heater is frequently turned on and off, which causes a flickering. This mode is provided as a measure to minimize such flickering. Evaluation method Make sure that the temperature of the external heating roller is controlled within the setting range using COPIER>DISPLAY>ANALOG>FIX-EXC.	2
	Setting range 0: Hysteresis width = ± 1 deg C (200 deg C ± 1 deg C) 1: Hysteresis width = ± 2 deg C (200 deg C ± 2 deg C) 2: Hysteresis width = ± 3.5 deg C (200 deg C ± 3.5 deg C) 3: Hysteresis width = ± 4.5 deg C (200 deg C ± 4.5 deg C) Standard value: 0	
PRNT-POS	Set whether or not to perform a simultaneous pause for the subsequent print job when canceling a job after an error occurs.	2
	Perform a simultaneous pause for a print job when a job cancellation (#037, etc.) occurs caused by an internal error, other than a service call error, in PDL printing. Setting range 0: Do not perform a simultaneous pause. 1: Perform a simultaneous pause. Standard value: 0	
AFN-PSWD	Use it to set restrictions on access in additional functions mode.	2
	settings 0: off (shift to user mode scan without requiring password; default) 1: on (shift to user mode scan after password match)	
PTJAM-RC	Set whether or not to perform recovery of a PDL jam. This mode is used to set whether or not to perform recovery printing when a jam occurs in a PDL job.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not perform recovery. 1: Perform recovery. Standard value: 1 This mode suits for operators who do not want recovery printing (e.g., receipt and payment slip) with jam recovery without being noticed by them.	

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SLP-SLCT	Use it to set the switch designed to switch between existing network-based applications.	2
	A certain packet needs to be received as a condition for the machine to recover from sleep mode via network. Because the existing network system applications (e.g., Net Spot Accountant, image WARE) do not send such packet, the machine fails to recover via network if it's shifted to sleep mode 3. When setting '1', the machine able to recover from sleep mode via network because it does not shift to sleep mode 3 (1wsleep), resulting the trade-off with the increase of consuming electricity. settings 0: do not use (default); 1: use MEMO: This is not used at normal servicing.	
PS-MODE	Selecting compatibility mode when using PS (image processing, print specification)	2
	This is the mode to simulate REPLACE to hold compatibility for image processing and print specification. settings 0: no use of PS compatibility mode (default) 1: image processing equivalent of iR2220/2800/3300 series (compatibility with existing machines) 2: image processing equivalent of iR105 (compatibility with existing machine) 3: backup 4: landscape image and portrait image can be duplexed printing using Canon controller. This is the compatible mode with non-Canon controller. 5 through 65535: backup When the setting value is '1', the output will be equivalent to that of iR2200 / 2800 / 3300 series. Whereas when the setting value is '2', the output will be equivalent to that of iR105 series.	
CNCT-RLZ	Set whether or not to use the Connection Serialize Function.	2
	Function: Switch the use of the Connection Serialize Function. [Remarks] - Connection Serialize Function This function is provided to guarantee the job grouping function of imageWARE Output Manager Select Edition V1.0. Since an iR-series MFP machine provides multiple connections, you can make a setting to prohibit reception of multiple connections at a device so that the job grouping function is guaranteed. In other words, when you make a setting to prohibit reception of multiple connections at a device, the device does not receive job data from a connection until reception of job data from another connection is completed. (--> This prevents jobs to queue in different order.) - "Connection" refers to the connection established among multiple hosts (PCs) via network. - Job Grouping Function This is one of the functions provided by imageWARE Output Manager Select Edition V1.0. This prohibits job interruption from other PC by performing group job transmission (by sending multiple jobs in one session). Setting range 0: OFF (Connection Serialize Function is OFF) 1: ON (Connection Serialize Function is ON) Standard value: 0	
2C-CT-SW	Switch a setting for the color counter (only for the two-color mode). Set whether to use full-color counter or mono-color counter for the two-color mode count-up.	2
	Setting range 0: Perform count-up to mono-color counter. 1: Perform count-up to full-color counter. Standard value: 1 Remarks 2-Color Print: 1 color from R, G, B, C, M, Y + Bk Mono-color: 1 color only	
DOM-ADD	Switch a setting of domain complement for email transmission. Set whether or not to complement the domain information (ex.: @canon.co.jp) specified in the user mode.	2
	<In Case a User Sends a Mail to xxx@canon.co.jp> By setting 'canon@co.jp' to the domain in the user mode and set 1 for this mode, the address is complemented to 'xxx@canon.co.jp' when performing the email transmission by just entering 'xxx'. Setting range 0: Do not complement the domain information for the destination address. 1: Complement the domain information for the destination address. Standard value: 0	
N-MAILOF	Set whether or not to prohibit a new address for email. Prohibit a new address for email. (Prohibit selection of a new address.)	2
	Setting range 0: Do not prohibit a new address selection. 1: Prohibit a new address selection. Standard value 1	

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
N-FAXOF	Set whether or not to prohibit a new address for FAX. Prohibit a new address for FAX. (Prohibit selection of a new address.)	2
	Setting range 0: Do not prohibit a new address selection. 1: Prohibit a new address selection. Standard value: 1	
N-IFAXOF	Set whether or not to prohibit a new address for iFAX. Prohibit a new address for iFAX. (Prohibit selection of a new address.)	2
	Setting range 0: Do not prohibit a new address selection. 1: Prohibit a new address selection. Standard value: 1	
N-FILEOF	Set whether or not to prohibit a new address for FILE. Prohibit a new address for FILE. (Prohibit selection of a new address.)	2
	Setting range 0: Do not prohibit a new address selection. 1: Prohibit a new address selection. Standard value: 1	
FINGM-SW	Set whether or not to display the fingerprint prevention button. Set whether or not to display the button for fingerprint prevention function, in which fixing operation is performed before an image is printed and then normal operation is performed in order to prevent fingerprints in manual feeding.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the button. 1: Display the button. Standard value: 0 Remarks Pressing the button increases fixing operation, and it extremely decreases printing performance.	
CLR-TIM	Select the timing to perform a complete removal processing in the security kit. When a complete removal processing is performed, job processing performance sometimes decreases for certain data. This is because the page data which has been already processed is being removed during job processing and it slows down the accessing process to CPU and HDD. If the execution of this process is delayed so that the process is performed after the job is completed, the job processing capability can be improved.	2
	Setting range 0: Remove data during job processing. 1: Remove data after a job is completed. Standard value: 0	
FX-CLNLV	Change the level of the fixing roller cleaning which is controlled automatically.	2
	Setting range: -5 to 5 Standard value: 0	

3. CST

T-16-207

COPIER > OPTION > CST		
Subheading	Contents	Level
U1-NAME to U4-NAME	Set ON/OFF of the paper name display when the paper size group (U1 to U4) is detected.	2
	Setting range 0: Display "U1, U2, U3, U4" in the touch panel. (default) 1: Display the paper name specified in "CST-U1, U2, U3, U4" in the service mode. Standard value: 0 In terms of specifying the universal size, generally, 'U1' to 'U4' is displayed on the touch panel when U1/U2/U3/U4-NAME is '0'. However, as an exception, if 'CST-U4' is registered as '18:LTR', 'LTR' is displayed on the touch panel although 'U4-NAME' is '0'. In other word, 1. U4-NAME: 0 / CST-U4: 29 size is indicated as 'U4' / paper size is Argentine LTR. 2. U4-NAME: 1 / CST-U4: 29 size is indicated as 'LTR' / paper size is Argentine LTR. 3. U4-NAME: 0 / CST-U4: 18 size is indicated as 'LTR' / paper size is LTR. 4. U4-NAME: 1 / CST-U4: 18 size is indicated as 'LTR' / paper size is LTR.	

COPIER > OPTION > CST		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CST-U1/U2/U3/U4	Specify a name of the paper used for the paper size group. When the following special size paper is specified for U1, U2, U3, and U4, the paper size of U1, U2, U3, and U4 can be handled as special size paper.	2
	Setting range: 24 to 40 24: FOOLSCAP (CST-U2: Default) 25: Australian FOOLSCAP 26: OFFICIO 27: Ecuador OFFICIO 28: Bolivia OFFICIO 29: Argentina LETTER (U4: Default) 30: Argentina LETTER-R 31: Government LETTER (U1: Default) 32: Government LETTER-R 34: Government LEGAL (U3: Default) 35: FOLIO 36: Argentina OFFICIO 37: Mexico OFFICIO 38: EXECUTIVE 39: 16K 40: 8K	

4. ACC

T-16-208

COPIER > OPTION > ACC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
COIN	Switch a coin vendor. Set whether or not to enter an administrator's mode of a coin vendor.	1
	Setting range 0: Coin vendor unavailable (Control card is available. No charging) 1: Coin vendor (with charging) 2: Distant-place counter (with charging) Standard value: 0	
DK-P	Set a paper size to be used for the paper deck (option).	1
	Setting range: 0 to 2 0: A4, 1: B5, 2: LTR Standard value: 0	
CARD-SW	Switch the UI screen for a coin vendor.	1
	Setting range 0: Coin 1: Card 2: Coin and card Standard value: 0	
CL-MGCNT	Setting of notification to the external charging control device when L color is printed 0: When clear color is printed, provide a notification to the external charging control device as color printing. 1: When clear color is printed, provide a notification to the external charging control device as clear color printing separately from a notification of color/B&W printing. Setting range: 0 to 10 Factory setting value: 0	1
SC-TYPE	Switching-over of the type of the Self Copier type machine (coin vender-capable machine) Available only when the Soft ID for the machine is set as a specific user. This service mode is used to switch over the machine type to a specific user type machine or generic Self Copier type machine. Generic Self Copier has more functions than the specific user type machine.	2
	Setting range 0: Specific user type machine 1: Generic Self Copier type machine Standard value: 0	
CC-SPSW	Switch the I/F support level of the control card (CCIV/CCV).	2
	Setting range 0: Do not support the card. 1: Support the card. (Prioritize the speed.) 2: Support the card. (Prioritize the upper limit number of copies.) Standard value: 0 - When this mode is set to 1, the maintenance of engine performance is prioritized, and the operation cannot be stopped accurately based on the upper limit number of copies. - When this mode is set to 2, the operation can be stopped accurately based on the upper limit number of copies, but engine performance may be decreased for a certain cassette.	

5. INT-FACE

COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE		
Subheading	Contents	Level
IMG-CONT	Connecting Setting of External PDL Controller	1
	Setting range 0: Normal operation 1: Not used 2: Not used 3: EFI controller 4: Not used 5: Not used Standard value 0	

When the value is set to 1, the values of the following user mode items return to the standard values of EFI.

- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > IP address
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Subnet mask
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Gateway address
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Ethernet driver setting > Communication method
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Ethernet driver setting > Ethernet type
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Activation time

The following user mode settings are set to OFF.

- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Use of DHCP
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Use of RARP
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IP address setting > Use of BOOTP
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > Ethernet driver setting > Automatic detection
- System administration setting > Network setting > Use of spool function

When the value is set to 3 or 4, the following settings are set to OFF in addition to the items mentioned above.

- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > RAW setting
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > LPD setting
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > IPP printing
- System administration setting > Network setting > SMB setting
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > FTP print setting > Use of FTP print.
- System administration setting > Network setting > TCP/IP setting > BMLinkS setting > Use of BMLinkS.
- System administration setting > Network setting > NetWare setting > Use of NetWare.

Since the items mentioned above do not recover even when you set the value back to "0 (Normal mode)", make the setting again whenever necessary.

COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE		
Subheading	Contents	Level
CNT-TYPE	Switch the EFI controller connection. Switching the EFI controller type.	1
	Setting range 0: External Tower-Type Controller 1: Back Mounting-Type Controller	
AP-OPT	Set whether or not to permit printing from the "PrintMe" application installed in the PS print server unit.	2
	Setting range 0: Permit printing by the specified account. 1: Permit printing for any account. 2: Prohibit printing. (Permit printing by the specified section ID.) Standard value: 0	
AP-ACCNT	Set a (CPCA) section ID for printing (job) from the "PrintMe" application installed in the PS print server unit.	2
	Setting range: 0 to 9999999 Standard value: 0	
AP-CODE	Set a (CPCA) path for printing (job) from the "PrintMe" application installed in the PS print server unit.	2
	Setting range: 0 to 9999999 Standard value: 0	
NWCT-TM	Set the time of timeout for network connection maintenance. (Keep Alive setting) Set the time during which network connection is kept between the application in the PC and the iR main unit (Keep Alive).	2
	Setting range: 1 to 5 (Unit: minute) Standard value: 5 Remark When the setting time is timed out, the network connection is disconnected. Therefore, when the network connection is disabled due to any reason, it shortens the down time of the machine.	
DEL-TIME	Set the time to automatically delete a form in the temporary folder provided for clearing a form. Automatic deletion check is performed once in every 10 minutes. Unit: Minute (This function is provided by EFI only.) Setting range: 1 to 1440 Factory setting value: 60	2

6. LCNS-TR

T-16-211

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ST-SEND	Display the installation status of the SEND function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide SEND function. (not installed) 1: Provide SENC function. (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-SEND	Obtain a transfer license key for the SEND function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the SEND function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-ENPDF	Display the installation status of the SEND encryption PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the SEND encryption PDF transmission function. (not installed) 1: Provide the SEND encryption PDF transmission function. (installed) Standard value: 0 This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed.	
TR-ENPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the SEND encryption PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the SEND encryption PDF transmission function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed.	
ST-SPDF	Display the installation status of the SEND searchable PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the SEND searchable PDF transmission function. (not installed) 1: Provide the SEND searchable PDF transmission function. (installed) Standard value: 0 This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed.	
TR-SPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the SEND searchable PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the SEND searchable PDF transmission function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed.	
ST-EXPDF	Display the installation status of the PDF expansion kit (encryption PDF + searchable PDF) in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the PDF expansion kit. (not installed) 1: Provide the PDF expansion kit. (installed) Standard value: 0 - This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed. - Only available for JP.	
TR-EXPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the PDF expansion kit (encryption PDF + searchable PDF) in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the PDF expansion kit (encryption PDF + searchable PDF) by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits - This mode is available only when the SEND function is installed. - Only available for JP.	
ST-PDFDR	Display the installation status of the PDF direct in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the PDF direct. (not installed) 1: Provide the PDF direct. (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-PDFDR	Obtain a transfer license key of the PDF direct in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the PDF direct by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ST-SCR	Display the installation status of the encryption secure printing in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the encryption secure printing. (not installed) 1: Provide the encryption secure printing. (installed) Standard value: 0 - This mode is available only when the 3DES+USH-H board is mounted.	
TR-SCR	Obtain a transfer license key of the encryption secure printing in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the encryption secure printing by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits - This mode is available only when the 3DES+USH-H board is mounted.	
ST-HDCLR	Display the installation status of the HDD encryption / complete removal function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the HDD encryption / complete removal function. (not installed) 1: Provide the HDD encryption / complete removal function. (installed) Standard value: 0 - This mode is available only when the 3DES+USH-H board is mounted.	
TR-HDCLR	Obtain a transfer license key of the HDD encryption / complete removal function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the HDD encryption / complete removal function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits - This mode is available only when the 3DES+USH-H board is mounted.	
ST-BRDIM	Display the installation status of BarDIMM in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide BarDIMM. (not installed) 1: Provide BarDIMM. (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-BRDIM	Obtain a transfer license key of BarDIMM in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use BarDIMM by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-VNC	Display the installation status of VNC in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide VNC. (not installed) 1: Provide VNC. (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-VNC	Obtain a transfer license key of VNC in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use VNC by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-WEB	Display the installation status of the Web browser in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the Web browser. (not installed) 1: Provide the Web browser. (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-WEB	Obtain a transfer license key of the Web browser in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the Web browser by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-HRPDF	Display the installation status of the highly-compressed PDF in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the highly-compressed PDF. (not installed) 1: Provide the highly-compressed PDF. (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-HRPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the highly-compressed PDF in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the highly-compressed PDF by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-TRSND	Display the installation status of the trial SEND function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not provide the trial SEND function. (not installed) 1: Provide the trial SEND function. (installed) Standard value: 0	

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TR-TRSND	Obtain a transfer license key of the trial SEND function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the trial SEND function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-WTMRK	Display the installation status of the main unit tint block function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-WTMRK	Obtain a transfer license key of the main unit tint block function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the main unit tint block function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-TSPDF	Display the installation status of the PDF transmission function with a time stamp in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0 Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
TR-TSPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the PDF transmission function with a time stamp in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the PDF transmission function with a time stamp by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
ST-USPDF	Display the installation status of the PDF transmission function with a user signature in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0 Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
TR-USPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the PDF transmission function with a user signature in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the PDF transmission function with a user signature by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
ST-DVPDF	Display the installation status of the PDF transmission function with a device signature in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0 Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
TR-DVPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the PDF transmission function with a device signature in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the PDF transmission function with a device signature by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
ST-SCPDF	Display the installation status of the scalable PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0 Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	
TR-SCPDF	Obtain a transfer license key of the scalable PDF transmission function in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the scalable PDF transmission function by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits Remarks This mode is valid only when the SEND function is available.	

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ST-AMS	Display the installation status of ACQ in transfer invalidation. Display the installation status of AMS (Access Management System).	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-AMS	Obtain a transfer license key of ACQ in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use AMS (Access Management System) by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-ERDS	Display the installation status of the third party expansion function for ERDS in transfer invalidation. Display the installation status of the third party expansion function (the function which sends a charging counter to a third party's charging server) for ERDS.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-ERDS	Obtain a transfer license key of the third party expansion function for ERDS in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the third party expansion function (the function which sends a charging counter to a third party's charging server) by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-PS	Display the installation status of PS in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-PS	Obtain a transfer license key of PS in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use PS by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-PCL	Display the installation status of PCL in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-PCL	Obtain a transfer license key of PCL in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use PCL by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-PSLI5	Display the installation status of PS, LIPS4, and LIPS LX in transfer invalidation. Display the installation status of the combined options of PS, LIPS4, and LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas).	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-PSLI5	Obtain a transfer license key of PS, LIPS4, and LIPS LX in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of PS, LIPS4, and LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-LIPS5	Display the installation status of LIPS LX and LIPS4 in transfer invalidation. Display the installation status of the combined options of LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) and LIPS4.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-LIPS5	Obtain a transfer license key of LIPS LX and LIPS4 in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) and LIPS4 by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR		
Subheading	Contents	Level
ST-LIPS4	Display the installation status of LIPS4 in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-LIPS4	Obtain a transfer license key of LIPS4 in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use LIPS4 by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-PSPCL	Display the installation status of PS and PCL in transfer invalidation. Display the combined options of PS and PCL.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-PSPCL	Obtain a transfer license key of PS and PCL in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of PS and PCL by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-PCLUF	Display the installation status of PCL and UFR in transfer invalidation. Display the combined options of PCL and UFR.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-PCLUF	Obtain a transfer license key of PCL and UFR in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of PCL and UFR by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-PSLIP	Display the installation status of PS and LIPS in transfer invalidation. Display the combined options of PS and LIPS.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-PSLIP	Obtain a transfer license key of PS and LIPS in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of PS and LIPS by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-PSPCU	Display the installation status of PS, PCL, and UFR in transfer invalidation. Display the combined options of PS, PCL, and UFR.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-PSPCU	Obtain a transfer license key of PS, PCL, and UFR in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use the combined options of PS, PCL, and UFR by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	
ST-LXUFR	Display the installation status of LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) in transfer invalidation.	2
	Setting range 0: Unavailable (not installed) 1: Available (installed) Standard value: 0	
TR-LXUFR	Obtain a transfer license key of LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) in transfer invalidation. Obtain a transfer license key to use LIPS LX (UFR II for overseas) by other MFP machine.	2
	Standard value Transfer license key: 24 digits	

16.6.2 FEEDER

16.6.2.1 FEEDER List

imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+

T-16-212

FEEDER>OPTION		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DOC-F-SW	Switch ON/OFF of the stream reading mode.	1
	Setting range 0: Perform stream reading. 1: Perform stream reading for small-size paper only. (Do not perform stream reading for large-size paper) 2: Do not perform stream reading.	
SLW_SPRT	Slow down the paper separation speed to reduce a jam occurrence ratio of folded document. When folded paper is fed, double feeding sometimes occurs. This mode is used to switch the separation sequence to reduce a jam occurrence ratio.	1
	Setting range 0: Normal mode 1: Folded document mode Standard value 0	
HS-DBL	Switch ON/OFF of the ADF high-speed reverse mode. Provide a high-speed reverse mode to meet the needs of users who emphasize productivity in the ADF double-sided copy mode.	1
	Setting range 0: OFF (Do not perform the high-speed double sided copy mode. : Normal mode) 1: ON (Perform the high-speed double sided copy mode. : High-speed double sided copy mode) Standard value 0	

16.6.3 SORTER

16.6.3.1 SORTER List

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-16-213

SORTER>OPTION		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MD-SPRTN	Set the restriction of finisher function.	1
	Setting range 0: Normal operation 1: Perform degeneration. Standard value 0	

16.6.4 BOARD

16.6.4.1 BOARD List

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-16-214

BOARD>OPTION		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MENU-1 to 4	Set whether or not to display Level 1 to 4 for the printer setting menu.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the level. 1: Display the level. Standard value 0	

BOARD>OPTION		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TR-DSP	Set whether or not to display the toner reduction function switch.	2
	Setting range 0: Do not display the ON/OFF screen. (Toner reduction is constantly turned on.) 1: Display the ON/OFF screen to enable switching.	

16.7 TEST (Test Print Mode)

16.7.1 COPIER

16.7.1.1 COPIER List

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1

1. PG

T-16-215

COPIER>TEST>PG		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TYPE	Input a type number for test print. Press the Start key and perform test print. (Be sure to return to 0 after completing test print.)	1
	Setting value 0: Image from CCD (normal print) 1 to 3: For development 4: 16 gradation 5: Halftone for the whole image 6: Grid 7 to 9: For development 10: MCBk Horizontal stripes 11: For development 12: YMCBk 64 gradation 13: For development 14: Full color 16 gradation 15 to 200: For development [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
TXPH	Set an image mode for test print.	1
	Setting value 0: Error diffusion 1: Screen with small line number [133 to 190 lines] 2: Screen with large line number [200 to 268 lines] 3: Screen for COPY [around 220 lines] 4: Screen for REOS [no screen structure] This mode is only valid for test print. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
THRU	Set whether or not to use the image correction table for test print.	1
	Setting value 0: ON (Use the table.) 1: OFF (Do not use the table.) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
DENS-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the density of each color for test print (TYPE=5).	1
	Setting range 0 to 255 When you increase the setting value, the density becomes higher. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 128]	
COLOR-Y/M/C/K	Set whether or not to display each color at each type. For example, to output a single M color, set COLOR-M to 1 and set other items to 0.	1
	Setting value 0: Do not display the color. 1: Display the color. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1]	
F/M-SW	Set whether to perform full-color output or mono-color output for PG output.	1
	Setting value 0: Full-color output 1: Mono-color output [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

COPIER>TEST>PG		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PG-PICK	Select a cassette used for test print.	1
	Setting value 1: Cassette 1 2: Cassette 2 3: Cassette 3 4: Cassette 4 5: Side deck 6: Manual feeding 7 to 8: Not used [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1]	
2-SIDE	Set an output mode for test print.	1
	Setting value 0: Single sided 1: Double sided [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
PG-QTY	Set an output mode for test print.	1
	Number of pages for test print 1 to 999 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1]	

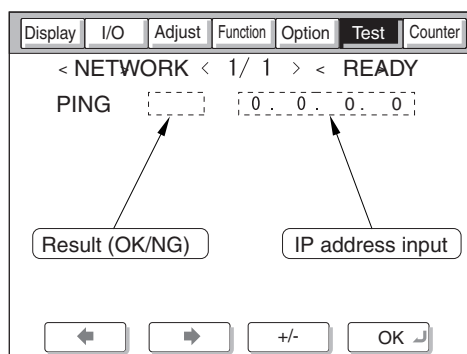
2. NETWORK

T-16-216

COPIER>TEST>NETWORK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PING	Check the connection between this machine and network (only for TCP/IP). This mode is used to check the network connection at installation or to check a problem in the network connection.	1
BML-DISP	Set a screen displayed for BMLinks. Set whether or not to only display a device configuration screen without displaying a job condition/history in the system status screen.	2
	Setting value 0: Display a normal system status screen. 1: Display a device configuration screen only. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

- 1) Turn off the main power switch.
- 2) Connect the network cable to this machine and turn on the main power switch.
- 3) Inform the system administrator of a user that installation of the main unit has been completed, and ask him/her to make network settings.
- 4) Inform the system administrator of a user that the network connection is going to be checked, and check the remote host address (IP address of a PC terminal in the user network) to send PING.
- 5) Select a service mode item (COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>PING), enter the IP address checked in Procedure 4 using numeric keys in the control panel, press the OK key, and press the Start key.
 - When the connection is made to the network successfully, OK is displayed. (Procedure is completed.)
 - When NG is displayed, first check the connection status of the network cable. If the connection is made normally, go to Procedure 6 shown below. If there is a problem in the connection, connect the cable again and perform Procedure 5.
- 6) Select a service mode item (COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>PING), enter the loopback address * (127.0.0.1), press the OK key, and press the Start key.
 - When NG is displayed, there is a problem in the TCP/IP setting for the machine. Go back to Procedure 3 and check the setting again.
 - When OK is displayed, there seems no problem in the TCP/IP setting for the machine. However, there may be a problem in the connection of the network interface board (NIC) or in the NIC itself, so check the connection in Procedure 7.

* Since the signal of a loopback address returns before reaching the NIC, it can check the TCP/IP setting of the machine.
- 7) Select a service mode item (COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>PING), enter a local host address (IP address of the machine), and press the OK key.
 - When NG is displayed, there may be a problem in the connection with NIC or in NIC itself, so check the connection or replace the NIC.
 - When OK is displayed, there seems no problem in the network setting of the machine and the NIC. In this case, there may be a problem in the network environment of the user, so contact the system administrator and ask him/her to take measures.



F-16-31

16.7.1.2 COPIER List

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. PG

T-16-217

COPIER > TEST > PG		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TYPE	Input a type number for test print. Press the Start key and perform test print. (Be sure to return to 0 after completing test print.)	1
	Setting value 0: Image from CCD (normal print) 1 to 3: For development 4: 16 gradation 5: Halftone for the whole image 6: Grid 7 to 9: For development 10: MCBk Horizontal stripes 11: For development 12: YMCBk 64 gradation 13: For development 14: Full color 16 gradation 15 to 200: For development [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
TXPH	Set an image mode for test print.	1
	Setting value 0: Error diffusion 1: Screen with small line number [133 to 190 lines] 2: Screen with large line number [200 to 268 lines] 3: Screen for COPY [around 220 lines] 4: Screen for REOS [no screen structure] This mode is only valid for test print. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
THRU	Set whether or not to use the image correction table for test print.	1
	Setting value 0: ON (Use the table.) 1: OFF (Do not use the table.) [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
DENS-Y/M/C/K	Adjust the density of each color for test print (TYPE=5).	1
	Setting range: 0 to 255 When you increase the setting value, the density becomes higher. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 128]	
COLOR-Y/M/C/K	Set whether or not to display each color at each type. For example, to output a single M color, set COLOR-M to 1 and set other items to 0.	1
	Setting value 0: Do not display the color. 1: Display the color. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1]	
F/M-SW	Set whether to perform full-color output or mono-color output for PG output.	1
	Setting value 0: Full-color output 1: Mono-color output [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
PG-PICK	Select a cassette used for test print.	1
	Setting value 1: Cassette 1 2: Cassette 2 3: Cassette 3 4: Cassette 4 5: Side deck 6: Manual feeding 7 to 8: Not used [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1]	

COPIER > TEST > PG		
Subheading	Contents	Level
2-SIDE	Set an output mode for test print.	1
	Setting value 0: Single sided 1: Double sided [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	
PG-QTY	Set an output mode for test print.	1
	Number of pages for test print: 1 to 999 [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 1]	
DENS-L	Setting of the L color density for test printing (TYPE=5) Setting value: 0 to 255	1
COLOR-L	Switch the L color output for each test pattern (PG TYPE). When setting this item to "1" and other items to "0", single clear color is output. Setting value: 0, 1 Standard value: 0	1

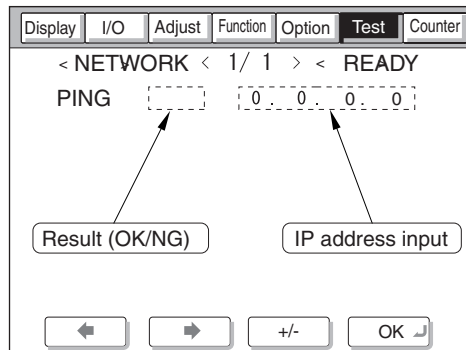
2. NETWORK

T-16-218

COPIER > TEST > NETWORK		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PING	Check the connection between this machine and network (only for TCP/IP). This mode is used to check the network connection at installation or to check a problem in the network connection.	1
BML-DISP	Set a screen displayed for BMLinks. Set whether or not to only display a device configuration screen without displaying a job condition/history in the system status screen.	2
	Setting value 0: Display a normal system status screen. 1: Display a device configuration screen only. [Factory setting value / Value after RAM clear: 0]	

- 1) Turn off the main power switch.
- 2) Connect the network cable to this machine and turn on the main power switch.
- 3) Inform the system administrator of a user that installation of the main unit has been completed, and ask him/her to make network settings.
- 4) Inform the system administrator of a user that the network connection is going to be checked, and check the remote host address (IP address of a PC terminal in the user network) to send PING.
- 5) Select a service mode item (COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>PING), enter the IP address checked in Procedure 4 using numeric keys in the control panel, press the OK key, and press the Start key.
 - When the connection is made to the network successfully, OK is displayed. (Procedure is completed.)
 - When NG is displayed, first check the connection status of the network cable. If the connection is made normally, go to Procedure 6 shown below. If there is a problem in the connection, connect the cable again and perform Procedure 5.
- 6) Select a service mode item (COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>PING), enter the loopback address * (127.0.0.1), press the OK key, and press the Start key.
 - When NG is displayed, there is a problem in the TCP/IP setting for the machine. Go back to Procedure 3 and check the setting again.
 - When OK is displayed, there seems no problem in the TCP/IP setting for the machine. However, there may be a problem in the connection of the network interface board (NIC) or in the NIC itself, so check the connection in Procedure 7.

* Since the signal of a loopback address returns before reaching the NIC, it can check the TCP/IP setting of the machine.
- 7) Select a service mode item (COPIER>TEST>NETWORK>PING), enter a local host access (IP address of the machine), and press the OK key.
 - When NG is displayed, there may be a problem in the connection with NIC or in NIC itself, so check the connection or replace the NIC.
 - When OK is displayed, there seems no problem in the network setting of the machine and the NIC. In this case, there may be a problem in the network environment of the user, so contact the system administrator and ask him/her to take measures.



F-16-32

16.8 COUNTER (Counter Mode)

16.8.1 COPIER

16.8.1.1 COPIER List

imagePRESS C1

1. TOTAL

T-16-219

COPIER>COUNTER>TOTAL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SERVICE1	Total counter 1 for service Count-up is performed when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. 'Clear' operation is possible. (Count-up is performed regardless of large or small size.) The counter value returns to "00000000 when it exceeds "99999999.	1
SERVICE2	Total counter 2 for service Count-up is performed when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. 'Clear' operation is possible. (The count-up value is incremented by 2 for large size, and 1 for small size.) The counter value returns to "00000000 when it exceeds "99999999.	1
COPY	Total copy counter Count-up is performed when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to "00000000 when it exceeds "99999999.	1
PDL-PRT	PDL print counter Count-up is performed for PDL printing according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to "00000000 when it exceeds "99999999.	1
FAX-PRT	FAX reception print counter Count-up is performed for FAX reception according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
BOX-PRT	BOX print counter Count-up is performed for BOX printing according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
RPT-PRT	Report print counter Count-up is performed for report printing according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
2-SIDE	Double-sided copy/print counter Count-up is performed for the number of double-sided copy/print according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
SCAN	Scan counter Count-up is performed for the number of scanning when reading is completed. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1

2. PICK-UP

T-16-220

COPIER>COUNTER>PICK-UP		
Subheading	Contents	Level
C1/2/3/4	Pickup total counter for Cassette 1/2/3/4 Display the number of paper fed from Cassette 1/2/3/4. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1

COPIER>COUNTER>PICK-UP		
Subheading	Contents	Level
MF	Manual pickup total counter Display the number of paper fed from the manual feed unit. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
DK	Deck pickup total counter Display the number of paper fed from the deck pickup unit. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
2-SIDE	Double-sided pickup total counter Display the number of paper picked up in double-sided mode. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1

3. FEEDER

T-16-221

COPIER>COUNTER>FEEDER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FEED	Total counter for document feed by ADF	1
DFOP-CNT	Display the number of times the ADF hinge is opened/closed. Function to count the number of times ADF is opened/closed. Setting range 00000000 to 99999999	1

4. JAM

T-16-222

COPIER>COUNTER>JAM		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TOTAL	Total jam counter for the copier	1
FEEDER	Total jam counter for the feeder	1
SORTER	Total jam counter for the finisher	1
2-SIDE	Jam counter for the unit for double-sided copy	1
MF	Jam counter for manual feed	1
C1/2/3/4	Jam counter for Cassette 1/2/3/4	1
DK	Jam counter for the side paper deck	1

5.MISC

Counts in the Service Mode <MISC> are categorized into the following 5 count types.

Type 1:
B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 4 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 8 counts

Type 2:
B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 3 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 6 counts

Type 3:
B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 1 count
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 2 counts

Type 4:
B&W / Full color: 1 count

Type 5:
B&W Not counted Full color 1 count

T-16-223

COPIER>COUNTER>MISC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DV-CAR-Y	Starter of the Y color developing unit. (Not used in this equipment.) Estimated life: 500,000 prints Count type 3 S=1, L=2	1

COPIER>COUNTER>MISC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DV-CAR-M	Starter of the M color developing unit.(Not used in this equipment.) Estimated life: 500,000 prints Count type 3 S=1, L=2	1
DV-CAR-C	Starter of the C color developing unit.(Not used in this equipment.) Estimated life: 500,000 prints Count type 3 S=1, L=2	1
B-POT-P	Potential control plate counter Estimated life: 120,000 images (30,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8 This item requires cleaning.	1
ITB-SCLP	ITB inner scraper counter Estimated life: 120,000 images (30,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8 This item requires cleaning.	1
2TC-BOX	Secondary transfer leaner waste toner case counter Estimated life: 50,000 images Count type 3 S=1, L=2 This item requires cleaning.	1
DV-CAR-K	Starter of the Bk color developing unit. (Not used in this equipment.) Estimated life: 500,000 images Count type 3 S=1, L=2	1

6. PRDC-1

All values in the service mode items under COPIER/COUNTER/PRDC-1 are maintained in the main controller PCB.

Counter values in the service mode <PRDC-1> are classified into the following five types.

Type 1:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 4 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 8 counts

Type 2:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 3 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 6 counts

Type 3:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 1 count
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 2 counts

Type 4:

B&W / Full color: 1 count

Type 5:

B&W Not counted Full color 1 count

T-16-224

COPIER>COUNTER>PRDC-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRM-WIRE	Primary corona wire counter Estimated life: 100,000 images (25,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PRM-GRID	Primary grid plate counter Estimated life: 100,000 images (25,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PO-WIRE	Pre-transfer corona wire counter Estimated life: 100,000 images (25,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1

COPIER>COUNTER>PRDC-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRM-CLN	Pad holder (primary) counter Estimated life: 100,000 images (25,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PO-CLN	Pad holder (pre-transfer) counter Estimated life: 100,000 images (25,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PRM-CLN2	Primary charging wire cleaner 2: replacement volume Replacement timing: 100000 image (25000 sheets) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PO-CLN2	Slider (pre-transfer) counter Estimated life: 100,000-image (25,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PO-UNIT	Pre-transfer charging assembly counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PRM-UNIT	Primary charging assembly counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
FIX-TH1	Fixing assembly main thermistor (TH1) counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FIX-TH2	Fixing assembly sub thermistor (TH2) counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-TSW	Fixing assembly thermo switch (TP1) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-EX-TS	Outside heating thermo switch (TP2) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
OZ-FIL1	Ozone filter (left) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
OZ-FIL2	Ozone filter (right) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
AR-FIL1	Air filter counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
AR-FIL2	Air filter (1) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1

COPIER>COUNTER>PRDC-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
AR-FIL3	Air filter (2) host machine rear counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
AR-FIL4	Air filter (2) host machine left counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
AR-FIL5	Air filter (3) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
TN-FIL1	Toner filter (left) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
TN-FIL2	Toner filter (right) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
TN-FIL3	Toner filter (rear) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
FXLW-TH1	Inlet main thermistor counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FXLW-TH2	Inlet sub thermistor counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FXEX-TH1	Outside heating main thermistor counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FXEX-TH2	Outside heating sub thermistor counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1

7. DRBL-1

<How to see periodically replaced/durable parts counter>

This machine has periodically replaced/durable parts counter (PRDC-1/DRBL-1/DRBL-2), which can be used to check the target of replacing periodically replaced/durable parts.

<Example>

```
PRE-WIRE / 00000027 / 00500000 / 0% !! 82
  [1]      [2]      [3]   [4] [5] [6]
```

F-16-33

[1]: Parts name is displayed. Primary charging wire in the example.

[2]: Counter value (actual usage of sheets) is displayed. Clear the value by clear key at replacement of parts.

[3]: Limit value (target of replacement) is displayed. The value can be changed by selecting item and pressing the numeric pad. After changing, press OK key.

[4]: The ratio the counter value to limit value is displayed.

[5]: One (!) is displayed when the ratio is 90 to 100%. Two (!!) is displayed at 100% or more. Not displayed in the example.

[6]: Predicted number of days to replacement is displayed. 82 days in the example.

<DRBL-1> items shown below are maintained in the DC controller PCB and main controller PCB.

- Main controller PCB

T-CLN-BD, TR-BLT, TR-ROLL, 1TR-STC, 2TR-INRL, CLN-BLD, CL-SUPS, BS-SL-F, BS-SL-R, C1-PU-RL, C1-SP-RL, C1-FD-RL, C2-PU-RL, C2-SP-RL, C2-FD-RL, C3-PU-RL, C3-SP-RL, C3-FD-RL, C4-PU-RL, C4-SP-RL, C4-FD-RL, M-PU-RL, M-SP-RL, FX-IN-BS, FX-WEB, FX-EX-RL, FX-EX-BS, DLV-UCLW, DLV-LCLW, FX-LB-ST, FX-LB-PD, FX-LB-PC, FX-LB-OR, FX-EX-C1, DEV-CL, BS-SL-F2, BS-SL-R2, DMR-CLN, 2TR-BLD, 2TR-CLN

- DC controller PCB

DV-UNT-C, DV-UNT-Y, DV-UNT-M, DV-UNT-K, FX-UP-RL, FX-BL-CT, TB-CLN2, ITB-CLN1



When replacing the main controller PCB or DC controller PCB, execute the service mode COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC>P-PRINT and keep the printout.

Counter values in the service mode <DRBL-1> are classified into the following five types.

Type 1:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 4 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 8 counts

Type 2:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 3 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 6 counts

Type 3:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 1 count
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 2 counts

Type 4:

B&W / Full color: 1 count

Type 5:

B&W Not counted Full color 1 count

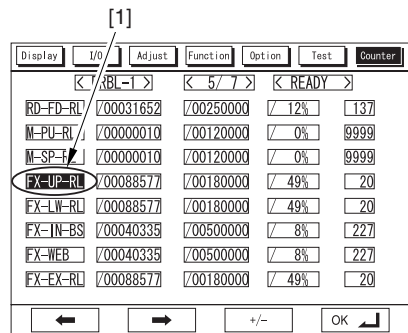
T-16-225

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
T-CLN-BD	Bias roller cleaning blade counter Estimated life: 150,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
TR-BLT	ITB counter Estimated life: 300,000-image (75,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
TR-ROLL	Secondary transfer outer roller counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
1TR-STC	Primary transfer roller counter Estimated life: 300,000-image (75,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
2TR-INRL	Secondary transfer inside roller counter Estimated life: 300,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
PT-DRM	Photosensitive drum counter Estimated life: 100,000-image Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
CLN-BLD	Cleaning blade counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
CL-SUPS	Scoop-up sheet counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
BS-SL-F	Seal support plate (front) counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
BS-SL-R	Seal support plate (rear) counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
DV-UNT-C	C developing assembly counter Estimated life: 500,000-image Count type: Type 5	1
DV-UNT-Y	Y developing assembly counter Estimated life: 500,000-image Count type: Type 5	1
DV-UNT-M	M developing assembly counter Estimated life: 500,000-image Count type: Type 5	1
DV-UNT-K	BK developing assembly counter Estimated life: 500,000-image Count type: Type 4	1
C1-PU-RL	Cassette 1 pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-image Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C1-SP-RL	Cassette 1 separation roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C1-FD-RL	Cassette 1 feed roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C2-PU-RL	Cassette 2 pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C2-SP-RL	Cassette 2 separation roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C2-FD-RL	Cassette 2 feed roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C3-PU-RL	Cassette 3 pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C3-SP-RL	Cassette 3 separation roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C3-FD-RL	Cassette 3 feed roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C4-PU-RL	Cassette 4 pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C4-SP-RL	Cassette 4 separation roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
C4-FD-RL	Cassette 4 feed roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
M-PU-RL	Manual feeder pickup roller counter Estimated life: 120,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
M-SP-RL	Manual feeder separation roller counter Estimated life: 120,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-UP-RL	Fixing roller counter Estimated life: 200,000-print Count type: Type 2 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=3, L=6	1

MEMO:
Entering the Initial Reading
Highlight the counter reading [1], and type in the initial reading (from before the replacement work).



F-16-34



The reading '18,000' (denominator) for [FX-UP-RL] may be changed, but a change will not affect the stored data, i.e., it will return to '180,000' when a different page is brought up or the power is turned off and then back on. To change the stored data (denominator), change the setting in the following service mode item: COPIER>OPTION>BODY>FXWRNLVL.
The reading may be changed to any of the following three: 180,000/150,000/120,000.

T-16-226

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FX-IN-BS	Fixing heat-insulating bush counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-WEB	Fixing web counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2 In case of replacing web, reset in the following: COPIER > COUNTER > MISC > FIX-WEB, COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX-WEB	1
FX-EX-RL	External heat roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-EX-BS	External heat roller heat insulating bush counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DLV-UCLW	Delivery upper separation plate counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
DLV-LCLW	Delivery lower separation claw counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-LB-ST	Fixing belt steering roller counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Counter type: type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-LB-PD	Fixing belt pressure pad counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-LB-PC	Fixing belt pressure pad cover counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-LB-OR	Fixing belt oil-coated roller counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-EX-C1	Outside heating roller cleaner counter The frequency in the use of the durable parts of the copier indicates the estimated life. Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-BL-CT	Fixing belt counter The frequency in the use of the durable parts of the copier indicates the estimated life. Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
DEV-CL	Developing clutch counter Estimated life: 2,000,000-image (500,000-print) BK=1 (S/L) CL=4 (S/L) (In case of 6C, +6)	1
BS-SL-F2	End seal (front) counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
BS-SL-R2	End seal (rear) counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
ITB-CLN2	ITB cleaner brush 18 mm dia counter Estimated life: 150,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
ITB-CLN1	ITB cleaner brush 21 mm dia counter Estimated life: 150,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
DMR-CLN	Drum cleaner brush counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
2TR-BLD	Secondary transfer bias roller cleaning blade counter Estimated life: 150,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
2TR-CLN	Secondary transfer cleaner brush counter (Not in use in this machine) Estimated life: 150,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-RF-RL	Refresh roller life counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1

8. DRBL-2

<DRBL-2> items shown below are maintained in the DC controller PCB and main controller PCB.

- Main controller PCB
DF-PU-RL, DF-FD-RL, DF-SP-BL, DF-F-BLT, DF-HNG-L, DF-HNG-R, PD-PU-RL, PD-SP-RL, PD-FD-RL

- DC controller PCB
FIN-STPR, SDL-STPL, FN-BFFRL



When replacing the main controller PCB or DC controller PCB, execute the service mode COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC>P-PRINT and keep the printout.

T-16-227

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DF-PU-RL	DF pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Large: 1 count Small: 1 count	1
DF-FD-RL	DF pickup/feeding roller counter Estimated life: 80,000-print Large: 1 count Small: 2 counts	1
DF-SP-BL	DF separation belt counter Estimated life: 80,000-print Large: 1 count Small: 2 counts	1
DF-F-BLT	DF feeding belt counter Estimated life: 200,000-print Pickup number (1-sided: S=1, L=1; 2-sided: S=3, L=3)	1
DF-HNG-L	DF left hinge counter Estimated life: 100,000-print 1 count with 1 set of DF opening/closing	1
DF-HNG-R	DF right hinge counter Estimated life: 100,000-print 1 count with 1 set of DF opening/closing	1
DF-SP-M	Not used	-
DF-DL-RL	Not used	-
DF-DL-M	Not used	-
DF-TRL-U	Not used	-
PD-PU-RL	Paper deck pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Pickup number (S:1, L:2)	1
PD-SP-RL	Paper deck separation roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Deck pickup cumulated number Printed number (S:1, L:2)	1
PD-FD-RL	Paper deck feeding roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Deck pickup cumulated number Printed number (S:1, L:2)	1
SORT	Not used	-
FIN-STPR	Finisher stapler counter Estimated life: 500,000-print (Retain the counter value at the DC controller PCB)	1
SADDLE	Not used	-
SDL-STPL	Finisher saddle staple counter Estimated life: 100,000-print (Retain the counter value at the DC controller PCB)	1

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PUNCH	Not used	-
FN-BFFRL	Finisher buffer roller counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-print (Retain the counter value at the DC controller PCB) 1 operation with 1 paper pass through the buffer roller	1

16.8.1.2 COPIER List

imagePRESS C1 P

1. TOTAL

T-16-228

COPIER>COUNTER>TOTAL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SERVICE1	Total counter 1 for service Count-up is performed when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. 'Clear' operation is possible. (Count-up is performed regardless of large or small size.) The counter value returns to "00000000 when it exceeds "99999999.	1
SERVICE2	Total counter 2 for service Count-up is performed when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. 'Clear' operation is possible. (The count-up value is incremented by 2 for large size, and 1 for small size.) The counter value returns to "00000000 when it exceeds "99999999.	1
COPY	Total copy counter Count-up is performed when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to "00000000 when it exceeds "99999999.	1
PDL-PRT	PDL print counter Count-up is performed for PDL printing according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to "00000000 when it exceeds "99999999.	1
FAX-PRT	FAX reception print counter Count-up is performed for FAX reception according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
BOX-PRT	BOX print counter Count-up is performed for BOX printing according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
RPT-PRT	Report print counter Count-up is performed for report printing according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
2-SIDE	Double-sided copy/print counter Count-up is performed for the number of double-sided copy/print according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1

2. PICK-UP

T-16-229

COPIER>COUNTER>PICK-UP		
Subheading	Contents	Level
C1/2/3/4	Pickup total counter for Cassette 1/2/3/4 Display the number of paper fed from Cassette 1/2/3/4. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
MF	Manual pickup total counter Display the number of paper fed from the manual feed unit. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
DK	Deck pickup total counter Display the number of paper fed from the deck pickup unit. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
2-SIDE	Double-sided pickup total counter Display the number of paper picked up in double-sided mode. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1

3. FEEDER

T-16-230

COPIER>COUNTER>FEEDER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FEED	Total counter for document feed by ADF	1

4. JAM

T-16-231

COPIER>COUNTER>JAM		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TOTAL	Total jam counter for the copier	1
SORTER	Total jam counter for the finisher	1
2-SIDE	Jam counter for the unit for double-sided copy	1
MF	Jam counter for manual feed	1
C1/2/3/4	Jam counter for Cassette 1/2/3/4	1
DK	Jam counter for the side paper deck	1

5.MISC

Counts in the Service Mode <MISC> are categorized into the following 5 count types.

Type 1:
B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 4 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 8 counts

Type 2:
B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 3 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 6 counts

Type 3:
B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 1 count
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 2 counts

Type 4:
B&W / Full color: 1 count

Type 5:
B&W Not counted Full color 1 count

T-16-232

COPIER>>COUNTER>MISC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DV-CAR-Y	Starter of the Y color developing unit. (Not used in this equipment.) Estimated life: 500,000 prints Count type 3 S=1, L=2	1
DV-CAR-M	Starter of the M color developing unit.(Not used in this equipment.) Estimated life: 500,000 prints Count type 3 S=1, L=2	1

COPIER>>COUNTER>MISC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DV-CAR-C	Starter of the C color developing unit.(Not used in this equipment.) Estimated life: 500,000 prints Count type 3 S=1, L=2	1
B-POT-P	Potential control plate counter Estimated life: 120,000 images (30,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8 This item requires cleaning.	1
ITB-SCLP	ITB inner scraper counter Estimated life: 120,000 images (30,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8 This item requires cleaning.	1
ZTC-BOX	Secondary transfer leaner waste toner case counter Estimated life: 50,000 images Count type 3 S=1, L=2 This item requires cleaning.	1
DV-CAR-K	Starter of the Bk color developing unit. (Not used in this equipment.) Estimated life: 500,000 images Count type 3 S=1, L=2	1

6. PRDC-1

All values in the service mode items under COPIER/COUNTER/PRDC-1 are maintained in the main controller PCB.

Counter values in the service mode <PRDC-1> are classified into the following five types.

Type 1:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 4 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 8 counts

Type 2:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 3 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 6 counts

Type 3:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 1 count
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 2 counts

Type 4:

B&W / Full color: 1 count

Type 5:

B&W Not counted Full color 1 count

T-16-233

COPIER>COUNTER>PRDC-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRM-WIRE	Primary corona wire counter Estimated life: 100,000 images (25,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PRM-GRID	Primary grid plate counter Estimated life: 100,000 images (25,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PO-WIRE	Pre-transfer corona wire counter Estimated life: 100,000 images (25,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PRM-CLN	Pad holder (primary) counter Estimated life: 100,000 images (25,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1

COPIER>COUNTER>PRDC-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PO-CLN	Pad holder (pre-transfer) counter Estimated life: 100,000 images (25,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PRM-CLN2	Primary charging wire cleaner 2: replacement volume Replacement timing: 100000 image (25000 sheets) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PO-CLN2	Slider (pre-transfer) counter Estimated life: 100,000-image (25,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PO-UNIT	Pre-transfer charging assembly counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PRM-UNIT	Primary charging assembly counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
FIX-TH1	Fixing assembly main thermistor (TH1) counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FIX-TH2	Fixing assembly sub thermistor (TH2) counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-TSW	Fixing assembly thermo switch (TP1) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-EX-TS	Outside heating thermo switch (TP2) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
OZ-FIL1	Ozone filter (left) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
OZ-FIL2	Ozone filter (right) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
AR-FIL1	Air filter counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
AR-FIL2	Air filter (1) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
AR-FIL3	Air filter (2) host machine rear counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1

COPIER>COUNTER>PRDC-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
AR-FIL4	Air filter (2) host machine left counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
AR-FIL5	Air filter (3) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
TN-FIL1	Toner filter (left) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
TN-FIL2	Toner filter (right) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
TN-FIL3	Toner filter (rear) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
FXLW-TH1	Inlet main thermistor counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FXLW-TH2	Inlet sub thermistor counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FXEX-TH1	Outside heating main thermistor counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FXEX-TH2	Outside heating sub thermistor counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1

7. DRBL-1

<How to see periodically replaced/durable parts counter>

This machine has periodically replaced/durable parts counter (PRDC-1/DRBL-1/DRBL-2), which can be used to check the target of replacing periodically replaced/durable parts.

<Example>

```
PRE-WIRE / 00000027 / 00500000 / 0% !! 82
  [1]      [2]      [3]    [4] [5] [6]
```

F-16-35

[1]: Parts name is displayed. Primary charging wire in the example.

[2]: Counter value (actual usage of sheets) is displayed. Clear the value by clear key at replacement of parts.

[3]: Limit value (target of replacement) is displayed. The value can be changed by selecting item and pressing the numeric pad. After changing, press OK key.

[4]: The ratio the counter value to limit value is displayed.

[5]: One (!) is displayed when the ratio is 90 to 100%. Two (!) is displayed at 100% or more. Not displayed in the example.

[6]: Predicted number of days to replacement is displayed. 82 days in the example.

<DRBL-1> items shown below are maintained in the DC controller PCB and main controller PCB.

- Main controller PCB

T-CLN-BD, TR-BLT, TR-ROLL, 1TR-STC, 2TR-INRL, CLN-BLD, CL-SUPS, BS-SL-F, BS-SL-R, C1-PU-RL, C1-SP-RL, C1-FD-RL, C2-PU-RL, C2-SP-RL, C2-FD-RL, C3-PU-RL, C3-SP-RL, C3-FD-RL, C4-PU-RL, C4-SP-RL, C4-FD-RL, M-PU-RL, M-SP-RL, FX-IN-BS, FX-WEB, FX-EX-RL, FX-EX-BS, DLV-UCLW, DLV-LCLW, FX-LB-ST, FX-LB-PD, FX-LB-PC, FX-LB-OR, FX-EX-C1, DEV-CL, BS-SL-F2, BS-SL-R2, DMR-CLN, 2TR-BLD, 2TR-CLN

- DC controller PCB
DV-UNT-C, DV-UNT-Y, DV-UNT-M, DV-UNT-K, FX-UP-RL, FX-BL-CT, TB-CLN2, ITB-CLN1



When replacing the main controller PCB or DC controller PCB, execute the service mode COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC>P-PRINT and keep the printout.

Counter values in the service mode <DRBL-1> are classified into the following five types.

Type 1:
B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 4 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 8 counts

Type 2:
B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 3 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 6 counts

Type 3:
B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 1 count
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 2 counts

Type 4:
B&W / Full color: 1 count

Type 5:
B&W Not counted Full color 1 count

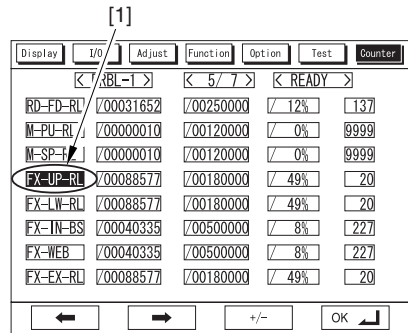
T-16-234

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
T-CLN-BD	Bias roller cleaning blade counter Estimated life: 150,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
TR-BLT	ITB counter Estimated life: 300,000-image (75,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
TR-ROLL	Secondary transfer outer roller counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
ITR-STC	Primary transfer roller counter Estimated life: 300,000-image (75,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
2TR-INRL	Secondary transfer inside roller counter Estimated life: 300,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
PT-DRM	Photosensitive drum counter Estimated life: 100,000-image Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
CLN-BLD	Cleaning blade counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
CL-SUPS	Scoop-up sheet counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
BS-SL-F	Seal support plate (front) counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
BS-SL-R	Seal support plate (rear) counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
DV-UNT-C	C developing assembly counter Estimated life: 500,000-image Count type: Type 5	1
DV-UNT-Y	Y developing assembly counter Estimated life: 500,000-image Count type: Type 5	1
DV-UNT-M	M developing assembly counter Estimated life: 500,000-image Count type: Type 5	1
DV-UNT-K	BK developing assembly counter Estimated life: 500,000-image Count type: Type 4	1
C1-PU-RL	Cassette 1 pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-image Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C1-SP-RL	Cassette 1 separation roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C1-FD-RL	Cassette 1 feed roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C2-PU-RL	Cassette 2 pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C2-SP-RL	Cassette 2 separation roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C2-FD-RL	Cassette 2 feed roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C3-PU-RL	Cassette 3 pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C3-SP-RL	Cassette 3 separation roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C3-FD-RL	Cassette 3 feed roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C4-PU-RL	Cassette 4 pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C4-SP-RL	Cassette 4 separation roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C4-FD-RL	Cassette 4 feed roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
M-PU-RL	Manual feeder pickup roller counter Estimated life: 120,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
M-SP-RL	Manual feeder separation roller counter Estimated life: 120,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-UP-RL	Fixing roller counter Estimated life: 200,000-print Count type: Type 2 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=3, L=6	1

MEMO:
Entering the Initial Reading
Highlight the counter reading [1], and type in the initial reading (from before the replacement work).



F-16-36



The reading '18,000' (denominator) for [FX-UP-RL] may be changed, but a change will not affect the stored data, i.e., it will return to '180,000' when a different page is brought up or the power is turned off and then back on. To change the stored data (denominator), change the setting in the following service mode item: COPIER>OPTION>BODY>FXWRNLVL.

The reading may be changed to any of the following three: 180,000/150,000/120,000.

T-16-235

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FX-IN-BS	Fixing heat-insulating bush counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-WEB	Fixing web counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2 In case of replacing web, reset in the following: COPIER > COUNTER > MISC > FIX-WEB, COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX-WEB	1
FX-EX-RL	External heat roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-EX-BS	External heat roller heat insulating bush counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
DLV-UCLW	Delivery upper separation plate counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
DLV-LCLW	Delivery lower separation claw counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FX-LB-ST	Fixing belt steering roller counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Counter type: type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-LB-PD	Fixing belt pressure pad counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-LB-PC	Fixing belt pressure pad cover counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-LB-OR	Fixing belt oil-coated roller counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-EX-C1	Outside heating roller cleaner counter The frequency in the use of the durable parts of the copier indicates the estimated life. Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-BL-CT	Fixing belt counter The frequency in the use of the durable parts of the copier indicates the estimated life. Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
DEV-CL	Developing clutch counter Estimated life: 2,000,000-image (500,000-print) BK=1 (S/L) CL=4 (S/L) (In case of 6C, +6)	1
BS-SL-F2	End seal (front) counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
BS-SL-R2	End seal (rear) counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
ITB-CLN2	ITB cleaner brush 18 mm dia counter Estimated life: 150,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
ITB-CLN1	ITB cleaner brush 21 mm dia counter Estimated life: 150,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
DMR-CLN	Drum cleaner brush counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
2TR-BLD	Secondary transfer bias roller cleaning blade counter Estimated life: 150,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
2TR-CLN	Secondary transfer cleaner brush counter (Not in use in this machine) Estimated life: 150,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-RF-RL	Refresh roller life counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1

8. DRBL-2

<DRBL-2> items shown below are maintained in the DC controller PCB and main controller PCB.

- Main controller PCB
PD-PU-RL, PD-SP-RL, PD-FD-RL
- DC controller PCB
FIN-STPR, SDL-STPL, FN-BFFRL



When replacing the main controller PCB or DC controller PCB, execute the service mode COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC>P-PRINT and keep the printout.

T-16-236

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PD-PU-RL	Paper deck pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Pickup number (S:1, L:2)	1
PD-SP-RL	Paper deck separation roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Deck pickup cumulated number Printed number (S:1, L:2)	1
PD-FD-RL	Paper deck feeding roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Deck pickup cumulated number Printed number (S:1, L:2)	1
SORT	Not used	-
FIN-STPR	Finisher stapler counter Estimated life: 500,000-print (Retain the counter value at the DC controller PCB)	1
SADDLE	Not used	-
SDL-STPL	Finisher saddle staple counter Estimated life: 100,000-print (Retain the counter value at the DC controller PCB)	1
PUNCH	Not used	-
FN-BFFRL	Finisher buffer roller counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-print (Retain the counter value at the DC controller PCB) 1 operation with 1 paper pass through the buffer roller	1

16.8.1.3 COPIER List

imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

1. TOTAL

T-16-237

COPIER > COUNTER > TOTAL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
SERVICE1	Total counter 1 for service Count-up is performed when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. 'Clear' operation is possible. (Count-up is performed regardless of large or small size.) The counter value returns to "00000000 when it exceeds "99999999.	1
SERVICE2	Total counter 2 for service Count-up is performed when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. 'Clear' operation is possible. (The count-up value is incremented by 2 for large size, and 1 for small size.) The counter value returns to "00000000 when it exceeds "99999999.	1
COPY	Total copy counter Count-up is performed when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to "00000000 when it exceeds "99999999.	1

COPIER > COUNTER > TOTAL		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PDL-PRT	PDL print counter Count-up is performed for PDL printing according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to "00000000 when it exceeds "99999999.	1
FAX-PRT	FAX reception print counter Count-up is performed for FAX reception according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
BOX-PRT	BOX print counter Count-up is performed for BOX printing according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
RPT-PRT	Report print counter Count-up is performed for report printing according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
2-SIDE	Double-sided copy/print counter Count-up is performed for the number of double-sided copy/print according to the charging counter when printed paper is delivered from the machine or stacked in double-sided mode. Count-up is not performed when a blank sheet is output. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
SCAN	Scan counter Count-up is performed for the number of scanning when reading is completed. The counter value is incremented by 1 for each of large/small size. 'Clear' operation is possible. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1

2. PICK-UP

T-16-238

COPIER > COUNTER > PICK-UP		
Subheading	Contents	Level
C1/2/3/4	Pickup total counter for Cassette 1/2/3/4 Display the number of paper fed from Cassette 1/2/3/4. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
MF	Manual pickup total counter Display the number of paper fed from the manual feed unit. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
DK	Deck pickup total counter Display the number of paper fed from the deck pickup unit. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1
2-SIDE	Double-sided pickup total counter Display the number of paper picked up in double-sided mode. The counter value returns to 00000000 when it exceeds 99999999.	1

3. FEEDER

T-16-239

COPIER > COUNTER > FEEDER		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FEED	Total counter for document feed by ADF	1
DFOP-CNT	Display the number of times the ADF hinge is opened/closed. Function to count the number of times ADF is opened/closed. Setting range: 00000000 to 99999999	1

4. JAM

COPIER > COUNTER > JAM		
Subheading	Contents	Level
TOTAL	Total jam counter for the copier	1
FEEDER	Total jam counter for the feeder	1
SORTER	Total jam counter for the finisher	1
2-SIDE	Jam counter for the unit for double-sided copy	1
MF	Jam counter for manual feed	1
C1/2/3/4	Jam counter for Cassette 1/2/3/4	1
DK	Jam counter for the side paper deck	1

5. MISC

Counts in the Service Mode <MISC> are categorized into the following 5 count types.

Type 1:
B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 4 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 8 counts

Type 2:
B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 3 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 6 counts

Type 3:
B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 1 count
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 2 counts

Type 4:
B&W / Full color: 1 count

Type 5:
B&W Not counted Full color 1 count

COPIER > COUNTER > MISC		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DV-CAR-Y	Starter of the Y color developing unit. (Not used in this equipment.) Estimated life: 500,000 prints Count type 3 S=1, L=2	1
DV-CAR-M	Starter of the M color developing unit.(Not used in this equipment.) Estimated life: 500,000 prints Count type 3 S=1, L=2	1
DV-CAR-C	Starter of the C color developing unit.(Not used in this equipment.) Estimated life: 500,000 prints Count type 3 S=1, L=2	1
B-POT-P	Potential control plate counter Estimated life: 120,000 images (30,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8 This item requires cleaning.	1
ITB-SCLP	ITB inner scraper counter Estimated life: 120,000 images (30,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8 This item requires cleaning.	1
2TC-BOX	Secondary transfer leaner waste toner case counter Estimated life: 50,000 images Count type 3 S=1, L=2 This item requires cleaning.	1
DV-CAR-K	Starter of the Bk color developing unit. (Not used in this equipment.) Estimated life: 500,000 images Count type 3 S=1, L=2	1

6. PRDC-1

All values in the service mode items under COPIER/COUNTER/PRDC-1 are maintained in the main controller PCB.

Counter values in the service mode <PRDC-1> are classified into the following five types.

Type 1:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 4 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 8 counts

Type 2:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 3 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 6 counts

Type 3:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 1 count
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 2 counts

Type 4:

B&W / Full color: 1 count

Type 5:

B&W Not counted Full color 1 count

T-16-242

COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
PRM-WIRE	Primary corona wire counter Estimated life: 100,000 images (25,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PRM-GRID	Primary grid plate counter Estimated life: 100,000 images (25,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PO-WIRE	Pre-transfer corona wire counter Estimated life: 100,000 images (25,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PRM-CLN	Pad holder (primary) counter Estimated life: 100,000 images (25,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PO-CLN	Pad holder (pre-transfer) counter Estimated life: 100,000 images (25,000 prints) Count type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PRM-CLN2	Primary charging wire cleaner 2: replacement volume Replacement timing: 100000 image (25000 sheets) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PO-CLN2	Slider (pre-transfer) counter Estimated life: 100,000-image (25,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PO-UNIT	Pre-transfer charging assembly counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
PRM-UNIT	Primary charging assembly counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
FIX-TH1	Fixing assembly main thermistor (TH1) counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1

COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FIX-TH2	Fixing assembly sub thermistor (TH2) counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-TSW	Fixing assembly thermo switch (TP1) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-EX-TS	Outside heating thermo switch (TP2) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
OZ-FIL1	Ozone filter (left) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
OZ-FIL2	Ozone filter (right) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
AR-FIL1	Air filter counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
AR-FIL2	Air filter (1) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
AR-FIL3	Air filter (2) host machine rear counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
AR-FIL4	Air filter (2) host machine left counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
AR-FIL5	Air filter (3) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
TN-FIL1	Toner filter (left) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
TN-FIL2	Toner filter (right) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
TN-FIL3	Toner filter (rear) counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-image (250,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
FXLW-TH1	Inlet main thermistor counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1

COPIER > COUNTER > PRDC-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FXLW-TH2	Inlet sub thermistor counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FXEX-TH1	Outside heating main thermistor counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FXEX-TH2	Outside heating sub thermistor counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1

7. DRBL-1

<How to see periodically replaced/durable parts counter>

This machine has periodically replaced/durable parts counter (PRDC-1/DRBL-1/DRBL-2), which can be used to check the target of replacing periodically replaced/durable parts.

<Example>

```
PRE-WIRE / 00000027 / 00500000 / 0% !! 82
  [1]      [2]      [3]    [4] [5] [6]
```

F-16-37

[1]: Parts name is displayed. Primary charging wire in the example.

[2]: Counter value (actual usage of sheets) is displayed. Clear the value by clear key at replacement of parts.

[3]: Limit value (target of replacement) is displayed. The value can be changed by selecting item and pressing the numeric pad. After changing, press OK key.

[4]: The ratio the counter value to limit value is displayed.

[5]: One (!) is displayed when the ratio is 90 to 100%. Two (!) is displayed at 100% or more. Not displayed in the example.

[6]: Predicted number of days to replacement is displayed. 82 days in the example.

<DRBL-1> items shown below are maintained in the DC controller PCB and main controller PCB.

- Main controller PCB

T-CLN-BD, TR-BLT, TR-ROLL, 1TR-STC, 2TR-INRL, CLN-BLD, CL-SUPS, BS-SL-F, BS-SL-R, C1-PU-RL, C1-SP-RL, C1-FD-RL, C2-PU-RL, C2-SP-RL, C2-FD-RL, C3-PU-RL, C3-SP-RL, C3-FD-RL, C4-PU-RL, C4-SP-RL, C4-FD-RL, M-PU-RL, M-SP-RL, FX-IN-BS, FX-WEB, FX-EX-RL, FX-EX-BS, DLV-UCLW, DLV-LCLW, FX-LB-ST, FX-LB-PD, FX-LB-PC, FX-LB-OR, FX-EX-C1, DEV-CL, BS-SL-F2, BS-SL-R2, DMR-CLN, 2TR-BLD, 2TR-CLN

- DC controller PCB

DV-UNT-C, DV-UNT-Y, DV-UNT-M, DV-UNT-K, FX-UP-RL, FX-BL-CT, TB-CLN2, ITB-CLN1



When replacing the main controller PCB or DC controller PCB, execute the service mode COPIER>FUNCTION>MISC>P-PRINT and keep the printout.

Counter values in the service mode <DRBL-1> are classified into the following five types.

Type 1:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 4 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 8 counts

Type 2:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 3 counts
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 6 counts

Type 3:

B&W Size S: 1 count Full color Size S: 1 count
Size L: 2 counts Size L: 2 counts

Type 4:

B&W / Full color: 1 count

Type 5:

B&W Not counted Full color 1 count

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
T-CLN-BD	Bias roller cleaning blade counter Estimated life: 150,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
TR-BLT	ITB counter Estimated life: 300,000-image (75,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
TR-ROLL	Secondary transfer outer roller counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
ITR-STC	Primary transfer roller counter Estimated life: 300,000-image (75,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
2TR-INRL	Secondary transfer inside roller counter Estimated life: 300,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
PT-DRM	Photosensitive drum counter Estimated life: 100,000-image Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
CLN-BLD	Cleaning blade counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
CL-SUPS	Scoop-up sheet counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
BS-SL-F	Seal support plate (front) counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
BS-SL-R	Seal support plate (rear) counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
DV-UNT-C	C developing assembly counter Estimated life: 500,000-image Count type: Type 5	1
DV-UNT-Y	Y developing assembly counter Estimated life: 500,000-image Count type: Type 5	1
DV-UNT-M	M developing assembly counter Estimated life: 500,000-image Count type: Type 5	1
DV-UNT-K	BK developing assembly counter Estimated life: 500,000-image Count type: Type 4	1
CI-PU-RL	Cassette 1 pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-image Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
CI-SP-RL	Cassette 1 separation roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
C1-FD-RL	Cassette 1 feed roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C2-PU-RL	Cassette 2 pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C2-SP-RL	Cassette 2 separation roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C2-FD-RL	Cassette 2 feed roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C3-PU-RL	Cassette 3 pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C3-SP-RL	Cassette 3 separation roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C3-FD-RL	Cassette 3 feed roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C4-PU-RL	Cassette 4 pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C4-SP-RL	Cassette 4 separation roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
C4-FD-RL	Cassette 4 feed roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
M-PU-RL	Manual feeder pickup roller counter Estimated life: 120,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
M-SP-RL	Manual feeder separation roller counter Estimated life: 120,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-UP-RL	Fixing roller counter Estimated life: 200,000-print Count type: Type 2 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=3, L=6	1

MEMO:
Entering the Initial Reading
Highlight the counter reading [1], and type in the initial reading (from before the replacement work).

[1]

Display	1/0	Adjust	Function	Option	Test	Counter
< />	< />	< />	< />	< />	< />	< />
RD-FD-RL	/00031652	/00250000	/ 12%			137
M-PU-RL	/00000010	/00120000	/ 0%			9999
M-SP-RL	/00000010	/00120000	/ 0%			9999
FX-UP-RL	/00088577	/00180000	/ 49%			20
FX-LW-RL	/00088577	/00180000	/ 49%			20
FX-IN-BS	/00040335	/00500000	/ 8%			227
FX-WEB	/00040335	/00500000	/ 8%			227
FX-EX-RL	/00088577	/00180000	/ 49%			20

← → +/- OK ↵

F-16-38



The reading '18,000' (denominator) for [FX-UP-RL] may be changed, but a change will not affect the stored data, i.e., it will return to '180,000' when a different page is brought up or the power is turned off and then back on. To change the stored data (denominator), change the setting in the following service mode item: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > FXWRNLVL.

The reading may be changed to any of the following three: 180,000/150,000/120,000.

T-16-244

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FX-IN-BS	Fixing heat-insulating bush counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-WEB	Fixing web counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2 In case of replacing web, reset in the following: COPIER > COUNTER > MISC > FIX-WEB, COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1 > FX-WEB	1
FX-EX-RL	External heat roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-EX-BS	External heat roller heat insulating bush counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
DLV-UCLW	Delivery upper separation plate counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
DLV-LCLW	Delivery lower separation claw counter Estimated life: 500,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-LB-ST	Fixing belt steering roller counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Counter type: type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-LB-PD	Fixing belt pressure pad counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-LB-PC	Fixing belt pressure pad cover counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-LB-OR	Fixing belt oil-coated roller counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
Subheading	Contents	Level
FX-EX-C1	Outside heating roller cleaner counter The frequency in the use of the durable parts of the copier indicates the estimated life. Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-BL-CT	Fixing belt counter The frequency in the use of the durable parts of the copier indicates the estimated life. Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
DEV-CL	Developing clutch counter Estimated life: 2,000,000-image (500,000-print) BK=1 (S/L) CL=4 (S/L) (In case of 6C, +6)	1
BS-SL-F2	End seal (front) counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
BS-SL-R2	End seal (rear) counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
ITB-CLN2	ITB cleaner brush 18 mm dia counter Estimated life: 150,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
ITB-CLN1	ITB cleaner brush 21 mm dia counter Estimated life: 150,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
DMR-CLN	Drum cleaner brush counter Estimated life: 500,000-image (125,000-print) Count type: Type 1 BK-S=1, L=2 CL-S=4, L=8	1
2TR-BLD	Secondary transfer bias roller cleaning blade counter Estimated life: 150,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
2TR-CLN	Secondary transfer cleaner brush counter (Not in use in this machine) Estimated life: 150,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
FX-RF-RL	Refresh roller life counter Estimated life: 100,000-print Count type: Type 3 S=1, L=2	1
DV-UNT-L	BK developing assembly counter Estimated life: 500,000-image Count type: Type 4	1

8. DRBL-2

<DRBL-2> items shown below are maintained in the DC controller PCB and main controller PCB.

- Main controller PCB
DF-PU-RL, DF-FD-RL, DF-SP-BL, DF-F-BLT, DF-HNG-L, DF-HNG-R, PD-PU-RL, PD-SP-RL, PD-FD-RL
- DC controller PCB
FIN-STPR, SDL-STPL, FN-BFFRL



When replacing the main controller PCB or DC controller PCB, execute the service mode COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC > P-PRINT and keep the printout.

T-16-245

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2		
Subheading	Contents	Level
DF-PU-RL	DF pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Large: 1 count Small: 1 count	1
DF-FD-RL	DF pickup/feeding roller counter Estimated life: 80,000-print Large: 1 count Small: 2 counts	1
DF-SP-BL	DF separation belt counter Estimated life: 80,000-print Large: 1 count Small: 2 counts	1
DF-F-BLT	DF feeding belt counter Estimated life: 200,000-print Pickup number (1-sided: S=1, L=1; 2-sided: S=3, L=3)	1
DF-HNG-L	DF left hinge counter Estimated life: 100,000-print 1 count with 1 set of DF opening/closing	1
DF-HNG-R	DF right hinge counter Estimated life: 100,000-print 1 count with 1 set of DF opening/closing	1
DF-SP-M	Not used	-
DF-DL-RL	Not used	-
DF-DL-M	Not used	-
DF-TRL-U	Not used	-
PD-PU-RL	Paper deck pickup roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Pickup number (S:1, L:2)	1
PD-SP-RL	Paper deck separation roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Deck pickup cumulated number Printed number (S:1, L:2)	1
PD-FD-RL	Paper deck feeding roller counter Estimated life: 250,000-print Deck pickup cumulated number Printed number (S:1, L:2)	1
SORT	Not used	-
FIN-STPR	Finisher stapler counter Estimated life: 500,000-print (Retain the counter value at the DC controller PCB)	1
SADDLE	Not used	-
SDL-STPL	Finisher saddle staple counter Estimated life: 100,000-print (Retain the counter value at the DC controller PCB)	1
PUNCH	Not used	-
FN-BFFRL	Finisher buffer roller counter Estimated life: 1,000,000-print (Retain the counter value at the DC controller PCB) 1 operation with 1 paper pass through the buffer roller	1

Chapter 17 Upgrading

Contents

17.1 Outline.....	17-1
17.1.1 Types of System Software.....	17-1
17.1.2 Upgrading Overview.....	17-2
17.1.3 Outline of the Functions and Operations.....	17-3
17.1.4 Points to Note at Time of Downloading.....	17-6
17.2 Making Preparations.....	17-6
17.2.1 Installing the System Software (System CD -> SST).....	17-6
17.2.2 Installing the System Software (SST -> USB).....	17-8
17.2.3 Making Connections (SST in use).....	17-10
17.2.4 Making Connections (USB device in use).....	17-11
17.3 Formatting the HDD.....	17-11
17.3.1 Formatting All Partitions.....	17-11
17.3.2 Formatting Selected Partitions.....	17-12
17.3.3 Formatting the Partitions.....	17-13
17.4 Downloading System Software.....	17-14
17.4.1 Batch Downloading.....	17-14
17.4.1.1 Outline.....	17-14
17.4.1.2 Downloading Procedure.....	17-14
17.4.2 Downloading the System Software (Single).....	17-17
17.4.2.1 Downloading Procedure.....	17-17
17.5 Uploading and Downloading Backup Data.....	17-20
17.5.1 Outline.....	17-20
17.5.2 Uploading Procedure.....	17-20
17.5.3 Downloading Procedure.....	17-22
17.6 Version Upgrade using USB.....	17-23
17.6.1 Overview of Menus and Functions.....	17-23
17.6.2 Points to Note.....	17-24
17.6.3 Downloading/Writing the System Software (auto).....	17-26
17.6.4 Downloading the System Software (Confirmation execution when version is downed the same version).....	17-26
17.6.5 Downloading the System Software (all overwriting).....	17-27
17.6.6 Formatting the HDD.....	17-28
17.6.7 Other Functions.....	17-29

17.1 Outline

17.1.1 Types of System Software

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-17-1

Types of System Software	System Software Name	Description
Main Controller	SYSTEM	1 for inside Japan and 1 for outside Japan Main controller also controls the G3FAX board (1line).
Language Module	LANGUAGE	This is the message data displayed in the local UI. This module needs to be installed for each language. Installed languages can be changed from 'User Mode > Common Settings > Language Switch'. The version of the module must be consistent with that of the system.
Remote UI Contents	RUI	This is the Remote UI contents accessed from Web browser for the operation of the main body. Installed languages can be selected from the top page of the Remote UI.
Boot Program	BOOT	Boot system software is common in all the models. This software can be upgraded by ROM-DIMM replacement.
MEAP Library	MEAPCONT	MEAPCONT is the standard library to use MEAP.
Voice Dictionary	TTS	This is the voice dictionary data used in the environment where the voice guidance board is mounted. This dictionary is used when adding the Voice Guidance Kit (optional).
WEB Browser	BROWSER	BROWSER is the data used for WEB browser display which is the optional function. This is used when adding the WEB Browser Expansion Kit (optional).
DC Controller	DCON	Downloading of DCON is performed by way of the main controller assembly. As the BootROM is installed separately, it can be re-tried even in the case of failure in downloading of DC controller PCB.
Reader Controller	RCON	Downloading of RCON is performed by way of the main controller assembly. As the BootROM is installed separately, it can be re-tried in the case of failure in downloading of reader controller PCB. (Downloading of Rcon is not available unless the DC controller is started properly.)
Time Stamp Module *	TSTMP	This is the module used for the function to send PDF with electronic signature. This function is used when adding the Time-Stamp PDF Expansion Kit (optional*).
Media Brand Information File	MEDIA	This is the file that includes the media brand information selected as the media type. Upgrading of this file enables the addition of the available media brands.
Simple NAVI	HELP	This is the data to display Simple Navi (operation supporting function).
WebDAV Contents	WebDAV	This is the module used for the function to send input image to the WebDAV server on internet/intranet using WebDAV protocol.
Multi-port FAX* *	G3FAX	This is the control software used for the multi-port FAX board. This software can be upgraded by ROM-DIMM replacement, and is used when adding the multi-port FAX board/Y1 (optional*).
OCR Dictionary	SDICT	This is the dictionary used for conversion of the image data read from the reader assembly to character codes (OCR processing). This is used when adding the Searchable PDF Kit (optional).
Encryption Communication Key, Certificate/CA Certificate	KEY	This function is used for SSL/e-RDS communication. KEY means the key and the certificate used for encrypted communication on the network.
ADF Controller	CPU	This is used when adding the DADF-R1 (optional). Special service tool (Downloader PCB: FY9-2034) is required.
Finisher Controller	FIN_CON	This is used when adding the Finisher-AA1, Saddle Finisher-AA2 (optional). Special service tool (Downloader PCB: FY9-2034) is required.

* 100V machines only

17.1.2 Upgrading Overview

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The main body and the optional system software can be upgraded by the procedures described below:

- by downloading from the personal computer (henceforth PC) installed with the service support tool (henceforth SST)
- by downloading from the USB memory
- by ROM-DIMM replacement

T-17-2

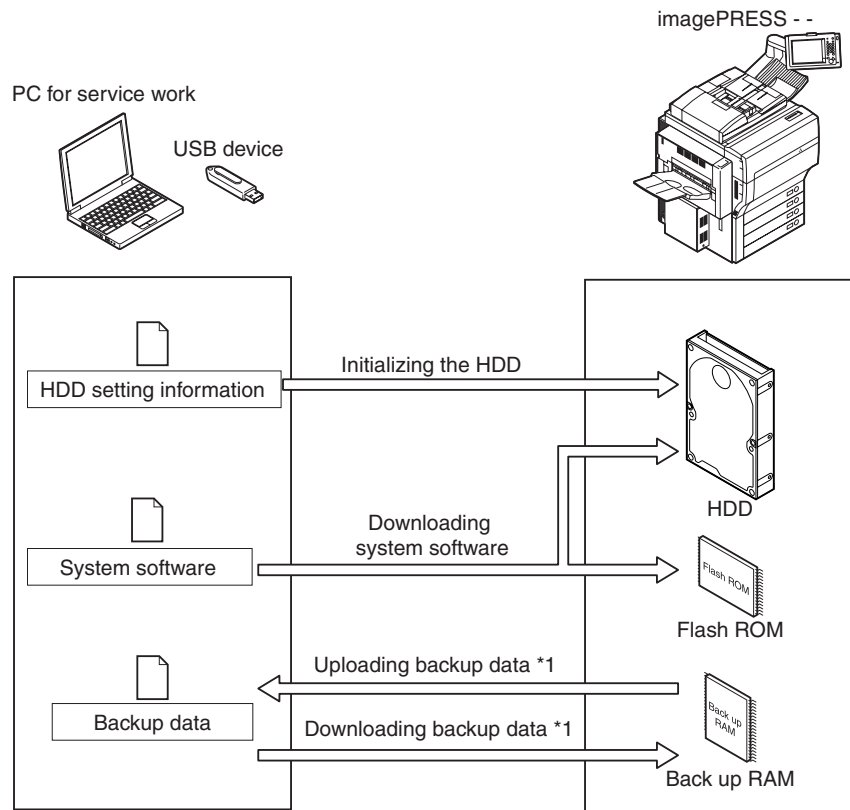
Machine	SST Display		Upgrading Tool			Remarks
	Product Name	System Software Name	SST	USB Memory	ROM-DIMM Replacement	
Host Machine	iPR_C1	SYSTEM	Yes	Yes	-	
		LANGUAGE	Yes	Yes	-	
		RUI	Yes	Yes	-	
		BOOT	Yes	Yes	Yes	
		MEAPCONT	Yes	Yes	-	
		TTS	Yes	Yes	-	This is used when adding the voice guidance kit (optional).
		BROWSER	Yes	Yes	-	This is used when adding the WEB Browser Expansion kit (optional).
		DCON	Yes	Yes	-	
		RCON	Yes	Yes	-	
		TSTMP *	Yes	Yes	-	This is used when adding the PDF Expansion Kit (optional*).
		MEDIA	Yes	Yes	-	
		HELP	Yes	Yes	-	
		WebDAV	Yes	Yes	-	
	G3FAX *	Yes	Yes	Yes	This is used when adding the multi-port FAX board-Y1 (optional*).	
Optional	iRCXXXX	SDICT	Yes	Yes	-	This is used when adding the Searchable PDF Kit (optional).
		KEY	Yes	Yes	-	
Optional	ADFYC	CPU	Yes	-	-	This is used when adding the DADF-R1 (optional). Special service tool (downloader PCB: FY9-2034) is required.
	FIN_AA	FIN_CON	Yes	-	-	This is used when adding the Finisher-AA1, Saddle Finisher-AA2 (optional). Special service tool (downloader PCB: FY9-2034) is required.

* 100V machines only

17.1.3 Outline of the Functions and Operations

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

When connected to a PC (to which the SST and system software have been installed) and USB device (to which system software has been copied), the machine provides the following functions:



F-17-1

*1: Not when USB is in use.

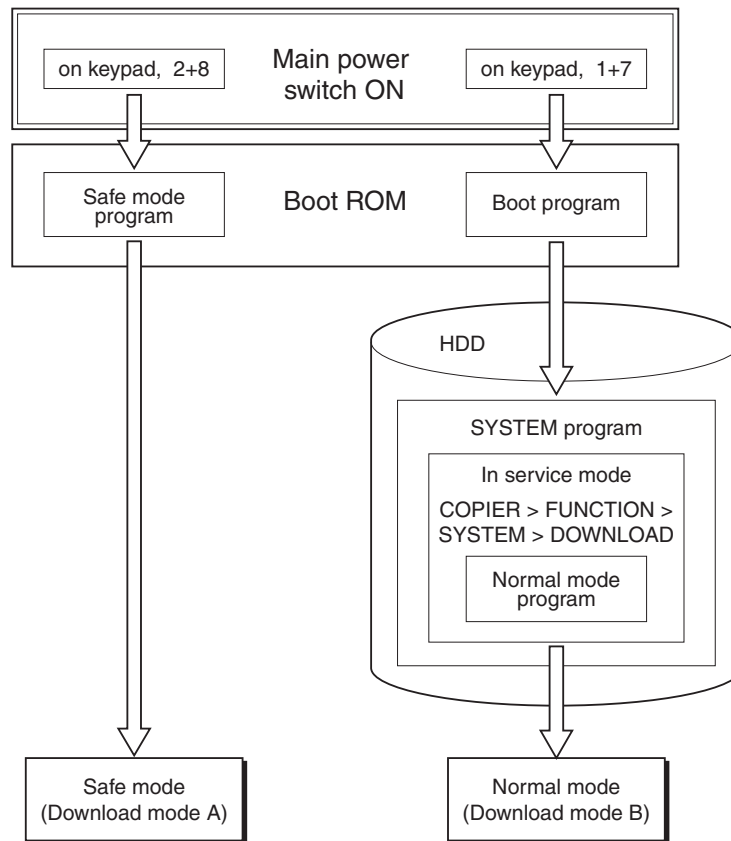
To use these functions, the machine must be in download mode, which may be either of the following:

- Safe Mode (download mode A)

Turn on the main power while holding down the keys 2+8.

- Normal Mode (download mode B)

Turn on the main power while holding down the keys 1+7; then, make the following selections in service mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD.



F-17-2



Use safe mode for the following:
- after replacing the HDD
- when the system fails to start up normally

The following shows combinations of download modes and functions:

T-17-3

Function	Download mode	
	Normal mode (download mode B)	Safe mode (download mode A)
Formatting the HDD	- -	ALL BOOTDEV
Downloading the system software *1	System Language RUI Boot Dcon Rcon SDICT MEAPCONT KEY TTS BROWSER TSTMP * MEDIA HELP WebDAV G3FAX *	System Language RUI Boot Dcon Rcon SDICT MEAPCONT KEY TTS BROWSER TSTMP * MEDIA HELP WebDAV -
Uploading/downloading of backup data *2	- SramRCON SramDCON	Meapback - -

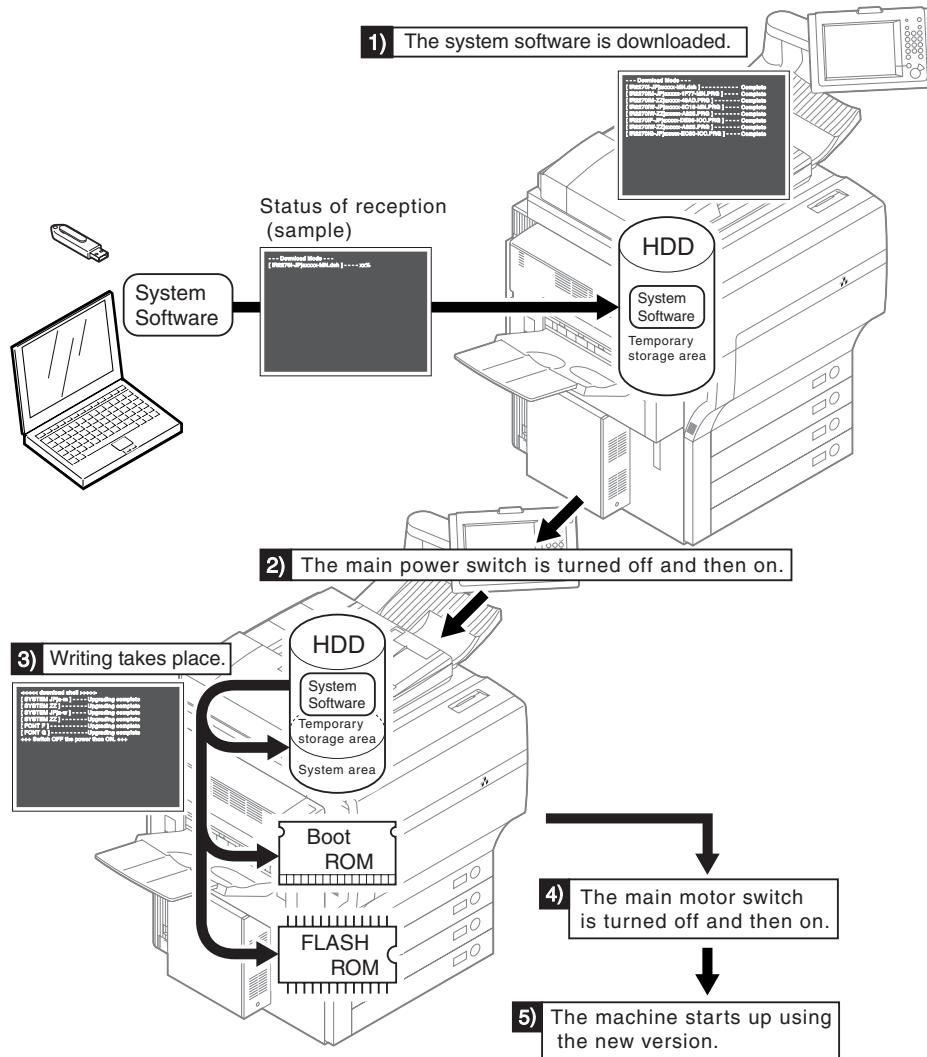
* 100V machines only

*1: Not all software to download may be selected for downloading while USB is in use.

*2: Not when USB device is in use.

Installing the System Software

When downloaded, the system software is stored in the temporary storage area of the HDD. At the end of downloading, the main power switch must be turned off and then back on, thus restarting the machine and writing the system software to both system area and flash ROM from the temporary storage area. When the main power switch is turned off and then back on once again, the machine will start up using the new system software.



F-17-3

17.1.4 Points to Note at Time of Downloading

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



Do Not Turn Off the Power During Download/Write Operation

Do not turn off the power while the system software is being downloaded/written. Otherwise, the machine may fail to start up when its power is turned back on. (If such is the case, execute HDD formatting, and download the system software. In the case of a boot ROM, replace the DIMM-ROM.)



Points to Note About Upgrading the DC Controller/Reader Controller

The DC controller/reader controller may be downloaded in either in normal mode or in safe mode. If done in safe mode, however, the controller version information cannot be obtained, causing the data retained by the SST to be written over. It is a good idea, therefore, to use normal mode (so that the software will not be replaced with software of a previous version).

17.2 Making Preparations

17.2.1 Installing the System Software (System CD -> SST)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Here, you will be copying the system software found on the System CD to the SST.

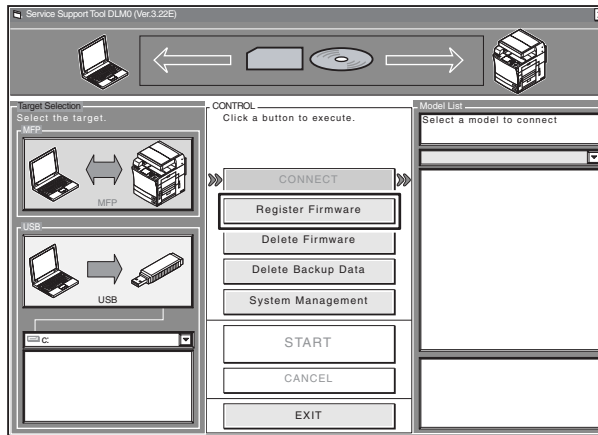
[Preparatory Work]

Requirements

- PC installed with SST version 3.22 or later
- System CD for this machine

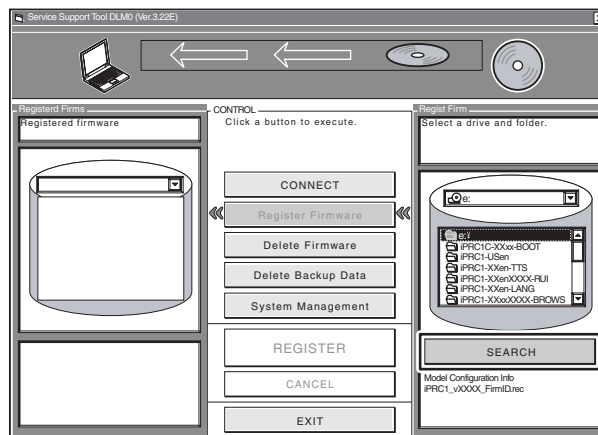
[Installing the System Software]

- 1) Turn on the PC.
- 2) Set the System CD in the PC.
- 3) Start up the SST.
- 4) Click [Register Firmware].



F-17-4

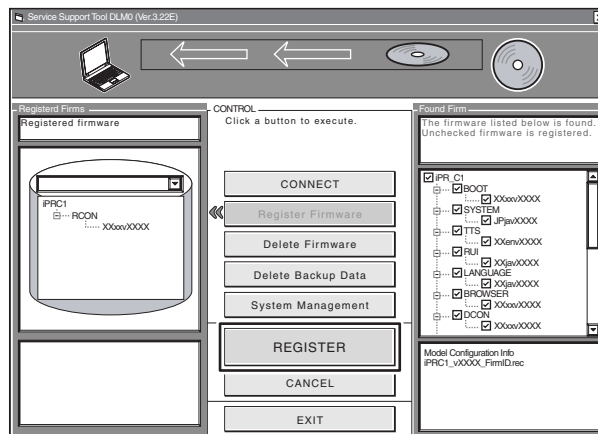
- 5) Select the drive in which the System CD has been set, and click [SEARCH].



F-17-5

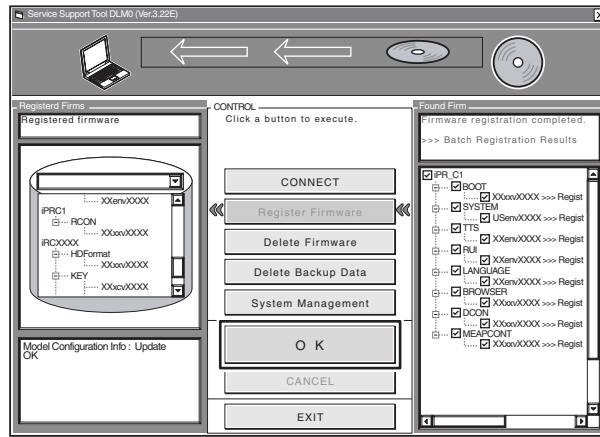
MEMO:
 'XXXX' on the screen indicates the system software version (Same in the subsequent figures).

- 6) A list of system software found on the System CD appears. Remove the check marks from the folders and software files you do not need, and click [REGISTER].



F-17-6

- 7) When a message has appeared to indicate that the system software has been installed, click [OK].



F-17-7

17.2.2 Installing the System Software (SST -> USB)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

Here, you will be copying the system software from the SST to a USB device.

[Preparatory Work]

Requirements

- PC installed with SST version 3.22 or later
- USB device (*)

*: USB Requirements

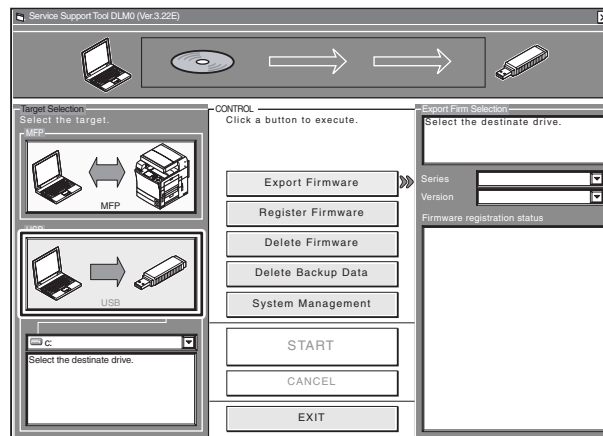
Interface	USB 1.1 or higher (USB 2.0 or recommended)
Capacity	1 GB or more recommended (A set of system software is in excess of 512 MB.)
Format	FAT (FAT16), FAT32 (It must not be NTFS or HFS.) single partition (There must not be multiple partitions.)



You will not be able to use a security-protected USB device. Be sure to remove the protection before use.

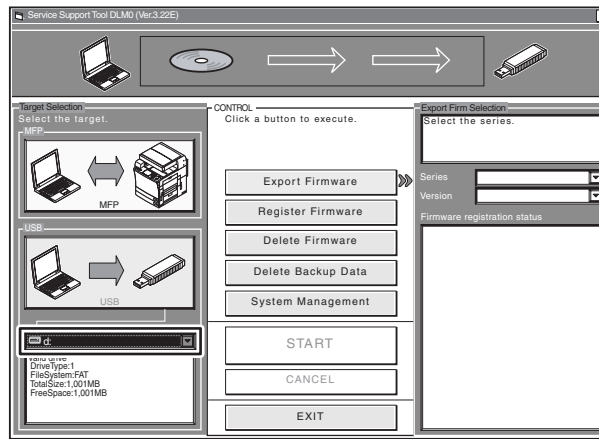
[Copying the System Software]

- 1) Start up the PC.
- 2) Connect the USB device to the USB port of the PC.
- 3) Start up the SST.
- 4) Click the USB icon on the Target Selection screen.



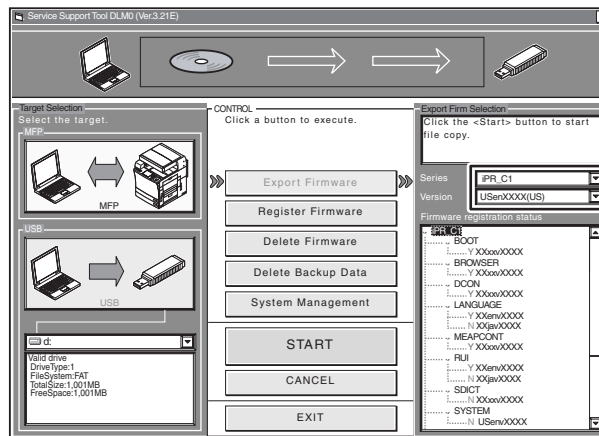
F-17-8

- 5) Select the drive to which the USB device has been connected.



F-17-9

6) Select the appropriate 'Series' and 'Version' of the system software you want to copy.



F-17-10

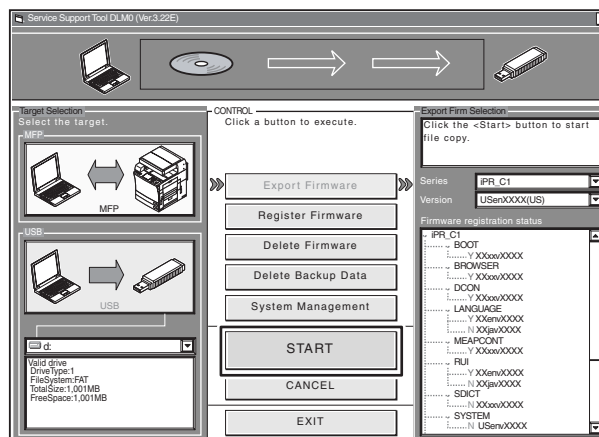
MEMO:

The notations that appear in the column under "Firmware registration status" mean the following:

Y: exists in the SST.

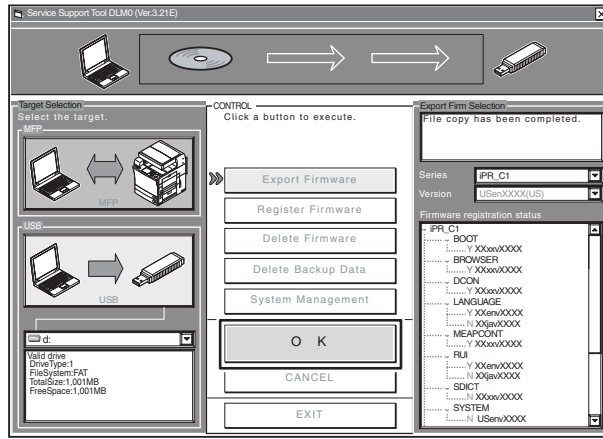
N: does not exist in the SST.

7) Click [START] so that copying to the USB device starts.



F-17-11

8) When done, click [OK].



F-17-12

17.2.3 Making Connections (SST in use)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Requirements]

- PC to which the SST (version 3.22 or later) has been installed and the system software has been copied
- twisted-pair cross cable
 - 10Base-T: Category 3 or 5
 - 100Base-TX: Category 5

[Procedure]

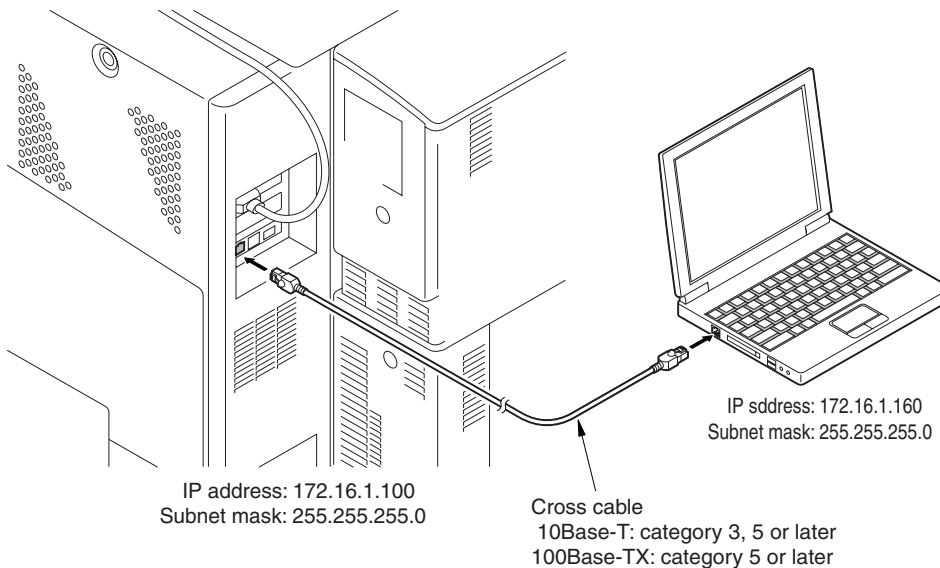
- 1) Start up the PC.
- 2) Check the network settings of the PC.
 - 2-1) Start the command prompt, and type in "IPCONFIG," and press the Return key.
 - 2-2) Check to be sure that the network settings appearing on the screen are as follows; if not, change the PC network settings:
 - IP address: 172.16.1.160**
 - Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0**
 - Default gateway: any**



Do not use the following IP addresses:

- 172.16.1.0
- 172.16.1.100
- 172.16.1.255

- 3) Check to make sure that the Execute/Memory lamp on the control panel is off; then, turn off the main power switch.
 - 3-1) Hold down the power switch on the control panel for 3 sec or more.
 - 3-2) Go through the shut-down instructions appearing on the control panel screen so that the main power switch may be turned off. (The main power will go off automatically.)
- 4) Connect the PC to the machine with a cross cable.



F-17-13

- 5) Set the machine to the appropriate mode:
 - **Normal Mode**
 - Turn on the main power switch while holding down the keys 1 and 7.
 - When the machine has started, make the following selections in service mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD; then, click [OK].
 - **Safe Mode**

Turn on the main power switch while holding down the keys 2 and 8. In response, the machine will start up in safe mode.

17.2.4 Making Connections (USB device in use)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[Requirements]

- USB device to which the system software has been copied.

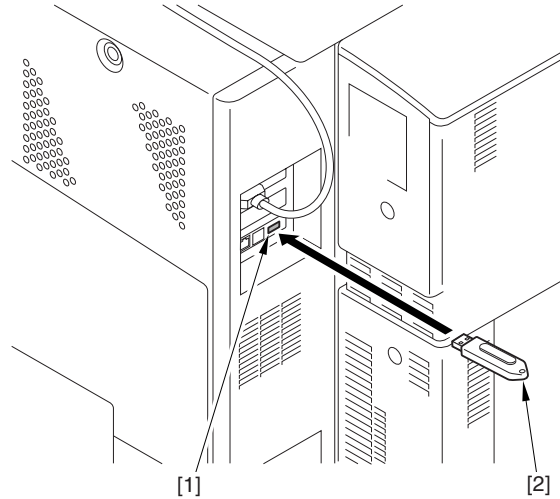
[Procedure]

1) Check to make sure that the Execute/Memory on the control panel is off; then, turn off the main power switch as follows:

1-1) Hold down the control panel power switch for 3 sec or more.

1-2) Go through the shut-down instructions appearing on the control panel screen so that the main power switch may be turned off. (The main power will go off automatically.)

2) Connect the USB device [2] to the USB port [1].



F-17-14

3) If a network cable is connected to the machine, disconnect it.

4) Set the machine to the appropriate download mode:

- Normal Mode

Turn on the main power switch while holding down the keys 1 and 7.

When the machine has started up, make the following selections in service mode, and press [OK]:

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD.

- Safe Mode

Turn on the main power switch while holding down the keys 2 and 8 so that the machine will start up in safe mode.

5) See the following menu appearing on the control panel screen, indicating that the machine has recognized the presence of a USB device.

```
[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]]
```

```
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files
```

```
[Stop]:Shutdown
```

F-17-15



The machine may not recognize certain types of USB device or USB device from certain manufacturers. The machine looks for a USB device for a maximum of 60 sec after its main power is turned on, not indicating the menu if it fails to detect one. (If such is the case, obtain an appropriate USB device.)

The SST cannot be run while the USB device is in use. (The machine will not communicate with the SST when it detects the presence of a USB device.)

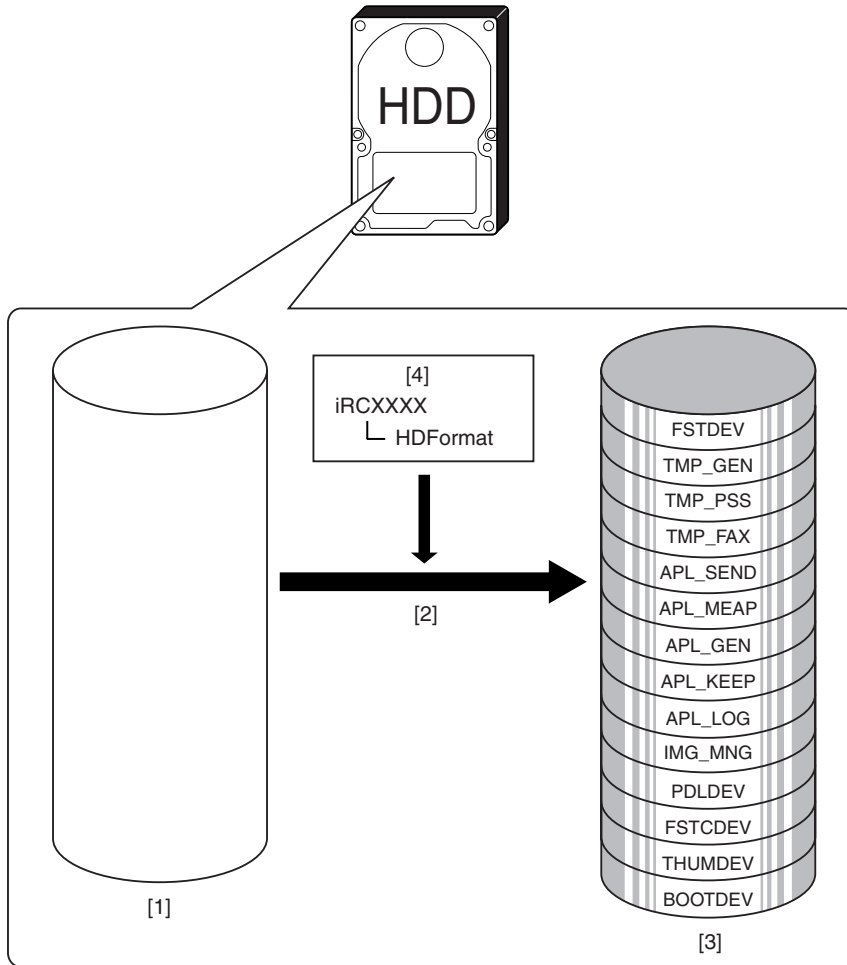
If opening/closing the decurler while the USB memory has been connected to the host machine, the decurler may hit the USB memory. Thus, be sure to remove the USB memory before moving to next work.

17.3 Formatting the HDD

17.3.1 Formatting All Partitions

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

When formatting the HDD for all partition, there will be partitions on the HDD and all these partitions will be formatted (initialized) and the main controller will be made ready for use.
 All the information needed to set up the partition is found in the partition settings file (on the SST, 'HDFormat' in the folder 'iRCXXXX').



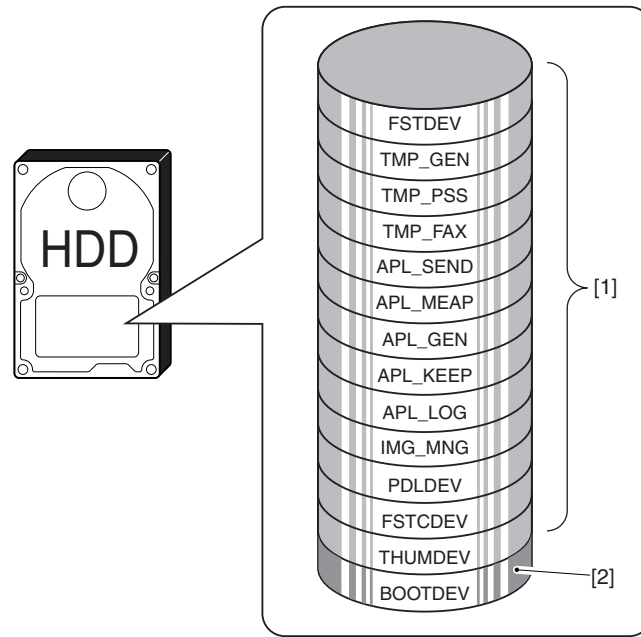
F-17-16

- [1] HDD (service part; without partitions)
- [2] Formatting for full partition (only in safe mode)
- [3] HDD after formatting
- [4] Partition settings information file

17.3.2 Formatting Selected Partitions

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

When formatting the HDD for selected partitions, only those selected partitions will be initialized.



F-17-17

- [1] Formatting not possible
- [2] Formatting possible in safe mode

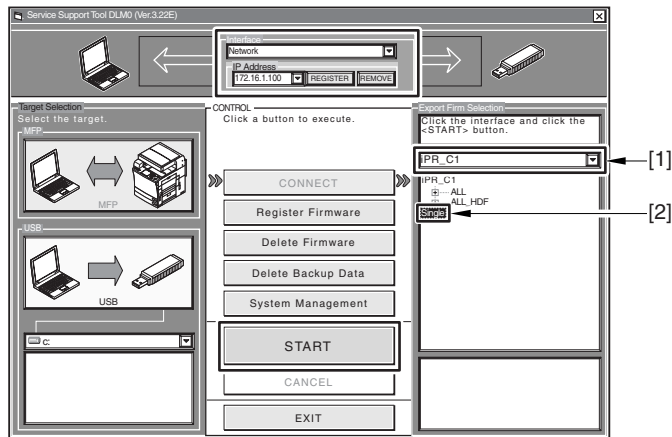
MEMO:

Partition-based formatting is possible in service mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR), with the exception of BOOTDEV.

17.3.3 Formatting the Partitions

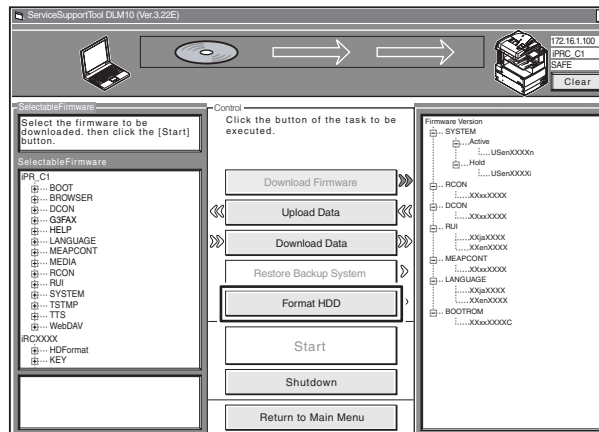
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

- 1) Start up the SST.
- 2) Select the model [1] and the type of system software [2] ('Single'); then, check the network settings, and click [START].



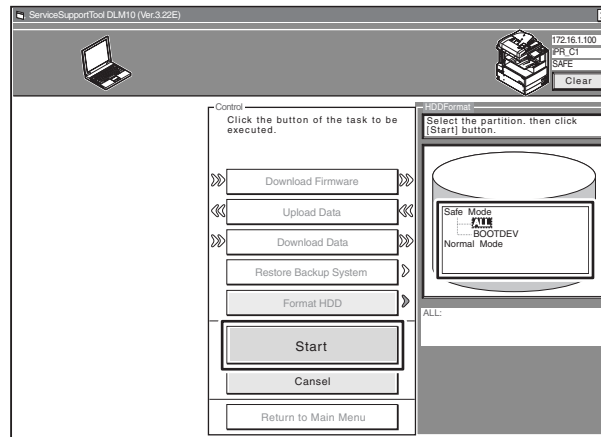
F-17-18

- 3) Click [Format HDD].



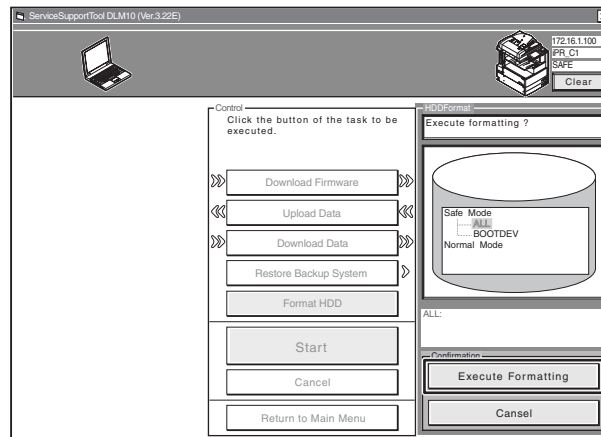
F-17-19

4) Specify BOOTDEV partition or full partition (ALL), and click [Start].



F-17-20

5) Click [Execute Formatting].



F-17-21

6) When formatting has ended, click [OK] to return to the Menu screen.

7) Move on to download the system software.



Whenever you have executed HDD formatting, be sure to download the system software; otherwise, an error (E602) will occur when the main power is turned on.

17.4 Downloading System Software

17.4.1 Batch Downloading

17.4.1.1 Outline

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

* Support from SST Ver.3.31

You can collectively download various system software files at one time. The groups of system software files that may be downloaded in a batch are identified in the batch download information file, which is found on the System CD. Copy the file to the SST to enable the batch downloading mechanism.

<Batch Download Information File>

ALL: for downloading in normal mode

Use it to collectively download all system software files that are found.

Use it as when upgrading the system software.

ALL_HDF: for downloading in safe mode

Use it to collectively download system software files other than the following:

- BOOT
- DCON
- RCON

Use it when reinstalling the system software as after formatting the HDD.

The foregoing 3 system software files may be downloaded using different steps.

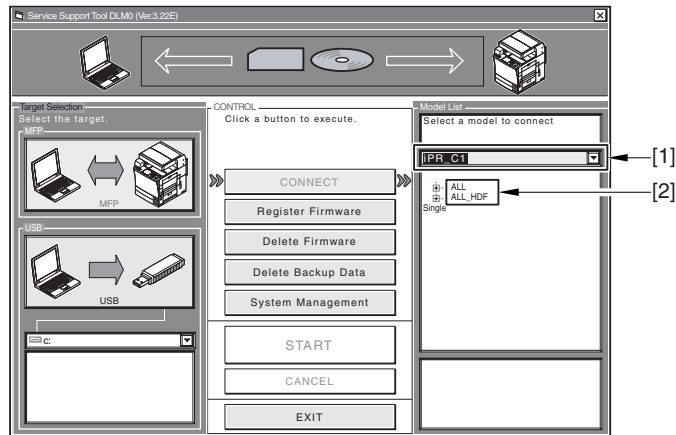
17.4.1.2 Downloading Procedure

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

* Support from SST Ver.3.31

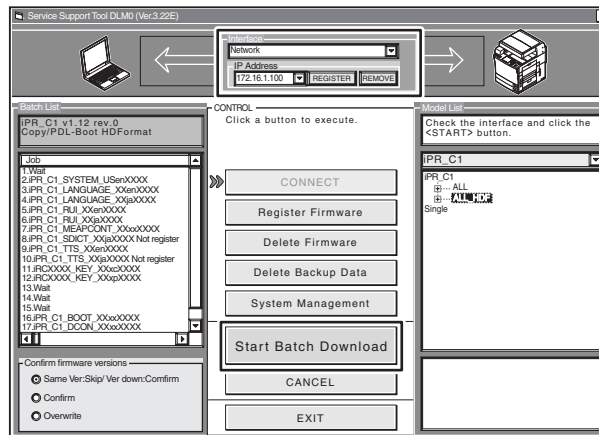
Here, the discussions are in reference to batch downloading in safe mode.

- 1) Start up the SST.
- 2) Select the model [1] and the batch download information file [2] ('ALL_HDF').



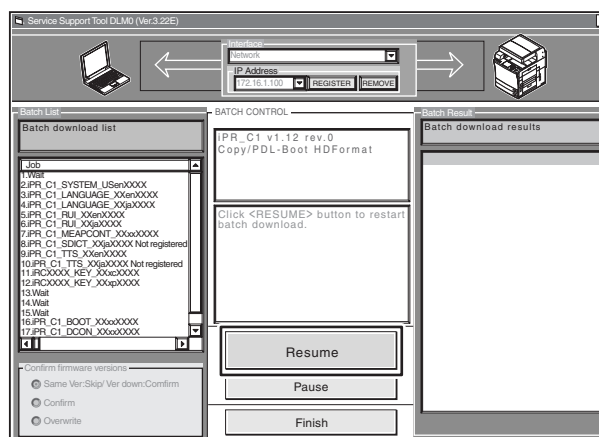
F-17-22

- 3) Make sure of the network settings, and click [Start Batch Download].



F-17-23

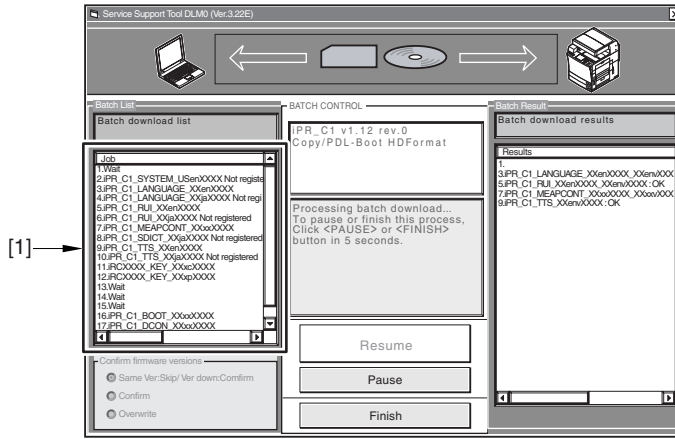
- 4) Click [Resume].



F-17-24

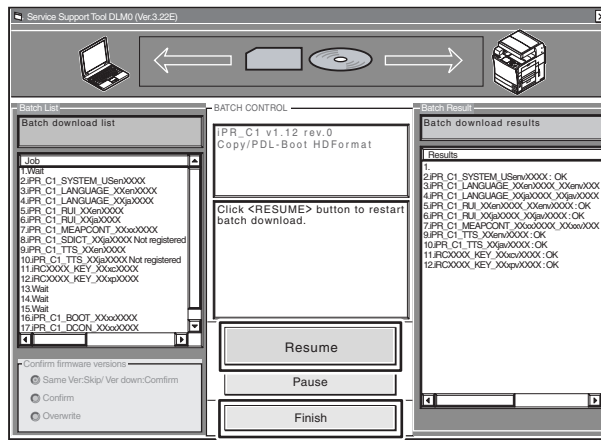
MEMO:

Refer to the Batch Download List screen [1] for the progress of downloading.



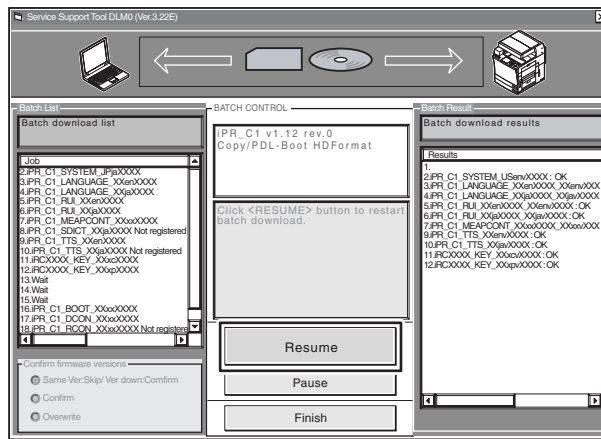
F-17-25

5) The Download End screen appears for the system software files to be stored on the HDD. To stop downloading, click [Finish]; if you want to download BOOT, DCON, and RCON, on the other hand, click [Resume], and go to the next step.



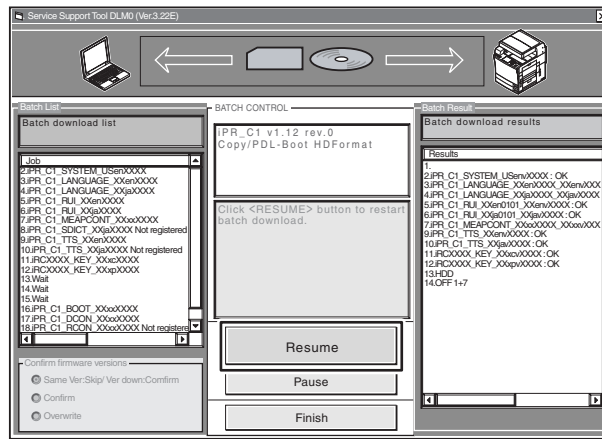
F-17-26

6) Turn off the machine's main power switch, and start it up in normal mode (turn on the main power switch while holding down the 1 and 7 keys; then, start download mode in service mode). Click [Resume].



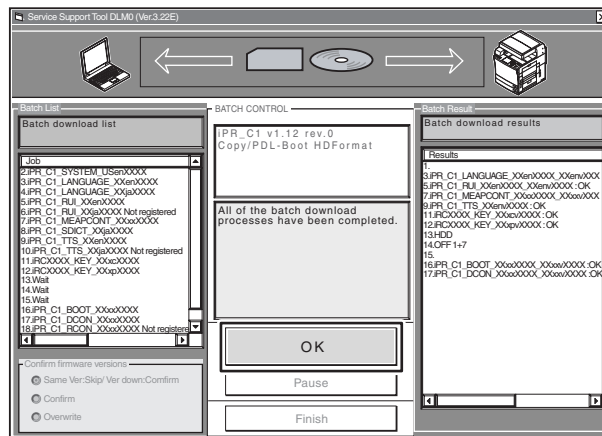
F-17-27

7) Click [Resume] to start downloading BOOT, DCON, and RCON.



F-17-28

8) Click [OK].



F-17-29



Turning Off the Power

Do not turn off the power while downloading or writing is under way; otherwise, the machine may fail to start up. If such is the case, execute HDD formatting, and download the system software once again.

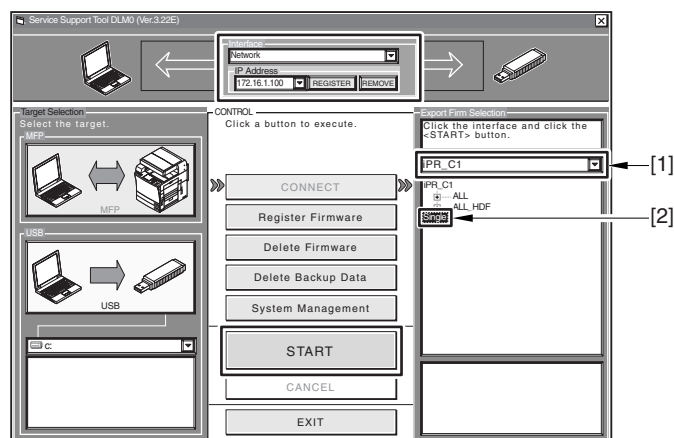
17.4.2 Downloading the System Software (Single)

17.4.2.1 Downloading Procedure

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

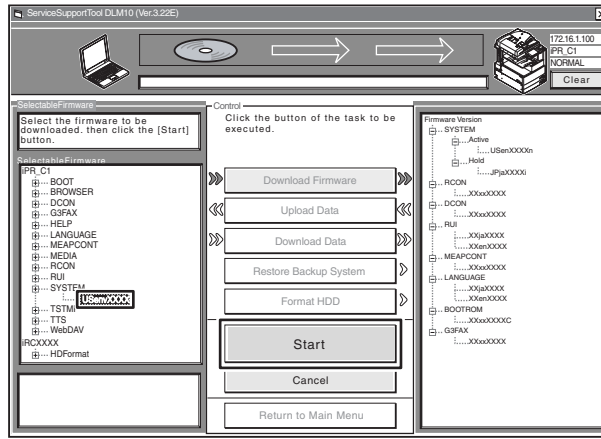
Here is the downloading procedure of the SYSTEM as a sample. (Same for other system software)

- 1) Start up the SST.
- 2) Select the model [1] and the type of system software [2] ('Single'); then, check the network settings, and click [START].



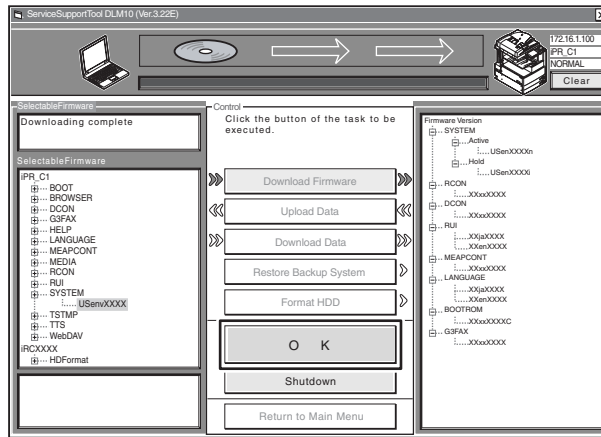
F-17-30

- 3) Select the version of the System software you want to download, and click [Start].



F-17-31

4) When downloading has ended, click [OK] to go back to the previous screen.

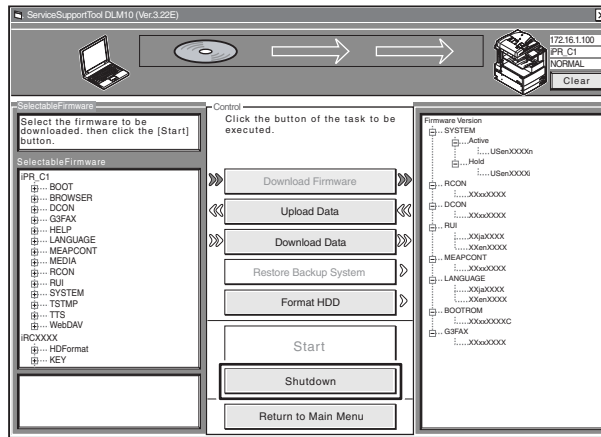


F-17-32

5) Start up the machine. The subsequent procedure differs depending on the download mode.

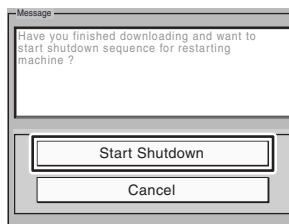
If the machine is in normal mode,

5-1) Click [Shutdown].



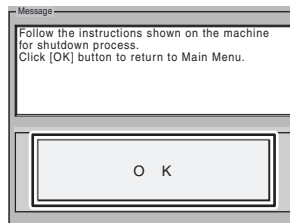
F-17-33

5-2) Click [Start Shutdown] so that the machine starts the shut-down sequence.



F-17-34

5-3) Click [OK], and back on the machine's main power switch. (The main power will go off automatically.)



F-17-35

If the machine is in safe mode.

- 5-1) Click [Start Shutdown] so that the machine starts the shut-down sequence.
- 6) When the machine starts up, it will write the system software to its HDD and flash ROM while showing the progress of writing on the control panel screen. When done, it will indicate a message asking you to turn off and then back on the power. In response, turn off and then back on the main power.



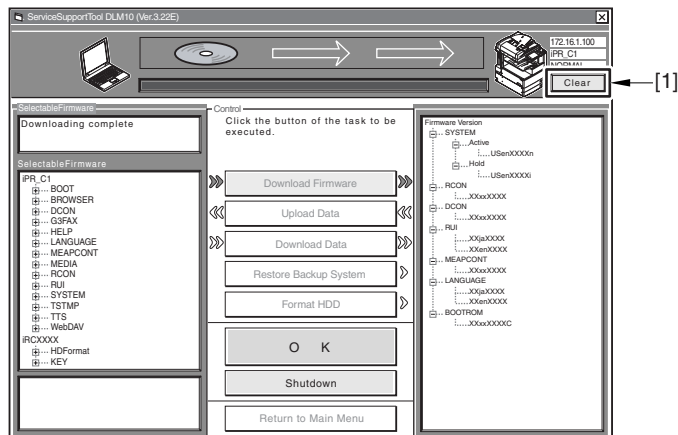
Turning Off the Power

Do not turn off the machine's power while downloading or writing is under way; otherwise, the machine may fail to start up. If such is the case, execute HDD formatting, and download the system software once again.

MEMO:

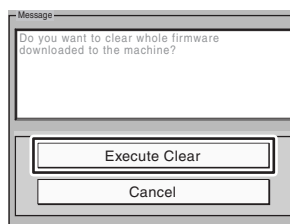
You can remove the downloaded system software before it is written to the HDD or flash ROM. To do so, go through the following before restarting the machine:

- 1) Click [Clear] [1].



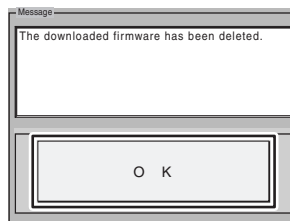
F-17-36

- 2) Click [Execute Clear] so that the system software that has been stored in the temporary storage area of the HDD will be removed.



F-17-37

- 3) Click [OK]. Return to the previous page.

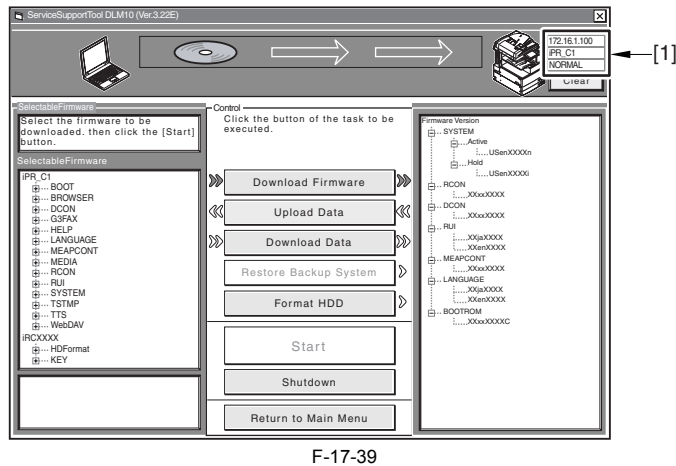


F-17-38

MEMO:

After connecting, the following device information [1] is displayed on the right upper area of the SST screen.

- IP address
- Product name
- Download mode



F-17-39

17.5 Uploading and Downloading Backup Data

17.5.1 Outline

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

The file MeapBack is a MEAP application and its data stored on the HDD.

The file SramDCON is data stored in the SRAM of the DC controller PCB.

The file SramRCON is data stored in the EEPROM of the reader controller PCB.

T-17-4

Backup data	File to select for downloading
For R&D	SramImg.bin (do not select this file)
MEAP application	MeapBack.bin (may be uploaded/downloaded in safe mode)
For R&D	Sublog.txt (do not select this file)
Reader controller PCB backup	SramRCON (may be uploaded/downloaded in normal mode)
DC controller PCB backup	SramDCON (may be uploaded/downloaded in normal mode)



Points to Note When Uploading/Downloading MeapBack

If you need to re-install the system software to correct a fault, you may upload MeapBack and then download it back after formatting the HDD (by temporarily putting aside the MEAP application).

- 1) Upload MeapBack.
- 2) Execute HDD all format.
- 3) Re-install the system software.

At this time, be sure that the system software is the same as that existed before formatting the HDD. Otherwise, you will not be able to download MeapBack you have uploaded.

- 4) Download MeapBack.

You will not be able to download MeapBack you have uploaded unless you are downloading it to the machine you have uploaded it from.

MEMO:

- If you are planning to replace the HDD or execute ALL or APL MEAP formatting, it will be a good idea to upload the MeapBack file in advance and then download after the work by way of temporarily keeping away the MEAP application.
- If you are planning to replace the Reader controller PCB, you can upload the SramRCON file in advance, and download it after replacement so that the service mode and other settings may be inherited.
- If you are planning to replace the DC controller PCB, you can upload the SramDCON file in advance, and download it after replacement so that the service mode and other settings may be inherited.

17.5.2 Uploading Procedure

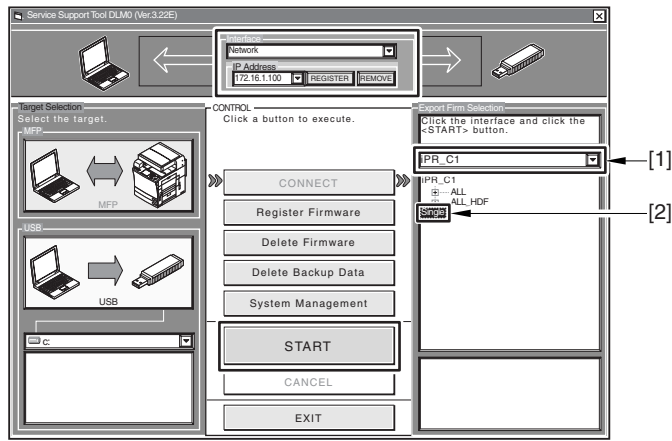
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



- When uploading the data, do not select 'SramImg.bin' or 'Sublog.txt'.
- The machine must be in normal mode for uploading/downloading SramDCON or SramRCON.
- The machine must be in safe mode when uploading/downloading MeapBack.

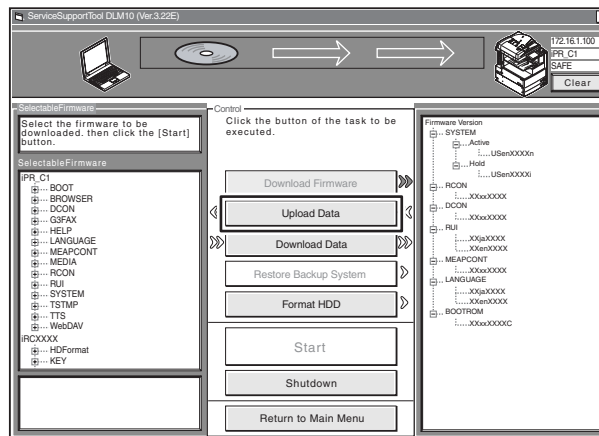
[In the Case of MeapBack]

- 1) Start up the SST.
- 2) Select the model [1] and the type of system software [2] ('Single'); then, check the network settings, and click [START].



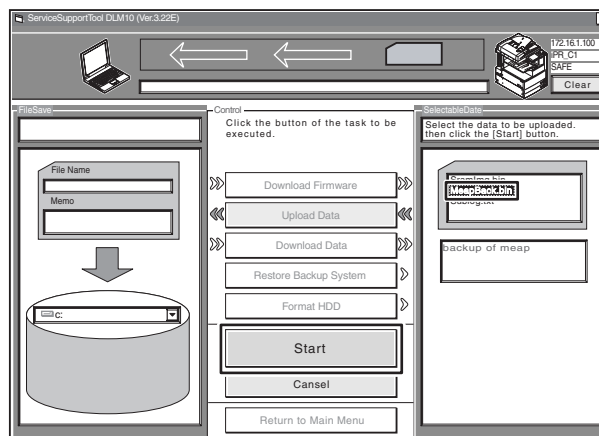
F-17-40

3) Click [Upload Data].



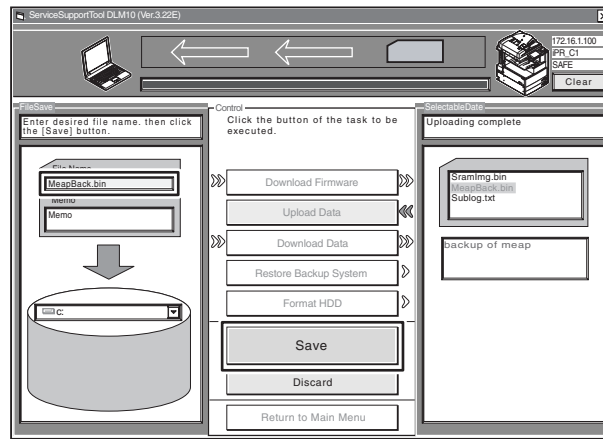
F-17-41

4) Select 'MeapBack.bin', and click [Start].



F-17-42

5) Type in the name of the file to store and, as necessary, a brief description; then, click [Save].

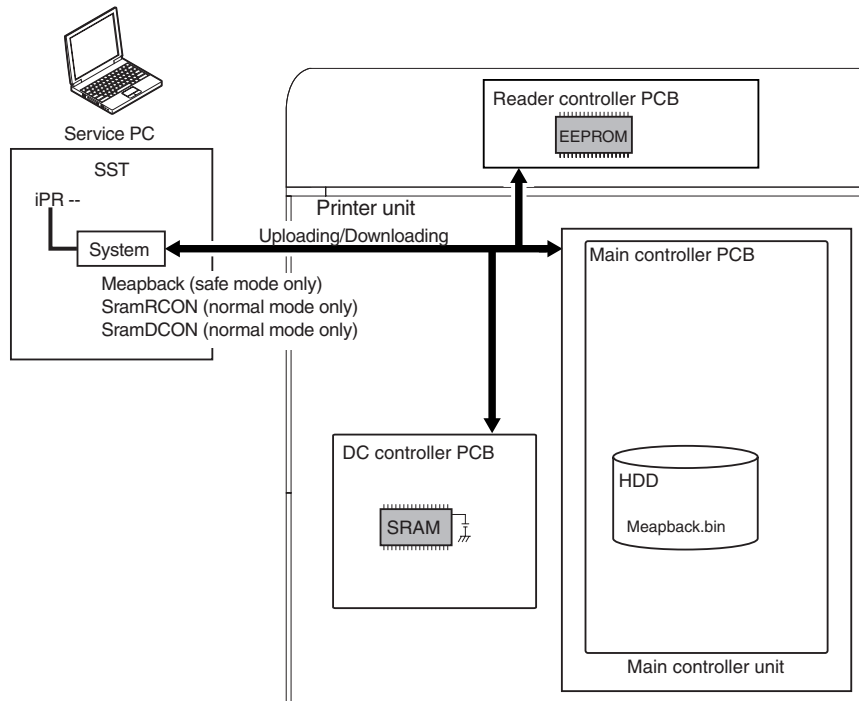


F-17-43

6) Click [OK].



The file SramRCON, SramDCON, or MeapBack may only be downloaded to their source machine.



F-17-44

17.5.3 Downloading Procedure

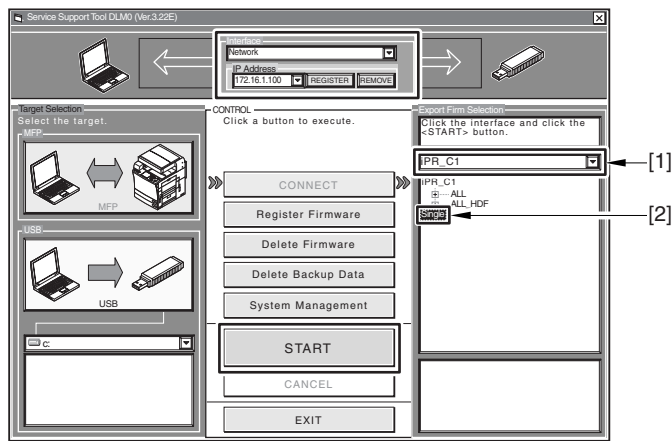
imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



- The machine must be in normal mode for uploading/downloading the file SramDCON or SramRCON.
- The machine must be in safe mode for uploading/downloading the file MeapBack.

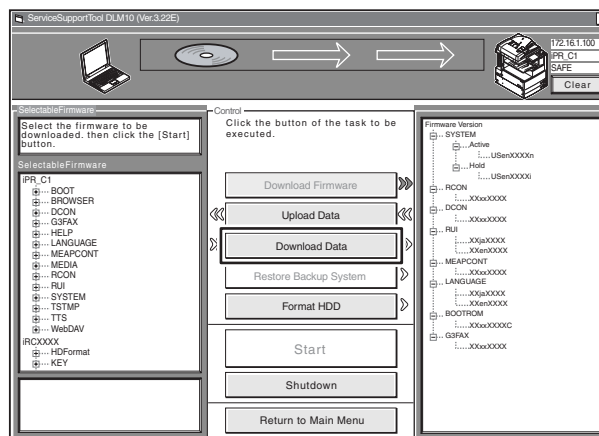
[In the Case of MeapBack]

- 1) Start up the SST.
- 2) Select the model [1] and the type of system software [2] ('Single'); then, check the network settings, and click [START].



F-17-45

3) Click [Download Data].



F-17-46

4) Select the data to download, and click [Start].



F-17-47

5) When downloading has ended, click [OK] to return to the previous screen.

17.6 Version Upgrade using USB

17.6.1 Overview of Menus and Functions

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

```
[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]
```

```
-----
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files

[Stop]:Shutdown
```

F-17-48

Downloading the System Software

[1]: Upgrade (AUTO)

Use it to download/write the system software. (auto)

[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)

Use it to download the system software. (Confirmation execution when version is downed the same version)

[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)

Use it to download the system software. (all overwrite)

Formatting the HDD (only in safe mode)

[4]: Format HDD (in the presence of BOOTDEV)

Use it to format the HDD for BOOTDEV partition.

[4]: Format HDD (ALL) (in the absence of BOOTDEV)

Use it to format the HDD for full partition.

Other Functions

[5]: Backup

Do not use it. (for use by R&D only)

[6]: Restore former version (in the presence of a backup of the system software)

Use it to restore the backup of the system software.

[7]: Clear downloaded files

Use it to remove the system software immediately before downloading (before writing).

[Stop]: Shutdown (in normal mode)

Use it to execute shut-down instructions.

To select/execute a function, use the keys on the control panel.

17.6.2 Points to Note

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



Turning Off the Power

Do not turn off the machine while downloading or writing is under way. Doing so could prevent the machine from starting up. If this is the case, execute HDD formatting (menu [4]), and download the system software. If the machine fails to start up because of failed downloading of BOOT the DIMM ROM must be replaced.



Downgrading

Be sure that the system software in the USB device is of the latest version.

The following files of the system software do not permit collection of version information. As such, they necessarily overwrite the system software on the HDD:

- KEY (in both normal and safe mode)
- TTS (in both normal and safe mode)
- BROWSER (in both normal and safe mode)
- WebDAV (in both normal and safe mode)
- TSTAMP (in both normal and safe mode)
- HELP (in both normal and safe mode)
- DCON (in safe mode only)
- RCON (in safe mode only)

The following is recommended for normal downloading (i.e., downloading of the system software, not after HDD replacement or formatting):

download mode: normal
download menu: [1]: Upgrade (Auto)



Turning Off the Power After Normal Mode

When ending download mode, be sure to execute the HDD shut-down instructions. On the Initial Menu screen, press [stop] > [0]; then, go through the shut-down instructions, and turn off the main power switch.

```
[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]
```

```
-----  
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)  
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)  
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)  
[4]: Format HDD  
[5]: Backup  
[6]: Restore former version  
[7]: Clear downloaded files
```

```
[Stop]:Shutdown
```

```
/ [Shutdown] Execute?/
```

```
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -
```

F-17-49



IF opening/closing the decurler while the USB memory has been connected to the host machine, the decurler may hit the USB memory. Thus, be sure to remove the USB memory before moving to next work.

17.6.3 Downloading/Writing the System Software (auto)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[1]: Upgrade (AUTO)

The system software on the HDD and that in the USB device are compared. If the latter is new, it will be downloaded to the temporary storage area of the HDD. At the end of the downloading, the machine restarts on its own to write the downloaded system software to the system area of the HDD and the flash ROM.

<Procedure>

- 1) If the machine is on, go through the shut-down instructions appearing on the control panel screen so that the main power switch may be turned off. (The main power will go off automatically.)
- 2) Connect the USB device to the sub port.
- 3) Put the machine in download mode (normal or safe).
- 4) Go through the instructions on the control panel, and press the appropriate key.
[1] -> [0]: execute download / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen

```

[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files

[Stop]:Shutdown

```

F-17-50

- 5) While downloading is under way, the control panel screen shows its progress. At the end of the downloading, the machine restarts on its own to start writing to the system area of the HDD or the flash ROM.

- Screen Showing the Progress of Downloading

```

/////Copying files from USB-dev.///
[iPR_C1-XXenXXXX-5822-TTS.lst] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxcXXXX-1776-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxcXXXX-F4D1-KEY.dat] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxcXXXX-405C-KEY.lst] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxpXXXX-17AC-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxpXXXX-96D0-KEY.dat] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxpXXXX-0564-KEY.lst] OK.
[iPR_C1-XXxxXXXX-5C64-DCON.ird] OK.
[iPR_C1-XXxxXXXX-B1B1-DCON.prg] OK.
[iPR_C1-XXxxXXXX-DCON.ift] OK.
File transfer has been completed.

```

- Screen Showing the Progress of Writing to the HDD

```

<<<<<<<<<< download-shell >>>>>>>>
[KEY xp]      ...Upgrading complete
[KEY xc]      ...Upgrading complete
[TTS en]      ...Writing to HDD XX%

```

F-17-51

- 6) At the end of writing to the HDD, a message will appear asking you to turn off and then back on the power. Turn off the power, remove the USB device, and turn the power back on.

```

<<<<<<<<<< download-shell >>>>>>>>
[KEY xp]      ...Upgrading complete
[KEY xc]      ...Upgrading complete
[TTS en]      ...Upgrading complete
+++ Switch OFF the power then ON. +++

```

F-17-52

17.6.4 Downloading the System Software (Confirmation execution when version is downed the same version)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)

The system software on the HDD is compared against that in the USB device. Those system files that are newer will then be downloaded to the temporary storage area of the HDD. If the system software in the USB is of the same or older version, a message will appear on the screen, offering a choice. Unlike menu item [1], the machine will not restart on its own. When you turn it off and then back on manually, it will start to write the system software when it starts up.

<Procedure>

- 1) If the machine is on, go through the shut-down instructions appearing on the control panel screen so that the main power switch may be turned off. (The main power will go off automatically.)
- 2) Connect the USB device to the USB port.
- 3) Put the machine in download mode (normal or safe).
- 4) Go through the instructions indicated on the control panel, and press the appropriate key.
 - [2] -> [0]: execute download / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen

```

[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files

/[2] has been selected. Execute?/
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -

```

F-17-53

MEMO:

If the system software in the USB device is found to be of the same or older version, a message will appear asking you if you want to overwrite. Go through the instructions on the control panel, and press the appropriate key.

[0]: overwrite / other than [0]: do not overwrite

```

/////Copying files from USB-dev.///
[Warning] Same version or old version.
-----
[BOOT XXxx]... Same. OVERWRITE?
-- (YES):0 / (NO):The other keys--

```

F-17-54

- 5) While downloading is under way, the control panel screen shows its progress. At the end of downloading, a message will appear asking you to press a key. Press the appropriate key. If the machine is in normal mode, it starts the shut-down instructions.

```

/////Copying files from USB-dev.///
[iPR_C1-XXenXXXX-5822-TTS.lst] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxcXXXX-1776-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxcXXXX-F4D1-KEY.dat] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxcXXXX-405C-KEY.lst] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxpXXXX-17AC-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxpXXXX-96D0-KEY.dat] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxpXXXX-0564-KEY.lst] OK.
[iPR_C1-XXxxXXXX-5C64-DCON.ird] OK.
[iPR_C1-XXxxXXXX-B1B1-DCON.prg] OK.
[iPR_C1-XXxxXXXX-DCON.ift] OK.
File transfer has been completed.

---Please hit any key---

```

F-17-55

- 6) When a message appears asking you to turn off the power, turn off the main power switch, remove the USB device, and turn on the main power switch.
- 7) Upon start-up, the machine starts to write the system software to the system area of the HDD or the flash ROM. At the end of writing to the HDD, a message will appear asking you to turn off and then back on the power. Turn off and then back on the main power switch.

```

<<<<<<<<< download-shell >>>>>>>>
[KEY xp]      ...Upgrading complete
[KEY xc]      ...Upgrading complete
[TTS en]      ...Upgrading complete
+++ Switch OFF the power then ON. +++

```

F-17-56

17.6.5 Downloading the System Software (all overwriting)

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)

The system software in the USB device will overwrite the software on the HDD regardless of the version of the latter. Unlike menu item [1], however, the machine will not restart on its own at the end of downloading. When the power is turned off and then back on manually, the machine starts writing the system software.

<Procedure>

- 1) If the machine is on, go through the shut-down instructions appearing on the control panel screen so that the main power switch may be turned off. (The main power will go off automatically.)
- 2) Connect the USB device to the USB port.
- 3) Put the machine in download mode (normal or safe).
- 4) Go through the instructions on the control panel, and press the appropriate key.
 - [3] -> [0]: execute download / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen

```

[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files

/[3] has been selected. Execute?/
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -

```

F-17-57

- 5) While downloading is under way, the control panel screen shows its progress. At the end of downloading, a message will appear asking you to press a key. Press the appropriate key. If the machine is in normal mode, the shut-down sequence will start.

```

////Copying files from USB-dev.////
[iPR_C1-XXenXXXX-5822-TTS.lst] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxcXXXX-1776-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxcXXXX-F4D1-KEY.dat] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxcXXXX-405C-KEY.lst] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxpXXXX-17AC-KEY.dsh] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxpXXXX-96D0-KEY.dat] OK.
[iRCXXXX-XXxpXXXX-0564-KEY.lst] OK.
[iPR_C1-XXxxXXXX-5C64-DCON.ird] OK.
[iPR_C1-XXxxXXXX-B1B1-DCON.prg] OK.
[iPR_C1-XXxxXXXX-DCON.ift] OK.
File transfer has been completed.

```

---Please hit any key---

F-17-58

- 6) When a message appears asking you to turn off the power, turn off the main power, remove the USB device, and turn the main power switch back on.
- 7) Upon start-up, the machine starts writing the system software to the system area of the HDD or the flash ROM. At the end of writing, a message will appear asking you to turn off and then back on the power. Turn off and then on the main switch.

```

<<<<<<<<<< download-shell >>>>>>>>>
[KEY xp]      ...Upgrading complete
[KEY xc]      ...Upgrading complete
[TTS en]      ...Upgrading complete
+++ Switch OFF the power then ON. +++

```

F-17-59

17.6.6 Formatting the HDD

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+



This function is available only when the machine is in safe mode.

[4]: Format HDD (in the presence of BOOTDEV)

Use it to format the HDD for BOOTDEV partition.

[4]: Format HDD (ALL) (in the absence of BOOTDEV, as when replacing with new HDD)

Use it to format the HDD for full partition.

<Procedure>

Go through the following to format the HDD for BOOTDEV partition:

- 1) If the machine is on, go through the shut-down instructions appearing on the control panel screen so that the main power switch may be turned off. (The main power will go off automatically.)
- 2) Connect the USB device to the USB port.
- 3) Start up the machine in safe mode.
- 4) Follow the instructions on the control panel, and press the appropriate key.
[4] -> [0]: go to Partition Selection screen / other that [0]: go back to Menu screen

```

[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files

/[4] has been selected. Execute?/
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -

```

F-17-60

- 5) Go through the instructions on the control panel, and press the appropriate key.
[1] -> [0]: execute BOOTDEV formatting / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen
[C]: go back to Menu screen

```

[[[[[ Format HDD Manu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: /BOOTDEV
[C]: Return to Main Menu

/[1] has been selected. Execute?/
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -

```

F-17-61

- 6) At the end of formatting, a message will appear asking you to press a key. Press any key to go back to the Men screen.

```

[[[[[ Format HDD Manu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: /BOOTDEV
[C]: Return to Main Menu

/[1] has been selected. Execute?/
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -

Formatting /BOOTDEV ... OK
///Formatting HDD ...Complete///

---Please hit any key---

```

F-17-62

- 7) Start downloading the system software. For instructions, see "Downloading the System Software."

17.6.7 Other Functions

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

[5]: Backup



This function is for R&D purposes only. Do not use it.

- [6]: **Restore former version** (in the presence of backup of system software)
 Use it to restore the backup of the system software while saving the system software that is current as a backup.

<Procedure>

- 1) If the machine is on, go through the shut-down instructions appearing on the control panel screen so that the main power switch may be turned off. (The main power will go off automatically.)
- 2) Connect the USB device to the USB port.
- 3) Put the machine in download mode (normal or safe).
- 4) Go through the instructions on the control panel, and press the appropriate key.

[6] -> [0]: initialize / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen
 After execution, a message will appear asking you to turn off and then on the power.

```

[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files

/[6] has been selected. Execute?/
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -
Restore former version...Complete.
+++ Switch OFF the power then ON. +++
  
```

F-17-63

5) Turn off the main power switch, remove the USB memory, and turn on the main power switch.

[7]: Clear downloaded files

Use it to remove the system software files that have been saved in the temporary storage area of the HDD. Use it if you want to remove the files without writing them to the HDD after downloading (menu [2] and [3]).

<Procedure>

- 1) The power supply is turned off after the download of the system software by menu [2] or [3] is completed, and it starts in a safe mode with the USB memory connected.
- 2) Go through the instructions on the control panel, and press an appropriate key.
[7] -> [0]: execute / other than [0]: go back to Menu screen
 Upon execution, the Menu screen will return.

```

[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]]
-----
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)
[4]: Format HDD
[5]: Backup
[6]: Restore former version
[7]: Clear downloaded files

/[7] has been selected. Execute?/
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -
  
```

F-17-64

[Stop]: Shutdown (in normal mode only)
 Use it to start up the shut-down sequence.

<Procedure>

- 1) Go through the instructions on the control panel, and press an appropriate key.
[Stop] -> [0]: execute / other than [0]: go to Menu screen
 The shut-down sequence will be executed, and a message will appear asking you to turn off the power.

```
[[[[[ download Menu (USB) ]]]]]]]]]
```

```
-----  
[1]: Upgrade (Auto)  
[2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)  
[3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)  
[4]: Format HDD  
[5]: Backup  
[6]: Restore former version  
[7]: Clear downloaded files
```

```
[Stop]:Shutdown
```

```
/ [Shutdown] Execute?/
```

```
- (OK):0 / (CANCEL):The other keys -
```

F-17-65

2) Turn off the main power switch, and remove the USB device.

Chapter 18 Service Tools

Contents

18.1 Service Tools.....	18-1
18.1.1 Special Tools.....	18-1
18.1.2 Solvents and Oils	18-2

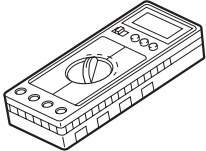
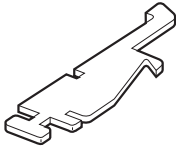
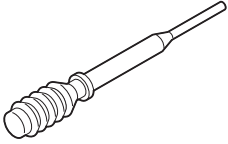
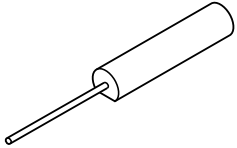
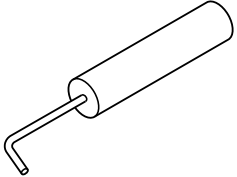
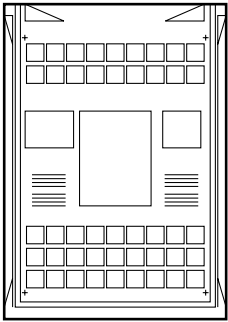
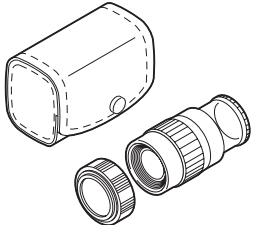
18.1 Service Tools

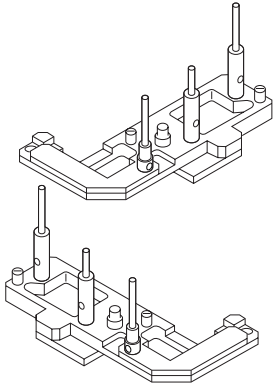
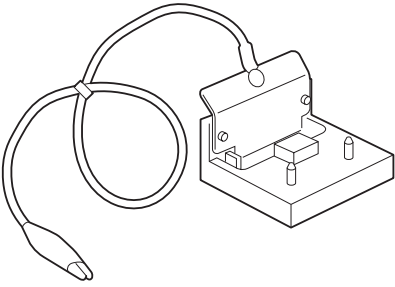
18.1.1 Special Tools

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

In addition to the standard tools set, the following special tools are required when servicing the machine:

T-18-1

Tool name	Tool No.	Ctgr	Appearance	Remarks
Digital multimeter	FY9-2002	A		Use for electrical checks; for adjustment of laser power in combination with the laser power checker.
Cover switch	TKN-0093	A		
Dropper	FY9-1030	B		Dropper for applying fixing belt oil
Tester extension pin	FY9-3038	A		Used as a probe extension when making electrical checks.
Tester extension pin (L-shaped)	FY9-3039	A		Used as a probe extension when making electrical checks.
CA7 test Sheet	FY9-9390	A		Used for adjusting/checking images.
Loupe	CK-0056	B		Used for checking images.

Tool name	Tool No.	Ctgr	Appearance	Remarks
Mirror positioning tool	FY9-3009-040	B		Used for positioning mirror mounts.
Electrode for checking potential sensor	FY9-3057	B		Surface potential sensor for zero-level check

Reference:**Ctgr**

A: Must be kept by each service engineer.

B: Must be kept by each group of about five engineers.

C: Must be kept by each workshop.

18.1.2 Solvents and Oils

imagePRESS C1 P / imagePRESS C1 / imagePRESS C1+ (Printer) / imagePRESS C1+

T-18-2

Item	Uses	Composition	Remarks
Alcohol	Cleaning; e.g., glass, plastic, rubber; external covers.	-Fluoride-family hydrocarbon -Alcohol -Surface activating -Water	-Do not bring near fire. -Procure locally. -Substitute: IPA(isopropy alcohol)
Solvent	Cleaning; e.g., metal; oil or toner stain.	-Fluoride-family hydrocarbon -Chlorine-family hydrocarbon -Alcohol	-Do not bring near fire. -Procure locally. -Substitute: MEK
Heat-resisting grease	Lubrication; e.g., fixing drive areas.	-Mineral oil-family lithium soap -Molybdenum disulfide	-MO-138S -Tool No: CK-0427 (500 g/can)
Lubricating oil		-Mineral oil (paraffin-family)	-Tool No: CK-0524 (100 cc)
Lubricating oil	Lubrication; e.g., drive areas, friction areas.	-Silicone oil	-Tool No: CK-0551 (20 g)
Lubricating oil (EM-50L)	Lubrication; e.g., gears.	-Special oil -Special solid lubricating agent -Lithium soap	-Tool No: HY9-0007

Item	Uses	Composition	Remarks
Lubricating oil	Lubrication; e.g., scanner rail.	-Silicone oil	-Tool No: FY9-6011 (50 cc)
Conducting grease	Lubrication; e.g., edge of secondary transfer roller, drum heater sliding area.	-Fluorine poly wthyl -Polytetra fluorune ethylene	-Tool No: FY9-6008 (75 g)

Oct 22 2008

Canon